



ARCHITECTURE
PLANNING INTERIORS
GRAPHICS

PROJECT MANUAL FOR ANCILLARY EDUCATIONAL FACILITIES- DISTRICT OFFICE

Walton County School District

Construction Documents



EMI Project # 68100
Date: 15 January 2025

PROJECT MANUAL
Construction Documents
WCSD EDUCATIONAL ANCILLARY FACILITIES- DISTRICT OFFICE
FOR
WALTON COUNTY SCHOOL BOARD
15 January 2025
EMI PROJECT NO. 68100

THE BIDDER IS REQUIRED TO COMPARE THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS WITH THE TABLE OF CONTENTS BELOW AND THE INDEX OF DRAWINGS FOR COMPLETENESS. IF PAGES AND/OR SHEETS ARE MISSING OR ILLEGIBLE, IT IS THE BIDDERS' RESPONSIBILITY TO REQUEST REPLACEMENTS FROM THE CONSTRUCTION MANAGER.

Note: Use of the term 'General Contractor and/or 'Contractor' in the Project Manual shall mean the Construction Manager or a Subcontractor responsible for providing materials and/or labor depending on the language in which it is used.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Section #	Section Title	Pages
DIVISION 0 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS		
00 01 01	PROJECT TITLE PAGE	00 01 01-1
00 01 10	TABLE OF CONTENTS	00 01 10-1 thru 00 01 10-4
00 01 15	LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS	00 01 15-1
00 31 32	GEOTECHNICAL DATA	00 31 32-1 thru 00 31 32-72
00100	INSTRUCTION TO BIDDERS	Refer to Constr. Management Bid Package
00200	SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS	Refer to Constr. Management Bid Package
00500	CONTRACT AGREEMENT	Refer to Constr. Management Bid Package
00800	GENERAL CONDITIONS	Refer to Constr. Management Bid Package
00900	SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS	Refer to Constr. Management Bid Package
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS		
DIVISION 1 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS		
01 01 50	OCCUPANCY DURING CONSTRUCTION	01 01 50-1
01 10 10	SUMMARY	01 10 10-1 thru 01 10 10-4
01 21 00	ALLOWANCES	01 21 00-1 thru 01 21 00-3
01 23 00	ALTERNATES	01 23 00-1 thru 01 23 00-2
01 25 00	SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES	01 25 00-1 thru 01 25 00-4
01 25 00a	SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM	
01 26 00	CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES	01 26 00-1 thru 01 26 00-2
01 29 00	PAYMENT PROCEDURES	01 29 00-1 thru 01 29 00-3
01 31 00	PROJECT MANAGEMENT & COORDINATION	01 31 00-1 thru 01 31 00-7
01 32 00	CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION	01 32 00-1 thru 01 32 00-6
01 32 33	PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION	01 32 33-1 thru 01 32 33-3
01 33 00	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES	01 33 00-1 thru 01 33 00-8
01 40 00	QUALITY REQUIREMENTS	01 40 00-1 thru 01 40 00-9
01 42 00	REFERENCES	01 42 00-1 thru 01 42 00-12
01 50 00	TEMPORARY FACILITIES & CONTROLS	01 50 00-1 thru 01 50 00-7
01 60 00	PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS	01 60 00-1 thru 01 60 00-6
01 70 00	PRODUCT EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS	01 70 00-1 thru 01 70 00-5
01 71 00	RFI FORM	
01 73 10	CUTTING AND PATCHING	01 73 10-1 thru 01 73 10-3
01 73 93	TIME EXTENSION- WEATHER	01 73 93-1 thru 01 73 93-2
01 74 19	CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT & DISPOSAL	01 74 19-1 thru 01 74 19-2
01 77 00	CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES	01 77 00-1 thru 01 77 00-5
01 77 00a	PUNCH LIST FORM	

Section #	Section Title	Pages	
1			
2	01 77 10	WARRANTIES AND BONDS	01 77 10-1 thru 01 77 10-2
3	01 78 23	OPERATION & MAINTENANCE DATA	01 78 23-1 thru 01 78 23-4
4	01 78 39	PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS	01 78 39-1 thru 01 78 39-3
5	01 78 40	SPARE PARTS AND MAINTENANCE MATERIALS	01 78 40-1
6	01 78 46	ATTIC STOCK MATERIALS	01 78 46-1
7	01 81 13.23	SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS	01 81 13.23-1 thru 01 81 13.23-3
8	01 82 00	DEMONSTRATION & TRAINING	01 82 00-1 thru 01 82 00-3
9	01 91 13	GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS	01 91 13-1 thru 01 91 13-22
10			
11	DIVISION 3 - CONCRETE – (SEE ATTACHED ‘STRUCTURAL SPECIFICATION INDEX’ FOR		
12	ADDITIONAL SECTIONS)		
13	03 10 00	CONCRETE FORMING & ACCESSORIES	03 10 00-1 thru 03 10 00-7
14	03 20 00	CONCRETE REINFORCING	03 20 00-1 thru 03 20 00-5
15	03 30 00	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE	03 30 00-1 thru 03 30 00-21
16	03 36 60	CONCRETE FLOOR SEALER	03 36 60-1 thru 03 36 60-2
17	03 45 00	ARCHITECTURAL PRECAST CONCRETE- PLANT CAST	03 45 00-1 thru 03 45 00-12
18			
19	DIVISION 4 – MASONRY (SEE ATTACHED ‘STRUCTURAL SPECIFICATION INDEX’ FOR		
20	ADDITIONAL SECTIONS)		
21	04 20 00	UNIT MASONRY	04 20 00-1 thru 04 20 00-17
22	04 29 00	REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY	04 29 00-1 thru 04 29 00-12
23			
24	DIVISION 5 – METALS (SEE ATTACHED ‘STRUCTURAL SPECIFICATION INDEX’ FOR ADDITIONAL		
25	SECTIONS)		
26	05 12 00	STRUCTURAL STEEL	05 12 00-1 thru 05 12 00-18
27	05 21 00	STEEL JOIST FRAMING	05 21 00-1 thru 05 21 00-8
28	05 31 00	STEEL DECK	05 31 00-1 thru 05 21 00-7
29	05 40 00	COLD FORM METAL FRAMING	05 40 00-1 thru 05 40 00-11
30	05 50 00	METAL FABRICATIONS	05 50 00-1 thru 05 50 00-6
31	05 51 00	METAL STAIRS	05 51 00-1 thru 05 51 00-7
32	05 51 33.17	TUBULAR FIXED EXTERIOR ROOF ACCESS LADDER	05 51 33.17-1 thru 05 51 33.17-2
33	05 52 13	PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS	05 52 13-1 thru 05 52 13-8
34	05 73 00	ILLUMINATED DECORATIVE METAL HANDRAILS	05 73 00-1 thru 05 73 00-4
35	05 73 13	GLAZED DECORATIVE METAL RAILINGS	05 73 13-1 thru 05 73 13-10
36			
37	DIVISION 6 - WOOD		
38	06 10 00	ROUGH CARPENTRY	06 10 00-1 thru 06 10 00-3
39	06 16 00	SHEATHING	06 16 00-1 thru 06 16 00-2
40	06 20 00	ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK	06 20 00-1 thru 06 20 00-4
41	06 20 23	FINISH CARPENTRY	06 20 23-1 thru 06 20 23-2
42			
43	DIVISION 7 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION		
44	07 11 13	BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING	07 11 13-1 thru 07 11 13-3
45	07 13 26	SELF-ADHERED WATERPROOF UNDERLAYMENT	07 13 26-1 thru 07 13 26-2
46	07 14 20	FLUID APPLIED MEMBRANE WATERPROOFING	07 14 20-1 thru 07 14 20-5
47	07 17 00	BENTONITE WATERPROOFING	07 17 00-1 thru 07 17 00-5
48	07 19 00	WATER REPELLENTS	07 19 00-1 thru 07 19 00-4
49	07 21 00	BUILDING INSULATION	07 21 00-1 thru 07 21 00-4
50	07 26 16	UNDERSLAB VAPOR RETARDER	07 26 16-1 thru 07 26 16-3
51	07 26 50	FLUID APPLIED AIR AND WATER BARRIER	07 26 50-1 thru 07 26 50-11
52	07 41 00	PREFORMED METAL ROOF PANELS	07 41 00-1 thru 07 41 00-11
53	07 42 13	METAL FACED COMPSTE. RAINSCREEN WALL PANEL	07 42 13-1 thru 07 42 13-8
54	07 42 16	METAL WALL PANELS RAINSCREEN ASSEMBLY	07 42 16-1 thru 07 42 16-15
55	07 42 60	FIBER REINFORCED HYBRID SOFFIT	07 42 60 1 thru 07 42 60-6
56	07 54 23	THERMOPLASTIC SINGLE-PLY ROOFING	07 54 19-1 thru 07 54 19-14
57	07 60 00	FLASHING & SHEET METAL	07 62 00-1 thru 07 62 00-6
58			
59			

Section #	Section Title	Pages	
1			
2	07 71 23	GUTTERS AND DOWNSPOUTS	07 71 23-1 thru 07 71 23-4
3	07 72 00	ROOF ACCESSORIES	07 72 00-1 thru 07 72 00-3
4	07 72 33	ROOF HATCH	07 72 33-1 thru 07 72 33-3
5	07 81 13	INTUMESCENT FIRE RESISTIVE MATERIALS	07 81 13-1 thru 07 81 13-4
6	07 84 13	PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING	07 84 13-1 thru 07 84 13-8
7	07 90 10	EXTERIOR JOINT SEALANTS	07 90 10-1 thru 07 90 10-8
8	07 90 20	INTERIOR JOINT CAULKING	07 90 20-1 thru 07 90 20-5
9			
10	DIVISION 8 - DOORS AND WINDOWS		
11	08 11 13	HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES	08 11 13-1 thru 08 11 13-11
12	08 14 16	FLUSH WOOD DOORS	08 14 16-1 thru 08 14 16-3
13	08 31 13	ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES	08 31 13-1 thru 08 31 13-5
14	08 41 00	ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES & STOREFRONTS	08 41 13-1 thru 08 41 13-6
15	08 41 13	ALUMINUM- FRAMED ENTRANCES & STOREFRONTS-INTERIOR	08 41 00-1 thru 08 41 00-8
16			
17	08 44 13	CURTAIN WALL SYSTEM	08 44 13-1 thru 08 41 13-6
18	08 71 00	DOOR HARDWARE	08 71 00-1 thru 08 71 00-46
19	08 71 13	AUTOMATIC DOORS	08 71 13-1 thru 08 71 13-7
20	08 80 00	GLAZING	08 80 00-1 thru 08 88 00-10
21	08 83 00	MIRRORS	08 83 00-1 thru 08 83 00-3
22	08 88 13	FIRE RATED GLASS & FRAMING	08 88 13-1 thru 08 88 13-18
23	08 88 56	BALLISTICS-RESISTANT GLAZING AND WINDOW UNITS	08 88 56-1 thru 08 88 56-2
24			
25			
26	DIVISION 9 – FINISHES		
27	09 22 16	NON- STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING	09 22 16-1 thru 09 22 16-5
28	09 30 13	PORCELAIN TILING	09 30 13-1 thru 09 30 13-9
29	09 29 00	GYPSUM BOARD	09 29 00-1 thru 09 29 00-5
30	09 51 20	ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS	09 51 20-1 thru 09 51 20-4
31	09 54 26	WOOD PANEL CEILINGS	09 54 26-1 thru 09 54 26-4
32	09 65 13	RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES	09 65 13-1 thru 09 65 13-3
33	09 65 19.24	LVT FLOORING	09 65 19.24-1 thru 09 6519.24-7
34	09 68 16	CARPET	09 68 16-1 thru 09 68 16-4
35	09 80 00	SPECIAL COATINGS	09 80 00-1 thru 09 80 00-6
36	09 84 13	FIXED SOUND-ABSORPTIVE PANELS	09 84 13-1 thru 09 84 13-3
37	09 90 00	PAINTING	09 90 00-1 thru 09 90 00-11
38	09 96 56	EPOXY COATINGS	09 96 56-1 thru 09 96 56-6
39			
40	DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES		
41	10 00 01	MISCELLANEOUS SPECIALTIES	10 00 01-1 thru 10 00 01-5
42	10 14 00	SIGNAGE	10 14 00-1 thru 10 14 00-2
43	10 21 13	TOILET COMPARTMENTS	10 21 13-1 thru 10 21 13-5
44	10 28 00	TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES	10 28 00-1 thru 10 28 00-
45	10 50 20	HORIZONTAL AWNINGS	10 50 20-1 thru 10 50 20-4
46	10 52 20	FIRE EXTNGUISHERS, CABINETS AND ACCESSORIES	10 52 20-1 thru 10 52 20-2
47	10 75 00	FLAGPOLES	10 75 00-1 thru 10 75 00-2
48			
49	DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT		
50			
51	DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS		
52	12 24 13	MOTORIZED ROLLER SHADES	12 24 13-1 thru 12 24 13-8
53	12 32 16	LAMINATE CLAD CASEWORK	12 32 16-1 thru 12 32 16-7
54	12 36 61	QUARTZ SURFACING COUNTERTOPS	12 36 61-1 thru 12 36 61-5
55			
56	DIVISION 13 – SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION		
57	13 47 13	BULLET RESISTANT PANELS	13 47 13-1 thru 13 47 13-2
58			
59	DIVISION 14- CONVEYING EQUIPMENT		
	TABLE OF CONTENTS		

Section #	Section Title	Pages
1		
2	14 24 00	MACHINE ROOM-LESS HYDRAULIC PASSENGER ELEVATORS
3		14 24 00-1 thru
4		14 24 00-16
5	DIVISION 21-26 – (SEE ATTACHED ‘MPE SPECIFICATION INDEX’ FOR ADDITIONAL SECTIONS)	
6	23 08 00	MECHANICAL SYSTEMS COMMISSIONING
7		23 08 00- thru 28 08 10
8	26 05 00	ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS COMMISSIONING
9		26 05 00- thru 26 05 5
10	DIVISION 27 COMMUNICATION	
11	27 00 00	COMMUNICATIONS STRUCTURAL CABLING
12		27 00 00-1 thru 27 00 00-28
13	27 00 50	IP SECURITY CAMERA SYSTEM
14		27 00 50-1 thru 27 00 50-8
15	27 41 00	AUDIO-VISUAL SYSTEMS
16		27 41 00-1 thru 27 41 00-17
17	DIVISION 28 ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY	
18	28 10 00	ACCESS CONTROL & INTRUSION ALARM SYSTEM
19		28 10 00-1 thru 28 10 00-10
20	DIVISION 29 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY	
21	29 01 00	GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS
22		29 01 00-1 thru 29 01 00-18
23	29 05 23	CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLES FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY
24		COMMUNICATIONS
25		29 05 23-1 thru 29 05 23-6
26	29 13 23	OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY
27		COMMUNICATIONS
28		29 13 23-1 thru 29 13 23-6
29	29 22 00	CLEAN AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYTEMS
30		29 22 00-1 thru 29 22 00-10
31	29 46 21.11	ADDRESSABLE FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS
32		29 46 21.11-1 thru
33		29 46 21.11-22
34	29 48 00	EMERGENCY RESPONSE SYSTEMS
35		29 48 00-1 thru 29 48 00-8
36	DIVISION 31 EARTHWORK	
37	31 31 16	TERMITE CONTROL
38		31 31 16-1 thru 31 31 16-3
39	31 10 00	TRENCH SAFETY ACT
40		31 10 00-1
41	DIVISION 32 EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS	
42	32 31 14	CHAIN LINK FENCES & GATES
43		32 31 14-1 thru 32 31 14-14
44	END OF SECTION 00 01 10	



1 **DOCUMENT 00 01 01 - PROJECT TITLE PAGE**

2 **1.1 PROJECT MANUAL VOLUME**

3 A. **Walton County School District Educational Ancillary Facility- District Office**

4 B. **DeFuniak, Florida**

5 C. **Owner: Walton County School District**

6 D. Architect Project No. 68100.

7 E. **EMI architects.**

8 F. 251 East Seventh Avenue

9 G. Tallahassee, Florida 32303

10 H. Phone: 850.222.7442

11 I. Fax: 850.222.7446

12 J. Web Site: www.emiarch.com

13 K. Issued: -- January 2025

14 L. Copyright: 2025 Elliott Marshall Innes, P.A. All rights reserved.

15 **END OF DOCUMENT 00 01 01**



1 **DOCUMENT 00 01 15 - LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS**

2 **1.1 LIST OF DRAWINGS**

3 A. Drawings: Drawings consist of the Contract Drawings and other drawings listed on the Index of
4 Drawings of the separately bound drawing set, as modified by subsequent Addenda and
5 Contract modifications.

6 **END OF DOCUMENT 00 01 15**



1 **SECTION 00 31 32 - GEOTECHNICAL DATA**

2
3 **SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION AND FOUNDATION EVALUATION**

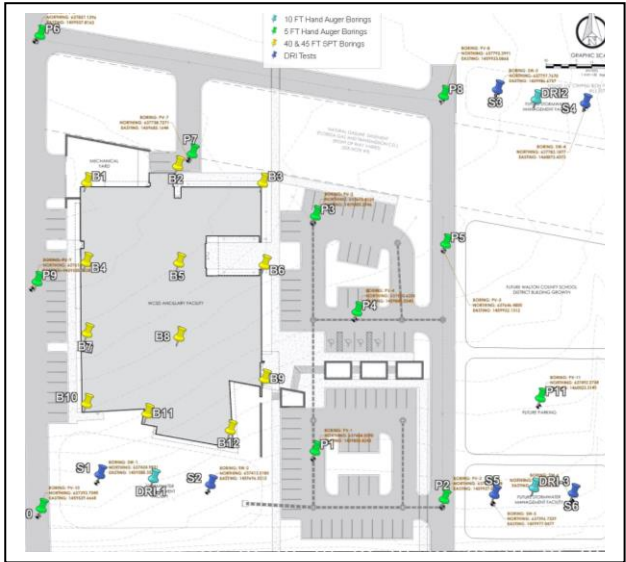
4
5 The following Geotechnical Investigation Report for the Walton County School District Educational Ancillary
6 Facility – District Office is furnished by the Owner and included herein for Contractor's use. Contractor shall
7 perform work of the Contract in accordance with this report and the Contract Documents. The information
8 and recommendations contained herein shall be the specification for the work of Division 2; except as
9 specifically indicated otherwise by other requirements of Division 2 Specification Sections. Should conflict
10 between this report and other Division 2 Specification Sections occur, the more stringent shall take
11 precedence.

12
13 The Owner assumes no responsibility for the accuracy of the information provided in the following report.

14
15 Note: The following report(s) follow:

- 16
17 • Geotechnical Engineering Report – Walton County School District Educational Ancillary
18 Facility- District Office, DeFuniak, Florida
19 Dated 08 August 2024 and completed by Nova Engineering.

GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING REPORT



WCSD Educational Ancillary Facility DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida

PREPARED FOR:
EMI Architects
251 East 7th Avenue
Tallahassee, Florida 32303

NOVA Project Number: 10111-2024096

August 8, 2024



August 8, 2024

EMI Architects

251 East 7th Avenue
Tallahassee, Florida 32303

Attention: Mr. Brad Innes, AIA

Subject: **Geotechnical Engineering Report**
WCSD Educational Ancillary Facility
DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
NOVA Project Number 10111-2024096

Dear Mr. Innes:

NOVA Engineering and Environmental, LLC (NOVA) has completed the authorized Geotechnical Engineering Report for the proposed facility in DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida. The work was performed in general accordance with NOVA Proposal Number 10111-2024096, dated June 5th, 2024. This report briefly discusses our understanding of the project at the time of the subsurface exploration, describes the geotechnical consulting services provided by NOVA, and presents our findings, conclusions, and recommendations.

We appreciate your selection of NOVA and the opportunity to be of service on this project. If you have any questions, or if we may be of further assistance, please do not hesitate to contact us.

Sincerely,
NOVA Engineering and Environmental, LLC

A handwritten signature in black ink that reads "Chris Alessio". The signature is written in a cursive, flowing style.

Chris V. Alessio, E.I.
Staff Engineer

Copies Submitted: Addressee (electronic)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION	1
1.1	NAME AND LOCATION OF PROJECT	1
1.2	AUTHORIZATION AND SCOPE OF STUDY	1
2.0	PROJECT INFORMATION	3
2.1	PROJECT SITE	3
2.2	PROPOSED DEVELOPMENT	3
3.0	SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION	4
3.1	AREA GEOLOGY	4
3.2	LOCAL EXPERIENCE	4
3.3	FIELD EXPLORATION	5
3.4	LABORATORY TESTING	6
3.5	SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS	7
4.0	GEOTECHNICAL ASSESSMENT	9
5.0	RECOMMENDATIONS	10
5.1	SITE PREPARATION	10
5.2	EXCAVATION	11
5.3	FILL PLACEMENT	11
5.4	FOUNDATIONS	13
5.5	SLAB-ON-GRADE	14
5.6	PAVEMENT CROSS SECTION DESIGN	15
5.7	STORMWATER MANAGEMENT SYSTEM	18
5.8	DRAINAGE CONSIDERATIONS	19
6.0	LIMITATIONS	20

APPENDICES

- Appendix A – Figures and Maps
- Appendix B – Subsurface Data
- Appendix C – Laboratory Test Data

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This section provides information relating to our contract, the purpose of our work, and a summary of our understanding of the project.

1.1 NAME AND LOCATION OF PROJECT

The Subject Property (Walton County Parcel ID 23-3N-19-19000-003-0011) is located north of the intersection of Walton Road and Amy Lane in DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida. The location of the site is indicated on the Site Location Map included in Appendix A.

1.2 AUTHORIZATION AND SCOPE OF STUDY

Our work on this project was as described in our Proposal Number 10111-2024096, authorized by the Client on July 10th, 2024. The primary objectives of this work were to perform a geotechnical exploration within the proposed structure, pavement, and retention pond footprints and to assess these findings as they relate to geotechnical aspects of the planned site development. The authorized geotechnical engineering services included a site reconnaissance, soil test borings and sampling, engineering evaluation of the field and laboratory data, and the preparation of this report. As authorized per the above referenced proposal, this completed geotechnical report includes:

As authorized per the above referenced proposal, this completed geotechnical report includes:

- A description of the site, fieldwork, laboratory testing and general soil conditions encountered, together with a Boring Location Plan and individual Test Boring Records.
- Site preparation considerations that include geotechnical discussions regarding site stripping and subgrade preparation and engineered fill/backfill placement.
- Recommendations for controlling groundwater and/or run-off during construction.
- Foundation system recommendations for the proposed structure, as deemed necessary based on the boring results.
- Slab-on-grade construction considerations based on the geotechnical findings, including the need for a sub-slab vapor barrier or a capillary barrier.
- Suitability of on-site soils for re-use as structural fill and backfill. Additionally, the criteria for suitable fill materials will be provided.
- Recommended quality control measures (i.e., sampling, testing, and inspection requirements) for site grading and foundation construction.

- Recommended pavement sections based on assumed traffic loading and subgrade strengths estimate from correlation with test borings, laboratory data, and soil types collected from the test borings.
- Recommended soil related design parameters for the proposed SMS basins.

The assessment of the presence of wetlands, floodplains, or water classified as state waters was beyond the scope of this exploration. Additionally, the assessment of site environmental conditions, including the detection of pollutants in the soil, rock, or groundwater, at the site was also beyond the scope of this geotechnical exploration and evaluation.

2.0 PROJECT INFORMATION

Our understanding of this project is based on discussions with the Client, a site reconnaissance made during boring layout, and our experience with similar projects in and around the DeFuniak Springs area. We note that boring locations were specified by the Client and were then field staked by NOVA.

Site Plans and Documents

We were furnished with the following document:

Document: Boring Plan
Provided by: Christopher S. Childers, P.E.
Document date: May 3rd, 2024

2.1 PROJECT SITE

The Subject Property (Walton County Parcel ID 23-3N-19-19000-003-0011) is located along the north side of Walton Road, north of its intersection with Amy Lane, in DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida. At the time of our field exploration, the vicinity of the Subject Property was observed to be generally developed with undeveloped woodlands to the north, commercial buildings to the east and west, and Walton Road to the south.

2.2 PROPOSED DEVELOPMENT

NOVA understands that the property will be developed as a Walton County School District facility including a primary building with associated paved entrance drives, parking areas and a stormwater management system (SMS) consisting of three retention pond basins. We understand that the two-story, slab-on-grade building is anticipated to be of steel frame construction.

Maximum Loads

Based on the documents provided by the Client, we understand that structural loadings for the proposed structure will not exceed 150 kips per column for isolated interior columns, 80 kips per column for isolated exterior columns and 4 kips per linear foot for continuous load bearing walls.

Site Grading

Final site grading details were not available from the Design Team at the time of the issuance of this report. We have therefore assumed that finished site grades will not

change greater than ± 3 feet from existing grades within the proposed structure footprint and pavement areas and that the proposed pond basins will be no greater than 4 feet in depth.

3.0 SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION

3.1 AREA GEOLOGY

According to the United States Geological Survey (USGS), the subject site is located in Walton County within the Gulf Coastal Plain, separated from the Florida Platform by geologic structures known as the Gulf Trough and Apalachicola Embayment. These structures formed a bathymetric and environmental barrier from the earliest Eocene or earliest Oligocene periods into the Miocene. According to the "Text to Accompany the Geologic Map of Florida" by Scott, 2001, the site is generally underlain by undifferentiated sediments deposited during the Quaternary period. These sediments typically consist of siliciclastics (sand), organics and freshwater carbonates. These soils are highly permeable and form the Sand and Gravel Aquifer of the surficial aquifer system. Surficial soils in the region are primarily siliciclastic sediments deposited in response to the renewed uplift and erosion in the Appalachian highlands to the north and sea-level fluctuations. The extent and type of deposit is influenced by numerous factors, including mineral composition of the parent rock and meteorological events.

NRCS Soil Survey

The Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) "Web Soil" was reviewed to obtain shallow soil and seasonal high groundwater (SHGW) table information. As shown in the table below, one soil-mapping unit is located within the project site. Generally, the site primarily lies within the Lakeland Sand (Map Unit 17) unit. The NRCS Soil Survey map and data have been included in the Appendix.

Unit no.	Soil Name	Depth (in)	Soil Description	Depth to Seasonal High Groundwater (in)
17	Lakeland Sand 0 to 5 percent slopes	0 - 80	Sand	> 80

3.2 LOCAL EXPERIENCE

NOVA has conducted numerous geotechnical studies for projects in Walton County including around the DeFuniak Springs area. The typical subsurface conditions in this area were found to consist of fine-grained sands to silty sands (USCS classifications of SP, SP-SM, and SM). In some instances, sand to silty sand strata with some organics and/or significant organic staining have also been encountered.

3.3 FIELD EXPLORATION

Our field exploration was conducted from July 16th to July 18th, 2024, and included performing:

- Seven 40-foot-deep SPT borings within the proposed building footprint (designated B-1 through B-7).
- Five 45-foot-deep SPT borings within the proposed building footprint (designated B-8 through B-12).
- Eleven 5 feet deep auger borings within the proposed pavement areas (P-1 through P-11).
- Three double ring infiltrometer tests (DRI-1, DRI-2 and DRI-3) and six 10 feet deep auger borings (S-1 through S-6) within the proposed SMS basins.

The boring and DRI test locations were established in the field by NOVA personnel using a handheld GPS device and by estimating distances and angles from site landmarks. Prior to initiating field testing, underground utilities were marked by the state utility locate service (811, or Sunshine One-Call). Any required underground utility related adjustments of the test locations were then made at the time of the field exploration. The approximate locations are shown in the Boring Location Plan provided in Appendix B. If increased accuracy is desired by the Client, the test locations and elevations may also be surveyed.

The Test Boring Records in Appendix B shows the Standard Penetration Test (SPT) resistances, or “N-values”, for the structural borings and present the soil conditions encountered in all of the borings. These records represent our interpretation of the subsurface conditions based on the field exploration data, visual examination of the split-barrel samples, laboratory test data, and generally accepted geotechnical engineering practices. The stratification lines and depth designations represent approximate boundaries between various subsurface strata. Actual transitions between materials may be gradual.

The groundwater levels reported on the Test Boring Records represent a measurement made at the completion of each boring, following a suitable stabilization period. The test borings were subsequently backfilled with soil cuttings from the drilling process for safety concerns.

SPT Borings

The structure borings were performed using the guidelines of ASTM Designation D-1586, "Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils". A mud rotary drilling process was used to advance the borings if groundwater was encountered. At regular intervals, soil samples were obtained with a standard 1.4-inch I.D., 2.0-inch O.D., split-

tube sampler. The sampler was first seated six inches and then driven an additional foot with blows of a 140-pound hammer falling 30 inches. The number of hammer blows required to drive the sampler the final foot is designated the "Penetration Resistance".

Representative portions of the soil samples, obtained from the sampler, were placed in sealed containers and transported to our laboratory for further evaluation and laboratory testing.

Auger Borings

The pavement and SMS auger borings were performed using the guidelines of ASTM Designation D-1452, "Soil Exploration and Sampling by Auger Borings". A manually advanced 3¼-inch diameter orchard-type auger was utilized with disturbed samples acquired continuously for the full depth of the boring. Representative portions of the soil samples, obtained from the sampler, were placed in sealed containers and transported to our laboratory for further evaluation and laboratory testing.

Double Ring Infiltrometer Testing

The Double Ring Infiltrometer (DRI) testing was performed in general accordance with ASTM D-3385. The DRI is used for determining water infiltration rates of soil within the retention area footprint. The rings are partially inserted into the soil and filled with water, after which the speed of infiltration is measured. Infiltration is the process of water penetrating the ground surface. The intensity of this process is called the infiltration rate and is expressed in terms of the volume of water per ground surface and per unit of time (inches/hour).

3.4 LABORATORY TESTING

Following completion of the field work, soil samples obtained in the field were returned to our office for classification and laboratory testing assignment. These tests included the following:

- Moisture Content
- Fines Content
- Organic Content
- Re-molded Falling Head Permeability

The purpose of the testing program was to classify the subsurface materials relative to the Unified Classification System and to determine their physical characteristics including strength, and compressibility.

Moisture Content

The moisture content is the ratio expressed as a percentage of the weight of water in a given mass of soil to the weight of the solid particles. This testing was conducted in general accordance with ASTM Designation D-2216. Thirty-one moisture content tests were performed in this study.

Fines Content

The percentage of fines passing through the No. 200 sieve is generally considered to represent the amount of silt and clay of the tested soil sample. The sieve analysis testing was conducted in general accordance with ASTM Designations D-6913 and D-1140. Thirty-one fines content tests were performed in this study.

Organic Content

The organic content is the ratio expressed as a percentage of the weight of organic material in a given mass of soil to the weight of the solid particles. This testing was conducted in general accordance with ASTM D-2974. Twenty organic content tests were performed in this study.

Re-molded Falling Head Permeability

A remolded falling head permeability test (ASTM D-5084) is a common laboratory test used to determine the hydraulic conductivity of fine-grained soils. The test involves the flow of water through a re-molded, fully saturated soil sample inside a rigid-wall permeameter connected to a standpipe of constant diameter. Before beginning the flow measurements, the soil sample is saturated, and the standpipe is filled with water to a given level. The test then starts by allowing the water to flow through the sample until the water in the standpipe reaches a lower limit. The time required for the water to flow from the upper to lower limit is recorded. Three remolded permeability tests were performed in this study.

3.5 SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

The following paragraphs provide generalized descriptions of the subsurface profiles and soil conditions encountered by the borings conducted during this exploration.

Surface Materials

Surface materials across the subject site generally consisted of topsoil and related surficial organics, generally on the order of 4 inches or less at the boring locations.

Fill

Based on the boring results and our on-site observations at the time of our field exploration, previously installed fill materials do not appear to be present on this property.

Native Soils

Below topsoil, the test borings generally encountered mixed strata of very loose to very dense fine-grained sand, fine-grained slightly silty sand, slightly clayey sand, and clayey sand (USCS classifications of SP, SP-SM, SP-SC and SC) to a depth of about 15 feet below existing grade (BEG) underlain by mixed strata of very loose to dense fine-grained slightly silty sand, slightly clayey sand, and clayey sand (SP-SM, SP-SC and SC) to the maximum depth explored of about 45 feet BEG. We note that trace organics were encountered in some strata and at variable depths in the soil borings.

Standard Penetration Test (SPT) resistance values ("N"- values) varied from 2 to 54 blows per foot (bpf) and were found to be generally variable with respect to depth. SPT values typically ranged from 2 to 20 bpf in the upper 10 feet of the soil horizon, and 2 to 54 bpf at greater depths.

Groundwater Conditions

Groundwater in the Walton County, Florida area typically occurs as an unconfined aquifer condition. Consequently, the groundwater table is expected to be a subdued replica of the original surface topography. Recharge is provided by the infiltration of rainfall and surface water through the soil overburden. More permeable zones in the soil matrix can affect groundwater conditions.

A stabilized groundwater table was not encountered in the test borings to the maximum depth explored of about 45 feet BEG at the time of our final field exploration, which occurred during a period of relatively normal seasonal rainfall and within a pattern of frequent (daily) rain events. Based on a review of topographic maps and our visual site observations, we anticipate the groundwater flow at the site to be towards the south.

Groundwater levels vary with changes in season and rainfall, construction activity, surface water runoff, and other site-specific factors. Groundwater levels in the south Walton County area are typically lowest in the late fall to winter and highest in the early spring to mid-summer with annual groundwater fluctuations by seasonal rainfall; consequently, the water table may vary at times. Based on comparisons of current annual monthly rainfall data to historical rainfall data extending back 50+ years in time, we estimate that the normal permanent seasonal high groundwater (SHGW) table for this site will remain at a depth greater than 45 feet BEG, during the wet season. This data generally correlates to the values provided by the USGS Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS).

4.0 GEOTECHNICAL ASSESSMENT

The following assessment is based on our understanding of the proposed construction, our site observations, our evaluation and interpretation of the field data obtained during this exploration, our experience with similar subsurface conditions, and generally accepted geotechnical engineering principles and practices.

Based on the boring results, following removal of the aforementioned stockpiles of concrete debris as well as site stripping of trees, surficial vegetation, topsoil and any other deleterious materials found to be present, the proposed construction appears to be feasible employing conventional site preparation practices as recommended in the Site Preparation section of this report.

A stabilized groundwater table was not encountered to the maximum depth explored of about 45 feet BEG and is therefore not expected to adversely impact the development of this property.

After the recommended site/subgrade preparation and fill placement has been completed, we recommend that the proposed structure be supported on a conventional shallow foundation system bearing upon compacted structural fill. The building foundation may be designed employing a maximum soil bearing pressure of **2,500 pounds per square foot (psf)**.

Based on the results of the SMS test borings, the subsurface conditions encountered beneath the proposed SMS basins appear to be adaptable for employing the desired shallow dry retention basins.

Subsurface conditions in unexplored locations can and will vary from those encountered at the boring locations considered and discussed herein. If such variations are noted during construction, or if project development plans are changed, we request the opportunity to review the changes and amend our recommendations, if necessary.

The following sections present our recommendations for site preparation and grading, and for the design of the proposed shallow foundation system as well as pavement sections and the SMS basins.

5.0 RECOMMENDATIONS

5.1 SITE PREPARATION

Prior to proceeding with construction, all topsoil and vegetation, trees and associated root systems, and any other deleterious non-soil materials found to be present should be stripped from the proposed construction areas. Clean topsoil may be stockpiled and subsequently re-used in landscaped areas. Debris-laden materials should be excavated, transported, and disposed of off-site in accordance with appropriate solid waste rules and regulations. Any existing utility locations should be reviewed to assess their impact on the proposed construction and relocated/grouted in-place as appropriate.

The soils exposed at the stripped grade elevation should be compacted to a minimum soil density of at least 100 percent of the maximum dry density as determined by the Modified Proctor test method (ASTM D-1557).

We recommend densifying (compacting) the upper zone of very loose to loose fine-grained sands and fine-grained slightly silty sands (SP and SP-SM, N-values of concern varying between 2 and 6) that were generally encountered in the upper 6 feet of the soil horizon the SPT borings performed for this project.

This can most likely be accomplished by compacting the exposed subgrade from the stripped grade elevation with a heavy weight vibratory roller (i.e., a minimum 10-ton roller, static weight, with a minimum 5-foot drum diameter) to a minimum soil density of at least 100 percent of the maximum dry density as determined by the Modified Proctor test method (ASTM D-1557), as equipment of this size can typically impact sandy profiles on the order 5 feet. We note that vibratory compaction operations should not be conducted within approximately 50 feet of any existing structures.

Verification of the improvement of the loose subgrade soils within the proposed structure footprint should be achieved via Dynamic Cone Penetrometer testing to a depth of at least 5 feet below the lowest bottom-of-footing elevation and additional recommendations (i.e., further compaction effort, possible undercutting, choking stone into the exposed subgrade, etc.) can be rendered in the field as these tests are performed.

NOVA should observe the compaction of the subgrade to locate soft, weak, or excessively wet fill or existing soils present at the time of construction. Any unstable materials observed during the evaluation and compaction operations should be undercut and replaced with structural fill or stabilized in-place by scarifying and re-densifying.

5.2 EXCAVATION

Excavations greater than five feet deep (such as for underground utility installations) should be sloped or shored in accordance with local, state, and federal regulations, including OSHA (29CFR Part 1926), excavation safety standards. We note that the Contractor is solely responsible for site safety. This information is provided only as a service and under no circumstances should NOVA be assumed to be responsible for construction site safety. Each excavation should be observed and classified by an OSHA-competent person. All excavations below the groundwater level are classified as OSHA Class C soils for excavation purposes.

After stripping and trench excavation, a NOVA geotechnical engineer should carefully evaluate the exposed soils. We recommend undercutting the proposed pipe trench areas approximately $\frac{1}{2}$ foot below the proposed pipe bearing elevations and installing structural backfill for use as pipe bedding materials. Sewer pipe installation should be constructed in general compliance with ASTM D2321, standard practice for underground installation of pipe for sewers and other gravity flow applications.

Groundwater Control

A stabilized groundwater table was not encountered in the test borings to the maximum depth explored of about 45 feet BEG during our field exploration, which occurred during a period of relatively normal seasonal rainfall. We therefore do not anticipate that significant groundwater control issues will develop during mass grading and foundation construction.

5.3 FILL PLACEMENT

Fill Suitability

Fill materials should be relatively clean sands with less than 12 percent fines (material passing the No. 200 sieve), and free of non-soil materials and rock fragments larger than 3 inches in diameter. Based on visual examination and limited laboratory soil testing results, the existing surficial soils encountered during this exploration typically consisted of fine grained sands and fine-grained slightly silty sands (SP, SP-SM) that may be suitable for re-use as fill or backfill material (laboratory testing indicated that fines contents in the upper 6 feet of the soil horizon in the test boring were between 0 and 3 percent).

We recommend that stockpiles of all materials planned for re-use be sealed as they are excavated to prevent (to the greatest extent practical) the intrusion of moisture into the core of the soil stockpile(s) during significant rain events prior to their potential re-use as fill and/or backfill soils. Prior to construction, bulk samples of all proposed

fill materials (both native and import) should be laboratory tested to confirm their suitability. Organic and/or debris-laden material is not suitable for re-use as structural fill. Topsoil, mulch, and similar organic materials can be wasted in architectural areas. Debris-laden materials should be excavated, transported, and disposed of off-site in accordance with appropriate solid waste rules and regulations.

Soil Compaction

Fill should be placed in thin, horizontal loose lifts (maximum 12-inch) and compacted to a minimum soil density of at least 98 percent of the Modified Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D-1557). In confined areas, such as utility trenches, portable compaction equipment and thinner fill lifts (3 to 4 inches) may be necessary.

Fill materials used in structural areas should have a target maximum dry density of at least 95 pounds per cubic foot (pcf). If lighter weight fill materials are used, the NOVA geotechnical engineer should be consulted to assess the impact on design recommendations.

Soil moisture content should be maintained within 3 percent of the optimum moisture content. We recommend that the grading contractor have equipment on site during earthwork for both drying and wetting fill soils. Moisture control may be difficult during rainy weather. Soils excavated from below the groundwater table will likely require significant efforts to achieve acceptable moisture contents prior to re-use as fill.

One test per 2,500 square feet of structure footprint and 5,000 square feet of pavement area should be performed at the stripped grade elevation and in each lift of fill, with test locations well distributed throughout the fill mass. When filling in small areas, at least one test per day per area should be performed. One (1) test in each column footing and one (1) test per 50 linear feet of continuous strip foundations are also recommended for the building area.

The site should be graded during construction to maintain positive drainage away from the proposed structure footprint, to prevent ponding of stormwater on the site during and shortly following significant rain events. The construction areas should be sealed and crowned with a smooth roller to minimize ponding water from storm events at the end of each day of work.

5.4 FOUNDATIONS

General

Based on the documents provided by the Client, we understand that structural loadings for the proposed structure will be 150 kips per column for isolated interior columns, 80 kips for isolated exterior columns and 4 kips per linear foot for continuous load bearing walls. Final grading details were not available from the Design Team at the time of the issuance of this proposal. We have therefore assumed that finished site grades will not change greater than ± 3 feet from existing grades within the proposed structure footprint.

If any of the above stated design assumptions are found to be incorrect or are revised, NOVA should be contacted immediately so that additional analyses can be performed to determine if the recommendations presented herein will need to be modified.

Shallow Foundation System

Design: After the recommended site and subgrade preparation and fill placement has been completed, it is our opinion that a conventional shallow foundation can be used to support the proposed structure.

Foundations bearing on densified existing soils and/or compacted structural fill, as recommended in this report, may be designed employing a maximum allowable soil bearing pressure of **2,500 pounds per square foot (psf)**.

We recommend a value of 0.35 can be employed as the coefficient of friction (sliding resistance) between foundations and the underlying residual or fill soils. Footings should be a minimum of 24 inches in width for ease of construction and to reduce the possibility of localized shear failures. Isolated exterior and interior footing bottoms should be established at least 18 inches below finished surrounding exterior grades. When utilizing a post-tensioned monolithic slab-on-grade design, exterior and interior footing bottoms should be established a minimum of 12 inches below adjacent finished grades.

Settlement: Settlements for a conventional foundation bearing on structural fill were assessed using SPT values to estimate elastic modulus, based on published correlations and previous NOVA experience. We note that the settlements presented are based on the SPT boring results. Conditions may be better or worse in other areas; however, we believe the estimated settlements are reasonably conservative.

Based on the assumed structural loadings, the soil bearing capacity provided above, the presumed foundation elevations as discussed above, we expect residual primary total settlement beneath individual foundations to be on the order of 1-inch.

The amount of differential settlement is difficult to predict because the subsurface and foundation loading conditions can vary considerably across the site. However, we anticipate residual differential settlement between adjacent foundations will be less than ½-inch. The final deflected shape of the structure will be dependent on actual foundation locations and loading.

Foundation support conditions are highly erratic and may vary dramatically in short horizontal distances. It is anticipated that the geotechnical engineer may recommend a different bearing capacity upon examination of the actual foundation subgrade at numerous locations.

To reduce the differential settlement if lower consistency materials are encountered, a lower bearing capacity should be used. We anticipate that timely communication between the geotechnical engineer and the structural engineer, as well as other design and construction team members, will be required.

Construction: Foundation excavations should be evaluated by the NOVA geotechnical engineer prior to reinforcing steel placement to observe foundation subgrade preparation and confirm bearing pressure capacity. Foundation excavations should be level and free of debris, ponded water, mud, and loose, frozen, or water-softened soils. Concrete should be placed as soon as is practical after the foundation is excavated and the subgrade evaluated. Foundation concrete should not be placed on frozen or saturated soil.

If a foundation excavation remains open overnight, or if rain or snow is imminent, a 3 to 4-inch thick "mud mat" of lean concrete should be placed in the bottom of the excavation to protect the bearing soils until reinforcing steel and concrete can be placed.

5.5 SLAB-ON-GRADE

General

The conditions exposed at subgrade levels will vary across the site and may include structural fill or densified in-situ soils. The slab(s)-on-grade may be adequately supported on these subgrade conditions subject to the recommendations in this report. The slab-on-grade should be jointed around columns and along walls to reduce cracking due to differential movement. An underdrain system is not necessary beneath the slab, provided that the slab is installed at least 2 feet above the post development high groundwater level. An impermeable vapor barrier is recommended beneath finished spaces to reduce dampness.

Once grading is completed, the subgrade can be exposed to adverse construction activities and weather conditions during the period of sub-slab utility installation. The subgrade should be well drained to prevent the accumulation of water. If the exposed subgrade becomes unstable, excessively wet or exhibits excessive rutting or pumping, the geotechnical engineer should be consulted.

Subgrade Modulus

A coefficient of subgrade reaction (k) of 125 pci (psi per inch) may be used for conventional slab design where slabs bear upon subgrades prepared in accordance with previous recommendations.

Please note that this magnitude of k is intended to reflect the elastic response of soil beneath a typical floor slab under light loads with a small load contact area often measured in square inches, such as loads from forklifts, automobile/truck traffic or lightly loaded storage racks. The recommended coefficient of subgrade reaction (k) of 125 pci is not applicable for heavy slab loads caused by bulk storage or tall storage racks, or for mat foundation design.

Several design methods are applicable for conventional slab design. We have assumed that the slab designer will utilize the methods discussed in the American Concrete Institute (ACI) Committee 360 report, "*Guide to Design of Slabs-on-Ground, (ACI 360R-10)*".

5.6 PAVEMENT CROSS SECTION DESIGN

General

A recommended flexible (asphalt) pavement section has been developed for this project based on our understanding of the existing subsurface conditions, review of applicable FDOT specifications, and the assumed loading conditions of 50,000 Equivalent Single-Axle Loads (ESALS) for heavy duty pavement areas and 25,000 Equivalent Single-Axle Loads (ESALS) for standard (light) duty pavement areas, with a 20-year design life. The terminal serviceability index and reliability for these pavement sections were assumed to be 2.0 and 85%, respectively. Traffic exceeding the stated criteria will require a heavier pavement section.

Flexible Pavements

We recommend a minimum compaction of at least 98 percent of the maximum dry density be specified for the base and stabilized subgrade courses as determined by the Modified Proctor test method (ASTM D-1557). A minimum separation of at least 24 inches between the bottom of an FDOT approved Crushed Limerock Base or GAB course and the seasonal high groundwater table (if applicable) should be maintained.

All asphalt material and paving operations should meet applicable specifications of the Asphalt Institute and FDOT requirements. A NOVA technician should observe placement and perform density testing of the stabilized subgrade and base course materials as well as asphalt. We recommend using the parameters shown for a flexible pavement section presented below in Table 1 (Standard Duty) and in Table 2 (Heavy Duty) for the flexible pavement section designs for this project.

Table 1 – Recommended Standard Duty Flexible Pavement Section	
Asphaltic Concrete Structural Course (SuperPave SP-9.5 or SP-12.5)	1½ inch
FDOT Approved Crushed Limerock, Crushed Concrete, or Graded Aggregate Base (GAB) Material (minimum LBR of 100)	6 inches
Stabilized Subgrade Course (minimum LBR of 40)	12 inches

Table 2 – Recommended Heavy Duty Flexible Pavement Section (Primary Entrance, and areas where static wheel turning is required)	
Asphaltic Concrete Structural Course (such as 9.5 or 12.5 mm SuperPave approved FDOT mix)	2½ inches
FDOT Approved Crushed Limerock, Crushed Concrete, or Graded Aggregate Base (GAB) Material (minimum LBR of 100)	8 inches
Stabilized Subgrade Course (minimum LBR of 40)	12 inches

Based on visual classification of the near-surface materials encountered in the test borings, it appears that the native soils will likely not meet the minimum LBR requirement of 40 for the Stabilized Subgrade Course (SSC, which is the upper 12 inches of subgrade beneath flexible pavement sections) and will require stabilization with soil fines or additional base course material. An imported material having a minimum LBR value of 40 should be specified for the final (12-inch) lift of fill for pavement areas being installed over fill.

All asphalt material and paving operations should meet applicable specifications of the Asphalt Institute and Florida Department of Transportation. A NOVA technician should observe placement and perform density testing of the SSC, base course material and asphalt.

Rigid Pavements

We understand that a rigid (concrete) pavement section may also be employed for the proposed pavement areas planned as part of this development. Recommended heavy duty and standard duty pavement sections have been developed for this project based on our understanding of the existing subsurface conditions, review of applicable FDOT specifications, and the assumed pavement design parameters stated previously.

Our recommendations for slab thickness for standard duty and heavy-duty concrete pavements are also based on the subgrade soils and fill lifts being densified as recommended above, as well as employment of a design modulus of subgrade reaction (k) equal to 150 pounds per cubic inch.

We recommend using the data provided in Table 3 for the design of Standard Duty and Heavy-Duty concrete (rigid) pavement sections.

Table 3 – Recommended Rigid Pavement Sections		
STANDARD DUTY PAVEMENT SECTION		
Minimum Pavement Thickness	Maximum Control Joint Spacing	Recommended Saw-Cut Depth
5½ Inches	10 feet x 10 feet	1 ³ / ₈ Inches
HEAVY DUTY PAVEMENT SECTION		
Minimum Pavement Thickness	Maximum Control Joint Spacing	Recommended Saw-Cut Depth
8 Inches	12 feet x 12 feet	2 Inches

All concrete materials and placement should conform to applicable FDOT specifications. We recommend that a non-woven geotextile (about 3 feet wide) be placed beneath the construction joints to prevent upward “pumping” movement of soil fines through the joints. We recommend using concrete with a minimum compressive strength of 4,000 psi and a minimum 28-day flexural strength (modulus of rupture) of at least 600 pounds per square inch, based on 3rd point loading of concrete beam test samples. All sections should be reinforced with #3 (3/8-in. diameter) rebar every 18 inches OC. Layout of the sawcut control joints should form square panels, and the depth of sawcut joint should be ¼ of the concrete slab thickness. The joints should be sawed within six hours of concrete placement or as soon as the concrete has developed sufficient strength to support workers and equipment.

We also recommend allowing NOVA to review and comment on the final concrete pavement design, including section and joint details (type of joints, joint spacing, etc.), prior to the start of construction. For further details on concrete pavement construction, please reference “Building Quality Concrete Parking Areas”, published by the Portland Cement Association.

5.7 STORMWATER MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

We understand that the project could potentially include employing three shallow dry retention basins to treat and dispose of stormwater runoff associated with the planned property improvements.

Based on the results of our field exploration, the subsurface conditions encountered beneath the proposed SMS basins appear to be adaptable for the treatment and disposal of stormwater runoff via the desired dry retention system. NOVA recommends employing the soil design parameters presented in the table below for the design of the SMS basin.

SMS Soil Design Parameters			
Corresponding Soil Boring Test Locations	DRI-1, S-1, S-2	DRI-2, S-3, S-4	DRI-3, S-5, S-6
Estimated Depth to Confining Stratum, BEG	8 Feet	8 Feet	8 Feet
Measured Vertical Hydraulic Conductivity Rate (Kv)	17 feet/day*	22 feet/day*	14 feet/day*
Calculated Horizontal Hydraulic Conductivity Rate (Kh)	26 feet/day*	33 feet/day*	21 feet/day*
Estimated In-Situ Infiltration Rate (DRI)	6 inches/hour*	7 inches/hour*	5 inches/hour*
Estimated Fillable Porosity of Soil	25%	25%	25%
Estimated Depth of Normal Permanent SHGW Table, BEG	Below 45 feet	Below 45 feet	Below 45 feet

* The provided rate is unfactored.

The estimated normal permanent seasonal high and seasonal low groundwater levels provided in the design tables above are based on our experience with projects in this locale; the soil strata encountered in the test borings; the groundwater levels measured at the site; and the published information by the “Web Soil Survey” National database, NRCS division of the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA). Please note that the measured hydraulic conductivity rates could be adversely impacted if siltation of the pond bottom is allowed after construction.

Additionally, the permeability measured by such tests may not be representative of the total effective aquifer thickness. Factors of safety can compensate for part of the inherent test limitations, but the designer must exercise judgment regarding final selection and applicability of provided soil design input parameters. Should the modeling analysis indicate marginally acceptable compliance with Water Management District design criteria, it may be advisable to perform more extensive and representative in-situ permeability testing by collecting “undisturbed” horizontal and vertical soil samples and/or installing grouted piezometers or wells for slug testing. NOVA can perform these field tests if desired.

5.8 DRAINAGE CONSIDERATIONS

Soil strength and settlement potential is highly dependent upon the moisture condition of the supportive soil. Soil characteristics can change dramatically when moisture conditions change. As such, the structure/building pad, walkways and surrounding grades should be properly designed and constructed to properly control water (surface and subsurface). The building pad should be designed to shed surface water prior to building construction. Grades surrounding the structure should be adequately sloped away from the structure to promote positive drainage and prevent water from ponding near or against the structure. Swales and/or storm drainage structures should be constructed to collect and remove all surface water run-off. All roof drain downspouts should be connected to drain leaders that are properly daylighted or connected to storm drainage structures such that water is removed from structural areas. Interior and/or exterior foundation drains, if provided, should be installed to properly protect the building foundation from changing moisture conditions, including fluctuating shallow perched/laterally flowing subsurface water levels. All foundation drains, if provided, should be properly daylighted or connected to storm drain structures to remove all water from the building foundation area. Roof drain lines and foundation drain lines should always remain independent of each other. Any subsurface water that may rise near structural grades should be controlled by adequately constructed subsurface drainage mechanisms.

6.0 LIMITATIONS

The findings, conclusions and recommendations presented in this report represent our professional opinions concerning subsurface conditions at the site. The opinions presented are relative to the dates of our site work and should not be relied on to represent conditions at significantly later dates or at locations not explored. The opinions included herein are based on information provided to us, the data obtained at specific locations during the study and our experience. If additional information becomes available that might impact our geotechnical opinions, it will be necessary for NOVA to review the information, reassess the potential concerns, and re-evaluate our conclusions and recommendations.

Regardless of the thoroughness of a geotechnical exploration, there is the possibility that conditions between test locations will differ from those encountered at specific test locations, that conditions are not as anticipated by the designers and/or the contractors, or that either natural events or the construction process have altered the subsurface conditions. These variations are an inherent risk associated with subsurface conditions in this region and the approximate methods used to obtain the data. These variations may not be apparent until construction.

This report is intended for the sole use of **EMI Architects** for the above noted project. The scope of work performed during this study may not satisfy other user's requirements. Use of this report or the findings, conclusions or recommendations by others will be at the sole risk of the user. NOVA is not responsible or liable for the interpretation by others of the data in this report, nor their conclusions, recommendations or opinions.

Our professional services have been performed, our findings obtained, our conclusions derived and our recommendations prepared in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering principles and practices in the State of Florida. This warranty is in lieu of all other statements or warranties, either expressed or implied.

APPENDIX A

Figures and Maps



Base map provided by *Google Earth*

Scale: Not To Scale
Date Drawn: July 25, 2024
Drawn By: C. Alessio
Checked By: W. Lawrence



17612 Ashley Drive
 Panama City Beach, Florida 32413
 850.249.6682 ♦ 850.249.6683

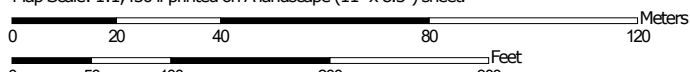
PROJECT LOCATION MAP
WCSD Educational Ancillary Facility
 DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 NOVA Project Number 10111-2024096

Depth to Water Table—Walton County, Florida
(WCSD Educational Ancillary Facility)



Soil Map may not be valid at this scale.

Map Scale: 1:1,450 if printed on A landscape (11" x 8.5") sheet.




Map projection: Web Mercator Corner coordinates: WGS84 Edge tics: UTM Zone 16N WGS84










Depth to Water Table—Walton County, Florida
(WCSD Educational Ancillary Facility)

MAP LEGEND








Area of Interest (AOI)
 Area of Interest (AOI)

Soils







Soil Rating Polygons


-  0 - 25
-  25 - 50
-  50 - 100
-  100 - 150
-  150 - 200
-  > 200
-  Not rated or not available

Soil Rating Lines


-  0 - 25
-  25 - 50
-  50 - 100
-  100 - 150
-  150 - 200
-  > 200
-  Not rated or not available

Soil Rating Points






-  0 - 25
-  25 - 50
-  50 - 100
-  100 - 150
-  150 - 200
-  > 200

 Not rated or not available


Water Features

-  Streams and Canals

Transportation

-  Rails
-  Interstate Highways
-  US Routes
-  Major Roads
-  Local Roads

Background

-  Aerial Photography

MAP INFORMATION

The soil surveys that comprise your AOI were mapped at 1:20,000.

Warning: Soil Map may not be valid at this scale.
 Enlargement of maps beyond the scale of mapping can cause misunderstanding of the detail of mapping and accuracy of soil line placement. The maps do not show the small areas of contrasting soils that could have been shown at a more detailed scale.

Please rely on the bar scale on each map sheet for map measurements.

Source of Map: Natural Resources Conservation Service
 Web Soil Survey URL:
 Coordinate System: Web Mercator (EPSG:3857)

Maps from the Web Soil Survey are based on the Web Mercator projection, which preserves direction and shape but distorts distance and area. A projection that preserves area, such as the Albers equal-area conic projection, should be used if more accurate calculations of distance or area are required.

This product is generated from the USDA-NRCS certified data as of the version date(s) listed below.

Soil Survey Area: Walton County, Florida
 Survey Area Data: Version 23, Aug 24, 2023

Soil map units are labeled (as space allows) for map scales 1:50,000 or larger.

Date(s) aerial images were photographed: Mar 25, 2022—Mar 26, 2022

The orthophoto or other base map on which the soil lines were compiled and digitized probably differs from the background imagery displayed on these maps. As a result, some minor shifting of map unit boundaries may be evident.

Depth to Water Table

Map unit symbol	Map unit name	Rating (centimeters)	Acres in AOI	Percent of AOI
17	Lakeland sand, 0 to 5 percent slopes	>200	7.1	100.0%
Totals for Area of Interest			7.1	100.0%

Description

"Water table" refers to a saturated zone in the soil. It occurs during specified months. Estimates of the upper limit are based mainly on observations of the water table at selected sites and on evidence of a saturated zone, namely grayish colors (redoximorphic features) in the soil. A saturated zone that lasts for less than a month is not considered a water table.

This attribute is actually recorded as three separate values in the database. A low value and a high value indicate the range of this attribute for the soil component. A "representative" value indicates the expected value of this attribute for the component. For this soil property, only the representative value is used.

Rating Options

Units of Measure: centimeters

Aggregation Method: Dominant Component

Component Percent Cutoff: None Specified

Tie-break Rule: Lower

Interpret Nulls as Zero: No

Beginning Month: January

Ending Month: December

Walton County, Florida

17—Lakeland sand, 0 to 5 percent slopes

Map Unit Setting

National map unit symbol: 2rz0n

Elevation: 100 to 400 feet

Mean annual precipitation: 40 to 69 inches

Mean annual air temperature: 63 to 70 degrees F

Frost-free period: 190 to 310 days

Farmland classification: Not prime farmland

Map Unit Composition

Lakeland and similar soils: 80 percent

Minor components: 20 percent

Estimates are based on observations, descriptions, and transects of the mapunit.

Description of Lakeland

Setting

Landform: Hills on marine terraces

Landform position (two-dimensional): Summit, shoulder

Landform position (three-dimensional): Interfluve

Down-slope shape: Convex

Across-slope shape: Linear

Parent material: Sandy marine deposits

Typical profile

A - 0 to 7 inches: sand

C - 7 to 80 inches: sand

Properties and qualities

Slope: 0 to 5 percent

Depth to restrictive feature: More than 80 inches

Drainage class: Excessively drained

Runoff class: Very low

Capacity of the most limiting layer to transmit water (Ksat): High to very high (5.95 to 19.98 in/hr)

Depth to water table: More than 80 inches

Frequency of flooding: None

Frequency of ponding: None

Maximum salinity: Nonsaline to very slightly saline (0.0 to 2.0 mmhos/cm)

Available water supply, 0 to 60 inches: Low (about 3.1 inches)

Interpretive groups

Land capability classification (irrigated): 4s

Land capability classification (nonirrigated): 3s

Hydrologic Soil Group: A

Other vegetative classification: Longleaf Pine-Turkey Oak Hills (R133AY002FL)

Hydric soil rating: No

Minor Components

Troup

Percent of map unit: 6 percent

Landform: Ridges, knolls

Landform position (two-dimensional): Summit

Landform position (three-dimensional): Interfluve

Down-slope shape: Convex

Across-slope shape: Linear

Other vegetative classification: Sandy soils on ridges and dunes of xeric uplands (G133AA111FL)

Hydric soil rating: No

Bonifay

Percent of map unit: 5 percent

Landform: Hills on marine terraces

Landform position (two-dimensional): Summit

Landform position (three-dimensional): Interfluve

Down-slope shape: Linear, convex

Across-slope shape: Convex, linear

Other vegetative classification: Sandy soils on rises, knolls, and ridges of mesic uplands (G133AA121FL), Longleaf Pine-Turkey Oak Hills (R133AY002FL)

Hydric soil rating: No

Foxworth

Percent of map unit: 5 percent

Landform: Ridges on marine terraces

Landform position (two-dimensional): Summit

Landform position (three-dimensional): Interfluve

Down-slope shape: Convex

Across-slope shape: Linear

Other vegetative classification: Sandy soils on rises, knolls, and ridges of mesic uplands (G133AA121FL)

Hydric soil rating: No

Albany

Percent of map unit: 2 percent

Landform: Knolls on marine terraces, ridges on marine terraces, interfluves on marine terraces

Landform position (two-dimensional): Summit, shoulder

Landform position (three-dimensional): Interfluve, side slope, tread

Down-slope shape: Convex

Across-slope shape: Convex, linear

Other vegetative classification: Forage suitability group not assigned (G133AA999FL)

Hydric soil rating: No

Chiplely

Percent of map unit: 2 percent

Landform: Ridges on marine terraces

Landform position (two-dimensional): Summit

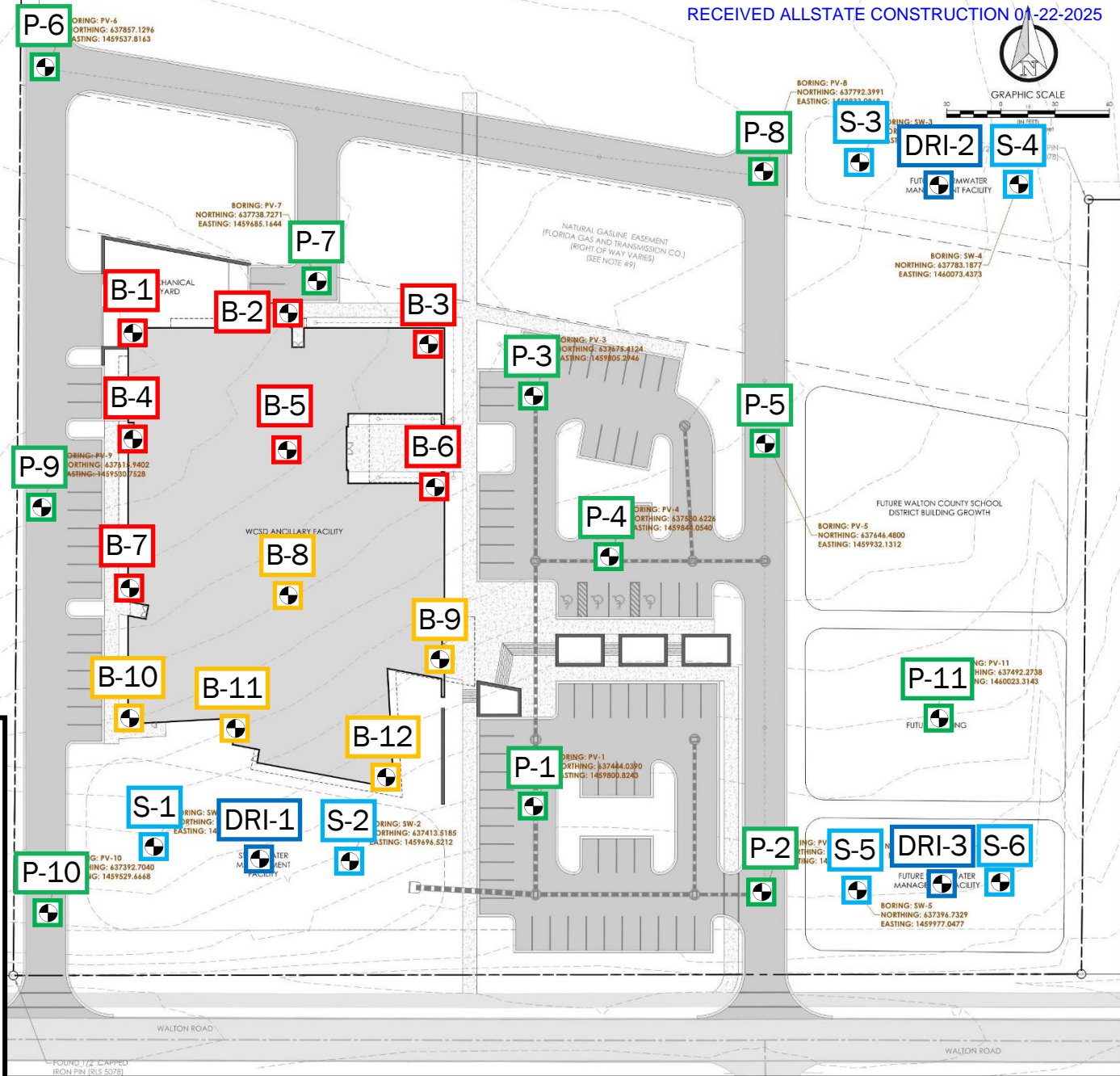
Landform position (three-dimensional): Interfluve
Down-slope shape: Convex
Across-slope shape: Linear
Other vegetative classification: Sandy soils on rises and knolls of
mesic uplands (G133AA131FL)
Hydric soil rating: No

Data Source Information






Soil Survey Area: Walton County, Florida
Survey Area Data: Version 23, Aug 24, 2023

APPENDIX B

Subsurface Data



LEGEND

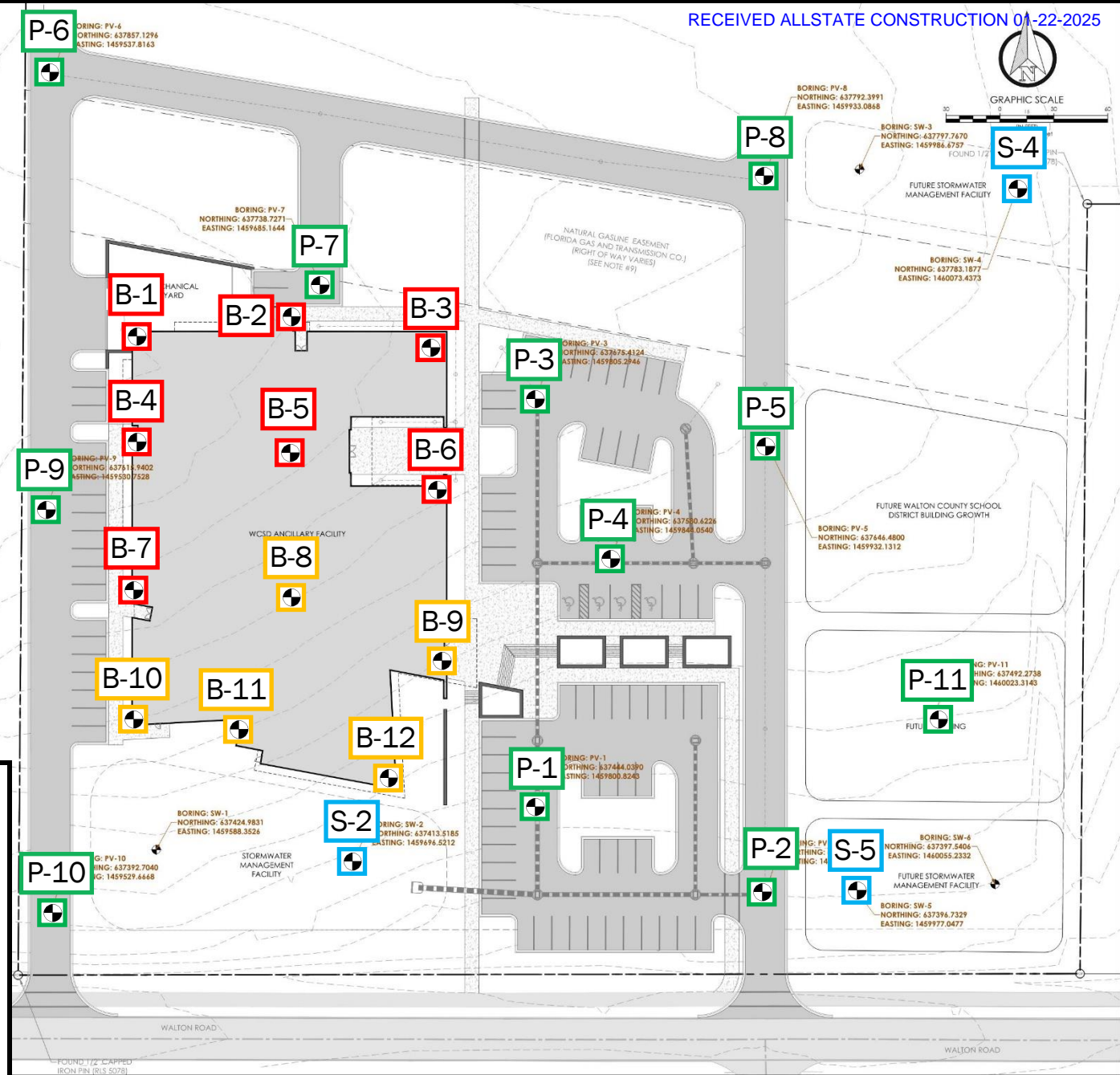
-  40' SPT Boring Locations
-  45' SPT Boring Locations
-  5' Auger Boring Locations
-  10' Auger Boring Locations
-  DRI Locations

Base map provided by Client





Scale: Not To Scale
 Date Drawn: July 25, 2024
 Drawn By: C. Alessio
 Checked By: W. Lawrence

NOVA
 17612 Ashley Drive
 Panama City Beach, Florida 32413
 850.249.NOVA(6682) ♦ 850.249.6683

BORING LOCATION PLAN
 WCSO Educational Ancillary Facility
 DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 NOVA Project Number 10111-2024096



LEGEND

-  40' SPT Boring Locations
-  45' SPT Boring Locations
-  5' Auger Boring Locations
-  10' Auger Boring Locations

Base map provided by Client

Scale: Not To Scale
Date Drawn: July 25, 2024
Drawn By: C. Alessio
Checked By: W. Lawrence






NOVA
17612 Ashley Drive
Panama City Beach, Florida 32413
850.249.NOVA(6682) ♦ 850.249.6683

BORING LOCATION PLAN
WCSO Educational Ancillary Facility
DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
NOVA Project Number 10111-2024096



KEY TO BORING LOGS

SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS

<u>SYMBOL</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>
N-Value	No. of Blows of a 140-lb. Weight Falling 30 Inches Required to Drive a Standard Spoon 1 Foot
WOR	Weight of Drill Rods
WOH	Weight of Drill Rods and Hammer
	Sample from Auger Cuttings
	Standard Penetration Test Sample
	Thin-wall Shelby Tube Sample (Undisturbed Sampler Used)
% REC	Percent Core Recovery from Rock Core Drilling
RQD	Rock Quality Designation
	Stabilized Groundwater Level
	Seasonal High Groundwater Level (also referred to as the W.S.W.T.)
NE	Not Encountered
GNE	Groundwater Not Encountered
BT	Boring Terminated
-200 (%)	Fines Content or % Passing No. 200 Sieve
MC (%)	Moisture Content
LL	Liquid Limit (Atterberg Limits Test)
PI	Plasticity Index (Atterberg Limits Test)
K	Coefficient of Permeability
Org. Cont.	Organic Content
G.S. Elevation	Ground Surface Elevation

UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

MAJOR DIVISIONS		GROUP SYMBOLS	TYPICAL NAMES	
COARSE-GRAINED SOILS More than 50% retained on the No. 200 sieve*	GRAVELS 50% or more of coarse fraction retained on No. 4 sieve	CLEAN GRAVELS	GW Well-graded gravels and gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines	
			GP Poorly graded gravels and gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines	
		GRAVELS WITH FINES	GM	Silty gravels and gravel-sand-silt mixtures
			GC	Clayey gravels and gravel-sand-clay mixtures
	SANDS More than 50% of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve	CLEAN SANDS 5% or less passing No. 200 sieve	SW**	Well-graded sands and gravelly sands, little or no fines
			SP**	Poorly graded sands and gravelly sands, little or no fines
		SANDS with 12% or more passing No. 200 sieve	SM**	Silty sands, sand-silt mixtures
			SC**	Clayey sands, sand-clay mixtures
FINE-GRAINED SOILS 50% or more passes the No. 200 sieve*	SILTS AND CLAYS Liquid limit 50% or less	ML	Inorganic silts, very fine sands, rock flour, silty or clayey fine sands	
		CL	Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity, gravelly clays, sandy clays, lean clays	
		OL	Organic silts and organic silty clays of low plasticity	
	SILTS AND CLAYS Liquid limit greater than 50%	MH	Inorganic silts, micaceous or diamicaceous fine sands or silts, elastic silts	
		CH	Inorganic clays or clays of high plasticity, fat clays	
		OH	Organic clays of medium to high plasticity	
		PT	Peat, muck and other highly organic soils	

*Based on the material passing the 3-inch (75 mm) sieve

** Use dual symbol (such as SP-SM and SP-SC) for soils with more than 5% but less than 12% passing the No. 200 sieve

RELATIVE DENSITY

(Sands and Gravels)

- Very loose – Less than 4 Blow/Foot
- Loose – 4 to 10 Blows/Foot
- Medium Dense – 11 to 30 Blows/Foot
- Dense – 31 to 50 Blows/Foot
- Very Dense – More than 50 Blows/Foot

CONSISTENCY

(Silts and Clays)

- Very Soft – Less than 2 Blows/Foot
- Soft – 2 to 4 Blows/Foot
- Medium Stiff – 5 to 8 Blows/Foot
- Stiff – 9 to 15 Blows/Foot
- Very Stiff – 16 to 30 Blows/Foot
- Hard – More than 30 Blows/Foot

RELATIVE HARDNESS

(Limestone)

- Soft – 100 Blows for more than 2 Inches
- Hard – 100 Blows for less than 2 Inches

MODIFIERS

These modifiers Provide Our Estimate of the Amount of Minor Constituents (Silt or Clay Size Particles) in the Soil Sample

- Trace – 5% or less
- With Silt or With Clay – 6% to 11%
- Silty or Clayey – 12% to 30%
- Very Silty or Very Clayey – 31% to 50%

These Modifiers Provide Our Estimate of the Amount of Organic Components in the Soil Sample

- Trace – Less than 3%
- Few – 3% to 4%
- Some – 5% to 8%
- Many – Greater than 8%

These Modifiers Provide Our Estimate of the Amount of Other Components (Shell, Gravel, Etc.) in the Soil Sample

- Trace – 5% or less
- Few – 6% to 12%
- Some – 13% to 30%
- Many – 31% to 50%

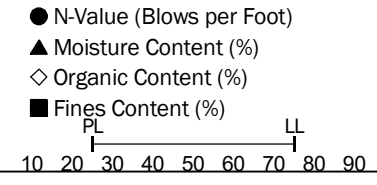


TEST BORING RECORD B-1

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/17/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: L. Griffin LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: Manual
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE feet EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE feet

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	Soil Properties												
							● N-Value (Blows per Foot)	▲ Moisture Content (%)	◇ Organic Content (%)	■ Fines Content (%)									
0		Topsoil and surficial organics																	
2		Very loose brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND with trace organics (SP-SM)				2	●	■	▲										
2						2	●	■											
5		Loose to dense grey and light reddish brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)				2	●												
12						12	●												
15						15	●												
40						40	●												
20						25	●												
25						28	●												
30						32	●												
35						13	●												
40						4	●												



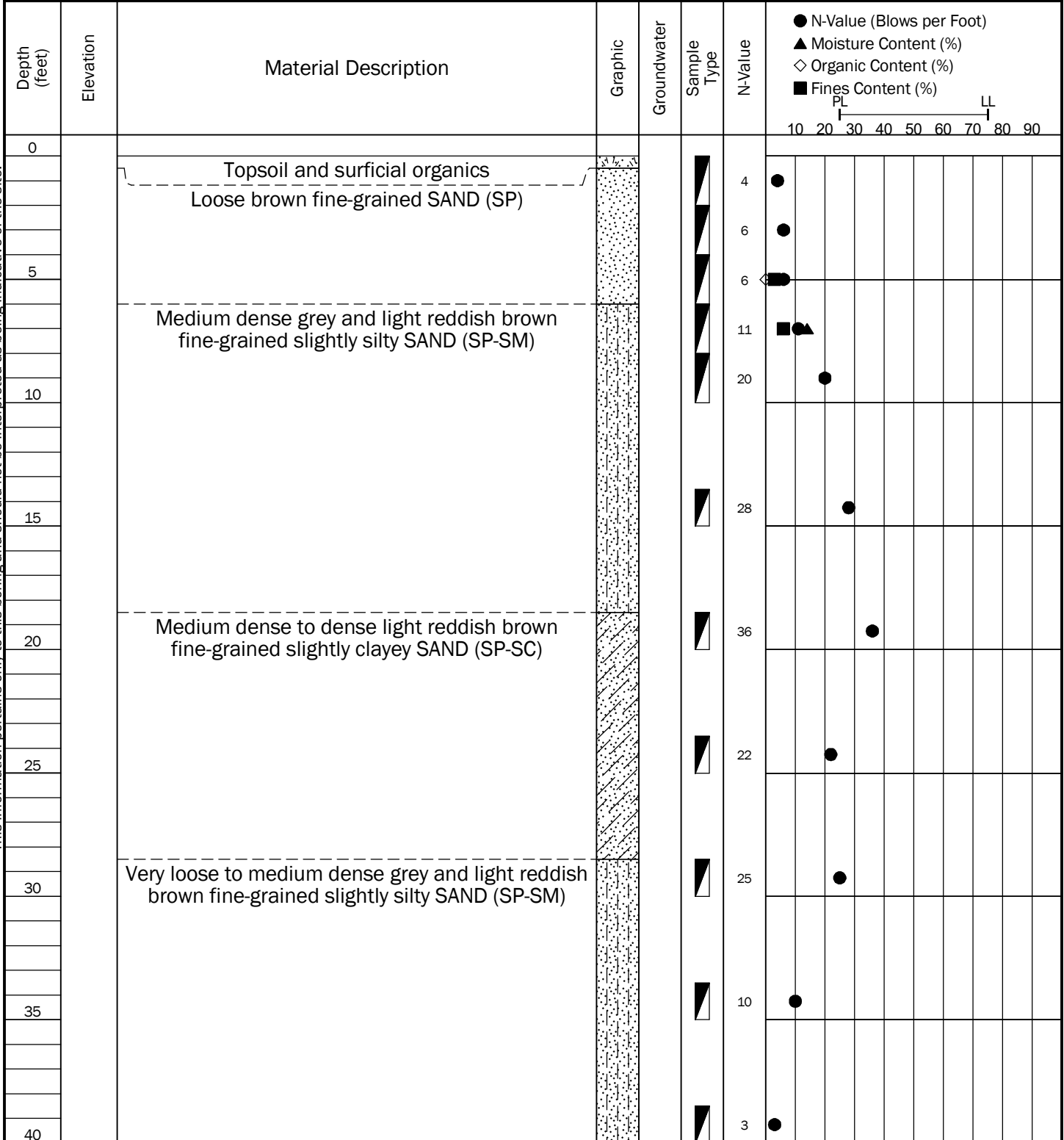
Note: Boring Terminated at 40 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
B-2**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/17/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: L. Griffin LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: Manual
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE feet EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE feet

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.



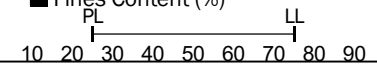
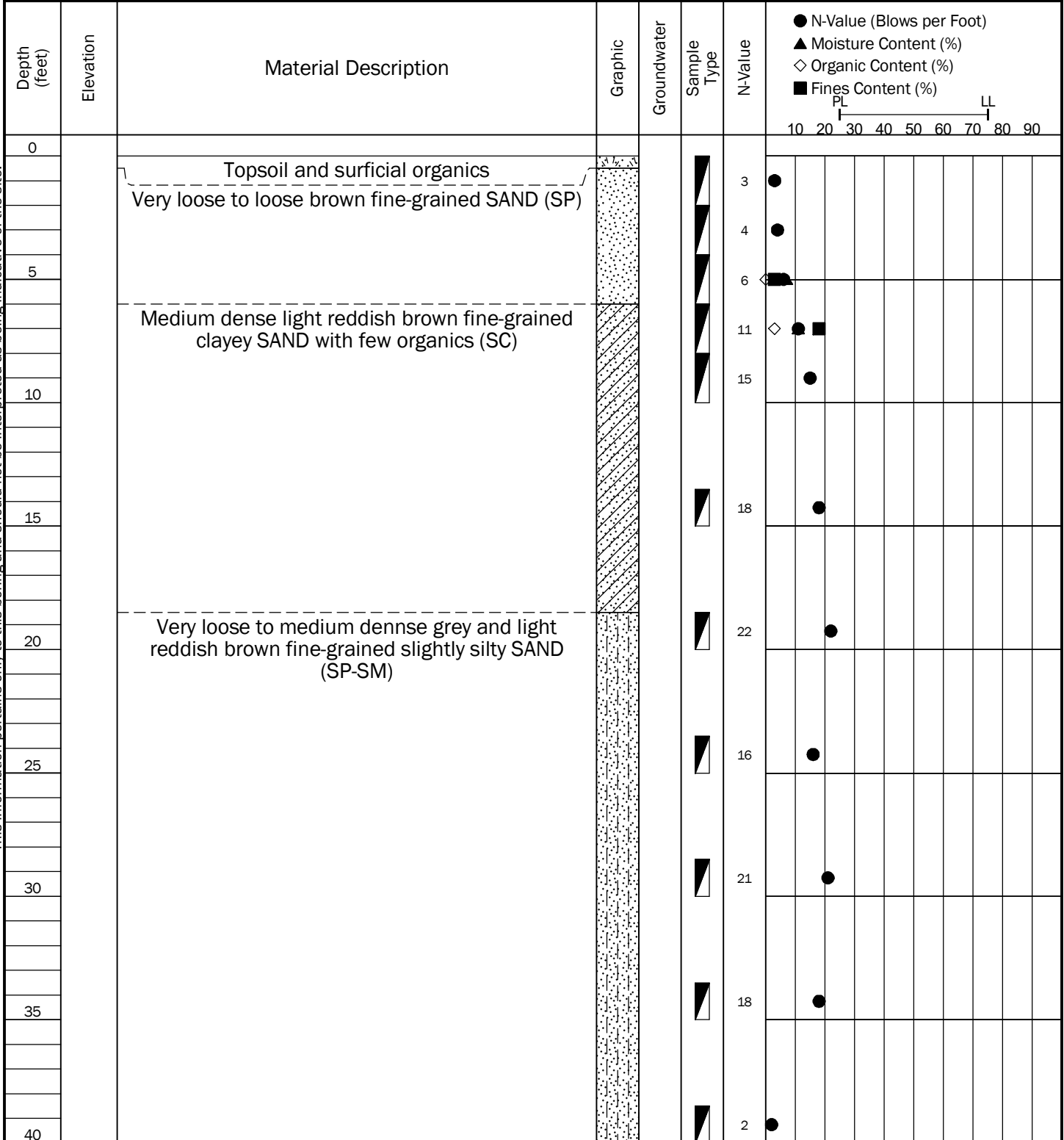
Note: Boring Terminated at 40 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
B-3**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/19/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: L. Griffin LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: Manual
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE feet EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE feet

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.



Note: Boring Terminated at 40 feet

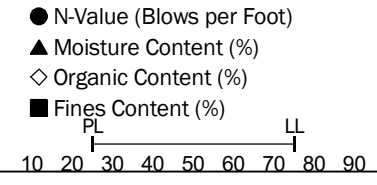


**TEST BORING
RECORD
B-4**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/17/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: L. Griffin LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: Manual
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE feet EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE feet

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	Soil Properties												
							● N-Value (Blows per Foot)	▲ Moisture Content (%)	◇ Organic Content (%)	■ Fines Content (%)									
0		Topsoil and surficial organics																	
2		Very loose to medium dense brown fine-grained SAND (SP)				2	●												
3	3					●													
6	6					◁													
12		Medium dense light reddish brown fine-grained clayey SAND (SC)				12	●												
13	13					●													
26		Very loose to medium dense grey and light reddish brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)				26													
22	22					●													
24	24					●													
30	30					●													
35						15	●												
40						2	●												



Note: Boring Terminated at 40 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
B-5**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/17/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: L. Griffin LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: Manual
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE feet EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE feet

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) PL LL
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
2		Very loose to loose brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)				2	●
4	4					◇	
5		Loose light reddish brown fine-grained clayey SAND (SC)				4	●
6	6					●	
8	8					●	
10		Very loose to medium dense grey and light reddish brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)				19	●
15	20					●	
20	18					●	
25	15					●	
30	11					●	
35							
40							
40							

Note: Boring Terminated at 40 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
B-6**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/19/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: L. Griffin LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: Manual
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE feet EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE feet

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	Soil Properties																
							● N-Value (Blows per Foot)	▲ Moisture Content (%)	◇ Organic Content (%)	■ Fines Content (%)													
0		Topsoil and surficial organics																					
3		Very loose to medium dense brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND with trace organics (SP-SM)				3	●																
4	4					●																	
5		Medium dense light reddish brown fine-grained clayey SAND (SC)				7	●																
10	14					●																	
15	17					●																	
20	20					●																	
25	22					●																	
30		Very loose to medium dense grey and light reddish brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)				18	●																
35	24					●																	
40	18					●																	

Note: Boring Terminated at 40 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
B-7**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/17/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: L. Griffin LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: Manual
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE feet EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE feet

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) PL LL 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
2		Very loose to loose brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND with trace organics (SP-SM)				2	●
4	4					◇	
5	5					●	
7	7					●	
10		Loose to medium dense light reddish brown fine-grained clayey SAND (SC)				10	●
15		Very loose to medium dense grey and light reddish brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)				28	●
25	25					●	
24	24					●	
22	22					●	
35						9	●
40	40					●	

Note: Boring Terminated at 40 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
B-8**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/17/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: L. Griffin LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: Manual
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE feet EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE feet

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) PL LL 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
0 - 5		Very loose to loose brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND with trace organics (SP-SM)					
5 - 10		Loose to medium dense light reddish brown fine-grained clayey SAND (SC)					
10 - 30		Loose to medium dense light reddish brown fine-grained clayey SAND (SC)					
30 - 45		Very loose to medium dense grey and light reddish brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)					
2					▲	2	
3					▲	3	
4					●	4	
6					●	6	
8					●	8	
26					●	26	
24					●	24	
25					●	25	
18					●	18	
13					●	13	
2					●	2	
2					●	2	

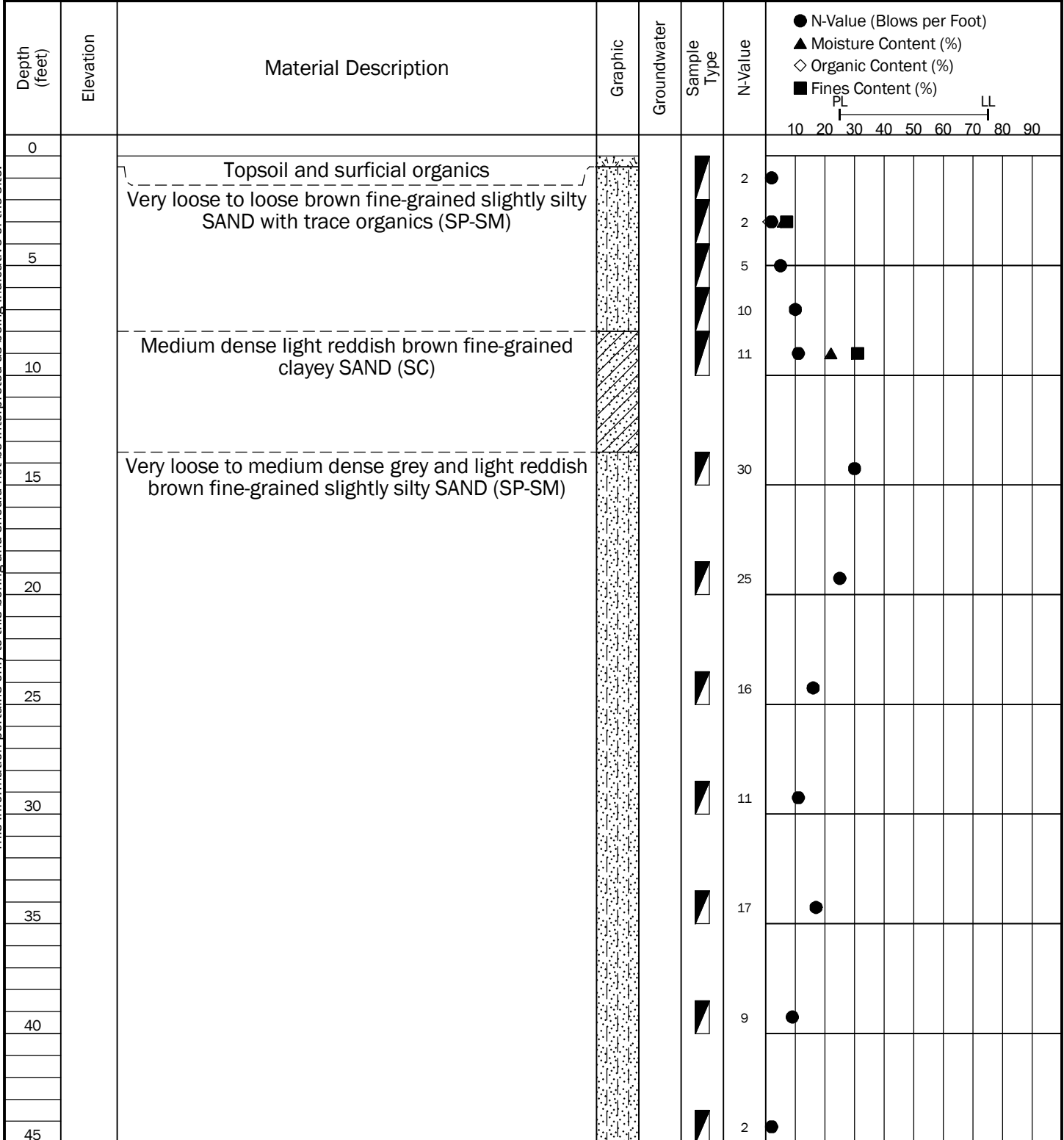
Note: Boring Terminated at 45 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
B-9**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/19/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: L. Griffin LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: Manual
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE feet EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE feet

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.



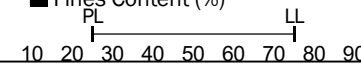
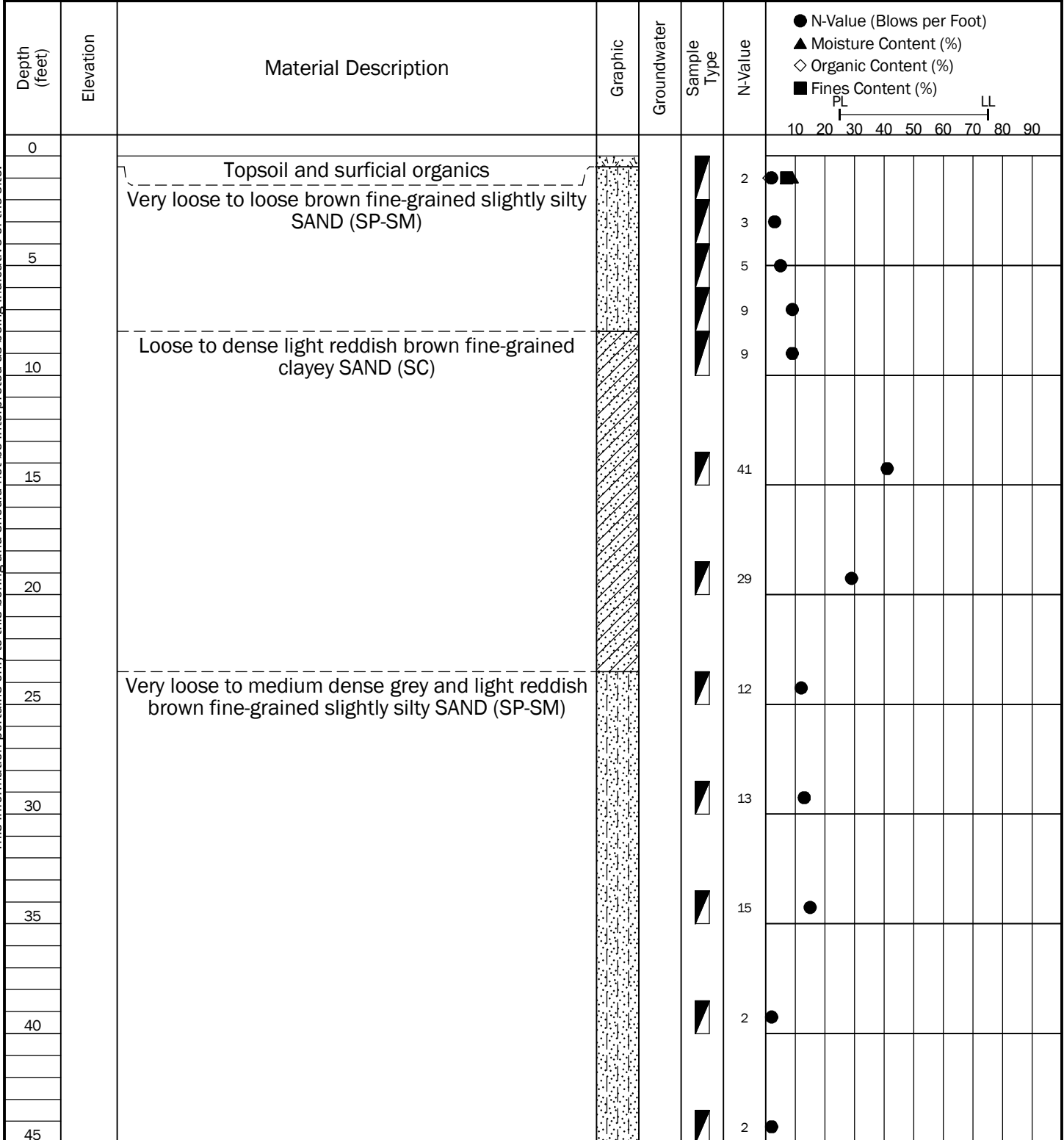
Note: Boring Terminated at 45 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
B-10**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/18/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: L. Griffin LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: Manual
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ∇ GNE feet EST. SHGW DEPTH: ∇ GNE feet

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.



Note: Boring Terminated at 45 feet

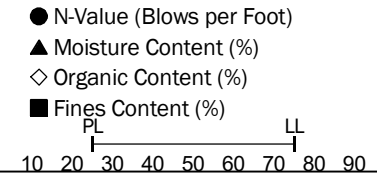


TEST BORING RECORD B-11

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/18/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: L. Griffin LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: Manual
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ∇ GNE feet EST. SHGW DEPTH: ∇ GNE feet

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	Soil Properties										
							● N-Value (Blows per Foot)	▲ Moisture Content (%)	◇ Organic Content (%)	■ Fines Content (%)							
0		Topsoil and surficial organics															
2		Very loose to loose brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND with trace organics (SP-SM)				2	●										
2						2	●	■									
5		Loose to medium dense light reddish brown fine-grained clayey SAND with trace organics (SC)				4	●										
6						6	◇	●	■	▲							
8						8	●										
15						26	●										
20		Loose to medium dense grey and light reddish brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)				23	●										
25						13	●										
30						18	●										
35						16	●										
40		Boring Terminated at 45 feet				12	●										
45						6	●										



Note: Boring Terminated at 45 feet



TEST BORING RECORD B-12

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/18/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: L. Griffin LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: Manual
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE feet EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE feet

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) PL LL
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
2		Very loose to loose brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND with trace organics (SP-SM)				2	●
2	2					● ■	
5		Medium dense light reddish brown fine-grained clayey SAND (SC)				5	●
8	8					●	
12	12					● ▲ ■	
12	12					● ▲ ■	
15		Very loose to very dense grey and light reddish brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)				54	●
20	34					●	
25	16					●	
30	9					●	
35	20					●	
40	10					●	
45	2					●	

Note: Boring Terminated at 45 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
P-1**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/16/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: C. Alessio LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Hand Auger HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) PL LL 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)					
5							

Note: Boring Terminated at 5 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
P-2**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/16/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: C. Alessio LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Hand Auger HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) PL LL 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND with trace organics (SP-SM)					 (Note: A diamond symbol is present at approximately 30 feet depth, and a square symbol is present at approximately 4.5 feet depth.)
5							

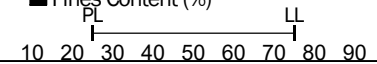
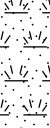

Note: Boring Terminated at 5 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
P-3**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/16/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: C. Alessio LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Hand Auger HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) 
0							
		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)					
5							

Note: Boring Terminated at 5 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
P-4**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/16/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: C. Alessio LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Hand Auger HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) PL LL 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND with trace organics (SP-SM)					
5							

Note: Boring Terminated at 5 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
P-5**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/16/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: C. Alessio LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Hand Auger HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) PL LL 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND with trace organics (SP-SM)					
5							

Note: Boring Terminated at 5 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
P-6**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/16/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: C. Alessio LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Hand Auger HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) PL LL 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained SAND (SP)					■
5							

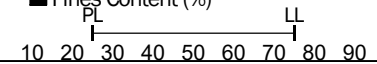
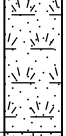
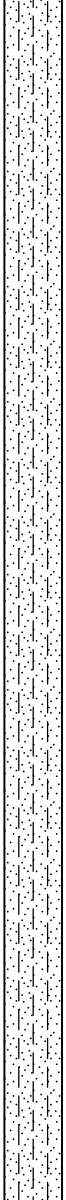

Note: Boring Terminated at 5 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
P-7**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/16/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: C. Alessio LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Hand Auger HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) 
0							
		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)					

Note: Boring Terminated at 5 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
P-8**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/16/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: C. Alessio LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Hand Auger HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) PL LL 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND with trace organics (SP-SM)					◇ ■
5							

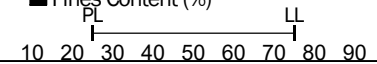
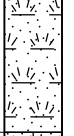
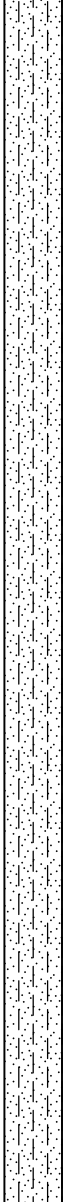
Note: Boring Terminated at 5 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
P-9**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/16/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: C. Alessio LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Hand Auger HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) 
0							
		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)					
5							

Note: Boring Terminated at 5 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
P-10**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/16/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: C. Alessio LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Hand Auger HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) PL LL 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)					
5							

Note: Boring Terminated at 5 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
P-11**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/16/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: C. Alessio LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Hand Auger HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%)
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)					
5							

Note: Boring Terminated at 5 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
S-1**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/17/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: M. Keramidas LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) PL _____ LL _____ 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND with trace organics (SP-SM)					◇ ■
5							
		Grey and light reddish brown fine-grained clayey SAND (SC)					
10							

Note: Boring Terminated at 10 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
S-2**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/17/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: M. Keramidas LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) PL LL 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)					
5							
		Grey and light reddish brown fine-grained clayey SAND (SC)					
10							

Note: Boring Terminated at 10 feet



**TEST BORING
RECORD
S-3**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/18/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: M. Keramidas LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%) PL _____ LL _____ 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)					
5							
		Grey and light reddish brown fine-grained clayey SAND (SC)					
10							

Note: Boring Terminated at 10 feet

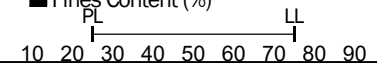


**TEST BORING
RECORD
S-4**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/18/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: M. Keramidas LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%)
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND (SP-SM)					▲ ■
5							
		Grey and light reddish brown fine-grained clayey SAND (SC)					▲ ■
10							



Note: Boring Terminated at 10 feet

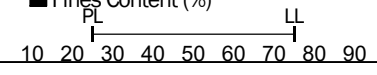


**TEST BORING
RECORD
S-5**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/17/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: M. Keramidas LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%)
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND with trace organics (SP-SM)					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ ◇ ▲
5							
		Grey and light reddish brown fine-grained clayey SAND (SC)					
10							



Note: Boring Terminated at 10 feet

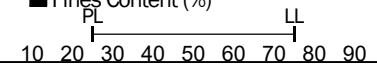


**TEST BORING
RECORD
S-6**

PROJECT NAME: WCSD Ancillary Educational Facility DATE: 7/17/2024
 PROJECT NO.: 2024096 CLIENT: EMI Architects
 PROJECT LOCATION: DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
 LOCATION: See Boring Location Plan ELEVATION: Existing Grade
 DRILLED BY: M. Keramidas LOGGED BY: N. Gonzalez
 DRILLING METHOD: Mud Rotary HAMMER: None
 INITIAL GW DEPTH: ▼ GNE EST. SHGW DEPTH: ▽ GNE

This information pertains only to this boring and should not be interpreted as being indicative of the site.

Depth (feet)	Elevation	Material Description	Graphic	Groundwater	Sample Type	N-Value	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● N-Value (Blows per Foot) ▲ Moisture Content (%) ◇ Organic Content (%) ■ Fines Content (%)
0		Topsoil and surficial organics					
		Grey to brown fine-grained slightly silty SAND with trace organics (SP-SM)					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◇ ■
5							
		Grey and light reddish brown fine-grained clayey SAND (SC)					
10							



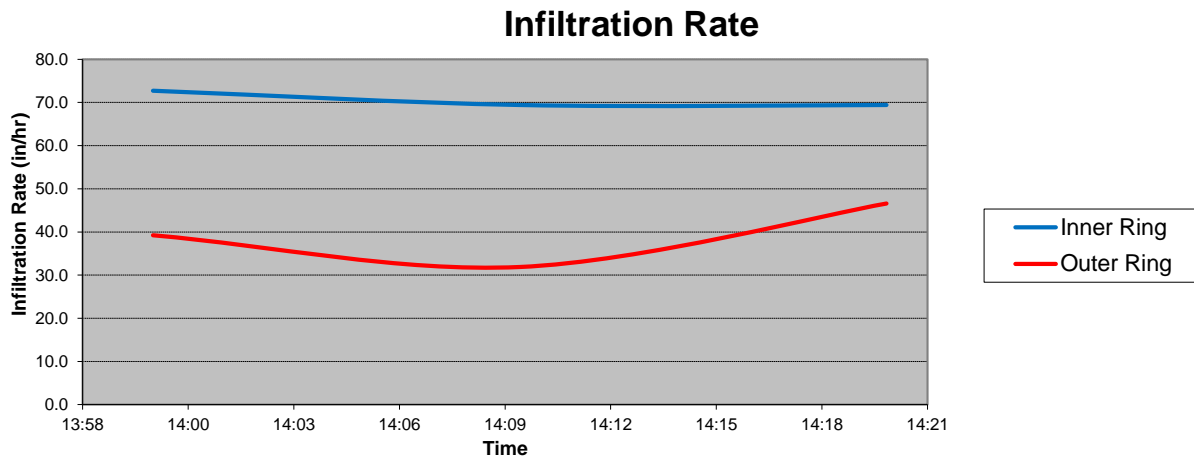
Note: Boring Terminated at 10 feet

Project:	WCSD Educational Ancillary Facility	Report of DRI - 3
Project Location:	DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida	
Project Number:	10111-2024096	

Date(s) of Test	July 17, 2024	Tested by	M. Keramidas	Weather	Clear
Test Method	ASTM D 3385	Logged by	C. Alessio	Type of liquid	tap water
Area Inner Ring	110.75 sq. in.	Checked by	W. Lawrence	Liquid Temperature	80 °F
Area Outer Ring	447.69 sq. in.	See Auger Boring Record for Soil Profile		Soil Temperature	83 °F
Area Annular Space	334.59 sq. in.	Approx. Elevation	9 in. below grade	Location	Per Boring Location Plan

INCREMENTAL INFILTRATION RATE vs. TOTAL ELAPSED TIME

Time	Elapsed Time (minutes)	Inner Ring		Outer Ring		Comments
		Volume (gal)	Infiltration Rate (in/hr)	Volume (gal)	Infiltration Rate (in/hr)	
14:00	15	8.7	72.7	19.0	39.2	Test began after a 30-minute saturation period.
14:10	10	5.5	69.4	10.3	31.9	
14:20	10	5.5	69.4	15.1	46.6	



INFILTRATION RATE = 39 in/hr



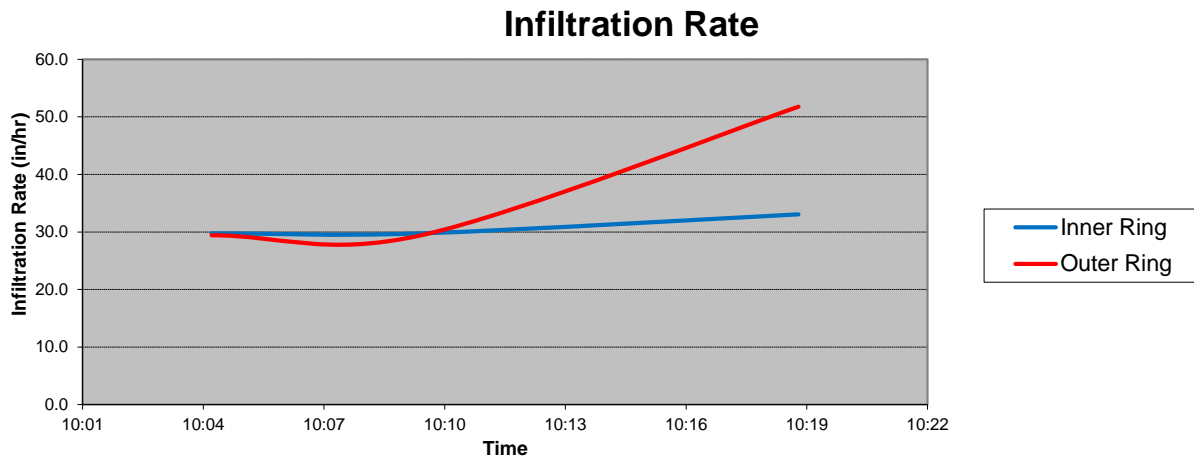
Figure DRI-3

Project:	WCSD Educational Ancillary Facility	Report of DRI - 2
Project Location:	DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida	
Project Number:	10111-2024096	

Date(s) of Test	July 18, 2024	Tested by	M. Keramidas	Weather	Clear
Test Method	ASTM D 3385	Logged by	C. Alessio	Type of liquid	tap water
Area Inner Ring	110.75 sq. in.	Checked by	W. Lawrence	Liquid Temperature	80 °F
Area Outer Ring	447.69 sq. in.	See Auger Boring Record for Soil Profile		Soil Temperature	83 °F
Area Annular Space	334.59 sq. in.	Approx. Elevation	9 in. below grade	Location	Per Boring Location Plan

INCREMENTAL INFILTRATION RATE vs. TOTAL ELAPSED TIME

Time	Elapsed Time (minutes)	Inner Ring		Outer Ring		Comments
		Volume (gal)	Infiltration Rate (In/hr)	Volume (gal)	Infiltration Rate (In/hr)	
10:05	5	1.2	29.8	4.8	29.4	Test began after a 30-minute saturation period.
10:10	5	1.2	29.8	4.8	29.4	
10:19	9	2.4	33.1	15.1	51.8	



INFILTRATION RATE = 36 in/hr



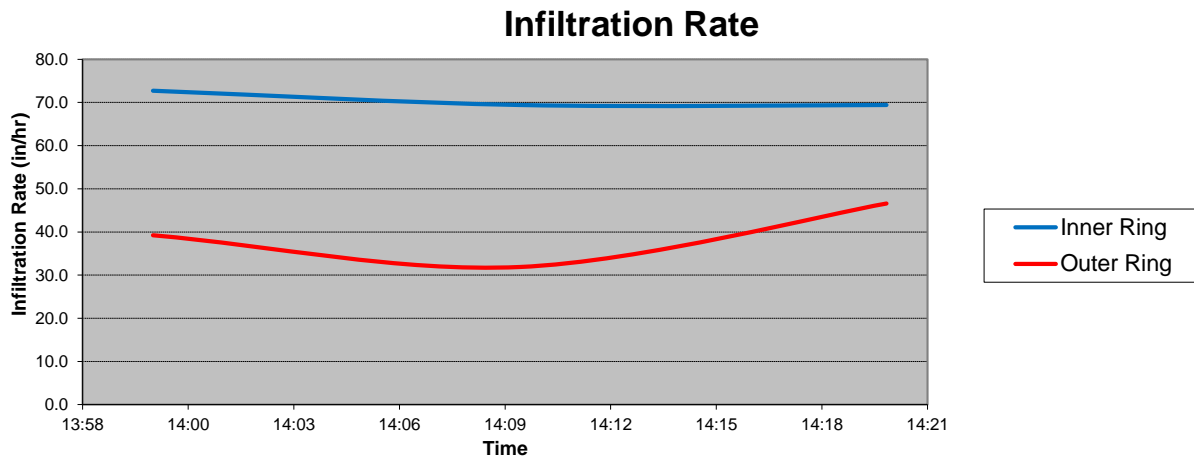
Figure DRI-2

Project:	WCSD Educational Ancillary Facility	Report of DRI - 3
Project Location:	DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida	
Project Number:	10111-2024096	

Date(s) of Test	July 18, 2024	Tested by	M. Keramidas	Weather	Clear
Test Method	ASTM D 3385	Logged by	C. Alessio	Type of liquid	tap water
Area Inner Ring	110.75 sq. in.	Checked by	W. Lawrence	Liquid Temperature	80 °F
Area Outer Ring	447.69 sq. in.	See Auger Boring Record for Soil Profile		Soil Temperature	83 °F
Area Annular Space	334.59 sq. in.	Approx. Elevation	9 in. below grade	Location	Per Boring Location Plan

INCREMENTAL INFILTRATION RATE vs. TOTAL ELAPSED TIME

Time	Elapsed Time (minutes)	Inner Ring		Outer Ring		Comments
		Volume (gal)	Infiltration Rate (in/hr)	Volume (gal)	Infiltration Rate (in/hr)	
14:00	15	8.7	72.7	19.0	39.2	Test began after a 30-minute saturation period.
14:10	10	5.5	69.4	10.3	31.9	
14:20	10	5.5	69.4	15.1	46.6	



INFILTRATION RATE = 39 in/hr



Figure DRI-3

APPENDIX C

Laboratory Data

SUMMARY OF CLASSIFICATION & INDEX TESTING

WCSD Educational Ancillary Facility
DeFuniak Springs, Walton County, Florida
NOVA Project Number 10111-2024096

Boring Number	Sample Depth (ft)	Natural Moisture (%)	Percent (%) Passing Sieve #200	Percent Organic (%)	USCS Soil Classification
B-1	0 - 2	16	8	N/A	SP-SM
B-1	2 - 4	7	7	1	SP-SM
B-2	4 - 6	4	3	0	SP
B-2	6 - 8	14	6	N/A	SP-SM
B-3	4 - 6	7	3	0	SP
B-3	6 - 8	11	18	3	SC
B-4	4 - 6	4	3	0	SP
B-5	2 - 4	5	7	0	SP-SM
B-6	0 - 2	7	7	1	SP-SM
B-7	2 - 4	5	7	1	SP-SM
B-8	0 - 2	10	7	1	SP-SM
B-9	2 - 4	6	7	1	SP-SM
B-9	8 - 10	22	31	N/A	SC
B-10	0 - 2	9	7	1	SP-SM
B-11	2 - 4	5	7	1	SP-SM
B-11	6 - 8	23	16	2	SC
B-12	2 - 4	6	7	1	SP-SM
B-12	8 - 10	22	32	N/A	SC
P-2	0 - 5	5	7	1	SP-SM
P-4	0 - 5	5	8	1	SP-SM
P-6	0 - 5	5	5	N/A	SP
P-7	0 - 5	4	7	N/A	SP-SM
P-8	0 - 5	5	7	1	SP-SM
P-10	0 - 5	4	7	N/A	SP-SM
S-1	0 - 5	5	6	1	SP-SM
S-2	0 - 5	1	6	N/A	SP-SM
S-4	0 - 5	3	7	N/A	SP-SM
S-4	8 - 10	9	19	N/A	SC
S-5	0 - 1	5	6	N/A	SP-SM
S-5	2 - 6	12	7	1	SP-SM
S-6	0 - 2	5	6	1	SP-SM

PERMEABILITY, -200 SIEVE WASH, AND MOISTURE CONTENT

PROJECT: ECSD Educational Ancillary Facility NOVA PROJECT #: 10111-2024096

DATE: July 17, 2024 ASSIGNED BY: W.Lawrence TESTED BY: C. Alessio

Sample LOCATION / BORING NO.	S-2
Sample NUMBER / DEPTH	0' - 5'

PERMEABILITY TESTING SUMMARY			
PERMEABILITY (K _v)	→	17	ft/day
Corresponding K _h	→	26	ft/day
DRY DENSITY	→	101	lbs/ft ³
MOISTURE CONTENT	→	1	%
-200 FINES CONTENT	→	6	%

FALLING HEAD PERMEABILITY (ASTM D 5084)			
No. of LAYERS:	3	Wt. of MOLD (lbs):	9.31
BLOWS/LAYER:	15	Wt. of MOLD/SOIL (lbs):	12.72
HEIGHT (FT)	TRIAL #1 (SEC)	TRIAL #2 (SEC)	PERMEABILITY
5	0.0	0.0	
4	6.5	6.5	6.09E-03
3	8.1	8.4	6.19E-03
2	11.9	12.3	5.98E-03
1	20.2	21.2	5.96E-03
Average Permeability		6.1E-03	cm/sec

MOISTURE CONTENT (ASTM D 2216)	
Pan NUMBER	J-81
Wt. of WET SOIL & PAN (g)	235.7
Wt. of DRY SOIL & PAN (g)	233.3
Wt. of PAN (g)	50.8
Wt. of Water (g)	2.4
Wt. of Dry Soil (g)	182.5
MOISTURE CONTENT (%)	1.3

-200 SIEVE WASH (ASTM D 1140)	
Pan NUMBER	J-81
Wt. of DRY SOIL & PAN (g)	157.0
Wt. of WASH SOIL & PAN (g)	150.5
Wt. of PAN (g)	50.8
Wt. of Original Dry Sample (g)	106.2
Wt. of -200 Material (g)	6.5
Wt. of Washed Dry Sample (g)	99.6
-200 FINES CONTENT (%)	6.2

NUMBER OF INCHES MOLD WAS SHORT? 0.000 INCHES

PERMEABILITY CONSTANT USED WAS → 0.41 (Includes 1/2"ID tubing)

(ZERO INCHES IS DEFAULT)

PERMEABILITY, -200 SIEVE WASH, AND MOISTURE CONTENT

PROJECT: ECSD Educational Ancillary Facility NOVA PROJECT #: 10111-2024096

DATE: July 22, 2024 ASSIGNED BY: W.Lawrence TESTED BY: C. Alessio

Sample LOCATION / BORING NO.	S-4
Sample NUMBER / DEPTH	0' - 5'

PERMEABILITY TESTING SUMMARY			
PERMEABILITY (K _v)	→	22	ft/day
Corresponding K _h	→	33	ft/day
DRY DENSITY	→	105	lbs/ft ³
MOISTURE CONTENT	→	3	%
-200 FINES CONTENT	→	7	%

FALLING HEAD PERMEABILITY (ASTM D 5084)			
No. of LAYERS:	3	Wt. of MOLD (lbs):	9.31
BLOWS/LAYER:	15	Wt. of MOLD/SOIL (lbs):	12.90
HEIGHT (FT)	TRIAL #1 (SEC)	TRIAL #2 (SEC)	PERMEABILITY
5	0.0	0.0	
4	5.3	5.0	7.71E-03
3	6.5	6.4	7.91E-03
2	9.7	9.3	7.60E-03
1	16.2	15.6	7.77E-03
Average Permeability		7.7E-03	cm/sec

MOISTURE CONTENT (ASTM D 2216)	
Pan NUMBER	Z-13
Wt. of WET SOIL & PAN (g)	243.3
Wt. of DRY SOIL & PAN (g)	238.0
Wt. of PAN (g)	48.5
Wt. of Water (g)	5.3
Wt. of Dry Soil (g)	189.5
MOISTURE CONTENT (%)	2.8

-200 SIEVE WASH (ASTM D 1140)	
Pan NUMBER	Z-13
Wt. of DRY SOIL & PAN (g)	149.2
Wt. of WASH SOIL & PAN (g)	142.1
Wt. of PAN (g)	48.5
Wt. of Original Dry Sample (g)	100.7
Wt. of -200 Material (g)	7.2
Wt. of Washed Dry Sample (g)	93.6
-200 FINES CONTENT (%)	7.1

NUMBER OF INCHES MOLD WAS SHORT? 0.000 INCHES

PERMEABILITY CONSTANT USED WAS → 0.41 (Includes 1/2"ID tubing)

(ZERO INCHES IS DEFAULT)

PERMEABILITY, -200 SIEVE WASH, AND MOISTURE CONTENT

PROJECT: ECSD Educational Ancillary Facility NOVA PROJECT #: 10111-2024096

DATE: July 17, 2024 ASSIGNED BY: W.Lawrence TESTED BY: C. Alessio

Sample LOCATION / BORING NO.	S-5
Sample NUMBER / DEPTH	0' - 1'

PERMEABILITY TESTING SUMMARY			
PERMEABILITY (K _v)	→	14	ft/day
Corresponding K _h	→	21	ft/day
DRY DENSITY	→	102	lbs/ft ³
MOISTURE CONTENT	→	5	%
-200 FINES CONTENT	→	6	%

FALLING HEAD PERMEABILITY (ASTM D 5084)			
No. of LAYERS:	3	Wt. of MOLD (lbs):	9.31
BLOWS/LAYER:	15	Wt. of MOLD/SOIL (lbs):	12.88
HEIGHT (FT)	TRIAL #1 (SEC)	TRIAL #2 (SEC)	PERMEABILITY
5	0.0	0.0	
4	8.1	8.0	4.93E-03
3	10.0	10.4	5.02E-03
2	15.1	15.1	4.77E-03
1	25.7	25.9	4.78E-03
Average Permeability		4.9E-03	cm/sec

MOISTURE CONTENT (ASTM D 2216)	
Pan NUMBER	Z-20
Wt. of WET SOIL & PAN (g)	219.6
Wt. of DRY SOIL & PAN (g)	212.1
Wt. of PAN (g)	49.9
Wt. of Water (g)	7.5
Wt. of Dry Soil (g)	162.2
MOISTURE CONTENT (%)	4.6

-200 SIEVE WASH (ASTM D 1140)	
Pan NUMBER	Z-20
Wt. of DRY SOIL & PAN (g)	166.2
Wt. of WASH SOIL & PAN (g)	159.0
Wt. of PAN (g)	49.9
Wt. of Original Dry Sample (g)	116.4
Wt. of -200 Material (g)	7.3
Wt. of Washed Dry Sample (g)	109.1
-200 FINES CONTENT (%)	6.2

NUMBER OF INCHES MOLD WAS SHORT? 0.000 INCHES

PERMEABILITY CONSTANT USED WAS → 0.41 (Includes 1/2"ID tubing)

(ZERO INCHES IS DEFAULT)



1 **SECTION 01 01 50 - OCCUPANCY DURING CONSTRUCTION**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **1.01 GENERAL:**

- 6
7 A. The Owner reserves the right to occupy completed areas prior to Substantial Completion, provided
8 that such occupancy does not inordinately interfere with the Contractor's completion of the work.
9 Such partial occupancy shall not constitute acceptance of the work or any part of the work.
10
11 C. The Contractor shall erect barricades, fences, etc., and exclude unauthorized personnel from the
12 construction site. Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating designated parking areas, for
13 protecting building surfaces and shrubbery or any other items or surfaces subject to construction.
14
15 D. It is intended that the work shall be started with a Notice to Proceed.
16
17 F. Facilities, or portions of facilities, shall not be occupied during construction unless exits, fire detection
18 and early warning systems, fire protection, and safety barriers are continuously maintained and
19 clearly marked at all times.
20

21
22
23 **END OF SECTION 01 01 50**
24
25
26



1 **SECTION 01 10 00 – SUMMARY**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes the following:

- 5 1. Work covered by the Contract Documents.
- 6 2. Work phases.
- 7 3. Work under other contracts.
- 8 4. Use of premises.
- 9 5. Owner's occupancy requirements.
- 10 6. Specification formats and conventions.

11 **1.2 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

12 A. Project Identification: **WCSD EDUCATIONAL ANCILLARY FACILITIES- DISTRICT OFFICE.**

- 13 1. Project Location: DeFuniak Springs, Florida

14 B. Owner: Walton County School District 555 Walton Road, DeFuniak Springs, FL 32433

- 15 1. Owner's Representative: Ms. Jill Smith, Facilities Director

16 C. Construction Manager: Allstate Construction, Inc.

- 17 1. Representative: Scott Brewer

18 D. Architect: ELLIOTT MARSHALL INNES, P.A., (dba EMI architects) 251 East Seventh Avenue,
19 Tallahassee, Florida 32303

- 20 1. Representative: Brad Innes, AIA, NCARB; Architect of Record.

21 E. Structural Engineers: Bliss & Nyitray, Inc. 222 North Bronough St., Suite 7300, Tallahassee,
22 Florida 32301

- 23 1. Representative: Chris Childers, P.E.; Engineer of Record.

24 F. Mechanical, Plumbing, and Electrical Engineers: H2 Engineering, Inc. 114 East 5th Avenue
25 Tallahassee, Florida 32303

- 26 1. Representative: Matt Scaringe, P.E.; Engineer of Record

27 G. Civil Engineers: Innerlight Engineering Corporation 11490 Emerald Coast Parkway. Miramar
28 Beach, Florida 32550.

- 29 1. Representative: David Smith, P.E.; Engineer of Record

30 H. The Work consists of the following:

- 31 1. The Work includes the complete construction of (1) one (2) two story District Office and
32 boardroom along with its associated site development and parking.



1 I. Project will be constructed under a Construction Management contract.

2 1. "Liquidated damages are set at \$2,500? per day for each
3 calendar day beyond the contract time set above that substantial completion is not
4 achieved."

5 2. "The acceptable surety company shall be rated excellent: ("A-" or better) in accordance
6 with section 4.3(8)(a)2, the SREF manual."

7 J. Performance Requirement: The surfaces of the work shall be overall truly plumb, horizontal,
8 angled or curved to provide intended aesthetic effect and performance. The work shall provide
9 a watertight envelope enclosure.

10 1.3 WORK PHASES

11 A. The Work shall be conducted in one phase.

12 B. Before commencing Work, submit a schedule showing the sequence, commencement and
13 completion dates, and move-out and -in dates of Owner's personnel for all phases of the Work.

14 1.4 WORK UNDER OTHER CONTRACTS

15 A. General: Cooperate fully with separate contractors so work on those contracts may be carried
16 out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under this Contract. Coordinate the Work
17 of this Contract with work performed under separate contracts.

18 1.5 USE OF PREMISES

19 A. General: Contractor shall have limited use of premises for construction operations as indicated
20 on Drawings by the Contract limits.

21 B. Use of Site: Limit use of premises to work in areas within the Contract limits indicated. Do not
22 disturb portions of the Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated; except as
23 specifically indicated in the Contract Documents.

24 1. Owner Occupancy: Allow for Owner occupancy and use by the public of adjacent
25 buildings on the Project site.

26 2. Driveways and Entrances: Keep driveways, parking areas, loading areas, and entrances
27 serving premises clear and available to emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use
28 these areas for parking or storage of materials.

29 a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances.

30 b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of
31 materials and equipment on-site.
32

33 1.6 OWNER'S OCCUPANCY REQUIREMENTS

34 A. Owner Occupancy of Completed Areas of Construction: Owner reserves the right to occupy
35 and to place and install equipment in completed areas of building, before Substantial
36 Completion, provided such occupancy does not interfere with completion of the Work. Such
37 placement of equipment and partial occupancy shall not constitute acceptance of the total Work.

38 1. Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion for each specific portion of
39 the Work to be occupied before Owner occupancy.



- 1 2. Obtain a Certificate of Occupancy from authorities having jurisdiction before Owner
- 2 occupancy.
- 3 3. Life Safety items shall be complete.
- 4 4. Before partial Owner occupancy, mechanical and electrical systems shall be fully
- 5 operational, and required tests and inspections shall be successfully completed. On
- 6 occupancy, Owner will operate and maintain mechanical and electrical systems serving
- 7 occupied portions of building.
- 8 5. On occupancy, Owner will assume responsibility for maintenance and custodial service
- 9 for occupied portions of building.

10 1.7 SPECIFICATION FORMATS AND CONVENTIONS

11 A. Specification Format: The Specifications are organized into Divisions and Sections using a
 12 combination of both the 16-division format and 49-division CSI/CSC's "MasterFormat"
 13 numbering system.

14 1. Division 1: Sections in Division 1 govern the execution of the Work of all Sections in the
 15 Specifications.

16 B. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and
 17 the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations.
 18 These conventions are as follows:

19 1. Abbreviated Language: Language used in the Specifications and other Contract
 20 Documents is abbreviated. Words and meanings shall be interpreted as appropriate.
 21 Words implied, but not stated, shall be inferred as the sense requires. Singular words
 22 shall be interpreted as plural, and plural words shall be interpreted as singular where
 23 applicable as the context of the Contract Documents indicates.

24 2. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications.
 25 Requirements expressed in the imperative mood are to be performed by Contractor.
 26 Occasionally, the indicative or subjunctive mood may be used in the Section Text for
 27 clarity to describe responsibilities that must be fulfilled indirectly by Contractor or by
 28 others when so noted.

29 a. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are
 30 implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.

31 1.8 PRECEDENCE

32 A. In the event that any provisions of the component parts of the Contract Documents conflicts
 33 with any provision of any other component part, the provisions of the Contract Agreement shall
 34 govern; the Supplementary General Conditions shall take precedence over the General
 35 Conditions.

36 B. Should the Drawings and Specifications conflict on any point the work shall be done according
 37 to the Specification; should the details and schedules shown on the Drawings conflict on any
 38 point, the details and schedules shall prevail over the small-scale plans and elevations. Should
 39 the Structural and Architectural Drawings conflict, the work shall be done in accordance with the
 40 Structural Drawings.

41 C. Should sections of the Specifications conflict, the most stringent shall govern.

42 D. If, in the Contractor's opinion, any work is indicated on Drawings or is specified in such a
 43 manner as will make it impossible to produce a generally acceptable piece of work, or should



1 discrepancies appear between drawings and specifications, Contractor shall refer same to
2 Architect for decision before proceeding with Work.

- 3
4 1. If Contractor fails to make such reference, no excuse will thereafter be entertained for
5 failure to carry out work in satisfactory manner. Should a conflict occur in or between
6 Drawings and Specifications, Contractor shall be deemed to have estimated on a more
7 expensive way of doing work unless he shall have asked for and obtained a decision, in
8 writing, from Architect before submission of proposal as to which method or materials will
9 be required.

- 10 E. Figures govern scale dimensions and large-scale drawings govern those of smaller scale. If
11 drawings and specifications conflict or require any clarification which was not obtained prior to
12 bidding, the Contractor shall estimate and include in their bid the more expensive method or
13 material. No deviation shall be made from plans and specifications except upon written order
14 of the Architect.

15 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

16 **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

17 **END OF SECTION 01 10 00**



1 **SECTION 01 21 00 - ALLOWANCES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing the following:

5 1. Lump-sum allowances.

6 2. Contingency allowances

7 B. Contractors shall include in their Bid the Allowance Amounts listed in the "Schedule of
8 Allowances" as indicated in this section.

9 **1.2 SELECTION AND PURCHASE**

10 A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Architect of the date when
11 final selection and purchase of each product or system described by an allowance must be
12 completed to avoid delaying the Work.

13 B. At Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections.
14 Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.

15 C. Purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

16 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

17 A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances, in the form
18 specified for Change Orders.

19 B. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site
20 for use in fulfillment of each allowance.

21 C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions
22 of the Work.

23 D. Submit Shop Drawings as necessary for the procurement of the Allowance Item(s).

24 **1.4 COORDINATION**

25 A. Coordinate allowance items with other portions of the Work. Furnish templates as required
26 to coordinate installation.



1 **1.5 LUMP-SUM ALLOWANCES**

- 2 A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by
3 Owner under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- 4 B. Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and
5 profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner under the
6 allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.

7 **1.6 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES**

- 8 A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed by Architect for Owner's purposes as set
9 forth in the Schedule of Allowances and only by Change Orders that indicate amounts to be
10 charged to the Allowance.
- 11 B. Contractor's overhead, profit, and related costs for products and equipment ordered by the
12 Owner under the contingency allowance shall be included in the allowance costs. These
13 costs include delivery, installation, taxes, insurance, equipment rental, and similar costs.
- 14 C. Change Orders authorizing use of funds from the contingency allowance will include
15 Contractor's related costs and reasonable overhead and profit margins.
- 16 D. At project Closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the contingency allowance to owner
17 by Change Order.

18 **1.7 UNUSED MATERIALS**

- 19 A. Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for
20 credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
- 21 1. If requested by Architect, prepare unused material for storage by Owner when it is not
22 economically practical to return the material for credit. If directed by Architect, deliver
23 unused material to Owner's storage space. Otherwise, disposal of unused material is
24 Contractor's responsibility.

25 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

26 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

27 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 28 A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects.
29 Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.



1 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 2 A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and
3 installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with
4 related work.

5 **3.3 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES**

6 A. **Allowance No. 1:**

- 7
- 8 1. Extra Sprinkler Allowance. Provide and identify a line-item allowance on bid day to
9 furnish and install 10% (time and material) of sprinklers and associated branch piping
10 on project. Extra materials shall be installed as directed by Engineer and/or AHJ as
11 building components are installed to provide adequate coverage around obstructions
12 or to otherwise coordinate with competing systems. At the end of project, provide an
13 accounting of extra time and materials used against allowance; any remaining
14 allowance shall revert to the Owner's contingency for the Owner benefit.
15
- 16 2. Extra Exit Sign Allowance: Provide and identify a line-item allowance on bid day to
17 furnish and install 20% (time and material) of exit signs and associated conduit and
18 wire on project. Extra materials shall be installed as directed by Engineer and/or AHJ
19 as building components are installed to provide adequate coverage around
20 obstructions or to otherwise coordinate with competing systems. At the end of project,
21 provide an accounting of extra time and materials used against allowance; any
22 remaining allowance shall revert to the Owner's contingency for the Owner benefit.
23
- 24 3. Extra Notification Appliance Allowance: Provide and identify a line-item allowance
25 on bid day to furnish and install 10% (time and material) of notification appliances
26 and associated conduit and wiring on project. Extra materials shall be installed as
27 directed by Engineer and/or AHJ as building components are installed to provide
28 adequate coverage around obstructions or to otherwise coordinate with competing
29 systems. At the end of project, provide an accounting of extra time and materials used
30 against allowance; any remaining allowance shall revert to the Owner's contingency
31 for the Owner benefit.

32 **END OF SECTION 01 21 00**



1 **SECTION 01 23 00 - ALTERNATES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

8 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 9 A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in
10 the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if the Owner
11 decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed
12 or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the
13 Contract Documents.

- 14 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the
15 Agreement.
16 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract
17 Sum to incorporate alternates into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the
18 Contract Sum.

19 **1.4 PROCEDURES**

- 20 A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work
21 of the alternate into Project.

- 22 1. Include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar
23 items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part
24 of alternate.

- 25 B. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.

- 26 C. Schedule: A schedule of alternates is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections
27 referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work
28 described under each alternate.

- 29 D. Notification: Immediately following the award of the Contract, notify each party involved, in
30 writing, of the status of each alternate. Indicate whether alternates have been accepted, rejected,
31 or deferred for later consideration. Include a complete description of negotiated modifications to
32 alternates.

- 33 E. Alternates may be accepted in any order which is in the best interest of the Owner.



34 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

35 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

36 **3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES**

37 **A. Additive Alternate #1:** Southwest quadrant of the building outlined on sheet A105-ALT

38 **END OF SECTION 01 23 00**



1 **SECTION 01 25 00 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.

- 8 B. Related Requirements:

- 9 1. Section 01 21 00 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
10 2. Section 01 23 00 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
11 3. Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable
12 product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

13 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 14 A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from
15 those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.

- 16 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed
17 Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability
18 of required warranty terms.
19 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not
20 required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor
21 or Owner.

22 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 23 A. Substitution Requests: Submit one electronic copy of each request for consideration. Identify
24 product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number
25 and title and Drawing numbers and titles.

- 26 1. Substitution Request Form: Use facsimile of CSI Form 13.1A provided in Project Manual.
27 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as
28 applicable:

- 29 a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method
30 cannot be provided, if applicable.
31 b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other
32 parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors
33 that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
34 c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of
35 the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section.



- 1 Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size,
 2 durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific
 3 features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work
 4 specified.
- 5 d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and
 6 installation procedures.
- 7 e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
- 8 f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
- 9 g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses
 10 as well as names and addresses of architects and owners.
- 11 h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test
 12 results for compliance with requirements indicated.
- 13 i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project.
- 14 j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed
 15 substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall
 16 Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided
 17 within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's
 18 letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in
 19 delivery.
- 20 k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
- 21 l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in
 22 the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible
 23 with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
- 24 m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently
 25 become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated
 26 results.
- 27 3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or
 28 documentation for evaluation within **seven** calendar days of receipt of a request for
 29 substitution. Architect will notify Contractor through Construction Manager of acceptance
 30 or rejection of proposed substitution within **15** calendar days of receipt of request, or **seven**
 31 calendar days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- 32 a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's
 33 Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
- 34 b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed
 35 substitution within time allocated.

36 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- 37 A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution
 38 with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility
 39 tests recommended by manufacturers.

40 1.6 PROCEDURES

- 41 A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved
 42 substitutions.



1 **1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS**

2 A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for
3 change, but not later than **15** calendar days prior to time required for preparation and review of
4 related submittals.

5 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following
6 conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return
7 requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- 8 a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce
9 indicated results.
10 b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
11 c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
12 d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having
13 jurisdiction.
14 e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
15 f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
16 g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
17 h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution
18 has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is
19 compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

20 B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within
21 **60** calendar days after the Notice to Proceed. Requests received after that time may be
22 considered or rejected at discretion of Architect. Substitutions shall be accompanied by a
23 completed CSI form; attached at the end of this section.

24 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following
25 conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return
26 requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- 27 a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy
28 conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities
29 Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation
30 to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other
31 construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
32 b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract
33 Documents.
34 c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce
35 indicated results.
36 d. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
37 e. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
38 f. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having
39 jurisdiction.
40 g. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
41 h. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
42 i. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
43 j. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution
44 has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is
45 compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.



- 1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**
- 2 **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**
- 3 **END OF SECTION 01 25 00**



Advancement
of Construction
Technology

SUBSTITUTION REQUEST (After the Bidding Phase)

Project: _____ Substitution Request Number: _____
 _____ From: _____
 To: _____ Date: _____
 _____ A/E Project Number: _____
 Re: _____ Contract For: _____

Specification Title: _____ Description: _____
 Section: _____ Page: _____ Article/Paragraph: _____

Proposed Substitution: _____
 Manufacturer: _____ Address: _____ Phone: _____
 Trade Name: _____ Model No.: _____
 Installer: _____ Address: _____ Phone: _____

History: New product 2-5 years old 5-10 yrs old More than 10 years old

Differences between proposed substitution and specified product: _____

Point-by-point comparative data attached - REQUIRED BY A/E

Reason for not providing specified item: _____

Similar Installation:
 Project: _____ Architect: _____
 Address: _____ Owner: _____
 _____ Date Installed: _____

Proposed substitution affects other parts of Work: No Yes; explain _____

Savings to Owner for accepting substitution: _____ (\$ _____).

Proposed substitution changes Contract Time: No Yes [Add] [Deduct] _____ days.

Supporting Data Attached: Drawings Product Data Samples Tests Reports _____

SUBSTITUTION REQUEST (Continued)

The Undersigned certifies:

- Proposed substitution has been fully investigated and determined to be equal or superior in all respects to specified product.
- Same warranty will be furnished for proposed substitution as for specified product.
- Same maintenance service and source of replacement parts, as applicable, is available.
- Proposed substitution will have no adverse effect on other trades and will not affect or delay progress schedule.
- Cost data as stated above is complete. Claims for additional costs related to accepted substitution which may subsequently become apparent are to be waived.
- Proposed substitution does not affect dimensions and functional clearances.
- Payment will be made for changes to building design, including A/E design, detailing, and construction costs caused by the substitution.
- Coordination, installation, and changes in the Work as necessary for accepted substitution will be complete in all respects.

Submitted by: _____

Signed by: _____

Firm: _____

Address: _____

Telephone: _____

Attachments: _____

A/E's REVIEW AND ACTION

- Substitution approved - Make submittals in accordance with Specification Section 01330.
- Substitution approved as noted - Make submittals in accordance with Specification Section 01330.
- Substitution rejected - Use specified materials.
- Substitution Request received too late - Use specified materials.

Signed by:

Date:

Additional Comments: Contractor Subcontractor Supplier Manufacturer A/E _____



1 **SECTION 01 26 00 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 4 A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing
5 Contract modifications.
- 6 B. See Division 1 Section "Allowances" for procedural requirements for handling and processing
7 allowances.

8 **1.2 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK**

- 9 A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing Minor Changes in the Work, not
10 involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.

11 **1.3 PROPOSAL REQUESTS**

- 12 A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed
13 changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If
14 necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.

- 15 1. Proposal Requests issued by Architect are for information only. Do not consider them
16 instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
- 17 2. Within 30 days after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost
18 adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the
19 change.

- 20 a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with
21 total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey
22 data to substantiate quantities.
- 23 b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of
24 trade discounts.
- 25 c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
- 26 d. Include an updated Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of
27 the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and
28 finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an
29 extension of the Contract Time.

- 30 B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or unforeseen conditions require modifications to the
31 Contract, Contractor may propose changes by submitting a request for a change to Architect.

- 32 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the
33 Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the
34 proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
- 35 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total
36 amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to
37 substantiate quantities.
- 38 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade
39 discounts.
- 40 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
- 41 5. Include an updated Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of the
42 change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times,
43 and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the
44 Contract Time.



1 6. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Product Requirements" if the proposed
2 change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

3 **1.4 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES**

4 A. On Owner's approval of a Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures
5 of Owner and Contractor.

6 **1.5 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE**

7 A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive.
8 Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for
9 subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.

10 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It
11 also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the
12 Contract Time.

13 B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the
14 Construction Change Directive.

15 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary
16 to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

17 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

18 **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

19 **END OF SECTION 01 26 00**



1 **SECTION 01 26 00 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 4 A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing
5 Contract modifications.
- 6 B. See Division 1 Section "Allowances" for procedural requirements for handling and processing
7 allowances.

8 **1.2 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK**

- 9 A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing Minor Changes in the Work, not
10 involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.

11 **1.3 PROPOSAL REQUESTS**

- 12 A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed
13 changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If
14 necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.

- 15 1. Proposal Requests issued by Architect are for information only. Do not consider them
16 instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
- 17 2. Within 30 days after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost
18 adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the
19 change.

- 20 a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with
21 total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey
22 data to substantiate quantities.
- 23 b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of
24 trade discounts.
- 25 c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
- 26 d. Include an updated Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of
27 the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and
28 finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an
29 extension of the Contract Time.

- 30 B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or unforeseen conditions require modifications to the
31 Contract, Contractor may propose changes by submitting a request for a change to Architect.

- 32 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the
33 Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the
34 proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
- 35 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total
36 amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to
37 substantiate quantities.
- 38 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade
39 discounts.
- 40 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
- 41 5. Include an updated Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of the
42 change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times,
43 and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the
44 Contract Time.



1 6. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Product Requirements" if the proposed
2 change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

3 **1.4 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES**

4 A. On Owner's approval of a Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures
5 of Owner and Contractor.

6 **1.5 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE**

7 A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive.
8 Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for
9 subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.

10 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It
11 also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the
12 Contract Time.

13 B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the
14 Construction Change Directive.

15 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary
16 to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

17 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

18 **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

19 **END OF SECTION 01 26 00**



1 **SECTION 01 26 00 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 4 A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing
5 Contract modifications.
- 6 B. See Division 1 Section "Allowances" for procedural requirements for handling and processing
7 allowances.

8 **1.2 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK**

- 9 A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing Minor Changes in the Work, not
10 involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.

11 **1.3 PROPOSAL REQUESTS**

- 12 A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed
13 changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If
14 necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.

- 15 1. Proposal Requests issued by Architect are for information only. Do not consider them
16 instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
- 17 2. Within 30 days after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost
18 adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the
19 change.

- 20 a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with
21 total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey
22 data to substantiate quantities.
- 23 b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of
24 trade discounts.
- 25 c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
- 26 d. Include an updated Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of
27 the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and
28 finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an
29 extension of the Contract Time.

- 30 B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or unforeseen conditions require modifications to the
31 Contract, Contractor may propose changes by submitting a request for a change to Architect.

- 32 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the
33 Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the
34 proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
- 35 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total
36 amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to
37 substantiate quantities.
- 38 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade
39 discounts.
- 40 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
- 41 5. Include an updated Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of the
42 change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times,
43 and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the
44 Contract Time.



1 6. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Product Requirements" if the proposed
2 change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

3 **1.4 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES**

4 A. On Owner's approval of a Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures
5 of Owner and Contractor.

6 **1.5 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE**

7 A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive.
8 Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for
9 subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.

10 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It
11 also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the
12 Contract Time.

13 B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the
14 Construction Change Directive.

15 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary
16 to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

17 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

18 **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

19 **END OF SECTION 01 26 00**



1 **SECTION 01 29 00 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 4 A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and
5 process Applications for Payment.

6 **1.2 SCHEDULE OF VALUES**

- 7 A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the Schedule of Values with preparation of Contractor's
8 Construction Schedule.

- 9 1. Correlate line items in the Schedule of Values with other required administrative forms
10 and schedules, including Application for Payment forms with Continuation Sheets
11 Submittals Schedule and Contractor's Construction Schedule.
12 2. Submit the Schedule of Values to Architect at earliest possible date but no later than
13 seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.ent.

- 14 B. Format and Content: Use the Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items
15 for the Schedule of Values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
16 Schedule of Values shall reflect GMP detail presented to Owner.

- 17 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the Schedule of Values:

- 18 a. Project name and location.
19 b. Name of Architect.
20 c. Architect's project number.
21 d. Contractor's name and address.
22 e. Date of submittal.

- 23 2. Submit draft of AIA Document G703 Continuation Sheets.

- 24 3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued
25 evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with the Project
26 Manual table of contents. Provide several line items for principal subcontract amounts,
27 where appropriate. Include separate line items under required principal subcontracts for
28 operation and maintenance manuals, punch list activities, Project Record Documents,
29 and demonstration and training in the amount of 5 percent of the Contract Sum.

- 30 4. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.

- 31 5. Provide a separate line item in the Schedule of Values for each part of the Work where
32 Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated
33 and stored, but not yet installed.

- 34 6. Provide separate line items in the Schedule of Values for initial cost of materials, for each
35 subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.

- 36 7. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the Schedule of Values for each allowance.
37 Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by
38 measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine
39 quantities.

- 40 8. Each item in the Schedule of Values and Applications for Payment shall be complete.
41 Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.

- 42 a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual
43 work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the Schedule of
44 Values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.



1 **1.3 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT**

- 2 A. Each Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as
3 certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- 4 1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion,
5 and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.
- 6 B. Payment Application Times: Progress payments shall be submitted to Architect by the 25 day of
7 the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the
8 last day of the month.
- 9 C. Forms: Use AIA Document G702/CMA and AIA Document G703 Continuation Sheets.
- 10 D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person
11 authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete
12 applications without action.
- 13 1. Entries shall match data on the Schedule of Values and Contractor's Construction
14 Schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
- 15 2. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before
16 last day of construction period covered by application.
- 17 E. Transmittal: Submit 4 signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to
18 Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien
19 and similar attachments if required.
- 20 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate
21 information about application.
- 22 F. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's
23 lien from every entity who is lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract
24 and related to the Work covered by the payment.
- 25 1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after
26 deduction for retainage, on each item.
- 27 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit final or full waivers.
- 28 3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit
29 waivers.
- 30 4. Waiver Forms: Submit waivers of lien on forms, executed in a manner acceptable to
31 Owner.
- 32 G. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or
33 coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
- 34 1. List of subcontractors.
- 35 2. Schedule of Values.
- 36 3. Contractor's Construction Schedule (preliminary if not final).
- 37 4. Schedule of unit prices, if any.
- 38 5. Submittals Schedule (preliminary if not final).
- 39 6. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
- 40 7. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
- 41 8. Copies of building permits.
- 42 9. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance
43 of the Work.
- 44 10. Initial progress report.
- 45 11. Report of preconstruction conference.



- 1 12. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
- 2 H. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After issuing the Certificate of Substantial
3 Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of
4 the Work claimed as substantially complete.
- 5 1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a
6 statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
- 7 2. This application shall reflect Certificates of Partial Substantial Completion issued
8 previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- 9 I. Final Payment Application: Submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting
10 documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the
11 following:
- 12 1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
- 13 2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof
14 that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
- 15 3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
- 16 4. AIA Document G706, "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
- 17 5. AIA Document G706A, "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
- 18 6. AIA Document G707, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
- 19 7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
- 20 8. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of
21 date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed
22 responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
- 23 9. Final, liquidated damages settlement statement.

24 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

25 **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

26 **END OF SECTION 01 29 00**



1 **SECTION 01 31 00 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on
5 Project including, but not limited to, the following:

- 6 1. Coordination Drawings.
- 7 2. Project meetings.
- 8 3. Requests for Interpretation (RFIs).
- 9 4. Guidelines for Handling Unwanted Water Intrusion

10 B. See Division 1 Section "Execution Requirements" for procedures for coordinating general
11 installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control
12 points.

13 **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

14 A. RFI: Request from Contractor seeking interpretation or clarification of the Contract Documents.

15 **1.3 COORDINATION**

16 A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the
17 Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate
18 construction operations, included in different Sections, that depend on each other for proper
19 installation, connection, and operation.

- 20 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where
21 installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before
22 or after its own installation.
- 23 2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum
24 accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
- 25 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- 26 4. Where availability of space is limited, coordinate installation of different components to
27 ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and
28 repair of all components, including mechanical and electrical.

29 B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures
30 required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees
31 at meetings.

- 32 1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work
33 is required.

34 C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative
35 procedures with other construction activities and activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts
36 and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not
37 limited to, the following:

- 38 1. Preparation of Contractor's Construction Schedule.
- 39 2. Preparation of the Schedule of Values.
- 40 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
- 41 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.



- 1 5. Progress meetings.
- 2 6. Preinstallation conferences.
- 3 7. Project closeout activities.
- 4 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
- 5 9. Project closeout activities.

6
7 D. Coordination with Adjacent Buildings and Activities: The contractor shall coordinate with neighboring buildings or activities in cases of excessive noise, vibrations, utilities outages and similar items at least one (1) week in advance of the occurrence.

10 **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

11 A. Coordination Drawings: Prepare Coordination Drawings if limited space availability necessitates maximum utilization of space for efficient installation of different components or if coordination is required for installation of products and materials fabricated by separate entities.

14 1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Coordination Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:

- 17 a. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
- 18
- 19 b. Indicate dimensions shown on the Contract Drawings and make specific note of dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect for resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- 20
- 21
- 22
- 23

24 2. Sheet Size: At least 8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm) but no larger than 22 by 34 inches.

25 3. Number of Copies: Submit two opaque copies of each submittal. Architect will return one copy.

26 4. Refer to individual Sections for Coordination Drawing requirements for Work in those Sections.

30 **1.5 PROJECT MEETINGS**

31 A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site, unless otherwise indicated.

- 33 1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
- 34
- 35
- 36 2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
- 37 3. Minutes: Record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- 38
- 39

40 B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement. Hold the conference at Project site or another convenient location. Conduct the meeting to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.

- 44 1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
- 45
- 46
- 47



- 1 2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
- 2 a. Tentative construction schedule.
- 3 b. Phasing.
- 4 c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
- 5 d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
- 6 e. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
- 7 f. Procedures for RFIs, Requests for Change Orders, ASI', etc.
- 8 g. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
- 9 h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
- 10 i. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
- 11 j. Submittal procedures.
- 12 k. LEED requirements.
- 13 l. Preparation of Record Documents.
- 14 m. Use of the premises.
- 15 n. Work restrictions.
- 16 o. Owner's occupancy requirements.
- 17 p. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
- 18 q. Construction waste management and recycling.
- 19 r. Parking availability.
- 20 s. Office, work, and storage areas.
- 21 t. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
- 22 u. First aid.
- 23 v. Security.
- 24 w. Progress cleaning.
- 25 x. Working hours.
- 26 3. Minutes: Construction Manager will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- 27 C. Pre-installation Conferences: Conduct a pre-installation conference at Project site before
- 28 each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
- 29 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or
- 30 affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and
- 31 installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect
- 32 of scheduled meeting dates.
- 33 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the
- 34 particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
- 35 a. The Contract Documents.
- 36 b. Options.
- 37 c. Related RFIs, ASIs, RCOs.
- 38 d. Related Change Orders.
- 39 e. Purchases.
- 40 f. Deliveries.
- 41 g. Submittals.
- 42 h. Review of mockups.
- 43 i. Possible conflicts.
- 44 j. Compatibility problems.
- 45 k. Time schedules.
- 46 l. Weather limitations.
- 47 m. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
- 48 n. Warranty requirements.
- 49 o. Compatibility of materials.
- 50 p. Acceptability of substrates.
- 51 q. Temporary facilities and controls.
- 52 r. Space and access limitations.



- 1 s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
 2 t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
 3 u. Installation procedures.
 4 v. Coordination with other work.
 5 w. Required performance results.
 6 x. Protection of adjacent work.
 7 y. Protection of construction and personnel.
- 8 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including
 9 required corrective measures and actions.
 10 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to parties who
 11 should have been present.
 12 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded.
 13 Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the
 14 Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- 15 D. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at biweekly (or as directed by Owner)
 16 intervals. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
- 17 1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Construction Manager, Owner, Architect,
 18 Structural Engineer, Laboratory Architect, Mechanical, Plumbing & Electrical Engineers;
 19 each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress
 20 or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be
 21 represented at these meetings. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with
 22 Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 23 2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review
 24 other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as
 25 appropriate to status of Project.
- 26 a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting.
 27 Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind
 28 schedule, in relation to Contractor's Construction Schedule. Determine how
 29 construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties
 30 involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that
 31 current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
- 32 1) Review schedule for next period.
- 33 b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
- 34 1) Interface requirements.
 35 2) Sequence of operations.
 36 3) Status of submittals.
 37 4) Deliveries.
 38 5) Off-site fabrication.
 39 6) Access.
 40 7) Site utilization.
 41 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
 42 9) Work hours.
 43 10) Hazards and risks.
 44 11) Progress cleaning.
 45 12) Quality and work standards.
 46 13) Status of correction of deficient items.
 47 14) Field observations.
 48 15) RFIs, ASIs, RCOs, etc.
 49 16) Status of proposal requests.
 50 17) Pending changes.



- 1 18) Status of Change Orders.
 2 19) Pending claims and disputes.
 3 20) Documentation of information for payment requests.
- 4 3. Minutes: Construction Manager will record and distribute the meeting minutes.
 5 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to parties who
 6 should have been present.
- 7 a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's Construction Schedule after each
 8 progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized.
 9 Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- 10 **1.6 REQUESTS FOR INTERPRETATION (RFIs)**
- 11 A. Procedure: Immediately on discovery of the need for interpretation of the Contract Documents,
 12 and if not possible to request interpretation at Project meeting, prepare and submit an RFI in the
 13 form specified.
- 14 1. RFIs shall originate with Contractor. RFIs submitted by entities other than Contractor will
 15 be returned with no response.
 16 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's
 17 work or work of subcontractors.
- 18 B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing interpretation and the
 19 following:
- 20 1. Project name.
 21 2. Date.
 22 3. Name of Contractor.
 23 4. Name of Architect and Construction Manager.
 24 5. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
 25 6. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
 26 7. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 27 8. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
 28 9. Contractor's suggested solution(s). If Contractor's solution(s) impact the Contract Time
 29 or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
 30 10. Contractor's signature.
 31 11. Attachments: Include drawings, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data,
 32 Shop Drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items
 33 needing interpretation.
- 34 C. RFI's are requested to be transmitted electronically; should electronic transmittal not be
 35 possible, temporary fax copy will be accepted.
- 36 1. Identify each page of attachments with the RFI number and sequential page number.
- 37 D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and return it.
 38 Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI; Architect & Engineers will
 39 Endeavour to process as quickly as possible. RFIs received after 1:00 p.m. will be considered
 40 as received the following working day.
- 41 1. The following RFIs will be returned without action:
- 42 a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 43 b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 44 c. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 45 d. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.



- 1 e. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 2 f. Incomplete RFIs or RFIs with numerous errors.
- 3 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case
 4 Architect's time for response will start again.
 5 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the
 6 Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to
 7 Division 1 Section "Contract Modifications."
- 8 a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or
 9 the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI
 10 response.
- 11 E. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response
 12 to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor
 13 disagrees with response.
- 14 F. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number.
 15 Submit log at biweekly Project Meetings. Include the following:
- 16 1. Project name.
 17 2. Name and address of Contractor.
 18 3. Name and address of Architect.
 19 4. RFI number including RFIs that were dropped and not submitted.
 20 5. RFI description.
 21 6. Date the RFI was submitted.
 22 7. Date Architect's response was received.
 23 8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and
 24 Proposal Request, as appropriate.
 25 9. Identification of related Architect's Supplemental Instructions, Work Change Directive,
 26 and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

27 **1.7 DESIGN GUIDELINES FOR HANDLING UNWANTED WATER INTRUSION**

- 28
 29 A. Based upon recent experience of the impact of the growth of mold during construction phases
 30 for a major project, the following information is being provided to prevent issues due to mold
 31 growth in construction projects. The Contractor shall do the following:
- 32 1. Prevent water intrusion into the building (including dew point/condensation conditions)
 33 during construction, whether it be new construction and/or renovation. If water intrusion
 34 does occur, the Contractor should take steps to immediately remove water, including
 35 dehumidification of the atmosphere as required to dry out building. Prevent entrapment
 36 of moisture with construction materials and components of construction, dry out may
 37 require ventilation only, however, it is imperative that the Contractor should take the
 38 special measures in the event of water intrusion, including dehumidification.
 39 2. If dehumidification is to be accomplished through the use of building HVAC systems,
 40 adequate filters are required to be installed to prevent distribution of construction dust,
 41 etc., in air handling and duct systems which can lead to operational problems as well as
 42 provide an environment for future mold growth.
 43 3. If porous materials are damaged due to water/moisture, removal prior to growth of mold
 44 will avoid potential risks and costly mitigation techniques if the material remains and mold
 45 develops. Otherwise, treatment of non-porous areas exposed to moisture should be
 46 considered to prevent mold growth.
 47 4. If water intrusion occurs, the material remains, and building dry out occurs, inspections
 48 should be made on a continual basis to ensure no mold growth or conditions for mold
 49 growth exists, including wall cavities or concealed areas affected by moisture. If mold is
 50 observed, the Contractor shall be responsible to utilize consultant services to address the



- 1 process and procedure for removing mold by treatment and/or material removal.
2 Treatment of mold can include application of an agent, encapsulation and/or removal of
3 material, suspect or damaged. It is important the Contractor utilize appropriate
4 procedures for remediation since some microbial agents may be infectious and/or toxic
5 and could pose a health risk.
6 5. It is important for the Contractor to respond immediately (within 24 hours maximum) to
7 issues that would provide a suitable environment for the growth of mold in order to
8 prevent potential impacts on project budget and timetable as well as risk to personnel
9 during construction and/or occupancy.

10 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

11 **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

12 **END OF SECTION 01 31 00**



1 **SECTION 01 32 00 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress
5 of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:

- 6 1. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
7 2. Submittals Schedule.
8 3. Daily construction reports.
9 4. Field condition reports.

10 B. See Division 1 Section "Payment Procedures" for submitting the Schedule of Values.

11 C. See Division 1 Section "Photographic Documentation" for submitting construction photographs.

12 **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

13 A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring,
14 and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume
15 time and resources.

- 16 1. Critical activities are activities on the critical path. They must start and finish on the
17 planned early start and finish times.
18 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
19 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.

20 B. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project
21 where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine
22 when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.

23 C. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network
24 schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.

25 D. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.

- 26 1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a
27 jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet
28 schedule milestones and Contract completion date.

29 E. Fagnet: A partial or fragmentary network that breaks down activities into smaller activities for
30 greater detail.

31 F. Major Area: A story of construction, a separate building, or a similar significant construction
32 element.

33 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

34 A. Submittals Schedule: Submit three copies of schedule. Arrange the following information in a
35 tabular format:

- 36 1. Scheduled date for first submittal.
37 2. Specification Section number and title.



- 1 3. Submittal category (action or informational).
 2 4. Name of subcontractor.
 3 5. Description of the Work covered.
 4 6. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
- 5 B. Preliminary Network Diagram: Submit three opaque copies, large enough to show entire
 6 network for entire construction period. Show logic ties for activities.
- 7 C. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Submit three opaque copies of initial schedule, large
 8 enough to show entire schedule for entire construction period.
- 9 1. Submit an electronic copy of schedule, using software indicated, on CD-R, and labeled to
 10 comply with requirements for submittals. Include type of schedule (Initial or Updated)
 11 and date on label.
- 12 D. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit three copies of each of the following
 13 computer-generated reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number,
 14 activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start
 15 date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
- 16 1. Activity Report: List of all activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or
 17 actual start date if known.
 18 2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for all activities, sorted in
 19 ascending order by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if
 20 known.
 21 3. Total Float Report: List of all activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
- 22 E. Daily Construction Reports: Submit one copy to Owner at Final Completion.
- 23 F. Field Condition Reports: Submit two copies at time of discovery of differing conditions.

24 **1.4 COORDINATION**

- 25 A. Coordinate preparation and processing of schedules and reports with performance of
 26 construction activities and with scheduling and reporting of separate contractors.
- 27 B. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the Schedule of Values, list of
 28 subcontracts, Submittals Schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required
 29 schedules and reports.
- 30 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from parties
 31 involved.
 32 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule
 33 them in proper sequence.

34 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

35 **2.1 SUBMITTALS SCHEDULE**

- 36 A. Preparation: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required
 37 by construction schedule. Include time required for review, resubmittal, ordering,
 38 manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates.
- 39 1. Coordinate Submittals Schedule with list of subcontracts, the Schedule of Values, and
 40 Contractor's Construction Schedule.



- 1 2. Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's Construction
2 Schedule.

3 **2.2 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

- 4 A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of Final
5 Completion.

- 6 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows
7 an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.

- 8 B. Activities: Treat each story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each principal
9 element of the Work. Comply with the following:

- 10 1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically
11 allowed by Architect.
12 2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead
13 items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in
14 schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals,
15 approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.

- 16 a. Insert list of major items or pieces of equipment.

- 17 3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and re-submittal times indicated in Division 1
18 Section "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in
19 Contractor's Construction Schedule with Submittals Schedule.

- 20 4. Startup and Testing Time: Include not less than seven days for startup and testing.

- 21 5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for
22 Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures
23 necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.

- 24 C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and
25 as follows in schedule and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.

- 26 1. Phasing: Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each
27 contract.

- 28 2. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by
29 Owner.

- 30 3. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:

- 31 a. Coordination with existing construction.
32 b. Limitations of continued occupancies.
33 c. Uninterruptible services.
34 d. Partial occupancy before Substantial Completion.
35 e. Use of premises restrictions.
36 f. Provisions for future construction.
37 g. Seasonal variations.
38 h. Environmental control.

- 39 4. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the
40 Work.

- 41 D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but
42 not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and Final Completion, and the
43 following interim milestones:
44



- 1 1. Foundation
- 2 2. Floor framing
- 3 3. Floor concrete pours
- 4 4. Roof framing
- 5 5. Enclosure of each floor
- 6 6. Drying of roof
- 7 7. Controlled environment for each floor
- 8 E. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its
9 submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using fragnets to demonstrate the effect of the
10 proposed change on the overall project schedule.
- 11 **2.3 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (CPM SCHEDULE)**
- 12 A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
- 13 B. Preliminary Network Diagram: Submit diagram within 14 days of date established for the Notice
14 to Proceed. Outline significant construction activities for the first 60 days of construction.
15 Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction
16 based on indicated activities.
- 17 C. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's Construction Schedule using a computerized, time-scaled
18 CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.
- 19 1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule so it can be
20 accepted for use no later than 30 days after date established for the Notice to Proceed.
- 21 a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not
22 excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates,
23 regardless of Architect's approval of the schedule.
- 24 2. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting
25 progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
- 26 3. Use "one workday" as the unit of time. Include list of nonworking days and holidays
27 incorporated into the schedule.
- 28 D. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using
29 the preliminary network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.
- 30 1. Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship
31 of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the
32 following activities:
- 33 a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
- 34 b. Mobilization and demobilization.
- 35 c. Purchase of materials.
- 36 d. Delivery.
- 37 e. Fabrication.
- 38 f. Utility interruptions.
- 39 g. Installation.



- 1 h. Work by Owner that may affect or be affected by Contractor's activities.
 2 i. Testing and commissioning.
- 3 2. Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim
 4 completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with
 5 Contract milestone dates.
 6 3. Processing: Process data to produce output data on a computer-drawn, time-scaled
 7 network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as
 8 necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
 9 4. Format: Mark the critical path. Locate the critical path near center of network; locate
 10 paths with most float near the edges.
- 11 a. Sub-networks on separate sheets are permissible for activities clearly off the
 12 critical path.
- 13 E. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a list of straight "early start-total
 14 float" sort. Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
- 15 1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
 16 2. Description of activity.
 17 3. Principal events of activity.
 18 4. Immediately preceding and succeeding activities.
 19 5. Early and late start dates.
 20 6. Early and late finish dates.
 21 7. Activity duration in workdays.
 22 8. Total float or slack time.
 23 9. Average size of workforce.
- 24 F. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports
 25 showing the following:
- 26 1. Identification of activities that have changed.
 27 2. Changes in early and late start dates.
 28 3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
 29 4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
 30 5. Changes in the critical path.
 31 6. Changes in total float or slack time.
 32 7. Changes in the Contract Time.
- 33 **2.4 REPORTS**
- 34 A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following
 35 information concerning events at Project site:
- 36 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
 37 2. Equipment at Project site.
 38 3. Material deliveries.
 39 4. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions.
 40 5. Accidents.
 41 6. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
 42 7. Meter readings and similar recordings.
 43 8. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
 44 9. Services connected and disconnected.
 45 10. Equipment or system tests and startups.
- 46 B. Field Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between field conditions and
 47 the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a request for



1 interpretation. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with
2 recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

3 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

4 **3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE**

5 A. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect
6 actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly
7 scheduled progress meeting.

8 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have
9 been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each
10 such meeting.

11 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not
12 limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.

13 3. As the Work progresses, indicate Actual Completion percentage for each activity.

14 B. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Engineers, Owner, separate
15 contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a
16 need-to-know schedule responsibility.

17 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.

18 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in
19 the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their
20 assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction
21 activities.

22 **END OF SECTION 01 32 00**



1 **SECTION 01 32 33 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 4 A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
- 5 1. Periodic construction photographs.
- 6 B. See Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting digital media as Project Record
7 Documents at Project closeout.
- 8 C. See Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training" for submitting videotapes of
9 demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

10 **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- 11 A. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked
12 for location and direction of each photograph. Indicate elevation or story of construction.
13 Include same label information as corresponding set of photographs.
- 14 B. Construction Photographs: Submit one electronic digital copy of 20 separate interior and
15 exterior photographic views along with one electronic digital copy of 4 aerial photographic views
16 (one from each compass points) with every odd numbered monthly pay request (eg 1,3,5,7
17 ...etc) starting with Pay Request No. 1. Submit one electronic digital copy of 20 separate
18 interior and exterior photographic views with every even numbered monthly pay request (eg
19 2,4,6,8 ...etc) starting with Pay Request No. 2.
- 20 1. Identification: Below each digital photo, provide a label with the following information:
- 21 a. Name of Project.
- 22 b. Date photograph was taken if not date stamped by camera.
- 23 c. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and
24 elevation or story of construction.
- 25 d. Unique sequential identifier number.
- 26 2. Digital Images: Submit a complete set of digital image electronic files on CD-ROM.
27 Identify electronic media with date photographs were taken. Submit images that have
28 same aspect ratio as the sensor, uncropped.

29 **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 30 A. Photographer Qualifications for Aerial Photographs: An individual who has been regularly
31 engaged as a professional photographer of construction projects for not less than three years.



1 **1.4 USAGE RIGHTS**

- 2 A. Obtain and transfer copyright usage rights from photographer to Architect/Owner for unlimited
3 reproduction of photographic documentation.

4 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

5 **2.1 PHOTOGRAPHIC MEDIA**

- 6 A. Digital Images: Provide images in uncompressed TIFF format, produced by a digital camera
7 with minimum sensor size of 8.0 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 1024
8 by 768 pixels.

9 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

10 **3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS**

- 11 A. Photographer: Engage a qualified commercial photographer to take aerial construction
12 photographs.
- 13 B. General: Take photographs using the maximum range of depth of field, and that are in focus, to
14 clearly show the Work. Photographs with blurry or out-of-focus areas will not be accepted.
- 15 1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each
16 photographic location.
- 17 C. Digital Images: Submit digital images exactly as originally recorded in the digital camera,
18 without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
- 19 1. Date and Time: Include date and time in filename for each image.
20 2. Field Office Images: Maintain one set of images on CD-ROM in the field office at Project
21 site, available at all times for reference. Identify images same as for those submitted to
22 Architect.
- 23 D. Additional Photographs: Architect may issue requests for additional photographs, in addition to
24 periodic photographs specified. Additional photographs will be paid for by Change Order and
25 are not included in the Contract Sum.
- 26 1. Three days' notice will be given, where feasible.
27 2. In emergency situations, take additional photographs within 24 hours of request.
28 3. Circumstances that could require additional photographs include, but are not limited to,
29 the following:
- 30 a. Special events planned at Project site.
31 b. Immediate follow-up when on-site events result in construction damage or losses.
32 c. Photographs to be taken at fabrication locations away from Project site. These
33 photographs are not subject to unit prices or unit-cost allowances.
34 d. Substantial Completion of a major phase or component of the Work.
35 e. Extra record photographs at time of final acceptance.



- 1 f. Owner's request for special publicity photographs.
- 2
- 3 E. Photographs to depict conditions relating to RFI's, non-conforming work or as provided by
- 4 Contractor to Architect for information on day-to-day resolution of issues are not considered
- 5 "Additional Photographs" (re paragraph 3.1 D above) and will not be paid for by Change Order.

6 **END OF SECTION 01 32 33**



1 **SECTION 01 33 00 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 4 A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop
5 Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.
- 6 B. See Division 1 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and
7 reports, including Contractor's Construction Schedule.
- 8 C. See Division 1 Section "Photographic Documentation" for submitting construction photographs.
- 9 D. See Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements" for submitting test and inspection reports and for
10 mockup requirements.
- 11 E. See Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.
- 12 F. See Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record
13 Specifications, and Record Product Data.
- 14 G. See Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and
15 maintenance manuals.
- 16 H. See Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training" for submitting videotapes of demonstration
17 of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

18 **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- 19 A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information that requires Architect's responsive action.
- 20 B. Informational Submittals: Written information that does not require Architect's responsive
21 action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements.
- 22 C. Specialty Engineer: A Professional Engineer licensed to practice in the State where the project
23 is located.
- 24 D. Engineering Calculations: When required in various sections of this specification, engineering
25 calculations shall be prepared, signed and sealed by a Specialty Engineer as described in
26 section 'C' above. The requirements of this section shall supersede requirements in individual
27 specification sections.

28 **1.3 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

- 29 A. Mailing Costs: Costs for return of all submittals to the Contractor from the Architect's/Engineer's
30 Offices shall be the Contractor's responsibility and shall be included in the Bid.
31 Architect/Engineer will transmit return submittals to the Contractor's Office via collect unless
32 other arrangements are made by the Contractor.
- 33 B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of
34 construction activities.



- 1 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals,
 2 and related activities that require sequential activity.
 3 2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so
 4 processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for
 5 coordination.
- 6 a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination
 7 with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- 8 C. Submittals Schedule: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Construction Progress
 9 Documentation" for list of submittals and time requirements for scheduled performance of
 10 related construction activities.
- 11 D. Processing Time: Allow enough time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as
 12 follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of
 13 the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in
 14 advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
 15
- 16 1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if
 17 coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor
 18 when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination. **Allow an additional**
 19 **week's time when more than 10 submittals items have been given to the Architect**
 20 **within three days of each other.**
 21 2. Concurrent Review: Where concurrent review of submittals by Architect's consultants,
 22 Owner, or other parties is required, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
 23 3. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner
 24 as initial submittal.
 25 4. Re-submittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each re-submittal.
 26 5. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit sub-
 27 mittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing.
- 28 E. Identification: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal for identification.
- 29 1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
 30 2. Provide a space approximately **6 by 8 inches (150 by 200 mm)** on label or beside title
 31 block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
 32 3. Include the following information on label for processing and recording action taken:
- 33 a. Project name.
 34 b. Date.
 35 c. Name and address of Architect.
 36 d. Name and address of Contractor.
 37 e. Name and address of subcontractor.
 38 f. Name and address of supplier.
 39 g. Name of manufacturer.
 40 h. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
- 41 1) Submittal number shall use Specification Section number followed by a
 42 decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., 06100.01). Re-submittals
 43 shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g.,
 44 06100.01.A).
- 45 i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
 46 j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 47 k. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 48 l. Other necessary identification.



- 1 **F. Deviations: Highlight, encircle, or otherwise specifically identify deviations from the**
 2 **Contract Documents on submittals.**
- 3 **G. Additional Copies:** Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect
 4 observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve
 5 as final submittal.
- 6 1. Additional copies submitted for maintenance manuals will not be marked with action
 7 taken and will be returned.
 8 2. Submit one copy of submittal to concurrent reviewer in addition to specified number of
 9 copies to Architect.
- 10 **H. Transmittal:** Package each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling.
 11 Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will discard submittals received from
 12 sources other than Contractor unless advance arrangements have been made with the
 13 Architect or Engineers. Items received without a transmittal will be discarded.
- 14 1. Transmittal Form: Contractor's standard form, submit for acceptance by Architect prior to
 15 transmittal of first submittal.
 16 2. On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant in-
 17 formation, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previ-
 18 ous submittals, and deviations from requirements of the Contract Documents, including
 19 minor variations and limitations. Include the same label information as the related sub-
 20 mittal.
 21 3. Include Contractor's certification stating that information submitted complies with re-
 22 quirements of the Contract Documents.
- 23 **I. Re-submittals:** Make re-submittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
- 24 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 25 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of
 26 revision.
 27 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked Acceptable or Acceptable as marked with the
 28 Architect's or Engineer's action stamp.
- 29 **J. Distribution:** Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers,
 30 fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of
 31 construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- 32 **K. Use for Construction:** Use only final submittals with mark indicating Acceptable or Acceptable as
 33 marked with the Architect's or Engineer's action stamp.

34 **1.4 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF ARCHITECT'S CAD FILES**

- 35 1. General: At Contractor's written request, one copy of Architect's/Engineers CAD files will
 36 be provided at the beginning of the project to the Construction Manager for distribution to
 37 subcontractors upon execution of a release for each consultant.

38 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

39 **2.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 40 **A. General:** Action Submittals shall be reviewed by Architect. Prepare and submit Action
 41 Submittals required by individual Specification Sections.



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
1. Number of Hard Copies: Submit 3 copies of submittals for Architect's action and 4 copies of submittals for Engineer's action; Architect will return 2 copies to Contractor. Contractor shall retain one returned copy as a Project Record Document (to be transmitted to Owner at Final Completion) and make additional copies as necessary for distribution to subcontractors, material suppliers, etc. Copies in excess of those listed above will be disposed of by the Architect and not returned to the contractor.
- 8
9
2. Electronic Files (**Preferred Method**) Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files.
 - a) Architect, through Construction Manager, will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
- 10
11
- 12 B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and
13 type of product or equipment.
- 14
15
16
17
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard printed data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - 18 a. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
 - 19 b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - 20 c. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
 - 21 d. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - 22 e. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
 - 23 f. Printed performance curves.
 - 24 g. Operational range diagrams.
 - 25 h. Compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - 26 i. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - 27 4. Number of Copies: Submit two copies of Product Data, unless otherwise indicated.
28 Architect will return one copy. Retain one returned copy as a Project Record Document
29 which shall be transmitted to Owner at Final Completion.
- 30 C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base
31 Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
32 Submittals which are replicas of the Contract Documents will be returned rejected.
- 33
34
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - 35 a. Dimensions.
 - 36 b. Identification of products.
 - 37 c. Fabrication and installation drawings.
 - 38 d. Roughing-in and setting diagrams.
 - 39 e. Wiring diagrams showing field-installed wiring, including power, signal, and control
40 wiring.
 - 41 f. Shopwork manufacturing instructions.
 - 42 g. Templates and patterns.
 - 43 h. Schedules.
 - 44 i. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - 45 j. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - 46 k. Relationship to adjoining construction clearly indicated.



- 1 l. Seal and signature of specialty professional engineer if specified. Refer to
2 Definitions section elsewhere in this section
- 3 m. Wiring Diagrams: Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed
4 wiring.
- 5 2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop
6 Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm) but no larger than 22 x
7 34 inches.
- 8 3. Number of Copies: Refer to paragraph 2.1.A above.
- 9 D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these
10 characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between
11 submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
- 12 1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories
13 together in one submittal package.
- 14 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
- 15 a. Generic description of Sample.
- 16 b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
- 17 c. Sample source.
- 18 d. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
- 19 3. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-
20 control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be
21 used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
- 22 4. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or
23 sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
- 24 a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color,
25 pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from
26 manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
- 27 5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared
28 from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and
29 physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of
30 color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the
31 following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or
32 containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing
33 color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent
34 testing and inspection.
- 35 a. Number of Samples: Submit two sets of Samples. Architect will retain one Sample
36 set. Retain returned Sample set as a Project Record Sample.
- 37 E. Product Schedule or List: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written
38 summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location.
- 39 1. Number of Copies: Submit two copies of product schedule or list, unless otherwise
40 indicated. Architect will return one copy.
- 41 F. Submittals Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Construction
42 Progress Documentation."
- 43 G. Coordination Drawings shall comply with requirements of the Action Submittals.



- 1 H. Application for Payment: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Payment
2 Procedures."
- 3 I. Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Payment
4 Procedures."
- 5 J. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each
6 portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a
7 special design.
- 8 1. Number of Copies: Submit an electronic file copy.
- 9 **2.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**
- 10 A. General: Architect and Engineer will not review Informational Submittals. Construction Manager
11 shall review for compliance. Submit items not in compliance to Architect as an RFI. Prepare
12 and submit Informational Submittals required by other Specification Sections.
- 13 1. Number of Copies: Submit one copy of each submittal, unless otherwise indicated.
14 Architect will not return copy.
- 15 2. Certificates and Certifications: Provide a notarized statement that includes signature of
16 entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be
17 signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that
18 entity.
- 19 3. Test and Inspection Reports: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section
20 "Quality Requirements."
- 21 B. Coordination Drawings: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Project
22 Management and Coordination."
- 23 C. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section
24 "Construction Progress Documentation."
- 25 D. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of
26 firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names
27 and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- 28 E. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel
29 comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure
30 Specification (WPS) and Procedure Qualification Record (PQR) on AWS forms. Include names
31 of firms and personnel certified.
- 32 F. Installer Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that
33 Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is
34 authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- 35 G. Manufacturer Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying
36 that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of
37 manufacturing experience where required.
- 38 H. Product Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that
39 product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- 40 I. Material Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that
41 material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.



- 1 J. Material Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing
2 agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with
3 requirements in the Contract Documents.
- 4 K. Product Test Reports: Prepare written reports indicating current product produced by
5 manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on
6 evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or
7 on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- 8 L. Research/Evaluation Reports: Prepare written evidence, from a model code organization
9 acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect
10 for Project.
- 11 M. Preconstruction Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing
12 agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation
13 of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- 14 N. Compatibility Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing
15 agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed
16 before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate
17 preparation needed for adhesion.
- 18 O. Field Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's
19 standard form, indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during
20 installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with
21 requirements in the Contract Documents.
- 22 P. Maintenance Data: Prepare written and graphic instructions and procedures for operation and
23 normal maintenance of products and equipment. Comply with requirements specified in
24 Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- 25 Q. Design Data: Prepare written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance
26 and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of
27 assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load
28 diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations.
29 Include page numbers.
- 30 R. Manufacturer's Instructions: Prepare written or published information that documents
31 manufacturer's recommendations, guidelines, and procedures for installing or operating a
32 product or equipment. Include name of product and name, address, and telephone number of
33 manufacturer.
- 34 S. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting factory-authorized
35 service representative's tests and inspections. Include the following, as applicable:
- 36 1. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
 - 37 2. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with
38 requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
 - 39 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance
40 complies with requirements.
- 41 T. Insurance Certificates and Bonds: Prepare written information indicating current status of
42 insurance or bonding coverage. Include name of entity covered by insurance or bond, limits of
43 coverage, amounts of deductibles, if any, and term of the coverage.



1 U. Construction Photographs: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section
2 "Photographic Documentation."

3 V. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDSs): Submit information directly to Owner; do not submit to
4 Architect.

5 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

6 **3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW**

7 A. Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for
8 compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with
9 approval stamp before submitting to Architect. The failure to affix the Contractor's approval
10 stamp shall be grounds to reject the submittal.

11 B. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name
12 and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date
13 of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked,
14 and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

15 C. Transmittal Letter: The contractor shall identify each item being submitted on a letter of
16 transmittal. Provide individual letter of transmittal for each separate item, or each group of
17 related items

18 **3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION**

19 A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp or
20 appear to not have been reviewed due to the quantity of incorrect information and will return
21 them without action.

22 B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or
23 modifications required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp
24 and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action taken.

25 C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it
26 if it does not comply with requirements.

27 D. Partial submittals are not acceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned
28 without review.

29 E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may not be reviewed and may be
30 discarded.

31 **END OF SECTION 01 33 00**



1 **SECTION 01 40 00 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality
8 control.

- 9 B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or
10 indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the
11 Contract Document requirements.

- 12 1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are
13 specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections
14 may also cover production of standard products.

- 15 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-
16 assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract
17 Document requirements.

- 18 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services
19 required by Architect, Owner, Construction Manager, or authorities having jurisdiction are
20 not limited by provisions of this Section.

- 21 4. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.

- 22 C. See Divisions 2-49 Sections for specific test and inspection requirements.

- 23 D. Costs for testing required by Divisions 2 through 49 shall be the responsibility of the Construction
24 Manager / Contractor and shall be included in the Contract Sum.

25 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 26 A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" unless otherwise further
27 described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in
28 nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and
29 having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

- 30 B. Field Quality-Control Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of
31 the Work and for completed Work.

- 32 C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee,
33 Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including
34 installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.



- 1 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that
2 certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that
3 requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- 4 D. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site either as freestanding
5 temporary built elements or as part of permanent construction. Mockups are constructed to verify
6 selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of
7 materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between
8 dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances.
9 Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard
10 by which the Work will be judged.
- 11 1. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies constructed and tested at testing
12 facility to verify performance characteristics.
- 13 2. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope constructed on-site as
14 freestanding temporary built elements or as part of permanent construction, consisting of
15 multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
- 16 3. Room Mockups: Mockups of typical interior spaces complete with wall, floor, and ceiling
17 finishes; doors; windows; millwork; casework; specialties; furnishings and equipment; and
18 lighting.
- 19 E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products
20 and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified
21 criteria.
- 22 F. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing
23 laboratory (NRTL) according to 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited according to
24 NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency
25 qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish
26 product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- 27 G. Source Quality-Control Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source; for
28 example, plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- 29 H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing
30 laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- 31 I. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during
32 execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed
33 construction will comply with requirements.
- 34 J. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after
35 execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed
36 construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include
37 contract administration activities performed by Architect or Construction Manager.

38 **1.4 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES**

- 39 A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design
40 professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products
41 and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
- 42 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a
43 written request for additional information to Architect.



- 1 2. Design services requiring signing and sealing by a professional Architect or Engineer shall
2 be by licensed Architect and/or Engineer registered the State of Florida.

3 **1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS**

- 4 A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or
5 requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting
6 requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement.
7 Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for direction
8 before proceeding.
- 9 B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the
10 minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum
11 quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply
12 with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for
13 the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

14 **1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 15 A. Shop Drawings:
- 16 1. Include plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup
17 construction.
18 2. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
19 3. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.
- 20 B. Delegated-Design Services Submittal: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other
21 required submittals, submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design
22 professional, licensed in State of Florida for each product and system specifically assigned to
23 Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and
24 systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes,
25 loads, and other factors used in performing these services.
- 26 C. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports that include the following:
- 27 1. Date of issue.
28 2. Project title and number
29 3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
30 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
31 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
32 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
33 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
34 8. Complete test or inspection data.
35 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
36 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and
37 inspecting.
38 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the
39 Contract Document requirements.
40 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
41 13. Recommendations on retesting and re-inspecting.
- 42 D. Reports may be submitted in electronic format, but hard copies shall also be submitted in triplicate
43 and shall be signed and sealed by the appropriate engineers and / or certifying agency.



1 **1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 2 A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to
 3 demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a
 4 recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- 5 B. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
- 6 1. Specification Section number and title.
 7 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
 8 3. Description of test and inspection.
 9 4. Identification of applicable standards.
 10 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
 11 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
 12 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
 13 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
 14 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.
- 15 C. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.
- 16 D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses,
 17 certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee
 18 payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for
 19 compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

20 **1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS**

- 21 A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other
 22 Sections. Include the following:
- 23 1. Date of issue.
 24 2. Project title and number.
 25 3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
 26 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
 27 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
 28 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
 29 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
 30 8. Complete test or inspection data.
 31 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
 32 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and
 33 inspection.
 34 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the
 35 Contract Document requirements.
 36 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
 37 13. Recommendations on retesting and re-inspecting.
- 38 B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information
 39 documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other
 40 Sections. Include the following:
- 41 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making
 42 report.
 43 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
 44 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.



- 1 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements
2 and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
3 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance
4 complies with requirements.
5 6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
6 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- 7 C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting
8 manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other
9 Sections. Include the following:
- 10 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service
11 representative making report.
12 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
13 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance
14 complies with requirements.
15 4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
16 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- 17 **1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE**
- 18 A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels
19 required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- 20 B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to
21 those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as
22 sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from
23 manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or
24 factory-authorized service representative requirements.
- 25 C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for
26 this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient
27 production capacity to produce required units.
- 28 D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or
29 assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose
30 work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- 31 E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice
32 in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services
33 of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the
34 system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated
35 for this Project.
- 36 F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be
37 performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy
38 qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
- 39 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for
40 specialists.
- 41 G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency with the experience and capability to
42 conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with



- 1 additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having
2 jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- 3 H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of
4 manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of
5 manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this
6 Project.
- 7 I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of
8 manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of
9 manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this
10 Project.
- 11 J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for
12 compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the
13 following:
- 14 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
- 15 a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
16 b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing
17 results to prevent delaying the Work.
18 c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory
19 mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with
20 performance requirements.
21 d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform
22 same tasks for Project.
23 e. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies,
24 and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
- 25 2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection,
26 and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, through Construction Manager, with
27 copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested
28 and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
- 29 K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form
30 of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials
31 indicated for the completed Work:
- 32 1. Build mockups of size indicated.
33 2. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect or
34 Construction Manager.
35 3. Notify Architect and Construction Manager seven days in advance of dates and times when
36 mockups will be constructed.
37 4. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that
38 will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
39 5. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
40 6. Obtain Architect's and Construction Manager's approval of mockups before starting
41 corresponding work, fabrication, or construction.
- 42 a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
- 43 7. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging
44 the completed Work.
45 8. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.



1 L. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Construct integrated exterior mockup according to approved Shop
 2 Drawings. Coordinate installation of exterior envelope materials and products for which mockups
 3 are required in individual Specification Sections, along with supporting materials. Comply with
 4 requirements in "Mockups" Paragraph.

5 **1.10 QUALITY CONTROL**

6 A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility,
 7 Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.

- 8 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing
 9 agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged
 10 to perform.
 11 2. Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspection allowances, as
 12 authorized by Change Orders.
 13 3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work
 14 that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the
 15 Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.

16 B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are
 17 Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not,
 18 to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.

- 19 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required
 20 by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by
 21 authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
 22 2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.

23 a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in
 24 writing by Owner.

- 25 3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing
 26 or inspection will be performed.
 27 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a
 28 certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
 29 5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract
 30 Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
 31 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction,
 32 when they so direct.

33 C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's
 34 responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for
 35 construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

36 D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect, Construction Manager, and
 37 Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and
 38 inspections.

- 39 1. Notify Architect and Construction Manager, and Contractor promptly of irregularities or
 40 deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 41 2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are
 42 conducted.



- 1 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and
2 inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
- 3 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-
4 control service through Contractor.
- 5 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve
6 or accept any portion of the Work.
- 7 6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.
- 8 E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service
9 representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including
10 service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal
11 Procedures."
- 12 F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical
13 representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's
14 services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and
15 conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed
16 portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- 17 G. Associated Contractor Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing
18 required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary
19 services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment
20 of personnel. Provide the following:
- 21 1. Access to the Work.
- 22 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
- 23 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and
24 inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
- 25 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
- 26 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
- 27 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing
28 agency.
- 29 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project
30 site.
- 31 H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance
32 services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction
33 to accommodate testing and inspection.
- 34 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- 35 I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-
36 control services required by the Contract Documents. Coordinate and submit concurrently with
37 Contractor's Construction Schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
- 38 1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, and Construction Manager, testing
39 agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and
40 inspections are required.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

2 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3 **3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG**

4 A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:

- 5 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
- 6 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
- 7 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
- 8 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.

9 B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and
10 inspection log for Architect's and Construction Manager's reference during normal working hours.

- 11 1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

12 **3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION**

13 A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample taking, and similar services, repair
14 damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.

- 15 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification
16 Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend
17 restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible.
18 Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section
19 01 73 00 "Execution."

20 B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.

21 C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of
22 responsibility for quality-control services.

23 **END OF SECTION 01 40 00**



1 **SECTION 01 42 00 - REFERENCES**

2 **GENERAL**

3 **1.1 DEFINITIONS**

- 4 A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- 5 B. "Accepted": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications,
6 and requests, "accepted" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the
7 Conditions of the Contract.
- 8 C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested,"
9 "authorized," "selected," "approved," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as
10 "directed."
- 11 D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on
12 Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown,"
13 "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- 14 E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having
15 jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control
16 performance of the Work.
- 17 F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly,
18 installation, and similar operations.
- 19 G. "Install": Operations at Project site including unloading, temporarily storing, unpacking,
20 assembling, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing,
21 protecting, cleaning, and similar operations.
- 22 H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- 23 I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site
24 is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which
25 Project is to be built.
- 26 **J. X1: "Contractor Furnished, Contractor Installed (CFCI)", equipment responsibility**
27 **symbol designates the Contractor to supply, deliver to the project site and to put in place**
28 **ready for intended use of any equipment items specified in these specification.**
- 29 **K. X2: "Owner Furnished, Contractor Installed (OFCI)", equipment responsibility symbol**
30 **designates the Owner to supply and deliver to the project site any equipment items**
31 **specified in these specifications and the Contractor to put the equipments in place ready**
32 **for intended use.**
- 33 **1. The owner and the Contractor will coordinate deliveries of equipment to coincide**
34 **with construction schedule to minimize storage of equipment before installation.**
- 35 **2. The Owner shall furnish all standard integral parts of equipment, and tailgate-**
36 **deliver items to project site.**
- 37 **3. Contractor shall receive item at site and give written receipt for item at time of**
38 **delivery, noting visible defects or omissions. If such declaration is not given, the**
39 **contractor shall assume responsibility for such defects and omissions.**



- 1 3. **Contractor shall uncrate, assemble, set items in place and install items in**
 2 **accordance to manufacturer's instruction.**
- 3 **L. X3: "Owner Furnished, Owner Installed (OFOI)", equipment responsibility symbol**
 4 **designates the Owner to supply, deliver to the project site and to put in place ready for**
 5 **intended use of any equipment items specified in these specification.**
- 6 1. **Contractor shall provide utility rough-in for equipment items where required**
 7 **irrespective of equipment responsibility designation unless specifically noted**
 8 **otherwise.**
- 9 2. **Contractor shall be responsible for verification of utility requirements for approved**
 10 **equipment items. Upon request, the Owner shall make available dimensions and**
 11 **power characteristics of the Owner furnished items.**

12 **1.2 INDUSTRY STANDARDS**

- 13 A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent
 14 requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if
 15 bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards
 16 are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- 17 .
- 18 B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents,
 19 unless otherwise indicated.
- 20 C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with
 21 industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not
 22 bound with the Contract Documents.
- 23 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain
 24 copies directly from publication source.
- 25 D. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and
 26 acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the
 27 recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list.

ADAAG	Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Architectural Barriers Act (ABA)
AHJ	Authority Having Jurisdiction (The)
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
CRD	Handbook for Concrete and Cement
DOD	Department of Defense Military Specifications and Standards
DSCC	Defense Supply Center Columbus (See FS)
FED-STD	Federal Standard (See FS)
FBC	Florida Building Code
FS	Federal Specification
FTMS	Federal Test Method Standard (See FS)



ICC-ES	ICC Evaluation Service, Inc.
MIL	(See MILSPEC)
MIL-STD	(See MILSPEC)
MILSPEC	Military Specification and Standards
NES	National Evaluation Service (See ICC-ES)
UFAS	Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards

1 1.3 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

2 A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other
 3 Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale
 4 Research's "Encyclopedia of Associations" or in Columbia Books' "National Trade &
 5 Professional Associations of the U.S."

6 B. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other
 7 Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list.
 8

AA	Aluminum Association, Inc. (The)
AAADM	American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers
AABC	Associated Air Balance Council
AAMA	American Architectural Manufacturers Association
AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
AATCC	American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists (The)
ABMA	American Bearing Manufacturers Association
ACI	ACI International (American Concrete Institute)
ACPA	American Concrete Pipe Association
AEIC	Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The)
AF&PA	American Forest & Paper Association
AGA	American Gas Association
AGC	Associated General Contractors of America (The)
AHA	American Hardboard Association (Now part of CPA)
AHAM	Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers
AI	Asphalt Institute
AIA	American Institute of Architects (The)



AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction
AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute
AITC	American Institute of Timber Construction
ALCA	Associated Landscape Contractors of America
ALSC	American Lumber Standard Committee, Incorporated
AMCA	Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
AOSA	Association of Official Seed Analysts
APA	APA - The Engineered Wood Association
APA	Architectural Precast Association
API	American Petroleum Institute
ARI	Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute
ARMA	Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association
ASCE	American Society of Civil Engineers
ASHRAE	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers
ASME	ASME International (The American Society of Mechanical Engineers International)
ASSE	American Society of Sanitary Engineering
ASTM	ASTM International (American Society for Testing and Materials International)
AWCI	AWCI International (Association of the Wall and Ceiling Industries International)
AWCMA	American Window Covering Manufacturers Association (Now WCSC)
AWI	Architectural Woodwork Institute
AWPA	American Wood-Preservers' Association
AWS	American Welding Society
AWWA	American Water Works Association
BHMA	Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association
BIA	Brick Industry Association (The)



BICSI	BICSI
BIFMA	BIFMA International (Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association International)
BISSC	Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee
CCC	Carpet Cushion Council
CDA	Copper Development Association Inc.
CFFA	Chemical Fabrics & Film Association, Inc.
CGA	Compressed Gas Association
CGSB	Canadian General Standards Board
CIMA	Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association
CISCA	Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association
CISPI	Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute
CLFMI	Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute
CPA	Composite Panel Association
CPPA	Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe Association
CRI	Carpet & Rug Institute (The)
CRSI	Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute
CSA	CSA International (Formerly: IAS - International Approval Services)
CSI	Construction Specifications Institute (The)
CSSB	Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau
CTI	Cooling Technology Institute (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute)
DHI	Door and Hardware Institute
EIA	Electronic Industries Alliance
EIMA	EIFS Industry Members Association
EJCDC	Engineers Joint Contract Documents Committee
EJMA	Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.
ESD	ESD Association
FCI	Fluid Controls Institute



FIBA	Federation Internationale de Basketball Amateur (The International Basketball Federation)
FIVB	Federation Internationale de Volleyball (The International Volleyball Federation)
FM	Factory Mutual System (Now FMG)
FMG	FM Global (Formerly: FM - Factory Mutual System)
FRSA	Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors Association, Inc.
FSA	Fluid Sealing Association
FSC	Forest Stewardship Council
GA	Gypsum Association
GANA	Glass Association of North America
GRI	(Now GSI)
GS	Green Seal
GSI	Geosynthetic Institute
HI	Hydraulic Institute
HI	Hydronics Institute
HMMA	Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association (Part of NAAMM)
HPVA	Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association
HPW	H. P. White Laboratory, Inc.
IAS	International Approval Services (Now CSA International)
IBF	International Badminton Federation
ICEA	Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.
ICRI	International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The)
IESNA	Illuminating Engineering Society of North America
IGCC	Insulating Glass Certification Council
IGMA	Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance (The)
ILI	Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.



ISO	International Organization for Standardization
ISSFA	International Solid Surface Fabricators Association
ITS	Intertek
ITU	International Telecommunication Union
KCMA	Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association
LMA	Laminating Materials Association (Now part of CPA)
LPI	Lightning Protection Institute
MBMA	Metal Building Manufacturers Association
MFMA	Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association
MFMA	Metal Framing Manufacturers Association
MH	Material Handling (Now MHIA)
MHIA	Material Handling Industry of America
MIA	Marble Institute of America
MPI	Master Painters Institute
MSS	Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.
NAAMM	National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers
NACE	NACE International (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International)
NADCA	National Air Duct Cleaners Association
NAGWS	National Association for Girls and Women in Sport
NAIMA	North American Insulation Manufacturers Association (The)
NBGQA	National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.
NCAA	National Collegiate Athletic Association (The)
NCMA	National Concrete Masonry Association
NCPI	National Clay Pipe Institute
NCTA	National Cable & Telecommunications Association
NEBB	National Environmental Balancing Bureau
NECA	National Electrical Contractors Association
NeLMA	Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association



NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association
NETA	International Electrical Testing Association
NFHS	National Federation of State High School Associations
NFPA	NFPA (National Fire Protection Association)
NFRC	National Fenestration Rating Council
NGA	National Glass Association
NHLA	National Hardwood Lumber Association
NLGA	National Lumber Grades Authority
NOFMA	National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association
NRCA	National Roofing Contractors Association
NRMCA	National Ready Mixed Concrete Association
NSF	NSF International (National Sanitation Foundation International)
NSSGA	National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association
NTMA	National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc.
NTRMA	National Tile Roofing Manufacturers Association (Now RTI)
NWWDA	National Wood Window and Door Association (Now WDMA)
OPL	Omega Point Laboratories, Inc.
PCI	Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute
PDCA	Painting & Decorating Contractors of America
PDI	Plumbing & Drainage Institute
PGI	PVC Geomembrane Institute
PTI	Post-Tensioning Institute
RCSC	Research Council on Structural Connections
RFCI	Resilient Floor Covering Institute
RIS	Redwood Inspection Service
RTI	(Formerly: NTRMA - National Tile Roofing Manufacturers Association) (Now TRI)
SAE	SAE International



SDI	Steel Deck Institute
SDI	Steel Door Institute
SEFA	Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association
SEI	Structural Engineering Institute
SGCC	Safety Glazing Certification Council
SIA	Security Industry Association
SIGMA	Sealed Insulating Glass Manufacturers Association (Now IGMA)
SJI	Steel Joist Institute
SMA	Screen Manufacturers Association
SMACNA	Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association
SMPTE	Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers
SPFA	Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance (Formerly: SPI/SPFD - The Society of the Plastics Industry, Inc.; Spray Polyurethane Foam Division)
SPIB	Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (The)
SPI/SPFD	Society of the Plastics Industry, Inc. (The) Spray Polyurethane Foam Division (Now SPFA)
SPRI	SPRI (Single Ply Roofing Institute)
SSINA	Specialty Steel Industry of North America
SSPC	SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings
STI	Steel Tank Institute
SWI	Steel Window Institute
SWRI	Sealant, Waterproofing, & Restoration Institute
TCA	Tile Council of America, Inc.
TIA/EIA	Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance
TMS	The Masonry Society
TPI	Truss Plate Institute, Inc.
TPI	Turfgrass Producers International
TRI	Tile Roofing Institute (Formerly: RTI - Roof Tile Institute)



UL	Underwriters Laboratories Inc.
UNI	Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association
USAV	USA Volleyball
USGBC	U.S. Green Building Council
USITT	United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.
WASTEC	Waste Equipment Technology Association
WCLIB	West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau
WCMA	Window Covering Manufacturers Association (Now WCSC)
WCSC	Window Covering Safety Council (Formerly: WCMA - Window Covering Manufacturers Association)
WDMA	Window & Door Manufacturers Association (Formerly: NWWDA - National Wood Window and Door Association)
WI	Woodwork Institute (Formerly WIC - Woodwork Institute of California)
WIC	Woodwork Institute of California (Now WI)
WMMPA	Wood Moulding & Millwork Producers Association
WSRCA	Western States Roofing Contractors Association
WWPA	Western Wood Products Association

1 C. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other
 2 Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list.
 3

BOCA	BOCA International, Inc. (Now ICC)
CABO	Council of American Building Officials (Now ICC)
IAPMO	International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
ICBO	International Conference of Building Officials (Now ICC)
ICBO ES	ICBO Evaluation Service, Inc. (Now ICC-ES)
ICC	International Code Council (Formerly: CABO - Council of American Building Officials)
ICC-ES	ICC Evaluation Service, Inc.



NES National Evaluation Service (Now ICC-ES)

SBCCI Southern Building Code Congress International, Inc. (Now ICC)

1 D. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications
 2 or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the
 3 following list.
 4

CE Army Corps of Engineers

CPSC Consumer Product Safety Commission

DOC Department of Commerce

DOD Department of Defense

DOE Department of Energy

EPA Environmental Protection Agency

FAA Federal Aviation Administration

FCC Federal Communications Commission

FDA Food and Drug Administration

GSA General Services Administration

HUD Department of Housing and Urban Development

LBL Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory

NCHRP National Cooperative Highway Research Program (See TRB)

NIST National Institute of Standards and Technology

OSHA Occupational Safety & Health Administration

PBS Public Building Service (See GSA)

PHS Office of Public Health and Science

RUS Rural Utilities Service (See USDA)

SD State Department

TRB Transportation Research Board

USDA Department of Agriculture

USPS Postal Service

5 E. State Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or
 6 other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following
 7 list.
 8



DCA State of Florida Department of Community Affairs
Bureau of Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation

SFM The State of Florida Department of Insurance, Division of State Fire Marshal,
Bureau of Fire Prevention

- 1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**
- 2 **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**
- 3 **END OF SECTION 01 42 00**



1 **SECTION 01 50 00 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 4 A. This Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and
5 protection facilities.
- 6 B. See Division 1 Section "Execution Requirements" for progress cleaning requirements.
- 7 C. See Divisions 2 through 49 Sections for temporary heat, ventilation, and humidity requirements
8 for products in those Sections.
- 9 D. See Civil Division for disposal of ground water at Project site.

10 **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- 11 A. Permanent Enclosure: As determined by Architect, permanent or temporary roofing is
12 complete, insulated, and weathertight; exterior walls are insulated and weathertight; and all
13 openings are closed with permanent construction or substantial temporary closures.

14 **1.3 USE CHARGES**

- 15 A. General: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum.
16 Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not
17 limited to, Owner's construction forces, Architect, occupants of Project, testing agencies, and
18 authorities having jurisdiction.
- 19 B. Water Service: Contractor's Responsibility for payment and use charges. Provide connections
20 and extensions of services as required for construction operations.
- 21 C. Electric Power Service: Contractor's Responsibility for payment and use charges. Provide
22 connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.
- 23 D. Sanitary Sewer and Storm Water Service: Contractor's Responsibility for payment and use
24 charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction
25 operations.
- 26 E. Computer Data Service: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the
27 Contract Sum.

28 **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- 29 A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for
30 construction personnel.

31 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 32 A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary
33 electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- 34 B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each
35 temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.



1 **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 2 A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Installer of each permanent service shall assume
 3 responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its
 4 use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned
 5 responsibilities.

6 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

7 **2.1 MATERIALS**

- 8 A. Pavement: Comply with Division 2 Section "Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving." and Section "Cement
 9 Concrete Pavement.".
- 10 B. Temporary Fence - Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.098-inch thick, galvanized steel,
 11 chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 1-5/8-
 12 inch OD line posts and 2-3/8-inch OD corner and pull posts, 1-3/8-inch for panels.
- 13 C. Temporary Fence - Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.098-inch, galvanized
 14 steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum
 15 1-5/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-3/8-inch OD corner and pull posts, with 1-3/8-inch OD top and
 16 bottom rails. Provide concrete or galvanized steel bases for supporting posts.
- 17 D. Lumber and Plywood: Comply with requirements in Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry."
- 18 E. Gypsum Board: Minimum 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) thick by 48 inches (1219 mm) wide by maximum
 19 available lengths; regular-type panels with tapered edges. Comply with ASTM C 36/C 36M.
- 20 F. Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket, manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool;
 21 with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.

22 **2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES**

- 23 A. Field Offices, General: Construction Manager's responsibility.
- 24 B. Storage Trailers: Provide storage trailers sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate
 25 materials and equipment for construction operations.

26 **2.3 EQUIPMENT**

- 27 A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by
 28 locations and classes of fire exposures.
- 29 B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented,
 30 self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
- 31 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating
 32 units is prohibited.
- 33 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a testing agency
 34 acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- 35 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for
 36 temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return air grille in
 37 system and remove at end of construction.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- 3 A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference
 4 with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the
 5 Work.
- 6 B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities
 7 are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

8 **3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION**

- 9 A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
- 10 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be
 11 interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- 12 B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
- 13 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having
 14 jurisdiction.
- 15 C. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for
 16 construction.
- 17 D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of
 18 construction personnel. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location,
 19 operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- 20 E. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities
 21 for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from
 22 adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a
 23 harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- 24 F. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction
 25 activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction
 26 from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on
 27 completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to
 28 produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
- 29 G. Electric Power Service: Use of Owner's existing electric power service will be permitted, as
 30 long as equipment is maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner.
- 31 H. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size,
 32 capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
- 33 1. Install electric power service.
 34 2. Connect temporary service to Owner's existing power source, as directed by Owner.
- 35 I. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for
 36 construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
- 37 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements
 38 without operating entire system.



- 1 J. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all
2 construction personnel. Install two telephone line(s) for each field office.
- 3 1. Provide additional telephone lines for the following:
- 4 a. Provide a dedicated telephone line for each facsimile machine and computer in
5 each field office.
- 6 2. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers including police and fire
7 departments, Contractor's home office, Architect's office, Owner's office, Principal
8 subcontractors' field and home offices.
- 9 3. Provide superintendent with cellular telephone or portable two-way radio for use when
10 away from field office.
- 11 K. Electronic Communication Service: Provide temporary electronic communication service,
12 including electronic mail in field office.
- 13 **3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION**
- 14 A. General: Comply with the following:
- 15 1. Provide incombustible construction for offices, shops, and sheds located within
16 construction area or within 30 feet (9 m) of building lines. Comply with NFPA 241.
- 17 2. Maintain support facilities until near Substantial Completion. Remove before Substantial
18 Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use
19 permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- 20 B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas
21 adequate for construction operations, if necessary, for completion of the work.
- 22 1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment
23 as required to minimize dust.
- 24 2. Provide dirt control treatment to prevent tracking of construction dirt onto paved roads;
25 immediately remove dirt tracked onto paved roads off site.
- 26 C. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: If necessary for completion of the work. Construct and
27 maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate
28 temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas.
29 Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for
30 construction operations.
- 31 1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and
32 paved areas.
- 33 2. Prepare sub-grade and install sub-base and base for temporary roads and paved areas
34 according to Division 2 Section "Earthwork."
- 35 3. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, re-
36 grading, proof-rolling, compacting, and testing.
- 37 4. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until
38 immediately before Substantial Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course
39 pavement before installation of final course according to Division 2 Section "Hot-Mix
40 Asphalt Paving."
- 41 D. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 42 1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.



- 1 2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- 2 E. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.
- 3 F. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
4 Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
- 5 1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining
6 properties nor endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
- 7 G. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Provide Project identification and other signs as
8 directed by Owner]. Install signs where indicated to inform public and individuals seeking
9 entrance to Project. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
- 10 1. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
11 2. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.
- 12 H. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle
13 waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
14 Comply with Division 1 Section "Execution Requirements" for progress cleaning requirements.
- 15 I. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
- 16 1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and
17 equipment" and not temporary facilities.
- 18 J. Temporary Elevator Use: Refer to Division 14 Sections for temporary use of new elevators.
- 19 K. Elevator Use: Use of new elevators will be permitted, as long as elevators are cleaned and
20 maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore elevators to
21 condition existing before initial use, including replacing worn cables, guide shoes, and similar
22 items of limited life.
- 23 1. Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other procedures to protect
24 elevator car and entrance doors and frame. If, despite such protection, elevators become
25 damaged, engage elevator Installer to restore damaged work so no evidence remains of
26 correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in field to the shop, make
27 required repairs and refinish entire unit, or provide new units as required.
- 28 L. Temporary Stairs: Until permanent stairs are available, provide temporary stairs where ladders
29 are not adequate.
- 30 M. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Cover finished, permanent stairs with protective covering
31 of plywood or similar material so finishes will be undamaged at time of acceptance.
- 32 **3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION**
- 33 A. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct
34 construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations and that
35 minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable
36 effects.
- 37 B. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and
38 discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways,
39 according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.



- 1 C. Storm-water Control: Comply with authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and
 2 around excavations and sub-grade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of storm-water
 3 from heavy rains.
- 4 D. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line
 5 of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root
 6 systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- 7 E. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and
 8 harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control
 9 procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial
 10 Completion. Obtain extended warranty for Owner. Perform control operations lawfully, using
 11 environmentally safe materials.
- 12 F. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure
 13 fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by
 14 entrance gates.
- 15 1. Extent of Fence: As **required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined**
 16 **sufficient to accommodate construction operations and as indicated on Drawings.**
 17 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized
 18 personnel. Provide Owner and/or Owner's police/security force with one set of keys.
- 19 G. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install substantial temporary enclosure around partially
 20 completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance,
 21 vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security.
- 22 H. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having
 23 jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- 24 I. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress
 25 and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar
 26 activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
- 27 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is not complete, insulate
 28 temporary enclosures.
- 29 J. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types
 30 needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with
 31 NFPA 241.
- 32 1. Prohibit smoking in hazardous fire-exposure areas.
 33 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar
 34 sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 35 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel
 36 at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be
 37 followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
 38 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning
 39 sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed.
 40 Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.
- 41 K. Prohibit smoking within building upon startup of HVAC systems.



1 **3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL**

2 A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and
3 abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.

4 B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.

5 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control,
6 ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated
7 results and to avoid possibility of damage.

8 C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and
9 protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.

10 D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has
11 ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than
12 Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may
13 have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work,
14 clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

15 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor.
16 Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.

17 2. At Substantial Completion, clean and renovate permanent facilities used during
18 construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Division 1
19 Section "Closeout Procedures."

20 **END OF SECTION 01 50 00**



1 **SECTION 01 60 00 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for
5 use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on
6 products; special warranties; product substitutions; and comparable products.

7 B. See Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties for Contract closeout.

8 C. See Divisions 2 through 49 Sections for specific requirements for warranties on products and
9 installations specified to be warranted.

10 **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

11 A. Products: Items purchased for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or
12 taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material,"
13 "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.

14 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or
15 model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product
16 literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.

17 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or
18 facility, except that products consisting of recycled-content materials are allowed, unless
19 explicitly stated otherwise. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not
20 considered new products.

21 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal
22 process, or where indicated as a product substitution, to have the indicated qualities
23 related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties,
24 appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.

25 B. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from
26 those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.

27 C. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: Where a specific manufacturer's product is named and
28 accompanied by the words "basis of design," including make or model number or other
29 designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service
30 performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of
31 evaluating comparable products of other named manufacturers.

32 **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

33 A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product
34 or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and
35 title and Drawing numbers and titles.

36 1. Substitution Request Form: Use facsimile of form provided at end of Section.

37 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following,
38 as applicable:

39 a. Statement indicating why specified material or product cannot be provided.

40 b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or modifications needed to
41 other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate
42 contractors, that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.



- 1 c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of
 2 the Work specified. Significant qualities may include attributes such as
 3 performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and
 4 requirements indicated.
- 5 d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and
 6 installation procedures.
- 7 e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
- 8 f. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and
 9 addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
- 10 g. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test
 11 results for compliance with requirements indicated.
- 12 h. Research/evaluation reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for
 13 Project, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having
 14 jurisdiction.
- 15 i. Detailed comparison of Contractor's Construction Schedule using proposed
 16 substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall
 17 Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided
 18 within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's
 19 letterhead, stating lack of availability or delays in delivery.
- 20 j. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
- 21 k. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in
 22 the Contract Documents and is appropriate for applications indicated.
- 23 l. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently
 24 become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce
 25 indicated results.
- 26 3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or
 27 documentation for evaluation within 7 days of receipt of a request for substitution.
 28 Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within
 29 15 days of receipt of request, or 7 days of receipt of additional information or
 30 documentation, whichever is later.
- 31 a. Form of Acceptance: Change Order.
- 32 b. Use product specified if Architect cannot make a decision on use of a proposed
 33 substitution within time allocated.
- 34 B. Comparable Product Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify
 35 product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section
 36 number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
- 37 1. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or
 38 documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a comparable product request.
 39 Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product
 40 request within 15 days of receipt of request, or 7 days of receipt of additional information
 41 or documentation, whichever is later.
- 42 a. Form of Acceptance: As specified in Division 1 Section "Submittal Procedures."
- 43 b. Use product specified if Architect cannot make a decision on use of a comparable
 44 product request within time allocated.
- 45 C. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Division 1
 46 Section "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.



1 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 2 A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more
 3 products for use on Project, product selected shall be compatible with products previously
 4 selected, even if previously selected products were also options.

5 **1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 6 A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage,
 7 deterioration, and loss, including theft. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

- 8 B. Delivery and Handling:

- 9 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent
 10 overcrowding of construction spaces.
 11 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that
 12 are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other
 13 losses.
 14 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original
 15 sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for
 16 handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
 17 4. Inspect products on delivery to ensure compliance with the Contract Documents and to
 18 ensure that products are undamaged and properly protected.

- 19 C. Storage:

- 20 1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
 21 2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
 22 3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight
 23 enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
 24 4. Store cementitious products and materials on elevated platforms.
 25 5. Store foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of
 26 installation and concealment.
 27 6. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity,
 28 ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
 29 7. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.

30 **1.6 PRODUCT WARRANTIES**

- 31 A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other
 32 warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on
 33 product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract
 34 Documents.

- 35 1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Preprinted written warranty published by individual
 36 manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to
 37 Owner.
 38 2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by or incorporated into the Contract
 39 Documents, either to extend time limit provided by manufacturer's warranty or to provide
 40 more rights for Owner.

- 41 B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and
 42 identification, ready for execution. Submit a draft for approval before final execution.

- 43 1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and
 44 properly executed.



- 1 2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a
2 written document using appropriate form properly executed.
3 3. Refer to Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for specific content requirements and particular
4 requirements for submitting special warranties.

5 C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."

6 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

7 **2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES**

8 A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents,
9 that are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, that are new at time of installation.

- 10 1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items
11 needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
12 2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are
13 specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used
14 successfully in similar situations on other projects.
15 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with
16 requirements of the Contract Documents.
17 4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make
18 selection.
19 5. Where products are accompanied by the term "match sample," sample to be matched is
20 Architect's, unless indicated otherwise.
21 6. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications
22 establish "salient characteristics" of products.

23 B. Product Selection Procedures:

- 24 1. Product: Where Specifications name a single product and manufacturer, provide the
25 named product that complies with requirements.
26 2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source,
27 provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements.
28 3. Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both products and
29 manufacturers, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements.
30 4. Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a
31 product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements.
32 5. Available Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both products and
33 manufacturers, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, that complies
34 with requirements. Comply with provisions in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article for
35 consideration of an unnamed product.
36 6. Available Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers, provide a
37 product by one of the manufacturers listed, or an unnamed manufacturer, that complies
38 with requirements. Comply with provisions in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article for
39 consideration of an unnamed product.
40 7. Product Options: Where Specifications indicate that sizes, profiles, and dimensional
41 requirements on Drawings are based on a specific product or system, provide the
42 specified product or system. Comply with provisions in Part 2 "Product Substitutions"
43 Article for consideration of an unnamed product or system.
44 8. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product and include a list of
45 manufacturers, provide the specified product or a comparable product by one of the other
46 named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions,
47 and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with provisions
48 in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by the
49 other named manufacturers.



- 1 9. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require matching an established
2 Sample, select a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's
3 sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
- 4 a. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other
5 specified requirements, comply with provisions in Part 2 "Product Substitutions"
6 Article for proposal of product.
- 7 10. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected from
8 manufacturer's colors, patterns, textures" or a similar phrase, select a product that
9 complies with other specified requirements.
- 10 a. Standard Range: Where Specifications include the phrase "standard range of
11 colors, patterns, textures" or similar phrase, Architect will select color, pattern,
12 density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that does not include premium
13 items.
14 b. Full Range: Where Specifications include the phrase "full range of colors, patterns,
15 textures" or similar phrase, Architect will select color, pattern, density, or texture
16 from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

17 **2.2 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTIONS**

- 18 A. Timing: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 30 calendar days after
19 the Notice to Proceed. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at
20 discretion of Architect.
- 21 B. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following
22 conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return
23 requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- 24 1. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy
25 conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner
26 must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect
27 for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and
28 similar considerations.
29 2. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
30 3. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce
31 indicated results.
32 4. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
33 5. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's Construction Schedule.
34 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having
35 jurisdiction.
36 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
37 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
38 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.

39 **2.3 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS**

- 40 A. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the
41 following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will
42 return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- 43 1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require extensive revisions to the Contract
44 Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the
45 indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.



- 1
 - 2
 - 3
 - 4
 - 5
 - 6
 - 7
2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
 3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
 4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
 5. Samples, if requested.

8 **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

9 **END OF SECTION 01 60 00**



1 **SECTION 01 70 00 – PROJECT EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes general procedural requirements governing execution of the Work
5 including, but not limited to, the following:

- 6 1. Construction layout.
- 7 2. Field engineering and surveying.
- 8 3. General installation of products.
- 9 4. Progress cleaning.
- 10 5. Starting and adjusting.
- 11 6. Protection of installed construction.
- 12 7. Correction of the Work.

13 B. See Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project
14 Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels,
15 and final cleaning.

16 **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

17 A. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor certifying that location and elevation of
18 improvements comply with requirements.

19 B. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept
20 hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal; if any.

21 C. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by land surveyor.

22 D. Final Property Survey: Submit 3 copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.

23 **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

24 A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in
25 jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying
26 services of the kind indicated.

27 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

28 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

29 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

30 A. Existing Utilities: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction
31 indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the
32 existence and location of underground utilities and other construction affecting the Work.

- 33 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of
34 sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; and underground electrical
35 services.
- 36 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities
37 serving Project site.



- 1 B. Acceptance of Conditions: Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or
 2 Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
 3 and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
- 4 1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing
 5 finishes or primers.
 6 2. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of
 7 connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 8 3. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are
 9 to be installed.
 10 4. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 11 Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

12 3.2 PREPARATION

- 13 A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or
 14 relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances
 15 located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- 16 B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck
 17 measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to
 18 other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before
 19 fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the
 20 Work.
- 21 C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown
 22 diagrammatically on Drawings.
- 23 D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for
 24 clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect. Include a
 25 detailed description of problem encountered, together with recommendations for changing the
 26 Contract Documents. Submit on RFI form.

27 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- 28 A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on
 29 Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are
 30 discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- 31 B. General: Engage a land surveyor to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
- 32 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of
 33 construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
 34 2. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain
 35 required dimensions.
 36 3. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
 37 4. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
 38 5. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable
 39 tolerances.
 40 6. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established
 41 by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 42 C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill
 43 and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and invert elevations.
- 44 D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building
 45 foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and



- 1 electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels.
2 Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- 3 E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and
4 levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name
5 and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log
6 available for reference by Architect.
- 7 **3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING**
- 8 A. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference
9 points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control
10 points during construction operations.
- 11 B. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site,
12 referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having
13 jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
- 14 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record
15 Documents.
- 16 C. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work
17 requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations,
18 angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.
- 19 1. Final Property Survey: Prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real
20 property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by land surveyor, that
21 principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown
22 on the survey.
- 23 **3.5 INSTALLATION**
- 24 A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and
25 elevation, as indicated.
- 26 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
27 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance
28 and ease of removal for replacement.
29 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas, unless otherwise indicated.
- 30 B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in
31 applications indicated.
- 32 C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results.
33 Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- 34 D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or
35 loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- 36 E. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- 37 F. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be
38 factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that
39 adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated
40 requirements.



- 1 G. Anchors and Fasteners: Provide anchors and fasteners as required to anchor each component
2 securely in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work.
- 3 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at
4 heights directed by Architect.
5 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
6 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and
7 directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and
8 items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver
9 such items to Project site in time for installation.
- 10 H. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated,
11 arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- 12 I. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered
13 hazardous.
- 14 **3.6 PROGRESS CLEANING**
- 15 A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Coordinate progress
16 cleaning for joint-use areas where more than one installer has worked. Enforce requirements
17 strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
- 18 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and
19 debris.
20 2. Do not hold materials more than 7 days during normal weather or 3 days if the
21 temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
22 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste.
23 Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- 24 B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- 25 C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for
26 proper execution of the Work.
- 27 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
28 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the
29 entire work area, as appropriate.
- 30 D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written
31 instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials
32 specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning
33 materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed
34 surfaces.
- 35 E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- 36 F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to
37 ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- 38 G. Waste Disposal: Burying or burning waste materials on-site will not be permitted. Washing
39 waste materials down sewers or into waterways will not be permitted.
- 40 H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining
41 materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from
42 damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.



1 I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through
 2 the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure
 3 operability without damaging effects.

4 J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the
 5 construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or
 6 otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

7 **3.7 STARTING AND ADJUSTING**

8 A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove
 9 malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.

10 B. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding. Adjust equipment for proper
 11 operation.

12 C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
 13 Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

14 D. Manufacturer's Field Service: If a factory-authorized service representative is required to
 15 inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, comply with qualification
 16 requirements in Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements."

17 **3.8 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION**

18 A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage
 19 or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

20 B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

21 **3.9 CORRECTION OF THE WORK**

22 A. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Restore damaged substrates and
 23 finishes. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Cutting and Patching."

24 1. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up
 25 with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment.

26 B. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.

27 C. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be
 28 repaired without visible evidence of repair.

29 D. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components
 30 that cannot be repaired.

31 E. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass or reflective surfaces.

32 **END OF SECTION 01 70 00**



Advancement
of Construction
Technology

REQUEST FOR INTERPRETATION

Project: _____ R.F.I. Number: _____
 _____ From: _____
 To: _____ Date: _____
 _____ A/E Project Number: _____
 Re: _____ Contract For: _____

Specification Section:	Paragraph:	Drawing Reference:	Detail:

Request:

Signed by: _____ Date: _____

Response:

Attachments

Response From:	To:	Date Rec'd:	Date Ret'd:

Signed by: _____ Date: _____

Copies: Owner Consultants _____ _____ _____ _____ File



1 **SECTION 01 73 10 - CUTTING AND PATCHING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 4 A. This Section includes procedural requirements for cutting and patching.
- 5 B. See Divisions 2 through 49 Sections for specific requirements and limitations applicable to
6 cutting and patching individual parts of the Work.
- 7 C. See Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for patching fire-rated
8 construction.

9 **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Cutting and Patching Proposal: Submit a proposal describing procedures at least 10 days
11 before the time cutting and patching will be performed, requesting approval to proceed. Include
12 the following information:
- 13 1. Extent: Describe cutting and patching, show how they will be performed, and indicate
14 why they cannot be avoided.
 - 15 2. Changes to In-Place Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to
16 structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building's
17 appearance and other significant visual elements.
 - 18 3. Products: List products to be used and firms or entities that will perform the Work.
 - 19 4. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
 - 20 5. Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: List services/systems that cutting and
21 patching procedures will disturb or affect. List services/systems that will be relocated and
22 those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate how long services/systems will be
23 disrupted.
 - 24 6. Structural Elements: Where cutting and patching involve adding reinforcement to
25 structural elements, submit details and engineering calculations showing integration of
26 reinforcement with original structure.
 - 27 7. Architect's Approval: Obtain approval of cutting and patching proposal before cutting and
28 patching. Approval does not waive right to later require removal and replacement of
29 unsatisfactory work.

30 **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 31 1. Structural Elements: Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could
32 change their load-carrying capacity or load-deflection ratio.
 - 33 2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components
34 in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in
35 increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
 - 36 3. Miscellaneous Elements: Do not cut and patch miscellaneous elements or related
37 components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in
38 reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance
39 or decreased operational life or safety.
- 40 B. Visual Requirements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual
41 evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch construction exposed on the exterior or
42 in occupied spaces in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's



1 aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a
2 visually unsatisfactory manner.

3 **1.4 WARRANTY**

4 A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged
5 during cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing
6 warranties or warranties to be issued for this contract.

7 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

8 **2.1 MATERIALS**

9 A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.

10 B. In-Place Materials: Use materials identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use
11 materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.

12 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when
13 installed, will match the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

14 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

15 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

16 A. Examine surfaces to be cut and patched and conditions under which cutting and patching are to
17 be performed.

18 1. Compatibility: Before patching, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates,
19 including compatibility with in-place finishes or primers.
20 2. Proceed with installation only after unsafe or unsatisfactory conditions have been
21 corrected.

22 **3.2 PREPARATION**

23 A. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.

24 B. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage.
25 Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be
26 exposed during cutting and patching operations.

27 C. Adjoining Areas: Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to
28 adjoining areas.

29 D. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems
30 are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before
31 cutting to minimize interruption to occupied areas.

32 **3.3 PERFORMANCE**

33 A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and
34 patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.

35 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance
36 of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their
37 original condition.



- 1 B. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar
2 operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or
3 adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply
4 with original Installer's written recommendations.
- 5 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not
6 hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots as small as possible, neatly to size
7 required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover
8 openings when not in use.
- 9 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
- 10 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a
11 diamond-core drill.
- 12 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 2 Sections
13 where required by cutting and patching operations.
- 14 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be
15 removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent
16 entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
- 17 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- 18 C. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations
19 following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as
20 possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other
21 Sections.
- 22 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to
23 demonstrate integrity of installation.
- 24 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish
25 restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of
26 patching and refinishing.
- 27 3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area
28 into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even
29 surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall
30 coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and
31 appearance.
- 32 4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane
33 surface of uniform appearance.
- 34 5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a
35 weathertight condition.
- 36 D. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Completely
37 remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials.

38 **END OF SECTION 01 73 10**



SECTION 01 73 93 - TIME EXTENSION - WEATHER

PART 1 - GENERAL:

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, and Division-1 Specifications, apply to work of this section.

PART 2 - TIME EXTENSIONS

2.1 EXTENSIONS:

- A. Extensions for weather may be granted for weather in excess of normal that adversely impacts ongoing activities on the site that have successive following activities that must be completed in a required sequence for completion of the project within the specified performance period. These would be generally labeled as Critical Path Activities when that type of schedule is used.

2.2 TIME EXTENSIONS FOR UNUSUALLY SEVERE WEATHER:

- A. In order for an award of a time extension under this clause, the following conditions must be satisfied:
 - 1. The weather experienced at the project site during the contract period must be found to be unusually severe, that is, more severe than the adverse weather anticipated for the project location during any given month.
 - 2. The unusually severe weather must actually cause a delay to the completion of the project. They delay must be beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor.
- B. The following is a schedule of monthly anticipated adverse weather days. This will constitute the base line for monthly weather time evaluations. The Contractor's progress schedule must reflect these anticipated adverse weather delays in weather dependent activities.

MONTHLY ANTICIPATED ADVERSE WEATHER DAYS

<u>JAN</u>	<u>FEB</u>	<u>MAR</u>	<u>APR</u>	<u>MAY</u>	<u>JUN</u>	<u>JUL</u>	<u>AUG</u>	<u>SEP</u>	<u>OCT</u>	<u>NOV</u>	<u>DEC</u>
5	4	5	3	3	5	7	7	5	3	4	4

- C. Upon acknowledgment of the Notice to Proceed and continuing throughout the contract, the Contractor – Construction Manager will record on the daily report the occurrence of adverse weather and resultant impact to normally schedule work. Actual adverse weather delay days must prevent work on critical activities for 50 percent or more of the Contractor's scheduled work day.

The number of actual adverse weather delay days shall include days impacted by actual adverse weather (even if adverse weather occurred in previous month), be calculated chronologically from the first to the last day of each month, and be recorded as full days. If the number of actual adverse weather delay days exceeds the number of days anticipated in paragraph B above, the Architect will convert any qualifying delays to calendar days, giving full consideration for equivalent fair weather work days, and issue a modification.



1 **2.3 REQUEST FOR WEATHER EXTENSION:**

- 2
- 3 A. Any request for a time extension for weather must include:
- 4
- 5 1. Weather data from Military Installation or National Weather Services for the time period in
- 6 question.
- 7 2. Impact on ongoing activities.
- 8 3. Relation of those activities to completion of the project.
- 9 4. Other information and documentation as requested by the Architect
- 10 5. Requests for time extensions as indicated above must be made in writing to the Architect no
- 11 more than seven days after the period of excessive weather. No time extensions will be
- 12 granted for weather if not requested within seven days as indicated above.
- 13

14 **2.4 HURRICANE PREPAREDNESS PLAN**

- 15
- 16 A. Contractor – Construction Manager is required to take special care and precautions in the event of
- 17 severe inclement weather.
- 18
- 19 B. A normal condition of alertness shall be maintained in the Work area during the hurricane season
- 20 unless a higher condition of hurricane readiness is prescribed. Contractor – Construction Manager
- 21 shall develop a Hurricane Readiness Plan for Work areas and insure that the plan provides
- 22 necessary precautionary measures and procedures to be employed by their forces prior to the
- 23 occurrence of a hurricane or destructive wind storm in the area. The plan shall be placed into effect
- 24 for the hurricane season, designated as beginning on 15 May of each year and ending on 30
- 25 November.
- 26

27 **CONDITIONS OF READINESS**

28

29 Seasonal/Hurricane Condition: Hurricane Season Readiness:

30

- 31 Condition IV: Storm may hit this area in 72 hours.
- 32 Condition III: Storm may hit this area in 48 hours.
- 33 Condition II: Storm may hit this area in 24 hours.
- 34 Condition I: Storm will hit this area.
- 35

- 36 C. Condition III and II - In the event U.S. Weather Bureau sets special weather conditions, Contractor –
- 37 Construction Manager shall take precautions established when Condition III or Condition II has been
- 38 set.
- 39
- 40 1. Inspect and adequately secure the Work depending on weekday or weekend time period.
- 41
- 42 D. Condition I - GC shall inspect the site and Work at an appropriate time to insure the area is secure
- 43 and consistent with the current Condition of Readiness in effect or expected to be placed in effect. If
- 44 it is likely Condition I will be set during the weekend or after regular working hours, secure the Work
- 45 area in accordance with the expected condition prior to close of regular working hours.
- 46
- 47 E. Preparations - Loose materials shall be secured. Of utmost concern is the amount of material,
- 48 equipment, vehicles, storage sheds, state of site drainage, openings/glass areas, roof conditions that
- 49 can become missiles in heavy winds and cause damage to buildings, personnel and other property.
- 50

51 **END OF SECTION 01 73 93**

52



1 **SECTION 01 74 19 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:

8 1. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.

- 9 B. Related Requirements:

10 1. Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry" for disposal requirements for masonry waste.

11 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

12 A. Construction Waste: Building, structure, and site improvement materials and other solid waste
13 resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste
14 includes packaging.

15 B. Demolition Waste: Building, structure, and site improvement materials resulting from demolition
16 operations.

17 C. Disposal: Removal of demolition or construction waste and subsequent deposit in landfill,
18 incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, or designated spoil areas on Owner's
19 property.

20 **1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP**

21 A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition and construction waste becomes property of Contractor.

22 B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and
23 their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner
24 that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.

25 1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.



26 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

27 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

28 **3.1 DISPOSAL OF WASTE**

29 A. General: Remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or
30 incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

31 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of
32 accumulate on-site.

33 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces
34 and areas.

35 B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.

36 **END OF SECTION 01 74 19**



1 **SECTION 01 77 00 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout,
5 including, but not limited to, the following:

- 6 1. Inspection procedures.
7 2. Warranties.
8 3. Final cleaning.

9 B. See Division 1 Section "Payment Procedures" for requirements for Applications for Payment for
10 Substantial and Final Completion.

11 C. See Division 1 Section "Photographic Documentation" for submitting Final Completion
12 construction photographs and negatives.

13 D. See Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record
14 Specifications, and Record Product Data.

15 E. See Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance
16 manual requirements.

17 F. See Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training" for requirements for instructing Owner's
18 personnel.

19 G. See Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for specific closeout and special cleaning requirements for
20 the Work in those Sections.

21 **1.2 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

22 A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial
23 Completion, complete the following. List items below that are incomplete in request.

- 24 1. Notify the Architect in writing at least ten (10) business days in advance of the requested
25 date of substantial completion.
26 2. Prepare and attach to item no. 1 above, a list of items not completed, the value of items
27 on the list, and reasons why the Work is not complete.
28 3. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
29 4. Submit specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final
30 certifications, and similar documents.
31 5. Obtain and submit releases permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to
32 services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar
33 releases.
34 6. Prepare and submit Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals,
35 Final Completion construction photographs, damage or settlement surveys, property
36 surveys, and similar final record information.
37 7. Deliver Attic Stock (tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items) to location
38 designated by Owner. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where
39 applicable.
40 8. Complete startup testing of systems.
41 9. Submit test/adjust/balance records.



- 1 10. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups,
 2 construction tools, and similar elements.
 3 11. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
 4 12. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and
 5 maintenance.
 6 13. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
 7 14. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual
 8 defects.
- 9 B. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection for Substantial Completion (see item 1.2.A.1
 10 above). On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor
 11 of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after
 12 inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items
 13 identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
- 14 1. Re-inspection: Request re-inspection when the Work identified in previous inspections
 15 as incomplete is completed or corrected. If re-inspection of the above referenced items
 16 are required by the Architect/Engineers due to failure of any of the Work to comply with
 17 the Contract Documents, the Owner will deduct the costs incurred by the
 18 Architect/Engineers by such re-inspections from the Contract amount. If necessary, re-
 19 inspection will be repeated until completed.
 20 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.

21 1.3 FINAL COMPLETION

- 22 A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting final inspection for determining date of Final
 23 Completion, complete the following:
- 24 1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Division 1 Section "Payment
 25 Procedures."
 26 2. Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be
 27 completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. The certified copy
 28 of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for
 29 acceptance.
 30 3. Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance
 31 requirements.
 32 4. Submit pest-control final inspection report and warranty.
 33 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products,
 34 equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training videotapes.
- 35 B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection for acceptance. On receipt of request,
 36 Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements.
 37 Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of
 38 construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
- 39 1. Re-inspection: Request re-inspection when the Work identified in previous inspections
 40 as incomplete is completed or corrected. If re-inspection of the above referenced items
 41 are required by the Architect/Engineers due to failure of any of the Work to comply with
 42 the Contract Documents, the Owner will deduct the costs incurred by the
 43 Architect/Engineers by such re-inspections from the Contract amount. If necessary, re-
 44 inspection will be repeated until completed.



1 **1.4 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)**

2 A. Preparation: Submit two copies of list. Include name and identification of each space and area
3 affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including,
4 if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.

5 1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and
6 proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.

7 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling,
8 individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.

9 **1.5 SUBMITTALS**

10 A. Warranties: Submit written warranties for the Work.

11 1. The Contractor shall review the technical specifications and compile a list of all general and
12 special warranties required.

13 2. The Contractor shall prepare a letter, to the Architect, certifying that they have reviewed the
14 technical specification as stated above, and have confirmed that all warranties accurately
15 reflect the requirements of the technical specification for content, warranty period and
16 effective date. This shall be bound in the front of the warranty manual

17 3. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of the
18 Project Manual.

19 a. Bind contractor contact information, warranties, bonds and lien releases in heavy-duty, 3-
20 ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents,
21 and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper. Items such as Operation and Maintenance
22 manuals shall be bound separately.

23 b. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark
24 tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or
25 installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone
26 number of Installer.

27 c. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES,"
28 Project name, and name of Contractor.

29 B. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

30 C. Inspections-Pest Control: Engage an experienced, licensed exterminator to make a final
31 inspection and rid the Project of rodents, insects, and other pests. Prepare a report, and submit
32 to the Architect.

33 D. Provide Record Survey of site utilities, including future stub outs.

34

35 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

36 **2.1 MATERIALS**

37 A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or
38 fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially
39 hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 FINAL CLEANING**

3 A. General: Provide final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with
4 local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.

5 B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each
6 surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and
7 maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

8 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of
9 Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a portion of Project:

10 a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities,
11 including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and
12 other foreign substances.

13 b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other
14 foreign deposits.

15 c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured
16 surface.

17 d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from
18 Project site.

19 e. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition,
20 free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural
21 weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original
22 condition.

23 f. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs,
24 plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.

25 g. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.

26 h. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap;
27 shampoo if visible soil or stains remain.

28 i. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows.
29 Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials.
30 Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged transparent materials.
31 Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.

32 j. Remove labels that are not permanent.

33 k. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred, exposed finishes and surfaces.
34 Replace finishes and surfaces that cannot be satisfactorily repaired or restored or
35 that already show evidence of repair or restoration.

36 1) Do not paint over "UL" and similar labels, including mechanical and electrical
37 nameplates.

38 l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and
39 similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and
40 other foreign substances.

41 m. Replace parts subject to unusual operating conditions.

42 n. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains
43 resulting from water exposure.

44 o. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed
45 surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.

46 p. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
47 Replace burned-out bulbs, and those noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and
48 defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply
49 with requirements for new fixtures.

50 q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.



1 C. Comply with safety standards for cleaning. Do not burn waste materials. Do not bury debris or
2 excess materials on Owner's property. Do not discharge volatile, harmful, or dangerous
3 materials into drainage systems. Remove waste materials from Project site and dispose of
4 lawfully.

5 **END OF SECTION 01 77 00**



Advancement
of Construction
Technology

PUNCH LIST

Project: _____

 To (Contractor): _____

From (A/E): _____
 Site Visit Date: _____
 A/E Project Number: _____
 Contract For: _____

The following items require the attention of the Contractor for completion or correction. This list may not be all-inclusive, and the failure to include any items on this list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

Item Number	Room Number	Location (Area)	Description	Correction/Completion Date	Verification A/E Check
-------------	-------------	-----------------	-------------	----------------------------	------------------------

Attachments

Signed by: _____ Date: _____

Copies: Owner Consultants _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ File



1 **SECTION 01 77 10 - WARRANTIES AND BONDS**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **REQUIREMENTS:**

- 6
7 A. Preparation and submittal of warranties and bonds.
8
9 B. Schedule of submittals.

10
11 **RELATED REQUIREMENTS:**

- 12
13 A. Section of 01 77 00 – Closeout Procedures
14
15 B. Individual Specifications Sections: Warranties and bonds required for specific Products or work.
16
17 Refer to individual specification sections for Warranties and Bonds

18
19 **FORM OF SUBMITTALS:**

20
21 Bind with operation and maintenance manuals specified in Section 01 78 23 Operation and
22 Maintenance Data.

23
24 **PREPARATION OF SUBMITTALS:**

- 25
26 A. Obtain warranties and bonds, executed in triplicate (3) by responsible subcontractors, suppliers, and
27 manufacturers within ten days after completion of the applicable item of work. Except for items put
28 into use with Owner's permission, leave date of beginning of time of warranty until the Date of
29 Substantial completion is determined.
30
31 B. Verify that documents are in proper form, contain full information, and are notarized.
32
33 C. Co-execute submittals when required.
34
35 D. Retain warranties and bonds until time specified for submittal.
36

37 **TIME OF SUBMITTALS:**

- 38
39 A. For equipment or component parts of equipment put into service during construction with Owner's
40 permission, submit documents within ten days after acceptance.
41
42 B. For items of Work when acceptance is delayed beyond Date of Substantial Completion, submit within
43 ten days after acceptance, listing the date of acceptance as the beginning of the warranty period.
44

45 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

46
47 Not used.
48
49
50
51
52



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2
3 **WARRANTY SERVICE**

- 4
5 A. The Contractor shall proceed with warranty repair or replacement within 24 hours of being notified
6 that a warranty deficiency exists.
7
8 B. In order to insure prompt and effective correction of warranty deficiencies, the Contractor shall, if he
9 or any of his Subcontractors do not maintain fully staffed service organizations within Leon County,
10 designate firms within Leon County authorized to perform warranty work on the Contractor's behalf.
11 The name, addresses, and phone numbers of these designated firms shall be included within the
12 closeout documents, along with affidavits signed by officers of the designated firms stating that they
13 have been retained and will perform required warranty service.
14
15
16
17

18 **END OF SECTION 01 77 10.**



1 **SECTION 01 78 23 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and
5 maintenance manuals, including the following:

- 6 1. Emergency manuals.
- 7 2. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- 8 3. Maintenance manuals for the care and maintenance of products, materials, and finishes,
9 systems and equipment.

10 B. See Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for specific operation and maintenance manual
11 requirements for the Work in those Sections.

12 **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

13 A. Manual: Submit one copy of each manual in final form at least 15 days before final inspection.
14 Architect will return copy with comments.

- 15 1. Correct or modify each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit 3 copies of
16 each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments.

17 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

18 **2.1 MANUALS, GENERAL**

19 A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each
20 system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a
21 system. Each manual shall contain a title page, table of contents, and manual contents.

22 B. Title Page: Enclose title page in transparent plastic sleeve. Include the following information:

- 23 1. Subject matter included in manual.
- 24 2. Name and address of Project.
- 25 3. Name and address of Owner.
- 26 4. Date of submittal.
- 27 5. Name, address, and telephone number of Contractor.
- 28 6. Name and address of Architect.
- 29 7. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.

30 C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to
31 the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project
32 Manual.

33 D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by
34 system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems,
35 equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.

- 36 1. Binders: Heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to
37 accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on
38 spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded
39 oversize sheets.



- 1 a. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND
 2 MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents.
 3 Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
- 4 2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section. Mark each tab
 5 to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment
 6 included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number
 7 and title of Project Manual.
- 8 3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic
 9 software diskettes for computerized electronic equipment.
- 10 4. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
- 11 a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and
 12 use as foldouts.
- 13 b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled
 14 envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in
 15 manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents,
 16 and drawing locations.

17 **2.2 EMERGENCY MANUALS**

- 18 A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for type of emergency, emergency
 19 instructions, and emergency procedures.
- 20 B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include
 21 instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component
 22 for fire, gas leak, water leak, power failure, water outage, equipment failure and chemical
 23 release or spill.
- 24 C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages,
 25 and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for
 26 notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- 27 D. Emergency Procedures: Include instructions on stopping, shutdown instructions for each type of
 28 emergency, operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits, and required
 29 sequences for electric or electronic systems.

30 **2.3 OPERATION MANUALS**

- 31 A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual
 32 Specification Sections and equipment descriptions, operating standards, operating procedures,
 33 operating logs, wiring and control diagrams, and license requirements.
- 34 B. Descriptions: Include the following:
- 35
- 36
- 37 1. Product name and model number.
- 38 2. Manufacturer's name.
- 39 3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
- 40 4. Equipment function.
- 41 5. Operating characteristics.
- 42 6. Limiting conditions.
- 43 7. Performance curves.
- 44 8. Engineering data and tests.
- 45 9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.



1 C. Operating Procedures: Include start-up, break-in, and control procedures; stopping and normal
 2 shutdown instructions; routine, normal, seasonal, and weekend operating instructions; and
 3 required sequences for electric or electronic systems.

4 D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as
 5 installed.

6 E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed and identify color-coding where required for
 7 identification.

8 **2.4 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

9 A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include
 10 source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources,
 11 and warranties and bonds, as described below.

12 B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and
 13 arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and
 14 telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference
 15 Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.

16 C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:

- 17 1. Product name and model number.
- 18 2. Manufacturer's name.
- 19 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
- 20 4. Material and chemical composition.
- 21 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.

22 D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and inspection
 23 procedures, types of cleaning agents, methods of cleaning, schedule for cleaning and
 24 maintenance, and repair instructions.

25 E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and
 26 related services.

27 F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and
 28 conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

29 **2.5 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

30 A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include
 31 source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures,
 32 maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance
 33 service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.

34 B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual,
 35 identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product,
 36 list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service
 37 agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.

38 C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation
 39 including maintenance instructions, drawings and diagrams for maintenance, nomenclature of
 40 parts and components, and recommended spare parts for each component part or piece of
 41 equipment:



- 1 D. Maintenance Procedures: Include test and inspection instructions, troubleshooting guide,
 2 disassembly instructions, and adjusting instructions, and demonstration and training videotape if
 3 available, that detail essential maintenance procedures:
- 4 E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of
 5 required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine
 6 maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
- 7 F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts
 8 identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources
 9 of maintenance materials and related services.
- 10 G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and
 11 conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

12 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

13 **3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION**

- 14 A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures
 15 for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies
 16 indicated.
- 17 B. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and
 18 maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- 19 C. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance
 20 data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment
 21 not part of a system.
- 22 D. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only
 23 sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or
 24 component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format,
 25 identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data
 26 applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
- 27 E. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the
 28 relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence
 29 and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in Record Drawings
 30 to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
- 31 1. Do not use original Project Record Documents as part of operation and maintenance
 32 manuals.
- 33 F. Comply with Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and
 34 maintenance documentation.

35 **END OF SECTION 01 78 23**



1 **SECTION 01 78 39 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 4 A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record
5 Documents, including the following:
- 6 1. Record Drawings.
7 2. Record Specifications.
8 3. Record Product Data.
9 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- 10
11 B. Related Requirements:
- 12 1. Section 011200 "Multiple Contract Summary" for coordinating Project Record Documents
13 covering the Work of multiple contracts.
14 2. Section 017300 "Execution" for final property survey.
15 3. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
16 4. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance
17 manual requirements.
- 18 C. See Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for specific requirements for Project Record Documents of
19 the Work in those Sections.

20 **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- 21 A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
- 22 1. Number of hard paper Copies: Submit one set of marked-up Record Prints.
23 2. Number of PDF Copies: Submit electronic copies of Record Drawings as follows:
- 24 a. Initial Submittal: Submit one set of pdfs of the marked-up Record Prints. Architect
25 will review and comment on whether general scope of changes, additional
26 information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable. Architect will return
27 pdf with comments to be incorporated for final submittal.
- 28 b. Final Submittal: Submit one set of marked-up Record Prints, and the following:
29 1) Record Prints: One hard paper set.
30 2) Record PDF on flash drive or other standard media of marked up Record
31 Prints: One set.
32 3) Record Documents on flash drive or other standard media: Drawings,
33 Specifications, Addenda, Architect's Supplemental Instructions and RFI's in
34 pdf format
35 4) Record CAD Drawing files (.dwg) when prepared by subcontractors for
36 submittals.
37 5) Copies printed from Record set: One print each Drawing, whether or not
38 changes and additional information were recorded.
- 39 B. Record Specifications: Submit one copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and
40 contract modifications. These shall be published electronically (PDF) and can be included on
41 submitted flash drive or other standard media.
- 42 C. Record Product Data: Submit one copy of each Product Data submittal including all
43 Owner/Architect/Design Team approval stamps and comments/notes.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS**

3 A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of blue- or black-line white prints of the Contract Drawings and
4 Shop Drawings.

5 1. Preparation: Mark Record Prints to show the actual installation where installation varies
6 from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data,
7 whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to prepare the
8 marked-up Record Prints.

9 a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be
10 difficult to identify or measure and record later.
11 b. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it. Record and check the markup
12 before enclosing concealed installations.

13 2. Mark the Contract Drawings or Shop Drawings, whichever is most capable of showing
14 actual physical conditions, completely and accurately. If Shop Drawings are marked,
15 show cross-reference on the Contract Drawings.

16 3. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish
17 between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.

18 4. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order
19 numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

20 B. Format: Identify and date each Record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD
21 DRAWING" in a prominent location.

22 1. Record Prints: Organize Record Prints and newly prepared Record Drawings into
23 manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification
24 on cover sheets.

25 2. Record PDF's: Organize marked up drawings into separate electronic pdf files that
26 correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet
27 identification. Include identification on each sheet.

28 3. Identification: As follows:

29 a. Project name.
30 b. Date.
31 c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
32 d. Name of Architect.
33 e. Name of Contractor.

34 **2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS**

35 A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation
36 varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.

37 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that
38 cannot be readily identified and recorded later.

39 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and
40 equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.

41 3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to
42 provide a record of selections made.

43 4. Note related Change Orders, Record Product Data, and Record Drawings where
44 applicable.



1 **2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA**

2 A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation
3 varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

4 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot
5 be readily identified and recorded later.

6 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in
7 manufacturer's written instructions for installation.

8 3. Note related Change Orders, Record Specifications,] and Record Drawings where
9 applicable.

10 **2.4 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS**

11 A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for
12 miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work.
13 Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

14 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

15 **3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE**

16 A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for Project Record
17 Document purposes. Post changes and modifications to Project Record Documents as they
18 occur; do not wait until the end of Project.

19 B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store Record Documents and Samples in the
20 field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Project Record
21 Documents for construction purposes. Maintain Record Documents in good order and in a clean,
22 dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record
23 Documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

24 **END OF SECTION 01 78 39**



1 **SECTION 01 78 40 - SPARE PARTS AND MAINTENANCE MATERIALS**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **REQUIREMENTS:**

- 6
7 A. Products required.
8
9 B. Storage and delivery of products.

10
11 **RELATED REQUIREMENTS:**

- 12
13 A. Materials and Equipment: Storage and protection.
14
15 B. Contract Closeout.
16
17 C. Individual Specifications Sections specific spare parts and materials required.
18
19 D. Refer to Section 01 78 46 Attic Stock Materials.

20
21 **PRODUCTS REQUIRED:**

- 22
23 A. Provide quantity of products, spare parts, maintenance tools, and maintenance materials specified in
24 individual sections to be provided to Owner, in addition to that required for completion of Work.
25
26 B. Products: Identical to those installed in the Work. Include quantities in original purchase from
27 supplier or manufacturer to avoid variations in manufacture.

28
29 **STORAGE AND MAINTENANCE:**

- 30
31 A. Store products with products to be installed in the Work, under provisions of Section 01 60 00.
32
33 B. Maintain spare products in original containers with labels intact and legible, until delivery to Owner.

34
35 **DELIVERY:**

36
37 Coordinate with Owner: Deliver and unload spare products to Owner at Project site and obtain receipt prior to
38 final payment.

39
40 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS:**

41 Not used.

42
43 **PART 3 - EXECUTION:**

44 Not used.

45
46 **END OF SECTION 01 78 40**



1 **SECTION 01 78 46 – ATTIC STOCK MATERIALS**

2
3 **1.1 GENERAL**

- 4
5 A. Related Documents: Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and
6 Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
7
8 B. Summary: This section includes:
9
10 1. Attic Stock Materials.
11
12 C. Action Submittals: Submit the following:
13
14 1. At substantial completion provide 3 copies of Attic Stock Material Inventories. Inventory List
15 shall contain:
16 a. Material Name.
17 b. Spec section.
18 c. Quantity/number of packages, etc.
19 d. Manufacturer's name.
20 e. Subcontractor's name.
21 f. Supplier's name.
22 g. All materials shall be in original container, packaging, etc. unless otherwise
23 acceptable to Owner.
24

25 **1.2 PRODUCTS**

- 26
27 A. Schedule of Attic Stock:
28
29 1. Carpet: 2%.
30 2. VCT and LVT: 2%.
31 3. Acoustical panels: 2%.
32 4. Hard tile: 2% floor, 30 pieces of base.
33 5. HVAC filters: 2%
34 6. Paint: Accent Colors – 1 gal. of each color and type.
35 7. Paint: Non-accent Colors – 5 gals of each color and type in one gal containers.
36 8. Rubber Base: 50 feet.
37 9. Acoustical Wall Panel Fabric: 5%.
38 10. Lamps: Lighting – 1 dozen of each type of bulb.
39
40 B. Provide attic stock materials as indicated above. Quantities listed above shall include that amount
41 of material for each color, type, model, shape, type, size, etc of the listed material.
42
43

44 **1.3 EXECUTION**

- 45
46 A. Store Attic Stock in location as directed by Architect/Owner.
47
48 B. Attic Stock Inventory shall be signed by Contractor supplying the material, Construction Manager
49 and Owner attesting to having received the material.
50
51 C. Attic Stock Room shall remain secure at all times and be inaccessible to other than the Owner.
52 Note: This means the room must be 100% complete with all punch list items completed prior to
53 storing the attic stock.
54

55 **END OF SECTION 01 78 46**



1 **SECTION 01 81 13.23 - SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS, GREEN GLOBE**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes general requirements and procedures for compliance with certain Green Globe
8 requirements needed for Project to obtain Level of One (1) Globe certification based on Green
9 Globes requirements.

10 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 11 A. Chain-of-Custody Certificates: Certificates signed by manufacturers certifying that wood used to
12 make products was obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to
13 comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship." Certificates
14 shall include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited
15 certification body.
- 16 B. Regional Materials: Materials that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as
17 manufactured, within 500 miles (800 km) of Project site. If only a fraction of a product or
18 material is extracted/harvested/recovered and manufactured locally, then only that percentage
19 (by weight) shall contribute to the regional value.
- 20 C. Recycled Content: The recycled content value of a material assembly shall be determined by
21 weight. The recycled fraction of the assembly is then multiplied by the cost of assembly to
22 determine the recycled content value.
- 23 1. "Post-consumer" material is defined as waste material generated by households or by
24 commercial, industrial, and institutional facilities in their role as end users of the product,
25 which can no longer be used for its intended purpose.
- 26 2. "Pre-consumer" material is defined as material diverted from the waste stream during the
27 manufacturing process. Excluded is reutilization of materials such as rework, regrind, or
28 scrap generated in a process and capable of being reclaimed within the same process
29 that generated it.

30 **1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- 31 A. Respond to questions and requests from Architect and the Green Globe regarding credits that
32 are the responsibility of the Contractor, that depend on product selection or product qualities, or
33 that depend on Contractor's procedures. Document responses as informational submittals.



1 **1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 2 A. Green Globe submittals are in addition to other submittals. If submitted item is identical to that
 3 submitted to comply with other requirements, submit duplicate copies as a separate submittal to
 4 verify compliance with indicated Green Globe requirements.

5 **1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 6 A. Project Materials Cost Data: Provide statement indicating total cost for materials used for
 7 Project. Costs exclude labor, overhead, and profit. Include breakout of costs for the following
 8 categories of items:

- 9 1. Furniture.
 10 2. Plumbing.
 11 3. Mechanical.
 12 4. Electrical.
 13 5. Specialty items such as elevators and equipment.
 14 6. Wood-based construction materials.

- 15 B. Action Plans: Provide preliminary submittals within 30 days of date established for the Notice to
 16 Proceed indicating how the following requirements will be met:

- 17 1. Waste management plan.
 18 2. List of proposed salvaged, refurbished, and reused materials. Identify each material that
 19 will be salvaged, refurbished, or reused, including its source, cost, and replacement cost
 20 if the item was to be purchased new.
 21 3. List of proposed materials with recycled content. Indicate cost, post-consumer recycled
 22 content, and pre-consumer recycled content for each product having recycled content.
 23 4. List of proposed regional materials. Identify each regional material, including its source,
 24 cost, and the fraction by weight that is considered regional.
 25 5. List of proposed certified wood products. Indicate each product containing certified wood,
 26 including its source and cost of certified wood products.
 27 6. Construction indoor-air-quality management plan.

- 28 C. Progress Reports: Concurrent with each Application for Payment, submit reports actual
 29 construction and purchasing activities regarding the following:

- 30 1. Waste reduction progress reports.
 31 2. Recycled content.
 32 3. Regional materials.
 33 4. Certified wood products.

34 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

35 **2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL**

- 36 A. Provide products and procedures necessary to obtain Green Globe credits required in this
 37 Section.



1 **2.2 LOW-EMITTING MATERIALS**

2 A. The following products and systems, where installed inside the weatherproofing system, shall
3 meet the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services'
4 "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using
5 Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- 6 1. Adhesives and sealants.
7 2. Paints and coatings.
8 3. Flooring systems.
9 4. Composite wood and agrifiber products.
10 5. Ceilings and wall systems.

11 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

12 **3.1 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT**

13 A. Comply with Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
14

15 **END OF SECTION 01 81 13.23**



1 **SECTION 01 82 00 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's
5 personnel, including the following:

- 6 1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
7 2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
8 3. Demonstration and training videotapes.

9 B. See Divisions 2 through 49 Sections for specific requirements for demonstration and training for
10 products in those Sections.

11 **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

12 A. Instruction Program: Submit two copies of outline of instructional program for demonstration and
13 training, including a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and
14 instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each
15 training module.

16 B. Demonstration and Training Videotapes: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each
17 training module.

18 **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

19 A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance
20 personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project,
21 and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning
22 performance.

23 B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with
24 requirements in Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and
25 maintenance procedures and training.

26 C. Pre-instruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Review methods and
27 procedures related to demonstration and training.

28 D. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and
29 maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data
30 has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

31 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

32 **2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM**

33 A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for
34 each system and equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification
35 Sections.



- 1 B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a
 2 description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each
 3 module, include instruction for the following:
- 4 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include system and
 5 equipment descriptions, operating standards, regulatory requirements, equipment
 6 function, operating characteristics, limiting conditions, and performance curves.
 - 7 2. Documentation: Review emergency, operations, and maintenance manuals; Project
 8 Record Documents; identification systems; warranties and bonds; and maintenance
 9 service agreements.
 - 10 3. Emergencies: Include instructions on stopping; shutdown instructions; operating
 11 instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits; instructions on meaning of
 12 warnings, trouble indications, and error messages; and required sequences for electric or
 13 electronic systems.
 - 14 4. Operations: Include startup, break-in, control, and safety procedures; stopping and
 15 normal shutdown instructions; routine, normal, seasonal, and weekend operating
 16 instructions; operating procedures for emergencies and equipment failure; and required
 17 sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - 18 5. Adjustments: Include alignments and checking, noise, vibration, economy, and efficiency
 19 adjustments.
 - 20 6. Troubleshooting: Include diagnostic instructions and test and inspection procedures.
 - 21 7. Maintenance: Include inspection procedures, types of cleaning agents, methods of
 22 cleaning, procedures for preventive and routine maintenance, and instruction on use of
 23 special tools.
 - 24 8. Repairs: Include diagnosis, repair, and disassembly instructions; instructions for
 25 identifying parts; and review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.
 26

27 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

28 **3.1 INSTRUCTION**

- 29 A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to
 30 coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of
 31 participants, instruction times, and location.
- 32 B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain
 33 systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
- 34 1. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
- 35 C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires
 36 seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
- 37 1. Schedule training with Owner with at least seven days' advance notice.
- 38 D. Evaluation: At conclusion of each training module, assess and document each participant's
 39 mastery of module by use of any one of the following: an oral, or a written or a demonstration
 40 performance-based test.

41 **3.2 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING DIGITAL RECORDINGS**

- 42 A. General: Engage a qualified commercial photographer to record demonstration and training
 43 DVD's. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and
 44 demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.



- 1 1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and
- 2 lesson outline.
- 3 B. DVD Format: Provide high-quality DVD color disk.
- 4 C. Narration: Describe scenes on DVD by audio narration by microphone while DVD is recorded.
- 5 Include description of items being viewed. Describe vantage point, indicating location, direction
- 6 (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
- 7 **END OF SECTION 01 82 00**

1 **SECTION 01 91 13 – GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS**

2
3
4 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

5
6 **1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- 7
8 A. Commissioning. Commissioning is a systematic process of ensuring that all building systems
9 perform interactively according to the design intent and the owner's operational needs.
10 Ideally, this is achieved by beginning in the design phase and documenting design intent and
11 continuing through construction, acceptance and the warranty period with actual verification of
12 performance. The commissioning process shall encompass and coordinate the traditionally
13 separate functions of system documentation, equipment startup, control system calibration,
14 testing and balancing, performance testing and training.

15
16 Commissioning activities during the construction phase is intended to achieve the following
17 specific objectives according to the Contract Documents:

- 18
19 1) Verify that applicable equipment and systems are installed according to the
20 manufacturer's recommendations and to industry accepted minimum standards and that
21 they receive adequate operational checkout by installing contractors.
22 2) Verify and document proper functional performance of equipment and systems.
23 3) Verify on-going proper performance persistence of systems under changing conditions
24 throughout the first year of operation.

- 25
26 B. The commissioning process does not take away from or reduce the responsibility of the
27 system designers or installing contractors to respectively design, provide, and install a finished
28 and fully functioning product.

- 29
30 C. Abbreviations. The following are common abbreviations used in the *Specifications* and in the
31 *Commissioning Plan*. Definitions are found in Section 1.6.

32

A/E- Architect and design engineers (Sub to the General Contractor)	FT- Functional performance test
CA- Commissioning authority	MC- Mechanical contractor
CC- Controls contractor	PC- Prefunctional checklist
Cx- Commissioning	PM- Project manager (of the Owner)
Cx Commissioning Plan document	Subs Subcontractors to GC
Plan- General Contractor	- Test and balance contractor
GC- Electrical contractor	

33
34
35 **1.2 COORDINATION**

- 36
37 A. Commissioning Team. The members of the commissioning team consist of the Commissioning
38 Authority (CA), the owner's Project Manager (PM), the owner's Mechanical Engineer (OME),
39 the designated representative of the General Contractor (GC), the architect and design
40 engineers (particularly the mechanical engineer and the electrical engineer), the Mechanical
41 Contractor (MC), the Plumbing Contractor (PC), the Electrical Contractor (EC), the TAB
42 representative (TAB), the Controls Contractor (CC), any other installing subcontractors or
43 suppliers of equipment which is part of a system identified to be commissioned. If known,
44 other members of the Owner's building or plant operations / maintenance staff may also a
45 member of the commissioning team.

- 46
47 B. Management. For this project, the CA is hired by the Owner and reports directly to the Owner
48 while copying the Architect / Engineer and the remainder of the Commissioning Team

1 members with all project correspondence. The CA directs and coordinates the commissioning
 2 activities. All members work together to fulfill their contracted responsibilities and meet the
 3 objectives of the Contract Documents. The CA's responsibilities are the same regardless of
 4 who hired the CA.
 5

- 6 C. Scheduling. The CA will work with the General Contractor according to established protocols
 7 to schedule the commissioning activities. The CA will provide sufficient notice to the General
 8 Contractor for scheduling commissioning activities. The General Contractor will integrate all
 9 commissioning activities into the master schedule. All parties will address scheduling
 10 problems and make necessary notifications in a timely manner in order to expedite the
 11 commissioning process.
 12

13 The CA will provide the initial schedule (or possibly just sequence) of primary commissioning
 14 events at the commissioning scoping meeting. The *Commissioning Plan—Construction*
 15 *Phase* provides a format for this schedule. As construction progresses more detailed
 16 schedules are developed by the CA. The Commissioning Plan also provides a format for
 17 detailed schedules.
 18

19 **1.3 COMMISSIONING PROCESS**

- 20
 21 A. Commissioning Plan. The commissioning plan provides guidance in the execution of the
 22 commissioning process. Just after the initial commissioning scoping meeting the CA will
 23 complete the plan which is then considered the “final” construction phase commissioning plan,
 24 though it will continue to evolve and expand as the project progresses. The *Specifications* will
 25 take precedence over the *Commissioning Plan*.
 26
 27 B. Commissioning Process. The following narrative provides a brief overview of the typical
 28 commissioning tasks during construction and the general order in which they occur.
 29

30 *Construction / Acceptance Period*

- 31 1. Commissioning during construction begins with a kickoff meeting conducted by the CA
 32 where the commissioning process is reviewed with the commissioning team members.
 33
 34 2. Additional meetings, if required throughout construction, will be scheduled by the CA with
 35 necessary parties attending, to plan, scope, coordinate, schedule future activities and
 resolve problems.
 36
 37 3. Equipment documentation is submitted to the CA during normal submittals for use in
 developing and finalizing project-specific Cx documentation.
 38
 39 4. The CA reviews the commissioned equipment submittals for compliance with contract
 requirements as well as for aspects related to commissioning and owner maintenance.
 40
 41 5. The CA develops prefunctional checklists to be completed for systems and equipment to
 42 be commissioned during the equipment startup and check-out process. These checklists
 43 are intended to augment, not replace, the manufacturer's standard start-up / checkout
 44 documentation. These checklists are developed and completed using the on-line Cx Plus
 commissioning platform provided by BES Plus Tech.
 45
 46 6. The CA and the Subs work together to execute and document the prefunctional
 47 checklists and perform startup and initial checkout. In general the CA will complete the
 48 installation checks portion of the prefunctional checklists while the CA and the Subs will
 49 complete the equipment start-up / checkout portions. The CA documents that the
 checklists and startup were completed according to the approved plans.
 50
 51 7. The CA develops specific equipment and system functional performance test
 52 procedures. These tests are developed and completed using the on-line Cx Plus
 commissioning platform provided by BES Plus Tech.



8. The Controls Contractor sets up trending of system points and automated delivery of the trend reports as directed by CA. This data, if available prior to manual functional testing, is utilized to judge the readiness of systems to be tested.
9. The CA with the assistance of the TAB Contractor completes the Test, Adjust, Balance Verification (TAB-V) process. This must be successfully completed prior to beginning functional testing for each specific system.
10. The manual functional test procedures are executed by the Subs, under the direction of, and documented by the CA.
11. Items of non-compliance in material, installation or setup are corrected at the Sub's expense and the system retested.
12. Commissioning is substantially completed before Final Completion is granted to GC.

Warranty Period

1. For the duration of the Warranty Period the CA monitors the performance of the commissioned systems using the cloud-based Cx-PMOR system (BES Plus Tech Performance Plus). Any items identified by this monitoring shall be resolved through the Contract Warranty Process.

1.4 RELATED WORK

- A. Specific commissioning requirements are given in the following sections of these specifications. All of the following sections apply to the Work of this section.

23 08 00	Mechanical Cx	Describes the Cx responsibilities of the mechanical, controls and TAB contractors and the prefunctional testing and startup responsibilities of each.
26 05 00	Electrical Cx	Describes the Cx responsibilities of the electrical contractor.

1.5 RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. The responsibilities of various parties in the commissioning process are provided in this section. The responsibilities of the mechanical contractor, TAB and controls contractor are in Division 23 and those of the electrical contractor in Division 26. *It is noted that the services for the Owner Project Manager and the Commissioning Authority are not provided for in this contract. That is, the General Contractor is not responsible for providing their services.* Their responsibilities are listed here to clarify the commissioning process.

B. All Parties

1. Attend Pre-commissioning Meeting and normal construction period Commissioning Meetings, as deemed necessary by the CA, PM, and General Contractor to effectively participate in the Cx Process.
2. Each company / organization identified as being a member of the Cx Team shall designate an employee who is involved and familiar with the project to be the point-of-contact (POC) for the Cx process.
3. The identified POC shall regularly review the on-line Issue Log at the BES Plus Tech website project portal and the report documents which are emailed to the Cx Team.
4. The POC shall respond to any and all issues assigned to the company / organization that they are representing in the Cx Process within five (5) working days of the date the issue is added to the Log. Failure by a construction team member to effectively participate in the Cx Process, as judged by the Owner, can be considered cause for holding a construction progress payment.

C. Architect

1
2 *Construction and Acceptance Phase*

- 3 1. Perform normal submittal review, construction observation, as-built drawing preparation,
4 O&M manual preparation, etc., as specifically contracted to the Owner.
5 2. Provide any design narrative documentation requested by the CA.
6 3. Coordinate resolution of system deficiencies identified during commissioning, according
7 to the contract documents.
8 4. Prepare and submit final as-built design intent documentation for inclusion in the O&M
9 manuals. Review and approve the O&M manuals.

10
11 *Warranty Period*

- 12 1. Coordinate resolution of design non-conformance and design deficiencies identified
13 during warranty-period commissioning.

14
15 D. Mechanical and Electrical Designers / Engineers (of the A/E)

16
17 *Construction and Acceptance Phase*

- 18 1. Perform normal submittal review, construction observation, as-built drawing preparation,
19 etc., as contracted. One site observation should be completed just prior to system
20 startup.
21 2. Provide any design narrative and sequences documentation requested by the CA. The
22 designers shall assist (along with the contractors) in clarifying the operation and control of
23 commissioned equipment in areas where the specifications, control drawings or
24 equipment documentation is not sufficient for writing detailed testing procedures.
25 3. Participate in the resolution of system deficiencies identified during commissioning,
26 according to the contract documents.
27 4. Prepare and submit the final as-built design intent and operating parameters
28 documentation for inclusion in the O&M manuals. Review and approve the O&M
29 manuals.
30 5. Provide a presentation at one of the training sessions for the Owner's personnel.

31
32 *Warranty Period*

- 33 1. Participate in the resolution of non-compliance, non-conformance and design deficiencies
34 identified during warranty-period.

35
36
37 E. Commissioning Authority (CA)

38 The CA is not responsible for design concept, design criteria, compliance with codes, design
39 or general construction scheduling, cost estimating, or construction management. The CA
40 may assist with problem-solving non-conformance or deficiencies, but ultimately that
41 responsibility resides with the General Contractor and his Subs. The primary role of the CA is
42 to develop and coordinate the execution of a testing plan, observe and document
43 performance—that systems are functioning in accordance with the documented design intent
44 and in accordance with the Contract Documents. At the direction and discretion of the CA, the
45 Contractors will provide tools or the use of tools to start, check-out and functionally test
46 equipment and systems.

47
48 *Construction and Acceptance Phase*

- 49 1. Coordinates and directs the commissioning activities in a logical, sequential and efficient
50 manner using consistent protocols and forms, centralized documentation, clear and
51 regular communications and consultations with all necessary parties, frequently updated
52 timelines and schedules and technical expertise.

2. Coordinate the commissioning work and, with the General Contractor, ensure that commissioning activities are being scheduled into the master schedule.
3. Plan and conduct a pre-commissioning meeting (Cx Kickoff Meeting) and participate in construction coordination and Owner-Contractor meetings as required to support the Cx Process.
4. Request and review additional information required to perform commissioning tasks, including O&M materials, contractor start-up and checkout procedures.
5. Before startup, gather and review the current control sequences and interlocks and work with contractors and design engineers until sufficient clarity has been obtained, in writing, to be able to write detailed testing procedures.
6. Review normal Contractor submittals applicable to systems being commissioned for compliance with commissioning needs, concurrent with the General Contractor reviews.
7. Write and distribute prefunctional tests and checklists.
8. Perform site visits, as necessary, to observe component and system installations. Attends selected planning and job-site meetings to obtain information on construction progress. Review construction meeting minutes for revisions / substitutions relating to the commissioning process. Assist in resolving any discrepancies.
9. Witness all or part of the HVAC piping test and flushing procedure, sufficient to be confident that proper procedures were followed. Document this testing and include the documentation in O&M manuals. Notify owner's project manager of any deficiencies in results or procedures. At the discretion of the CA this testing may be witnessed by an alternate party (e.g. PM, TAB, General Contractor) as approved by the CA, documentation shall be provided to the CA that the testing was completed satisfactorily and according to specifications.
10. Witness all or part of any ductwork testing and cleaning procedures, sufficient to be confident that proper procedures were followed. Document this testing and include the documentation in O&M manuals. Notify owner's project manager of any deficiencies in results or procedures. At the discretion of the CA this testing may be witnessed by an alternate party (e.g. PM, TAB, General Contractor) as approved by the CA, documentation shall be provided to the CA that the testing was completed satisfactorily and according to specifications.
11. Document equipment installation meets contract requirements by completion of the installation checks portion of the prefunctional checklists. Work together with Subs to complete the equipment start-up and check-out portion of the checklists. Approve prefunctional tests and checklist completion by reviewing prefunctional checklist reports and by selected site observation and spot checking.
12. Approve systems startup by reviewing start-up reports and by selected site observation.
13. Review TAB execution plan, discuss concerns and comments with TAB.
14. Oversee sufficient functional testing of the control system and approve it to be used for TAB, before TAB is executed.
15. Approve air and water systems balancing by spot testing, by reviewing completed reports and by selected site observation.
16. With necessary assistance and review from installing contractors, write the functional performance test procedures for equipment and systems. This may include energy management control system trending, stand-alone datalogger monitoring or manual functional testing.
17. Analyze functional performance trend logs and monitoring data to verify performance.
18. Coordinate, witness and approve manual functional performance tests performed by installing contractors. Coordinate retesting as necessary until satisfactory performance is achieved.
19. Maintain a master deficiency and resolution log (aka 'Issues Log') and a separate testing record. Provide the General Contractor with written progress reports and test results with recommended actions.
20. Provide a final commissioning report (as described in this section).

Warranty Period

1. Configure and maintain the cloud-based Cx-PMOR performance monitoring system throughout the Warranty Period to identify performance and operational issues. Issues shall be documented using On-Going Issues Log and shall be corrected by way of the Contract Warranty Process.
2. Verify completion and effectiveness of required deficiency corrections for issues discovered during Warranty Period.

F. General Contractor (GC)

Construction and Acceptance Phase

1. Facilitate the coordination of the commissioning work by the CA, and ensure that commissioning activities are being scheduled into the master schedule.
2. Include the cost of providing commissioning assistance to the CA as described in the drawings and this and other related specification sections in the total contract price. (*do NOT include the cost of the Commissioning Authority as they are under contract to the Owner*)
5. Furnish a copy of all construction documents, addenda, change orders and approved submittals and shop drawings related to commissioned equipment to the CA.
6. In each purchase order or subcontract written, include requirements for submittal data, O&M data, commissioning tasks and training.
7. Review commissioning progress and deficiency reports.
8. Coordinate the resolution of non-compliance and design deficiencies identified in all phases of commissioning.
9. Assist the Owner PM and the CA in coordinating the training of owner personnel.
10. Ensure that all Subs execute their commissioning responsibilities according to the Contract Documents and schedule.
11. Coordinate the training of owner personnel in accordance to Contract Documents.
12. Prepare O&M manuals, according to the Contract Documents, including clarifying and updating the original sequences of operation to as-built conditions.

Warranty Period

1. Ensure that Subs complete deficiency corrections for issues discovered during Warranty Period.

G. Owner's Project Manager (PM)

Construction and Acceptance Phase

1. Manage the contract of the CA, A/E, and the General Contractor.
2. Arrange for facility operating and maintenance personnel to attend various field commissioning activities and field training sessions according to the *Commissioning Plan—Construction Phase*.
3. Provide final approval for the completion of the commissioning work.

Warranty Period

1. Ensure that any seasonal or deferred testing and any deficiency issues are addressed.

H. Equipment Suppliers

1. Provide all requested submittal data, including detailed start-up procedures and specific responsibilities of the Owner to keep warranties in force.
2. Assist in equipment testing per agreements with Subs and as required by individual equipment specification sections.

3. Include all special tools and instruments (only available from vendor, specific to a piece of equipment) required for testing equipment according to these Contract Documents in the base bid price to the Contractor, except for stand-alone data logging equipment that may be used by the CA.
4. Provide information requested by CA regarding equipment sequence of operation and testing procedures.
5. Review test procedures for equipment installed by factory representatives.
6. Provide Owner Training activities per individual equipment specification sections to include trainer personnel meeting specification qualification and experience requirements. Training provided shall meet or exceed the time duration as specified in the equipment specification sections unless specifically authorized in writing by the Owner PM that less training is acceptable.

1.6 DEFINITIONS

Acceptance Phase - phase of construction after startup and initial checkout when functional performance tests, O&M documentation review and training occurs.

Approval - acceptance that a piece of equipment or system has been properly installed and is functioning in the tested modes according to the Contract Documents.

Basis of Design (BOD)- The basis of design is the documentation of the primary thought processes and assumptions behind design decisions that were made to meet the design intent. The basis of design describes the systems, components, conditions and methods chosen to meet the intent. Some reiterating of the design intent may be included. The document records concepts, calculations, decisions, and product selections used to meet the OPR and to satisfy applicable regulatory requirements, standards, and guidelines. The document includes both narrative descriptions and lists of individual items that support the design process.

Commissioning Authority (CA) - an independent agent, not otherwise associated with the General Contractor or his Subs. The CA directs and coordinates the day-to-day commissioning activities. Regardless of to whom the CA is contracted, the CA shall report directly to the Owner's Project Manager (PM).

Commissioning Plan - an overall plan, developed before or after bidding, that provides the structure, schedule and coordination planning for the commissioning process.

Contract Documents - the documents binding on parties involved in the construction of this project (drawings, specifications, change orders, amendments, contracts, *Cx Plan*, etc.).

Control system - the central building energy management control system.

Cx-PMOR – see PMOR.

Datalogging - monitoring flows, currents, status, pressures, etc. of equipment using stand-alone dataloggers separate from the control system.

Deficiency - a condition in the installation or function of a component, piece of equipment or system that is not in compliance with the Contract Documents (that is, does not perform properly or is not complying with the design intent).

General Contractor - the contractor providing general construction services and oversight of trade subcontractors as well as providing professionals who comprise the design team such as the HVAC mechanical designer/engineer and the electrical designer/engineer.

Design Intent - a dynamic document that provides the explanation of the ideas, concepts and criteria that are considered to be very important to the owner. It is initially the outcome of the programming and conceptual design phases.

Design Narrative or Design Documentation - sections of either the Design Intent or Basis of Design.

1 Factory Testing - testing of equipment on-site or at the factory by factory personnel with an
2 Owner's representative present.

3 Functional Performance Test (FT) - test of the dynamic function and operation of equipment and
4 systems using manual (direct observation) or monitoring methods. Functional testing is
5 the dynamic testing of systems (rather than just components) under full operation (e.g.,
6 the chiller pump is tested interactively with the chiller functions to see if the pump ramps
7 up and down to maintain the differential pressure set point). Systems are tested under
8 various modes, such as during low cooling or heating loads, high loads, component
9 failures, unoccupied, varying outside air temperatures, fire alarm, power failure, etc. The
10 systems are run through all the control system's sequences of operation and components
11 are verified to be responding as the sequences state. Traditional air or water test and
12 balancing (TAB) is not functional testing, in the commissioning sense of the word. TAB's
13 primary work is setting up the system flows and pressures as specified, while functional
14 testing is verifying that which has already been set up. The commissioning authority
15 develops the functional test procedures in a sequential written form, coordinates,
16 oversees and documents the actual testing, which is usually performed by the installing
17 contractor or vendor. FTs are performed after prefunctional checklists and startup are
18 complete.

19 Indirect Indicators - indicators of a response or condition, such as a reading from a control system
20 screen reporting a damper to be 100% closed.

21 Manual Test - using hand-held instruments, immediate control system readouts or direct
22 observation to verify performance (contrasted to analyzing monitored data taken over
23 time to make the "observation").

24 Monitoring - the recording of parameters (flow, current, status, pressure, etc.) of equipment
25 operation using dataloggers or the trending capabilities of control systems.

26 Non-Compliance - see Deficiency.

27 Non-Conformance - see Deficiency.

28 Over-written Value - writing over a sensor value in the control system to see the response of a
29 system (e.g., changing the outside air temperature value from 50F to 75F to verify
30 economizer operation). See also "Simulated Signal."

31 Owner-Contracted Tests - tests paid for by the Owner outside the General Contractor's contract
32 and for which the CA does not oversee. These tests will not be repeated during
33 functional tests if properly documented.

34 Owner's Project Requirements (OPR) - A document that details the functional requirements of a
35 project and the expectations of how it will be used and operated. These include Project
36 goals, measurable performance criteria, cost considerations, benchmarks, success
37 criteria, and supporting information.

38 Performance Monitoring, Optimization, and Reporting (PMOR) – cloud based SaaS (Software as
39 a Service) which provides automated building operating data acquisition, analysis,
40 archival, and reporting by utilizing data provided from the building automation system to
41 continually analyze and improve the overall performance of the building and its
42 underlying mechanical and electrical systems.

43 Phased Commissioning - commissioning that is completed in phases (by floors, for example) due
44 to the size of the structure or other scheduling issues, in order minimize the total
45 construction time.

46 Prefunctional Checklist (PC) - a list of items to inspect and elementary component tests to
47 conduct to verify proper installation of equipment, provided by the CA to the Sub.
48 Prefunctional checklists are primarily static inspections and procedures to prepare the
49 equipment or system for initial operation (e.g., belt tension, oil levels OK, labels affixed,
50 gages in place, sensors calibrated, etc.). However, some prefunctional checklist items
51 entail simple testing of the function of a component, a piece of equipment or system
52 (such as measuring the voltage imbalance on a three phase pump motor of a chiller

1 system). The word prefunctional refers to before functional testing. Prefunctional
2 checklists augment and are combined with the manufacturer's start-up checklist. Even
3 without a commissioning process, contractors typically perform some, if not many, of the
4 prefunctional checklist items a commissioning authority will recommend. However, few
5 contractors document in writing the execution of these checklist items. Therefore, for
6 most equipment, the contractors execute the checklists on their own. The commissioning
7 authority only requires that the procedures be documented in writing, and does not
8 witness much of the prefunctional checklisting, except for larger or more critical pieces of
9 equipment.

10 Project Manager (PM) - the contracting and managing authority for the owner over the design
11 and/or construction of the project, a staff position.

12 Sampling - functionally testing only a fraction of the total number of identical or near identical
13 pieces of equipment. Refer to Section 01 91 13, Part 3.6, F for details.

14 Simulated Condition - condition that is created for the purpose of testing the response of a system
15 (e.g., applying a hair blower to a space sensor to see the response in a VAV box).

16 Simulated Signal - disconnecting a sensor and using a signal generator to send an amperage,
17 resistance or pressure to the transducer and DDC system to simulate a sensor value.

18 Specifications - the construction specifications of the Contract Documents.

19 Startup - the initial starting or activating of dynamic equipment, including executing prefunctional
20 checklists.

21 Subs - the subcontractors to the General Contractor who provide and install building components
22 and systems.

23 Test Procedures - the step-by-step process which must be executed to fulfill the test
24 requirements. The test procedures are developed by the CA.

25 Test Requirements - requirements specifying what modes and functions, etc. shall be tested.
26 The test requirements are not the detailed test procedures.

27 Trending - monitoring using the building control system.

28 Vendor - supplier of equipment.

29 Warranty Period - warranty period for entire project, including equipment components. Warranty
30 begins at Substantial Completion and extends for at least one year, unless specifically
31 noted otherwise in the Contract Documents and accepted submittals.

32
33

1 **1.7 SYSTEMS TO BE COMMISSIONED**

2
3 A. The following systems or equipment will be commissioned in this project.

4
5 1. HVAC Systems:

- 6 a. Air Cooled Chiller and associated pumps
7 b. Gas-Fired Hot Water Boiler and associated pumps
8 c. Air Distribution System Ductwork (all)
9 d. Chilled / Heating Water Piping Systems
10 e. Variable Frequency Drives
11 f. Central Station Variable Air Volume Air Handling Units
12 g. Dedicated Outside Air Handling Unit
13 h. Computer Room Air Conditioning Units
14 i. Fan Coil Unit
15 j. Wall-Mounted Air Conditioner
16 k. VAV Air Terminal Units with Hot Water Reheat Coils
17 l. Exhaust Air Fans / Systems
18 m. Testing, Adjusting, Balancing
19 n. HVAC Control System (a.k.a. Building Automation System)

20
21 2. Electrical Systems:

- 22 a. Power Distribution System and Equipment related to HVAC equipment
23 b. Lighting Control Systems (networked and local)

24
25 3. Other Systems:

- 26 a. Domestic Hot Water Systems
27
28
29

1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2
3 **2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT**

- 4
5 A. All standard testing equipment required to perform startup and initial checkout and required
6 functional performance testing shall be provided by the Division contractor for the equipment
7 being tested. For example, the mechanical contractor of Division 23 shall ultimately be
8 responsible for all standard testing equipment for the HVAC system and controls system in
9 Division 23, except for equipment specific to and used by TAB in their commissioning
10 responsibilities. Two-way radios, when required, shall be provided by the Division Contractor.
11
12 B. Special equipment, tools and instruments (only available from vendor, specific to a piece of
13 equipment) required for testing equipment, according to these Contract Documents shall be
14 included in the base bid price to the Contractor and left on site, for the CA to use during
15 functional testing, seasonal testing, and deferred testing. The equipment, tools, and
16 instruments will be returned to the vendor / Subs after successful conclusion of the
17 commissioning effort.
18
19 C. All testing equipment shall be of sufficient quality and accuracy to test and/or measure system
20 performance with the tolerances specified in the *Specifications*. If not otherwise noted, the
21 following minimum requirements shall apply: Temperature sensors and digital thermometers
22 shall have a certified calibration within the past year to an accuracy of 0.5°F and a resolution
23 of + or - 0.1°F. Humidity sensors shall have a certified calibration within the past 6 months
24 and a resolution of +/- 1%. Pressure sensors shall have an accuracy of + or - 2.0% of the
25 value range being measured (not full range of meter) and have been calibrated within the last
26 year. All equipment shall be calibrated according to the manufacturer's recommended
27 intervals and when dropped or damaged. Calibration tags shall be affixed or certificates
28 readily available.
29

1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2
3 **3.1 MEETINGS**

- 4
5 A. Pre-Commissioning Meeting. The CA will schedule, plan and conduct a pre-commissioning
6 meeting with the entire commissioning team in attendance.
7
8 B. Miscellaneous Meetings. Meetings regarding the Commissioning Process that may be
9 required throughout the construction period will be scheduled as agenda items at the General
10 Contractor's regularly scheduled construction coordination meetings or Owner-Contractor
11 meetings. An exception to this policy would be extraordinary meetings which are deemed
12 necessary by the CA and the General Contractor with necessary parties attending in order to
13 resolve outstanding deficiencies toward the end of the construction period.
14

15 **3.2 REPORTING**

- 16
17 A. The CA may provide regular reports to the Owner's PM with copy to the General Contractor,
18 depending on the management structure, with increasing frequency as construction and
19 commissioning progresses.
20
21 B. The CA will regularly communicate with all members of the commissioning team keeping them
22 apprised of commissioning progress and scheduling changes through memos, progress
23 reports, etc. delivered via group email or the commissioning software website.
24
25 C. Testing or review approvals and non-conformance and deficiency reports (aka Issue Logs) are
26 made regularly with the review and testing as described in later sections.
27
28 D. A final summary construction phase commissioning issues log report will be provided once all
29 the principal commissioning activities during construction are completed and all issues are
30 resolved. Refer to other contract specifications for requirements of a final issue log report to
31 accompany contractor final completion / pay request.
32

33 **3.3 SUBMITTALS**

- 34
35 A. The CA will provide appropriate contractors with a specific request for the type of submittal
36 documentation the CA requires to facilitate the commissioning work. These requests will be
37 integrated into the normal submittal process and protocol of the construction team. This
38 request will include the manufacturer and model number, the manufacturer's printed
39 installation and detailed start-up procedures, full sequences of operation, O&M data,
40 performance data, any performance test procedures, and control drawings (e.g. typical formal
41 construction submittals).
42
43 B. These submittals to the CA do not constitute compliance for O&M manual documentation and
44 review of the equipment submittals is not for contract compliance. The O&M manuals are the
45 responsibility of the Contractor, though the CA will review and utilize this documentation for
46 purposes of facilitating the Commissioning process. Review of the equipment submittals for
47 contract compliance is the responsibility of the A/E.
48

49 **3.4 START-UP, PREFUNCTIONAL CHECKLISTS AND INITIAL CHECKOUT**

- 50
51 A. The following procedures apply to all equipment to be commissioned, according to Section
52 1.7, Systems to be Commissioned. Some systems that are not comprised so much of actual
53 dynamic machinery and thus may have very simplified PCs and startup.
54
55 B. General. Prefunctional checklists are important to ensure that the equipment and systems are
56 hooked up and operational. It ensures that functional performance testing (in-depth system



checkout) may proceed without unnecessary delays. Each piece of equipment receives full prefunctional checkout. No sampling strategies are used. The prefunctional testing for a given system must be successfully completed prior to formal functional performance testing of equipment or subsystems of the given system.

C. Start-up and Initial Checkout Plan. The CA shall assist the commissioning team members responsible for startup of any equipment in developing detailed start-up plans for all equipment. The primary role of the CA in this process is to ensure that there is written documentation that each of the manufacturer-recommended procedures have been completed. Parties responsible for prefunctional checklists and startup are identified in the commissioning scoping meeting and in the checklist forms. Parties responsible for executing functional performance tests are identified in the testing requirements outlined in the *Commissioning Plan – Construction Phase*.

1. These checklists indicate required procedures to be executed as part of startup and initial checkout of the systems and the party responsible for their execution.
2. These checklists and tests are provided by the CA to the Contractor. The CA will complete the installation checks portion of the checklists while the Subs will assist the CA in completing the equipment start-up and check-out portions. Most forms will have more than one trade responsible for its execution.
3. The CA may utilize some or all of a manufacturer's start-up documentation.

D. Sensor and Actuator Calibration. All field-installed temperature, relative humidity, CO, CO₂ and pressure sensors and gages, and all actuators (dampers and valves) on all equipment shall be calibrated using the methods described below. Alternate methods may be used, if approved by the Owner and CA beforehand. All test instruments shall have had a certified calibration within the last 12 months. Sensors installed *in* the unit at the factory with calibration certification provided need not be field calibrated.

All procedures used shall be fully documented on the prefunctional checklists or other suitable forms, clearly referencing the procedures followed and written documentation of initial, intermediate and final results.

Sensor Calibration Methods

All Sensors. Verify that all sensor locations are appropriate and away from causes of erratic operation. Verify that sensors with shielded cable, are grounded only at one end. For sensor pairs that are used to determine a temperature or pressure difference, make sure they are reading within 0.2°F of each other for temperature and within a tolerance equal to 2% of the reading, of each other, for pressure. Tolerances for critical applications may be tighter.

Make a reading with a calibrated test instrument within 6 inches of the site sensor. Verify that the sensor reading (via the permanent thermostat, gage or building automation system (BAS)) is within the tolerances in the table below of the instrument-measured value. If not, install offset in BAS, calibrate or replace sensor.

Tolerances, Standard Applications

<u>Sensor</u>	<u>Required Tolerance (+/-)</u>	<u>Sensor</u>	<u>Required Tolerance (+/-)</u>
Cooling coil, chilled and condenser water temps	0.4F	Flow rates, water	4% of design
AHU wet bulb or dew point	2.0F	Relative humidity	4% of design
Hot water coil and boiler water temp	1.5F	Combustion flue temps	5.0F
		Oxygen or CO ₂ monitor	0.1 % pts



Outside air, space air, duct air temps	0.4F	CO monitor	0.01 % pts
Wattour, voltage & amperage	1% of design	Natural gas and oil flow rate	1% of design rate
Pressures, air, water and gas	3% of design	Steam flow rate	3% of design
Flow rates, air	10% of design	Barometric pressure	0.1 in. of Hg

The above stated tolerances shall be considered the most stringent required. Based on field conditions and the relative affect of a sensor to the operation of the system(s) the CA may choose to relax the above tolerances at his discretion subject to approval of the PM.

Valve and Damper Stroke Setup and Check BAS Readout. For all valve and damper actuator positions checked, verify the actual position against the BAS readout. Set pumps or fans to normal operating mode. Command valve or damper closed, visually verify that valve or damper is closed and adjust output zero signal as required. Command valve or damper open, verify position is full open and adjust output signal as required. Command valve or damper to a few intermediate positions. If actual valve or damper position doesn't reasonably correspond, replace actuator.

E. Execution of Prefunctional Checklists and Startup.

1. Four weeks prior to startup, the Subs and vendors schedule startup and checkout with the General Contractor who will notify the CA. The performance of the prefunctional checklists, startup and checkout are directed and executed by the CA with the assistance of the Sub or vendor as required. The CA will primarily complete the installation checks portion of the checklists while the Subs will assist with the equipment start-up and check-out portion.
2. The Subs and vendors shall execute startup and complete portions of the checklist on the commissioning website as assigned.
3. Only individuals that have direct knowledge and witnessed that a line item task on the prefunctional checklist was actually performed shall initial or check that item off. It is not acceptable for witnessing supervisors to fill out these forms.

F. Deficiencies, Non-Conformance and Approval in Checklists and Startup.

1. The CA shall clearly list any outstanding items of the initial start-up and prefunctional procedures that were not completed successfully as notes within the checklist on the commissioning website or as a deficiency in the on-line issue log.
2. The CA shall work with the Subs and vendors to correct and retest deficiencies or uncompleted items. The CA will involve the A/E, PM and others as necessary. The installing Subs or vendors shall correct all areas that are deficient or incomplete in the checklists and tests in a timely manner and shall notify the CA as soon as outstanding items have been corrected and submit a response to the deficiency in the on-line issue log and request a recheck or retest of the item. When satisfactorily completed, the CA recommends approval of the execution of the checklists and startup of each system to the PM.

3.5 TEST, ADJUST, BALANCE (TAB) VERIFICATION (TAB-V)

- A. TAB Agency shall provide labor and instruments to complete TAB Verification process with the Commissioning Agent. TAB Verification (TAB-V) shall be conducted to verify the contents of the Engineer-of-Record reviewed TAB Report. The verification shall include the following sampling rates and strategies:

1. Supply Air Flow: a sample 25% of the total supply air outlets / terminal unit calibrations shall be tested, acceptable tolerance shall be +/- 10% between the measured airflow and the design airflow / DDC indicated airflow. If more than 25% of the sample requires correction at the time of testing then another 10% of the total quantity of supply air outlets shall be tested.
 2. Exhaust Air Balance: ALL exhaust air devices and equipment on the project shall be verified to have airflows balanced to +0% / -10% of the design airflow.
 3. Outside Air Flow: ALL outside air flow balancing shall be verified and calibrated by the TAB Agency (with assistance of Controls Contractor) to be within +10% / -0% between the measured total airflow and the airflow indicated by the DDC system.
 4. Chilled Water Balance: ALL chilled water cooling coils on the project shall be verified to have water flows balanced to +10% / -10% of the design water flow.
 5. Heating Water Balance: a sample 25% of the heating water cooling coils on the project shall be verified to have water flows balanced to +10% / -10% of the design water flow. The same failure / re-test procedure as indicated above in 1. shall apply to this also.
- B. The TAB Agency may be responsible to pay for the additional trip(s) required of the Cx Professional to test additional outlets due to test failures on a time and material basis.

3.6 PERFORMANCE MONITORING, OPTIMIZATION & REPORTING (PMOR)

A. Objectives and Scope.

1. This project will utilize a cloud-based SaaS (Software as a Service) commissioning, performance monitoring, optimization, and reporting (PMOR) system which is provided under the CA contracted scope of work. The system shall be utilized during three distinctive phases of the project: construction, acceptance, and warranty phase.

B. Construction Phase - System Readiness:

1. The PMOR system will be utilized prior to Functional Performance Testing in order to gauge the readiness of the systems to be tested.
2. At least 10 days prior to the scheduled start of functional testing the BAS shall have delivered two weeks of operating data to the PMOR system. If the building automation system communication capabilities are not complete sufficiently to enable the BAS to email trend reports then the Controls Contractor shall manually generate two weeks trend data to a report. This manual report shall be the SAME EXACT REPORT FORMAT as was prior approved and will be used for the permanent reporting (specified elsewhere herein). This manual report shall either be emailed to the CA or shall be emailed to the project's specific PMOR email account.
3. Following receipt of two weeks of operating data (either automatically or manual) the CA shall review the data utilizing the PMOR system to assess the readiness of the specific system to begin on-site functional testing.
4. The CA shall notify the project team of the any deficiencies identified by the trend data analysis that would need to be addressed prior to beginning functional testing.

C. Acceptance Phase – Post Functional Test Monitoring:

1. The PMOR system shall be utilized following on-site Functional Testing to assess dynamic operation stability and to ensure the systems operate properly under varying load conditions and occupancy modes. This is a limited length testing and is intended

1 to be conducted for a short period (approximately two weeks) prior the completion of
 2 the formal functional testing.

- 3 2. Any deficiencies identified during this monitoring period shall be added to the project
 4 Commissioning Issue Log to be addressed by the Contractor as construction
 5 deficiencies. Some deficiencies identified by this monitoring may required
 6 supplemental on-site functional testing to be performed at the cost of the Contractor.
 7

8 **D. Warranty Phase – Monitoring:**
 9

- 10 1. The PMOR system will be utilized during the first year following substantial
 11 completion to monitor the performance of the building and the individual systems.
 12 2. Any operational deficiency identified by the system will be documented using the
 13 system's online Issue Log and the deficiency will be resolved through the contract's
 14 Project Warranty process.
 15 3. At eleven months following substantial completion the CA shall provide a
 16 comprehensive review of the system operation using the PMOR system to analyze
 17 the data provided from the BAS. An updated Warranty Phase Issue Log shall be
 18 generated and the Contractor shall resolve all issues determined by the team to be
 19 subject to Warranty requirements.
 20 4. At the Owner's option, and additional cost, the services of the CA and the PMOR
 21 system may be utilized after the expiration of the Warranty Phase as an On-Going
 22 Commissioning process.
 23

24 **3.7 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TESTING**
 25

- 26 A. This sub-section applies to all commissioning functional testing for all divisions.
 27
 28 B. The general list of equipment to be commissioned is found in Section 01 91 13, Part 1.4. The
 29 specific equipment and modes to be tested are found in the *Commissioning Plan –*
 30 *Construction Phase*.
 31
 32 C. The parties responsible to execute each test are listed with each test in the *Commissioning*
 33 *Plan – Construction Phase*.
 34
 35 D. Objectives and Scope. The objective of functional performance testing is to demonstrate that
 36 each system is operating according to the documented design intent and Contract Documents.
 37 Functional testing facilitates bringing the systems from a state of substantial completion to full
 38 dynamic operation. Additionally, during the testing process, areas of deficient performance
 39 are identified and corrected, improving the operation and functioning of the systems.
 40

41 In general, each system should be operated through all modes of operation (seasonal,
 42 occupied, unoccupied, warm-up, cool-down, part- and full-load) where there is a specified
 43 system response. Verifying each sequence in the sequences of operation is required. Proper
 44 responses to such modes and conditions as power failure, freeze condition, low oil pressure,
 45 no flow, equipment failure, etc. shall also be tested. Specific modes required in this project
 46 are given in the *Commissioning Plan – Construction Phase*.
 47

- 48 E. Development of Test Procedures. Before test procedures are written, the CA shall obtain all
 49 requested documentation and a current list of change orders affecting equipment or systems,
 50 including an updated points list, program code, control sequences and parameters. The CA
 51 shall develop specific test procedures and forms to verify and document proper operation of
 52 each piece of equipment and system. Each Sub or vendor responsible to execute a test, shall
 53 provide limited assistance to the CA in developing the procedures review (answering
 54 questions about equipment, operation, sequences, etc.). Prior to execution, the CA shall
 55 provide a copy of the test procedures to the Sub(s) who shall review the tests for feasibility,

1 safety, equipment and warranty protection. The CA may submit the tests to the PM or
 2 General Contractor for review, if requested.

3
 4 The CA shall review owner-contracted, factory testing or required owner acceptance tests
 5 which the CA is not responsible to oversee, including documentation format, and shall
 6 determine what further testing or format changes may be required to comply with the
 7 *Specifications*. Redundancy of testing shall be minimized.

8
 9 The purpose of any given specific test is to verify and document compliance with the stated
 10 criteria of acceptance given on the test form.

11
 12 The test procedure forms developed by the CA may include (but not be limited to) the
 13 following information:

- 14 1. System and equipment or component name(s)
- 15 2. Equipment location and ID number
- 16 3. Unique test ID number, and reference to unique prefunctional checklist and start-up
 17 documentation ID numbers for the piece of equipment
- 18 4. Date
- 19 5. Project name
- 20 6. Participating parties
- 21 7. A copy of the specific sequence of operations or other specified parameters being
 22 verified
- 23 8. Formulas used in any calculations
- 24 9. Required pre-test field measurements
- 25 10. Instructions for setting up the test.
- 26 11. Special cautions, alarm limits, etc.
- 27 12. Specific step-by-step procedures to execute the test, in a clear, sequential and
 28 repeatable format
- 29 13. Acceptance criteria of proper performance with a Yes / No check box to allow for clearly
 30 marking whether or not proper performance of each part of the test was achieved.
- 31 14. A section for comments
- 32 15. Signatures and date block for the CA

33
 34
 35 **F. Test Methods.**

- 36 1. Functional performance testing and verification may be achieved by manual testing
 37 (persons manipulate the equipment and observe performance) or by monitoring the
 38 performance and analyzing the results using the control system's trend log capabilities or
 39 by stand-alone dataloggers (if stand-alone dataloggers are required then they will be
 40 provided and installed by the CA). The CA will determine which method is most
 41 appropriate for tests that do not have a method specified.
- 42 2. Simulated Conditions. Simulating conditions (not by an overwritten value) shall be
 43 allowed, though timing the testing to experience actual conditions is encouraged
 44 wherever practical.
- 45 3. Overwritten Values. Overwriting sensor values to simulate a condition, such as
 46 overwriting the outside air temperature reading in a control system to be something other
 47 than it really is, shall be allowed, but shall be used with caution and avoided when
 48 possible. Such testing methods often can only test a part of a system, as the interactions
 49 and responses of other systems will be erroneous or not applicable. Simulating a
 50 condition is preferable. e.g., for the above case, by heating the outside air sensor with a
 51 hair blower rather than overwriting the value or by altering the appropriate set point to see
 52 the desired response. Before simulating conditions or overwriting values, sensors,
 53 transducers and devices shall have been calibrated.

- 1 4. Simulated Signals. Using a signal generator which creates a simulated signal to test and
 2 calibrate transducers and DDC constants is generally recommended over using the
 3 sensor to act as the signal generator via simulated conditions or overwritten values.
 4 5. Altering Setpoints. Rather than overwriting sensor values, and when simulating
 5 conditions is difficult, altering setpoints to test a sequence is acceptable. For example, to
 6 see the AC compressor lockout work at an outside air temperature below 55F, when the
 7 outside air temperature is above 55F, temporarily change the lockout setpoint to be 2F
 8 above the current outside air temperature.
 9 6. Indirect Indicators. Relying on indirect indicators for responses or performance shall be
 10 allowed only after visually and directly verifying and documenting, over the range of the
 11 tested parameters, that the indirect readings through the control system represent actual
 12 conditions and responses. Much of this verification is completed during prefunctional
 13 testing.
 14 7. Setup. Each function and test shall be performed under conditions that simulate actual
 15 conditions as close as is practically possible. The Sub executing the test shall provide all
 16 necessary materials, system modifications, etc. to produce the necessary flows,
 17 pressures, temperatures, etc. necessary to execute the test according to the specified
 18 conditions. At completion of the test, the Sub shall return all affected building equipment
 19 and systems, due to these temporary modifications, to their pre-test condition.
 20 8. Sampling. Multiple identical pieces of non-life-safety or otherwise non-critical equipment
 21 may be functionally tested using a sampling strategy. Significant application differences
 22 and significant sequence of operation differences in otherwise identical equipment
 23 invalidates their common identity. A small size or capacity difference, alone, does not
 24 constitute a difference. The specific recommended sampling rates are specified in the
 25 *Commissioning Plan – Construction Phase*. It is noted that no sampling by Subs is
 26 allowed in prefunctional checklist execution.

27
 28 A common sampling strategy referenced in the *Specifications* as the “xx% Sampling—
 29 yy% Failure Rule” is defined by the following example.

30
 31 xx = the percent of the group of identical equipment to be included in each sample.
 32 yy = the percent of the sample that if failing, will require another sample to be
 33 tested.

34
 35 The example below describes a 20% Sampling—10% Failure Rule.

- 36
 37 a. Randomly test at least 20% (xx) of each group of identical equipment. In no case
 38 test less than three units in each group. This 20%, or three, constitute the “first
 39 sample.”
 40 b. If 10% (yy) of the units in the first sample fail the functional performance tests, test
 41 another 20% of the group (the second sample).
 42 c. If 10% of the units in the second sample fail, test all remaining units in the whole
 43 group.
 44 d. If at any point, frequent failures are occurring and testing is becoming more
 45 troubleshooting than verification, the CA may stop the testing and require the
 46 responsible Sub to perform and document a checkout of the remaining units, prior
 47 to continuing with functionally testing the remaining units.
 48
 49 G. Coordination and Scheduling. The Subs shall provide sufficient notice to the CA regarding
 50 their completion schedule for the prefunctional checklists and startup of all equipment and
 51 systems. The CA will schedule functional tests through the General Contractor and affected
 52 Subs. The CA shall direct, witness and document the functional testing of all equipment and
 53 systems. The Subs shall execute the tests.

54
 55 In general, functional testing is conducted after prefunctional testing and startup has been
 56 satisfactorily completed. The control system is sufficiently tested and approved by the CA

1 before it is used for TAB or to verify performance of other components or systems. The air
 2 balancing and water balancing is completed and debugged before functional testing of air-
 3 related or water-related equipment or systems. Testing proceeds from components to
 4 subsystems to systems. When the proper performance of all interacting individual systems
 5 has been achieved, the interface or coordinated responses between systems is checked.

6
 7 H. Test Equipment. Refer to Section 01 91 13, Part 2 for test equipment requirements.

8
 9 I. Problem Solving. The CA will recommend solutions to problems found, however the burden of
 10 responsibility to solve, correct and retest problems is with the General Contractor and his
 11 Subs.

12 **3.8 DOCUMENTATION, NON-CONFORMANCE AND APPROVAL OF TESTS**

13
 14 A. Documentation. The CA shall witness and document the results of all functional performance
 15 tests using the specific procedural forms developed for that purpose. Prior to testing, these
 16 forms are provided to the PM for review and approval and to the Subs for review. The CA will
 17 include the filled out forms in the Commissioning Record.

18
 19 B. Non-Conformance.

- 20
 21
 22 1. The CA will record the results of the functional test on the procedure or test form. All
 23 deficiencies or non-conformance issues shall be noted in the online issue log and
 24 reported to the Cx Team Members via electronic notification or periodic reports generated
 25 from the website.
- 26 2. Corrections of minor deficiencies identified may be made during the tests at the discretion
 27 of the CA. In such cases the deficiency and resolution will be documented on the
 28 procedure form as well as the online commissioning issue log.
- 29 3. Every effort will be made to expedite the testing process and minimize unnecessary
 30 delays, while not compromising the integrity of the procedures. However, the CA will not
 31 be pressured into overlooking deficient work or loosening acceptance criteria to satisfy
 32 scheduling or cost issues, unless there is an overriding reason to do so at the request of
 33 the Owner PM.
- 34 4. As tests progress and a deficiency is identified, the CA discusses the issue with the
 35 executing contractor.
- 36 a. When there is no dispute on the deficiency and the Sub accepts responsibility to
 37 correct it:
- 38 1) The CA documents the deficiency and the Sub's response and intentions and
 39 they go on to another test or sequence. After the day's work, the CA
 40 documents the deficiency in the on-line commissioning issue log and assigns
 41 to the Sub for correction. Once the Sub has corrected the deficiency they will
 42 notify the CxP in the issue log of the resolution and that the item is ready to
 43 be retested.
- 44 2) The CA reschedules the test and the test is repeated.
- 45
 46 b. If there is a dispute about a deficiency, regarding whether it is a deficiency or who
 47 is responsible:
- 48 1) The deficiency shall be documented on the on-line commissioning log with
 49 the Sub's response regarding the deficiency. The deficiency is assigned to
 50 the party to whom the CA believes responsible for resolution or whose input
 51 is required to proceed to resolution.
- 52 2) Resolutions are made at the lowest management level possible. Other
 53 parties are brought into the discussions as needed. Final interpretive
 54 authority is with the Architect and his Consultants. Final acceptance
 55 authority is with the CA and the Owner Project Manager.
- 56 3) The CA documents the resolution process using the online issue log.

- 1 4) Once the interpretation and resolution have been decided, the appropriate
 2 party corrects the deficiency. Once the responsible party has corrected the
 3 deficiency they will notify the CA in the issue log of the resolution and that the
 4 item is ready to be retested.
 5
 6 5. Cost of Retesting.
 7 a. At the discretion of the CA, A/E, and the Owner, the cost for the Sub to retest a
 8 functional test, if they are responsible for the deficiency, shall be theirs. If they are
 9 not responsible, any cost recovery for retesting costs shall be negotiated with the
 10 GC.
 11 b. For a deficiency identified, not related to any start-up or initial checkout fault, the
 12 following shall apply: The CA and PM will direct the retesting of the equipment
 13 once at no “charge” to the GC for their time. However, the CA’s time for a second
 14 retest will be charged to the GC, who may choose to recover costs from the
 15 responsible Sub.
 16 c. The time for the CA to direct any retesting required because a specific start-up or
 17 checkout item, reported to have been successfully completed, but determined
 18 during functional testing to be faulty, will be backcharged to the GC, who may
 19 choose to recover costs from the party responsible for executing the faulty
 20 prefunctional test.
 21
 22 6. The Contractor shall respond using the commissioning website concerning the status of
 23 each apparent outstanding discrepancy identified during commissioning.
 24 Discussion shall cover explanations of any disagreements and proposals for their
 25 resolution. Comments shall be provided at least five (5) days after deficiency is
 26 noted or prior to a scheduled commissioning meeting whichever occurs first.
 27 8. Any required retesting by any contractor shall not be considered a justified reason for a
 28 claim of delay or for a time extension by the prime contractor.
 29
 30 C. Approval. The CA notes each satisfactorily demonstrated function on the test form. Formal
 31 approval of the functional test is made later after review by the CA and by the PM, if
 32 necessary. The CA recommends acceptance of each test to the PM using a standard form.
 33 The PM gives final approval on each test using the same form, providing a signed copy to the
 34 CA and the Contractor.
 35

3.9 **OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS / FINAL COMMISSIONING REPORT**

- 36
 37 A. O&M Manuals.
 38
 39 1. The specific content and format requirements for the project O&M manuals shall be per
 40 General Contractors contract requirements with Owner and General Contractor standard
 41 format for such. Special requirements for the controls contractor and TAB contractor are
 42 found in their respective specification sections.
 43
 44 2. CA Review and Approval. For this project the CA will not be involved in review and
 45 approval of the O&M manuals.
 46
 47 2. Final Commissioning Report Details. The final commissioning report shall include the
 48 following:
 49
 50 a. Final Construction Phase Commissioning Deficiency Report
 51 b. Completed Prefunctional Checklist forms
 52 c. Completed TAB Verification forms
 53 d. Completed Functional Performance Test forms.
 54 e. Other documentation will be retained by the CA.
 55
 56

1 **3.10 TRAINING OF OWNER PERSONNEL**

- 2
- 3 A. The GC shall coordinate with the Owner for desired training sequencing and scheduling and
- 4 shall provide the approved schedule of training to the Owner and CA for review and approval.
- 5 The Mechanical Contractor, Controls Contractor, Electrical Contractor, and Equipment
- 6 Suppliers shall complete all training activities and documentation as directed by the GC, the
- 7 approved schedule, and the specific equipment specification sections.
- 8

9 **3.11 WRITTEN WORK PRODUCTS**

- 10
- 11 A. The commissioning process generates a number of written work products described in various
- 12 parts of the *Specifications*. The *Commissioning Plan—Construction Phase*, lists all the formal
- 13 written work products, describes briefly their contents, who is responsible to create them, their
- 14 due dates, who receives and approves them and the location of the specification to create
- 15 them. In summary, the written products are:
- 16

<u>Product</u>	<u>Developed By</u>
17 1. Final commissioning plan	CA
18 2. Cx Meeting minutes	CA
19 3. Commissioning schedules	CA with General Contractor
20 4. Equipment documentation submittals	Subs
21 5. Sequence clarifications	Subs and General Contractor
22 6. Prefunctional checklists	CA
23 7. Final TAB report	TAB
24 8. Issues Log (deficiencies)	CA
25 9. Commissioning Progress Record	CA
26 10. Functional test forms	CA
27 11. O&M manuals	Subs
28 12. Overall training plan	GC
29 13. Specific training agendas	Subs / GC
30 14. Final commissioning report	CA

31

32

33

34 **END OF SECTION 01 91 13**

35



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



1 **SECTION 03 10 00 -CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. This Section includes, but is not limited to, the design, engineering, construction and removal of
8 formwork required for cast-in-place concrete as shown on the drawings and specified herein.

- 9 B. Related Sections include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 10 1. Section 033000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete" for finishes.

- 11 C. Work Installed and Furnished by Others:

- 12 1. Install built-in anchors, inserts, and bolts for connection of other materials; sleeves,
13 thimbles, and dovetail anchor slots, plates, frames, seats and all other embedded items
14 including Owner furnished items.
15 2. Coating of forms and other surfaces as required by this Section.

16 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 17 A. Formwork: The total system of support of freshly placed concrete, including the mold or
18 sheathing that contacts the concrete, as well as supporting members, hardware, and necessary
19 bracing.

20 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 21 A. Product Data: Submit, for record only, not for approval, data for each type of product and
22 material indicated including others as requested by Architect. Substitutions for specified items or
23 manufacturers are to be submitted in accordance with Section 1 and will be subject to approval,
24 rejection or other appropriate action.

- 25 B. Formwork Shop Drawings: Prepare shop drawings in compliance with ACI SPEC-301 and ACI
26 PRC-347. If requested by the Architect, submit shop drawings showing general construction of
27 forms for concrete permanently exposed to view; including jointing, special form joints or
28 reveals, location and pattern of form tie placement, and other items that visually affect exposed
29 concrete. Architect's review is for general architectural applications and features only. Formwork
30 design for safety, structural adequacy and efficiency is Contractor's responsibility.

- 31 C. Shoring and reshoring shop drawings, including for precast prestressed concrete framing:
32 Submit signed and sealed shop drawings prepared by a Delegated Engineer experienced in



1 such work and licensed in the State of **Florida**. The drawings shall conform to ACI SPEC-301
 2 and ACI PRC-347 and contain, as a minimum, the location, size and type of all shoring,
 3 reshoring, mud sills, blocking, temporary lateral bracing and other accessories necessary to
 4 safely support and brace the structure during construction. The drawings shall also show the
 5 sequence of installation, load relief and removal. Use a safety factor of 2 for metal shores and 3
 6 for wood shores. Submit drawings to the Architect, Engineer, Special Inspector and Building
 7 Official for record only. Shoring and reshoring design and construction is the sole responsibility
 8 of the Contractor and his Engineer.

- 9 1. Design structural members to support form facing materials without deflection. Design
 10 camber into formwork as required to compensate for anticipated deflections due to weight
 11 and pressures of fresh concrete and construction loads for longspan members without
 12 intermediate supports.
- 13 2. Prior to each concrete pour, the Delegated Engineer who prepares the shoring and
 14 reshoring drawings or his authorized representative shall inspect the shoring and
 15 reshoring. He shall provide a field report of each inspection to the Contractor and Special
 16 Inspector prior to leaving the site. Upon completion of the project, he shall submit a
 17 signed and sealed statement to the Architect and Special Inspector that this work was
 18 performed in accordance with his plans and specifications.

19 **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 20 A. Material Certificates: For the form-release agent, signed by manufacturer.

21 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 22 A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed concrete work similar in
 23 material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in
 24 construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- 25 B. Delegated Engineer Qualifications: A licensed engineer who is legally qualified to practice in
 26 the State of **Florida** and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind
 27 indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for formwork and shoring and
 28 reshoring installations that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and
 29 extent.
- 30 C. Codes and Standards: Comply with the following, unless more stringent provisions are
 31 indicated:
 - 32 1. Florida Building Code, 8th Edition.
 - 33 2. ACI SPEC-117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
 - 34 3. ACI SPEC-301, "Specifications for Concrete Construction."
 - 35 4. ACI CODE-318, "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete."
 - 36 5. ACI PRC-347, "Guide to Formwork for Concrete."
 - 37 6. ACI SP-4, "Formwork for Concrete."
 - 38 7. American Forest and Paper Association, "National Design Specifications for Wood
 39 Construction."
 - 40 8. American Plywood Association (APA), "Plywood Design Specification" (Form Y-510);
 41 "Concrete Forming: (Form V345)
 - 42 9. National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), "Voluntary Product Standard PS
 43 1-07 for Construction and Industrial Plywood" (Form V995).



1 **1.7 JOB CONDITIONS AND COORDINATION OF TRADES**

- 2 A. General: It is the Contractor's sole responsibility to coordinate with all trades for the setting of
 3 sleeves, anchor bolts, dovetail slots, inserts, frames, flashing, reglets, pipes, ducts and other
 4 embedded items and provide all openings required for installation of other work in accordance
 5 with the Contractor's shop drawings and the Contract Documents.
- 6 B. Structural Integrity: Provide no sleeves or openings in structural members unless shown on the
 7 structural drawings or approved by the Architect.
- 8 C. Inspection: Architect may inspect formwork at any time and may reject formwork if forms do not
 9 conform to the lines, levels, and tolerances as required in this Section, the shop drawings or the
 10 Design Drawings. If formwork is rejected, the Contractor must repair or replace the rejected
 11 portion with no additional cost to the Owner.

12 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

13 **2.1 FORM-FACING MATERIALS**

- 14 A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and
 15 smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
- 16 1. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1,
 17 and as follows:
 18 a. APA Medium-density overlay, Class 1 or better; mill-release agent treated and
 19 edge sealed.
- 20 B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material.
 21 Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- 22 C. Stable Soil: In the event stable soil is encountered and straight-line embankments can be
 23 maintained, concrete foundations may be placed into accurately excavated earth trenches, free
 24 from water, debris, or loose dirt. Excavations shall be minimum 2" wider and longer than
 25 specified.

26 **2.2 RELATED MATERIALS**

- 27 A. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 1/2 by 1/2 inch, minimum.
- 28 B. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.
- 29 C. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with,
 30 stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of
 31 concrete surfaces.
- 32 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
- 33 D. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic
 34 form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of
 35 concrete on removal.



- 1 1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of the
- 2 exposed concrete surface.
- 3 2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes not larger than 1 inch in diameter in
- 4 concrete surface.
- 5 E. Accessories: Provide necessary anchors, form ties, shores, construction joints, scaffolds, and
- 6 bracing as required to install forms. Provide construction joints, control joints, expansion joints
- 7 and waterstops where indicated on the drawings.
- 8 1. Form Joint Gasket: Closed cell rubber sponge. Take care that form joints are sealed
- 9 from leakage of cement paste and moisture.
- 10 2. Material to form drips, reveals, rustification strips or weep holes shall be extruded plastic.

11 PART 3 - EXECUTION

12 3.1 INSTALLATION OF FORMWORK

- 13 A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI SPEC-301 and ACI PRC-
- 14 347, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be
- 15 applied, until concrete structure can support such loads.
- 16 B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment,
- 17 elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI SPEC-117.
- 18 C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI PRC-347 as abrupt or gradual, as
- 19 follows:
 - 20 1. Surface Finish-1.0: ACI SPEC-117 Class D, 1 inch for permanently concealed rough-
 - 21 formed finished surfaces.
 - 22 2. ACI SPEC-117 Class C, 1/2 inch: Other rough-formed finished surfaces.
 - 23 3. Surface Finish-2.0: ACI SPEC-117 Class B, ¼ inch for rough-formed finished surfaces
 - 24 intended to receive plaster.
 - 25 4. Surface Finish-3.0: ACI SPEC-117 Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finish surfaces
 - 26 exposed to public view.
- 27 D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
 - 28 1. Minimize joints.
 - 29 2. Exposed Concrete: Symmetrically align joints in forms.
- 30 E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces.
- 31 Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide
- 32 top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
 - 33 1. Kerf wood inserts for forming keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
- 34 F. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- 35 G. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required
- 36 elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed
- 37 strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.



- 1 H. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork
 2 is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent
 3 loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- 4 I. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- 5 J. At construction joints, overlap forms onto previously placed concrete not less than 12 inches.
- 6 K. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads
 7 required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- 8 L. Construction and Movement Joints:
- 9 1. Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
 10 2. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or
 11 as approved by Architect.
 12 3. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
 13 4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders as indicated on the drawings.
 14 5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and
 15 girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
 16 6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings.
- 17 a. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed
 18 locations where possible.
- 19 M. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and
 20 other debris just before placing concrete.
- 21 N. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and
 22 maintain proper alignment.
- 23 O. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written
 24 instructions, before placing reinforcement.

25 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

- 26 A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work
 27 that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates,
 28 diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
- 29 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with
 30 tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC 303.
 31 2. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face
 32 of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and
 33 other conditions.
 34 3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

35 3.3 EARTH FORMS



- 1 A. Hand trim sides and bottom of earth forms. Remove loose soil and rocks and compact to
2 specified density prior to placing reinforcing or concrete. Moisten sides and bottom immediately
3 prior to concrete placement. Comply with OSHA's "Trench Safety Act".

4 **3.4 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS**

- 5 A. General: Formwork, for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work, that
6 does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than
7 50 degrees F for 24 hours after placing concrete provided concrete is hard enough to not be
8 damaged by form-removal operations and provided curing and protection operations are
9 maintained.
- 10 B. Leave formwork, for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements, that supports
11 weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved the strength and age listed in the
12 Structural Notes.
- 13 1. Determine compressive strength of in-place concrete by testing representative field or
14 laboratory-cured test specimens according to ACI SPEC-301.
15 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without
16 loosening or disturbing shores.
- 17 C. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or
18 otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. The
19 Architect's approval is required for reusing forms for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release
20 agent.
- 21 D. Reuse forms to greatest extent possible without damaging structural integrity of concrete and
22 without damaging aesthetics of exposed concrete. When forms are reused, clean surfaces,
23 remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do
24 not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

25 **3.5 SHORES AND RESHORES**

- 26 A. Comply with ACI CODE-318, ACI SPEC-301, and recommendations in ACI PRC-347 for
27 design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.
- 28 1. Do not remove shoring or reshoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.
- 29 B. In multistory construction, extend shoring or reshoring over a sufficient number of stories to
30 distribute loads in such a manner that no floor or member will be excessively loaded or will
31 induce tensile stress in concrete members without sufficient steel reinforcement.
- 32 C. Plan sequence of removal of shores and reshores to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and
33 provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.
34 Shores must be readily adjustable so that settlement during concrete placement may be taken
35 up at once.



1 **3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

2 A. Prior to each concrete pour, the Delegated Engineer or his authorized representative shall
3 inspect the shoring and reshoring and submit a signed inspection report to the Special Inspector
4 and Contractor stating that the work is in general compliance with the shoring and reshoring
5 drawings. As a minimum, the shoring and reshoring report shall contain the following:

- 6 1. Name and location of Project, name of Delegated Engineer and his field representative,
7 Permit Number, date, time of day, and working conditions, including weather and
8 temperature.
9 2. Description of items requiring correction.
10 3. Accepted deviations from shoring and reshoring drawings.
11 4. Areas accepted and released for concrete pour.

12 **END OF SECTION 03 10 00**



1 **SECTION 03 20 00 – CONCRETE REINFORCING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. This Section includes, but is not limited to, concrete reinforcement bars, welded-wire reinforcing
8 and necessary accessories.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: Submit, for record only, not for approval, data for each type of product and
11 material indicated including others as requested by Architect. Indicate manufacturing process
12 used for steel reinforcing. Substitutions for specified items or manufacturers are to be submitted
13 in accordance with Division 1 and will be subject to approval, rejection or other appropriate
14 action.

- 15 B. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Complete details of fabrication, bending, and placement,
16 prepared according to ACI PRC-315, "Guide to Presenting Reinforcing Steel Design Details"
17 and ACI MNL-66 "ACI Detailing Manual". Include bar sizes, length, material, grade, bar
18 schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, arrangement location of splices, lengths of lap
19 splices, details of mechanical splice couplers, details of welding splices, tie spacing, hoop
20 spacing, and supports of concrete reinforcement.

- 21 1. Do not reproduce Structural Drawings for use as shop or placement drawings without
22 prior approval of the Architect.

- 23 C. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to build the structure.

- 24 1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

25 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 26 A. Welding certificates.

- 27 1. Reinforcement To Be Welded: Welding procedure specification in accordance with AWS
28 D1.4.

- 29 B. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers and the Contractor certifying that the steel
30 reinforcement and reinforcement accessories comply with requirements of the Contract
31 Documents. Unidentifiable steel is prohibited.



- 1 C. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:
- 2 1. Steel Reinforcement:
- 3 a. For reinforcement to be welded, mill test analysis for chemical composition and
- 4 carbon equivalent of the steel in accordance with ASTM A706.
- 5 2. Mechanical splice couplers.

6 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- 7 A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the following, unless more stringent provisions are
- 8 indicated:
- 9 1. Florida Building Code, 8th Edition.
- 10 2. ACI SPEC-117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
- 11 3. ACI SPEC-301, "Specifications for Concrete Construction."
- 12 4. ACI PRC-315, "Guide to Presenting Reinforcing Steel Design Details."
- 13 5. ACI CODE-318, "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete."
- 14 6. "CRSI Manual of Standard Practice."
- 15 B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.4.
- 16 C. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed concrete work similar in
- 17 material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in
- 18 construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

19 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- 20 A. Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage and to avoid
- 21 damaging coatings on steel reinforcement.
- 22 1. Deliver reinforcement to the job site bundled, tagged and marked. Use durable metal or
- 23 embossed plastic tags indicating bar size, lengths, and reference information
- 24 corresponding to markings shown on placement drawings. Do not store reinforcement in
- 25 contact with earth.

26 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

27 2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- 28 A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615, Grade 60, deformed.
- 29 B. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A706, deformed.
- 30 C. Headed-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A970.
- 31 D. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel
- 32 wire into flat sheets. Rolls are not acceptable.



1 **2.2 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES**

- 2 A. Joint Dowel Bars: Plain-steel bars, ASTM A615, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut bars true to
3 length with ends square and free of burrs.
- 4 B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and
5 fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports
6 from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice,"
7 of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
- 8 1. For concrete surfaces where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1
9 plastic-protected steel wire, all plastic bar supports, or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar
10 supports.
- 11 2. For welded wire fabric in slabs on grade use precast slab bolsters, concrete brick or sand
12 plate chairs spaced no farther than 3'-0" c/c.
- 13 C. Mechanical Splices for Reinforcing Steel: Reinforcing bar splicing system designed to develop
14 minimum 1.25 Fy of the reinforcing bars in both tension and compressions, conforming to ACI
15 CODE-318. Splicing system shall be listed by the International Code Council (ICC). Subject to
16 compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are
17 not limited to, the following:
- 18 1. Screw-lock bar coupling sleeve system.
- 19 a. Dayton Superior Bar Lock Coupling System.
20 b. Erico Lenton Lock Mechanical Rebar System.
- 21 D. Reinforcing Dowel Replacement: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may
22 be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 23 1. Dayton Superior Taper-Lock Form Saver.
24 2. Erico Lenton Form Saver.
- 25 E. Steel Tie Wire: ASTM A1064, annealed steel, not less than 00508 inch in diameter.

26 **2.3 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT**

- 27 A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."
- 28 B. Shop bend and fabricate reinforcing bars to conform with shapes and dimensions indicated on
29 drawings. In case of errors, do not bend or straighten reinforcement without prior approval of
30 Structural Engineer. Make all bends cold.

31 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

32 **3.1 PREPARATION**

- 33 A. Protection of In-Place Conditions:



1 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before
2 placing concrete.

3 B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that
4 reduce bond to concrete.

5 **3.2 INSTALLATION OF STEEL REINFORCEMENT**

6 A. Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.

7 B. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and
8 support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover specified on the
9 drawings. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.

10 C. Preserve clearance between bars of not less than 1", not less than one bar diameter, or not less
11 than 1-1/3 times size of large aggregate, whichever is greater.

12 D. Provide concrete coverage in accordance with ACI CODE-318.

13 E. Tie bars and bar supports together with 16-gauge wire and set wire ties with ends directed into
14 concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

15 F. Splices: Locate only where indicated on the drawings or approved shop drawings except with
16 prior approval of Engineer

17 1. For standard splices, lap ends, placing bars in contact, and tightly wire tie. See drawings
18 for lap lengths.

19 2. Stagger splices in accordance with ACI CODE-318.

20 3. Mechanical Splice Couplers: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

21 4. Do not weld splices.

22 G. Install welded-wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to
23 minimize sagging (3'-0" o.c. max.). Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least two mesh
24 spacings. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
25 Lace overlaps with 16-gauge wire.

26 H. Provide template for all column dowels.

27 I. Do not bend bars embedded in hardened or partially hardened concrete without approval from
28 the Structural Engineer.

29 J. Do not weld reinforcing bars unless specifically shown. Where shown comply with AWS D1.4.
30 Bars to be welded shall conform to ASTM A706.

31 **3.3 JOINTS**

32 A. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at
33 locations indicated or as approved by Architect.

34 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.

35 2. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.



1 3. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.

2 **3.4 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES**

3 A. Comply with ACI SPEC-117.

4 **END OF SECTION 03 20 00**



1 **SECTION 03 30 00 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. This Section includes, but is not necessarily limited to, concrete, concrete materials, mix design,
8 placement procedures, curing and finishes.

- 9 B. Related Sections include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following:

- 10 1. Section 03 10 00 "Concrete Forming and Accessories".
11 2. Section 03 20 00 "Concrete Reinforcing."
12 3. Section 31 20 00 "Earthmoving" for drainage fill under slabs-on-grade, including grade
13 beams and pile caps.

14 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 15 A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the
16 following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume.

- 17 B. Water/Cement Ratio (w/cm): The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

18 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 19 A. Product Data: Submit, for record only, not for approval, data for each type of product and
20 material indicated including admixtures, patching compounds, waterstops, joint systems, curing
21 compounds, and others as requested by Architect.

- 22 B. Design Mixes: For each concrete mix. Include alternate mix designs when characteristics of
23 materials, project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
24 Substantiating data to be no older than one year from date of submittal for each mix design.

- 25 1. Indicate amounts of mix water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.

26 **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 27 A. Qualification Data: For the following:

- 28 1. Installer:



- 1 a. ACI Flatwork Technician certifications. See Allstate Construction's bid package.
- 2 b. Written evidence that flatwork placer/finisher has not less than (3) years
- 3 continuous experience and a minimum of (5) projects in the successful placement
- 4 and finishing of concrete slabs with flatness and levelness requirements equal to
- 5 or higher than those specified for this project.
- 6 c. Written evidence of 10 projects that Installer has completed concrete Work similar
- 7 in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work
- 8 has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- 9 2. Ready-Mixed Concrete Manufacturer: NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete
- 10 Production Facilities".
- 11 B. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers and contractor certifying that each of the
- 12 following items complies with requirements of the Contract Documents:
- 13 1. Cementitious materials and aggregates.
- 14 2. Admixtures.
- 15 3. Waterstops.
- 16 4. Curing materials.
- 17 5. Bonding agents.
- 18 6. Adhesives.
- 19 7. Vapor retarders.
- 20 8. Repair materials.
- 21 9. Joint filler strips.

22 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- 23 A. Installer Qualifications: An qualified installer who has completed concrete Work similar in
- 24 material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in
- 25 construction with a record of successful in-service performance. Installer shall employ on
- 26 Project personnel qualified as ACI Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an
- 27 ACI Concrete Flatwork Technician. See Allstate Construction's bid package.
- 28 B. Ready-Mixed Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in the successful
- 29 manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products complying with ASTM C94 requirements for
- 30 production and delivery, facilities and equipment.
- 31 1. Manufacturer must be certified according to the National Ready Mixed Concrete
- 32 Association's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities".
- 33 2. Manufacturer must be F.D.O.T. certified.
- 34 C. Codes and Standards: Comply with the following, unless modified by requirements in the
- 35 Contract Documents:
- 36 1. Florida Building Code, 8th Edition.
- 37 2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
- 38 3. ACI 211.1 "Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight and
- 39 Mass Concrete."
- 40 4. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete for Buildings."
- 41 5. ACI-304, "Recommended Practice for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing
- 42 Concrete."
- 43 6. ACI-305.1, "Guide to Hot Weather Concreting."
- 44 7. ACI-306.1, "Guide to Cold Weather Concreting."



- 1 8. ACI-308, "Guide to External Curing of Concrete."
 2 9. ACI-309, "Guide for Consolidation of Concrete."
 3 10. ACI-311.4, "Guide for Concrete Inspection."
 4 11. ACI-318, "Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete."

5 **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 6 A. Comply with ASTM C94 and ACI 301.
 7 B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other
 8 contaminants.

9 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

10 **2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL**

- 11 A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless modified by the requirements in the Contract
 12 Documents.

13 **2.2 MANUFACTURERS**

- 14 A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to
 15 product selection:
- 16 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be
 17 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
 18 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products
 19 specified.
 20 3. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers
 21 offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to,
 22 manufacturers specified.
 23 4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 24 manufacturers specified.

25 **2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS**

- 26 A. Source Limitations:
- 27 1. Obtain all concrete mixtures from a single ready-mixed concrete manufacturer for entire
 28 Project.
 29 2. Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same
 30 manufacturer's plant.
 31 3. Obtain aggregate from single source.
 32 4. Obtain each type of admixture from single source from single manufacturer.
- 33 B. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and
 34 source, throughout Project:



- 1 1. Portland Cement:
- 2 a. ASTM C150, Type I/II
- 3 b. Slabs on Grade: Type I or Type II with a C3A content less than 8%.
- 4 2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C989, Grade 100 or 120.
- 5 C. Pozzolans:
- 6 1. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
- 7 D. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C595, Type IP, portland-pozzolan cement.
- 8 E. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C595, Type IL, Portland-limestone cement.
- 9 F. Normal-Weight Aggregate: Provide aggregates from a single source.
- 10 1. Fine Aggregate: Natural quartz sand or manufactured sand from local stone aggregates
- 11 conforming to ASTM C33, produced from F.D.O.T. approved sources, with fineness
- 12 modulus not less than 2.4, and having a proven service record.
- 13 2. Coarse Aggregate: Clean, washed, sound, crushed natural stone products produced
- 14 from F.D.O.T. approved sources. Free from salt, clay, mud, loam or other foreign matter.
- 15 Conform to ASTM C33; sizes No. 67 (3/4 inch) or No. 57 (1 inch), No. 8 or No. 89 (3/8
- 16 inch), and No. 467 (1 1/2 inch). **Use largest size practical for members being cast.**
- 17 a. Class: Negligible weathering region, class per ASTM C33. [1N]
- 18 G. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C94.
- 19 **2.4 CONCRETE ADMIXTURES**
- 20 A. General: Provide admixtures produced by acceptable manufacturers and used in compliance
- 21 with the manufacturer's printed directions. Use only admixtures which have been incorporated
- 22 and tested in the accepted mixes, unless otherwise authorized in writing by the Architect. Do not
- 23 use admixtures which increase the shrinkage properties of concrete. Submit substantiating
- 24 data, if requested.
- 25 B. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260.
- 26 C. Water-reducing admixture: Conform to ASTM C494, Type A, D or E free of chlorides, fluorides,
- 27 or nitrates, except for those attributable to the water used in manufacturing. Use in all structural
- 28 concrete.
- 29 D. High Range Water Reducing Admixture: Conform to ASTM C494, Type F or Type G and ASTM
- 30 C1017, Type I or II. Formulate HRWR based on polycarboxylate technology. The admixture is
- 31 to be added to the concrete mix after initial mixing has taken place. If added at the batch plant
- 32 HRWR to have an effective life without redosing (third generation HRWR) of at least 2 Hours. If
- 33 added at the jobsite, the addition shall be by certified technicians employed by the concrete
- 34 supplier or an authorized representative of the admixture manufacturer. This admixture is in
- 35 addition to and not a substitute for any other admixtures specified elsewhere.



- 1 E. Calcium Chloride: Do not use calcium chloride in concrete. Do not use any admixtures which
2 contribute free chloride ions to the concrete mix.

3 **2.5 WATERSTOPS**

- 4 A. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl
5 rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers for adhesive bonding to concrete.

- 6 1. Available Products:
7 a. Volclay Waterstop-RX; Colloid Environmental Technologies Co.

8 **2.6 VAPOR RETARDERS**

- 9 A. Sheet Vapor Retarder, Class A: ASTM E1745: Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive
10 or pressure-sensitive tape.

- 11 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
12 a. Fortifiber Building Systems Group; Moistop Ultra 15.
13 b. ISI Building Products; Viper VaporCheck II 15-mil.
14 c. Raven Industries Inc.; VaporBlock VB15
15 d. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn 15 Mil.
16 e. Stego Industries, LLC; Stego Wrap Vapor Barrier (15-Mil)
17 f. W.R. Meadows, Inc.; Perminator 15-mil.

18 **2.7 CURING MATERIALS**

- 19 A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to
20 fresh concrete.

- 21 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
22 a. BASF Corporation; MasterKure ER 50.
23 b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company; Eucobar.
24 c. Laticrete International, Inc.; L&M E-Con.
25 d. Nox-Crete Products Group; Monofilm.
26 e. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Film.

- 27 B. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C309, Type 1, (or Type 2)
28 Class B, dissipating. The film must chemically break down in a 4 to 6 week period after
29 application.

- 30 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
31 a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc; A-H Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
32 b. ChemMasters, Inc; Safe-Cure Clear DR.
33 c. Euclid Chemical Company (The) an RPM company; Kurez DR VOX.
34 d. Lambert Corporation; AQUA KURE - CLEAR.
35 e. Laticrete International, Inc.; L&M CURE R.



- 1 f. TK Products; DC WB Dissipating Cure 2519.
 2 g. W.R. Meadows, Inc; 1100-CLEAR.
- 3 C. Liquid Membrane-Forming Cure and Seal Compound: VOC Compliant, conforming to ASTM
 4 C309, Type 1, Class B and ASTM C1315, Type 1, Class A or B. The compound shall be a clear
 5 styrene acrylate type, 25% solids content minimum, and have test data from an independent
 6 testing laboratory indicating to a maximum moisture loss of .040 grams per square cm. When
 7 applied at a coverage rate of 200 sq. ft. per gallon.
- 8 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 9 a. ChemMasters, Inc; Polyseal WB.
 10 b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company; Super Diamond Clear VOX.
 11 c. Kaufman Products, Inc; Krystal 25 Emulsion.
 12 d. Lambert Corporation; Crystal Clear Seal 1315 WB.
 13 e. Laticrete International, Inc.; L&M Dress & Seal WB 25.
 14 f. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure 30.
 15 g. Nox-Crete Products Group; Cure & Seal 250E.
 16 h. Right Pointe; Right Sheen WB30.
 17 i. SpecChem, LLC; Cure & Seal WB 25.
 18 j. TK Products; TK-Bright Kure & Seal 1315 VOC.
 19 k. Vexcon Chemicals Inc.; StarSeal 1315.
 20 l. W.R. Meadows, Inc; Vocomp-30.
- 21 D. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing
 22 approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.
- 23 E. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- 24 F. Water: Potable or complying with ASTM C1602.

25 **2.8 RELATED MATERIALS**

- 26 A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.
- 27 B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene
 28 butadiene.
- 29 C. Epoxy-Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C881, two-component, 100% solid, epoxy resin, capable of
 30 humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class and grade to suit requirements. Use
 31 Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened
 32 concrete.
- 33 D. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, not less than 0.0336 inch thick, with bent
 34 tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or
 35 debris.

36 **2.9 CEMENT GROUT AND DRYPACK**



- 1 A. Prepackaged Non-Shrink Non-Metallic Non-Gaseous Grout: ASTM C1107, Grade B or C at a
 2 fluid consistency (flow cone) of 20 to 30 seconds. Grout shall be bleed free and attain 7500 psi
 3 compressive strength in 28 days at fluid consistency. Use for structural repairs.
- 4 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 5 a. BASF Corporation; Masterflow 928.
 6 b. Euclid Chemical Company (The) an RPM company; NS Grout.
 7 c. Five Star Products, Inc.; Fluid Grout 100.
 8 d. Fosroc; Conbextra HF.
 9 e. Lambert Corporation; Vibropruf #11.
 10 f. Laticrete International, Inc; L&M Crystex.
 11 g. Sika Corporation; Sikagrout 212.
- 12 B. Cement Grout: Mix one part Portland cement, 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate, and enough water and
 13 liquid bonding agent in a 50/50 mix for required consistency depending on use. Consistency
 14 may range from mortar consistency to a mixture that will flow under its own weight. Use for
 15 leveling, preparing setting pads of beds, for filling non-structural voids, and similar uses. Do not
 16 use for grouting under bearing plates or structural members in place.
- 17 C. Drypack: Mix one part Portland cement, 2 parts fine aggregate, and enough water and liquid
 18 bonding agent in a 50/50 mix to hydrate cement and provide a mixture that can be molded with
 19 hands into a stable ball (a stiff mix). Do not mix more than can be used in 30 minutes. Use for
 20 patching tie holes and large surface defects in concrete.

21 **2.10 SLAB REPAIR MATERIALS**

- 22 A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be
 23 applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor
 24 elevations.
- 25 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150, Portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement
 26 as defined in ASTM C219.
 27 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions,
 28 and application.
 29 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended
 30 by underlayment manufacturer.
 31 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to
 32 ASTM C109.
- 33 B. Repair Topping: Traffic-bearing, cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that
 34 can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match
 35 adjacent floor elevations. For use on slabs not receiving finishes.
- 36 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement
 37 as defined in ASTM C219.
 38 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and
 39 application.
 40 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended
 41 by topping manufacturer.
 42 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to
 43 ASTM C109.



1 **2.11 CONCRETE MIXTURES**

- 2 A. Concrete for all parts of the concrete work shall be homogenous, and when hardened, possess
 3 the required strength, durability, water tightness, appearance, resistance to deterioration and
 4 abrasion, and other qualities as specified or required.
- 5 B. Mix proportioning: Proportion concrete according to ACI 211.1. Trial mixes shall be designed by
 6 the testing laboratory approved by Architect or designed by the producer and witnessed and
 7 tested by the testing laboratory, in accordance with ACI 301 Section 4. Proportioning on the
 8 basis of field experience with complete statistical data, not more than one year old from date of
 9 submittal and spanning no less than 60 calendar days, to confirm mixes is acceptable.
- 10 C. Provide concrete which will develop ultimate compressive strength at 28 days equal to that
 11 noted on drawings and listed below.
- 12 D. Concrete Grades:
 13

Mix No.	Strength	Air Yes/No	Max. Aggregate Size	W/C or W/(C&P)*
1	3000	Y	1"	0.64
2	3000	N	1"	0.64
3	3000	Y	3/8"	0.62
4	4000	Y	1"	0.54
5	4000	N	1"	0.54
6	4000	Y	3/8"	0.52

14 * Water-Cementitious Ratio: Concrete mixes are required to comply with both the minimum strength
 15 and maximum water-cementitious ratios indicated above. Maximum W/C or W/(C&P) is required as an
 16 indication of overall concrete quality and may well produce strengths higher than the minimum
 17 required.

18 E. Concrete Use:

Element	Mix No.	Exposure Class*
1. Footings and Pile Caps	2	F0
2. Grade Beams / Wall Footings	2	W0
3. Slab on Grade	1, 2	F0
4. Columns and Poured Walls	4	F0
5. Elevated Slabs and Beams	5	F0
6. Tie Beams, Tie Columns	6	F0
7. Slabs on Steel Deck	5	F0

19 * Letter in Exposure Category denotes Exposure Class:
 20 F: Freezing and thawing.
 21 S: Sulfate.
 22 W: Concrete in contact with water.
 23 C: Corrosion protection of reinforcement.

24 F. Design Slump:

- 25 1. General: 4 inches.
 26 2. Concrete Containing High Range Water Reducer: 2 to 3 inches before addition of HRWR,
 27 8 inches after.



- 1 3. Slump Tolerance: Plus/minus 1 inch.
2 4. Slump Of Corrosion Inhibited Concrete: 7 ± 2 , inch with the use of HRWR.
- 3 G. Chloride Ion Content for Corrosion Protection: Determine the chloride content of the component
4 concrete materials, excluding admixtures, and provide this information to the Architect when
5 submitting mix design. Design mixes will not be approved when the sum of chloride content of
6 component materials indicates that the concrete mix derived from those materials will have a
7 water soluble chloride ion content exceeding 0.1% for concrete exposed to the elements and
8 0.2% for concrete protected from the elements, when percent is determined by weight of
9 cement. When the source of any component material for the concrete is changed or when the
10 design mix is altered, a chloride content determination test shall be made immediately.
11 Resubmit the altered design mix for approval by the Architect.
- 12 H. Cementitious Materials: Minimum Portland cement content of any concrete mix containing slag
13 cement is 280 lbs., for all other concrete mixes, minimum portland cement content is 423 lbs.
14 Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete
15 as follows:
- 16 1. Provide concrete mixes having a fly ash content of 15% to 20%, by weight, of
17 cementitious material.
- 18 I. Air Content: Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete
19 at point of placement having an entrained air content of 3 to 5 percent, except, 1 to 3 percent
20 entrapped air for concrete to receive a hard trowel finish, (floor slabs), unless otherwise
21 indicated.
- 22 O. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 23 1. Use water-reducing admixture or high-range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer)
24 in all structural concrete.
25 2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when ambient temperature is 85 degrees F
26 or higher and/or low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions exist.
27 3. Use high range water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, walls 8" thick and less, at
28 areas of reinforcing steel congestion, and as required for placement and workability,
29 concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio
30 below 0.40.
- 31 P. Adjustment to Concrete Mixes: Mix design adjustments may be requested by contractor when
32 characteristics of materials, job conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances
33 warrant; at no additional cost to Owner and as accepted by Architect. Laboratory test data for
34 revised mix design and strength results must be submitted to and accepted by Architect before
35 using in work.
- 36 **2.12 CONCRETE MIXING**
- 37 A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C94,
38 and furnish batch ticket information.
- 39 B. Mixing and Delivery Time: When air temperature is between 95 and 100 degrees F, reduce
40 mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 100
41 degrees F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.



- 1 1. Concrete Containing Corrosion Inhibitor: Reduce mixing and delivery time to one hour.
- 2 C. Provide batch ticket for each ready-mixed batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating
- 3 Project identification name and number, date, mix type and number, batch time, mix time,
- 4 quantity, and amount of water added and amount of water withheld at the plant. Record
- 5 approximate location of final deposit in structure.

6 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

7 **3.1 VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS:**

- 8 A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of concrete forms, accessories, and
- 9 reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been
- 10 performed.
- 11 B. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

12 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 13 A. Provide reasonable auxiliary services to accommodate field testing and inspections, acceptable
- 14 to testing agency, including the following:
- 15 1. Daily access to the Work.
- 16 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
- 17 3. Secure space for storage, initial curing, and field curing of test samples, including source
- 18 of water and continuous electrical power at Project site during site curing period for test
- 19 samples.
- 20 4. Security and protection for test samples and for testing and inspection equipment at
- 21 Project site.

22 **3.3 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS**

- 23 A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work
- 24 that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use Setting Drawings, templates,
- 25 diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
- 26 1. Install anchor bolts, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with
- 27 tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and
- 28 Bridges".
- 29 2. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face
- 30 of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and
- 31 other conditions.
- 32 3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.
- 33 4. Do not provide sleeves or openings in structural members unless shown on the structural
- 34 drawings or approved by the Architect.



1 3.4 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDER

- 2 A. Plastic Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders in accordance with ASTM
 3 E1643 and manufacturer's written instructions. Use below interior floor slabs and as indicated
 4 on the Contract Documents.
- 5 1. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
 6 2. Seal penetrations in accordance with vapor retarder manufacturer's instructions.
 7 3. Protect vapor retarder during placement of reinforcement and concrete.
- 8 a. Repair damaged areas by patching with vapor retarder material, overlapping
 9 damages area by 6 inches on all sides, and sealing to vapor retarder.
- 10 B. Bituminous Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to
 11 manufacturer's written instructions.

12 3.5 JOINTS

- 13 A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- 14 B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at
 15 locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
- 16 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across
 17 construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Provide dowels as shown on drawings or
 18 as required by Architect. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements
 19 of slabs.
- 20 2. For members 5" thick or more, form keys from preformed galvanized steel, plastic
 21 keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys, unless otherwise indicated. Embed
 22 keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete. Submit detail to Architect for review.
- 23 3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset
 24 joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder
 25 intersection.
- 26 4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and
 27 girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs. Allow 4 hours (minimum) between when
 28 column or wall is cast and when concrete supported by column or wall is cast.
- 29 5. Space vertical joints in walls at 40 feet o.c. U.O.N. on drawings. Place control joints at 20
 30 feet o.c. between construction joints U.O.N. on drawings. If locations are not shown,
 31 locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations
 32 where possible.
- 33 6. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or
 34 partially hardened concrete surfaces. In beams and girders use epoxy-bonding adhesive
 35 at locations when fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened
 36 concrete surfaces.
- 37 C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning
 38 concrete into areas as indicated on drawings. If requested, the contractor shall prepare and
 39 submit to the Architect a joint layout. Construct contraction joints as follows:
- 40 1. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof
 41 abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades using the "Soff-Cut" early entry dry-cut saws. Cut 1/8
 42 inch wide and 1/4 to 1/3 of slab depth deep joints into concrete when cutting action will
 43



- 1 not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random
 2 contraction cracks. This is usually within 2 hours of final finish at each control joint but not
 3 more than 8 hours after completion of concrete pour.
- 4 2. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing
 5 each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after
 6 applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
- 7 D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab
 8 junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and
 9 other locations, as indicated.
- 10 1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished
 11 concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- 12 E. Coordinate construction and control joints with requirements of finish material joints.
- 13 **3.6 WATERSTOPS**
- 14 A. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints at locations indicated, according
 15 to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding or mechanically fastening and firmly
 16 pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.
- 17 **3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT**
- 18 A. Complete the following before placing concrete:
- 19 1. Excavate and compact subgrade, arrange for compaction testing, spray termite treatment
 20 on grade, place vapor barrier and remove excess water.
- 21 2. Secure all formwork. Verify that shoring and reshoring has been inspected and accepted
 22 by Delegated Engineer. Moisten wood forms except where form coatings are used.
- 23 3. Accurately locate all steel reinforcement, conduits, outlet boxes, anchors, hangers,
 24 sleeves, bolts, expansion joint materials and other embedded items and secure against
 25 shifting during concrete placement or consolidation.
- 26 4. Accurately locate bearing pads on true, level, and uniform surfaces and secure against
 27 shifting during concrete placement.
- 28 5. Cooperate with other trades and verify that their work is installed.
- 29 6. Repair any damage to vapor retarder.
- 30 7. Notify testing agency to test concrete.
- 31 8. Ensure that all required inspections are performed.
- 32 B. Comply with ACI 301, ACI 304, ACI 308 and ACI 318.
- 33 C. Jobsite Tempering: Place concrete within 1-1/2 hours after introduction of water to mix. Submit
 34 time stamped batching tickets upon delivery of concrete to job site.
- 35 1. Do not add water to ready-mix concrete except as provided in ASTM C94, Paragraph
 36 12.7. When so allowed, limit addition of water to amount withheld at plant as indicated on
 37 batch ticket. Water shall be added prior to initial discharge of concrete. No water may be
 38 added once concrete placement has started. Addition of water may only be authorized by
 39 Architect, the concrete producer's quality control representative, a preapproved
 40 representative of Contractor, or the Special Inspector.



- 1 2. Concrete produced with high range water reducer may only be tempered with additional
2 high range water reducer.
- 3 D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new
4 concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of
5 weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as specified.
6 Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
- 7 1. Maximum height of concrete free fall is 4 feet. Columns up to **8 [10]** feet in height may be
8 poured in one lift. Concrete in columns and walls over **8 [10]** feet may be poured full
9 height with the use of drop chutes or tremies or up to a maximum of 16 feet if HRWR
10 admix concrete is used.
- 11 E. Deposit concrete in forms in horizontal layers no deeper than 24 inches and in a manner to
12 avoid inclined construction joints. Place each layer while preceding layer is still plastic, to avoid
13 cold joints.
- 14 1. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment. Use equipment and
15 procedures for consolidating concrete recommended by ACI 309R.
16 2. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators
17 vertically at uniformly spaced locations no farther than the visible effectiveness of the
18 vibrator. Place vibrators to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into
19 preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to
20 lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to
21 consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded
22 items without causing mix constituents to segregate.
23 3. Concrete in columns and walls shall be cast at least twenty-four hours before horizontal
24 members they support are cast. Exception: Concrete in tie columns and grout in masonry
25 cells shall be cast at least four hours before beams or slabs are cast on top of masonry.
- 26 F. Deposit and consolidate concrete for slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of
27 construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
- 28 1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked
29 around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
30 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
31 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
32 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
33 5. Begin initial floating using highway bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-
34 textured surface plane, free of humps or hollows, before excess moisture or bleedwater
35 appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing
36 operations.
- 37 G. Pumping: Slumps in excess of six (6) inches at the pump will not be permitted except for
38 concrete produced with HRWR. If placing by means of pump, a specifically designed concrete
39 mix shall be submitted to the Architect for review. No pump lines smaller than 4 inches will be
40 permitted. Exception: A 3" pump line may be used for 8" wide beams and columns cast on top
41 of or between masonry walls or for filling masonry cells.
- 42 H. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows: Protect concrete work from
43 physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low
44 temperatures. Cold weather is defined as a period when, for more than three (3) consecutive
45 days, the average daily air temperature is less than 40 degrees F and the air temperature is not



1 greater than 50 degrees F for more than 1/2 of any 24-hour period. The average daily air
 2 temperature is the average of the highest and lowest temperatures occurring during the period
 3 from Midnight to Midnight.

- 4 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 degrees F, uniformly
 5 heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not
 6 less than 50 degrees F at point of placement.
- 7 2. Provide protected and heated environments for onsite storage of test cylinders.
- 8 3. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on
 9 frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
- 10 4. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or
 11 chemical accelerators.
- 12 5. Temporary heat devices shall be operated with special care to protect against
 13 concentrations of heat, or direct contact with combustion gases. All surfaces within the
 14 enclosure shall be kept wet for curing.

16 I. Hot-Weather Placement: Place concrete according to recommendations in ACI 305.1 and as
 17 follows, except concrete temperature shall not exceed 100 degrees F:

- 18 1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 100 degrees F at
 19 time of placement.
- 20 2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed
 21 ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
- 22 3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep
 23 subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.
- 24 4. Use Type D water reducing admixtures when ambient temperature exceeds 85 degrees
 25 F or other adverse placing conditions exist.

26 J. Do not place concrete in exposed conditions when it is raining unless adequate protection is
 27 provided.

28 3.8 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

29 A. Rough-Formed Finish ACI 301 Surface Finish SF-2.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by
 30 form-facing material with tie holes and defective areas repaired and patched. Remove fins and
 31 other projections exceeding 1/4" rubbed down or chipped off. Use for concrete surfaces not
 32 exposed to view in the finished work.

33 B. Smooth-Formed Finish ACI 301 Surface Finish SF-3.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by
 34 form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams.
 35 Repair and patch tie holes and defective areas. Remove fins and other projections exceeding
 36 1/8 inch in height.

- 37 1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view or to be covered with a coating or
 38 covering material applied directly to concrete, such as waterproofing, dampproofing,
 39 veneer plaster, painting, or staining.

40 2. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish.

41 C. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed finished concrete:



- 1 1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete
 2 surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform
 3 color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing
 4 process.
 5 2. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick
 6 paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-
 7 half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white
 8 portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match
 9 adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens,
 10 rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.
 11 3. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix one part portland
 12 cement and one part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white
 13 portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match
 14 adjacent surfaces. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion,
 15 finish surface with a cork float.
- 16 D. Wall Surfaces Exposed to Public: Provide elastomeric form liner or steel forms for cast-in-place
 17 concrete wall surfaces exposed to the general public.
- 18 E. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces
 19 adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent
 20 formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent
 21 unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- 22 **3.9 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS**
- 23 A. General: Comply with recommendations in ACI 302.1R for screeding, restraightening, and
 24 finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces. Slope surfaces to
 25 drains.
- 26 B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-
 27 floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of **1/4 inch**
 28 in one direction.
- 29 1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated and to surfaces to receive concrete floor
 30 topping or mortar setting beds for ceramic or quarry tile, portland cement terrazzo, and
 31 other bonded cementitious floor finishes.
- 32 C. Float Finish: Begin floating when bleed water has disappeared and when concrete has
 33 stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of power driven floats. Consolidate surface with power-
 34 driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats.
 35 Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening
 36 until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture and complies with ACI 117
 37 tolerances for conventional concrete.
- 38 1. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated, to surfaces to receive trowel finish, and to floor
 39 and slab surfaces to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, built-up or
 40 membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo.
- 41 D. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first trowel finish and consolidate concrete by
 42 hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of



- 1 trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that
2 would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
- 3 1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated and to floor and slab surfaces exposed to view
4 or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage
5 membrane, paint, or another thin film-finish coating system
- 6 E. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces indicated and to surfaces
7 where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method. When
8 concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
- 9 F. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and
10 elsewhere as indicated.
- 11 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with
12 fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with
13 Architect before application.
- 14 G. Floor Flatness and Levelness: Finish surfaces to the following tolerances according to
15 ASTM E1155 for a randomly trafficked floor surface and measured within 72 hours and before
16 supporting formwork or shoring is removed:
17
- 18 1. Scratch finish or Non-Critical Floors, such as Mechanical Rooms, Non-Public Unfinished
19 Areas, Parking Slabs: Specified overall values of flatness, F_F 20; and levelness, F_L 15;
20 with minimum local values of flatness, F_F 15; and levelness, F_L 10.
- 21 2. Float Finish: Specified overall values of flatness, F_F 25; and levelness, F_L 20; with
22 minimum local values of flatness, F_F 17; and levelness, F_L 15.
- 23 3. Carpeted Slabs: Specified overall values of flatness, F_F 25; and levelness, F_L 20; with
24 minimum local values of flatness, F_F 17; and levelness, F_L 15.
- 25 4. Thin or No Floor Covering: Specified overall values of flatness F_F 35; and levelness, $F(L)$
26 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F_F 24; and levelness, F_L 17; for suspended
27 slabs.
- 28 5. Specified overall values of flatness, F_F 45; and levelness, F_L 35; with minimum local
29 values of flatness, F_F 30; and levelness, F_L 24.
- 30 H. Floor Flatness and Levelness Acceptance: The Architect may authorize the testing agency to
31 verify that the specified F_F and F_L numbers have been achieved for any slab pours except for
32 unshored or sloped construction. F_F and F_L Minimum Local Area is defined as any bay
33 delineated by columns. Slabs that do not meet the specified F_F or F_L numbers shall be removed
34 and replaced. Alternatively, the Contractor may propose repairs to the slab or a credit to the
35 Project.
- 36 **3.10 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS**
- 37 A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after
38 work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-
39 place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to
40 complete Work.



- 1 B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green
 2 and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and
 3 terminations slightly rounded.
- 4 C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as
 5 shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations,
 6 complying with diagrams or templates of manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.
- 7 D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items.
 8 Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel-finish
 9 concrete surfaces.
- 10 E. Base Plates and Foundations: Use specified non-shrink, non-metallic grout. Where applicable,
 11 grout at least 3 days prior to casting concrete on supported structure.

12 3.11 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- 13 A. General: Comply with ACI 308 "Recommended Practice for Curing Concrete" and ACI 301.
 14 Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
 15 Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and with recommendations in ACI 305.1 for
 16 hot-weather protection during curing.
- 17 B. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported
 18 slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after
 19 loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the
 20 remainder of the curing period.
- 21 C. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed
 22 surfaces, including slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- 23 D. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
- 24 1. Curing Compound: Apply to all concrete surfaces that are not permanently exposed.
 25 Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to
 26 manufacturer's written instructions. Provide a second coat applied at 90 degrees to initial
 27 application within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and
 28 repair damage during curing period.
- 29 2. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply to permanently exposed concrete surfaces. Apply
 30 uniformly in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's
 31 written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after
 32 initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain
 33 continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- 34 3. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the
 35 following materials:
- 36 a. Water.
- 37 b. Continuous water-fog spray.
- 38 c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete
 39 surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
- 40 4. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover
 41 for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at



1 least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven
 2 days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and
 3 waterproof tape.

- 4 a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to
 5 receive floor coverings.
 6 b. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to
 7 receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
 8 c. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining
 9 cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies will not interfere with
 10 bonding of floor covering used on Project

11 3.12 TOLERANCES

- 12 A. Conform to ACI 117.

13 3.13 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- 14 A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove
 15 and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.

- 16 B. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks,
 17 spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and
 18 stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.

- 19 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than
 20 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete but not less than 1 inch in depth. Make edges
 21 of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. If reinforcing steel is exposed, remove concrete
 22 to provide a minimum of 3/4" clearance all around. Prior to patching allow the Architect
 23 and Threshold Inspector adequate time to review prepared areas. Clean, dampen with
 24 water, and brush-coat prepared surfaces with bonding agent or slurry coat. Fill and
 25 compact with dry pack grout or non-shrink non-metallic grout before bonding agent has
 26 dried. Fill form-tie voids with cement grout, dry pack grout or cone plugs secured in place
 27 with bonding agent.
 28 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and
 29 standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding
 30 color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match
 31 before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher
 32 than surrounding surface.
 33 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and
 34 structural performance as determined by Architect.

- 35 C. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as slabs, for finish and verify
 36 surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped
 37 to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.

- 38 1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts,
 39 honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that
 40 penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of
 41 width, and other objectionable conditions.
 42 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.



- 1 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing
2 operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired
3 areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
4 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment.
5 Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's
6 written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather
7 edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
8 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low
9 areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor
10 elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to
11 manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level
12 surface.
13 6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter,
14 by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean
15 square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least 3/4 inch clearance all around.
16 Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent.
17 Mix patching concrete of same materials and mix as original concrete except without
18 coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete.
19 Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
20 7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with dry pack grout or
21 non-shrink non-metallic grout. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete
22 and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and
23 apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact
24 patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously
25 moist for at least 72 hours.
- 26 D. Perform structural repairs of concrete, not covered herein, only with Architect's and Structural
27 Engineer's approval, using repair procedures they recommend.
- 28 E. Other repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's
29 approval.

30 **3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 31 A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency,
32 acceptable to the Owner, to sample materials, perform tests, and submit test reports during
33 concrete placement. Sampling and testing for quality control may include those specified in this
34 Article.
- 35 B. Testing Services: Sample concrete after all water and admixtures have been added. Testing of
36 composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C172 shall be performed
37 according to the following requirements:
- 38 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or
39 fraction thereof of each concrete mix placed each day. For slabs 6" or thinner, increase
40 frequency to each 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mix placed each day.
41 2. Slump: ASTM C143; one test at point of placement for each composite sample. Perform
42 additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
43 3. Air Content: ASTM C231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; ASTM C173,
44 volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite
45 sample.



- 1 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40
2 degrees F and below and when 85 degrees F and above, and one test for each
3 composite sample.
4 5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31
- 5 a. Cast and laboratory cure one set of four standard cylinder specimens for each
6 composite sample. For pumped concrete, take sample at point of placement.
7 Standard Cylinders are 6" diameter, if testing company elects to use 4" diameter
8 cylinders then the quantities of tests must be adjusted.
- 9 6. Compressive-Strength Tests of Laboratory Cured Specimens: ASTM C39; test one
10 specimen at 7 days for information and three at 28 days for acceptance. If one of the first
11 two 28-day tests falls below specified strength, test the remaining specimen at 56 days.
- 12 C. Strength of each concrete mix will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive
13 compressive-strength tests (3 sets of 2 cylinders each) equals or exceeds specified
14 compressive strength and no compressive-strength test (1 set of 2 cylinders) value falls below
15 specified compressive strength by 10% or 500 psi, whichever is less.
- 16 D. Strength tests that are not satisfactory indicate questionable concrete. The testing agency and
17 Contractor shall submit to the Architect a report of the questionable concrete plus the two test
18 reports immediately prior to and after (5 reports total) for evaluation.
- 19 1. If the questionable concrete is not accepted by the Architect, the testing agency shall
20 take core tests per ACI 301 and ASTM C42 minimum diameter of cores is 4 inches.
21 Concrete will be considered structurally adequate if average of 3 cores is at least 85% f'c
22 and no single core is less than 75% f'c.
23 2. Concrete not considered adequate by core testing shall be removed and replaced or load
24 tested per ACI 318, Chapter 20.
- 25 E. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor
26 within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project
27 identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and
28 inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days,
29 concrete mix proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for
30 each test.
- 31 F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when
32 test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements
33 have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests
34 to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C42 or by other
35 methods as directed by Architect.
- 36 G. The contractor may be required to pay all costs of additional testing or evaluation of
37 questionable concrete and provide a credit to the Owner for acceptance of questionable
38 concrete.
- 39 H. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with
40 the Contract Documents.



1 **3.15 PROTECTION**

2 A. Protect concrete surfaces as follows:

- 3 1. Protect from petroleum stains.
4 2. Diaper hydraulic equipment used over concrete surfaces.
5 3. Prohibit vehicles from interior concrete slabs.
6 4. Prohibit use of pipe-cutting machinery over concrete surfaces.
7 5. Prohibit placement of steel items on concrete surfaces.
8 6. Prohibit use of acids or acidic detergents over concrete surfaces.
9 7. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction
10 period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering,
11 recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.

12 B. Protect concrete surfaces scheduled to receive surface hardener or polished concrete finish
13 using Floor Slab Protective Covering.

14 **END OF SECTION 03 30 00**



1 **SECTION 03 36 60 - CONCRETE FLOOR SEALER**

2 **PART 1 GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SECTION INCLUDES**

- 4 A. Acrylic waterbased, low VOC concrete floor sealer and liquid wax.

5 **1.2 RELATED SECTIONS**

- 6 A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.

7 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 8 A. Comply with Section 01 33 00 - Submittal Procedures.

- 9
10 B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data, including surface preparation and application
11 instructions.

- 12 C. Maintenance Instructions: Submit manufacturer's maintenance and cleaning instructions.

13 **1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 14 A. Delivery: Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened containers and packaging,
15 with labels clearly identifying manufacturer and product name.

- 16 B. Storage: Store materials in a clean, dry area indoors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
17 Keep containers sealed until ready for use. Keep away from ignition sources. Do not allow to freeze.

- 18 C. Handling: Protect materials during handling and application to prevent damage or
19 contamination.

20 **1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS**

- 21 A. Do not apply sealer when air or surface temperature is below 55 degrees F.

22 **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

23 **2.1 MANUFACTURER**

- 24 A. **Basis of Design: Kemiko Concrete Products, PO Box 1109, Leonard, Texas 75452. Phone (903)**
25 **587-3708. Fax (903) 587-9038. Web Site www.kemiko.com. E-Mail sales@kemiko.com.**

26 **2.2 CONCRETE FLOOR SEALER**

- 27 A. **Concrete Floor Sealer: Kemiko Stone Tone Sealer II.**

- 28 1. Acrylic water-based clear sealer.

- 29 2. Solids Content: 24 percent.

- 30 3. Resistant to Yellowing.



4. Resistant to blush.
5. Flat to Satin and Gloss finish.
6. VOC compliant.
7. Quick drying.

2.3 CONCRETE FLOOR SEALER WAX

- A. Concrete Floor Sealer Wax: Kemiko Easy Shine
 1. Liquid Wax.
 2. Satin finish.
 3. Low voc.
 4. Spray application with follow-up mop.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces to receive sealer. Notify Architect if surfaces are not acceptable. Do not begin surface preparation or application until unacceptable conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Prepare concrete surface in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Concrete shall be as specified in Section 03 30 00. Ensure concrete is a minimum of 28 days old.
- C. Ensure concrete surface is clean, dry, structurally sound, and free from dirt, dust, oil, grease, solvents, paint, wax, asphalt, concrete curing compounds, sealing compounds, surface hardeners, bond breakers, adhesive residue, and other surface contaminants.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply sealer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions at locations indicated on the drawings.
- B. Do not dilute sealer.
- C. Apply sealer in a thin uniform film.
- D. Apply second coat of sealer if required by manufacturer's instructions. Apply second coat after first coat is dry.
- E. Keep sealer film build-up to a minimum.
- F. Keep material containers closed when not in use to avoid contamination.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect concrete surfaces from foot traffic for a minimum of 24 hours.
- B. Avoid washing concrete surfaces for a minimum of 48 hours.

END OF SECTION 03 36 60



1 **03 45 00 - ARCHITECTURAL PRECAST CONCRETE - PLANT CAST**
2

3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**
4

5
6 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**
7

- 8 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
9 Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
10

11
12 **1.2 SUMMARY**
13

- 14 A. This Section includes Wet Cast architectural precast concrete units, (no option for dry cast), and
15 includes, but is not limited to panels, sills, string courses, bases, copings and trim.
16
17 B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
18
19 1. Division 7 Section "Flashing and Sheet Metal" for flashing receivers and reglets.
20 2. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for elastomeric joint sealants and sealant backings.
21
22



23 **1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**
24

- 25 A. Structural Performance: Engineer, fabricate, and install architectural precast concrete units to
26 withstand design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
27
28 B. All panels, connections, and embedded plates to support precast units shall be designed by a
29 qualified professional engineer registered in the state of Florida. Engineer shall coordinate
30 requirements with construction documents.
31
32 1. The connections and details depicted by the Contract Documents are "conceptual" and
33 for design intent only; it is the Architectural Precast Concrete Manufacturer's
34 responsibility to provide engineered (designed by Registered Engineer) connections
35 meeting the necessary structural performance criteria, necessary for placing units,
36 anchoring the Architectural Precast Concrete units, etc to meet code requirements.
37
38 C. The panels and connections shall be designed to withstand the effects of gravity loads, wind
39 loads and thermal stresses. Design wind pressures shall not be less than as calculated using
40 the Florida Building Code, 8th Edition 2023 with Supplements and as indicated in the structural
41 documents.
42
43 D. Engineering Responsibility: Engage a fabricator who utilizes a qualified professional engineer to
44 prepare design calculations, Shop Drawings, and other structural data for architectural precast
45 concrete units.
46
47 E. Contractor shall be responsible for coordination/conversion of all dimensions indicated on plans
48 from nominal to actual dimensions. All blockwork dimensions indicated on small scale
49 architectural plans are nominal. Coordination between precast concrete shop drawings,
50 window shop drawings, and Edition Contract Documents dimensions shall be solely the
51 Contractor's responsibility. Shop drawings submitted to A/E which have obviously not been
52 reviewed or coordinated by Contractor will be returned without action. Sealant joint tolerances
53 along with other specified tolerances within the contract documents shall be maintained within a
54 plus or minimum 1/8". Separate independent submittals will not be reviewed.
55
56 1. Any additional costs incurred as a result of item "E" above shall be included in the
57 Contractor's bid price and shall not be considered grounds for additional compensation.



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- E. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
1. Contractor shall comply with and allot the necessary calendar time to complete the following submittal review process for required structural steel and architectural precast concrete submittals:
 - a. Contractor shall submit to A/E for review and approval a partial architectural precast concrete shop drawing package for establishing finishes, textures, and panel geometries.
 - b. Precast connection design shall commence only after the panel geometries have been reviewed and accepted.
 - c. Precast concrete shop drawings incorporating connection design information shall be transmitted to A/E.
 - d. Contractor shall incorporate any clip angles, slotted holes, etc. caused as a result of the precast connection design work and which are intended to be shop fabricated into their structural steel shop drawings.
 - e. Structural steel shop drawings shall be transmitted to A/E only after structural steel fabricator has coordinated work with items necessary as result of the precast concrete connection requirements.
 - f. A/E returns completed structural steel shop drawings and architectural precast drawings back to Contractor at the same time under one cover.
 - g. Contractor releases fabrication of structural steel and architectural precast concrete.
 - h. Any additional costs incurred as a result of item "d" above shall be included in the Contractor's bid price and shall not be considered grounds for additional compensation.
- F. Product Data and instructions for manufactured materials and products.
- G. Shop Drawings prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer detailing fabrication and installation of architectural precast concrete units. Indicate member locations, plans, elevations, dimensions, shapes, cross sections, and types of reinforcement, including special reinforcement. Include locations and details of hoisting points and lifting devices for handling and erection.
1. Indicate separate face and back-up mix locations and thicknesses.
 2. Indicate welded connections by AWS standard symbols. Detail loose, cast-in, and field hardware, inserts, connections, and joints, including accessories.
 3.  Indicate locations and details of anchorage devices that are to be embedded in other construction.
 4.  For architectural precast concrete units indicated to comply with performance requirements, include engineering analysis data sealed and signed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- H. Samples for verification, approximately 12 by 12 by 2 inches (300 by 300 by 50 mm), to illustrate quality of finishes, colors, and textures of exposed surfaces of architectural precast concrete units. Refer to Sheet A611 and Elevations for color and locations; Architect to approve samples.
- I. Welder certificates signed by Contractor certifying that welders comply with requirements specified under the "Quality Assurance" Article.
- J. VOC compliance certificates signed by manufacturers certifying compliance of their products



1 with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction over volatile organic compounds (VOCs).
 2

3 K. Design mixes for each concrete mix.
 4

5 L. Material test reports from a qualified independent testing agency evidencing compliance with
 6 requirements of the following based on comprehensive testing of current materials:
 7

- 8 1. Concrete materials.
- 9 2. Reinforcing materials.
- 10 3. Prestressing strands.
- 11 4. Admixtures.
- 12 5. Bearing pads.
- 13 6. Water-absorption test reports.

14
 15 M. Material certificates in lieu of agency test reports, when permitted by Architect, signed by
 16 fabricator certifying that each material item complies with requirements.
 17

18 19 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

20
 21 A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed architectural
 22 precast concrete work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project
 23 and with a record of successful in-service performance.
 24

25 B. Fabricator Qualifications: Engage a firm experienced in producing architectural precast concrete
 26 units similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service
 27 performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units without delaying
 28 the Work.
 29

- 30 1. Fabricator must participate in the Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute's (PCI) Plant
 31 Certification Program and be designated a PCI Certified Plant for Group A1 -
 32 Architectural Concrete.
- 33 2. Fabricator shall be registered and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 34

35 C. Testing Agency Qualifications: To qualify for approval, an independent testing agency must
 36 demonstrate to Architect's satisfaction, based on evaluation of agency-submitted criteria
 37 conforming to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329, that it has the experience and capability to
 38 satisfactorily conduct the testing indicated without delaying the Work.
 39

40 D. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally authorized to
 41 practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing
 42 engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those
 43 performed for installations of precast concrete units that are similar to that indicated for this
 44 Project in material, design, and extent.
 45

46 E. Preconstruction Testing Service: Employ and pay a qualified independent testing agency to
 47 perform the preconstruction testing indicated.
 48

- 49 1. Test each variety of stone for compliance with physical property requirements specified in
 50 referenced ASTM standard specifications. Conduct tests using specimens and
 51 assemblies representative of proposed materials and construction.
- 52 2. Flexural Strength Tests: For stone facing thinner than that required for modulus of
 53 rupture test specimens per ASTM C 99, additional flexural strength tests per ASTM C
 54 880 will be performed on specimens representative of minimum thickness and finish of
 55 stones installed, in both wet and dry condition. Results of these additional tests will be
 56 used to determine compliance with Project requirements.
 57



- 1 F. PCI Design Standard: Comply with recommendations of PCI's MNL-120 "PCI Design
2 Handbook--Precast and Prestressed Concrete" applicable to types of architectural precast
3 concrete units indicated.
4
- 5 G. PCI Quality-Control Standard: Comply with requirements of PCI's MNL-117 "Manual for Quality
6 Control for Plants and Production of Architectural Precast Concrete Products," including
7 manufacturing procedures and testing requirements, quality-control recommendations, and
8 dimensional tolerances for types of units required.
9
- 10 H. ACI Publications: Comply with applicable provisions of the following ACI publications:
11
12 1. ACI 318 (ACI 318M) "Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete."
13
- 14 I. Welding Standards: Comply with applicable provisions of AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code--
15 Steel" and AWS D1.4 "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
16
17 1. Certify that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding
18 processes involved and, if pertinent, has undergone recertification.
19
- 20 J. Mockups: Prior to installing architectural precast concrete units, construct mockups for each
21 form of construction and finish required to verify selections made under Sample submittals and
22 to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Build mockups to comply with the following requirements,
23 using materials indicated for final unit of Work.
24
25 1. Locate mockups on-site in the location and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as
26 directed by Architect.
27 2. Notify Architect one week in advance of the dates and times when mockups will be
28 constructed.
29 3. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
30 4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before start of final unit of Work.
31 5. Retain and maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a
32 standard for judging the completed Work.
33 6. In presence of Architect, damage part of an exposed-face surface and demonstrate
34 materials and methods proposed for repair of surface blemishes.
35
36 a. When directed, demolish and remove mockups from Project site.
37 b. Approved in an undisturbed condition at the time of Substantial Completion may
38 become part of the completed Work.
39
- 40 K. Design modifications may be made as necessary to meet field conditions and to ensure proper
41 fitting of the Work as acceptable to Architect. Maintain general design concept shown without
42 increasing or decreasing sizes of architectural precast concrete units or altering profiles and
43 alignments shown. Revise and submit complete design calculations and Drawings prepared by
44 a qualified professional engineer when design modifications are required.
45
- 46 L. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of
47 Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."
48
- 49 M. Panel Identification:
50
51 1. Mark each precast concrete panel to correspond to identification mark on shop drawings
52 for panel location.
53 2. Mark each precast concrete panel with date cast.
54
- 55 N. Acceptance:
56 1. Architectural precast concrete units which do not meet the color and texture range or the
57 dimensional tolerances may be rejected at the option of the Architect, if they cannot be



1 satisfactorily corrected.

2
3 O. Warranty:

- 4 1. The precast concrete manufacturer shall guarantee the precast concrete products
5 against defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one year after acceptance
6 of the units by the Owner.
7

8
9 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 10
11 A. Deliver precast concrete units to Project site in such quantities and at such times to ensure
12 continuity of installation. Store units at Project site to prevent cracking, distorting, warping,
13 staining, or other physical damage, and so that markings are visible.
14
15 B. Lift and support units only at designated lifting or supporting points shown on Shop Drawings.
16

17
18 **1.6 SEQUENCING**

- 19
20 A. Supply anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying
21 the Work. Provide setting diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions, as required, for
22 installation.
23

24
25 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

26
27
28 **2.1 MOLD MATERIALS**

- 29
30 A. Forms: Provide forms and, where required, form-facing materials of metal, plastic, wood, or
31 another acceptable material that is nonreactive with concrete and will produce required finish
32 surfaces.
33

34
35 **2.2 REINFORCING MATERIALS**

- 36
37 A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60 (ASTM A 615M, Grade 400), deformed.
38
39 B. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706, Grade 60 (ASTM A 706M, Grade 400).
40
41 C. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 767 (ASTM A 767M), Class II, 2 oz./sq. ft. (610 g/sq. m)
42 zinc, hot-dip galvanized.
43
44 D. Steel-Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, plain, cold drawn.
45

46
47 **2.3 PRESTRESSING TENDONS**

- 48
49 A. Prestressing Strand: ASTM A 416, Grade 250 or 270, uncoated, 7-wire, low-relaxation strand.
50

51
52 **2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS**

- 53
54 A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III.
55
56 1. Use only one brand, type, and color of cement from the same mill throughout Project.
57 2. White portland cement shall be used for all exposed architectural precast concrete units.



- 1 a. Note: Additional integral pigment may be necessary to obtain the correct pigment.
 2 3. Standard gray portland cement may be used for nonexposed back-up concrete.
 3
 4 B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, with coarse aggregates meeting Class 5S and MNL-
 5 117 requirements.
 6
 7 1. Face-Mix Coarse Aggregates: Selected, hard, and durable; free of material that reacts
 8 with cement or causes staining.
 9
 10 a. Gradation: Uniformly graded.
 11 b. Gradation: Gap graded.
 12
 13 2. Face-Mix Fine Aggregates: Selected, natural or manufactured sand of the same material
 14 as coarse aggregate, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.
 15
 16 C. Lightweight Aggregates: ASTM C 330.
 17
 18 D. Coloring Agent: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral oxide pigments or colored water-reducing
 19 admixtures, color stable, nonfading, resistant to lime and other alkalis.
 20
 21 E. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength
 22 of concrete.
 23
 24 F. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other
 25 required admixtures.
 26
 27 G. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
 28 H. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type B.
 29
 30 I. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.
 31
 32 J. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: Manufacturer's standard meeting ASTM C 494, Type
 33 F or G.
 34
 35 K. Sealer: Siloxane based water repellent sealer; refer to Section 0719 00 Water Repellents.
 36
 37

38 2.5 CONNECTION MATERIALS

- 39
 40 A. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36 (ASTM A 36M).
 41
 42 B. Carbon-Steel Plates: ASTM A 283 (ASTM A 283M).
 43
 44 C. Carbon-Steel Structural Tubing: ASTM A 500, Grade B.
 45
 46 D. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Studs: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568, Property Class 4.6);
 47 carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and studs; carbon-steel nuts; and flat, unhardened steel washers.
 48
 49 E. High-Strength Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy hex steel structural
 50 bolts, heavy hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
 51
 52 F. Welded Headed Studs: AWS D1.1, Type B headed studs, cold-finished carbon-steel bars.
 53
 54 G. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: For exterior steel items, steel in exterior walls, and items anchoring
 55 precast concrete units such as clips, bolts, etc., apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process,
 56 complying with ASTM A 123 or ASTM A 153 as applicable.
 57



- 1 H. Galvanizing Repair Paint: Cold galvanized paint "ZRC" (NO SUBSTITUTION).
2
3 I. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards. Touch-up welded areas with Galvanized
4 Repair Paint.
5
6 J. Accessories: Provide clips, hangers, plastic shims, and other accessories required to install
7 architectural precast concrete units.
8
9

10 2.6 BEARING PADS

- 11
12 A. Provide bearing pads for architectural precast concrete units as follows:
13
14 1. High-Density Plastic: Multimonomer, nonleaching, plastic strip.
15
16

17 2.7 GROUT MATERIALS

- 18
19 A. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404.
20 Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for
21 placement and hydration.
22
23 B. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout
24 containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, plasticizing
25 and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, of consistency suitable for
26 application, and a 30-minute working time.
27
28

29 2.8 CONCRETE MIXES

- 30 A. Prepare design mixes for each type of concrete required.
31
32 B. Design mixes may be prepared by a qualified independent testing agency or by qualified
33 architectural precast manufacturing plant personnel at architectural precast fabricator's option.
34
35 C. Limit water-soluble chloride ions to the maximum percentage by weight of cement permitted by
36 ACI 318 (ACI 318M).
37
38 D. Normal-Weight Concrete Face and Back-Up Mixes: Proportion mixes by either laboratory trial
39 batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.1, using materials to be used on the
40 Project, to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
41
42 1. Compressive Strength (28-Day): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa).
43 2. Maximum Water-Cement Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.40.
44
45 E. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight
46 concrete at point of placement having an air content complying with MNL-117 requirements.
47
48 F. Water Absorption: 12 to 14 percent by volume tested according to MNL-117.
49
50 G. Lightweight Concrete Back-Up Mixes: Proportion mixes by either laboratory trial batch or field
51 test data methods according to ACI 211.2, using materials to be used on the Project, to provide
52 lightweight concrete with the following properties:
53
54 1. Compressive Strength (28-Day): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa).
55 2. Unit Weight: Calculated equilibrium unit weight of 115 lb/cu. ft. (1842 kg/cu. m), plus or
56 minus 3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m), according to ASTM C 567.
57



- 1 H. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in lightweight concrete
2 at point of placement having an air content complying with MNL-117 requirements.
3
4 I. When included in design mixes, add other admixtures to concrete mixes according to
5 manufacturer's directions.
6
7

8 **2.9 MOLDS**

- 9
10 A. Accurately construct molds, mortar tight, of sufficient strength to withstand pressures due to
11 concrete-placing operations, temperature changes, and for pretensioning and detensioning
12 operations.
13
14 B. Maintain molds to provide completed architectural precast concrete units of shapes, lines, and
15 dimensions indicated, within fabrication tolerances specified.
16
17

18 **2.10 FABRICATION**

- 19
20 A. Accurately position cast-in anchors, inserts, plates, angles, and other anchorage hardware for
21 attachment of loose hardware and secure in place during precasting operations. Locate
22 anchorage hardware where it does not affect the position of the main reinforcement or the
23 placing of concrete.
24
25 1. Architectural Precast Concrete supplier shall be responsible for engineering and
26 supplying clip angles, plates, seat angles, etc. necessary to anchor and support their
27 work.
28
29 B. Supply loose steel plates, clip angles, seat angles, anchors, dowels, cramps, hangers, and
30 other hardware shapes not provided by other trades necessary for securing architectural precast
31 concrete units to supporting and adjacent members.
32
33 C. Cast-in reglets, slots, holes, and other accessories in architectural precast concrete units to
34 receive windows, cramps, dowels, reglets, waterstops, flashings, and other similar work as
35 indicated. Coordinate with other trades for installation of cast-in items.
36
37 D. Cast-in openings larger than 10 inches (250 mm) in any dimension according to Shop
38 Drawings. Other smaller holes may be field cut by trades requiring them when permitted by
39 Architect.
40
41 E. Reinforcement: Comply with the recommendations of CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for
42 fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
43
44 1. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, and other materials that reduce or
45 destroy the bond with concrete.
46 2. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement during
47 concrete placement and consolidation operations. Completely conceal support devices
48 to prevent exposure on finished surfaces. Do not use plastic-coated or uncoated metal
49 chair supports.
50 2. Place reinforcement to maintain at least 3/4-inch (19-mm) minimum cover after finishing.
51 Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position
52 while placing concrete. Direct wire tie ends away from finished, exposed concrete
53 surfaces.
54 3. Install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least
55 one full mesh and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent
56 continuous laps in either direction.
57



- 1 F. Reinforce architectural precast concrete units to resist handling, transportation, and erection
 2 stresses.
 3
 4 G. Pretension tendons for architectural precast, prestressed concrete units either by single-strand
 5 tensioning method or multiple-strand tensioning method. Comply with MNL-117 requirements.
 6
 7 H. Mix concrete according to MNL-117 and requirements of this Section. Following concrete
 8 batching, no additional water may be added.
 9
 10 I. Place face mix to a minimum thickness after consolidation of the greater of 1 inch (25 mm) or
 11 1.5 times the maximum aggregate size, but not less than the minimum reinforcement cover.
 12
 13 J. Place concrete in a continuous operation to prevent seams or planes of weakness from
 14 developing in precast units. Comply with requirements of MNL-117 for measuring, mixing,
 15 transporting, and placing concrete.
 16
 17 1. Place back-up concrete to ensure bond with face concrete.
 18
 19 K. Thoroughly consolidate placed concrete by internal and external vibration without dislocating or
 20 damaging reinforcement and built-in items. Use equipment and procedures complying with
 21 MNL-117.
 22
 23 1. Comply with ACI 306R procedures for cold-weather concrete placement.
 24 2. Comply with ACI 305R procedures for hot-weather concrete placement.
 25
 26 L. Identify pickup points of architectural precast concrete units and orientation in structure with
 27 permanent markings, complying with markings indicated on Shop Drawings. Imprint casting
 28 date on each architectural precast concrete unit on a surface that will not show in the finished
 29 structure.
 30
 31 M. Cure concrete according to the requirements of MNL-117 by moisture retention without heat or
 32 by accelerated heat curing, using low-pressure live steam or radiant heat and moisture.
 33
 34 N. Delay detensioning architectural precast, prestressed concrete units until concrete has reached
 35 its indicated minimum design release compressive strength as established by test cylinders
 36 cured under the same conditions as the concrete.
 37
 38 O. Fabricate architectural precast concrete units straight and true to size and shape with exposed
 39 edges and corners precise and true.
 40
 41 1. Edge and Corner Treatment: Refer to Contract Document Drawings.
 42
 43 P. Discard architectural precast concrete units that are warped, cracked, broken, spalled, stained,
 44 or otherwise defective unless repairs are permitted by Architect and meet requirements.
 45
 46

47 **2.11 FABRICATION TOLERANCES**

- 48
 49 A. Comply with the following overall height and width dimensional tolerances of finished units
 50 measured at face adjacent to mold at time of casting:
 51
 52 1. 10 Feet (3 m) or Less: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
 53 2. 20 to 40 Feet (6 to 12 m): Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
 54 3. Each Additional 10 Feet (3 m): Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) per 10 feet (3 m).
 55
 56 B. Angular Deviation of Plane of Side Mold: Plus or minus 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) per 3-inch (76-mm)
 57 depth or plus or minus 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) total, whichever is greater.



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
- C. Out of Square: Difference in length of two diagonal measurements of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per 72 inches (1829 mm) or 1/2-inch (12-mm) total, whichever is greater.
 - D. Thickness: Minus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), plus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
 - E. Locations of Reveals and Architectural Features: Plus, or minus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
 - F. Other Dimensional Tolerances: Numerically the greater of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) per 10 feet (3 m), or plus or minus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
 - G. Position Tolerances: For cast-in items measured from datum line, locations as shown on Shop Drawings as follows:
 - 1. Inserts: Plus, or minus 1/2 inch (12 mm).
 - 2. Weld Plates: Plus, or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
 - 3. Handling Devices: Plus, or minus 3 inches (76 mm).
 - 4. Block Outs and Reinforcements: Within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of position shown on Shop Drawings, where such positions have structural implications or affect concrete cover; otherwise within plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
 - H. Precast manufacturer shall coordinate with Contractor and other subcontractors the locations for blockouts as required to accommodate electrical devices with and without ground fault; especially at the base of the building.

27
28

2.12 FINISHES

- 29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- A. Finish exposed-face surfaces of architectural precast concrete units as follows:
 - 1. Board-formed matching same general material texture as C.I.P. concrete specified to receive same finish. See Section 03 10 00 "Concrete Forming and Accessories".
 - B. Finish exposed-back surfaces of architectural precast concrete units to match face-surface finish.
 - C. Finish unexposed surfaces of architectural precast concrete units by float finish.
 - D. Provide clear finish coating on all precast units; refer to Section 07 19 00 - WATER REPELLENTS.

43
44
45

PART 3 - EXECUTION

46
47

3.1 EXAMINATION

- 48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, true and level bearing surfaces, and other conditions affecting performance of architectural precast concrete units. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - B. Do not install architectural precast units until supporting concrete has attained minimum allowable design compressive strength.

56
57

3.2 INSTALLATION



- 1 A. Install clips, hangers, and other accessories required for connecting architectural precast
2 concrete units to supporting members and back-up materials.
3
4 B. Install architectural precast concrete units plumb, level, and in alignment. Provide temporary
5 supports and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment as units are
6 being permanently connected.
7
8 1. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width as erection
9 progresses.
10 2. Remove projecting hoisting devices and cement-grout fill recessed hoisting devices.
11
12 C. Anchor architectural precast concrete units in position by bolting, welding, grouting, or as
13 otherwise indicated. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as possible after
14 anchoring and grouting are completed.
15
16 D. Welding: Perform welding in compliance with AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.4, with qualified welders.
17
18 1. Protect architectural precast concrete units and bearing pads from damage by field
19 welding or cutting operations and provide noncombustible shields as required.
20 2. Repair damaged steel surfaces by cleaning and applying a coat of galvanizing repair
21 paint to galvanized surfaces.
22 3. Repair damaged steel surfaces by cleaning and re-priming damaged painted surfaces.
23
24 E. At bolted connections use lock washers or other acceptable means to prevent loosening of nuts.
25
26 F. Grouting Connections: Grout connections where required or indicated. Retain grout in place
27 until hard enough to support itself. Pack spaces with stiff grout material, tamping until voids are
28 completely filled. Place grout to finish smooth, plumb, and level with adjacent concrete
29 surfaces. Keep grouted joints damp for not less than 24 hours after initial set. Promptly
30 remove grout material from exposed surfaces before it hardens.
31
32

33 3.3 ERECTION AND LOCATION TOLERANCES

- 34
35 A. Install architectural precast concrete units level, plumb, square, and true, without exceeding the
36 recommended erection and location tolerances of MNL-117.
37
38 B. Erection Tolerances: Install architectural precast concrete units so that each unit after erection
39 complies with following dimensional requirements:
40
41 1. Concave or convex bowing of any part of a flat surface not to exceed length of bow/360,
42 with a maximum of 1 inch (25 mm) and up to 30 feet (9 m).
43 2. Maximum warpage of 1 corner out of plane of other 3, the greater of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm)
44 per 12-inch (300-mm) distance from nearest adjacent corner.
45
46 C. Tolerances for Location of Architectural Precast Units: Fabricate and erect architectural precast
47 concrete units so that joints between units do not exceed the following. Alignment for exterior
48 units is outside face.
49
50 1. Face Width of Joints: Plus, or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
51 2. Joint Taper: 1/40 inch per 12-inch length (1:480), with maximum length of taper over 10
52 feet (3 m) of 1/4 inch (6 mm).
53 3. Step in Face: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
54 4. Jog in Alignment of Edges: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
55 5. Jog in Alignment of Reveals: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
56 6. Plumb in Any 10 Feet (3 m) of Element Height: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
57 7. Variation from Level: Plus, or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm) in any 40-foot (12-m) run.



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
8. Top Elevation from Nominal Top Elevation: Plus, or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) for exposed individual panel; 1/4 inch (6 mm) exposed relative to adjacent panel.

14
15

3.4 REPAIRS

- 16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
- A. Repair exposed exterior surfaces of architectural precast concrete units to match color, texture, and uniformity of surrounding concrete when permitted by Architect.
- B. Remove and replace damaged architectural precast concrete units when repairs do not meet requirements.

26
27

3.5 CLEANING

- 28
29
30
31
32
- A. Clean exposed surfaces of architectural precast concrete units after erection to remove weld marks, other markings, dirt, and stains.
1. Wash and rinse according to architectural precast concrete fabricator's recommendations. Protect other work from staining or damage due to cleaning operations.
 2. Do not use cleaning materials or processes that could change the appearance of exposed architectural precast concrete finishes.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect precast during delivery, installation and in completed work in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.

END OF SECTION 03 45 00



1 **SECTION 04 20 00 - UNIT MASONRY**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Standard concrete masonry units and face brick.
9 2. Mortar and grout.
10 3. Steel reinforcing bars.
11 4. Masonry-joint reinforcement.
12 5. Ties and anchors.
13 6. Embedded flashing.
14 7. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
15 8. Cavity Wall Insulation

- 16 B. See Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for furnishing steel lintels and shelf angles for unit
17 masonry.

- 18 C. See Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for furnishing manufactured reglets
19 installed in masonry joints for metal flashing.

- 20 D. See Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing joints.

- 21 E. Products furnished but not installed under this Section include the following:

- 22 1. Dovetail slots for masonry anchors installed under Division 03 Section "Cast-In-Place
23 Concrete".
24 2. Anchor sections of adjustable masonry anchors for connecting to structural frame installed
25 under Division 05 "Structural Steel".

- 26 F. Products installed but not furnished under this section include the following:

- 27 1. Steel lintels for unit masonry specified in Division 05 "Metal Fabrications".
28 2. Steel shelf angles for unit masonry specified in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications".
29 3. Wood nailers and blocking built into unit masonry specified in Division 06 Section "Rough
30 Carpentry".
31 4. Hollow metal frames in unit masonry openings specified in Division 08 Section "Standard
32 Steel Doors and Frames".

33 **1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- 34 A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.



1 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

2 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

3 B. Shop Drawings: For the following:

- 4 1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
- 5 2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing
- 6 bars. Comply with ACI 315. Show elevations of reinforced walls.
- 7 3. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.

8 C. Samples for each type and color of colored mortars.

9 D. Material Certificates: For each type of product indicated. Include statements of material
10 properties indicating compliance with requirements including compliance with standards and type
11 designations within standards.

- 12 1. For masonry units include material test reports substantiating compliance with
13 requirements.

14 E. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of
15 ingredients.

- 16 1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test
17 according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compressive strength, ASTM C 1506 for water
18 retention, and ASTM C 91/C 91M for air content.

- 19 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with
20 compressive strength requirement.

21 F. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and
22 mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units,
23 mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to
24 TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

25 G. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and
26 equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

27 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

28 A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide materials and construction identical to those
29 of assemblies with fire-resistance ratings determined per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting
30 agency, by equivalent concrete masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to
31 authorities having jurisdiction.

32 B. Single-Source Responsibility for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform
33 texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from
34 one source and by a single manufacturer for each different product required.

35 C. Single-Source Responsibility for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform texture
36 quality, including color for exposed masonry, from one manufacturer for each cementitious
37 component from one source or producer for each aggregate.



- 1 D. Mockup: Prior to installing unit masonry, construct sample wall panel to verify selections made
 2 under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects as well as other qualities of
 3 materials and execution. Build mockups to comply with the following requirements, using
 4 materials indicated for final unit of Work.
- 5 1. Locate mockups on site in the locations indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by
 6 Architect.
 7 2. Building mockup of exterior typical wall area.
- 8 a. Typical exterior face brick wall with lower corner window opening framed with
 9 precast concrete sill, interior cmu, dampproofing, and insulation.
 10 b. Include a typical brick joint, filled with specified sealant.
 11 c. Include typical precast unit.
 12
- 13 3. Build mockup approximately 72" x 48".
 14 4. Clean exposed faces of mockups with masonry cleaner indicated.
 15 5. Notify Architect one week in advance of the dates and times when mockup will be
 16 constructed.
 17 6. Protect mockup from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
 18 7. Retain and maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a
 19 standard for judging the completed work.
- 20 a. Acceptance of mockups is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units;
 21 relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints;
 22 aesthetic qualities of workmanship; and other material and construction qualities
 23 specifically acceptable by Architect.
 24 b. When directed, demolish and remove mockups from Project Site.
- 25 E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of
 26 Division 01 Section "Project Meetings".

27 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- 28 A. Protection of Masonry: During erection, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof
 29 sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not
 30 in progress.
- 31 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) down both sides and hold cover securely
 32 in place.
 33 2. Where one wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes,
 34 secure cover a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) down face next to unconstructed wythe
 35 and hold cover in place.
 36 3. Cover stored masonry products, including sand.
 37
- 38 B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least
 39 3 days after building masonry walls or columns.
 40
- 41 C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left
 42 exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such
 43 masonry.
 44
- 45 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter by coverings spread on
 46 ground and over wall surface.
 47



- 1 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 2 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and
 3 integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 4 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from
 5 splashing mortar and dirt on completed masonry.
 6
 7 D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in
 8 ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
 9
 10 E. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice
 11 or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost
 12 or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in
 13 ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
 14

15 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- 16 A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location to prevent their
 17 deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, corrosion, and
 18 other causes. If units become wet, do not install until they are in an air-dried condition.
 19
 20 B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
 21
 22 C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and
 23 contamination avoided.
 24 D. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt
 and oil.

25 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

26 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- 27 A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to
 28 product selection:
 29 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering
 30 products that may be incorporated into the Work include but are not limited to,
 31 manufacturers specified.

32 2.2 COLORS, TEXTURES, AND PATTERNS

- 33 A. Exposed Masonry Units: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
 34 B. Brick mortar color (**colored mortar to be applied to wood molded brick only**) shall match
 35 mortar color utilized on the existing High School building. Submit match to Architect for approval.



1

2 **2.3 BRICK**

3 A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows:

- 4 1. For ends of sills and caps, lintel brick and for similar applications that would otherwise
5 expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed
6 surfaces finished.
- 7 2. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in
8 sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
- 9 3. Provide soldier brick units where indicated.
- 10 4. Provide 'lipped' brick where indicated. **Lipped brick units shall be from solids.**

11 B. Face Brick: ASTM C 216, Grade SW, Type FBS.

- 12 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive
13 strength of 3500 psi.
- 14 2. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when
15 tested per ASTM C 67.
- 16 3. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated
17 "not effloresced."
- 18 4. Surface Coating: Brick with colors or textures produced by application of coatings shall
19 withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing per ASTM C 67 with no observable difference
20 in the applied finish when viewed from 10 feet (3 m).
- 21 5. Size (Actual Dimensions): 3-5/8 inches (92 mm) wide by 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) high by 7-
22 5/8 inches (194 mm) long.

23 **C. Basis of Design Manufacturer:**

- 24 1. **Standard Modular Wood Molded Brick (ASTM C, Grade SW): Type FB-1 Painter Brick**
25 **as manufactured by Henry Brick Company, Inc, Selma Alabama; Modular size: 2-**
26 **1/4" h x 3-5/8" w x 7-5/8" l. Refer to drawings for locations. Submit sample for**
27 **verification and approval prior to ordering and installation.**
- 28 2. **Standard Modular Wood Molded Brick (ASTM C, Grade SW): Type FB-2-**
29 **Pennsylvania Molded Series - Pennwine as manufactured by Watsontown Brick**
30 **Company Inc, Watsontown, PA; Modular size: 2-1/4" h x 3-5/8" w x 7-5/8" l. Refer to**
31 **drawings for locations. Submit sample for verification and approval prior to ordering**
32 **and installation.**

33 **2.4 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS**34 A. Brick mortar color (**colored mortar to be applied to wood molded brick only**) shall be selected
35 from manufacturers full range of colored offerings.36 B. Portland Cement: STM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather
37 construction.

38 C. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.

39 D. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91.



- 1 1. Products:
- 2 a. Capital Materials Corporation; Flamingo Color Masonry Cement.
- 3 b. Essroc, Italcementi Group
- 4 c. Holcim (US) Inc
- 5 d. Lafarge North America Inc.
- 6 e. Lehigh Cement Company; Lehigh Masonry Cement.
- 7 f. National Cement Company, Inc.; Coosa Masonry Cement.
- 8 E. Mortar Pigments: Iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use
- 9 only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
- 10 1. Products:
- 11 a. Bayer Corporation, Industrial Chemicals Div.; Bayferrox Iron Oxide Pigments.
- 12 b. Davis Colors; True Tone Mortar Colors.
- 13 c. Solomon Grind-Chem Services, Inc.; SGS Mortar Colors.
- 14 F. Colored Cement Product: Packaged blend made from portland cement and lime or masonry
- 15 cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other
- 16 ingredients.
- 17 1. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, to match
- 18 Architect's sample.
- 19 2. Products:
- 20 a. Colored Portland Cement-Lime Mix:
- 21 1) Capital Materials Corporation; Riverton Portland Cement Lime Custom Color.
- 22 2) Holcim (US) Inc.; Rainbow Mortamix Custom Color Cement/Lime.
- 23 3) Lafarge North America Inc.; Eaglebond.
- 24 4) Lehigh Cement Company; Lehigh Custom Color Portland/Lime Cement.
- 25 b. Colored Masonry Cement:
- 26 1) Capital Materials Corporation; Flamingo Color Masonry Cement.
- 27 2) Essroc, Italcementi Group; Brixment-in-Color.
- 28 3) Holcim (US) Inc.; Rainbow Mortamix Custom Color Masonry Cement.
- 29 4) Lafarge North America Inc.
- 30 5) Lehigh Cement Company; Lehigh Custom Color Masonry Cement.
- 31 6) National Cement Company, Inc.; Coosa Masonry Cement.
- 32 G. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
- 33 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or
- 34 crushed stone.
- 35 2. For joints less than 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing
- 36 the No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.
- 37 3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
- 38 4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce
- 39 required mortar color.
- 40 H. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.



- 1 I. Water: Potable.
- 2 J. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with
3 ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of
4 composition indicated.
- 5 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
6 following:
- 7 a. BASF Corp. - Construction Chemicals.
8 b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
9 c. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
10 d. Grace, W.R. & Co.; Accelguard 80.
11 e. Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex, Inc.; Trimix NCA

12 2.5 REINFORCEMENT

- 13 A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60
14 (Grade 420).
- 15 B. Masonry Joint Reinforcement: ASTM A 951; mill galvanized, carbon-steel wire for interior walls
16 and hot-dip galvanized, carbon-steel wire for exterior walls.
- 17 1. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.1875-inch diameter.
18 2. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.1483-inch diameter.
19 3. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c.
20 4. Single-Wythe Masonry: Either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.
21 5. Multiwythe Masonry:
- 22 a. Ladder type with 1 side rod at each face shell of hollow masonry units more than 4
23 inches (100 mm) in width, plus 1 side rod at each wythe of masonry 4 inches (100
24 mm) or less in width.
25 b. Adjustable (two-piece) type, with one side rod at each face shell of backing wythe
26 and with ties that extend into facing wythe. Ties engage eyes or slots in
27 reinforcement and extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least 5/8-
28 inch (16-mm) cover on outside face. Ties have hooks or clips to engage a
29 continuous wire in the facing wythe. 9-gauge side rods and 3/16" eyes and pintels.

30 2.6 TIES AND ANCHORS

- 31 A. Materials:
- 32 1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-
33 2 coating.
34 2. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel, hot-
35 dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
36 3. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- 37 B. Wire Ties, General: Unless otherwise indicated, size wire ties to extend at least halfway through
38 veneer but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face. Outer ends of wires are bent 90
39 degrees and extend 2 inches (50 mm) parallel to face of veneer.



- 1 C. Individual Wire Ties: Rectangular units with closed ends and not less than 4 inches (100 mm)
2 wide.
- 3 1. Wire: Fabricate from 3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
- 4 D. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structure: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal
5 adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
- 6 1. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie, sized to extend within 1 inch (25 mm) of masonry
7 face, made from 0.25-inch- (6.4-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
- 8 2. Connector Section for Concrete: Dovetail tabs for inserting into dovetail slots in concrete
9 and attached to tie section; formed from 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, steel sheet,
10 galvanized after fabrication.
- 11 E. Partition Top anchors: 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick metal plate with 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) diameter
12 metal rod 6 inches (150 mm) long welded to plate and with closed-end plastic tube fitted over rod
13 that allows rod to move in and out of tube. Fabricate from steel, hot-dip galvanized after
14 fabrication.
- 15 F. Rigid Anchors: Fabricate from steel bars 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide by 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick
16 by 24 inches (600 mm) long, with ends turned up 2 inches (50 mm) or with cross pins.
- 17 1. Corrosion Protection: Hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- 18 G. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors For connecting to structural steel framing.
- 19 (Steel Studs): Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and
20 compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
- 21 1. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf (445-N) load in
22 both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch
23 (1.3 mm).
- 24 2. Anchor connection to steel studs: Basis of Design Hohmann and Barnard, Inc. X Seal
25 Anchor with X Seal Tape.

26 **2.7 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS**

- 27 A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal
28 Manual" Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" and as follows:
- 29
- 30 1. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 96 inches (2400 mm) long minimum, but not
31 exceeding 12 feet (3.7 m). Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
- 32
- 33 2. Metal Drip Edges: Extending at least 3 inches into wall and 1/2 inch out from wall, with a
34 hemmed outer edge bent down 30 degrees. Stainless steel flashing shall be equal to
35 Hohman and Barnard, foam tite seal drip plate. Integrate with specified thru-wall flashing
36 and as noted throughout the Contract Document drawings.
- 37
- 38 3. Screw-Attached Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Wire tie and a corrosion-resistant, self drilling,
39 eye-screw designed to receive wire tie. Eye-screw has spacer that seats directly against
40 framing and is same thickness as sheathing and has gasketed washer head that covers
41 hole in sheathing.



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
4. Option 1: Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene or EPDM washer, No 10 (4.83-mm) diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.
 5. Option 2: Stainless-Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene or EPDM washer, No 10 (4.83-mm) diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads: either made from Type 410 stainless steel or made with a carbon-steel drill point and 300 Series stainless-steel shank.
- 13 B. Flexible Flashing:
- 14 1. Self-adhering stainless steel fabric flashing-Stainless steel fabric flashing with removable
15 release liner. Clear adhesive factory laminated to a Class A material consisting of a layer
16 of polymeric fabric with a single sheet of .003 Type 304 or 316 stainless steel bonded to
17 one side
 - 18 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
19 following:
20 1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. Mighty-Flash SA
- 21 C. Application: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:
- 22 1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.
 - 23 2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond the wall face, use metal
24 flashing.
- 25 D. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products
26 or products recommended by flashing manufacturer.
- 27 E. Termination Bars for Flexible Flashing: Stainless Steel 26 gauge by 1-1/2 inches (1.63 mm by 38
28 mm with a 3/8-inch (10-mm) 45 degrees sealant flange at top. 5/16" slotted holes @ 8" o.c. equal
29 to Hohmann & Barnard, inc. #4210 stainless steel termination bar.

30 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- 31 A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1;
32 compressible up to 35 percent; formulated from neoprene.
- 33 B. Reflex Rubber expansion joint to meet SDTM D1751 and D 1752,
- 34 C. Weep/Vent Products: Use the following, unless otherwise indicated:
- 35 1. Mesh Weep/Vent: Free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands, full height and
36 width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch (3 mm) less than depth of outer wythe; in color
37 selected from manufacturer's standard.
 - 38 D. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade
39 within the wall cavity.
 - 40 1. Sheets or strips full depth of cavity and installed to a height of 10" in the cavity.



- 1 2. Products:
- 2 a. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Break.
- 3 b. Archovations, Inc.; CavClear Masonry Mat.
- 4 c. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Polytite MortarStop.
- 5 d. **Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Mortar Net. – Basis of Design.**
- 6 E. Performed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from Styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying
- 7 with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2aa-805 and designed to fit standard sash block and to
- 8 maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

9 **2.9 INSULATION**

- 10 A. Extruded-Polystyrene (XPS) Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, closed-cell product
- 11 extruded with an integral skin. Comply with ASTM C 578. Manufacturer's standard lengths and
- 12 width; and in one and one-half inch (1 ½") thickness for locations in the cavity wall.
- 13 1. Adhesive: Type recommended by insulation board manufacturer for application indicated.

14 **2.10 MASONRY CLEANERS**

- 15 A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing
- 16 mortar/grout stains from new masonry without damaging masonry. Use product approved for
- 17 intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
- 18 1. Manufacturers:
- 19 a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
- 20 b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
- 21 c. ProSoCo, Inc.

22 **2.11 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES**

- 23 A. General: Do not use admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
- 24 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
- 25 2. Limit cementitious materials in mortar for exterior and reinforced masonry to portland
- 26 cement and lime.
- 27 3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to
- 28 view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- 29 B. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270 and BIA Technical Notes 8A, Proportion
- 30 Specification.
- 31 C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270 and BIA Technical Notes 8A, Property
- 32 Specification.
- 33 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type S.
- 34 2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
- 35 3. For mortar parge coats, use Type S.



- 1 4. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls and parapet walls; for
 2 interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other
 3 applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
- 4 D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product.
- 5 1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
 6 2. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement by weight.
- 7 E. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
- 8 1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will
 9 comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces
 10 and pour height.
 11 2. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches (200 to 280 mm) as measured according to
 12 ASTM C 143/C 143M.

13 PART 3 - EXECUTION

14 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- 15 A. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required, cut units with motor-driven
 16 saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of
 17 units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
 18 **Lipped brick units shall be solids.**
- 19 B. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and
 20 textures.
- 21 C. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. (30
 22 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are
 23 damp but not wet at time of laying.
- 24 D. Comply with tolerances in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and with the following:
- 25 1. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and
 26 expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3
 27 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
 28 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary
 29 from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6
 30 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.

31 3.2 TOLERANCES

- 32 A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
- 33 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch (12
 34 mm) or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
 35 2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus
 36 1/2 inch (12 mm).
 37 3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or
 38 minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) in a story height or 1/2 inch (12 mm) total.



- 1 B. Lines and Levels:
- 2 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4
- 3 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
- 4 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary
- 5 from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6
- 6 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
- 7 3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6
- 8 mm in 3 m), 3/8 inch in 20 feet (9 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
- 9 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and
- 10 expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3
- 11 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
- 12 5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in
- 13 3 m), 3/8 inch in 20 feet (9 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
- 14 6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4
- 15 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
- 16 7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more
- 17 than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified
- 18 for warpage of units.

- 19 C. Joints:
- 20 1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3
- 21 mm), with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch (12 mm).
- 22 2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more
- 23 than 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- 24 3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch
- 25 (9 mm) or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- 26 4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus
- 27 1/8 inch (3 mm). Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more
- 28 than 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- 29 5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by
- 30 more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) from one masonry unit to the next.

31 3.3 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- 32 A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint
- 33 thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets.
- 34 Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other
- 35 locations.
- 36 B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running
- 37 bond; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at
- 38 corners or jambs. Use a masonry interlock (50% masonry bond) for wall intersections.
- 39 1. Rustication: Provide any rustication pattern of brick work as indicated on elevations.
- 40 C. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill
- 41 in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- 42 D. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar, unless otherwise indicated.
- 43 E. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 24 inches (600 mm) under bearing plates,
- 44 beams, lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.



- 1 F. Mix units for exposed unit masonry from several pallets or cubes as they are placed to produce
2 uniform blend of colors and textures.

3 **3.4 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING**

- 4 A. Lay hollow brick and concrete masonry units as follows:

- 5 1. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
6 2. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
7 3. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
8 4. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on
9 footings where cells are not grouted.

- 10 B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient
11 mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head
12 joints.

- 13 C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint
14 thickness, unless otherwise indicated.

- 15 D. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than
16 paint), unless otherwise indicated.

- 17 E. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick prior to laying as recommended by manufacturer.

18 **3.5 COMPOSITE MASONRY**

- 19 A. Bond wythes of composite masonry together using one of the following methods:

- 20 1. Masonry Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
21 a. Where bed joints of both wythes align, use ladder-type reinforcement extending
22 across both wythes.
23 b. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two-piece) type
24 reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties.

- 25 B. Collar Joints: Solidly fill collar joints without any voids or air pockets by parging face of first wythe
26 that is laid and shoving units of other wythe into place.

- 27 C. Corners: Provide interlocking masonry unit bond in each wythe and course at corners, unless
28 otherwise indicated.

- 29 D. Intersecting and Abutting Walls: Unless vertical expansion or control joints are shown at juncture,
30 bond walls together as follows:

- 31 1. Provide continuity with masonry joint reinforcement by using prefabricated T-shaped units.

32 **3.6 CAVITY WALLS**

- 33 A. Bond wythes of cavity walls together using one of the following methods:



- 1 1. Masonry Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
- 2 a. Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use
3 adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing
4 wythe attached to ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed
5 joints align.
- 6 2. Masonry Veneer Anchors: Comply with requirements for anchoring masonry veneers.
7 Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for 1.77
8 sq. ft. (0.16 sq. m) of wall area spaced not to exceed 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. horizontally
9 and 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional
10 ties within 12 inches (305 mm) of openings and space not more than 36 inches (915 mm)
11 apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no
12 more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. vertically.
- 13 a. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) ties.
14 b. Where one wythe is ground face CMU and the other of concrete masonry, adjustable
15 (two-piece) type reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe
16 attached to ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints
17 align shall be used.
- 18 3.
- 19 B. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds
20 away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. Do not attempt to trowel or remove
21 mortar fins protruding into cavity.
- 22 C. Coat cavity face of backup wythe to comply with Division 07 Section "Bituminous Dampproofing."
- 23 D. Installing Cavity-Wall Insulation: Place continuous ribbons (min. ¼" dia) of adhesive to form a 6-
24 inch by 6-inch grid (both ways). Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other confining
25 obstructions in cavity, with edges butted tightly both ways. Press units firmly against inside wythe
26 of masonry or other construction shown. In addition, if necessary to insure insulation fits tightly
27 against masonry back-up wall, mechanically fasten each piece of insulation with compatible
28 fasteners, spaced one fastener per 2 sq. ft.
- 29 1. Fill cracks and open gaps in insulation with crack sealer compatible with insulation and
30 masonry.

31 **3.7 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT**

- 32 A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch
33 (16 mm) on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch (13 mm) elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of
34 6 inches (150 mm).
- 35 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
36 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. in foundation walls and parapet
37 walls.
38 3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches (203 mm) above and below wall openings
39 and extending 12 inches (305 mm) beyond openings.
- 40 B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.



- 1 C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- 2 D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.
- 3 E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at[**corners,**] returns,
4 offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

5 **3.8 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL MEMBERS**

- 6 A. Anchor masonry to structural members where masonry abuts or faces structural members to
7 comply with the following:
- 8 1. Provide an open space not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) in width between masonry and
9 structural member, unless otherwise indicated.
- 10 2. Anchor masonry to structural members with anchors embedded in masonry joints and
11 attached to structure.
- 12 3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. vertically and 36
13 inches (915 mm) o.c. horizontally.

14 **3.9 ANCHORING MASONRY VENEERS**

- 15 A. Anchor masonry veneers to concrete and masonry backup masonry-veneer anchors to comply
16 with the following requirements:
- 17 1. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and
18 down.
- 19 2. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. vertically and 16
20 inches (406 mm) horizontally. Install additional anchors within 12 inches (305 mm) of
21 openings and at intervals, not exceeding 36 inches (914 mm), around perimeter.
- 22 3. Wall truss reinforcing: For the first and second cmu courses above and below apertures,
23 run reinforcing continuous or extend two feet back from aperture edge

24 **3.10 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, CAVITY DRAINAGE, AND VENTS**

- 25 A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges,
26 other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.
- 27 B. Install flashing as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
- 28 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could
29 puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on
30 sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations
31 in flashing as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
- 32 2. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) into masonry
33 at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches (150 mm) at ends and turn up
34 not less than 2 inches (50 mm) to form end dams.
- 35
- 36 C. Install weep holes in head joints in exterior wythes of first course of masonry immediately above
37 embedded flashing and as follows:



- 1 1. Use specified weep/vent products to form weep holes.
 2 2. Space weep holes 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
- 3 D. Install vents in head joints in exterior wythes at spacing indicated. Use specified weep/vent
 4 products to form vents.
- 5 1. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install
 6 through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.

7 **3.11 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS**

- 8 A. General: Install control- and expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses.
 9 Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane
 10 wall or partition movement.
- 11 B. Form control joints in concrete masonry as followings:
- 12 1. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.

13 **3.12 LINTELS**

- 14 A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- 15 B. Provide concrete or masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches
 16 (305 mm) for brick-size units and 24 inches (610 mm) for block-size units are shown without
 17 structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- 18 C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches (200 mm) at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

19 **3.13 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION**

- 20 A. Refer to Section 04 22 00.

21 **3.14 CLEANING**

- 22 A. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar
 23 fins and smears before tooling joints.
- 24 B. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
- 25 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes
 26 or chisels.
- 27 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for
 28 comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding
 29 with cleaning of masonry.
- 30 3. Protect adjacent stone and non-masonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering
 31 them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking
 32 tape.
- 33 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing
 34 surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
- 35 5. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.



- 1 6. Do not use acid or abrasives on the finish surfaces. Do not apply burnished custom
- 2 masonry cleaner with pressure spray above 50 psi. Do not power pressure wash.
- 3 7. Clean stone trim to comply with stone supplier's written instructions.
- 4 8. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BLA
- 5 Technical notes 20.
- 6 9. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to
- 7 type of stain on exposed surfaces.

8 **3.15 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL**

- 9 A. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-
- 10 contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill
- 11 material as fill is placed.
- 12 1. Legally dispose of masonry waste off Owner's property.

13 **END OF SECTION 04 20 00**

14



1 **SECTION 04 29 00 - REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. This Section includes grouted, reinforced masonry consisting of grout and reinforcing steel.
- 8 B. Related Sections:
- 9 1. Section 03 20 00 "Concrete Reinforcement" for reinforcing steel.
- 10 2. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-In-Place Concrete" for concrete.
- 11 3. Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry" for all other elements of masonry construction.

12 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 13 A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- 14 B. Reinforced Unit Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

15 **1.4 PERFORMANCE AND PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING REQUIRMENTS**

- 16 A. Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28-
17 days. Contractor shall determine the net-area compressive strength of masonry based on 1.4B
18 or 1.4C. Mortar for unit masonry shall comply with ASTM C270. Contractor shall meet ASTM
19 C270 requirements based on the Property or Performance Specification.
- 20 B. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive
21 strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to Tables 1 and 2
22 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- 23 1. Preconstruction Testing Service: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing
24 agency to perform preconstruction testing indicated below. Retesting of materials that fail
25 to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- 26 a. Concrete Masonry Unit Test (Property and Proportion Specification): For each
27 type of unit required, according to ASTM C140 for compressive strength.
- 28 b. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided,
29 according to ASTM C780.
- 30 c. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix required, according to
31 ASTM C109 for compressive strength.



- 1 d. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix required, according to
2 ASTM C780 for compressive strength.
- 3 e. Grout Test (Compressive Strength) (Property and Performance Specification): For
4 each mix required, according to ASTM C1019.
- 5 C. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry by testing masonry prisms according to
6 ASTM C1314.
- 7 1. Prism Test (Property and Proportion Specification): For each type of construction
8 required, according to ASTM C1314.

9 **1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- 10 A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in
11 Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

12 **1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 13 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- 14 B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
- 15 1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
- 16 2. Reinforcing Steel: Show fabrication and installation details Reinforcing Steel. Detail
17 bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details
18 and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement." Show bar sizes, schedules, bent bar
19 diagrams and other arrangements as required for fabrication and placement. Show
20 elevations of reinforced walls.
- 21 C. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results of
22 the following for compliance with requirements indicated:
- 23 1. Grout mixes complying with material and compressive strength requirements of
24 ASTM C476 for fine grout. Include description of type and proportions of grout ingredients
25 and design slump.

26 **1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 27 A. Qualification Data: For testing agency
- 28 B. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
- 29 1. Masonry units.
- 30 a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements
- 31 b. Include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength
32 of units.



- 1 2. Cementitious materials. Include brand, type, and name of manufacturer.
 2 3. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 3 4. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients
 4 5. Reinforcing bars.
 5 6. Joint reinforcement.
 6 7. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- 7 C. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of
 8 ingredients.
- 9 1. Test according to ASTM C109 for compressive strength, ASTM C1506 for water
 10 retention, and ASTM C91 for air content.
 11 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C1019, for grout mixes required to comply with
 12 compressive strength requirements.
- 13 D. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type
 14 and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units,
 15 mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to
 16 Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- 17 E. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and
 18 equipment to be used to comply with requirements.
- 19 **1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE**
- 20 A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C1093 for testing indicated.
 21 B. Masonry Standard: Comply with the Florida Building Code, 8th Edition and ACI 530.1/ASCE
 22 6/TMS 602 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- 23 **1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**
- 24 A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an
 25 enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units
 26 become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- 27 B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not
 28 use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- 29 C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and
 30 contamination avoided.
- 31 D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for use with
 32 dispensing silos. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms,
 33 under cover, and in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- 34 E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt
 35 and oil.



1 **1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- 2 A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with
 3 waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when
 4 construction is not in progress.
- 5 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls and hold cover securely
 6 in place.
- 7 B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least
 8 3 days after building masonry walls or columns.
- 9 C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left
 10 exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such
 11 masonry.
- 12 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading
 13 coverings on ground and over wall surface.
- 14 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
- 15 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and
 16 integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
- 17 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from
 18 splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- 19 D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice
 20 or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost
 21 or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI
 22 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- 23 E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in
 24 ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

25 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

26 **2.1 MATERIALS**

- 27 A. General: Refer to Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for masonry materials and accessories and
 28 grout materials not included in this section.

29 **2.2 MANUFACTURERS**

- 30 A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and
 31 color, or a uniform blend within the ranges, accepted for these characteristics, from single
 32 source manufacturer for each product required.
- 33 B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including
 34 color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and
 35 from single source or producer for each aggregate.



1 **2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS**

2 A. CMUs: ASTM C90.

3 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive
4 strength of 2,000 psi.

5 2. Density Classification: Normal weight.

6 B. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces, matching exposed
7 faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.

8 1. Provide special shapes for corners, jambs, sashes, control joints, lintels, bond beams and
9 other special conditions.

10 **2.4 CONCRETE AND MASONRY LINTELS**

11 A. General: Provide one of the following:

12 1. Provide precast lintels made from concrete matching concrete masonry units in color,
13 texture, and compressive strength and with reinforcing bars indicated or required to
14 support loads indicated. Cure precast lintels by the same method used for concrete
15 masonry units.

16 2. Provide prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels. Use specially formed bond beam
17 units with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with fine grout. Cure precast
18 lintels before handling and installing. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

19 **2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS**

20 A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather
21 construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color
22 indicated.

23 B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.

24 C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing
25 no other ingredients.

26 D. Mortar Cement: ASTM C1329.

27 E. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144

28 F. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C404 for fine grout.

29 G. Water: Potable.

30 **2.6 REINFORCEMENT**

31 A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60. Shop fabricate bent bars.



- 1 B. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951.
- 2 1. Interior Walls: Mill- galvanized, carbon steel.
- 3 2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon, ASTM A 153 with a coating thickness of 1.50
- 4 oz/sf steel.
- 5 3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.187-inch diameter.
- 6 4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.187-inch diameter.
- 7 5. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
- 8 6. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet, with prefabricated corner and tee units.
- 9 C. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Ladder type with single pair of side
- 10 rods complying with ASTM A951.
- 11 D. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry
- 12 unit cells with loops for holding reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-
- 13 inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- 14 1. Provide units with either two loops or four loops as needed for number of bars indicated.

15 2.7 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- 16 A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators,
- 17 retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise
- 18 indicated.
- 19 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
- 20 B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix.
- 21 Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients
- 22 before delivering to Project site
- 23 C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270 Proportion or Property Specification.
- 24 Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated.
- 25 1. For masonry retaining earth, use Type M.
- 26 2. For all other masonry, use Type S.
- 27 D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C476 with a minimum compressive strength of
- 28 2500 psi in 28 days.
- 29 1. Use fine grout with a slump of 8 to 10 inches as measured according to ASTM C143.

30 PART 3 - EXECUTION

31 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 32 A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation
- 33 tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.



- 1 1. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
- 2 2. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
- 3 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

4 **3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- 5 A. Refer to Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for general installation requirements of unit masonry.
- 6 B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- 7 C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing
8 equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to the opening.
- 9 D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous
10 pattern or to fit adjoining construction, Cut masonry units with motor-driven saws to provide
11 clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units which are not in multiples of 8 inches. Install cut units
12 with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- 13 E. Allow wet masonry units to dry prior to placement.

14 **3.3 TOLERANCES**

- 15 A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
 - 16 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or
17 minus 1/4 inch.
 - 18 2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or
19 minus 1/2 inch.
 - 20 3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or
21 minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.
- 22 B. Lines and Levels:
 - 23 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4
24 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
 - 25 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary
26 from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
 - 27 3. For vertical lines and surfaces do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet,
28 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
 - 29 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and
30 expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4
31 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
 - 32 5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch
33 in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
 - 34 6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4
35 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
 - 36 7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more
37 than 1/16 inch.



- 1 C. Joints:
- 2 1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch,
3 with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
- 4 2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more
5 than 1/8 inch.
- 6 3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8
7 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
- 8 4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus
9 1/8 inch.

10 3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- 11 A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint
12 thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, reinforcement, movement-type joints,
13 returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and,
14 where possible, at other locations.
- 15 B. Bond Pattern: Unless otherwise indicated, lay masonry in one-half running bond with vertical
16 joint in each course centered on units in courses above and below, unless otherwise indicated
17 on Drawings. Interlock each course at corners.
- 18 C. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at
19 other locations.
- 20 D. Place clean units while the mortar is soft and plastic. Remove and relay in fresh mortar any unit
21 disturbed to the extent that initial bond is broken after initial positioning.
- 22 E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill
23 in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- 24 F. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by racking back units in each course from those in
25 course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive
26 mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh
27 masonry.
- 28 G. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams,
29 lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.
- 30 H. Design, provide and install bracing that will assure stability of masonry during construction.
31 Include provisions to project against wind or other natural or construction forces that might
32 collapse or otherwise damage a partially or completely built masonry wall in a partially
33 completed structure.

34 3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- 35 A. Lay hollow masonry units as follows:
- 36 1. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.



- 1 2. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
- 2 3. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on
- 3 footings.
- 4 4. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on
- 5 footings where cells are not grouted.

6 **3.6 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT**

- 7 A. General: Provide continuous masonry joint reinforcement as indicated. Install entire length of
- 8 longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch. Lap reinforcement a minimum
- 9 of 6 inches.

- 10 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
- 11 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls.
- 12 3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and
- 13 extending 12 inches beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.

- 14 B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.

- 15 C. Provide continuity at corners and wall intersections by using prefabricated "L" and "T" sections.

- 16 D. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at returns, offsets,
- 17 column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

18 **3.7 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE**

- 19 A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete, where masonry abuts or faces structural steel
- 20 or concrete, to comply with the following:

- 21 1. Provide an open space not less than 1/2 inch wide between masonry and structural steel
- 22 or concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid
- 23 materials.
- 24 2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
- 25 3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches o.c. or as indicated on the
- 26 drawings.

27 **3.8 ANCHORING MASONRY TO CONCRETE**

- 28 A. Anchor masonry to concrete where masonry abuts or faces concrete to comply with the
- 29 following:

- 30 1. Provide an open space not less than 1/2 inch wide between masonry and concrete
- 31 unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
- 32 2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
- 33 3. Space anchors at 16 inches o.c. vertically and 36 inches.

34 **3.9 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS**



1 A. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses.
 2 Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-
 3 plane wall or partition movement.

4 B. Form control joints in concrete masonry as follows:

5 1. Install backer-rod in head joints and apply sealant after concrete masonry is complete.

6 **3.10 LINTELS**

7 A. Provide concrete or masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 24 inches
 8 are shown. Reinforce and grout lintels as shown on the Drawings.

9 B. Install steel lintels where indicated.

10 C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.

11 **3.11 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION**

12 A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores to support reinforced
 13 masonry elements during construction.

14 1. Construct formwork to conform to shape, line, and dimensions shown. Make it sufficiently
 15 tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain
 16 position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.

17 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened
 18 sufficiently to carry their own weight and other temporary loads that may be placed on
 19 them during construction.

20 B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements of ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and as
 21 follows:

22 1. Place reinforcement and accessories as indicated.

23 2. Support and fasten reinforcement together to prevent displacement by construction loads
 24 or by placement of grout.

25 3. Clean reinforcement by removing mud, oil, or other materials that will reduce the bond at
 26 the time grout is placed. Reinforcement with tightly bound rust and/or mill scale is
 27 acceptable without cleaning provided the dimensions and weights, including heights of
 28 deformations, of the cleaned sample are not reduced.

29 4. Place all reinforcement prior to grouting. Tie vertical reinforcement to dowels at base of
 30 masonry with tie wire and thread masonry units over or around reinforcement. Support
 31 vertical reinforcement at 10 feet o.c. Extend vertical bars the specified lap length above
 32 top of pour and support bar in proper position at top of grout pour. Where vertical bars
 33 are placed after laying masonry, place wire loops extending into cells as masonry is laid
 34 and loosen before mortar sets. After insertion of bar, pull loops and bar to proper position
 35 and tie free ends.

36 5. Do not bend reinforcement after it is embedded in grout.



- 1 6. Splice bars only where indicated. Provide 48 bar diameter lap splices, unless otherwise
2 noted. Place bars in contact and wire tie. Bars spliced by noncontact lap splices shall be
3 spaced 6 inches apart (maximum).
4 7. Bar placement tolerance is $\pm 1/2$ inches perpendicular to wall and 2 inches along wall.
5 The clear distance between parallel bars that are not contact lap spliced shall be not less
6 than 1 inch in walls and 1-1/2 inches in columns and pilasters. Maintain $1/4$ inch clear
7 between bars and any face of masonry.
- 8 C. Laying Masonry Walls: Construct masonry walls as follows:
- 9 1. Lay masonry units to top of grout pour prior to placing grout. Maximum grout pour height
10 is 12 feet or top of bond beam, whichever is lower.
11 2. Construct wall such that vertical cells to be grouted are aligned and unobstructed
12 openings for grout are 3 inches x 4 inches (minimum). Construct grout spaces free of
13 mortar droppings, debris, loose aggregates, and any material deleterious to grout; or,
14 clean the cells prior to grouting. Remove masonry protrusions extending 1/2 inch or more
15 into cells to be grouted.
16 3. Do not lay masonry until grouted masonry below is cured.
17 4. In bond beams, use special units or modify regular units to allow placement of horizontal
18 bars. Place small mesh, expanded metal lath or wire screening in mortar joints under
19 bond beam courses over cells of non-reinforced vertical cells.
- 20 D. Cleanouts: Provide cleanout openings at each vertical bar at the base of walls in which one of
21 the following applies:
- 22 1. Grout pour height exceeds 5 feet.
23 2. Vertical bars are not otherwise fastened to prevent displacement. In this case, use
24 cleanout to securely tie bar in position.
25 3. To remove dust, dirt, mortar droppings, loose pieces of masonry and other foreign
26 materials from cell and top of support in cells to be grouted.
27
28 Construct cleanout by cutting opening in face shell. Construct cleanouts with openings of
29 sufficient size to permit removal of debris and tying of bars. Minimum size is 3 inches x 3
30 inches. After cleaning and inspection, close cleanout opening and brace closure to resist grout
31 pressure.
- 32 E. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained sufficient
33 strength to resist grout pressure.
- 34 1. Comply with requirements of ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
35 2. Place grout within 1 1/2 hours from introducing water in the mixture and prior to initial set.
36 3. Confine grout to the areas indicated.
37 4. Place grout by pumping into grout spaces unless alternate methods are acceptable to the
38 Architect.
39 5. Place grout continuously in lintels and bond beams. Grout walls in lifts not exceeding 5
40 feet or the elevation of top of bond beam, whichever is lower.
41 6. If grout pour during one day exceeds 5 feet, grout in lifts 5 feet each or less, with not less
42 than 30 minutes and not more than 1 hour between lifts.
43 7. Terminate grout 1-1/2 inches below bond beam course or where cell above is to be
44 grouted.
45 8. Place grout in bond beam course before filling vertical cores above bond beam.



- 1 9. Consolidate grout with mechanical vibrators having a 3/4 inch diameter head. Vibrate
2 each lift and reconsolidate after 10 minutes. Grout pours 12 inches high or less may be
3 puddled in lieu of mechanical vibration.

4 **3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 5 A. Testing: Contractor will engage a Testing Agency, acceptable to the Owner, to inspection,
6 perform tests and prepare reports. Allow access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to
7 perform tests. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be
8 done at Contractor's expense.

- 9 1. Testing Agency shall spot check wall construction to verify joint reinforcement is being
10 installed correctly and mortar mixtures are in compliance with approved submittal.

- 11 2. Testing Agency must review wall reinforcing prior to grout placement and verify that
12 mechanical vibration of grout is performed.

- 13 3. Begin masonry construction only after the Testing Agency has verified proportions of site-
14 prepared mortar.

- 15 B. Testing Frequency: Four grout cubes will be sampled and tested for compressive strength per
16 ASTM C1019 for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall surface.

17 **3.13 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING**

- 18 A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained or otherwise
19 damaged or that do not match the adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units;
20 install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.

- 21 B. Pointing: During tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely
22 fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to
23 provide a neat, uniform appearance.

- 24 C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove
25 mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.

- 26 D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:

- 27 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape
28 hoes or chisels.

- 29 2. Remove all mortar fins larger than 1/2 inch within cells to be reinforced.

30 **END OF SECTION 04 29 00**



1 **SECTION 05 12 00 - STRUCTURAL STEEL**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. The work specified in this section includes all labor, materials, equipment, permits, and services
8 necessary for the furnishing, fabrication and erection of structural steel and related work,
9 complete, in accordance with the Drawings and as specified herein, including the detailing of all
10 connections.
- 11 B. Structural steel is that work defined in AISC "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and
12 Bridges" and as otherwise shown on Drawings.
- 13 C. Related Requirements:
- 14 1. Section 03 10 00 "Concrete Formwork" for Placing Anchor Rods.
15 2. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-In-Place Concrete" for Grouting Base Plates.
16 3. Section 05 21 00 "Steel Joists."
17 4. Section 05 31 00 "Steel Deck."
18 5. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrication."
19 6. Section 07 81 00 "Applied Fireproofing."
20 7. Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" and Section
21 099600 "High Performance Coatings."

22 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 23 A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in
24 AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- 25 B. Heavy Sections: Rolled and built-up sections as follows:
- 26 1. Shapes included in ASTM A6 with flanges thicker than 1-1/2 inches.
27 2. Welded built-up members with plates thicker than 2 inches.
28 3. Column base plates thicker than 2 inches.

29 **1.4 COORDINATION**

- 30 A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint
31 and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats
32 are compatible with one another.



- 1 B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction
2 without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and
3 directions for installation.

4 **1.5 RESPONSIBILITIES**

- 5 A. The Engineer of Record is responsible for the design of the steel framing and the connections
6 that are fully detailed as presented in the Contract Documents.
- 7 B. The fabricator is responsible for the preparation of Shop and Erection Drawings pursuant to the
8 requirements of the Contract Documents. All connections that are not completely detailed on
9 the drawings shall be designed by the Fabricator's Delegated Engineer. Submit signed and
10 sealed connection details and calculations to the EOR for approval prior to submitting shop
11 drawings. Once approved, the connection details may be incorporated in the shop drawings.
12 The shop drawings are not required to be signed and sealed.
- 13 C. The fabricator is responsible for the coordination of all surveyed field conditions and field
14 measurements necessary for the detailing, fabrication and erection of their work. All field
15 measurements shall be provided on the shop drawings prior to submittal.
- 16 D. The Engineer of Record is responsible for the structural adequacy of the structure in the
17 completed project. The erector is responsible for the means, methods and safety of the
18 erection, including all temporary guys, beams, falsework, cribbing or other elements required for
19 the erection operation. If the erector is unsure of these requirements, he shall retain a Florida
20 Licensed Engineer to determine and design all temporary requirements.

21 **1.6 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- 22 A. Preconstruction Meeting: There shall be a Preconstruction Meeting with the Owner, Architect,
23 Structural Engineer, Contractor, Fabricator, Erector, Testing Laboratory and Special Inspector
24 to clarify responsibilities and requirements as set forth in Division 01 "Project Management and
25 Coordination".

26 **1.7 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 27 A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- 28 B. Shop Drawings:
- 29 1. Letter from Florida Licensed Engineer responsible for shop drawings.
- 30 2. Submit to the Architect for acceptance, shop and erection drawings for all structural steel
31 components, prepared by or under the direct supervision and control of a Florida
32 Licensed Engineer. See "Shop Drawings and Other Submittals" notes regarding the
33 possible reproduction of Structural Drawings for use as shop or erection drawings.
34 Drawings shall include complete details, dimensions, schedules and procedures for the
35 fabrication, assembly, and sequence of erection.
- 36 3. No changes to the completed connection shown on the drawings will be considered
37 without complying with the applicable requirements for substitutions. The fabricator shall
38 submit details and complete calculations that clearly identify proposed substitutions for
39 Engineer's review prior to preparation of detailed shop drawings. Proposed variations to



- 1 details shown on the Contract Drawings will be considered and such variations must
 2 have preliminary acceptance prior to the preparation of detailed shop drawings. The
 3 details and calculations shall clearly show the capacity of the connections designed by
 4 the fabricator. The calculations shall show details of the assembled joint with all bolts and
 5 welds required. All design calculations, drawings and details for substitutions shall be
 6 signed, sealed and dated by the Delegated Engineer.
- 7 4. For structural steel connections indicated on the drawings to comply with design loads,
 8 include signed and sealed calculations by the qualified professional engineer responsible
 9 for their preparation under the following criteria:
- 10 a. Design all connections for the factored forces indicated on the drawings in
 11 accordance with all applicable codes and specifications.
- 12 b. Set connection work point at the intersection of member centerlines for all
 13 connection design and detailing.
- 14 c. The conceptual connections on the drawings show design intent and shall be
 15 completed for the member designated forces. Adapt those details to accommodate
 16 the atypical conditions. The conceptual connection does not show the complexity
 17 of the final connection designed for the required forces.
- 18 d. Design, detail, and install stiffeners, continuity plates, doubler plates as required to
 19 resist the indicated design forces. The member size is based on member behavior
 20 away from the connection.
- 21 e. All forces shown on the drawings act concurrently unless noted otherwise.
- 22 f. During bidding, if no moment is shown on the drawings, provide full moment
 23 capacity of the member of $.9 F_y Z$; and if no shear is shown, provide full shear
 24 capacity of $.6 F_y d t_w$. For missing tension forces, assume 95% of the tension
 25 member capacity.
- 26 g. Use the same bolt sizes shown on the drawings. All bolts with the same diameter
 27 shall be of the same grade. Skip one diameter size for bolts with different grades.
 28 Do not use oversized or slotted holes unless approved by EOR.
- 29 h. Shop drawings incorporating the design of the Delegated Engineer shall be
 30 reviewed and stamped by the Delegated Engineer prior to submittal to the EOR.
- 31 5. Include details of cuts, connections, camber, holes, threaded fasteners and other
 32 pertinent data. Indicate welds by standard AWS A2.4 symbols and show size, length, and
 33 type of each weld. Show shop welds on shop drawings and field welds on erection
 34 drawings.
- 35 6. Provide setting drawings, templates, and directions for installation of anchor rods,
 36 embeds and other anchorages to be installed by others.
- 37 7. Indicate surface preparation, such as primed, galvanized, etc., of each surface of each
 38 piece.
- 39 C. Acceptance of the Shop and Erection Drawings by the Architect/Engineer does not relieve the
 40 Fabricator of the responsibility for accuracy of detail dimensions on the shop drawings and the
 41 general fit-up of parts to be assembled in the field.
- 42 D. Before welding is started, the steel fabricator and erector, as applicable, shall submit to the
 43 Architect a signed and sealed statement by a Florida Licensed Engineer, who specializes in the
 44 design of weldments, that he/she has provided written welding procedures for this Project,
 45 establishing the welding process, sequence of assembly, preheat, interpass and postheat
 46 requirements in general if high residual stresses are present, and in particular for all members
 47 requiring partial or complete penetration groove welding.



1 **1.8 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 2 A. Qualification Data: Include lists of Qualification data for firms and persons specified in the
 3 "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of
 4 completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and
 5 owners, and other information specified.
- 6 B. Welding certificates. Submit to Owner's inspection agency.
- 7 C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers,
 8 certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- 9 D. Mill Test Reports: Fabricator's certification that the chemical and physical properties of the
 10 following materials comply with the Project requirements:
- 11 1. Structural steel
 12 2. Bolts, nuts and washers.
 13 3. Direct-tension indicators.
 14 4. Shear studs.
 15 5. Welding electrodes.
- 16 E. Product Test Reports: For the following:
- 17 1. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
 18 2. Direct-tension indicators.
 19 3. Tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
 20 4. Shear stud connectors.
 21 5. Shop primers.
 22 6. Nonshrink grout.
- 23 F. Product Data for each type of product specified, including the following:
- 24 1. Bolts, nuts, and washers, including mechanical properties.
 25 2. Direct-tension indicators.
 26 3. Shear stud connectors.
 27 4. Structural steel coatings.
 28 5. Bearing pads
- 29 G. Fabricator's Quality Control Program.
- 30 1. Include welding and testing procedures.
- 31 H. Fabricator's shop inspection and test reports.
- 32 I. Substantiating data for primer on Class A faying surface.

33 **1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 34 A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification
 35 Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category BU, with a minimum five years of
 36 documented successful experience on equivalent projects. Submit copy of AISC Certifications
 37 and résumé demonstrating equivalent project experience.

[See Allstate Construction's bid package.](#)



See Allstate Construction's bid package.

- 1 B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification
 2 Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CSE with a minimum five years
 3 of documented successful experience on equivalent projects. Submit copy of AISC Certification
 4 and résumé demonstrating equivalent project experience.
- 5 C. Qualifications for welding work: Qualify welding procedures and operators in accordance with
 6 AWS "Standard Qualification Procedure".
- 7 1. The Fabricator for shop welds and the Erector for field welds shall retain a Florida
 8 Licensed Engineer, who specializes in the design of weldments to prepare a written
 9 welding program pursuant to the requirements of AWS D1.1. The program shall include
 10 all necessary Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS), all necessary requirements for
 11 qualification testing of WPS and welding personnel. The WPS shall include the welding
 12 process, sequence of assembly, preheat, interpass and postheat requirements. Welded
 13 joints of heavy sections and plates 2 inch thick and greater shall be detailed to limit the
 14 amount of weld metal. Double bevels shall be used in lieu of single bevels. Welding shall
 15 start at the most restrained part of the weldment and proceed to the least restrained.
- 16 2. The Fabricator and Erector, as applicable, shall conduct all necessary tests required by
 17 AWS D1.1 to qualify the WPS.
- 18 3. Provide certification that welders to be employed in work have satisfactorily passed AWS
 19 qualification tests for the welding process and position used and have been continuously
 20 employed as a welder since certification. If recertification of welders is required, retesting
 21 will be Contractor's responsibility.
- 22 D. Stud Application Qualification Test:
- 23 1. Prior to erection, conduct stud application qualification tests in accordance with AWS
 24 D1.1 Chapter 7.6 and Annex IX. The tests are the responsibility of the Contractor or stud
 25 applicator.
- 26 2. Prepare specimen plates of A992 steel, minimum 1/2 inch thick, with an SP-6 surface
 27 preparation.
- 28 3. Weld a minimum of ten (10) studs through steel deck to the prepared plate(s). The studs
 29 and steel deck shall be of the same type as specified for use in the project. Test the studs
 30 by the bend test specified in AWS 7.6.6 or Annex IX.
- 31 4. If the tests are conducted by other than the Owner's testing agency, that agency shall be
 32 properly notified so that they may be present to witness the entire test procedure.
- 33 E. Codes and Standards: Comply with the following, unless more stringent provisions are
 34 indicated:
- 35 1. Florida Building Code, 8th Edition.
- 36 2. AISC 360, "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings."
- 37 3. AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges".
- 38 a. Paragraph 4.4. "Approval" is modified such that the Structural Engineer will return
 39 submittals to the Architect within ten working days from time of receipt.
- 40 4. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints using High Strength Bolts." Approved June
 41 22, 2010.
- 42 5. AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code - Steel".
- 43 6. ASTM A6 "Standard Specification for General Requirements for Rolled Structural Steel
 44 Bars, Plates, Shapes, and Sheet Piling."
- 45 7. S.S.P.C. Society for Protective Coatings.
- 46 8. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA), as amended to date.



1 **1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 2 A. Deliver materials to site at such intervals to insure uninterrupted progress of work
- 3 B. Deliver anchor rods and anchorage devices which are to be embedded in cast-in-place concrete
4 or masonry in ample time to not delay work.
- 5 C. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off
6 ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel
7 members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
- 8 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or
9 overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or
10 structures as directed.
- 11 D. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact until
12 ready to use. Reseal open containers to prevent contamination by moisture or other deleterious
13 substances. Store closed containers in a protective shelter to protect fasteners from dirt and
14 moisture. Only as many fastener components as are anticipated to be installed during the work
15 shift shall be taken from protective storage. Fastener components that are not incorporated into
16 the work shall be returned to protective storage at the end of the work shift. Fasteners from
17 open containers and fasteners that accumulate rust or dirt shall not be used and shall be
18 immediately and permanently removed from the project site.

19 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

20 **2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS**

- 21 A. Structural steel rolled W and WT shapes: ASTM A992, Grade 50.
- 22 B. Structural steel rolled M, S, C and MC shapes and Angles: ASTM A36, Grade 36.
- 23 C. Structural steel plates and bars: ASTM A36, Grade 36 and ASTM A572, Grade 50.
- 24 1. All steel plates exceeding 2" in thickness shall conform to the requirements of ASTM
25 A435, "Straight-Beam Ultrasonic Examination of Steel Plates", to assure delivery of steel
26 plates free of gross internal discontinuities such as pipe, ruptures, or laminations. Plates
27 shall be identified by stamping or stenciling "UT 435" adjacent to marking required by the
28 material specification. The Fabricator shall submit to the Architect evidence of
29 compliance by the mill with this requirement.
- 30 D. Cold-formed hollow structural sections (HSS):
- 31 1. Round sections: ASTM A500, Grade C, $F_y=46$ ksi.
32 2. Square and Rectangular sections: ASTM A500, Grade C, $F_y=50$ ksi.
- 33 E. Steel pipe: ASTM A53, Type E or S, Grade B, $F_y=35$ ksi.



1 **2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS**

- 2 A. Unfinished threaded fasteners: ASTM A307, Grade A, regular low-carbon steel bolts and nuts.
- 3 1. Provide square head and nuts.
- 4 B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125, Grade A325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel
5 structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade C, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1,
6 hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
- 7 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F959, Type 325-1, compressible-washer type with plain
8 finish.
- 9 C. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125, Grade A490, Type 1, heavy-hex steel
10 structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436,
11 Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers with plain finish.
- 12 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490-1, compressible-washer type with
13 plain finish.
- 14 D. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F3125, Grade F1852,
15 Type 1, heavy-hex or round head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined
16 ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
- 17 1. Finish: Plain.
- 18 E. Shear Connectors: ASTM A108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished
19 carbon steel; AWS D1.1, Type B with dimensions complying with AISC specifications.
- 20 F. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, with supplementary requirement S1, straight.
- 21 1. Nuts: ASTM A563 heavy-hex carbon steel.
22 2. Plate Washers: ASTM A36 carbon steel.
23 3. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
24 4. Finish: Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50.
- 25 G. Clevises and Turnbuckles: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A108,
26 Grade 1035.

27 **2.3 PRIMER**

- 28 A. Structural steel primer paint: SSPC – Paint 11 lead and chromate free, V.O.C. compliant,
29 minimum solids 55% by volume. Use for steel not receiving special coatings or fireproofing.
30 Refer to Architectural Drawings and Section 099113 “Exterior Painting,” Section 099123
31 “Interior Painting,” and Section 099600 “High Performance Coatings.”
- 32 1. Provide shop primer and shop applied top coat paint in accordance with Section 099113
33 “Exterior Painting,” Section 099123 “Interior Painting,” or Section 099600 “High
34 Performance Coatings” where shown on the Architectural Drawings.
35 2. Steel permanently exposed to the elements that does not receive a coating, such as
36 cooling tower supports, shall be hot dip galvanized.



1 **2.4 SHRINKAGE-RESISTANT GROUT**

- 2 A. Non-metallic shrinkage-resistant grout: Provide in accordance with Section 033000 "Cast-in-
3 Place Concrete."

4 **2.5 MISCELLANEOUS**

- 5 A. Electrodes for welding: Comply with AWS D1.1-requirements.
- 6 1. For complete-joint penetration groove welds, weld metal shall have a charpy V-notch
7 impact strength of 20 ft./lbs. -20°F.

8 **2.6 FABRICATION**

- 9 A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate
10 according to AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," and to
11 AISC 360.
- 12 1. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A6 and maintain markings until
13 structural steel has been erected.
- 14 2. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly. Fabricate for delivery sequence that
15 will expedite erection and minimize field handling of materials
- 16 3. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-
17 priming operations.
- 18 4. Where finishing is required, complete the assembly, including welding before start of
19 finishing operations. Provide finish surfaces of members exposed in final structure free of
20 markings, burrs, and other defects.
- 21 B. Camber: Camber structural-steel members as indicated on drawings.
- 22 1. Where possible, camber of beams shall be applied by a cold bend process. The local
23 application of heat may be used to introduce or correct camber, curvature, or
24 straightness, provided the temperature of the heated area, as measured by temperature
25 crayons or other approved means, does not exceed 1200 F.
- 26 2. Where indicated on the Drawings in a camber diagram, cantilever or double cantilever
27 beams shall be cambered for the main span and cantilever end separately, either by a
28 staged cold bending process or by the application of heat.
- 29 3. Camber indicated on the drawings are intended to be final cambers at time of erection.
30 The fabricator shall account for camber loss in the initial camber operations and during
31 transportation of material to the site.
- 32 4. Beams and trusses detailed without specified camber shall be fabricated so that after
33 erection any natural camber due to rolling or shop fabrication is upward.
- 34 5. Specified camber for beams at time of erection shall be within a tolerance of minus zero
35 to plus one-eighth inch for each ten feet of member length.
- 36 6. Specified camber for trusses shall be built into the fabrication process with a tolerance of
37 minus zero to plus 10% of the specified camber.
- 38 C. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel: Comply with fabrication requirements, including
39 tolerance limits, of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for
40 structural steel identified as architecturally exposed structural steel.



- 1 1. Fabricate with exposed surfaces smooth, square, and free of surface blemishes including
2 pitting, rust, scale, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, and roughness.
3 2. Remove blemishes by filling or grinding or by welding and grinding, before cleaning,
4 treating, and shop priming.
- 5 D. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
- 6 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1.
- 7 E. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to
8 pass through steel members.
- 9 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to metal surfaces. Do not flame cut holes, or
10 enlarge holes by burning.
- 11 2. Baseplate Holes: Drill holes perpendicular to steel surfaces
- 12 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.
- 13 F. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- 14 **2.7 CONNECTIONS**
- 15 A. Splices in Structural Steel: Splicing of structural steel members in the shop or the field is
16 prohibited without prior approval of the Architect. Any member having a splice not shown and
17 detailed on approved shop drawings will be rejected.
- 18 B. Compression Joints: Compression joints which depend on contact bearing as part of the splice
19 capacity shall have the bearing surfaces of individual fabricated pieces prepared to a common
20 plane by milling, sawing, or other suitable means.
- 21 C. Bearing and Fit-Up of Column Compression Joints: Compression joints of all columns shall
22 have bearing surfaces finished to a common plane by milling, sawing, or other suitable means.
23 Lack of contact bearing must not exceed 1/16", or corrective measures as defined by AISC
24 Section M4.4 shall be required.
- 25 D. Connections:
- 26 1. Weld shop connections, as indicated. Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure
27 specifications, tolerances, appearance and quality of welds and for methods used in
28 correcting welding work.
- 29 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
- 30 3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes
31 without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings
32 and Bridges" for mill material.
- 33 4. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally
34 exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances.
- 35 a. Grind butt welds flush.
- 36 b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.
- 37 5. At welded beam-column flange joints, weld backing and run-off tabs shall be removed
38 and repaired, including a 5/16" reinforcing fillet weld on the edge below the complete-
39 joint-penetration groove weld. The exception that the top-flange backing is permitted to



- 1 remain if it is attached to the column flange with a continuous fillet weld on the edge
 2 below the complete-joint-penetration groove weld.
- 3 6. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specifications for
 4 Structural Joints using High Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
- 5 7. Bolt field connections, except where welded connections are indicated.
- 6 8. Provide high-strength, threaded fasteners except for temporary bracing to facilitate
 7 erection or otherwise indicated.
- 8 9. Faying surfaces, including coatings, for slip-critical connections shall have a minimum
 9 Class A slip coefficient.
- 10 E. Turn-of-nut method of bolt tightening is not acceptable.
- 11 F. Compression members composed of two or more rolled shapes separated from one another by
 12 intermittent fillers shall be connected to one another at such fillers spaced at intervals so that
 13 the least slenderness ratio, l/r , of either shape, between the fasteners, does not exceed the
 14 governing slenderness ratio of the built-up member.
- 15 G. Struts and Braces: Connect struts and braces to resist 50% of the allowable tensile strength of
 16 the members, unless otherwise specified.
- 17 H. Field Welded Construction: Comply with AWS D1.1 for procedures, appearance and quality of
 18 welds, and method used in correcting welding work.
- 19 I. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear
 20 connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to
 21 AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- 22 J. Holes for other work: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel framing,
 23 and for passage of other work through steel framing members, as shown on final shop
 24 drawings.
- 25 K. Provide weep hole in any confined steel surface capable of retaining water during erection or
 26 service. Seal weld as required to prevent migration of water into confined region.

27 **2.8 SHOP PRIMING**

- 28 A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
- 29 1. Members or portions of members to be embedded in concrete or mortar. Prime
 30 embedded steel that is partially exposed on exposed portions and initial 2" of embedded
 31 areas only.
- 32 2. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
- 33 3. Members that are to be hot dip galvanized.
- 34 4. Surfaces within 2" of welds.
- 35 5. The faying surfaces of slip-critical bolted connections. The exception is for members that
 36 receive a coating system. There the faying surfaces should receive a primer providing a
 37 Class A surface, with a slip coefficient of 0.33. Submit substantiating data in conformance
 38 with Appendix A of the AISC "Specification for Structural Joints".
- 39 6. Mask off and do not prime a strip 2" wide on any surfaces to receive a row of headed
 40 studs or puddle welds.



- 1 B. Surface Preparation: After inspection and before shipping, clean steel work to be painted.
 2 Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according
 3 to the following specifications and standards:
- 4 1. SSPC-SP 6, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" for steel to be painted or receive a coating
 5 2. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" for all other
 6 conditions.
- 7 C. Priming: Unless specified otherwise in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" or Section 099123
 8 "Interior Painting," immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to
 9 manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum
 10 dry film thickness of 2.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners,
 11 edges, and exposed surfaces. Refer to Section 099600 "High Performance Coatings" for
 12 priming and painting members to receive special coatings.
- 13 D. Steel members which cannot be readily painted after fabrication, such as back-to-back angles
 14 and tees, shall be primed and finish coated, or receive two coats of primer, prior to fabrication.
- 15 E. Do not print or emboss the name of the fabricator on exposed steel unless it is completely
 16 concealed by the finish painting.

17 **2.9 GALVANIZING**

- 18 A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel
 19 members permanently exposed to the elements, such as cooling tower support steel, according
 20 to ASTM A123.
- 21 1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as
 22 weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
- 23 2. Galvanize cooling tower support steel, lintels, and shelf angles attached to structural-
 24 steel frame and located in exterior walls.

25 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

26 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 27 A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces
 28 and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, bearing pads, and other embedments for
 29 compliance with requirements.
- 30 1. Surveys: Employ a Florida Licensed Engineer or Land Surveyor for accurate erection of
 31 structural steel. Check elevations of concrete and masonry bearing surfaces and
 32 locations of anchor bolts and similar devices, before erection work proceeds, and report
 33 discrepancies to Architect. Do not proceed with erection until corrections have been
 34 made, or until compensating adjustments to structural steel work have been agreed upon
 35 with Architect.
- 36 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



1 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 2 A. Temporary shoring and bracing: Provide temporary shoring and bracing members and
3 connections of sufficient strength to bear imposed loads from steel self weight and erection
4 procedures or any other loads created by other contractors on a temporary basis. Remove
5 temporary members and connections when permanent members are in place and final
6 connections are made. Provide temporary guidelines to achieve proper alignment of structures
7 as erection proceeds.
- 8 1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-
9 place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.
- 10 B. Temporary planking: Provide temporary planking and working platforms as necessary to
11 effectively complete work.

12 **3.3 ERECTION**

- 13 A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to
14 AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- 15 B. Baseplates and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-
16 reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- 17 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
18 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
19 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed.
20 Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before
21 packing with grout.
22 4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and base plates so no voids
23 remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with
24 manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
25 5. Base plates must be grouted a minimum of 72 hours prior to placing concrete slabs on
26 supporting steel structure.
- 27 C. Anchor rods and bolts: Furnish anchor rods, bolts and other connectors required for securing
28 structural steel to foundations and other in-place work.
- 29 1. Furnish templates and other devices as necessary for pre-setting rods, bolts and other
30 anchors to accurate locations.
31 2. Refer to Section 3 of these specifications for anchor rod installation requirements in
32 concrete, and Section 4 for masonry installation.
- 33 D. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel and architecturally exposed structural steel within
34 AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- 35 E. Field assembly: Set structural members accurately to lines and elevations indicated. Align and
36 adjust various members forming a part of a complete frame or structure before permanently
37 fastening. Clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces which will be in permanent contact before
38 assembly. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and
39 alignment. Comply with AISC Code of Standard Practice except where more stringent
40 requirements are contained herein.



- 1 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure within specified AISC tolerances.
 2 2. Establish required leveling and plumbing measurements on mean operating temperature
 3 of structure. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and
 4 mean temperature at which structure will be when completed and in service.
- 5 F. Erection bolts: On exposed welded construction, remove erection bolts, fill holes with plug
 6 welds and grind smooth at exposed surfaces.
- 7 G. Comply with AISC Specification for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, alignment,
 8 and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
- 9 H. Splice members only where indicated and accepted on shop drawings.
- 10 I. Thermal cutting: Do not use gas-cutting torches in field for correcting fabrication errors in
 11 primary structural framing. When permitted, finish gas-cut sections equal to a sheared
 12 appearance by grinding or reaming. Do not use gas cutting to fabricate bolt holes.
- 13 J. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or by use of drift pins. Ream holes that must
 14 be enlarged to admit bolts as permitted by Architect.
- 15 K. Headed shear studs: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear
 16 connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to
 17 AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions. All welding ferrules for shear connectors
 18 shall be removed prior to placement of concrete.
- 19 L. Bearing Pads: Install bearing pads as structural steel members are being erected. Set pads on
 20 true, level, and uniform bearing surfaces and maintain in correct position until structural steel
 21 members are placed.
- 22 **3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS**
- 23 A. Store fastener components in sealed containers until ready for use. Reseal open containers to
 24 prevent contamination by moisture or other deleterious substances. Store closed containers
 25 from dirt and moisture in a protective shelter. Take from protective storage only as many
 26 fastener components as are anticipated to be installed during the work shift. Fastener
 27 components that are not incorporated into the work shall be returned to protective storage at the
 28 end of the work shift. Fasteners from open containers and fasteners that accumulate rust or dirt
 29 shall not be used and shall be immediately and permanently removed from the project site.
- 30 B. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural
 31 Joints Using High Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
- 32 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- 33 C. Tighten bearing-type bolts (GR A325N, GR A325X, GR A490N, and GR A490X) to the snug
 34 tight condition as follows:
- 35 1. Bolts shall be placed in all holes, with washers positioned as required and nuts threaded
 36 to complete the assembly.
- 37 2. Compacting the joint to the snug-tight condition shall progress systematically from the
 38 most rigid part of the joint.



- 1 3. The snug-tightened condition is the tightness that is attained with a few impacts of an
2 impact wrench or the full effort of an ironworker using an ordinary spud wrench.
3 4. More than one cycle through the bolt pattern may be required to achieve the snug-
4 tightened joint.
- 5 D. Tighten slip-critical bolts (GR A325SC, GR A325TC, GR A490SC, and GR A490TC) to the
6 minimum fastener tension indicated in Table 8.1 of the "Specification for Structural Joints using
7 High Strength Bolts" as follows:
- 8 1. Confirm with Architect on which face of the connection the round head of the TC bolt
9 shall be located for exposed connections.
10 2. Begin final tightening of slip-critical bolts only after a snug-tight joint as described above
11 is achieved. Progress systematically from the most rigid part of the joint.
12 3. If splined end of tension-control bolts is severed prior to achieving snug-tight joint,
13 remove and replace the fastener assembly.
14 4. Progress systematically from the most rigid part of the joint in a manner that will minimize
15 relaxation of previously pretensioned bolts.
16 5. Determine tension using either load indicator washers, tension-control bolts, or a
17 calibrated torque wrench.
- 18 At the Contractor's option, slip-critical bolts may be installed in either standard, oversize, or
19 short slotted holes. Design of connections using slip-critical bolts is based on a Class A faying
20 surface and oversized holes.
- 21 E. Provide hardened washers conforming to ASTM F436 and place under the part being turned.
- 22 F. Do not reuse or retighten bolts which have been fully tightened. Use only non-galvanized nuts
23 and bolts that are clean, rust-free, and well lubricated. Bolts and nuts shall be wax dipped by the
24 bolt supplier or lubricated with Castrol Industrial Stick Wax.
- 25 G. Cleaning and lubrication of ASTM F3125, GR F1852 and GR F2280 twist-off-type tension-
26 control bolt assemblies is not permitted.
- 27 H. Where slotted holes are used to accommodate thermal movement, notify the Architect if bolt is
28 expected to hit the end of slot, based on temperature at time of installation.
- 29 I. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure
30 specifications, weld quality, and for used in correcting welding work.
- 31 1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary
32 connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
33 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
34 3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes
35 without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings
36 and Bridges," for mill material.
37 4. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally
38 exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances. Prevent weld show-
39 through on exposed steel surfaces.
- 40 a. Grind butt welds flush.
41 b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.



- 1 J. Protect bearing pads from damage by field welding or cutting operations and provide
2 noncombustible shields as required.

3 3.5 QUALITY CONTROL

4 A. Shop Quality Control:

- 5 1. The Fabricator shall provide a system of quality control, including shop welding
6 inspections and testing, to ensure that the minimum standards specified herein are
7 attained. Submit to Owner, Architect, Engineer and Owner's Testing and Inspection
8 Agency complete details of the quality control program to be used and all testing and
9 inspection reports. Visually inspect 100% of shop welds. Also, as a minimum, perform
10 non-destructive tests of welds in conformance with AWS D1.1 as follows:

- 11 a. Splices: 100%.
12 b. Full penetration welds: 100%.
13 c. Partial penetration welds: 50%.
14 d. Fillet welds: 5%.

- 15 2. The fabricator may use the following examination methods, in descending order of
16 importance. When a particular examination method for a joint is unfeasible, the highest
17 order method that is practicable shall be used. Standard of acceptance shall be in
18 accordance with AWS D1.1.

- 19 a. Ultrasonic Method: In accordance with AWS D1.1.
20 b. Radiographic Method: In accordance with ASTM E94 and ASTM E142, with a
21 minimum quality level of "2-2T". This procedure is limited to the inspection of
22 groove welds in butt joints only and is not to be used for fillet welds.
23 c. Magnetic Particle Method: In accordance with ASTM E709. Use for examining
24 partial penetration welds. Percentage of examinations is defined elsewhere in
25 these specifications. The Yoke method may be used only for supplementary
26 surface examination.
27 d. Dye Penetrant Examination Method: In accordance with ASTM E165.

- 28 3. The Fabricator shall ultrasonically inspect for laminations all joints where material is
29 subjected to tension in the through thickness direction. Ultrasonic inspection shall extend
30 for a distance of six times the material thickness subject to the through thickness tension,
31 either side of the element delivering the tension.

- 32 B. Shop testing and inspection by the Owner is to evaluate the effectiveness of the Fabricator's
33 required Quality Control and Assurance Program.

- 34 C. Owner will engage a Structural Inspector to perform field inspections pursuant to the Structural
35 Inspection Plan presented on the Drawings.

- 36 D. Testing agency shall conduct and interpret tests and state in each report whether test
37 specimens comply with requirements, and specifically state any deviations therefrom.

- 38 E. Provide access for testing agency to places where structural steel work is being fabricated or
39 produced and unobstructed views to all members in nearby storage so that required inspection
40 and testing can be accomplished.



- 1 F. Testing agency may inspect structural steel at plant before shipment; however, Architect
 2 reserves the right, at any time before final acceptance, to reject material not complying with
 3 specified requirement.
- 4 G. Correct deficiencies in structural steel work which inspections or laboratory test reports have
 5 indicated to be not in compliance with requirements. Perform additional tests, at Contractor's
 6 expense, as may be necessary to reconfirm any noncompliance of original work, and as may be
 7 necessary to show compliance of corrected work.
- 8 H. Shop Inspection and Tests: Testing Agency may inspect and test during fabrication of structural
 9 steel assemblies, as follows:
- 10 1. Review shop drawings and shop procedures with Fabricator's supervisory personnel.
 11 2. Request and obtain necessary mill certifications of steel and verify proper material
 12 throughout the duration of the job.
 13 3. Verify welding procedure qualifications, either by prequalifications or by witnessing
 14 qualification tests.
 15 4. Verify welder qualifications, either by certification and/or by retesting. Obtain welder
 16 certificates.
 17 5. Spot check layout and dimensions of jigs and fixtures for joint preparation, and fit up of
 18 members.
 19 6. Verify welding electrodes to be used and other welding consumables as the job
 20 progresses.
 21 7. Check preheating procedures for conformance to AWS D1.1.
 22 8. Verify procedures for welding in accordance with applicable portions of section 4,
 23 "Technique", AWS D1.1.
 24 9. Verify that quality of welds meet the requirements of Paragraph B.15, "Quality of Welds",
 25 AWS D1.1.
 26 10. Provide inspection of surface preparation for coating and coating operations in
 27 accordance with SSPC VIS 1 and 2.
 28 11. Perform visual inspection of all welds for compliance with Contract Documents. Provide
 29 random non-destructive tests of welds in conformance with Section 6 of AWS D1.1, as
 30 may be required by Architect, but not less than:
- 31 a. Full penetration welds: 25%.
 32 b. Partial penetration welds: 15%.
 33 c. Fillet Welds: 5%.
- 34 12. Testing laboratory may use the following examination methods, in descending order of
 35 importance. When a particular examination method for a joint is unfeasible, the highest
 36 order method that is practicable shall be used. Standard of acceptance shall be in
 37 accordance with AWS D1.1.
- 38 a. Ultrasonic Method: In accordance with AWS D1.1.
 39 b. Radiographic Method: In accordance with ASTM E94 and ASTM E142, with a
 40 minimum quality level of "2-2T". This procedure is limited to the inspection of
 41 groove welds in butt joints only and is not to be used for fillet welds.
 42 c. Magnetic Particle Method: In accordance with ASTM E709. Use for examining
 43 partial penetration welds. Percentage of examinations is defined elsewhere in
 44 these specifications. The Yoke method may be used only for supplementary
 45 surface examination.
 46 d. Dye Penetrant Examination Method: In accordance with ASTM E165.



- 1 13. Ultrasonically inspect for laminations after welding all joints with rolled shapes and plates
2 greater than 1 1/2" thick, where material is subjected to tension in the through thickness
3 direction. The ultrasonic inspection shall extend for a distance of six times the thickness
4 of the plate receiving the through thickness tension, either side of the plate delivering the
5 tension.
6 14. Interpret, record, and report all results of the non-destructive tests.
7 15. Mark for repair, any area not meeting Specification requirements. Correction of rejected
8 welds shall be made in accordance with Paragraph 5.26, "Repairs", AWS D1.1
9 16. Re-examine all repair areas and interpret, record, and report the results of examinations
10 of repair welds.
- 11 I. Field Inspection and Tests: Inspect and Test during the erection of structural steel assemblies
12 as directed by the Engineer of Record, but not less than the following:
- 13 1. Verify field welding procedures and obtain welder certificates.
14 2. Check joint preparation and fit up, backing strips, and runout plates.
15 3. Check preheating to assure proper temperature, uniformity, and thoroughness through
16 the full material thickness.
17 4. Review welding sequence.
18 5. Inspector shall perform visual inspection of all welds for compliance with Contract
19 Documents. Testing Agency shall perform non-destructive tests of welds in conformance
20 with Section 6 of AWS D1.1 as may be required by Architect, but not less than:
- 21 a. Splices: 100%.
22 b. Full Penetration Welds: 100%.
23 c. Partial Penetration Welds: 50%.
24 d. Fillet Welds: All welds that do not pass the visual inspection.
- 25 6. Check 100% of bolted connections according to inspection procedures outlined in the
26 "Specification for Structural Joints using High Strength Bolts" and as required elsewhere
27 in these specifications.
28 7. Production Stud Application Testing: Test the first two studs per welder per day for each
29 set-up and size and type of stud. Test by bending studs 30 degrees using a 4 lb. hammer
30 per AWS D1.1 Section 7.7. Use a 4 lb. hammer to sound 100% of studs. A pinging sound
31 usually represents a sound weld. Studs that produce a "thud" should be bend tested.
32 Passing studs may remain bent while failing studs must be replaced.
33 8. Interpret, record, and report all results of the non-destructive tests.
34 9. Mark for repair any area not meeting Specification requirements. Correction of rejected
35 welds shall be made in accordance with Paragraph 5.26, "Repairs", AWS D1.1.
36 10. Re-examine all repair areas and interpret, record, and report the results of examinations
37 of repair welds.
- 38 J. Pre-installation testing of as-received fastener assemblies shall be performed according to the
39 Specifications for Structural Joints using High Strength Bolts, Section 7 and as follows:
- 40 1. Tension Calibrator (a hydraulic device that indicates the pretension that is developed in a
41 bolt that is installed in it) shall be provided by the testing agency, at the Project Site, to
42 confirm the tension force in the fastener assembly.
43 2. A sample of not fewer than three complete fastener assemblies from each shipping
44 container shall be checked at the site.
45 3. Fastener assemblies tested shall develop a pretension force not less than 1.05 times that
46 required by Table 8.1 in AISC. Minimum passing test force: A325: 3/4"=29.4 kips, A490:
47 1"=67.2 kips.



1 **3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION**

2 A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair
3 galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780.

4 1. Apply Zinc-Clad Cold Galvanizing by Sherwin-Williams or Cold Galvanizing Compound
5 by ZRC Worldwide by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 3 mils.

6 B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean slag from field welds, clean bolted
7 connections, and abraded areas of shop paint. Apply paint with the same material as used for
8 shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

9 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool
10 cleaning.

11 C. Touchup Priming: For steel having special coatings system, reapply both primer and top coat
12 as specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

13 **END OF SECTION 05 12 00**



1 **SECTION 05 21 00 - STEEL JOIST FRAMING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. This Section includes the following:

- 8 1. K-series steel joists.
9 2. KCS-type, K-series steel joists.
10 3. K-series steel joist substitutes
11 4. LH-series long-span steel joists.
12 5. DLH-series deep long-span steel joists.
13 6. Steel joist accessories.

- 14 B. Related Sections include the following:

- 15 1. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing bearing plates in concrete.
16 2. Section 04 20 00 "Unit Masonry" for installing bearing plates in unit masonry.
17 3. Section 05 12 00 "Structural Steel" for Steel Joist support framing.
18 4. Section 05 31 00 "Steel Deck" for fastening requirements to Steel Joists.
19 5. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel framing used with Steel
20 Joists.
21 6. Section 07 81 00 "Applied Fireproofing".

22 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 23 A. SJI's "Specifications": Steel Joist Institute's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables and Weight
24 Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders."

25 B. Special Joists: Steel joists or joist girders requiring modification by the manufacturer to support
26 wind net uplift pressures, concentrated loads, non-uniform loads, unequal loads or other special
27 loading conditions that invalidate SJI's "Standard Specifications Load Tables and Weight Tables
28 for Steel Joists and Joist Girders." ALL JOISTS ON THE PROJECT ARE SPECIAL JOISTS
29 DUE TO WIND UPLIFT.

30 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 31 A. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product.

32 B. Shop Drawings:



- 1 1. Show layout, mark, number, type, location, and spacing of joists. Include joist length,
- 2 camber, joining and anchorage details, bracing, bridging, accessories; splice and
- 3 connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.
- 4 2. Indicate locations and details of anchorage devices and bearing plates to be embedded
- 5 in other construction.
- 6 3. Indicate loads on all special joists, including loading diagrams and wind net uplift
- 7 pressures.
- 8 4. Comprehensive engineering analysis of special joists signed and sealed by the qualified
- 9 professional engineer responsible for its preparation.
- 10 5. Do not fabricate or erect joists prior to the approval of shop drawings.

11 **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 12 A. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to
- 13 demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project
- 14 names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information
- 15 specified.
- 16 B. Welding certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.
- 17 C. Manufacturer certificates.
- 18 D. Mill certificates signed by manufacturers of bolts certifying that their products comply with
- 19 specified requirements.
- 20 E. Design Letter: The Fabricator is responsible for designing and detailing all joists and seats,
- 21 particularly special joists, in accordance with the Contract Documents and SJI requirements.
- 22 This work shall be done by a Florida Licensed Engineer experienced in similar work and
- 23 retained by the Fabricator. Prior to the first submittal, this Engineer shall submit a signed and
- 24 sealed letter stating that the Engineer accepts responsibility for design and detailing of all joists
- 25 on the Project. The drawings do not require signature and seal.
- 26 F. Field quality-control reports.

27 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 28 A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying
- 29 with applicable standard specifications and load tables in SJI's "Specifications."
- 30 1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services for
- 31 designing special joists to comply with performance requirements.
- 32 B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural
- 33 Welding Code--Steel"; and SJI Technical Digest #8, "Welding of Open Web Steel Joists and
- 34 Joist Girders".
- 35 C. Inspection: Members shall be inspected by the manufacturer before shipment to insure
- 36 compliance of materials and workmanship with the requirements of these specifications.

37 **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**



- 1 A. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications."
 2 B. Protect joists from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and
 3 handling.

4 **1.8 SEQUENCING**

- 5 A. Deliver steel bearing plates and other devices to be built into cast-in-place concrete and
 6 masonry construction.

7 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

8 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- 9 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 10 following:
- 11 1. Canam Steel Corporation; Canam Group, Inc.
 - 12 2. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
 - 13 3. Valley Joist.
 - 14 4. Vulcraft; Nucor Corporation, Vercor Group.

15 **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 16 A. Structural Performance: Provide joists, special joists and connections capable of withstanding
 17 design loads within limits and under conditions indicated on drawings, including joists subject to
 18 wind net uplift.
- 19 1. Chord and web tension and compression forces are reversed in joists subject to wind net
 20 uplift. Modify joist elements if required by analysis, possibly including increasing bottom
 21 chord, reducing bridging spacing, and/or increasing the size or quantity of web elements.
 22 Refer to SJI Technical Digest No. 6, "Structural Design of Steel Roof Joists to Resist
 23 Uplift Loads."
 - 24 2. Carefully investigate the design of seats of joists subject to wind net uplift. Standard joist
 25 seats are often inadequate to resist wind uplift forces.
- 26 B. Design joists to withstand design loads, with live and wind load deflections each no greater than
 27 the following:
- 28 1. Roof Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span.

29 **2.3 MATERIALS**

- 30 A. Steel: Comply with SJI's "Specifications" for chord and web members.
 31 B. Steel Bearing Plates: ASTM A 36.



1 **2.4 OPEN-WEB STEEL JOISTS**

2 A. Manufacture steel joists of type indicated according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web
3 Steel Joists, K-Series," in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top and bottom-chord
4 members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord.

- 5 1. Joist Type: K-series steel joists.
6 2. Steel Joist Substitutes: Manufacture according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web
7 Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications." With steel-angle or channel members.

8 B. Manufacture long span steel joists according to "Standard Specifications for Longspan Steel
9 Joists, LH-Series and Deep Longspan Steel Joists, DLH-Series," in SJI's "Specifications," with
10 steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members; of joist type and end and top-chord arrangements
11 as indicated.

- 12 1. Joist Type: LH-series steel joists.
13 2. End Arrangement: Underslung.
14 3. Top-Chord Arrangement: Parallel.

15 C. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.

16 D. Top-Chord Extensions: Extend top chords of joists with SJI's Type S top-chord extensions
17 where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."

18 E. Extended Ends: Extend bearing ends of joists with SJI's Type R extended ends where
19 indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."

20 F. Header Units: Any situation requiring heading of joists not shown on the structural drawings
21 shall be referred to engineer for framing.

22 G. Splices in Chord Members: All splices shall be designed and provided in accordance with SJI
23 Specifications. The splices in each of the two angles or bars of all members shall not be at the
24 same location, but shall be staggered a minimum of 6 inches.

25 H. Camber members according to SJI's "Specifications" unless otherwise indicated.

26 I. Joist Bearing: Provide minimum end bearing of joists and joist girders as required by SJI's
27 "Specifications" but subject to requirements below, unless detailed otherwise on the drawings:

- 28 1. If two joists do not abut each other at a support, provide required joist bearing centered
29 on the supporting member.
30 2. If two joists abut each other at a support and sufficient minimum bearing for each joist
31 exists, provide 1/4" space between joist ends centered over the support.
32 3. If two joists abut each other at a support and sufficient minimum bearing for each joist
33 does not exist at the support, offset the ends of each joists and center joist bearing on the
34 center of the support.

35 J. Equip bearing ends of members with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if
36 member slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches.

37 **2.5 PRIMERS**



- 1 A. Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, or manufacturer's standard shop primer complying with performance
2 requirements in SSPC-Paint 15. Primer must be compatible with fireproofing, where applicable.

3 2.6 STEEL JOIST ACCESSORIES

- 4 A. Bridging: Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal or diagonal bridging of
5 material, size, and type as indicated or, where not indicated, as required by SJI's
6 "Specifications" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span. Furnish additional erection
7 bridging if required. Where applicable, provide bridging to meet the requirements of OSHA.
- 8 B. Furnish ceiling extensions, either extended bottom-chord elements or a separate extension unit
9 of enough strength to support ceiling construction. Extend ends to within 1/2 inch of finished
10 wall surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- 11 C. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Threaded Fasteners: ASTM A307, Grade A, carbon-steel, hex-head
12 bolts and threaded fasteners; carbon-steel nuts; and flat, unhardened steel washers.
- 13 1. Finish: Plain, uncoated.
- 14 D. High-Strength Bolts and Nuts: ASTM F3125 Grade A325, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural
15 bolts; ASTM A563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436 hardened carbon-steel
16 washers.
- 17 1. Finish: Plain, uncoated.
- 18 E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
- 19 F. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A780.
- 20 G. Furnish miscellaneous accessories, including splice plates and bolts required by joist
21 manufacturer to complete joist installation.

22 2.7 CLEANING AND SHOP PAINTING

- 23 A. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists
24 and accessories to be primed by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2 or power-tool cleaning, SSPC-
25 SP 3.
- 26 B. Do not prime paint joists and accessories to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- 27 C. Apply one shop coat of primer to joists and joist accessories to be primed to provide a
28 continuous, dry paint film not less than 1 mil thick.

29 PART 3 - EXECUTION

30 3.1 EXAMINATION



- 1 A. Examine supporting substrates, embedded bearing plates, and abutting structural framing, with
 2 Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other
 3 conditions affecting performance.
- 4 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

5 3.2 INSTALLATION

- 6 A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.
- 7 B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting
 8 construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written recommendations,
 9 and requirements in this Section.
- 10 1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
 11 2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
 12 3. Secure joists resting on masonry or concrete bearing surfaces by bedding in mortar and
 13 anchoring to masonry or concrete construction as specified in SJI "Specifications" for
 14 type of steel joist used or as shown on drawings.
 15 4. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that
 16 joists are stabilized during construction.
 17 5. Delay rigidly connecting bottom-chord extensions to columns or supports until dead loads
 18 have been applied.
- 19 C. Erection Stability and Handling: When it is necessary for the erector to climb on the joists,
 20 extreme caution must be exercised since unbridged joists may exhibit some degree of instability
 21 under the erector's weight. The contractor shall provide means for adequate distribution of
 22 concentrated loads so that the carrying capacity of any joist is not exceeded. Erection must
 23 comply with OSHA requirements and SJI Technical Digest #9, "Handling and Erection of Steel
 24 Joists and Joist Girders". Construction safety is the sole responsibility of the Contractor.
- 25 D. Field weld joists to supporting steel bearing plates and framework where indicated. Coordinate
 26 welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and
 27 procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting
 28 welding work.
- 29 E. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using carbon-steel or high-strength bolts as indicated
 30 on the Drawings. High-strength bolts shall comply with Research Council on Structural
 31 Connection's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High Strength Bolts" for high-strength
 32 structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.
- 33 F. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before decking is erected or
 34 construction loads are applied, to ensure lateral stability during construction. Anchor ends of
 35 bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.
 36
 37 1. After erection, remove temporary bridging as required for architectural, structural and
 38 mechanical clearance.

39 3.3 ATTACHMENTS TO JOISTS



- 1 A. The Contractor shall ensure that no cuts or holes are made in the members of the erected joists
 2 for attachment of ceiling, ducts, pipes, or any other items not specifically shown in the contract
 3 drawings. Use of powder driven fasteners in joist diagonal and bottom chord members is
 4 prohibited.
- 5 B. The Contractor shall not hang any elements from joists except ceiling, ducts, pipes or other
 6 items specifically shown on the Contract Documents. Heavy pipes, ducts, or other equipment
 7 hung from steel joists may require additional joist reinforcement and shall be referred to the
 8 Architect for framing.
- 9 C. Ceiling weighing 3 psf or less may have the grid hung anywhere along the joist bottom chord.
 10 Ceilings weighing more than 3 psf and all pipes, ducts and other mechanical, electrical, and
 11 plumbing equipment suspended from the joists shall have the hanger attached at a joist panel
 12 point only, except as approved otherwise in writing by the Architect.

13 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- 14 A. Contractor will engage a qualified independent inspecting agency, acceptable to Owner, to
 15 inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections, and prepare test and inspection
 16 reports.
- 17 B. Visually inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1.
- 18 C. Visually inspect bolted connections
- 19 1. High-strength, field-bolted connections will be tested and verified according to procedures
 20 in Research Council on Structural Connection's "Specification for Structural Joints Using
 21 ASTM A325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts."
- 22 D. Correct deficiencies in Work that inspections have indicated are not in compliance with specified
 23 requirements.
- 24 E. Perform additional testing to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified
 25 requirements.

26 3.5 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- 27 A. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field
 28 connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, bearing plates, abutting
 29 structural steel and accessories.
- 30 1. Clean with solvent and prepare surfaces by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2, or power-
 31 tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.
- 32 2. Apply a compatible primer of the same type as the shop primer used on adjacent
 33 surfaces.
- 34 B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior
 35 Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."



- 1 C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and
- 2 Installer, that ensure joists and accessories are without damage or deterioration at time of
- 3 Substantial Completion.

4 **END OF SECTION 05 21 00**



1 **SECTION 05 31 00 - STEEL DECK**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. This Section includes the following:

- 8 1. Roof deck.
9 2. Composite floor deck.

- 10 B. Related Sections include the following:

- 11 1. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete fill over steel deck
12 2. Section 05 12 00 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop and field welded shear connectors.
13 3. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel
14 shapes.

15 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 16 A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated, or requested by the
17 Architect.

- 18 B. Shop Drawings: Show layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing
19 channels, pans, deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other
20 construction.

21 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 22 A. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel. Submit to
23 general contractor and Special Inspector.

- 24 B. Product Certificates: Signed by steel deck manufacturers certifying that products furnished
25 comply with requirements.

- 26 C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluations of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified
27 testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:

- 28 1. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.

- 29 D. Research Reports: For steel deck, from ICC-ES.



- 1 E. Field quality-control test and inspection reports. Welding inspections are to be performed by a
2 testing agency acceptable to the Owner and Architect.

3 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- 4 A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having
5 jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E329 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented
6 according to ASTM E548.
- 7 B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural
8 Welding Code - Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
- 9 C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Member of the Steel Deck Institute.
- 10 D. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed steel deck installations
11 similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has
12 resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- 13 E. Fabrication and Erection: Fabricate and erect deck per the Steel Deck Institute's "Design
14 Manual for Composite Decks, Form Decks and Roof Decks".
- 15 1. Steel deck units shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and
16 inspecting agency.
- 17 F. Codes and Standards: Comply with Florida Building Code, 8th Edition.

18 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- 19 A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and
20 handling.
- 21 B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof
22 covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

23 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

24 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- 25 A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to
26 AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
- 27 B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency.
28 Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- 29 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of
30 another qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.



1 **2.2 MANUFACTURERS**

2 A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering
3 products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 4 1. Steel Deck:
- 5 a. Canam Steel Corporation: Canam Group Inc.
- 6 b. Coredeck
- 7 c. DACS, Inc.
- 8 d. Epic Metals Corporation.
- 9 e. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
- 10 f. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC
- 11 g. Nucor Corporation.
- 12 h. Nucor Corporation, Verco Group
- 13 i. Roof Deck, Inc.

14 **2.3 ROOF DECK**

15 A. Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI
16 Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and the
17 following:

- 18 1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 40, G90 zinc coating.
- 19 2. Deck Profile; Depth and Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
- 20 3. Span Condition: Triple span typical, double span minimum, U.O.N. on Drawings.
- 21 4. Side Laps: Overlapped.

22 **2.4 COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK**

23 A. Composite Steel Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs
24 and interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite
25 Steel Floor Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, the minimum section properties indicated, and the
26 following:

- 27 1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 40, G60 zinc coating.
- 28 2. Shear Lugs (Web Embossments): 0.050 inch high (min.).
- 29 3. Profile Depth and Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
- 30 4. Span Condition: Triple span typical, double span minimum, U.O.N. on Drawings.

31 **2.5 ACCESSORIES**

32 A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with
33 requirements indicated.

34 B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically
35 driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.

36 C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel
37 screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.



- 1 D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- 2 E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000
3 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck;
4 of profile indicated or required for application.
- 5 F. Steel Sheet Accessories: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck, unless
6 otherwise indicated.
- 7 G. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, of same
8 material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI Publication
9 No. 31 for overhang and slab depth unless otherwise indicated.
- 10 H. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates:
- 11 1. Epicore Metals Corporation: Sheet steel of same material and finish, 10 gauge or less,
12 unless otherwise indicated.
- 13 2. All others: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck, unless otherwise
14 indicated.
- 15 I. Provide recessed or flat sump pan in accordance with roof drain requirements. Single-piece
16 steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck. Recessed sump pans shall
17 have with 3-inch wide flanges and be leveled recessed pans of 1-1/2-inch minimum depth. For
18 drains, cut holes in the field.
- 19 J. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or MIL-P-21035B, with dry film containing a minimum
20 of 94 percent zinc dust by weight. Manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into
21 the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 22 1. Galvacon Cold Galvanizing Compound: Lanco Inc.
23 2. ZRC Cold Galvanizing Compound: ZRC Worldwide, Inc.

24 PART 3 - EXECUTION

25 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 26 A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation
27 tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- 28 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

29 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- 30 A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in
31 SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- 32 B. Deck has been designed to span unshored, U.O.N. on Drawings.
- 33 C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.



- 1 D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned
2 and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract
3 side-lap interlocks.
- 4 E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- 5 F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting
6 through or adjacent to decking.
- 7 G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength,
8 continuity of decking, and support of other work.
- 9 H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding,
10 appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- 11 I. Mechanical fasteners may not be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck unless specifically
12 allowed by the local product approval for the roofing system and approved by the Engineer of
13 Record. Provide mechanical fasteners according to deck manufacturer's written instructions and
14 per the Structural Notes on the Drawings.

15 3.3 ROOF DECK INSTALLATION

- 16 A. Fasten roof deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface
17 diameter indicated as follows:
- 18 1. Weld Diameter: As indicated on the Drawings.
19 2. Weld Spacing: Weld deck units as indicated on the Drawings.
20 3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
- 21 B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels
22 between supports, as indicated on the Drawings.
- 23 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
- 24 C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2
25 inches, with end joints as follows:
- 26 1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches minimum.
- 27 D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof decking and weld
28 flanges to top of deck. Space welds not more than 12 inches apart with at least 1 weld at each
29 corner.
- 30 1. Install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and mechanically
31 fasten.
- 32 E. Miscellaneous Roof Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, cover plates,
33 end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.
34 Weld to substrate to provide a complete deck installation. Weld cover plates at changes in
35 direction of roof-deck panels, unless otherwise indicated.



- 1 F. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated
 2 at non-fire-resistance-rated partitions. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written
 3 instructions to ensure complete closure.

4 **3.4 FLOOR DECK INSTALLATION**

- 5 A. Fasten floor deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface
 6 diameter indicated and as follows:

- 7 1. Weld Diameter: As indicated on the Drawings.
 8 2. Weld Spacing: Space and locate welds as indicated on the drawings.

- 9 B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels
 10 between supports, as indicated on the Drawings.

- 11 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.

- 12 C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2
 13 inches, with end joints as follows:

- 14 1. End Joints: Butted at composite floor deck and lapped or butted at noncomposite form
 15 deck.

- 16 D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting
 17 structure according to SDI recommendations, unless otherwise indicated.

- 18 E. Floor Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck,
 19 according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and
 20 sides of decking. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of floor deck panels, unless
 21 otherwise indicated.

22 **3.5 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION**

- 23 A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of
 24 deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A780 and manufacturer's written
 25 instructions.

- 26 B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or
 27 deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

28 **3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 29 A. Testing: Contractor will engage a qualified independent testing agency acceptable to the
 30 Owner to perform field quality-control testing.

- 31 B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.

- 32 C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

- 33 D. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.



1 E. Additional testing and/or inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine
2 compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

3 **END OF SECTION 05 31 00**



1 **SECTION 05 40 00 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
9 2. Soffit framing.

- 10 B. Related Requirements:

- 11 1. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-In-Place Concrete."
12 2. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications".
13 3. Section 09 21 16.23 "Gypsum Board Shaft Wall Assemblies" for interior non-load-
14 bearing, metal-stud-framed, shaft-wall assemblies.
15 4. Section 09 22 16 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud
16 framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.

17 **1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- 18 A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

19 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 20 A. Product Data and Installation Instructions: For each type of cold-formed steel framing product
21 and accessory, including fasteners, materials, and finishes.

- 22 B. Shop Drawings:

- 23 1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing;
24 fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
25 2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing,
26 bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

- 27 a. For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with design loads, shop
28 drawings and calculations shall be signed and sealed by the delegated (specialty)
29 engineer responsible for their preparation.

- 30 C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For cold-formed steel framing.



1 **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 2 A. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to
 3 demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project
 4 name and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information
 5 specified.
- 6 B. Welding certificates.
- 7 C. Product Test Reports: For each listed product, for tests performed by a qualified testing
 8 agency.
- 9 1. Steel sheet.
 10 2. Expansion anchors.
 11 3. Power-actuated anchors.
 12 4. Mechanical fasteners.
 13 5. Vertical deflection clips.
 14 6. Horizontal drift deflection clips
 15 7. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.
- 16 D. Research Reports: For non-standard cold-formed steel framing, from ICC-ES.

17 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 18 A. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency, or in-house
 19 testing with calibrated test equipment indicating steel sheet complies with requirements,
 20 including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical
 21 requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.
- 22 B. Qualifications:
- 23 1. Fabricator Qualifications: Company with not less than five (5) documented satisfactory
 24 experiences designing and fabricating cold-formed steel framing systems equal in
 25 material, design and extent to the systems required for this Project.
 26 2. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed cold-formed metal
 27 framing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose
 28 work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- 29 C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
- 30 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 31 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
- 32 D. Engineering Responsibility: Engage a delegated licensed engineer to prepare design
 33 calculations, Shop Drawings, and other structural data.
- 34 E. Delegated Engineer: A licensed engineer who is legally qualified to practice in State of Florida
 35 and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering
 36 services are defined as those performed for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are
 37 similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.



1 F. Codes and Standards: Comply with the following, unless more stringent provisions are
2 indicated:

- 3 1. Florida Building Code, 8th Edition.
- 4 2. ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures."
- 5 3. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- 6 4. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

7
8 See "Performance Requirements" for additional codes and standards.

9 1.7 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

10 A. Verify all dimensions and conditions by field measurement. Indicate and flag on shop drawings
11 all discrepancies between actual conditions and contract documents.

12 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

13 A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's unopened containers or bundles, fully identified by
14 manufacturer's name, job number, and member number. Exercise care to avoid damage during
15 unloading, storing and erection.

16 B. Store framing members on blocking, pallets, platforms or other supports off the ground,
17 sufficiently braced to avoid damage from excessive bending.

18 C. Protect cold-formed steel framing from corrosion, moisture staining, deformation, and other
19 damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

20 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

21 A. During construction, adequately distribute all loads applied to member so as not to exceed the
22 carrying capacity of any framing member.

23 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

24 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

25 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering
26 products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 27 1. AllSteel & Gypsum Products, Inc.
- 28 2. ClarkWestern Building Systems, Inc.
- 29 3. Consolidated Fabricators Corp.; Building Products Division.
- 30 4. Craco Mfg., Inc.
- 31 5. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company.
- 32 6. MarinoWARE.
- 33 7. Nuconsteel; a Nucor Company.
- 34 8. SCAFCO Corporation.
- 35 9. Southeastern Stud & Components, Inc.



- 1 10. Steel Construction Systems.
- 2 11. Steel Network, Inc. (The).
- 3 12. Steel Structural Systems.
- 4 13. Super Stud Building Products, Inc.
- 5 14. Telling Industries, LLC.

6 **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 7 A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000
- 8 "Quality Requirements," to design cold-formed steel framing.

- 9 B. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed steel framing capable of withstanding design
- 10 loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
 - 11 1. Design Loads: As indicated on drawings or required by Code.
 - 12 2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections
 - 13 greater than the following:
 - 14 a. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of $1/400$ of the wall
 - 15 height for brick and $1/240$ for other areas.
 - 16 b. Soffit Framing: Vertical deflection of $1/240$ of the horizontally projected span for
 - 17 live loads.
 - 18 3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members located outside the
 - 19 insulated building envelope without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure,
 - 20 connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects
 - 21 when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F.
 - 22 4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction
 - 23 tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as
 - 24 follows:
 - 25 a. Upward and downward movement of 1 inch.
 - 26 5. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection
 - 27 without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.

- 28 C. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Design Standards:
 - 29 1. Floor and Roof Systems: AISI S210.
 - 30 2. Wall Studs: AISI S211.
 - 31 3. Headers: AISI S212.
 - 32 4. Lateral Design: AISI S213.

- 33 D. AISI Specifications and Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply
- 34 with AISI S100 and AISI S200.

- 35 E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency.
- 36 Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 37 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of
 - 38 another qualified testing agency.



1 **2.3 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL**

2 A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating
3 weight as follows:

- 4 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
5 2. Coating: G60.

6 B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection Drift Clips: ASTM A 653, structural steel, zinc coated, of
7 grade and coating as follows:

- 8 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
9 2. Coating: G60.

10 **2.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING**

11 A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched,
12 with stiffened flanges, and as follows:

- 13 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch.
14 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches.

15 B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated,
16 unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:

- 17 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Matching steel studs.
18 2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches.

19 C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass and/or head clips, capable of
20 accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through
21 positive mechanical attachment to stud web.

22 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers
23 offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to,
24 the following:

- 25 a. AllSteel & Gypsum Products, Inc.
26 b. ClarkWestern Building Systems, Inc.
27 c. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries company.
28 d. MarinoWARE.
29 e. Steel Network, Inc. (The).

30 D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched,
31 with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement,
32 with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure,
33 and as follows:

- 34 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Matching steel studs
35 2. Flange Width: 1 inch plus the design gap for one-story structures and 1 inch plus twice
36 the design gap for other applications.



- 1 E. Double Deflection Tracks: Manufacturer's double, deep-leg, U-shaped steel tracks, consisting
2 of nested inner and outer tracks; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.
- 3 1. Outer Track: Of web depth to allow free vertical movement of inner track, with flanges
4 designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure, and as
5 follows:
- 6 a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Matching steel studs.
7 b. Flange Width: **1 inch plus the design gap for one-story structures and 1 inch
8 plus twice the design gap for other applications.**
- 9 2. Inner Track: Of web depth indicated, and as follows:
- 10 a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Matching steel studs.
11 b. Flange Width: Dimension equal to sum of outer deflection track flange width plus 1
12 inch.
- 13 F. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from
14 upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure through
15 positive mechanical attachment to stud web and structure.
- 16 **2.5 SOFFIT FRAMING**
- 17 A. Exterior Soffit Frame: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths
18 indicated, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
- 19 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch.
20 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches, minimum.
- 21 **2.6 FRAMING ACCESSORIES**
- 22 A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003, Structural Grade, Type H,
23 metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- 24 B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise
25 indicated, as follows:
- 26 1. Supplementary framing.
27 2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
28 3. Web stiffeners.
29 4. Anchor clips.
30 5. End clips.
31 6. Foundation clips.
32 7. Gusset plates.
33 8. Stud kickers and knee braces.
34 9. Joist hangers and end closures.
35 10. Hole reinforcing plates.
36 11. Backer plates.



1 **2.7 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS**

- 2 A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123.
- 3 B. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load or
4 strength design capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or
5 equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified
6 testing agency.
- 7 C. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated
8 from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load capacities calculated according to ICC-
9 ES AC70, greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190
10 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- 11 D. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping,
12 steel drill screws.
- 13 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- 14 E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

15 **2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- 16 A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or MIL-P-21035B.
- 17 B. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, and nonleaching; or of cold-formed
18 steel of same grade and coating as framing members supported by shims.
- 19 C. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's
20 standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

21 **2.9 FABRICATION**

- 22 A. Fabricate cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with
23 connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards,
24 manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- 25 1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
- 26 2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
- 27 3. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening,
28 pneumatic pin fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing
29 members is not permitted.
- 30 a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding,
31 appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- 32 b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw
33 penetrating joined members by no fewer than three exposed screw threads.
- 34 4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed steel framing by welding, bolting, pneumatic pin
35 fastening, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.



- 1 B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection
2 stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
- 3 C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum
4 allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
- 5 1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from
6 plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of
7 sheathing or other finishing materials.
- 8 2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed steel framing assembly to a maximum out-of-
9 square tolerance of 1/8 inch.

10 PART 3 - EXECUTION

11 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 12 A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements
13 for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 14 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

15 3.2 PREPARATION

- 16 A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary
17 framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- 18 B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as
19 needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-
20 resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect
21 remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
- 22 C. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of load-bearing wall bottom track and
23 the top of foundation wall or slab at locations with a gap larger than 1/4 inch to ensure a uniform
24 bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
- 25 D. Install sealer gaskets at the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and at the top of
26 foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

27 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- 28 A. Cold-formed steel framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field
29 assembled.
- 30 B. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200 and to manufacturer's written
31 instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- 32 C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting
33 structure.



- 1 1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush,
2 even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between
3 fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch.
- 4 D. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with
5 connections securely fastened.
- 6 1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
7 2. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening,
8 or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
- 9 a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding,
10 appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
11 b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and
12 complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
- 13 E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track
14 or tension members.
- 15 F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in
16 intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place,
17 undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent
18 connections to framing are secured.
- 19 G. Do not bridge building expansion joints with cold-formed steel framing. Independently frame
20 both sides of joints.
- 21 H. Install insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," in built-up exterior framing
22 members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are
23 inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- 24 I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's
25 approved or standard punched openings.
- 26 J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a
27 maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
- 28 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan
29 location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of
30 sheathing or other finishing materials.

31 **3.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION**

- 32 A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to
33 supporting structure as indicated.
- 34 B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs
35 as follows:
- 36 1. Stud Spacing: 16 inches minimum.



- 1 C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or
2 warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- 3 D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical
4 loads while providing lateral support.
- 5 1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
6 2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
7 3. Connect vertical deflection clips to bypassing studs and anchor to building structure.
8 4. Connect drift clips to cold-formed metal framing and anchor to building structure.
- 9 E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings
10 but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
- 11 1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 12
12 inches of single deflection track. Install a combination of bridging and stud or stud-track
13 solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs, secured to stud webs or flanges.
- 14 a. Install solid blocking at centers indicated on Shop Drawings.
- 15 2. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched
16 studs.
- 17 3. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated
18 and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to
19 stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
- 20 F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip
21 angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-
22 framing system.
- 23 **3.5 SOFFIT INSTALLATION**
- 24 A. Install perimeter joist track sized to match joists. Align and securely anchor or fasten track to
25 supporting structure at corners, ends, and spacings indicated on Shop Drawings.
- 26 B. Install joists bearing on supporting frame, level, straight, and plumb; adjust to final position,
27 brace, and reinforce. Fasten joists to both flanges of joist track.
- 28 1. Install joists over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches.
29 2. Reinforce ends and bearing points of joists with web stiffeners, end clips, joist hangers,
30 steel clip angles, or steel-stud sections as indicated on Shop Drawings.
- 31 C. Space joists not more than 2 inches from abutting walls, and as follows:
- 32 1. Joist Spacing: As indicated or required by design.
- 33 D. Frame openings with built-up joist headers consisting of joist and joist track, or another
34 combination of connected joists if indicated.
- 35 E. Install joist reinforcement at interior supports with single, short length of joist section located
36 directly over interior support, with lapped joists of equal length to joist reinforcement, or as
37 indicated on Shop Drawings.



- 1 1. Install web stiffeners to transfer axial loads of walls above.
- 2 F. Install bridging at intervals indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten bridging at each joist
3 intersection as follows:
- 4 1. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to bottom flange of
5 joists.
- 6 2. Bridging: Joist-track solid blocking of width and thickness indicated, secured to joist
7 webs.
- 8 3. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated
9 and joist-track solid blocking of width and thickness indicated. Fasten flat straps to
10 bottom flange of joists and secure solid blocking to joist webs.
- 11 G. Secure joists to load-bearing interior walls to prevent lateral movement of bottom flange.
- 12 H. Install miscellaneous joist framing and connections, including web stiffeners, closure pieces, clip
13 angles, continuous angles, hold-down angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete
14 and stable joist-framing assembly.
- 15 **3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**
- 16 A. Inspection: Owner may engage a qualified inspection agency to perform inspections.
- 17 B. Field and shop welds will be subject to inspection.
- 18 C. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.
- 19 D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine
20 compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- 21 **3.7 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION**
- 22 A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and
23 installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and
24 manufacturer's written instructions.
- 25 B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and
26 Installer, that ensure that cold-formed steel framing is without damage or deterioration at time of
27 Substantial Completion.
- 28 **END OF SECTION 05 40 00**



1 **SECTION 05 50 00 - METAL FABRICATIONS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 **A.** This Section includes the following:

- 5 1. Miscellaneous steel framing and supports.
- 6 2. Shelf angles.
- 7 3. Loose bearing and leveling plates.
- 8 4. Steel weld plates and angles.
- 9 5. Miscellaneous steel trim.
- 10 6. Loose steel lintels.
- 11 7. Metal ladders (elevator pit).
- 12 8. Metal bollards.
- 13 9. Elevator hoist beams.
- 14 10. Elevator pit sump covers.
- 15 11. Metal ladders and safety cages

17 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

18 **A.** Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their
19 connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

20 **B.** Delegated-Design Submittal: For ladders and safety cages, analysis data signed and sealed by
21 the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation

22 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

23 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

24 **A.** In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to
25 product selection:

- 26 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be
27 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.

28 **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

29 **A.** Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 40 00
30 "Quality Requirements," to design ladders and safety cages.

31 **B.** Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature
32 changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints,
33 overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.

- 34 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material
35 surfaces.

36



1 **2.2 METALS**

2 **A.** Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes.

3 **B.** Ferrous Metals:

- 4 1. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 5 2. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
 6 3. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with
 7 ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
 8 4. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold-formed steel tubing.
 9 5. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard weight (Schedule 40), unless another weight is
 10 indicated or required by structural loads.

11 **C.** Nonferrous Metals:

- 12 1. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy 6063-T6.
 13 2. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, alloy 6061-T6.
 14 3. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.

15 **2.3 METAL LADDERS**

16 **A.** General:

- 17 1. Comply with ANSI A14.3.

18 **B.** Steel Ladders:

- 19 1. Space siderails 18 inches (457 mm) apart unless otherwise indicated.
 20 2. Siderails: Continuous, 3/8-by-2-1/2-inch (9.5-by-64-mm) steel flat bars, with eased edges;
 21 unless larger sized required by Structural calculations.
 22 3. Rungs: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter steel bars.
 23 4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
 24 5. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide
 25 granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with
 26 aluminum-oxide grout.

27 a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers
 28 offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not
 29 limited to the following:

- 30 1) Harsco Industrial IKG, a division of Harsco Corporation.
 31 2) Ross Technology Corporation.
 32 3) W.S. Molnar Company.

- 33 6. Provide platforms as indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar
 34 grating, supported by steel angles. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch
 35 (12 mm) inch (19 mm) in least dimension.
 36 7. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c. with
 37 welded or bolted steel brackets.
 38 8. Hot Dip Galvanize ladders, including brackets in accordance with ASTM A123.
 39 9. Prime exterior ladders, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer.
 40 10. Paint finish per section 09 99 00 "Painting."



2.4 LADDER SAFETY CAGES

A. General: Basis of Design: ALACO #564 - PRPC

1. Fabricate ladder safety cages to comply with ANSI A14.3. Assemble by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners.
2. Provide primary hoops at tops and bottoms of cages and spaced not more than 20 feet (6 m) o.c. Provide secondary intermediate hoops spaced not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. between primary hoops.
3. Fasten assembled safety cage to ladder rails and adjacent construction by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

C. Steel Ladder Safety Cages:

1. Primary Hoops: 1/4-by-4-inch (6.4-by-100-mm) flat bar hoops.
2. Secondary Intermediate Hoops: 1/4-by-2-inch (6.4-by-50-mm) flat bar hoops.
3. Vertical Bars: 3/16-by-1-1/2-inch (4.8-by-38-mm) flat bars secured to each hoop.
4. Hot Dip Galvanize in accordance with ASTM A123, including brackets and fasteners.
5. Paint finish per section 09 99 00 "Painting"

2.4 FASTENERS

A. General: Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

B. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Threaded or wedge type; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, hot-dip galvanized per ASTM A 153/A 153M.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI #79.

B. Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with SSPC-Paint 20 or SSPC-Paint 29 and compatible with topcoat.

1. Products:

- a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer CM18/19.
- b. Carboline Company; Carbozinc 621.
- c. ICI Devoe Coatings; Catha-Coat 313.
- d. International Coatings Limited; Interzinc 315 Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer.
- e. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Aquapon Zinc-Rich Primer 97-670.
- f. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Corothane I GalvaPac Zinc Primer.
- g. Tnemec Company, Inc.; Tneme-Zinc 90-97.

C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20, high-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel.

D. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107.



- 1 **E.** Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-
 2 Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day
 3 compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa), unless otherwise indicated.
 4
- 5 **2.6 FABRICATION**
- 6 **A.** General: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Use connections that
 7 maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- 8 1. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges.
 9 Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
 10 2. Weld corners and seams continuously. Use materials and methods that minimize
 11 distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals. Obtain fusion
 12 without undercut or overlap. Remove welding flux immediately. Finish exposed welds
 13 smooth and blended.
 14 3. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed
 15 fasteners where possible. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
 16 4. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to
 17 exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
 18 5. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with
 19 integrally welded steel strap anchors, not less than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.
- 20 **B.** Loose Steel Lintels: Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel channels, angles and shapes of size
 21 indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated.
- 22 1. Lintels in Exterior Walls (including relieving angles for brick): Hot Dipped Galvanize
 23 (ASTM A123)
- 24 **C.** Shelf Angles: Fabricate shelf angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to framing. Fabricate
 25 with horizontally slotted holes to receive 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts, spaced not more than 6 inches
 26 (150 mm) from ends and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.
- 27 1. Shelf Angles in Exterior Walls: Hot Dipped Galvanize (ASTM A123).
 28 2. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to
 29 cast-in-place concrete.
- 30 **D.** Loose Bearing and Leveling Plates: Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items
 31 bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts.
- 32 **E.** Miscellaneous Steel Trim: Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown
 33 with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed
 34 field splices where possible. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate
 35 assembly and installation with other work.
- 36 1. Exterior Miscellaneous Steel Trim: Hot Dipped Galvanize (ASTM A123).
- 37 **F.** Metal Ladders: Comply with ANSI A14.3, unless otherwise indicated.
- 38 1. Elevator Pit Ladders: Comply with ASME A17.1. Paint flat black.
 39 2. Space siderails **18 inches** apart, unless otherwise indicated.
 40 3. Steel Ladder Construction: Flat bar siderails, with 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter steel bar
 41 rungs fitted in centerline of siderails, plug-welded, and ground smooth on outer rail faces.
- 42 **G.** Metal Bollards: Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe as indicated.



- 1 1. Cap bollards with 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick steel plate.
 2 **H.** Elevator Pit Sump Covers: Fabricate from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating Limit
 3 openings in gratings to no more than 3/4 inch (19 mm) in least dimension.
 4

5 **2.7 FINISHES**

- 6 **A.** Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for
 7 recommendations for applying and designating finishes. Finish metal fabrications after
 8 assembly.

- 9 **B.** Steel and Iron Finishes:

- 10 1. Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M or
 11 ASTM A 153/A 153M as applicable.
 12 2. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with
 13 requirements indicated below for environmental exposure conditions of installed metal
 14 fabrications:

15 a. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B): SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast
 16 Cleaning."
 17

18 b. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

- 19 3. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal fabrications, except
 20 those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on
 21 fireproofing, or masonry, to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification
 No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting," for shop painting.

- 22 **C.** Exposed to View Steel Elements: Exposed to view elements (where specified to be painted):
 23 See Section 09 90 00 Painting.

24 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

25 **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- 26 **A.** General: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal
 27 fabrications accurately in location, with edges and surfaces level, plumb, and true.

28 1. Fit exposed connections accurately together. Weld connections that are not to be left as
 29 exposed joints but cannot be shop welded. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of
 30 exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.

31 2. Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be
 32 fastened to in-place construction.

33 3. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into
 34 concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

- 35 **B.** Set bearing and leveling plates on cleaned surfaces using wedges, shims, or leveling nuts.
 36 After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts and pack
 37 solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.

- 38 **C.** Touch up surfaces and finishes after erection.

- 39 1. Painted Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and touch
 40 up paint with the same material as used for shop painting.



- 1
- 2
2. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

3 **END OF SECTION 05 50 00**



1
2 **SECTION 05 51 00 - METAL STAIRS**

3
4 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

5
6 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 7
8 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions
9 and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

10
11 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 12 A. This Section includes the following:
- 13 1. Straight run, steel-framed stairs with concrete filled treads for interior stairs.
 - 14
 - 15 B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section.
 - 16
 - 17 1. Division 5 Section 05 52 13 "Pipe and Tube Railings" for metal handrails and railing systems
18 fabricated from stock components.
 - 19 2. Division 9 Finishes for floor finishes and paint.
 - 20
 - 21 C. Details and structural concepts shown on drawings are conceptual in nature. It is
22 fabricator/supplier=s responsibility to provide components for a complete installation.
 - 23

24 **1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 25 A. Structural Performance: Comply with Florida Building Code. Engineer, fabricate, and install steel
26 stairs to withstand the following structural loads without exceeding the allowable design working
27 stress of the materials involved, including anchors and connections. Apply each load to produce
28 the maximum stress in each component of steel stairs but shall not be less than shown on
29 drawings.
- 30 1. Treads and platforms of Steel Stairs: Capable of withstanding a uniform load of 100 lbf per
31 sq. ft. (4.8 kN/sq. m) or a concentrated load of 300 lbf (1.35 kN) on a area of 4 sq. inches (26
32 sq. cm) located in the center of the tread, whichever produces the greater stress.
 - 33 2. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from loads specified above as well
34 as stresses resulting from railing system loads.
 - 35 3. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to L/360 or 1/4 inch whichever is
36 less.
 - 37
 - 38
 - 39

40 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 41 A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1
42 Specification Sections.
- 43 B. Product data for metal stairs, prefilled metal pan stair treads, nonslip aggregates and nonslip
44 aggregate surface finishes, steel floor plate, paint products, and grout.
- 45 C. Shop drawings, detailing, fabrication, and installation of steel stairs. Include plans, elevations,
46 sections, and details of steel stairs and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
47 Provide templates for anchors and bolts specified for installation under other sections.
- 48 1. For installed steel stairs indicated to comply with certain design loadings, include structural
49 analysis data sealed and signed by the qualified professional engineer who was responsible
50 for their preparation.
 - 51
 - 52
 - 53
 - 54
 - 55
 - 56 D. Welder certificates, signed by Contractor, certifying that welders comply with requirements specified
57 under the "Quality Assurance" Article.
 - 58



- 1 E. Qualification data, for firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article, to demonstrate
 2 their capabilities and experience. Include list of completed projects with project names, addresses,
 3 names of architects and owners, and other information specified.
 4

5 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**
 6

- 7 A. Fabricator Qualifications: Firm experienced in producing steel stairs similar to those indicated for
 8 this Project with a record of successful in-service performance and with sufficient production
 9 capacity to produce required units without delaying the Work.
 10
 11 B. Installer Qualifications: Arrange for steel stair installation specified in this Section by the same firm
 12 that fabricated them.
 13
 14 C. Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer legally authorized to practice in jurisdiction where
 15 Project is located and experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated that have
 16 resulted in the installation of metal stairs (including handrails and railing systems) similar to this
 17 Project in material, design, and extent and that have a record of successful in-service performance.
 18
 19 D. Welding Standards: Comply with applicable provisions of AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code--
 20 Steel" and AWS D1.3 "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
 21
 22 1. Certify that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding
 23 processes involved and, if pertinent, has undergone recertification.
 24

25 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**
 26

27 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**
 28

- 29 A. Performance specification, stairs shall be shop fabricated locally.
 30

31 **2.2 FERROUS METALS**
 32

- 33 A. Metal Surfaces, General: For surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials
 34 selected for their surface flatness, smoothness, and freedom from surface blemishes. Do not use
 35 materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, roughness, or, for
 36 steel sheet, variations in flatness exceeding those permitted by referenced standards for stretcher-
 37 leveled sheet.
 38
 39 B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36 (ASTM A 36M).
 40
 41 C. Steel Tubing: Product type (manufacturing method) and as follows:
 42
 43 1. Cold-Formed Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500.
 44 2. Hot-Formed Steel Tubing: ASTM A 501.
 45
 46 D. Uncoated Structural Steel Sheet: Product type (manufacturing method), quality, and grade as
 47 follows:
 48
 49 1. Cold-Rolled Structural Steel Sheet: ASTM A 611, grade as follows:
 50 a. Grade A, unless otherwise indicated or required by design loading.
 51
 52 E. Uncoated Steel Sheet: Commercial quality, product type (method of manufacture) as follows:
 53
 54 1. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 366 (ASTM A 366M).
 55
 56 F. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for the metal alloy to
 57 be welded.
 58



1 **2.3 FASTENERS**

- 2
- 3 A. General: Provide plated fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited
- 4 zinc coating, for exterior use or where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for the type, grade,
- 5 and class required.
- 6
- 7 B. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head type, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568, Property Class
- 8 4.6), with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M), and, where indicated, flat washers.
- 9
- 10 C. Machine Screws: ANSI B18.6.3 (ANSI B18.6.7M).
- 11
- 12 D. Lag Bolts: ANSI B18.2.1 (ANSI B18.2.3.8M).
- 13
- 14 E. Plain Washers: Round, carbon steel, ANSI B18.22.1 (ANSI B18.22M).
- 15
- 16 F. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, carbon steel, ANSI B 18.21.1.
- 17
- 18 G. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assemblies of material indicated below with capability
- 19 to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry
- 20 and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per
- 21 ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- 22
- 23 1. Material: Carbon steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
- 24 2. Material: Group 1 alloy 304 or 316 stainless-steel bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593
- 25 (ASTM F 738M) and ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).
- 26

27 **2.4 PAINT**

- 28
- 29 A. Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd
- 30 primer complying with performance requirements of FS TT-P-664, selected for good resistance to
- 31 normal atmospheric corrosion, compatibility with finish paint systems indicated in section 09 90 00
- 32 "Painting", and capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats despite prolonged
- 33 exposure.
- 34

35 **2.5 GROUT**

- 36
- 37 A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout
- 38 complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior
- 39 applications.
- 40
- 41 B. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated in
- 42 the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 43
- 44 1. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grouts:
- 45
- 46 a. B-6 Construction Grout; W. R. Bonsal Co.
- 47 b. Diamond-Crete Grout; Concrete Service Materials Co.
- 48 c. Supreme; Cormix Construction Chemicals.
- 49 d. Sure-grip High Performance Grout; Dayton Superior Corp.
- 50 e. Euco N-S Grout; Euclid Chemical Co.
- 51 f. Five Star Grout; Five Star Products.
- 52 g. Vibropruf #11; Lambert Corp.
- 53 h. Crystex; L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.
- 54 i. Masterflow 928 and 713; Master Builders Technologies, Inc.
- 55 j. Sealtight 588 Grout; W. R. Meadows, Inc.
- 56 k. SonogROUT 14; Sonneborn Building Products--ChemRex, Inc.
- 57 l. Kemset; The Spray-Cure Company.
- 58
- 59



1
2
3 **2.6 CONCRETE FILL**
4

- 5 A. Concrete Materials and Properties: "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, ready-mixed
6 concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 2,500 psi (17 MPa), unless higher
7 strengths indicated.
8
9 1. Coordinate riser and tread finishes.
10
11 B. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, 9 by 6 inches -- W1.4 by W1.4, unless otherwise indicated.
12

13 **2.7 FABRICATION, GENERAL**
14

- 15 A. Form steel stairs from materials of size, thickness, and shapes indicated, but not less than that
16 needed to comply with performance requirements indicated. Work to dimensions indicated or
17 accepted on shop drawings, using proven details of fabrication and support. Provide complete stair
18 assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other
19 components necessary to support and anchor stair and platforms.
20
21 B. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight sharp
22 edges.
23
24 C. Shear and punch metals cleanly and accurately.
25
26 D. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
27
28 E. Ease exposed edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
29 Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise
30 impairing work.
31
32 F. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
33
34 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion
35 resistance of base metals.
36 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
37 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
38 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so that no
39 roughness shows after finishing, and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
40
41 G. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners
42 wherever possible. Use exposed fasteners of type indicated or, if not indicated, Phillips flat-head
43 (countersunk) screws or bolts. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
44
45 H. Shop Assembly: Preassemble in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and
46 assembly. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for
47 field assembly and coordinated installation.
48
49 I. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water, or provide weep
50 holes where water may accumulate.
51
52 J. Weld connections to comply with the following:
53 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion
54 resistance of base metals.
55 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
56 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
57 4. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously, unless otherwise indicated.
58 5. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blend so no
59 roughness shows after finishing and contour of weld surface matches that of adjacent



1 surface.

- 2
- 3 K. Formed exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners
- 4 where possible. Use exposed fasteners of type indicated or, if not indicated, Phillips flat-head
- 5 (countersunk) screws or bolts. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- 6
- 7 L. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water, or provide weep
- 8 holes where water may accumulate.
- 9

10 **2.8 STEEL-FRAMED STAIRS**

- 11
- 12 A. General: It is the Fabricators' responsibility to construct stairs to conform to sizes and arrangements
- 13 indicated. Join pieces together by welding, unless otherwise indicated. Provide complete stair
- 14 assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, columns, handrails, railing systems, newels,
- 15 balusters, struts, clips, brackets, bearing plates, or other components necessary for the support of
- 16 stairs and platforms, and as required to anchor and contain the stairs on the supporting structure for
- 17 a complete installation regardless of whether each and every item is shown on sections and details.
- 18
- 19 1. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with "Recommended Voluntary Minimum Standards for
- 20 Fixed Metal Stairs" in NAAMM "Metal Stair Manual" for class of stair designated, except
- 21 where more stringent requirements are indicated.
- 22
- 23 a. Architectural class where indicated.
- 24
- 25 B. Stair Framing: Fabricate stringers of structural steel channels, plates, tubes, or a combination
- 26 thereof, as indicated. Provide closures for exposed ends of stringers. Construct platforms of
- 27 structural steel channel headers and miscellaneous framing members as indicated. Bolt or weld
- 28 headers to stringers; and bolt or weld newels and framing members to stringers and headers. If
- 29 using bolts, fabricate and join so bolts are not exposed on finish surfaces.
- 30
- 31 C. Metal Pan Risers, Sub-treads, and Sub-platforms: Shape metal pans for risers and sub-treads to
- 32 conform to configuration shown. Provide thicknesses of structural steel sheet for metal pans
- 33 indicated, but not less than that required, to support total design loading, but not less than 12-gauge
- 34 0.104 inch. Risers on Stair #2 are perforated (See Contract Document Drawings) the support of
- 35 which will be visible from the bottom side. Extra care shall be taken to insure a craftsmanlike
- 36 installation and finish in this area. All welding shall be ground smooth.
- 37
- 38 1. Form metal pans of uncoated cold-rolled steel sheet where exposed to view and from
- 39 uncoated hot-rolled steel sheet where concealed, unless otherwise indicated.
- 40
- 41 2. Directly weld risers and sub-treads to stringers; locate welds on side of metal pans to be
- 42 concealed by concrete fill where exposed to view and attach risers and sub-treads to
- 43 stringers with brackets made of steel angles or bars where concealed. Weld brackets to
- 44 stringers and attach metal pans to brackets by welding, riveting, or bolting.
- 45
- 46 3. Shape metal pans to include an end capture on the nosing which returns horizontally
- 47 approximately 2" with radius bend as indicated.
- 48
- 49 4. At Contractor's option, provide prefabricated stair assemblies with prefilled treads consisting
- 50 of precast reinforced concrete fill, finished for finish as specified, in welded sheet metal pan,
- 51 attached to installed stringers using manufacturer's standard connection detail.
- 52
- 53 5. Provide sub-platforms of configuration and construction indicated; if not indicated, of same
- 54 metal as risers and sub-treads, in thicknesses required to support design loading. Attach
- 55 sub-platform to platform framing members with welds.
- 56 a. Smooth Soffit Construction: Construct sub-platforms with smooth soffits.
- 57
- 58 6. **Min. 12-gauge steel pan for stairs.**

59 **2.9 FINISHES**

- A. General: Finish metal stairs after assembly.



1. Comply with NAAMM "Metal Finishes Manual" for recommendations on application and designations of finishes.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed units:
1. Provide SSPC-SP10 near white metal blast clean to produce a very good smooth Architectural Finish for painting acceptable to Architect on exposed to view finishes to be painted.
- C. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces, except those to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements of SSPC-PA 1 "Paint Application Specification No. 1" for shop painting.
1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
- D. Paint in accordance with Section 09 90 00 – Painting.
- E. Interior steel stairs shall be primed and painted according to Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate and furnish anchorages, setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installing anchorages, including concrete inserts, weld plates, and anchor bolts. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing steel stairs to in-place construction; include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors as required.
- B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing steel stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- C. Install steel stairs by welding (exposed to view) or bolting (concealed conditions) stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete, except where otherwise indicated.
- D. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- E. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop-welded because of shipping size limitations.
- F. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so that no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLING STEEL STAIRS WITH GROUTED BASE PLATES



- 1 A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials and roughen to improve
 2 bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of base plates.
 3
 4 B. Set steel stair base plates on wedges or other adjustable devices. After the stairs have been
 5 positioned and aligned, tighten the anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims, but if protruding,
 6 cut off flush with the edge of the bearing plate before packing with grout.
 7
 8 1. Use nonmetallic, nonshrink grout, unless otherwise indicated.
 9 2. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

10 3.4 INSTALLING HANDRAILS

- 11 A. Install handrails specified in Division 5 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings" for metal handrails, railing
 12 systems fabricated from stock components.
 13
 14 1. Anchor posts to steel by welding directly to steel supporting members.
 15 2. Anchor handrail ends into wall construction with drilled-in expansion anchors or as otherwise
 16 indicated.
 17
 18 B. Secure handrails to wall with wall brackets and end fittings. Provide bracket with $2\frac{1}{4}$ " (57.15 mm)
 19 minimum clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface (see drawings). Locate
 20 brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads. Secure
 21 wall brackets and wall return fittings to building construction as follows:
 22
 23 1. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt.
 24 2. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion anchor.
 25 3. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts having square heads.
 26 4. For steel-framed gypsum board assemblies, fasten brackets directly to steel framing or
 27 concealed anchors using self-tapping screws of size and type required to support structural
 28 loads.
 29
 30

31 3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- 32 A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded
 33 areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to
 34 comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 35
 36 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
 37 2. Touchup paint galvanized finishes with **matching** galvanized repair paint.
 38
 39 B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded
 40 areas of shop paint on steel stairs are specified in Division 9 Section "Painting."
 41
 42
 43

44 **END OF SECTION 05 51 00**



1 **SECTION 05 51 33.17**

2
3 **TUBULAR FIXED EXTERIOR ROOF ACCESS LADDER**

4
5 **PART 1 GENERAL**

6
7 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- 8 A. Aluminum Heavy Duty Fixed Vertical Ladders.

9 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- 10 A. Section 05 12 00 - Structural Steel Framing: Roof structure and opening support.
11 B. Section 05 55 00 - Metal Stair Treads and Nosings: Miscellaneous metal supports.
12 C. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry: Roof framing and opening support.
13 D. Section 07 42 00 - Wall Panels: Roof curb flashing.

14 1.3 REFERENCES

- 15 A. ANSI A14.3 : Ladders - Fixed - Safety Requirements.
16 B. OSHA 1910.23: Ladders.
17 C. OSHA 1910.28: Duty to have fall protection and falling object protection.
18 D. OSHA 1910.29: Fall protection systems and falling object protection-criteria and practices.

19 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- 20 A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 30 00.
21 B. Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
22 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
23 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
24 C. Shop Drawings for Ladders:
25 1. Plan and section of ladder installation.

26 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- 27 A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
28 B. Store products inside under cover until installation. If stored outside, store under a tarp or
29 suitable cover.

30 1.6 WARRANTY

- 31 **A.** Limited Warranty: Five years against defective material and workmanship, covering parts
32 only, no labor or freight. Defective parts, if deemed so by the manufacturer, will be replaced
33 at no charge, freight excluded, upon inspection at manufacturer's plant which warrants
34 **same.**

35
36 **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

37
38 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- 39 A. Manufacturer: Precision Ladders, LLC, which is located at: P. O. Box 2279 ; Morristown, TN
40 37816-2279; Toll Free Tel: 800-225-7814; Tel: 423-586-2265; Email:
41 info@PrecisionLadders.com; Web: www.PrecisionLadders.com
42 B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section
43 01600.

44 2.2 ALUMINUM FIXED VERTICAL LADDER

- 45 A. Aluminum Heavy Duty Fixed Vertical Ladder and Components: Ladder, fall arrest system,
46 walk-thru, side rails, cage, rest platforms, floor mounting brackets, security doors, security
47 gates and finishes.
48 1. Model: Model FLH-10 (12'-0" = vertical height in inches) Aluminum Heavy Duty Fixed
49 Vertical Ladder as manufactured by Precision Ladders, LLC. Contractor to field verify



- 1 before Fabrication.
- 2 2. Capacity: Unit shall support a 1,500 lb (680 kg) loading without failure, and individual
- 3 treads shall withstand a 3,000 lb (1361 kg) loading without failure.
- 4 3. Performance Standard: Units designed and manufactured to meet or exceed ANSI
- 5 A14.3, OSHA 1910.23, OSHA 1910.28 and OSHA 1910.29.
- 6 B. Components:
- 7 1. Ladder Stringer: 3 inch by 1 inch by 1/8 inch (64 mm by 27 mm by 3 mm) extruded
- 8 6005-T5 aluminum tubing. Pitch: 90 degrees.
- 9 2. Ladder Tread: 2-1/4 inch by 3/4 inch by 1/4 inch (57 mm by 19 mm by 6 mm) extruded
- 10 6005-T5 aluminum with deeply serrated top surface.
- 11 3. Ladder Mounting Bracket: 8-1/2 inch by 2 inch by 3 inch by 1/4 inch thick (216 mm by
- 12 51 mm by 76 mm by 6 mm) aluminum angle.
- 13 4. Fall Arrest System: Complete system with rail, sleeves, and harness to limit any fall to
- 14 6 inches (152 mm). Removeable Post for Hatch Access Ladders with Fall Arrest
- 15 System. Harness by others.
- 16 5. Walk-Thru:
- 17 a. Handrails: 1-1/4 inch (32 mm) aluminum square tube with rounded edges.
- 18 b. Side Rails: 42 inch (1067 mm) side rail extension for through ladder exits.
- 19 c. Flared: 30 inches wide for ladders with fall arrest system
- 20 6. Parapet Platform:
- 21 a. Bar grating.
- 22 b. Platform Size: 30" inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) standard.
- 23 c. Toe Boards. 6005 T-5 aluminum.
- 24 d. Handrails: 1-1/4 inch (32 mm) aluminum square tube 42 inches (1067 mm)
- 25 high.
- 26 7. Finishes:
- 27 a. Standard: Mill finish on aluminum ladder components.
- 28 b. Optional Finishes
- 29 1. Powder Coated
- 30 2. Clear Anodized

31 2.3 FABRICATION

- 32 A. Completely fabricate ladder ready for installation before shipment to the site.
- 33

34 PART 3 EXECUTION

35

36 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 37 A. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of
- 38 unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- 39 B. Examine materials upon arrival at site. Notify the carrier and manufacturer of any damage.

40 3.2 INSTALLATION

- 41 A. Install in accordance with approved submittals.

42 3.3 PROTECTION

- 43 A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- 44 B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.
- 45

46 **END OF SECTION 05 51 33.17**



1 **SECTION 05 52 13 – PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

8 1. Steel pipe and tube railings.

- 9 B. Related Requirements:

10 1. Section 09 90 00 "Painting" for finish coatings.
11

12 **1.3 COORDINATION**

- 13 A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint
14 and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats
15 are compatible with one another.

- 16 B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and
17 directions for installing anchorages, including, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with
18 integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project
19 site in time for installation.

- 20 C. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support
21 railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

22 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 23 A. Product Data: For the following:

24 1. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected railings.
25 2. Railing brackets.
26 3. Wire mesh guardrail sample
27 4. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.

- 28 B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

- 29 C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.



- 1 1. Sections of each distinctly different linear railing member, including handrails, top rails,
2 posts, and wire mesh guardrails, including finish.
3 2. Fittings and brackets.
- 4 D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the
5 qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation, registered in the State of Florida.

6 **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 7 A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- 8 B. Welding certificates.
- 9 C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers
10 certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- 11 D. Product Test Reports: For pipe and tube railings, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency,
12 according to ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.
- 13 E. Evaluation Reports: For post-installed anchors, from ICC-ES.

14 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 15 A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
- 16 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

17 **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 18 A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable,
19 temporary protective covering before shipping.

20 **1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- 21 A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal
22 fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

23 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

24 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 25 A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, registered in the State of Florida,
26 as defined in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," to design railings, including attachment
27 to building construction.
- 28 B. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, shall withstand
29 the effects of gravity loads and meet the following minimum loads and stresses within limits and
30 under conditions indicated but no less than the current applicable structural code requirements:



- 1 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
- 2 a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
- 3 b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
- 4 c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- 5 2. Infill of Guards:
- 6 a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft.
- 7 (0.093 sq. m).
- 8 b. Uniform load of 25 lbf/sq.ft (1.2 Kn/sq. m) applied horizontally.
- 9 c. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- 10 C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature
- 11 changes.
- 12 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material
- 13 surfaces.
- 14 D. The dimensions specified for handrails and guardrails in the Contract Drawings shall not
- 15 be changed or modified. If Code or Specialty Engineer's Calculations indicate that a larger
- 16 member is necessary, then Extra Strength Steel shall be provided in lieu of larger member
- 17 and the dimensions maintained. If Extra Strength Steel is still insufficient, then Architect
- 18 shall be immediately notified.
- 19 **2.2 METALS, GENERAL**
- 20 A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller
- 21 marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
- 22 B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as
- 23 supported rails unless otherwise indicated.
- 24 1. Provide type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger
- 25 bolt and that provides 2-1/4" clearance (per Florida Fire Prevention Code, 6th Edition) from
- 26 inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.
- 27 **2.3 STEEL AND IRON**
- 28 A. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513.
- 29 B. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless
- 30 another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
- 31 C. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- 32 D. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless
- 33 otherwise indicated.



1 **2.4 FASTENERS**

2 A. General: Provide the following:

- 3 1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or
4 ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
5 2. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture,
6 of railings.

7 B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class
8 required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction
9 indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.

10 C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:

- 11 1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them
12 to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
13 2. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them
14 to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening
15 method for railings indicated.
16 3. Provide tamper-resistant flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise
17 indicated.

18 D. Post-Installed Anchors: chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 6
19 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and 4 times the load imposed when
20 installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by
21 a qualified independent testing agency.

- 22 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with
23 ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise
24 indicated.
25 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1)
26 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594
27 (ASTM F 836M).

28 **2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

29 A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy
30 welded.

31 B. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 09 90 00 "Painting".

32 C. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats: Provide products that comply with Section 09 90 00 "Painting".

33 D. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout
34 complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by
35 manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

36 E. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion
37 cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching,
38 and grouting compound.



1. Water-Resistant Product: At exterior locations and where indicated provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, **but not less than that required to support structural loads.**
- B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove flux immediately.
 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
- I. Form Changes in Direction as Follows:
1. By inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.
- J. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- K. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch (6 mm) or less.
- L. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.



- 1 M. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work.
 2 Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate
 3 anchorage devices with supporting structure.
- 4 N. For railing posts set in concrete, core drill and provide escutcheon trim ring.
- 5 O. Toe Boards: Where indicated, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of
 6 open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

7 2.7 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- 8 A. For nongalvanized-steel guardrails, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets,
 9 fasteners; however, galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry;
- 10 B. Exterior and interior handrails: Hot Dipped Galvanize. ASTM A123 1.4-3.9 mills thick. Thickness
 11 as determined by Architect in consultation with Hot Dipped Galvanizing contractor.
- 12 C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with
 13 requirements indicated below:
- 14 1. Interior Guardrails: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 15 2. Railings Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Section 09 90 00 "Painting": SSPC-
 16 SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- 17 D. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated.
 18 Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for
 19 shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
- 20 1. Shop prime uncoated guardrails with primers specified in Section 09 90 00 "Painting".
 21 ~~Do not apply primer to galvanized surfaces.~~
- 22 E. Shop-Painted Finish: Comply with Section 09 90 00 "Painting."
- 23 1. Color: In accordance with Color and Finish Schedule.

24 PART 3 - EXECUTION

25 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 26 A. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify
 27 that locations of concealed reinforcements are clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements
 28 and mark locations if not already done.

29 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- 30 A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
- 31 B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in
 32 location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.



- 1 1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that are coated or finished after
 2 fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without
 3 further cutting or fitting.
 4 2. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).
 5 3. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with
 6 rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet (6 mm in
 7 3.5 m).
- 8 C. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals
 9 and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
- 10 D. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
- 11 E. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for
 12 securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.
- 13 **3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS**
- 14 A. Nonwelded Connections: Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing
 15 components. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws using plastic cement filler colored
 16 to match finish of railings.
- 17 B. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components.
 18 Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is
 19 performed in the shop or in the field.
- 20 C. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal
 21 movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve extending 2 inches (50 mm) beyond joint on either
 22 side, fasten internal sleeve securely to one side, and locate joint within 6 inches (150 mm) of post.
- 23 **3.4 ANCHORING POSTS**
- 24 A. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches (125 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (20 mm) larger than
 25 OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill
 26 annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed
 27 to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
- 28 B. Cover anchorage joint with escutcheon trim ring flange of same metal as post, welded to post after
 29 placing anchoring material.
- 30 C. Leave anchorage joint exposed with 1/8-inch (3-mm) buildup, sloped away from post.
- 31 D. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with oval flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by
 32 conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
- 33 1. For steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.
- 34 E. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit metal sockets cast in concrete.



1 **3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS**

- 2 A. Anchor railing ends at walls with round flanges anchored to wall construction and welded to railing
3 ends.
- 4 B. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing
5 ends.
- 6 C. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets, except where end flanges are used. Locate brackets as
7 indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
- 8 D. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
- 9 1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or
10 lag bolts.
- 11 2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
- 12 3. For wood stud partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into studs or wood backing between
13 studs. Coordinate with carpentry work to locate backing members.
- 14 4. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated wood
15 backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.
- 16 5. For steel-framed partitions, use self-tapping screws fastened to steel framing or to
17 concealed steel reinforcements.
- 18 6. For steel-framed partitions, use toggle bolts installed through flanges of steel framing or
19 through concealed steel reinforcements.

20 **3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- 21 A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded
22 areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to
23 comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
- 24 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
- 25 B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded
26 areas of shop paint are specified in Section 09 90 00 "Painting".

27 **3.7 PROTECTION**

- 28 A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective
29 coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial
30 Completion.

31 **END OF SECTION 05 52 13**



1 **SECTION 05 73 00 – ILLUMINATED DECORATIVE METAL HANDRAILINGS**
2

3 **PART 1 -- GENERAL**

4 **1.1 SCOPE OF WORK**

- 5 A. Fabricate and install illuminated decorative metal railings in accordance with the requirements set forth
6 in this section.
7

8 **1.2 ADDITIONAL WORK INCLUDED IN THIS SECTION**

- 9 A. Field measuring.
10 B. Coordinating and attachment to Guardrail system.
11

12 **1.3 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED IN OTHER SECTIONS**

- 13 A. Section 05 52 00: Metal Railings
14 B. Division 26: Lighting
15

16 **1.4 STRUCTURAL REQUIREMENTS**

- 17 A. Handrails
18 1. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
19 2. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
20 3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
21 B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
22 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
23

24 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 25 A. Electrician Qualifications: Licensed in State of Florida.
26 B. Fabricator Qualifications: Furnish references listing projects of similar size and scope.
27 C. Installer Qualifications: Furnish references listing projects of similar size and scope.
28 D. Regulatory Requirements
29 1. Components and installation are to be in accordance with state and local code authorities
30 2. Components and installation are to follow current ADA and ICC/ANSI A117.1 guidelines.
31 E. Certifications
32 1. Furnish certification that components and fittings are furnished by the same manufacturer or
33 approved by the primary component manufacturer.
34 2. Furnish certification that components were installed in accordance to the manufacturer's
35 engineering data to meet the specified design loads.
36 F. Pre-Installation Meeting
37 1. Prior to the beginning of work, conduct a pre-job conference at the job site.
38 2. Provide seven calendar days advance written notice ensuring the attendance by competent
39 authorized representatives of the fabricator, building owner's representative, architect and
40 subcontractors whose work interfaces with the work of this section.
41 3. Review the specifications to determine any potential problems, changes, scheduling, unique job
42 site conditions, installation requirements and procedures and any other information pertinent to the
43 installation.
44 4. Record the results of the conference and furnish copies to all participants.
45

46 **1.6 REFERENCES**

- 47
48 A. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC)
49 1. Manual of Steel Construction
50 B. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI)
51 1. Steel Products Manual; Stainless and Heat Resisting Steel.
52 2. Code of Standard Practice



- 1 C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
 2 1. A 167 Specification for Stainless and Heat Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and
 3 Strip.
 4 2. A 269 Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General
 5 Service.
 6 3. A 276 Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Bars and Shapes.
 7 4. A 312 Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipe.
 8 5. A 554 Welded Stainless Steel Mechanical Tubing
 9 6. A 582 Free Machining Stainless and Heat Resisting Steel Bars.
 10 7. E 84 Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
 11 8. E 894 Standard Test Methods for Anchorage of Permanent Metal Railing Systems and Rails for
 12 Buildings.
 13 D. American Welding Society (AWS)
 14 1. Specifications for Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes.
 15 E. Americans With Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG)
 16 L. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM) and National Ornamental and
 17 Miscellaneous Metals Association (NOMMA)
 18 1. Metal Finishes Manual
 19 M. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
 20 1. 101 Life Safety Code
 21

22 1.7 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- 23 A. Submit shop drawings and product data under provisions of Section 01 33 00.
 24 1. Show sections and plans of stairs, dimensions and assembly of components.
 25 a. Handrail
 26 b. Brackets
 27 c. Reinforcements
 28 d. Anchors
 29 e. Welded and bolted connections
 30 2. Show field connections
 31 B. Indicate component details, materials, finishes, connection and joining methods, and the relationship
 32 to adjoining work.
 33 C. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions under provisions of Section 01 33 00.
 34 D. Samples:
 35 1. Submit duplicate samples of railing showing style and finish. One approved sample will be returned
 36 to contractor.
 37 2. Submit sample(s) of brackets.
 38 3. Certificates:
 39 a. Furnish certification and calculations by an engineer registered in the state where the project is
 40 located showing that safety requirements are met.
 41 E. Substitutions:
 42 1. Any changes in specified material must meet requirements of Section 01 25 00 Substitution
 43 Procedures.
 44 2. Changes in architectural details to fabricator's standard procedures will be allowed when
 45 appearance and strength are not affected.
 46

47 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- 48 A. Deliver materials to the job site in good condition and properly protected against damage to finished
 49 surfaces.
 50 B. Storage on site:
 51 1. Store material in a location and in a manner to avoid damage. Stacking shall be done in a way,
 52 which will prevent bending.
 53 2. Store material in a clean, dry location away from uncured concrete and masonry. Cover with
 54 waterproof paper, tarpaulin, or polyethylene sheeting in a manner that will permit circulation of air
 55 inside the covering.



3. Keep handling on site to a minimum. Exercise particular care to avoid damage to finishes of material.

PART 2 -- PRODUCTS

2.1 BASIS OF DESIGN MANUFACTURER

- A. Railing pipe and components shall be as manufactured or supplied by The Wagner Companies; P.O. Box 423; Butler, WI 53007. Phone: 888-243-6914. Fax: 414-214-0550. Web site: www.wagnercompanies.com. E-mail: info@mailwagner.com.

2.2 MATERIALS AND FINISHES

- A. Stainless Steel: Type 304.
1. Bar: ASTM A 167
 2. Pipe and Tubing: ASTM A 269 & A 312.
 3. Finish: Dark BronzE powder coated finish Selected by Architect from Manufacturer's standard RAL finishes.

2.3 RAILING SYSTEM

- A. Material shall conform to 2.2 and be finished in accordance with 2.2
- B. Rails: Fabricate rails from stainless steel.
- C. Lumenrail LED Lighted Railing:
1. Insert LED light stick into Wagner slotted tube.
 - a. Source: Selected high brightness LED
 - b. Life (L70/ 70% brightness): 50,000 hours
 - c. Light Output: Lumenrail Standard Output, 4000K Beam Angle: 60°; confirm in Submittal Phase.
 - d. Housing: Extruded Aluminum
 - e. Mounting: Clip System
 - f. Listings: ETL Listed for wet or dry locations.
 - g. Length: as necessary for location and conditions.
 - h. Power Requirement: 24V
 - i. Power Consumption: Lumenrail 4 W/ft
 - j. Power Supply: 24V/100W
 - k. Input Voltage to Power Supply: 120-277
 - l. Temperature Range: -40° C through +60° C
 - m. Product Rating: Interior and Exterior Applications, ETL, Class 2 circuit.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. Mechanical fasteners used in the assembly of stainless steel railings shall be manufactured from stainless steel.

2.5 HANDRAIL BRACKETS

- A. Stainless steel; cast: Wagner #4 brushed finish (To be selected by Architect).

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Form rail-to-end post connections and changes in rail direction by radius elbows.
- B. Cut material square and remove burrs from all exposed edges, with no chamfer.
- C. Make exposed joints butt tight and flush.
- D. Close exposed ends of pipe handrail by use of appropriate end cap.
- E. Verify dimensions on site prior to shop fabrication.

PART 3 -- EXECUTION

3.1 METAL INTERACTION



- 1 A. Separate dissimilar materials

2 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- 3 A. Install in accordance with shop drawings and manufacturer's instructions at locations indicated on the
4 drawings.
5 B. Erect work square and level, horizontal or parallel to rake of steps or ramp, rigid, and free from
6 distortion or defects detrimental to appearance or performance.
7

8 **3.3 PROTECTION**

- 9 A. Protect railing system and finish from damage during construction.
10

11 **3.4 CLEANING**

- 12 A. As installation is completed, wash thoroughly using clean water and soap; rinse with clean water.
13 B. Do not use acid solution, steel wool or other harsh abrasives.
14 C. If stain remains after washing, remove finish and restore in accordance with *NAAMM/NOMMA Metal*
15 *Finishes Manual*.
16

17 **3.4 REPAIR OF DEFECTIVE WORK**

- 18 A. Remove stained or otherwise defective work and replace with material that meets specification
19 requirements.
20 B. Repair damaged finish as directed by Architect
21 C. Replace defective or damaged components as directed by Architect.
22

23 **END OF SECTION 05 73 00**



1 **SECTION 05 73 13 - GLAZED DECORATIVE METAL RAILINGS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Glazed decorative metal railings.

- 9 B. Related Requirements:

- 10 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking for anchoring railings.

11 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 12 A. Railings: Guards, handrails, and similar devices used for protection of occupants at open-sided
13 floor and exterior deck areas and for pedestrian guidance and support, visual separation, or wall
14 protection.

15 **1.4 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING**

- 16 A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and
17 directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items
18 with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver items to Project
19 site in time for installation.

20 **1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 21 A. Product Data:

- 22 1. Metal railings assembled from standard components.
23 2. Glass products.
24 3. Glazing cement and accessories for structural glass railings.
25 4. Sealant and accessories for structural glass railings.
26 5. Fasteners.
27 6. Wood rails.
28 7. Lacquer for copper alloys.
29 8. Shop primer.
30 9. Bituminous paint.
31 10. Nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.
32 11. Anchoring cement.



- 1 B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- 2 1. Chain-of-Custody Certificates: For certified wood products. Include statement of costs.
- 3 C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- 4 D. Samples for Initial Selection: For products involving selection of color, texture, or design,
5 **including mechanical finishes**.
- 6 E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required.
- 7 1. Sections of each distinctly different linear railing member, including handrails, top rails,
8 posts, and balusters.
- 9 2. Base channel.
- 10 3. Each type of glass and glass edge required.
- 11 4. Fittings and brackets.
- 12 5. Assembled Samples of railing systems, made from full-size components, including top
13 rail, post, handrail, **structural glass balusters,** **and glass-infill panels**. Show method
14 of finishing members at intersections. Samples need not be full height.
- 15 F. Delegated Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance
16 requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified
17 professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

18 **1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 19 A. Qualification Data: For **professional engineer** **testing agency**.
- 20 B. Product Test Reports: For tests performed by a qualified testing agency, in accordance with
21 ASTM E894, ASTM E935, ASTM E2353, and ASTM E2358.
- 22 C. Evaluation Reports: From ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities
23 having jurisdiction.
- 24 1. For glazed decorative metal railings.
- 25 2. For post-installed anchors.

26 **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 27 A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate
28 aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
- 29 1. Build mockups for each form and finish of glass-infill panel railing consisting of two posts,
30 top rail, handrail, glass-infill panel, and anchorage system components that are full height
31 and are not less than **24 inches (600 mm)** in length.
- 32 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the
33 completed work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

34 **1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- 35 A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with
36 railings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop



1 Drawings.

2 **1.9 WARRANTY**

3 A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Glazed decorative metal railing
 4 manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty
 5 period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that
 6 are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to
 7 manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially
 8 obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced
 9 laminated-glass standard.

10 1. Warranty Period: **[Ten][10]** years from date of Substantial Completion.

11 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

12 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

13 A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000
 14 "Quality Requirements," to design glazed decorative metal railings, including attachment to
 15 building construction.

16 B. General: In engineering railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable
 17 design working stresses of railing materials based on the following:

- 18 1. Aluminum: The lesser of minimum yield strength divided by 1.65, or minimum ultimate
 19 tensile strength divided by 1.95.
- 20 2. Copper Alloys: 60 percent of minimum yield strength.
- 21 3. Stainless Steel: 60 percent of minimum yield strength.
- 22 4. Steel: 72 percent of minimum yield strength.
- 23 5. Glass: 25 percent of mean modulus of rupture (50 percent probability of breakage), as
 24 listed in "Mechanical Properties" in AAMA CW-12, "Structural Properties of Glass."

25 C. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, are to withstand
 26 the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under
 27 conditions indicated:

28 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:

- 29 a. Uniform load of **50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m)** applied in any direction.
- 30 b. Concentrated load of **200 lbf (0.89 kN)** applied in any direction.
- 31 c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

32 2. Structural Glass Railings and Glass-Infill Panels:

- 33 a. Concentrated load of **50 lbf (0.22 kN)** applied horizontally on an area of **1 sq. ft.**
 34 **(0.093 sq. m).**
- 35 b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

36 3. For structural glass railings, support each section of top rail **[and handrail]** by a minimum
 37 of three glass panels or by other means so railings will remain in place if any one glass
 38 panel fails.



- 1 a. Support top rail **[and handrail]**ends such that railings remains in place if end glass
2 panel fails.

3 **2.2 GLAZED DECORATIVE METAL RAILINGS**

- 4 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by the**
5 **following][provide products by one of the following][available manufacturers offering**
6 **products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the**
7 **following]:**

- 8 1. **[ATR Technologies, Inc.]**
9 2. **[C.R. Laurence Co., Inc.; CRH Americas, Inc.]**
10 3. **[CraneVeyor Corp]**
11 4. **[Glass Vice USA]**
12 5. **[Greco; CSW Industrials Inc.]**
13 6. **[Hollaender Architectural Railing Systems; Hollaender Mfg. Co.]**
14 7. **[Hollaender Mfg. Co.]**
15 8. **[Julius Blum & Co., Inc.]**
16 9. **[Livers Bronze Co.]**
17 10. **[Morse Industries]**
18 11. **[Southwest Metalsmiths, Inc.]**
19 12. **[TACO Metals Inc.]**
20 13. **[Trex Commercial Products, Inc.]**
21 14. **[Tri Tech, Inc.]**
22 15. **[Tuttle, a Dant Clayton Division]**
23 16. **[VIVA Railings, LLC]**
24 17. **[Wagner Companies (The); R&B Wagner, Inc.]**

- 25 B. Source Limitations for Laminated Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

- 26 C. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in the Specifications establishes requirements
27 for railing system's aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are
28 indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies
29 as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.

- 30 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with
31 Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to
32 Architect for review.

33 **2.3 METALS, GENERAL**

- 34 A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller
35 marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
- 36 B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Same metal and finish as supported rails unless otherwise
37 indicated.

38 **2.4 STAINLESS STEEL**

- 39 A. Tubing: ASTM A554, **[Grade MT 304]**
- 40 B. Pipe: ASTM A312/A312M, **[Grade TP 304]**



- 1 C. Castings: ASTM A743/A743M, [**Grade CF 8 or Grade CF 20**]
 2 D. Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar: ASTM A666 or ASTM A240/A240M, [**Type 304**]
 3 E. Bars and Shapes: ASTM A276, [**Type 304**]

4 **2.5 GLASS AND GLAZING PRODUCTS, GENERAL**

- 5 A. Glazing Publications: Comply with written instructions of glass product manufacturers and
 6 organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications
 7 for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- 8 1. NGA/GANA Publications: [**"GANA Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and**]"GANA
 9 Glazing Manual."
- 10 B. Safety Glazing: Glazing is to comply with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- 11 C. Safety Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark glass with certification label of [**the SGCC**][**the**
 12 **SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having**
 13 **jurisdiction**][**or**][**manufacturer**]. Label is to indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass,
 14 thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- 15 D. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated)
 16 unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Class 1 and low-iron clear, or Class 2
 17 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
- 18 E. Sealant and Accessories for Structural Glass Railings: Sealant, gaskets, setting blocks, shims,
 19 and related accessories as recommended or supplied by railing manufacturer for installing
 20 structural glazing in metal base channels.

21 **2.6 GLASS HANDRAILS AND GUARDS**

- 22 A. Laminated Glass Handrails and Guards: ASTM C1172, Type II with two plies of glass bonded
 23 together by an interlayer.
- 24 1. Construction: Laminate glass with [**polyvinyl butyral interlayer**][**or**][**ionoplast polymer**
 25 **interlayer**] to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written instructions.
 26 2. Interlayer Thickness **0.060 inch (1.52 mm)**.
 27 3. Kind: [**LT (laminated tempered)**].
 28 4. Glass Color: Inner-ply [**clear** outer-ply [**clear**].
 29 5. Interlayer Color: [**Clear**]
 30 6. Glass Piles for Structural Glass Balusters: Thickness required by structural loads, but not
 31 less than 8.0mm thick each.

32 **2.7 FASTENERS**

- 33 A. Fastener Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:
- 34 1. Aluminum Components: [**Type 304**][**Type 316**] stainless steel fasteners.
 35 2. Stainless Steel Components: [**Type 304**][**Type 316**] stainless steel fasteners.
 36 3. Copper-Alloy (Bronze) Components: Silicon bronze (Alloy 651 or Alloy 655) fasteners [
 37 **where concealed; muntz metal (Alloy 280) fasteners where exposed**].



- 1 4. Copper-Alloy (Brass) Components: Silicon bronze (Alloy 651 or Alloy 655) fasteners[
 2 **where concealed; brass (Alloy 260 or Alloy 360) fasteners where exposed**].
 3 5. Dissimilar Metals: [**Type 304**][**Type 316**] stainless steel fasteners.
- 4 B. Fasteners for Anchoring to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class
 5 required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction
 6 indicated[**and capable of withstanding design loads**].
- 7 C. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching railings to
 8 other work unless [**otherwise indicated**][**exposed fasteners are unavoidable**][**exposed**
 9 **fasteners are the standard fastening method for railings indicated**].
- 10 1. Provide [**Phillips**][**tamper-resistant**][**square or hex socket**] flat-head machine screws
 11 for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- 12 D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to design
 13 load, in accordance with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based
 14 on ICC-ES AC193[**or ICC-ES AC308**].
- 15 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with
 16 ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/ASTM F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
- 17 **2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**
- 18 A. Handrail Brackets: [**Cast stainless steel**, center of rail **3-1/8 inches (79.4 mm)** from face of
 19 structural glass balusters.
- 20 B. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout
 21 complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by
 22 manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- 23 C. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion
 24 cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching,
 25 and grouting compound.
- 26 **2.9 FABRICATION OF METAL RAILINGS**
- 27 A. Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes
 28 and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage[, **but not less than that required to support**
 29 **structural loads**].
- 30 B. Assemble railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and
 31 assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly
 32 mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural
 33 value of joined pieces.
- 34 C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius
 35 of approximately **1/32 inch (1 mm)** unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas
 36 on exposed surfaces.
- 37 D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- 38 E. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide



- 1 weep holes where water may accumulate. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.
- 2 F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- 3 G. Mechanical Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings.
- 4 Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
- 5 1. Fabricate splice joints for field connection using an epoxy structural adhesive if this is
- 6 manufacturer's standard splicing method.
- 7 H. Form changes in direction as follows:
- 8 1. As detailed.
- 9 2. By bending to smallest radius that will not result in distortion of railing member.
- 10 I. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain
- 11 cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or
- 12 otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- 13 J. Close exposed ends of hollow railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- 14 K. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, handrail brackets,
- 15 miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work where
- 16 indicated.
- 17 1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-
- 18 resistant fillers, or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural
- 19 supports and to prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- 20 L. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry
- 21 work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings.
- 22 Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.

23 2.10 FABRICATION OF GLASS PANELS AND BALUSTERS

- 24 A. Fabricate glass to sizes and shapes required; provide for proper edge clearance and bite on
- 25 glazing panels.
- 26 B. Structural Glass Balusters: Provide [**laminated, tempered**] structural glass balusters[**for**
- 27 **straight sections**].
- 28 1. Edge Finish: [**Grind smooth and flat polish exposed edges of glass, including those**
- 29 **at open joints, to produce smooth, square edges with glass edge finishes**].
- 30 2. Factory-bond structural glass balusters to aluminum base and top-rail channels in railing
- 31 manufacturer's plant using [**glazing cement**][**sealant**] to comply with manufacturer's
- 32 written instructions[, **unless field glazing is standard with manufacturer**].
- 33 3. Fabricate structural glass balusters to maintain equal length glass widths and uniform
- 34 spacing of [**1/2 inch (13 mm)**]**<Insert spacing>** between glass balusters.

35 2.11 METAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS, GENERAL

- 36 A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable,
- 37 temporary protective covering before shipment.



1 B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable.
 2 Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-
 3 half of the range of approved Samples. Variations in appearance of other components are
 4 acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to
 5 minimize contrast.

6 C. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of
 7 railings.

8 **2.12 STAINLESS STEEL FINISHES**

9 A. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.

10 B. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.

11 1. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.

12 C. Stainless Steel Tubing Finishes:

13 1. 180-Grit Polished Finish: Uniform, directionally textured finish.

14 D. Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Bar Finishes:

15 1. Directional Satin Finish: ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4.

16 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

17 **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

18 A. Comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions for installing glazed decorative
 19 metal railings, accessories, and other components.

20 B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal railings.

21 1. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.

22 2. Install railings level, plumb, square, true to line; without distortion, warp, or rack.

23 3. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established
 24 lines and levels.

25 4. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of metal railing components that have been coated
 26 or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or
 27 other means without further cutting or fitting.

28 5. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of **1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m)**.

29 6. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel
 30 with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed **1/4 inch in 12 feet**
 31 **(5 mm in 3 m)**.

32 C. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals
 33 and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

34 1. Coat concealed surfaces of [aluminum][and][copper alloys] that will be in contact with
 35 grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with [shop primer][bituminous
 36 paint].



- 1 D. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
- 2 E. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for
- 3 securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

4 3.2 METAL RAILING CONNECTIONS

- 5 A. Nonwelded Connections:
- 6 1. Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing components.
- 7 2. Use wood blocks and padding to prevent damage to railing members and fittings.
- 8 3. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws using plastic cement filler colored to
- 9 match finish of railings.

10 3.3 METAL ANCHORING POSTS

- 11 A. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions,
- 12 connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
- 13 1. For stainless steel railings, weld flanges to posts and bolt to metal-supporting surfaces.
- 14 B. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit metal sockets cast in concrete.

15 3.4 INSTALLATION OF GLASS BALUSTERS

- 16 A. Structural Glass Railings:
- 17 1. Install assembly to comply with railing manufacturer's written instructions.
- 18 2. Attach base channel to building structure, then insert and connect factory-fabricated and -
- 19 assembled glass balusters[**if glass was bonded to base and top-rail channels in**
- 20 **factory**].
- 21 3. For field-assembled balusters, attach base channel to building structure, insert glass in
- 22 base channel, and bond with **[glazing cement]**.
- 23 a. Support glass balusters in base channel at quarter points with channel-shaped
- 24 setting blocks that also act as shims to maintain uniform space for glazing cement.
- 25 b. Fill remaining space in base channel with **[glazing cement]** for uniform support of
- 26 glass.
- 27 4. Adjust spacing of glass balusters so gaps between balusters are equal before securing in
- 28 position.
- 29 5. Erect glass railings under direct supervision of manufacturer's authorized technical
- 30 personnel.

31 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- 32 A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections
- 33 and to prepare test reports. Payment for these services will be made **[by Owner][from the**
- 34 **testing and inspecting allowance, as authorized by Change Orders]**.
- 35 B. Extent and Testing Methodology: Testing agency will randomly select completed railing



1 assemblies for testing that are representative of different railing designs and conditions in the
2 completed Work. Test railings in accordance with ASTM E894, ASTM E935, ASTM E2353, and
3 ASTM E2358 for compliance with performance requirements.

4 C. Remove and replace railings where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified
5 requirements unless they can be repaired in a manner satisfactory to Architect and comply with
6 specified requirements.

7 D. Perform additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, to determine compliance of
8 replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

9 **3.6 CLEANING**

10 A. Clean aluminum and stainless steel by washing thoroughly with water and soap, rinsing with
11 clean water, and wiping dry.

12 B. Clean copper alloys in accordance with metal finisher's written instructions in a manner that
13 leaves an undamaged and uniform finish matching approved Sample.

14 C. Clean and polish glass as recommended in writing by manufacturer. Wash both exposed
15 surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections
16 that establish date of Substantial Completion.

17 D. Clean wood rails by wiping with a damp cloth and then wiping dry.

18 **3.7 PROTECTION**

19 A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective
20 coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial
21 Completion.

22 B. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of
23 correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required
24 alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

25 **END OF SECTION 05 73 13**



1 **SECTION 06 10 00 - ROUGH CARPENTRY**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes the following:

- 5 1. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
- 6 2. Wood furring and grounds.
- 7 3. Wood sleepers.
- 8 4. Plywood backing panels.

9 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

10 **2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL**

11 A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency
12 is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency
13 certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the
14 ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

- 15 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
- 16 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on
17 end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade
18 compliance issued by grading agency.
- 19 3. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

20 **2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER**

21 A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA C2, except that lumber that is not in
22 contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated
23 according to AWPA C31 with inorganic boron (SBX).

- 24 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no
25 arsenic or chromium.

26 B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.

27 C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board
28 of Review.

29 D. Application: Treat all rough carpentry, unless otherwise indicated and the following:

- 30 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar
31 members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
- 32 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in
33 contact with masonry or concrete.



3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches (460 mm) above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

NOTE: In accordance with Section 453.11, FBC, Building, "Fire Retardant Treated Wood shall not be used in permanent educational facilities. For areas where this may be specified, ie., backer boards for equipment, etc., Contractor shall utilize Interior/exterior plywood as called for with an intumescent coating (all 6 sides). Intumescent paint shall be applied to exceed ASTM E119 listing standards and are NFPA Code Compliant. Applied coating shall be applied per Manufacturer's recommendation. If a decorative finish is to be achieved the coating utilized shall be able to be finished with a topcoat paint finish.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
 1. Blocking.
 2. Nailers.
 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
 4. Cants.
 5. Furring.
 6. Grounds.
- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 grade lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content of any species.
- C. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
 1. Mixed southern pine, No. 2 grade; SPIB.
 2. Eastern softwoods, No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA.
 3. Northern species, No. 2 Common grade; NLGA.
 4. Western woods, Construction or No. 2 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.

2.4 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 5/8 inch nominal thickness.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified.



- 1 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative
2 treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating
3 complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- 4 B. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- 5 C. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6);
6 with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

7 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

8 **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- 9 A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and
10 fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit.
11 Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for
12 attaching other construction.
- 13 B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction,"
14 unless otherwise indicated.
- 15 C. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated
16 lumber.
- 17 D. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated,
18 complying with the following:
- 19 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
20 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
21 3. Table 23-II-B-1, "Nailing Schedule," and Table 23-II-B-2, "Wood Structural Panel Roof
22 Sheathing Nailing Schedule," in ICBO's Uniform Building Code.
23 4. Table 2305.2, "Fastening Schedule," in BOCA's BOCA National Building Code.
24 5. Table 2306.1, "Fastening Schedule," in SBCCI's Standard Building Code.
25 6. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2),
26 "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family
27 Dwellings.
28 7. Table 602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table 602.3(2),
29 "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International One- and Two-Family Dwelling Code.

30 **3.2 PROTECTION**

- 31 A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite
32 protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment.
33 Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

34 **END OF SECTION 06 10 00**

1 **SECTION 06 16 00 - SHEATHING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes the following:

5 1. Wall sheathing.

6 **1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

7 A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component
8 materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

9 **1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

10 A. Stack panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air
11 circulation around stacks and under coverings.

12 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

13 **2.1 WALL SHEATHING**

14 A. Basis of Design: Densglass Gold® Exterior Sheathing.

15 1. Type and Thickness: **5/8 inch** thick.

16 B. Submittals: Submit product data.

17 **2.2 FASTENERS**

18 A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type recommended by manufacturer.

19 1. For wall and roof sheathing panels, provide fasteners with corrosion-protective coating
20 having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.

21 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

22 **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

23 1. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as recommended by manufacturer.

24 B. Coordinate sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials
25 are installed in sequence and manner that exclude exterior moisture.



- 1 C. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of
2 structural support elements.

3 **3.2 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION**

- 4 A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
5 1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
6 2. Install boards with a 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts
7 structural elements.
8 3. Install boards with a 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) gap where they abut masonry or similar materials.

9 **3.3 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION**

- 10 A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturers written instructions.
11 1. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches (100 mm), except that at
12 flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
13 2. Lap flashing over weather-resistant building paper at bottom and sides of openings.
14 3. Lap weather-resistant building paper over flashing at heads of openings.
15 4. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller.

16 **3.4 PROTECTION**

- 17 A. Provide protective covering as recommended by manufacturer; apply immediately after
18 sheathing is installed.

19 **END OF SECTION 06 16 00**



1 **SECTION 06 20 23 - FINISH CARPENTRY**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 6
7 A. This Section includes the following:
8 1. Miscellaneous Wood Trim.

9
10
11 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 12
13 A. Product Data: For each type of factory-fabricated product and process indicated.
14
15 B. Samples: For the following:
16 1. Each type item.

17
18 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

19
20 **2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL**

- 21
22 A. Lumber Standards: Comply with DOC PS 20, "American Softwood Lumber Standard," for
23 lumber and with applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by the American
24 Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review.
25
26 B. Hardwood Plywood: Comply with HPVA HP-1, "Interim Voluntary Standard for Hardwood and
27 Decorative Plywood."

28
29 **2.2 WOOD TRIM**

- 30
31 A. Species and Grade or Cut: Clear select Maple, stain grade. See Contract Document Drawings
32 for sizes.
33
34 B. Refer to Section 09 90 00 for painting.

35
36 **2.3 WOOD TIMBERS**

- 37
38 A. Species and Grade or Cut: Select Sinker Cypress. Size: As noted in the Contract Document
39 Drawings

40
41 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

42
43 **3.1 PREPARATION**

- 44
45 A. Condition finish carpentry to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas before
46 installation, for a minimum of 24 hours.
47
48 B. Prime paint and back-prime paint lumber for painted finish in exterior walls. Comply with
49 requirements for surface preparation and application in Division 9 Section "Painting."

50
51 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- 52
53 A. Install finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials. Use concealed
54 shims where required for alignment. Scribe and cut finish carpentry to fit adjoining work.
55 Refinish and seal cuts. Countersink fasteners and fill voids prior to painting.
56



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

- B. Standing and Running Trim: Install with minimum number of joints practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Stagger joints in adjacent and related trim. Cope at returns and miter at corners.
- C. Repair damaged or defective finish carpentry where possible to eliminate functional or visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace finish carpentry. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

END OF SECTION 06 20 00

SECTION 06 20 00 - ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.01 SCOPE OF WORK**

- A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required and install architectural woodwork as hereinafter specified.
- B. These Specifications are intended to give a general description of what is required, but do not cover all details which will vary in accordance with the requirements of the specific application. It is, however, intended to cover the furnishing, the shop testing, the delivery and complete installation and field testing, of all materials, equipment and all appurtenances for the complete installation, whether specifically mentioned in these Specifications or not.

1.02 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

- A. Extent of each type of architectural woodwork is indicated on drawings and in schedules. Types of architectural woodwork include the following:
 - 1. Architectural cabinets including:
 - a. Dais
 - b. Monumental Stair Decorative Wood Panel
 - c. Wood desk, cabinets.
 - b. Wood tops.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. AWI Quality Standard: Comply with applicable requirements of "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" AWI Section 400 and its Division 400B published by the Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI), except as otherwise indicated.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Arrange for installation of architectural woodwork items by same firm which fabricated them.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS:

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data for each product and process specified as work of this section and incorporated into items of architectural woodwork during fabrication, finishing, and installation.
- B. Quality Certification: Submit woodwork Manufacturer's (Fabricator's) certification, stating that fabricated woodwork complies with quality grades and other requirements indicated.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large scale details, attachment devices and other components.
- D. Samples: Submit the following samples:
 - 1. Wood Tops w/ five coats of high-quality polyurethane finish.
 - 2. Exposed cabinet hardware, one unit of each type and finish.
 - 3. Sample of type III Kevlar
- E. Mockup:
 - 1. Provide one (1) partial scale mock-up of the typical Board member desk, fabricated with materials chosen by the mock up fabricator (no cardboard). Intent is for "massing only".

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING:**ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK**

- 1 A. Protect woodwork during transit, delivery, storage and handling to prevent damage, soiling and
2 deterioration.
3
4 B. Do not deliver woodwork, until painting, wet work, grinding and similar operations which could
5 damage, soil or deteriorate woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If, due to
6 unforeseen circumstances, woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in
7 areas meeting requirements specified for installation areas.
8

9 **1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS:**

- 10 A. Conditioning: Woodwork Manufacturer and Installer shall advise Contractor of temperature and
11 humidity requirements for woodwork installation and storage areas. Do not install woodwork until
12 required temperature and relative humidity have been stabilized and will be maintained in
13 installation areas. All solid wood shall have a minimum 72 hour's stabilization period.
14
15 B. Maintain temperature and humidity in installation area as required to maintain moisture content of
16 installed woodwork within a 1.0 percent tolerance of optimum moisture content, from date of
17 installation through remainder of construction period. Require Woodwork Manufacturer to establish
18 optimum moisture content and required temperature and humidity conditions.
19

20 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

21 **2.01 FABRICATION, GENERAL:**

- 22
23
24 A. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for moisture
25 content of lumber at time of fabrication and for relative humidity conditions in the installation areas.
26
27 B. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated with openings and mortises
28 precut, where possible, to receive hardware and other items and work.
29
30 C. Ease edges to a 1/16" radius, for corners of cabinets and edges of solid wood (lumber) members
31 less than 1" in nominal thickness, 1/8" radius for edges of rails and similar members over 1" in
32 nominal thickness.
33
34 D. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work before shipment to
35 project site to maximum extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment
36 and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming,
37 and fitting.
38
39 E. Pre-Cut Openings: Fabricate architectural woodwork with pre-cut openings, where possible, to
40 receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work and similar items. Locate
41 openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams for proper size and shape.
42 Smooth edges of cutoffs and, where located in countertops and similar exposures seal edges of
43 cutouts with a water-resistant coating.
44
45 F. Measurements: Before proceeding with fabrication of woodwork required to be fitted to other
46 construction, obtain field measurements and verify dimensions and shop drawing details as
47 required for accurate fit.
48

49 **2.02 FINISH WOOD:**

- 50
51 A. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI Section 400 and its Division 400A.
52
53 B. Finish:
54 1. Wood: Cypress
55
56 C. Semi-Exposed Surfaces:
57 1. Premium Grade hardwood of woodworkers' option.

ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

- 1
2 D. Concealed Surfaces:
3 1. Custom Grade of wood workers' option.
4

5 **2.03 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORY MATERIALS:**
6

- 7 A. Hardware Standard: Comply with ANSI-BHMA A156.9 "American National Standard for Cabinet
8 Hardware" for items indicated by reference to BHMA numbers or referenced to this standard.
9
10 B. Hardware Finishes: Comply with BHMA 1301 for finishes indicated by BHMA Code Numbers or if
11 not otherwise indicated, provide finishes complying with requirements indicated below.
12
13 C. Adjustable Shelf Brackets: K & V 2562C flush mounted standards with #256 shelf support clips
14 (nickel finish).
15
16 D. Drawer Guides: K & V 1600-21 extension self closing drawer slide.
17
18 E. Concealed Hinges: Blum 95M5650 dull chrome finish (without loose pin). One pair for doors up to
19 40" in height; 1-1/2 pair for higher doors or as recommended by manufacturer.
20
21 F. Pulls: Stanley 4484 with 28 finish (satin aluminum anodized).
22
23 G. Magnetic Catches: All doors - EPCO #592.
24
25 H. Locks: Schlage 46-002 or 46-004 with trim collar 36-031 as required for specific conditions. Locks
26 should be applied to all doors and drawers as indicated. Controlled key blanks and registered key
27 plan shall be used to assure complete security system. All locks to be grandmastered with each
28 room submastered. Furnish three keys per lock, on sets of KA locks, with factory code stamped on
29 key bow. Each one properly identified by a key tag. Furnish five master keys per set and six
30 grandmaster keys. Coordinate keying with finish hardware furnished under Section 08710.
31

32 **2.04 FASTENERS AND ANCHORS:**
33

- 34 A. Screws: Select material, type, size and finish required for each use. Comply with FS FF-S-111 for
35 applicable requirements.
36
37 B. For steel framing supports, provide anchors as indicated on drawings.
38
39 C. Nails: Select material, type, size and finish required for each use. Comply with FS FF-N-105 for
40 applicable requirements.
41
42 D. Anchors: Select material, type, size and finish required by each substrate for secure anchorage.
43

44 **2.06 FACTORY FINISHING OF INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK:**
45

- 46 A. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI Section 1500, unless otherwise indicated.
47
48 B. General: The entire finish of interior architectural woodwork is work of this section, regardless of
49 whether factory-applied or applied after installation.
50
51 C. Factory Finishing: The extent to which the final finish is applied to architectural woodwork at
52 factory is Contractor's option.
53
54 D. Preparations for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk
55 fasteners, sealing of concealed surfaces and similar preparations for finishing of architectural
56 woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.
57

1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**
2

3 **3.01 PREPARATION:**
4

- 5 A. Condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas prior to
6 installing.
7
8 B. Deliver concrete inserts and similar anchoring devices to be built into substrates, well in advance of
9 time substrates are to be built.
10
11 C. Prior to installation of architectural woodwork, examine shop fabricated work for completion, and
12 complete work as required, including back priming and removal of packing.
13

14 **3.02 INSTALLATION:**
15

- 16 A. Install woodwork plumb, level, true and straight with no distortions. Shim as required using
17 concealed shims. Install to a tolerance of 1/8" in 8'-0" for plumb and level (including tops); and with
18 no variations in flushness of adjoining surfaces.
19
20 B. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, and refinish cut surfaces or repair damaged finish at
21 cuts.
22
23 C. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built-in or directly attached to substrates. Secure to
24 grounds, stripping and blocking with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required
25 for a complete installation. Except where prefinished matching fasteners heads are required, use
26 fine finishing nails for exposed nailing, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork, and matching
27 final finish where transparent finish is indicated.
28
29 D. Cabinets: Install without distortion so that doors and drawers fit openings properly and are
30 accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide
31 unencumbered operation. Complete the installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
32 Maintain veneer sequence matching (if any) of cabinets with transparent finish.
33
34 E. Tops: Anchor securely to base units and other support systems as indicated.
35

36 **3.03 ADJUSTMENT, CLEANING, FINISHING, AND PROTECTION:**
37

- 38 A. Repair damaged and defective woodwork where possible to eliminate defects functionally and
39 visually; where not possible to repair replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
40
41 B. Clean, lubricate and adjust hardware.
42
43 C. Clean woodwork on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces. Touch-up shop-applied finishes to
44 restore damaged or soiled areas.
45
46 D. Complete the finishing work specified as work of this section, to whatever extent not completed at
47 shop or prior to installation of woodwork.
48
49 E. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to Fabricator and Installer,
50 which ensures architectural woodwork being without damage or deterioration at time of substantial
51 completion.
52

53 **END OF SECTION**



1 **SECTION 07 11 13 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 6
7 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
8 Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
9

10 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 11 A. This Section includes the following:
12
13 1. Cold-applied, asphalt emulsion dampproofing.
14
15

16 **1.3 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and
18 Division 1 Specification Sections.
19
20 B. Product data for each type of product specified, including data substantiating that materials
21 comply with requirements for each dampproofing material specified. Include recommended
22 method of application, recommended primer, number of coats, coverage or thickness, and
23 recommended protection course.
24
25 1. Certification by dampproofing manufacturer that products supplied comply with local
26 regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs).
27
28

29 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 30 A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed bituminous
31 dampproofing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a
32 record of successful in-service performance.
33
34 B. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain primary dampproofing materials and primers from one
35 source and by a single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials only as recommended by
36 manufacturer of primary materials.
37
38

39 **1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 40 A. Substrate: Proceed with dampproofing only after substrate construction and penetrating work
41 have been completed.
42
43 B. Weather Limitations: Proceed with dampproofing only when existing and forecasted weather
44 conditions will permit work to be performed according to manufacturer's recommendations and
45 warranty requirements.
46
47

48 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

49
50 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- 51 A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering
52 products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
53
54 1. Cold-Applied, Asphalt Emulsion Dampproofing:
55
56 a. ChemRex, Inc.; Sonneborn Building Products Div.
57



- b. Euclid Chemical Co.
- c. Karnak Chemical Corporation.
- d. Koppers Industries, Inc.
- e. Meadows: W.R. Meadows, Inc.

2.2 BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

- A. General: Provide products recommended by manufacturer for designated application.
- B. Cold-Applied, Asphalt Emulsion Dampproofing: Asphalt-based emulsions recommended by the manufacturer for dampproofing use when applied according to the manufacturer's instructions.
 - 1. Semimastic Grade: Emulsified asphalt semimastic, prepared with mineral-colloid emulsifying agents and containing fibers other than asbestos, complying with ASTM D 1227, Type III or IV.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of projections and substances detrimental to work; comply with recommendations of prime materials manufacturer.
- B. Fill voids, seal joints, and apply bond breakers, if any, as recommended by prime materials manufacturer, with particular attention at construction joints. Voids, crevices or any other imperfections in CMU exterior backup wythe which violate integrity of air / vapor barrier (as judged solely by Architect) shall be parged with portland cement mixture prior to application of bituminuous dampproofing.
- C. Protection of Other Work: Do not allow liquid and mastic compounds to enter and clog drains and conductors. Prevent spillage and migration onto other surfaces of work by masking or otherwise protecting adjoining work.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations except where more stringent requirements are indicated and where Project conditions require extra precautions to ensure satisfactory performance of work.
- B. Application: Apply dampproofing to the following surfaces.
 - 1. Exterior, below-grade surfaces of exterior concrete or masonry walls in contact with earth or other backfill and where space is enclosed on opposite side (where waterproofing is not a project requirement).
 - 2. Back side of concrete or masonry retaining walls and stone facing to prevent percolating of water through the wall or facing (where waterproofing is not a project requirement).
 - 3. Exterior surface of inside wythe of double-wythe, exterior masonry walls above grade, to prevent water-vapor penetration through the wall.
 - 4. Where indicated on the Drawings.
- C. Cold-Applied Asphalt Dampproofing: For exterior surfaces, provide either semi mastic or trowel grade emulsified asphalt dampproofing materials, at Contractor's option.
- D. Apply vertical dampproofing down walls from finished-grade line to top of footing, extend over top of footing, and down a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) over outside face of footing. Extend 12 inches (300 mm) onto intersecting walls and footings, but do not extend onto surfaces exposed to view when the Project is completed.



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15

3.3 COLD-APPLIED, ASPHALT EMULSION DAMPPROOFING

- A. Semi-mastic Grade: Brush apply a coat or coats of asphalt emulsion dampproofing at a rate of 5 gal./100 sq. ft. (2 L/sq. m), to produce a uniform, dry-film thickness of not less than 30 mils (0.8 mm). Spray application may be acceptable provided mil thickness requirements can be met and adequate coverage is obtained. Acceptability of spray application shall be solely determined by Architect.

3.4 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect exterior, below-grade dampproofing membrane from damage until backfill is completed. Remove excess and spilled materials from surfaces not intended to receive dampproofing.

END OF SECTION 07 11 13



SECTION 07 13 26 -SELF ADHERED WATERPROOF UNDERLAYMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 Summary

A. Section Includes: Grace Ice &Water Shield® HT self-adhering membrane as a flashing underlayment.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry
2. Section 07 41 13 – corrugated Metal Panels
3. Section 07 60 00 - Flashing and Sheet Metal

1.02 References

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

1. D412 Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Elastomeric Tension
2. D461 Standard Test Methods for Felt
3. D903 Test Methods for Peel or Stripping Strength of Adhesive Bonds
4. D1970 Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection
5. D3767 Standard Practice for Rubber Measurement of Dimensions
6. E96 Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials

1.03 Submittals

A. Manufacturer's product data sheet and product sample.

1.04 Quality Assurance

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Self-adhesive membrane roofing underlayment shall be manufactured and marketed by R. Grace & Co.–Conn., Grace Construction Products, Cambridge, MA or a firm with a minimum of 25 years experience in the production and sales of self-adhered membrane roofing underlayments.

1.06 Delivery, Storage and Handling

A. The membrane and accessory products shall be handled properly. Read all product labels and Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDSs) for proper handling and disposal. Deliver all materials in manufacturer's unopened packages and store all materials under cover. Do not double stack palletized material. GIWS-062D Printed in U.S.A. 3/07 FA/LI/1M

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.02 Manufacturers and Products

A. Acceptable Products and Manufacturers: Grace Ice &Water Shield HT manufactured by W. R. Grace & Co.–Conn., Grace Construction Products, Cambridge, MA.

2.03 Materials

A. Grace Ice &Water Shield HT is a high temperature self-adhering membrane composed of two waterproofing materials- a rubberized asphalt adhesive combined with a high-performance polymeric film with UV barrier properties. The rubberized asphalt surface is backed with a fold less release paper that protects its adhesive quality. Underlayment has a slip resistant embossed surface to maximize traction and improve safety. Membrane shall conform to the physical properties as listed in the chart below:

2.04 Accessories

A. Accessory Products: Perm-A-Barrier®WB Primer.

Property Value Test Method

Color Gray black

Thickness, membrane 40 mil (1.02 mm) ASTM D3767 procedure A (Section 9.1)

Tensile strength, membrane 250 psi (1720 kN/m²) ASTM D412 (Die C modified)

Elongation, membrane 250% ASTM D412 (Die C modified)

Low temperature flexibility Unaffected @ -20°F (-29°C) ASTM D1970

Adhesion to plywood 3.0 lbs/in. width (525 N/m) ASTM D903



1 Permeance (max) 0.05 Perms (2.9 ng/m²s Pa) ASTM E96
2 Material weight installed (max) 0.22 lb/ft² (1.3 kg/m²) ASTM D461
3

4 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

5 **3.02 Preparation**

- 7 A. Install the membrane directly on a clean, dry, continuous structural substrate. Some suitable substrate
8 materials include plywood, wood composition, wood plank, metal, concrete, or gypsum sheathing.
9 Remove dust, dirt, loose nails, and old roofing materials. Protrusions from the deck area shall be
10 removed. Decks shall have no voids, damaged, or unsupported areas. Repair deck areas before
11 installing the membrane.
- 12 B. Prime concrete, masonry surfaces and DensDeck® with Perm-A-BarrierWB Primer at a rate of 250–
13 350 ft²/gal (6–8 m²/L). Prime wood composition and gypsum sheathing with Perm-A-BarrierWB
14 Primer if adhesion is found to be marginal. (Refer to Technical Letter 12, *Use on Oriented Strand*
15 *Board (OSB) Roof Sheathing.*) Apply at same rate. C. Priming is not required for other suitable
16 surfaces provided that they are clean and dry.

17 **3.03 Installation**

- 18 A. Install in strict accordance with manufacturer's printed application procedures, precautions, and
19 limitations.
20



1 **SECTION 07 14 20 - FLUID APPLIED MEMBRANE WATERPROOFING**

2 **PART 1 — GENERAL**

3 **1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. All of the Contract Documents, including General and Supplementary Conditions and
5 Division 1 General Requirements, apply to the work of this section.

7 **1.02 SUMMARY**

- 8 A. The work of this section includes, but is not limited to, the following:
- 9 1. Single Component Fluid Applied Waterproofing system (at exterior planters as
10 noted in contract documents).
- 11 B. Provide all material and labor necessary to apply a complete polyurethane
12 waterproofing membrane system including all applicable sealants to prevent water
13 penetration at locations indicated.
14

16 **1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- 17 A. The following standards and publications are applicable to the extent referenced in
18 the text.
- 19 B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
- 20 C 836 Standard Specification for High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied
21 Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Separate Wearing
22 Course
- 23 C 794 Standard Test Method for Adhesion-in-Peel of Elastomeric Joint Sealants
- 24 D 412 Standard Test Methods for Rubber Properties in Tension
- 25 D 624 Standard Test Method for Tear Strength of Conventional Vulcanized Rubber
26 and Thermoplastic Elastomers
- 27 D 471 Standard Test Method for Rubber Property—Effect of Liquids
- 28 D 2240 Standard Test Method for Rubber Property—Durometer Hardness
- 29 E 96(B) Plastic Test Standard
30

31 **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- 32 A. Product data:
- 33 1. Material list of items proposed to be provided under this Section include detail
34 sealant and joint sealants.
- 35 2. Manufacturer's specifications and other data needed to prove compliance with
36 the specified requirements, 3 copies of each.
- 37 3. Manufacturer's current recommended installation procedures, which will become
38 the basis for accepting or rejecting actual installation procedures used on the
39 Work.
- 40 4. Written documentation of applicator's qualifications, including reference
41 projects of similar scope and complexity, with current phone contacts of
42 architects and owners for verification.



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data, installation instructions, use limitations and recommendations.
- B. Samples: Submit representative samples of the following for approval:
 - 1. Fluid applied membrane

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Use adequate numbers of skilled workers thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and completely familiar with the specified requirements and methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section.
- B. Applicator qualifications:
 - 1. Applicator shall have at least three years' experience in installing materials of types specified and shall have successfully completed at least three projects of similar scope and complexity.
 - 2. Applicator shall designate a single individual as project foreman who shall be on site at all times during installation.
- C. Materials: Fluid applied waterproofing material shall be single component, moisture cured modified polyurethane. For each type of material required for the work of this section, provide primary materials which are the products of one manufacturer.
- D. Pre-Installation Conference: A pre-installation conference shall be held prior to commencement of field operations to establish procedures to maintain optimum working conditions and to coordinate this work with related and adjacent work. Agenda for meeting shall include review of special details and flashing.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials and products in labeled packages. Store and handle in strict compliance with manufacturer's instructions, recommendations and material safety data sheets. Protect from damage from sunlight, weather, excessive temperatures and construction operations. Remove damaged material from the site and dispose of in accordance with applicable regulations.
 - 1. Do not double-stack pallets of waterproofing material on the job site. Provide cover on top and all sides, allowing for adequate ventilation.
 - 2. Protect waterproofing materials from freezing. In cool temperatures, store the material for several hours at room temperature to facilitate mixing and application.
- B. Sequence deliveries to avoid delays but minimize on-site storage.

1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform work only when existing and forecasted weather conditions are within the limits established by the manufacturer of the materials and products used.



1

2 **1.08 SUBSTRATE CONDITIONS**3 A. Proceed with installation only when substrate construction and preparation work is
4 complete and in condition to receive waterproofing.5 1. Provide surfaces that are clean, dry, sound and free of voids, bug-holes,
6 honeycombs, protrusions, excessive roughness, foreign matter and or other
7 contaminants, which may inhibit application or performance of the
8 waterproofing membrane system.9 2. Using suitable abrasive methods to remove residue of existing surface
10 contaminates including but not limited to the following, laitance, mortar
11 smear, mill scale, rust, loose material and other contaminants from masonry
12 brick and concrete to receive the work of this Section.

13

14 **1.09 WARRANTY**15 A. Deliver to the Owner/Owner's Representative signed copies of the following written
16 warranties against defective materials and workmanship executed for the following
17 periods following date of completion. Warrant that installed waterproofing membrane
18 system shall be free of defects including adhesive failure, cohesive failure, and
19 waterproofing failure resulting from substrate cracking up to 1/16 inch.

20 1. Manufacturer's standard warranty covering materials for five-year period;

21 2. Applicator's standard warranty covering workmanship for two-year period.

22 **PART 2 — PRODUCTS**23 **2.01 MATERIALS**24 A. **Basis of Design - Fluid Applied Waterproofing Membranes: Tremco Tremproof**
25 **250 GC**; single component, modified polyurethane material. Fluid applied
26 membranes shall meet or exceed the performance requirements of ASTM C 836

27

28 **2.02 ACCESSORIES**29 A. Primer: As recommended by waterproofing membrane system
30 manufacturer where applicable31 B. Joint backing: Closed-cell, polyethylene rod as recommended by membrane
32 manufacturer;

33 C. Joint Treatment:

34 1. Acceptable product:

35 a. Dymeric 100; Tremco Inc.

36 D. Protection Board

37 1. Acceptable Product

38 b. 1" EPS Board; Carpenter Inc



- 1 D. Drainage/Protection Board
2 1. Acceptable Product
3 c. Tremdrain 1000 4'x50' roll
4

5 **2.03 OTHER MATERIALS**

- 6 A. Provide other materials, not specifically described but required for a complete and
7 proper installation, as selected by the Contractor and approved by the membrane
8 system manufacturer as compatible.
9

10 **PART 3 — EXECUTION**

11 **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- 12 A. The installer shall examine conditions of substrates and other conditions under which
13 this work is to be performed and notify the contractor, in writing, of circumstances
14 detrimental to the proper completion of the work. Do not proceed with work until
15 unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.
16 1. Verify conformance with manufacturer's requirements.
17 2. Report unsatisfactory conditions in writing to the Owner/Owner's
18 Representative
19 3. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.
20
21

22 **3.02 PREPARATION OF SUBSTRATES**

- 23 A. New concrete shall be water cured, troweled, followed by a light, hair broom finish
24 and in place for 14 days minimum, 28 days preferred. If curing compounds are
25 required, use a type that self dissipates within several days. Surfaces shall be
26 structural sound, dry, and free of oil, grease, dirt, laitance, curing and release agents,
27 and other contamination which may affect the adhesion of the membrane. Motor
28 joints in masonry shall be struck flush with the masonry surface.
29 B. Remove concrete fins, ridges and other projections to provide a smooth surface. As
30 required, grind or fill surface at cold joints where each pour is at a different plane. Fill
31 tie-rod holes, honeycombs, rock pockets, spalls or other voids and indentions with
32 non-shrink grout. Clean metal to a bright finish.
33 C. All contaminates that might otherwise affect the adhesion of the waterproof
34 membrane being installed must be removed.
35 D. Rout, clean, prepare and detail surface cracks in accord with
36 manufacturer's instructions; install backer rod where required.
37 E. Install 1/4" diameter backer rod into corner of all horizontal-to-vertical and vertical to
38 vertical junctures subject to movement and cover with 1" detail cant of approved
39 sealant; install 1" detail cants at all projections.
40 F. Install detail coats, joint and crack treatments, in accord with
41 manufacturer's instructions.



1 G. Allow detail applications to cure in accord with manufacturer's
2 instructions prior to general application of membrane.

3

4 **3.03 INSTALLATION**

5 A. Application shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations on
6 installation.

7 1. Do not apply to wet / damp or contaminated surfaces. Damp conditions are
8 acceptable if passing

9 2. Substrate surface temperature shall be above 40 deg F.

10 3. Do not apply above the surface of the grade adjacent to the area being sealed.

11 B. Waterproofing membrane shall be applied in one or two lifts to provide an overall
12 pinhole-free membrane of minimum 60-mil thickness.

13 C. Grid surfaces to assure proper coverage rates and verify membrane wet-film mil
14 thickness with gauges as work progresses.

15 D. Retain empty product containers during course of work to aid in
16 determining whether completed membrane complies with required average dry-film
17 thickness.

18 E. Install protection board over cured membrane (below grade areas only) in accord
19 with manufacturer's instructions.

20

21 **3.04 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

22 A. Remove any masking materials after installation. Clean any stains on materials
23 which would be exposed in the completed work.

24 B. Protect completed membrane waterproofing from subsequent construction activities
25 as recommended by manufacturer.

26

27 **END OF SECTION 07 14 20**



SECTION 07 17 00 - BENTONITE WATERPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Bentonite Geotextile Waterproofing System; Provide at Elevator Pits and along any portion of the perimeter wall where interior slab is below grade as indicated in the Contract Documents. Install from bottom of floor slab to top of footing.
2. Miscellaneous materials such as waterstops, hydrobar tubing, bentonite sealant and drain matting.
3. Refer to drawings for drainage piping.
4. Excavation of existing materials and replacement of existing materials and compaction.
5. Flashing sealant at metal flashing conditions.
6. Sealant for "at grade conditions" and "at wall/slab junctions".

1.2 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Performance Requirements, General: Provide bentonite waterproofing system that is watertight and complies with performance requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing performed by a nationally recognized independent testing laboratory of manufacturer's standard systems according to test methods indicated and which meets the manufacturer's requirements for the specified warranty.

1.3 WARRANTY

A. Waterproofing Warranty: Upon completion and acceptance of the work required by this section, the waterproofing materials manufacturer will provide a written five-year (5) year warranty covering materials.

1.4 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit the following:

1. Product data for each type of waterproofing material specified, including data substantiating that materials comply with specified requirements.
2. Samples, 3 x 6 inches (75 x 150 mm) minimum size and 6-inches long of each waterproofing material specified for Project.

B. Installer shall install a sample wall area (min. 6' x 6') and receive acceptance from manufacturer and Architect prior to proceeding further. This sample wall area shall be basis for remainder of installation.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed bentonite waterproofing applications similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for Project and that has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

1. Assign work closely associated with waterproofing, including (but not limited to) waterproofing accessories, and flashings used in conjunction with waterproofing to installer of bentonite waterproofing, for single, undivided responsibility.



- 1 B. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain primary waterproofing materials of each type required from
 2 a single manufacturer.
 3
 4 C. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 5
 6 D. Installer shall be acceptable to manufacturer for meeting requirements of warranty work.
 7 Submit in writing manufacturer's acceptance of Installer.
 8

9 **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 10
 11 A. Deliver primary waterproofing materials to job site in manufacturer's original, unopened
 12 containers, bearing manufacturer's name and label and the following information:
 13
 14 2. Product name.
 15 3. Product description (generic product classification).
 16 4. Batch number under which product was produced.
 17 5. National standards with which the product complies.
 18 6. Application instructions.
 19
 20 B. Materials shall be stored in a moisture-free area, protected from the elements in accordance
 21 with manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.
 22

23 **1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 24
 25 A. Substrate: Proceed with waterproofing operations only after exposing existing construction and
 26 substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed.
 27
 28 B. Weather: Proceed with waterproofing operations only when existing and forecast weather
 29 conditions will permit work to be performed in accordance with manufacturer's
 30 recommendations. Immediately protect bentonite waterproofing system; do not leave system
 31 exposed to the elements.
 32
 33

34 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

35 **2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL**

- 36
 37
 38 A. General Compatibility: Provide products that are recommended by manufacturer to be fully
 39 compatible with indicated substrates and meet manufacturer's requirements for specified
 40 warranty.
 41

42 **2.2 MANUFACTURER**

- 43
 44 A. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements other products may be incorporated
 45 in the Work, but must meet the requirements of the following:
 46
 47 1. CETCO Volclay Waterproofing Division - Voltex Bentonite Geotextile Waterproofing.
 48 a. Material shall be designed for waterproofing below grade structural materials and
 49 contain a minimum of 1 lb of sodium bentonite per square foot.
 50 b. Material shall be a composite of high strength woven and non-woven
 51 polypropylene geotextile fabrics and high swelling Volclay bentonite. The system
 52 by which the bentonite is contained within the fabric shall prevent migration of dry
 53 or hydrated bentonite.
 54 c. Material shall be available in minimum of 4' x 15' rolls.
 55 d. This system shall be installed with the use of manufacturer's recommended
 56 accessory materials to provide warranty requirements and a waterproof system for
 57 horizontal and vertical surfaces as indicated.



- e. Physical Properties
 - 1) Peel adhesion to concrete: ASTM D 903
 - 2) Hydrostatic pressure resistance: ASTM D 5385
 - 3) Permeability: ASTM D 5084
 - 4) Tensile strength: ASTM D 4595
 - 5) Puncture resistance: ASTM D 4833
 - 6) Low temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. In addition to primary waterproofing materials, provide the following:

1. Hydrobar Tube: Basis of Design - Volclay Hydrobar Tube.
 - a. Tube shall be a thin water-soluble plastic tubing filled with chemically treated sodium bentonite.
 - b. The tube shall dissolve with water, leaving only the sodium bentonite which hydrates and seals the critical area.
 - c. Installation shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.
 - 1) Position tubes directly against wall, resting on footing at the junction of the vertical wall with the horizontal surface of the footing. Butt ends together to form continuous installation. At corners, cut tubing to allow tubing to contour corner. Backfill, tamp over installation to prevent displacement.
2. Mastic: Volcay Bentoseal, trowel grade bentonite mastic.
 - a. Mastic shall be non-flammable sodium bentonite and butyl rubber compound with constancy of thick grease.
 - b. Mastic Shall be used for filling up of concrete honeycombs and cracks (larger than 1/2" in diameter prior to installation of the bentonite geotextile system. Install Mastic around all pipe penetrations, anchors, system terminations, pilings and other voids. The extent shall be in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and as needed to maintain the warranty and a watertight system.
 - c. Mastic shall be formulated for below-grade applications.
 - d. Installation shall be in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations and as follows:
 - 1) Preparation: Surfaces shall be dry and free of dirt, rust and debris.
 - 2) Fillets shall be minimum of 3/4" thick and continue out 1-1/2" onto the penetration.
3. Sealant: Cetseal
 - a. Sealant is a multi-purpose, single-component polyether moisture cure sealant / adhesive. Cetseal is a low VOC. 100% solids, non-shrinking product with excellent UV resistance.
 - b. Grade termination sealant to seal top of flashing reglet.
 - c. Water-stop adhesive
4. Sheet Membrane Flashing: Cetco Envirosheet
 - a. Install Cetco Envirosheet flashing to primed concrete substrate with bottom edge overlapping top edge of Voltex membrane a minimum of 6". Overlap all roll ends a minimum of 4" to form a continuous flashing.
5. Waterstops: CETCO Concrete Joint Waterstop-RX
 - a. Active Bentonite/Butyl Rubber Based waterstop (sodium bentonite base) for both vertical and horizontal applications. Waterstop shall also be usable for irregular surfaces and around through-wall penetrations; designed for both hydrostatic and non-hydrostatic conditions.



- 1 b. Provide manufacturer's Cetseal sealant/adhesive for adhering to concrete, steel
 2 and PVC. Note - Mechanical fasteners shall not be used to secure waterstop
 3 alone, but may be used in conjunction with adhesive.
 4 c. Butt ends of coils together. Do not lap.
 5 d. Provide product in sizes, shapes and rapid hydration formula in accordance with
 6 manufacturer's recommendations for specific job conditions and to meet warranty
 7 requirements.
 8 e. Technical Properties of Waterstop:
 9 1) Specific Gravity Test: ASTM D-71.
 10 2) Flashpoint Test: ASTM D93-97.
 11 3) Penetration Test: ASTM D-217.
 12 f. Technical Properties of Adhesive:
 13 1) Adhesion: 10.4 psi.
 14 2) Viscosity: 5,500-6,500cps.
 15 3) Solids: 46% by weight, 45% by volume.
 16 4) Service Temperature Range: 33 deg F to 120 deg F.
 17 g. Surface Preparation: Surfaces must be clean and dry and in accordance with
 18 manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.
 19 h. Application: Roller or brush applied adhesive, min 5 mils thick by width of
 20 waterstop over entire surface to receive waterstop. Allow to dry in accordance with
 21 manufacture's instructions. After adhesive is dry, remove release film from
 22 waterstop and firmly press entire length of waterstop onto the dried adhesive and
 23 hold for min. 15 seconds.
- 24 4. Prefabricated Drainage Mat: Basis of Design - American Colloid Company, Aquadrain
 25 15X (for vertical conditions) and Aquadrain 20H (for horizontal conditions).
 26 a. Mat shall be a prefabricated soil drainage unit designed to replace aggregate drain
 27 in subsurface drainage applications. Unit shall be a two part system consisting of
 28 a formed polymeric core covered on one side with a geotextile filter fabric. The
 29 fabric shall allow water or other liquids or gases to pass into the drain core while
 30 restricting the movement of the soil particles and the core shall allow water to flow
 31 to the designated drainage exists.
 32 b. Installation: System shall be installed over the Voltex bentonite geotextile material
 33 and mechanically attached. Attach with filter fabric facing the soil and the flat
 34 side of core facing the wall. Peel back fabric at the bottom of wall and use to wrap
 35 around and behind discharge pipe to prevent soil intrusion. Peel back fabric at
 36 top of installed drain to expose two rows of core cones. Interlock the cones of next
 37 section of drain with those of the installed drain (upper cones over lower cones)
 38 and use fabric to cover joints. Continue process until area is covered. At top wrap
 39 3" of fabric behind core to prevent soil intrusion. Maintain 6" of soil over drain at
 40 top of wall.
- 41 5. Flashing Sealant at Metal Flashing: Provide low modulus, one component, non-sag,
 42 neutral cure silicone, ASTM C 920
 43 a. Basis of Design
 44 1) Dow Corning Corp. 790 Silicone Building Sealant.
- 45 6. Sealant at Grade Conditions and Junction of Wall/Slab: Provide single component,
 46 Polyether moisture cure sealant (Cetseal).
 47
 48

49 PART 3 - EXECUTION

50 3.1 PREPARATION OF SUBSTRATE

- 51 A. Clean substrate of projections and substances detrimental to work; comply with instructions of
 52 prime materials manufacturer. Substrate shall be structurally sound and contaminants removed.
 53
 54 B. Install miscellaneous accessories as shown and as recommended by prime materials
 55 manufacturer even though not shown.
 56
 57



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
- C. Fill voids (form tie rod holes, bug holes) and finish flush with surrounding surface, seal joints, and apply bond breakers as recommended by prime materials manufacturer.
 - D. Waterproofing shall be applied from the top of the footing to the underside of the slab above on sides of elevator pit to provide complete isolation and protection of elevator pit.
 - E. Waterproofing shall be applied from top of footing to within 3" of the top of grade along the north elevation.

10
11
12

3.2 INSTALLATION

- 13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
- A. General: Comply with the requirements of this section and manufacturer's written installation recommendations, including preparation of substrate surfaces, in strict compliance with recommendations, instructions and warranty requirements. System shall be wrapped around and into corners at bottom and sides so as to completely from an impermeable system. Materials damaged shall immediately be replaced.
 - B. Start installation of waterproofing membrane only in presence and with advice of manufacturer's technical representative. The system shall not be installed during rainfall, in standing water, or when amount of moisture exceeds manufacturer's recommendations.
 - C. Apply waterproofing membrane material to substrates and adjoining surfaces indicated to receive membrane. Apply in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
 - D. Only proceed with the amount of area that can be completed and backfilled prior to the onset of inclement weather or the end of the work day. **Do not leave system exposed overnight.**

30
END OF SECTION 07 17 00



1 **SECTION 07 19 00 - WATER REPELLENTS**

2
3
4 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

5
6
7 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 8
9 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
10 Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
11

12
13 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 14
15 A. This Section includes surface preparation and application of clear water repellent coating to the
16 following above grade vertical and nontraffic horizontal exposed surfaces:
17
18 1. Architectural Precast Concrete (refer to Section 03 45 00 ARCHITECTURAL PRECAST
19 CONCRETE - PLANT CAST), and UNIT MASONRY (Section 04 20 00).
20
21 B. Related Sections: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
22
23 1. Division 3 Sections for concrete work including precast concrete.
24
25

26 **1.3 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS**

- 27
28 A. General: Submit the following according to the Conditions of Contract and Division 1
29 Specification Sections.
30
31 B. Certification by water repellent manufacturer that products supplied comply with local
32 regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOC).
33
34 C. Material test reports from qualified independent testing agency indicating and interpreting test
35 results relative to compliance of water repellents with Performance Requirements specified in
36 the "Quality Assurance" article.
37
38

39 **1.4 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS**

- 40
41 A. Product data including manufacturer's specifications, surface preparation and application
42 instructions, recommendations for water repellents for each surface specified, and protection
43 and cleaning instructions. Include data substantiating that materials are recommended by
44 manufacturer for applications indicated and comply with requirements.
45
46 B. Samples: Submit 16 inch (400 mm) square samples of each substrate indicated to receive
47 water repellent with the specified repellent treatment applied to half of each sample.
48
49

50 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 51
52 A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who employs persons trained and
53 approved by water repellent manufacturer for installation of manufacturer's products.
54
55 B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Firm experienced in manufacturing products similar to those
56 indicated for this Project and that has a record of successful in-service performance.
57



- 1 C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable rules of the pollution-control regulatory
 2 agency having jurisdiction in the Project locale regarding volatile organic compounds (VOC) and
 3 use of hydrocarbon solvents.
 4
 5 D. Project Mockup: Apply water repellent to mockup (not less than 20 sf.), either partial or full
 6 coverage as directed, before proceeding with installation. Comply with installation requirements
 7 of this Section and determine coverage rate for application.
 8
 9 1. After treatment cures (72 hrs - low humidity, 72 hrs - high humidity), water test to verify
 10 that substrate is coated with sufficient water repellent to effectively repel moisture from
 11 the surface.
 12
 13 2. Verify that application of water repellent materials to substrate will not produce surface
 14 stains or discoloration.
 15
 16 E. Performance Requirements: Indicate test results for water repellents on substrate simulating
 17 Project conditions, as close as possible. Use same materials and methods of application to be
 18 used on the Project.
 19
 20 F. Application shall be made by a professional waterproofing company with at least three years
 21 experience.
 22

23 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- 24
 25
 26 A. Weather and Substrate Conditions: Do not proceed with application of water repellent (except
 27 with written recommendation of manufacturer) under any of the following conditions:
 28
 29 1. Ambient temperature is less than 40 deg F (4 deg C).
 30 2. Substrate surfaces have cured for less than one month.
 31 3. Rain or temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C) are predicted for a period of 24 hours.
 32 4. Earlier than 72 hours after surfaces became wet.
 33 5. Substrate is frozen or surface temperature is less than 40 deg F (4 deg C).
 34 6. Windy condition such that repellent may be blown to vegetation or substrates not
 35 intended.
 36 7. Surface Preparation:
 37 a. Surface must be free of cracks, dirt, oils, paint or other contaminants which may
 38 affect the appearance or performance of the water repellent. Apply water repellent
 39 after installation of joint caulking.
 40
 41

42 1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY

- 43
 44 A. Deliver materials to the job site in original sealed containers, clearly marked with manufacturer's
 45 name, brand name, and type of material.
 46

47 1.7 WARRANTY

- 48
 49 A. Warranty: Submit a written warranty, executed by the Applicator and water repellent
 50 manufacturer covering materials and labor, agreeing to repair or replace materials that fail to
 51 provide water repellency within the specified warranty period. This warranty shall be in addition
 52 to, and not a limitation of, other rights the Owner may have against the contractor under the
 53 contract documents.
 54
 55 1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 56
 57



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2
3
4 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- 5
6 A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be
7 incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 8
9
10 1. Siloxane:
- 11 a. Prime-A-Pell 200, Chemprobe Corporation. **Basis of Design**
 - 12 b. Klere-Seal 908-SX, Pecora Corporation.
 - 13 c. Weather Seal Siloxane, ProSoCo, Inc.
- 14
15
16

17 **2.2 WATER REPELLENTS**

- 18
19 A. Siloxanes: Penetrating water repellent. Alkylalkoxysiloxanes that are oligomeric with alcohol,
20 ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier.
- 21
22

23 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

24
25
26 **3.1 PREPARATION**

- 27
28 A. Clean substrate of substances that might interfere with penetration or performance of water
29 repellents. Test for moisture content, according to repellent manufacturer's instructions to
30 ensure that surface is sufficiently dry.
- 31
32 B. Test for pH level, according to repellent manufacturer's instructions to ensure chemical bond to
33 silicates minerals.
- 34
35 C. Protect adjoining work, including sealant bond surfaces, from spillage or blow-over of water
36 repellent. Cover adjoining and nearby surfaces of aluminum and glass where there is the
37 possibility of the water repellent being deposited on surfaces. Cover live plants and grass.
38 Immediately clean water repellent from adjoining surfaces, complying with manufacturer's
39 cleaning recommendations.
- 40
41 D. Coordination with Sealants: Do not apply water repellent until the sealants for joints adjacent to
42 surfaces receiving water repellent treatment have been installed and cured a minimum of seven
43 (7) days.
- 44
45
46 E. Test Application: Prior to performing water repellent work, including bulk purchase or delivery of
47 products, prepare a small application in an unobtrusive location and in a manner acceptable to
48 the Architect to demonstrate the final effect (visual, physical, and chemical) of planned
49 installation. Proceed with work only after Architect accepts test application or as otherwise
50 directed.
- 51
52

53 **3.2 PROTECTION**

- 54
55 A. Protect adjacent shrubs, metal, wood trim, glass, asphalt and other building hardware from
56 overspray. Do not permit spray mist or liquid to drift onto surrounding properties or parking lots.
57 Avoid contact with automobile paint and windshields.



1
2
3 **3.3 INSTALLATION**
4

- 5 A. Apply a heavy-saturation spray coating of water repellent on surfaces indicated for treatment
6 using low-pressure spray equipment designated for water repellent application. Comply with
7 manufacturer's instructions and recommendations using airless spraying procedure unless
8 otherwise indicated.
9
- 10 1. Precast Work: At Contractor's option, first application of water repellent on precast
11 concrete units may be completed prior to installing units. Mask sealant-bond surfaces to
12 prevent water repellent from migrating onto joint surfaces.
13
- 14 2. Apply as shipped by manufacturer; do not dilute.
15
- 16 3. Apply treatment evenly until surface is totally saturated.
17
- 18 B. Apply a second saturation spray coating, repeating first application. Comply with manufacturer's
19 instructions for limitations on drying time between coats and after rainstorm wetting of surfaces
20 between coats. Consult manufacturer's technical representative if printed recommendations are
21 not applicable to Project conditions and comply with manufacturer's recommendations and
22 procedures for entire application procedure.
23
- 24 C. Remove protective coverings from adjacent surfaces.
25
- 26
- 27 D. Cleanup overspray immediately after application in accordance with manufacturer's
28 recommendations.
29
- 30 E. At completion, remove from jobsite, all excess material, debris, and waste resulting from this
31 work. Dispose of water repellent containers according to local environmental regulations.
32

33 **END OF SECTION 07 19 00**



1 **SECTION 07 21 00 - BUILDING INSULATION**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 6
7 A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions
8 and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
9

10 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 11
12 A. This Section includes the following:
13 1. Building insulation in batt form.
14 2. Sound attenuation blankets.
15 3. Open cell, low density expanding polyurethane spray foam insulation.
16 4. Safing Insulation.
17
18 B. Related Sections:
19
20 1. Section 04 20 00 for extruded polystyrene rigid insulation for use within brick faced cavity
21 wall and where otherwise indicated within contract documents.
22
23
24

25 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 26
27 A. Thermal Resistivity: Where the thermal resistivity of insulation products are designated by "R-
28 values," ("RSI-values,") they represent the reciprocal of thermal conductivity (k-values).
29 Thermal conductivity is the rate of heat flow through a homogenous material exactly 1 inch
30 thick. Thermal resistivity's are expressed by the temperature difference in degrees F (Kelvins)
31 between the two exposed faces required to cause one BTU (one Watt) to flow through one
32 square foot (one sq. m) per hour at mean temperatures indicated.
33

34 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 35
36 A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1
37 Specification Sections.
38
39 B. Product data for each type of insulation product specified.
40

41 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 42
43 A. Fire Performance Characteristics: Provide insulation materials identical to those whose
44 indicated fire performance characteristics have been determined per the ASTM test method
45 indicated below, by UL or other testing and inspecting organizations acceptable to authorities
46 having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing and
47 inspecting organization.
48
49 1. Surface Burning Characteristic: ASTM E 84.
50 2. Fire Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
51 3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.
52
53 B. Single-Source Responsibility for Insulation Products: Obtain each type of building insulation
54 from a single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and
55 physical properties without delaying progress of the Work.
56



1 **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 2
- 3 A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling,
- 4 and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's
- 5 recommendations for handling, storage, and protection during installation.
- 6

7

8 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

9

10 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- 11
- 12 A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering
- 13 insulation products that may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the
- 14 following:
- 15
- 16 B. Manufacturers of Glass Fiber Insulation:
- 17
- 18 1. CertainTeed Corp.
- 19 2. Knauf Fiber Glass GmbH.
- 20 3. Manville: Building Insulations Div., Manville Sales Corp.
- 21 4. **Owens/Corning Fiberglas Corp., R-13 & R19 EcoTough Basis of Design**
- 22
- 23 C. Manufacturers of Open Cell, expanding Polyurethane Spray Insulation –
- 24 1. **Icynene Basis of Design.**
- 25

26 **2.2 INSULATING MATERIALS**

27

- 28 A. General: Provide insulating materials that comply with requirements and with referenced
- 29 standards.
- 30
- 31 B. Preformed Units: Sizes to fit applications indicated, selected from manufacturer's standard
- 32 thicknesses, widths, and lengths.
- 33
- 34 C. Unfaced Mineral Fiber Blanket/Batt Insulation: Thermal insulation produced by combining
- 35 mineral fibers of type described below with thermosetting resins to comply with ASTM C 665 for
- 36 Type I (blankets without membrane facing); and as follows:
- 37
- 38 1. Mineral Fiber Type: Fibers manufactured from glass or slag.
- 39 2. Surface Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame spread and smoke developed values of
- 40 25 and 50, respectively.
- 41 3. Thickness: 3-1/2" (R-13) and 6" (R-19) as indicated on drawings.
- 42 4. Application in stud walls where height is greater than 8 feet or where stud depth is
- 43 greater than insulations thickness use wire or metal straps to hold product in place
- 44
- 45 D. Open Cell Polyurethane Spray Foam Insulation: Basis of Design – B. Icynene Classic Ultra
- 46 Select™ Spray Foam Insulation: Light density, open celled, 100% water-blown, conforming to
- 47 the following:
- 48
- 49 1. Thermal Resistance (R-Value/inch @75 deg F): ASTM C 518; 3.7 hr/sq ft/degree F/BTU
- 50 2. Air Permeance (for 3 inches of material): ASTM E 2178; < 0.014 L/s.m2 @ 75 Pa
- 51 3. Water Vapor Transmission (for 5.5 inches of material): ASTM E 96; 11 perms [627 ng
- 52 /(Pa.s.m2)]
- 53 4. Flame Spread and Smoke Developed Rating: ASTM E 84
- 54 a. Flame Spread: 20
- 55 b. Smoke Development: 340



5. Fungal Growth: ASTM C1338: no growth
6. Intumescent Paint
 - a. DC-315 Thermal Barrier Coating: 14 wet mils
 - b. Fireshell F10E Thermal Barrier Coating: 21 wet mils
 - c. No-Burn Plus ThB Thermal Barrier Coating: 18 wet mils1. Low density, renewable-based, 0.5 lb/cu. ft., all water-blown spray foam insulation and air barrier material.

E. Sound Attenuation Blankets: Basis of Design – Owens Corning Sound Attenuation.

1. Material: Mineral Wool.
2. Thickness: 3 & 6 inches.
3. Flamespread: 5.
4. Smoke Developed: 0.
5. Thermal Performance per 1 inch: 3.8.
6. Density (pcf): 2.5.
7. Noise Reduction: Min 2.0 NCR for 6 inches.

F. Safing Insulation: Basis of Design – USG “Thermafiber Safing Insulation”, 4 lb. density mineral wool insulation, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Material: Mineral Wool.
2. Thickness: Thickness required to maintain fire rating of the wall in which safing is installed.
3. Install in accordance with UL systems, and manufacturer’s specifications and recommendations, using approved methods to achieve the required fire rating.
4. Locations: Behind vertical control joints in gypsum board walls, coordinate with details.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions with Installer present, for compliance with requirements of the Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and to determine if other conditions affecting performance of insulation are satisfactory. Do not proceed with installation of insulation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's instructions applicable to products and application indicated. If printed instructions are not available or do not apply to project conditions, consult manufacturer's technical representative for specific recommendations before proceeding with installation of insulation.
- B. Extend insulation full thickness as indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions, and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- B. Apply a single layer of insulation of required thickness, unless otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

3.3 PROTECTION



- 1 A. General: Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical
- 2 abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation will be
- 3 subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately
- 4 after installation.
- 5
- 6

END OF SECTION 07 21 00



SECTION 07 26 16 UNDERSLAB VAPOR RETARDER

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Products supplied under this section:
1. Vapor barrier and installation accessories for installation under concrete slabs.
 2. Surface preparation.
 3. Application of an underslab vapor barrier under the entire interior slab on grade.
- B. Related sections:
1. Section 03 30 00 Cast-in-Place Concrete
 2. Section 07 26 00 Vapor Retarders

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM International:
1. ASTM E1745-17: Standard Specification for Plastic Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs.
 2. ASTM E1643-18a: Selection, Design, Installation, and Inspection of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs.
- B. Technical Reference - American Concrete Institute (ACI):
1. ACI 302.2R-06: Guide for Concrete Slabs that Receive Moisture-Sensitive Flooring Materials.
 2. ACI 302.1R-15: Guide to Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Quality control/assurance:
1. Comply with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.
 2. Summary of test results per paragraph 9.3 of ASTM E1745.
 3. Manufacturer's samples and product data/literature.
 4. Manufacturer's installation instructions for placement, seaming, penetration prevention and repair, and perimeter seal per ASTM E1643.
 5. Mandatory ASTM E1745 testing must be performed on a single production roll per ASTM E1745 Section 8.1.
 6. Contact vapor barrier manufacturer to schedule a pre-construction meeting and to coordinate a review, in-person or digital, of the vapor barrier installation.
 7. Vapor barrier manufacturer must warrant in writing (a) compliance with the designated ASTM E1745 classification, and (b) no manufacturing defects in the product for, at least, the Life of the Building.
 8. Manufacturer verify in writing 20 years in the industry with no reported product failures.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. **Basis of Design Manufacturer: Stego Industries, LLC**
- B. Vapor barrier shall have all the following qualities:
1. Maintain permeance of less than 0.01 Perms [grains/(ft² · hr · inHg)] as tested in accordance with mandatory conditioning tests per ASTM E1745 Section 7.1 (7.1.1-7.1.5).
 2. Other performance criteria:
 - a. Strength: ASTM E1745 Class A.
 - b. Thickness: 15 mils minimum



3. Provide third party documentation that all testing was performed on a single production roll per ASTM E1745 Section 8.1
4. Warranty: (a) compliance with the designated ASTM E1745 classification, and (b) no manufacturing defects in the product for, at least, the Life of the Building.

C. Vapor barrier products:

1. **Basis of Design: Stego Wrap Vapor Barrier (15-mil) by Stego Industries LLC., (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com**
2. Acceptable Products: Products other than the Basis of Design Product will be considered as a substitution subject to meeting the requirements of the Basis of Design and submitting a complete Substitution Request per the Contract Documents.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Seams:

1. Basis of Design: Stego Tape by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.

B. Sealing Penetrations of Vapor barrier:

1. Basis of Design: Stego Mastic by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.
2. Basis of Design: Stego Tape by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.

C. Perimeter/terminated edge seal:

1. Basis of Design: Stego Crete Claw (textured tape) by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.
2. Basis of Design: Stego Term Bar by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.
3. Basis of Design: StegoTack Tape (double-sided sealant tape) by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.
4. One-sided seaming tape is not a recommended method of sealing at the terminated edge.

D. Penetration Prevention:

1. Basis of Design: Beast Foot by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.

E. Vapor Barrier-Safe Hand Screed System

1. Basis of Design: Beast Screed by Stego Industries, LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Ensure that subsoil is approved by Architect or Geotechnical Engineer.
 1. Level and compact base material.
- B. Contact vapor barrier manufacturer to schedule a pre-construction meeting and to coordinate a review, in-person or digital, of the vapor barrier installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install vapor barrier in accordance ASTM E1643.
 1. Unroll vapor barrier with the longest dimension parallel with the direction of the concrete placement and face laps away from the expected direction of the placement whenever possible.
 2. Extend vapor barrier to the perimeter of the slab. If practicable, terminate it at the top of the slab, otherwise (a) at a point acceptable to the structural engineer or (b) where obstructed by



1 impediments, such as dowels, water stops, or any other site condition requiring early
2 termination of the vapor barrier. At the point of termination, seal vapor barrier to the foundation
3 wall, grade beam or slab itself. Contractor's Option base on Manufacturer's/Installers
4 Recommendation: Seal vapor barrier to the entire slab perimeter using manufacturer's
5 textured tape with a surface that creates a mechanical seal to freshly-placed concrete, per
6 manufacturer's instructions.

7 OR

- 8 a. Seal vapor barrier to the entire perimeter wall or footing/grade beam with
9 manufacturer's double-sided tape, or both termination bar and double-sided
10 tape, per manufacturer's instructions. Ensure the concrete is clean and dry
11 prior to adhering tape.
- 12 2. Overlap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's seam tape.
- 13 3. Prior to applying tape clean over laps and other repair areas of vapor barrier for proper
14 adhesion of tape.
- 15 4. Apply seam tape/textured tape/double-sided tape to a clean and dry vapor barrier.
- 16 5. Seal all penetrations (including pipes) per manufacturer's instructions.
- 17 6. Avoid the use of stakes driven through vapor barrier by utilizing screed and forming systems
18 that will not leave punctures in the vapor barrier.
- 19 7. Repair damaged areas with vapor barrier material of similar (or better) permeance, puncture
20 and tensile by cutting patches of vapor barrier, overlapping damage area by 6 inches and
21 taping sides with tape.
- 22 8. **Prior to concrete pours Contractor/Construction Manager shall visually inspect joints,**
23 **penetrations and the field of vapor barrier for voids, tears, holes and or other**
24 **penetrations which will allow moisture into the slab. Submit dated report showing**
25 **areas approved for concrete pours.**

26
27 **END OF SECTION 07 26 16**



1 **SECTION 07 26 50 – FLUID APPLIED AIR AND WATER BARRIER**

2

3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 5 **A.** Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and
6 Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this
7 **Section.**

8 **1.2 SUMMARY.**

- 9 **A.** Work described in this section includes fluid applied vapor permeable air and water
10 resistive barrier membrane system.
- 11 **B.** Work includes all necessary fluid membrane materials, miscellaneous sheet goods,
12 flashing, tapes, mastics, and sealants to insure a complete water resistive, vapor
13 permeable air barrier wall system including:
- 14 1. Connections of wall air barrier to roof membrane.
 - 15 2. Connection of wall air barrier to foundation air barrier.
 - 16 3. Air barriers across construction, control, seismic and expansion joints.
 - 17 4. Opening and penetrations for windows, doors, vents, ducts, pipes, and curtain wall
18 systems.
 - 19 5. Brick ties, bolts, and similar hardware penetrations.
 - 20 6. All other joints, opening, and pathways in the building wall enclosure with potential
21 for air leakage or moisture infiltration.
- 22 **C.** Related work specified elsewhere:
- 23 1. Division 03: Cast-in-place concrete, precast concrete.
 - 24 2. Division 04: Unit masonry.
 - 25 3. Division 05: Steel studs, girts, and furring.
 - 26 4. Division 06: Gypsum sheathing, wood sheathing, rough carpentry.
 - 27 5. Division 07: Flashing and sheet metal, metal wall cladding panels, thermal
28 insulation, joint sealant.

29 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 30 **A.** American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- 31 1. D412-16: Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic
32 Elastomers – Tension.
 - 33 2. D903-98(2017): Standard Test Method for Peel or Stripping Strength of Adhesive
34 Bonds.
 - 35 3. D1970-17a: Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified
36 Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steel Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam
37 Protection.



- 1 4. D4263-83(2012): Standard Test Method for Indicating Moisture in Concrete by the
2 Plastic Sheet Method.
- 3 5. D4541-17: Standard Test Method for Pull-Off Strength of Coatings Using Portable
4 Adhesion Testers.
- 5 6. E96-16: Standard Test Method for Vapor Transmission of Materials.
- 6 7. E783-02(2010): Standard Test Method for Field Measurement of Air Leakage
7 Through Installed Exterior Windows and Doors.
- 8 8. E1105-15: Standard Test Method for Field Determination of Water Penetration of
9 Installed Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform or
10 Cyclic Static Air Pressure Difference.
- 11 9. E1186-17: Standard Practices for Air Leakage Site Detection in Building
12 Envelopes and Air Barrier Systems.
- 13 10. E2178-13: Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials.

14 **1.4 DESIGN AND PERFORMANCE CRITERIA.**

- 15 A. General Performance: Fluid applied water resistive air barrier system shall be
16 furnished and installed without failure due to defective manufacture, application,
17 installation, or other defects in construction.
- 18 B. Air Leakage.
- 19 1. The fluid applied air barrier shall have less than 0.001 cfm/ft² (0.005 L/s/m²) at 1.57
20 psf (75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
- 21 C. Vapor Permeance: The fluid applied air barrier shall be vapor permeable with a
22 minimum vapor transmission rate of 7 perms (5 metric perms) when tested in
23 accordance with ASTM E96, Method B.
- 24 D. Physical Properties
- 25 1. Thickness: The fluid applied water resistive air and vapor barrier shall measure a
26 minimum of 40 mils (1.0 mm) nominal dry film thickness in accordance with the
27 test methods of ASTM D1970.
- 28 2. Low Temperature Flexibility: The fluid applied air barrier shall be tested in
29 accordance with the low temperature flexibility testing of ASTM D1970 and pass
30 at a temperature of -15°F (-30°C).
- 31 3. Elongation: The fluid applied air barrier shall have a minimum elongation of 600%
32 when tested in accordance with ASTM D412.
- 33 4. Peel Adhesion: The fluid applied air barrier shall have a minimum peel adhesion
34 to concrete and exterior sheathing of at least 20 lbf/in (35N/mm) when tested in
35 accordance with ASTM D903.
- 36 5. VOC Content: The fluid applied air barrier shall have a maximum VOC of 50 g/l.

37 **1.5 SUBMITTALS.**

- 38 A. General, Rainscreen Wall Assembly Components: Complete submittals shall be made
39 jointly and simultaneously for all components of the Rainscreen wall assembly,
40 including:
- 41 1. Exterior wall sheathing board, if applicable;



- 1 2. Air and water resistive barrier;
- 2 3. Rainscreen wall continuous exterior insulation;
- 3 4. Metal rainscreen wall cladding panels and sub framing components;
- 4 5. All other trim, flashing, sealants, and components necessary for a complete
- 5 rainscreen wall assembly as required by these specifications.
- 6 B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
- 7 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
- 8 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
- 9 3. Installation methods.
- 10 C. Shop drawings.
- 11 1. Show complete rain screen wall system with air and water barrier(s), vapor retarder
- 12 (if applicable), continuous exterior insulation, sub framing system, metal cladding
- 13 panels, ventilation components, flashings and accessories in elevation, sections,
- 14 and details. Include membrane and metal thicknesses and finishes, panel lengths,
- 15 joining details, anchorage details, flashings and special fabrication provisions for
- 16 termination and penetrations. Indicate relationships with adjacent and interfacing
- 17 work.
- 18 2. All components shall be integrated into a single comprehensive and complete shop
- 19 drawing set prepared by the metal cladding system manufacturer.
- 20 3. Shop drawings shall identify each product and component by manufacturer,
- 21 product name, and thickness, size, style, or other uniquely distinguishing
- 22 characteristics.
- 23 4. Shop drawings shall be signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer or
- 24 Registered Architect authorized to practice in the jurisdiction of the project location.
- 25 D. Financial Certification: Provide the building owner with a signed and notarized (sealed)
- 26 affidavit by an officer of the system supplier which confirms a current minimum
- 27 corporate asset-to-liability ratio of not less than 3:1 for the supplier, or its parent
- 28 corporation. Financial support information and affidavit must be dated within 30 days
- 29 prior to the product submittal.
- 30 E. Warranty: Provide unexecuted specimen warranty documents for each warranty as
- 31 required in specification article 1.11.
- 32 F. Samples.
- 33 1. Submit three (3) samples of fluid applied, water-resistive, vapor permeable air
- 34 barrier sheet, 4" x 4" minimum size.
- 35 2. Submit samples of each system accessory, including membrane flashings, seam
- 36 tapes, mastics, sealants, and any other system components or accessories
- 37 depicted on shop drawings.

[See Allstate Construction's bid package.](#)

1.6 QUALITY CRITERIA/INSTALLER QUALIFICATIONS.

- 38 A. Engage an experienced air barrier contractor (installer) to install fluid applied, water
- 39 resistive, vapor permeable air barrier system who has a minimum of three (3) years of
- 40 experience specializing in the installation of air barrier systems.
- 41 B. Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA) Quality Assurance Program.
- 42 1. This project is specified to participate in the ABAA Quality Assurance Program.
- 43



See Allstate Construction's bid package.

2. The air barrier subcontractor shall be accredited by the Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA) prior to bidding this project.
3. The air barrier subcontractor must maintain at least one ABAA installer on the jobsite throughout the air barrier installation phase that is certified by the ABAA for fluid applied air barriers.
4. The air barrier subcontractor shall perform daily inspections, tests, and reporting required by the ABAA Quality Assurance Program.
5. The air barrier subcontractor shall coordinate, cooperate, and comply with the recommendations of the ABAA third party auditor/inspector.

- C. Successful contractor must obtain all components of the air barrier system from a single manufacturer. Any secondary products that are required which cannot be supplied by the specified manufacturer must be recommended and approved in writing by primary manufacturer prior to bidding.
- D. Air barrier subcontractor shall submit work experience and evidence of adequate financial responsibility. Architect reserves the right to inspect fabrication facilities in determining qualifications.

1.7 **MOCK-UPS.**

- A. Where directed by architect, construct typical exterior wall panel, 6-foot (2.8m) long by 6-foot (2.8m) wide incorporating the sheathing board or substrate, sill pan protection system, window frame and attachment method, clips, sub framing, attachment of insulation and detailing of water-resistive vapor permeable air barrier membrane application and lap seams.
- B. Mock-up Testing.
 1. Perform the air leakage tests and water penetration test of mock-up prior to installation of cladding and trim but after installation of all fasteners for cladding sub framing and after installation of other penetrating elements.
 2. Air Leakage Tests: Test mock-up for air leakage location in accordance with ASTM E1186 and for air leakage quantity in accordance with ASTM E783. Use smoke tracer to locate sources of air leakage. Deficiencies shall include air leakage in excess of 0.04 cfm/ft² (0.2 L/s/m²) and unsatisfactory workmanship.
 3. Water Penetration: Test mock-up for water leakage in accordance with ASTM E1105. Deficiencies shall include uncontrolled water leakage and unsatisfactory workmanship.
 4. Membrane Adhesion: Test mock-up of fluid applied membrane for adhesion in accordance with ASTM D 4541 using a Type 1 pull tester except that the disk used shall be 4-inches (100mm) in diameter and the membrane shall be cut through to separate the material attached to the disk from the surrounding material. Perform test after curing period recommended by the manufacturer. Record mode of failure and area which failed in accordance with ASTM D 4541. When the air barrier material manufacturer has established a minimum adhesion level for the product on the particular substrate, the inspection report shall indicate whether this requirement has been met. Where the manufacturer has not declared a minimum adhesion value for their product/substrate combination, then the inspector shall simply record the value.
 5. Document and correct deficiencies in mock-up and tests. Retest until satisfactory results are obtained.



1 **1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING.**

- 2 A. Inspect materials upon delivery.
- 3 B. Handle materials to prevent damage.
- 4 C. Store materials in an interior temperature-controlled environment and in their original
- 5 packaging. Materials shall be stored such that a temperature in is maintained between
- 6 60°F - 80°F (15°C - 27°C) at all times.
- 7 D. Protect stored material from direct sunlight and inclement weather until ready for use.

8 **1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 9 A. Work to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty
- 10 requirements.
- 11 B. Weather Limitations.
- 12 1. Proceed with installation of air barrier system only when existing and forecasted
- 13 weather conditions permit application to be performed within the ambient air and
- 14 substrate surface temperature range recommended by the supplier.
- 15 2. Do not install fluid applied air barrier when temperatures below 50°F (10°C) are
- 16 expected within 24 hours.
- 17 3. Do not install fluid applied air barrier to damp or wet substrate.
- 18 4. Do not install air and vapor barrier in snow, rain, fog, or mist.
- 19 C. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with air
- 20 barrier system by field measurements before installation.

21 **1.10 COORDINATION**

- 22 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of windows, doors, and wall penetrations with actual
- 23 equipment provided.
- 24 B. Coordinate air barrier continuity and connections with adjacent surfaces, such as roof,
- 25 foundation, and changes in wall construction.

26 **1.11 WARRANTIES**

- 27 A. Endorse and forward to owner the following warranties:
- 28 1. Manufacturer's standard material warranty in which manufacturer agrees to
- 29 provide replacement material for the fluid applied water-resistive vapor retarding
- 30 air barrier installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions that fails due to
- 31 material defects within three (3) years of the date of Substantial Completion.
- 32 2. Installer's three (3) year warranty from date of Substantial Completion, including
- 33 all components of the air and vapor barrier assembly, against failures including
- 34 loss of air tight seal, loss of watertight seal, loss of adhesion, loss of cohesion,
- 35 failure to cure properly.
- 36 3. Special Rainscreen System Water Tightness Warranty: The water-resistive air
- 37 barrier supplier shall provide a five (5) year warranty from date of Substantial
- 38 Completion against uncontrolled water leakage to the interior of the building. The
- 39 warranty shall identify by manufacturer, product name, and model number each
- 40 component of the Rainscreen wall system, including each of those components
- 41 listed in Article 1.5 A of this specification.



1 B. Warranties shall commence on date of substantial completion.

2 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

3 **2.1 MATERIALS**

4 A. General: Obtain all primary air barrier components and accessories from the same
5 supplier to ensure total system compatibility and integrity.

6 B. Air Barrier Membrane Materials.

7 1. The basis of design shall be IntelliWrap LVP by Innovative Metals Company, Inc.
8 (IMETCO), Norcross, GA 800-646-3826.

9 2. Alternate manufacturers are subject to full compliance with specification
10 requirements and shall be submitted for approval as follows.

11 a. Manufacturers not listed above must submit for approval, ten (10) days prior
12 to bid date, the following: Manufacturer's literature; certification of testing in
13 accordance with specification requirements and sections 1.4 and 1.5; sample
14 warranties in accordance with specification section 1.11; installer qualifications
15 in accordance with specification section 1.6, and a list of five (5) similar
16 projects in size and scope of work.

17 b. In addition to the above requirements, requests for substitute products for this
18 section of the specification shall be accompanied by a notarized statement
19 from a corporate officer of the Air and Water Barrier manufacturer stating that
20 the proposed alternate air barrier product is specifically acceptable for
21 issuance of the Special Rainscreen System Water Tightness Warranty
22 required in Article 1.11 A 3 of this specification, which the Air and Water Barrier
23 manufacturer is required to provide upon substantial completion of this project.
24 This notarized statement shall identify by manufacturer, product name, and
25 model number each component of the Rainscreen wall system, including each
26 of those components listed in Article 1.5 A of this specification that the Air and
27 Water Barrier manufacturer will cover under this warranty.

28 c. No substitutions will be permitted after the bid date of this project.

29 3. Material: Fluid applied vapor permeable acrylic membrane that cures to form a
30 water resistive air barrier.

31 4. Application Rate/Thickness: Apply at a rate of 25 ft²/gal (0.6 m²/l) to achieve a wet
32 film thickness of 64 mils (1.6 mm) minimum and cured dry film thickness of 40 mils
33 (1.0 mm) minimum.

34 5. Density: Approximately 66% solids by weight.

35 6. UV Exposure: 180 days maximum allowable exposure to sunlight.

36 7. Application Method: Airless sprayer, roller, or brush.

37 8. Application Temperature: Ambient temperature must be above 50 °F (10 °C) and
38 not expected to drop below stated temperature for 24 hours.

39 9. Cure Time: Under normal conditions, the product shall be dry to touch in 2 to 4
40 hours and fully cured within 48 hours of application.

41 10. VOC Content: Less than 0.42 lb/gal (50 g/l).



- 1 C. Vapor Retarding Air Barrier Transition and Flashing Membrane.
- 2 1. Transition and flashing air barrier membrane shall be IntelliWrap Flashing, a self-
- 3 adhering, self-sealing waterproofing tape, composed of a silver polymer film
- 4 coated with an aggressive asphalt adhesive.
- 5 2. Flashing membrane shall be used as indicated on drawings for the following
- 6 applications:
- 7 a. Window and door jambs and head.
- 8 b. Through-wall flexible membrane flashings.
- 9 c. Transitions to foundation/below-grade, roof, and other adjacent exterior
- 10 surfaces. Connect the wall flashing membrane with adjacent air barrier
- 11 membrane systems according manufacturer's details, recommendations, and
- 12 shop drawings.
- 13 d. Primary air barrier membrane reverse seam laps.
- 14 e. Other conditions where the primary air barrier membrane and/or flashing
- 15 membranes require additional adhesion at their seams, laps, joints, edges, or
- 16 ends.
- 17 3. Roll Dimensions: 9-inches (230mm) wide by 100-ft (30.5m) long.
- 18 D. Air Barrier Flexible Flashing and Penetration Tapes
- 19 1. Penetrations and other flashings requiring a flexible tape membrane shall use
- 20 IntelliWrap FlexxBand, a flexible waterproofing tape comprised of a rubberized
- 21 asphalt adhesive laminated to a cross-laminated polyethylene crepe film.
- 22 2. Flexible flashing membrane shall be used as indicated on drawings for the
- 23 following applications:
- 24 a. Window sills and arched or round through-wall openings.
- 25 b. Pipe, duct, or other service penetrations.
- 26 c. Other flashing conditions which necessitate the use of a flexible flashing.
- 27 3. Roll Dimensions: 6-inches (150mm) wide by 50-ft (15m) long.

28 2.2 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- 29 A. Primer: When necessary, apply a suitable primer in accordance with manufacturers
- 30 recommendations.
- 31 B. Provide termination bars, sealants and other accessories as required for a complete
- 32 system installation.

33 PART 3 - PREPARATION & EXECUTION

34 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 35 A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with
- 36 requirements for installation tolerances, substrate surfaces, and other conditions
- 37 affecting performance of the Work.
- 38 B. Examine solid wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing
- 39 or blocking, and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall
- 40 panel manufacturer. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions
- 41 have been corrected.



- 1 C. Verify substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic
 2 sheet method according to ASTM D4263 and take suitable measurements until
 3 substrate passes moisture test.
- 4 D. Verify all surfaces are dry, sound, clean, and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar or
 5 other contaminants detrimental to the adhesion of the water resistive air barrier
 6 membrane and flashings. Use mastic recommended by air barrier manufacturer to fill
 7 voids, cracks, and gaps in substrate greater than 1/4-inch (6mm) in width to provide
 8 an even surface. Strike masonry joints full-flush.
- 9 E. Mechanical fasteners used to secure sheathing boards or penetrate sheathing boards
 10 shall be set flush with the sheathing and fastened into solid backing material. All joints
 11 in sheathing board should be taped with 2-inch (50mm) wide exterior sheathing tape
 12 prior to installation of fluid applied air barrier.
- 13 F. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating the rainscreen wall
 14 assembly to verify actual locations of penetrations.
- 15 G. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions
 16 detrimental to performance of the Work.
- 17 H. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

18 3.2 PREPARATION

- 19 A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to air barrier installation, including removing
 20 projections capable of interfering with air barrier.
- 21 B. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and
 22 penetrations through water-resistive air barrier and at protrusions.
- 23 C. Establish straight, side and crosswise benchmarks
- 24 D. All walls shall be checked for square and straightness. Inside and outside corners may
 25 not be plumb; set a true line for the corner flashing with string line.
- 26 E. Ensure all preparatory work is complete prior to installing fluid applied water-resistive
 27 air barrier membrane.
- 28 F. Minimum application temperature of fluid applied membrane and flashings to be above
 29 50 °F (10 °C).

30 3.3 AIR BARRIER INSTALLATION

- 31 A. Vapor Permeable Air Barrier Installation: Install transition strip materials and fluid-
 32 applied vapor permeable air barrier to provide continuity throughout the building
 33 envelope. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and
 34 as follows, unless manufacturer recommends other procedures in writing based on
 35 project conditions or particular requirements of their recommended materials:
- 36 1. Prior to installation, all openings/gaps in the substrate less than 1/8" **must be filled**
 37 **with sealant**. All openings/gaps in the substrate wider than 1/8" **must be taped**.
 38 (As recommended by ABAA)
 - 39 2. Apply primer for transition strips at rate recommended by manufacturer. Allow
 40 primer to dry completely before transition strip application. Apply as many coats
 41 as necessary for proper adhesion.
 - 42 3. Apply primer for fluid-applied vapor permeable air barrier as recommended by
 43 fluid-applied vapor permeable air barrier manufacturer. Based on manufacturer's
 44 recommendation, no primer may be required for the fluid-applied materials.



- 1 4. Apply fluid-applied vapor permeable air barrier by airless sprayer, roller, or brush,
2 using equipment and methods recommended by manufacturer, to achieve a dry
3 film thickness as recommended by the manufacturer.
 - 4 a. A two-pass application is generally recommended to ensure sufficient dry film
5 thickness. Alternate horizontal and vertical passes when applying to ensure
6 even thickness and installation.
 - 7 b. Do not apply over standing water.
 - 8 c. Allow concrete and mortar joints to cure for a minimum of 16-hours before
9 application of fluid-applied vapor retarding air barrier.
- 10 5. At changes in substrate plane, provide transition material (bead of sealant, mastic,
11 extruded silicone sealant, membrane counterflashing or other material
12 recommended by manufacturer) under membrane to eliminate all sharp 90 degree
13 inside corners and to make a smooth transition from one plane to another.
- 14 6. Do not allow materials to come in contact with chemically incompatible materials.
- 15 7. Do not leave the vapor permeable air barrier exposed to sunlight for more than
16 180 days.
- 17 8. Inspect installation prior to enclosing assembly and repair punctures, damaged
18 areas and inadequately lapped seams with a patch of membrane lapped as
19 recommended by manufacturer.
- 20 9. At end of each working day, seal top edge of membrane to substrate with
21 termination mastic.
- 22 B. Window, Door, and Other Wall Openings.
 - 23 1. To avoid waste, predetermine best method and sequence to the install self-
24 adhered air barrier transition and flashing membrane around window or wall
25 openings subject to the opening size and installation of window, door or louver
26 type.
 - 27 2. Cover horizontal sill by aligning flexible flashing edge with inside edge of sill.
28 Adhere to rough opening across sill and up jambs a minimum of 6 inches (150
29 mm). Secure flashing tightly into corners by working in along the sill before
30 adhering up the jambs.
 - 31 3. Fan flexible flashing at bottom corners onto face of wall. Firmly press in place.
 - 32 4. Wrap self-adhered air barrier transition and flashing membrane into wall openings
33 to cover jambs and head. It is not required to install continuous sheets through
34 corners.
 - 35 5. Remove release film, align flashing membrane and apply pressure to ensure
36 positive contact. Roll Lap seams to ensure adhesion. Provide lap seams to shed
37 water.
 - 38 6. Subject to window installation requirements, install preformed sill pan system and
39 seal to installed self-adhered air barrier window flashing membrane with sealant.
 - 40 7. Install windows in accordance with window manufacturer's details and cover nail
41 flange with flashing tape. Install flashing tape along jamb and across head flanges
42 of window and seal to installed self-adhered air barrier transition membrane. Roll
43 tape to ensure positive contact to substrate. Seal exposed leading edge of tape.
 - 44 8. For windows without nail flange, install flashing tape around perimeter of opening
45 to accommodate placement of backer rod and sealant between window frame and
46 self-adhered air barrier transition membrane.



- 1 C. Building Transition Conditions.
- 2 1. Tie-in to structural beams, columns, floor slabs and intermittent floors, parapet
- 3 curbs, foundation walls, roofing systems and at the interface of dissimilar materials
- 4 with self-adhering air barrier transition and flashing membrane.
- 5 2. Position subsequent sheets of transition strips applied above so that membrane
- 6 overlaps the membrane sheet below by a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm), unless
- 7 greater overlap is recommended by manufacturer. Roll into place with roller.
- 8 3. Overlap horizontally adjacent pieces of transition strips a minimum of 2 inches (50
- 9 mm), unless greater overlap is recommended by manufacturer. Roll seams with
- 10 roller.
- 11 4. Apply fluid-applied vapor permeable air barrier and transition strips to shed water
- 12 naturally without interception by a sheet edge, unless that edge is sealed with
- 13 permanently flexible termination mastic.
- 14 5. Connect air and water barrier in exterior wall assembly continuously to the air
- 15 barrier of the roof, to concrete below-grade structures, to windows, curtain wall,
- 16 storefront, louvers, exterior doors and other intersection conditions and perform
- 17 sealing of penetrations, using accessory materials and in accordance with the
- 18 manufacturer's recommendations.
- 19 6. Provide mechanically fastened non-corrosive metal sheet to span gaps in
- 20 substrate plane and to make a smooth transition from one plane to the other.
- 21 Membrane shall be continuously supported by substrate.
- 22 7. At deflection and control joints, provide backup for the membrane to accommodate
- 23 anticipated movement.
- 24 8. At expansion and seismic joints provide transition to the joint assemblies.
- 25 9. Apply a bead or trowel coat of mastic along membrane seams at reverse lapped
- 26 seams, rough cuts, and as recommended by the manufacturer.
- 27 D. Mechanical Equipment Penetrations.
- 28 1. Mechanical pipe, electrical conduit and/or duct work must be secured solid into
- 29 position prior to installation of fluid applied vapor permeable air barrier membrane.
- 30 2. Electrical services penetrating the wall assembly and fluid applied vapor
- 31 permeable air barrier membrane must be placed in appropriate conduit and
- 32 secured solid into position.
- 33 3. Install manufactured flanged penetration sleeves as recommended by sleeve
- 34 manufacturer.
- 35 4. For straight sided penetrations, cut and fit self-adhered vapor permeable air barrier
- 36 transition membrane to accommodate sleeve, install specified single sided flashing
- 37 tape to seal the air barrier membrane to ductwork or preformed flange sleeve.
- 38 5. For pipe penetrations, refer to manufacturer's standard details.
- 39 6. Seal around all penetrations with termination mastic, extruded silicone sealant,
- 40 membrane counterflashing or other procedure in accordance with manufacturer's
- 41 recommendations.
- 42 7. At through-wall flashings, provide an additional 6-inch (150 mm) wide strip of
- 43 manufacturer's recommended membrane counterflashing to seal top of through-
- 44 wall flashing to membrane or as recommended by manufacturer. Seal exposed
- 45 top edge of strip with bead of mastic or as recommended by manufacturer.



1 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 2 A. Air Barrier Association of America Installer Audits: Cooperate with ABAA's testing
3 agency. Allow access to work areas and staging. Notify Owner's testing agency in
4 writing of schedule for Work of this Section to allow sufficient time for testing and
5 inspection. Do not cover Work of this Section until testing and inspection is accepted.
6 B. Remove and replace applications of air barrier membrane system where inspections
7 indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

8 **3.5 PROTECTION AND CLEANING**

- 9 A. Protect wall areas covered with fluid applied water-resistive vapor retarding air barrier
10 from damage due to construction activities, high wind conditions, and extended
11 exposure to inclement weather.
12 B. Review condition of fluid applied water-resistive vapor retarding air barrier prior to
13 installation of exterior cladding, insulation, glazing, and fenestration products. Repair,
14 or remove and replace damaged sections with new membrane.
15 C. Recommend to cap and protect exposed back-up walls against wet weather conditions
16 during and after application of membrane, including wall openings and construction
17 activity above completed fluid applied water-resistive vapor retarding air barrier
18 installations.
19 D. Do not allow materials to come in contact with chemically incompatible materials.
20 E. Remove and replace water-resistive weather barrier membrane affected by chemical
21 spills or surfactants.
22

23 **END OF SECTION 07 26 50**



1 SECTION 07 41 00 - PREFORMED METAL ROOF PANELS
2

3 1.0 GENERAL

- 4 Provide not later than 48 hours after bids are due.
5 A. The bidder shall include a statement listing his material supplier and installer as part
6 of their bid. The bidder shall include a letter from the manufacturer stating that by
7 submitting a bid the data at the end of this section is in compliance with the
8 performance criteria set forth by this specification and the specification
9 requirements of Section 453.12, FBC-Building. This data must indicate full
10 compliance with the performance criteria set forth by this specification as signed
11 and sealed by a Florida registered Professional Engineer on the form attached
12 hereto and made a part of this specification which must accompany other required
13 bid forms made part of the contract documents. Material supplier's technical data
14 supplied during submittals shall include those items stipulated by section 1.04 of this
15 specification and shall provide substantiating documentation from a Registered Engineer in
16 the State of Florida that the certification made on the aforementioned bid form is correct.
17 Manufacturers not able to provide this information at bid time and during the submittal
18 process will not be considered. The architect or owner reserve the right to reject either a
19 subcontractor and/or material supplier if sufficient proof is not available to indicate full
20 compliance with this specification. Requests for Substitution shall be received in Architect's
21 office 10 calendar days prior to Bid Date and shall include a CSI Substitution Form and
22 complete data.
23

24 1.01 WORK INCLUDED

- 25
26 A. Labor, materials and equipment to complete roofing, insulation, clips, underlayment material,
27 penetration flashings, soffit panels and associated trim as indicated in the drawings and to provide
28 a watertight roofing system and warranty.
29 B. All roofing shall include all requirements of Section 453.12, Florida Building Code-Building as
30 applicable to this specific work shown and specified within the Documents.
31

32 1.02 RELATED WORK

- 33
34 A. Specified elsewhere includes: Structural support framing, purlins or sleepers, metal decking,
35 gutters, downspouts etc. Refer to Section 05 31 00 for steel decking. Refer to Section 07 61 50 for
36 gutters and downspouts.
37

38 1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- 39
40 A. Current edition of each applies.

41
42 Aluminum Association - AA

43
44 "Specifications for Aluminum Sheet Metal Work in Building Construction"

45
46 "Specifications for Aluminum Structures"

47
48 "Standards and Data"

49
50 American Iron and Steel Institute - AISI

51
52 "Light Gauge Cold-Formed Steel Design Manual"

53
54 American Society of Testing Materials - ASTM
55



1 A-446 Structural, Physical Quality for Galvanized Steel Sheet
2
3 A-792 General Requirements for Aluminum-Zinc Coated Sheet
4
5
6 B-117 Method of Salt Fog Exposure Testing
7
8 D-523 Test Method for Specular Gloss
9
10 D-659 Method for Evaluating Degree of Chalking
11
12 D-714 Method For Evaluating Degree of Blistering of Paints
13
14 D-822 Practice for Operating Carbon Arc Weatherometer
15
16 D-968 Abrasion Resistance by Falling Sand Method
17
18 D-2244 Method for Evaluating Color Differences of Opaque Materials
19
20 D-3359 Method for Measuring Paint Adhesion With Tape
21
22 D-3361 Practice for Operating Carbon Arc Dew Cycle Weatherometer
23
24 D-3363 Test Method for Film hardness by Pencil Hardness
25
26 D-1970 Standard for Self Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet.
27
28 D-1056 Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials
29
30 E-108
31
32 E-330 Structural Performance by Static Air Pressure Difference
33
34 E-1592 Static Air Pressure Testing of Standing Seam Metal Roofing.
35
36 E-1680 Standard Test Method for Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Metal Roof
37 Panel Systems.
38
39 E-1646 Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Metal Roof Panel
40 Systems by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
41
42 E-1886
43
44 National Forest Products Association - NFPA:
45
46 "National Design Specifications for Stress Grade Lumber and its Fastenings"
47
48 National Roofing Contractors Association - NRCA:
49
50 "The NRCA Construction Details"
51
52 Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association: SMACNA
53
54 "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual"
55



1 Florida Building Code 2020, Building

2
3 "Including but not limited to Section 453.12, Roofing"

4
5 ASCE 716

6
7 **1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 8
9 A. Shop drawings shall be in scale large enough to clearly show all layers. Include dimensions
10 of fabricated work, reference dimensions to the structure, show type, size and spacing of
11 fasteners, with material thickness and finishes, provide a plan layout with erection
12 sequence and notations of coordination required with other trades. Shop drawings shall be
13 reviewed and accepted by the Architect prior to commencement of work. Submit with the
14 shop drawings the review comments by the manufacturer's technical department, if any.
15 Add reference to any general conditions regarding shop drawings.
16
- 17 B. Submit with the drawings: copies of independent laboratory tests, mill certifications, and
18 calculations by a professional engineer registered in the State of Florida certifying structural
19 performance data on the panels, anchor clips, and fasteners to meet the structural testing
20 and performance and materials requirements of this specification as indicated in section
21 2.02. Manufacturer's certification letters will not be accepted in lieu of the specified
22 independent laboratory tests, mill certifications, and calculations by a registered
23 professional engineer or an adequate Florida Product Approval which complies with the
24 required loading. If a Florida Product Approval is submitted, clearly indicate the system to
25 be used for this project. Roof design pressures are indicated on the structural drawings.
26
- 27 C. Submit material samples as follows:
- 28 1. Panel One-piece, full width, 12" long of each type to be used.
 - 29 2. Accessories One each of each anchor clip, roll formed part or press formed or
30 molded closure. A flat sample 6"x 6" of material for fabrication of any custom formed
31 profile, such as hip, ridge and rake caps.
 - 32 3. Fasteners Two samples of each type to be used, identified as to use.
 - 33 4. Sealant and seal tape One sample at least 8 oz, with descriptive data.
 - 34 5. Soffit panel, one-piece, full width, 12" long of each type to be used.
- 35
36
- 37 D. Prior to completion, submit quality control data certifying that materials furnished for the
38 project are the same make and manufacture as those tested.
39
- 40 E. Manufacturer and Installer shall submit the notice of intent to issue roof warranty (form
41 attached to this specification) with request for approval to bid.
42

43 **1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- 44
45 A. Deliver, store, handle, and stack panels in strict accord with manufacturer's instructions and
46 paragraph 3.01 Installation of this section to avoid damage that would void the warranty.
47

48
49 **1.05 GUARANTEES**

- 50
51 A. Prior to completion of the project, submit:
- 52 1. Panel manufacturers' 20-year warranty against structural defects or corrosion and the
53 20-year warranty on finish durability. Finish warranty shall cover checking, crazing,
54 peeling, chalking, fading and adhesion of the prepainted sheet metal materials.
55



1 Manufacturers' 20-year weather-tight warranty shall cover up to the designed wind
 2 speed in accordance with Sheet S001 of the Contract Documents jointly signed by the
 3 installer and the manufacturer.

- 4
 5 2. Installer's 3-year warranty covering roof panel installation and watertightness
 6
 7

8 **2.0 PRODUCTS**

9
 10 **2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

11
 12 **A. Basis of Design: Petersen Aluminum Corporation, Kennesaw, GA "TITE-LOC PLUS"**
 13 **PANEL.**

14 Other approved manufacturers:

15
 16 IMETCO: Tucker, GA "Series 300" system (with striations) 770-908-1030
 17
 18

- 19 1. Subject to meeting the above Basis of Design products, other manufacturer's products
 20 will be reviewed (if complete information and CSI Substitution Form is submitted 10
 21 days prior to Bid Date and meeting the requirements of the Basis of Design and this
 22 specification section:
 23

- 24 B. Manufacturer shall have had at least 5 years' experience using standing seam roof panels
 25 in architectural roofing applications, and the roof panel itself shall have been in use for at
 26 least ten years. Manufacturer shall demonstrate past experience with a list of five (5)
 27 projects successfully completed with the proposed system. **Request for manufacturer or**
 28 **model substitution shall be accompanied by a completed CSI Form. Request shall**
 29 **include technical data on all characteristics, certified independent laboratory test**
 30 **reports of the proposed item, and list all deviations from these specifications.**
 31 Submittals without this information will not be reviewed. Specifically, products not
 32 complying with the performance testing set forth in section 2.02.D will not be considered as
 33 neither will substitute test methods. Products requiring tests to fulfill the criteria set forth by
 34 this specification shall be done at no cost to the owner and shall be performed prior to
 35 submitting for approval as an alternate product. Submit complete information as necessary
 36 for evaluation. Submit complete description of each project including product utilized,
 37 name and phone numbers of representatives of the Owner, Architect, Installer, and
 38 Contractor with project name, location, size, and product installed. Acceptable substitution
 39 requests (refer to paragraph 1.0 A) shall be issued by Addendum; subject to being received
 40 in adequate time prior to issuance of last addendum.
 41

- 42 C. The installer shall be authorized, certified and approved by the panel manufacturer, and the
 43 actual work shall be supervised by personnel trained by the manufacturer in proper
 44 application of the product. The installer shall have capability for preparation of shop details
 45 and fabrication of all flashings not furnished by the panel manufacturer. Installer must
 46 execute 100% of metal roof system installation with installer's own forces. Field roll forming
 47 of roof panels, however, shall be performed by the manufacturer's own crews.
 48
 49

50 **2.02 MATERIALS - PANELS AND SHEET**

- 51
 52 A. Panels shall be fabricated in full lengths from ridge to eave without end laps. Panels shall
 53 be 18" wide with concealed anchors that resist wind uplift yet permit expansion and
 54 contraction with temperature changes. Panels as narrow as 18" or as wide as 20" wide are
 55 approved subject to meeting all other performance and aesthetic requirements of these



1 specifications. Standing ribs 2 3/8" high maximum that are mechanically seamed together
 2 @ 180 degrees. Panels shall be produced from the listed manufacturer's and shall be
 3 produced with "striations" to minimize oil-canning. Panels shall be 24-gauge galvalume
 4 minimum .0240-inch thickness prior to painting.
 5

6 B. Flashing: Refer to Section 07 60 00.
 7

8 C. Finish: Factory baked on 70% Kynar or Hylar 5000 fluorocarbon coating with a top side dry
 9 film thickness of 0.7 to 0.8 mil exclusive of the primer. Prime coat shall be coated with a
 10 primer with a dry film thickness of 0.95 to 1.25 mil. Bottom side shall be coated with a
 11 primer with a dry film thickness of 0.25 mil.:
 12

13 D. Strippable coating shall be applied on the galvalume panels to the top side to protect the
 14 finish during fabrication, shipping and field handling. This strippable coating shall be
 15 removed prior to installation. Field protection shall be provided by the Contractor on the job
 16 site to prevent material exposure to weather and moisture.
 17

18 Site Formed Panels: Bidder will not be allowed to supply panels formed at the jobsite on
 19 portable rollformers; metal panels must be factory pre-manufactured and engineered for
 20 this project.

21 a. Site Formed Panels: Panels in excess of shippable length shall be formed on-site.
 22 Site formed panels shall meet each of the following requirements:

- 23 1) Panels shall be of identical profile and characteristics as factory formed
 24 panels and specimens used as the basis of performance tests.
- 25 2) Site roll forming equipment shall be owned and maintained by the panel
 26 manufacturer and operated by the panel manufacturer's trained full-time
 27 experienced technician. The installer must provide additional personnel to
 28 handle raw materials and finished product as necessary.

29
 30 D. Product Performance
 31

- 32 1. Manufactured roof panels shall comply with performance requirements indicated, be
 33 capable of withstanding structural movement, thermally induced movement, and
 34 exposure to weather without failure or infiltration of water into the building interior.
 35
- 36 2. Structural - Uniform load capacity shall be determined by testing in accord with the
 37 principles of ASTM E-1592. Panel system shall be tested to failure with a minimum
 38 factor of safety of 2.0 applied to achieve safe working loads. **Testing and**
 39 **computations illustrating compliance with project design loads specified on**
 40 **Sheet S001 and associated wind pressure diagrams on Structural Drawings shall**
 41 **be signed and sealed by a professional engineer registered in State of Florida.**
 42 **The roof panels and accessories shall be designed to meet a UL Class 90 wind**
 43 **uplift in accordance with UL standard 580 and tested in accordance with ASTM**
 44 **E-1592, Florida Building Code 8th Edition (2023) and ASCE 7-16.,** Provide Florida
 45 Product Approval number and a copy of the Florida Product approval with the specific
 46 project product requirements indicated. Roof System shall meet wind load
 47 requirements without the use of throughbolts or other external devices on the surface of
 48 the panel, unless otherwise indicated herein.
 49
- 50 3. Weather tightness - When tested per ASTM E-283/1680 and ASTM E-331/1646 there
 51 shall be no uncontrolled water penetration or air infiltration through the panel joints.
 52



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
4. Resistance to wear through- An assembled specimen at least 3 panels wide spanning 3 or more supports with a 10-pound positive load on each clip shall be subjected to 100,000 cycles 1/2" in each direction for a total of 1" thermal movement. Upon completion, the panel shall show no signs of wear through from the top nor shall the contact surfaces between the clip and panel show any more than 25% loss in metal thickness. Laboratory test reports shall be independently certified (not by the manufacturer) by a registered professional engineer licensed to practice in any United States jurisdiction.
 5. Factory color finish: 70% Kynar or Hylar 5000 fluorocarbon coating shall be provided for the standing seam roof. The manufacturer shall have conducted tests on previously manufactured panels of the same type and finish as proposed for the project to assure conformance with these specifications. The term "appearance of base metal" refers to the steel under the organic coating. Panels shall pass the following tests:
 - a. Formability Test: When subjected to a scored T-bend using impact wedge bend apparatus in accordance with ASTM D 3281, exterior coating film shall show no cracking and no pick-off with Scotch 610 tape at 3-T bend prior to fracture of base metal.
 - b. Accelerated Weathering Test: A sample of the panels shall withstand a minimum of 2000 hours exposure in accordance with ASTM D-822 with the following results: Chalk rating of 8 to 10 (no chalk) per ASTM D659. Color change no greater than 2 delta E units per ASTM D-2244
 - c. Abrasion Resistance Test for Color Coating: In the Falling Sand test in accordance with ASTM D 968, coefficient of abrasion shall be a minimum of 55 liters of sand per mil of coating thickness before appearance of base metal.
 - d. Humidity Test: When subjected to a humidity cabinet test in accordance with ASTM D 2247 for 3000 hours, panels shall show no field blisters and no change in pencil hardness after 24 hours.

38 2.03 MATERIALS - ACCESSORY ITEMS

- 39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
- A. Anchor Clips shall be Galvanized Steel as recommended by the Manufacturer for the respective wind uplifts for the project. Fasteners in supports and screws installed in clips shall be fully recessed so that no sharp edges come in contact with the roof material. Clips shall be designed to allow for expansion and contraction of the roof relative to the structure throughout the temperature range specified in 3.02D.
 - B. Screws holding anchor clips to the structure shall be Stainless Steel as recommended by the Manufacturer to comply with the Florida Product Approval in place for this panel system.
 - C. Exposed fasteners shall match the finish of the panel system and shall be aluminum or stainless steel. For weathertightness, screws shall have separate washers with hot bonded neoprene faces, and pop-rivets shall be set in wet sealant. Exposed fasteners shall be a minimum #14 size screw or 3/16" diameter rivet.
 - D. Precut foam profile closures shall be black closed cell foam meeting specification ASTM D



1 1056 grade SCE 41 Black EPT. Field fabricated closures shall be foam PVC, supported
2 and protected from weathering by a metal channel matching the finish of the roof flashing.
3

4
5
6 E. Sealant used with the roofing shall be applied between surfaces during assembly with a
7 minimum amount exposed on the completed installation.
8

9 1. Concealed sealant may be a non-curing, non-skinning butyl, polyisobutylene or
10 polybutane tape of sufficient thickness to make full contact with both surfaces.
11

12 2. Exposed sealant shall be a curing type with excellent weather and sunlight
13 resistance. Color shall be as selected by Architect. Apply in accordance with
14 the sealant manufacturer's recommendations. Provide two-part polysulfide
15 class "B" non-sag type for vertical and horizontal joints, brand name: NP-1 or
16 similar performing caulking.
17

18 One-part polysulfide not containing pitch or phenolic extenders, or;

19 Exterior grade silicone sealant recommended by roofing manufacturer, or;

20 One-part non-sag, gun grade exterior type polyurethane recommended by
21 roofing manufacturer.
22

23
24
25 F. Roofing Underlayment shall be a 40-mil thick, high temperature self-adhered roofing
26 underlayment to deliver premium in-place performance for high temperature applications
27 and composed of a rubberized asphalt adhesive combined with a high performance
28 polymeric film with UV barrier properties. A removable release film shall be on the
29 membrane underside for ease of application.
30

31 Acceptable manufacturers:

- 32 a) Grace Ice and Water Shield HT
33 b) Carlisle WIP 300 HT
34
35

36 Subject to meeting the above Basis of Design roof underlayment performance requirements,
37 other manufacturer's products will be reviewed and considered subject to compliance with the
38 Contract Documents.
39

40
41 1. Underlayment shall be laid in horizontal layers with joints lapped toward the eaves a
42 minimum of 6", and well secured along laps and at ends as necessary to properly hold
43 the underlayment in place. All underlayment shall be preserved unbroken and whole.
44

45 G. Ice & Water Shield shall lap all hips and ridges at least 12" to form double thickness and
46 shall be lapped 6" over the metal of any valleys or built-in gutters and shall be installed as
47 required by the Standing Seam Panel Manufacturer to attain the desired 20 Year
48 Weathertightness Warranty.
49

50 H. Bearing Plates, 6" x 6" x 22 gauge, shall be used under each roof panel clip (only required
51 directly over insulation board with no cover board).
52

53 I. Roofing underlayment shall be installed over the insulation cover board which in turn shall
54 be installed above the insulation and metal deck.



1 1. Insulation for the roofing shall be approximately 5 inches of polyisocyanurate insulation
 2 for an approximate total R-value of 25 minimum. Insulation shall be mechanically
 3 fastened into the top side of the metal flutes only. Insulation shall be installed in two
 4 layers with all joints staggered vertically and horizontally to minimize thermal transfer.

5 J. Soffit and MWP-2 Wall Panels: Roofing Manufacturer's non-vented, minimum 22
 6 gauge Kynar coated galvalume panels 12" wide panel; color to be selected by Architect
 7 from full range of manufacturers colors. Note that per the Florida Building Code soffit
 8 panels must be designed to resist applied wind pressures. See Structural drawings for
 9 pressures.

10
 11 K. VTR's: Provide roofing manufacturer's standard boot at each VTR. Roofing
 12 subcontractor shall prep and paint exposed portion of the VTR to match roof color.
 13

14 2.04 FABRICATION

15
 16 A. Minimum inside bend radius on flashing shall be 2T, and all edges shall have an open hem
 17 for stiffness.

18
 19 B. Comply with dimensions, profile limitations, gauges and fabrication details shown and if not
 20 shown, provide manufacturer's standard product fabrication.

21
 22 C. Fabricate components of the system in factory, ready for field assembly.

23
 24 D. Fabricate components and assemble units to comply with fire and performance
 25 requirements specified.

26
 27 E. Apply specified finishes in conformance with manufacturer's standards, and according to
 28 manufacturer's instructions.

29
 30 F. Insofar as possible, attachment screws shall be eliminated in favor of concealed cleats or
 31 clips. If in high wind areas, concealed fasteners are not possible to provide the structural
 32 rigidity to resist flutter specifically note and call attention in the shop drawings.
 33

34 3.0 EXECUTION

35 3.01 INSTALLATION

36
 37
 38 A. Examine alignment of structural steel and related supports prior to installation and do not proceed
 39 until the defects are corrected by the responsible contractor.
 40

41 3.02 FASTENERS

42
 43 A. Secure units to supports.

44
 45 B. Place fasteners as indicated in manufacturer's standards.
 46

47 3.03 INSTALLATION

48
 49 A. General: Comply with panel manufacturer's written recommendations for installation, as
 50 applicable to project conditions and supporting substrates. Anchor panels and other
 51 components of the work in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 52

53
 54 B. Storage and Handling - Protection shall be provided during fabrication, shipment, storage
 and erection. During shipment, finished surfaces shall be protected from abrasion by a



1 removable plastic film between areas of contact. Jobsite storage shall be in a clean, dry
 2 area out of direct contact with the ground, under cover or sloped for drainage, protected
 3 from abuse by traffic and from contamination by corrosive or staining materials. Stored
 4 materials and unfinished work shall be secured against wind damage. Installed panels
 5 shall be protected from abuse by other trades. It shall be the responsibility of this
 6 contractor to provide walk boards in areas of heavy traffic and any other measures required
 7 to prevent damage by his own crews and notify the General Contractor of any necessity for
 8 protection from other trades.
 9

- 10 C. Coordinate metal panel roofing with rain drainage work; flashing; trim; and construction of
 11 decks, parapet walls, windows, and other adjoining work to provide a leak-proof, secure
 12 noncorrosive installation. Promptly remove protective film, if any, from exposed surfaces of
 13 metal panels. Before installation, this contractor shall verify that the structure is ready to
 14 receive his work. He shall check field dimensions and alignment of structural members to
 15 assure that the roof panels and flashing will be straight and true. The Architect shall be
 16 notified on unresolved conditions which may adversely affect the performance or
 17 appearance of the installed roof, and work on that location will not proceed until found
 18 acceptable by the Architect.
 19
- 20 D. Work shall be installed in accord with the approved shop details under direct supervision of
 21 an experienced sheet metal craftsman. Attachments and joints shall allow for expansion
 22 and contraction from temperature changes without distortion or elongation of fastener
 23 holes. Flashing shall be installed in strict accord with the recommended practice in the AA,
 24 NRCA and SMACNA architectural sheet metal manuals: without fasteners in end laps and
 25 isolated from dissimilar materials.
 26
- 27 E. Completed work shall be plumb and true, free of scrapes and dents. Panel ribs shall be on
 28 the module indicated in the contract drawings within the tolerance allowed by the actual
 29 construction dimension. Excess sealant shall be removed and touch-up paint applied to
 30 any areas where paint scrapes occur. Any panels which are badly damaged and in the
 31 judgment of the architect cannot be repaired shall be removed and replaced. On
 32 completion of the panel installation, clean finish surfaces as recommended by panel
 33 manufacturer.
 34
- 35 F. If required by manufacturer for the specified product, location and watertightness warranty
 36 sealant or continuous seal tape shall be installed in the ribs from eave to ridge.
 37
- 38 G. Do not cut panels on roof.
 39
- 40 H. Field inspection of installed panel roof system by **Metal Panel Manufacturer Factory-**
 41 **Approved/Authorized** inspector shall be required for the 20-year Limited
 42 Weathertightness Warranty. Minimum of two (2) inspections by the Factory inspector shall
 43 be required with written reports of these inspections
 44
 45
 46
 47

48 3.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- 49
- 50 A. The installation shall be designed to safely resist the positive and negative loads in accordance with
 51 ASCE 7-16 and as specified and referred herein. Refer to Sheet S001 regarding pressure zones.
 52 B. Water Penetration: When tested per ASTM E-283/1680 and ASTM E-331/1646 there shall be no
 53 uncontrolled water penetration or air infiltration through the panel joints.
 54
 55 C. Roof System shall be designed to meet Florida Building Code wind load requirements.



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55

- D. Roof System shall be designed to meet a UL Class 90 wind uplift in accordance with UL standard 580 and panel system shall be Miami-Dade NOA® Tested and approved with the current Miami-Dade NOA® Approval number listed and shown clearly in the submittals. The NOA approval document and all supporting documentation must be included as part of the submittal. The panels must also meet the project specific requirements for wind speeds and pressures indicated on the Structural drawings.
- E. Roof system shall have current FLORIDA BUILDING CODE PRODUCT APPROVAL and shall be supported by ASCE 7 “stamped/sealed” Florida Independent Engineer Calculations from the Roofing System Manufacturer to support the applicable Zone 1, Zone 2 and Zone 3 loads for this project. Extrapolations will not be allowed in these calculations, only interpolations by the Engineer to illustrate the clip layout for each Zone listed above. **Panel system shall have a Miami-Dade NOA Approval with current NOA approval number submitted to the Architect.**
- F. Roof panels shall be able to support walking loads without excessive distortion or telegraphing of the structural supports. For the maximum span used on the project, panels shall withstand a 250 lb. concentrated load applied to a four-square inch pad located at the center of the panel flat without buckling of the rib or noticeable permanent distortion of the panel.
- G. Roof panel and flashing attachments shall be designed to accommodate the thermal expansion and contraction of the exterior material through a total of 180-degree F temperature change.
- H. Factors of safety on design loads to ultimate strength of fasteners shall be as stated in the industry standard for the material into which the fastener is driven.
 - 1. Aluminum Association for Aluminum
 - 2. AISI for steel
 - 3. NFPA for wood
 - 4. APA for Plywood
 - 5. Allowable holding power for concrete shall be as specified in the building code for the product and grade of concrete involved.

3.05 DAMAGED MATERIAL

- A. Upon determination of responsibility, repair or replace damaged metal panels and trim to the satisfaction of the Architect and Owner.

Project: WCSD Educational Ancillary Facilities-District Office
Project Number: 68100

**Registered Professional Engineer's
Certification of Compliance**

REF: Metal Roof System's Specified Performance Criteria

Provide with bid, original, embossed, Professional Engineer's seal on this bid form attesting that the system proposed complies with all specified performance criteria of the metal roof specification section 074100, Florida Building Code 8th Edition (2023) – Building, ASCE 7-16, and Structural Design Loads on S001 as follows:

PRODUCT:

	Engineer's Initials
2.02.A Materials	Product Verified and in Compliance _____
2.02.D.1 Structural	Product Verified and in Compliance _____
2.02.D.2 Design	Product Verified and in Compliance _____



- 1
- 2 2.02.D.3 Weathertightness..... Product Verified and in Compliance _____
- 3
- 4 2.02.D.4 Resistance to Wear Through..... Product Verified and in Compliance _____
- 5
- 6 2.02.D.5 Factory Color Finish Product Verified and in Compliance _____
- 7
- 8 2.03.A Panel Clips..... Product Verified and in Compliance _____
- 9
- 10 2.03.B Fasteners Product Verified and in Compliance _____
- 11
- 12 3.02.A Structural Design Loads Product Verified and in Compliance _____
- 13
- 14 3.02.B Concentrated Load Test Product Verified and in Compliance _____
- 15
- 16 3.02.C Thermal Movement..... Product Verified and in Compliance _____
- 17
- 18 3.02.D Factors of Safety Product Verified and in Compliance _____
- 19

20 As a Registered Professional Engineer in the state of Florida, I do hereby certify that I have reviewed the
 21 contract documents and the standing seam metal roof panel system intended for application on this project
 22 and found it to be in full compliance with the performance criteria established by the specifications, without
 23 exception. Certified test reports and calculations substantiating the specified performance will be sealed
 24 under my auspices at submittal time.

25
 26 Name: _____ Reg. # _____ State: Florida

27
 28
 29
 30 seal

31
 32 **END OF SECTION 07 41 13.13**



1 **SECTION 07 42 13 - METAL FACED COMPOSITE RAINSCREEN WALL PANEL**

2 **PART 1 – GENERAL**

3
4 **1.01 SUMMARY**

- 5 A. Section Includes: Composite metal panels.
- 6 1. Applications of composite include:
- 7 a. Exterior installation of composite metal panels.
- 8 b. Interior installation of composite metal panels.
- 9 B. Alternates: Products and installation included in this section are specified by alternates. Refer to
- 10 Division 01 Alternates Section for alternates description and alternate requirements.
- 11 C. Related Sections: Section(s) related to this section include:
- 12 1. Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Division 05 Metal Framing Sections.
- 13 2. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Division 07 Flashing and Trim Section.
- 14 3. Joint Sealers: Division 07 Joint Treatment Section.
- 15 4. Aluminum Windows: Division 08 Aluminum Windows Section.
- 16 5. Glazing: Division 08 Glass and Glazing Section.
- 17 6. Metal Framed Curtain Wall: Division 08 Curtain Wall Sections.
- 18

19 **1.02 REFERENCES**

- 20 A. General: Standards listed by reference, including revisions by issuing authority, form a part of this
- 21 specification section to the extent indicated. Standards listed are identified by issuing authority,
- 22 authority abbreviation, designation number, title or other designation established by issuing authority.
- 23 Standards subsequently referenced herein are referred to by issuing authority abbreviation and
- 24 standard designation.
- 25 B. ASTM International:
- 26 1. ASTM D1781 Standard Test Method for Climbing Drum Peel for Adhesives.
- 27 2. ASTM D1929 Standard Test Method for Determining Ignition Temperature of Plastics.
- 28 3. ASTM E84 Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- 29 4. ASTM E108 (Modified) Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings.
- 30 5. ASTM E119 Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
- 31 6. ASTM E283 Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior
- 32 Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen.
- 33 7. ASTM E330 Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls,
- 34 and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
- 35 8. ASTM E331 Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Curtain Wall, and
- 36 Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
- 37 C. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
- 38 1. AAMA 2605 Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for



1 Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels.

2 2. AAMA 508 Voluntary Test Method and Specification for Pressure Equalized Rain Screen Wall
3 Cladding Systems.

4 D. International Organization for Standardization (ISO):

5 1. ISO 9001-2015 Quality Management Systems - Requirements.

7 1.03 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

8 A. Performance Requirements: Provide composite metal panels that have been manufactured, fabricated
9 and installed to withstand loads from deflection and thermal movement and to maintain performance
10 criteria stated by manufacturer without defects, damage or failure.

11 B. Deflection and Thermal Movement: Provide systems that have been tested and certified to conform to
12 the following criteria under wind loading of [specify loading psf (kPa)] inward and [specify loading psf
13 (kPa)] outward:

14 1. Normal Deflection: Deflection of perimeter framing member not to exceed L/175 normal to plane of
15 the wall; deflection of individual panels not to exceed L/60.

16 2. Anchor Deflection: At connection points of framing members to anchors, anchor deflection in any
17 direction not to exceed 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).

18 3. Thermal Movements: Allow for free horizontal and vertical thermal movement due to expansion
19 and contraction of components over a temperature range from [specify temperature range in
20 degrees F (degrees C)].

21 a. Buckling, opening of joints, undue stress on fasteners, failure of sealants, or any other
22 detrimental effects of thermal movement will not be permitted.

23 b. Fabrication, assembly and erection procedures shall take into account the ambient
24 temperature range at the time of the respective operation.

25 C. Water and Air Leakage: Provide systems that have been tested and certified to conform to the following
26 criteria:

27 1. Pressure Equalized Rain Screen Systems.

28 D. Structural: Provide systems that have been tested in accordance with ASTM E330 at a design pressure
29 of [specify design pressure in psf (kPa)] and have been certified to be without permanent deformation
30 or failures of structural members.

32 1.04 SUBMITTALS

33 A. General: Submit listed submittals in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 01
34 Submittal Procedures Section.

35 B. Product Data: Submit product data, including manufacturer's SPEC-DATA sheet, for specified
36 products.

37 C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing layout, profiles and product components, including
38 anchorage, accessories, finish colors and textures.

39 1. Include details showing thickness and dimensions of the various system parts, fastening and
40 anchoring methods, locations of joints and gaskets, and location and configuration of joints
41 necessary to accommodate thermal movement.

42 D. Samples: Submit selection and verification samples for finishes, colors and textures.

43 1. Selected Samples: Manufacturer's color charts or chips illustrating full range of colors, finishes
44 and patterns available for composite metal panels with factory applied finishes.



- 1 2. Verification Samples:
- 2 a. Structural: 12 inches × 12 inches (305 × 305 mm) sample composite panels in thickness
- 3 specified from an available stock color, including clips, anchors, supports, fasteners, closures
- 4 and other panel accessories, for assembly approval. Include panel assembly samples not
- 5 less than 24 inches × 24 inches (610 × 610 mm) showing 4-way joint.
- 6 b. Include separate sets of drawdown samples on aluminum substrate, not less than 3 inches ×
- 7 5 inches (76 × 127 mm), of each color and finish selected for color approval. Larger samples
- 8 of standard colors are available with production-applied coatings.
- 9 E. Quality Assurance Submittals: Submit the following:
- 10 1. Test Reports: Certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics
- 11 and physical properties, or a third party listing documenting compliance to a comparable code
- 12 section.
- 13 2. Certificates: Product certificates signed by manufacturer certifying materials comply with specified
- 14 performance characteristics and physical requirements.
- 15 3. Manufacturer's Instructions: Manufacturer's installation instructions.
- 16 4. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Manufacturer's field reports.
- 17 F. Closeout Submittals: Submit the following:
- 18 1. Warranty: Warranty documents specified.
- 19

20 **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 21 A. Qualifications:
- 22 1. Installer Qualifications: Installer experienced in performing work of this section who has
- 23 specialized in the installation of work similar to that required for this project.
- 24 a. Certificate: When requested, submit certificate indicating qualification.
- 25 2. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company with a minimum of 5 years of continuous experience
- 26 manufacturing panel material of the type specified:
- 27 a. Able to provide specified warranty on finish.
- 28 b. Able to provide a list of 5 other projects of similar size, including approximate date of
- 29 installation and name of Architect for each.
- 30 c. Able to produce the composite material without outsourcing of the coating or laminating
- 31 process.
- 32 d. Able to provide a certificate of registration to ISO 9001-2015.
- 33 3. Fabricator Qualifications: Company with at least 3 years of experience on similar sized metal
- 34 panel projects and qualified by panel material manufacturer. Capable of providing field service
- 35 representation during construction.
- 36 B. Mock-Ups: Install at project site a job mock-up using acceptable products and manufacturer approved
- 37 installation methods. Obtain Owner's and Architect's acceptance of finish color (drawdown samples to
- 38 be used for color approval of nonstandard coil coated colors), texture and pattern and workmanship
- 39 standard. Comply with Division 01 Quality Control, Mock-Up Requirements Section.
- 40 1. Mock-Up Size: [Specify mock-up size].
- 41 2. Maintenance: Maintain mock-up during construction for workmanship comparison; remove and
- 42 legally dispose of mock-up when no longer required.
- 43 3. Incorporation: Mock-up may be incorporated into final construction upon Owner's approval.
- 44 C. Preinstallation Meetings: Conduct preinstallation meeting to verify project requirements, substrate



1 conditions, manufacturer's installation instructions and manufacturer's warranty requirements. Comply
 2 with Division 01 Project Management and Coordination, Project Meetings Section.

4 **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING**

- 5 A. General: Comply with Division 01 Product Requirements Sections.
- 6 B. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead time requirements to avoid
 7 construction delays.
- 8 C. Delivery: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with
 9 identification labels intact.
- 10 1. Protection: Protect finish of panels by applying heavy-duty removable plastic film during
 11 production.
- 12 2. Delivery: Package composite wall panels for protection against transportation damage. Provide
 13 markings to identify components consistently with drawings.
- 14 3. Handling: Exercise care in unloading, storing and installing panels to prevent bending, warping,
 15 twisting and surface damage.
- 16 D. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions and at
 17 temperatures recommended by manufacturer.
- 18 1. Storage: Store panels in well-ventilated space out of direct sunlight.
- 19 a. Protect panels from moisture and condensation with tarpaulins or other suitable weather tight
 20 covering installed to provide ventilation.
- 21 b. Slope panels to ensure positive drainage of any accumulated water.
- 22 c. Do not store panels in any enclosed space where ambient temperature can exceed 120
 23 degrees F (49 degrees C).
- 24 2. Damage: Avoid contact with any other materials that might cause staining, denting or other
 25 surface damage.

27 **1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 28 A. Substrate Tolerances: The General Contractor is responsible for providing a substrate with a tolerance
 29 of 1/4 inch in 20.0 feet (6mm in 6m), on level, plumb, and location control lines as indicated and
 30 within 1/8 inch (3mm) offset of adjoining faces of alignment of matching profiles tolerances are
 31 noncumulative.
- 32 B. Field Measurements: Verify locations of wall framing members and wall opening dimensions by field
 33 measurements prior to fabrication of MCM System. Indicate measurements on the "As Built Shop
 34 Drawings". Field measurements to be taken once all substrate materials and adjacent materials
 35 are installed.
- 36 C. Project Schedule: Provisions in the project schedule must accommodate the time interval between field
 37 measurements and fabrication/installation.

39 **1.08 WARRANTY**

- 40 A. Project Warranty: Refer to Conditions of the Contract for project warranty provisions.
- 41 B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty
 42 document executed by authorized company official. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and not a
 43 limitation of, other rights Owner may have under the Contract Documents.
- 44 1. Warranty Period:



- a. Panel Integrity: 10 years commencing on Date of Substantial Completion.
- b. Finish: 20 years commencing on Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Specifier Note: Retain article below for proprietary method specification. Add product attributes, performance characteristics, material standards and descriptions as applicable. Use of such phrases as “or equal” or “or approved equal” or similar phrases may cause ambiguity in specifications. Such phrases require verification (procedural, legal and regulatory) and assignment of responsibility for determining “or equal” products.

2.01 COMPOSITE METAL PANELS

- A. Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Chemical America, Inc. ALPOLIC Division
 1. Contact: 401 Volvo Parkway, Chesapeake, VA 23320; Telephone (800) 422-7270; Fax: (757) 436-1896; E-mail: info@alpolic.com; website: www.alpolic-america.com.
- B. Proprietary Product: ALPOLIC Composite Metal Panels.
 1. Standard ALPOLIC composite metal panels.

2.02 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions: Substitutions permitted. Provided in full compliance with Basis of Design

2.03 ALTERNATES

- A. Contract Provisions and Division 01 Requirements: [Specify coordination with provisions and requirements].
- B. Alternates:
 1. Base Bid/Contract Manufacturer: [Specify base bid/contract manufacturer].
 - a. Product: [Specify product base bid/contract brand/trade name with product attributes and characteristics].
 2. Alternate No. [Specify #]: [Specify alternate manufacturer].
 - a. Product: [Specify product alternate brand/trade name with product attributes and characteristics].
 3. Alternate No. [Specify #]: [Specify alternate manufacturer].
 - a. Product: [Specify product alternate brand/trade name with product attributes and characteristics].
 - b.

2.04 COMPOSITE METAL PANEL MATERIALS

A. Composite Metal Panels:

1. Core: Thermoplastic material that meets performance characteristics specified when fabricated into composite assembly. **(not classified as non-combustible but can meet NFPA 285)**
2. Face Sheets: Aluminum alloy 3105 H14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick and as follows:
 - a. Coil coated with a fluoropolymer paint finish that meets or exceeds values expressed in AAMA 2605 where relevant to coil coatings.
 - b. Thermally bonded in a continuous process, under tension, to the core material.



- 1 3. Bond Integrity: Tested for resistance to delamination as follows:
 - 2 a. Peel Strength (ASTM D1781): 22.5 in-lb/in (100 N-m/m) minimum.
- 3 4. Fire Performance:
 - 4 a. Flamespread (ASTM E84): Class A (4 and 6 mm).
 - 5 b. Smoke Developed (ASTM E84): Class A (4 and 6 mm).
 - 6 c. Surface Flammability (Modified ASTM E108): Pass (4 and 6 mm).
 - 7 d. V-O Rating (4 mm): Comply with UL 94.
- 8 5. Product Transparency:
 - 9 a. Provide a Product Transparency Declaration (PTD) for the Composite metal
 - 10 panels

11 B. Production Tolerances:

- 12 1. Width: +/- 2 mm.
- 13 2. Length: +/- .012" per ft (1 mm/meter).
- 14 3. Thickness (4 mm Panel): +/- 0.008 inch (0.2 mm).
- 15 4. Bow: Maximum 0.5% length or width.
- 16 5. Squareness: Maximum 0.2 inch (5 mm).
- 17 6. Edges of sheets shall be square and trimmed with no displacement of aluminum sheets or
- 18 protrusion of core material.

19 C. Panel Thickness: [4 mm] [6 mm].

21 2.05 ACCESSORIES

- 22 A. General: Provide fabricator's standard accessories, including fasteners, clips, anchorage devices and
- 23 attachments for specific applications indicated on contract documents.

25 2.06 RELATED MATERIALS

- 26 A. General: Refer to other related sections in Related Sections paragraph specified herein for related
- 27 materials, including cold-form metal framing, flashing and trim, joint sealers, aluminum windows, glass
- 28 and glazing and curtain walls.

30 2.07 FABRICATION

- 31 A. General: Shop fabricate to sizes and joint configurations indicated on drawings.
 - 32 1. Where final dimensions cannot be established by field measurements, provide allowance for field
 - 33 adjustment as recommended by the fabricator.
 - 34 2. Form panel lines, breaks and angles to be sharp and true, with surfaces that are free from warp or
 - 35 buckle.
 - 36 3. Fabricate with sharply cut edges and no displacement of aluminum sheet or protrusion of core.

39 2.08 FINISHES

- 40 A. Exterior Finish: FEVE fluoropolymer paint finish or Kynar PVDF paint finish that meets or
- 41 exceeds values expressed in AAMA 2605 where relevant to coil coatings



- 1) Colors: **(Kynar 500 70% dark bronze anodized selected from a full range of manufacturers color offerings)**

2.09 SOURCE QUALITY

- A. Source Quality: Obtain composite panel products from a single manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data, including product technical bulletins, product catalog installation instructions and product carton instructions.

3.02 EXAMINATION

- A. Substrate Tolerances: The General Contractor is responsible for providing a substrate with a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20.0 feet (6mm in 6m), on level, plumb, and location control lines as indicated and within 1/8 inch (3mm) offset of adjoining faces of alignment of matching profiles tolerances are noncumulative.

- B. Field Measurements: Verify locations of wall framing members and wall opening dimensions by field measurements prior to fabrication of MCM System. Indicate measurements on the "As Built Shop Drawings". Field measurements to be taken once all substrate materials and adjacent materials are installed.

- C. Project Schedule: Provisions in the project schedule must accommodate the time interval between field measurements and fabrication/installation.

3.03 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: [Specify applicable product preparation requirements for installation of composite metal panels].

3.04 INSTALLATION

- A. General:

1. Install panels plumb, level and true in compliance with fabricator's recommendations.
2. Anchor panels securely in place in accordance with fabricator's approved shop drawings.
3. Comply with fabricator's instructions for installation of concealed fasteners and with provisions of Section 07 90 00 for installation of joint sealers.
4. Installation Tolerances: Maximum deviation from horizontal and vertical alignment of installed panels: 0.25 inch in 20 feet (6.4 mm in 6.1 m), noncumulative.

- B. Related Products Installation Requirements: Refer to other sections in Related Sections paragraph herein for installation of related products.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Field Quality Control: Comply with panel system fabricator's recommendations and guidelines for field forming of panels.



1 B. Fabricator's Field Services: Upon Owner's request, provide fabricator's field service consisting of
2 product use recommendations and periodic site visit for inspection of product installation in accordance
3 with fabricator's instructions.

4 1. Site Visits: [Specify number and duration of periodic site visits].
5

6 **3.06 ADJUSTING**

7 A. Adjusting:

8 1. Repair panels with minor damage such that repairs are not discernible at a distance of 10 feet (3
9 m).

10 2. Remove and replace panels damaged beyond repair.

11 3. Remove protective film immediately after installation of joint sealers and immediately prior to
12 completion of composite metal panel work.

13 4. Remove from project site damaged panels, protective film and other debris attributable to work of
14 this section.

15 **3.07 CLEANING**

16 A. Cleaning: Remove temporary coverings and protection of adjacent work areas. Repair or replace
17 damaged installed products. Clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions
18 prior to owner's acceptance. Remove construction debris from project site and legally dispose of
19 debris.
20

21 **3.08 PROTECTION**

22 A. Protection: Protect installed product's finish surfaces from damage during construction.

23 1. Institute protective measures as required to ensure that installed panels will not be damaged.
24
25

26 **END OF SECTION**



1 **SECTION 07 42 16 - METAL WALL PANEL / RAINSCREEN ASSEMBLY**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Work described in this section includes a complete metal wall panel / rainscreen assembly with the
5 following components:

6 1. Fluid applied vapor permeable air and water resistive barrier membrane system including all
7 necessary sheet goods, flashing, tapes, mastics, and sealants to insure a complete water resistive,
8 vapor permeable air barrier wall system

9 2. Thermal Building Insulation

10 3. Metal Wall Panels: single-skin, labyrinth-joint metal cladding panels for rainscreen-principle wall
11 system, complete with sub-structural metal framing, perimeter and penetration flashing, and
12 closures

13 B. Related work specified elsewhere:

14 1. SECTION 074113: Metal Roof Panels

15 2. SECTION 074293: Metal Soffit Panels

16 3. SECTION 077213: Roofing Specialties

17 **1.2 DESIGN & PERFORMANCE CRITERIA – Fluid Applied Vapor Permeable Air and Water Barrier (AWB)**

18 A. General Performance: Fluid applied water resistive air barrier system shall be furnished and installed
19 without failure due to defective manufacture, application, installation, or other defects in construction.

20 B. Air Leakage.

21 1. The fluid applied air barrier shall have less than 0.001 cfm/ft² (0.005 L/s/m²) at 1.57 psf (75 Pa)
22 when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.

23 C. Vapor Permeance: The fluid applied air barrier shall be vapor permeable with a minimum vapor
24 transmission rate of 7 perms (5 metric perms) when tested in accordance with ASTM E96, Method B.

25 D. Physical Properties

26 1. Thickness: The fluid applied water resistive air and vapor barrier shall measure a minimum of 40
27 mils (1.0 mm) nominal dry film thickness in accordance with the test methods of ASTM D1970.

28 2. Low Temperature Flexibility: The fluid applied air barrier shall be tested in accordance with the low
29 temperature flexibility testing of ASTM D1970 and pass at a temperature of -15°F (-30°C).

30 3. Elongation: The fluid applied air barrier shall have a minimum elongation of 600% when tested in
31 accordance with ASTM D412.

32 4. Peel Adhesion: The fluid applied air barrier shall have a minimum peel adhesion to concrete and
33 exterior sheathing of at least 20 lbf/in (35N/mm) when tested in accordance with ASTM D903.

34 5. VOC Content: The fluid applied air barrier shall have a maximum VOC of 50 g/l.



1 **1.3 DESIGN AND PERFORMANCE CRITERIA – Thermal Board Insulation**

2 A. General Performance: Continuous exterior rigid mineral fiber board thermal insulation shall satisfy all
3 requirements of ASTM E612, Type IV-B, shall be free of defects, and meet each of the performance
4 requirements specified herein.

5 B. Thermal Resistance:

- 6 1. At 25°F, the R-value per inch thickness shall be 4.3 hr·ft²·°F/BTU minimum, in accordance with
7 ASTM C518/C177.
8 2. At 75°F, the R-value (RSI-value) per inch (25.4mm) thickness shall be 3.9 hr·ft²·°F/BTU minimum,
9 in accordance with ASTM C518/C177.

10 C. Fire and Heat Performance:

- 11 1. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread rating shall be 0 and smoke development rating
12 shall be 0 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
13 2. Combustibility: The board insulation shall be rated as “Non-Combustible” when tested in
14 accordance with ULC S114.
15 3. The board insulation shall not ignite, burn, support combustion, or release flammable vapors when
16 subjected to fire or heat at 1,382°F, in accordance ASTM E136.
17 4. The board insulation shall be considered Non-Combustible when tested in accordance with NFPA
18 268, and shall be deemed to be acceptable for use in exterior walls of Type I, II, III, and IV building
19 construction without any constraints, such as use of a thermal barrier, as may be required by NFPA
20 285.
21 5. The board insulation shall be rated for a 1,200°F service temperature, as determined by testing in
22 accordance with ASTM C411.

23 D. Moisture Resistance:

- 24 1. Water absorption, as measured in accordance with ASTM C209, shall not exceed 1.2%.
25 2. Water vapor sorption, as measured in accordance with ASTM C1104, shall not exceed 0.30%.
26 3. Water vapor transmission, as measured in accordance with ASTM E96, shall be at least 40 perms.

27 E. Dimensional Stability and Physical Properties:

- 28 1. The board insulation shall have a minimum density of 11.0 pcf as measured in accordance with
29 ASTM C612.
30 2. The board insulation shall have a minimum compressive strength of 1,220 psf at 10% maximum
31 deformation when tested in accordance with ASTM C165.
32 3. The board insulation shall have a maximum of 0.38% linear shrinkage at 1,200°F when tested in
33 accordance with ASTM C356.
34 4. The board insulation shall exhibit dimensional stability of a maximum linear change of 0.1% after 7
35 days in accordance with ASTM D2126 at each of the following climate conditions:
36 a. 40°F with ambient relative humidity;
37 b. 200°F with ambient relative humidity;
38 c. 158°F with 97% relative humidity.

39 F. Acoustical Performance: When tested in accordance with ASTM C423, a 2-inch insulation board shall
40 have a NRC rating of 0.85 minimum.

41 G. Corrosion Resistance:



- 1 1. The insulation board shall be rated "Non-corrosive" to steel when tested in accordance with ASTM
- 2 C665.
- 3 2. The insulation board shall conform with the requirements of ASTM C795 with respect to corrosion
- 4 resistance in contact with stainless steel materials.

5 **1.4 DESIGN AND PERFORMANCE CRITERIA - Metal Wall Panels:**

- 6 A. General Performance: Metal wall panel assemblies shall be furnished and installed without failure due
- 7 to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- 8 B. Rainscreen Wall System Performance Rating. The metal wall panel assemblies, and the substructural
- 9 furring/framing system supporting the panels shall be tested in accordance with AAMA 509 and achieve
- 10 the following performance results:
 - 11 1. Water Infiltration: The water infiltration performance of the metal wall panel assembly shall not
 - 12 exceed the classification of W-1.
 - 13 2. Back Ventilation: The air ventilation performance of the rainscreen cavity air space shall have a
 - 14 minimum classification of V-4.
- 15 C. Thermal Expansion and Contraction.
 - 16 1. Completed metal wall panel and flashing system shall be capable of withstanding expansion and
 - 17 contraction of components caused by changes in temperature without buckling, or reducing
 - 18 performance ability.
 - 19 2. The design temperature differential shall be not less than 220 degrees Fahrenheit.
 - 20 3. Interface between panel and clip shall provide for unlimited thermal movement in each direction
 - 21 along the longitudinal direction.
- 22 D. Uniform Wind Load Capacity.
 - 23 1. Installed wall system shall withstand negative wind pressures complying with the following criteria.
 - 24 a. Design Code: ASCE 7-05, Method 2 for Components and Cladding.
 - 25 b. Safety Factor: The metal panel system shall be tested to proof load of 1.5 times the design
 - 26 service load condition, as required by the ASTM E330 method.
 - 27 2. The ultimate capacity of the panel system shall be determined based on performance testing in
 - 28 accordance with ASTM E330. The system shall be tested to a proof load that shall be 1.5 times the
 - 29 allowable design service load.

30 **1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- 31 A. General, Rainscreen Wall Assembly Components: Complete submittals shall be made jointly and
- 32 simultaneously for all components of the Rainscreen wall assembly, including:
 - 33 1. Fluid Applied Vapor Permeable Air and Water Barrier
 - 34 2. Thermal Board Insulation
 - 35 3. Metal rainscreen wall cladding panels and sub framing components
 - 36 4. All other trim, flashing, sealants, and components necessary for a complete rainscreen wall
 - 37 assembly as required by these specifications.
- 38 B. Shop drawings:



- 1 1. Show complete rain screen wall system with air and water barrier(s), vapor retarder (if applicable),
2 continuous exterior insulation, sub framing system, metal cladding panels, ventilation components,
3 flashings and accessories in elevation, sections, and details. Include metal thicknesses and
4 finishes, panel lengths, joining details, anchorage details, flashings and special fabrication
5 provisions for termination and penetrations. Indicate relationships with adjacent and interfacing
6 work.
- 7 2. All components shall be integrated into a single comprehensive and compete shop drawing set
8 prepared by the metal cladding system manufacturer.
- 9 3. Shop drawings shall identify each product and component by manufacturer, product name, and
10 thickness, size, style, or other uniquely distinguishing characteristics.
- 11 4. Wind Load, Metal Wall Panels and Rain Screen system: Shop Drawings shall comply with a design
12 and wind velocity/ pressures, as indicated on the structural drawings. Shop drawings shall be
13 signed and sealed by a professional engineer registered in the State of Florida.
- 14 C. Engineering Calculations: Submit negative wind uplift pressure calculations using the project and
15 building code data listed in 1.4C1. Calculations shall be sealed by a professional engineer licensed to
16 practice structural engineering in the jurisdiction in which the project is located.
- 17 D. Financial Certification: Provide the building owner with a signed and notarized (sealed) affidavit by an
18 officer of the panel system manufacturer which confirms a current minimum corporate asset-to-liability
19 ratio of not less than 3:1 for the panel manufacturer, or its parent corporation. Financial support
20 information and affidavit must be dated within 30 days prior to the product submittal.
- 21 E. Design Test Reports.
 - 22 1. Submit copies of design test reports for each of the performance testing standards listed in
23 specification article 1.4.
 - 24 2. Test reports shall be performed by independent, accredited testing laboratories, and shall bear the
25 seal of a registered professional engineer.
- 26 F. Warranty: Provide unexecuted specimen warranty documents for each warranty as required in
27 specification article 1.12.
- 28 G. Samples.
 - 29 1. Submit sample of panel section, at least 6" x 6" showing seam profile, and also a sample of color
30 selected.
 - 31 2. Submit sample of panel clip, foam closures, and field applied sealants.

32 1.6 QUALITY CRITERIA/INSTALLER QUALIFICATIONS

- 33 A. Engage an experienced metal wall panel contractor (erector) to install wall panel system who has a
34 minimum of (5) five years' experience specializing in the installation of metal wall systems.
- 35 B. Contractor must be certified by manufacturer specified as a supplier of the metal wall system and obtain
36 written certification from manufacturer that installer is approved for installation of the specified system.
- 37 C. Successful contractor must obtain all components of the Rainscreen wall system from a single
38 manufacturer. Any secondary products that are required which cannot be supplied by the specified
39 manufacturer must be recommended and approved in writing by primary manufacturer prior to bidding.



- 1 D. Sole Source Requirements: All material and accessories for the system specified here within and all
2 systems specified elsewhere shall be fabricated and supplied by a single manufacturer. All specified
3 warranties within these related specifications must be provided and endorsed by the single
4 manufacturer. A manufacturer who cannot fabricate and supply all systems will not be accepted.
5 Please refer to Section 1.5 for additional manufacturer requirements and PART 2: Products for
6 product/manufacturer substitution requirements.
- 7 E. Air Barrier Quality Assurance Auditing.
- 8 1. The air barrier supplier shall provide an accredited third party air barrier auditor/inspector at the
9 beginning and end of the air barrier installation, and at no fewer intermediate intervals than once
10 per 20,000 square feet of air barrier installation.
 - 11 2. The air barrier auditor/inspector shall have sufficient credentials to satisfy the architect, such as Air
12 Barrier Association of America (ABAA) certification, RCI Registered Exterior Wall Consultant, or
13 similar professional experience and credentials.
 - 14 3. The air barrier installer shall perform daily inspections, tests, reporting, and other information as
15 requested by the third party auditor/inspector.
 - 16 4. The air barrier installer shall coordinate, cooperate, and comply with the recommendations of the
17 third party auditor/inspector.

18 1.7 MOCK-UPS.

- 19 A. Where directed by architect, construct typical exterior wall panel, 6-foot long by 6-foot wide
20 incorporating the sheathing board or substrate, sill pan protection system, window frame and
21 attachment method, clips, sub framing, attachment of insulation and detailing of water-resistive vapor
22 permeable air barrier membrane application and lap seams.
- 23 1. Air Leakage Tests: Test mock-up for air leakage location in accordance with ASTM E1186 and for
24 air leakage quantity in accordance with ASTM E783. Use smoke tracer to locate sources of air
25 leakage. Deficiencies shall include air leakage in excess of 0.04 cfm/ft² and unsatisfactory
26 workmanship.
 - 27 2. Water Penetration: Test mock-up for water leakage in accordance with ASTM E1105. Deficiencies
28 shall include uncontrolled water leakage and unsatisfactory workmanship.
 - 29 3. Membrane Adhesion: Test mock-up of membrane for adhesion in accordance with ASTM D 4541
30 using a Type 1 pull tester except that the disk used shall be 4-inches in diameter and the membrane
31 shall be cut through to separate the material attached to the disk from the surrounding material.
32 Perform test after curing period recommended by the supplier. Record mode of failure and area
33 which failed in accordance with ASTM D 4541. When the air barrier material supplier has
34 established a minimum adhesion level for the product on the particular substrate, the inspection
35 report shall indicate whether this requirement has been met. Where the supplier has not declared
36 a minimum adhesion value for their product/substrate combination, then the inspector shall simply
37 record the value.
 - 38 4. Document and correct deficiencies in mock-up and tests. Retest until satisfactory results are
39 obtained.

40 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- 41 A. Inspect materials upon delivery.



- 1 B. Handle materials to prevent damage.
- 2 C. Store materials off ground providing for drainage; under cover providing for air circulation; and protected
- 3 from any debris.

4 **1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 5 A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions
- 6 permit metal wall panel work to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions and
- 7 warranty requirements.
- 8 B. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with metal wall panels by
- 9 field measurements before fabrication.

10 **1.10 WARRANTIES**

- 11 A. Endorse and forward to owner the following warranties:
- 12 1. Manufacturer's standard material warranty in which manufacturer agrees to provide replacement
- 13 material for the fluid applied water-resistive vapor permeable air barrier installed in accordance with
- 14 manufacturer's instructions that fails due to material defects within three (3) years of the date of
- 15 Substantial Completion.
- 16 2. Installer's three (3) year warranty from date of Substantial Completion, including all components of
- 17 the air and water barrier assembly, against failures including loss of air tight seal, loss of watertight
- 18 seal, loss of adhesion, loss of cohesion, failure to cure properly.
- 19 3. Special Rainscreen System Water Tightness Warranty: The water-resistive air barrier supplier shall
- 20 provide a ten (10) year warranty from date of Substantial Completion against uncontrolled water
- 21 leakage to the interior of the building. The warranty shall identify by manufacturer, product name,
- 22 and model number each component of the Rainscreen wall system, including each of those
- 23 components listed in Article 1.5 A of this specification.
- 24 B. Warranties shall commence on date of substantial completion.

25 **1.11 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS**

- 26 A. Air and water barrier manufacturer shall provide scheduled field inspections which shall include written
- 27 reports. Inspections shall be conducted by a full time employee of the air and water barrier
- 28 manufacturer. A third party inspector, approved by the air and water barrier manufacturer, is also
- 29 acceptable. The field inspector reserves the right to review and report to the project architect the level
- 30 of acceptability of work completed and to subsequently issue a report of items not acceptable—if
- 31 required. Do not cover Work of this Section until testing and inspection is accepted.
- 32 B. Remove and replace applications of air and water barrier membrane system where inspections indicate
- 33 that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- 34 1. Installer's 2 year warranty covering wall panel system installation and watertightness.
- 35 C. Warranties shall commence on date of substantial completion.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 PANEL MATERIALS – Metal Wall Panels**

3 A. Metal Wall Panels (MWP-1) (MWP-2) & (MWP-3)

- 4 1. Painted Aluminum Sheet.
- 5 a. Recycle Content: Provide steel sheet with average recycled content such that postconsumer
- 6 recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is at least 45 percent.
- 7 b. 0.050" aluminum alloy 3003, 3004, 3005, or 3105 with H14 or H24 heat treatment, as per ASTM
- 8 B209/209M.
- 9 2. Panel Size: As shown on drawings.
- 10 3. Texture: Smooth surface.
- 11

12 B. Exposed Surfaces: 2-Coat Fluoropolymer finish in accordance with AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish

13 containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Manufacturers' approved

14 applicator to prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and

15 resin manufacturers' written instructions.

16 C. Exposed surface coating system shall provide nominal 1.0 mil (0.025 mm) dry film thickness, consisting

17 of primer and color coat.

18 D. Color shall be selected from IMETCO's full range of manufacturer's colors.

19 E. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored polyester

20 backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil

21 (0.013 mm).

22 F. Panel Sealants:

- 23 1. Seam Sealant: Field Applied Butyl-Based, Solvent-Release, One-Part Sealant.
- 24 2. Sealant Tape: Non-curing, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with
- 25 release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1-inch
- 26 wide and 1/16-inch thick.
- 27 3. Exposed Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric tripolymer, polyurethane, or other advanced polymer
- 28 sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal wall panels
- 29 and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal wall panel manufacturer.
- 30 4. Concealed Sealant: ASTM C 1311: Butyl-Based, Solvent-Release, One-Part Sealant.

31 **2.2 VAPOR PERMEABLE AIR AND WATER BARRIER**

32 A. General: Obtain all primary air barrier components and accessories from the same supplier to ensure

33 total system compatibility and integrity.

34 B. Air Barrier Membrane Materials.

- 35 1. The basis of design shall be IntelliWrap LVP by Innovative Metals Company, Inc. (IMETCO),
- 36 Norcross, GA. 843.437.8632.



- 1 2. Alternate manufacturers are subject to full compliance with specification requirements, and shall
2 be submitted for approval as follows.
- 3 a. Manufacturers not listed above must submit for approval, ten (10) days prior to bid date, the
4 following: Manufacturer's literature; certification of testing in accordance with specification
5 requirements and sections 1.4 and 1.5; sample warranties in accordance with specification
6 section 1.11; installer qualifications in accordance with specification section 1.6, and a list of
7 five (5) similar projects in size and scope of work.
- 8 b. In addition to the above requirements, requests for substitute products for this section of the
9 specification shall be accompanied by a notarized statement from a corporate officer of the Air
10 and Water Barrier manufacturer stating that the proposed alternate air barrier product is
11 specifically acceptable for issuance of the Special Raincreen System Water Tightness
12 Warranty required in Article 1.11 A 3 of this specification, which the Air and Water Barrier
13 manufacturer is required to provide upon substantial completion of this project. This notarized
14 statement shall identify by manufacturer, product name, and model number each component
15 of the Rainscreen wall system, including each of those components listed in Article 1.5 A of
16 this specification that the Air and Water Barrier manufacturer will cover under this warranty.
- 17 c. No substitutions will be permitted after the bid date of this project.
- 18 3. Material: Fluid applied vapor permeable acrylic membrane that cures to form a water resistive air
19 barrier.
- 20 4. Application Rate/Thickness: Apply at a rate of 25 ft²/gal (0.6 m²/l) to achieve a wet film thickness
21 of 64 mils (1.6 mm) minimum and cured dry film thickness of 40 mils (1.0 mm) minimum.
- 22 5. Density: Approximately 66% solids by weight.
- 23 6. UV Exposure: 180 days maximum allowable exposure to sunlight.
- 24 7. Application Method: Airless sprayer, roller, or brush.
- 25 8. Application Temperature: Ambient temperature must be above 50 °F (10 °C) and not expected to
26 drop below stated temperature for 24 hours.
- 27 9. Cure Time: Under normal conditions, the product shall be dry to touch in 2 to 4 hours and fully
28 cured within 48 hours of application.
- 29 10. VOC Content: Less than 0.42 lb/gal (50 g/l).
- 30 C. Vapor Permeable Air Barrier Transition and Flashing Membrane.
- 31 1. Transition and flashing air barrier membrane shall be IntelliWrap SA, a self-adhering, water-
32 resistive, vapor permeable membrane flashing sheet.
- 33 2. Flashing membrane shall be used as indicated on drawings for the following applications:
- 34 a. Window and door jambs, sill, and head.
- 35 b. Through-wall flexible membrane flashings.
- 36 c. Transitions to foundation/below-grade, roof, and other adjacent exterior surfaces. Connect the
37 wall flashing membrane with adjacent air barrier membrane systems according manufacturer's
38 details, recommendations, and shop drawings.
- 39 d. Other conditions where the primary air barrier membrane and/or flashing membranes require
40 additional adhesion at their seams, laps, joints, edges, or ends.
- 41 3. Roll Dimensions: 59-inches (1,500mm) wide by 115-ft (35m) long.
- 42 D. Air Barrier Flexible Flashing and Penetration Tapes



- 1 1. Penetrations and other flashings requiring a flexible tape membrane shall use IntelliWrap
- 2 FlexxBand, a flexible waterproofing tape comprised of a rubberized asphalt adhesive laminated to
- 3 a cross-laminated polyethylene crepe film.
- 4 2. Flexible flashing membrane shall be used as indicated on drawings for the following applications:
- 5 a. Window sills and arched or round through-wall openings.
- 6 b. Pipe, duct, or other service penetrations.
- 7 c. Other flashing conditions which necessitate the use of a flexible flashing.
- 8 3. Roll Dimensions: 6-inches (150mm) wide by 50-ft (15m) long.

9 E. ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- 10 1. Primer: When necessary, apply a suitable primer in accordance with manufacturers
- 11 recommendations.
- 12 2. Provide termination bars, sealants and other accessories as required for a complete system
- 13 installation.

14 2.3 THERMAL BUILDING INSULATION

15 A. Extruded Polystyrene board insulation:

- 16 1. Thickness: 1 layer of 1-1/2-inch or as otherwise indicated on the contract document.
- 17 2. Insulation board size shall be 24-inches x 48-inches or 48-inches x 72-inches.

18 2.4 METAL SUBFRAMING

19 A. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet,

20 ASTM A 653, G90 hot-dip galvanized.

21 B. Horizontal Hat-shaped Vented Girts:

- 22 1. The basis of design shall be Vented Hat Channel by Innovative Metals Company, Inc. (IMETCO),
- 23 Norcross, Georgia 843.437.8632
- 24 2. The following manufacturers can be considered, but shall be subject to the same performance
- 25 requirements listed herein this specification:
- 26 a. Knight Wall
- 27 b. Smart CI
- 28 3. Alternate manufacturers are subject to full compliance with specification requirements, and shall
- 29 be submitted for approval as follows.
- 30 a. Manufacturers not listed above must submit for approval, ten (10) days prior to bid date, the
- 31 following: Manufacturer's literature; certification of testing in accordance with specification
- 32 requirements and sections 1.4 and 1.5; sample warranties in accordance with specification
- 33 section 1.10; installer qualifications in accordance with specification section 1.6, and a list of
- 34 five (5) similar projects in size and scope of work.
- 35 b. In addition to the above requirements, requests for substitute systems shall be accompanied
- 36 by a notarized letter from a corporate officer of the system manufacturer stating that the
- 37 proposed alternate complies with the warranty requirements section 1.10 A. of this
- 38 specification.
- 39 c. No substitutions will be permitted after the bid date of this project.
- 40 4. Dimensions:



- a. Nominal Thickness: (18 gauge) nominal thickness.
 - b. Depth: 1 inch nominal.
 - c. Top flange: 2-1/2 inches nominal.
 - d. Bottom Flanges: 1-1/2 inches nominal with 1/4 inch holes punched at 8" on center in each flange.
5. Free air flow: The vented girt shall not restrict chimney effect air convection in the vertical direction. The vented girt webs shall have slotted holes providing for 31% free air flow and weep holes for water drainage.
 6. Drainage: Web segments of vented girt shall be formed such that when installed in the horizontal orientation the web segments are inclined at least 20 degrees from horizontal to promote drainage and prevent retention of standing water.

2.5 METAL WALL PANELS (MWP-1)

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal wall panels designed to be field assembled by interlocking seams incorporating concealed anchor clips, allowing thermal movement.
- B. Concealed clip, interlocking flush seam wall panels.
 1. Panel shall be IMETCO Latitude wall panel system as manufactured by Innovative Metals Company, Inc. (IMETCO), Norcross, Georgia, telephone 843.437.8632.
 2. Alternate manufacturers are subject to full compliance with specification requirements, and shall be submitted for approval as follows.
 - a. Manufacturers not listed above must submit for approval, ten (10) days prior to bid date, the following: Manufacturer's literature; certification of testing in accordance with specification requirements and sections 1.4 and 1.5; sample warranties in accordance with specification section 1.10; installer qualifications in accordance with specification section 1.6, and a list of five (5) similar projects in size and scope of work.
 - b. No substitutions will be permitted after the bid date of this project.
 3. Panel Material: .050" Aluminum sheet
 4. Characteristics.
 - a. Fabrication: Panels shall be factory formed from specified metal.
 - b. The profile shall be: LW16S15-16SQB-C. **(Board & Batten)**
 - c. Panel orientation: Vertical.
 - d. Configuration: Panel shall be 16" wide nominal, with interlocking seams incorporating concealed anchor clips allowing thermal movement.
 - e. Panel Depth (Concealed Leg Height): 7/8 inches nominal.
 - f. Anchor clips: Clips shall be 18 gauge galvanized steel designed to allow thermal movement of the panel in each direction along the longitudinal dimension. Direct fastener panel systems not utilizing concealed anchor clips to allow for thermal movement will not be allowed.
 - g. Panel length: Up to 21 feet (6.1 m) maximum recommended length.

2.6 METAL WALL PANELS (MWP-2)

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal wall panels designed to be field assembled by overlapping and sealing seams, and attaching to wall structure with exposed screw fasteners.



- 1 B. Exposed fastener lap seam wall panels with sinusoidal corrugations at 2.67" on center.
- 2 1. Panel shall be IMETCO Cor-Pan 0.5 panel system as manufactured by Innovative Metals
- 3 Company, Inc. (IMETCO), Norcross, Georgia, telephone 1-800-646-3826.
- 4 2. Alternate manufacturers are subject to full compliance with specification requirements, and shall
- 5 be submitted for approval as follows.
- 6 a. Manufacturers not listed above must submit for approval, ten (10) days prior vto bid date, the
- 7 following: Manufacturer's literature; certification of testing in accordance with specification
- 8 requirements and sections 1.4 and 1.5; sample warranties in accordance with specification
- 9 section 1.10; installer qualifications in accordance with specification section 1.6, and a list of
- 10 five (5) similar projects in size and scope of work.
- 11 b. No substitutions will be permitted after the bid date of this project.
- 12 3. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick. See 2.1 for finishes and color selection.
- 13 4. Characteristics.
- 14 a. Fabrication: Panels shall be factory formed from specified metal.
- 15 b. The standard profile shall have sinusoidal corrugations at 2-2/3 inches (68 mm) on center.
- 16 c. Panel orientation: Vertical.
- 17
- 18 d. Configuration: Panel shall be 40-inches- (1,016-mm-) wide, nominal.
- 19
- 20 e. Panel Depth (Rib Height): 1/2 inch (13 mm), nominal.
- 21
- 22 f. Panel length: Up to 45 feet (13.7 m) maximum recommended length.

23 **2.7 METAL WALL PANELS (MWP-3)**

- 24 1. The basis of design shall be PAC-CLAD Peterson Aluminum 102 Northpoint Pkwy
- 25 Acworth, GA 30102 P: 800-272-4482
- 26
- 27 a. Soffit Panels: Roofing Manufacturer's non-vented, minimum 22 gauge steel, Kynar coated
- 28 galvalume panels 12" wide panel;
- 29
- 30 b. color to be selected by Architect from full range of manufacturers colors. Note that per the
- 31 Florida Building Code soffit panels must be designed to resist applied wind pressures. See
- 32 Structural drawings for pressures.
- 33
- 34 c. Leveled for flatness. Rounded interlock leg provides improved flush fit ` 35-year non-
- 35 prorated finish warranty ` Panel lengths from 4' to 25' (22 gauge steel)
- 36 d. ASTM TESTS - FLUSH ` ASTM E330 tested - 12" only ` ASTM 1592 ` ASTM E283 `
- 37 ASTM E331 ` AAMA 501.1-05 FLORIDA BUILDING PRODUCT APPROVALS Please
- 38 refer to pac-clad.com or your local factory for specific product approval numbers for Flush
- 39 panels



1 **2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- 2 A. Concealed fasteners: Corrosion resistant steel screws, #10 minimum diameter x length appropriate for
3 substrate, hex washer head or pancake head. Use self-drilling, self-tapping for metal substrate or A-
4 point for plywood substrate.
- 5 B. Exposed fasteners: 3xx series stainless steel screws (cadmium or zinc coatings are not acceptable)
6 with neoprene sealing washer, or 1/8-inch diameter stainless steel rivets.

7 **2.9 ACCESSORIES**

- 8 A. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components approved by panel manufacturer and as required for a
9 complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, corner units, closures, clips, flashings, sealants,
10 gaskets, fillers, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal wall panels unless otherwise
11 indicated.
- 12 1. Anchor Clips: Clips shall be 18 gauge stainless steel designed to allow thermal movement of the
13 panel in each direction along the longitudinal dimension.
- 14 2. Ventilation strips shall be provided at top of wall panels, window sills, and transitions between metal
15 panels and other exterior finish materials to allow for air exhaust at top of wall cavity. Vent strips
16 shall be internally baffled to prevent wind driven rain from freely entering the wall cavity.
- 17 3. Ventilation strips shall be provided at base of wall panels, window head, and transitions between
18 metal panels and other exterior finish materials to allow for air intake and water weep holes at
19 bottom of wall cavity.
- 20 B. Flashing and Trim: Formed from .050" aluminum, prepainted with coil coating to match the wall panels.
21 Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance.
22 Locations include, but are not limited to, head, sill, corners, jambs, framed openings, fasciae, and fillers.
23 Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal wall panels.

24 **2.10 FABRICATION**

- 25 A. Fabricate and finish metal wall panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by
26 manufacturer's standard procedures and processes and as necessary to fulfill indicated performance
27 requirements. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- 28 B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- 29 C. Form flashing components from full single width sheet in minimum 10'-0" sections. Provide mitered
30 trim corners, joined using closed end pop rivets and butyl-based, solvent released one-part sealant.
- 31 D. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's
32 "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other
33 characteristics of item indicated.
- 34 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool
35 marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
- 36 2. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpanding but movable joints in metal to accommodate butyl-based
37 sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.



3. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
4. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of size and metal thickness recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or by metal wall panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.11 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - PREPERATION & EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal wall panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine primary and secondary wall framing to verify that girts, studs, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
- C. Examine solid wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
- D. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal wall panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal wall panels before metal wall panel installation.
- E. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of interfering with insulation attachment.
- B. Substrate Board: Install substrate boards over wall structure on entire wall surface. Attach with substrate-board fasteners.



- 1 C. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, horizontally oriented with end joints
2 staggered between courses. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
- 3 D. Miscellaneous Framing: Install sub-framing, furring, and other miscellaneous wall panel support
4 members and anchorage according to metal wall panel manufacturer's written instructions.
- 5 E. Establish straight, side and crosswise benchmarks
- 6 F. Use proper size and length fastener for strength requirements. Approximately 5/16 inch is allowable
7 for maximum fastener head size beneath the panel.
- 8 G. All walls shall be checked for square and straightness. Inside and outside corners may not be plumb;
9 set a true line for the corner units and flashing with string line.
- 10 H. Measure the wall lengthwise to confirm panel lengths and verify clearances for thermal movement.

11 3.3 METAL WALL PANEL INSTALLATION

- 12 A. All details will be shown on in accordance with approved shop drawings and manufacturer's product
13 data, within specified erection tolerances.
- 14 B. Directly over the completed wall substrate, install one piece clips. All anchor clips will be fastened into
15 the structural wall substrate based on spacing determined by ASCE 7
- 16 C. Installation of Wall Panels: Wall panels can be installed by starting from one end and working towards
17 the opposite end (vertical orientation), or from the bottom of wall working towards the top of the wall
18 (horizontal orientation).
- 19 D. Isolate dissimilar metals and masonry or concrete from metals with bituminous coating. Use gasketed
20 fasteners where required to prevent corrosive action between fastener, substrate, and panels.
- 21 E. Limit exposed fasteners to extent indicated on contract drawings.
- 22 F. Seal laps and joints in accordance with wall panel system manufacturer's product data.
- 23 G. Coordinate flashing and sheet metal work to provide weathertight conditions at wall terminations.
24 Fabricate and install in accordance with standards of SMACNA Manual.
- 25 H. Provide for temperature expansion/contraction movement of panels at wall penetrations and wall
26 mounted equipment in accordance with system manufacturer's product data and design calculations.
- 27 I. Installed system shall be true to line and plane and free of dents, and physical defects. In light gauge
28 panels with wide flat surfaces, some oil canning may be present. Oil canning does not affect the finish
29 or structural integrity of the panel and is therefore not cause for rejection.
- 30 J. At joints in linear sheet metal items, set sheet metal items in two ¼-inch beads of butyl sealant.
31 Extend sealant over all metal surfaces. Mate components for positive seal. Allow no sealant to migrate
32 onto exposed surfaces.
- 33 K. Remove damaged work and replace with new, undamaged components.
- 34 L. Touch up exposed fasteners using paint furnished by the panel manufacturer and matching exposed
35 panel surface finish.
- 36 M. Clean exposed surfaces of wall panels and accessories after completion of installation. Leave in clean
37 condition at date of substantial completion. Touch up minor abrasions and scratches in finish.



1 **3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES**

- 2 A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal wall panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in
3 20 feet at location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of
4 matching profiles.
- 5 B. Installation Tolerances: Install insulation board units within installed flatness tolerance of no more than
6 1/4 inch in 20 feet at location lines as indicated and within or more than 1/8-inch offset of adjoining
7 edges. Gap between boards shall be no more than 1/8-inch. Insulation boards shall be installed in
8 continuous contact with back-up wall exterior surface

9 **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 10 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect metal soffit
11 panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.
- 12 B. Remove and replace applications of metal soffit panels where inspections indicate that they do not
13 comply with specified requirements.
- 14 C. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced
15 or additional work with specified requirements.

16 **3.6 CLEANING**

- 17 A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal soffit panels are installed
18 unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal
19 soffit panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal soffit panel manufacturer.
20 Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- 21 B. Replace metal soffit panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by
22 finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

23

24 **END OF SECTION 07 42 16**

1
2 **SECTION 07 42 60 - FIBER REINFORCED HYBRID SOFFIT**
3

4 **PART 1 GENERAL**

5 **1.1 SECTION INCLUDES**

- 6 A. Fiber reinforced hybrid siding of the following types:
7 1. Siding 4 inches (102 mm) profile.
8 2. Siding 6 inches (152 mm) profile.
9 3. Siding 12 inches (305 mm) profile.

10 **1.2 RELATED SECTIONS**

- 11 A. Section 06160 – Sheathing.
12 B. Section 07600 – Flashing and Sheet Metal.

13 **1.3 REFERENCES**

- 14 A. ASTM International (ASTM):
15 1. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building
16 Materials.
17 2. ASTM D1037 - Standard Test Methods for Evaluating Properties of Wood-Base Fiber
18 and Particle Panel Materials.
19 3. ASTM D2395 - Standard Test Methods for Density and Specific Gravity (Relative
20 Density) of Wood and Wood-Based Materials.
21 4. ASTM D3345 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Evaluation of Solid Wood for
22 Resistance to Termites.
- 23 B. International Organization for Standardization (ISO):
24 1. ISO 178 - Plastics -- Determination of Flexural Properties.
25 2. ISO 527 - Plastics -- Determination of Tensile Properties -- Part 1: General Principles.

26 **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- 27 A. Submit under provisions of Section 01300.
- 28 B. Product Data:
29 1. Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used.
30 2. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
31 3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
32 4. Typical installation methods.
- 33 A. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, two complete sets of color chips
34 representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns.
- 35 B. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, two samples, minimum size 6
36 inches (150 mm) square representing actual product, color, and patterns.
- 37 C. Shop Drawings: Include details of materials, construction and finish. Include relationship
38 with adjacent construction.

1 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 2 A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in
3 this section with a minimum five years documented experience.
- 4 B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing Work of this section with
5 minimum two years documented experience with projects of similar scope and complexity.
- 6 C. Source Limitations: Provide each type of product from a single manufacturing source to
7 ensure uniformity.
- 8 D. Mock-Up: Construct a mock-up with actual materials in sufficient time for Architect's review
9 and to not delay construction progress. Locate mock-up as acceptable to Architect and
10 provide temporary foundations and support.
- 11 1. Intent of mock-up is to demonstrate quality of workmanship and visual appearance.
12 2. If mock-up is not acceptable, rebuild mock-up until satisfactory results are achieved.
13 3. Retain mock-up during construction as a standard for comparison with completed
14 work.
15 4. Do not alter or remove mock-up until work is completed or removal is authorized.

16 **1.6 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE**

- 17 A. Convene a conference approximately two weeks before scheduled commencement of the
18 Work. Attendees shall include Architect, Contractor and trades involved. Agenda shall
19 include schedule, responsibilities, critical path items and approvals.

20 **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 21 A. Store and handle in strict compliance with manufacturer's written instructions and
22 recommendations.
- 23 B. Protect from damage due to weather, excessive temperature, and construction operations.

24 **1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 25 A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits
26 recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under
27 environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

28 **1.9 SEQUENCING**

- 29 A. Ensure that products of this section are supplied to affected trades in time to prevent
30 interruption of construction progress.

31 **1.10 WARRANTY**

- 32 A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Provide manufacturer's standard limited warranty.
33 Resysta North America, Inc. (Resysta), warrants to named property owner of the building or
34 property who is the original purchaser of Resysta products the Resysta product was
35 installed at the time of the installation, (the "Original Owner") that these products will
36 be free from defects in materials and manufacturing workmanship for 25 years (as
37 stated below). Resysta warrants the products shall be free from defects in
38 workmanship and materials that (1) occur as a direct result of the manufacturing
39 process, (2) occur during the warranty period and (3) have structural damage or
40 fungal decay.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Resysta which is located at: 4035 Cheyenne Ct.; Chino, CA 91710; ASD Phone: 909-590-0121; Email: info@resystausa.com; Web: www.resystausa.com.
- B. Substitutions: Not permitted.
- C. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01600.

2.2 PERFORMANCE AND DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- A. Code Compliance:
 - 1. 2015 International Building Code (IBC).
 - 2. 2015 International Residential Code (IRC).
 - 3. 2017 Florida Building Code (FBC) including HVHZ.
 - 4. Siding complies with Section 2605.2 of the IBC and FBC for use as an exterior plastic veneer.
 - 5. Exterior wall covering on buildings of type VB construction (IBC, FBC) and all construction types under the IRC.
- B. Standards Compliance:
 - 1. Code Compliance Research Report (CCRR)-0272 as prepared by Intertek issued 5-30-2018.

2.3 PRODUCT TYPES

- A. Basis of Design: Siding as manufactured and supplied by Resysta.
 - 1. Construction: Mono extruded, rigid plastic composite siding consisting of polyvinyl chloride and organic hull fillers. Simulated wood grain pattern.
- B. Siding 4 inches Profile:
 - 1. Siding Profile: 4 inches (102 mm).
 - 2. Model: RESCPH120412.
 - 3. Dimensions (W x H x L): 0.5 x 4 x 144 inches (12 x 102 x 3658 mm).
- C. System:
 - 1. Installation shall comply with the CCRR and the manufacturer's requirements.
 - 2. Siding shall be installed over steel, aluminum or wood battens over structural wood sheathing; 5/8 inch (16 mm) plywood complying with DOC PS 1, DOC PS 2, or ANSI/APA PRP 210, per IBC 2303.1.5 (FBC 2303.1.4).
 - 3. Sheathing shall be covered by an approved water resistive barrier complying with 1404.2 of the IBC and FBC, and Section R703.1.1 of the IRC, and provide a means of draining water that enters the assembly to the exterior.
 - 4. Protection against condensation shall be provided in accordance with Section 1405.3 of the IBC and FBC.
 - 5. Flashing shall be installed in accordance with Section 1405.4 of the IBC and FBC, and IRC Section R703.8.

- 1 D. Material:
- 2 1. Polyvinyl chloride.
- 3 2. Rice Husks: Approximately 60 percent.
- 4 3. Common Salt: Approximately 22 percent.
- 5 4. Mineral Oil: Approximately 18 percent.
- 6 E. Siding is 100 percent recyclable within the manufacturing process.
- 7 F. Material Characteristics:
- 8 1. Density (ASTM D2395): Approximately 0.844 oz per cu inch (1.46 g per cu cm).
- 9 2. Water Absorption and Humidity (ASTM D1037): Little up to no water absorption (only
- 10 surface moistening).
- 11 3. Weathering and UV Resistance (QUV Test): With glaze treatment, Resysta surfaces
- 12 are extremely resistant.
- 13 4. Fire Rating (German/European norm) (EN ISO 11925-2): B2 (E) - Standard
- 14 flammable (with additional treatment B1 obtainable).
- 15 5. Fire Rating According NFPA (US Norm) (ASTM E84): Class A (flame propagation 25,
- 16 smoke emission 450).
- 17 6. Fire Rating (British standard) (BS 476 Teil 6 and 7): Class 1.
- 18 7. Durability Resistance Against Wood Destroying Fungi (basidiomycetes) (DIN V EN
- 19 V12038): The material has not been affected, highest durability- Class 1.
- 20 8. Emission LGA-tested safety and LGA test passed contamination.
- 21 9. Brinell Hardness (EN 1534): 11762.6 lbs per sq in (81.1 N per sq mm).
- 22 10. Axial Withdrawal Force (of Screws) (EN 320.2011): 1298.7 lbf (5777 N).
- 23 11. Thermal Conductivity (EN 12664): 0.115 btu per hr ft F(0.199 W per m K).
- 24 12. Water Vapor Transmission (DIN EN ISO 12572): 1298.7 lbf (5777 N).
- 25 13. Bending Strength (ISO 178): 6671.7 lbs per sq in (46 N per sq mm).
- 26 14. Bending Modulus (ISO 178): 558395.3 lbs per sq in (3850 N per sq mm).
- 27 15. Tensile Strength (ISO 527): 3161.8 lbs per sq in (21.8 N per sq mm).
- 28 16. Tensile Modulus (ISO 527): 339388.3 lbs per sq in (2340 N per sq mm).
- 29 17. Tensile Modulus (ISO 527): 399388.3 lbs per sq in (2340 N per sq mm).
- 30 18. Shearing Strength (EN 392): 2436.6 lbs per sq in (16.8 N per sq mm).
- 31 19. Durability - Resistance Against Rotting Fungi (CEN/TS 15083-2): No attack by the
- 32 test fungi, highest durability class 1 (very durable).
- 33 20. Durability Against Mold Fungi and Wood Discoloring Fungi (EN 15534-1): Durability
- 34 against the wood discoloring fungi (very durable).
- 35 21. Durability Against Subterranean Termites (ASTM D3345): High Durability against
- 36 subterranean Termites - nearly no weight loss.
- 37 22. Specific Surface and Volume Resistances (DIN IEC 60093) Measuring Voltage 100V
- 38 Surface Resistance: 8.0×10^{13} Ohms:
- 39 a. Specific Surface Resistance: 8.1×10^{14} Ohms.
- 40 b. Volume Resistance: 2.2×10^{13} Ohms.
- 41 c. Specific Volume Resistance: 6.3×10^{14} Ohms.

42 2.4 FINISH

- 43 A. System:
- 44 1. Primer: RBP Resysta Base Primer is an aqueous, colorless primer based on an
- 45 acrylate dispersion
- 46 2. RCL Resysta Coating Layer is a water-based 1-component protective stain for color
- 47 designing of Resysta surfaces. RCL finish is specially designed for indoor and outdoor
- 48 use
- 49 3. Color: C08, Burma.

- 1 4. Color: C14, Siam.
- 2 5. Color: C23, Aged Teak.
- 3 6. Color: C24, Java.
- 4 7. Color: C42, Cape Cod.
- 5 8. Color: C51, Walnut.
- 6 9. Color: C02, Pale Golden.
- 7 10. Color: C09, Dark Burma.
- 8 11. Color: C15, Dark Siam.
- 9 12. Color: C26, Rust.
- 10 13. Color: C28, Light Taupe.
- 11 14. Color: C29, Dark Taupe.
- 12 15. Color: C45, Mustard Green.
- 13 16. Color: C46, Sage.
- 14 17. Color: C47, Green/Blue.
- 15 18. Color: C49, Lavender.
- 16 19. Color: C52, Terra Cotta.
- 17 20. Color: C53, Dark Grey.
- 18 21. Color: C64, Mahogany.
- 19 22. Color: C71, Palisander.
- 20 23. Color: C73, Yellow Teak.
- 21 24. Color: C77, Concrete Grey.
- 22 25. Color: C3001, Bright Red.
- 23 26. Color: C3011, Red.
- 24 27. Color: C5010, Blue.
- 25 28. Color: C60062, Apple Green.
- 26 29. Color: C6005, Moss Green.
- 27 30. Color: C7016, Anthracite.
- 28 31. Color: C9005, Black.
- 29 32. Color: C9010, White.

30 **PART 3 EXECUTION**

31 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 32 A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly constructed and prepared.
- 33 B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect in writing of
- 34 unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

35

36 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 37 A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- 38 B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the
- 39 best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

40 **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- 41 A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions approved submittals and in proper
- 42 relationship with adjacent construction.

43 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

1 A. Field Inspection: Coordinate field inspection in accordance with appropriate sections in
2 Division 01.

3 B. Manufacturer's Services: Coordinate manufacturer's services in accordance with
4 appropriate sections in Division 01.

5 **3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

6 A. Clean products in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

7 B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

8 **END OF SECTION**

9



1 **SECTION 07 54 23 -THERMOPLASTIC SINGLE-PLY ROOFING**

2
3
4 **PART 1 GENERAL**

5
6 **1.01 SUMMARY**

- 7
8 A. Section Includes
- 9 1. Thermoplastic Polyolefin Single-Ply Roofing Membrane
 - 10 2. Thermoplastic Polyolefin Flashings
 - 11 3. Thermoplastic Polyolefin Accessories
 - 12 4. Insulation
- 13
14 B. Related Sections
- 15 1. Section 06100: Rough Carpentry
 - 16 2. Section 07600: Flashing and Sheet Metal
 - 17 3. Section 15430: Plumbing Specialties

18
19 **1.02 REFERENCES**

- 20
21 A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) - Annual Book of ASTM Standards
- 22 1. ASTM D-751 – Standard Test Methods for Coated Fabrics
 - 23 2. ASTM D-2137 - Standard Test Methods for Rubber Property—Brittleness Point of Flexible
 - 24 Polymers and Coated Fabrics
 - 25 3. ASTM E-96 - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
 - 26 4. ASTM D1204 - Standard Test Method for Linear Dimensional Changes of Nonrigid Thermoplastic
 - 27 Sheeting or Film at Elevated Temperature
 - 28 5. ASTM D-471 - Standard Test Method for Rubber Property—Effect of Liquids
 - 29 6. ASTM D-1149 - Standard Test Methods for Rubber Deterioration—Cracking in an Ozone
 - 30 Controlled Environment
 - 31 7. ASTM C-1549 - Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient
 - 32 Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer
 - 33 8. ASTM C-1371 - Standard Test Method for Determination of Emittance of Materials Near Room
 - 34 Temperature Using Portable Emisometers
 - 35 9. ASTM E 903 – Standard Test Method for Solar Absorptance, Reflectance, and Transmission of
 - 36 Materials Using Integrating Spheres
 - 37 10. ASTM G155 - Standard Practice For Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus For Exposure Of Non-
 - 38 Metallic Materials
 - 39 11. ASTM D573 - Standard Test Method For Rubber - Deterioration In An Air Oven
- 40
41 B. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc. (SMACNA) - *Architectural*
- 42 *Sheet*
- 43 *Metal Manual*
- 44
45 C. National Roofing Contractors Association (NRCA)
- 46
47 D. Florida Building Code

48
49 **1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- 50 A. Roofing Terminology: Refer to ASTM D1079 and the glossary of the National Roofing Contractors
- 51 Association (NRCA) *Roofing and Waterproofing Manual* for definitions of roofing terms related to this
- 52 section.
- 53
54
55



1 **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- 2
- 3 A. Product Data: Provide product data sheets for each type of product indicated in this section.
- 4
- 5 B. Shop Drawings: Provide manufacturers standard details and approved shop drawings for the roof
- 6 system specified.
- 7
- 8 C. Provide Florida Product Approval with sufficient clarity to determine the submitted system installation
- 9 requirements. If the Florida Product Approval provided has multiple wind pressure options indicate
- 10 which are intended to be used on this project. Wind pressures for use in coordinating roof loading
- 11 are indicated on the structural drawings.
- 12
- 13 D. Samples: Provide samples of insulations, fasteners, membrane materials and accessories for
- 14 verification of quality.
- 15
- 16 E. Certificates: Installer shall provide written documentation from the manufacturer of their authorization
- 17 to install the roof system, and eligibility to obtain the warranty specified in this section.
- 18

19 **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 20
- 21 A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: GAF shall provide a roofing system that meets or exceeds all criteria
- 22 listed in this section.

23 B. Installer's Qualifications:

24 [See Allstate Construction's bid package.](#)

- 25 1. Installer shall be classified as a **GAF Commercial Chairman's Circle, PlatinumElite™ or**
- 26 **GoldElite™ Commercial Roofing Contractor** as defined and certified by .

- 27 C. Source Limitations: All components listed in this section shall be provided by a single manufacturer
- 28 or approved by the primary roofing manufacturer.
- 29

30 D. Final Inspection

31 Manufacturer's representative shall provide a comprehensive final inspection after completion of the

32 roof system. All application errors must be addressed and final punch list completed.

33

34 **1.06 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE**

- 35
- 36 A. Prior to scheduled commencement of the roofing installation and associated work, conduct a
- 37 meeting at the project site with the installer, architect, owner, GAF representative and any other
- 38 persons directly involved with the performance of the work. The installer shall record conference
- 39 discussions to include decisions and agreements reached (or disagreements), and furnish copies of
- 40 recorded discussions to each attending party. The main purpose of this meeting is to review
- 41 foreseeable methods and procedures related to roofing work.
- 42

43 **1.07 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 44
- 45 A. GAF shall provide all primary roofing materials that are physically and chemically compatible when
- 46 installed in accordance with manufacturers current application requirements.
- 47

48 **1.08 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- 49
- 50 A. All work shall be performed in a safe, professional manner, conforming to all federal, state and local
- 51 codes.
- 52



- 1 B. Florida Building Code: Provide a roofing system which will achieve a -45.0 psf (90 psf) wind uplift
 2 rating, as listed in the most current Florida Building Code Evaluation Report.
 3 1. FL5293-R62 (NON-HVHZ) (S-210) (**see structural drawings for wind loading**)
 4

5
 6 **1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**
 7

- 8 A. Deliver all roofing materials to the site in original containers, with factory seals intact. All products
 9 are to carry a GAF label.
 10
 11 B. Store all pail goods in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry location within their
 12 specified temperature range.
 13
 14 C. Do not expose materials to moisture in any form before, during, or after delivery to the site. Reject
 15 delivery of materials that show evidence of contact with moisture.
 16
 17 D. Remove manufacturer supplied plastic covers from materials provided with such. Use “breathable”
 18 type covers such as canvas tarpaulins to allow venting and protection from weather and moisture.
 19 Cover and protect materials at the end of each work day. Do not remove any protective tarpaulins
 20 until immediately before the material will be installed.
 21
 22 E. Materials shall be stored above 55°F (12.6°C) a minimum of 24 hours prior to application.
 23

24 **1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS**
 25

- 26 A. Weather
 27 1. Proceed with roofing only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit.
 28 2. Ambient temperatures must be above 45°F (7.2°C) when applying hot asphalt or water based
 29 adhesives.
 30

31 **1.11 WARRANTY**
 32

- 33 A. Provide Manufacturers standard EverGuard® Diamond Pledge™ Guarantee with single source
 34 edge-to-edge coverage and no monetary limitation where the manufacturer agrees to repair or
 35 replace components in the roofing system, which cause a leak due to a failure in materials or
 36 workmanship.
 37 1. Duration: Twenty-Five (25) years from the date of completion.
 38 a) Covered components include GAF roofing membrane, liquid-applied membrane or coating,
 39 base flashing, high wall waterproofing flashing, insulation, expansion joint covers, preflashed
 40 accessories, and metal flashings used by the contractor of record that meet SMACNA
 41 standards (the “GAF Roofing Materials”).
 42 b) Materials and workmanship of listed products within this section are included when installed in
 43 accordance with current GAF application and specification requirements. Contact GAF
 44 Design Services for the full terms and conditions of the guarantee.
 45 c) Leaks caused by any non-GAF materials, such as the roof deck, existing materials, or non-
 46 GAF insulation are not covered.
 47

48 **PART 2 PRODUCTS**
 49

50 **2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURER**
 51

- 52 A. Acceptable Manufacturer: GAF, Commercial Roofing Products Division, which is located at: 1
 53 Campus Drive; Parsippany, NJ 07054; Toll Free Tel: 877-423-7663 (option 4, then option 3); Email:
 54 designservices@gaf.com; Web: www.gaf.com



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52

2.02 VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Fiber-reinforced gypsum panel with an integral water-resistant core. (Basis of Design): **DensDeck® Prime Roof Board** by Georgia Pacific Gypsum. Acceptable Manufacturer: **Securock Roof Board**
1. Board Thickness: 5/8"
 2. Board Size: 4' x 8'
 3. Thermal Resistance (R value) of: .50
- B. SBS Modified self-adhering vapor retarder for use in approved GAF roof assemblies. Each full roll contains 6 squares (56.1 m²) of roofing material, 105' x 69". **GAF SA Vapor Retarder XL** by GAF.

2.03 INSULATION

- A. Rigid polyisocyanurate board, with a glass-reinforced cellulosic felt facer. Conforms to or exceeds the requirements of ASTM C 1289 Type II, Class 1, Grade 2. **EnergyGuard™ Polyiso Insulation**, with the following characteristics:
1. Board Thickness: 2.5"
 2. Thermal Resistance (LTTR value) of: 14.4
 3. Board Size: 4' x 4'
 4. Compressive Strength: 20 psi
 5. Total insulation thickness must meet a minimum overall R-value of 25
- B. Rigid, tapered polyisocyanurate board, with a glass-reinforced cellulosic felt facer. Conforms to or exceeds the requirements of ASTM C 1289 Type II, Class 1, Grade 2. **EnergyGuard™ Tapered Polyiso Insulation**, with the following characteristics:
1. Board Thickness: (varies)
 2. Thermal Resistance (LTTR value) of: Minimum 8.1"
 3. Board Size: 4' x 4'
 4. Compressive Strength: 20 psi
 5. Total insulation thickness must meet an average R-value of 25

2.04 COVER BOARD

- A. Rigid polyisocyanurate cover board, with coated polymer-bonded glass fiber mat facers on both major surfaces of the core foam conforming to or exceeding the requirements of ASTM C 1289, Type 2, Class 4, Grade 1. **EnergyGuard™ HD Polyiso Cover Board**, with the following characteristics:
1. Board Thickness: 1/2" or 12.7mm
 2. Board Size: 4' x 4'
 3. Minimum Compressive Strength: 80psi (551kPa)
 4. Thermal Resistance (LTTR value) of: >2.5
 5. Total insulation thickness must meet a average R-value of 25

2.05 MEMBRANE MATERIALS

- A. A smooth type, polyester scrim reinforced thermoplastic polyolefin membrane for use as a single ply roofing membrane. Meets or exceeds the minimum requirements of ASTM D-6878. UL Listed, FM Approved, Dade County Product Approval, Florida Building Code Approved. White membrane is Energy Star Listed, CRRC Listed and Title 24 Compliant.
1. **EverGuard® TPO 80 Mil Membrane by GAF.**
 - a) 10' X 100', each roll contains 1000 sq. ft. of material weighing 420 lbs.
 - b) Color: White



1 **2.06 CURB/WALL FLASHING MEMBRANE**

2
3 A. GENERAL

- 4 1. EverGuard® membrane flashing should be of the same type and thickness as the roof membrane.
5 2. Because colored TPO membranes may exhibit different welding characteristics, please call the
6 GAF Design Services hotline at 800-766-877-423-7663 Option 4, Option 3 before attempting to
7 weld different-colored TPO membranes with white membranes or flashings.
8 3. EverGuard® TPO Fleece-Back membranes are optional flashing membranes for all EverGuard®
9 TPO systems. These membranes may be a solution when a contaminated substrate is
10 encountered.

11 B. FLASHING MEMBRANE

- 12 1. A smooth type, polyester scrim reinforced thermoplastic polyolefin membrane for use as a single
13 ply roofing membrane. Meets or exceeds the minimum requirements of ASTM D-6878. UL Listed,
14 FM Approved, Dade County Product Approval, Florida Building Code Approved. White membrane
15 is Energy Star Listed, CRRC Listed and Title 24 Compliant.
16 a) **EverGuard® TPO 80 Mil Membrane by GAF.**

17
18
19 **2.07 ADHESIVES, SEALANTS AND PRIMERS**

- 20
21 A. Solvent-based Bonding Adhesive: Solvent based rubberized adhesive for use with EverGuard TPO
22 membranes, **EverGuard® 1121 Bonding Adhesive**, by GAF.
23
24 B. Two component fast-acting, low-rise polyurethane foam adhesive. The “A” and “B” components are
25 dispensed from two pre-pressurized disposable cylinders. **OlyBond500® Equipment Free**
26 **Canister System** distributed by GAF.
27
28 C. Solvent based primer for preparing surfaces to receive butyl based adhesive tapes, **EverGuard®**
29 **TPO Primer**, by GAF.
30
31 D. Solvent based seam cleaner used to clean exposed or contaminated seam prior to heat welding,
32 **EverGuard® TPO Seam Cleaner**, by GAF.
33
34 E. Solvent based, trowel grade synthetic elastomeric sealant. Durable and UV resistant suitable for use
35 where caulk is typically used. Available in 10 oz. tubes, **FlexSeal™ Caulk Grade Roof Sealant** by
36 GAF.
37
38 F. Commercial grade roofing sealant suitable for sealing the upper lip of exposed termination bars and
39 penetrations and around clamping rings. Meets the performance criteria of ASTM D412, ASTM
40 D2196, ASTM D1475 and ASTM D1644, **FlexSeal™ Roof Sealant**, by GAF.
41
42 G. Low VOC solvent based primer for preparing surfaces to receive butyl based adhesive tapes,
43 **EverGuard® TPO Low VOC Primer**, by GAF.
44
45 H. Low VOC TPO cleaner designed to clean exposed or contaminated seams prior to heat welding to
46 remove any residual soap or revitalize aged membranes. Contains only 50 grams per liter of Volatile
47 Organic Content and has been formulated using a blend of primarily VOC-exempt ingredients to be
48 in compliance with air quality regulations for single ply roofing products. **EverGuard® TPO**
49 **CleanWeld® Conditioner** by GAF.
50
51 I. One part butyl based high viscosity sealant suitable for sealing between flashing membrane and
52 substrate surface behind exposed termination bars and for sealing between roofing membrane and
53 drain flange. **EverGuard® Water Block**, by GAF.
54



- J. One-part, moisture-cure, self-leveling sealant designed for use in pitch pans on single ply roof systems. **EverGuard® One-Part Pourable Sealant.**

2.08 FASTENERS AND PLATES

A. Mechanical Fasteners & Plates

1. **Drill-Tec™ #12 Fastener:** Standard duty alloy steel insulation fastener with CR-10 coating with a .220" diameter thread. Factory Mutual Standard 4470 Approved, #3 Phillips head for use on steel and wood decks.
2. **Drill-Tec™ Insulation Plates:** Galvalume, 3" (76 mm) diameter, suitable for use with Drill•Tec™ Standard and HD screws, and Drill•Tec™ Spikes. Special design available for use with Drill•Tec™ Polymer Screws.

2.09 FLASHING ACCESSORIES

A. GENERAL FLASHING ACCESSORIES

1. A smooth type, unreinforced thermoplastic polyolefin based membrane for use as an alternative flashing/reinforcing material for penetrations and corners. Required whenever preformed vent boots cannot be used, 0.055 inches (55 mils) nominal thickness and sheet size: 24in x 50ft. **EverGuard® TPO UN-55 Detailing Membrane**, by GAF.
2. An 8 inch (20 cm) wide smooth type, polyester scrim reinforced thermoplastic polyolefin membrane strip for use as a cover strip over coated metal and stripping-in coated metal flanges and general repairs: 0.045 inches (45 mils) nominal thickness with 100 foot length, **EverGuard® TPO 45 Mil Utility Flashing Membrane**, by GAF.
3. 24-gauge steel with 0.025" thick TPO based film as required for fabrication into metal gravel stop and drip edge profiles, metal base and curb flashings, sealant pans, and scupper sleeves. Standard sheet size 4' x 10', sheet weight 47 lbs. Custom sizes available, **EverGuard® TPO Coated Metal**, by GAF.
4. Extruded aluminum termination bar with angled lip caulk receiver and lower leg bulb stiffener. Pre-punched slotted holes at 6" on center or 8" on center. ¾" x 10' with 0.090" cross section, **DRILL-TEC™ Termination Bar**, by GAF.
5. Pre-manufactured expansion joint covers used to bridge expansion joint openings in a roof structure. Fabricated to accommodate all roof to wall and roof to roof applications, made of .060" reinforced TPO membrane, available in 5 standard sizes for expansion joint openings up to 8" wide. **EverGuard® TPO Expansion Joint Covers**, by GAF
6. .055" thick smooth type, unreinforced thermoplastic polyolefin membrane designed for use as a conforming membrane seal over T-joints in 60 and 80 mil membrane applications. **EverGuard® T-Joint Patches**, by GAF.

B. ROOF EDGE ACCESSORIES

1. A 6 inch (14 cm) wide, smooth type, heat-weldable polyester scrim reinforced thermoplastic polyolefin membrane strip. Designed for use as a cover strip over non-coated metal edges and flanges. Each full roll contains approximately 100 Lineal Ft. of material, 6" X 100'. **EverGuard® TPO Heat-Weld Cover Tape**, by GAF.
2. A 6 inch (14 cm) wide, smooth type, polyester scrim reinforced thermoplastic polyolefin membrane strip with a factory laminated butyl tape. Designed for use as a cover strip over non-coated metal edges and flanges. Each full roll contains approximately 100 Lineal Ft. of material, 6" X 100'. **EverGuard® TPO Cover Tape**, by GAF
 - a) Commercial grade roofing sealant suitable for sealing the upper lip of exposed termination bars and penetrations and around clamping rings. Meets the performance criteria of ASTM D412, ASTM D2196, ASTM D1475 and ASTM D1644, **FlexSeal™ Roof Sealant**, by GAF.

C. PERIMETER EDGE METAL

1. **EverGuard® GravelStop Fascia**, by GAF



1 Length 2" – 10" .050" aluminum, Tested per ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 Standard. Pre-finished
 2 Kynar 500® Dark anodized bronze (See standard color chart) Color per Exterior Finish Schedule,
 3 if not indicated than as selected by Architect/Owner from manufacturers full range of colors. Pre-
 4 punched holes 12" o.c. the face/ 6" o.c. on the flange.

5 D. PARAPET CAP FLASHING:

6 Basis of Design Metal-Era Perma-Tite Coping, Anchor Type ANSI/SPRI ES-1 Tested;
 7 0.063" aluminum, 70% Kynar 500 Finish. Color per Exterior Finish Schedule, if not
 8 indicated than as selected by Architect/Owner from manufacturers full range of colors.
 9 Provide splice plates at joints with factory applied sealant strips at each joint.
 10 Prefabricated corner sections shall be welded and in accordance with Contract
 11 Document Details .

12
 13 E. WALL & CURB ACCESSORIES

- 14 1. .045" reinforced TPO membrane with pressure sensitive adhesive, to be installed on horizontal
 15 surfaces using plates and fasteners as a base attachment in adhered systems. Size 6" x 100',
 16 **EverGuard® RTA (Roof Transition Anchor) Strip™**, by GAF
 17 2. 55 mil TPO membrane and 24-gauge coated metal prefabricated into standard and custom size
 18 thru wall scuppers. Available in two sizes: 4" x 6" x 12" (l x w x d) with a 5.75" x 3.75" opening and
 19 8" x 10" x 12" (l x w x d) with a 9.75" x 7.75" opening, **EverGuard® TPO Scupper**, by GAF
 20 3. .045" or .060" thick reinforced TPO membrane fabricated corners. Available in four standard sizes
 21 to flash curbs that are 24", 36", 48", and 60" in size. Four corners are required to flash the curb,
 22 **EverGuard® Corner Curb Wraps**, by GAF.
 23 4. 0.060" thick molded TPO membrane outside corners of base and curb flashing. Hot-air welds
 24 directly to EverGuard® TPO membrane. Size 4" x 4" with 6" flange, **EverGuard® TPO Universal**
 25 **Corners** by GAF.
 26 5. 0.055" molded TPO membrane inside corners of base and curb flashing. Hot-air welds directly to
 27 EverGuard TPO membrane. Size 6" x 6" x 5.5" high **EverGuard® TPO Preformed Corners** by
 28 GAF.
 29 6. 8" diameter, nominal .050" vacuum formed unreinforced TPO membrane for use in flashing
 30 outside corners of base and curb flashings, **EverGuard® TPO Fluted Corner**, by GAF.
 31

32 F. PENETRATION ACCESSORIES

- 33 1. 0.075" thick molded TPO membrane sized to accommodate most common pipe and conduits, (1"
 34 to 6" diameter pipes), including square tube. Hot-air welded directly to EverGuard TPO
 35 membrane, supplied with stainless steel clamping rings, **EverGuard® TPO Preformed Vent**
 36 **Boots** by GAF.
 37 2. 0.045" thick molded TPO membrane preformed boots are split to accommodate most common
 38 pipes and conduits and available in three standard sizes, **EverGuard® TPO Split Pipe Boots**, by
 39 GAF.
 40 3. 0.045" thick molded TPO membrane preformed square boots are split to accommodate most
 41 common square penetrations and conduits and available in three standard sizes, **EverGuard®**
 42 **TPO Square Tube Wraps**, by GAF.
 43 4. .070 thick molded penetration pocket to provide structure and foundation for the application of a
 44 pourable sealant for a variety of roof penetrations, weldable and 9" x 6" x 4" (l x w x h).
 45 **EverGuard® TPO Pourable Sealer Pocket**
 46 5. Constructed from spun aluminum and preflashed using .055" thick smooth type, unreinforced
 47 thermoplastic polyolefin membrane. Available in a wide range of sizes to allow a proper fit into
 48 any size roofing drain. **EverGuard® TPO Drain** by GAF
 49 6. Aluminum drain unit coated with a weldable TPO compound. TPO membrane can be heat welded
 50 directly to the drain body, resulting in a strong, secure installation. Each drain is fitted with a
 51 BlueSeal® mechanical drain seal for a secure, tight seal into the building drain system. Available



1 in two sizes (3" and 4"), and custom sizes are available. **EverGuard® TPO Coated Metal Drain**
 2 by GAF

3
 4 G. WALKWAYS

- 5 1. 1/8" thick extruded and embossed TPO roll 34.25" x 50', heat welds directly to roofing membrane.
 6 Unique "diamond tread" traction surface and features a 2" (51 mm) welding strip (smooth border)
 7 along each longitudinal edge that is compatible with hand or automatic welders. Available in gray
 8 or safety yellow, **EverGuard® TPO Walkway Rolls**, GAF.
 9

10 **PART 3 EXECUTION**

11
 12 **3.01 SITE CONDITIONS**

- 13
 14 A. Obtain verification that the building structure can accommodate the added weight of the new roofing
 15 system.
 16
 17 B. Confirm the adequacy of the new roofing system to provide positive slope to drain. Eliminate ponding
 18 areas by the addition of drainage locations or by providing additional pitch to the roof surface.
 19
 20 C. Prepare substrate surfaces thoroughly prior to application of new roofing materials. This is
 21 particularly important for re-cover and reroofing applications. Providing a smooth, even, sound,
 22 clean, and dry substrate minimizes the likelihood that underlying deficiencies will cause premature
 23 deterioration or even failure of the new roofing system.
 24
 25 D. All defects in the roof deck or substrate must be corrected by the responsible parties before new
 26 roofing work commences. Verify that the deck surface is dry, sound, clean, and smooth, and free of
 27 depressions, waves, or projections.
 28
 29 E. Protect building surfaces against damage and contamination from roofing work.
 30
 31 F. Where work must continue over completed roof areas, protect the finished roofing system from
 32 damage.
 33
 34 G. Deck preparation is the sole responsibility of the building owner or roofing contractor. All defects in
 35 the roof deck or substrate must be corrected before roofing work commences.
 36
 37 H. Refer to GAF Roof Guarantee Program for specific requirements for extended guarantees.
 38

39 **3.02 SUBSTRATE PREPARATION**

- 40 A. Steel Deck
 41 1. Metal decks must be a minimum uncoated thickness of 22 -gauge (0.8 mm) and shall have a G-90
 42 galvanized finish on all panels.
 43 2. When re-roofing over steel decks, surface corrosion shall be removed, and repairs to severely
 44 corroded areas made. Loose or inadequately secured decking shall be fastened, and irreparable
 45 or otherwise defective decking shall be replaced.
 46 3. Code standards apply when their requirements exceed those listed here.
 47

48 **3.03 NAILER INSTALLATION**

- 49 A. Acceptable Wood
 50 1. Solid Blocking: Non-pressure treated wood as required, #2 Grade or better, nominal 1 1/4" (30
 51 mm) x 4" (102 mm) with a minimum thickness of 3 1/2" (88 mm).
 52 2. Shim Material: Plywood, 1/2" (13 mm) x width to match solid blocking.
 53 3. Verify the condition of existing roof nailers and anchor to resist 250 lb. per ft. (550 kg) load applied
 54 in any direction. New nailers should meet same load requirements.
 55



4. DRILL-TEC™ HD screws 18" (457 mm) o.c. attachment to structural wood, steel decks with a 1" (25 mm) thread embedment.
5. DRILL-TEC™ spikes or HD screws 18" (457 mm) o.c. attachment to concrete decks. Min. 1" (25 mm) shank or thread penetration.
6. Wood nailers attached to gypsum, concrete, cellular concrete and cementitious wood fiber must be fastened 12" (305 mm) o.c., through the nailer into the substrate with substrate approved DRILL-TEC™ fasteners.
7. Three anchors per length of wood nailer minimum.

B. Metal Blocking

1. 20 Ga. galvanized steel box with pre-punched holes and supplied with corrosion-resistant fasteners.
2. Closure and finish strip required for metal decking.
3. Secure in place using provided #14 x 1½-in. universal fasteners through pre-punched holes to roof edge.
4. Install end cap and top of box section with #14 x 1½-in. universal fasteners.

3.04 INSTALLATION – GENERAL

- A. Install GAF's EverGuard® TPO roofing system according to all current application requirements in addition to those listed in this section.
- B. GAF EverGuard® TPO Specification #: TFANI80
- C. Start the application of membrane plies at the low point of the roof or at the drains, so that the flow of water is over or parallel to, but never against the laps.

3.05 VAPOR RETARDER

- A. GAF SA Vapor Retarder XL
 1. Mechanically attach roof board to deck prior to installing GAF SA Vapor Retarder XL per GAF requirements. Roll out the vapor retarder over roof board and allow to relax.
 2. Roll out the GAF SA Vapor Retarder XL over clean, dry deck and allow to relax. For metal decks, the width of the membrane is designed to match with the top of the flute.
 3. Place vapor retarder in desired position. Once the membrane is in place, while holding the membrane tight, peel off the silicone release film by pulling diagonally from the underside of the sheet.
 4. Install subsequent rolls of membrane in the same way, taking care to overlap the longitudinal side laps a minimum of 3" (76 mm) and end laps a minimum of 6" (152 mm).
 5. For metal decks, at the end of the roll, install a metal plate 6" x 42" (152 mm x 1.07 m) to support the membrane end lap between the metal flutes ensuring a complete end lap seal. Overlap end laps a minimum of 6" (152 mm).
 6. Once installed, pressure must be applied over the whole surface using a weighted roller to ensure adequate adhesion to the substrate.
 7. Seal perimeter and penetration areas with closed-cell foam sealant. The vapor retarder must be tied into the building's air/vapor retarder system as appropriate with compatible SBS asphaltic materials.
 8. Because the water resistance characteristics of vapor retarders can be compromised by storms, physical damage and installation issues, vapor retarders should be covered by a primary roof covering as soon as possible after installation. If the vapor retarder is not immediately covered, particular attention should be paid to implementation of details to ensure a temporary seal or GAF will have no responsibility for any moisture infiltration that results. All T-joints and 90 degree transitions must be sealed with Matrix™ 201 SBS Flashing Cement. If fishmouths or other openings are created at overlap, they must be sealed with Matrix™ 201 SBS Flashing Cement. All damage to or leaks through the vapor retarder must be repaired before installing



1 the finished roof.

- 2 9. GAF SA Vapor Retarder XL is UV resistant up to 90 days. 90-day UV resistance refers to
3 standardized testing conducted to ensure the product will not physically degrade when exposed to
4 UV.

5
6 **3.06 INSULATION**

7
8 **A. GENERAL**

- 9 1. Do not apply roof insulation or roofing until all other work trades have completed jobs that require
10 them to traverse the deck on foot or with equipment. A vapor retarder coated lightly with asphalt
11 may be applied to protect the inside of the structure prior to the insulation and final roofing
12 installation. Before the application of the insulation, any damage or deterioration to the vapor
13 retarder must be repaired.
14 2. Do not install wet, damaged or warped insulation boards.
15 3. Insulation boards installed in multiple layers must have the joints between boards staggered in all
16 directions a minimum of 6" (152 mm) between layers.
17 4. Butt insulation boards together with a 1/4" (6.3 mm) maximum space between adjoining boards.
18 Fit insulation boards around penetrations and perimeter with a 1/4" (6.3 mm) maximum space
19 between board and penetration. Do not kick insulation boards into place.
20 5. Insulation boards installed over steel decking must have boards placed perpendicular to deck
21 flutes with edges over flute surface for bearing support.
22 6. Install tapered insulation to provide a sump area a minimum of 36" x 36" (914 mm x 914 mm)
23 where applicable.
24 7. Wood nailers must be 3-1/2" (8.9 cm) minimum width or 1" (25 mm) wider than metal flange. They
25 shall be of equal thickness as the insulation, and be treated for rot resistance. All nailers must be
26 securely fastened to the deck.
27 8. Miter and fill the edges of the insulation boards at ridges, valleys and other changes in plane to
28 prevent open joints or irregular surfaces. Avoid breaking or crushing of the insulation at the
29 corners.
30 9. Insulation should not be installed over new lightweight insulating concrete.
31 10. Remove and replace insulation boards that become wet or damaged after installation.
32 11. Pre-drilling is required for concrete decks, and may be required for gypsum concrete and
33 cementitious wood fiber decks.
34 12. Where insulation is to be adhered in insulation adhesive, adhesion testing is required. The
35 maximum board size for PolyIso roof insulation is 4' x 4'. Gypsum boards and max 1/2" HD Wood
36 Fiberboard/Perlite may be adhered in 4' x 8 boards except where code requirements supersede.
37 13. Do not install any more insulation than will be completely waterproofed each day.

38
39 **3.07 INSULATION – BASE LAYER**

40
41 **A. OLYBOND 500**

- 42 1. The substrate must be free of debris, dust, dirt, oil, grease, and standing water before applying the
43 adhesive.
44 2. OlyBond 500 must be applied using the specially designed PaceCart dispenser. OlyBond 500
45 SpotShot shall be applied using one of the specially designed dual cartridge dispensers. OlyBond
46 500 Equipment Free Canister System dispenses with 25' hose and gun assembly included with
47 product.
48 3. Install insulation layers applied with bands of OlyBond 500 to achieve proper coverage rates for
49 insulation attachment:
50 a) Field: 12" o.c.
51 b) Perimeter: 6" o.c.
52 c) Corners: 4" o.c.
53 4. Approximate coverage rate is 1/2 to 1 gallon per 100 square feet, depending on the substrate.
54 Allow the foam to rise 3/4" to 1". Walk each board firmly into place. Stagger the joints of additional



layers in relation to the insulation joints in the layer(s) below by a minimum of 6" (15.2 cm) to eliminate continuous vertical gaps.

3.08 INSULATION – 2ND LAYER

A. OLYBOND 500

1. The substrate must be free of debris, dust, dirt, oil, grease, and standing water before applying the adhesive.
2. OlyBond 500 must be applied using the specially designed PaceCart dispenser. OlyBond 500 SpotShot shall be applied using one of the specially designed dual cartridge dispensers. OlyBond 500 Equipment Free Canister System dispenses with 25' hose and gun assembly included with product.
3. Install insulation layers applied with bands of OlyBond 500 to achieve proper coverage rates for insulation attachment:
 - a) Field: 12" o.c.
 - b) Perimeter: 6" o.c.
 - c) Corners: 4" o.c.
4. Approximate coverage rate is ½ to 1 gallon per 100 square feet, depending on the substrate. Allow the foam to rise ¾" to 1". Walk each board firmly into place. Stagger the joints of additional layers in relation to the insulation joints in the layer(s) below by a minimum of 6" (15.2 cm) to eliminate continuous vertical gaps.

3.09 INSULATION – 3RD LAYER

A. OLYBOND 500

1. The substrate must be free of debris, dust, dirt, oil, grease, and standing water before applying the adhesive.
2. OlyBond 500 must be applied using the specially designed PaceCart dispenser. OlyBond 500 SpotShot shall be applied using one of the specially designed dual cartridge dispensers. OlyBond 500 Equipment Free Canister System dispenses with 25' hose and gun assembly included with product.
3. Install insulation layers applied with bands of OlyBond 500 to achieve proper coverage rates for insulation attachment:
 - a) Field: 12" o.c.
 - b) Perimeter: 6" o.c.
 - c) Corners: 4" o.c.
4. Approximate coverage rate is ½ to 1 gallon per 100 square feet, depending on the substrate. Allow the foam to rise ¾" to 1". Walk each board firmly into place. Stagger the joints of additional layers in relation to the insulation joints in the layer(s) below by a minimum of 6" (15.2 cm) to eliminate continuous vertical gaps.

3.10 SINGLE PLY MEMBRANE APPLICATION

A. GENERAL

1. Substrates must be inspected and accepted by the contractor as suitable to receive and hold roof membrane materials.
2. Place roof membrane so that wrinkles and buckles are not formed. Any wrinkles or buckles must be removed from the sheet prior to permanent securement.
3. Membrane that has been exposed for more than 12 hours or has become contaminated will require additional cleaning methods.
 - a) Light Contamination - Membrane that has been exposed overnight up to a few days to debris, foot traffic, or dew or light precipitation can usually be cleaned with a white cloth moistened



1 with EverGuard® TPO Cleaner (or EverGuard® CleanWeld™ Conditioner, a low-VOC
2 cleaner) for TPO membranes.

- 3 b) Dirt-Based Contamination - Membrane that is dirt encrusted will require the use of a low-
4 residue cleaner, such as Formula 409® and a mildly abrasive scrubbing pad to remove the
5 dirt. This must be followed by cleaning with a white cloth moistened with EverGuard® TPO
6 Cleaner (or EverGuard® CleanWeld™ Conditioner) for TPO membranes.
- 7 c) Exposure-Based Contamination - Membrane that is weathered or oxidized will require the use
8 of EverGuard® TPO Cleaner, EverGuard® CleanWeld™ Conditioner and a mildly abrasive
9 scrubbing pad to remove the weathered/oxidized top surface layer. This must be followed by
10 cleaning with a white cloth moistened with EverGuard® TPO Cleaner (or EverGuard®
11 CleanWeld™ Conditioner) for TPO membranes. Unexposed membrane left in inventory for a
12 year or more may need to be cleaned as instructed above. Be sure to wait for solvent to flash
13 off prior to welding.
- 14 d) Chemical-Based Contamination - Membrane that is contaminated with bonding adhesive,
15 asphalt, flashing cement, grease and oil, and most other contaminants usually cannot be
16 cleaned sufficiently to allow an adequate heat weld to the membrane surface. These
17 membranes should be removed and replaced.

18
19 B. Adhered

- 20 1. All work surfaces should be clean, dry, and free of dirt, dust, debris, oils, loose and/or embedded
21 gravel, un-adhered coatings, deteriorated membrane, and other contaminants that may result in a
22 surface that is not sound or is uneven.
- 23 2. Full-width rolls can be installed throughout the field and perimeter of the roof. Half sheets are not
24 necessary.
- 25 3. Overlap roof membrane a minimum of 3" (76 mm) for end laps. For fleece-back membrane, butt
26 ends together and cover joint with 8" (203 mm) wide EverGuard® Flashing Strip heat-welded.
27 Membranes are provided with lap lines along the side laps.
- 28 4. Best practice is to install membrane so that the side laps run across the roof slope lapped toward
29 drainage points.
- 30 5. All exposed sheet corners must be rounded a minimum of 1" (25 mm).
- 31 6. Use full-width rolls throughout the field and perimeter of the roof. Half sheets are not necessary.
- 32 7. Membrane laps shall be heat-welded together. All welds shall be continuous, without voids or
33 partial welds. Welds shall be free of burns and scorch marks.
- 34 8. Weld shall be a minimum of 1" (25.4 mm) in width for automatic machine welding and a minimum
35 2" in width for hand welding. Code requirements may supersede these instructions.
- 36 9. Roof membrane must be mechanically attached along the base of walls with screws and plates 6"
37 (152 mm) on center.
- 38 10. Adhesive should be applied to the membrane at the following rate:
39 a) Applied at a total rate of 1.67 gal/sq., 1/2 to the substrate and 1/2 to the back surface of the
40 roof cover.
- 41 11. Use appropriate bonding adhesive for substrate surface, applied with a solvent-resistant roller,
42 brush or squeegee.
- 43 12. Adhere approximately one half of the membrane sheet at a time. One half of the sheet's length
44 shall be folded back in turn to allow for adhesive application. Lay membrane into adhesive once
45 the bonding adhesive is tacky to the touch.
- 46 13. Roll membrane with a weighted roller to ensure complete bonding between adhesive and
47 membrane.
- 48 14. Prevent seam contamination by keeping the adhesive application a few inches back from the
49 seam area.
- 50 15. Reference the Adhesive securement tables in the EverGuard® Application and Specifications
51 Manuals for substrate adhesion and compatibility.
- 52 16. Roll in membrane using a 150 lb. membrane roller or equivalent.
- 53 17. To reduce thermal bridging, a full spray of approved Low Rise Foam Adhesive may be used to
54 attach individual insulation layers or adhere the top layer to a mechanically fastened bottom layer.
55



1 **3.11 FLASHINGS**

2
3 A. GENERAL

- 4 1. All penetrations must be at least 24" (61 cm) from curbs, walls, and edges to provide adequate
5 space for proper flashing.
6 2. Flash all perimeter, curb, and penetration conditions with coated metal, membrane flashing, and
7 flashing accessories as appropriate to the site condition.
8 3. All coated metal and membrane flashing corners shall be reinforced with preformed corners or
9 non-reinforced membrane.
10 4. Hot-air weld all flashing membranes, accessories, and coated metal. A minimum 2" wide (hand
11 welder) weld or minimum 1 - 1/2" automatic machine weld is required.
12 5. Non-coated metal edge details must be installed in accordance with current EverGuard®
13 construction details and requirements.
14 6. EverGuard Extreme® flashings and accessories are required for use with EverGuard Extreme®
15 membranes.
16 7. Consult the EverGuard® *Application and Specifications Manual* or GAF Contractor Services for
17 more information on specific construction details.
18

19 **3.12 TRAFFIC PROTECTION**

- 20
21 A. Install walkway rolls at all roof access locations and other designated locations including roof-
22 mounted equipment work locations and areas of repeated rooftop traffic.
23
24 B. Walkway pads must be spaced 6" apart to allow for drainage between the pads.
25
26 C. Heat-weld walkway rolls to the roof membrane surface continuously around the perimeter of the roll.
27

28 **3.13 ROOF PROTECTION**

- 29
30 A. Protect all partially and fully completed roofing work from other trades until completion.
31
32 B. Whenever possible, stage materials in such a manner that foot traffic is minimized over completed
33 roof areas.
34
35 C. When it is not possible to stage materials away from locations where partial or complete installation
36 has taken place, temporary walkways and platforms shall be installed in order to protect all
37 completed roof areas from traffic and point loading during the application process.
38
39 D. Temporary tie-ins shall be installed at the end of each workday and removed prior to commencement
40 of work the following day.
41

42 **3.14 CLEAN-UP**

- 43
44 A. All work areas are to be kept clean, clear and free of debris at all times.
45 B. Do not allow trash, waste, or debris to collect on the roof. These items shall be removed from the
46 roof on a daily basis.
47 C. All tools and unused materials must be collected at the end of each workday and stored properly off
48 of the finished roof surface and protected from exposure to the elements.
49
50 D. Dispose of or recycle all trash and excess material in a manner conforming to current EPA
51 regulations and local laws.
52
53 E. Properly clean the finished roof surface after completion, and make sure the drains and gutters are
54 not clogged.
55



1 F. Clean and restore all damaged surfaces to their original condition.

2

3

4

END OF SECTION 07 54 23



1 **SECTION 07 60 00 - FLASHING AND SHEET METAL**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **1.01 SCOPE OF WORK**

- 6
7 A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required and install flashing and sheet metal
8 as hereinafter specified.
9
10 B. These Specifications are intended to give a general description of what is required, but do not
11 cover all details which will vary in accordance with the requirements of the specific application. It
12 is, however, intended to cover the furnishing, the shop testing, the delivery and complete
13 installation and field testing, of all materials, equipment and all appurtenances for the complete
14 installation, whether specifically mentioned in these Specifications or not. Construction shall be
15 weathertight.
16

17 **1.02 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

- 18
19 A. Extent of flashing and sheet metal work is indicated on drawings and by provisions of this section.
20 Types of work specified in this section include the following:
21 1. Exposed metal parapet cap, trim, drip, fascia units, etc.
22 2. Miscellaneous sheet metal accessories.
23

24 **1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 25
26 A. All work of this Section shall meet requirements and recommendations of applicable portions of
27 standards listed. In case of conflict between the referenced specifications or standards, the one
28 having the more stringent requirements shall govern.
29 1. American Institute of Steel Construction, Inc. - AISC.
30 2. American Society for Testing and Materials - ASTM.
31 3. Federal Specifications - FS.
32 4. United States of American Standards Institute - USASI.
33 5. Florida Building Code - FBC.
34 6. Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors National Association -SMACNA.
35 7. National Roofing Contractors Association - NRCA.
36
37 B. Fabricator Qualification: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and
38 trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-
39 service performance.

- 40 1. For copings and roof edge flashings that are SPRI ES-1 tested and FM Approvals
41 approved, shop shall be listed as able to fabricate required details as tested and
42 approved.
43

44 **1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 45
46 A. Product Data; Flashing, Sheet Metal, Accessories: Submit manufacturer's product data, installation
47 instructions and general recommendations for each specified sheet material and fabricated
48 product.
49



- 1 B. Samples: Submit 12" long, completely finished units of specified factory-fabricated products
 2 exposed as finished work.
 3
 4 C. Shop Drawings; Flashing, Sheet Metal, Accessories: Submit shop drawings showing layout,
 5 joining, profiles, method of joining and anchorages of fabricated work, including major counter-
 6 flashings, trim/fascia units, gutters, downspouts, scuppers and expansion joint systems; layouts at
 7 1/4" scale, details at 3" scale.
 8
 9 D. Warranty: This Contractor shall furnish a written warranty stating:
 10 1. "This Contractor shall and hereby does warranty that all work executed under this Section will
 11 be free from defects of materials and workmanship for a period of 3 years from the date of
 12 Substantial Completion. Any defects in materials and/or workmanship within this time limit will
 13 be corrected without cost to Owner."
 14
 15 E. Product Certificates: For each type of coping and roof edge that is SPRI ES-1 Tested.
 16

17 **1.05 PRODUCT HANDLING**

- 18
 19 A. Deliver packaged materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened, labeled containers.
 20 Arrange deliveries to provide sufficient quantities to permit continuity of installation for any phase of
 21 work. Store to prevent damage to materials or structure. Store ferrous metals to prevent rusting.
 22 Cover or encase finished surfaces to avoid scratching or discoloration. Protect exposed metal
 23 work to prevent bending and denting.
 24

25 **1.06 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS**

- 26
 27 A. Contractor shall take precautions reasonably necessary for the protection of work and persons
 28 whose injury might result from Contractor's failure to take such precautions.
 29

30 **1.07 SCHEDULING OF WORK**

- 31
 32 A. Contractor shall schedule work to provide for the utmost safety to building users.
 33

34 **1.08 JOB CONDITIONS**

- 35
 36 A. Coordinate work of this section with interfacing and adjoining work for proper sequencing of each
 37 installation. Ensure best possible weather resistance and durability of work and protection of
 38 materials and finishes.
 39
 40

41 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

42 **2.01 FLASHING AND SHEET METAL MATERIALS**

- 43
 44 A. Performance Requirements:
 45
 46 1. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings and roof edge flashings tested
 47 according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting following design pressure:
 48
 49 a. Design Pressures: As indicated on Structural Sheets.
 50



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
- B. Metal roof related flashings/roof drip edge (when associated with Galvalume roof system): 22-gauge galvalume, Fluoropolymer coated unless otherwise indicated below or specifically noted within the Contract Document Drawings.
 - C. Metal fascia (@ Pre-function/Gallery1-002A): .050 Aluminum, Fluoropolymer coated.
 - D. Exterior single skin sheet metal wall panels (Below Curtainwall at Pre-function Gallery1-002A): .063 Aluminum, Fluoropolymer coated.
 - E. GravelStop: Basis of design EverGuard GravelStop Facia .050" aluminum, Tested per ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 Standard. Mill aluminum Pre-finished Kynar 500® Dark anodized bronz(See standard color chart) Color per Exterior Finish Schedule, if not indicated than as selected by Architect/Owner from manufacturers full range of colors.
 - F. Metal Thru-Wall Flashing.
 - 1. Refer to Section 04 20 00 for Primary Thru-Wall Flashing.
 - D. Parapet Cap Flashing: Basis of Design Metal-Era Perma-Tite Coping, Anchor Type ANSI/SPRI ES-1 Tested; 0.063" aluminum, 70% Kynar 500 Finish. Color per Exterior Finish Schedule, if not indicated than as selected by Architect/Owner from manufacturers full range of colors. Provide splice plates at joints with factory applied sealant strips at each joint. **Prefabricated corner sections shall be welded** and in accordance with Contract Document **Details**.
 - E. Curtainwall and Storefront (and sub-sill) Flashing: 0.050" aluminum.
 - H. Metal Gutters: Refer to Section 07 71 23.
 - I. Stack, Metal Hoods, and Miscellaneous Metal Flashing: 0.080" aluminum.
 - K. Fasteners: Same metal as flashing/sheet metal or, other non-corrosive metal as recommended by sheet manufacturer.
 - 1. All fasteners securing metal cleats, etc. shall be ring shank, deformed or threaded.
 - 2. Wind cleats shall be one gauge heavier (min) than metal they are restraining.
 - 3. Cleats: Anchor at 3" o.c., staggered.
 - L. Bituminous Coating: FS TT-C-494 or SSPC - Paint 12, solvent type bituminous mastic, nominally free of sulfur, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat.
 - M. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene; non-hardening, non-skinning, non-drying, non-migrating sealant.
 - N. Elastomeric Sealant: Generic type recommended by manufacturer of metal and fabricator of components being sealed; comply with FS TT-S-00227, TT-S-00230, or TT-S-001543.
 - O. Metal Accessories: Provide sheet metal clips, straps, anchoring devices and similar accessory units as required for installation of work, matching or compatible with material being installed, noncorrosive, size and gage required for performance.



1 P. Roofing Cement: ASTM D 2822, asphaltic.

2
3 Q. Epoxy Seam Sealer: 2-part non-corrosive metal seam cementing compound, recommended by
4 metal manufacturer for exterior non-moving joints.

5
6 R. Adhesives: Type recommended by flashing sheet manufacturer for weatherproof/weather-resistant
7 seaming and adhesive application of and compatibility with flashing sheet.
8
9

10
11 **2.02 FABRICATED UNITS**
12

13 A. General Metal Fabrication: Shop-fabricate work to greatest extent possible. Comply with details
14 shown, and with applicable requirements of SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and
15 other recognized industry practices. Fabricate for waterproof and weather-resistant performance;
16 with expansion provisions for running work, sufficient to permanently prevent leakage, damage or
17 deterioration of the work. Form work to fit substrates. Comply with material manufacturer
18 instructions and recommendations for forming material. Form exposed sheet metal work without
19 excessive oil-canning, buckling and tool marks, true to line and levels indicated, with exposed
20 edges folded back to form hems.
21

22 B. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams in sheet metal with flat-lock seams. For metal other than
23 aluminum, tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
24

25 C. Expansion Provisions: Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions in work cannot be used
26 or would not be sufficiently water/weatherproof form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked
27 flanges, not less than 1" deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
28

29 D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, non-expansion type joints are indicated or required for proper
30 performance of work, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant, in
31 compliance with SMACNA standards.
32

33 E. Separations: Provide for separation of metal from non-compatible metal or corrosive substrates by
34 coating concealed surfaces at locations of contact, with bituminous coating or other permanent
35 separation as recommended by manufacturer/fabricator.
36

37 F. Corner seams in parapet cap flashing shall be welded joints.
38

39 **2.03 FINISH**
40

41 A. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent
42 PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal
43 surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions. Color per Finish
44 Schedule or as selected by Architect/Owner from manufacturers full range of colors.
45
46

47 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**
48

49 **3.01 CONDITION OF SURFACES**
50



- 1 A. Examine surfaces to receive work specified herein, for defects that will adversely affect the
 2 execution and quality of work and for deviations beyond allowable tolerances. Do not start work
 3 until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected and have been inspected by Architect.
 4

- 5 1. All to be pre-tinned and pre-trimmed at the shop, not in the field.
 6

7 **3.02 ELECTROLYSIS**

- 8
 9 A. Provide positive protection to prevent electrolysis between dissimilar materials used approximately
 10 together. Separate dissimilar metal by painting with bituminous coating.
 11

12 **3.03 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- 13
 14 A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, comply with manufacturer's installation instructions and
 15 recommendations, and with SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual". Anchor units of work
 16 securely in place by methods indicated, providing for thermal expansion of metal units; conceal
 17 fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps,
 18 joints and seams which will be permanently watertight and weatherproof.
 19

- 20 B. Back-priming: Back-prime were necessary to provide separation between dissimilar materials.

- 21 1. Bed flanges of work in a thick coat of bituminous roofing cement where required for waterproof
 22 performance.
 23

- 24 C. Bed flanges of work in a thick coat of bituminous roofing cement where required for waterproof
 25 performance.
 26

- 27 D. Roof Drain Sump: Set sump in full bed of roofing mastic. (N/A)
 28

- 29 E. Nail flanges of expansion joint units to curb nailers, at maximum spacing of 6". Fabricate seams at
 30 joints between units with minimum 3" overlap, to form a continuous waterproof system.
 31

- 32 F. All corners (inside and outside) shall be formed in one section of 6'-0" long material and bent
 33 around the corner (3'-0" each side of corner).
 34

- 35 G. Temperature existing at the time of installation of metal assembly shall be taken into consideration.
 36

- 37 1. If installing metal components during cold winter months, allowances must be made for the
 38 expansion which will occur to the component or system when the hot summer months arrive.
 39 In the hot months, materials need to be installed close together, because in the cold months,
 40 they will contract and spread apart.
 41

- 42 H. Where wood screws, machine screws, and bolts are required, use silicon bronze or stainless steel
 43 series alloy.
 44

- 45 I. Secure all cleats with at least two copper, commercial bronze or silicon bronze large-head slanting
 46 nails or the ring-barb type, not less than 12 Stubbs gauge and a minimum of 1-inch long
 47

48 **3.04 WORKMANSHIP**

- 49 A. Metal work and roofing work shall be executed by experienced mechanics skilled in work of
 50 required under this Section.



- 1
2 B. Shop fabricate all corners.
3

4 **3.05 PATCHING AND REPAIR WORK**
5

- 6 A. Repair damaged work to match adjacent or similar undamaged work. Remove and replace
7 damaged or defective work that cannot be satisfactorily repaired. Repairs that appear obvious as a
8 patch will not be acceptable and shall be replaced.
9

10 **3.06 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**
11

- 12 A. Clean exposed metal surfaces, removing substances which might cause corrosion of metal or
13 deterioration of finishes.
14
15 B. Protection: Installer shall advise Contractor of required procedures for surveillance and protection
16 of flashings and sheet metal work during construction, to ensure that work will be without damage
17 or deterioration, other than natural weathering, at time of substantial completion.
18

19 **END OF SECTION 07 60 00**



1 **SECTION 07 71 23 - GUTTERS AND DOWNSPOUTS**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **1.01 SCOPE OF WORK**

- 6
7 A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required and install preformed roofing as
8 hereinafter specified.
9
10 B. These Specifications are intended to give a general description of what is required, but do not
11 cover all details which will vary in accordance with the requirements of the specific application. It
12 is, however, intended to cover the furnishing, the shop testing, the delivery and complete
13 installation and field testing, of all materials, equipment and all appurtenances for the complete
14 installation, whether specifically mentioned in these Specifications or not.
15

16 **1.02 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

- 17
18 A. Extent of gutters and downspout work is indicated on drawings and by provisions of this section.
19 Types of work specified in this section include the following:
20 1. Downspouts (exposed to view).
21 2. Gutters.
22 3. Conductor heads
23

24 **1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 25
26 A. All work of this Section shall meet requirements and recommendations of applicable portions of
27 standards listed. In case of conflict between the referenced specifications or standards, the one
28 having the more stringent requirements shall govern.
29 1. American Institute of Steel Construction, Inc. - AISC.
30 2. American Society for Testing and Materials - ASTM.
31 3. Federal Specifications - FS.
32 4. United States of American Standards Institute - USASI.
33 5. Florida Building Code - FBC.
34 6. Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors National Association - SMACNA.
35 7. National Roofing Contractors Association - NRCA.
36

- 37 B. Separate dissimilar metal by painting with bituminous coating.
38

39 **1.04 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS**

- 40
41 A. Samples: Submit 12" long, completely finished units as follows:
42 1. Gutter (exposed to view).
43 2. Downspout (exposed to view).
44 3. Gutter hangers and brackets.
45 4. Conductor head (complete unit).
46
47 B. Shop Drawings: Submit drawings showing layout, joining, profiles, and anchorages.
48
49 C. Warranty: This Contractor shall furnish a written warranty stating:
50 1. "This Contractor shall and hereby does guarantee that all work executed under this Section
51 will be free from defects of materials and workmanship for a period of 3 years from the date
52 of Substantial Completion. Any defects in materials and/or workmanship within this time
53 limit will be corrected without cost to Owner."
54
55
56
57



1 **1.05 PRODUCT HANDLING**

- 2
3 A. Deliver, handle and store materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and
4 recommendations.
5

6 **1.06 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS**

- 7
8 A. Contractor shall take precautions reasonably necessary for the protection of work and persons
9 whose injury might result from Contractor's failure to take such precautions.
10

11 **1.07 SCHEDULING OF WORK**

- 12
13 A. Contractor shall schedule work to provide for the utmost safety to building users. Contractor shall
14 coordinate with the Owner regarding temporary rerouting of traffic, staff and children before work
15 commences each day.
16

17 **1.08 JOB CONDITIONS**

- 18
19 A. Coordinate work of this section with interfacing and adjoining work for proper sequencing of each
20 installation. Ensure best possible weather resistance and durability of work and protection of
21 materials and finishes.
22

23 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

24 **2.01 MATERIALS**

- 25
26 A. Gutters shall be formed from minimum 20-gauge galvalume (or thicker per latest SMACNA
27 guidelines on gutter girth dimensions). Downspouts shall be formed from 22-gauge galvalume.
28 Gutters and downspouts shall be coated with Hylar 5000/70% Kynar 500 in a color selected from
29 the full range of manufacturers color choices.
30
31 B. Gutter Design: Gutters shall be shaped as indicated on drawings. Contractor shall have option to
32 use "pre-manufactured" units in the **same profile** as indicated in the Contract Documents.
33
34 C. Downspout (exposed to view): Downspouts shall be 5" diameter round shape as indicated on
35 drawings formed from 22 gauge galvalume and shall connect to underground storm water piping,
36 unless otherwise indicated or specified.
37
38 D. Sealants: Provide sealants at building penetrations, expansion joints, etc.
39
40 1. Sealant shall be one-component Polysulfide Sealant, polysulfide based, one-part elastomeric
41 sealant, complying with FS TT-S-00230, Class A, Type II (non-sag) unless type I
42 recommended by manufacturer for application required.
43
44 E. Fasteners: Same material as gutter and downspout. Match finish of exposed heads with material
45 being fastened.
46
47

48 **2.02 FABRICATED UNITS**

- 49
50 A. General Metal Fabrication: Shop-fabricate work to greatest extent possible. Comply with details
51 shown, and with applicable requirements of the current edition of the **SMACNA "Architectural**
52 **Sheet Metal Manual"** and other recognized industry practices. Fabricate for waterproof and
53 weather-resistant performance; with expansion provisions, sufficient to permanently prevent
54 leakage, damage or deterioration of the work. Form work to fit substrates. Comply with material
55 manufacturer instructions and recommendations for forming material. Form work without
56 excessive oil-canning, buckling and tool marks, true to line and levels indicated.
57



- 1
2 B. Sealant Joints: Where movable, non-expansion type joints are indicated or required for proper
3 performance of work, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant, in
4 compliance with SMACNA standards.
5

6 **2.03 FINISHES**
7

- 8 A. Shop Finishing: (downspouts and gutters at cafetorium)
9
10 1. High-Performance Organic Coating Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical finish: cleaned with
11 inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating;
12 Organic Coating: as specified below). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal
13 surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturer's instructions.
14
15 a. Fluoropolymer 2-Coat Coating system: Manufacturer's standard 2-coat, thermocured
16 system composed of specially formulated inhibited primer, fluoropolymer color coat, with
17 color coating containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight;
18 in accordance with AAMA 2605.
19 b. Color and Gloss: In accordance with Exterior Color Listing.
20

21 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**
22

23 **3.01 INSTALLATION**
24

- 25 A. Gutters: Install with minimum of 3/32" per foot towards drain. Refer to drawings for specific
26 locations of drains. Provide expansion joints as indicated on drawings and/or per current SMACNA
27 Standards. All seams shall be thoroughly soldered or otherwise sealed to produce watertight
28 joints.
29
30 B. Downspouts (exposed to view): Install plumb and at locations as indicated. Downspout anchors
31 per details; provide anchors minimum at top, bottom and at 8'-0" o.c. Provide fasteners as required
32 for various substrates. Refer to drawings for locations.
33
34 C. Temperature existing at the time of installation of metal assembly shall be taken into consideration.
35
36 1. If installing metal components during cold winter months, allowances must be made for the
37 expansion which will occur to the component or system when the hot summer months arrive.
38 In the hot months, materials need to be installed close together, because in the cold months,
39 they will contract and spread apart.
40
41 D. Use rivets spaced at 1/2-inch o.c. in dual rows down the lap edge of the solder joint to securely
42 hold pieces of material tightly together during the soldering. Use flathead rivets same color as
43 material being fastened.
44
45 E. Where wood screws, machine screws, and bolts are required, use silicon bronze or stainless-steel
46 series alloy.
47

48 **3.02 WORKMANSHIP**
49

- 50 A. Gutter and downspout work shall be executed by experienced mechanics skilled in work of
51 required under this Section.
52

53 **3.03 PATCHING AND REPAIR WORK**
54

- 55 A. Repair damaged work to match adjacent or similar undamaged work. Remove and replace
56 damaged or defective work that cannot be satisfactorily repaired. Repairs that appear obvious as a
57 patch will not be acceptable and shall be replaced.
58



1 **3.04 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- 2
- 3 A. Clean exposed metal surfaces, removing substances which might cause corrosion of metal or
- 4 deterioration of finishes.
- 5
- 6 B. Protection: Installer shall advise Contractor of required procedures for surveillance and protection
- 7 of flashings and sheet metal work during construction to ensure that work will be without damage or
- 8 deterioration, other than natural weathering, at time of substantial completion.
- 9

10 **END OF SECTION 07 71 23**



1 **SECTION 07 72 00 - ROOF ACCESSORIES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes the following:

- 5 1. Roof curbs.
- 6 2. Equipment supports.

7 **1.2 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS**

8 A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory indicated.

9 **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

10 A. Sheet Metal Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" details for
 11 fabrication of units, including flanges and cap flashing to coordinate with type of roofing
 12 indicated.

13 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

14 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

15 A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering
 16 products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers
 17 listed in other Part 2 articles.

18 **2.2 METAL MATERIALS**

19 A. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coated.

20 **2.3 ROOF CURBS**

21 A. Roof Curbs: Provide metal roof curbs, internally reinforced and capable of supporting
 22 superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction to be
 23 supported on roof curbs. Fabricate with welded or sealed mechanical corner joints, with integral
 24 metal cant and integral formed mounting flange at perimeter bottom. Coordinate dimensions
 25 with rough-in information and insulation thickness or Shop Drawings of equipment to be
 26 supported.

27 1. Available Manufacturers:

- 28 a. Curbs Plus Inc.
- 29 b. Custom Curb, Inc.
- 30 c. Metallic Products Corporation.
- 31 d. Roof Products, Inc.

32 2. Load Requirements: Coordinate with equipment to be supported..

33 3. Material: Galvanized steel sheet, **0.079 inch (2.0 mm)** thick.

34 a. Prime painted from manufacturer

35 b. Finish: match roof color.

36 4. Liner: Same material as curb, of manufacturer's standard thickness and finish.

37 5. Factory install wood nailers at tops of curbs.

38 6. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.

39 7. Factory insulate curbs with **1-1/2-inch-** thick, glass-fiber board insulation.

40 8. Curb height may be determined by adding thickness of roof insulation and minimum base
 41 flashing height plus allowing for 8" clearance above roof and as recommended by roofing



- 1 membrane manufacturer. Fabricate units to minimum height of **12 inches** unless
 2 otherwise indicated.
 3 9. Sloping Roofs: Where slope of roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb units with water
 4 diverter or cricket and with height tapered to match slope to level tops of units.

5 **2.4 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS**

- 6 A. Equipment Supports: Provide metal equipment supports, internally reinforced and capable of
 7 supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction
 8 to be supported. Fabricate with welded or sealed mechanical corner joints, with integral metal
 9 cant and integral formed mounting flange at perimeter bottom. Coordinate dimensions with
 10 rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
- 11 1. Available Manufacturers:
 12 a. Curbs Plus Inc.
 13 b. Custom Curb, Inc.
 14 c. Metallic Products Corporation.
 15 d. Roof Products, Inc.
- 16 2. Load Requirements: Coordinate with unit to be supported.
 17 3. Material: Galvanized steel sheet, **0.079 inch (2.0 mm)** thick.
- 18 a. Prime painted from manufacturer.
 19 b. Finish: match roof color.
- 20 4. Factory-install continuous pressure treated wood nailers **3-1/2 inches (90 mm)** wide at
 21 tops of equipment supports.
 22 5. Metal Counterflashing: Manufacturer's standard removable counterflashing, fabricated of
 23 same metal and finish as equipment support.
 24 6. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
 25 7. Fabricate units to minimum height of **12 inches (300 mm)**, unless otherwise indicated.
 26 8. Sloping Roofs: Where slope of roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb units with water
 27 diverter or cricket and with height tapered to match slope to level tops of units.

28 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

29 **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- 30 A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof
 31 accessories securely in place and capable of resisting forces specified. Use fasteners,
 32 separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for completing roof accessory
 33 installation. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling,
 34 leaking, and fastener disengagement.
- 35 B. Install roof accessories to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
- 36 C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates,
 37 protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other
 38 permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
- 39 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof accessories with bituminous coating
 40 where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 41 2. Underlayment: Where installing exposed-to-view components of roof accessories directly
 42 on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a
 43 slip sheet, or install a course of polyethylene underlayment.



- 1 3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by roof accessory
2 manufacturers for waterproof performance.

- 3 D. Install roof accessories level, plumb, true to line and elevation, and without warping, jogs in
4 alignment, excessive oil canning, buckling, or tool marks.

- 5 E. Seal joints with elastomeric sealant as required by manufacturer of roof accessories.

- 6 **END OF SECTION 07 72 00**



1 **SECTION 07 81 13 - INTUMESCENT FIRE RESISTIVE MATERIALS**

2 **PART 1 GENERAL**

3 **SECTION INCLUDES**

- 4 Thin-film intumescent fire protection.
 5 Compressible-rod intumescent fire protection.
 6 Protective and/or decorative topcoats.

7 **RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- 8 Section 078100 - Applied Fire Protection: Conventional cementitious and mineral fiber fireproofing.
 9 Section 099123 - Interior Painting: Field-applied paints matching intumescent fireproofing.

10 **REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- 11 40 CFR 59, Subpart D - National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural
 12 Coatings; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; Current Edition. (EPA Method 40)
 13 ASTM D2240 - Standard Test Method for Rubber Property--Durometer Hardness; 2015 (Reapproved
 14 2021).
 15 ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2023d.
 16 ASTM E119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials; 2022.
 17 ASTM D4541 – Standard Test Method for Pull-Off Strength of Coatings Using Portable Adhesion
 18 Testers
 19 ASTM D4060 – Standard Test Method for Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coatings by the Taber
 20 Abraser
 21 ASTM E2924 - Standard Practice for Intumescent Coatings
 22 UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory; Current Edition.

23 **SUBMITTALS**

- 24 Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 25 Performance characteristics and test results.
 26 Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 27 Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 28 Installation methods.
 29 Selection Samples: For decorative top coat, color chips representing manufacturer's full range of
 30 available colors and sheens.
 31 Verification Samples: For each thickness, color, sheen, and finish required, submit samples not less
 32 than **6 in²** on designated substrate illustrating finished appearance.
 33 Certificates: Certify that intumescent fireproofing provided for this project meets or exceeds specified
 34 requirements in all respects.
 35 Test Reports: Published fire resistive designs for structural elements of the types required for the
 36 project, indicating hourly ratings of each assembly.
 37 Field Quality Control Submittals: Submit field test report.
 38 Manufacturer's qualification statement.
 39 Installer's qualification statement.

40 **QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 41 Manufacturer Qualifications: Company that specializes in manufacturing the type of products
 42 specified, with a minimum of 10 years' experience in the manufacturing and production of
 43 Intumescent Coatings.



1 Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least
2 3 years' experience in applying intumescent coatings and approved by manufacturer.

3 **MOCK-UPS**

4 Provide a mock-up for evaluation of surface preparation techniques and application workmanship;
5 approved mock-up will serve as a standard of comparison for subsequent work of this section.

6 Finish at least 100 ft² of surface in areas as designated by Architect.

7 Evaluate mock-up for compliance with specified requirements, including thickness and finish texture.

8 Do not proceed with remaining work until workmanship, color, and sheen are approved by Architect.

9 Refinish mock-up area as required to produce acceptable work.

10 Approved mock-up may remain as part of the project.

11 **DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

12 Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened containers with identification labels and testing
13 agency markings intact and legible.

14 Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.

15 Store at temperatures not less than 50 degrees F (10 degrees C) in dry, protected area.

16 Protect from freezing, and do not store in direct sunlight.

17 **FIELD CONDITIONS**

18 Protect areas of application from windblown dust and rain.

19 Maintain ambient field conditions, such as temperature, humidity, and ventilation, within limits
20 recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under ambient
21 conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

22 Provide temporary enclosures as required to control ambient conditions.

23 Do not apply water based intumescent fireproofing when ambient temperatures are below 50
24 degrees F (10 degrees C) without specific approval from manufacturer.

25 Do not apply solvent based intumescent fireproofing when ambient temperatures are below 40
26 degrees F (4.4 degrees C) without specific approval from manufacturer.

27 Ensure that relative humidity is between 40 and 60 percent, or as manufacturer requires, in areas
28 of application.

29 Provide ventilation in enclosed spaces during application and for not less than 72 hours afterward.

30 **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

32 **MANUFACTURERS**

33 Water Based Intumescent Thin-Film Fire Protection for Metal:

34 Isolatak International: CAFCO SprayFilm WB 5; CAFCO SprayFilm WB 3; CAFCO SprayFilm WB
35 4: www.isolatak.com/#sle. . (**** Selection depends on type of structure used.

36 **Contractor to coordinate and very with manufacturer for application thickness)**

37 Substitutions: Equal to basis of design

39 Solvent Based Intumescent Thin-Film Fire Protection for Metal:

40 Isolatak International: FIRESOLVE SB: www.isolatak.com/#sle.

41 Substitutions: Equal to basis of design

42 **SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS**

43 Fireproofing: Provide intumescent thin-film fire protection systems tested by an independent testing
44 agency in accordance with ASTM E119 and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).

45 **MATERIALS**

46 Fire Resistive Coating System: Thin-film intumescent fire protection system for structural steel.



1 Surface Burning Characteristics: Class A, flame spread/smoke developed index of 25/450,
2 maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

3 Product Performance requirements for use:

4 Use only water-based or solvent based products.

5 VOC Content: Less than 130 g per L when tested in accordance with 40 CFR 59, Subpart D
6 (EPA Method 24).

7 Direct Impact Resistance: not less than 150 in-lb (16.9 Nm).

8 Abrasion Resistance: maximum 0.2600 g/1000 cycles.

9 Bond Strength: 300 psi (2068 kPa), minimum.

10 Durometer Hardness, Type D: 65, minimum, in accordance with ASTM D2240.

11 Basis of Design: Water Based Intumescent - Isolatak International: **CAFCO SprayFilm WB**
12 **5; CAFCO SprayFilm WB 3; CAFCO SprayFilm WB 4:** www.isolatak.com/#sle.

13 Basis of Design: Solvent Based Intumescent – Isolatak International: **FIRESOLVE SB:**
14 www.isolatak.com/#sle.

15 Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

16 Protective and Decorative Top Coating: As recommended by fireproofing manufacturer for exposure
17 and substrate conditions.

18 Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect.

19 Color and Gloss: As indicated on drawings.

20 Color and Gloss: _____.

21 Coordinate with paint for color and sheen to match intumescent fireproof coating and adjacent
22 painted surfaces; see Section 099123.

23 Sealers and Primer: As required by tested and listed assemblies, and recommended by fireproofing
24 manufacturer to suit specific substrate conditions.

25 Reinforcement: Glass fiber fabric matching type used in tested and listed assemblies.

26 PART 3 EXECUTION

27 EXAMINATION

28 Examine substrates to determine if they are in satisfactory condition to receive intumescent fire
29 protection; verify that substrates are clean and free of oil, grease, incompatible primers, or other
30 foreign substances capable of impairing bond to fireproofing system.

31 Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.

32 If substrate preparation is responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory
33 preparation before proceeding.

34 PREPARATION

35 Thoroughly clean surfaces to receive fireproofing.

36 Repair substrates to remove surface imperfections that could effect uniformity of texture and thickness
37 of fireproofing system, and remove minor projections and fill voids that could telegraph through
38 finished work.

39 Cover or otherwise protect other work that might be damaged by fallout or overspray of fireproofing
40 system, and provide temporary enclosures as necessary to confine operations and maintain
41 required ambient field conditions.

42 APPLICATION

43 Comply with manufacturer's instructions for each particular intumescent fire protection system
44 installation application as indicated.

45 Apply manufacturer's recommended primer to required coating thickness.

46 Apply fireproofing to full thickness over entire area of each substrate to be protected.

47 Apply coats at manufacturer's recommended rate to achieve dry film thickness (DFT) as required for
48 fire resistance ratings designated for each condition.



1 Apply intumescent fire protection by spraying to maximum extent possible, and as necessary complete
2 coverage by roller application or other method acceptable to manufacturer.

3 Achieve uniform finished appearance complying with approved mock-up.

4 **FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

5 Perform field inspection and testing in accordance with Chapter 17 of the International Building Code
6 (IBC) or model code requirements.

7 Arrange for testing of installed intumescent fire protection by an independent testing laboratory
8 using magnetic pull-off dry film thickness gauge and ensure it meets requirements of
9 authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).

10 Submit field test reports promptly to Contractor and Architect.

11 Repair or replace intumescent fire protection at locations where test results indicate fireproofing does
12 not meet specified requirements.

13 **CLEANING**

14 See Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.

15 Immediately after installation of fireproofing in each area, remove overspray and fallout from other
16 surfaces and clean soiled areas.

17 **PROTECTION**

18 Protect installed intumescent fire protection from damage due to subsequent construction activities, so
19 fireproofing is without damage or deterioration before Date of Substantial Completion.

20 Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

21 **END OF SECTION**

22 Note:

23 The performance data herein is based upon our experience and knowledge and reflect our
24 expectations based on tests conducted in accordance with recognized standard methods under
25 controlled conditions. ISOLATEK International makes no claim that these tests, or any other tests,
26 accurately reflect all environments as application, environmental and design factors can vary
27 significantly. The sale of these products shall be subject to the Terms and Conditions of Sale set
28 forth in the Company's Invoices. The applicator, general contractor, property owner and/or user
29 MUST read, understand and follow the directions, specifications and/or recommendations set forth
30 in ISOLATEK International's publications concerning use and application of these products, and
31 should not rely merely on the information contained in this guide specification. ISOLATEK
32 INTERNATIONAL DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED,
33 INCLUDING WARRANTIES OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR
34 MERCHANTABILITY. ISOLATEK INTERNATIONAL SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY
35 DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL
36 DAMAGES, DAMAGES FOR LOST PROFITS, DAMAGES FOR LOST SALES, AND/OR
37 DAMAGES FOR INJURY TO PERSON OR PROPERTY). ISOLATEK INTERNATIONAL SHALL
38 NOT BE REPOSNSIBLE FOR ANY DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR RELATED TO THE FAILURE
39 BY THE APPLICATOR, GENERAL CONTRACTOR, PROPERTY OWNER AND/OR USER TO
40 FOLLOW THE DIRECTIONS, SPECIFICATIONS AND/OR RECOMMENDATIONS SET FORTH
41 IN ISOLATEK INTERNATIONAL'S PUBLICATIONS. No agent, employee or representative of
42 ISOLATEK International, its subsidiary or affiliated companies is authorized to modify this
43 statement.
44



1 **SECTION 07 84 13 – PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 6
7 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions
8 and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

9
10 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 11
12 A. This Section includes firestopping for the following:

- 13
14 1. Penetrations through fire-resistance-rated walls and partitions including both empty openings
15 and openings containing cables, pipes, ducts, conduits, and other penetrating items.
16 2. Penetrations through smoke barriers and construction enclosing compartmentalized areas
17 involving both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items.
18 3. Sealant joints in fire-resistance-rated construction.

- 19
20 B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

- 21
22 1. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry" for joint fillers for non-fire-resistive-rated masonry
23 construction.
24 2. Division 7 Section "Building Insulation" for safin insulation and accessories.
25 3. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for non-fire-resistive-rated joint sealants.
26 4. Division 15 Sections specifying ducts and piping penetrations.
27 5. Division 16 Sections specifying cable and conduit penetrations.

28
29 **1.3 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 30
31 A. General: Provide firestopping systems that are produced and installed to resist the spread of fire,
32 according to requirements indicated, and the passage of smoke and other gases.

- 33
34 B. F-Rated Through-Penetration Firestop Systems: Provide through-penetration firestop systems with
35 F ratings indicated, as determined per ASTM E 814, but not less than that equaling or exceeding
36 the fire-resistance rating of the constructions penetrated.

- 37
38 C. T-Rated Through-Penetration Firestop Systems: Provide through-penetration firestop systems with
39 T ratings, in addition to F ratings, as determined per ASTM E 814, where indicated and where
40 systems protect penetrating items exposed to contact with adjacent materials in occupied floor
41 areas. T-rated assemblies are required where the following conditions exist:

- 42
43 1. Where firestop systems protect penetrations located outside of wall cavities.
44 2. Where firestop systems protect penetrations located outside fire-resistive shaft enclosures.
45 3. Where firestop systems protect penetrations located in construction containing doors
46 required to have a temperature-rise rating.
47 4. Where firestop systems protect penetrating items larger than a 4 inch (100 mm) diameter
48 nominal pipe or 16 sq. in. (100 sq. cm) in overall cross-sectional area.

- 49
50 D. Fire-Resistive Joint Sealants: Provide joint sealants with fire-resistance ratings indicated, as
51 determined per ASTM E 119, but not less than that equaling or exceeding the fire-resistance rating
52 of the construction in which the joint occurs.

- 53
54 E. For firestopping exposed to view, traffic, moisture, and physical damage, provide products that do
55 not deteriorate when exposed to these conditions; use only materials which can be painted.

- 56
57 1. For piping penetrations for plumbing and wet-pipe sprinkler systems, provide moisture-
resistant through-penetration firestop systems.



- 1 2. For floor penetrations with annular spaces exceeding 4 inches (100 mm) or more in width
 2 and exposed to possible loading and traffic, provide firestop systems capable of supporting
 3 the floor loads involved either by installing floor plates or by other means.
 4 3. For penetrations involving insulated piping, provide through-penetration firestop systems not
 5 requiring removal of insulation.
 6
 7 F. For firestopping exposed to view, provide products with flame-spread values of less than 25 and
 8 smoke-developed values of less than 450, as determined per ASTM E 84.
 9

10 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 11 A. General: Submit the following according to Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification
 12 Sections.
 13
 14 B. Product data for each type of product specified.
 15
 16 1. Certification by firestopping manufacturer that products supplied comply with local
 17 regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) and are nontoxic to
 18 building occupants.
 19
 20 C. Shop details and drawings detailing materials, installation methods, and relationships to adjoining
 21 construction for each through-penetration firestop system, and each kind of construction condition
 22 penetrated and kind of penetrating item. Include firestop design designation of qualified testing and
 23 inspecting agency evidencing compliance with requirements for each condition indicated.
 24
 25 1. Submit documentation, including illustrations, from a qualified testing and inspecting agency
 26 that is applicable to each through-penetration firestop configuration for construction and
 27 penetrating items.
 28 2. Where Project conditions require modification of qualified testing and inspecting agency's
 29 illustration to suit a particular through-penetration firestop condition, submit illustration
 30 approved by firestopping manufacturer's fire protection engineer with modifications marked.
 31 3. Provide manufacturer's details for each different type and condition of fire stopping thru fire
 32 rated building systems
 33
 34 D. Product certificates signed by manufacturers of firestopping products certifying that their products
 35 comply with specified requirements.
 36
 37 E. Product test reports from, and based on tests performed by, a qualified testing and inspecting
 38 agency evidencing compliance of firestopping with requirements based on comprehensive testing of
 39 current products.
 40
 41 F. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" article to demonstrate their
 42 capabilities and experience. Include list of completed projects with project names, addresses,
 43 names of Architects and Owners, and other information specified.
 44
 45

46 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 47 A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide firestopping that complies with the following
 48 requirements and those specified under the "System Performance Requirements" article:
 49 1. Firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified
 50 testing and inspecting agency is UL, Warnock Hersey, or another agency performing testing
 51 and follow-up inspection services for firestop systems that is acceptable to authorities having
 52 jurisdiction.
 53 2. Through-penetration firestop systems are identical to those tested per ASTM E 814 under
 54 conditions where positive furnace pressure differential of at least 0.01 inch of water (2.5 Pa)
 55 is maintained at a distance of 0.78 inch (20 mm) below the fill materials surrounding the
 56 penetrating items in the test assembly. Provide rated systems complying with the following
 57



requirements:

- a. Through-penetration firestop system products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - b. Through-penetration firestop systems correspond to those indicated by reference to through-penetration firestop system designations listed by UL in their "Fire Resistance Directory," by Warnock Hersey, or by another qualified testing and inspecting agency.
3. Fire-resistive joint sealant systems are identical to those tested for fire-response characteristics per ASTM E 119 under conditions where the positive furnace pressure differential is at least 0.01 inch of water (2.5 Pa), as measured 0.78 inch (20 mm) from the face exposed to furnace fire. Provide systems complying with the following requirements:
- a. Fire-Resistance Ratings of Joint Sealants: As indicated by reference to design designations listed by UL in their "Fire Resistance Directory" or by another qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - b. Joint sealants, including backing materials, bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspection agency.
- B. Information on drawings referring to specific design designations of through-penetration firestop systems is intended to establish requirements for performance based on conditions that are expected to exist during installation. Any changes in conditions and designated systems require the Architect's prior approval. Submit documentation showing that the performance of proposed substitutions equals or exceeds that of the systems they would replace and are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed firestopping that is similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for Project and that has performed successfully.
- D. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who is certified, licensed, or otherwise qualified by the firestopping manufacturer as having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. A manufacturer's willingness to sell its firestopping products to the Contractor or to an Installer engaged by the Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on the buyer.
- E. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain through-penetration firestop systems for each kind of penetration and construction condition indicated from a single manufacturer.
- F. Provide firestopping products containing no detectable asbestos as determined by the method specified in 40 CFR Part 763, Subpart F, Appendix A, Section 1, "Polarized Light Microscopy."
- G. Coordinating Work: Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that designated through-penetration firestop systems are installed per specified requirements.
- H. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**
- A. Deliver firestopping products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer; date of manufacture; lot number; shelf life, if applicable; qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project; curing time; and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
 - B. Store and handle firestopping materials to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.



1
2 **1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**
3

- 4 A. Environmental Conditions: Do not install firestopping when ambient or substrate temperatures are
5 outside limits permitted by firestopping manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost,
6 condensation, or other causes.
7
8 B. Ventilation: Ventilate firestopping per firestopping manufacturers' instructions by natural means or,
9 where this is inadequate, forced air circulation.
10

11 **1.8 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING**
12

- 13 A. Do not cover up those firestopping installations that will become concealed behind other
14 construction until Architect/Engineer has examined each installation.
15

16 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**
17

18 **2.1 FIRESTOPPING, GENERAL**
19

- 20 A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, products by the following
21 manufacturers may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 22 1. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
23 2. Grace Construction Products.
24 3. Hilti, Inc.
25 4. Johns Manville.
26 5. Nelson Firestop Products.
27 6. NUCO Inc.
28 7. Passive Fire Protection Partners.
29 8. RectorSeal Corporation.
30 9. Specified Technologies Inc.
31 10. 3M Fire Protection Products.
32 11. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Fire Protection Systems Group.
33 12. USG Corporation.
34

- 35 B. Compatibility: Provide firestopping composed of components that are compatible with each other,
36 the substrates forming openings, and the items, if any, penetrating the firestopping under conditions
37 of service and application, as demonstrated by firestopping manufacturer based on testing and field
38 experience.
39

- 40 C. Accessories: Provide components for each firestopping system that are needed to install fill
41 materials and to comply with "System Performance Requirements" article in Part 1. Use only
42 components specified by the firestopping manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing and
43 inspecting agency for the designated fire-resistance-rated systems. Accessories include but are not
44 limited to the following items:
45

- 46 1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials including the following:
47
48 a. Semirefractory fiber (mineral wool) insulation.
49 b. Ceramic fiber.
50 c. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming materials to prevent
51 leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
52 d. Fire-rated formboard.
53 e. Joint fillers for joint sealants.
54
55 2. Temporary forming materials.
56 3. Substrate primers.



4. Collars.
5. Steel sleeves.

D. Applications: Provide firestopping systems composed of materials specified in this Section that comply with system performance and other requirements.

2.2 FILL MATERIALS FOR THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEMS

- A. Ceramic-Fiber and Mastic Coating: Ceramic fibers in bulk form formulated for use with mastic coating, and ceramic fiber manufacturer's mastic coating.
- B. Ceramic-Fiber Sealant: Single-component formulation of ceramic fibers and inorganic binders.
- C. Endothermic, Latex Compound Sealant: Single-component, endothermic, latex formulation.
- D. Intumescent, Latex Sealant: Single-component, intumescent, latex formulation.
- E. Intumescent Putty: Nonhardening, dielectric, water-resistant putty containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.
- F. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component, elastomeric sheet with aluminum foil on one side.
- G. Job-Mixed Vinyl Compound: Prepackaged vinyl-based powder product for mixing with water at Project site to produce a paintable compound, passing ASTM E 136, with flame-spread and smoke-developed ratings of zero per ASTM E 84.
- H. Mortar: Prepackaged dry mix composed of a blend of inorganic binders, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogenous mortar.
- I. Pillows/Bags: Re-usable, heat-expanding pillows/bags composed of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents and fire-retardant additives.
- J. Silicone Foam: Two-component, silicone-based liquid elastomer that, when mixed, expands and cures in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- K. Silicone Sealant: Moisture-curing, single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealant of grade indicated below:
 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces and nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces requiring a nonslumping/ gunnable sealant, unless indicated firestop system limits use to nonsag grade for both opening conditions.
 2. Grade for Horizontal Surfaces: Pourable (self-leveling) grade for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces.
 3. Grade for Vertical Surfaces: Nonsag grade for openings in vertical and other surfaces.
- L. Solvent-Release-Curing Intumescent Sealant: Solvent-release-curing, single-component, synthetic-polymer-based sealant of grade indicated below:
 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces and nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces requiring a nonslumping/ gunnable sealant, unless indicated firestop system limits use to nonsag grade for both opening conditions.
 2. Grade for Horizontal Surfaces: Pourable (self-leveling) grade for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces.
 3. Grade for Vertical Surfaces: Non-sag grade for openings in vertical and other surfaces.



1 **2.3 FIRE-RESISTIVE ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS**

- 2
- 3 A. Elastomeric Sealant Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric
- 4 sealants of base polymer indicated that complies with ASTM C 920 requirements, including those
- 5 referenced for Type, Grade, Class, and Uses, and requirements specified in this Section applicable
- 6 to fire-resistive joint sealants.
- 7
- 8 B. Sealant Colors: Provide color of exposed joint sealants to comply with the following:
- 9
- 10 1. Provide custom colors to match Architect's samples.
- 11 2. Match colors indicated by reference to manufacturer's standard designations.
- 12 3. Provide selections made by Architect from manufacturer's full range of standard colors for
- 13 products of type indicated.
- 14
- 15 C. Single-Component, Neutral-Curing Silicone Sealant: Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; exposure-related
- 16 Use NT, and joint-substrate-related Uses M, G, A, and (as applicable to joint substrates indicated)
- 17 O.
- 18
- 19 1. Additional Movement Capability: Provide sealant with the capability to withstand the
- 20 following percentage changes in joint width existing at time of installation, when tested for
- 21 adhesion and cohesion under maximum cyclic movement per ASTM C 719, and remain in
- 22 compliance with other requirements of ASTM C 920 for uses indicated:
- 23
- 24 a. 50 percent movement in both extension and compression for a total of 100 percent
- 25 movement.
- 26 b. 100 percent movement in extension and 50 percent movement in compression for a
- 27 total of 150 percent movement.
- 28
- 29 D. Multi-component, Non-sag, Urethane Sealant: Type M; Grade NS; Class 25; exposure-related Use
- 30 NT, and joint-substrate-related Uses M, A, and (as applicable to joint substrates indicated) O.
- 31
- 32 1. Additional Movement Capability: Provide sealant with the capability to withstand the following
- 33 percentage change in joint width existing at time of installation, when tested for adhesion and
- 34 cohesion under maximum cyclic movement per ASTM C 719, and remain in compliance with
- 35 other requirements of ASTM C 920 for uses indicated:
- 36
- 37 a. 40 percent movement in extension and 25 percent in compression for a total of 65
- 38 percent movement.
- 39 b. 50 percent movement in both extension and compression for a total of 100 percent
- 40 movement.
- 41
- 42 E. Single-Component, Non-sag, Urethane Sealant: Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; and Uses NT, M, A,
- 43 and (as applicable to joint substrates indicated) O.
- 44

45 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

46 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 47
- 48 A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for
- 49 opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of
- 50 firestopping. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 51

52 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 53
- 54 A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings and joints immediately prior to installing firestopping to
- 55 comply with recommendations of firestopping manufacturer and the following requirements:
- 56
- 57



- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
1. Remove all foreign materials from surfaces of opening and joint substrates and from penetrating items that could interfere with adhesion of firestopping.
2. Clean opening and joint substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with firestopping. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
3. Remove laitance and form release agents from concrete.

9 B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended by firestopping manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

10 C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent firestopping from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed upon completion of Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove smears from firestopping materials. Remove tape as soon as it is possible to do so without disturbing firestopping's seal with substrates.

19 3.3 INSTALLING THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOPS

20 A. General: Comply with the "System Performance Requirements" article in Part 1 and the through-penetration firestop manufacturer's installation instructions and drawings pertaining to products and applications indicated.

21 B. Install forming/damming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce the cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings of designated through-penetration firestop systems. After installing fill materials, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestop systems.

22 C. Install fill materials for through-penetration firestop systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:

- 23
- 24
- 25
- 26
- 27
- 28
- 29
- 30
- 31
- 32
- 33
- 34
- 35
- 36
- 37
- 38
- 39
1. Completely fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items.
2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

40 3.4 INSTALLING FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SEALANTS

41 A. General: Comply with the "System Performance Requirements" article in Part 1, with ASTM C 42 1193, and with the sealant manufacturer's installation instructions and drawings pertaining to products and applications indicated.

43 B. Install joint fillers to provide support of sealants during application and at position required to produce the cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability and develop fire-resistance rating required.

44 C. Install sealants by proven techniques that result in sealants directly contacting and fully wetting joint substrates, completely filling recesses provided for each joint configuration, and providing uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint width that optimum sealant movement capability. Install sealants at the same time joint fillers are installed.

45 D. Tool non-sag sealants immediately after sealant application and prior to the time skinning or curing begins. Form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated or required to produce fire-



1 resistance rating, as well as to eliminate air pockets, and to ensure contact and adhesion of
2 sealants with sides of joint. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joint. Do not use
3 tooling agents that discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces or are not approved by sealant
4 manufacturer.
5

6 **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**
7

- 8 A. Where deficiencies are found, repair or replace firestopping so that it complies with requirements.
9

10 **3.6 CLEANING**
11

- 12 A. Clean off excess fill materials and sealants adjacent to openings and joints as work progresses by
13 methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of firestopping products and of
14 products in which opening and joints occur.
15

- 16 B. Protect firestopping during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances or
17 from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so that they are without
18 deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or
19 deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated firestopping immediately and
20 install new materials to produce firestopping complying with specified requirements.
21

22 **END OF SECTION 07 84 13**



1 **SECTION 07 90 10 - EXTERIOR JOINT SEALANTS**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 6
7 A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions
8 and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
9

10 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 11 A. This Section includes joint sealants for the following locations:
- 12 1. Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and non-traffic horizontal surfaces as indicated below:
 - 13 a. Joints between different materials.
 - 14 b. Perimeter joints between finishes and frames of doors and windows.
 - 15 c. Other joints as indicated.
 - 16 2. Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal non-traffic surfaces as indicated below:
 - 17 a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - 18 b. Perimeter joints of exterior openings where indicated.
 - 19 c. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors and
20 windows.
 - 21 d. Perimeter joints of toilet fixtures.
 - 22 e. Other joints as indicated.
- 23 B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
- 24 1. Division 7 Section "Flashing and Sheet Metal" for sealing joints related to flashing and
25 sheet metal for roofing.
 - 26 2. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Drywall" for sealing concealed perimeter joints of gypsum
27 board partitions to reduce sound transmission.
28

29 **1.3 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 30 A. Provide elastomeric joint sealants that have been produced and installed to establish and to
31 maintain watertight and airtight continuous seals without causing staining or deterioration of joint
32 substrates.
33

34 **1.4 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS**

- 35 A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1
36 Specification Sections.
37
- 38 B. Product data from manufacturers for each joint sealant product required.
39
- 40 1. Certification by joint sealant manufacturer that sealants plus the primers and cleaners
41 required for sealant installation comply with local regulations controlling use of volatile
42 organic compounds.
43
- 44 C. Certificates from manufacturers of joint sealants attesting that their products comply with
45 specification requirements and are suitable for the use indicated.
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55



- 1 D. Compatibility and adhesion test reports from elastomeric sealant manufacturer indicating that
 2 materials forming joint substrates and joint sealant backings have been tested for compatibility
 3 and adhesion with joint sealants. Include sealant manufacturer's interpretation of test results
 4 relative to sealant performance and recommendations for primers and substrate preparation
 5 needed to obtain adhesion.
 6
 7 E. Product test reports for each type of joint sealants indicated, evidencing compliance with
 8 requirements specified.
 9
 10 F. Preconstruction field test reports indicating which products and joint preparation methods
 11 demonstrate acceptable adhesion to joint substrates.
 12
 13 G. Warrant sealed joints against adhesive or cohesive failure of sealant and water-tightness of
 14 sealed joint for a period of five (5) years for labor and material. Provide material warranty of five
 15 (5) years for polyurethane and 10 years for silicone. Submit copies of warranty.

17 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- 18
 19 A. Samples for selection purposes in form of custom colors, consisting of strips of actual products
 20 showing full range of colors available, for each product exposed to view.
 21
 22 B. Submit sealant schedule indicating type of sealant and application location for each building
 23 component.
 24

25 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- 26
 27 A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed joint sealant
 28 applications similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for Project that have resulted
 29 in construction with a record of successful in-service performance for ten years.
 30
 31 1. Applicator and foreman shall have minimum five years experience on equivalent projects.
 32 2. Use personnel specifically trained in proper application procedures who are thoroughly
 33 familiar with joint details indicated and installation requirements as herein specified.
 34
 35 B. Single Source Responsibility for Joint Sealant Materials: Obtain joint sealant materials from a
 36 single manufacturer for each different product required, of highest quality material.
 37
 38 C. Product Testing: Provide comprehensive test data for each type of joint sealant based on tests
 39 conducted by a qualified independent testing laboratory on current product formulations within a
 40 24-month period preceding date of Contractor's submittal of test results to Architect.
 41
 42 1. Test elastomeric sealants for compliance with requirements specified by reference to
 43 ASTM C 920. Include test results for hardness, stain resistance, adhesion and cohesion
 44 under cyclic movement (per ASTM C 719), low-temperature flexibility, modulus of
 45 elasticity at 100 percent strain, effects of heat aging, and effects of accelerated
 46 weathering.
 47 2. Test for Adhesion: Perform test in accordance with ASTM C 719.
 48 3. Test for Bleed Out: Perform the test in accordance with ASTM C 510.
 49 4. Sealant installer shall perform sealant pull tests of in-place finished sealant products in
 50 presence of Architect at various locations and conditions selected by Architect.
 51
 52 D. Compatibility with Substrate and Coatings: Applicator shall be responsible for verifying with
 53 sealant manufacturer that sealants used are compatible with joint substrates and coatings to
 54 which sealants will come in contact.
 55
 56 E. Joint Design Criteria: Applicator shall be responsible for verifying with sealant manufacturer that
 57 installed joint dimensions are adequate for movement capabilities for extreme and significant



1 moving joint sealants.

2
3 F. Applicator shall be responsible for providing a completely sealed building and ensure that all
4 exterior joints between surfaces are properly sealed.

5
6 G. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of
7 the Division 1 Section covering this activity.

8
9 H. Architect, Contractor and Sealant Subcontractor shall witness

10
11 **1.7 MOCKUPS**

12
13 A. Fabricate sample full sized joints at site illustrating precast panels, brick and window framing,
14 glazing and sealants. Show all finishes and shapes in accordance with accepted sample.
15 Coordinate with other trades. In Architect's presence, perform a pull test of each type of
16 sealant on mockup; after acceptance replace removed sealant.

17
18 **1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

19
20 A. Deliver materials to Project site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating
21 manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration period for use, pot life, curing
22 time, and mixing instructions for multi-component materials.

23
24 B. Store and handle materials in compliance with manufacturer's recommendations to prevent their
25 deterioration or damage due to moisture, high or low temperatures, contaminants, or other
26 causes.

27
28 **1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

29
30 A. Environmental Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following
31 conditions:

- 32
33 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside the limits permitted by
34 joint sealant manufacturer.
35 2. When joint substrates are wet.

36
37 B. Joint Width Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants where joint widths are
38 less than allowed by joint sealant manufacturer for application indicated.

39
40 C. Joint Substrate Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants until contaminants
41 capable of interfering with their adhesion are removed from joint substrates.

42
43 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

44
45 **2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL**

46
47 A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, joint fillers, and other related materials that are compatible
48 with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as
49 demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

50
51 B. Colors: Provide color of exposed joint sealants to comply with the following:

- 52 1. Provide selections made by Architect from manufacturer's full range of standard colors for
53 products of type indicated. Provide custom color for sealant specified at exposed brick
54 expansion joints (match brick color) and exposed to view precast concrete panel joints
55 (match color of precast concrete) and at perimeter of windows and doors.



1 C. Products:

- 2 1. Type 1: ASTM C 920; low modulus, one component, non-sag, neutral cure silicone.
- 3 a. Elongation Capability: Plus 100% to minus 50%.
- 4 b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to 160 degrees F.
- 5 c. Shore A Hardness Range: 15-20; ASTM D 2240.
- 6 d. Manufacturer:
- 7 1) Dow Corning Corp. 790.
- 8
- 9 2. Type 2: ASTM C 920; medium modulus, one component, non-sag, neutral cure silicone.
- 10 a. Elongation Capability: Plus, or minus 50%.
- 11 b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to 120 degrees F.
- 12 c. Shore A Hardness Range: 25-30; ASTM D 2240.
- 13 d. Manufacturers:
- 14 1) Dow Corning Corp. 795.
- 15 2) General Electric Co. GE Silicones Silpruf 2000.
- 16 3) Rhone-Poulenc Inc., Rhodorsil 5C.
- 17
- 18 3. Type 3: ASTM C 90; medium modulus, one component, non-sag, polyurethane or
- 19 silicone.
- 20 a. Elongation Capability: Plus, or minus 25%.
- 21 b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to 120 degrees F.
- 22 c. Shore A Hardness Range: 25-40; ASTM D 2240.
- 23 d. Manufacturers (Silicone):
- 24 1) Dow Corning Corp. 791.
- 25 2) Rhone-Poulenc, Inc. Rhodorsil 3B.
- 26 e. Manufacturers: (Polyurethane)
- 27 1) Tremco, Vulkem 116.
- 28 2) Sika Corporation, Sikaflex 1a.
- 29
- 30 4. Type 4: ASTM C 920; high modulus, one component, non-sag, neutral cure silicone.
- 31 a. Elongation Capability: Plus or minus 50%.
- 32 b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 15 to 140 degrees F.
- 33 c. Shore A Hardness Range: 30-40; ASTM D 2240.
- 34 d. Manufacturers:
- 35 1) Dow Corning Corp. 995.
- 36 2) General Electric Co. GE Ultraglaze.
- 37 3) Rhone-Poulenc, Inc., Rhodorsil 90.
- 38
- 39 5. Type 5: N/A
- 40
- 41 6. Type 6: Single part Polyurethane
- 42 a. Manufacturers:
- 43 1) Sikaflex 1A
- 44 2) Sikaflex LM,
- 45 3) Tremco Dynamic FC
- 46 4) Masterseal NP1
- 47

48 **2.2 ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS**

- 49
- 50 A. Elastomeric Sealant Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard chemically curing elastomeric
- 51 sealants that comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements herein indicated.
- 52

53 **2.3 JOINT SEALANT BACKING**

- 54
- 55 A. General: Provide sealant backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible
- 56 with joint substrates, sealants, primers and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications
- 57 indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
- B. Plastic Foam Joint Fillers: Preformed, compressible, resilient, non-staining, non-waxing, non-extruding strips of flexible plastic foam of material indicated below and of size, shape, and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance:
 - 1. Closed-cell polyethylene foam, nonabsorbent to liquid water and gas, non-outgassing in un-ruptured state.
 - 2.. Manufacturers: (Open-Cell)
 - a. Denver Foam
 - b. ITP
 - 3. Manufacturers: (Reticulated Closed-Cell)
 - a. Applied Extrusion Technologies
 - b. SofRod
 - C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape as recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.
 - 1. Manufacturer: Electro Tape

24 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- 25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
 - B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming in any way joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants with joint substrates.
 - C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

38 PART 3 - EXECUTION

39 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint sealant performance. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - B. Verify joint dimensions are within manufacturer's acceptable tolerances.

49 3.2 PREPARATION

- 50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with recommendations of joint sealant manufacturer and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.



2. Clean concrete, masonry, unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile, and similar porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining from above cleaning operations by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air.
3. Remove laitance and form release agents from concrete.
4. Clean metal, glass, porcelain enamel, glazed surfaces of ceramic tile, and other nonporous surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended by joint sealant manufacturer based on preconstruction joint sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint sealant manufacturer's recommendations. Confine primers to areas of joint sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

A. General: Comply with joint sealant manufacturer's printed installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated, except where more stringent requirements apply.

1. Backer rods shall be sized to properly fit in the joint for their full length, not just sized to hold the backer rod in the joint at certain locations.

B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations of ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

C. Installation of Sealant Backings: Install sealant backings to comply with the following requirements:

1. Install joint fillers of type indicated to provide support of sealants during application and at position required to produce the cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

- a. Do not leave gaps between ends of joint fillers.
- b. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear joint fillers.
- c. Remove absorbent joint fillers that have become wet prior to sealant application and replace with dry material.

2. **Install bond breaker tape between sealants where backer rods are not used between sealants and joint fillers or back of joints to prevent 3-sided sealant adhesion.**

D. Installation of Sealants: Install sealants by proven techniques that result in sealants directly contacting and fully wetting joint substrates, completely filling recesses provided for each joint configuration, and providing uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability. Install sealants at the same time sealant backings are installed.

E. Tooling of Non-sag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and prior to time skinning or curing begins, tool sealants to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated, to eliminate air pockets, and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint. Remove excess sealants from surfaces adjacent to joint. Do not use tooling agents that



discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces or are not approved by sealant manufacturer.

1. Provide concave joint configuration per Figure 5A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.

a. Use masking tape to protect adjacent surfaces of recessed tooled joints.

F. Do not install sealants on surfaces which are cooler or hotter than that recommended by manufacturer.

G. Bent plates or other structural steel components penetrating CMU, install sealant in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Sealant shall be installed prior to the application of bituminous dampproofing and shall be allowed to fully cure prior to the application of dampproofing.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealants or sealant smears adjacent to joints as work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances or from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so that they are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so that and installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.6 SCHEDULE

EXTERIOR JOINT SCHEDULE

<u>Sealant Joint Type</u>	<u>Exterior Joint Type</u>
1	Concrete to concrete joints.
1	EIFS to EIFS (verify with EIFS manufacturer) (Not Used)
1	Fiber Cement Soffit (verify with FCS manufacturer) (Not Used)
1	Masonry to masonry joints.
1	Precast coping joints.
2	Perimeter joints at steel door bucks in contact with concrete.
2	Glazing sealants - nonstructural.
2	Perimeter joints at window or door sections in contact with masonry and concrete.
6	Bent plates or other structural steel components penetrating CMU



1 **NOTE: Exterior sealants required to pass ANSI/AMCA 550 High Velocity Wind Driven Rain**

2
3 Submit other necessary joint conditions to Architect for approval.

4
5
6 **END OF SECTION 07 90 10**



1 **SECTION 07 90 20 - INTERIOR JOINT CAULKING**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 6
7 A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and
8 Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

9
10 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 11
12 A. This Section includes interior joint caulking for the following locations:
- 13
14 1. Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal non-traffic surfaces as indicated below:
- 15
16 a. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors and
17 windows.
- 18 b. Perimeter joints of toilet fixtures, joints in walls in toilet or bath areas.
- 19 c. Other joints as indicated.
- 20
21 B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
- 22
23 1. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Drywall" for sealing concealed perimeter joints of gypsum board
24 partitions to reduce sound transmission.

25
26 **1.3 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS**

- 27
28 A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1
29 Specification Sections.
- 30
31 B. Product data from manufacturers for each interior joint caulking product required.
- 32
33 1. Certification by interior joint caulking manufacturer, that caulking, plus the primers and
34 cleaners required for installation comply with local regulations controlling use of volatile
35 organic compounds.
- 36
37 C. Certificates from manufacturers of caulking attesting that their products comply with specification
38 requirements and are suitable for the use indicated.
- 39
40 D. Compatibility and adhesion test reports from manufacturer indicating that materials forming joint
41 substrates and joint caulking backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with
42 caulking. Include caulking manufacturer's interpretation of test results relative to performance and
43 recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed to obtain adhesion.
- 44
45 E. Product test reports for each type of caulking indicated, evidencing compliance with requirements
46 specified.
- 47
48 F. Preconstruction field test reports indicating which products and joint preparation methods
49 demonstrate acceptable adhesion to joint substrates.

50
51 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 52
53 A. Samples for initial selection purposes in form of manufacturer's standard bead samples, consisting
54 of strips of actual products showing full range of colors available, for each product exposed to view.
- 55
56 B. Submit caulking schedule indicating type of sealant and application location for each building
57 component.
- 58
59



1 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 2
- 3 A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed caulking applications
- 4 similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for Project that have resulted in construction
- 5 with a record of successful in-service performance.
- 6
- 7 B. Single Source Responsibility for Joint Caulking Materials: Obtain joint caulking materials from a
- 8 single manufacturer for each different product required, of the highest quality material.
- 9
- 10 C. Product Testing: Provide comprehensive test data for each type of joint caulking based on tests
- 11 conducted by a qualified independent testing laboratory on current product formulations within a 24-
- 12 month period preceding date of Contractor's submittal of test results to Architect.
- 13
- 14 D. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of the
- 15 Division 1 Section covering this activity.
- 16
- 17 E. Sealant installer shall perform sealant pull tests of in-place sealant products in presence of Architect
- 18 at various locations and conditions selected by Architect.

19

20 **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 21
- 22 A. Deliver materials to Project site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating
- 23 manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration period for use, pot life, curing time,
- 24 and mixing instructions for multi-component materials.
- 25
- 26 B. Store and handle materials in compliance with manufacturer's recommendations to prevent their
- 27 deterioration or damage due to moisture, high or low temperatures, contaminants, or other causes.

28

29 **1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 30
- 31 A. Environmental Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint caulking under the following
- 32 conditions:
- 33
- 34 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside the limits permitted by joint
- 35 caulking manufacturer.
- 36 2. When joint substrates are wet.
- 37
- 38 B. Joint Width Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint caulking where joint widths are less
- 39 than allowed by joint caulking manufacturer for application indicated.
- 40
- 41 C. Joint Substrate Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint caulking until contaminants
- 42 capable of interfering with their adhesion are removed from joint substrates.

43

44 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

45

46 **2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL**

- 47
- 48 A. Compatibility: Provide joint caulking, joint fillers, and other related materials that are compatible with
- 49 one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated
- 50 by caulking manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- 51
- 52 B. Colors: Provide color of exposed joint caulking to comply with the following:
- 53 1. Provide selections made by Architect from manufacturer's full range of standard colors for
- 54 products of type indicated and/or provide paintable materials.
- 55
- 56 C. Products:
- 57 1. Type 1: One component non-sag acrylic latex; ASTM C736 and ASTM C834.
- 58 a. Maximum Joint Movement: Plus or minus 7.5 percent.
- 59 b. Minimum Recovery: 90 %.



- 1 c. Manufacturers: **Basis of Design: Pecora Corp. AC-20**; Tremco, Inc. 834.
- 2
- 3 2. Type 2: One component, non-sag, mildew resistant silicone; ASTM C920.
- 4 a. Shore A Hardness: 25-30.
- 5 b. Maximum Joint Movement: Plus or minus 25 %.
- 6 c. Manufacturers: **Basis of Design: Down Corning Corp. 786**; General Electric Co.,
- 7 GE Silicones Sanitary 1700; Rhone-Poulenc, Inc. Rhodorsil 6B.
- 8 3. Type 3: One component butyl rubber, FS TT-S-1657, Type I.
- 9 a. Maximum Joint Movement: Plus or minus 5%.
- 10 b. Manufacturers: **Basis of Design: Pecora Corp. BC-158 Butyl Rubber Sealant**;
- 11 Tremco Inc. Butyl Sealant.
- 12 4. Type 4: One component butyl rubber, nondrying, nonharding, nonpaintable; ASTM C919.
- 13 a. Manufacturers: **Basis of Design: Pecora Corp. Acoustical Sealant BA-98**; Tremco
- 14 Inc. Acoustical Sealant.

16 2.2 JOINT CAULKING BACKING

- 17
- 18 A. General: Provide caulking backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible with
- 19 joint substrates, caulking, primers and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications
- 20 indicated by caulking manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- 21
- 22 B. Plastic Foam Joint Fillers: Preformed, compressible, resilient, non-staining, non-waxing, non-
- 23 extruding strips of flexible plastic foam of material indicated below and of size, shape, and density
- 24 to control caulking depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum performance:
- 25
- 26 1. Open-cell polyurethane foam.
- 27 2. Closed-cell polyethylene foam, nonabsorbent to liquid water and gas, non-outgassing in un-
- 28 ruptured state.
- 29 3. Any material indicated above.
- 30
- 31 C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape as recommended by caulking
- 32 manufacturer for preventing caulking from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint filler materials or joint
- 33 surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in caulking failure. Provide self-
- 34 adhesive tape where applicable.

36 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- 37
- 38 A. Primer: Material recommended by joint caulking manufacturer where required for adhesion of
- 39 caulking to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint caulking -substrate
- 40 tests and field tests.
- 41
- 42 B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of caulking and
- 43 backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming in any
- 44 way joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces, and formulated to promote optimum
- 45 adhesion of caulking with joint substrates.
- 46
- 47 C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint caulking and surfaces
- 48 adjacent to joints.

50 PART 3 - EXECUTION

52 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 53
- 54 A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint caulking with Installer present, for compliance with
- 55 requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting caulking
- 56 performance. Do not proceed with installation of joint caulking until unsatisfactory conditions have
- 57 been corrected.
- 58



1 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 2
- 3 A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint caulking to comply
- 4 with recommendations of joint caulking manufacturer and the following requirements:
- 5
- 6 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion, including
- 7 dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for adhesion
- 8 and compatibility by caulking manufacturer), oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents,
- 9 water, surface dirt, and frost.
- 10 2. Clean concrete, masonry, unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile, and similar porous joint
- 11 substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a
- 12 combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing
- 13 optimum bond with joint caulking. Remove loose particles remaining from above cleaning
- 14 operations by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air.
- 15 3. Remove laitance and form release agents from concrete.
- 16 4. Clean metal, glass, porcelain enamel, glazed surfaces of ceramic tile, and other nonporous
- 17 surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave
- 18 residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint caulking.
- 19
- 20 B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by caulking manufacturer.
- 21
- 22 C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of caulking with adjoining
- 23 surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning
- 24 methods required to remove caulking smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without
- 25 disturbing joint seal.

26

27 **3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT CAULKING**

- 28
- 29 A. General: Comply with joint CAULKING manufacturer's printed installation instructions applicable to
- 30 products and applications indicated, except where more stringent requirements apply.
- 31
- 32 B. Caulking Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations of ASTM C 1193 for use of joint
- 33 caulking as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- 34
- 35 C. Acoustical Caulking Application Standard: Comply with recommendations of ASTM C 919 for use
- 36 of joint caulking in acoustical applications as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions
- 37 indicated.
- 38
- 39 D. Installation of Caulking Backings: Install backings to comply with the following requirements:
- 40
- 41 1. Install joint fillers of type indicated to provide support of caulking during application and at
- 42 position required to produce the cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed caulking
- 43 relative to joint widths that allow optimum movement capability.
- 44
- 45 a. Do not leave gaps between ends of joint fillers.
- 46 b. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear joint fillers.
- 47 c. Remove absorbent joint fillers that have become wet prior to caulking application and
- 48 replace with dry material.
- 49
- 50 2. Install bond breaker tape between caulking where backer rods are not used between
- 51 caulkings and joint fillers or back of joints.
- 52
- 53 E. Installation of Caulking: Install as recommended by manufacturer using standard hand guns or
- 54 mechanical guns. Install caulking by proven techniques that result in caulking directly contacting
- 55 and fully wetting joint substrates, completely filling recesses provided for each joint configuration,
- 56 and providing uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum
- 57 movement capability. Install caulking at the same time backings are installed.
- 58
- 59 F. Finished bead shall be smooth, free from wrinkling, air pockets and foreign matter.



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess caulking or caulking smears adjacent to joints as work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of joint caulking and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint caulking during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances or from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so that they are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint caulking immediately so that and installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.6 SCHEDULE

INTERIOR JOINT CAULKING SCHEDULE

<u>Caulking Joint Type</u>	<u>Interior Joint Type</u>
1	Joints between door frames and wall.
1	Joints between window frames and wall.
1	Joints between casework and wall.
2	Wall joints in Toilet, Kitchen and Bath areas.
2	Joint between toilet fixtures and wall.
3	Exposed acoustical joints.
4	Non-Exposed acoustical joints.

END OF SECTION 07 90 20



**SECTION 08 11 13
HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Work under this section comprises of furnishing hollow metal doors and frames, including transom frames, sidelight, and window frames with provision for glazed, paneled or louvered openings, fire labeled and non-labeled, as scheduled.
1. Flush Steel Doors.
 2. Temperature Rise Doors.
 3. Embossed Panel Doors.
 4. Full Glass Entrance Doors.
 5. Hurricane Doors.
 6. Steel frames.
 7. Hollow Metal Framing Systems.
- B. Related Sections: Related documents, drawings, and general provisions of contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 specification sections apply to this section. The latest published edition of each reference applies.
1. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry
 2. Section 08 14 00 - Wood Doors
 3. Section 08 71 00 - Door Hardware
 4. Section 08 80 00 - Glazing
 5. Section 09 90 00 - Painting and Coating
- C. References: The intent of this document is that all hollow metal and its application will comply or exceed the standards identified below. The latest published edition of each reference applies.
1. ANSI - American National Standards Institute - ansi.org
 2. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association
 - a. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
 - b. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code
 - c. NFPA 105 – Standard Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives
 - d. NFPA 252 - Standard Method of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 3. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute – Door Security + Safety Professionals
 - a. Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware.
 - b. Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
 - c. Recommended Locations for Builders' Hardware for Custom Steel Doors and Frames.
 4. SDI - Steel Door Institute
 - a. SDI-105 – Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames
 - b. SDI-107 – Hardware on Steel Doors (Reinforcement - Application)
 - c. SDI-111 - Recommended Details for Standard Steel Doors, Frames, Accessories, and Related Components
 - d. SDI-117 - Manufacturing Tolerances Standard Steel Doors and Frames
 - e. SDI-118 – Basic Fire Door Requirements
 - f. SDI A250.3 Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Factory Applied Finish Coatings for Steel Doors and Frames
 - g. SDI A250.4 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Physical Endurance for Steel Doors, Frames, and Frame Anchors
 - h. SDI A250.6 - Recommended Practice for Hardware Reinforcing on Standard Steel



- Doors and Frames
- i. SDI A250.8 - SDI-100 Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames
 - j. SDI A250.10 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces for Steel Doors and Frames
 - k. SDI A250.11 - Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames
 - l. SDI A250.13 Testing and Rating of Severe Windstorm Resistant Components for Swinging Door Assemblies
5. BHMA - Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association
 - a. BHMA A156.115 - Hardware Preparations in Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
 - b. BHMA A156.7 - Hinge Template Dimensions.
 6. ASTM - American Society for Testing Materials
 - a. ASTM A568/A568M-19a Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Carbon, Structural, and High-Strength, Low-Alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled, General Requirements
 - b. ASTM A879/A879M-12(2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated by the Electrolytic Process for Applications Requiring Designation of the Coating Mass on Each Surface
 - c. ASTM A653/A653M-19a Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
 - d. ASTM A924/A924M-19 Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
 - e. ASTM A1008/A1008M-18 Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable
 7. ICC - International Code Counsel
 - a. ICC A117.1 – Accessible and Usable Building and Facilities.
 - b. ICC 500 Standard for the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters
 8. UL - Building Materials Directory; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.
 - a. UL 10B - Standard for Neutral Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
 - b. UL 10C - Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
 - c. UL 1784 – Air Leakage Test of Door Assemblies
 9. NAAMM/HMMA – National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers/Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association
 - a. NAAMM/HMMA 840 – Guide Specification for Receipt, Storage, and Installation of Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
 10. WH - Certification Listings; Warnock Hersey International Inc.
 11. Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) 361 Guidelines, ICC500 - 2014
 12. Florida Building Code test protocols TAS 201, TAS 202 and TAS 203.

1.2 SUBSTITUTIONS:

- A. All substitution requests must be submitted within the procedures and time frame as outlined in Division 1, General Requirements. Approval of products is at the discretion of the architect and their consultant

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals to comply with provisions of Division 01, Submittal Procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's standard details and catalog data indicating compliance with referenced standards and manufacturer's installation instructions.
- C. Shop Drawings: Provide a schedule of doors and frames using same reference numbers for details



and door openings as those on the contract documents. Shop drawings should include the following information to ensure doors and frames are properly prepared and coordinated to receive hardware.

1. Elevations of each door and frame type.
2. Details for door core.
3. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
4. Locations of cutouts for glass and louvers.
5. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
6. Mounting locations for hardware.
7. Thickness of reinforcement/preparations for hardware.
8. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
9. Details of accessories.
10. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
11. Fire ratings.
12. Finish.

- D. Closeout Submittals to comply with Division 1, Closeout Submittals procedures.
- E. Furnish copies of manufacturer's warranty information and maintenance instructions.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Hollow Metal Distributor is to be a direct account of the manufacturer of the products furnished. In addition, that distributor must have in their regular employment an Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC), Certified Door Consultant (CDC), an Architectural Openings Consultant (AOC), a Door & Hardware Consultant (DHC) or equivalent door and hardware industry experience who will be available to consult with the Architect and Contractor regarding any matters affecting the door and frame opening.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Certified Member of the Steel Door Institute in good standing.
- C. Installer: Minimum five years documented experience installing products specified this Section.
- D. Certificates:
 1. Manufacturer's certification that products comply with referenced standards.
 2. Hollow Metal Manufacturer must provide documentation that they are an SDI Certified Manufacturer.
- E. Fire Rated Doors and Frames: Underwriters' Laboratories, Intertek Testing Services/Warnock Hersey, and Factory Mutual labeled fire doors and frames:
 1. Provide labeled fire doors and frames in accordance with Underwriters Laboratories standard UL10C Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 2. Construct and install doors and frames to comply with current issue of NFPA 80.
 3. Manufacture Underwriters' Laboratories labeled doors and frames in strict compliance to UL procedures, and provide the degree of fire protection, heat transmission and panic loading capability indicated by the opening class.
 4. Manufacture Intertek Testing Services /Warnock Hersey labeled doors and frames in strict compliance to ITS/WH procedures and provide the degree of fire protection capability indicated by the opening class.
 5. Manufacture Factory Mutual labeled doors and frames in strict compliance to FM procedures, and provide the degree of fire protection, heat transmission and panic loading capability indicated by the opening class.
 6. Affix a physical label or approved marking to each fire door and/or fire door frame, at an authorized facility as evidence of compliance with procedures of the labeling agency.
 7. Conform to applicable codes for fire ratings. It is the intent of this specification that doors, frames, hardware, and their application comply or exceed the standards for labeled openings. In case of conflict between types required for fire protection, furnish type required by NFPA and UL.
 8. Provide Temperature Rise Fire Door Assemblies in exit enclosures and exit passageway with maximum transmitted temperature end point rating of not more than 250 degrees F (121



- degrees C) above ambient at the end of 30 minutes of the standard fire test exposure.
9. For openings required to be fire rated exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies, submit manufacturer's certification that each door and frame assembly has been constructed to conform to design, materials, and construction equivalent to requirements for labeled construction.

F. Hurricane Doors: Provide door systems complying with -

1. Florida Building Code (FBC) Approval System requirements of and Florida Building Code test protocols TAS 201, TAS 202 and TAS 203.
2. Provide test report data validating compliance.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packing and Shipping

1. The use of non-vented plastic or canvas shelters that can create a humidity chamber shall be avoided to prevent rust or damage.
2. Provide cardboard wrapped or crated product to provide protection during transit and job site storage
3. Should wrappers become wet, remove immediately

B. Delivery and Site Acceptance

1. The supplier shall deliver all materials to the project site; direct factory shipments are not allowed unless agreed upon beforehand. Supplier shall coordinate delivery times and schedules with the contractor.
2. Deliver doors cardboard wrapped or crated to provide protection during transit and job site storage. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to any factory-finished doors. Mark all doors and frames with architects opening numbers as shown on the contract documents and shop drawings on the center hinge preparation location.
3. Upon delivery, check in doors and frames jointly with supplier. Inspect doors and frames upon delivery for damage, correct quantities, or shortages. Minor damages may be repaired provided refinished items are equal in all respects to new work and acceptable to the architect. Otherwise, remove and replace damaged goods as directed. Note shortages and replace immediately.

C. Storage and Protection

1. Handle, store and protect products in accordance with the manufacturers printed instructions, ANSI/SDI A250.8 – Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames, A250.10 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces for Steel Doors and Frames, or ANSI/SDI A250.3 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Factory Applied Finish Coatings for Steel Doors and Frames and NAAMM/HMMA 840 – Guide Specification for Receipt, Storage, and Installation of Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
2. Store all materials in a dry area. All hollow metal material shall be stored so that it does not come in contact with water or moisture. Protect units from adverse weather elements.
3. Place units on 4 inch (102 mm) high wood sills to prevent rust and damage.
4. Store doors vertically under a properly vented cover, five units maximum in a stack with a ¼" space between doors to permit air circulation.
5. Store frames in an upright position with heads uppermost under cover.
6. Store assembled frames five units maximum in a stack with 2-inch (51 mm) space between frames to permit air circulation.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Work with other directly affected sections involving manufacture or fabrication of internal cutouts and reinforcement for door hardware, electric devices and recessed items.
- B. Coordinate Work with frame opening construction, door and hardware installation.



- C. Sequence installation to accommodate required door hardware.
- D. Verify field dimensions for factory assembled frames prior to fabrication.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Comply with Division 01 Closeout Submittals
- B. All doors and frames shall be warranted in writing by the manufacturer against defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one (1) year commencing on the date of manufacture.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design - MESKER a dormakaba Brand, Web: <http://meskerdoor.com>
 - 1. Acceptable Manufacturer - Curries an ASSA Abloy Company
 - 2. Acceptable Manufacturer - Steelcraft an Allegion Company
- B. Provide all steel doors and frames from a single SDI certified manufacturer.

2.2 GENERAL

- A. Physical performance: Units shall comply with the 1 million cycles swing test requirement per ANSI A250.4 - Level A.
- B. Finishing:
 - 1. Prime Gray to meet SDI A250.10

2.3 DOORS

- A. General: Construct exterior/interior doors to the following designs and gauges:
 - 1. Exterior Doors: Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated galvanized steel (A40) (A60) or Zinc-Coated Galvanized steel (G90) that conforms to ASTM A653/A653M:
 - a. Thickness:
 - 1) 16 gauge
 - b. Provide flush top/closed top channel for exterior swing-out doors to eliminate moisture penetration. Galvanized steel top caps are permitted.
 - 2. Interior Doors: Cold-rolled steel, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M:
 - a. Thickness:
 - 1) 18 gauge
 - 3. Door Thickness: 1-3/4 inches
 - 4. Vertical edge seams: Provide doors with continuous vertical mechanical inter-locking joints at lock and hinge edges. Finish edges as follows:
 - a. Visible Interlocked Edge: Continuous vertical mechanical interlocking joints with visible edge seams.
 - 5. Bevel hinge and lock door edges 1/8 inch (3 mm) in 2 inches (50 mm). Square edges on hinge and/or lock stiles are acceptable.
 - 6. Reinforce top and bottom of doors with galvanized 16 gauge minimum, welded to both panels.
 - 7. Fire Rating: Supply door units bearing Labels for fire ratings indicated in Door Schedule for the locations indicated.
 - 8. Core Adhesion System – Basis of design - Moisture Cure Polyurethane Hot Melt:
 - a. Adhesives are to cure completely, meaning once set, they cannot be re-melted and will not soften or freeze and lose adhesion.
 - b. Adhesive system will have an enhanced resistance to flame spread in its cured state



- designed to pass UL 10C, Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
- c. Bonded assemblies will withstand prolonged exposure from -35°F(-37°C) to 200°F (93°C) temperatures without exhibiting any signs of bond failure.
 - d. Cured adhesive film will remain flexible to allow for differences in thermal expansion and contraction of various substrates without sacrificing bond performance.
9. Core Material
 - a. Treadcore Polystyrene
 10. Glass moldings and stops:
 - a. Fabricate from 18 gauge minimum steel:
 - b. Install trim into the door as a four-sided welded assembly with mitered, reinforced and welded corners.
 - c. Trim: identical on both sides of the door.
 - d. Labeled and non-labeled doors: use the same trim to match esthetics.
 - e. Channeling requirements:
 - 1) Cutouts larger than 36" in height require 18 gauge perimeter channelings in the cutout of the door prior to installation of the lite kit our louver.
 11. Hardware Reinforcements:
 - a. Doors shall be mortised and adequately reinforced per the manufacturers guidelines for all hardware. Required mortise hardware reinforcements shall be drilled and tapped at the factory. Surface applied hardware shall be field drilled by hardware installer.
 - b. Hinge reinforcements for full mortise hinges: minimum 7 gauge with an extra long, high frequency top hinge reinforcement as a standard feature.
 - c. Lock reinforcements : minimum 16 gauge.
 - d. Closer reinforcements: minimum 14 gauge steel.
 - e. Projection welded hinge and lock reinforcements to the edge of the door.
 - f. Provided adequate reinforcements for other hardware as required.
- B. Full Flush Doors:
1. Basis of Design: Mesker N Series.
- C. Hurricane Doors: Design to resist the cyclic pressures, static pressures and missile impact loads as detailed in the Miami-Dade County Product Control Approval System of the Florida Building Code Approval System and meets the requirements of Miami-Dade County test protocols PA 201, PA 202, PA 203 and Florida Building Code test protocols TAS 201, TAS 202 and TAS 203.

2.4 DOOR FRAMES

- A. General: Construct exterior/interior metal door frames to the following designs and gauges;
1. Exterior Frames: Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated galvanized steel (A40) (A60) or Zinc-Coated Galvanized steel (G90) that conforms to ASTM A 653/A653M:
 - a. Thickness:
 - 1) 14 gauge.
 2. Interior Frames in Masonry: Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated galvanized steel (A40) (A60) or Zinc-Coated Galvanized steel (G90) that conforms to ASTM A 653/A653M:
 - a. Thickness:
 - 1) 16 gauge.
 3. Interior KD Drywall Frames (Slip-On construction): cold rolled steel, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
 - a. Thickness:



1) 16 gauge.

B. Flush Steel Frames:

1. Basis of Design: Mesker F-Series.
2. Profile:
 - a. Face:
 - 1) 2 Inches face dimension and types and throat dimensions indicated on the Door Schedule.
 - b. Stops:
 - 1) Standard 5/8-inch-high stops
 - 2) a thermal break. A kerf slot for gasketing to be built into the thermal break.
3. Provide reinforcements and accessories for specified hardware per SDI 250.6.
4. Anchors: Locate adjustable anchors in each jamb 6 inches from the top of the door opening to hold frame in rigid alignment.
 - a. Exposed fastener type; recessed hole at base of jamb for countersunk fastener installation.
 - b. Snap in base anchors
 - c. Strap anchors welded to frame
5. Fire Rating: Supply frame units bearing Labels for fire ratings indicated in Door Schedule for the locations indicated.

C. Steel Frames for Drywall:

1. Basis of Design: Mesker FDJ-Series.
2. Profile:
 - a. Face:
 - 1) 2 Inches face dimension and types and throat dimensions indicated on the Door Schedule.
 - b. Stops:
 - 1) Standard 5/8-inch-high stops
3. Provide reinforcements and accessories for specified hardware per SDI 250.6.
4. Anchors: Locate adjustable anchors in each jamb 6 inches from the top of the door opening to hold frame in rigid alignment.
 - a. Exposed fastener type; recessed hole at base of jamb for countersunk fastener installation.
 - b. Snap in base anchors
 - c. Strap anchors welded to frame
5. Fire Rating: Supply frame units bearing Labels for fire ratings indicated in Door Schedule for the locations indicated.

2.5 HOLLOW METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Hollow Metal Framing Systems:

1. Basis of Design: Mesker S-Series, M-Series.
2. Components: Construct architectural stick frame assemblies of standard frame components, fabricated as specified.
 - a. Exterior Frame Material: Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated galvanized steel (A40) (A60) or Zinc-Coated Galvanized steel (G90) that conforms to ASTM A 653/A653M, 14 gauge galvanized steel.



- b. Interior Frames in Masonry: Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated galvanized steel (A40) (A60) or Zinc-Coated Galvanized steel (G90) that conforms to ASTM A 653/A653M, 16 gauge galvanized steel.
 - c. Interior Frames in stud wall construction: 16 gauge cold rolled steel, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M steel.
 - d. Include galvanized components and internal reinforcements with galvanized frames.
3. Frame component requirements:
- a. Prepare required sticks at door openings and frame assemblies for hardware as specified in Section 087100.
 - b. Fabricate frame assemblies from three basic components:
 - 1) Open Sections (perimeter members) identical in configuration to standard frames.
 - 2) Closed sections (intermediate members) with identical jamb depth, face dimensions, and stops as open sections.
 - 3) Sill sections: To be flush with both faces of adjacent vertical members. Cut individual components to length and notched to assure square joints and corners.
 - c. Externally welded face joints at meeting mullions or between mullions and other frame members on the face surfaces only. Grind and finish face joints smooth.
 - d. Fabricate frame assemblies for shipment to the jobsite completely welded.
 - 1) Field joints permissible only when the size of the total assembly exceeds shipping limitations.
 - 2) Fabricate oversized frames in sections designated for splicing in the field.
 - e. Pierced and dimpled glazing beads for use with manufacturers' standard fasteners.
 - f. Provide necessary anchors for jambs, heads, and sills of assemblies.
 - g. Verify field dimensions as required. Do not begin fabrication until these dimensions have been verified and approved.
4. Accessories:
- a. Glazing Bead: Formed steel sheet; screw-attached.
 - b. Steel Panels:
 - 1) 1/2-inch – 1 inch thick and manufactured from 18 gauge or 16 gauge thick non-galvanized or galvanized steel faces with a polystyrene core.
 - 2) 1-3/4 inches thick and manufactured from 18 gauge or 16 gauge thick non-galvanized or galvanized steel faces with a steel stiffened core for fire rated openings.
5. Fire Rating: Provide factory assembled welded units bearing Labels for fire ratings indicated on the Drawings.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors: Manufacturer's standard framing anchors, specified in manufacturer's printed installation instructions for project conditions.
- B. Astragals for pairs of doors: Manufacturer's standard for labeled and non-labeled openings.
- C. Plaster Guards: Same material as door frame, minimum 24 gauge (0.5 mm) minimum; provide for all strike boxes. Plaster guards not mandatory on interior after set frames.
- D. Silencers: Resilient rubber, Inserted type, three per strike jamb for single openings. Stick-on silencers shall not be permitted except on hollow metal framing systems.
- E. Glazing: Specified in Section 088000.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Steel Frames:



1. Fabricate steel door and frame units to be rigid, neat in appearance, and free from defects, warp, or buckle. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. Clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment, to assure proper assembly at Project site. Comply with ANSI/SDI 100 requirements.
 - a. Clearances shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 80.
 2. Three-piece knock-down frames: Head and jamb intersecting corners die-cut, mitered at 45 degrees, with locking tabs for rigid connection when assembled.
 3. Factory-welded frames: Head and jamb intersecting corners mitered at 45 degrees, with back welded joints ground smooth.
 - a. Continuous face weld the joint between the head and jamb faces along their length either internally or externally. Grind, prime paint, and finish smooth face joints with no visible face seams.
 - b. Externally weld, grind, prime paint, and finish smooth face joints at meeting mullions or between mullions and other frame members per a current copy of ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 4. Provide temporary steel spreaders (welded to the jambs at each rabbet of door openings) on welded frames during shipment. Remove temporary steel spreaders prior to installation of the frame.
- B. Tolerances shall comply with SDI-117 "Manufacturing Tolerances for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
 - C. Fabricate concealed stiffeners, reinforcement, edge channels, louvers, and moldings from either cold-rolled or hot-rolled steel sheet.
 - D. Unless otherwise indicated, provide exposed fasteners with countersunk flat or oval heads for exposed screws and bolts.
 - E. Prepare doors and frames to receive mortised and concealed hardware per final door hardware schedule and templates provided by hardware supplier. Comply with applicable requirements of SDI-107 and ANSI-A115 Series specifications for door and frame preparation for hardware.
 - F. Reinforce doors and frames to receive surface-applied hardware per SDI A250.6. Drilling and tapping for surface-applied hardware shall be done at Project site. Provide internal reinforcements for all doors to receive door closers and exit devices where scheduled.
 - G. Locate hardware as indicated on Shop Drawings or, if not indicated, per the Door and Hardware Institute's (DHI) "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."

2.8 FINISHES

- A. Chemical Treatment: Treat steel surfaces to promote paint adhesion.
- B. Exposed door and frame surfaces to be cleaned and treated then coated with rust inhibitive primer. Water-based primer and color paint finishes to be free of Hazardous Air Pollutants (HAPS) and Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs). Paint to comply with ANSI A250.3 and A250.10.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that project conditions are acceptable before beginning installation of frames.
 1. Verify that completed openings to receive knock-down wrap-around frames are of correct size and thickness.
 2. Verify that completed concrete or masonry openings to receive butt type frames are of correct size.
- B. Do not begin installation until conditions have been properly prepared.
- C. Correct unacceptable conditions before proceeding with installation.



3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install doors and frames in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions and with Steel Door Institute's recommended erection instructions for steel frames SDI A250.11 and NAAMM/HMMA 840.
- B. DHI – Door and Hardware Institute – Door Security + Safety Professionals – Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware
- C. Fire Doors and Frames: Install in accordance with SDI A 250.11 and NFPA 80.
 - 1. To ensure compliance with Positive Pressure criteria as required by UBC7-2, UL10C, NFPA5000 and all applicable Local, State and National Code Jurisdictions, all Doors and Frames should be checked for accurate installation per Manufacturers installation instructions to provide proper fire and Smoke Gasketing as tested and listed.
 - 2. Fit hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified in SDI A 250.11 and SDI 100. Install fire rated doors with clearances specified in NFPA 80.
- D. Comply with provisions of SDI-105, "Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Door Frames," unless otherwise indicated. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set.
 - 1. Except for frames located in existing concrete, masonry, or gypsum board assembly construction, place frames before constructing enclosing walls and ceilings.
 - 2. In masonry construction, install at least 3 wall anchors per jamb adjacent to hinge location on hinge jamb and at corresponding heights on strike jamb. Acceptable anchors include masonry wire anchors and masonry T-shaped anchors. Use additional anchors as required for height per manufacturers' installation instructions.
 - 3. At existing concrete or masonry construction, install at least 3 completed opening anchors per jamb adjacent to hinge location on hinge jamb and at corresponding heights on strike jamb. Set frames and secure to adjacent construction with bolts and masonry anchorage devices. Use additional anchors as required for height per manufacturers' installation instructions.
 - 4. In metal-stud partitions, install at least 3 wall anchors per jamb at hinge and strike levels. In steel-stud partitions, attach wall anchors to studs with screws. Secure Sill Anchors to floor. Use additional anchors as required for height per manufacturers' installation instructions.
 - 5. Drywall series frames are designed for installation in interior applications after construction of wood or metal stud and drywall applications. Drywall series frames are provided with adjustable jamb lock anchors for secure installation. Install frames per manufacturers' installation instructions. Adjust anchors and secure sill and baseboard anchors as provided.
 - 6. Fastener Requirements:
 - a. Refer to the approved drawings for the anchor layout and notes.
 - b. Refer to the approved drawings for the minimum embedment depths for the fasteners and the minimum edge distances (minimum distance fastener must be from the edge of the substrate material) for the fasteners.
- E. Remove temporary steel spreaders prior to installation of frames.
- F. Set frames accurately in position; plumb, align and brace until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary wood spreaders.
 - 1. Field splice only at approved locations indicated on the shop drawings.
 - 2. Weld, grind, and finish as required to conceal evidence of splicing on exposed faces.
- G. Provide full height 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) to 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) thick strip of polystyrene foam blocking at frames requiring grouting. Apply the strip to the back of the frame to facilitate field drilling or tapping.
- H. Grouting Hollow Metal Frames:
 - 1. Provide bituminous coating on interior of grout filled jambs.
 - 2. Provide and install temporary bottom and intermediate wood spreaders to maintain proper



width and avoid bowing or deforming of frame members. Refer to ANSI A250.11-2001 and NAAMM/HMMA 840.

3. Comply with ANSI/SDI Standard A250.8, paragraph 4.2.2, and HMMA 820 TN01 Grouting Hollow Metal Frames, whereby grout will be mixed to provide a 4 inch (102 mm) maximum slump consistency and hand troweled into place. Do not use grout mixed to a thinner consistency.
 4. Provide a vertical wood brace during grouting of frame at openings over 4 foot (1219 mm) wide, to prevent sagging of frame header.
- I. Glaze and seal exterior transom, sidelight and window frames in accordance with HMMA-820 TN03.
 - J. Apply hardware in accordance with hardware manufacturers' instructions and Section 087100 of these Specifications. Install hardware with only factory-provided fasteners. Install silencers. Adjust door installation to provide 1/8" at head and 1/8" at strike and hinge jamb with door undercut to meet fire ratings and floor conditions to achieve maximum operational effectiveness and appearance.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assembly Testing:
 1. Upon completion of the installation, test each fire door assembly to confirm proper operation of its closing device and verify that it meets all criteria of a fire door assembly per NFPA 80.
 2. Perform inspections by individuals with documented knowledge and understanding of the operation components of the type of door being tested per NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.
 3. Provide a written record to the Owner with copies available to the Authorities Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).
 4. Record shall list the fire door assembly and include the door number with an itemized list of hardware set components for each door opening and location in the facility.

3.4 ADJUST AND CLEAN

- A. Adjust doors for proper operation, free from binding or other defects.
- B. Clean and restore soiled surfaces. Remove scraps and debris and leave site in a clean condition.
- C. Prime Coat Touch-Up: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat, and apply touch-up of compatible air-drying primer.
- D. Properly clean and apply paint to doors and frames in accordance with HMMA-840 TN01 and ANSI A250.8 appendix B along with Manufactures recommended surface preparation for painting.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products and finished surfaces from damage during construction.

END OF SECTION 08 11 13



1 **SECTION 08 14 16 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 1.1 **SUMMARY**

4 1. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.

5 B. Related Sections:

6 1. Division 08 Section "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.

7 2. Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".

8 1.2 **ACTION SUBMITTALS**

9 A. Product Data: For each type of door indicated.

10 B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door;
11 construction details not covered in Product Data; location and extent of hardware blocking; and
12 other pertinent data.

13 1. Indicate dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.

14 2. Indicate dimensions and locations of cutouts.

15 3. Indicate requirements for veneer matching.

16 4. Indicate doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.

17 C. Samples: Provide 12" x 12" sample of each type of wood door.

18 1.3 **QUALITY ASSURANCE**

19 A. **Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of**
20 **custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.**

21 B. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with AWI's "Architectural
22 Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated."

23 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

24 2.1 **MANUFACTURERS**

25 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering
26 products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

27 1. Algoma Hardwoods, Inc.

28 2. Ampco, Inc.

29 3. Buell Door Company Inc.

30 4. Chappell Door Co.

31 5. Eagle Plywood & Door Manufacturing, Inc.



- 1 6. Eggers Industries.
- 2 7. Graham; an Assa Abloy Group company.
- 3 8. Haley Brothers, Inc.
- 4 9. Ideal Architectural Doors & Plywood.
- 5 10. Ipik Door Company.
- 6 11. Lambton Doors.
- 7 12. Marlite.
- 8 13. Marshfield Door Systems, Inc.
- 9 14. Mohawk Flush Doors, Inc.; a Masonite company; Cendura Series.
- 10 15. Oshkosh Architectural Door Company.
- 11 16. Poncraft Door Company.
- 12 17. Vancouver Door Company.
- 13 18. VT Industries Inc.

14 2.2 DOOR CONSTRUCTION, GENERAL

- 15 A. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide doors made with adhesives and composite wood products that
- 16 do not contain urea formaldehyde.
- 17 B. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade:
- 18 1. Birch Interior solid core wood doors: Heavy Duty.

19 2.3 VENEERED-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- 20 A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:
- 21 1. Grade: Premium, with Grade A faces.
- 22 2. Species: Birch.
- 23 3. Cut: Plain Sliced
- 24 4. Finish: Nutmeg
- 25 5. Match between Veneer Leaves: Pleasing match.
- 26 6. Core: Particleboard core.
- 27 7. Construction: Seven plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive
- 28 planed before veneering. – 1-3/4"
- 29 8. Adhesives: Type I per WDMA TM-6.

30 2.4 FABRICATION

- 31 A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of
- 32 referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
- 33 1. **Comply with requirements in NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.**
- 34 B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied.
- 35 C. Openings: Cut and trim openings through doors in factory.

36 2.5 FINISH

- 37 1. Finish in accordance with Color and Finish Schedule and Section 09900 Painting for
- 38 stains and clear finishes.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 INSTALLATION**

3 A. Hardware: For installation, see Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."

4 B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and the
5 referenced quality standard, and as indicated.

6 C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels; do not trim
7 stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Machine
8 doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and
9 machining.

10 1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors.
11 Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering
12 unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch
13 (6.4 mm) from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.

14 D. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.

15 **END OF SECTION 08 14 16**



1 **SECTION 08 31 13 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES CAD-DW Ceiling or Wall Access Door with**
2 **Drywall Bead**

3
4
5 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

6
7 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 8
9 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
10 Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
11

12 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 13
14 A. This Section includes the following types of access doors:
15
16 1. Wall access doors.
17 2. Fire-rated wall access doors.
18 3. Ceiling access doors (non-rated); gypsum board ceilings.
19 4. Fire-rated ceiling access door; gypsum board ceilings.
20 5. Exterior Ceiling Access Door.
21
22 B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
23
24 1. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for gypsum board walls and ceilings.
25 2. Division 9 Section "Tile" for ceramic tile walls.
26 3. Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories" for duct access doors.
27

28 **1.3 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS**

- 29
30 A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of Contract and Division 1
31 Specification Sections.
32
33 B. Product data for each type of access door assembly specified, including details of construction
34 relative to materials, individual components, profiles, finishes, and fire-protection ratings (if
35 required).
36
37 1. Include complete schedule, including types, general locations, sizes, wall and ceiling
38 construction details, latching or locking provisions, and other data pertinent to installation.
39

40 **QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 41
42 C. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain access doors for entire Project from one source and by a
43 single manufacturer.
44
45 D. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Units that comply with NFPA 80, are identical to door and frame
46 assemblies tested for fire-test-response characteristics per test method as indicated below, and
47 are labeled and listed by UL, Warnock Hersey, or another testing and inspecting agency
48 acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
49
50 1. Test Method for Vertical Installations: ASTM E 152.
51
52 E. Size Variations: Obtain Architect's acceptance of manufacturer's standard size units, which may
53 vary slightly from sizes indicated.
54

55 **1.4 COORDINATION**
56



1
2
3
4

- A. Verification: Determine specific locations and sizes for access doors needed to gain access to concealed equipment.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2
3 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- 4
5 A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering
6 products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
7
8 1. J.L. Industries.
9 2. Larsen's Manufacturing Co.
10 **3. Milcor, Inc.- Basis of Design.**
11 4. Nystrom, Inc.
12
13 B. Exterior Access Door:
14 **1. WB the Williams Bros. Corporation of America – Basis of Design.**

15
16 **2.2 MATERIALS**

- 17
18 A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 366 (ASTM A 366M) commercial-quality, cold-rolled steel sheet with
19 baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
20
21 C. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 591 (ASTM A 591M), Electrolytic zinc-coated steel sheet
22 with Class C coating and phosphate treatment to prepare surface for painting.
23

24 **2.3 ACCESS DOORS**

- 25
26 A. Insulated, Fire-Rated Access Doors - Walls and Ceilings: Self-latching units consisting of frame,
27 trim, door, insulation, and hardware, including automatic closer, interior latch release, and
28 complying with the following requirements:
29
30
31 1. Trimless Frame: Perimeter frame complying with the following requirements:
32
33 a. Metal: 0.0598-inch- (1.52-mm-) thick zinc-coated steel sheet.
34 b. Frame Configuration: Zinc-coated steel sheet edge trim with both face and back
35 flanges; face flange formed to receive joint compound, with thickness required to fit
36 over edges of adjoining gypsum board panels.
37
38 2. Door: 0.0359-inch- (0.91-mm-) thick zinc-coated steel sheet, welded pan type.
39 3. Hinges: Continuous type.
40 4. Latches: Bolt type, operated by either a ring turn or flush key device (keyed alike).
41 5. Insulation: 2-inch- (50.8-mm-) thick mineral-fiber insulation.
42 6. Fire-Protection Rating for Walls: 1 and 2 hour as indicated.
43 7. Fire-Protection Rating for Ceilings: 2 Hours.
44
45 B. Trimless, Flush Access Doors for Gypsum Board - Walls and Ceilings: Units consisting of
46 frame, concealed edge trim, door, hardware, and complying with the following requirements:
47
48 1. Frame: 0.0598-inch- thick zinc-coated steel sheet.
49 2. Door: 0.0747-inch- thick zinc-coated steel sheet.
50 3. Concealed, Gypsum Board Edge Trim: 0.0299-inch zinc-coated or galvanized-steel sheet
51 with face flange formed to receive joint compound.
52 4. Hinge: Concealed Spring pin or continuous type.
53 5. Locks: Screwdriver-operated cam.
54 6. Rating: Non-rated.
55
56 D. Trimless, Flush Access Doors for Plaster - Walls and Ceiling: Units consisting of frame, casing
57 bead, door, hardware, and complying with the following requirements:



1. Frame: 0.0598-inch- thick steel sheet.
2. Door: 0.0747-inch- thick zinc-coated steel sheet.
3. Plaster Casing Bead: 0.0299-inch zinc-coated-steel casing bead with flange formed out of expanded metal lath.
4. Hinge: Concealed spring pin or continuous type.
5. Locks: Screwdriver-operated cam.
6. Rating: Non-rated.

E. Exterior Access Door:

1. WB Exterior 1350 Ultra Series Access Door.
2. For exterior use, weather resistive.
3. 22"w x 30"h.
4. Provide WB-5Ultra Paddle Latch Lock with 151 key.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Manufacture each access door assembly as an integral unit ready for installation.
- B. Steel Access Doors and Frames: Continuous welded construction. Grind welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access panels to types of supports indicated.
1. For gypsum board assemblies or gypsum veneer plaster, furnish frames with edge trim for gypsum board or gypsum base.
 2. For installation in masonry construction, furnish frames with adjustable metal masonry anchors.
- C. Locking Devices: Furnish number required to hold door in flush, smooth plane when closed.
1. Screwdriver cam operated.
- E. Size: As indicated, or if not indicated as necessary for access to concealed items behind access panel. If access is only by hand minimum size shall be 12" x 12"; if access requires physically climbing up into opening minimum size shall be 24" x 24" or larger as necessary to gain access to unit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Advise Installers of other work about specific requirements relating to access door installation, including sizes of openings to receive access door and frame, as well as locations of supports, inserts, and anchoring devices. Furnish inserts and anchoring devices for access doors that must be built into other construction. Coordinate delivery with other work to avoid delay.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for installing access doors.
- B. Set frames accurately in position and attach securely to supports with plane of face panels aligned with adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Install concealed-frame access doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces.

3.3 ADJUST AND CLEAN



- 1 A. Adjust hardware and panels after installation for proper operation.
- 2
- 3 B. Remove and replace panels or frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.
- 4
- 5 **END OF SECTION 08 31 13**



1 **SECTION 08 41 00 - ALUMINUM - FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS – INTERIOR**

2
3
4 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

5
6 **1.01 SUMMARY**

- 7
8 1. Related Documents: Conditions of the Contract, Division 1 - General Requirements, and
9 Drawings apply to Work of this Section.

10
11 Edit this paragraph to briefly describe the contents of the section. After editing section, refer back to this
12 paragraph to verify no conflicts exist.

13 B. Section Includes:

- 14 1. Storefront system, complete with reinforcing, fasteners, anchors, and attachment
15 devices.
16 2. Accessories necessary to complete work.

17
18 Edit paragraph below to suit project requirements.

19
20 C. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:

- 21 1. Anchoring devices which are built into masonry.
22 2. Anchoring devices which are cast in concrete.

23
24 This document incorporates CSI (Construction Specifications Institute) Manual of Practice principles of
25 cross referencing to Division 1 sections and other sections. The cross references must be edited to retain
26 only those other sections used. Other guide specifications for **Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope®** are
27 available as follows:

- 28 Section 07720 - Heat and Smoke Vents
29 Section 07821 - Acrylic Unit Skylights
30 Section 07822 - Glass Unit Skylights
31 Section 07825 - Metal Framed Skylights
32 Section 08411 thru 08413 Aluminum Entrances and Storefronts.
33 Section 08450 All Glass Entrances.
34 Section 08490 Sliding Mall Fronts.
35 Section 08950 - Translucent Panel System
36 Section 08921 thru 08927 Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls.
37 Section 08960 - Sloped Glazing System

38
39 D. Related Sections:

- 40 1. Section 01430 - Mock-ups.
41 2. Section 05500 Metal Fabrications.
42 3. Section 06100 Rough Carpentry.
43 4. Section 07900 - Joint Sealers.
44 5. Section 08450 All Glass Entrances.
45 6. Section 08470 Revolving Entrance Doors.
46 7. Section 08490 Sliding Mall Fronts.
47 8. Section 08520 Aluminum Windows.
48 9. Section 08710 - Door Hardware.
49 10. Section 08810 - Glass and Glazing.
50 11. Section 08920 Glazed Aluminum Curtain Wall.
51 12. Section 08960 Sloped Glazing System.

52
53 List reference standards that are included within the text of this section. Edit the following as required for
54 project conditions.



1
2 **1.02 REFERENCES**
3

- 4 A. Aluminum Association (AA):
5 1. DAF-45 Designation System for Aluminum Finishes.
6 B. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
7 1. 501 Methods of Test for Exterior Walls.
8 2. 501.2 Quality Assurance and Diagnostic Water Leakage Field Check of
9 Installed Storefronts, Curtain Walls, and Sloped Glazing Systems.
10 3. 2605 Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test
11 Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum
12 Extrusions and Panels.
13 4. 611 Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum.
14 5. 701 Voluntary Specifications for Pile Weatherstripping and Replaceable
15 Fenestration Weatherseals.
16 6. CW-10 Care and Handling of Architectural Aluminum From Shop to Site.
17 7. SFM1 Aluminum Storefront and Entrance Manual.
18 C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
19 1. A36 Structural Steel.
20 2. A123 Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products.
21 3. B209 Aluminum and Aluminum - Alloy Sheet and Plate.
22 4. B221 Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes.
23 5. E283 Test Method for Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows,
24 Curtain Walls and Doors.
25 6. E330 Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows,
26 Curtain Walls and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
27 7. E331 Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Curtain
28 Walls and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
29 D. Glass Association of North America (GANA):
30 1. Glazing Manual
31 E. Federal Specifications (FS):
32 1. TT-P-641G(1) Primer Coating, Zinc Dust-Zinc Oxide (For Galvanized Surfaces).
33 2. TT-P-645A Primer, Paint, Zinc Chromate, Alkyd Type.
34 F. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC):
35 1. Cold-Applied Asphalt Mastic (Extra Thick Film).
36

37 Use the article below carefully; restrict statements to describe components used to assemble the system.
38 Do not repeat statements made in the SECTION INCLUDES article. Restrict statements to identify
39 system performance requirements or function criteria only. Delete paragraphs not appropriate to project.
40 The following paragraphs represent a suggested listing of performance criteria.
41

42 **1.03 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS**
43

- 44 A. Design Requirements:
45 1. Drawings are diagrammatic and do not purport to identify or solve problems of thermal
46 or structural movement, glazing, anchorage, or moisture disposal.
47 2. Requirements shown by details are intended to establish basic dimension of units, sight
48 lines and profiles of members.
49 3. Provide concealed fastening.
50 4. Provide entrance and storefront systems, including necessary modifications, to meet
51 specified requirements and maintaining visual design concepts.
52 5. Attachment considerations are to take into account site peculiarities and expansion and
53 contraction movements so there is no possibility of loosening, weakening or fracturing
54 connection between units and building structure or between units themselves.



- 1 6. Provide for expansion and contraction due to structural movement without detriment to
2 appearance or performance.
3 7. Framing systems shall accommodate expansion and contraction movement due to
4 surface temperature differentials of 180 degrees F without causing buckling, stress on
5 glass, failure of joint seals, excessive stress on structural elements, reduction of
6 performance, or other detrimental effects.

7 B. Performance Requirements:

8
9 Coordinate wind loads with applicable building code. Edit following paragraph accordingly.

- 10
11 1. Wind loads: Provide framing system capable of withstanding wind load design pressures
12 of 5 psf acting inward and of 5 psf acting outward. The design pressures are based on
13 the Florida Building Code; 8th 2023 Edition.
14 2. Air infiltration: Air leakage through fixed light areas of storefront shall not exceed 0.06
15 cfm per square foot of surface area when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at
16 differential static pressure of 6.24 psf.
17 3. Water infiltration: No uncontrolled leakage when tested in accordance with ASTM E331 at test
18 pressure of 10 psf as defined in AAMA 501.
19 4. Deflection:
20 Maximum calculated deflection of any framing member in direction normal to
21 plane of wall when subjected to specified design pressures for spans up to and
22 including 13'-6" shall be limited to [1/175] of its clear span and for spans greater
23 than 13'-6" deflection shall be limited to [1/240] of its clear span + 1/4", except
24 that maximum deflection of members supporting plaster surfaces shall not exceed
25 1/360 of its span.

26
27 In cases of large spans, calculate maximum deflection and give consideration to visual impact. If it
28 appears desirable, specify an allowable deflection less than the amounts specified above. Smaller
29 deflections, however, will often require use of heavier cross sections or internal reinforcements.
30 Therefore, importance of visual impact must be weighed against added cost.

- 31
32 C. Testing Requirements: Provide components that have been previously tested by an
33 independent testing laboratory.

34
35 Include submittal requirements below that are consistent with scope of project and extent of work of this
36 section. Only request submittals that are absolutely necessary.

37
38 Include submittal requirements below which are consistent with scope of project and extent of work of this
39 section. Only request submittals which are absolutely necessary.

40
41 **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- 42
43 A. General: Submit in accordance with Section 01300.
44 B. Product Data:
45 1. Submit manufacturer's descriptive literature and product specifications.
46 2. Include information for factory finishes, hardware, accessories, and other required
47 components.
48 [3. Include color charts for finish indicating manufacturer's standard colors available for
49 selection.]
50 C. Shop Drawings:
51 1. Submit shop drawings covering fabrication, installation and finish of specified systems.
52 2. Include following:
53 a. Fully dimensioned plans and elevations with detail coordination keys.
54 b. Locations of exposed fasteners and joints.



- 1 3. Provide detailed drawings of:
 2 a. Composite members.
 3 b. Joint connections for framing systems and for entrance doors.
 4 c. Anchorage.
 5 d. System reinforcements.
 6 e. System expansion and contraction provisions.
 7 f. Glazing methods and accessories.
 8 g. Internal sealant requirements.
 9 4. Schedule of finishes.
 10 D. Samples:
 11 1. Submit manufacturers standard samples indicating quality of finish.
 12 2. Where normal texture or color variations are expected, include additional samples
 13 illustrating range of variation.
 14 [3. Submit samples for each type of glass, 12 x 12 inch size.]
 15 E. Test Reports:
 16 1. Standard Systems: Submit certified copies of previous test reports substantiating
 17 performance of system in lieu of retesting. Include other supportive data as necessary.
 18 F. Qualification Data:
 19 1. Submit installer qualifications verifying years of experience.
 20 O. Manufacturer's Instructions: Submit manufacturer's printed installation instructions.

21
 22 Include quality assurance requirements consistent with size and scope of project and extent of work of
 23 this section. Edit following article accordingly.
 24

25 **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 26
 27 A. Single Source Responsibility:

28
 29 **Oldcastle Building Envelope®** is unique in the industry in single source responsibility. First, system
 30 design,
 31 extrusion, fabrication, and finishing occur at the same facility, and under strict tolerances, assuring
 32 uniformity of profile and finishes between systems. Second, **Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope®** products
 33 include a full array of storefront (including operable vents on some systems), curtainwall, all glass
 34 entrances, sliding mall fronts, sloped glazing, and flush faced aluminum framed doors, as well as all the
 35 monumental and unit skylight products, allowing the designer and specifier a single source of
 36 responsibility when combining products from any of these categories.
 37

- 38 1. To ensure quality of appearance and performance, obtain materials for systems from
 39 either a single manufacturer or from manufacturer approved by systems manufacturer.
 40 B. Installer Qualifications: Certified in writing by system manufacturer as qualified for installation
 41 of specified systems.
 42 C. Perform Work in accordance with AAMA SFM1 and manufacturer's written instructions.
 43

44 **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 45
 46 A. Comply with requirements of Section 01600.
 47 B. Protect finished surfaces as necessary to prevent damage.
 48 C. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that become firmly bonded when exposed to
 49 sun.
 50 D. Do not leave coating residue on any surfaces.
 51 E. Replace damaged units.
 52
 53
 54



1 **1.07 WARRANTY**

2
3 Note: Longer warranty periods are available at additional cost.

- 4
5 A. Provide warranties in accordance with Section 01700.
6 B. Provide written warranty in form acceptable to Owner jointly signed by manufacturer, installer
7 and Contractor warranting work to be watertight, free from defective materials, defective
8 workmanship, glass breakage due to defective design, and agreeing to replace components
9 which fail within 1 year from date of Substantial Completion.
10 C. Warranty shall cover following:
11 1. Complete watertight and airtight system installation within specified tolerances.
12 2. System is structurally sound and free from distortion.
13

14 Delete paragraph below if high performance fluoropolymer finish not used.

- 15
16 D. Provide written warranty stating organic coating finish will be free from fading more than 10%,
17 chalking, yellowing, peeling, cracking, pitting, corroding or non-uniformity of color, or gloss
18 deterioration beyond manufacturer's descriptive standards for 1 year from date of Substantial
19 Completion and agreeing to promptly correct defects.
20

21 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

22
23 **2.01 MANUFACTURERS AND PRODUCTS**

- 24
25 A. Subject to compliance with requirements indicated, provide products by one of the following:
26 1. **Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope®**, Terrell, TX.
27 B. Substitutions: Submit under provisions of Section 01630, a minimum of 10 days prior to bid
28 date.
29

30 Edit the following paragraphs for appropriate system in each category and delete remaining. Refer to
31 **Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope®** technical literature for additional information.
32

33 When specifying manufacturer's standard product or manufacturer's standard product with modifications,
34 describe using manufacturer's name and model numbers.
35

- 36
37 C. Acceptable Storefront Framing System:

38
39 Flush Glazed System, center set, exterior loaded
40 Series 2000 - 1-3/4" x 4 1/2" mullion profile; accommodates 1/4" glazing only.
41

42 **2.02 FRAMING MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES**

- 43
44 A. Aluminum:
45 1. ASTM B221, alloy 6063-T5 for extrusions; ASTM B209, alloy 5005-H16 for sheets; or
46 other alloys and temper recommended by manufacturer appropriate for specified finish.
47 B. Internal Reinforcing:
48 1. ASTM A36 for carbon steel.
49 2. Shapes and sizes to suit installation.
50 3. Steel components factory coated with alkyd type zinc chromate primer complying with
51 FS TT-P-645.
52 C. Anchorage Devices:
53 1. Manufacturer's standard formed or fabricated steel or aluminum assemblies of shapes,
54 plates, bars or tubes.



- 1 2. Hot-dip galvanize steel assemblies after fabrication, comply with ASTM A123, 2.0 ounce
2 minimum coating.
- 3 D. Fasteners:
- 4 1. Aluminum, non-magnetic stainless steel or other non-corrosive materials compatible with
5 items being fastened.
- 6 2. Provide concealed fasteners wherever possible.
- 7 3. For exposed locations, provide Phillips flathead screws with finish matching item
8 fastened.
- 9 4. For concealed locations, provide manufacturer's standard fasteners.
- 10 E. Expansion Anchor Devices: Lead-shield or toothed-steel, drilled-in, expansion bolt anchors.
- 11 F. Protective Coatings: Cold-applied asphalt mastic complying with SSPC, compounded for 30
12 mil thickness for each coat; or alkyd type zinc chromate primer complying with FS TT-P-645.
- 13 G. Touch-Up Primer for Galvanized Components: Zinc oxide conforming with FS TT-P-641.
- 14 H. Glazing Gaskets:
- 15 1. Compression type design, replaceable, molded or extruded, of neoprene, polyvinyl
16 chloride (PVC), or ethylene propylene diene monomer (EPDM).
- 17 2. Profile and hardness as required to maintain uniform pressure for watertight seal.
- 18 I. Weatherstripping:
- 19 1. Wool pile conforming to AAMA 701.2.
- 20 2. Provide EPDM or vinylblade gasket weatherstripping in bottom door rail, adjustable for
21 contact with threshold.
- 22 J. Internal Sealants and Baffles.

24 **2.03 GLASS AND GLAZING ACCESSORIES**

- 25
26 A. Refer to Section 08810.

28 **2.04 FABRICATION**

- 29
30 A. Coordination of Fabrication:
- 31 1. Check actual frame or door openings required in construction work by accurate field
32 measurements before fabrication.
- 33 2. Fabricate units to withstand loads that will be applied when system is in place.
- 34 B. General
- 35 1. Conceal fasteners wherever possible.
- 36 2. Reinforce work as necessary for performance requirements, and for support to structure.
- 37 3. Separate dissimilar metals and aluminum in contact with concrete utilizing protective
38 coating or preformed separators, which will prevent contact and corrosion.
- 39 4. Comply with Section 08810 for glazing requirements.

40
41
42 Glazing is normally done after system has been erected and done from inside or outside. Large plates of
43 glass can normally be glazed most readily from outside. Headroom and space often make it impossible
44 to glaze from inside. Glass replacement must also be considered. Edit item below for inside or outside
45 glazing.

- 46
47
48 C. Aluminum Framing:
- 49 1. Provide members of size, shape and profile indicated, designed to provide for glazing
50 from [exterior] [interior].
- 51 2. Fabricate frame assemblies with joints straight and tight fitting.
- 52 3. Reinforce internally with structural members as necessary to support design loads.
- 53 4. Maintain accurate relation of planes and angles, with hairline fit of contacting members.
- 54 5. Seal horizontals and direct moisture accumulation to exterior.



- 6. Provide flashings and other materials used internally or externally that are corrosive resistant, non-staining, non-bleeding and compatible with adjoining materials.
 - 7. Provide manufacturer's extrusions and accessories to accommodate expansion and contraction due to temperature changes without detrimental to appearance or performance.
- D. Welding:
- 1. Comply with recommendations of the American Welding Society.
 - 2. Use recommended electrodes and methods to avoid distortion and discoloration.
 - 3. Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces; restore mechanical finish.
- E. Flashings: Form from sheet aluminum with same finish as extruded sections. Apply finish after fabrication. Material thickness as required to suit condition without deflection or "oil-canning".

Select and edit following items for appropriate finish; delete inapplicable types. **Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope®** is a licensed applicator for all of the coating manufacturers listed below.

2.05 FINISHES

- A. Organic Coating (high performance fluorocarbon):
- 1. Comply with requirements of AAMA 2605.
 - 2. Surfaces cleaned and given conversion coating pre-treatment prior to application of 0.3 mil dry film thickness of epoxy or acrylic primer following recommendations of finish coat manufacturer.
 - 3. Finish coat of 70% minimum fluorocarbon resin fused to primed surfaces at temperature recommended by manufacturer, 1.0 mil minimum dry film thickness.
 - 4. Acceptable coatings are Trinar by Akzo Coatings, Inc.; Nubelar by Glidden Company; Fluoroceram by Morton International, Inc.; Duranar by PPG Industries Inc.; and Fluropon by Valspar Corporation.
 - 5. Provide in either a 2, 3, or 4 coat system as required for color selected.
 - 6. [Custom colors as selected by Architect.]

**** OR ****

- [7. Manufacturer's standard colors as selected by Architect.]

**** OR ****

Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope® utilizes a computer driven anodizing system which produces the closest color range available.

[B. Clear Anodized:

- 1. Conforming to AA-M12C22A31 and AAMA 611.
- 2. Architectural Class II, etched, medium matte, clear anodic coating, 0.4 mil minimum thickness.]

**** OR ****

[C. Color Anodized:

- 1. Conforming to AA-M12C22A44 and AAMA 611.
- 2. Architectural Class [I] [II], etched, medium matte, [black] [dark bronze] [medium bronze] [light bronze] colored anodic coating, [0.7] [0.4] mil minimum thickness.]



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**
2

3 **3.01 EXAMINATION**
4

- 5 A. Examine conditions and proceed with Work in accordance with Section 01400.
6

7 **3.02 INSTALLATION**
8

- 9 A. Erection Tolerances:
10 1. Limit variations from plumb and level:
11 a. 1/8 inch in 10'-0" vertically.
12 b. 1/8 inch in 20'-0" horizontally.
13 2. Limit variations from theoretical locations: 1/4 inch for any member at any location.
14 3. Limit offsets in theoretical end-to-end and edge-to-edge alignment: 1/16 inch from
15 flush surfaces not more than 2 inches apart or out-of-flush by more than 1/4 inch.
16 B. Install doors and hardware in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.
17 C. Set units plumb, level and true to line, without warp or rack of frame.
18 D. Anchor securely in place, allowing for required movement, including expansion and contraction.
19 E. Separate dissimilar materials at contact points, including metal in contact with masonry or
20 concrete surfaces, with bituminous paint or preformed separators to prevent contact and
21 corrosion.
22 F. Set sill members in bed of sealant. Set other members with internal sealants and baffles to
23 provide weather-tight construction.
24 G. Coordinate installation of perimeter sealant and backing materials between assemblies and
25 adjacent construction in accordance with requirements of Section 07920.
26 H. Glazing: Refer to requirements of Section 08810.
27

28 **3.03 ADJUSTING**

- 29 A. Test door operating functions. Adjust closing and latching speeds and other hardware in
30 accordance with manufacturer's instructions to ensure smooth operation.
31

32 **3.04 CLEANING**

- 33 A. Clean surfaces in compliance with manufacturer's recommendations; remove excess mastic,
34 mastic smears, foreign materials and other unsightly marks.
35 B. Clean metal surfaces exercising care to avoid damage.
36

37
38 **END OF SECTION**
39
40



1 **SECTION 08 41 13 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions
5 and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes: **Basis of Design – Old Castle BE**, including perimeter trims, stools, accessories,
8 shims and anchors, and perimeter sealing of storefront units.
9 1. Types of **Old Castle BE** Aluminum Storefront Systems include:
10 a. **FG-3000T-Flush Glaze Storefront (FPA 17688.2)**, 2 x 4 1/2", nominal dimension;
11 Thermally improved, Screw Spline, Fabrication, front set.
12 B. Related Sections:
13 1. 08 44 13 "Curtain Wall System"

14 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 15 A. Definitions: For fenestration industry standard terminology and definitions refer to American
16 Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA) – AAMA Glossary (AAMA AG).

17 **1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 18 A. Storefront System Performance Requirements:
19
20 1. Wind loads: Provide storefront system; include anchorage, capable of withstanding wind load
21 design pressures in accordance with Structural Sheet S001, Governing Code ASCE-7 and
22 Florida Building Code- Building Eighth Edition 2023.
23 2. Air Infiltration: The test specimen shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 283. Air infiltration
24 rate shall not exceed 0.06 cfm/ft² (0.3 l/s · m²) at a static air pressure differential of 6.24 psf
25 (300 Pa).
26 3. Water Resistance: The test specimen shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 331. There
27 shall be no leakage at a minimum static air pressure differential of 8 psf (383 Pa) as defined in
28 AAMA 501
29 4. Uniform Load: A static air design load of 20 psf (958 Pa) shall be applied in the positive and
30 negative direction in accordance with ASTM E 330. There shall be no deflection in excess of
31 L/175 of the span of any framing member. At a structural test load equal to 1.5 times the
32 specified design load, no glass breakage or permanent set in the framing members in excess
33 of 0.2% of their clear spans shall occur.
34 5. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): When tested to AAMA Specification 1503, the thermal
35 transmittance (U-factor) shall not be more than:
36 a. Glass to Exterior – 0.46 (low-e) BTU/hr/ft²/°F.
37 6. Condensation Resistance (CRF): When tested to AAMA Specification 1503, the condensation
38 resistance factor shall not be less than:
39 a. Glass to Exterior – 60_{frame} and 63_{glass} (low-e).

40 **1.5 ACTION SUBMITTAL**

- 41 A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual
42 components and profiles, hardware, finishes, and installation instructions for each type of
43 aluminum-framed storefront system indicated.



- 1 B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, hardware, and attachments to other
2 work, operational clearances and installation details.
- 3 C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes including samples of
4 hardware and accessories involving color selection.
- 5 D. Samples for Verification: For aluminum-framed storefront system and components required.
- 6 E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified
7 testing agency for each type, of aluminum-framed storefront.
- 8 F. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed systems,
9 made from 12" (304.8 mm) lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
10 1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
11 2. Anchorage.
12 3. Expansion provisions.
13 4. Glazing.
14 5. Flashing and drainage.
- 15 G. Other Action Submittals:
16 1. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of supplier,
17 detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and
18 diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and
19 related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door
20 hardware.
21
- 22 H. Provide Florida Product Approval Number that the proposed storefront system, including
23 doors are in compliance with Florida Statue 553.842 and the State of Florida Building
24 Commission Administrative Code 9B-72.

25 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- 26 A. Installer Qualifications: An installer which has had successful experience with installation of
27 the same or similar units required for the project and other projects of similar size and scope.
- 28 B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of providing aluminum-framed storefront
29 system that meet or exceed performance requirements indicated and of documenting this
30 performance by inclusion of test reports, and calculations.
- 31 C. Source Limitations: Obtain aluminum-framed storefront system through one source from a
32 single manufacturer.
- 33 D. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of aluminum-
34 framed storefront system and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01
35 Section "Product Requirements". Do not modify size and dimensional requirements.
36 1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with
37 Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory
38 data to Architect for review.
- 39 E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to
40 demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
41 1. Build mockup for type(s) of storefront elevation(s) indicated, in location(s) shown on
42 Drawings.
- 43 F. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements
44 in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination".
- 45 G. Structural-Sealant Glazing: Comply with ASTM C 1401, "Guide for Structural Sealant Glazing"
46 for design and installation of structural-sealant-glazed systems.
- 47 H. Structural-Sealant Joints: Design reviewed and approved by structural-sealant manufacturer.



- 1 I. Provide Florida Product Approval Number for Exterior System.

2 **1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 3 A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of aluminum-framed storefront openings by
4 field measurements before fabrication and indicate field measurements on Shop Drawings.

5 **1.8 WARRANTY**

- 6 A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty.
7 1. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from Date of Substantial Completion of the project
8 provided.

9 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

10 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

11 A. **Basis-of-Design Product:**

- 12 1. **Old Castle BE**
13 a. **FG-3000T-Flush Glaze Storefront (FPA 17688.2)**, 2 x 4 1/2", nominal dimension;
14 Thermally improved, Screw Spline, Fabrication, front set.
15 2. Glass: Front set.

16 B. Substitutions: Refer to Substitutions Section 01 25 00 for procedures and submission
17 requirements

- 18 1. Pre-Contract (Bidding Period) Substitutions: Submit written requests ten (10) days prior to bid
19 date.
20 2. Post-Contract (Construction Period) Substitutions: Submit written request in order to avoid
21 storefront installation and construction delays; Include Substitution Form and information,
22 samples, etc.
23 3. Product Literature and Drawings: Submit product literature and drawings modified to suit
24 specific project requirements and job conditions.
25 4. Certificates: Submit certificate(s) certifying substitute manufacturer (1) attesting to adherence
26 to specification requirements for storefront system performance criteria, and (2) has been
27 engaged in the design, manufacturer and fabrication of aluminum storefront for a period of not
28 less than ten (10) years. (Company Name)
29 5. Test Reports: Submit test reports verifying compliance with each test requirement required by
30 the project.
31 6. Samples: Provide samples of typical product sections and finish samples in manufacturer's
32 standard sizes.

33 C. Substitution Acceptance: Acceptance will be in written form, either as an addendum or modification,
34 and documented by a formal change order signed by the Owner and Contractor.

35 **2.2 MATERIALS**

- 36 A. Aluminum Extrusions: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum storefront manufacturer for
37 strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish and not less than 0.070" (1.8 mm)
38 wall thickness at any location for the main frame and complying with ASTM B 221: 6063-T6 alloy
39 and temper.
40 B. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel or other materials to be non-corrosive and
41 compatible with aluminum members, trim hardware, anchors, and other components.
42 C. Anchors, Clips, and Accessories: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or zinc-coated steel or
43 iron complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions or other suitable zinc coating;
44 provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.



- 1 D. Reinforcing Members: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or nickel/chrome-plated steel
 2 complying with ASTM B 456 for Type SC 3 severe service conditions, or zinc-coated steel or iron
 3 complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions or other suitable zinc coating;
 4 provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
- 5 E. Sealant: For sealants required within fabricated storefront system, provide permanently elastic,
 6 non-shrinking, and non-migrating type recommended by sealant manufacturer for joint size and
 7 movement.
- 8 F. Thermal Barrier: A minimum 1/4" (6.4) separation between the interior and exterior aluminum
 9 created by intermittent polymer clips.
- 10 G. Tolerances: Reference to tolerances for wall thickness and other cross-sectional dimensions of
 11 storefront members are nominal and in compliance with AA Aluminum Standards and Data.

12 2.3 STOREFRONT FRAMING SYSTEM

- 13 A. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining,
 14 nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- 15 B. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining,
 16 nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials. Where exposes shall
 17 be stainless steel.
- 18 C. Perimeter Anchors: When steel anchors are used, provide insulation between steel material and
 19 aluminum material to prevent galvanic action
- 20 D. Packing, Shipping, Handling and Unloading: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original,
 21 unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- 22 E. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions.
 23 Handle storefront material and components to avoid damage. Protect storefront material against
 24 damage from elements, construction activities, and other hazards before, during and after
 25 storefront installation.
- 26 F. Provide supplemental steel reinforcement for bracing and stabilization and as required by
 27 manufacturer.

28 2.4 GLAZING SYSTEMS

- 29 A. Glazing: As specified in Division 08 Section "Glazing"
- 30 B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard compression types; replaceable, extruded EPDM
 31 rubber.
- 32 C. Spacers and Setting Blocks: Manufacturer's standard elastomeric type.
- 33 D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Manufacturer's standard TFE-fluorocarbon or polyethylene material to
 34 which sealants will not develop adhesion.
- 35 E. Glazing Sealants: For structural-sealant-glazed systems, as recommended by manufacturer
 36 for joint type, and as follows:
- 37 1. Structural Sealant: ASTM C 1184, single-component neutral-curing silicone formulation
 38 that is compatible with system components with which it comes in contact, specifically
 39 formulated and tested for use as structural sealant and approved by a structural-sealant
 40 manufacturer for use in aluminum-framed systems indicated.
 41 a. Color: Black
- 42 2. Weatherseal Sealant: ASTM C 920 for Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses NT, G, A, and
 43 O; single-component neutral-curing formulation that is compatible with structural sealant
 44 and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by structural-
 45 sealant, weatherseal-sealant, and aluminum-framed-system manufacturers for this use.
 46 a. Color: Matching structural sealant.



2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

A. Entrance Doors and Hardware:

1. Provide doors as specified in the Door Schedule and as herein specified:
 - a. Aluminum 1-3/4" thick solid door with lifetime warranty on corner construction.
 - b. Mechanically fastened and welded corners.
 - c. Style: Medium.
 - d. Offset center hinge.
 - e. Aluminum Sheet: Min. 0.125".
 - f. Core: Manufacturer's standard foam core.

2.6 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Joint Sealants: For installation at perimeter of aluminum-framed systems, as specified in Section 07 91 00 "exterior Joint Sealants".
- B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied, asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos; formulated for 30 mil (0.762 mm) thickness per coat.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Framing Members, General: Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 2. Accurately fit joints; make joints flush, hairline and weatherproof.
 3. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
 4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 6. Provisions for field replacement of glazing.
 7. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- B. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- C. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Framing Members: Include accommodations for using temporary support device to retain glazing in place while structural sealant cures.
- D. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using manufacturer's standard installation instructions.
- E. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- B. Factory Finishing:
 - a. High-Performance Organic Finish - Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 1) Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 3 A. Examine openings, substrates, structural support, anchorage, and conditions, with Installer
4 present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting
5 performance of work. Verify rough opening dimensions, levelness of sill plate and operational
6 clearances. Examine wall flashings, vapor retarders, water and weather barriers, and other built-
7 in components to ensure a coordinated, weather tight aluminum-framed storefront system
8 installation.
- 9 1. Masonry Surfaces: Visibly dry and free of excess mortar, sand, and other construction debris.
 - 10 2. Metal Surfaces: Dry; clean; free of grease, oil, dirt, rust, corrosion, and welding slag; without
11 sharp edges or offsets at joints.
 - 12 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

13 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- 14 A. Comply with Drawings, Shop Drawings, and manufacturer's written instructions for installing
15 aluminum-framed storefront system, accessories, and other components.
- 16 B. Install aluminum-framed storefront system level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion
17 or impeding thermal movement, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper
18 relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction.
- 19 C. Set sill members in bed of sealant or with gaskets, as indicated, for weather tight construction.
- 20 D. Install aluminum-framed storefront system and components to drain condensation, water
21 penetrating joints, and moisture migrating within aluminum-framed storefront system to the
22 exterior.
- 23 E. Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic
24 action at points of contact with other materials.

25 **3.3 FIELD TESTING**

- 26 A. Conduct Conduct a water infiltration test comprised of running a continuous stream of diffused
27 water from a 25 foot ½-inch diameter hose for 5 minutes or at rate of 24 gallons per minute for
28 5 minutes over each section of storefront from a distance of 10 feet. Inspect for leaks. Repair
29 any leaks and re-test window section with leak. Repeat as necessart. At completion of test
30 provide a written certification explaining test procedure results leading up to a leak free
31 condition.
- 32 B. Manufacturer's Field Services: Upon Owner's written request, provide periodic site visit by
33 manufacturer's field service representative.

34 **3.4 ADJUSTING, CLEANING, AND PROTECTION**

- 35 A. Clean aluminum surfaces immediately after installing aluminum-framed storefronts. Avoid
36 damaging protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt,
37 and other substances.
- 38 B. Clean glass immediately after installation. Comply with glass manufacturer's written
39 recommendations for final cleaning and maintenance. Remove nonpermanent labels, and
40 clean surfaces.
- 41 C. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged
42 during construction period.

43 **END OF SECTION 08 41 13**

1 **SECTION 08 44 13 – CURTAIN WALL SYSTEM**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 5 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions
6 and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

7 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 8 A. Section Includes: **Basis of Design: Old Castle Architectural Aluminum Curtain Wall Systems**,
9 including perimeter trims, stools, accessories, shims and anchors, and perimeter sealing of curtain
10 wall framing.

- 11
12 1. Basis of Design Old Castle Types include:

13 **Reliance Unit Wall**, Structural Sealant -Glazed unit wall system for 1" (25mm) Glazing:
14 Captured: 2 1/2" (63.5mm) x 7 1/4" (203.2 mm)

- 15
16 B. Related Sections:

- 17 1. 07 91 00 "Exterior Joint Sealants"
18 2. 08 41 13 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts"
19 3. 08 80 00 "Glazing"

20 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 21 A. Definitions: For fenestration industry standard terminology and definitions refer to American
22 Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA) – AAMA Glossary (AAMA AG).

23 **1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 24 A. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing
25 of glazed aluminum curtain walls representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to
26 defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- 27 1. Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall withstand movements of supporting structure including,
28 but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from
29 uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads. Failure also includes the following:
- 30 a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
31 b. Glass breakage.
32 c. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
33 d. Failure of operating units.
- 34 B. Delegated Design: Design glazed aluminum curtain walls, including comprehensive engineering
35 analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria
36 indicated.
- 37 C. Wind loads: Provide Curtain Wall system; include anchorage, capable of withstanding wind load
38 design pressures in accordance with Structural Sheet S001, Governing Code ASCE-7 and Florida
39 Building Code- Building 8th Edition 2023.
- 40 D. Air Infiltration: The test specimen shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 283. Air infiltration
41 rate shall not exceed 0.06 cfm/ft² (0.3 l/s · m²) at a static air pressure differential of 6.24 psf (300
42 Pa).
- 43 E. Water Resistance, (static): The test specimen shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 331.
44 There shall be no leakage at a minimum static air pressure differential of 12 psf (575 Pa) as defined
45 in AAMA 501.

- 1 F. Water Resistance, (cyclic): The test specimen shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 547.
 2 There shall be no leakage at a minimum static air pressure differential of 12 psf (575 Pa) as defined
 3 in AAMA 501.
- 4 G. Water Resistance, (severe, wind driven rain): The test specimen shall be tested in accordance with
 5 AAMA 520 and ASTM E2268. There shall be no visible water at performance level 10, pressure
 6 limits 14 psf (670 Pa) – 42 psf (2010 Pa).
- 7 H. Uniform Load: A static air design load of 42 psf (2010 Pa) shall be applied in the positive and
 8 negative direction in accordance with ASTM E 330. There shall be no deflection in excess of L/175
 9 of the span of any framing member at design load. At structural test load equal to 1.5 times the
 10 specified design load, no glass breakage or permanent set in the framing members in excess of
 11 0.2% of their clear spans shall occur.
- 12
- 13 I. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): When tested to AAMA Specification 1503, the thermal
 14 transmittance (U-factor) shall not be more than: 0.38 (HP glass).
- 15
- 16 J. Condensation Resistance (CRF): When tested to AAMA Specification 1503, the condensation
 17 resistance factor shall not be less than 76_{frame} and 70_{glass} (HP glass).
- 18 K. Sound Transmission Loss: When tested to ASTM E90 and ASTM E1425, the Sound Transmission
 19 Class (STC) and Outdoor/Indoor Transmission Class (OITC) shall not be less than: STC 34 or
 20 OITC 28 based upon 1" (25.4) laminated glass (1/4", 1/2" AS, 1/4" laminated).

21 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- 22 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material
 23 descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- 24 B. Shop Drawings: For glazed aluminum curtain walls. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size
 25 details, and attachments to other work.
- 26 C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- 27 D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard
 28 sizes.
- 29 E. Closeout Submittals: Maintenance Deate for glazed aluminum walls and structural sealant.
- 30 F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified
 31 preconstruction testing agency, for glazed aluminum curtain walls, indicating compliance with
 32 performance requirements.
- 33 G. Provide Florida Product Approval Number that the proposed window system is in compliance with
 34 Florida Statue 553.842 and the State of Forida Building Commission Administrative Code 9B-72.
- 35 H. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed curtain wall
 36 systems, made from 12" (304.8 mm) lengths of full-size components and showing details of the
 37 following:
 38 1. Joinery
 39 2. Glazing

40 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- 41 A. Installer Qualifications: Installer who has had successful experience with installation of the same
 42 or similar systems required for the project and other projects of similar size and scope.
- 43 B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of fabricating glazed aluminum curtain walls
 44 that meet or exceed performance requirements.
- 45 C. Source Limitations: Obtain aluminum curtain wall system through one source from a single
 46 manufacturer.

- 1 D. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for
 2 aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by
 3 dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate
 4 to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
- 5 1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's
 6 approval. If revisions are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for
 7 review.
- 8 E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate
 9 aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
- 10 1. Build mockups for type(s) of curtain wall elevation(s) indicated, in location(s) shown on
 11 Drawings. Approval of mockups doesn not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract
 12 Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in
 13 writing.
- 14 F. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in
 15 Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination".
- 16 G. Structural-Sealant Glazing: Comply with ASTM C 1401 for design and installation of curtain wall
 17 assemblies.
- 18 H. Provide Florida Product Approval Number.

19 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- 20 A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for glazed aluminum curtain
 21 walls by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

22 1.8 WARRANTY

- 23 A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty.
 24 1. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from Date of Substantial Completion of the project.

25 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

26 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

27 A. Basis-of-Design Product:

28 **Reliance Unit Wall**, Structural Sealant –Glazed unit wall system for 1" (25mm)
 29 Glazing: Captured: 2 1/2" (63.5mm) x 7 1/4" (203.2 mm)

- 30
 31 2. Tested to AAMA 501.
 32

33 B. Substitutions: Refer to Substitutions Section 01 25 00. for procedures and submission 34 requirements.

- 35 1. Post-Contract (Construction Period) Substitutions: Submit written request in order to avoid
 36 curtain wall installation and construction delays; Include Substitution Form and information,
 37 samples,etc.
- 38 2. Product Literature and Drawings: Submit product literature and drawings modified to suit
 39 specific project requirements and job conditions.
- 40 3. Certificates: Submit certificate(s) certifying substitute manufacturer (1) attesting to adherence
 41 to specification requirements for curtain wall system performance criteria, and (2) has been
 42 engaged in the design, manufacturer and fabrication of aluminum curtain walls for a period of
 43 not less than ten (10) years. (Company Name).
- 44 4. Test Reports: Submit test reports verifying compliance with each test requirement required by
 45 the project.
- 46 5. Samples: Provide samples of typical product sections and finish samples in manufacturer's
 47 standard sizes.

- 1 C. Substitution Acceptance: Acceptance will be in written form, either as an addendum or modification,
2 and documented by a formal change order signed by the Owner and Contractor.

3 2.2 MATERIALS

4

- 5 A. Aluminum Extrusions: Alloy and temper recommended by glazed aluminum curtain wall
6 manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish and not less than
7 0.070" (1.8) wall thickness at any location for the main frame and complying with ASTM B 221:
8 6063-T6 alloy and temper.
- 9 B. Aluminum sheet alloy: Shall meet the requirements of ASTM B209.
- 10 C. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel or other materials to be non-corrosive and
11 compatible with aluminum window members, trim hardware, anchors, and other components.
- 12 D. Anchors, Clips, and Accessories: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or zinc-coated steel or
13 iron complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions or other suitable zinc coating;
14 provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
- 15 E. Pressure Plate: Pressure plate shall be aluminum and fastened to the mullion with stainless steel
16 screws.
- 17 F. Reinforcing Members: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or nickel/chrome-plated steel
18 complying with ASTM B 456 for Type SC 3 severe service conditions, or zinc-coated steel or iron
19 complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions or other suitable zinc coating;
20 provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
- 21 G. Sealant: For sealants required within fabricated curtain wall system, provide permanently elastic,
22 non-shrinking, and non-migrating type recommended by sealant manufacturer for joint size and
23 movement.
- 24 H. Thermal Barrier: Thermal separator shall be extruded of a silicone compatible elastomer that
25 provides for a minimum separation from interior to exterior metal of 1/4" (6mm).
- 26 I. Tolerances: Reference to tolerances for wall thickness and other cross-sectional dimensions of
27 glazed curtain wall members are nominal and in compliance with AA Aluminum Standards and
28 Data.

29 2.3 CURTAIN WALL FRAMING

- 30 A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's standard extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of
31 thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
32 1. Glazing System: 4 sided captured.
33 2. Glazing Plane: Front.
- 34 B. Glass: 1" (25.4) insulating glass option.
- 35 C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining,
36 nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- 37 D. Framing Sealants: Shall be suitable for glazed aluminum curtain wall as recommended by sealant
38 manufacturer.
- 39 E. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining,
40 nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials. Where exposed shall
41 be stainless steel.
- 42 F. Perimeter Anchors: When steel anchors are used, provide insulation between steel material and
43 aluminum material to prevent galvanic action.
- 44 G. Packing, Shipping, Handling and Unloading: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original,
45 unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.

- 1 H. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions.
2 Handle curtain wall material and components to avoid damage. Protect curtain wall material against
3 damage from elements, construction activities, and other hazards before, during and after
4 installation.
- 5 I. Provide supplemental steel reinforcement for bracing and stabilization and as required by
6 manufacturer.

7 2.4 GLAZING

- 8 A. Glazing: Comply with Division 08 Section "Glazing". Following glazing options are available.
9 1. System: Outside glazed pressure plate format with 1" (25.4) double glazed insulating glass.
- 10 B. Glazing Gaskets: Gaskets to meet the requirements of ASTM C864.
- 11 C. Spacers and Setting Blocks: Manufacturer's standard elastomeric type.
- 12 D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Manufacturer's standard TFE-fluorocarbon or polyethylene material to which
13 sealants will not develop adhesion.
- 14 E. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer for joint type.

15 2.5 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- 16 A. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements
17 except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil (0.762 mm) thickness per coat.

18 2.6 FABRICATION

- 19 A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- 20 B. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
21 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
22 2. Accurately fitted joints.
23 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
24 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain
25 required glazing edge clearances.
26 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.
27 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent
28 possible.
29 7. Internal weeping system or other means to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring
30 within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to
31 exterior.
- 32 C. Curtain Wall Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using shear block system following
33 manufacturer's standard installation instructions.
- 34 D. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop
35 Drawings.

36 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- 37 A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum
38 Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- 39
40
41
42 1. Factory Finishing:
43 a. High-Performance Organic Finish - Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with
44 AAMA 2604 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color
45 coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with
46 coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

- 1) Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install curtain wall systems plumb, level, and true to line, without warp or rack of frames with manufacturer's prescribed tolerances and installation instructions. Provide support and anchor in place.
 - 1. Dissimilar Materials: Provide separation of aluminum materials from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action contact points.
 - 2. Glazing: Glass shall be outside glazed and held in place with extruded aluminum pressure plates anchored to the mullion using stainless steel fasteners spaced no greater than 9" (228.6) on center.
 - 3. Water Drainage: Each light of glass shall be compartmentalized using joint plugs and silicone sealant to divert water to the horizontal weep locations. Weep holes shall be located in the horizontal pressure plates and covers to divert water to the exterior of the building.
- B. Related Products Installation Requirements:
 - 1. Sealants (Perimeter): Refer to Joint Treatment (Sealants) Section.
 - 2. Glass: Refer to Glass and Glazing Section.
 - a. Reference: ANSI Z97.1, CPSC 16 CFR 1201 and GANA Glazing Manual

3.3 FIELD TESTING

- A. Conduct a water infiltration test comprised of running a continuous stream of diffused water from a 25 foot ½-inch diameter hose for 5 minutes or at rate of 24 gallons per minute for 5 minutes over each section of storefront from a distance of 10 feet. Inspect for leaks. Repair any leaks and re-test window section with leak. Repeat as necessart. At completion of test provide a written certification explaining test procedure results leading up to a leak free condition.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Services: Upon Owner's written request, provide periodic site visit by manufacturer's field service representative.

3.4 ADJUSTING, CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protection: Protect installed product's finish surfaces from damage during construction. Protect aluminum curtain wall system from damage from grinding and polishing compounds, plaster, lime, acid, cement, or other harmful contaminants.
- B. Cleaning: Repair or replace damaged installed products. Clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions prior to owner's acceptance. Remove construction debris from project site and legally dispose of debris.
- C. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.

END OF SECTION 08 44 13



SECTION 08 71 00 - DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes hardware for doors specified in “Hardware Sets”.
- B. Related Divisions:
 - 1. Division 03 Concrete
 - 2. Division 06 Rough & Finish Carpentry
 - 3. Division 07 Joint Sealants
 - 4. Division 08 Openings
 - 5. Division 09 Finishes
 - 6. Division 10 Specialties
 - 7. Division 13 Special Construction
 - 8. Division 26 Electrical
 - 9. Division 27 Communications
 - 10. Division 28 Electronic Safety and Security

1.02 REFERENCES

- A. American National Standards Institute/Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association (ANSI):
 - 1. ANSI/BHMA A156.1 Butts & Hinges (2016)
 - 2. ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Bored & Preassembled Locks & Latches (2017)
 - 3. ANSI/BHMA A156.3 Exit Devices (2020)
 - 4. ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Door Controls – Closers (2019)
 - 5. ANSI/BHMA A156.5 Cylinders and Input Devices for Locks (2020)
 - 6. ANSI/BHMA A156.6 Architectural Door Trim (2015)
 - 7. ANSI/BHMA A156.7 Template Hinge Dimensions (2016)
 - 8. ANSI/BHMA A156.8 Door Controls – Overhead Stops and Holders (2015)
 - 9. ANSI/BHMA A156.13 Mortise Locks & Latches (2017)
 - 10. ANSI/BHMA A156.18 Materials & Finishes (2020)
 - 11. ANSI/BHMA A156.21 Thresholds (2019)
 - 12. ANSI/BHMA A156.22 Door Gasketing Systems (2017)
 - 13. ANSI/BHMA A156.25 Electrified Locks (2018)
 - 14. ANSI/BHMA A156.26 Continuous Hinges (2017)
 - 15. ANSI/BHMA A156.28 Keying Systems (2018)
- B. International Code Council/American National Standards Institute (ICC/ANSI)/ADA:
 - 1. ICC/ANSI A117.1 Standards for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.
- C. Door and Hardware Institute (DHI):
 - 1. DHI Publication – Abbreviations and Symbols (2019).
 - 2. DHI Publication – Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware (2020).
 - 3. DHI Publication – Sequence and Format of Hardware Schedule (2019).
- D. National Fire Protection Agency (NFPA):
 - 1. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.
 - 2. NFPA 80 Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives.
 - 3. NFPA 105 Standard for the Installation of Smoke Door Assemblies.

1.03 SUBMITTALS



- A. Submit in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 01 Administrative Requirements and Submittal Procedures Section.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Schedule hardware in vertical format using the DHI publication Sequence and Formatting for the Hardware Schedule.
 2. Include abbreviations and symbols page to include manufacturers' abbreviations, finish code descriptions, and fastener abbreviations including descriptions according to the DHI publication Abbreviations and Symbols.
 3. Detail headings referencing the Architect's heading, opening number, locations, fire rating, handing, degree of opening, and description of the opening elements. Include Voltage, amperage, and operational descriptions for openings that have electrified hardware.
 4. Coordinate final door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work listing proper sizing of hardware, addressing door thickness, handing, function, mounting accessories, and finish of hardware.
 5. List related door devices specified in other Sections for each opening.
 6. Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC), as certified by DHI, who will affix seal attesting to completeness and correctness, including the review of the hardware schedule prior to submittal.
- C. Product Data:
1. Furnish manufacturers' catalog sheets on design, grade, and function of items listed in hardware schedule. Submit only relevant information and circle or highlight the technical information including: model numbers, sizing information, voltage and amperage requirements, options and accessories required, means of fastening, listings of fire-rated applications, and finishes.
- E. Templates:
1. Within fourteen days of receiving approved door hardware submittals submit complete list of templates for each hardware item to the opening manufacturers and the installers. Include detailed lists of the hardware location requirements for mortised and surface applied hardware.
- F. Wiring Diagrams: Detail a title block for each drawing that includes the project name, project address, architect name, architect's opening number, hardware set, date, and name of the author.
1. Elevation Riser Drawings:
 - a. Furnish one set of elevation drawings with each hardware schedule submittal for hardware sets that contain electrified hardware. Illustrate the openings with proportional representations of the opening and electrified hardware components and dimension their mounting locations as well as sizes of junction boxes and power supplies. Label the components, wire quantities and gauges, high voltage requirements, as well as other building interfaces. Create a legend that complements the drawings with brand names, model numbers, and include voltage and amperage requirements. Add an operational description that includes the normal state of the door, ingress, egress, and what happens in case of power loss or fire alarm activation and any special conditions.
 - b. Upon receipt of approved hardware correct and resubmit elevation drawings with the point-to-point and system drawings.
 2. Point-to-Point and System Drawings: Upon receipt of approved hardware schedule, submit point-to-point per hardware set and a system drawing. Cross-reference all wiring diagrams and the associated drawings to each other.
 - a. Point-to-Point Drawings: Draw each product in a realistic representation including each terminal including those not used, and lines representing wires from component to component, labeling wire colors and gauges.



- b. System Drawing: illustrate all equipment and building interfaces required for the entire system. Include room labels and locations, opening numbers and locations.
- G. Closeout Submittals: Include the following information as well as highlight and flag fire rated openings for annual inspections:
1. Cover page with required information:
 - a. Project name
 - b. Hardware supplier's name and contact information.
 - c. Date of substantial completion.
 2. Final record hardware schedule.
 3. Product Data.
 4. Keying Schedule.
 5. Record Wiring Diagrams.
 - a. System Drawing.
 - b. Elevations.
 - c. Point-to-Point Drawings with all final wire colors noted as terminated. (Include network IP and/or MAC addresses of field devices).
 6. Operating and Maintenance Manual.
 7. Warranty Information.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Hardware supplier shall employ an Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) as certified by DHI and a member of the seal program who will be available at reasonable times during course of work for Project hardware consultation.
1. Electrified Door Hardware Supplier Qualifications: Experienced door hardware supplier who has completed projects with electrified door hardware similar in material, design, and extent to that is indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
 2. Access and Electrified Security Supplier Qualifications: Experienced supplier who has completed projects with access and electrified security door hardware similar in material, design, and extent to that is indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance and be a factory authorized distributor.
- B. Where openings are required to be accessible door hardware shall conform to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- C. Fire Rated Door Assemblies: Where fire-rated door assemblies are indicated, provide door hardware complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and/or labeled by a qualified testing agency for fire-protection ratings indicated.
- D. Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke and draft control doors are required, provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies in compliance with NFPA 105.
- E. Door hardware certified to ANSI/BHMA standards as noted, manufacturer must participate and be listed in BHMA Certified Products Directory.
- F. Substitution requests shall be submitted in compliance with Division 01: create a comparison chart that includes the testing information as well as the warranty for both the specified product and the proposed substitution. Include the reason for requesting the substitution, clear catalog copy highlighting the proposed product and options, compliance statement, technical data, product warranty and lead time, to show how the proposed can meet or exceed established level of design, function, and quality.



1. Items listed with no substitute manufacturers have been requested by the Owner to meet existing standard and will not be reviewed for substitution unless the product is no longer available.
- G. Meetings: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings."
1. Low-voltage Coordination Meeting
 - a. Prior to furnishing door hardware submittals, convene a low-voltage coordination meeting. Meeting participants should include all affected trades including the following, but not limited to: Contractor, installer, supplier, electrical contractor, security consultant and installer, Owner's IT representative, and fire alarm consultant.
 - b. Review sequence of operation for each opening with electrified hardware to ensure that every opening functions properly for the Owner's use.
 - c. Discuss the types of electrified door hardware, inspection, and electrical roughing-in and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
 - d. Verify wire quantities, wire types, wire sizes, conduit sizes, and locations including if the power supplies will be centrally located or if they will be located near each opening.
 - e. Coordinate the door hardware, power supplies, back-up power requirements, access control components, fire alarm interfaces, elevator controls, and related building systems have all proper and necessary components to interface and operate correctly.
 2. Keying Meeting
 - a. Within fourteen days of receiving approved door hardware submittals, contact Owner to establish a keying conference. Include keying meeting decisions into final keying schedule submittal after reviewing the following, but not limited to:
 - ii. Function of the building, flow of traffic, individual area's purpose, and degree of security.
 - iii. Lock functions and operation.
 - iv. Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
 - v. Verify existing keyway(s), and/or proposed keyway(s)
 - vi. Visual key and cylinder identification
 - vii. Quantity of keys required including master level keys, change keys, and keys per lock.
 - viii. Review the key control system.
 - ix. Determine the recipient and contact information for the delivery of keys and accessories.
 3. Pre-installation Meeting
 - a. Convene meeting within fourteen days of receiving approved door hardware submittals. Participants from all affected buildings trades shall attend. Minimum participants should include: Contractor, installer, material supplier, manufacturer representatives, electrical contractor, security consultant, and fire alarm consultant.
 - b. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.
 - c. Include in-conference decisions regarding proper installation methods and procedures for receiving and handling hardware.
 - d. Review all system, elevation, and point-to-point drawings to ensure that all necessary components are provided and detailed.
 - e. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - f. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.
- H. Installer Qualifications: Specialized in performing installation of this Section and have five years minimum documented experience.
1. Electrified Hardware Supplier Qualifications: Experienced door hardware installer who has installed projects with electrified door hardware similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.



2. Access Control and Electrified Security Supplier Qualifications: Experienced installer who has completed projects with access and electrified security door hardware similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance and be a factory authorized to install and commission the system.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Pack each item complete with necessary parts and fasteners in manufacturer's original packaging.
- B. Mark hardware that is not bulk packed with architect's opening number, hardware set number, and item number for each type of hardware. Include keyset symbols and corresponding hardware component for keyed products. Mark hardware that is bulk packed with manufacturers' part number and reference all hardware sets associated.
- C. Deliver hardware to the job site according to the phasing agreed upon in the pre-installation meeting. Inventory the delivery with the supplier's assistance. Immediately note shortages and damages on the shipping receipts and bill of lading. Coordinate replacement or repair with the supplier.
- D. Deliver permanent keys, cores, access control credentials, software, and related accessories directly to Owner via registered mail or overnight package service. Establish the instructions for delivery to Owner at "Keying Conference."
- E. Provide a clean, dry, and secure room for hardware delivered. Shelf hardware off the floor and with larger items of hardware stored on pallets. Arrange locksets and keyed cylinders by opening number. Organize the balance of hardware by brand, model of hardware, and hardware set number. Leave the door markings of the hardware visible for installers.
- F. Waste Management and Disposal: Separate waste materials for use or recycling in accordance with Division 01.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Comply Division 01 for Warranty requirements.
- B. Special Warranty: Warranties specified in this article will not deprive Owner of other rights.
 1. Ten years for manual door closers.
 2. Five years for locks.
 3. Five years for exit devices.
 4. One year for electromechanical door hardware.
 5. All access and electrified security equipment and systems will be warranted for a period of one (1) year commencing with the filing date of the Notice of Completion, provided the system has been inspected and signed off by a factory authorized installer and the factory authorized commissioning agent.

1.07 MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintenance Tool and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, removal, and replacement of door hardware.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS



2.01 HINGES

- A. Hinges, electric hinges, and self-closing hinges of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.
- B. Standards: Products to be certified and listed by the following:
 - 1. Butts and Hinges: ANSI/BHMA A156.1.
 - 2. Template Hinge Dimensions: ANSI/BHMA A156.7.
- C. Butt Hinges:
 - 1. Hinge weight and size unless otherwise indicated in hardware sets:
 - a. Doors up to 36" wide and up to 1-3/4" thick provide hinges with a minimum thickness of .134" and a minimum of 4-1/2" in height.
 - b. Doors from 36" wide up to 42" wide and up to 1-3/4" thick provide hinges with a minimum thickness of .145" and a minimum of 4-1/2" in height.
 - c. For doors from 42" wide up to 48" wide and up to 1-3/4" thick provide hinges with a minimum thickness of .180" and a minimum of 5" in height.
 - d. Doors greater than 1-3/4" thick provide hinges with a minimum thickness of .180" and a minimum of 5" in height.
 - e. Width of hinge is to be minimum required to clear surrounding trim.
 - 2. Base material unless otherwise indicated in hardware sets:
 - a. Exterior Doors: 304 Stainless Steel, Brass or Bronze material.
 - b. Interior Doors: Steel material.
 - c. Fire Rated Doors: Steel or 304 Stainless Steel materials.
 - d. Stainless Steel ball bearing hinges to have stainless steel ball bearings. Steel ball bearings are unacceptable.
 - 3. Quantity of hinges per door unless otherwise stated in hardware sets:
 - a. Doors up to 60" in height provide 2 hinges.
 - b. Doors 60" up to 90" in height provide 3 hinges.
 - c. Doors 90" up to 120" in height provide 4 hinges.
 - d. Doors over 120" in height add 1 additional hinge per each additional 30" in height.
 - e. Dutch doors provide 4 hinges.
 - 4. Hinge design and options unless otherwise indicated in hardware sets:
 - a. Hinges are to be of a square corner five-knuckle design, flat button tips and have ball bearings unless otherwise indicated in hardware sets.
 - b. Out-swinging exterior and out-swinging access-controlled doors are required to have Non-Removable Pins (NRP) to prevent removal of pin while door is in closed position.
 - c. When full width of opening is required, use hinges that are designed to swing door completely from opening when door is opened to 95 degrees.
 - d. When shims are necessary to correct frame or door irregularities, provide metal shims only.
 - 5. Acceptable Manufacturers:

	Standard Weight	Heavy Weight
Best	FBB179/FBB191	FBB168/FBB199
PBB	BB81	4B81
McKinney	TA2714/TA2314	T4A3786/T4A3386

2.02 CONTINUOUS HINGES

- A. Continuous hinges of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.
- B. Standards: Products to be certified and listed by ANSI/BHMA A156.26 Grade 1.



- C. Continuous Geared Hinges:
 - 1. Determine model number by door and frame application, door thickness, frequency of use, and fire rating requirements according to manufacturer’s recommendations.
 - a. Size length of hinge to equal the actual door height unless otherwise stated in hardware sets.
- D. Material and Design:
 - 1. Base material: Anodized aluminum manufactured from 6063-T6 material; unexposed working metal surfaces be coated with TFE dry lubricant.
 - 2. Bearings:
 - a. Continuous hinges are to have a minimum spacing between bearings of 2-9/16”. Typical door from 80” to 84” in height to have a minimum of 32 bearings.
 - 3. Options:
 - a. Provide factory-cut preparations for concealed electric power transfers.
 - b. When full width of opening is required, use hinges that are designed to swing door completely from opening when door is opened to 95 degrees.
 - c. At fire rated openings provide hinges that carry a UL certification, up to and including 90-minute applications for wood doors and up to 3-hour applications for metal doors.

E. Acceptable Manufacturers:

	Heavy Duty
Best	661HDUL
PBB	CG31
ABH	A110HD

2.03 FLUSH BOLTS AND COORDINATORS

- A. Flush bolts of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.
- B. Standards: Manufacturer to be listed by the following: Auxiliary Hardware: ANSI/BHMI A156.16.
- C. Labeled openings: Provide automatic or constant latching flush bolts per hardware schedule for inactive leaf of pairs of doors. Provide dust proof strikes for bottom bolt.
- D. Non-Labeled openings: Provide two flush bolts for inactive leaf of pairs of doors per hardware schedule. Provide extension rods so that the center line of the top flush bolt is not more than 78” above the finish floor. Provide dust proof strike from bottom bolt.

E. Acceptable Manufacturers:

	Manual Flush Bolt	Auto Flush Bolt	Dust Proof Strike
Trimco	3900	3800	3910
Rockwood	555	1942	570
Burns	590 / 591	7842 / 7942	545

- F. Coordinators: Provide for labeled pairs of doors with automatic flush bolts or with vertical rod exit device with a mortise-locking device per hardware schedule. Provide filler piece to extend full width of stop on frame. Provide mounting brackets for closers and special preparation for latches where applicable.

G. Acceptable Manufacturers:

	Coordinator	Bracket	Bracket for stops greater than 2-1/4.”
Trimco	3094	3095	3096
Rockwood	1600	1601AB	1601C



Burns	7600		
-------	------	--	--

2.04 REMOVABLE MULLIONS

- A. Keyed and non-keyed removable mullions of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.
- B. Standards: Manufacturer to be listed by the following: UL/cUL/Warnock Hersey for fire-rated pairs of doors up to 8 feet tall x 8 feet wide opening.
- C. Material and Design:
 - 1. For use with rim exit devices on non-rated and fire rated pairs of doors. Mullion 2" x 3" x 11 gage steel tube.
 - 2. Top Fitting:
 - a. Mullion locked in place without use of a key.
 - b. Deadlock on fire-rated device
- D. Acceptable manufacturers for keyed removable mullions:

	Keyed Fire-Rated	Keyed Non Fire-Rated
Best / Precision	FLKR822	KR822
dormakaba	1340	F1340
Sargent	12-L980	L980S

2.05 LOCKS AND LATCHES

- A. Locks and latches of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.
- B. Standards: Product to be certified and listed by following:
 - 1. ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Series 4000 Certified to Grade 1.
 - 2. ANSI/BHMA A250.13 Certified for a minimum design load of 1150 lbf (100 psf) for single out-swinging doors measuring 36" in width and 84" in height and a minimum design load of 1150lbf (70psf) for out-swinging single doors measuring 48" in width and 84" in height.
 - 3. UL/cUL Labeled and listed for functions up to 3 hours for single doors up to 48" in width and up to 96" in height.
 - 4. UL10C/UBC 7-2 Positive Pressure Rated.
 - 5. ICC/ANSI A1117.1
- C. Lock and latch function numbers and descriptions of manufacturer's series as listed in hardware sets.
- D. Material and Design:
 - 1. Lock and latch chassis to be zinc dichromate for corrosion resistance.
 - 2. Keyed functions to be of a freewheeling design to help resist against vandalism.
 - 3. Non-handed, field reversible.
 - 4. Thru-bolt mounting with no exposed screws.
 - 5. Levers, zinc cast and plated to match finished designation in hardware sets.
- E. Latch and Strike:
 - 1. Stainless Steel latch bolt with minimum of 3/4" throw and deadlocking for keyed and exterior functions.
 - 2. Standard backset to be 2-3/4" and adjustable faceplate to accommodate a square edge door or a standard 1/8" beveled edge door.
 - 3. Strike is to fit a standard ANSI A115 prep measuring 1-1/4" x 4-7/8" with proper lip length to protect surrounding trim.



F. Options:

1. Provide knurled levers on entry side of doors that are potentially dangerous to visually impaired persons.

G. Electric Locks:

1. Fail-Secure (power unlocks lever) outside trim is locked when there is no power and unlocked when power is applied. Lockset will be locked in the event of a power failure (EU).
2. Request to Exit: Monitors inside lever rotation (RQE).

H. Acceptable manufacturers:

Best – Owner Standard	45 / 45HW

2.06 LOCKS AND LATCHES (UNISEX RESTROOMS)

- A. Locks and latches of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.

B. Standards: Product to be certified and listed by following:

1. ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Series 4000 Certified to Grade 1.
2. Provide visual indicator to show occupied status when in use.
3. UL/cUL Labeled and listed up to 3 hours for single doors up to 48” in width and up to 96” in height.
4. UL10C/UBC 7-2 Positive Pressure Rated.
5. ICC/ANSI A117.1.

- C. Lock and latch function numbers and descriptions of manufacturer’s series as listed in hardware sets.

D. Material and Design:

1. Lock cases from fully wrapped, 12-gauge steel, zinc dichromate for corrosion resistance.
2. Non-handed, field reversible without opening lock case.
3. Break-away spindles to prevent unlocking during forced entry or vandalism.
4. Levers, zinc cast, forged brass or stainless steel and plated to match finish designation in hardware sets.
5. Sectional Roses, solid brass or stainless-steel material and have a minimum diameter of 2-7/16”.
6. Escutcheons, of solid brass or stainless-steel material.
7. Armor fronts, self-adjusting to accommodate a square edge door or a standard 1/8” beveled edge door.

E. Latch and Strike:

1. Stainless steel latch bolt with minimum of 3/4” throw and deadlocking for keyed and exterior functions.
2. Strike is to fit a standard ANSI A115 prep measuring 1-1/4” x 4-7/8” with proper lip length to protect surrounding trim.
3. Deadbolts to be 1-3/4” total length with a minimum of a 1” throw and 3/4” internal engagement when fully extended and made of stainless-steel material.

F. Acceptable Manufacturers:

Best – Owner Standard	45H Series



2.07 EXIT DEVICES

- A. Exit Devices of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty. Touchpad type, finish to match balance of door hardware.
- B. Standards: Manufacturer to be certified and/or listed by the following:
 - 1. BHMA Certified ANSI A156.3 Grade 1.
 - 2. UL/cUL Listed for up to 3 hours for “A” labeled doors.
 - 3. UL10C/UBC 7-2 Positive Pressure Rated.
 - 4. UL10B Neutral Pressure Rated.
 - 5. UL 305 Listed for Panic Hardware.
- C. Material and Design:
 - 1. Provide exit devices with actuators that extend a minimum of one-half of door width.
 - 2. Where trim is indicated in hardware sets provide the lever design to match design of lock levers.
 - 3. Exit device to mount flush with door.
 - 4. Latchbolts:
 - a. Rim device – 3/4” throw, Pullman type with automatic dead-latching, stainless steel
 - b. Surface vertical rod device – Top 1/2” throw, Pullman type with automatic dead-latching, stainless steel. Bottom 1/2” throw, Pullman type, held retracted during door swing, stainless steel.
 - 5. Fasteners: Wood screws, machine screws, and thru-bolts.
- D. Lock and Latch Functions: Function numbers and descriptions of manufacturer’s series and lever styles indicated in door hardware sets.
- E. Electric Modifications:
 - 1. Provide Request to Exit (TS) switches as scheduled.
 - 2. Electrified Trim: Outside trim unlocked (EU) by electric current.
- F. Acceptable Manufactures:

Best / Precision	2000 Series
Von Duprin	98 Series (Exterior Alum. Only)
Sargent	80 Series

2.08 CYLINDERS AND KEYING

- A. Cylinders of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.
- B. Products to be certified and listed by the following:
 - 1. Auxiliary Locks: ANSI/BHMA A156.5
- C. Cylinders:
 - 1. Provide cylinders matched to the types required for hardware that has a locking function and for keyed electronic functions. Furnish with appropriate collars, cams, and tailpieces to fit and operate associated hardware. Stacking collars is not acceptable, a single collar of proper size is required.
 - 2. Manufacturer’s six-pin seven-pin small format interchangeable core (SFIC).
 - 3. Provide concealed key control (CKC) at cylinder by stamping or permanently marking the keyset symbol in a location on the cylinder that is concealed when installed.
- D. Keying:



1. Key into Owner's existing key system unless otherwise directed by Owner's Facilities Management.
2. Provide a bitting list to Owner of combinations as established, and expand to twenty-five percent for future use or as directed by Owner.
 - a. Include all of the keysets and bittings of the original key system creating one clean version of the entire key system.
3. Keys to be shipped directly to the Owner's Representative as established during the keying conference.
 - a. Package the keys in individual envelopes, grouped by keyset symbol, and label envelopes with project name, factory registry number, and keyset symbol.
4. Stamp large bow key blanks with visual key control (keyset symbol) and "Do Not Duplicate".
5. Provide interchangeable cores with construction cores as required per the keying meeting.

E. Exit devices at exterior doors must meet the FBC code as well as the criteria in this partition of the specification.

Exit devices must be Grade 1.

2.09 PUSH/PULL PLATES AND BARS

- A. Push/Pull plates and bars of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.
- B. Standards: Manufacturer to be certified by the following:
 1. Architectural Door Trim: ANSI/BHMA A156.6.
 2. Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG).
- C. Push plates: .050" thick, square corner and beveled edges with countersunk screw holes. Width and height as stated in hardware sets.

D. Acceptable Manufacturers:

Trimco	1000 Series
Rockwood	
Burns	

E. Pull Plates: .050" thick, square corner and beveled edges. Width and height as stated in hardware sets, 3/4" diameter pull, with clearance of 2-1/2" from face of door.

F. Acceptable Manufacturers:

Trimco	1000 Series
Rockwood	
Burns	

G. Pull Bar: 1" round bar stock, with 2-1/4" minimum clearance from face of door.

H. Acceptable Manufacturers:

Trimco	1191-4
Rockwood	
Burns	

2.10 CLOSERS

- A. Closers of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty, unless otherwise indicated on hardware schedule, comply with manufacturer's recommendations



for size of closer, depending on width of door, frequency of use, atmospheric pressure, ADAAG requirement, and fire rating.

- B. Standards: Manufacturer to be certified and or listed by the following:
 1. BHMA Certified ANSI A156.4 Grade 1.
 2. ADA Complaint ANSI A117.1.
 3. UL/cUL Listed up to 3 hours.
 4. UL10C Positive Pressure Rated.
 5. UL10B Neutral Pressure Rated.

- C. Material and Design:
 1. Provide cast iron non-handed bodies with full plastic covers.
 2. Closers will have separated staked adjustable valve screws for latch speed, sweep speed, and backcheck.
 3. Provide Tri-Pack arms and brackets for regular arm, top jamb, and parallel arm mounting.
 4. One-piece seamless steel spring tube sealed in hydraulic fluid.
 5. Double heat-treated steel tempered springs.
 6. Precision-machined heat-treated steel piston.
 7. Triple heat-treated steel spindle.
 8. Full rack and pinion operation.

- D. Mounting:
 1. Out-swing doors use surface parallel arm mount closers, except where noted on hardware schedule.
 2. In-swing doors use surface regular arm mount closers, except where noted on hardware schedule.
 3. Provide brackets and shoe supports for aluminum doors and frames to mount fifth screw.
 4. Furnish drop plates where top rail conditions on door do not allow for mounting of closer and where backside of closer is exposed through glass.

- E. Size closers in compliance with requirements for accessibility (ADAAG). Comply with following maximum opening force requirements.
 1. Interior, non-rated hinged openings: 5.0 lbs.
 2. Fire-rated and exterior openings use minimum opening force allowable by authority having jurisdiction.

F. Fasteners: Provide self-reaming, self-tapping wood and machine screws, and sex nuts and bolts for each closer.

G. Acceptable manufacturers:

dormakaba Commercial Hardware	QDC100 Series
Best	EHD9000
Sargent	281 Series

2.11 PROTECTIVE TRIM

- A. Protective trim of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.

- B. Size of protection plate: single doors, size two inches less door width (LDW) on push side of door, and one inch less door width on pull side of door. For pairs of doors, size one inch less door width (LDW) on push side of door, and 1/2 inch on pull side of door. Adjust sizes to accommodate accompanying hardware, such as, edge guards, astragals, and others.
 1. Kick Plates 10" high or sized to door bottom rail height.
 2. Mop Plates 6" high.



- 3. Armor Plates 36" high.
- C. Products to be certified and listed by the following:
 - 1. Architectural Door Trim: ANSI/BHMA A156.6.
 - 2. UL.
- D. Material and Design:
 - 1. 0.050" gage stainless steel.
 - 2. Corner's square, polishing lines, or dominant direction of surface pattern so they run across door width of plate.
 - 3. Bevel top, bottom, and sides uniformly leaving no sharp edges.
 - 4. Countersink holes for screws. Space screw holes so they are no more than eight inches CTC, along a centerline not over 1/2" in from edge around plate. End screws maximum of 0.53" from corners.
- E. UL label stamp required on protection plates when top of plate is more than 16 inches above bottom of door on fire rated openings. Verify door manufacturer's UL listing for maximum height and width of protection plate to be used.

F. Acceptable Manufacturers:

Trimco	K0050, KM050, KA050
Rockwood	
Burns	

2.12 STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Stops and holders of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.
- B. Wall Stops: Provide door stops wherever necessary to prevent door or hardware from striking an adjacent partition or obstruction. Provide wall stops when possible. Door stops and holders mounted in concrete floor or masonry walls have stainless steel machine screws and lead expansion shields.
- C. Products to be certified and listed by the following:
 - 1. Auxiliary Hardware: ANSI/BHMA A156.16.

D. Acceptable Manufacturers:

	Convex	Concave
Trimco	1270WX	1270WV
Rockwood		
Burns		

- E. Overhead Stops and Holders: Provide overhead stops and holders for doors that open against equipment, casework sidelights and other objects that would make wall stops/holders and floor stops/holders inappropriate. Provide sex bolt attachments for mineral core wood door applications.
- F. Products to be certified and listed by the following:
 - 1. Overhead Stops and Holders: ANSI/BHMA A156.8 Grade 1.

G. Acceptable Manufacturers:

	Heavy / Standard Duty Surface	
dormakaba	900/700 Series	
ABH	4000/1000 Series	



Sargent	590/1540 Series	
---------	-----------------	--

2.13 ELECTROMAGNETIC HOLDERS

- A. Electromagnetic holders of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.
- B. Products to be certified and listed by the following:
 - 1. ANSI A156.15 Grade 1.
 - 2. UL/ULC Listed.
 - 3. California State Fire Marshall listed (CSFM).
 - 4. City of New York MEA approved.
- C. Material and Design:
 - 1. Provide electromagnetic holders where self-closing fire doors and smoke barrier doors are required to be held open. Electromagnetic holders to be fail-safe: when electrical current is interrupted, doors release to close automatically. Holding force 25-40 lbs.

D. Acceptable Manufacturers:

dormakaba	EM Series
LCN	SEM Series
Rixson	998M

2.14 POWER TRANSFER

- A. Power transfer of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.
- B. Products to be certified and listed by the following:
 - 1. UL Listed Miscellaneous Fire Door Accessories.
 - 2. UL 10C Listed for up to 3 hours on fire-rated doors and frames.
 - 3. Classified according to Uniform Building Code (UBC) Standard 7-2, Fire Test of Door Assemblies (1997).
- C. Design:
 - 1. Stainless steel tubular wire transfer and cast housing with steel back boxes to provide weather and tamper resistance when door is open or closed.
 - 2. Mortise door and frame installation
 - 3. Include two 18 ga wires, 5 amps @ 12/24 VAC/DC.

D. Acceptable Manufacturers:

Best / Precision	EPT-12C	
Von Duprin	EPT-10	
Securitron	CEPT	

2.15 MODULAR ACCESS CONTROL POWER SUPPLIES

- A. Power supplies of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.
- B. Products to be certified and listed by the following:
 - 1. UL Listed.
- C. Design:



1. Use with modular access control systems.
 2. Field selectable filtered and regulated 12 VDC or 24 VDC constant voltage.
 3. 1, 2, 4, or 6-AMP load capacities. Match the power supply amperage to the total load of the opening /system plus an additional thirty percent to cover line drop, as well as possible expansion.
 4. Circuit breaker protected AC input voltage; secondary output PTC protected.
 5. Fire alarm input provides simultaneous release of fail-safe locks and holders.
 6. Interface relay.
 7. LED status indicators provide information regarding AC input, DC output, and battery backup status.
 8. Separate inputs for activation switch on entry and egress and ingress side of opening.
 9. 5-amp hour battery backup.
 10. Input 115 VAC (230 VAC optional).
 11. Optional dual 12 VDC or 24 VDC output.
 12. Optional power supply monitor module to monitor power supply status, A/C power, and D/C output and battery Status
- D. Include optional modules as required to properly interface, control, and sequence the hardware with the access control system.
- E. Acceptable Manufacturer:
- | | |
|--|-------------|
| | As Required |
|--|-------------|

2.16 THRESHOLDS

- A. Thresholds of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.
- B. Set thresholds for exterior and acoustical openings in full bed of sealant with lead expansion shields and stainless-steel machine screws complying with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants: Notched in field to fit frame by hardware installer. Refer to Drawings for special details.
- C. Standards: Manufacturer to be certified by the following:
 1. Thresholds: ANSI/BHMA A156.21.
 2. American with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG).
- D. Acceptable Manufacturers:

National Guard Products	896S
K.N. Crowder	
Reese	

2.17 DOOR GASKETING AND WEATHERSTRIP

- A. Door gasketing and weatherstrip of one manufacturer as listed for continuity of design and consideration of warranty.
- B. Provide continuous weatherstrip gasketing on exterior doors and provide smoke, light, or sound gasketing, where indicated on hardware schedule. Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications.
 1. Perimeter gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
 2. Meeting stile gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are in closed position.
 3. Door bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold or floor when door is in closed position.
 4. Sound Gasketing: Cutting or notching for stop mounted hardware not permitted.



- 5. Drip Guard: Apply to exterior face of frame header. Lip length to extend 4" beyond width of door.
- C. Products to be certified and listed by the following:
 - 1. Door Gasketing and Edge Seal Systems: ANSI/BHMA A156.22.
 - 2. BHMA certified for door sweeps, automatic door bottoms, and adhesive applied gasketing.
- D. Smoke-Labeled Gasketing: Comply with NFPA 105 listed, labeled, and acceptable to Authorities Having Jurisdiction, for smoke control indicated.
 - 1. Provide smoke-labeled gasketing on 20-minute rated doors and on smoke rated doors.
- E. Fire-Rated Gasketing: Comply with NFPA 80 listed, labeled, and acceptable to Authorities Having Jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated.
- F. Refer to Section 08 1416 Wood Doors for Category A or Category B. Comply with UBC 7-2 and UL10C positive pressure where frame applied intumescent seals are required.

G. Acceptable Manufacturers:

1. Perimeter Gasketing:

	Adhesive Applied
National Guard Products	As indicated in hardware sets.
K.N. Crowder	
Reese	

2. Meeting Stile Weatherstrip:

National Guard Products	As indicated in hardware sets.
K.N. Crowder	
Reese	

2.18 DOOR POSITION SWITCHES

- A. Provide door position switches for openings that require door monitoring.

B. Acceptable Manufacturers:

Dormakaba – MC4
RCI – MC4

2.19 SILENCERS

- A. Where smoke, light, or weather seal are not required, provide three silencers per single door frame, two per double door frame and four per Dutch door frame.
- B. Products to be certified and listed by the following:
 - 1. Auxiliary Hardware: ANSI/BHMA A156.16

C. Acceptable Manufacturers:

Trimco	1229A
Rockwood	
Burns	

2.20 KEY CABINET

- A. Provide key cabinet; surface mounted to wall.



- B. Key control system:
 1. Include two sets of key tags, hooks, labels, and envelopes.
 2. Contain system in metal cabinet with baked enamel finish.
 3. Capacity will be able to hold actual quantities of keys, plus 50 percent.
 4. Provide tools, instruction sheets, and accessories required to complete installation.

C. Acceptable Manufacturers:

Lund Equipment
Telkee Incorporated
Key Control

2.21 FINISHES

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if within range of approved samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within range of approved samples.
- B. Comply with base material and finish requirements indicated by ANSI/BHMA A156.18 designations in hardware schedule.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and frames, with installers present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Where hardware will be installed directly on walls inspect applications for blocking material of sufficient type and size for hardware.
- C. Examine roughing-in and cabling for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections and wiring supplied matches the requirements as described in the wiring diagrams before electrified door hardware installation.
- D. Perform a site survey to determine proper mounting locations for all wirelessly communicating devices. Verify that the surrounding construction and equipment will not interfere with the communication between components.
- E. Where existing products will be reused, examine existing door and frame sizes, preps, swings, ratings, and compare to the specified hardware for compatibility and functionality. The hardware set specified should act as guide for design and function. Provide filler plates as needed to fill and repair existing materials. Test any existing to remain hardware for functionality and visually inspect for damage. Note any defective or damaged products as well as noting any code deficiencies and submit issues and estimated costs for direction of how to proceed with repair or replacement.
- F. Notify Architect via a prepared written report and endorsed by installer of any discrepancies between the door schedule, door types, drawings, and scheduled hardware. List conditions detrimental to application, to the proper and timely completion of the work and performance of the hardware. Proceed only after such discrepancies or conflicts have been resolved in writing.

3.02 INSTALLATION



- A. Install hardware using manufacturers' recommended fasteners and installation instructions, at height locations and clearance tolerances that comply with:
 - 1. NFPA 80
 - 2. NFPA 105
 - 3. ICC/ANSI A117.1
 - 4. DHI Publication – Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware
 - 5. Approved shop drawings
 - 6. Approved hardware schedule
- B. Install soffit mounted gaskets prior to other soffit mounted hardware ensuring a continuous seal around the perimeter of the opening without cutting or notching.
- C. Locate surface mounted door closers on stairwell side of stair doors, interior side of exterior openings, or on the room side of openings, unless it is a sterile room.
- D. Locate wall mounted bumper to contact the operating trim. Verify that pushbuttons of locksets do not contact the stop and inadvertently lock the door.
- E. Mount armor, mop, and kick plates flush with the bottom of the door and centered horizontally on the door.
- F. Notch thresholds with no larger than a 1/32-inch gap matching the frame profile. Set in a full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" forming a tight seal between threshold and mounting surface. Caulk and seal the entire perimeter to prevent water leakage. Remove excess sealants immediately and clean the area thoroughly.
- G. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved. Set unit level, plumb and true to line location.
- H. Locate power supplies and junction boxes as directed and verified in the low-voltage coordination meeting.
- I. Perform final connections of the system components to match the approved operational narratives. Use cable markers to label wires at each termination or end to match the final wiring diagrams. Terminate wiring in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Where quick-connects are seated correctly. Provide wire ties and adhesive pads to secure and organize wires in enclosures. Outside of enclosures seal terminations in waterproof connectors. Include record drawings of the point-point and the elevations in a plastic sleeve attached to the inside cover of the power supply/junction box enclosure for the Owner's use.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Schedule a final walk through to inspect hardware installation ten (10) business days before final acceptance of the Owner. Visually inspect for proper fasteners and verify that doors open, close, latch properly, and that openings are installed to meet NFPA 80 and ANSI A117.1 requirements. Correct deficiencies, including missing hardware immediately. Provide a written report detailing discrepancies of each opening within five (5) business days of the walk through.
- B. Prior to receiving certificate of occupancy have doors inspected by a Certified Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (CFDAI), as certified by Intertek (ITS), submit a written report to the Owner and Contractor. Doors failing inspection must be adjusted, modified, or replaced to be within appropriate code requirements without delay.
- C. Test the functionality of electrified openings upon completion of the installation in accordance with the description of operation and the Owner's intent under the supervision of a factory authorized



representative and an Owner's representative, verify that all features of the software are working correctly, including interfaces with any associated trades. Document the result of all tests and provide these results to the Owner and correct immediately.

3.04 ADJUSTMENT, CLEANING, AND DEMONSTRATING

- A. Prior to final adjustments, the HVAC system must be completed and balanced. Test that all openings meet ANSI A117.1 for closer opening pressure, closing speed, latching, and hardware operating forces. Replace items that cannot be adjusted to operate freely and smoothly or as intended for application.
- B. Prior to final walk-through inspection, clean adjacent surfaces soiled by hardware installation. Clean finish hardware per manufacturer's instructions after final adjustments have been made. Remove all protection and replace items that cannot be cleaned to manufacturer's level of finish quality.
- C. Demonstration and training will be conducted as per the following sessions. All sessions will be recorded and turned over to the Owner for future use.
 - 1. Hardware Maintenance: Conduct a training class for building maintenance personnel demonstrating the adjustment, operation, and maintenance of mechanical and electrified hardware. Special tools for finish hardware to be turned over and demonstrated usage at the meeting.
 - 2. Key control system: Train the Owner's designated representative on the key control system demonstrating the permanent file keys, duplicate loaner keys, key receipts, key envelopes, key change identification sheets, bitting lists, tags, and labels. When key management software is provided training will be provided for the setup and usage of the software.
 - 3. Access control: Demonstrate the management and programming of the access control system including the following, but not limited to:
 - a. System administration personnel to manage the LAN and databases including updating, maintaining, and backing up the system and database software.
 - b. Instruct on all software features and programming for managing the credentials, users, access points, time zones, alarms and events, door monitoring, audit trails, and time schedules.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Leave manufacturer's protective film intact and, protect exit devices, locks, and surface mounted hardware with kraft paper or bubble wrap. Cover fire labels at painted products that bear a label with magnetic or masking tape. Keep protection in place until time of final cleaning and adjustment.

3.06 HARDWARE SET SCHEDULE

- A. Door hardware items have been placed in sets which are intended to be a guide of design, grade, quality, function, operation, and performance.
 - 1. Review products that may require mounting accessories to meet door, frame, and swing conditions as these final details vary from manufacturer to manufacturer and provide as required.
 - 2. Where additional items of hardware are required for completion of the Work, a written statement of such omission, error, or other discrepancy is required to be submitted to the Architect, prior to bid date for clarification via an addendum.

3.07 HARDWARE SCHEDULE



Manufacturer list

Code:	Name:
A-R	Adams Rite
BES	BEST
PRE	BEST (Precision)
DET	Detex
DK	dormakaba
DKA	dormakaba Architectural
DKC	dormakaba Commercial
IVE	Ives
NGP	National Guard Products
RCI	Rutherford Controls Inc
TRI	Trimco Hardware
VON	Von Duprin

Option list

Code:	Name:
TS	Touchbar Monitoring Switch
LD	Less Dogging
LBR	Less bottom rod
WS	Windstorm Label
NLOP	Night Latch, Opt. Pull
C	Concealed Vertical Rod Trim
RX	Request to Exit
B4E	Beveled 4 edges
B4E Heavy	Heavy Bevel Edges
RP3	Rings for 7 pin cylinder
LBR	Less Bottom Rod
FL	Fire Rated Hardware
QEL	Quiet Electric Latch Retraction
MLR	Motorized Latch Retraction
HH	Wind and Impact - Hurricane Rated
VIB	Double Visual Indicator
LDW	Less than Door Width
W	Weatherized
CD	Cylinder Dogging
10-24 SS MS/LA	10-24 Stainless Steel Mach. Screw/Lead Anchor
LAR	Length As Required
RP	Rim Cylinder Ring
NRP	NON-REMOVABLE PINS
ER EX	Electric Latch Retraction with Request To Exit Switch (silencer standard)
CSK	Counter Sunk Holes

Finish list

Code:	Name:
26D	Satin Chrome
US26D	Satin Chrome
US27	Mill Aluminum
604	Zinc plated and dichromate sealed
626	Satin Chrome
628	Clear Anodized Aluminum
630	Satin Stainless Steel
689	Powder-Coated Aluminum
A	Anodized Aluminum
AL	Aluminum, Clear-Coated
B	Brown
CL	Clear



HARDWARE SETS

Set #1 - EXT.ALUM. / CARD READER + INTERCOM + AUTOMATIC OPERATORS

Doors: 1-001

2	Hinge	661HDUL EPT10 120IN	AL	BES
2	Power Transfer	EPT 10		VON
1	Mullion	HH KR 4954 x Ht. as req'd.	689	VON
2	Exit Device	HH RX QEL XP98 NLOP	US26D	VON
2	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 CORMAX RP	626	BES
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E 7 4 RP3 CORMAX	626	BES
2	Pull	1191	630	TRI
2	Automatic Operator	Provided under Section 087113		
2	4.5" Round Push Plate	Provided under Section 087113		
1	Gasketing	5100N Mullion		NGP
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Threshold	896 S LAR (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP
1	Power Supply	PS902 900-2RS		VON
2	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		
1	Intercom	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Provide 48" exit devices cut to appropriate length. Provide drop plates and blade stop spacers as required for door closers. Exit devices and mullion must meet FBC hurricane requirements as documented by Aluminum Door Manufacturer. Operation: Doors normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch bolt. Presenting valid credential to card reader or signal from Intercom System retracts motorized latch bolt and temporarily enables outside actuator switch, allowing either manual or hands-free entry. Inside actuator switch is always enabled. Pressing inside actuator switch retracts latch bolt on inactive leaf (LHR), then automatic operator opens the door, allowing hands-free exiting. Door Position Switches monitor door status. Request-to-Exit Switches in exit devices are activated upon depressing push pad, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Manual free egress is possible at all times through both leaves. Coordinate functionality, wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor, Access Control Contractor, and Automatic Operator Supplier/Installer.

Set #2 - EXT.ALUM. / CARD READER

Doors: C102, C111, C114

2	Hinge	661HDUL EPT10 85IN	AL	BES
2	Power Transfer	EPT 10		VON
1	Mullion	HH KR 4954 x Ht. as req'd.	689	VON
1	Exit Device	HH RX QEL XP98 NLOP	US26D	VON
1	Exit Device	HH RX 98 EO	US26D	VON
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 CORMAX RP	626	BES
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E 7 4 RP3 CORMAX	626	BES
2	Pull	1191	630	TRI
2	Door Closer	QDC119 R SN	689	DKC
1	Gasketing	5100N Mullion		NGP
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Threshold	896 S LAR (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP
1	Power Supply	PS902 900-2RS		VON
2	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		



NOTE: Provide 48" exit devices cut to appropriate length. Provide drop plates and blade stop spacers as required for door closers. Exit devices and mullion must meet FBC hurricane requirements as documented by Aluminum Door Manufacturer. Operation: Doors normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder on active leaf retracts latch bolt. Inactive leaf is for exiting only. Presenting valid credential to card reader retracts motorized latch bolt, allowing entry through the active leaf. Door Position Switches monitor door status. Request-to-Exit Switches in exit devices are activated upon depressing push pad, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control Contractor.

Set #3 - EXT.ALUM. / CARD READER

Doors: 1-010D-2, 1-011-2

1	Hinge	661HDUL EPT10 95IN	AL	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT 10		VON
1	Exit Device	HH RX QEL XP98 NLOP	US26D	VON
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 CORMAX RP	626	BES
1	Pull	1191	630	TRI
1	Door Closer	QDC119 R SN	689	DKC
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Threshold	896 S LAR (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP
1	Power Supply	PS902 900-2RS		VON
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Provide drop plate and blade stop spacer as required for door closers. Exit device must meet FBC hurricane requirements as documented by Aluminum Door Manufacturer. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch bolt. Presenting valid credential to card reader retracts motorized latch bolt, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in exit device is activated upon depressing push pad, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control Contractor.

Set #4 - EXT.ALUM. / CARD READER

Doors: 1-002A-3, C103-1, S101-1

1	Hinge	661HDUL EPT10 85IN	AL	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT 10		VON
1	Exit Device	HH RX QEL XP98 NLOP	US26D	VON
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 CORMAX RP	626	BES
1	Pull	1191	630	TRI
1	Door Closer	QDC119 R SN	689	DKC
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Threshold	896 S LAR (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP
1	Power Supply	PS902 900-2RS		VON
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Provide 48" exit device cut to appropriate length for doors with more than 36" width. Provide drop plate and blade stop spacer as required for door closers. Exit device must meet FBC hurricane requirements as documented by Aluminum Door Manufacturer. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch bolt. Presenting valid credential to card reader retracts motorized latch bolt, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in exit device is activated upon depressing push pad, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control Contractor.



Set #5 - EXT.ALUM. / MONITOR ONLY

Doors: 1-087, 1-088

1	Hinge	661HDUL EPT10 85IN	AL	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC119 R SN	689	DKC
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Threshold	896 S LAR (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Lockset must meet FBC hurricane requirements as documented by Aluminum Door Manufacturer. Operation: Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch bolt. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control Contractor.

Set #7 - EXT.ALUM.

Doors: 1-039A, 1-039B

1	Hinge	661HDUL 85IN	AL	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 D 14 H CORMAX WS	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC119 R SN	689	DKC
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Threshold	896 S LAR (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP

NOTE: Lockset must meet FBC hurricane requirements as documented by Aluminum Door Manufacturer.

Set #8 - EXT.ALUM. / CARD READER

Doors: 1-038-1

1	Hinge	661HDUL EPT10 120IN	AL	BES
1	Hinge	661HDUL 120IN	AL	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
2	Surface Bolt	SB360	604	IVE
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
2	Door Closer	QDC119 R SN	689	DKC
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Threshold	896 S LAR (10-24 SS MS/LA)	US27	NGP
2	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Provide drop plates and blade stop spacers as required for door closers. Lockset and surface bolts must meet FBC hurricane requirements as documented by Aluminum Door Manufacturer. Operation: Doors normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder on active leaf retracts latch bolt. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry through the active leaf. Door Position Switches monitor door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control Contractor.



Set #9 - GATE / CARD READER

Doors: G-101

1	Cylinder-Operated Flushbolt	1870HM	628	A-R
1	Exit Device	40 03CN ER EX W FC3	630	DET
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E 7 4 RP3 CORMAX	626	BES
1	Logic Controller	106595-1 TL K1		DET

NOTE: Provide locking flush bolt, exit device, and controller. Balance of hardware to hang and control swing of gates provided by Gate Manufacturer. Inactive leaf to be prepped to accept appropriate rim strike. Verify appropriate flex conduit length required for connection from exit device to power supply. Operation: Presenting valid credential to card reader retracts electric latch, allowing entry. Free egress is possible at all times through active leaf.

Set #10 - GATE

Doors: G-102

1	Cylinder-Operated Flushbolt	1870HM	628	A-R
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 D 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E 7 4 RP3 CORMAX	626	BES

NOTE: Provide locking flush bolt, Lockset, and cylinder. Balance of hardware to hang and control swing of gates provided by Gate Manufacturer. Inactive leaf to be prepped to accept appropriate strike.

Set #11 - GATE-HARDWARE BY GATE MFR.

Doors: G-103, G-104

NOTE: Hardware provided by Gate Manufacturer.

Set #12 - INT.ALUM. / CARD READER + INTERCOM

Doors: 2-003

8	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
2	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Exit Device	MLR TS 2803 LBR 4903 D	630	PRE
1	Exit Device	TS 2802 LBR 4902 D	630	PRE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 CORMAX RP	626	BES
2	Door Closer	QDC1 13 R	689	DKC
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
2	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PRE
1	Push Button	980MO TD	32D	RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Provide drop plates and blade stop spacers for door closers as required. Operation: Doors normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch bolt, allowing entry through the active leaf. Inactive leaf is for exiting only. Presenting valid credential to card reader or remote signal from pushbutton at Reception retracts motorized latch bolt on active leaf, allowing entry. Door Position Switches monitor door status. Request-to-Exit Switches in exit devices are activated upon depressing push pad, shunting forced door alarm at access control system. Free egress is possible at all times through both leaves. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.



Set #13 - INT.ALUM. / CARD READER + INTERCOM

Doors: 1-002

2	Hinge	661HDUL EPT10 85IN	AL	BES
2	Power Transfer	EPT 10		VON
1	Mullion	KR 4954 x Ht. as req'd.	689	VON
1	Exit Device	RX QEL XP98 NLOP	US26D	VON
1	Exit Device	RX 98 EO	US26D	VON
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 CORMAX RP	626	BES
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E 7 4 RP3 CORMAX	626	BES
2	Pull	1191	630	TRI
2	Door Closer	QDC119 R SN	689	DKC
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Gasketing	5100N Mullion		NGP
2	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		
1	Intercom	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Provide drop plates and blade stop spacers for door closers as required. Use same power supply for exit device as used for exterior vestibule door, #1-001. Operation: Doors normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch bolt, allowing entry through the active leaf. Inactive leaf is for exiting only. Presenting valid credential to card reader or remote signal from Intercom System retracts motorized latch bolt on active leaf, allowing entry. Door Position Switches monitor door status. Request-to-Exit Switches in exit devices are activated upon depressing push pad, shunting forced door alarm at access control system. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #14 - INT.UL.ALUM. / CARD READER

Doors: C202, C101-1

6	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
2	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Exit Device	FL MLR TS 2803 LBR 4903 D	630	PRE
1	Exit Device	FL TS 2802 LBR 4902 D	630	PRE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 CORMAX RP	626	BES
2	Door Closer	QDC1 13 R	689	DKC
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
2	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PRE
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Provide drop plates and blade stop spacers for door closers as required. Operation: Doors normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch bolt, allowing entry through the active leaf. Inactive leaf is for exiting only. Presenting valid credential to card reader retracts motorized latch bolt on active leaf, allowing entry. Door Position Switches monitor door status. Request-to-Exit Switches in exit devices are activated upon depressing push pad, shunting forced door alarm at access control system. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #15 - NOT USED



Set #16 - INT.UL.ALUM.ACTIVE / CARD READER

Doors: C115, C116-1

3	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Active leaf of unequal pair. Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times through active leaf. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #17 - INT.UL.ALUM.INACTIVE / MONITORED

Doors: C115A, C116-1A

3	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Flush Bolt	3820x3810	630	TRI
1	Strike	3910	630	TRI
1	Coordinator	3094 B1	626	TRI
2	Mounting Bracket	3095 or 3096 as req'd.	626	TRI
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA

NOTE: Inactive leaf of unequal pair. Door normally closed and secured by flush bolts. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #18 - INT.UL.ALUM. / CARD READER

Doors: 2-000-2, C100, C103

3	Hinge	FBB168 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Provide 4 hinges at Door #2-000-2. Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor



and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #19 - INT.ALUM.ACTIVE / CARD READER

Doors: 2-046, C116

3	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Active leaf of unequal pair. Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times through active leaf. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #20 - INT.ALUM.INACTIV / MONITORED

Doors: 2-046-1, C116A

3	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
2	Flush Bolt	3917	630	TRI
1	Strike	3910	630	TRI
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA

NOTE: Inactive leaf of unequal pair. Door normally closed and secured by flush bolts. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #21 - INT.ALUM.

Doors: 1-038

6	Hinge	FBB168 45X45	26D	BES
2	Flush Bolt	3917	630	TRI
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 D 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Strike	3910	630	TRI
2	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
2	Overhead Stop	90 2 S	689	DK
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		

NOTE: Coordinate templating requirements for door closer and overhead stop with manufacturer(s) to avoid hardware conflicts.

Set #22 - INT.ALUM. / CARD READER

Doors: 2-000-1

4	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE



1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 13 R	689	DKC
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #23 - INT.ALUM. / CARD READER

Doors: 1-010D-1

4	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 13 R	689	DKC
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Automatic Door Bottom	522N 36"	US27	NGP
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #24 – INT.ALUM.

Doors: 1-010A, 1-010C

6	Hinge	FBB179 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
2	Flush Bolt	3917	630	TRI
1	Strike	3910	630	TRI
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 D 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
2	Overhead Stop	90 2 H	689	DK

Set #25 - INT.ALUM. / CARD READER

Doors: 1-010D

3	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Exit Device	MLR TS 2103 4903 D	630	PRE
1	Door Closer	QDC1 13 R	689	DKC
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PRE
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader retracts motorized latch bolt, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door



status. Request-to-Exit Switch in exit device is activated upon depressing push pad, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #26 - INT.ALUM. / CARD READER

Doors: 1-021

3	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #27 - INT.ALUM. / CARD READER

Doors: 1-083

3	Hinge	FBB168 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #28 - INT.ALUM. / CARD READER

Doors: C206, C104, C108, C112, C113, C117

3	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Exit Device	MLR TS 2103 4903 D	630	PRE
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PRE
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader retracts motorized latch bolt, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in exit device is activated upon depressing push pad, shunting forced door



alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #29 - INT.ALUM.DBL.EGRESS

Doors: C102-1

6	Hinge	FBB168 45X45	26D	BES
2	Exit Device	2801 LBR	630	PRE
2	Door Closer	QDC1 13 R	689	DKC
1	Gasketing	5070 84"	CL	NGP
2	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

Set #30 - INT.ALUM.

Doors: 1-013, 1-037, 1-037-1, 1-052, 1-052-1, 1-081

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 R 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Overhead Stop	70 2 S 7090	626	DK
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		

Set #31 - INT.ALUM.

Doors: 1-083-1

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 AT 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Overhead Stop	70 2 S 7090	626	DK
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Automatic Door Bottom	522N 36"	US27	NGP

Set #32 - INT.ALUM.

Doors: 2-034

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 R 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		

Set #33 - INT.ALUM.

Doors: 2-047, 2-048

3	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 R 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Gasketing	Provided by Alum. Door Manufacturer		
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI

Set #34 - INT.WD. / CARD READER

Doors: 1-084-1

6	Hinge	FBB168 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Flush Bolt	3913	630	TRI
1	Strike	3910	630	TRI



2	Overhead Stop	70 2 S	689	DK
2	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
2	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 1" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Astragal	139SP LAR	A	NGP
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
2	Automatic Door Bottom	423N 36"	US27	NGP
2	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Coordinate door closer and overhead stop templating requirements with manufacturer(s) to avoid hardware conflict. Provide end caps for automatic door bottoms. Install flush bolt in top of door. Install overlapping astragal on push side of inactive leaf. Operation: Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times through the active leaf. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #35 - INT.HM

Doors: 1-086

6	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Exit Device	2203 LBR 4903 D 48"	630	PRE
1	Exit Device	2201 LBR 48"	630	PRE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 CORMAX RP	626	BES
2	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
2	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 1" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
2	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Gasketing	5070 84"	CL	NGP

Set #36 - INT.UL.WD. / CARD READER

Doors: 1-007

6	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Flush Bolt	3820x3810	630	TRI
1	Strike	3910	630	TRI
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
1	Coordinator	3094 B2	626	TRI
2	Mounting Bracket	3095 or 3096 as req'd.	626	TRI
2	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
2	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 1" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
2	Mop Plate	KM050 6" X 1" LDW CSK B4E	630	TRI
2	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
2	Gasketing	672A-BB	A	NGP
2	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Template door closers for 180 degree swing. Operation: Doors normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch on active leaf. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry through active leaf. Door Position Switches monitor door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting



forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times through the active leaf. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #37 -

Doors: 2-012

6	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Flush Bolt	3810 x 3810	630	TRI
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 D 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Strike	3910	630	TRI
1	Coordinator	3094 B2	626	TRI
2	Mounting Bracket	3095 or 3096 as req'd.	626	TRI
2	Door Closer	QDC1 13 R	689	DKC
2	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 1" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
2	Mop Plate	KM050 6" X 1" LDW CSK B4E	630	TRI
2	Gasketing	672A-BB	A	NGP
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP

Set #38 -

Doors: 2-038

6	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Exit Device	FL 2203 LBR 4903 D 48"	630	PRE
1	Exit Device	FL 2201 LBR 48"	630	PRE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 CORMAX RP	626	BES
2	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
2	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 1" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
2	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Gasketing	5070 84"	CL	NGP

Set #39 -

Doors: 1-002A-1, 1-002A-2, 1-010-1, 1-010-2

6	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Exit Device	2703 CD LBR C 4903 D	630	PRE
1	Exit Device	2702 CD LBR C 4902 D	630	PRE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 CORMAX RP	626	BES
2	Mortise Cylinder	1E 7 4 RP3 CORMAX	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 16 R LH	689	DKC
1	Door Closer	QDC1 16 R RH	689	DKC
2	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 1" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
2	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Gasketing	5070 84"	CL	NGP

Set #40 - INT.UL.WD. / CARD READER

Doors: 1-003A, 1-018

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC



1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jamb (2)	B	NGP
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #41 -

Doors: S101

3	Hinge	FBB168 45X45	26D	BES
1	Exit Device	FL 2114 4914 D	630	PRE
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI

Set #42 -

Doors: S201

3	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Exit Device	FL 2108 4908 D	630	PRE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 CORMAX RP	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI

Set #43 -

Doors: 1-016

3	Hinge	FBB168 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 D 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Overhead Stop	70 2 S	689	DK
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jamb (2)	B	NGP

NOTE: Coordinate door closer and overhead stop templating requirements with manufacturer(s) to avoid hardware conflicts.

Set #44 -

Doors: 1-017, 1-019

3	Hinge	FBB168 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 D 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Overhead Stop	70 2 S	689	DK
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI



1 Gasketing 5050 Head & Jambs (2) B NGP

NOTE: Coordinate door closer and overhead stop templating requirements with manufacturer(s) to avoid hardware conflicts.

Set #45 - INT.WD. / CARD READER

Doors: 2-007, 2-008, 2-016, 2-037, 1-010B, 1-003, 1-004, 1-068

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #46 - INT.WD. / CARD READER

Doors: 1-005, 1-026-1, 1-055A

3	Hinge	FBB179 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Template door closer for 180 degree swing where indicated on floor plan. Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #47 - INT.WD. / CARD READER

Doors: 2-001, 2-001C, 2-027, 2-046A, 1-006, 1-006A, 1-083A1

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
1	Overhead Stop	70 2 S	689	DK
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI



3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Coordinate door closer and overhead stop templating requirements with manufacturer(s) to avoid hardware conflict. Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #48 - INT.WD. / CARD READER

Doors: 1-011, 1-011-1

3	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Exit Device	MLR TS 2103 4903 D	630	PRE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 CORMAX RP	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Automatic Door Bottom	423N 36"	US27	NGP
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PRE
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader retracts motorized latch bolt, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in exit device is activated upon depressing push pad, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #49 – INT.WD. / CARD READER

Doors: 1-084

3	Hinge	FBB168 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
1	Overhead Stop	70 2 S	689	DK
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Automatic Door Bottom	423N 36"	US27	NGP
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Coordinate door closer and overhead stop templating requirements with manufacturer(s) to avoid hardware conflict. Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times.



Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #50 - INT.WD. / CR

Doors: 2-003A-1

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PRE
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW 7 DEU 14 H CORMAX RQE	626	BES
2	Door Closer	QDC1 13 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DKA
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		RCI
1	Card Reader	Provided by Access Control Contractor		

NOTE: Coordinate door closer and overhead stop templating requirements with manufacturer(s) to avoid hardware conflict. Door normally closed and locked. Turning key in outside cylinder retracts latch. Presenting valid credential to card reader temporarily unlocks outside lever, allowing entry. Door Position Switch monitors door status. Request-to-Exit Switch in lockset is activated upon turning inside lever when exiting, shunting forced door alarm at Access Control System. Free egress is possible at all times. Coordinate wiring and electrical requirements with Electrical Contractor and Access Control System Contractor.

Set #51 -

Doors: 2-015A, 2-036A, 2-044A, 2-045A, 1-051A, 1-051A1, 1-057A, 1-057A-1, 1-072A, 1-072A-1

3	Hinge	FBB179 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Flush Bolt	3913	630	TRI
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 R 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
2	Overhead Stop	70 2 S	689	DK
2	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

NOTE: Install flush bolt at top of inactive leaf.

Set #52 -

Doors: 2-001B, 2-024A, 2-028A, 2-029A, 2-030A, 2-031A, 2-032A, 2-033A, 2-035A, 2-040A, 1-005A, 1-014A, 1-015A, 1-031A, 1-032A, 1-033A, 1-034A, 1-042A, 1-045A, 1-046A, 1-047A, 1-048A, 1-079A, 1-081A

3	Hinge	FBB179 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 R 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Overhead Stop	70 2 S	689	DK
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

Set #53 -

Doors: 2-039, 2-049C, 1-040, 1-054C, 1-060, 1-060A, 1-080

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 D 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI



3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI
---	----------	-------	------	-----

Set #54 -
Doors: 2-027A

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 D 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Overhead Stop	70 2 S 7090	626	DK
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

Set #55 -
Doors: 1-009A

3	Hinge	FBB168 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 D 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Mop Plate	KM050 6" X 1" LDW CSK B4E	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

Set #56 -
Doors: 2-010A, 1-011B, 1-026

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 D 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Overhead Stop	70 2 S	689	DK
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

Set #57 -
Doors: 1-018A

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 R 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Overhead Stop	70 2 S 7090	626	DK
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

Set #58 -
Doors: 1-027

3	Hinge	FBB179 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 R 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

NOTE: Template door closer for 180 degree as shown on floorplan.

Set #59 -
Doors: 2-001D, 1-020



3	Hinge	FBB179 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 D 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 13 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

Set #60 -

Doors: 1-085

3	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Exit Device	2103 LD 4903 D	630	PRE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E 7 2 CORMAX RP	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 13 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

Set #61 -

Doors: 2-009, 1-068A

3	Hinge	FBB168 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 D 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

NOTE: Template door closer for 180 degree swing, where indicated on floorplan.

Set #62 -

Doors: 2-011A, 1-008A, 1-028A

3	Hinge	FBB179 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 D 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

NOTE: Template door closer for 180 degree swing, where indicated on floorplan.

Set #63 -

Doors: 1-011A

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 R 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Overhead Stop	70 2 S	689	DK
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

NOTE: Coordinate door closer and overhead stop templating requirements with manufacturer(s) to avoid hardware conflict.



Set #64 -

Doors: 2-010, 1-023, 1-056

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 R 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

Set #65 -

Doors: 1-059, 1-071

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 R 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

Set #66 -

Doors: 2-004, 1-059-1

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 R 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI

Set #67 -

Doors: 1-083A

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 G 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 14 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP

Set #68 -

Doors: 1-040A

3	Hinge	FBB179 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 AT 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

NOTE: Template door closer for 180 degree as shown on floorplan.

Set #69 -

Doors: 1-046-1, 1-047

3	Hinge	FBB179 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 AT 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP



1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
---	-----------	---------	-----	-----

Set #70 -

Doors: 2-003A, 1-018B, 1-018C-1

3	Hinge	FBB179 NRP 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 AT 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Automatic Door Bottom	423N 36"	US27	NGP

Set #71 -

Doors: 1-018C

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 AT 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Automatic Door Bottom	423N 36"	US27	NGP

Set #72 -

Doors: 2-045

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 AT 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Roller Bumper	1245	626	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

Set #73 -

Doors: 2-005, 2-006, 2-011, 2-014, 2-015, 2-017, 2-018, 2-019, 2-024, 2-025, 2-035, 2-036, 2-040, 2-041, 2-042, 2-043, 2-044, 1-012, 1-014, 1-015, 1-022, 1-024, 1-025, 1-030, 1-031, 1-032, 1-033, 1-034, 1-035, 1-036, 1-045, 1-046, 1-050, 1-051, 1-055, 1-057, 1-063, 1-064, 1-065, 1-069, 1-070, 1-073, 1-074, 1-075, 1-076, 1-077, 1-078, 1-079

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 AT 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

Set #74 -

Doors: 2-002, 2-013, 2-020, 2-021, 2-022, 2-028, 2-029, 2-030, 2-031, 2-032, 2-033, 1-028, 1-029, 1-042, 1-043, 1-044, 1-048, 1-049, 1-061, 1-062, 1-066, 1-067, 1-072

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 AT 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Overhead Stop	70 2 S 7090	626	DK
3	Silencer	1229A	Gray	TRI

Set #75 -

Doors: 2-047A, 2-047A-1

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 AT 14 H CORMAX	626	BES
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI



1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
---	-----------	-----------------------	---	-----

Set #76 -

Doors: 1-020A

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 L 14 H VIB	626	BES
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Mop Plate	KM050 6" X 1" LDW CSK B4E	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP

Set #77 -

Doors: 2-001A

3	Hinge	FBB179 45X45	26D	BES
1	Mortise Lock	45H 7 L 14 H VIB	626	BES
1	Overhead Stop	70 2 S 7090	626	DK
1	Mop Plate	KM050 6" X 1" LDW CSK B4E	630	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP

Set #78 -

Doors: 2-049, 2-049A, 2-050, 2-050A, 1-008, 1-009, 1-053, 1-053A, 1-054, 1-054A

3	Hinge	FBB168 45X45	26D	BES
1	Push Plate	1001 3	630	TRI
1	Pull Plate	1017 3C	630	TRI
1	Door Closer	QDC1 11 R	689	DKC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" X 2" LDW CSK B4E Heavy	630	TRI
1	Gasketing	5050 Head & Jambs (2)	B	NGP
1	Mop Plate	KM050 6" X 1" LDW CSK B4E	630	TRI
1	Wall Stop	1270 WV	626	TRI

Set #79 - WALL OPENING

Doors: W101, W102

1	N/A	N/A		
---	-----	-----	--	--

NOTE: No hardware required.

**OPENING LIST:**

OPENING #:	SET:	RATING:
1-002A-1	39	
1-002A-2	39	
1-002A-3	4	
1-010-1	39	
1-010-2	39	
1-010A	24	
1-010B	45	
1-010C	24	
W101	79	
W102	79	
1-001	1	
1-002	13	
1-003	45	
1-003A	40	60
1-004	45	
1-005	46	
1-005A	52	
1-006	47	
1-006A	47	
1-007	36	60
1-008	78	
1-008A	62	
1-009	78	
1-009A	55	
1-010D	25	
1-010D-1	23	
1-010D-2	3	
1-011	48	
1-011-1	48	
1-011-2	3	
1-011A	63	
1-011B	56	
1-012	73	
1-013	30	
1-014	73	
1-014A	52	
1-015	73	
1-015A	52	
1-016	43	60
1-017	44	60
1-018	40	60
1-018A	57	
1-018B	70	
1-018C	71	
1-018C-1	70	
1-019	44	60
1-020	59	
1-020A	76	
1-021	26	
1-022	73	
1-023	64	
1-024	73	



1-025	73
1-026	56
1-026-1	46
1-027	58
1-028	74
1-028A	62
1-029	74
1-030	73
1-031	73
1-031A	52
1-032	73
1-032A	52
1-033	73
1-033A	52
1-034	73
1-034A	52
1-035	73
1-036	73
1-037	30
1-037-1	30
1-038	21
1-038-1	8
1-039A	7
1-039B	7
1-040	53
1-040A	68
1-042	74
1-042A	52
1-043	74
1-044	74
1-045	73
1-045A	52
1-046	73
1-046-1	69
1-046A	52
1-047	69
1-047A	52
1-048	74
1-048A	52
1-049	74
1-050	73
1-051	73
1-051A	51
1-051A1	51
1-052	30
1-052-1	30
1-053	78
1-053A	78
1-054	78
1-054A	78
1-054C	53
1-055	73
1-055A	46
1-056	57
1-057	73



1-057A	51	
1-057A-1	51	
1-059	65	
1-059-1	66	
1-060	53	
1-060A	53	
1-061	74	
1-062	74	
1-063	73	
1-064	73	
1-065	73	
1-066	74	
1-067	74	
1-068	45	
1-068A	61	
1-069	73	
1-070	73	
1-071	65	
1-072	74	
1-072A	51	
1-072A-1	51	
1-073	73	
1-074	73	
1-075	73	
1-076	73	
1-077	73	
1-078	73	
1-079	73	
1-079A	52	
1-080	53	
1-081	30	
1-081A	52	
1-083	27	
1-083-1	31	
1-083A	67	
1-083A1	47	
1-084	49	
1-084-1	34	
1-085	60	
1-086	35	
1-087	5	
1-088	5	
C100	18	60
C101-1	14	60
C102	2	
C102-1	29	
C103	18	60
C103-1	4	
C104	28	
C108	28	
C111	2	
C112	28	
C113	28	
C114	2	
C115	16	



C115A	17	
C116	19	
C116-1	16	60
C116-1A	17	60
C116A	20	
C117	28	
G-101	9	
G-102	10	
G-103	11	
G-104	11	
S101	41	60
S101-1	4	
2-000-1	22	
2-000-2	18	
2-001	47	
2-001A	77	
2-001B	52	
2-001C	47	
2-001D	59	
2-002	74	
2-003	12	
2-003A	70	
2-003A-1	50	
2-004	66	
2-005	73	
2-006	73	
2-007	45	
2-008	45	
2-009	61	
2-010	64	
2-010A	56	
2-011	73	
2-011A	62	
2-012	37	60
2-013	74	
2-014	73	
2-015	73	
2-015A	51	
2-016	45	
2-017	73	
2-018	73	
2-019	73	
2-020	74	
2-021	74	
2-022	74	
2-024	73	
2-024A	52	
2-025	73	
2-027	47	
2-027A	54	
2-028	74	
2-028A	52	
2-029	74	
2-029A	52	
2-030	74	



2-030A	52	
2-031	74	
2-031A	52	
2-032	74	
2-032A	52	
2-033	74	
2-033A	52	
2-034	32	
2-035	73	
2-035A	52	
2-036	73	
2-036A	51	
2-037	45	
2-038	38	
2-039	53	
2-040	73	
2-040A	52	
2-041	73	
2-042	73	
2-043	73	
2-044	73	
2-044A	51	
2-045	72	
2-045A	51	
2-046	19	
2-046-1	20	
2-046A	47	
2-047	33	
2-047A	75	
2-047A-1	75	
2-048	33	
2-049	78	
2-049A	78	
2-049C	53	
2-050	78	
2-050A	78	
C202	14	60
C206	28	
S201	42	60

END of SECTION



SECTION 08 71 13 - AUTOMATIC DOORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes the following types of automatic door operators:
 - 1. Low-energy door operators for swinging doors.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 7 Sections for caulking to the extent not specified in this section.
 - 2. Division 8 Sections for "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" for entrances furnished and installed separately in Division 8 Section.
 - 3. Division 8 Section "Door Hardware" for hardware to the extent not specified in this section.
 - 4. Division 8 Section "Glazing" for materials and installation requirements of glazing for automatic entrances.
 - 5. Division 26 and 28 Sections for electrical connections including conduit and wiring for automatic entrance operators and access-control devices.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. References: Comply with the version year adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
 - 1. ANSI A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.
 - 2. ICC/IBC - International Building Code.
 - 3. CUL – Approved for use in Canada.
 - 4. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
 - 5. NFPA 80 - Fire Doors and Windows.
 - 6. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.
 - 7. NFPA 105 - Installation of Smoke Door Assemblies.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI) / Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association (BHMA).
 - 1. ANSI/BHMA A156.19 Standards for Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors.
- C. Underwriters Laboratories (UL).
 - 1. UL10C – Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 - 2. UL 325 - Standard for Safety for Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver, and Window Operators and Systems.
- D. American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers (AAADM).
- E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).



1. ASTM B221 Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles and Tubes.
 2. ASTM B209 Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Sheet and Plate.
- F. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA).
1. AAMA 611 Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum.
- G. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM).
1. Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural Metal Products.
- H. International Code Council (IBC).
1. IBC: International Building Code Building Code.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activation device: Device that, when actuated, sends an electrical signal to the door operator to initiate the door operation.
- B. Monitored Safety Devices: A tested system that works in conjunction with the automatic door control that detects the presence of a person or an object within a zone where contact could occur and provides a signal to stop the movement of the door.
- C. AAADM: American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers.
- D. Operating ambient Temperature Range: 5 Degrees F to plus 122 degrees F (minus 15 C to 50 degrees C).
- E. For automatic door terminology, refer to ANSI/BHMA A 156.19 for definitions of terms.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide automatic doors that have been designed and fabricated to comply with specified performance requirements, as demonstrated by testing manufacturers corresponding systems.
- B. Compliance:
1. ICC/IBC International Building Code
 2. ANSI/BHMA A 156.19 American National Standard for Power Operated Doors Pedestrian Doors.
 3. UL 325 Listed
 4. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.
 5. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code
 6. CUL Approved for use in Canada
 7. UL Listed Fire Door Operator with Automatic Closer
- C. Automatic Door equipment accommodates medium to heavy pedestrian traffic.
- D. Opening Force Requirements:
1. Power-Operated swinging doors shall open with a manual force not to exceed 30 lbf. (133N) to set the door in motion and 15 lbf. to fully open the door with force applied at 1" (25mm) from the latched edge of the door. The required force to prevent a stopped door



from opening or closing shall not exceed 15 lbf. (67N) measured 1" (25mm) from the latch edge of the door at any point during the opening or closing.

- E. Closing Time:
 1. Door operators shall be field adjustable to close 90 degrees to 10 degrees in 3 seconds or longer per ANSI/BHMA A 156.19 standard.
 2. Door shall be field adjusted to close from 10 degrees to fully closed position in not less than 1.5 seconds.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with Division 01 – Submittal Procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's product data sheets including installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles fabrication, operational descriptions and finishes.
- C. Shop Drawings: For automatic entrances. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, hardware mounting heights, additional accessories and attachments to other work.
- D. Samples: color samples of exposed finish as required.
- E. Informational Submittals: Manufacturers product information and applicable sustainability program credits that are available towards a LEED rated product certification.
 1. Credit MR 4.1 and 4.2: Manufacture's or fabricator's certificate indicating percentage of post-consumer recycled content by weight and pre-consumer recycled content by weight for each product specified under this section.
- F. Manufacturers Field Reports: Submit manufacturer's field reports from AAADM certified technician of inspection and approval of doors for compliance with ANSI/BHMA A 156.19 after completion of installation.
- G. Operating and Maintenance Manuals: Provide manufacturers operating, owners and maintenance manuals for each item specified as required in Division 01, Closeout Submittals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: 10 years minimum of documented experience in manufacturing door equipment similar to that indicated within this specification with a proven record of successful service performance. A manufacturer with company certificate issued by AAADM.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installers, trained by the primary product manufacturers, with a minimum 5 years documented experience installing and maintenance of units similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated in this specification and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance. Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation and maintenance of units by AAADM required for this Project
- C. Source Limitations for Automatic Operators: Obtain each type of automatic door operator and sensor components specified in this section from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.



- E. Power-Operated Door Standard: ANSI/BHMA A 156.19 Current year.
- F. Emergency-Exit Door Requirements: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for automatic entrances serving as a required means of egress.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings to receive automatic entrances by field measurements before fabrication.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate door operators with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish. Coordinate hardware for automatic entrances with hardware required for rest of project.
- B. Electrical System Roughing-in: Coordinate layout and installation of automatic power door operator with connections to power supplies and access-control system.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Automatic Door Operators to be free of defects in material and workmanship for a period of One (1) year from the date of substantial completion.
- B. During the warranty period a factory trained technician shall preform service and affect repairs. A safety inspection shall be performed after each adjustment or repair and a completed inspection form submitted to the owner.
- C. During the warranty period all warranty work shall be performed during normal working hours.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. dormakaba • Reamstown, PA • 1-844-SPEC-NOW (1-844-773-2669) • Website: www.dormakaba.us • Email: specnow@dorma.com
- B. Substitutions: Requests for substitution and product approval in compliance with the specification must be submitted in writing and in accordance with the procedures outlined in Division 1, Section "Substitution Procedures". Approval of requests is at the discretion of the architect, owner, and their designated consultants.

2.2 AUTOMATIC SWING DOOR OPERATOR

- A. Model: DORMA, ED Series; ED250 (exterior), ED100 (interior) (Basis of Design); An Integrated, self-learning automatic swing door operator with an advanced CPU, a multistage gearbox with real time adaptive software and available user interface.
 1. Automatic Door Configuration:



- a. Configuration: Single swing door or pair of doors swinging.
- b. Traffic Pattern: two-way
- c. Mounting: Surface applied

B. Control Features

- 1. Power-hold Close
- 2. Built in Lock Delay
- 3. On-Off-Hold Open switch control to control door function, (Automatic-Hold Open- Exit Only)
- 4. On-Off Power Switch
- 5. Fire Alarm Integration
- 6. Field Adjustable Handing
- 7. Push and Go
- 8. Power Assist Opening Activation
- 9. Intergrated Connections for Monitored Safety Sensors and other accessories.
- 10. Integrated access control

C. Door Control Features

- 1. Wind Load and Stack Pressure microprocessor monitored with power boost to ensure secure opening and closing in changing conditions.
- 2. Door Weight Max. ED 250 (Max. Door Weight: 800 lbs).

D. Header Size: Fine header height at 2-3/4" by 5-1/8" depth.

2.3 ACTIVATION DEVICES

A. Activation Device:

- 1. Push Plate: Hard wired, 4-1/2 inch round stainless steel push plate engraved with "Push to Open" with a handicap logo.
- 2. Access control activator: Card Reader as selected by architect.

2.4 ELECTRICAL

A. Electrical 115 V AC +/- 10% 50/60 Hz 6.6 A max.

2.5 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Anodized Finish:

- 1. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine doors and frames with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, wall and floor construction and other conditions affecting performance of automatic entrances.



- B. Examine roughing in for electrical source power to verify actual locations of wiring connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Do not install damaged components. Fit frame joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion. Rigidly secure non-movement joints.
- B. Entrances: Install automatic entrances plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades without warp or rack of framing members and doors. Anchor securely in place.
 - 1. Install surface-mounted hardware using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.
 - 2. Set headers, carrier assemblies, tracks, operating brackets, and guides level and true to location with anchorage for permanent support.
- C. Door Operators: Connect door operators to electrical power distribution system as specified in Division 26 Sections
- D. Sealants: Comply with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to provide seal between the operator housing and wall surface. installation.
- E. Signage: Apply signage on both sides of each door and each sidelight as required by ANSI/BHMA A 156.19

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's representative shall provide technical assistance and guidance for installation of automatic doors.
 - 1. Factory trained and AAADM certified representative shall test and inspect each automatic door to determine compliance of the installed system to ANSI/BHMA A 156.19

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust door operators and controls for smooth and safe operation.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by automatic operator installation promptly after installation .

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory authorized representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain safe operation of automatic entrances.



3.7 **HARDWARE SETS:**

AO-1: Exterior with Card Reader + Intercom

Doors: 1-001

- 1 Pair ED250 Fine Header Full Length Cover
- 2 Push Plate Actuator
- 1 Card Reader (Provided by Security Contractor)
- 1 Intercom Station (Provided by Security Contractor)

NOTE: Refer to Hardware Sets in related Door Hardware and Aluminum Door sections for operational descriptions and door hardware details for each opening listed above. Coordinate wiring, electrical, and installation requirements with Electrical Contractor, Security Contractor, Hardware Supplier, and Aluminum Door and Frame Supplier.

END of SECTION



1 **SECTION 08 80 00 - GLAZING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those
5 specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this
6 Section:

- 7 1. Windows.
8 2. Doors.
9 3. Glazed entrances.
10 4. Interior borrowed lites, interior storefront windows and doors.
11 5. Storefront framing.
12

13 B. Refer to Division 8, Section 08 88 13 "Fire-Resistant Glazing" for units with fire rated glass.

14 C. Refer to Division 8, Section 08 41 13 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" for exterior
15 aluminum panels.

16 **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

17 A. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit that contains dehydrated air or a
18 specified gas.

19 B. Deterioration of Coated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the
20 manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for
21 maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects
22 include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in metallic coating.

23 C. Deterioration of Insulating Glass: Failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is attributed to
24 the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for
25 maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions.
26 Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of
27 glass.

28 D. Deterioration of Laminated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the
29 manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for
30 maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions.
31 Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and
32 blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.

33 **1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

34 A. General: Provide glazing systems capable of withstanding normal thermal movement and wind
35 and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable
36 to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or



- 1 gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in
2 construction.
- 3 B. Glass Design: Glass thickness designations indicated are minimums and are for detailing only.
4 Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads and in-service conditions. Provide glass
5 lites in the thickness designations indicated for various size openings, but not less than
6 thicknesses and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the
7 following criteria:
- 8 1. Glass Thicknesses: Select minimum glass thicknesses to comply with ASTM E 1300,
9 according to the following requirements:
- 10 a. Specified Design Wind Loads: As indicated on the structural drawings, but not less
11 than wind loads applicable to Project as required by ASCE 7 "Minimum Design
12 Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 6.0 "Wind Loads."
- 13 1) Basic Wind Speed: Refer to Structural Drawings.
14 2) Importance Factor: Refer to Structural Drawings.
15 3) Exposure Category: Refer to Structural Drawings.
16
- 17 b. Probability of Breakage for Vertical Glazing: 8 lites per 1000 for lites set vertically
18 or not more than 15 degrees off vertical and under wind action.
- 19 1) Load Duration: 60 seconds or less.
- 20 c. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 6.0 mm.
- 21
- 22 d. Thickness of Tinted and Heat-Absorbing Glass: Provide the same thickness for
23 each tint color indicated throughout Project.
- 24 C. Thermal Movements: Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the
25 following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass
26 framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface
27 temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
- 28 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C),
29 material surfaces.
- 30 D. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties
31 specified based on manufacturer's published test data, as determined according to procedures
32 indicated below:
- 33 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6.0 mm thick.
34 2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
35 3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall
36 unit and for each lite 6.0 mm thick and a nominal **1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-)** wide interspace.
- 37 **1.4 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS**
- 38 A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.
- 39 B. Glazing Schedule: Use the same designations indicated on Drawings.



1 C. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Test Report: From glazing sealant manufacturer.

2 **1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

3 A. Submit samples of insulated glass unit.

4 B. Product data for each glass product and glazing material indicated.

5
6 C. Samples for verification purposes of 12-inch (300 mm) square samples of each type of glass indicated except for clear monolithic glass products, and 12-inch (300 mm) long samples of each color required (except black) for each type of sealant or gasket exposed to view. Install sealant or gasket sample between two strips of material representative in color of the adjoining framing system.

7
8
9
10
11 D. Product certificates signed by glazing materials manufacturers certifying that their products comply with specified requirements.

12
13
14
15 1. Separate certifications are not required for glazing materials bearing manufacturer's permanent labels designating type and thickness of glass, provided labels represent a quality control program of a recognized certification agency or independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

16
17
18
19
20 E. Compatibility and adhesion test reports from sealant manufacturer indicating that glazing materials were tested for compatibility and adhesion with glazing sealants. Include sealant manufacturer's interpretation of test results relative to sealant performance and recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

21
22
23
24 F. Compatibility test report from manufacturer of insulating glass edge sealant indicating that glass edge sealants were tested for compatibility with other glazing materials including sealants, glazing tape, gaskets, setting blocks and edge blocks.

25
26
27
28 G. Product test reports for each type of glazing sealant and gasket indicated, evidencing compliance with requirements specified.

29
30
31
32 H. Submit Florida Product Approval Number, certifying that products installed conform to the Florida Building Code 2004.

33
34 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

35 A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Submit to elastomeric glazing sealant manufacturers, for testing according to ASTM C 1087, samples of each glazing material type, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member that will contact or affect elastomeric glazing sealants:

36
37
38
39 B. Glazing for Fire-Rated Door and Window Assemblies: Glazing for assemblies that comply with NFPA 80 and that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257.

40
41
42
43
44 1. Refer to Section 08 14 16 for interior wood door fire rated light kits.
45 2. Refer to Section 08 88 13 for fire rated door and light glazing / framing.



- 1 C. Safety Glazing Products: Comply with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 and, for wired
2 glass, ANSI Z97.1.
- 3 D. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers
4 and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these
5 publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- 6 1. GANA Publications: GANA Laminated Division's "Laminated Glass Design Guide" and
7 GANA's "Glazing Manual."
8 2. AAMA Publications: AAMA GDSG-1, "Glass Design for Sloped Glazing," and AAMA TIR-
9 A7, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
10 3. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "Glazing Guidelines for Sealed
11 Insulating Glass Units."
- 12 E. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least
13 one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the Insulating Glass
14 Certification Council.

15 1.7 WARRANTY

- 16 A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer's standard form,
17 made out to Owner and signed by coated-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace coated-glass
18 units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to
19 Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
- 20 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- 21 B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Laminated Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out
22 to Owner and signed by laminated-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace laminated-glass
23 units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to
24 Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
- 25 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- 26 C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out
27 to Owner and signed by insulating-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace insulating-glass units
28 that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project
29 site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
- 30 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

31 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- 32 A. Protect glazing materials to comply with manufacturer's directions and as needed to prevent
33 damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct expo-
34 sure to sun, or other causes.
35
36
- 37 1. Where insulating glass units will be exposed to substantial altitude changes, comply with
38 insulating glass fabricator's recommendations for venting and sealing to avoid hermetic
39 seal ruptures.



1 **1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 2 A. Environmental Conditions: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate
3 temperature conditions are outside the limits permitted by glazing materials manufacturer or
4 when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

5 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

6 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- 7 A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to
8 product selection:
- 9 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be
10 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
11 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers
12 specified.

13 **2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS**

- 14 A. Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I (transparent flat glass), Quality-Q3; of class
15 indicated.
- 16 1. Ultra-Clear (Low-Iron) Float Glass: Class I (clear); with a minimum 91 percent visible light
17 transmission and a minimum solar heat gain coefficient of 0.87.
- 18 a. Available Products:
- 19 1) AFG Industries Inc.; Krystal Klear.
20 2) Pilkington Building Products North America; Optiwhite.
21 3) PPG Industries, Inc.; Starphire.
- 22 B. Heat-Treated Float Glass: ASTM C 1048; Type I (transparent flat glass); Quality-Q3; of class,
23 kind, and condition indicated.
- 24 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel
25 to bottom edge of glass as installed, unless otherwise indicated.
26 2. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed float glass where
27 needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites
28 and to comply with glass design requirements specified in Part 1 "Performance
29 Requirements" Article.
30 3. For uncoated glass, comply with requirements for Condition A.
31 4. For coated vision glass, comply with requirements for Condition C (other uncoated glass).
32 5. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) float glass in place of annealed or Kind HS (heat-
33 strengthened) float glass where safety glass is indicated.
- 34 C. Ceramic-Coated Vision Glass: Float glass with ceramic enamel applied by silk-screened
35 process and complying with ASTM C 1048, Condition C (other coated glass), Type I
36 (transparent flat glass), Quality-Q3, Specification No. 95-1-31 in GANA Tempering Division's
37 "Engineering Standards Manual," and other requirements specified.



- 1 D. Pyrolytic-Coated Float Glass: ASTM C 1376, float glass with metallic-oxide coating applied by
 2 pyrolytic deposition process during initial manufacture, and complying with other requirements
 3 specified.
- 4 E. Laminated Glass: ASTM C 1172, and complying with other requirements specified and with the
 5 following:
- 6 1. Interlayer: Polyvinyl butyral of thickness indicated with a proven record of no tendency to
 7 bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after laminating glass lites
 8 and installation. Note some panels to have opaque interlayer.
- 9 F. Insulating-Glass Units, General: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass
 10 separated by a dehydrated interspace, and complying with ASTM E 774 for Class CBA units
 11 and with requirements specified in this Article and in Part 2 "Insulating-Glass Units" Article.
- 12 1. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed glass where
 13 needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites
 14 and to comply with glass design requirements specified in Part 1 "Performance
 15 Requirements" Article.
- 16 2. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: Dimensions indicated for insulating-
 17 glass units are nominal and the overall thicknesses of units are measured perpendicularly
 18 from outer surfaces of glass lites at unit's edge.
- 19 3. Sealing System: Dual seal.
- 20 4. Spacer Specifications: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
- 21 G. Ceramic-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C 1048, Condition B (spandrel glass, one surface
 22 ceramic coated), Type I (transparent flat glass), Quality-Q3, and complying with other
 23 requirements specified.
- 24
- 25 1. Fallout Resistance: Provide spandrel units identical to those passing the fallout-
 26 resistance test for spandrel glass specified in ASTM C 1048. Coordinate tempered
 27 locations.

28 **2.3 GLAZING GASKETS**

- 29 A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of material indicated below,
 30 complying with standards referenced with name of elastomer indicated below, and of profile and
 31 hardness required to maintain watertight seal:
- 32 1. Neoprene, ASTM C 864.
- 33 2. EPDM, ASTM C 864.
- 34 3. Silicone, ASTM C 1115.
- 35 4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber, ASTM C 1115.
- 36 5. Any material indicated above.
- 37 B. Soft Compression Gaskets: Extruded or molded, closed-cell, integral-skinned gaskets of
 38 material indicated below; complying with ASTM C 509, Type II, black; and of profile and
 39 hardness required to maintain watertight seal:
- 40 1. Neoprene.
- 41 2. EPDM.
- 42 3. Silicone.
- 43 4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber.
- 44 5. Any material indicated above.



1 **2.4 GLAZING SEALANTS**

2 A. General: Provide products of type indicated, complying with the following requirements:

- 3 1. Compatibility: Select glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other
4 materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and
5 glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated
6 by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
7 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting
8 glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of
9 installation.
10 3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full
11 range.

12 B. Elastomeric Glazing Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for
13 each liquid-applied chemically curing sealant specified, including those referencing
14 ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint
15 substrates.

- 16 1. Manufacturer's standard.
17

18 **2.5 GLAZING TAPES**

19 A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based elastomeric tape with a solids
20 content of 100 percent; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with
21 or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for
22 application indicated; packaged on rolls with a release paper backing; and complying with
23 ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:

- 24 1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
25 2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous
26 pressure.
27 3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous
28 pressure.

29 B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive
30 on both surfaces; packaged on rolls with release liner protecting adhesive; and complying with
31 AAMA 800 for the following types:

- 32 1. Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
33 2. Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of
34 liquid sealant.

35 **2.6 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS**

36 A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing
37 standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application
38 indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.

39 B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

40 C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or
41 minus 5.



- 1 D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness
2 required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- 3 E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side
4 walking).
- 5 F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and
6 density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant
7 performance.
- 8 G. Perimeter Insulation for Fire-Resistive Glazing: Identical to product used in test assembly to
9 obtain fire-resistance rating.

10 **2.7 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS**

- 11 A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and
12 face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of
13 product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance
14 requirements.

15 **2.8 MONOLITHIC FLOAT-GLASS UNITS**

- 16 A. Uncoated Clear Float-Glass Units: Class 1 (clear) Kind FT (fully tempered, where indicated)
17 float glass.
- 18 1. Thickness: 6.0 mm.
- 19 B. Single Glazed Passive Solar Low-E Glass. (Exterior Doors)
- 20 1. Vitro SolarBan 60 Low-E
- 21 2. Thickness: 6.0 mm, tempered.

22 **2.9 INSULATING-GLASS UNITS FOR ALUMINUM STOREFRONT & CURTAIN WALLS**

- 23 A. Passive Solar Low-E Insulating-Glass Units:
- 24 1. **Products- Basis of Design:**
- 25 a. **Vitro Architectural Glass SolarBan 60 Low-E (2)**
- 26 2. Overall Unit Minimum Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: 25 and 6.0 mm.
- 27 3. Interspace Content: Air.
- 28 4. Outdoor Lite: Class 1 (clear) float glass, Low-E on #2 Surface (sputter coating).
- 29 a. Kind FT (fully tempered), where indicated.
- 30 b. Acid etched, where indicated.
- 31 5. Indoor Lite: Class 1 (clear) float glass.
- 32 a. Kind FT (fully tempered), where indicated.



- 1 b. Acid etched, where indicated.
 2
 3 6. Low-E-Coated Film: Suspended in the interspace.
 4 7. Visible Light Transmittance: 70 percent minimum.
 5 8. Shading Coefficient: 0.39
 6 9. LSG Ratio: 1.79

7 **2.12 EXECUTION**

8 **2.10 GLAZING**

- 9 A. General: Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants,
 10 gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated,
 11 including those in referenced glazing publications.
- 12 1. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass,
 13 minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable
 14 tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.
 15 2. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged
 16 glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass
 17 with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and
 18 impair performance and appearance.
 19 3. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by
 20 preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.
 21 4. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing
 22 publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course
 23 of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
 24 5. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
 25 6. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches (1270
 26 mm).
 27 7. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving
 28 sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and
 29 according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- 30 B. Tape Glazing: Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed
 31 edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops. Install tapes continuously, but
 32 not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- 33 1. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs.
 34 Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.
 35 2. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not
 36 lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
 37 3. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
 38 4. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting
 39 dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of
 40 removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of
 41 openings.
 42 5. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.
- 43 C. Gasket Glazing (Dry): Fabricate compression gaskets in lengths recommended by gasket
 44 manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.



- 1 1. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in
2 place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
 - 3 2. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression
4 gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place
5 against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward
6 centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without
7 developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by
8 gasket manufacturer.
 - 9 3. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.
- 10 D. Sealant Glazing (Wet): Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant
11 backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent
12 sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure.
13 Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed
14 sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- 15 1. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or
16 bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
 - 17 2. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

18 **2.11 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- 19 A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed
20 streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove
21 nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces. Protect glass from contact with contaminating
22 substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such
23 protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances
24 immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- 25 B. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from
26 natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.

27 **END OF SECTION 08 80 00**



1 **SECTION 08 83 00 - MIRRORS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 A. Items included in this section

4 1. Sheet Mirrors (Custom) – Location: Restrooms

5 **1.2 REFERENCES**

6 A. ASTM C 1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass.

7 B. ASTM C 1503 - Standard Specification for Silvered Flat Glass Mirror.

8 C. Glass Association of North America (GANA) Glazing Manual.

9 **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

10 A. Comply with Division 1 - Submittal Procedures.

11 B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data, including performance characteristics and
12 installation instructions.

13 C. Shop Drawings: Submit manufacturer's or fabricator's shop drawings, including plans,
14 elevations, sections, and details, indicating glass dimensions, tolerances, types, thicknesses,
15 and coatings.

16 D. Samples: Submit manufacturer's samples of each type and thickness.

17 E. Cleaning Instructions: Submit manufacturer's cleaning instructions.

18 F. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's standard 10-year warranty for mirror.

19 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

20 A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Minimum of 5 years experience manufacturing mirror.

21 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

22 A. Delivery:

- 23 1. Deliver mirror to site in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
24 2. Deliver mirror in manufacturer's or fabricator's original containers and packaging, with
25 labels clearly identifying product name and manufacturer.

26 B. Storage:

- 27 1. Store mirror in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
28 2. Store mirror in clean, dry area indoors.
29 3. Protect from exposure to direct sunlight and freezing temperatures.
30 4. Apply temporary coverings loosely to allow adequate ventilation.
31 5. Protect from contact with corrosive chemicals.
32 6. Avoid placement of mirror's edge on concrete, metal, and other hard objects.
33 7. Rest mirror on clean, cushioned pads at 1/4-points.

34 C. Handling:

- 35 1. Handle mirror in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
36 2. Protect mirror from damage during handling and installation.
37 3. Do not slide 1 lite of mirror against another.
38 4. Do not use sharp objects near unprotected mirror.



1 **1.6 ADHESIVES**

- 2 1. As recommended by the manufacturer.

3 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

4 **2.1 MANUFACTURER**

- 5 A. **Basis of Design:** Guardian Consolidated, (800) 822-5599.

6 **2.2 MIRROR GLASS**

- 7 A. Sheet Mirror (Custom):

- 8 1. Guardian Industries **UltraMirror**.
- 9 a. Type: Rectangular. Refer to interior elevations for dimensions.
- 10 b. Thickness: **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
- 11 c. Dimensions: as shown on the drawings.
- 12 d. Bevel: none.
- 13 e. Edge: Flat **edge**.
- 14 f. Electrical Cover Plates: Mirror surface to match mirror field.
- 15 g. Locations: Refer to drawings for sizes, locations, and mounting heights.
- 16 h. **Provide safety membrane on back of each mirror.**

17 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

18 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 19 A. Examine areas to receive mirror. Notify Contractor of conditions that would adversely affect
- 20 installation. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

21 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 22 A. Verify areas to receive mirror are correct size and within tolerance.
- 23 B. Verify areas to receive mirror are clean and free of obstructions.

24 **3.3 GLAZING**

- 25 A. Install mirror in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, except where local codes or GANA
- 26 Glazing Manual indicate more stringent requirements.

27 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 28 A. Verify mirror is free of chips, cracks, and other inclusions that could inhibit structural or aesthetic
- 29 integrity.

30 **3.5 CLEANING**

- 31 A. Clean mirror promptly after installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- 32 B. Remove labels from mirror surface.
- 33 C. Do not use harsh cleaning materials or methods that would damage mirror.



- 1 **3.6 PROTECTION**
- 2 A. Protect installed mirror from damage during construction.
- 3 B. Protect installed mirror from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction
- 4 operations.
- 5 C. Remove and replace mirror that is broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged in other
- 6 ways during construction period, including natural causes, accidents, and vandalism.
- 7
- 8
- 9 **END OF SECTION 08 83 00**



1
2 **SECTION 08 88 13 FIRE RATED GLASS & FRAMING**

3
4 **SPEC DATA PRODUCT SUMMARY**

5
6 The following fire rated glass products are specified herein: *(to be edited-refer to plans)*

7
8 SPEC DATA PRODUCT 1: 20-minute tempered glazing without hose stream

9 SPEC DATA PRODUCT 2: 60-minute fire resistive glazing with hose stream

10 SPEC DATA PRODUCT 3: 90-minute fire resistive glazing with hose stream (not used)

11 SPEC DATA PRODUCT 4: 120-minute fire resistive glazing with hose stream (not used)

12
13 Product specifications are as follows:

14
15
16 **SPEC DATA PRODUCT 1**

17
18 **PART 1: GENERAL**

19
20 **1.1 SUMMARY**

21
22 A. Section Includes: Fire rated glazing

- 23 1. SuperLite® I fire protective, safety rated, specialty tempered glazing material for 20-minute
24 interior and exterior applications.
25 2. Applications of fire rated glazing include:
26 a. Fire rated glazing as vision lites in fire rated door applications.
27 b. Fire rated glazing as openings in fire rated frames.

28
29 B. Related Sections:

- 30 1. Section 01 33 23: Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples.
31 2. Section 06 40 00: Architectural Woodwork.
32 3. Section 08 80 00: Glazing.
33 4. Section 08 11 10: Steel Doors and Frames.
34 5. Section 08 11 20: Aluminum Doors and Frames.
35 6. Section 08 11 13: Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
36 7. Section 08 14 00: Wood Doors and Frames.
37 8. Section 08 51 30: Steel Windows.
38 9. Section 08 70 00: Finish Hardware.

39 **1.2 REFERENCES**

40 A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

- 41 1. ASTM E152: Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
42 2. ASTM E163: Methods of Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
43 3. ASTM E2074-00: Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies, including Positive Pressure
44 Testing of Side-hinged and Pivoted Swinging Door Assemblies.
45 4. ASTM E2010-01: Standard Test for Positive Pressure of Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.

46
47 B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

- 48 1. NFPA 80: Fire Doors and Windows.
49 2. NFPA 252: Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
50 3. NFPA 257: Fire Tests of Window Assemblies

51
52 C. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):



1. UL 9: Standard for Safety of Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
 2. UL 10B: Standard for Safety of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 3. UL 10C: Standard for Safety of Positive Pressure Tests of Door Assemblies.
- D. Standard Council of Canada (ULC):
1. ULC Standard CAN4-S104: Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 2. ULC Standard CAN4-S106: Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
- E. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC):
1. ANSI Z97.1: Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings - Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test.
- F. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
1. CPSC 16 CFR 1201 Cat. I & II: Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials.
- G. Glass Association of North America (GANA)
1. GANA – Glazing Manual.
 2. FGMA – Sealant Manual.
- H. [American Recovery and Reinvestment Act
1. Section 1605, Title XVI Buy American Provision]
- I. [Insert building code used by Authority Having Jurisdiction]

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Performance Requirements: Provide a fire rated glazing manufactured, fabricated and installed to maintain performance criteria stated by manufacturer without defects, damage or failure.
1. Fire Rating: 20 minutes without hose stream.
 2. Fire protective, safety rated, specialty tempered glass tested in accordance with NFPA 80, NFPA 252, NFPA 257, UL 9, UL 10B and UL 10C.
- B. Listings and Labels:
1. Fire rated glazing shall be under current follow-up service by a nationally recognized independent testing laboratory approved by OSHA and maintain a current listing or certification. Assemblies shall be labeled in accordance with limits of listings.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit listed submittals in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Submittal Procedure Section.
1. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing layout, profiles and product components.
 2. Samples: Submit 6x6 glass samples.
 3. Technical Information: Submit latest edition of manufacturer's product data.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. General: Comply with Division 1 Product Requirements Sections.
- B. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead-time requirements to avoid construction delays.



- 1 C. Delivery: Deliver materials to specified destinations in manufacturer's or distributor's packaging
 2 undamaged, complete with installation instructions.
 3
 4 D. Storage and Protection: Store off ground, under cover, protected from weather and construction
 5 activities and at temperature conditions recommended by manufacturer.
 6

7 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- 8
 9 A. Field Measurements: Verify actual measurements for openings by field measurements before
 10 fabrication. Show recorded measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate field measurements
 11 and fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid construction delays.
 12
 13
 14

15 1.7 WARRANTY

- 16
 17 A. Project Warranty: Refer to Conditions of the Contract for project warranty provisions.
 18
 19 B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty
 20 document. Manufacturer's warranty is not intended to limit other rights that the Owner may have
 21 under the Contract Documents.
 22 1. Warranty Period: Standard 5 -year limited warranty.
 23

24 PART 2: PRODUCTS

25 2.1 FIRE RATED GLAZING

- 26
 27
 28 A. Material: [SuperLite® I 20-minute specialty tempered glazing without hose stream.
 29
 30 B. Manufacturer: SuperLite® I as manufactured and distributed by SAFTI *FIRST*®.
 31 1. Contact: 100 N Hill Drive, Suite 12, Brisbane, CA 94005; Telephone 888.653.3333; email
 32 info@safte.com; Web site www.safte.com.
 33 2. Fire rated glass and framing must be provided by a single-source, US manufacturer.
 34 Distributors of fire rated glass and framing are not to be considered as manufacturers.
 35
 36 C. Design Requirements:
 37 1. Thickness: Must be 1/4" (6 mm) thick. 1/2" (12 mm) available.
 38 2. Weight: Must weigh 3.0 lbs./sq. ft.
 39 3. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: Must provide 0.82 SHGC.
 40 4. Sound Transmission Rating: Must provide STC 28 rating.
 41 5. Appearance: Must be specialty tempered float glass.
 42 6. Visible Light Transmission: Must meet 0.88 for clear tempered.
 43 7. Fire Rating: Must be fire rated to 20 minutes without hose stream test.
 44 8. Impact Safety Resistance: Must meet CPSC 16 CFR 1201 Cat. I (150 ft. lbs.; limited to 1,296
 45 sq. in.) & II (400 ft. lbs.; up to maximum size tested).
 46
 47 D. Manufacturer's Fire Rated Glazing Material:
 48 1. Each piece of fire-rated glazing material shall be labeled with a permanent logo including
 49 name of product, manufacturer, testing laboratory, fire rating period and safety glazing
 50 standards.
 51 2. Glazing material installed in Hazardous Locations, subject to human impact, shall be certified
 52 and permanently labeled as meeting applicable requirements referenced in NFPA 80:



1 a. CPSC 16 CFR 1201, Category I & II

2
3 E. Substitutions: No substitutions allowed.

4
5 **2.2 MATERIALS**

6
7 A. Glazing Accessories: Manufacturer recommended fire rated glazing accessory as follows:

- 8 1. Glazed with EPDM tape or other flame-resistant gasket material and calcium silicate setting
9 blocks.

10
11 **2.3 RELATED MATERIALS**

12 A. **Basis of Design** for fire rated framing system shall be Stiles Steel Door +Window Systems

13 B. Glazing shall be installed in an equivalently rated framing system.

14
15 **2.4 SOURCE QUALITY**

16
17 A. Obtain fire rated glazing products from a single manufacturer.

18
19 B. Fabrication Dimensions: Fabricate to approved dimensions. The general contractor shall
20 guarantee dimensions where practicable within required tolerances.

21 **PART 3: EXECUTION**

22
23 **3.1 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS**

24
25 A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data including product technical bulletins and
26 installation instructions.

27
28 **3.2 EXAMINATION**

29
30 A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify substrate conditions, have been previously installed under
31 other sections, and are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturer's
32 instructions.

33 **3.3 INSTALLATION**

34 A. Installation shall be in strict accordance with the fire glazing material manufacturer's
35 specifications. Field cutting or tampering is strictly prohibited.

36
37 **3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

38
39 A. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations.
40 Remove such substances by method approved by manufacturer.

41
42 B. Wash glass on both faces not more than four days prior to date schedule for inspections intended
43 to establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass by method recommended by glass
44 manufacturer.

45
46 C. Remove temporary coverings and protection of adjacent work areas.

47
48 D. Remove construction debris from project site and legally dispose of debris.



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9

SPEC DATA PRODUCT 2

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- 10 A. Section Includes: Fire rated glazing
- 11 1. SuperLite® II-XL 60 safety rated, fire protective glazing with fire resistive qualities
- 12 for interior and exterior applications.
- 13 2. Applications of fire rated glazing includes:
- 14 a. Fire rated glazing as vision lites in door assemblies.
- 15 b. Fire rated glazing as sidelites, windows, transoms in fire rated frames.
- 16
- 17 B. Related sections:
- 18 1. Section 01 33 23: Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples.
- 19 2. Section 08 80 00: Glazing
- 20 3. Section 08 88 00: Special Function Glazing
- 21 4. Section 08 12 13: Hollow Metal Frames
- 22 5. Section 08 12 16: Aluminum Frames
- 23 6. Section 08 12 16.13: Fire-Rated Aluminum Frames
- 24 7. Section 08 14 33: Stile and Rail Wood Doors
- 25 8. Section 08 41 13.13: Fire-Rated Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts
- 26 9. Section 08 43 13.13: Fire-Rated Aluminum Storefronts
- 27 10. Section 08 44 13: Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls
- 28 11. Section 08 44 18: Glazed Steel Curtain Walls
- 29

1.2 REFERENCES

- 30
- 31
- 32 A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
- 33 1. ASTM E119: Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
- 34 2. ASTM E152: Methods for Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
- 35 3. ASTM E163: Methods for Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
- 36 4. ASTM E2074: Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Door Assemblies, including
- 37 Positive Pressure Testing of Side-hinged and Pivoted Swinging Door Assemblies.
- 38 5. ASTM E2010-1: Standard Test for Positive Pressure of Fire Tests of Window
- 39 Assemblies.
- 40
- 41 B. National fire Protection Association (NFPA):
- 42 1. NFPA 80: Fire Doors and Windows.
- 43 2. NFPA 251: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
- 44 3. NFPA 252: Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
- 45 4. NFPA 257: Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
- 46 C. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):



- 1 1. UL 9: Standard for Safety of Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
 2 2. UL 10 B: Standard for Safety of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 3 3. UL 10 C: Standard for Safety of Positive Pressure Tests of Door Assemblies.
 4 4. UL 263: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
 5
 6 D. Standard Council of Canada:
 7 1. ULC Standard CAN4-S101: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
 8 2. ULC Standard CAN4-S104: Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 9 3. ULC Standard CAN4-S106: Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
 10
 11 E. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC):
 12 1. CPSC 16 CFR 1201: Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials.
 13
 14 F. Glass Association of North America (GANA)
 15 1. GANA – Glazing Manual.
 16 2. FGMA – Sealant Manual.
 17
 18 G. National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC)
 19 1. NFRC 100: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-Factors.
 20 2. NFRC 200: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain
 21 Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence.
 22
 23 H. [American Recovery and Reinvestment Act
 24 1. Section 1605, Title XVI Buy American Provision]
 25
 26 I. [Insert building code used by Authority Having Jurisdiction]
 27

28 1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- 30 A. Performance Requirements: Provide a fire rated glazing manufactured, fabricated and
 31 installed to maintain performance criteria stated by manufacturer without defects, damage, or
 32 failure.
 33 1. Fire Rating: 60 minutes with hose stream.
 34 2. Safety rated, fire protective glazing with fire resistive qualities tested in accordance with
 35 ASTM E119, NFPA 80, NFPA 251, NFPA 252, NFPA 257, UL 9, UL 10B, UL 10C and UL
 36 263.
 37 3. Testing Laboratory: Fire test shall be conducted by a nationally recognized independent
 38 testing laboratory.
 39
 40 A. Listings and Labels:
 41 1. Fire rated glazing shall be under current follow-up services by nationally recognized
 42 independent testing laboratory approved by OSHA and maintain a current listing or
 43 certification. Assemblies shall be labeled in accordance with limits of listings.
 44

45 1.4 SUBMITTALS

46



1 A. . Submit listed submittals in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Submittal
2 Procedure Section.

3 1. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing layouts, profiles and product
4 components.

5 2. Samples: Submit 12x12 glass samples.

6 3. Technical Information: Submit latest edition of manufacturer's product data.
7

8 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

9

10 A. General: Comply with Division 1 Product Requirements Sections.
11

12 B. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead-time requirements to
13 avoid construction delays.
14

15 C. Delivery: Deliver materials to specified destinations in manufacturer or distributor's
16 packaging.
17

18 D. Storage and Protection: Store off ground, under cover, protected from weather and
19 construction activities and at temperature conditions recommended by manufacturer.
20

21 **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

22

23 A. Field Measurements: Verify actual measurements for openings by field measurements before
24 fabrication. Show recorded measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate field
25 measurements and fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid construction
26 delays.
27

28 **1.7 WARRANTY**

29

30 A. Project Warranty: Refer to Conditions of the Contract for project warranty provisions.
31

32 B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard
33 warranty document. Manufacturer's warranty is not intended to limit other rights that the
34 Owner may have under the Contract Documents.

35 1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of shipping.
36
37

38 **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

39

40 **2.1 FIRE RATED GLAZING**

41
42

43 A. Material: SuperLite[®] II-XL 60 minute fire protective glazing with fire resistive qualities.
44



- 1 B. Manufacturer: SuperLite[®] II-XL as manufactured and distributed by SAFTIFIRST[®].
 2 1. Contact: 100 N Hill Drive, Suite 12, Brisbane, CA 94005; Telephone 888.653.3333;
 3 email info@safti.com; Web site www.safti.com.
 4 2. Fire rated glass and framing must be provided by a single-source, US manufacturer.
 5 Distributors of fire rated glass and framing are not to be considered as manufacturers.
 6
- 7 C. Design Requirements:
 8 1. Make-up: Must be comprised of an inboard and outboard lite of clear tempered
 9 protecting a clear, fire resistive, intumescent interlayer.
 10 2. Thickness: 1" (26 mm) standard profile.
 11 3. Weight: 12-lbs/sq. for standard 1" (26 mm) standard profile.
 12 4. Sound Transmission Rating: Must meet 43 STC/39 OITC in 1-3/8" standard profile; Must
 13 meet 43 STC/ 37 OITC insulated with ¼" Low-E.
 14 5. Dimensions: Must meet max. clear view area of 4,952 sq. in., measuring at least 124
 15 in. on the long side.
 16 6. Appearance: Must be tint-free, optically clear fire resistive glazing.
 17 7. Fire Rating: Must be fire rated to 60 minutes with hose stream and meet ASTM E-119.
 18 8. Impact Safety Resistance: CPSC 16 CFR 1201 Cat. I & II.
 19 9. Hard Body Impact Classification: Must meet ASTM C1629/C1629M Level 3.
 20 10. Soft Body Impact Classification: Must meet ASTM E695 Level 3.
 21 11. Surface Abrasion Resistance: Must meet ASTM D4977 Level 3.
 22 12. Customization: Available in insulated, energy performance, bullet-resistant, blast-
 23 resistant, hurricane-resistant, laminated, tinted, patterned, frosted, mirrored, reflective,
 24 segmented, decorative and more.
 25
- 26 D. Manufacturer's Fire Rated Glazing Material:
 27 1. Each piece of fire-rated glazing material shall be labeled with a permanent logo including
 28 name of product, manufacturer, testing laboratory, fire rating period and safety glazing
 29 standards.
 30 2. Glazing materials installed in Hazardous Locations, subject to human impact, shall be
 31 certified and permanently labeled as meeting applicable requirements reference in
 32 NFPA 80:
 33 a) CPSC 16 CFR 1201 Cat. I & II
 34

35 2.2 MATERIALS

- 37 A. Glazing Accessories: Manufacturer recommended fire rated glazing accessory as follows:
 38 a. Glazing with EPDM tape or other listed flame-resistant gasket material and
 39 calcium silicate setting blocks.
 40

41 2.3 RELATED PRODUCTS

- 43 A. **Basis of Design** for fire rated framing system shall be Stiles Steel Door + Window Systems
 44
 45 B. Glazing shall be installed in an equally rated framing system.
 46 C. Pressure glazing is allowed.
 47

48 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY

- 50 A. Obtain fire rated glazing products from a single manufacturer.



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

- B. Fabrication Dimensions: Fabricate to approved dimensions. The general contractor shall guarantee dimensions where practicable within required tolerances.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data including product technical bulletins and installation instructions.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify substrate conditions, have been previously installed under other sections, and are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation shall be in strict accordance with the fire glazing material manufacturer's specifications. Field cutting or tampering is strictly prohibited.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Remove such substances by method approved by manufacturer.
- B. Wash glass on both faces not more than four days prior to date schedule for inspections intended to establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass by method recommended by glass manufacturer.
- C. Remove temporary coverings and protection of adjacent work areas.
- D. Remove construction debris from project site and legally dispose of debris.



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51

SPEC DATA PRODUCT 3

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Fire rated glazing
1. SuperLite® II-XL 90 fire resistive, safety rated glazing material for interior and exterior applications.
 2. Applications of fire rated glazing includes:
 - a. Fire rated glazing in full-vision temperature rise doors and exterior windows in fire rated frames.
- B. Related sections:
12. Section 01 33 23: Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples.
 13. Section 08 80 00: Glazing
 14. Section 08 88 00: Special Function Glazing
 15. Section 08 12 13: Hollow Metal Frames
 16. Section 08 12 16: Aluminum Frames
 17. Section 08 12 16.13: Fire-Rated Aluminum Frames
 18. Section 08 14 33: Stile and Rail Wood Doors
 19. Section 08 41 13.13: Fire-Rated Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts
 20. Section 08 43 13.13: Fire-Rated Aluminum Storefronts
 21. Section 08 44 13: Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls
 22. Section 08 44 18: Glazed Steel Curtain Walls

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
1. ASTM E119: Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
 2. ASTM E152: Methods for Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 3. ASTM E163: Methods for Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
 4. ASTM E2074: Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Door Assemblies, including Positive Pressure Testing of Side-hinged and Pivoted Swinging Door Assemblies.
 5. ASTM E2010-1: Standard Test for Positive Pressure of Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
- B. National fire Protection Association (NFPA):
1. NFPA 80: Fire Doors and Windows.
 2. NFPA 251: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
 3. NFPA 252: Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 4. NFPA 257: Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
- C. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
1. UL 9: Standard for Safety of Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.



2. UL 10 B: Standard for Safety of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 3. UL 10 C: Standard of Safety of Positive Pressure Tests of Door Assemblies.
 4. UL 263: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
- D. Standard Council of Canada:
1. ULC Standard CAN4-S101: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
 2. ULC Standard CAN4-S104: Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 3. ULC Standard CAN4-S106: Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
- E. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC):
1. CPSC 16 CFR 1201: Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials.
- F. Glass Association of North America (GANA)
1. GANA – Glazing Manual.
 2. FGMA – Sealant Manual.
- G. National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC)
1. NFRC 100: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-Factors.
 2. NFRC 200: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence.
- H. [American Recovery and Reinvestment Act
1. Section 1605, Title XVI Buy American Provision]
- I. [Insert building code used by Authority Having Jurisdiction]

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Performance Requirements: Provide a fire rated glazing manufactured, fabricated and installed to maintain performance criteria stated by manufacturer without defects, damage, or failure.
1. Fire Rating: 90 minutes with hose stream.
 2. Fire resistive, safety rated glazing tested in accordance with ASTM E119, NFPA 80, NFPA 251, NFPA 252, NFPA 257, UL 9, UL 10B, UL 10C and UL 263.
 3. Testing Laboratory: Fire tests shall be conducted by a nationally recognized independent testing laboratory.
- B. Listings and Labels:
1. Fire rated glazing shall be under current follow-up services by a nationally recognized independent testing laboratory approved by OSHA and maintain a current listing or certification. Assemblies shall be labeled in accordance with limits of listings.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit listed submittals in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Submittal Procedure Section.
1. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing layouts, profiles and product components.
 2. Samples: Submit 12x12 glass samples.
 3. Technical Information: Submit latest edition of manufacturer's product data.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. General: Comply with Division 1 Product Requirements Sections.
- B. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead-time requirements to avoid construction delays.



- 1 C. Delivery: Deliver materials to specified destinations in manufacturer or distributor's packaging.
 2
 3 D. Storage and Protection: Store off ground, under cover, protected from weather and construction
 4 activities and at temperature conditions recommended by manufacturer.
 5

6 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- 7
 8 A. Field Measurements: Verify actual measurements for openings by field measurements before
 9 fabrication. Show recorded measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate field measurements
 10 and fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid construction delays.
 11

12 1.7 WARRANTY

- 13
 14 A. Project Warranty: Refer to Conditions of the Contract for project warranty provisions.
 15
 16 B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty
 17 document. Manufacturer's warranty is not intended to limit other rights that the Owner may have
 18 under the Contract Documents.
 19 1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of shipping.
 20
 21

22 PART 2 PRODUCTS

23 2.1 FIRE RATED GLAZING

- 24
 25 A. Material: SuperLite® II-XL 90 minute fire resistive glazing with hose stream.
 26
 27
 28 B. Manufacturer: SuperLite® II-XL as manufactured and distributed by SAFTI *FIRST*®.
 29 1. Contact: 100 N Hill Drive, Suite 12, Brisbane, CA 94005; Telephone 888.653.3333; email
 30 info@safte.com; Web site www.safte.com.
 31 2. Fire rated glass and framing must be provided by a single-source, US manufacturer.
 32 Distributors of fire rated glass and framing are not to be considered as manufacturers.
 33
 34 C. Design Requirements:
 35 1. Make-up: Must be comprised of an inboard and outboard lite of clear tempered glass
 36 protecting a clear, fire resistive, intumescent interlayer.
 37 2. Thickness: 1-1/2" (39 mm) standard profile. 1-1/4" thin profile available.
 38 3. Weight: 12 lbs./sq. ft. in 1-1/2" (39 mm) standard profile.
 39 4. Dimensions: Must meet max. clear view area of 4,876 sq. in., measuring at least 124 in. on
 40 the long side.
 41 5. Outdoor/Indoor Transmission Class: Must provide minimum OITC 40 rating in 1-1/2" (39 mm)
 42 standard profile.
 43 6. Appearance: Must be tint-free, optically clear fire rated glazing.
 44 7. Visible Light Transmission: Must meet 0.853 with clear tempered.
 45 8. Fire Rating: Must be fire rated to 90 minutes with hose stream and meet ASTM E-119.
 46 9. Impact Safety Resistance: CPSC 16 CFR 1201 Cat. I & II
 47 10. Hard Body Impact Classification: Must meet ASTM C1629/C1629M Level 3.
 48 11. Soft Body Impact Classification: Must meet ASTM E695 Level 3.
 49 12. Surface Abrasion Resistance: Must meet ASTM D4977 Level 3.
 50 13. Customization: Available in insulated, energy performance, bullet-resistant, blast- resistant,
 51 hurricane-resistant, laminated, tinted, patterned, frosted, mirrored, reflective, segmented,
 52 decorative and more.
 53
 54 D. Manufacturer's Fire Rating Glazing Material:



- 1 1. Each piece of fire-rated glazing material shall be labeled with a permanent logo including
- 2 name of product, manufacturer, testing laboratory, fire rating period and safety glazing
- 3 standards.
- 4 2. Glazing materials installed in Hazardous Locations, subject to human impact, shall be
- 5 certified and permanently labeled as meeting applicable requirements reference in NFPA 80:
- 6 a. CPSC 16 CFR 1201 Cat. I & II

7
8 E. Substitutions: No substitutions allowed.

9 10 **2.2 MATERIALS**

- 11 A. Glazing Accessories: Manufacturer recommended fire rated glazing accessory as follows:
- 12 1. Glazing with EPDM tape or other listed flame- resistant gasket material and calcium silicate
 - 13 setting blocks.

14 15 16 17 18 **2.3 RELATED PRODUCTS**

- 19 A. **Basis of Design** for fire rated framing system shall be Stiles Steel Door + Window Systems
- 20 B. Glazing shall be installed in an equally rated framing system.
- 21 C. Pressure glazing is allowed.

22 23 24 25 **2.4 SOURCE QUALITY**

- 26 A. Obtain fire rated glazing products from a single manufacturer.
- 27 B. Fabrication Dimensions: Fabricate to approved dimensions. The general contractor shall
- 28 guarantee dimensions where practicable within required tolerances.

29 30 31 32 33 **PART 3 EXECUTION**

34 35 **3.1 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS**

- 36 A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data including product technical bulletins and
- 37 installation instructions.

38 39 40 **3.2 EXAMINATION**

- 41 A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify substrate conditions, have been previously installed under
- 42 other sections, and are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturer's
- 43 instructions.

44 45 46 **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- 47 A. Installation shall be in strict accordance with the fire glazing material manufacturer's
- 48 specifications. Field cutting or tampering is strictly prohibited.

49 50 51 **3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- 52 A. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations.
- 53 Remove such substances by method approved by manufacturer.
- 54
55
56



- 1 B. Wash glass on both faces not more than four days prior to date schedule for inspections intended
 2 to establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass by method recommended by glass
 3 manufacturer.
 4
 5 C. Remove temporary coverings and protection of adjacent work areas.
 6
 7 D. Remove construction debris from project site and legally dispose of debris.
 8

9
 10 **SPEC DATA PRODUCT 4**

11
 12 **PART 1 GENERAL**

13
 14 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 15
 16 A. Section Includes: Fire rated glazing
 17 1. SuperLite® II-XL 120 fire resistive, safety rated glazing material for interior and exterior
 18 applications.
 19 2. Applications of fire rated glazing includes:
 20 a. Fire rated glazing as sidelites, borrowed lites, windows, transoms and transparent
 21 wall applications in fire rated frames.
 22
 23 B. Related sections:
 24 1. Section 01 33 23: Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples.
 25 2. Section 08 80 00: Glazing
 26 3. Section 08 88 00: Special Function Glazing
 27 4. Section 08 12 13: Hollow Metal Frames
 28 5. Section 08 12 16: Aluminum Frames
 29 6. Section 08 12 16.13: Fire-Rated Aluminum Frames
 30 7. Section 08 14 33: Stile and Rail Wood Doors
 31 8. Section 08 41 13.13: Fire-Rated Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts
 32 9. Section 08 43 13.13: Fire-Rated Aluminum Storefronts
 33 10. Section 08 44 13: Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls
 34 11. Section 08 44 18: Glazed Steel Curtain Walls
 35

36 **1.2 REFERENCES**

- 37
 38 A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 39 1. ASTM E119: Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
 40 2. ASTM E152: Methods for Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 41 3. ASTM E163: Methods for Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
 42 4. ASTM E2074: Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Door Assemblies, including Positive
 43 Pressure Testing of Side-hinged and Pivoted Swinging Door Assemblies.
 44 5. ASTM E2010-1: Standard Test for Positive Pressure of Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
 45
 46 B. National fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 47 1. NFPA 80: Fire Doors and Windows.
 48 2. NFPA 251: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
 49 3. NFPA 252: Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 50 4. NFPA 257: Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
 51
 52 C. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
 53 1. UL 9: Standard for Safety of Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.



- 1 2. UL 10 B: Standard for Safety of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 2 3. UL 10 C: Standard for Safety of Positive Pressure Tests of Door Assemblies.
 3 4. UL 263: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
 4
 5 D. Standard Council of Canada:
 6 1. ULC Standard CAN4-S101: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
 7 2. ULC Standard CAN4-S104: Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 8 3. ULC Standard CAN4-S106: Fire Tests of Window Assemblies.
 9
 10 E. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC):
 11 1. CPSC 16 CFR 1201: Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials.
 12
 13 F. Glass Association of North America (GANA)
 14 1. GANA – Glazing Manual.
 15 2. FGMA – Sealant Manual.
 16
 17 G. National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC)
 18 1. NFRC 100: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-Factors.
 19 2. NFRC 200: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and
 20 Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence.
 21
 22 H. [American Recovery and Reinvestment Act
 23 1. Section 1605, Title XVI Buy American Provision]
 24
 25 I. [Insert building code used by Authority Having Jurisdiction]
 26

27 **1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- 28
 29 A. Performance Requirements: Provide a fire rated glazing manufactured, fabricated and installed to
 30 maintain performance criteria stated by manufacturer without defects, damage, or failure.
 31 1. Fire Rating: 120 minutes with hose stream.
 32 2. Fire resistive, safety rated glazing tested in accordance with ASTM E119, NFPA 80, NFPA
 33 251, NFPA 252, NFPA 257, UL 9, UL 10B, UL 10C and UL 263.
 34 3. Testing Laboratory: Fire tests shall be conducted by a nationally recognized independent
 35 testing laboratory.
 36
 37 B. Listings and Labels:
 38 1. Fire rated glazing shall be under current follow-up services by a nationally recognized
 39 independent testing laboratory approved by OSHA and maintain a current listing or
 40 certification. Assemblies shall be labeled in accordance with limits of listings.
 41
 42

43 **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- 44
 45 A. Submit listed submittals in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Submittal
 46 Procedure Section.
 47 1. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing layouts, profiles and product components.
 48 2. Samples: Submit 12x12 glass samples.
 49 3. Technical Information: Submit latest edition of manufacturer's product data.
 50

51 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- 52
 53 A. General: Comply with Division 1 Product Requirements Sections.
 54
 55 B. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead-time requirements to avoid
 56 construction delays.



- 1
2 C. Delivery: Deliver materials to specified destinations in manufacturer or distributor's packaging.
3
4 D. Storage and Protection: Store off ground, under cover, protected from weather and construction
5 activities and at temperature conditions recommended by manufacturer.
6

7 **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 8
9 A. Field Measurements: Verify actual measurements for openings by field measurements before
10 fabrication. Show recorded measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate field measurements
11 and fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid construction delays.
12

13 **1.7 WARRANTY**

- 14
15 A. Project Warranty: Refer to Conditions of the Contract for project warranty provisions.
16
17 B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty
18 document. Manufacturer's warranty is not intended to limit other rights that the Owner may have
19 under the Contract Documents.
20 1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of shipping.
21
22

23 **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

24
25 **2.1 FIRE RATED GLAZING**

- 26
27 A. Material: SuperLite® II-XL 120 minute fire resistive glazing with hose stream.
28
29 B. Manufacturer: SuperLite® II-XL as manufactured and distributed by SAFTI *FIRST*®.
30 1. Contact: 100 N Hill Drive, Suite 12, Brisbane, CA 94005; Telephone 888.653.3333; email
31 info@safti.com; Web site www.safti.com.
32 2. Fire rated glass and framing must be provided by a single-source, US manufacturer.
33 Distributors of fire rated glass and framing are not to be considered as manufacturers.
34
35 C. Design Requirements:
36 1. Make-up: Must be comprised of an inboard and outboard lite of clear tempered glass
37 protecting a clear, fire resistive, intumescent interlayer.
38 2. Thickness: 1-3/4" (45 mm) standard profile.
39 3. Weight: 16 lbs/sq. ft. in 1-3/4" (45 mm) standard profile.
40 4. Sound Transmission Rating: Must meet 44 STC/40 OITC in 1-3/4" standard profile; Must
41 meet 44 STC/ 37 OITC insulated with 1/4" Low-E.
42 5. Dimensions: Must meet max. clear view area of 4,876 sq. in., measuring at least 124 in. on
43 the long side.
44 6. Appearance: Must be tint-free, optically clear fire rated glazing.
45 7. Visible Light Transmission: Must meet 0.777 with clear tempered.
46 8. Fire Rating: Must be fire rated to 120 minutes with hose stream and meet ASTM E-119.
47 9. Impact Safety Resistance: CPSC 16 CFR 1201 Cat. I & II.
48 10. Hard Body Impact Classification: Must meet ASTM C1629/C1629M Level 3.
49 11. Soft Body Impact Classification: Must meet ASTM E695 Level 3.
50 12. Surface Abrasion Resistance: Must meet ASTM D4977 Level 3.
51 13. Customization: Available in insulated, energy performance, bullet-resistant, blast- resistant,
52 hurricane-resistant, laminated, tinted, patterned, frosted, mirrored, reflective, segmented,
53 decorative and more.
54
55 D. Manufacturer's Fire Rating Glazing Material:



1. Each piece of fire-rated glazing material shall be labeled with a permanent logo including name of product, manufacturer, testing laboratory, fire rating period and safety glazing standards.
2. Glazing materials installed in Hazardous Locations, subject to human impact, shall be certified and permanently labeled as meeting applicable requirements reference in NFPA 80:
 - a. CPSC 16 CFR 1201 Cat. I & II

E. Substitutions: No substitutions allowed.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Glazing Accessories: Manufacturer recommended fire rated glazing accessory as follows:
1. Glazing with EPDM tape or other listed flame-resistant gasket material and calcium silicate setting blocks.

2.3 RELATED PRODUCTS

- A. **Basis of Design** for fire rated framing system shall be Stiles Steel Door + Window Systems
- B. Glazing shall be installed in an equally rated framing system.
- C. Pressure glazing is allowed.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY

- A. Obtain fire rated glazing products from a single manufacturer.
- B. Fabrication Dimensions: Fabricate to approved dimensions. The general contractor shall guarantee dimensions where practicable within required tolerances.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data including product technical bulletins and installation instructions.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify substrate conditions, have been previously installed under other sections, and are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation shall be in strict accordance with the fire glazing material manufacturer's specifications. Field cutting or tampering is strictly prohibited.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Remove such substances by method approved by manufacturer.



- 1 B. Wash glass on both faces not more than four days prior to date schedule for inspections intended
- 2 to establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass by method recommended by glass
- 3 manufacturer.
- 4
- 5 C. Remove temporary coverings and protection of adjacent work areas.
- 6
- 7 D. Remove construction debris from project site and legally dispose of debris.
- 8
- 9 **END OF SECTION 08 88 13**



SECTION 08 88 56 BALLISTIC-RESISTANT GLAZING AND WINDOW UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCE

The publication below forms a part of this specification.

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORY UL 752 11th Edition dated Jan. 20, 2021
Standard for Bullet Resistant Equipment

1.2 DESIGN

Through design, manufacturing technique and material application, frames shall be of the "non-ricochet type". This design is intended to permit the capture and retention of an attacking projectile lessening the potential of a random injury or lateral penetration. The capturing barrier shall be UL LISTED BULLET RESISTANT COMPOSITE manufactured by Basis of Design Manufacture, Armortex. Ballistic protection level shall be UL Level 3. Frames shall be same protection level equal to or greater than glazing. Units must be manufactured in strict accordance with the specifications, design and details. No field alterations to construction of the units fabricated under acceptable standards is allowed unless approved by the manufacturer and the architect.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

Products shall be submitted in accordance with Division 1. Submit for approval prior to fabrication: Catalog cuts, shop drawings, specifications, frame profiles, size, type and spacing of frame anchors, reinforcement size and locations, details of joints and connections, welding details and printed data in sufficient detail to indicate compliance with the contract documents. The provider of this window must be ISO 9001:2008 Certified by an accredited registrar and provide proof of such. Provide manufacturer's instructions for installation and cleaning.

1.4 WARRANTY

Materials and workmanship shall be warranted against defects for a period of one (1) year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

Basis of Design: Three Sided Aluminum Transaction Window as manufactured by Armortex® 5926 Corridor Pkwy, Schertz, Texas. www.armortex.com Phone: 210-661-8306, 800-880-8306, Fax: 210-661-8308.

2.2 FRAMES

Aluminum Bullet Resistant "natural voice" frame modules shall be of a "non-ricochet type" design, constructed of 6061-T6 extruded aluminum 1 ½" x 5" or 6" Jam and Head lined with UL LISTED BULLET RESISTANT ARMORTEX® COMPOSITE. Frame modules shall be capable of being joined with other frame modules to form a continuous hard line. Replacement of glazing shall be installed from the secure side of window or wall unit using 1" x 1" Screw applied Stops.

2.3 SHELF

In lieu of shelf coordinate with millwork located at this window. Countertop shall be not less than 2" thick to accommodate the recessed dip tray by the full width of window and a minimum of 12" deep centered under the glazing, coordinate with plastic laminate millwork at window location.



2.4 DIP TRAY

Model RMDT1016 constructed of 16 ga. stainless steel, #3 finish 10" x 16" from the outside edge of flanges with a clear open depth under the glazing no less than 1 5/8". Tray shall be bullet ricochet resistant.

2.5 FINISH

Anodized Finish Class I Clear.

2.6 GLAZING

Provide glazing: **Basis of Design Armortex Bullet Resistant Glazing, UL Listed Level 3 Glass Clad Polycarbonate** glazing material. Bottom edge of the glazing panel shall have a stainless-steel cap of 18 ga. with a # 3 brushed finish.

Armortex TP 300 laminate: 1/8" abrasion resistant Polycarbonate, urethane bonding interlayer, 1/2" polycarbonate sheet, urethane bonding layer, 1/2" polycarbonate sheet, urethane bonding layer and 1/8" abrasion resistant polycarbonate meeting UL Listed Level 3.

Test Ratings: UL 752 Listed Level 3; H.P. White Level IV Forced Entry, Level C Ballistics, WMFL Lever I-.44 Mag. 60 Minute attack.

Glazing tape shall be as recommended by glazing manufacturer equal to Tremco-440 Glazing Tape.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Set frames and glaze in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Proper anchoring device shall be determined by the material to be anchored. Replace damaged units as directed by architect prior to completion and acceptance of project.

3.2 PROTECTION

It shall be the responsibility of the contractor to see that any scratches or disfigurement caused by shipping and handling of the product are touched up. Properly store all the frames and glazing material etc. in a dry location and covered to protect them from damage before and after installation.

3.3 CLEANING

Upon completion, clean exposed surfaces of frames and glazing products thoroughly in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Remove mastic smears and other unsightly marks.

END OF SECTION 08 88 56



1 **SECTION 09 22 16 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 4 A. This Section includes non-load-bearing steel framing members for the following applications:
 5 1. Interior framing systems (e.g., supports for partition walls, framed soffits, furring, etc.).
 6 2. Interior suspension systems (e.g., supports for ceilings, suspended soffits, etc.).

7 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 8 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 9 B. Design calculations for suspended Gypsum Drywall. Refer to Quality Assurance section below.

10 **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 11 A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
 12
 13
 14 B. Sound Transmission Characteristics: For STC-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.
 15
 16
 17 C. All suspended Gypsum Drywall: Provide support members and suspension systems designed by a
 18 Florida Registered Professional Engineer employed by the contractor.

19 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

20 **2.1 NON-LOAD-BEARING STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL**

- 21 A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel
 22 products such that postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content is
 23 not less than 25 percent.
 24 B. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
 25 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal, unless otherwise
 26 indicated.
 27 2. Protective Coating: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant zinc coating, unless otherwise
 28 indicated.

29 **2.2 SUSPENSION SYSTEM COMPONENTS**

- 30 A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.0625-inch- (1.59-mm-) diameter
 31 wire, or double strand of 0.0475-inch- diameter wire.
 32 B. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.0625-inch- (1.59-mm-) diameter
 33 wire, or double strand of 0.0475-inch- diameter wire.
 34 C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.162-inch diameter.
 35 D. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.0538 inch
 36 and minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
 37 1. Depth: 2-1/2 inches, 2 inches, or 1-1/2 inches, as required by the loading conditions.
 38 Minimum spacing 48" o.c. or less as necessary for ceiling support.
 39 E. Furring Channels (Furring Members):



- 1 1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.0538-inch bare-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges,
2 3/4 inch deep.
- 3 2. Steel Studs: ASTM C 645.
- 4 a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings
- 5 b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings
- 6 3. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 1-1/2 and 7/8" inch deep. Spacing as
7 required by the loading conditions. Minimum spacing 24" o.c. or less as necessary for ceiling
8 support.
- 9 a. Minimum Base Metal Thickness 0.0179 inch, galvanized.
- 10 4. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
- 11 a. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- 12 5. Furring Channels for Exterior corrugated metal panels: 7/8" and 1-1/2" in depth; both 16
13 gauge, galvanized.
- 14 F. Grid Suspension System for Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams
15 and cross-furring members that interlock.
- 16 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be
17 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 18 G. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.0538 inch
19 and minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
- 20 1. Depth: 2-1/2 inches, 2 inches, or 1-1/2 inches, as required by the loading conditions.
- 21 H. Grid Suspension System for Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams
22 and cross-furring members that interlock.
- 23 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be
24 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 25 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 26 a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Drywall Grid Systems.
- 27 b. Chicago Metallic Corporation, Drywall Furring System.
- 28 c. USG Corporation; Drywall Suspension System.
- 29 I. Provide (Contractor Option) Donn USG Drywall Suspension System pre-engineered suspension
30 system or conventional channel / hat type system to furr down ceiling height in first floor residential
31 and common areas.
- 32 J. PROVIDE STRUCTURAL ENGINEER (REGISTERED IN THE STATE OF FLORIDA) SEAL
33 CERTIFYING THE CEILING STRUCTURE INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO MATERIAL SIZE
34 AND THICKNESS, SPACING OF MEMBERS AND TYPE AND SIZE OF FASTENERS IS
35 SUFFICIENT TO MEET REQUIREMENTS OF FBCB 2023 EIGHTH EDITION. MINIMUM SHALL BE
36 THAT INDICATED ON THE DRAWINGS AND AS SPECIFIED HEREIN UNLESS OTHERWISE
37 REQUIRED BY CALCULATIONS TO MEET CODE AND LOADING REQUIREMENTS.
- 38 **2.3 STEEL FRAMING FOR FRAMED ASSEMBLIES**
- 39 A. Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
- 40 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0375 inch
- 41 2. Stud widths: 1-5/8", 2-1/2", 3-5/8", 4, and 6"; refer to documents for sizes and locations.
- 42 3. Provide deflection tracks.
- 43 4. Spacing: 16" o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- 44 B. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide the following:



- 1 1. Single Long-Leg Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runner with 2-inch- deep flanges in
 2 thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top runner and
 3 with continuous bridging located within 12 inches of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
 4 2. Double-Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runners, inside runner with 2-inch deep flanges in
 5 thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer runner sized to
 6 friction fit inside runner.
 7 3. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top runner manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied
 8 to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less
 9 than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
- 10 a. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be
 11 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 12 b. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 13 1) Steel Network Inc. (The); **VertiClip SLD** or **VertiTrack VTD** Series.
 14 2) Superior Metal Trim; Superior Flex Track System (SFT).
- 15 C. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
- 16 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0179 inch.
- 17 D. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: 0.0538-inch bare-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide
 18 flanges.
- 19 1. Depth: 1-1/2 inches.
 20 2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches thick, galvanized steel.
- 21 E. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
- 22 1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness 0.0179 inch
 23 2. Depth: 1-1/2 inch
 24 3. Note: Provide 'z' clips on bottom of joists, beams, channels and where furring channels are
 25 attached to structural members that receive sprayed fireproofing. Install clips **PRIOR** to
 26 fireproofing installation.
 27 4. Spacing: 16" o.c.
- 28 F. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound
 29 transmission.
- 30 1. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped
- 31 G. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.0538-inch bare-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide
 32 flanges.
- 33 1. Depth: 3/4 inch
 34 2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with minimum bare-steel
 35 thickness of 0.0312 inch.
 36 3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.0625-inch diameter wire,
 37 or double strand of 0.0475-inch- diameter wire.
- 38 H. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or non-slotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment
 39 flange of 7/8 inch, minimum bare-metal thickness of 0.0179 inch, and depth required to fit insulation
 40 thickness indicated.

41 **2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS**

- 42 A. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other
 43 properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- 44 B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:
- 45 1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D 226, Type (No. 15 asphalt felt), non-perforated.
 46 2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration
 47 without foam displacement, 1/8 inch thick, in width to suit steel stud size.



- 1
2 C. Acoustic Isolation Pad: Basis of Design – Iso-sill Acoustical Isolation Pad as manufactured by
3 AcoustiGuard – Wilrep Ltd.
4
5 1. Resilient gasket manufactured with re-claimed rubber and formulated with high damping
6 acrylic polymers. Impervious to water, most chemicals and temperature change. Material
7 shall not rot or support mold.
8 2. Thickness: 10 mm.
9 3. Width: Sized to width of stud.
10 4. Fastening: Mechanical fasteners or adhesive as recommended by manufacturer. Anchor
11 washers per manufacturer's recommendation with Iso-sil washers, 1-1/4" dia, 1/16" (hole thru
12 stud shall be larger than anchor diameter).

13 PART 3 - EXECUTION

14 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- 15 A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
16 1. Gypsum Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 841 that apply to
17 framing installation.
18 2. Portland Cement Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 1063 that
19 apply to framing installation.
20 3. Gypsum Veneer Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 844 that
21 apply to framing installation.
22 4. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to
23 framing installation.

24 3.2 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- 25 A. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building
26 structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
27 B. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
28 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling
29 plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
30 a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal
31 forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
32 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings
33 that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system
34 members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or
35 equivalent devices.
36 a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within
37 performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
38 3. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
39 4. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that
40 extend through forms.
41 5. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
42 6. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
43 C. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
44 D. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet
45 vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-
46 cut to fit into wall track.



- 1 E. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet
 2 measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel
 3 members that will receive finishes.

4 **3.3 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES**

- 5 A. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior
 6 walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- 7 B. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural
 8 supports or substrates above suspended ceilings, except where partitions are indicated to terminate
 9 at suspended ceilings where lateral bracing composed of studs of same gage and size as wall studs
 10 shall be braced to the structure above at minimum 8'-0" o.c. unless closer spacing is necessary to
 11 adequately brace the wall. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling;
 12 provide adequate bracing around framed openings.
- 13 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to
 14 produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
- 15 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install
 16 runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
- 17 a. Install two studs at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.
- 18 b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch
 19 clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
- 20 c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead
 21 structure.
- 22 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for
 23 door openings, unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match
 24 framing required above door heads.
- 25 4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly
 26 indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of
 27 solid structure.
- 28 a. Firestop Track: At firewalls, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated
 29 assembly indicated.
- 30 5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
- 31 C. Direct Furring:
- 32 1. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or
 33 powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
- 34 D. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8
 35 inch (3 mm) from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

36 **END OF SECTION 09 22 16**



1 **SECTION 09 29 00 – GYPSUM BOARD**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes the following:

- 5 1. Interior gypsum board; including perforated gypsum board.
6 2. Tile backing panels.
7 3. Exterior gypsum board in exterior walls.
8 4. Underlayment air barrier over sheathing.

9 **1.2 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS**

10 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

11 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

12 A. Control Joint Locations: Provide shop drawing show locations of control joints.

13 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 14 A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and
15 construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an
16 independent testing agency.
- 17 B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical
18 to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to
19 ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.
- 20 C. Mockups: Before beginning gypsum board installation, install mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. in
21 surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and
22 execution.
- 23 1. Install mockups for the following:
- 24 a. Each level of gypsum board finish indicated for use in exposed locations.
25 2. Apply or install final decoration indicated, including painting, on exposed surfaces for
26 review of mockups.
27 3. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.
28 4. Acceptable mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of
29 Substantial Completion.
30

31 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

32 **2.1 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD**

- 33 A. General: Complying with ASTM C 36/C 36M or ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, as applicable to type of
34 gypsum board indicated and whichever is more stringent.
- 35 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
36 following:
- 37 a. American Gypsum Co.
38 b. G-P Gypsum.
39 c. USG Corporation.



- 1
- 2 B. Type X:
- 3 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
- 4 2. Long Edges: Tapered for pre-filling.
- 5 C. Ceiling Type: Manufactured to have more sag resistance than regular-type gypsum board.
- 6 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
- 7 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- 8 **2.2 TILE BACKING PANELS**
- 9 A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.1. wet walls in toilet rooms and walls surrounding
- 10 shower/tub units (refer to Contract Document drawings for locations).
- 11 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 12 a. Custom Building Products; Wonderboard.
- 13 b. FinPan, Inc.; Util-A-Crete Concrete Backer Board.
- 14 c. USG Corporation; DUROCK Cement Board.
- 15 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm).
- 16 **2.3 TRIM ACCESSORIES**
- 17 A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
- 18 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, or plastic.
- 19 2. Shapes:
- 20 a. Cornerbead.
- 21 b. Bullnose bead.
- 22 c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
- 23 d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
- 24 e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
- 25 f. Expansion (control) joint.
- 26 g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.
- 27
- 28 **2.4 EXTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD**
- 29 A. Exterior Gypsum Board: ASTM C 931/C 931M or ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, with manufacturer's
- 30 standard edges.
- 31 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 32 following:
- 33 a. American Gypsum Co.
- 34 b. **G-P Gypsum (Georgia-Pacific) Basis of Design: Type X DensGlass Fireguard**
- 35 **Sheathing** National Gypsum Company.
- 36 Acceptable Manufacturer: **Securock Roof Board**
- 37
- 38 2. Fire-Rated Fiberglass-Mat Faced Gypsum Sheathing: ASTM C1177, Type X:
- 39
- 40 a. Thickness: 5/8 in. (15.9 mm)
- 41 b. Length: 8-10 ft. (2438-4877 mm)
- 42 c. Width: 4 ft. (1219 mm), 54 in. (1372 mm)
- 43 d. Weight: 2.5 lb./sq. ft.



- 1 e. Edge: Square
 2 f. Surfacing: Fiberglass mat on face, back, and long edges.
 3 g. Racking Strength (Ultimate, not design value) (ASTM E72): Not less than 654
 4 pounds per square foot, dry.
 5 h. Flexural Strength, Parallel (ASTM C1177): 100 lbf, parallel.
 6 i. Humidified Deflection (ASTM C1177): Not more than 1/8 inch.
 7 j. Permeance (ASTM E96): Not less than 17 perms.
 8 k. R-Value (ASTM C518): 0.67.
 9 l. Mold Resistance (ASTM D3273): 10, in a test as manufactured.
 10 m. Microbial Resistance (ASTM D6329, UL Environmental GREENGUARD 3-week
 11 protocol): Will not support microbial growth.
 12 n. Acceptable Products:
 13 1) 5/8 inch DensGlass Fireguard Sheathing, Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 14

15 2.5 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- 16 A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
 17 B. Joint Tape:
 18 1. Interior Gypsum Wallboard: Paper.
 19 2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
 20 C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Wallboard: For each coat use formulation that is
 21 compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
 22 1. Pre-filling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas,
 23 use setting-type taping compound.
 24 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and
 25 trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 26 a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
 27 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 28 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 29 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use setting-type, sandable topping compound
 30 high-build interior coating product designed for application by airless sprayer and to be
 31 used instead of skim coat to produce Level 5 finish.
 32 D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
 33 1. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-
 34 type, sandable topping compound.
 35 2. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel
 36 manufacturer.
 37 3. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.

38 2.5 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- 39 A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and
 40 manufacturer's written recommendations.
 41 B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum
 42 panels to continuous substrate.
 43 1. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to
 44 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 45 C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.



- 1 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from
2 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick.
- 3 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by
4 panel manufacturer.
- 5 D. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing)
6 produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag
7 wool, or rock wool.
- 8 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- 9 E. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- 10 F. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation."
- 11 G. Air Barrier: **Basis of Design – See Section 07 26 50 – Fluid Applied Air and Water Barrier.**
- 12 H. Self-Adhering Waterproof Underlayment (refer to drawings for specific locations): **Basis of**
13 **Design - Grace, W. R. & Co.; Grace Ice and Water Shield or Grace Ultra (40 mil) – Basis of**
14 **Design.** Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment Polyethylene Faced. ASTM D 1970, minimum of
15 40 mils (1.0 mm) thick; slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to SBS-
16 modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. High heat.

17 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

18 **3.1 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL**

- 19 A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- 20 B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold
21 damaged.
- 22 C. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural
23 abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- (6.4- to 12.7-mm-) wide spaces at these
24 locations, and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints
25 between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.

26 **3.2 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD**

- 27 A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
- 28 1. Type X: Throughout and where required for fire-resistance-rated assembly.
- 29 2. Ceiling Type: Ceiling surfaces.
- 30 3. Cementitious or Type: On Toilet room wet walls and shower/tub walls.

31 **3.3 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS**

- 32 A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.1, at showers, and locations indicated to receive tile.
- 33 B. Areas Not Subject to Wetting: Install regular-type gypsum wallboard panels to produce a flat
34 surface except at showers, tubs, and other locations indicated to receive water-resistant panels.
- 35 C. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a
36 uniform plane across panel surfaces.

37 **3.4. EXTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD**

- 38 A. Fastener attachment of exterior gypsum boards to exterior wall system shall extend thru the
39 exterior gypsum board (cement board), thru the rigid insulation (if specified) and extent the
40 required depth through the cold formed metal stud flange. Coordinate type, size, length and
41 spacing with Section 05400 Cold Formed Metal Framing.



- 1 B. Fluid Applied Air and Water Barrier: Once glass-mat gypsum sheathing has been installed,
 2 apply Fluid Applied Air and Water Barrier in accordance with Specification Section 07 26 50-
 3 Fluid Applied Air and Water Barrier, specifically following installation instructions.

4 **3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES**

- 5 D. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same
 6 fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written
 7 instructions.

- 8 E. Control Joints: Install control joints at locations indicated on Drawings and according to
 9 ASTM C 840, or should be 30 feet intervals, whichever is more stringent and in specific
 10 locations approved by Architect for visual effect. Prior to placing control joints, depict locations
 11 on plan and submit to Architect for verification. Note: Spacing between joints varies and there
 12 may be more control joints shown or necessary from an aesthetic standpoint than what is
 13 technically necessary.

- 14 F. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:

- 15 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
- 16 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
- 17 3. L-Bead: Use where indicated.
- 18 4. Reveal: **Basis of Design - Fry Reveal Moldings**, 3/8" where gypsum wall board abuts
 19 exposed CMU. (Typ.)

20 **3.4 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD**

- 21 A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations,
 22 fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces
 23 for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.

- 24 B. Pre-fill open joints rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.

- 25 C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except those with trim having flanges not intended for
 26 tape.

- 27 D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below:

- 28 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
- 29 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
- 30 3. Level 3: N/A.
- 31 4. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view, unless otherwise indicated.
- 32 a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in other Division 09 Sections.
- 33 5. Level 5: Not used.

- 34 E. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

35 **3.5 PROTECTION**

- 36 A. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight,
 37 construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.

- 38 B. Immediately remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

- 39 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to,
 40 discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
- 41 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or
 42 splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

43 **END OF SECTION 09 29 00**



1 **SECTION 09 30 13 - PORCELAIN TILING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Porcelain tile.
9 2. Stone thresholds.
10 3. Tile backing panels.
11 4. Waterproof and Crack Isolation membrane.

- 12 B. Related Requirements:

- 13 1. Section 07 91 10 "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and
14 isolation joints in tile surfaces.
15 2. Section 09 29 00 "Gypsum Board" for Tile Backing Panels.

16 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 17 A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1
18 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.

- 19 B. ANSI A108 Series: ANSI A108.01, ANSI A108.02, ANSI A108.1A, ANSI A108.1B,
20 ANSI A108.1C, ANSI A108.4, ANSI A108.5, ANSI A108.6, ANSI A108.8, ANSI A108.9,
21 ANSI A108.10, ANSI A108.11, ANSI A108.12, ANSI A108.13, ANSI A108.14, ANSI A108.15,
22 ANSI A108.16, and ANSI A108.17, which are contained in its "Specifications for Installation of
23 Ceramic Tile."

- 24 C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.

- 25 D. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.

- 26 E. TCNA: Tile Council of North America.

27 **1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- 28 A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- 29 1. Review requirements in ANSI A108.01 for substrates and for preparation by other trades.



1 **1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 2 A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- 3 B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and
4 locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile
5 surfaces.
- 6 C. Samples for Initial Selection: For tile, grout, and accessories involving color selection.
- 7 D. Samples for Verification:
- 8 1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
9 2. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish required.
10 3. Stone thresholds in 6-inch (150-mm) lengths.
11 4. Metal edge strips in 6-inch (150-mm) lengths.

12 **1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 13 A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- 14 B. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile
15 manufacturer and Installer.
- 16 C. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- 17 D. Product Test Reports: For tile-setting and -grouting products and certified porcelain tile.

18 **1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- 19 A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and
20 that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing
21 contents.
- 22 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount
23 installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.

24 **1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 25 A. Installer Qualifications: [See Allstate Construction's bid package.](#)
- 26 1. Installer is a five-star member of the National Tile Contractors Association or a Trowel of
27 Excellence member of the Tile Contractors' Association of America.
- 28 2. Installer's supervisor for Project holds the International Masonry Institute's Foreman
29 Certification.
- 30 3. Installer employs Ceramic Tile Education Foundation Certified Installers or installers
31 recognized by the U.S. Department of Labor as Journeyman Tile Layers.



1 **1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 2 A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels
3 intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- 4 B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- 5 C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and
6 contamination can be avoided.
- 7 D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

8 **1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- 9 A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and
10 ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in
11 referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

12 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

13 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- 14 A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from single source or
15 producer.
- 16 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent
17 quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- 18 B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for
19 each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate
20 from single source or producer.
- 21 1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified Portland cement and
22 aggregate, from single manufacturer.
- 23 2. Obtain waterproof membrane / crack isolation membrane from Basis of Design
24 Manufacturer.

25 **2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL**

- 26 A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types,
27 compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
- 28 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.
- 29 B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02,
30 ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA
31 installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- 32 C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and
33 package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from
34 other packages and match approved Samples.



1 **2.3 TILE PRODUCTS**

2 A. Porcelain Tile Type Basis of Design porcelain tile.

3 1. Basis of Design:

4 a. PT-1, PB-1:

- 5 1) Garden State Tile - Anthem (see schedule for polished vs matte) – Color
6 body: Rectified.
7 2) Face Size: 11-13/16" x 23-5/8"
8 3) Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: >0.6
9 4) Colors: Refer to Finish Schedule

10 b. PT-3, PB-2:

- 11 1) Garden State Tile - Anthem (see schedule for polished vs matte) – Color
12 body: Rectified Face Size: 12" x 24"
13 2) Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: >0.6
14 3) Trim Units:
15 a) Base: 5" x 24"
16 b) Tread: 13" x 48" (refer to detail 11/A414 – provide at least 2 grooves
17 cut near the outboard edge to distinguish where the tread ends and
18 the riser begins.)
19 4) Colors: Refer to Finish Schedule

20 2. Certification: Tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.

21 3. Face Size: Refer to each type of tile.

22 4. Thickness: 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).

23 5. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Refer to each type of tile.

24 6. Grout Color: To match color of tile as selected by Architect.

25 7. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and
26 matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from
27 manufacturer's standard shapes:

28 a. External Corners: Surface bullnose.

29 b. Internal Corners: Field-buttet square corners.

30 c. Tapered Transition Tile: Shape designed to effect transition between thickness of
31 tile floor and adjoining floor finishes of different thickness, tapered to provide
32 reduction in thickness from 1/2 to 1/4 inch (12.7 to 6.4 mm) across nominal 4-inch
33 (100-mm) dimension.

34 B. Accessories: Provide vitreous china accessories of type and size indicated, suitable for
35 installing by same method as used for adjoining wall tile.

36 1. One soap holder with grab handle for each shower and tub indicated.

37 2. Color and Finish: Match tile.

38 **2.4 THRESHOLDS**

39 A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between
40 adjacent floor finishes.

- 41 1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch (1.5
42 mm) above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit
43 height of threshold to 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) or less above adjacent floor surface.



1 B. Marble Thresholds: ASTM C 503/C 503M, with a minimum abrasion resistance of 10 according to
2 ASTM C 1353 or ASTM C 241/C 241M and with honed finish.

3 1. Description: Architect to select from manufacturer's full range of colors.

4 **2.5 WATERPROOF / CRACK MEMBRANE**

5 A. Fluid-Applied Membrane: Liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer.

6 1. Basis of Design: Vulkem® Under Tile Waterproofing System; Vulkem 350NF and related
7 materials.

8 **2.6 SETTING MATERIALS**

9 A. Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.

10 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
11 following:

12 a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.

13 b. Bostik, Inc.

14 c. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.

15 d. MAPEI Corporation.

16 e. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.

17 2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene-
18 rubber liquid-latex additive at Project site.

19 3. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging
20 mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.

21 **2.7 GROUT MATERIALS**

22 A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, consisting of white or gray cement and white or
23 colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.

24 B. High-Performance Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.

25 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
26 following:

27 a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.

28 b. Bostik, Inc.

29 c. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.

30 d. MAPEI Corporation.

31 e. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.

32 2. Polymer Type: Acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene rubber in liquid-latex form for addition to
33 prepackaged dry-grout mix.

34 C. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shaped, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or
35 combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring applications;
36 stainless-steel, ASTM A 666, 300 Series exposed-edge material.



1 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the
2 following:

3 a. Schluter Systems L.P.

4 D. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and
5 grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout
6 manufacturers.

7 E. Floor Sealer: Manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints and that does not change
8 color or appearance of grout.

9 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
10 following:

11 a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.

12 b. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.

13 **2.8 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT**

14 A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout
15 manufacturers' written instructions.

16 B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.

17 C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and
18 other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance
19 characteristics for installations indicated.

20 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

21 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

22 A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for
23 compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting
24 performance of the Work.

25 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are
26 incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other
27 substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances
28 required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.

29 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar comply with
30 surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.

31 a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically
32 scarified.

33 b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or
34 grinding.

35 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical
36 units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.

37 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if
38 not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.



1 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

2 **3.2 PREPARATION**

3 A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with adhesives
4 with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting
5 material manufacturer. Coordinate with Paragraph 2.5 above.

6 B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproofing by applying a reinforced mortar
7 bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot (1:50) toward drains.

8 C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and
9 packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from
10 other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to
11 manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

12 **3.3 CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION**

13 A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA
14 installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108
15 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation
16 methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting
17 materials used.

18 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile
19 installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:

- 20 a. Tile floors in wet areas.
21 b. Tile floors consisting of tiles 8 by 8 inches (200 by 200 mm) or larger.

22 B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete
23 covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions,
24 edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.

25 C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring
26 visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight
27 aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so
28 plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.

29 D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.

30 E. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are
31 flush.

32 F. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center
33 tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the
34 use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise
35 indicated.

36 1. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same
37 size, align joints.

38 2. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on
39 floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.



- 1 G. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
- 2 1. Porcelain Tile: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
- 3 H. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- 4 I. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control,
5 contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting
6 materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
- 7 1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above
8 them.
- 9 J. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless
10 otherwise indicated.
- 11 1. At locations where mortar bed (thickset) would otherwise be exposed above adjacent
12 floor finishes, set thresholds in modified dry-set mortar (thinset).
- 13 2. Do not extend waterproofing or crack isolation membrane under thresholds set in
14 modified dry-set mortar. Fill joints between such thresholds and adjoining tile set on
15 waterproofing or crack isolation membrane with elastomeric sealant.
- 16 K. Metal Edge Strips: Install in sequence with tile installation where exposed edge of tile flooring
17 meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold
18 is indicated.
- 19 L. Floor Sealer: Apply floor sealer to grout joints in tile floors according to floor-sealer
20 manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as floor sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove
21 excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.
- 22 M. Sealant at Balcony Tile Joint: Provide sealant where the tile abuts the vertical abutment ... not
23 motar.

24 **3.4 TILE BACKING PANEL INSTALLATION**

- 25 A. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions
26 for type of application indicated. Use modified dry-set mortar for bonding material unless
27 otherwise directed in manufacturer's written instructions.

28 **3.5 WATERPROOFING / CRACT ISOLATION INSTALLATION**

- 29 A. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to
30 produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- 31 B. Allow waterproofing to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or
32 setting materials over it.

33 **3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- 34 A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new
35 matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.



- 1 B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are
 2 free of foreign matter.
- 3 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
 4 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written
 5 instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners
 6 recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners
 7 are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect
 8 metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean
 9 water before and after cleaning.

10 3.7 PROTECTION

- 11 A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to
 12 prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral
 13 protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- 14 B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is
 15 completed.
- 16 C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from
 17 tile surfaces.

18 3.8 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- 19 A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:
- 20 1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F113; thinset mortar.
- 21 a. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set mortar.
 22 b. Grout: Sand-portland cement grout.
- 23 2. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F122; thinset mortar on waterproof membrane.
- 24 a. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set mortar.
 25 b. Grout: High-performance unsanded grout.
- 26 B. Interior Wall Installations, Wood or Metal Studs or Furring:
- 27 1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA W244C; thinset mortar on cementitious backer units.
- 28 a. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set mortar.
 29 b. Grout: Sand-portland cement grout.
- 30 C. Shower Receptor and Wall Installations:
- 31 1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA B415; thinset mortar on waterproof membrane over
 32 cementitious backer units.
- 33 a. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set mortar.
 34 b. Grout: Sand-portland cement grout.
 35

36 **END OF SECTION 09 30 13**



1 **SECTION 09 51 20 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **1.1 GENERAL**

- 6
7 A. Provide acoustical tile ceiling, gypsum lay-in panel and grid as herein specified and as
8 indicated on the drawings.
- 9 B. Provide Acoustical Grille System as herein specified and as indicated on the drawings.
- 10 C. Provide Suspended Acoustical Cloud System as herein specified and as indicated on the
11 drawings.
- 12 D. Provide Metal Ceiling System as herein specified and as indicated on the drawings.

13
14 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

15 A. .

16
17 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 18
19 A. Submittals: In addition to product data for each type of acoustical panel and suspension
20 system required, submit the following:
- 21
- 22 1. 4" x 4"-size samples of each tile type, wood and metal panel, pattern, and color
23 required.
 - 24 2. Sample of grid profile for each product

25
26 **1.3 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- 27
28 A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed, are packaged with
29 protective covering for storage, and are identified with labels describing contents.
- 30 1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full size units equal to 2.0 percent of amount installed.

31
32 **1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 33
34 1. Deliver acoustical panels and suspension system components to Project site in original,
35 unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed space where they will be protected
36 against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- 37
38 2. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized
39 moisture content.
- 40
41 3. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

42
43
44 **1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS**



- 45
46 1. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed
47 and weatherproof, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete,
48 and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for
49 Project when occupied for its intended use.

50
51
52 **1.6 COORDINATION**

- 53
54 1. Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical panels and suspension system with other
55 construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC



equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. Acoustical Tile Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, tile equal to the Basis of Design as follows:

1. ACT -1 Armstrong Optima High NRC Beveled Tegular. **#3251**
2. ACT-2 Armstrong Kitchen Zone **#868**
3. ACT-3 Metalworks Capz- M3 Microperforated – silver grey **#64940M10**.

B. Acoustical Tile Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard tiles of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, acoustical ratings, and light reflectance, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Mounting Method for Measuring Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): Type E-400 (plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches [400 mm] away from the test surface) per ASTM E 795.

B. Mineral-Fiber Tiles: Type IV, Form 2 acoustical tiles per ASTM E 1264,, complying with pattern and other requirements indicated below:

1. ACT-1 Pattern: Tiles matching pattern indicated by reference to manufacturer's standard product designations.
 - a. Color/Light Reflectance Coefficient: White/LR .87.
 - b. Noise Reduction Coefficient: NRC 0.80.
 - c. Ceiling Sound Transmission Class: CAC 35.
 - d. Edge Detail: 9/16" Beveled Tegular
 - e. Thickness: 7/8 inch.
 - f. Size: 24 by 24 inches.
 - g. Color: White.
 - h. Suspension System: 9/16" Suprafine XL exposed
2. ACT-2 Pattern: Tiles matching pattern indicated by reference to manufacturer's standard product designations.
 - a. Color/Light Reflectance Coefficient: White/LR .89.
 - b. Noise Reduction Coefficient: N/A.
 - c. Ceiling Sound Transmission Class: CAC 33.
 - d. Edge Detail: Square.
 - e. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 - f. Size: 24 by 24 inches.
 - g. Grid Face: 15/16"
 - h. Perforation Design: Unperforated.
 - i. Fire Resist/Flame spread: Class A (UL)
 - j. Anti-microbial: BioBlock
 - k. durability: Scratch resistance
 - l. Maintainability: Washable, soil resistance
3. ACT-3 Pattern: Tiles matching pattern indicated by reference to manufacturer's standard product designations.
 - a. Color; Silver Grey
 - b. Noise Reduction Coefficient: N/A.
 - c. Installation: Suspended.
 - d. Edge Detail: Square 5/16".
 - e. Thickness: 9/16" inch.
 - f. Shape: Rectangle
 - g. Size: 48 by 96 inches.
 - h. Face Profile: 15/16"



- j. Perforation Design: round staggered
- k. Fire Resist/Flame spread: Class A (UL)
- l. 5479 BioAcoustic Infill Panel
- m. Suspension System: 15/16" Prelude

- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
- D. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
1. Zinc-Coated Carbon Steel Wire: ASTM A 641 (ASTM A 641M), Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
 2. **Size**: Select wire diameter so that its stress at 3 times the hanger design load (ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct Hung) will be less than the yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch- (2.69-mm-) diameter wire.
- E. Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated, or if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that fit acoustical tile edge details and suspension systems indicated; formed from sheet metal of same material and finish as that used for exposed flanges of suspension system runners.
- F. Non-Fire-Resistance-Rated Suspension Systems: Provide manufacturer's standard hot-dipped galvanized metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable ASTM C 635 requirements:
1. Direct-Hung, Double-Web Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from and capped with pre-painted or electrolytic zinc-coated, cold-rolled steel sheet; other characteristics as follows:
 - a. Structural Classification: Intermediate-duty system, except heavy-duty for gypsum lay-in panel ceilings.
 - b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - (1) Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - (2) Chicago Metallic Corporation.
 - (3) USG Interiors, Inc.
 - c. Provide AHigh-Humidity@ finish complying with ASTM C 635 requirements for ACoating Classification for Severe Environment Performance for all ceilings where gypsum lay-in tile is scheduled.
- G. Antimicrobial Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer=s standard antimicrobial solution consisting of a synergistic blend of substituted ammonium salts of alkylated phosphoric acids admixed with free alkylated phosphoric acid that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria.
- H. **Acoustical Cloud System: Basis of Design – Armstrong AXIOM Trim # AX2STR, 2-inch straight.**
- J. **Metal Ceiling System: Basis of Design – Armstrong Metalworks Capz, 48" x 96", 9/16" thickness, perforated-round staggered, square 15/16" edge, bioacoustics Infill Panel**

PART 3 - EXECUTION
3.1 GENERAL



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
- A. General: Install acoustical tile ceilings to comply with publications referenced below per manufacturer's instructions and CISCA "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
1. Standard for Ceiling Suspension System Installations: Comply with ASTM C 636.
 2. Suspend ceiling hangers as follows:
 - a. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above. Connect hangers either directly to structural system or other devices that are secure, that are appropriate for substrate, and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
 - b. Space hangers not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise shown; and provide hangers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends of each member.
 3. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical tiles.
 4. Install suspension system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
 5. **Install angled hold down clips at angled ceilings.**
 6. Install acoustical tiles in coordination with suspension system. Place suspension system flanges into kerfed edges so that tile-to-tile joints are closed by double lap of material.
 - a. Fit adjoining tile to form flush, tight joints. Scribe and cut tile for accurate fit at borders and around penetrations through tile.

END OF SECTION 09 51 20



1 **SECTION 09 54 26 WOOD PANEL CEILINGS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general conditions of Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Divisions-1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
8 1. Wood veneer ceiling panels.
9 2. Exposed grid suspension system.
10 3. Wire hangers, fasteners, main runners, cross tees, wall angle moldings and
11 accessories.
12 B. Related Sections:
13 1. Section 09 51 00 - Acoustical Panel Ceiling
14 2. Section 09 29 00 - Gypsum Board
15 3. Divisions 23 - HVAC
16 4. Division 26 Sections - Electrical Work

17 **1.3 REFERENCES**

- 18 A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
19 1. ASTM A 641 Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel
20 Wire.
21 2. ASTM A 653 Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized)
22 by the Hot- Dip Process.
23 3. ASTM A 1008 Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold Rolled, Carbon,
24 Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy and High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved
25 Formability.
26 4. ASTM C 423 Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the
27 Reverberation Room Method.
28 5. ASTM C 635 Standard Specification for Metal Suspension Systems for
29 Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings.
30 6. ASTM E 84 Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of
31 Building Materials.
32 7. ASTM E 580 Application of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and
33 Lay-In Panels in Areas Requiring Seismic Restraint.
34 8. ASTM E 1414 Standard Test Method for Airborne Sound Attenuation Between
35 Rooms Sharing a Common Ceiling Plenum.
- 36 B. International Code Council Evaluation Service
37 AC156 - Acceptance Criteria for Seismic Qualification Testing of Non-structural
38 Components
39

40 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 41 A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data for each type of ceiling unit and
42 suspension system required.
43 B. Installation Instructions: Submit manufacturer's installation instructions as referenced in
44 Part 3, Installation.



- 1 C. Samples: Minimum 8-3/8 inch x 11-1/2 inch samples of specified panel; 8 inch long
 2 samples of exposed wall molding and suspension system.
 3 D. Shop Drawings: Submit manufacturer's shop drawings as referenced in Part 3,
 4 Installation
 5 E. Certifications: Manufacturer's certifications that products comply with specified
 6 requirements, including laboratory reports showing compliance with specified tests and
 7 standards; specifically fire performance.

8 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 9 A. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide ceiling panel units and grid components by a single
 10 manufacturer.
 11 B. Fire Performance Characteristics: Identify ceiling components with appropriate markings
 12 of applicable testing and inspecting organization.
 13 1. Surface Burning Characteristics: Tested per ASTM E 84:
 14 a. Flame Spread: 25 or less
 15 C. Woodworking Standards: Manufacturer must comply with specified provisions of
 16 Architectural Woodworking Institute quality standards.
 17 D. Seismic Performance: System seismic performance verified through full-scale testing in
 18 accordance with ICC-ES – AC-156 Acceptance Criteria for Seismic Qualification Testing
 19 of Non-Structural components.
 20 E. Coordination of Work: Coordinate ceiling work with installers of related work including,
 21 but not limited to building insulation, gypsum board, light fixtures, mechanical systems,
 22 electrical systems, and sprinklers.

23 **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 24 A. Store ceiling components in a dry interior location in their cartons prior to installation to
 25 avoid damage. Store cartons in a flat, horizontal position. The protectors between the
 26 panels should not be removed until installation.
 27 B. Do not store in unconditioned spaces with humidity greater than 55 percent or lower than
 28 25 percent relative humidity and temperatures lower than 50 degrees F or greater than
 29 86 degrees F. Panels must not be exposed to extreme temperatures, for example, close
 30 to a heating source or near a window with direct sunlight.
 31 C. Handle ceiling units carefully to avoid chipped edges or damage to units in any way.

32 **1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 33 A. Wood veneer ceiling materials should be permitted to reach room temperature and have
 34 a stabilized moisture content for a minimum of 72 hours before installation. (Remove
 35 plastic wrap to allow panels to climatize).
 36 B. The wood veneer panels should not be installed in spaces where the temperature or
 37 humidity conditions vary greatly from the temperatures and conditions that will be normal
 38 in the occupied space.
 39 C. As interior finish products, the wood veneer panels are designed for installation in
 40 temperature conditions between 50 degrees F and 86 degrees F, in spaces where the
 41 building is enclosed and HVAC systems are functioning and will be in continuous
 42 operation. Relative humidity should not fall below 25 percent or exceed 55 percent.

43 **1.8 WARRANTY**

- 44 A. Wood Veneer Panel: Submit a written warranty executed by the manufacturer, agreeing
 45 to repair or replace panels that fail within the warranty period. Failures include, but are
 46 not limited to:



- 1 1. Defects in materials or factory workmanship.
 2 B. Warranty Period:
 3 1. Wood Veneer Panel System: One (1) year from date of installation.
 4 C. The Warranty shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under
 5 other provisions of the Contract Documents and will be in addition to and run concurrent
 6 with other warranties made by the Contractor under the requirements of the Contract
 7 Documents.
 8

9 **1.9 MAINTENANCE**

- 10 A. Extra Materials: Deliver extra materials to Owner. Furnish extra materials described
 11 below that match products installed. Packaged with protective covering for storage and
 12 identified with appropriate labels.
 13 1. Ceiling Units: Furnish quality of full-size units equal to 2.0 percent of amount
 14 installed of largest sized panels.
 15 2. Exposed Suspension System Components: Furnish quantity of each exposed
 16 suspension component equal to 1.0 percent of amount installed.

17 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

18 **2.1 MANUFACTURER**

- 19 A. Suspension System:
 20 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 21 B. Ceiling Panels:
 22 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.

23 **2.2.0 SUSPENSION SYSTEM**

- 24 A. Suspension System: Prelude 15/16" Black
 25 1. 5986 T-Bar Hook† Nominal 4 x 2 x 3"
 26 2. 7123 Wood Screws 5/8"
 27 3. 6091 Safety Cable 24" x 3/32" 50 (2 required per panel)
 28 4. SH12 Support Hanger 144" x 2"

29 **2.2.1 WOOD VENEER CEILING UNITS**

- 30 A. Wood Panels: Type WPC-1
 31 1. Type: WoodWorks Grille – Forte" Natural Walnut 6325L-06
 32 2. ¼" Reveal
 33 3. Surface Texture: Smooth
 34 4. Substrate: Duraflake FR, Class A rated fire-retardant particleboard.
 35 5. Size: According to architectural drawings, 12" x 96" -2 ¼"H x 1W" plank.
 36 6. Surface Finish:
 37 a. Class A: A
 38 b. Veneer Species Natural Walnut
 39 c.. Veneer match: Slip match and balanced
 40 e. Stain: Natural Walnut
 41 7. Flame Spread: Class C per IBC
 42 8. Edge Detail: Square cut edge for installation on WoodWorks Flat Hook-on
 43 suspension system.
 44 9. Joint Gaskets: Joints are gasketed with a 6mm gasket.



- 1 10. Acceptable Product: WoodWorks Access (Hook-On) System, as
2 manufactured by Armstrong World Industries.
3

4 **2.2.2 ACCESSORIES:**

- 5 A. 6603W1 WoodWorks Concealed Trim** 6" x 120" Standard Veneers and Black (BL)
6 B. 8200100 Fiberglass Infill Panel 24 x 24 x 1" Black
7 C. 5823 BioAcoustics Infill Panel 24 x 24 x 5/8" Black (Matte)
8 D. 6408 Edge Banding 300" x 3/4" Standard Veneers
9 E. 7239 Adjustable Trim Clip
10

11 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

12 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 13 A. Do not proceed with installation until all wet work such as concrete, hard tile and painting
14 has been completed and thoroughly dried out.
15 B. Proper design for both supply air and return air, maintenance of the HVAC filters and
16 building interior space are essential to minimize soiling. Before starting the HVAC
17 system, make sure supply air is properly filtered and the building interior is free of
18 construction dust.

19 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 20 A. Examine construction and conditions under which the system will be installed. Do not
21 proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Coordinate
22 panel layout with mechanical and electrical fixtures.

23 **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- 24 A. Install suspension system and panels in compliance with ASTM C636, with the
25 authorities having jurisdiction, and in accordance with the manufacturer's shop drawings
26 and installation instructions.
27 1. WoodWorks Access Hook-On System Installation Instructions, LA-295834.

28 **3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- 29 A. Replace damaged and broken panels.
30 B. Clean exposed surfaces of ceilings panels, including trim, edge moldings, and
31 suspension members. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for cleaning and touch up
32 of minor finish damage. Remove and replace work that cannot be successfully cleaned
33 and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

34 **END OF SECTION 09 54 26**



1 **SECTION 09 65 13 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES**

2
3
4 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

5
6 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 7
8 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions
9 and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

10
11 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 12
13 A. This Section includes the following:
14
15 1. Resilient wall base.
16 2. Rubber stair treads with integrated riser

17
18
19 **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 20
21 A. Single-Source Responsibility for Products: Obtain each type and color of product specified from a
22 single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical
23 properties without delaying progress of the Work.
24
25 B. Fire Performance Characteristics: Provide products with the following fire performance
26 characteristics as determined by testing products per ASTM test method indicated below by UL or
27 another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
28
29 1. Critical Radiant Flux: 0.45 watts per sq cm or more per ASTM E 648.
30 2. Smoke Density: Less than 450 per ASTM E 662.

31
32 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 33
34 A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1
35 Specification Sections.
36
37 B. Product data for each type of product specified.
38
39 C. Samples for verification purposes in manufacturer's standard sizes, but not less than 12 inches
40 (300 mm) long, of each different color and pattern of product specified.

41
42 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 43
44 A. Deliver products to Project site in original manufacturer's unopened cartons and containers, each
45 bearing names of product and manufacturer, Project identification, and shipping and handling
46 instructions.
47
48 B. Store products in dry spaces protected from the weather with ambient temperatures maintained
49 between 50 deg F (10 deg C) and 90 deg F (32 deg C).
50
51 C. Move products into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.

52
53 **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 54
55 A. Maintain a minimum temperature of 70 deg F (21 deg C) in spaces to receive products specified in
56 this Section for at least 48 hours prior to installation, during installation, and for not less than 48
57 hours after installation. After this period, maintain a temperature of not less than 55 deg F (13 deg
58 C).
59



1 B. Do not install products until they are at the same temperature as that of the space where they are to
2 be installed.

3
4 C. Close spaces to traffic during installation of products specified in this Section.

5
6 **1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING**

7
8 A. Sequence installing products specified in this Section with other construction to minimize possibility
9 of damage and soiling during remainder of construction period.

10
11
12 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

13
14 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

15
16 A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated in
17 the Work include, but are not limited to, those specified in each Product Data Sheet at end of this
18 Section.

19
20 **2.2 RESILIENT WALL BASE**

21
22 A. Rubber Wall Base: Products complying with ASTM F1861 Standard Specification for Resilient Wall
23 Base, Type TP, and Group 1 and requirements herein specified.

24
25 B. Basis of Design Manufacturer: **Tarkett-Johnsonite Equinox MW-XX-R Rubber Base**

26
27 **2.3 RESILIENT ACCESSORIES**

28
29 **Johnsonite Angle Fit Rubber Stair Tread w/ Integrated Riser – FastLane Tread**
30 **Johnsonite Stair Nosing SRCN XX C at raised Dais Stair**

31
32
33 A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to
34 ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.

35
36 B. Basis of Design Manufacturer: Tarkett-Johnsonite Angle Fit Rubber Treads - Square Nose
37 Color Splash-Sandhill Crane VF6

38 C. Stair Treads: ASTM F 2169.

39 1) Type: Homogeneous composition of 100% recycled synthetic rubber; Type TS.

40 2) Class: 1 (smooth, flat).

41 3) Group: 2 (with contrasting color for the visually impaired).

42 4) Nosing Style: Square.

43 5) Nosing Height: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).

44 6) Thickness: 0.210 inch (5.33 mm) and tapered to back edge.

45 7) Size: Lengths and depths to fit each stair tread in one piece.

46 8) Integral Risers: Smooth, flat; in height that fully covers substrate.

47 9) Adhesives: Basis of design – Tarkett 946 Premium Contact Adhesive.

48
49 D. Colors and Patterns: As selected from manufacturer's custom colors.

50
51
52 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

53
54
55 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

56
57 A. Examine areas where installation of products specified in this Section will occur, with Installer
58 present, to verify that substrates and conditions are satisfactory for installation and comply with



1 manufacturer's requirements and those specified in this Section.

2
3 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 4
5 A. General: Comply with manufacturer's installation specifications for preparing substrates indicated to
6 receive products indicated.
7
8 B. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with
9 base.

10
11 **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- 12
13 A. General: Install products specified in this Section using methods indicated according to
14 manufacturer's installation directions.
15
16 B. Apply resilient wall base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework, and other permanent fixtures in
17 rooms and areas where base is required. Install wall base in lengths as long as practicable. Tightly
18 adhere wall base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with
19 horizontal and vertical substrates.
20
21 **1. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of**
22 **resilient wall base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.**

23
24 **3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- 25
26 A. Perform the following operations immediately after completing installation:
27
28 1. Remove visible adhesive and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by
29 manufacturers of resilient product involved.
30 2. Sweep or vacuum floor thoroughly.
31
32 B. Protect against mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and
33 placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period. Use protection
34 methods indicated or recommended by manufacturer of resilient product involved.
35
36 C. Clean products specified in this Section not more than 4 days prior to dates scheduled for
37 inspections intended to establish date of Substantial Completion in each area of Project. Clean
38 products using method recommended by manufacturer.
39

40 **PRODUCT DATA SHEET 1 - RUBBER WALL BASE**

- 41
42 A. Rubber Wall Base Designation: RC-1
43 B. Style: Equinox
44 C. Minimum Nominal Thickness: 1/2 inch.
45 D. Height: 4.25 inches with 45 deg angular top and a reveal.
46 E. Lengths: Manufacturer standard **8-foot lengths**.
47 F. Color and Pattern: Basis of Design in accordance with Color Schedule.
48 **G. Products: Basis of Design – Johnsonite, Millwork Wall Base**
49

50 **PRODUCT DATA SHEET 2 – RUBBER STAIR TREADS WITH INTEGRAL RISER**

- 51
52 A. Refer to paragraph 2.3 above.
53

54 **PRODUCT DATA SHEET 3 – STAIR NOSING AT RAISED DAIS STAIR - SRCN XX C**

- 55
56 A. Refer to paragraph 2.3 above.
57
58
59

END OF SECTION 09 65 13

RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

68100

09 65 13 - 3



1 **SECTION 09 65 19.24 LVT FLOORING**

2 **PART 1 – GENERAL**

3 **1.01 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section Includes:

- 5 1. Flooring and accessories as shown on the drawings and schedules and as indicated
6 by the requirements of this section.

7 B. Related Documents:

- 8 1. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract (including General and
9 Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 sections) apply to the work of this section.

10 C. Related Sections

- 11 1. Other Division 9 sections for floor finishes related to this section but not the work of
12 this section.
13 2. Division 3 Concrete; not the work of this section.
14 3. Division 7 Thermal and Moisture Protection; not the work of this section.

15 **1.02 REFERENCES**

16 A. ASTM International:

- 17 1. ASTM E 648 Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering
18 Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source.
19 2. ASTM E 662 Standard Test Method for Specific Optical Density of Smoke
20 Generated by Solid Materials.
21 3. ASTM F 710 Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient
22 Flooring.
23 4. ASTM F 1482, Standard Guide to Wood Underlayment Products Available for Use
24 Under Resilient Flooring.
25 5. ASTM F 1700 Standard Specification for Solid Vinyl tile.
26 6. ASTM F 1861 Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base.
27 7. ASTM F 1869 Standard Test Method for Measuring Vapor Emission Rate of
28 Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride.
29 8. ASTM F 2170 Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete
30 Floor Slabs Using in situ Probes.

31 B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)

- 33 1. NFPA 253 Standard Method of Test for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering
34 Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source.
35 2. NFPA 258 Standard Test Method for Measuring the Smoke Generated by Solid
36 Materials.

37 C. Sustainability Standards:

- 38 1. ASTM E1347 - 06(2011) Standard Test Method for Color and Color-Difference
39 Measurement by Tristimulus Colorimetry.



2. ASTM D5116 - 10 Standard Guide for Small-Scale Environmental Chamber Determinations of Organic Emissions From Indoor Materials/Products and California Department of Public Health (CDPH) Standard Method V1.1-2010.
3. ASTM D6866 - 12 Standard Test Methods for Determining the Biobased Content of Solid, Liquid, and Gaseous Samples Using Radiocarbon Analysis.
4. ISO 14001 Environmental management systems -- Requirements with guidance for use.
5. ISO 14021 Environmental labels and declarations-Self-declared environmental claims (Type II environmental labeling).
6. ISO 14024 Environmental labels and declarations -- Type I environmental labeling -- Principles and procedures.
7. ISO 14025 Environmental labels and declarations -- Type III environmental declarations -- Principles and procedures.
8. NSF/ANSI 332: Sustainability Assessment for Resilient Floor Coverings.

1.03 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Performance Requirements:

1. Provide flooring which has been manufactured, fabricated and installed to performance criteria certified by manufacturer without defects, damage, or failure.

B. Administration Requirements:

1. Pre-installation Meeting: Conduct an on-site pre-installation meeting to verify project requirements, substrate conditions, manufacturer's installation instructions and manufacturer's warranty requirements. Comply with Division 1 Project Management and Coordination (Project Meetings) Section.

C. Mockups: Install at the project site a job mock-up using acceptable products and manufacturer approved installation methods. Obtain Owner's and Architect's acceptance of finish color, texture and pattern, and workmanship standards.

1. Mock-Up Size: 10' x 10'.
2. Maintenance: Maintain mock-up during construction for workmanship comparison; remove and legally dispose of mock-up when no longer required.
3. Incorporation: Mock-up may be incorporated into the final construction with Owner's approval.

D. Sequencing and Scheduling:

1. Install flooring and accessories after the other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed. Close spaces to traffic during the installation of the flooring.
2. Do not install flooring over concrete slabs until they are sufficiently dry to achieve a bond with the adhesive, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended bond, moisture tests and pH test.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- #### A.
- Submit shop drawings, seaming plan, coving details, and manufacturer's technical data, installation and maintenance instructions for flooring and accessories.



- 1 B. Samples:
- 2 1. Submit the manufacturer's standard samples showing the required colors for flooring
3 and applicable accessories.
- 4
- 5 C. MSDS:
- 6
- 7 1. Submit Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) available for flooring product,
8 adhesives, patching/leveling compounds, floor finishes and cleaning agents.
- 9
- 10 D. Certifications:
- 11
- 12 1. Submit the manufacturer's certification that the flooring has been tested by an
13 independent laboratory and complies with the required fire tests.
- 14
- 15 E. Closeout:
- 16 1. Operation and Maintenance Data: Operation and maintenance data for installed
17 products in accordance with Division 1 Closeout Submittals (Maintenance Data and
18 Operation Data) Section. Include methods for maintaining installed products, and
19 precautions against cleaning materials and methods detrimental to finishes and
20 performance.
- 21 2. Warranty: Warranty documents as specified herein.
- 22

23 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

24 [See Allstate Construction's bid package.](#)

- 25 A. Responsibility:
- 26
- 27 1. Single-Source Responsibility: provide types of flooring and accessories supplied by
28 one manufacturer, including leveling and patching compounds, and adhesives.
- 29
- 30 B. Installer: Select an installer who is competent in the installation of Armstrong resilient
31 solid vinyl tile flooring.
- 32
- 33 1. Engage installers certified as Armstrong Commercial Certified Installers.
34 2. Confirm installer's certification by requesting their credentials.
- 35
- 36 C. Fire Performance: Fire Performance Characteristics: Provide resilient tile flooring with
37 the following fire performance characteristics as determined by testing material in
38 accordance with ASTM test methods indicated below by a certified testing laboratory or
39 other testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
- 40
- 41 1. ASTM E 648 Critical Radiant Flux of 0.45 watts per sq. cm. or greater, Class I.
42 2. ASTM E 662 (Smoke Generation) Maximum Specific Optical Density of 450 or less.
- 43

44 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- 45
- 46 A. Comply with Division 1 Product Requirements Sections.
- 47
- 48 B. Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead time requirements to avoid
49 construction delays.
- 50
- 51 C. Deliver materials in good condition to the jobsite in the manufacturer's original unopened
52 containers that bear the name and brand of the manufacturer, project identification, and
53 shipping and handling instructions.
- 54



- 1 D. Store materials in a clean, dry, enclosed space off the ground, protected from harmful
 2 weather conditions and at temperature and humidity conditions recommended by the
 3 manufacturer. Protect adhesives from freezing. Store flooring, adhesives and
 4 accessories in the spaces where they will be installed for at least 48 hours before
 5 beginning installation.
 6

7 **1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 8
 9 A. Temperature:
 10
 11 1. Maintain a minimum temperature in the spaces to receive the flooring and
 12 accessories of 65°F (18°C) and a maximum temperature of 85°F (29°C) for at least
 13 48 hours before, during, and for not less than 48 hours after installation. Thereafter,
 14 maintain a minimum temperature of 55°F (13°C) in areas where work is completed.
 15 Protect all materials from the direct flow of heat from hot-air registers, radiators, or
 16 other heating fixtures and appliances.
 17

18 **1.08 WARRANTY**

- 19
 20 A. Resilient Flooring: Submit a written warranty executed by the manufacturer, agreeing to
 21 repair or replace resilient flooring that fails within the warranty period.
 22
 23 B. Warranty Period: 20 Years.
 24
 25 C. The Warranty shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under
 26 other provisions of the Contract Documents and will be in addition to and run concurrent
 27 with other warranties made by the Contractor under the requirements of the Contract
 28 Documents.
 29
 30 D. For the Warranty to be valid, this product is required to be installed using the appropriate
 31 manufacturer's installation system. Product installed not using the specific instructions
 32 from the Guaranteed Installation System will void the warranty.
 33

34 **1.09 MAINTENANCE**

- 35
 36 A. Extra Materials: Deliver extra materials to Owner. Furnish extra materials from same
 37 production run as products installed. Package with protective covering for storage and
 38 identified with appropriate labels.
 39
 40 1. Quantity: Furnish quantity of flooring units equal to 5% of amount installed.
 41
 42

43 **PART 2- PRODUCTS**

44
 45 **2.01 MANUFACTURER**

- 46
 47 A. Company: Resilient tile flooring, adhesive and accessories:
 48
 49 1. **Basis of Design: Bentley Mills - Colonnade**
 50

51 **2.02 RESILIENT TILE FLOORING MATERIALS**

- 52
 53 1. **Products – Basis of Design: Provide Luxury Solid Vinyl Tile Flooring**
 54 **manufactured by Bentley Mills - Colonnade: LVT-1 & LVT-2**
 55 2. Classification: ASTM F 1700 Class III Type B
 56 3. Total Thickness: 0.197".



4. Wear Layer Thickness: 20 mil.
5. Edge Treatment: Square edge (SE) or slight Bevel (SB).
6. Indoor air Quality: Meets CDPH Standard Method v1.1-2010: FloorScore® Certification.
7. NSF 332 Certification: Gold.
8. Size: 18" x 36"
9. Color and Pattern: Basis of Design in accordance with Color Schedule.

2.03 ADHESIVES

- A. Provide manufacturer's recommended adhesive as recommended by the flooring manufacturer.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Patching:
 1. For patching, smoothing, and leveling monolithic subfloors (concrete), provide Manufacturer's recommended Fast-Setting Cement-Based Patch and Underlayment when leveling is necessary.
- B. Transition:
 1. Provide transition/reducing strips tapered to meet abutting materials.
- C. Provide resilient edge strips of width shown on the drawings, of equal gauge to the flooring, homogeneous vinyl or rubber composition, tapered or bullnose edge, with color to match or contrast with the flooring, or as selected by the Architect from standard colors available.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Compliance:
 1. Comply with manufacturer's product data, including technical bulletins, product catalog, installation instructions, and product carton instructions for installation and maintenance procedures as needed.

3.02 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Visitation:
 1. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify substrate conditions (which have been previously installed under other sections) are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions (i.e. moisture tests, bond test, pH test, etc.).
- B. Visual Inspection



- 1 1. Visually inspect flooring materials, adhesives and accessories prior to installation.
 2 Flooring material with visual defects shall not be installed and shall not be
 3 considered as a legitimate claim.
- 4 C. Inspect Subfloors:
- 5 1. Inspect subfloors prior to installation to determine that surfaces are free from curing,
 6 sealing, parting and hardening compounds; residual adhesives; adhesive removers;
 7 and other foreign materials that might prevent adhesive bond. Visually inspect for
 8 evidence of moisture, alkaline salts, carbonation, dusting, mold, or mildew.
- 9 D. Reporting:
- 10 1. Report conditions contrary to contract requirements that would prevent a proper
 11 installation. Do not proceed with the installation until unsatisfactory conditions have
 12 been corrected.
- 13 E. Failure Warning:
- 14 1. Failure to call attention to defects or imperfections will be construed as acceptance
 15 and approval of the subfloor. Installation indicates acceptance of substrates with
 16 regard to conditions existing at the time of installation.

17 **3.03 PREPARATION**

- 18 A. Smooth Surfaces
- 19 1. Subfloor Preparation: Smooth concrete surfaces, removing rough areas,
 20 projections, ridges, and bumps, and filling low spots, control or construction joints,
 21 and other defects with Manufacturer's recommended fast-setting cement-based
 22 patching and underlayment.
- 23 B. Subfloor Cleaning:
- 24 1. Subfloor Cleaning: Remove paint, varnish, oils, release agents, sealers, and waxes.
 25 Remove residual adhesives as recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Remove
 26 curing and hardening compounds not compatible with the adhesives used, as
 27 indicated by a bond test or by the compound manufacturer's recommendations for
 28 flooring. Avoid organic solvents.
- 29 C. Standard Moisture Test
- 30 1. Perform subfloor moisture testing in accordance with ASTM F 2170, 'Standard
 31 Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Slabs Using in-situ
 32 Probes' ASTM F 1869, 'Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor
 33 Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride' to
 34 determine if surfaces are dry; free of curing and hardening compounds, old
 35 adhesive, and other coatings; and ready to receive flooring. Relative humidity
 36 shall not exceed 80% unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer. Do not
 37 proceed with flooring installation until results of moisture tests are acceptable.
 38 All test results shall be documented and retained.
- 39 D. Concrete pH Testing: Perform pH tests on concrete floors regardless of their age or
 40 grade level. All test results shall be documented and retained.
 41
 42
 43
 44
 45
 46
 47



- 1 E. Surface Cleaning: Vacuum or broom-clean surfaces to be covered immediately before
2 the application of flooring. Make subfloor free from dust, dirt, grease, and all foreign
3 materials.
4

5 **3.04 INSTALLATION OF FLOORING**
6

- 7 A. Install flooring in strict accordance with the manufacturer's latest installation
8 requirements.
9
10 B. Install flooring wall to wall before the installation of floor-set cabinets, casework,
11 furniture, equipment, movable partitions, etc. Extend flooring into toe spaces, door
12 recesses, closets, and similar openings as shown on the drawings.
13
14 C. Roll with a 100-pound (45.36 kilogram) roller in the field areas. Refer to specific rolling
15 instructions of the flooring manufacturer.
16
17 D. Install flooring with adhesives, tools, and procedures in strict accordance with the
18 manufacturer's written instructions. Observe the recommended adhesive trowel
19 notching, open times, and working times.
20

21 **3.05 INSTALLATION OF ACCESSORIES**
22

- 23 A. Resilient Edge Strips – Butted.
24
25 1. Place resilient edge strips tightly butted to flooring, and secure with adhesive
26 recommended by the edge strip manufacturer. Install edge strips at edges of flooring
27 that would otherwise be exposed.

28 **3.06 PROTECTION**
29

- 30 A. Protect installed flooring as recommended by the flooring manufacturer against damage
31 from rolling loads, other trades, or the placement of fixtures and furnishings.
32

33 **END OF SECTION 09 65 19.23**



1 **SECTION 09 68 16 – CARPET**

2
3 **PART 1 GENERAL**

4
5 **1.1 SECTION INCLUDES**

- 6
7 A. Carpet placed with glue down method.
8
9 B. Accessories.

10
11 **1.2 REFERENCES**

- 12
13 A. ASTM E 648 – CLASS I. This fire test response standard is designed to provide a basis
14 for estimating one aspect of the fire exposure behavior of a floor-covering system
15 installed in a building corridor.
16
17 B. ASTM E 662 This test method provides a means for determining the specific optical
18 density of the smoke generated by specimens of materials and assemblies under the
19 specified exposure conditions
20
21 C. ASTM E648 - Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat
22 Energy Source.

23
24 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 25
26 A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 33 00.
27
28 B. Shop Drawings: Indicate seaming plan, method of joining seams and direction of carpet.
29
30 C. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance
31 characteristics; sizes, patterns, colors available, and method of installation.
32
33 D. Samples: Submit two samples 18" x 24" size illustrating color and pattern for each carpet
34 material specified.
35
36 E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter
37 conditions requiring special attention.
38

39 **1.4 QUALIFICATIONS**

- 40
41 A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing specified carpet with minimum
42 five years documented experience.
43
44 B. Installer: Company specializing in installing carpet with minimum three years
45 documented experience.
46

47 **1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- 48
49 A. Conform to applicable code for flame/smoke rating requirements of in accordance with
50 ASTM E84.
51
52 B. Conform to NFPA 253 for flooring radiant panel test.
53
54 C. Conform to ASTM D2859 for surface flammability ignition test.
55



1
2
3 **1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS**
4

- 5 A. Store materials for 3 days prior to installation in area of installation to achieve
6 temperature stability.
7 B. Maintain minimum 70 degrees F (21 degrees C) ambient temperature 3 days prior to,
8 during and 24 hours after installation.
9

10 **1.7 MAINTENANCE DATA**
11

- 12 A. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommended maintenance
13 materials, and suggested schedule for cleaning.
14
15

16 **PART 2 PRODUCTS**
17

18 **2.1 BASIS OF DESIGN MATERIALS – CARPET**
19

- 20 A. **Carpet CP-1: Bentley Mills**
21 1. **product style: Suitable, 4UVT40**
22 2. **product collection:**
23 3. **product color: Relevant 411461**
24 4. **primary backing: AFIRMA II Hardback 18x36**
25 5. **secondary backing:**
26 6. **construction: Tufted Textured Loop**
27 7. **wear rating: 56 oz/sq. yd.**
28 8. **dye method: Solution Dyed**
29 9. **fiber: Bentley Premium Type 6,6 Nylon**
30 10. **size: 18" x 36" Tile**
31
32 B. **Carpet CP-2: Shaw Contract**
33 1. **product style: Beyond Tile, 5T218**
34 2. **product collection: Off The Grid**
35 3. **product color: Coast 15456**
36 4. **primary backing: Synthetic**
37 5. **secondary backing: Ecoworx Tile**
38 6. **construction: Multi-Level Pattern Cut/ Loop**
39 7. **wear rating: 30 oz/sq. yd.**
40 8. **dye method: 100% solution dyed**
41 9. **fiber: Ecosolution Q100 Nylon**
42 10. **size: 12"x48" tile**
43
44 C. **Carpet CP-3: Shaw Contract**
45 1. **product style: Path Tile, 5T034**
46 2. **product collection: All Access**
47 3. **product color: Lava 34549**
48 4. **primary backing: Synthetic**
49 5. **secondary backing: Ecoworx Tile**
50 6. **construction: Multi-Level Pattern Loop**
51 7. **wear rating: 28 oz/sq. yd.**
52 8. **dye method: 100% Solution Dyed**
53 9. **fiber: Ecolution Q100 Nylon**
54 10. **size: 24" x 24" tile**
55



1
2
3 **2.2 ACCESSORIES**
4

- 5 A. Sub Floor Filler: White premix latex; type recommended by adhesive material
6 manufacturer.
7
8 B. Adhesive: Compatible with carpet material. Recommended by carpet manufacturer,
9 releasable type.
10
11 C. Edge Strips: See Contract Document Drawings and Section 10 00 01 "Miscellaneous
12 Specialties".
13

14 **PART 3 EXECUTION**
15

16 **3.1 EXAMINATION**
17

- 18 A. Verify that surfaces are smooth and flat with maximum variation of 1/4-inch in 10 ft, and
19 are ready to receive work.
20
21 B. Verify that concrete floors and floor underlayment are dry to a maximum moisture content
22 of 7 percent; and exhibit negative alkalinity, carbonization, or dusting.
23

24 **3.2 PREPARATION**
25

- 26 A. Remove subfloor ridges and bumps. Fill minor or local low spots, cracks, joints, holes,
27 and other defects with sub-floor filler.
28
29 B. Apply, trowel, and float filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface. Prohibit traffic until
30 filler is cured.
31
32 C. Vacuum clean substrate.
33

34 **3.3 INSTALLATION**
35

- 36 A. Apply carpet and adhesive in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
37
38 B. Maintain dye lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.
39
40 C. Join seams by method as recommended by manufacturer for specified warranty.
41 Form seams straight, not overlapped or peaked, and free of gaps.
42
43 D. Lay carpet tight and flat on subfloor, well fastened at edges, with a uniform
44 appearance. Provide monolithic color, pattern, and texture match within any one
45 area.
46
47 E. Do not change run of pile in any room where carpet is continuous through a wall
48 opening into another room. Locate change of color or pattern between rooms under
49 door centerline.
50
51 F. Cut and fit carpet tiles tight around interruptions.
52
53 G. Fit carpet tiles tight to intersection with vertical surfaces without gaps.
54
55 H. Where wall bases are scheduled, cut carpet tiles tight to walls. Fit carpet tiles tight to



vertical interruptions, leaving no gaps.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Remove excess adhesive without damage, from floor, base, and wall surfaces.

B. Clean and vacuum carpet surfaces.

3.5 SCHEDULE

A. Refer to Finish Schedule in drawings.

END OF SECTION 09 68 16



1 **SECTION 09 80 00 - SPECIAL COATINGS**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 6
7 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division
8 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

9
10 **1.02 SUMMARY**

- 11
12 A. This Section includes applying special coating systems to items and surfaces scheduled, including surface
13 preparation, prime coats, and topcoats.
14
15 B. Types of special coating systems required for the Project include the following:
16 1. Special coatings for interior use include the following:
17 a. Two-component, high-performance, acrylic Epoxy.
18
19 C. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
20 1. General painting is specified in Division 9 Section "Painting."
21

22 **1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 23
24 A. General: Submit the following according to Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
25
26 B. Product data for each coating system specified, including block fillers and primers.
27 1. Provide the manufacturer's technical information, including label analysis and instructions for handling,
28 storing, and applying each material proposed for use.
29 2. List each material and cross-reference the specific coating, finish system, and application. Identify each
30 material by the manufacturer's catalog number and general classification.
31 3. Certification by the manufacturer that products supplied comply with local regulations controlling use of
32 volatile organic compounds (VOCs).
33
34 C. Samples for Verification Purposes: Provide samples of each color and material to be applied with texture to
35 simulate actual conditions on representative samples of the actual substrate.
36 1. Provide stepped samples, defining each separate coat, including block fillers and primers. Use
37 representative colors when preparing samples for review. Resubmit until the required sheen, color, and
38 texture are achieved.
39 2. Provide a list of material and application for each coat of each sample. Label each sample as to location
40 and application.
41 3. Submit samples on the following substrates for the Architect's review of color and texture only.
42 a. Concrete: Provide two 4-inch (100-mm) square samples for each color and finish.
43 b. Concrete Masonry: Provide two 8-inch (200-mm) square samples of masonry, with mortar joint in
44 the center, for each finish and color.
45 c. Gypsum board: Provide two 4-inch (100-mm) square samples for each color and finish.
46

47 **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 48
49 A. Applicator Qualifications: Engage an experienced applicator who has successfully completed coating system
50 applications similar in material and extent to those indicated for the Project.
51
52 B. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide primers and undercoat material produced by the same manufacturer as
53 the finish coats for each type of coating. Use only thinners recommended by the manufacturer and only within
54 recommended limits.
55

56 **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
- A. Deliver materials to the job site in the manufacturer's original, new, unopened packages, and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and the following information:
 1. Name or title of material.
 2. Product description (generic classification or binder type).
 3. Manufacturer's name, stock number and date of manufacture.
 4. Contents by volume, for major pigment and vehicle constituents.
 5. Thinning instructions.
 6. Application instructions.
 7. Color name and number.
 8. Handling instructions and precautions.
 - B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in a well-ventilated area at a minimum ambient temperature of 45 deg F (7 deg C). Maintain containers used in storage in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 1. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily. Take necessary measures to ensure that workers and work areas are protected from fire and health hazards resulting from handling, mixing, and applying the coatings.

20 **1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- 21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
- A. Apply coatings only when the temperature of surfaces to be coated and surrounding air temperatures are between 45 deg F (7 deg C) and 95 deg F (35 deg C).
 - B. Do not apply coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when the relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 F deg (3 C deg) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
 1. Allow wet surfaces to dry thoroughly and attain the temperature and conditions specified before proceeding with or continuing the coating operation.
 2. Work may continue during inclement weather only if areas and surfaces to be coated are enclosed and the temperature within the area can be maintained within limits specified by the manufacturer during application and drying periods.

34 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

35
36 **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- 37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following:
 1. Devoe and Reynolds Company (Devoe).
 2. The Glidden Company (Glidden).
 3. **Benjamin Moore and Company (Moore) Basis of Design (Epoxy)- Basis of Design.**
 4. Porter International (Porter).
 5. PPG Industries, Pittsburgh Paints (PPG).
 6. Sherwin-Williams Company (S-W).
 7. Tnemec Company, Inc. (Tnemec).
 8. Color Wheel Paints & Coatings

51 **2.02 SPECIAL COATING MATERIALS, GENERAL**

- 52
53
54
55
56
- A. Material Compatibility: Provide block fillers, primers, finish coat material, and related materials that are compatible with one another and the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by the manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 - B. Material Quality: Provide the **highest grade** of the various coatings as regularly manufactured by acceptable



1 coating manufacturers. Materials not displaying manufacturer's identification as a best-grade product will not be
 2 acceptable.

- 3 1. Proprietary Names: Use of manufacturer's proprietary product names to designate colors or materials are
 4 not intended to imply that products named are required to be used to the exclusion of equivalent products
 5 of other manufacturers. Furnish the manufacturer's material data and certificates of performance for
 6 proposed substitutions.
 7

- 8 C. Colors: In accordance with Color Schedule. Match colors indicated by reference to the manufacturer's standard
 9 color designations.
 10

11 **2.03 MASONRY-BLOCK FILLERS**

- 12
 13 A. Masonry Block Fillers: Provide the manufacturer's recommended factory-formulated concrete masonry block
 14 fillers that are compatible with the finish materials indicated.
 15

16 **2.04 BOND COAT MATERIALS**

- 17
 18 A. Bond Coat Materials: Provide the manufacturer's recommended factory-formulated bond coat materials that are
 19 compatible with the finish materials indicated.
 20

21 **2.05 PRIMERS AND SEALERS**

- 22
 23 A. Primer/Sealers: Provide the manufacturer's recommended factory-formulated primer/sealers that are compatible
 24 with the substrate and finish materials indicated.
 25

26 **2.06 INTERMEDIATE COAT MATERIALS**

- 27
 28 A. Intermediate Coat Materials: Provide the manufacturer's recommended, factory-formulated, intermediate coat
 29 materials that are compatible with the substrate, primers or base coat materials, and the finish materials
 30 indicated.
 31

32 **2.07 INTERIOR FINISH-COAT MATERIALS**

- 33
 34 A. Interior Finish-Coat Materials: Provide the manufacturer's recommended factory-formulated, interior, finish-coat
 35 materials.
 36
 37

38 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

39 **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- 40
 41
 42 A. Examine substrates and conditions under which coatings will be applied for compliance with requirements on
 43 applying coatings. Surfaces to receive coatings must be thoroughly dry before coatings are applied.
 44 1. Do not proceed with coating application until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 45 2. Start of application will be construed as the Applicator's acceptance of surfaces within that particular area.
 46
 47 B. Coordinating Work: Review sections in which other coatings are provided to ensure compatibility of the total
 48 systems for various substrates. On request, furnish information on the characteristics of specified finish
 49 materials to ensure compatible primers.
 50 1. Notify the Architect of problems anticipated using the coatings specified over substrates primed by others.
 51

52 **3.02 PREPARATION**

- 53
 54 A. General: Remove hardware and hardware accessories, plates, machined surfaces, lighting fixtures, and similar
 55 items already in place that are not to be coated or provide surface-applied protection prior to surface preparation
 56 and coating. Remove these items, if necessary, to completely coat the items and adjacent surfaces. Following



1 the coating operations in each space or area, have removed items reinstalled by workers skilled in the trades
 2 involved.
 3

- 4 B. Cleaning: Before applying coatings or other surface treatments, clean the substrates of substances that could
 5 impair bond of the various coatings. Remove oil and grease prior to cleaning. Schedule cleaning and coating
 6 application so dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly coated surfaces.
 7
- 8 C. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be coated according to the manufacturer's instructions for
 9 each particular substrate condition and as specified.
 10 1. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers, or remove and reprime. Notify the Architect in writing of
 11 problems anticipated when using the specified finish-coat material with substrates primed by others.
 12
- 13 D. Cementitious Surfaces: Prepare concrete, concrete masonry block and similar surfaces to receive special
 14 coatings. Remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, grease, oils, and release agents. Roughen, as required, to
 15 remove glaze. If hardeners or sealers have been used to improve concrete curing, use mechanical methods to
 16 prepare surface.
 17 1. Use abrasive blast-cleaning methods if recommended by the coating system manufacturer.
 18 2. Determine alkalinity and moisture content of surfaces to be coated by performing appropriate tests.
 19 If surfaces are sufficiently alkaline to cause the finish coats to blister and burn, correct this
 20 condition before application. Do not apply coatings over surfaces where the moisture content
 21 exceeds that permitted in the manufacturer's printed directions.
 22
- 23 E. Material Preparation: Carefully mix and prepare materials according to the coating manufacturer's directions.
 24 1. Maintain containers used in mixing and application of coatings according to the manufacturer's directions.
 25 2. Stir materials before applying to produce a mixture of uniform density; stir as required during application.
 26 Do not stir surface film into the material. Remove film and, if necessary, strain the coating material before
 27 using.
 28 3. Use only the type of thinners approved by the manufacturer and only within recommended limits.
 29
- 30 F. Tinting: Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identifying each coat where multiple coats of the same
 31 material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match the color of the finish coat, but provide sufficient difference
 32 in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
 33

34 3.03 APPLICATION

- 35
- 36 A. General: Apply special coatings by brush, roller, spray, squeegee, or other applicators according to the
 37 manufacturer's directions. Use brushes best suited for the material being applied. Use rollers of carpet, velvet
 38 back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by the manufacturer for the material and texture required.
 39 1. Do not apply coatings over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions detrimental
 40 to forming a durable coating film.
 41 2. Coating colors, surface treatments, and finishes are indicated in the Schedules.
 42 3. Provide finish coats compatible with the primers used.
 43 4. The number of coats and film thickness required is the same regardless of the application method. Do
 44 not apply succeeding coats until the previous coat has cured as recommended by the manufacturer.
 45 Where sanding is required, according to the manufacturer's directions, sand between applications to
 46 produce a smooth, even surface.
 47 5. When undercoats or other conditions show through the final coat, apply additional coats until the cured
 48 film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance. Give special attention to edges, corners,
 49 crevices, welds, exposed fasteners, and similar surfaces to ensure that they receive a dry film thickness
 50 equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
 51 6. The term "exposed surfaces" includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, convector covers,
 52 covers for finned tube radiation, grilles, and similar components are in place. Extend coatings in these
 53 areas, as required, to maintain the system integrity and provide desired protection.
 54 a. Coat surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces.
 55 b. Coat the back sides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to
 56 match exposed surfaces.



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
- B. Scheduling Coating: Apply first coat to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated, or otherwise prepared for coating as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.
 1. Allow sufficient drying time between successive coats. Do not recoat until the coating has dried so it feels firm and does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure and where applying another coat does not cause the undercoat to lift or lose adhesion.
 - C. Application Procedures: Apply coatings by brush, roller, spray, or other applicators according to the manufacturer's directions.
 1. Brushes: Use brushes best suited for the material applied.
 2. Rollers: Use rollers of carpet, velvet back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by the manufacturer for the material and texture required.
 3. Spray Equipment: Use spray equipment with orifice size as recommended by the manufacturer for the material and texture required.
 - D. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply each material no thinner than the manufacturer's recommended spreading rate. Provide total dry film thickness of the entire system as recommended by the manufacturer and as specified herein.
 - E. Block Fillers: Apply block fillers to concrete masonry block at a rate to ensure complete coverage with pores filled.
 - F. Prime Coats: Before applying finish coats, apply a prime coat of material, as recommended by the manufacturer, to the material required to be coated or finished that has not been prime-coated by others.
 1. Recoat primed and sealed substrates where there is evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in the first coat to ensure a finish coat with no burn-through or other defects caused by insufficient sealing.
 - G. Brush Application: Brush-out and work brush coats into surfaces in an even film. Eliminate cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Neatly draw glass lines and color breaks.
 1. Apply primers and first coats by brush unless the manufacturer's instructions permit using mechanical applicators.
 - H. Mechanical Applications: Use mechanical methods to apply coating when permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations and governing regulations.
 1. Wherever using spray application, apply each coat to provide the equivalent hiding of brush-applied coats. Do not double-back with spray equipment building-up film thickness of two coats in one pass, unless recommended by the manufacturer.
 - I. Completed Work: Match approved samples for color, texture and coverage. Remove, refinish, or recoat work not complying with specified requirements.

3.04 CLEANING

- 42
43
44
45
46
47
48
- A. Cleanup: At the end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from the site.
 1. After completing work, clean glass and spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

3.05 PROTECTION

- 49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
- A. Protect work of other trades, whether being coated or not, against damage from coating operation. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as acceptable to the Architect. Leave in an undamaged condition.
 1. Provide "Wet Paint" signs to protect newly coated finishes. Remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others to protect their work after completing coating operations.
 2. At completion of other trades' construction activities, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated



surfaces.

3.06 INTERIOR SPECIAL COATING SCHEDULE

A. Provide the following coating systems for substrates indicated:

1. Where undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until the cured film is of uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.

B. Concrete Masonry Units:

1. High-Performance, Polyamide-Epoxy Coating System: Provide two finish coats with total dry film thickness not less than 4 mils over concrete masonry block filler.
 - a. Filler Coat: Concrete masonry block filler.
 - 1) Moore: M36-00/M37 Polyamide Epoxy Block, 10 mils dry film thickness.
 - b. First and Second Coats: Polyamide-epoxy coating.
 - 1) Moore: Industrial Maintenance Coatings M36/M37, 2 mils dry film thickness each coat.

C. Drywall:

1. High-Performance, Polyamide-Epoxy Coating System: Provide two finish coats with total dry film thickness not less than 4 mils over concrete masonry block filler.
 - a. Filler Coat: Concrete masonry block filler.
 - 1) Moore: M36-00/M37 Polyamide Epoxy Block, 10 mils dry film thickness.
 - b. First and Second Coats: Polyamide-epoxy coating.
 - 1) Moore: Industrial Maintenance Coatings M36/M37, 2 mils dry film thickness each coat.

END OF SECTION 09 80 00



1 **SECTION 09 84 13 – FIXED SOUND-ABSORPTIVE PANELS**

2
3
4 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

5
6 **SUMMARY:**

7
8 Extent of acoustical wall panels is shown on drawings.

- 9
10 Diffuser-Absorber panels
11 Standard wall panels
12 Low Frequency wall and ceiling panels

13
14 System shall include panels, support systems and all materials required for proper installation.

15
16 **ACTION SUBMITTALS:**

17
18 Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data for each type of acoustical panel required.

19
20 Certificates: Submit certificates from manufacturers of acoustical panels attesting that their products comply
21 with specified requirements including fire performance characteristics.

22
23 Samples: Provide 1' x 1' sample panel with each type of facing.

24
25 **QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

26
27 Fire Performance Characteristics: Provide acoustical panels, with surface-burning characteristics as
28 indicated below, which have been determined by testing assemblies of identical materials and construction
29 according to ASTM E 84. Panels shall be rated Class A as defined by ASTM E-84.

30
31 Flame Spread: 25 or less.

32 Smoke Developed: 65 or less with manufacturer=s standard facing.

33
34 **PRODUCT HANDLING:**

35
36 Protect acoustical panels from excessive moisture in shipment, storage, and handling. Deliver in unopened
37 bundles and store in a dry place with adequate air circulation.

38
39 **PROJECT CONDITIONS:**

40
41 Do not begin installation until spaces to receive acoustical panels have been enclosed and maintained at
42 approximately the same humidity and temperature conditions as planned for occupancy. Maintain
43 temperature and humidity as recommended by panel manufacturer.

44
45
46 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

47
48 **ACOUSTICAL WALL PANELS, Lobby 1-002:**

49
50 Fabricate panels to sizes and configurations indicated; attach facing materials to cores to produce installed
51 panels with visible surfaces fully covered and free from wrinkles, sags, blisters, seams, adhesive or other
52 foreign matter.

53
54 Sound Absorption Performance: Provide acoustical wall panels with minimum noise reduction coefficients
55 (NRC) indicated as determined by testing per ASTM C 423 for mounting type specified under individual



1 product requirements.

2
3 Fabric Facing: NRC = 1.1
4 Vinyl Facing: NRC = 0.40
5

6 Colors, Textures and Patterns: Refer to Interior Color Listing and Color and Finish Schedule Sheet in the
7 drawings.
8

9 **MANUFACTURER:**

10
11 **Basis of Design - Acoustical panels shall be DiSorb Diffuser-Absorber DiSorb Type A as**
12 **manufactured by AVL Systems, Inc., Ocala, FL, telephone 352.854.1170.**
13

14 The following will be considered subject to meeting the requirements of the Basis of Design and this section:

15
16 Peabody.
17 Kinetics
18 Wenger Corporation
19 Golterman & Sabo
20 Acoustical Resources Inc
21 Conwed Designscape
22

23 Diffuser-Absorber Panel: Model DiSorb Thpe A - Shall consist of 7 lb./cu.ft, non-combustible and
24 dimensionally stable fiberglass board and covered with Class A material, 7-3/8" thick with custom widths
25 and heights. (Refer to drawings for locations and panel configurations). Edges shall be chemically
26 hardened to a minimum depth of 1/8" penetration and have a minimum hardness of 0.42 on the Barcol scale
27 to resist damage and warping.
28

29 Edges are to be beveled.
30

31 **Standard Wall Panels:**

32
33 The AVL Systems ATP panel shall be a general purpose, acoustical wall product with fiberglass
34 core, edges chemically hardened covered with Class A material, 1" and 2" thick with custom widths
35 and heights.
36

37 Acoustical Performance:
38 NRC 1" panel = 0.85
39 NRC 2" panel = 1.10
40

41 **Low Frequency Wall Panel**

42
43 The AVL Systems Low Frequency absorption panel with non-perforated vinyl finish bonded to
44 standard ATP Panel with chemically hardened edges with Class A material, 2" thick with custom
45 widths and heights.
46

47 Acoustical Performance:
48 NRC 2" panel = 4.0
49

50 Ceiling Diffusers shall be Convex molded, white ceiling mounted diffusers.

51
52 Attachment: Panels shall be attached to a finished wall surface by use of mechanically concealed
53 hangers/z-clips.
54

55 Acoustical Art Panels:

56 **FIXED SOUND-ABSORPTIVE PANELS**

68100

09 84 13 - 2



- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16
- 17
- 18
- 19
- 20
- 21
- 22
- 23
- 24
- Core construction: Dimensionally stable 6-7 PCF fiberglass board, laminated with a 1/8" layer of 16-20 PCF molded fiberglass, covered with a specially formulated fiberglass scrim.
- Panel sizes: See Interior Elevations - Larger images to be spread over multiple panels
- Thickness options: • 1 5/8"
- Edge details: square edge resin hardened and black painted finish

PART 3 - EXECUTION

INSTALLATION:

Install acoustical panels in locations indicated with vertical surfaces and edges plumb, top edges level, and in alignment with other panels, scribed to fit adjoining work accurately at borders and at penetrations. Comply with panel manufacturers' printed instructions for installation of panels using concealed mounting.

Panels shall be fastened with both adhesive and mechanical fasteners, both of which shall be sufficient to support panels without the other.

Remove and replace panels which are damaged and are unacceptable to Architect.

END OF SECTION 09 84 13



1 **SECTION 09 90 00 - PAINTING**

2
3
4 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

5
6
7 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 8
9 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions
10 and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

11
12 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 13
14 A. This Section includes surface preparation, painting, and finishing of exposed interior and exterior
15 items and surfaces.

- 16
17 a. Surface preparation, priming, and finish coats specified in this Section are in addition to
18 shop-priming and surface treatment specified under other Sections.

- 19
20 B. Paint exposed surfaces whether or not colors are designated in schedules, except where a surface
21 or material is specifically indicated not to be painted or is to remain natural. Where an item or
22 surface is not specifically mentioned, paint the same as similar adjacent materials or surfaces. If
23 color or finish is not designated, the Architect will select from standard colors or finishes available.

- 24
25 a. Painting includes field-painting exposed bare and covered pipes and ducts (including color
26 coding), hangers, exposed steel and iron work, and primed metal surfaces of mechanical
27 and electrical equipment.

- 28
29 C. Painting is not required on prefinished items, finished metal surfaces, concealed surfaces, operating
30 parts, and labels.

- 31
32 a. Prefinished items not to be painted include the following factory-finished components:

- 33
34 a. Acoustic materials.
35 b. Architectural woodwork and casework.
36 c. Finished mechanical and electrical equipment.
37 d. Light fixtures.
38 e. Switchgear.

- 39
40 b. Concealed surfaces not to be painted include wall or ceiling surfaces in the following
41 generally inaccessible areas:

- 42
43 a. Furred areas.
44 b. Pipe spaces.
45 c. Above ceilings.

- 46
47 c. Finished metal surfaces not to be painted include:

- 48
49 a. Anodized aluminum.
50 b. Stainless steel.
51 c. Chromium plate.
52 d. Copper.
53 e. Bronze.
54 f. Brass.
55



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
- d. Operating parts not to be painted include moving parts of operating equipment, such as the following:
 - a. Valve and damper operators.
 - b. Linkages.
 - c. Sensing devices.
 - d. Motor and fan shafts.
 - e. Labels: Do not paint over Underwriters Laboratories, Factory Mutual or other code-required labels or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- D. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
- a. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel" for shop-priming structural steel.
 - b. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for shop-priming ferrous metal.
 - c. Division 6 Section "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for shop-priming interior architectural woodwork.
 - d. Division 8 Section "Standard Steel Doors and Frames" for shop-priming steel doors and frames.
 - e. Division 9 Section "Special Coatings" for special coatings.
 - f. Divisions 15 and 16: Painting mechanical and electrical work is specified in Divisions 15 and 16, respectively.

25 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- 26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
- A. General: Submit the following according to Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
 - B. Product data for each paint system specified, including block fillers and primers.
 - a. Provide the manufacturer's technical information including label analysis and instructions for handling, storage, and application of each material proposed for use.
 - b. List each material and cross-reference the specific coating, finish system, and application. Identify each material by the manufacturer's catalog number and general classification.
 - a. If submittal is by a manufacturer different than the Basis of Design, list the Basis of Design material and then list the substituted material showing how each component of the substituted material matches each component of the specified material.
 - c. Certification by the manufacturer that products supplied comply with local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs).
 - C. Samples for Verification Purposes: Provide samples of each color and material to be applied, with texture to simulate actual conditions, on representative samples of the actual substrate.
 - a. Provide stepped samples, defining each separate coat, including block fillers and primers. Use representative colors when preparing samples for review. Resubmit until required sheen, color, and texture are achieved.
 - b. Provide a list of material and application for each coat of each sample. Label each sample as to location and application.
 - c. Submit samples on the following substrates for the Architect's review of color and texture only:
 - a. Concrete Masonry: Provide two 4 x 8-inch (100 x 200-mm) samples of masonry, with mortar joint in the center, for each finish and color.
 - b. Painted Wood: Provide two 12-inch (300-mm) square samples of each color and material on hardboard.
 - c. Stained or Natural Wood: Provide two 4 x 8-inch (100 x 200-mm) samples of natural and stained wood finish on actual wood surfaces.
 - d. Ferrous Metal: Provide two 4-inch (100-mm) square samples of flat metal and two 8-inch (200-mm) long samples of solid metal for each color and finish.



- e. Gypsum Drywall: Provide two 4" sq. samples for each color and finish

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Engage an experienced applicator who has completed painting system applications similar in material and extent to those indicated for the Project that have resulted in a construction record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide primers and undercoat paint produced by the same manufacturer as the finish coats.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to the job site in the manufacturer's original, unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and the following information:
- Product name or title of material.
 - Product description (generic classification or binder type).
 - Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture.
 - Contents by volume, for pigment and vehicle constituents.
 - Thinning instructions.
 - Application instructions.
 - Color name and number.
- B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in a well-ventilated area at a minimum ambient temperature of 45 deg F (7 deg C). Maintain containers used in storage in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
- Protect from freezing. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily. Take necessary measures to ensure that workers and work areas are protected from fire and health hazards resulting from handling, mixing, and application.

1.6 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Apply water-based paints only when the temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 50 deg F (10 deg C) and 90 deg F (32 deg C).
- B. Apply solvent-thinned paints only when the temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 45 deg F (7 deg C) and 95 deg F (35 deg C).
- C. Do not apply paint in snow, rain, fog, or mist; or when the relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; or at temperatures less than 5 F deg (3 C deg) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
- Painting may continue during inclement weather if surfaces and areas to be painted are enclosed and heated within temperature limits specified by the manufacturer during application and drying periods.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following:
- The Glidden Company (Glidden).
 - Benjamin Moore and Co. (Moore) Basis of Design.
 - PPG Industries, Pittsburgh Paints (PPG).
 - The Sherwin-Williams Company (S-W) – Basis of Design**
 - ZRC Worldwide Innovative Zinc Technologies for Hot Dip Galvanizing and Weld Repair- Basis of Design**



1
2
3 **2.2 PAINT MATERIALS, GENERAL**
4

- 5 A. Material Compatibility: Provide block fillers, primers, finish coat materials, and related materials that
6 are compatible with one another and the substrates indicated under conditions of service and
7 application, as demonstrated by the manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
8
9 B. Material Quality: Provide the manufacturer's **best-quality** trade sale paint material of the various
10 coating types specified. Paint material containers not displaying manufacturer's product
11 identification will not be acceptable.
12
13 a. Proprietary Names: Use of manufacturer's proprietary product names to designate colors or
14 materials is not intended to imply that products named are required to be used to the
15 exclusion of equivalent products of other manufacturers. Furnish the manufacturer's material
16 data and certificates of performance for proposed substitutions.
17
18 C. Colors: Provide color selections as per Color Schedule.
19

20 **2.3 MASONRY BLOCK FILLER**
21

- 22 A. Filler Coat Materials: Provide the manufacturer's recommended factory-formulated, latex-type
23 concrete masonry block fillers that are compatible with the finish materials indicated.
24

25 **2.4 PRIMERS**
26

- 27 A. Primers: Provide the manufacturer's recommended factory-formulated primers that are compatible
28 with the substrate and finish coats indicated.
29

30 **2.5 UNDERCOAT MATERIALS**
31

- 32 A. Undercoat Materials: Provide the manufacturer's recommended factory-formulated undercoat
33 materials that are compatible with the substrate and finish coats indicated.
34

35 **2.6 EXTERIOR FINISH PAINT MATERIAL**
36

- 37 A. Finish Paint: Provide the manufacturer's recommended factory-formulated finish-coat materials that
38 are compatible with the substrate and undercoats indicated.
39

40 **2.7 INTERIOR FINISH PAINT MATERIAL**
41

- 42 A. Finish Paint: Provide the manufacturer's recommended factory-formulated finish-coat materials that
43 are compatible with the substrate and undercoats indicated.
44

45 **2.8 MISCELLANEOUS WOOD-FINISHING MATERIALS**
46

- 47 A. Wood-Finishing Materials: Provide the manufacturer's recommended factory-formulated, wood-
48 finishing materials that are compatible with the substrate and undercoats indicated.
49

50 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**
51

52 **3.1 EXAMINATION**
53

- 54 A. Examine substrates and conditions under which painting will be performed for compliance with paint
55 application requirements. Surfaces receiving paint must be thoroughly dry before paint is applied.
56
57 a. Do not begin to apply paint until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
58 b. Start of painting will be construed as the Applicator's acceptance of surfaces and conditions
59 within a particular area.



1
2 B. Coordination of Work: Review other Sections in which primers are provided to ensure compatibility
3 of the total system for various substrates. On request, furnish information on characteristics of
4 finish materials to ensure use of compatible primers.

5
6 a. Notify the Architect about anticipated problems using the materials specified over substrates
7 primed by others.
8

9 **3.2 PREPARATION**

10
11 A. General: Remove hardware and hardware accessories, plates, machined surfaces, lighting
12 fixtures, and similar items already installed that are not to be painted, or provide surface-applied
13 protection prior to surface preparation and painting. Remove these items, if necessary, to
14 completely paint the items and adjacent surfaces. Following completion of painting operations in
15 each space or area, have items reinstalled by workers skilled in the trades involved.
16

17 B. Cleaning: Before applying paint or other surface treatments, clean the substrates of substances
18 that could impair the bond of the various coatings. Remove oil and grease prior to cleaning.
19 Schedule cleaning and painting so dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not
20 fall on wet, newly painted surfaces.
21

22 C. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be painted according to the manufacturer's
23 instructions for each particular substrate condition and as specified.
24

25 a. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers or remove and reprime. Notify Architect in
26 writing about anticipated problems using the specified finish-coat material with substrates
27 primed by others.

28 b. Cementitious Materials: Prepare concrete, concrete masonry block, cement plaster, and
29 mineral-fiber-reinforced cement panel surfaces to be painted. Remove efflorescence, chalk,
30 dust, dirt, grease, oils, and release agents. Roughen, as required, to remove glaze. If
31 hardeners or sealers have been used to improve curing, use mechanical methods of surface
32 preparation. **(Water test to be performed on brick surface before paint application.)**
33

34 a. Use abrasive blast-cleaning methods if recommended by the paint manufacturer.
35 b. Determine alkalinity and moisture content of surfaces by performing appropriate tests.
36 If surfaces are sufficiently alkaline to cause the finish paint to blister and burn, correct
37 this condition before application. Do not paint surfaces where moisture content
38 exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's printed directions.
39

40 c. Wood: Clean surfaces of dirt, oil, and other foreign substances with scrapers, mineral spirits,
41 and sandpaper, as required. Sand surfaces exposed to view smooth and dust off.
42

43 a. Scrape and clean small, dry, seasoned knots, and apply a thin coat of white shellac or
44 other recommended knot sealer before applying primer. After priming, fill holes and
45 imperfections in finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when
46 dried.

47 b. Prime, stain, or seal wood to be painted immediately upon delivery. Prime edges,
48 ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood, including cabinets, counters, cases,
49 and paneling.

50 c. When transparent finish is required, backprime with spar varnish.

51 d. Backprime paneling on interior partitions where masonry, plaster, or other wet wall
52 construction occurs on backside.

53 e. Seal tops, bottoms, and cutouts of unprimed wood doors with a heavy coat of varnish
54 or sealer immediately upon delivery.
55

56 d. Ferrous Metals: Clean ungalvanized ferrous metal surfaces that have not been shop-coated;
57 remove oil, grease, dirt, loose mill scale, and other foreign substances. Use solvent or
58 mechanical cleaning methods that comply with recommendations of the Steel Structures
59 Painting Council (SSPC).



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
- a. Blast steel surfaces clean as recommended by the paint system manufacturer and according to requirements of SSPC specification SSPC-SP 10.
 - b. Treat bare and sandblasted or pickled clean metal with a metal treatment wash coat before priming.
 - c. Touch up bare areas and shop-applied prime coats that have been damaged. Wire-brush, clean with solvents recommended by the paint manufacturer, and touch up with the same primer as the shop coat.
- e. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean galvanized surfaces with nonpetroleum-based solvents so that the surface is free of oil and surface contaminants. Remove pretreatment from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods.
- D. Materials Preparation: Carefully mix and prepare paint materials according to manufacturer's directions.
 - a. Maintain containers used in mixing and applying paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - b. Stir material before application to produce a mixture of uniform density; stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into material. Remove film and, if necessary, strain material before using.
 - c. Use only thinners approved by the paint manufacturer and only within recommended limits.
 - E. Tinting: Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat where multiple coats of the same material are applied. Tint undercoats to match the color of the finish coat, but provide sufficient differences in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

28 3.3 APPLICATION

- 29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
- A. General: Apply paint according to manufacturer's directions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.
 - B. Do not paint over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions detrimental to formation of a durable paint film.
 - a. Paint colors, surface treatments, and finishes are indicated in the schedules.
 - b. Provide finish coats that are compatible with primers used.
 - c. The number of coats and the film thickness required are the same regardless of the application method. Do not apply succeeding coats until the previous coat has cured as recommended by the manufacturer. Sand between applications where sanding is required to produce a smooth even surface according to the manufacturer's directions.
 - d. Apply additional coats if undercoats, stains, or other conditions show through final coat of paint until paint film is of uniform finish, color, and appearance. Give special attention to ensure that surfaces, including edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners, receive a dry film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
 - e. The term exposed surfaces includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, convector covers, covers for finned tube radiation, grilles, and similar components are in place. Extend coatings in these areas, as required, to maintain the system integrity and provide desired protection.
 - f. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces. Before the final installation of equipment, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 - g. Finish exterior doors on tops, bottoms, and side edges same as exterior faces.
 - h. Sand lightly between each succeeding enamel or varnish coat.
 - i. Omit primer on metal surfaces that have been shop-primed and touch-up painted.
 - C. Scheduling Painting: Apply first coat to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated, or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.



1
2 a. Allow sufficient time between successive coats to permit proper drying. Do not recoat until
3 paint has dried to where it feels firm, does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb
4 pressure, and where application of another coat of paint does not cause the undercoat to lift
5 or lose adhesion.
6

7 D. Application Procedures: Apply paints and coatings by brush, roller, spray, or other applicators
8 according to the manufacturer's directions.
9

10 a. Brushes: Use brushes best suited for the material applied.

11 b. Rollers: Use rollers of carpet, velvet back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by the
12 manufacturer for the material and texture required.

13 c. Spray Equipment: Use airless spray equipment with orifice size as recommended by the
14 manufacturer for the material and texture required.
15

16 E. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply materials no thinner than the manufacturer's recommended
17 spreading rate. Provide the total dry film thickness of the entire system as recommended by the
18 manufacturer.
19

20 F. Mechanical and Electrical Work: Painting mechanical and electrical work is limited to items
21 exposed in mechanical equipment rooms and in occupied spaces.
22

23 G. Mechanical items to be painted include only exposed pipes in occupied spaces (including Stairs).
24

25 H. Block Fillers: Apply block fillers to concrete masonry block at a rate to ensure complete coverage
26 with pores filled.
27

28 I. Prime Coats: Before applying finish coats, apply a prime coat of material, as recommended by the
29 manufacturer, to material that is required to be painted or finished and that has not been prime-
30 coated by others. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where evidence of suction spots or unsealed
31 areas in first coat appears, to ensure a finish coat with no burn-through or other defects due to
32 insufficient sealing.
33

34 J. Stipple Enamel Finish: Roll and redistribute paint to an even and fine texture. Leave no evidence
35 of rolling such as laps, irregularity in texture, skid marks, or other surface imperfections.
36

37 K. Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover to provide a smooth, opaque surface of uniform
38 finish, color, appearance, and coverage. Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs,
39 sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections will not be acceptable.
40

41 L. Transparent (Clear) Finishes: Use multiple coats to produce a glass-smooth surface film of even
42 luster. Provide a finish free of laps, cloudiness, color irregularity, runs, brush marks, orange peel,
43 nail holes, or other surface imperfections.
44

45 a. Provide satin finish for final coats.

46 M. Completed Work: Match approved samples for color, texture, and coverage. Remove, refinish, or
47 repaint work not complying with specified requirements.
48

49 3.4 CLEANING

50 A. Cleanup: At the end of each workday, remove empty cans, rags, rubbish, and other discarded paint
51 materials from the site.
52

53 a. After completing painting, clean glass and paint-spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paint
54 by washing and scraping. Be careful not to scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
55
56

57 3.5 PROTECTION

58 A. Protect work of other trades, whether being painted or not, against damage by painting. Correct
59



1 damage by cleaning, repairing or replacing, and repainting, as acceptable to Architect.
 2

3 B. Provide "Wet Paint" signs to protect newly painted finishes. Remove temporary protective
 4 wrappings provided by others to protect their work after completing painting operations.

5
 6 a. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or
 7 defaced painted surfaces.
 8

9 **3.6 EXTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE**

10 A. General: Provide the following paint systems for the various substrates indicated.

11 B. Ferrous Metal (Hollow Metal Doors and Frames): Exterior handrails are hot-dipped galvanized.
 12 Primer is not required on shop-primed items except provide touchup priming as necessary.

13 a. Acrylic semi-gloss: Two finish coat over primer; total 2.6 mils dry film thickness not including
 14 primer.

15 1. Primer:

16 1) S-W: Pro Industrial "Pro-Cryl" universal Primer B66-310
 17 Series, 4 mils wet, 1.6 mils dry film thickness.

18 2. First and Second Coats: Semi-Gloss Acrylic

19 1) S-W: Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss B66-650 Series, 4
 20 mils wet, 1.3 mils dry film thickness per coat.
 21
 22
 23

24 C. Ferrous Metal (exterior structural steel not galvanized, balcony braces, awning supports, handrails
 25 and railings excluding Hollow Metal Doors and Frames(see above)). **NOTE: Proprietary steel
 26 primer 'red oxide' primer cannot be used.**
 27

28 a. Surface Preparation:

29 1. Remove grease or oil before blasting by SSPS SP1. Abrasive blast steel surfaces to
 30 a minimum SSPC SP6 Commercial Grade Finish with a minimum 1.5 mil blast profile.
 31 Apply coating before any rust bloom forms.
 32

33 2. Surfaces must be clean and dry prior to the application of coatings. Pay particular
 34 attention to edges, bolts and corners.
 35
 36

37 b. Coating System: Basis of Design, no substitutions.

38 1. Shop Prime: Apply one coat of PPG Dimetcoat 9 IOZ Primer at 2.5 mils dft (dry film
 39 thickness).
 40

41 2. Field Touch-Up: After erection, clean bare and damaged areas per SSPC-SP11.
 42 Apply one coat of PPG Amercoat 1K Epoxy Primer, a single component epoxy primer
 43 at 4 to 6 mils dft by brush or spray.
 44

45 3. Stripe Coat: Stripe coat welds and edges with one coat of PPG Aquapon 98-46 WB
 46 Series Epoxy Primer at 3 to 4 mils dft.
 47

48 4. Intermediate Coat: Apply overall one coat of PPG Aquapon 98-46 WB Series Epoxy
 49 Primer at 3 to 4 mils dft.
 50

51 5. Finish Coat: Apply overall one coat of PPG PSX 1K Polysiloxane at 2 to 3 mils dft.
 52

53 6. Minimum Film Thickness: The total combined thickness of the coating should be no
 54 less than 9 mils dft or as otherwise acceptable to manufacturer.
 55

56 c. The mil thickness shall be spot tested by paint manufacturer at appropriate intervals to
 57 determine adherence to project requirements.
 58

59 d. Exposed CMU – To receive Water Repellent per Section 07 19 00.



- 1 D. Exterior Brick (Scheduled to be painted): **Applied to Type FB-1 Painter Brick (Unit**
 2 **Masonry section 2.5 C); south wall of interior Main Lobby1-002 and west wall of Stair**
 3 **S103 at custom bench.**

4 a. Satin Finish:

- 5 1) 1st Coat: S-W Loxon Concrete and Masonry Primer Sealer, LX02W50
 6 (5.3-8.0 mils. wet, 2.1-3.2 dry per coat).
 7 2) 2nd Coat: S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Satin, A82 Series.
 8 3) 3rd Coat: S-W A-100 Exterior Latex Satin, A82 Series (4.0 mils. wet, 1.5
 9 mils. dry per coat).

10 b. Satin Finish Self Cleaning Upgrade:

- 11 1) 1st Coat: S-W Loxon Self Cleaning Acrylic Coating-Satin, LX14-50
 12 Series.
 13 2) 2nd Coat: S-W Loxon Self Cleaning Acrylic Coating-Satin, LX14-50
 14 Series (5.0-7.0 mils. wet, 2.0-2.8 dry per coat).

15
 16 **3.7 INTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE**

- 17 A. General: Provide the following paint systems for the various substrates, as indicated.

18 B. Concrete Masonry Units:

- 19 a. Egg-Shel Finish: Two finish coats over filled surface. Total 3 mils dry film thickness not
 20 including block filler.

21 1. Block Filler: Latex 8 mils dry film thickness.

- 22 1) S-W: PrepRite Block Filler, Interior / Exterior Latex
 23 B25W25 16 mils wet, 8 dry mil thickness each coat.

24 2. First and Second Coats: Latex Eg-Shel Enamel.

- 25 1) S-W: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Eg-Shel B20-
 26 2600 Series., 4 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry film thickness
 27 per coat.

28 C. Gypsum Drywall Systems and Plaster Systems: Walls and Ceilings

- 29 a. Egg-Shel Finish: Performance requirement ASTM D2486 = 370 cycles min. ASTM D6736 =
 30 2.5 max. Two coats; total 2.8 mils dry film thickness not including primer.

31 1. Primer: Latex.

- 32 1) USG: USG Sheetrock First Coat for Gypsum Wallboard
 33 Systems. Mil thickness in accordance with
 34 manufacturer's instructions.

35 2. First and Second Coats: Flat

- 36 1) S-W: ProMar 200 Interior Latex Eg-Shel Wall Paint B20-
 37 2600 Series, 4 mils wet, 1.3 mils dry film thickness
 38 per coat.

39 D. Woodwork: Trim, base, and windowsills- Stain grade Poplar.

- 40 a. Semi-Gloss: Total 3.4 mils dry film thickness not including primer.

41 1. Primer: Oil Primer / Undercoat



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
- 1) S-W: PrepRite Wall & Wood Oil Primer / Undercoater, B49W2, 4 mils wet, 1.9 mils dry film thickness per coat.
 - 2. First and Second Coats: Semi-Gloss
 - 1) S-W ProMar 200 Alkyd Semi-Gloss B34W200 Series, 4 mils wet, 1.7 mils dry film thickness per coat.
 - E. Wood Door Finishes:
 - a. Birch solid core doors:
 - 1. First Coat: Stain
 - 1) S-W: Wood Classics Interior Oil Stain A49-200 Series, 3 – 3.5 mils wet, no dry surface film
 - 2. Second Coat: Fast drying sanding sealer.
 - 1) S-W Wood Classics FastDry Sanding Sealer B26V43, 3-3.5 mils wet, 1 -1.2 mils dry film thickness.
 - 3. Third Coat: Fast drying oil varnish
 - 1) S-W Wood Classics FastDry Oil Varnish A66-300 Series, 4 mils wet, 1.3 mils dry film thickness.
 - F. Ferrous Metal: Stair guardrail systems, hollow metal doors and frames. Primer is not required on shop-primed items except provide touchup priming as necessary.
 - a. Acrylic Semi-Gloss: Two finish coats over primer; total 3.0 mils dry film thickness not including primer.
 - 1. Primer:
 - 1) S-W: Pro Industrial “Pro-Cryl” Universal Primer 10 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry film thickness.
 - 2. First and Second Coats: Acrylic.
 - 1) S-W: Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss B66-650 Series. 4 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry film thickness per coat.
 - G. Stained Concrete Finish:
 - a. First Coat: Stain Interior, for concrete floors: MPI #58.
 - 1. First Coat: Stain
 - 1) Benjamin Moore: Insl-x – TuffCrete Waterborne Acrylic Concrete Stain, 2.9 – 3.6 mils wet, 0.8 – 1.0 mils dry surface film thickness.
 - 2. Top Coat: Stain Interior, for concrete floors: MPI #58 FOR OPAQUE FINISH – coordinate with Architect before applying top coat.



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
- 1) Benjamin Moore: Insl-x – TuffCrete Waterborne Acrylic Concrete Stain, 2.9 – 3.6 mils wet, 0.8 – 1.0 mils dry surface film thickness.
- H. Interior Metal Deck:
- a. Matte Finish: One coat paint specifically manufactured for painting Acoustical Panels.
1. One Coat: Flat
- 1) S-W Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall Flat. Wet mils 6.0-9.0. Dry mils 1.5-2.3. Color Black.
- 2). Material can be used on multiple clean surfaces:
- a. Aluminum and Galvanized metal: Direct, no primer.
- b. Ferrous metal: Cleaned and primed prior to finish coating. S-W Steel & Rusted Galvanized, acrylic primer, one coat Pro-Cryl Primer.
- c. Gypsum wallboard: Primed
- d. CMU: Block Filler, one coat Pro Industrial heavy-Duty Block Filler.
- e. Other surfaces: Consult manufacturer for primer.
- END OF SECTION 09 90 00**



1 **SECTION 09 96 56 – EPOXY COATINGS**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 6
7 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division
8 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

9
10 **1.02 SUMMARY**

- 11
12 A. This Section includes applying special coating systems to items and surfaces scheduled, including surface
13 preparation, prime coats, and topcoats.
14
15 B. Types of special coating systems required for the Project include the following:
16 1. Special coatings for interior use include the following:
17 a. Two-component, high-performance, acrylic Epoxy.
18
19 C. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
20 1. General painting is specified in Division 9 Section "Painting."
21

22 **1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 23
24 A. General: Submit the following according to Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
25
26 B. Product data for each coating system specified, including block fillers and primers.
27 1. Provide the manufacturer's technical information, including label analysis and instructions for handling,
28 storing, and applying each material proposed for use.
29 2. List each material and cross-reference the specific coating, finish system, and application. Identify each
30 material by the manufacturer's catalog number and general classification.
31 3. Certification by the manufacturer that products supplied comply with local regulations controlling use of
32 volatile organic compounds (VOCs).
33
34 C. Samples for Verification Purposes: Provide samples of each color and material to be applied with texture to
35 simulate actual conditions on representative samples of the actual substrate.
36 1. Provide stepped samples, defining each separate coat, including block fillers and primers. Use
37 representative colors when preparing samples for review. Resubmit until the required sheen, color, and
38 texture are achieved.
39 2. Provide a list of material and application for each coat of each sample. Label each sample as to location
40 and application.
41 3. Submit samples on the following substrates for the Architect's review of color and texture only.
42 a. Concrete: Provide two 4-inch (100-mm) square samples for each color and finish.
43 b. Concrete Masonry: Provide two 8-inch (200-mm) square samples of masonry, with mortar joint in
44 the center, for each finish and color.
45 c. Gypsum board: Provide two 4-inch (100-mm) square samples for each color and finish.
46

47 **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 48
49 A. Applicator Qualifications: Engage an experienced applicator who has successfully completed coating system
50 applications similar in material and extent to those indicated for the Project.
51
52 B. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide primers and undercoat material produced by the same manufacturer as
53 the finish coats for each type of coating. Use only thinners recommended by the manufacturer and only within
54 recommended limits.
55

56 **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**



- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
- A. Deliver materials to the job site in the manufacturer's original, new, unopened packages, and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and the following information:
 1. Name or title of material.
 2. Product description (generic classification or binder type).
 3. Manufacturer's name, stock number and date of manufacture.
 4. Contents by volume, for major pigment and vehicle constituents.
 5. Thinning instructions.
 6. Application instructions.
 7. Color name and number.
 8. Handling instructions and precautions.
 - B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in a well-ventilated area at a minimum ambient temperature of 45 deg F (7 deg C). Maintain containers used in storage in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 1. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily. Take necessary measures to ensure that workers and work areas are protected from fire and health hazards resulting from handling, mixing, and applying the coatings.

20
21
22

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- 23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
- A. Apply coatings only when the temperature of surfaces to be coated and surrounding air temperatures are between 45 deg F (7 deg C) and 95 deg F (35 deg C).
 - B. Do not apply coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when the relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 F deg (3 C deg) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
 1. Allow wet surfaces to dry thoroughly and attain the temperature and conditions specified before proceeding with or continuing the coating operation.
 2. Work may continue during inclement weather only if areas and surfaces to be coated are enclosed and the temperature within the area can be maintained within limits specified by the manufacturer during application and drying periods.

34
35

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

36
37

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- 38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following:
 1. Devoe and Reynolds Company (Devoe).
 2. The Glidden Company (Glidden).
 3. **Benjamin Moore and Company (Moore) Basis of Design (Epoxy).**
 4. Porter International (Porter).
 5. PPG Industries, Pittsburgh Paints (PPG).
 6. Sherwin-Williams Company (S-W).
 7. Tnemec Company, Inc. (Tnemec).

50
51

2.02 SPECIAL COATING MATERIALS, GENERAL

- 52
53
54
55
56
- A. Material Compatibility: Provide block fillers, primers, finish coat material, and related materials that are compatible with one another and the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by the manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 - B. Material Quality: Provide the **highest grade** of the various coatings as regularly manufactured by acceptable coating manufacturers. Materials not displaying manufacturer's identification as a best-grade product will not be



1 acceptable.

- 2 1. Proprietary Names: Use of manufacturer's proprietary product names to designate colors or materials are
 3 not intended to imply that products named are required to be used to the exclusion of equivalent products
 4 of other manufacturers. Furnish the manufacturer's material data and certificates of performance for
 5 proposed substitutions.
 6

- 7 C. Colors: In accordance with Color Schedule. Match colors indicated by reference to the manufacturer's standard
 8 color designations.
 9

10 **2.03 MASONRY-BLOCK FILLERS**

- 11
 12 A. Masonry Block Fillers: Provide the manufacturer's recommended factory-formulated concrete masonry block
 13 fillers that are compatible with the finish materials indicated.
 14

15 **2.04 BOND COAT MATERIALS**

- 16
 17 A. Bond Coat Materials: Provide the manufacturer's recommended factory-formulated bond coat materials that are
 18 compatible with the finish materials indicated.
 19

20 **2.05 PRIMERS AND SEALERS**

- 21
 22 A. Primer/Sealers: Provide the manufacturer's recommended factory-formulated primer/sealers that are compatible
 23 with the substrate and finish materials indicated.
 24

25 **2.06 INTERMEDIATE COAT MATERIALS**

- 26
 27 A. Intermediate Coat Materials: Provide the manufacturer's recommended, factory-formulated, intermediate coat
 28 materials that are compatible with the substrate, primers or base coat materials, and the finish materials
 29 indicated.
 30

31 **2.07 INTERIOR FINISH-COAT MATERIALS**

- 32
 33 A. Interior Finish-Coat Materials: Provide the manufacturer's recommended factory-formulated, interior, finish-coat
 34 materials.
 35

36
 37 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

38
 39 **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- 40
 41 A. Examine substrates and conditions under which coatings will be applied for compliance with requirements on
 42 applying coatings. Surfaces to receive coatings must be thoroughly dry before coatings are applied.
 43 1. Do not proceed with coating application until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 44 2. Start of application will be construed as the Applicator's acceptance of surfaces within that particular area.
 45
 46 B. Coordinating Work: Review sections in which other coatings are provided to ensure compatibility of the total
 47 systems for various substrates. On request, furnish information on the characteristics of specified finish
 48 materials to ensure compatible primers.
 49 1. Notify the Architect of problems anticipated using the coatings specified over substrates primed by others.
 50

51 **3.02 PREPARATION**

- 52
 53 A. General: Remove hardware and hardware accessories, plates, machined surfaces, lighting fixtures, and similar
 54 items already in place that are not to be coated, or provide surface-applied protection prior to surface
 55 preparation and coating. Remove these items, if necessary, to completely coat the items and adjacent surfaces.
 56 Following the coating operations in each space or area, have removed items reinstalled by workers skilled in



1 the trades involved.
2

- 3 B. Cleaning: Before applying coatings or other surface treatments, clean the substrates of substances that could
4 impair bond of the various coatings. Remove oil and grease prior to cleaning. Schedule cleaning and coating
5 application so dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly coated surfaces.
6
- 7 C. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be coated according to the manufacturer's instructions for
8 each particular substrate condition and as specified.
9 1. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers or remove and reprime. Notify the Architect in writing of
10 problems anticipated when using the specified finish-coat material with substrates primed by others.
11
- 12 D. Cementitious Surfaces: Prepare concrete, concrete masonry block and similar surfaces to receive special
13 coatings. Remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, grease, oils, and release agents. Roughen, as required, to
14 remove glaze. If hardeners or sealers have been used to improve concrete curing, use mechanical methods to
15 prepare surface.
16 1. Use abrasive blast-cleaning methods if recommended by the coating system manufacturer.
17 2. Determine alkalinity and moisture content of surfaces to be coated by performing appropriate tests.
18 If surfaces are sufficiently alkaline to cause the finish coats to blister and burn, correct this
19 condition before application. Do not apply coatings over surfaces where the moisture content
20 exceeds that permitted in the manufacturer's printed directions.
21
- 22 E. Material Preparation: Carefully mix and prepare materials according to the coating manufacturer's directions.
23 1. Maintain containers used in mixing and application of coatings according to the manufacturer's directions.
24 2. Stir materials before applying to produce a mixture of uniform density; stir as required during application.
25 Do not stir surface film into the material. Remove film and, if necessary, strain the coating material before
26 using.
27 3. Use only the type of thinners approved by the manufacturer and only within recommended limits.
28
- 29 F. Tinting: Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identifying each coat where multiple coats of the same
30 material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match the color of the finish coat, but provide sufficient difference
31 in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
32

33 3.03 APPLICATION

- 34
- 35 A. General: Apply special coatings by brush, roller, spray, squeegee, or other applicators according to the
36 manufacturer's directions. Use brushes best suited for the material being applied. Use rollers of carpet, velvet
37 back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by the manufacturer for the material and texture required.
38 1. Do not apply coatings over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions detrimental
39 to forming a durable coating film.
40 2. Coating colors, surface treatments, and finishes are indicated in the Schedules.
41 3. Provide finish coats compatible with the primers used.
42 4. The number of coats and film thickness required is the same regardless of the application method. Do
43 not apply succeeding coats until the previous coat has cured as recommended by the manufacturer.
44 Where sanding is required, according to the manufacturer's directions, sand between applications to
45 produce a smooth, even surface.
46 5. When undercoats or other conditions show through the final coat, apply additional coats until the cured
47 film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance. Give special attention to edges, corners,
48 crevices, welds, exposed fasteners, and similar surfaces to ensure that they receive a dry film thickness
49 equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
50 6. The term "exposed surfaces" includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, convactor covers,
51 covers for finned tube radiation, grilles, and similar components are in place. Extend coatings in these
52 areas, as required, to maintain the system integrity and provide desired protection.
53 a. Coat surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces.
54 b. Coat the back sides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to
55 match exposed surfaces.
56



- 1 B. Scheduling Coating: Apply first coat to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated, or otherwise prepared for
 2 coating as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.
 3 1. Allow sufficient drying time between successive coats. Do not recoat until the coating has dried so it feels
 4 firm and does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure and where applying another coat
 5 does not cause the undercoat to lift or lose adhesion.
 6
- 7 C. Application Procedures: Apply coatings by brush, roller, spray, or other applicators according to the
 8 manufacturer's directions.
 9 1. Brushes: Use brushes best suited for the material applied.
 10 2. Rollers: Use rollers of carpet, velvet back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by the
 11 manufacturer for the material and texture required.
 12 3. Spray Equipment: Use spray equipment with orifice size as recommended by the manufacturer for the
 13 material and texture required.
 14
- 15 D. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply each material no thinner than the manufacturer's recommended spreading
 16 rate. Provide total dry film thickness of the entire system as recommended by the manufacturer and as specified
 17 herein.
 18
- 19 E. Block Fillers: Apply block fillers to concrete masonry block at a rate to ensure complete coverage with pores
 20 filled.
 21
- 22 F. Prime Coats: Before applying finish coats, apply a prime coat of material, as recommended by the
 23 manufacturer, to the material required to be coated or finished that has not been prime-coated by others.
 24 1. Recoat primed and sealed substrates where there is evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in the
 25 first coat to ensure a finish coat with no burn-through or other defects caused by insufficient sealing.
 26
- 27 G. Brush Application: Brush-out and work brush coats into surfaces in an even film. Eliminate cloudiness, spotting,
 28 holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Neatly draw glass lines and
 29 color breaks.
 30 1. Apply primers and first coats by brush unless the manufacturer's instructions permit using mechanical
 31 applicators.
 32
- 33 H. Mechanical Applications: Use mechanical methods to apply coating when permitted by the manufacturer's
 34 recommendations and governing regulations.
 35 1. Wherever using spray application, apply each coat to provide the equivalent hiding of brush-applied
 36 coats. Do not double-back with spray equipment building-up film thickness of two coats in one pass,
 37 unless recommended by the manufacturer.
 38
- 39 I. Completed Work: Match approved samples for color, texture and coverage. Remove, refinish, or recoat work
 40 not complying with specified requirements.

41 **3.04 CLEANING**

- 42
- 43 A. Cleanup: At the end of each work day, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from
 44 the site.
 45 1. After completing work, clean glass and spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing,
 46 scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
 47

48 **3.05 PROTECTION**

- 49
- 50 A. Protect work of other trades, whether being coated or not, against damage from coating operation. Correct
 51 damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as acceptable to the Architect. Leave in an
 52 undamaged condition.
 53 1. Provide "Wet Paint" signs to protect newly coated finishes. Remove temporary protective wrappings
 54 provided by others to protect their work after completing coating operations.
 55 2. At completion of other trades' construction activities, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated
 56 surfaces.



1
2 **3.06 INTERIOR SPECIAL COATING SCHEDULE**
3

- 4 A. Provide the following coating systems for substrates indicated:
5 1. Where undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until the cured film
6 is of uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.
7
- 8 B. Concrete Masonry Units:
9 1. High-Performance, Polyamide-Epoxy Coating System: Provide two finish coats with total dry film
10 thickness not less than 4 mils over concrete masonry block filler.
11 a. Filler Coat: Concrete masonry block filler.
12 1) Moore: CM36-00/M37 Polyamide Epoxy Block, 10 mils dry film thickness.
13 b. First and Second Coats: Polyamide-epoxy coating.
14 1) Moore: Industrial Maintenance Coatings M36/M37, 2 mils dry film thickness each coat.
15
- 16 C. Gypsum Wall Board:
17 1. High-Performance, Polyamide-Epoxy Coating System: Provide two finish coats with total dry film
18 thickness not less than 4 mils over primer.
19 a. Primer: Waterborne Acrylic.
20 1) Moore: M08/M09 Waterborne Acrylic Epoxy 2 mils dry film thickness.
21 b. First and Second Coats: Waterborne Acrylic Epoxy coating.
22 1) Moore: Industrial Maintenance Coatings M36/M37, 2 mils dry film thickness each coat.
23
24

25 **END OF SECTION 09 96 56**
26



1 **SECTION 10 00 01 - MISCELLANEOUS SPECIALTIES**

2
3
4 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

5
6 **1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:**

- 7 A. Extent of miscellaneous specialties is indicated in the drawings and by the requirements of
8 this section.

9
10 **1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

- 11 A. Contractor shall coordinate miscellaneous specialties with other related components of the
12 Contract Documents.

13
14 **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS:**

- 15 A. Submit product data on each type of miscellaneous specialty item.

16
17 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS:**

- 18 A. Submit product data.
19
20 B. Submit shop drawings.

21
22
23 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

24
25 **2.0 HEAVY DUTY CLOTHES ROD (At Superintendents Closet and custodial laundry room)**

- 26 A. **Basis of Design: Uline – Wall Mounted Coat Racks.**
27 1. Satin Finish Aluminum – see interior elevations for specific sizes

28
29 **2.1 METAL REDUCER STRIPS:**

- 30
31 A. Provide metal reducer strips between changes of flooring materials, such as between higher
32 and lower finishes as indicated in the Contract Documents.
33 1. **Basis of Design: Reno-TK Model AETK100 as manufactured by**
34 **Schluter Systems.**
35 2. Strip shall be clear-satin anodized aluminum, 3/8" height sloped transition. Unit
36 shall be ADA compliant.
37 3. Acceptable Manufacturer, subject to meeting Basis of Design requirements: Blanke
38 Corporation.

39
40
41 **2.3 DISPLAY CASES:**

- 42 A. Interior Recessed Display Cases
43 1. **Basis of Design: Claridge Model 395- CLA** Location as indicated on drawings.
44 Size: 120" w x 72" h x 16" d three door unit.
45 2. Heavy satin anodized aluminum frame with 3@ face.
46 3. Tempered glass sliding doors with lock and key.
47 4. Three 12@ wide adjustable tempered glass shelves with necessary brackets and
48 standards.
49 5. Tackable back panels in Fabricork.
50 6. Wood Box to be manufacturer=s standard 16@ deep.
51 7. Fluorescent light.
52 8. Acceptable Manufacture, subject to meeting Basis of Design requirements: Newline



Products, Inc.

- 1
- 2
- 3 B. Visual Display Surfaces
- 4 1. **Basis of Design: Deko Premier Markerboards**
- 5 2. Resinous Panel, magnetic.
- 6 3. Crown corner with Brilliance Edge..
- 7 4. Color: Diamond
- 8 5. Accessories: Marker tray, rail, magnetic accessory kit
- 9 6. Mechanically fastened
- 10 7. See floor plans for sizes
- 11 C. Interior Bulletin Board Cabinet
- 12 1. **Basis of Design: Claridge Model 3520BC (36”h x 24”w x 3” deep)**
- 13 2. 1" x 3" hollow tube perimeter; satin anodized aluminum frame.
- 14 3. 3/16" tempered glass doors with flat key tumbler lock.
- 15 4. Continuous piano hinges.
- 16 5. Tackable back panels in Fabricork.
- 17 6. Inside depth = 1.75".

20 **2.6 BUILDING PLAQUE:**

- 21 A. Provide one Building Plaque. Plaque location shall be as directed by Architect. Plaque shall
- 22 be 18" x 28"; bronze with single line border and raised polished letters of Optima Bold style
- 23 and with bronze stippled background and concealed mounting studs. **Basis of Design B**
- 24 **Metallic Arts.** Copy shall include following:
- 25 FREEPORT MIDDLE SCHOOL
- 26 2024
- 27 Walton County School District
- 28 NameYYY.Superintendent
- 29 NameYYY.Board Member
- 30 NameYYY.Board Member
- 31 NameYYY.Board Member
- 32 NameYYY.Board Member
- 33 Name... Board Member
- 34 EMI architects
- 35 Allstate Construction - Construction Manager

38 **2.7 WALL CORNER GUARDS:**

- 39
- 40 A. **Basis of Design – Construction Specialties (C\S) Group – Acrovyn SM-20 Corner**
- 41 **Guard; 2-inch legs.**
- 42 1. Color: Architect to select.
- 43 2. 8'-0" long corner guard shall be cut down to 4'-0" lengths and installed with the
- 44 bottom 8" AFF..
- 45 3. Quantity: At all outside corners of gypsum walls.

47 **2.8 EXTERIOR ABRASIVE METAL SAFETY THREADS:**

- 48
- 49 A. **Basis of Design – Wooster Products Inc, Super grit Type 610 Safety Nosing Tel: 800**
- 50 **321-4936 and 330 262-2844**
- 51



1. Provide abrasive metal safety thread top and bottom of each exterior stair system. Safety thread shall extend full width of stair less 1/8th clearance @ each end.
2. Thread base shall be type 6063-T5 extruded aluminum.
3. Anti-slip filler shall contain not less than 65% virgin grain Aluminum Oxide (Al₂O₂) abrasive.
4. Provide protective tape
5. Nosing shall finish flush with top of the traffic surface.

2.9 COMMERCIAL OPEN UTILITY STEEL SHELVING:

- A. Provide commercial 5 shelf high metal shelving units with 400 lb capacity per shelf.
1. **Basis of Design: 87" high shelving as manufactured by Penco, Clipper industrial shelving, 5 shelves, Model Numbers: 1H7095, 1H7085, 1H7075N 1H7035, 1H7025, & 1H7015**
 2. Color: Penco 021 Gray Ash.
 3. Location and Quantity: Refer to drawings.

2.10 WORKSTATION BRACKETS:

- A. **Basis of Design - A & M Hardware, Inc. (888) 647-0200**
- B. Color: Black.
- C. Size: Provide brackets as required to support both 24" deep and 30" deep countertops. Units shall have 3" x3" – 90-degree support bracket. Refer to the drawings for the workstation locations.

2.13 SITE ENTRANCE ELECTRIC SIGN:

- A. **Basis of Design: Daktronics, Inc., Model GALAXYPRO GP4 Series, installed** in site constructed masonry sign as detailed in the Contract Documents.
1. Display: GP4-AAxBBB-CC.
 2. LED Color: RGB.
 3. Active Area: 3'-7-3/16" [1097] x 4'-9-5/8"
 4. Overall Size: 4' [1219] x5'-3-5/8" [1615].
 5. Cabinet: Aluminum.
 6. Access: Service from front of unit.
 7. Quantity" 1.
 7. Provide underground electrical service from the building to the sign location. Coordinate with electrical drawings.
 8. Provide underground data service from the building to the sign location. Coordinate with telecomm drawings.

2.14 SITE FURNITURE:

- A. **Bench: Basis of Design- Arcata as manufactured by Landscape forms; for exterior use (Qty = 12).**
1. Backless embedded style.
 2. Size: 17" d x 18" seat height x 74" length.
 3. Seat: aluminum.
 4. Surface mounted anchored with 3/8" dia. anchors, exposed portion to match color of supports.
 5. Metal finished with Panguard II powdercoat, Architect to select color.
 6. Locations to be selected by Owner and Architect.
 7. Include support base anchorage in concrete.



1 **B. Litter Receptacle: Basis of Design - Gretchen as manufactured by Landscapeforms;**
 2 **for exterior use (Qty = 25).**

- 3 1. Top opening with receptacle lid.
 4 2. Size: 22" d x 36" height.
 5 3. Panel Material: PolySite recycled plastic.
 6 4. Support: Freestanding.
 7 5. Metal finished with Panguard II powdercoat, Architect to select color.
 8 6. Locations to be selected by Owner and Architect.
 9

10 **2.15 FIRE DEPARTMENT EMERGENCY ACCESS SYSTEM**

11 **A. Basis of Design: 3200 Series Knox-Box**

- 12 a. UL Listed.
 13 b. Surface mounted with hinged door.
 14 c. Provide UL Listed alarm tamper switches that can be connect to building's security
 15 system.
 16 d. Color: Dark Bronze.
 17 e. Location: To be located by Architect and Owner.
 18 f. Quantity = 2.
 19

20 **2.16 ALUMINUM LETTERS:**

21 **A. Basis of Design: Metallic Arts.**

- 22 1. Interior: Aluminum: 1/2" Flat Cut Satin Anodized
 23 2. Exterior: 2" deep custom cut cast aluminum on standoffs clear/anodized finish
 24 3. Size: As indicated on drawings for each location.
 25 4. Font: To be selected by Architect.
 26 5. Invisible Stud Mount to Wall
 27
 28
 29

30 **2.17 SITE SWING GATES @ DUMPSTER ENCLOSURE:**

31 **Basis of Design: Ametco Manufacturing Company**

- 32 1. Aluminum: Horizontal Shadow 100% design Swing Gates
 33 2. Size: As indicated on drawings.
 34 3. Finish: Polyester powder coated. Color to be selected by Architect from
 35 manufacturer=s standard colors. Hardness ASTM D 3363; Direct impact ASTM D
 36 2793; Saltspray resistance Test ASTM B117.
 37 4. Height of Gate: 7'-6", unless indicated otherwise.
 38 5. Posts: Manufacturer=s standard, size as necessary to support each leaf of gate.
 39 6. Locking Hasps: Manufacturer=s standard allowing padlocking of gates.
 40 7. Provide vertical locking rods (cane bolt) at the meeting jamb set into sleeves in the
 41 ground at two locations ... 1) closed gate position 2) fully open gate position.
 42 8. Provide all hardware necessary to install gate including but not limited to hinges,
 43 Hasps, rods, posts, etc.
 44 9. Concrete Footings: Refer to contract documents. Posts shall be securely anchored
 45 in concrete footing (sized in accordance with manufacturer=s instructions and
 46 recommendations. Concrete shall extend a minimum of 6 inches deeper than
 47 bottom of post.
 48 10. Installation shall be in strict accordance with gate manufacturer=s instructions and
 49 recommendations.



11. Wind Design Speed: 140 x importance factor of 1.15.

2
3
4 **2.19 "T" MOLDING**

- 5 **A. Basis of Design: Fry Reglet "T" Molding.** Aluminum extruded Alloy 6063 T5 with clear
6 anodized finish. 5/8" reveal depth and 1-1/8" reveal width with 7/8" flange; Model No. TDM-
7 625-1125 Non-Vented.
8

9 **2.23 WALL MURALS**

- 10
11 **A.** Provide Mural at corridors 20'-0" +/- w x 9'-0" /- h; printed on 3M Vinyl, laminated in satin
12 finish and adhered to aluminum panel with 'z' clip attachment with stand-off sleeves..
13
14

15 **2.26 PLASTIC SHELVING UNIT (Janitor's closets)**

- 16 **A.** Provide 4-Tier Heavy Duty white, tan or black plastic shelf unit; impact resistant. Size: 18"
17 deep x 31" wide x 48" high. Secure to shelf to wall. Shelves shall be solid with +/- 1/2" raised
18 lip, four sides.
19

20 **2.27 ELECTRIC WASHER/DRYER LAUNDRY**

- 21
22 **A. Basis of Design: GE Unitized Spacemaker (location – Kitchen Area Laundry rooms)**
23 1. Model GUD27ESSMWW
24 2. Capacity 3.8 cu. ft. washer; 5.9 cu. ft. dryer
25 3. Finish: White on white
26 4. **Contractor shall submit manufacturer's literature demonstrating the dryer vent**
27 **is rated for the worst-case installation scenario presented by the project.**
28

29 **2.28 RESIN PANEL ON STAND OFFS**

30 **Basis of Design – 3Form – See Interior Elevations**

31
32 **2.29 ACOUSTICAL WALL COVERING**

33 **Basis of Design - SLATPANEL Midnight Blue Color Acoustic Panels – See Boardroom**
34 **1-010 Interior Elevations**
35
36

37 **PART 3 – EXECUTION**

38
39 **3.1 INSTALLATION:**

- 40 **A.** Installation shall be in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
41

42 **END OF SECTION 10 00 01**
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51



1

MISCELLANEOUS SPECIALTIES

68100

10 00 01-6



1 **SECTION 10 14 00 – SIGNAGE**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**





- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7 A. Provide interior and exterior signage as herein specified and as indicated on drawings.

8

9 **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- 10
- 11 A. Submittals: Submit the following:
- 12
- 13 1. Shop Drawings: Provide typical layout of each type of sign.
- 14 a. Message list for each sign with wording and letter layout.
- 15 b. Layout for Aluminum Cast Letters.
- 16 2. Samples: For initial selection of color, pattern, and surface texture, and for verification
- 17 of compliance with requirements indicated.
- 18 a. Sample of ceiling mounted clamp, cable showing mounting to clip, grid and sign.
- 19 b. Sample of Aluminum Cast Metal letters.
- 20 c. Manufacturer's full range of color sample rings. Printed color charts are not
- 21 acceptable.
- 22

23 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 24
- 25
- 26 A. Acrylic Sheet: Cast methyl methacrylate monomer plastic sheet with 16,000-psi minimum
- 27 flexural strength, and minimum allowable continuous service temperature of 176 deg F (80
- 28 deg C).
- 29
- 30 1. Opaque Sheet: Colored opaque acrylic sheet in colors and finishes indicated.
- 31 a. Basis of Design: Kroy Sign Systems LLC, 8221 E. Gelding Rd., Scottsdale, AZ
- 32 85260, Phone: 800-950-5769, Fax: 480-483-0235. Fla Representative: Carol
- 33 Barlabas 480-619-6074.
- 34
- 35 B. Panel Signs: Comply with requirements for materials, thicknesses, finishes, colors,
- 36 designs, shapes, sizes, and construction details. Produce smooth, even, level sign panel
- 37 surfaces.
- 38
- 39 1. Unframed Panel Signs: Fabricate edges mechanically and smoothly finished. 
- 40 a. Edge Condition: Square cut.
- 41 b. Edge Color for Plastic Laminate: Same as background.
- 42 c. Corner Condition: Corners rounded to radius indicated.
- 43
- 44 C. Graphic Content and Style: Provide sign copy that complies with size, style, spacing,
- 45 content, position, material, finishes, and colors of letters, numbers, and other graphic
- 46 devices.
- 47 1.  Letter Style: Sans Serif or Simple Serif.
- 48 2.  Letter Size: 1" (raised copy with braille).
- 49 3. Sign Size: All signs same size, largest size needed for copy.
- 50
- 51 D. Raised Copy: Machine-cut copy characters from matte-finished opaque acrylic sheet and
- 52 chemically weld onto the acrylic sheet forming sign panel face.
- 53 
- 54 1. Panel Material: Matte-finished opaque acrylic sheet.
- 55 2. Raised Copy Thickness: Not less than 1/32 inch.



- E. Exterior signs shall be UV resistant.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- A. Installation: Locate signs in accordance with the requirements of the Florida Building Code - Building, Accessibility chapter and as directed by the Architect, and with sign surfaces free from distortion or other defects in appearance.

- B. Wall-Mounted Panel Signs: Attach using methods indicated below:

- 1. Mechanical Fasteners.

- C. Cleaning: After installation, clean soiled surfaces. Protect units from damage until acceptance by the Owner.

- D. Sign Schedule: Provide signs and room numbering for all rooms within the work area. Coordinate with Architect.

END OF SECTION 10 14 00



1 **SECTION 10 21 13 - TOILET COMPARTMENTS**

2
3
4 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

5
6 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 7
8 1. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary
9 Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
10
11 2. Section 05500 - Metal Fabrications: Concealed steel support members.
12
13 3. Section 06110 - Wood Framing: Concealed wood framing and blocking for compartment
14 support.
15
16 4. Section 10800 - Toilet and Bath Accessories.

17
18 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 19
20 1. This Section includes Phenolic partitions ASI Accurate Partitions Alpaco Elegance (Basis of
21 Design).
22
23 2. Types of toilet compartments include:
24
25 a. Solid plastic, homogenous color.
26
27 3. Styles of toilet compartments include:
28
29 a. Floor-anchored, overhead-braced.
30
31 4. Toilet accessories, such as toilet paper holders, grab bars, and purse shelves, are specified
32 in another Division 10 Section.

33
34 **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 35
36 1. Field Measurements: Take field measurements prior to preparation of shop drawings and
37 fabrication, where possible, to ensure proper fitting of work. However, allow for adjustments
38 where taking of field measurements before fabrication might delay work.
39
40 2. Coordination: Furnish inserts and anchorages which must be built into other work for
41 installation of toilet compartments and related items. Coordinate delivery with other work to
42 avoid delay.

43
44 **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- 45
46 1. Submit under provisions of Section 01300.
47
48 2. [Product Data]: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
49
50 a. Literature indicating typical panel, pilaster, door, hardware and fastening.
51 b. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
52 c. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
53 d. Installation methods.
54
55 3. Shop Drawings:
56
57 a. Dimensioned plans indicating layout of toilet compartments.
58 b. Dimensioned elevations indicating heights of doors, pilasters, separation partitions,



1 and other components; indicate locations and sizes of openings in compartment
 2 separation partitions for toilet and bath accessories to be installed in partitions;
 3 indicate floor and ceiling clearances.

4 c. Details indicating anchoring components (bolt layouts) and methods for project
 5 conditions; indicate components required for installation, but not supplied by toilet
 6 compartment manufacturer.

7
 8 4. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, one complete set of color selection
 9 guides representing manufacturer's full range of available colors, textures and patterns.

10
 11 5. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, two samples, minimum size 6 inches
 12 (150 mm) square, representing actual product, color, texture and pattern.

13
 14 6. LEED Green Building Rating System: Submit manufacturer's documentation of recycled
 15

16
 17 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

18
 19 1. Deliver, store and handle materials and products in strict compliance with manufacturer's
 20 instructions and recommendations and industry standards.

21
 22 2. Store products indoors in manufacturer's or fabricator's original containers and packaging,
 23 with labels clearly identifying product name and manufacturer. Protect from damage.

24
 25 3. Lay cartons flat, with adequate support to ensure flatness and to prevent damage to pre-
 26 finished surfaces.

27
 28 4. Do not store where ambient temperature exceeds 120 degrees F (49 degrees C).
 29

30
 31 **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

32
 33 1. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits
 34 recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under
 35 environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

36
 37 2. Do not deliver materials or begin installation until building is enclosed, with complete
 38 protection from outside weather, and building temperature maintained at a minimum of 60
 39 degrees F (15.6 degrees C).
 40

41 **1.7 WARRANTY**

42
 43 1. Manufacturers Standard Warranty: Provide warranty for Phenolic Material against
 44 delamination, breakage, or corrosion for 10 years, assuming proper maintenance according
 45 to manufacturer's recommendations.
 46

47 **1.8 COORDINATION**

48
 49 1. Coordinate Work with placement of support framing and anchors in walls and ceilings.
 50
 51

52 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

53
 54 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

55
 56 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering
 57 products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 58



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13

1. Solid Phenolic:

- a.) **ASI Accurate Partitions – Basis of Design**
 b.) Capitol Partitions, Inc.
 c.) Comtec Industries
 d.) Rockville Partitions.
 e.) Sanatec Industries, Inc.
 f.) Santana Products Co.
 g.) Sanymetal Products Corp.
 h.) Scranton Products

14 **2.2 COMPARTMENTS AND SCREENS**

- 15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
1. Toilet Compartments: Floor anchored/overhead braced.
 a. Compartment Depth and Width: As scheduled and indicated on Drawings.
 b. Door Width: 24 inches (610 mm), minimum; at ADA accessible compartments 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.
 2. Privacy and Urinal Screens: Wall hung.
 a. Height Above Floor: 6 or 9 inches as plumbing placement and compliance with applicable accessibility guidelines permit.

25 **2.3 SOLID PHENOLIC**

- 26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
1. Doors, Panels, Screens, and Pilasters: Decorative surface sheet with solid phenolic core of melamine resin impregnated kraft paper fused under high temperature and pressure; edges machine sanded with a 45 degree radius edge. Manufacturer's standard.
 a. Doors and Pilasters: 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
 b. Panels and Screens: 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
 c. Panels and Pilasters: 78-3/4 inches (2 meters) high
 d. Doors : 78-3/4 inches (2 meters) high
 e. Door and pilaster edges shall be routed and overlapped to block sight lines into the compartments.
 f. Edges: Black core.
 2. Finish: Solid phenolic, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
 3. Door Hardware:
 a. Hinge: Three (3) surface mounted barrel hinges formed from 304 stainless steel.
 b. Latch: Type 304 stainless steel with indicator of occupancy. Latch to be mounted to the pilaster with integrated function as keeper for in-swinging doors. Latch will provide emergency access through an accessible slotted center pin in the external indicator.
 c. Coat Hook and Bumper: Type 304 stainless steel with black rubber tip for doorstop.
 d. Fastening Hardware: Manufacturer's standard, Type 304 stainless steel, No. 4 satin finish. Door hardware will be attached to holes predrilled at the manufacturing facility.
 4. Mounting Brackets: Provide optional stainless steel continuous bracket Type 304 stainless steel, No. 4 satin finish, with stainless steel theft-resistant barrel nuts and machine screws of same material and finish.
 5. Headrail: Stainless Steel Tubular
 6. Floor Anchored/Overhead Braced.



- a. Compartment to be supported by Type 304 Stainless steel pedestal placed under the panels approximately 12" behind pilaster. (Pedestal can be mounted under pilaster for added support depending on layout configuration).
- b. Pedestal to be adjustable in height plus or minus 1 inch to compensate for uneven floors.
- c. Pedestal to support panel 6 inches or 9 inches above finished floor.
- d. Pedestal to be secured to floor with 2 1/2 inch corrosion resistant screws.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION AND PREPARATION

1. Inspect and prepare substrates using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving best result for the substrates under project conditions. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
2. Do not proceed with installation until substrates have been prepared using the methods recommended by the manufacturer and deviations from manufacturer's recommended tolerances are corrected. Commencement of installation constitutes acceptance of conditions.
3. If preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect in writing of deviations from manufacturer's recommended installation tolerances and conditions.
 - a. Verify dimensions of areas to receive compartments.
 - b. Verify locations of built-in framing, anchorage, bracing, and plumbing fixtures.

3.2 INSTALLATION

1. Install in accordance with approved shop drawings and manufacturer's instructions.
2. Fasten components to adjacent materials and to other components using purpose-designed fastening devices.
3. Adjust pilaster anchors for substrate variations.
4. Equip each compartment door with hinges and door latch.
5. Equip each compartment door with one coat hook and bumper.
6. Installation Tolerances:
 - a. Maximum variations from plumb or level: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
 - b. Clearance between wall surface and panels or pilasters: 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) maximum.

3.3 ADJUSTING

1. Adjust and align hardware to uniform clearance at vertical edge of doors.
2. Adjust adjacent components for consistency of line or plane.

3.4 PROTECTION

1. Protect installed products until completion of project.



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13

- 2. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.
- 3. Remove factory protective coverings and clean finish surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions before substantial completion.

END OF SECTION 10 21 13



1
2 **SECTION 10 28 00 - TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES**
3
4

5 **PART 1 - GENERAL**
6

7 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**
8

- 9 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions
10 and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
11

12 **1.2 SUMMARY**
13

- 14 A. This Section includes toilet and bath accessory items as scheduled.
15
16 B. Toilet compartments and related accessories are specified in Division 10.
17

18 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**
19

- 20 A. General: Submit the following according to Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specifications
21 Sections.
22
23 B. Product data for each toilet accessory item specified, including construction details relative to
24 materials, dimensions, gages, profiles, mounting method, specified options, and finishes.
25
26 C. Maintenance instructions including replaceable parts and service recommendations.
27

28 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**
29

- 30 A. Inserts and Anchorages: Furnish accessory manufacturers' standard inserts and anchoring devices
31 that must be set in concrete or built into masonry. Coordinate delivery with other work to avoid
32 delay.
33
34 B. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide products of same manufacturer for each type of accessory
35 unit and for units exposed to view in same areas, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.
36

37 **1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS**
38

- 39 A. Coordination: Coordinate accessory locations, installation, and sequencing with other work to avoid
40 interference with and ensure proper installation, operation, adjustment, cleaning, and servicing of
41 toilet accessory items.
42
43

44 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**
45

46 **2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**
47

- 48 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide toilet accessories by one of the
49 following:
50
51 1. A & J Washroom Accessories.
52 2. American Specialties, Inc.
53 3. **Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc. Basis of Design; unless otherwise indicated.**
54 4. Bradley Corporation.
55 5. McKinney/Parker.
56 6. General Accessory Manufacturing Co.
57

1 **2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL**

- 2
- 3 A. Stainless Steel: AISI Type 302/304, with polished No. 4 finish, 0.034 inch (0.9 mm) minimum
- 4 thickness.
- 5
- 6 B. Brass: Leaded and unleaded, flat products, ASTM B 19; rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products
- 7 with finished edges, ASTM B 16 (ASTM B 16M); Castings, ASTM B 30.
- 8
- 9 C. Sheet Steel: Cold-rolled, commercial quality ASTM A 366 (ASTM A 366M), 0.04-inch (1.0 mm)
- 10 minimum. Surface preparation and metal pretreatment as required for applied finish.
- 11
- 12 D. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 527 G60 (ASTM A 527M Z180).
- 13
- 14 E. Chromium Plating: Nickel and chromium electro-deposited on base metal, ASTM B 456, Type SC
- 15 2.
- 16
- 17 F. Mirror Glass: Nominal 6.0 mm thick, conforming to ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q2, and
- 18 with silvering, electro-plated copper coating, and protective organic coating.
- 19
- 20 G. Galvanized Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153, hot dip galvanized after fabrication.
- 21
- 22 H. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit, or of galvanized
- 23 steel where concealed.
- 24

25 **2.3 SHOWER ROD, CURTAIN, & HOOKS**

- 26
- 27 A. **MARK U:** Extra Heavy-Duty Shower Curtain Rod: Basis of Design Bobrick Model No. B-207.
- 28 Vinyl Shower Curtain: Basis of Design Bobrick Model No. B-204-2.
- 29 Shower Curtain Hooks: Basis of Design Bobrick Model No. B-204-1.
- 30

31 **2.4 SHOWER SEAT**

- 32
- 33 A. **MARK S:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model No. B-5181 reversible folding shower seat.
- 34

35 **2.5 SURFACE MOUNTED SANITARY NAPKIN DISPOSAL**

- 36
- 37 A. **MARK C:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model No. B-270.
- 38

39 **2.6 PARTITION MOUNTED SANITARY NAPKIN DISPOSAL**

- 40
- 41 A. **MARK J:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model No. B-4354.
- 42

43 **2.7 GRAB BARS**

- 44
- 45 A. Stainless Steel Type: Provide grab bars with wall thickness not less than 0.05 inch (1.3 mm) and
- 46 as follows:
- 47
- 48 1. Mounting: Concealed, manufacturer=s standard flanges and anchorages.
 - 49 2. Clearance: 1-1/2-inch clearance between wall surface and inside face of bar.
 - 50 3. Gripping Surfaces: Manufacturer=s standard nonslip texture.
 - 51 4. Heavy-Duty Size: Outside diameter of 1-1/4 inches.
- 52
- 53 B. **MARK D:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model No. B-6806 x 42 inch long.
- 54
- 55 C. **MARK E:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model No. B-6806 x 36 inch long.
- 56
- 57 D. **MARK F:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model No. B-6861 x 30-7/8" w x 15-7/8" d (for showers).
- 58

- 1 **2.8 ROBE HOOK**
- 2
- 3 A. **MARK T:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model No. B-76717.
- 4
- 5 **2.9 MIRROR UNITS**
- 6
- 7 A. Stainless Steel Framed Mirror Units: Fabricate frame with angle shapes not less than 0.05 inch
- 8 (1.3 mm), with square corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth. Provide in No. 4 satin polished
- 9 finish.
- 10
- 11 B. **MARK M:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model B-290 1836, 18" x 36".
- 12
- 13 C. **MARK L:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model B-290 2472, "48 x 36"; tempered glass.
- 14
- 15 D. **MARK K:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model B-290 custom size – Continuous above counter by 36"
- 16 high.
- 17
- 18 E. **MARK N:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model B-290 custom size – Full length of wall by 48" high.
- 19
- 20 **2.10 SHELF WITH MOP AND BROOM HOLDER**
- 21
- 22 A. **MARK Y:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model No. B-224x36, 36" Long w/ 4 cam type holder clamps.
- 23
- 24 **2.11 PAPER TOWEL DISPENSER**
- 25
- 26 A. **MARK B:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model No. B-262, surface mounted dispenser. Unit shall
- 27 dispense 400 C-fold or 525 multifold towels.
- 28
- 29 **2.12 SURFACE MOUNTED 3-ROLL TOILET TISSUE DISPENSER- OFCI (Owner Furnished,**
- 30 **Contractor Installed)**
- 31
- 32 A. **MARK A:** Tork #56 58 28- Obtain specification from Owner for installation instructions.
- 33
- 34 B. **MARK I:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model No. B-2892 Classic Series Surface mounted Twin Jumbo-
- 35 roll Toilet Tissue Dispenser.
- 36
- 37 **2.13 SURFACE MOUNTED HAND DRYER- OFCI (Owner Furnished, Contractor Installed)**
- 38
- 39 A. **MARK G:** Basis of Design Xlerator Excel Hand Dryer Model XL-BW Surface Mounted Hand Dryer.
- 40 – Antimicrobial Wall Guards (#89B, #89W, #89S), XChanger Paper Towel Dispenser Retrofit Kit
- 41 (#40575, #40550), ADA-Compliant Recess Kit (#40502).
- 42
- 43 **2.14 WASTE RECEPTACLE**
- 44
- 45 A. **MARK O:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model B-2280 Floor- Standing open top waste receptacle. Vinyl
- 46 wall bumper and rubber feet: 21-gal capacity, 14" x 14" x 30" high.
- 47
- 48 **2.15 CHANGING TABLE**
- 49
- 50 A. **MARK Z:** Basis of Design Foundations Special Needs Changing Station, 400lb.
- 51
- 52 **2.16 COAT HOOKS ON TOILET COMPARTMENT DOORS**
- 53
- 54 A. **Mark P:** Refer to Section 10 15 50 Toilet Compartments for these accessories
- 55
- 56 **2.17 H.C. SHOWER COLLAPSIBLE WATER DAM THRESHOLD**
- A. **MARK Q:** 54" Collapsible water dam with Radius Corner End Caps (CWR5413) by KR

Specialties:(781)422-2273 Website: www.kr-specialties.com . Shall be one inch in height, white in color, triangular shaped with water resistant strip integrated into recessed base channel for a flush adhesion to the shower floor. Water dam shall collapse under foot or wheelchair and shall provide maximum water control when coupled with a weighted shower curtain. The dam shall be a lab tested, non-porous surface, meeting all anti-bacterial requirements of health care facilities. Collapsible water dam shall include matching white end caps, model EX-1615 for shower applications with square corners for a watertight seal and tailored finish.

2.18 SURFACE MOUNTED FOAM SOAP DISPENSER

- A. **MARK H:** Basis of Design Bobrick Model B-2013 Surface-Mounted Automatic Foam Soap Dispenser, Satin Finish, 27-fl oz. Unit shall dispense a variety of foam soaps, iodine-based foam soaps, and alcohol-based foam hand sanitizers.

2.19 FABRICATION

- A. General: Only a maximum 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) diameter, unobtrusive stamped manufacturer logo, as approved by Architect, is permitted on exposed face of toilet or bath accessory units. On either interior surface not exposed to view or back surface, provide additional identification by either a printed, waterproof label or a stamped nameplate, indicating manufacturer's name and product model number.
- B. Surface-Mounted Toilet Accessories, General: Except where otherwise indicated, fabricate units with tight seams and joints, exposed edges rolled. Hang doors or access panels with continuous stainless steel piano hinge. Provide concealed anchorage wherever possible.
- C. Recessed Toilet Accessories, General: Except where otherwise indicated, fabricate units of all-welded construction, without mitered corners. Hang doors or access panels with full-length, stainless steel piano hinge. Provide anchorage that is fully concealed when unit is closed.
- D. Framed Mirror Units, General: Fabricate frames for glass mirror units to accommodate wood, felt, plastic, or other glass edge protection material. Provide mirror backing and support system that will permit rigid, tamperproof glass installation and prevent moisture accumulation, as follows:
1. Provide galvanized-steel backing sheet, not less than 0.034 inch (0.9 mm) and full mirror size, with non-absorptive filler material. Corrugated cardboard is not an acceptable filler material.
- E. Mirror Unit Hangers: Provide system for mounting mirror units that will permit rigid, tamperproof, and theftproof installation, as follows:
1. Heavy-duty wall brackets of galvanized steel, equipped with concealed locking devices requiring a special tool to remove.
- F. Keys: Provide universal keys for access to toilet accessory units requiring internal access for servicing, resupply, etc. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 - SUBMITTALS

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install toilet accessory units according to manufacturers' instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate as recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units plumb and level, firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Secure mirrors to walls in concealed, tamperproof manner with special hangers, toggle bolts, or screws. Set units plumb, level, and square at locations indicated, according to manufacturer's

1 instructions for type of substrate involved.
2

- 3 C. Install grab bars to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf (1100 N), complying with ASTM F
4 446.
5

6
7 **3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**
8

- 9 A. Adjust toilet accessories for proper operation and verify that mechanisms function smoothly.
10 Replace damaged or defective items.
11
12 B. Clean and polish all exposed surfaces strictly according to manufacturer's recommendations after
13 removing temporary labels and protective coatings.
14

15 **END OF SECTION 10 28 00**



SECTION 10 50 20 – HORIZONTAL AWNINGS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 1. Building supported, pre-engineered metal canopies including fascia channels, decking, tension rods, and attachment hardware for a complete and functioning system.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Aluminum Association (AA)DAF 45 - Designation System for Aluminum Finishes.
- B. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA)
 1. 2603 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Pigmented Organic Coatings on Architectural Extrusions and Panels.
- C. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE) 7 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures.
- D. ASTM International (ASTM)
 1. B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes.
 2. B429 - Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Pipe and Tube.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Design Requirements:
 1. Design awnings, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified engineer, using structural performance requirements and design criteria in accordance with current Florida Building Code Building, project specific structural drawings, and all other applicable codes and ordinances.
 2. Provide awning system that allows for thermal movements resulting from a maximum change in ambient and surface temperature as indicated, without buckling, overstressing of components, failure of connections, or other detrimental effects
 - a. Temperature Range: 120 degrees F (49 degrees C) ambient and 180 degrees (82 degrees C) at material surfaces.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals for Review:
 1. Shop Drawings: Indicate system components, dimensions, attachments, and accessories.
 2. Samples:
 - a. 3 x 3 inch coating samples in specified color.
 - b. 6 inch long fascia extrusion sample showing profile and standard finish.
 - c. 6 inch decking samples showing profile and standard finish.
- B. Provide manufacturer's certification (or by attached product approval number) that the proposed awning systems are in compliance with Florida Statue 553.842 and the State of Florida Building Commission Administrative Code 9B-72.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Minimum 5 years' experience in installation of manufacturer's products.



- B. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain awnings through one source from a single manufacturer.

1.5 DELIVER, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store products with labels intact, in manufacturer's unopened packing until ready for installation.
- B. Handle materials so as to protect materials, coatings, and finishes during transportation and installation to prevent damage or staining.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturers standard form in which the manufacturer and fabricator agree to repair or replace components of awnings that fail in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period.
 1. Exposed Roof Panel Finish Warranty Period: Twenty (20) years
 2. Awning Frame Warranty Period: Five (5) years.
 3. Awning Installation Warranty Period: One (1) year.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

A. Basis of Design:

Streamline Roofing and Construction Incorporated
 3654 West Orange Avenue, Tallahassee Fl. 32310
 1-(850)-575-1168.

- B. Acceptable Substitutions: Interested manufacturers must furnish full details of proposed product, engineering calculations on sections involved, physical samples of all shapes and finishes, a list of installations similar in size and design, and must have a minimum of five years' experience in manufacturing and installing glazed canopy systems. Submit requests on CSI Substitution Request Form, Section 01 60 00.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions:
 1. ASTM B221& ASTM B429 6061-T6511 alloy and temper.
- B. Hardware:
 1. All fasteners shall be stainless steel for corrosion resistance.

2.3 COMPONENTS

- A. Framing
 1. Type: **6**" X .125" Extruded Perimeter Aluminum "C" Channel (6061-T6) forming an internal perimeter gutter. The "C" channel is turned upwards approximately 2 ½" on its inside edge , and back again towards the outside face approximately 1 ¾" to form a continuous horizontal ledge to support the awning decking.



- B. Decking:
 1. Type: 2" high seam x 13.625 "wide panel x .080 " thick aluminum roof panels with standing seams facing up.
- C. Mounting Type:
 1. Hanger rod supported with clevis and 6"x6" 3/8" thick aluminum plate connection to building. Maximum 1" diameter tie rods. Spacing as indicated on the Contract Document Drawings

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Lighting:
 1. Refer to Electrical Lighting Specification for light fixtures.
- B. Drainage:
 1. Provide perimeter gutters of sufficient capacity to allow for proper drainage. Provide water diverters at outlets.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate canopy system in accordance with approved Shop Drawings. Kit canopies to be mechanically assembled with shear stress strength as per engineering. Pre- assembled canopies are shop welded by MASA approved personnel. Drainage system to be concealed type. Covered surfaces direct water to field drilled drain, to be coordinated at site.

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Aluminum:

High-Performance Organic Finish: 3-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pre-treat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 FIELD DIMENSIONS

- A. Field verify dimensions of supporting structure at site of installation prior to fabrication.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved Shop Drawings.
- B. Install components plumb and level, in proper plane, free from warp and twist.
- C. Anchor system to building components; provide adequate clearance for movement caused by thermal expansion and contraction and wind loads.
- D. Install for positive drainage to downspouts connected to underground drainage.
- E. Repair damaged finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory and refinish entire unit or provide new units.



- F. Protect galvanized and unfinished nonferrous-metal surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint.
- G. Anchoring to In-Place Construction: Use anchors, fasteners, fittings, hardware, and installation accessories where necessary for securing awnings to structural support and for properly transferring load to in-place construction.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Touch up minor scratches and abrasions on finished surfaces to match original finish.

1.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean surfaces and restore any marred or abraded surfaces to original conditions as acceptable to Architect.

1.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of Project.
- B. Touch-up, repaint or replace damaged products prior to Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 10 50 20



1 **SECTION 10 52 20 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS, CABINETS, AND ACCESSORIES**
 2
 3

4 **1.1 GENERAL**
 5

- 6 A. Coordination: Verify that cabinets are sized to accommodate type and capacity of extinguishers
 7 indicated.
 8
 9 B. UL-Listed Products: Fire extinguishers shall be UL listed with UL listing mark for type, rating, and
 10 classification of extinguisher.
 11
 12 C. FM-Listed Products: Fire extinguishers approved by Factory Mutual Research Corporation for type,
 13 rating, and classification of extinguisher with FM marking.
 14

15
 16 **1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**
 17

- 18 A. Submittals: Submit the following:
 19
 20 1. Product Data: Include rough-in dimensions, details showing mounting methods, relationships
 21 of box and trim to surrounding construction, door hardware, cabinet type and materials, trim
 22 style, door construction, panel style, and materials.
 23
 24

25 **2.1 PRODUCTS**
 26

- 27 A. Fire Extinguishers: Provide fire extinguishers for each cabinet and for other locations indicated
 28 (mounted on brackets).
 29
 30 1. Multipurpose Dry Chemical Type: UL-rated 2A:10-B:C, 5-lb nominal capacity and 4A:80-B:C,
 31 10-lb nominal capacity in enameled steel container for Class A, B & C fires.
 32 2. Fire extinguishers which are to be mounted in cabinets and which are to be mounted on a
 33 bracket are indicated and noted on the drawings; refer to drawings for locations.
 34
 35 B. Mounting Brackets: Provide brackets of sizes required for type and capacity of extinguisher
 36 indicated, in plated finish. Provide a bracket for each extinguisher to be mounted in a cabinet and
 37 for each wall mounted fire extinguisher.
 38
 39 a. Fire extinguisher (for bracket mount, FE-1 on Drawings).
 40 1. **Basis of Design:** Larsen's Manufacturing Co. Model MP10.
 41
 42 C. Cabinet Construction: Box with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and
 43 door style indicated. Weld joints and grind smooth. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.
 44
 45 1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: UL listed with UL listing mark with fire-resistance rating of wall where it
 46 is installed.
 47 2. Cabinet Type: Suitable for containing the following:
 48 a. **General Fire extinguisher.**
 49 1. **Basis of Design:** Larsen's Manufacturing Co. Model MP5A.
 50 b. **Kitchen Fire extinguisher**
 51 1. **Basis of Design:** Larsen's Manufacturing Co. Model WC-6L with bracket for
 52 location in kitchen
 53
 54 3. Cabinet Mounting: Suitable for the mounting indicated:
 55 a. Recessed: Indicated on drawings: Refer to drawings for locations. Recessed in walls.
 56 1. **Basis of Design:** Larsen's Manufacturing Co. Model FS2409-R1 with
 57
 58



Aluminum door and frame. (FEC-1 on Drawings)

4. Trim Style: One piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.
- a. Exposed Trim: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge.
- 1) Square-edge with 1/4- to 5/16-inch backbend depth.
- 2) Metal: Same metal and finish as door.
- D. Door Material and Construction: Manufacturer's standard of material indicated, coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles selected.
1. Aluminum: Clear Stain Finish.
2. Door Glazing: Fully tempered float glass complying with ASTM C 1048, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, Kind FT, and Class as follows:
- a. Class 1 (clear).
- E. Door Style: Manufacturer's standard design.
1. Duo Panel: Float glass, 1/8 inch thick.
- F. Door Hardware: Provide door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated. Provide lever handle with cam-action latch or exposed or concealed door pull and friction latch. Provide concealed or continuous-type hinge permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- G. Cabinet Finishes: Comply with NAAMM "Metal Finishes Manual." Protect exposed finishes from damage by application of temporary strippable covering prior to shipment.
- H. Aluminum Cabinet Finishes: Finish designations prefixed by AA conform to the system established by Aluminum Association.
1. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreatment, apply a two-coat baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with paint manufacturer's instructions for application and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- a. Color and Gloss: Manufacturer's standard designations. Paint the following:
- 1) Exterior of cabinet except for surfaces indicated to receive another finish.
- 2) Interior of cabinet.

3.1 EXECUTION

- A.. Installation: Provide one fire extinguisher for each cabinet indicated on the Contract Document Drawings. Follow manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. Install at heights indicated, or if not indicated, at heights to comply with applicable regulations of governing authorities.
1. Prepare wall recesses for cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and style of trim and to comply with manufacturer's instructions.
2. Fasten mounting brackets and fire extinguisher cabinets to structure, square and plumb.

END OF SECTION 10 52 20



1 **SECTION 10 75 00 - FLAGPOLES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. This Section includes ground-set flagpoles made from aluminum.

5 **1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

6 A. Structural Performance: Provide flagpoles capable of withstanding the effects of wind loads,
7 determined according to NAAMM FP 1001, "Guide Specifications for Design of Metal
8 Flagpoles."

- 9 1. Base flagpole design on polyester flags of maximum standard size suitable for use with
10 flagpole.
11 2. Basic Wind Speed: In **accordance with Structural Sheet S100.**

12 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

13 A. Product Data: For each type of flagpole required.

14 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

15 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

16 A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering
17 products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 18 1. American Flagpole; a Kearney-National Inc. Company.
19 2. **Concord Industries, Inc. Basis of Design**
20 3. Eder Flag Manufacturing Company, Inc.
21 4. Ewing International.
22 5. Michigan Flagpole Inc.

23 **2.2 FLAGPOLES**

24 A. Flagpole Construction, General: Construct flagpoles in one piece if possible. If more than one
25 piece is necessary, provide flush hairline joints using self-aligning, snug-fitting, internal sleeves.

26 B. Exposed Height: 36 **feet (10.97 m)**.

27 C. Aluminum Flagpoles: Provide cone-tapered flagpoles fabricated from seamless extruded tubing
28 complying with ASTM B 241/ (B 241M), Alloy 6063, with a minimum wall thickness of 3/16 inch
29 (4.8 mm). Heat treat after fabrication to comply with ASTM B 597, Temper T6.



- 1 D. Foundation Tube: Galvanized corrugated-steel foundation tube, 0.064-inch- (1.6-mm-) minimum
 2 nominal wall thickness. Provide with 3/16-inch (4.8-mm) steel bottom plate and support plate;
 3 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter, steel ground spike; and steel centering wedges all welded
 4 together. Galvanize steel parts, including foundation tube, after assembly. Provide loose
 5 hardwood wedges at top of foundation tube for plumbing pole. Provide flashing collar of same
 6 material and finish as flagpole.

7 **2.3 FITTINGS**

- 8 A. Finial Ball: Manufacturer's standard flush-seam ball, sized as indicated or, if not indicated, to
 9 match flagpole-butt diameter; finished to match flagpole.
- 10 B. Internal Halyard, Winch System: Manually operated winch with control stop device and
 11 removable handle, stainless-steel cable halyard, and concealed revolving truck assembly with
 12 plastic-coated counterweight and sling. Provide flush access door secured with cylinder lock.
 13 Finish truck assembly to match flagpole.
- 14 C. Halyard Flag Snaps: Provide two swivel snap hooks per halyard.
- 15 D. Elastomeric Joint Sealant: Single-component urethane or single-component neutral-curing
 16 silicone joint sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for
 17 Use NT (nontraffic) and for Use M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O joint
 18 substrates.

19 **2.4 FINISHES**

- 20 A. Aluminum: Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the
 21 Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- 22 1. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as
 23 fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural
 24 Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611. Spun Aluminum.

25 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

26 **3.1 FLAGPOLE INSTALLATION**

- 27
- 28
- 29 A. General: Install flagpoles where shown and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 30 B. Prepare uncoated metal flagpoles that are set in foundation tubes by painting below-grade
 31 portions with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- 32 C. Foundation-Tube Installation: Install flagpole in foundation tube, seated on bottom plate
 33 between steel centering wedges. Plumb flagpole and install hardwood wedges to secure
 34 flagpole in place. Place and compact sand in foundation tube and remove hardwood wedges.
 35 Seal top of foundation tube with a 2-inch (50-mm) layer of elastomeric joint sealant and cover
 36 with flashing collar.

37 **END OF SECTION 10 75 00**

1 **SECTION 12 24 13 -MOTORIZED ROLLER SHADES**
 2
 3
 4

5 **PART 1 GENERAL**
 6

7 **1.1 SECTION INCLUDES**
 8

- 9 A. Electrically operated sunscreen roller shades.
 10
 11 B. Local group and master control system for shade operation.
 12
 13

14 **1.2 RELATED SECTIONS**
 15

- 16 A. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry: Wood blocking and grounds for mounting roller
 17 shades and accessories.
 18
 19 B. Section 09290 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Coordination with gypsum board assemblies
 20 for installation of shade pockets, closures and related accessories.
 21
 22 C. Section 09512 - Acoustical Ceilings: Coordination with acoustical ceiling systems for
 23 installation of shade pockets, closures and related accessories.
 24
 25 D. Division 16 - Electrical: Electric service for motor controls.
 26

27 **1.3 REFERENCES**
 28

- 29 A. ASTM G 21 - Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials
 30 to Fungi.
 31
 32 B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
 33
 34 C. NFPA 701-99 - Fire Tests for Flame-Resistant Textiles and Films.
 35

36 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**
 37

- 38 A. Submit under provisions of Section 01330.
 39
 40 B. Submit Environmental Certification and Third Party Evaluation per Section 1.5 Qualifications.
 41
 42 C. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 43 **1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.**
 44 **2. Styles, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profiles,**
 45 **features, finishes and operating instructions.**
 46 **3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.**
 47 **4. Mounting details and installation methods.**
 48 **5. Typical wiring diagrams including integration of motor controllers with building**
 49 **management system, audiovisual and lighting control systems as applicable.**
 50
 51 D. Shop Drawings: Plans, elevations, sections, product details, installation details, operational
 52 clearances, wiring diagrams and relationship to adjacent work.
 53 **1. Prepare shop drawings on Autocad or Microstation format using base sheets**
 54 **provided electronically by the Architect.**
 55



- 1 E. Window Treatment Schedule: For all roller shades. Use same room designations as
 2 indicated on the Drawings and include opening sizes and key to typical mounting details.
 3
- 4 F. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, one set of shade cloth options and
 5 aluminum finish color samples representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and
 6 patterns.
 7
- 8 G. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, one complete set of shade
 9 components, unassembled, demonstrating compliance with specified requirements.
 10 Shadecloth sample and aluminum finish sample as selected. Mark face of material to
 11 indicate interior faces.
 12
- 13 H. Maintenance Data: Methods for maintaining roller shades, precautions regarding cleaning
 14 materials and methods, instructions for operating hardware and controls.
 15

16 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- 17
- 18 A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Obtain roller shades through one source from a single
 19 manufacturer with a minimum of twenty years experience in manufacturing products
 20 comparable to those specified in this section.
 21
- 22 B. Installer Qualifications: Installer trained and certified by the manufacturer with a minimum of
 23 ten years experience in installing products comparable to those specified in this section.
 24
- 25 C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Passes NFPA 701-99 small and large-scale vertical
 26 burn. Materials tested shall be identical to products proposed for use.
 27
- 28 D. Electrical Components: NFPA Article 100 listed and labeled by either UL or ETL or other
 29 testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, marked for intended use, and
 30 tested as a system. Individual testing of components will not be acceptable in lieu of system
 31 testing.
 32
- 33 E. Anti-Microbial Characteristics: 'No Growth' per ASTM G 21 results for fungi ATCC9642,
 34 ATCC 9644, ATCC9645.
 35
- 36 F. Environmental Certification: Submit written certification from the manufacturer, including
 37 third party evaluation, recycling characteristics, and perpetual use certification as specified
 38 below. Initial submittals, which do not include the Environmental Certification, below will be
 39 rejected. Materials that are simply 'PVC free' without identifying their inputs shall not qualify
 40 as meeting the intent of this specification and shall be rejected.
 41
- 42 G. Third Party Evaluation: Provide documentation stating the shade cloth has undergone third
 43 party evaluation for all chemical inputs, down to a scale of 100 parts per million, that have
 44 been evaluated for human and environmental safety. Identify any and all inputs, which are
 45 known to be carcinogenic, mutagenic, teratogenic, reproductively toxic, or endocrine
 46 disrupting. Also identify items that are toxic to aquatic systems, contain heavy metals, or
 47 organohalogens. The material shall contain no inputs that are known problems to human or
 48 environmental health per the above major criteria, except for an input that is required to meet
 49 local fire codes.
 50
- 51 H. Recycling Characteristics: Provide documentation that the shade cloth can and is part of a
 52 closed loop of perpetual use and not be required to be down cycled, incinerated or otherwise
 53 thrown away. Scrap material can be sent back to the mill for reprocessing and recycling into
 54 the same quality yarn and woven into new material, without down cycling. Certify that this
 55 process is currently underway and will be utilized for this project.
 56



- 1 I. Perpetual Use Certification: Certify that at the end of the useful life of the shade cloth, that
 2 the material can be sent back to the manufacturer for recapture as part of a closed loop of
 3 perpetual use and that the material can and will be reconstituted into new yarn, for weaving
 4 into new shade cloth. Provide information on each shade band indicating that the shade
 5 band can be sent back to the manufacturer for this purpose.
 6
 7 J. Mock-Up: Provide a mock-up (manual shades only) of one roller shade assembly for
 8 evaluation of mounting, appearance and accessories.
 9 **1. Locate mock-up in window designated by Architect.**
 10 **2. Do not proceed with remaining work until, mock-up is accepted by Architect.**

11
 12 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- 13
 14 A. Deliver shades in factory-labeled packages, marked with manufacturer and product name,
 15 fire-test-response characteristics, and location of installation using same room designations
 16 indicated on Drawings and in the Window Treatment Schedule.
 17

18 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- 19
 20 A. Environmental Limitations: Install roller shades after finish work including painting is
 21 complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels
 22 indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
 23

24 1.8 WARRANTY

- 25
 26 A. Roller Shade Hardware, Chain and Shadecloth: Manufacturer's standard non-depreciating
 27 ten year limited warranty.
 28
 29 B. Roller Shade Motors and Motor Control Systems: Manufacturer's standard non-depreciating
 30 five-year warranty.
 31
 32 C. Roller Shade Installation: One year from date of Substantial Completion, not including
 33 scaffolding, lifts or other means to reach inaccessible areas.
 34
 35

36 PART 2 PRODUCTS

37
 38 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- 39
 40 A. Basis of Design: MechoShade Systems, Inc.; 42-03 35th Street, Long Island City, NY
 41 11101. ASD. Tel: (813) 971-3188. Fax: (813) 971-3199. Email: karenf@mechoshade.com,
 42 www.mechoshade.com.
 43
 44 B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section
 45 01600.
 46
 47

48 2.2 APPLICATIONS/SCOPE

- 49
 50 A. Roller Shade Schedule:
 51 **1. Shade Type: Motorized interior solar roller shades in all exterior windows of**
 52 **rooms and spaces shown on Drawings, and related motor control systems.**
 53

54 2.3 SHADE CLOTH

55



- 1 A. Environmentally Certified Shadecloth: MechoShade Systems, Inc., EcoVeil group, Dense
 2 Basket Weave 5300 Series, fabricated from TPO for both core yarn and jacket, single
 3 thickness, non-raveling 0.030 inch (0.762 mm) thick fabric.
 4 1. **Weave: 5 percent open 2x2 basket weave.**
 5 2. **Initial Color Selection: White**
 6 3. **See floor plan notes for location of shades requiring blackouts**
 7 4. **Final Color Selection: Provide a mock up of the initial color selection above in**
 8 **minimum 3' x 5' length for confirmation.**
 9

10 2.4 SHADE BAND

- 11 A. Shade Bands: Construction of shade band includes the fabric, the hem weight, hem-pocket,
 12 shade roller tube, and the attachment of the shade band to the roller tube. Sewn hems and
 13 open hem pockets are not acceptable.
 14 1. **Hem Pockets and Hem Weights: Fabric hem pocket with RF-welded seams**
 15 **(including welded ends) and concealed hem weights. Hem weights shall be of**
 16 **appropriate size and weight for shade band. Hem weight shall be continuous**
 17 **inside a sealed hem pocket. Hem pocket construction and hem weights shall**
 18 **be similar, for all shades within one room.**
 19 2. **Shade band and Shade Roller Attachment:**
 20 a. **Use extruded aluminum shade roller tube of a diameter and wall**
 21 **thickness required to support shade fabric without excessive deflection.**
 22 **Roller tubes less than 1.55 inch (39.37 mm) in diameter for manual**
 23 **shades, and less than 2.55 inches (64.77 mm) for motorize shades are not**
 24 **acceptable.**
 25 b. **Provide for positive mechanical engagement with drive / brake**
 26 **mechanism.**
 27 c. **Provide for positive mechanical attachment of shade band to roller tube;**
 28 **shade band shall be made removable / replaceable with a "snap-on" snap-**
 29 **off" spline mounting, without having to remove shade roller from shade**
 30 **brackets.**
 31 d. **Mounting spline shall not require use of adhesives, adhesive tapes,**
 32 **staples, and/or rivets.**
 33 e. **Any method of attaching shade band to roller tube that requires the use**
 34 **of: adhesive, adhesive tapes, staples, and/or rivets are not acceptable.**
 35
 36

37 2.5 SHADE FABRICATION

- 38 A. Fabricate units to completely fill existing openings from head to sill and jamb-to-jamb, unless
 39 specifically indicated otherwise.
 40
 41 B. Fabricate shadecloth to hang flat without buckling or distortion. Fabricate with heat-sealed
 42 trimmed edges to hang straight without curling or raveling. Fabricate unguided shadecloth to
 43 roll true and straight without shifting sideways more than 1/8 inch (3.18 mm) in either
 44 direction per 8 feet (2438 mm) of shade height due to warp distortion or weave design.
 45 Fabricate hem as follows:
 46 1. **Concealed bottom hem weights.**
 47
 48 C. Provide battens in standard shades as required to assure proper tracking and uniform rolling
 49 of the shadebands. Contractor shall be responsible for assuring the width-to-height (W:H)
 50 ratios shall not exceed manufacturer's standards or, in absence of such standards, shall be
 51 responsible for establishing appropriate standards to assure proper tracking and rolling of
 52 the shadecloth within specified standards. Battens shall be roll-formed stainless steel or
 53 tempered steel, as required.
 54
 55



- 1 D. For railroaded shadebands, provide seams in railroaded multi-width shadebands as required
 2 to meet size requirements and in accordance with seam alignment as acceptable to
 3 Architect. Seams shall be properly located. Furnish battens in place of plain seams when
 4 the width, height, or weight of the shade exceeds manufacturer's standards. In absence of
 5 such standards, assure proper use of seams or battens as required to, and assure the
 6 proper tracking of the railroaded multi-width shadebands.
 7
- 8 E. Provide battens for railroaded shades when width-to-height (W:H) ratios meet or exceed
 9 manufacturer's standards. In absence of manufacturer's standards, be responsible for proper
 10 use and placement of battens to assure proper tracking and roll of shadebands.
 11

12 2.6 COMPONENTS

- 13 A. Access and Material Requirements:
- 14 1. **Provide shade hardware allowing for the removal of shade roller tube from**
 15 **brackets without removing hardware from opening and without requiring end or**
 16 **center supports to be removed.**
 - 17 2. **Provide shade hardware that allows for removal and re-mounting of the shade**
 18 **bands without having to remove the shade tube, drive or operating support**
 19 **brackets.**
 - 20 3. **Use only Delrin engineered plastics by DuPont for all plastic components of**
 21 **shade hardware. Styrene based plastics, and /or polyester, or reinforced**
 22 **polyester will not be acceptable.**
- 23
- 24 B. Motorized Shade Hardware and Shade Brackets:
- 25 1. **Provide shade hardware constructed of minimum 1/8-inch (3.18 mm) thick**
 26 **plated steel, or heavier, thicker, as required to support 150 percent of the full**
 27 **weight of each shade.**
 - 28 2. **Provide shade hardware system that allows for field adjustment of motor or**
 29 **replacement of any operable hardware component without requiring removal of**
 30 **brackets, regardless of mounting position (inside, or outside mount).**
 - 31 3. **Provide shade hardware system that allows for operation of multiple shade**
 32 **bands offset by a maximum of 8-45 degrees from the motor axis between shade**
 33 **bands (4-22.5 degrees) on each side of the radial line, by a single shade motor**
 34 **(multi-banded shade, subject to manufacturer's design criteria).**

35 2.7 SHADE MOTOR DRIVE SYSTEM

- 36 A. Shade Motors:
- 37 1. **Tubular, asynchronous (non-synchronous) motors, with built-in reversible**
 38 **capacitor operating at 110v AC (60hz), single phase, temperature Class A,**
 39 **thermally protected, totally enclosed, maintenance free with line voltage power**
 40 **supply equipped with locking disconnect plug assembly furnished with each**
 41 **motor.**
 - 42 2. **Conceal motors inside shade roller tube.**
 - 43 3. **Maximum current draw for each shade motor of 2.3 amps.**
 - 44 4. **Use motors rated at the same nominal speed for all shades in the same room.**
- 45
- 46 B. Total hanging weight of shade band shall not exceed 80 percent of the rated lifting capacity
 47 of the shade motor and tube assembly.
 48

49 2.8 MOTOR CONTROL SYSTEMS

- 50 A. IQ/MLC: Specifications and design of shade motors and motor control system are based on
 51 the IQ/MLC motor logic control system manufactured by MechoShade Systems, Inc. Other
 52



1 systems may be acceptable provide that all of the following performance capabilities are
 2 provided. Motor logic control systems not in complete compliance with these performance
 3 criteria shall not be accepted as equal systems.

4 **1. Motor Control System:**

- 5 a. Provide power to each shade motor via individual 3 conductor line
 6 voltage circuits connecting each motor to the relay based motor logic
 7 controllers (IQ/MLC).
 8 b. Control system components shall provide appropriate (spike and brown
 9 out) over-current protection (+/- 10 percent of line voltage) for each of the
 10 four individual motor circuits and shall be rated by UL or ETL as a
 11 recognized component of this system and tested as an integrated system.
 12 c. Motor control system shall allow each group of four shade motors in any
 13 combination to be controlled by each of four local switch ports, with up to
 14 fourteen possible "sub-group" combinations via local 3 button wall
 15 switches and all at once via a master 3 button switch. System shall allow
 16 for overlapping switch combinations from two or more local switches.
 17 d. Multiple "sub-groups" from different IQ/MLC control components shall be
 18 capable of being combined to form "groups" operated by a single 3
 19 button wall switch, from either the master port or in series from a local
 20 switch port.
 21 e. Each shade motor shall be accessible (for control purposes) from up to
 22 four local switches and one master switch.
 23 f. Control system shall allow for automatic alignment of shade hem bars in
 24 stopped position at 25 percent, 50 percent, and 75 percent of opening
 25 heights, and up to three user-defined intermediate stopping positions in
 26 addition to all up / all down, regardless of shade height, for a total of five
 27 positions. Control system shall allow shades to be stopped at any point
 28 in the opening height noting that shades may not be in alignment at these
 29 non-defined positions).
 30 g. Control system shall have two standard operating modes: Normal mode
 31 allowing the shades to be stopped anywhere in the window's opening
 32 height and uniform mode, allowing the shades to only be stopped at the
 33 predefined intermediate stop positions. Both modes shall allow for all up
 34 / all down positioning.
 35 h. Control system components shall allow for interface with both
 36 audiovisual system components and building fire and life safety system
 37 via a dry contact terminal block.
 38 i. Control system components shall allow for interface with external analog
 39 input control devices such as solar activated controllers, 24 hour timers,
 40 and similar items; via a dry contact terminal block.
 41 j. Reconfiguration of switch groups shall not require rewiring of the
 42 hardwired line voltage motor power supply wiring, or the low voltage
 43 control wiring. Reconfiguration of switch groups shall be accomplished
 44 within the motor control device (IQ/MLC).

45 **2. Wall Switches:**

- 46 a. Three-button architectural flush mounted switches with metal cover plate
 47 and no exposed fasteners.
 48 b. Connect local wall switches to control system components via low
 49 voltage (12V DC) 4-conductor modular cable equipped with RJ-11 type
 50 connectors supplied, installed and certified under Division 16 - Electrical.
 51 c. Connect master wall switches to control system components via low
 52 voltage (12V DC) 6-conductor modular cable equipped with RJ-12 type
 53 connectors supplied, installed and certified under Division 16 - Electrical.
 54

55 2.9 ACCESSORIES

56



- 1 A. Roller Shades to be installed in pockets or designated recesses (constructed as part of the
2 base building by others) for recessed mounting in acoustical tile, or drywall ceilings as
3 indicated on the Drawings.

- 4
5 **1. Provide exposed extruded aluminum closure mount, tile support and removable**
6 **closure panel to provide access to shades.**

7
8
9 PART 3 EXECUTION

10
11 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 12
13 A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
14
15 B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of
16 unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

17
18 3.2 PREPARATION

- 19
20 A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
21
22 B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the
23 best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

24
25 3.3 INSTALLATION

- 26
27 A. Install roller shades level, plumb, square, and true according to manufacturer's written
28 instructions, and located so shade band is not closer than 2 inches (50 mm) to interior face
29 of glass. Allow proper clearances for window operation hardware.
30
31 B. Turn-Key Single-Source Responsibility for Motorized Interior Roller Shades: To control the
32 responsibility for performance of motorized roller shade systems, assign the design,
33 engineering, and installation of motorized roller shade systems, motors, controls, and low
34 voltage electrical control wiring specified in this Section to a single manufacturer and their
35 authorized installer/dealer. The Architect will not produce a set of electrical drawings for the
36 installation of control wiring for the motors, or motor controllers of the motorized roller
37 shades. Power wiring (line voltage), shall be provided by the roller shade installer/dealer, in
38 accordance with the requirements provided by the manufacturer. Coordinate the following
39 with the roller shade installer/dealer:
40 **1. Main Contractor shall provide power panels and circuits of sufficient size to**
41 **accommodate roller shade manufacturer's requirements, as indicated on the**
42 **mechanical and electrical drawings.**
43 **2. Main Contractor shall coordinate with requirements of roller shade**
44 **installer/dealer, before inaccessible areas are constructed.**
45 **3. Roller shade installer/dealer shall run line voltage as dedicated home runs (of**
46 **sufficient quantity, in sufficient capacity as required) terminating in junction**
47 **boxes in locations designated by roller shade dealer.**
48 **4. Roller shade installer/dealer shall provide and run all line voltage (from the**
49 **terminating points) to the motor controllers, wire all roller shade motors to the**
50 **motor controllers, and provide and run low voltage control wiring from motor**
51 **controllers to switch/ control locations designated by the Architect. All above-**
52 **ceiling and concealed wiring shall be plenum-rated, or installed in conduit, as**
53 **required by the electrical code having jurisdiction.**
54 **5. Main Contractor shall provide conduit with pull wire in all areas, which might**
55 **not be accessible to roller shade contractor due to building design, equipment**
56 **location or schedule.**



- 1
- 2 C. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or
- 3 malfunction throughout entire operational range.
- 4
- 5 D. Clean roller shade surfaces after installation, according to manufacturer's written
- 6 instructions.
- 7
- 8 E. Engage Installer to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate and maintain
- 9 roller shade systems.

10
11 3.4 PROTECTION

- 12
- 13 A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- 14
- 15 B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.
- 16

17 **END OF SECTION**

18

19



1 **SECTION 12 32 16 - LAMINATE CLAD CASEWORK**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- 6
7 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including the General and Supplementary
8 Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

9
10 **1.2 SUMMARY:**

- 11
12 A. The work, in this section, includes fabrication and installation of laminate clad casework, tops
13 custom casework and specialty items as shown on drawings and specified herein.

14
15 **1.3 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE:**

- 16
17 A. Sinks and fixtures, service and waste lines and all connections, vents, and electrical fixtures
18 within casework. Furnished and installed under Mechanical and Electrical Divisions 15 and
19 16.
20
21 B. Base molding: Shall be furnished and installed under Finishes Division 9.
22
23 C. General millwork and / or wood cabinetry, unless specifically noted on drawings as included
24 in this section.

25
26 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

- 27
28 A. Casework must conform to the design, quality of materials, construction and function as
29 specified and shown on drawings.
30
31 B. Manufacturer shall show evidence of a minimum of five (5) years experience in providing
32 manufactured casework.
33
34 C. Installation: Installer must be authorized and trained by the manufacturer.

35
36 **1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS:**

- 37
38 A. Samples:
39
40 1. Samples for verification of colors:
41 a. Submit samples for verification of high-pressure decorative laminates,
42 patterns and textures for exposed surfaces as indicated in Color Schedule.
43 Submit samples of thermalfused melamine laminate colors for semi-
44 exposed surfaces as indicated in Color Schedule.
45 2. Samples for initial selection of colors: (If not listed)
46 a. Submit samples of high-pressure solid color decorative laminates, patterns
47 and textures for exposed surfaces. (100 solid colors minimum). Submit
48 samples of thermalfused melamine laminate colors for semi-exposed
49 surfaces (3 colors minimum).
50
51 2. Hardware samples for verification. One sample of each.



3. Full sized upper and base cabinets may be requested prior to approval and be returned after completion of the project.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing the plan view, elevations, details, joinery, sizes and method of anchoring and location of each item as they relate to other building components. Production drawings must be coordinated with other trades.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING:

A. Protect casework during transit, delivery, storage, and handling to prevent damage, soilage, and deterioration.

B. Do not deliver casework until painting and similar operations that could damage, soil, or deteriorate casework have been completed in installation areas. If casework must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas whose environmental conditions meet requirements specified in "Project Conditions." Deliver casework and related items only after the building is fully enclosed. Protect finished surfaces from soiling and damage. Store only in dry and protected areas.

C. Job Conditions: Advise contractor of requirements for maintaining heating, cooling and ventilation in installation areas as required to reach relative humidity necessary.

D. Warranty: All material and workmanship covered by this section shall carry a 3 - year warranty from date of substantial completion.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install casework until building is enclosed, wet-work is completed, and HVAC system is operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

B. Protect casework during delivery, storage and handling to prevent damage, soilage and deterioration.

1.8 FIELD MEASUREMENTS:

A. Field Measurements: Where casework is required to fit other construction, check actual dimensions before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication and delivery schedule with construction progress to avoid work delay.

1. Verify locations of blocking and reinforcements that support casework and notify contractor of any requirements necessary.

2. Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, guarantee dimensions and proceed with fabricating casework without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to guaranteed dimensions.

1.9 WARRANTY:



- 1 A. Warranty: All materials covered by this section shall carry a three (3) year warranty from date
2 of acceptance.
3
4

5 **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

6
7 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS:** See Allstate Construction's bid package for
8 shop-fabricated casework instead of plant-manufactured casework.

- 9 A. Acceptable Manufacturers: It is the intent of this specification to establish performance and
10 quality criteria consistent with pre-established standards of design and function herein
11 described. Casework not meeting these minimum standards will not be accepted.

- 12
13 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of
14 the following:

- 15
16 a. Casework Concepts, Inc.
17 b. IWS, Inc., Elizabethtown, NC
18 c. LSI Corporation of America, Minneapolis, Minn.
19 d. Precision Panel Products, Inc., Largo, FL
20 e. SMC Casework, Inc.
21 f. Steven's Industries, Teutopolis, Ill.
22 g. TMI, Inc., Dickinson, North Dakota
23 h. Triangle Pacific Corp.
24 i. Commercial Casework, Inc.
25 j. Cabinets By Design
26 k. Leonard Peterson & Co., Inc.

- 27
28 B. Substitutions: Will only be considered in accordance with the contract documents.
29 Substitution requests shall list all deviations from the specification and will be identified by
30 addenda.
31

32 **2.2 DEFINITIONS AND COLORS:**

- 33 A. Definitions and materials commonly used in defining laminate clad casework. Refer to the
34 fabrication section for items selected for use on this project.

- 35
36 1. Open Interiors: Any open storage unit without solid door or drawer fronts and units
37 with glass doors. Material, GP28 high pressure decorative laminates shall be as
38 designated on drawings, unless noted otherwise.

- 39
40 2. Closed Interiors: Storage unit interiors behind solid hinged or sliding doors and
41 drawer fronts. Material, thermalfused melamine or CL20 cabinet liner. Three
42 choices minimum color. (Glued on melamine papers are not acceptable). Color
43 White, unless noted otherwise.

- 44
45 3. Exposed Surfaces: Any unit with door or drawer fronts, when closed, and exposed
46 ends. Material shall be GP28 high pressure decorative laminate and balanced with
47 CL20 cabinet liner. (Colored melamine is not acceptable). Colors: Per color
48 schedule.

- 49
50 4. Semi-exposed Surfaces: Tops of wall and tall cabinets and exterior bottom of wall
51



1 cabinets, unless otherwise designated on drawings, shall be thermalfused melamine
2 or CL20 cabinet liner.

- 3
4 5. Concealed Surfaces: Any surface, not normally visible after installation, such as
5 cabinet backs to wall or cabinet sides to sides. Material shall be a backer to balance
6 the interior surface. These flat surfaces shall not be left unfinished. (BALANCED
7 CONSTRUCTION IS MANDATORY).

8
9 **2.3 CORE MATERIALS:**

- 10 A. Particleboard shall be Industrial grade 45 lb density accredited by ANSI A208.1-1993, M3.

11
12
13 **2.4 DECORATIVE LAMINATES:**

- 14 A. High Pressure Decorative Laminates: Accredited by NEMA test LD-3-1991 by - Basis of
15 Design: Wilsonart; acceptable substitutions - Formica or Wilson Art.

- 16
17
18 1. GP50 (.050) for flat or PF42 (.042) post forming grades for counter tops.
19 2. GP28 (.028) for cabinet exposed fronts and sides.
20 3. CL20 (.020) balance sheet to GP28.
21 4. BK20 (.020) balance sheet to counter tops.

- 22 B. Thermal fused melamine: Accredited by ALA 1988 requirements or NEMA LD-3-1991 test for
23 GP20. (100 gram minimum). Choice of three colors for all interiors including drawer boxes.

24
25
26 **2.5 EDGING MATERIALS:**

- 27 A. PVC .5mm banding, machine trimmed and applied with waterproof hot melt glue.
28 B. PVC 3mm banding, machine trimmed and applied with waterproof hot melt glue.
29 C. Basis of Design: Canplast, Inc.

30
31
32
33 **2.6 CABINET HARDWARE:**

- 34 A. Hinges: Zinc die-cast construction with diecast nickel-plated hinge cup. Concealed European
35 style equal to Grass MB series barrel hinge. Nylon hinge cups not permitted. Provide roller
36 catches on all doors over 48" high.
37 B. Pulls: Shall be wire "C" style (4" centers) with brushed finish compatible with the American
38 Disability Act (ADA). Provide flat washer bases on cabinet pulls. Refer to cabinet details for
39 locations of pulls.
40 C. Drawer Slides:
41 1. Standard drawer and paper or map storage drawers shall be Blum No. BS230M
42 bottom mount or equal. Slides shall have an epoxy finish, 100lb load rating, positive
43 in-out stop with a self closing feature and a lifetime warranty.
44 2. File drawer slides shall be full extension, 3-part progressive opening, 100lb epoxy
45 finish and have a lifetime warranty.
46
47
48
49
50
51



3. Pencil drawers shall be heavy molded plastic under counter mounted

D. Adjustable Shelf Clips: Shall be reinforced plastic, two pin design to fit the 32mm line-boring system, with anti-lift restraints providing a non tip feature. Clips shall allow for 3/4" or 1" thick shelves (single pin clips will not be allowed).

E. Locks: For doors and drawers, as shown on drawings, shall be 5-disc tumbler, cam style with strike plate. Sliding 3/4" door locks shall be a disc plunger type lock with strike. 1/4" glass sliding door locks shall be ratchet showcase type.

F. Grommets: For cable passage through countertops shall be 3" molded plastic as shown on drawings. Provide one grommet per every 2 kneehole spaces in countertop and as elsewhere indicated; location to be marked on counter in field by Architect.

H. Pendaflex File Rails: All file drawers shall include suspension rails.

2.7 FABRICATION:

A. Cabinet Body Construction: Joinery shall be hardwood fluted dowels completely glued and clamped under pressure. Four (4) dowels for 13" deep units, five (5) dowels for 18" deep units, and six (6) dowels for 24" deep units at each corner. (Dowels used for alignment only, with the panels screwed together, will not be allowed).

B. Body panels: Shall be 3/4" thick 45# industrial grade particleboard before lamination except sink cabinet body panels shall be plywood. Edging and surfacing materials as indicated herein.

C. Backs: Cabinet backs against walls shall be 3/8" particleboard completely captured four (4) sides and glued with anchor rails behind. **OR** 2" particleboard captured four (4) sides and glued. Exposed backs on island or mobile units shall be 3/4" particleboard with exterior surface GP28 laminate.

D. Sub Tops: All base units, except sink cabinets, shall have a full sub top.

E. Body Panel Edges: Exposed edges shall be .5mm PVC.

F. Adjustable Shelves: Shall be 3/4" thick particleboard through 33" wide units and 1" thick particleboard through 36" wide units. Any thing wider requires vertical dividers. Front edges shall be .5mm PVC, to match the shelf color.

G. Upper wall units: Shall have a clear inside depth of 12". The tops and bottoms shall be thermal-fused melamine or CL20, unless noted otherwise on drawings.

H. Drawers:

1. Drawer Sub Front, front and sides shall be 2" thick particleboard, laminated with thermal-fused melamine or CL20 cabinet liner. Top edges shall be .5mm PVC in matching color.

2. Drawer Box Sides: The bottom edge shall be hardwood to receive drawer slide



screws used with bottom mount drawer slides.

3. Drawer bottoms: Shall be a minimum of 1/4" thick 45# industrial grade particleboard, captured four (4) sides and glued. Surfaces shall be laminated with CL20 cabinet liner. (painted surfaces will not be allowed). Drawer bottoms over 24" wide shall be reinforced **OR** Optional bottoms may be 2" thick particleboard, screwed all sides with 1-1/4" screws and supported by bottom mount slides. (No staples).

4. Paper Storage Drawers: Construction is similar except 3/4" thick particleboard shall be used for the drawer box and a retaining hood shall be included at the rear top of each drawer.

I. Door and Drawer Fronts: Shall be 3/4" particleboard core before lamination with GP28 exterior and balanced with CL20 cabinet liner. Units over 24" wide shall have two doors.

J. Door and Drawer Edges: Shall have 3mm PVC edges.

K. Subbase: All base and tall units shall have a separate, continuous ladder type, **pressure treated wood sub base**; no exceptions. Cabinet sides down to the floor will not be acceptable.

L. Counter tops:

1. Counter Tops: Shall have 3mm PVC edges through 36" high. Surface shall be laminated with GP50 (.50) and balanced with a BK20 backer. Exposed corners shall have a 2" radius. Back and side splashes shall be 3/4", butt style, fastened with waterproof caulk and screwed. Core material shall be particleboard except tops with sinks shall be plywood. Splices over knee spaces or sink areas will not be allowed.

2. Tops on cabinets from 36" to 71" shall have a 3/4" top with 3mm PVC or matching PVC T-moulding. Core material shall be particleboard laminated with GP50 (.050) and balanced.

3. Powder coated angled metal wall brackets: See Spec Section 10 00 01 Miscellaneous Specialties

M. Cabinets (base, wall, tall upright, shelving, bracketed countertop, etc) shall be securely anchored to the wall and floor structural system to both resist movement and support the combined weight of the unit and live load of cabinet contents with necessary quantity and size of fasteners. Coordinate size and location of required block.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION:

A. The casework supplier must examine the job site and notify the contractor of unsatisfactory conditions in writing. Conditions shall be corrected before proceeding. Scribe casework to adjacent surfaces (walls and/or casework) and provide miscellaneous trim as necessary for a quality installation and to close any gaps or voids. Provide silicone caulking at perimeter of backsplash at junction with base cabinet and wall.

3.2 INSTALLATION:



- 1 A. Install casework plumb, level, straight and true adjusting all doors and drawers to operate
2 smoothly without warp or bind. Make cut outs for sinks, grommets and electrical outlets as
3 required.
4

5 **3.3 PREPARATION:**
6

- 7 A. Condition casework to the average prevailing humidity conditions in areas prior to
8 installation.
9

10 **3.4 CLEANING AND REPAIR:**
11

- 12 A. Clean and repair minor damages to laminate surfaces per manufacturer's recommendations
13 or accepted by the TPM. Replace other damaged parts or units.
14

15 **3.5 PROTECTION:**
16

- 17 A. Provide the contractor with instructions for the protection of casework and tops from damage
18 by other trades until acceptance of the work by the owner.
19

20 **END OF SECTION 12 32 16**
21



1 **SECTION 12 36 61 QUARTZ SURFACING COUNTERTOPS**

2 **PART 1- GENERAL**

3 **1.0 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract, including general and supplementary
5 conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

6
7 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 8 A. Section includes quartz surfacing for (includes, but not limited to):
9 1. Countertops.
- 10
11 B. Related Sections include the following;
12 1. Administrative, procedural and temporary work requirements.
13 2. Division 6 section Rough Carpentry for blocking.
14 3. Division 7 Section Joint Sealers.
15 4. Division 15 Plumbing Fixtures.

16
17 **1.2 REFERENCES**

- 18 A. ASTM International:
19 1. C97 Absorption and Bulk Specific Gravity of Dimension Stone.
20 2. C99 Modulus of Rupture of Dimension Stone.
21 3. C170 Compressive Strength of Dimension Stone.
22 4. C370 Moisture Expansion.
23 5. C501 Relative Resistance to Wear of Unglazed Tile to Taber Abraser.
24 6. C482 Bond Strength of Ceramic Tile to Portland Cement.
25 7. C484 Thermal Shock Resistance of Grazed Ceramic Tile.
26 8. C531 Linear Shrinkage and Coefficient of Thermal Expansion of Chemical - Resistant
27 Mortars, Grouts, Monolithic Surfacing and Polymer Concrete.
28 9. C648 Breaking Strength of Ceramic Tile.
29 10. C1026 Resistance of Ceramic Tile to Freeze Thaw Cycling.
30 11. C1028 Static Coefficient of Friction of Ceramic Tile and Other Like Surfaces by the
31 Horizontal Dynamometer Pull Meter Method.
32 12. E84 Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
33 13. E662 Smoke Density.
- 34
35 B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
36 1. ANSI Z124.6 Stain Resistance
37 2. A108.5 Installation of Ceramic Tile with a Dry Set Portland Cement Mortar Latex
38 Portland Cement Mortar.
39 3. A108.10- Installation of Grout in Tilework.
40 4. A118.4 - Latex-Portland Cement Mortar.
41 5. A118.6- Ceramic Tile Grouts.
42 6. A136.1- Lasers

43
44 **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- 45 A. Product Data:
46 1. Quartz Surfacing; Submit manufacturer's product data.
47 2. Quartz Surfacing; Submit manufacturer's care and maintenance data.
- 48 B. Samples:
49 1. Submit two 8x8 inch quartz samples showing available colors.
- 50 C. Adhesive:
51 1. Submit two 8-inch samples of adhesive joint for each color quartz surface selected.
- 52 D. Shop Drawings:
53 1. Drawings to include countertop layout, dimensions, required locations of support and



1 blocking members, edge profiles, cutouts and attachments.

2 E. Fabricator Qualifications:

3 1. Work of this section shall be performed by an approved fabricator/installer by the
4 manufacturer.

6 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

7 A. Delivery, Storage and Handling:

8 1. Packaging, Shipping, Handling and Unloading; Observe manufacturer's
9 recommendations and handle in a manner to prevent breakage. Brace parts if necessary.
10 Transport in the near vertical position with finished face toward finished face. Do not
11 allow finished surfaces to rub during shipping and handling.

12 B. Storage and Protection:

13 1. Store in racks in near vertical position. Prevent warpage and breakage. Store Inside
14 away from direct exposure to sunlight. Store between 25 and 130°F.

16 1.5 WARRANTY

17 A. Closeout Submittals:

18 1. Provide manufacturer's standard 1-year warranty.

21 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

22 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

23 A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, other manufacturers offering
24 products may be incorporated in the Work, subject to meeting the Basis of Design product.

25 1. **Basis of Design: Cambria.**

26 2. See interior elevations and millwork details for locations.

28 2.2 MATERIALS

29 A. Material:

30 1. Homogeneous mixture containing 93% pure quartz with additions of high performance
31 polyester resin, pigments and special effects.

32 B. Thickness:

33 1. 2cm.

34 C. Identification:

35 1. Material shall be labeled with manufacturer's identifying mark.

36 D. Color: In accordance with Color and Finish Schedule and as selected from manufacturer's
37 Cambria color ranges.

38 E. Finish: In accordance with Color and Finish Schedule and as selected from manufacturer's
39 surface options.

40 F. Exposed Edges and Corners:

41 1. Countertops profile: As indicated in details.

42 2. Backsplash profile: As indicated in details.

43 3. Other Surface applications profile: As indicated in details.

44 G. Performance:

45 1. Moisture Absorption: typical results 0.02%; ASTM C97

46 2. Modulus of Rupture: typical results 6,800 psi; ASTM C99

47 3. Compressive Strength: typical results 24,750 psi; ASTM C170

48 4. Moisture Expansion: typical results <0.01; ASTM C370

49 5. Abrasion Resistance: typical results 223; ASTM C501

50 6. Bond Strength: typical results 205 psi; ASTM C482

51 7. Thermal Shock: passes 5 cycles: ASTM 484

52 8. Coefficient of Thermal Expansion: typical results 1.2×10^{-5} inch/°F; ASTM C531

53 9. Breaking Strength of Tile: typical results 3,661 lbf; ASTM C648



10. Resistance to Freeze Thaw Cycling: unaffected 15 cycles; ASTM C1026
11. Coefficient of Friction Pull Method: .75 avg. dry / .55 avg. wet; ASTM C1028
12. Surface Burning Characteristics: typical results 17; ASTM E84
13. Smoke Density: flaming 196, non-flaming 69; ASTM E662
14. Stain Resistance: Unaffected; ANSI Z124.6

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mounting Adhesive:
 1. Provide structural grade '50 year' silicone or epoxy adhesive.
 2. Silicone manufacturers as indicated in Section 07 91 10 Interior Joint Caulking.
 3. Acceptable epoxy manufactures:
 - a. MSI
 - b. Cambria Two Part Acrylic Adhesive.
 - c. Akemi North America.
 - d. Bonstone Material Corporation.
 - e. Tenax USA.
- B. Quartz Surface Adhesive:
 1. Provide epoxy or polyester adhesive of a type recommended by manufacturer for application and conditions of use.
 2. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. MSI
 - b. Cambria Two Part Acrylic Adhesive.
 - c. Akemi North America.
 - d. Bonstone Material Corporation.
 - e. Tenax USA.
 3. Adhesive which will be visible in finished work shall be tinted to match quartz Surface.
- C. Fasteners as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Joint Sealant:
 1. Clear sealant of type recommended by manufacturer for application and use.
 2. Provide anti-bacterial type in toilet, bath, and food preparation areas.
 3. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Dow Corning.
 - b. GE Sealants.
- E. Solvent: Denatured alcohol for cleaning quartz surfacing to assure adhesion of adhesives and sealants.
- F. Cleaning Agents: Mild soap and water.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricator:
 1. Fabricator shall be by a certified Fabricator, certified in writing by Manufacturer.
- B. Layout:
 1. Layout surface to minimize joints and avoid L-shaped pieces of quartz surfacing. Layout and fabricate with 'hairline' joints.
- C. Inspection of Materials:
 1. Inspect materials for defects prior to fabrication.
- D. Tools: Cut and polish with water cooled powered tools.
- E. Cutouts:
 1. Cutouts shall have a minimum of 3/8 inch (10mm) radius.
 2. Where edges of cutouts will be exposed in finished work; polish edges.
- F. Laminations:
 1. Laminate layers of quartz surfacing as required to create built up edges following procedures recommended by the manufacturer.



1 **PART 3- EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 INSTALLER**

- 3 A. Installation shall be by a certified Installer, certified in writing by
4 Manufacturer.

5
6 **3.2 PRE-INSTALLATION EXAMINATION**

- 7 A. Site Verification:
8 1. Verify dimensions by field measurements prior to installation.
9 2. Verify that substrates supporting quartz surfaces are plumb, level and flat to within 1/8
10 inch in 10 feet and that all necessary supports and blocking are in place.
11 3. Base Cabinets shall be secured to adjoining units and back wall.
12 B. Inspection of Quartz Surfaces:
13 1. Inspect materials for defects prior to installation.

14
15 **3.3 PREPARATION**

- 16 A. Prepare Surface:
17 1. Clean surfaces prior to installation.
18 B. Protection of Quartz Surfaces:
19 1. Protect finished surfaces from scratches. Apply masking where necessary. Take
20 necessary precautions to prevent dirt grit dust and debris from other trades from
21 contacting the surface.

22
23 **3.4 INSTALLATION**

- 24 A. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approve shop
25 drawings.
26 B. Preliminary Installation:
27 1. Position materials to verify the correct size.
28 2. If size adjustments, or additional fabrication is necessary, use water cooled tools.
29 Protect jobsite and surface from dust and water. Perform work away from installation
30 site if possible.
31 3. Allow gaps for expansion of not less than 1/8 inch(1.5mm) per ten feet when installed
32 between walls or other fixed structure.
33 C. Permanent Installation:
34 1. After verification of fit and finish, clean substrate; remove loose and foreign matter
35 which may interfere with adhesion. Clean quartz surface backside & joints with
36 denatured alcohol.
37 2. Horizontal surface: Apply continuous bead of mounting adhesive around perimeter
38 of structural substrate and supports.
39 3. Vertical surface: Apply continuous bead of mounting adhesive around perimeter. In
40 addition, apply ¼ inch mounting adhesive bead every 8 inches on vertical center.
41 4. Fasteners, Grout and Hardware: Install in accordance with manufacturer.
42 5. Install quartz surfacing plumb, level, square and flat to within 1/8 inch in ten Feet, non-
43 cumulative.
44 6. Align adjacent pieces in same plane.
45 D. Joints:
46 1. Joints Between Adjacent Pieces of Quartz Surfacing:
47 a. Joints shall be flush, tight fitting, level and neat.
48 b. Securely join adjacent pieces with Cambria Two Part Acrylic Adhesive.
49 c. Fill joints level to polished surface.
50 d. Secure adjacent quartz surfaces with vacuum clamps until adhesive hardens.
51 2. Joints Between Quartz Surface and back splash, wall, and sinks:
52 a. Seal joints with '50' year silicone sealant.
53



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

3.5 REPAIR

A. Repair or replace damaged material in a satisfactory manner.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Remove masking, excessive adhesive and sealants. Clean exposed surfaces with denatured alcohol.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed fabrications with non-staining sheet coverings.

END OF SECTION 12 36 61



1 **SECTION: 13 47 13 – BULLET-RESISTANT PANELS**

2 **PART 1 – GENERAL UL 752 Level 3 Bullet-Resistant Fiberglass Panels**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions.

6 **1.2 REFERENCES**

- 7 A. Underwriters Laboratories:
8 1. UL 752 Specifications and Ammunition, 11th Edition, Standard for Bullet Resisting
9 Equipment published September 9, 2005, revised December 21, 2006, Level 3
10
11 B. National Institute of Justice Ballistic Standards:
12 1. NIJ Standard 0108.01 – Type III-A
13
14 C. American Society for Testing and Materials:
15 1. ASTM E119-98 Standard Test for One-Hour Fire-Rating of Building Construction and
16 Materials
17 2. ASTM F1233-98 Standard Test Method for Forced Entry Testing of Materials/Assemblies

18 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

19
20 The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 13 4713 and the CONTRACT
21 REQUIREMENTS (Submit for approval prior to fabrication samples, brochures, specifications):

- 22 A. **UL LISTING Verification** and **UL752 Current Test Results** as provided by Underwriters
23 Laboratories.
24
25 B. Printed data in sufficient detail to indicate compliance with the contract documents.
26
27 C. ASTM E119-98 One-Hour Fire Rating of Building Construction and Materials.
28
29 D. ASTM F1233-98 Standard Test Method for Forced Entry Testing of Materials/Assemblies.
30
31 E. Manufacturer's Instructions for installation of Bullet Resistant Fiberglass Panels.

32 **1.4 DESIGN**

- 33 A. Through the design, manufacturing technique and material application the Bullet Resistant
34 Fiberglass shall be of the "non ricochet type." This design is intended to permit the encapture
35 and retention of an attacking projectile lessening the potential of a random injury or lateral
36 penetration.

37 **1.5 DELIVERY, HANDLING, AND STORAGE**

- 38 A. Deliver the materials to the project with the manufacturer's **UL LISTED Labels** intact and
39 legible.
40
41 B. Handle the material with care to prevent damage. Store the materials inside under cover, stack
42 flat and off the floor.



1 **1.6 WARRANTY**

- 2 A. All materials and workmanship shall be warranted against defects for a period of two (2) years
3 from the date of Substantial Completion.

4 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

5 **2.1 MANUFACTURER**

- 6 **A. Basis of Design: Waco Composites, Ltd., Waco, TX 76710, fax: 254-752-3634, 254-752-**
7 **3622. Location: Secure Lobby 1-001 and Boardroom 1-010 Dais desk.**

8 **2.2 MATERIAL**

- 9
10 A. The panels shall be made of multiple layers of woven roving ballistic grade fiberglass cloth
11 impregnated with a thermoset polyester resin and compressed into flat rigid sheets. The
12 production technique and materials used shall provide controlled internal delamination to defeat
13 the penetrating projectile.
14
15 B. Bullet Resistant Fiberglass panels: 7/16" nominal thickness, and 4.8 lbs. per sq. ft. nominal
16 weight.

17
18 **2.3 SECURITY LEVEL**

- 19
20 **A. The Bullet Resistant Fiberglass will be warranted to meet the requirements of UL752**
21 **Level 3.**

22 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

23
24 **3.1 SUPPORTING MEMBERS**

- 25 A. Prior to installing the bullet resistive material the contractor shall verify that all supports have
26 been installed as required by the contract documents and the architectural drawings.

27
28 **3.2 JOINTS**

- 29 A. All joints shall be reinforced by a back-up layer of bullet resistive material. The bullet resistance
30 of the joint, as reinforced, shall be at least equal to that of the panel. Minimum width of
31 reinforcing layer at joint shall be 4-inches (2" on each panel or a 2" minimum overlap).

32
33 **3.3 APPLICATION**

- 34 A. Armor shall be installed in strict accordance with the manufacturer's printed recommendations
35 and instructions. Armor panels shall be adhered using an industrial adhesive, mastic, screws
36 or bolts. Method of application shall maintain the bullet resistive rating at junctures with the
37 concrete floor slab, the concrete roof slab, the bullet resistive door frames, the bullet resistive
38 window frames, and all required penetrations.
39
40 B. Fiberglass panels shall be installed over min 7/8" metal furring channels, set either vertically or
41 horizontally (per panel manufacturer) minimum 16" o.c. Joints shall have a 4" batten strip
42 same level as panel. Panels shall be on the east wall of Admin Secretary 120, from finish floor
43 to 2'-0" above the ceiling to cover entire wall up to and around window and access tray.
44 Installation shall not have any voids wall to wall and floor to 2' above ceiling that are not protect
45 to a level 3 bullet resistance. Corners shall be of overlapping construction in accordance with
46 manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Finish gypsum board shall attach (adhesive
47 or mechanically in accordance with manufacturer's instructions) to fiberglass panel.

48
49 **END OF SECTION 13 47 13**



SECTION 14 24 00- MACHINE ROOM-LESS HYDRAULIC PASSENGER ELEVATORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes: Machine room-less hydraulic passenger elevators as shown and specified.
Elevator work includes:
1. Standard pre-engineered hydraulic passenger elevators.
 2. Elevator car enclosures, hoistway entrances and signal equipment.
 3. Operation and control systems.
 4. Jack(s).
 5. Accessibility provisions for physically disabled persons.
 6. Equipment, machines, controls, systems and devices as required for safely operating the specified elevators at their rated speed and capacity.
 7. Materials and accessories as required to complete the elevator installation.
- B. Related Sections:
1. Division 1 General Requirements: Meet or exceed all referenced sustainability requirements.
 2. Division 3 Concrete: Installing inserts, sleeves and anchors in concrete.
 3. Division 4 Masonry: Installing inserts, sleeves and anchors in masonry.
 4. Division 5 Metals:
 - a. Providing hoist beams, pit ladders, steel framing, auxiliary support steel and divider beams for supporting guide-rail brackets.
 - b. Providing steel angle sill supports and grouting hoistway entrance sills and frames.
 5. Division 9 Finishes: Providing elevator car finish flooring and field painting unfinished and shop primed ferrous materials.
 6. Division 16 Sections:
 - a. Providing electrical service to elevators, including fused disconnect switches where permitted. (note: fused disconnect switch to be provided as part of elevator manufacture product, see section 2.11 Miscellaneous elevator components for further details.)
 - b. Emergency power supply, transfer switch and auxiliary contacts.
 - c. Heat and smoke sensing devices.
 - d. Convenience outlets and illumination in control room (if applicable), hoistway and pit.
 7. Division 22 Plumbing
 - a. Sump pit and oil interceptor.
 8. Division 23 Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning
 - a. Heating and ventilating hoistways and/or control room.
- C. Work Not Included: General contractor shall provide the following in accordance with the requirements of the Model Building Code and ANSI A17.1 Code. For specific rules, refer to ANSI A17.1, Part 3 for hydraulic elevators. State or local requirements must be used if more stringent. The cost of this work is not included in the TK Elevator's proposal, since it is a part of the building construction.
1. Elevator hoist beam to be provided at top of elevator shaft. Beam must be able to accommodate proper loads and clearances for elevator installation and operation.



2. Supply in ample time for installation by other trades, inserts, anchors, bearing plates, brackets, supports and bracing including all setting templates and diagrams for placement.
3. Hatch walls require a minimum two hours of fire rating. Hoistway should be clear and plumb with variations not to exceed 1/2" at any point.
4. Elevator hoistways shall have barricades, as required.
5. Install bevel guards at 75° on all recesses, projections or setbacks over 2" (4" for A17.1 2000 areas) except for loading or unloading.
6. Provide rail bracket supports at pit, each floor and roof. For guide rail bracket supports, provide divider beams between hoistway at each floor and roof.
7. Pit floor shall be level and free of debris. Reinforce dry pit to sustain normal vertical forces from rails and buffers.
8. Where pit access is by means of the lowest hoistway entrance, a vertical ladder of non-combustible material extending 42" minimum, (48" minimum for A17.1-2000 areas) shall be provided at the same height, above sill of access door or handgrips.
9. All wire and conduit should run remote from the hoistways.
10. When heat, smoke or combustion sensing devices are required, connect to elevator control cabinet terminals. Contacts on the sensors should be sided for 12 volt D.C.
11. Install and furnish finished flooring in elevator cab.
12. Finished floors and entrance walls are not to be constructed until after sills and door frames are in place. Consult elevator contractor for rough opening size. The general contractor shall supply the drywall framing so that the wall fire resistance rating is maintained, when drywall construction is used.
13. Where sheet rock or drywall construction is used for front walls, it shall be of sufficient strength to maintain the doors in true lateral alignment. Drywall contractor to coordinate with elevator contractor.
14. Before erection of rough walls and doors; erect hoistway sills, headers, and frames. After rough walls are finished; erect fascias and toe guards. Set sill level and slightly above finished floor at landings.
15. To maintain legal fire rating (masonry construction), door frames are to be anchored to walls and properly grouted in place.
16. The elevator wall shall interface with the hoistway entrance assembly and be in strict compliance with the elevator contractor's requirements.
17. General Contractor shall fill and grout around entrances, as required.
18. All walls and sill supports must be plumb where openings occur.
19. Locate a light fixture (200 lx / 19 fc) and convenience outlet in pit with switch located adjacent to the access door.
20. Provide telephone line, light fixture (200 lx / 19 fc), and convenience outlet in the hoistway at the landing where the elevator controller is located. Typically this will be at the landing above the 1st floor. Final location must be coordinated with elevator contractor.
21. As indicated by elevator contractor, provide a light outlet for each elevator, in center of hoistway.
22. For signal systems and power operated door: provide ground and branch wiring circuits.
23. For car light and fan: provide a feeder and branch wiring circuits to elevator control cabinet.
24. Controller landing wall thickness must be a minimum of 8 1/2 inches thick. This is due to the controller being mounted on the second floor landing in the door frame on the return side of the door. For center opening doors, the controller is located on the right hand



frame (from inside the elevator cab looking out). These requirements must be coordinated between the general contractor and the elevator contractor.

25. Cutting, patching and recesses to accommodate hall button boxes, signal fixtures, etc..

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data: When requested, the elevator contractor shall provide standard cab, entrance and signal fixture data to describe product for approval.
- B. Shop drawings:
 - 1. Show equipment arrangement in the corridor, pit, and hoistway and/or optional control room. Provide plans, elevations, sections and details of assembly, erection, anchorage, and equipment location.
 - 2. Indicate elevator system capacities, sizes, performances, safety features, finishes and other pertinent information.
 - 3. Show floors served, travel distances, maximum loads imposed on the building structure at points of support and all similar considerations of the elevator work.
 - 4. Indicate electrical power requirements and branch circuit protection device recommendations.
- C. Powder Coat paint selection: Submit manufacturer's standard selection charts for exposed finishes and materials.
- D. Plastic laminate selection: Submit manufacturer's standard selection charts for exposed finishes and materials.
- E. Metal Finishes: Upon request, standard metal samples provided.
- F. Operation and maintenance data. Include the following:
 - 1. Owner's manuals and wiring diagrams.
 - 2. Parts list, with recommended parts inventory.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: An approved manufacturer with minimum 15 years of experience in manufacturing, installing, and servicing elevators of the type required for the project.
 - 1. The manufacturer of machines, controllers, signal fixtures, door operators cabs, entrances, and all other major parts of elevator operating equipment.
 - a. The major parts of the elevator equipment shall be manufactured by the installing company, and not be an assembled system.
 - 2. The manufacturer shall have a documented, on-going quality assurance program.
 - 3. ISO-9001:2000 Manufacturer Certified
 - 4. ISO-14001:2004 Environmental Management System Certified
 - 5. LEED Gold certified elevator manufacturing facility.
- B. Installer Qualifications: The manufacturer or an authorized agent of the manufacturer with not less than 15 years of satisfactory experience installing elevators equal in character and performance to the project elevators.



C. Regulatory Requirements:

1. ASME A17.1 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, latest edition or as required by the local building code.
2. Building Code: National.
3. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.
4. NFPA 80 Fire Doors and Windows.
5. Americans with Disabilities Act - Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG)
6. Section 407 in ICC A117.1, when required by local authorities
7. CAN/CSA C22.1 Canadian Electrical Code
8. CAN/CSA B44 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators.
9. California Department of Public Health Standard Method V1.1–2010, CA Section 01350

D. Fire-rated entrance assemblies: Opening protective assemblies including frames, hardware, and operation shall comply with ASTM E2074, CAN4-S104 (ULC-S104), UL10(b), and NFPA Standard 80. Provide entrance assembly units bearing Class B or 1 1/2 hour label by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (2 hour label in Canada).

E. Inspection and testing:

1. Elevator Installer shall obtain and pay for all required inspections, tests, permits and fees for elevator installation.
2. Arrange for inspections and make required tests.
3. Deliver to the Owner upon completion and acceptance of elevator work.

F. Sustainable Product Qualifications:

1. Environmental Product Declaration:
 - a. GOOD: If Product Category Rules (PCR) are not available, produce a publicly available, critically reviewed life-cycle assessment conforming to ISO 14044 that has at least a cradle to gate scope.
 - b. BEST: If Product Category Rules (PCR) are available, produce and publish an Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) based on a critically reviewed life-cycle assessment conforming to ISO 14044, with external verification recognized by the EPD program operator.
2. Material Transparency:
 - a. GOOD: Provide Health Product Declaration at any level
 - b. BETTER: Provide Health Product Declaration (HPD v2 or later). Complete, published declaration with full disclosure of known hazards, prepared using the Health Product Declaration Collaborative's "HPD builder" on-line tool.
 - c. BEST: Cradle to Cradle Material Health Certificate v3, Bronze level or higher.
3. LEED v4 – Provide documentation for all Building Product Disclosure AND Optimization credits in LEED v4 for product specified.
4. Living Building Challenge Projects: Provide Declare label for products specified.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Manufacturing shall deliver elevator materials, components and equipment and the contractor is responsible to provide secure and safe storage on job site.



1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use: Elevators shall not be used for temporary service or for any other purpose during the construction period before Substantial Completion and acceptance by the purchaser unless agreed upon by Elevator Contractor and General Contractor with signed temporary agreement.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Submit elevator manufacturer's standard written warranty agreeing to repair, restore or replace defects in elevator work materials and workmanship not due to ordinary wear and tear or improper use or care for 12 months after final acceptance.

1.07 MAINTENANCE

- A. Furnish maintenance and call back service for a period of 12 months for each elevator after completion of installation or acceptance thereof by beneficial use, whichever is earlier, during normal working hours excluding callbacks.
 1. Service shall consist of periodic examination of the equipment, adjustment, lubrication, cleaning, supplies and parts to keep the elevators in proper operation. Maintenance work, including emergency call back repair service, shall be performed by trained employees of the elevator contractor during regular working hours.
 2. Submit parts catalog and show evidence of local parts inventory with complete list of recommended spare parts. Parts shall be produced by manufacturer of original equipment.
 3. Manufacturer shall have a service office and full time service personnel within a 100 mile radius of the project site.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturer: Design based around TK Elevator's endura Machine Room-Less hydraulic elevator.

2.02 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. All Elevator Cab materials including frame, buttons, lighting, wall and ceiling assembly, laminates and carpet shall have an EPD and an HPD, and shall meet the California Department of Public Health Standard Method V1.1-2010, CA Section 01350 as mentioned in 1.03.9 of this specification.
- B. Colors, patterns, and finishes: As selected by the Architect from manufacturer's full range of standard colors, patterns, and finishes.
- C. Steel:
 1. Shapes and bars: Carbon.
 2. Sheet: Cold-rolled steel sheet, commercial quality, Class 1, matte finish.
 3. Finish: Factory-applied baked enamel for structural parts, powder coat for architectural parts. Color selection must be based on elevator manufacture's standard selections.



- D. Plastic laminate: Decorative high-pressure type, complying with NEMA LD3, Type GP-50 General Purpose Grade, nominal 0.050" thickness. Laminate selection must be based on elevator manufacture's standard selections.
- E. Flooring by others.

2.03 HOISTWAY EQUIPMENT

- A. Platform: Fabricated frame of formed or structural steel shapes, gusseted and rigidly welded with a wood sub-floor. Underside of the platform shall be fireproofed. The car platform shall be designed and fabricated to support one-piece loads weighing up to 25% of the rated capacity.
- B. Sling: Steel stiles bolted or welded to a steel crosshead and bolstered with bracing members to remove strain from the car enclosure.
- C. Guide Rails: Steel, omega shaped, fastened to the building structure with steel brackets.
- D. Guides: Slide guides shall be mounted on top and bottom of the car.
- E. Buffers: Provide substantial buffers in the elevator pit. Mount buffers on continuous channels fastened to the elevator guide rail or securely anchored to the pit floor. Provide extensions if required by project conditions.
- F. Jack: A jack unit shall be of sufficient size to lift the gross load the height specified. Factory test jack to ensure adequate strength and freedom from leakage. Brittle material, such as gray cast iron, is prohibited in the jack construction. Provide the following jack type: Twin post holeless telescopic 2-stage. Two jacks piped together, mounted one on each side of the car with each having two telescopic sections designed to extend in a synchronized manner when oil is pumped into the Assembly. Each jack section will be guided from within the casing or the plunger assembly used to house the section. Each plunger shall have a high pressure sealing system which will not allow for seal movement or displacement during the course of operation. Each Jack Assembly shall have a check valve built into the assembly to allow for automatically re-synching the two plunger sections by moving the jack to its fully contracted position. The jack shall be designed to be mounted on the pit floor or in a recess in the pit floor. Each jack section shall have a bleeder valve to discharge any air trapped in the section..
- G. Automatic Self-Leveling: Provide each elevator car with a self-leveling feature to automatically bring the car to the floor landings and correct for over travel or under travel. Self-leveling shall, within its zone, be automatic and independent of the operating device. The car shall be maintained approximately level with the landing irrespective of its load.
- H. Wiring, Piping, and Oil: Provide all necessary hoistway wiring in accordance with the National Electrical Code. All necessary code compliant pipe and fittings shall be provided to connect the power unit to the jack unit. Provide proper viscosity grade inherently biodegradable oil as specified by the manufacturer of the power unit (see Power Unit section 2.04.G for further details)
- I. Pit moisture/water sensor located approximately 1 foot above the pit floor to be provided. Once activated, elevator will perform "flooded pit operation", which will run the car up to the designated



floor, cycle the doors and shut down and trip the circuit breaker shunt to remove 3 phase power from all equipment, including pit equipment.

- J. Motorized oil line shut-off valve shall be provided that can be remotely operated from the controller landing service panel. Also a means for manual operation at the valve in the pit is required.

2.04 POWER UNIT

- A. Power Unit (Oil Pumping and Control Mechanism): A self-contained unit located in the elevator pit consisting of the following items:
 1. NEMA 4/Sealed Oil reservoir with tank cover including vapor removing tank breather
 2. An oil hydraulic pump.
 3. An electric motor.
 4. Electronic oil control valve with the following components built into single housing; high pressure relief valve, check valve, automatic unloading up start valve, lowering and leveling valve, and electro-magnetic controlling solenoids.
- B. Pump: Positive displacement type pump specifically manufactured for oil-hydraulic elevator service. Pump shall be designed for steady discharge with minimum pulsation to give smooth and quiet operation. Output of pump shall not vary more than 10 percent between no load and full load on the elevator car.
- C. Motor: Standard manufacture motor specifically designed for oil-hydraulic elevator service. Duty rating – motors shall be capable of 80 starts per hour with a 30% motor run time during each start.
- D. Oil Control Unit: The following components shall be built into a single housing. Welded manifolds with separate valves to accomplish each function are not acceptable. Adjustments shall be accessible and be made without removing the assembly from the oil line.
 1. Relief valve shall be adjustable and be capable of bypassing the total oil flow without increasing back pressure more than 10 percent above that required to barely open the valve.
 2. Up start and stop valve shall be adjustable and designed to bypass oil flow during start and stop of motor pump assembly. Valve shall close slowly, gradually diverting oil to or from the jack unit, ensuring smooth up starts and up stops.
 3. Check valve shall be designed to close quietly without permitting any perceptible reverse flow.
 4. Lowering valve and leveling valve shall be adjustable for down start speed, lowering speed, leveling speed and stopping speed to ensure smooth "down" starts and stops. The leveling valve shall be designed to level the car to the floor in the direction the car is traveling after slowdown is initiated.
 5. Provided with constant speed regulation in both up and down direction. Feature to compensate for load changes, oil temperature, and viscosity changes.
 6. Solid State Starting: Provide an electronic starter featuring adjustable starting currents.
 7. A secondary hydraulic power source (powered by 110VAC single phase) must be provided. This is required to be able to raise (reposition) the elevator in the event of a system component failure (i.e. pump motor, starter, etc.)



8. Oil Type: Provide a zinc free, inherently biodegradable lubricant formulated with premium base stocks to provide outstanding protection for demanding hydraulic systems, especially those operating in environmentally sensitive areas.

2.05 HOISTWAY ENTRANCES

- A. Doors and Frames: Provide complete hollow metal type hoistway entrances at each hoistway opening bolted\knock down construction.
 1. Manufacturer's standard entrance design consisting of hangers, doors, hanger supports, hanger covers, fascia plates (where required), sight guards, and necessary hardware.
 2. Main landing door & frame finish: Stainless steel panels, no. 4 brushed finish with no. 4 brushed finish entrance frame.
 3. Typical door & frame finish: Stainless steel panels, no. 4 brushed finish with no. 4 brushed finish entrance frame.
- B. Integrated Control System: the elevator controller to be mounted to hoistway entrance above 1st landing. The entrance at this level, shall be designed to accommodate the control system and provide a means of access to critical electrical components and troubleshooting features. See section 2.09 Control System for additional requirements.
- C. At the controller landing, the hoistway entrance frame shall have space to accommodate and provide a lockable means of access (group 2 security) to a 3 phase circuit breaker. See section 2.11 Miscellaneous Elevator Components for further details
- D. Interlocks: Equip each hoistway entrance with an approved type interlock tested as required by code. Provide door restriction devices as required by code.
- E. Door Hanger and Tracks: Provide sheave type two point suspension hangers and tracks for each hoistway horizontal sliding door.
 1. Sheaves: Polyurethane tires with ball bearings properly sealed to retain grease.
 2. Hangers: Provide an adjustable device beneath the track to limit the up-thrust of the doors during operation.
 3. Tracks: Drawn steel shapes, smooth surface and shaped to conform to the hanger sheaves.
- F. Hoistway Sills: Extruded metal, with groove(s) in top surface. Provide mill finish on aluminum.

2.06 PASSENGER ELEVATOR CAR ENCLOSURE

- A. Car Enclosure:
 1. Walls: Cab type TKAP, reinforced cold-rolled steel with two coats factory applied baked enamel finish, with applied vertical wood core panels covered on both sides with stainless steel: 5WL rigidized stainless steel panels, No. 4 satin finish.
 2. Reveals and frieze: a. Reveals and frieze: Stainless steel, no. 4 brushed finish
 3. Canopy: Cold-rolled steel with hinged exit.



4. Ceiling: Downlight type, metal pans with suspended LED downlights and dimmer switch. Number of downlights shall be dependent on platform size with a minimum of six. The metal pans shall be finished with a stainless steel, no. 4 brushed finish.
 5. Cab Fronts, Return, Transom, Soffit and Strike: Provide panels faced with brushed stainless steel
 6. Doors: Horizontal sliding car doors reinforced with steel for panel rigidity. Hang doors on sheave type hangers with polyurethane tires that roll on a polished steel track and are guided at the bottom by non-metallic sliding guides.
 - a. Door Finish: Stainless steel panels: No. 4 brushed finish.
 - b. Cab Sills: Extruded aluminum, mill finish.
 7. Handrail: Provide 2" flat metal bar on side and rear walls on front opening cars and side walls only on front and rear opening cars. Handrails shall have a stainless steel, no. 4 brushed finish.
 8. Ventilation: Manufacturer's standard exhaust fan, mounted on the car top.
 9. Protection pads and buttons: Provide one set of vinyl protection pads with metal grommets for the project. Provide pad buttons on cab front(s) and walls.
- B. Car Top Inspection: Provide a car top inspection station with an "Auto-Inspection" switch, an "emergency stop" switch, and constant pressure "up and down" direction and safety buttons to make the normal operating devices inoperative. The station shall give the inspector complete control of the elevator. The car top inspection station shall be mounted in the door operator assembly.

2.07 DOOR OPERATION

- A. Door Operation: Provide a direct or alternating current motor driven heavy duty operator designed to operate the car and hoistway doors simultaneously. The door control system shall be digital closed loop and the closed loop circuit shall give constant feedback on the position and velocity of the elevator door. The motor torque shall be constantly adjusted to maintain the correct door speed based on its position and load. All adjustments and setup shall be through the computer based service tool. Door movements shall follow a field programmable speed pattern with smooth acceleration and deceleration at the ends of travel. The mechanical door operating mechanism shall be arranged for manual operation in event of power failure. Doors shall automatically open when the car arrives at the landing and automatically close after an adjustable time interval or when the car is dispatched to another landing. AC controlled units with oil checks, or other deviations are not acceptable.
1. No Un-Necessary Door Operation: The car door shall open only if the car is stopping for a car or hall call, answering a car or hall call at the present position or selected as a dispatch car.
 2. Door Open Time Saver: If a car is stopping in response to a car call assignment only (no coincident hall call), the current door hold open time is changed to a shorter field programmable time when the electronic door protection device is activated.
 3. Double Door Operation: When a car stops at a landing with concurrent up and down hall calls, no car calls, and no other hall call assignments, the car door opens to answer the hall call in the direction of the car's current travel. If an onward car call is not registered before the door closes to within 6 inches of fully closed, the travel shall reverse and the door shall reopen to answer the other call.



4. Nudging Operation: The doors shall remain open as long as the electronic detector senses the presence of a passenger or object in the door opening. If door closing is prevented for a field programmable time, a buzzer shall sound. When the obstruction is removed, the door shall begin to close at reduced speed. If the infra-red door protection system detects a person or object while closing on nudging, the doors shall stop and resume closing only after the obstruction has been removed.
 5. Door Reversal: If the doors are closing and the infra-red beam(s) is interrupted, the doors shall reverse and reopen. After the obstruction is cleared, the doors shall begin to close.
 6. Door Open Watchdog: If the doors are opening, but do not fully open after a field adjustable time, the doors shall recycle closed then attempt to open six times to try and correct the fault.
 7. Door Close Watchdog: If the doors are closing, but do not fully close after a field adjustable time, the doors shall recycle open then attempt to close six times to try and correct the fault.
 8. Door Close Assist: When the doors have failed to fully close and are in the recycle mode, the door drive motor shall have increased torque applied to possibly overcome mechanical resistance or differential air pressure and allow the door to close.
- B. Door Protection Device: Provide a door protection system using microprocessor controlled infra-red light beams. The beams shall project across the car opening detecting the presence of a passenger or object. If door movement is obstructed, the doors shall immediately reopen.

2.08 CAR OPERATING STATION

- A. Car Operating Station, General: The main car control in each car shall contain the devices required for specific operation mounted in an integral swing return panel requiring no applied faceplate. Wrap return shall have a brushed stainless steel finish. The main car operating panel shall be mounted in the return and comply with handicap requirements. Pushbuttons that illuminate using long lasting LED's shall be included for each floor served, and emergency buttons and switches shall be provided per code. Switches for car light and accessories shall be provided.
- B. Emergency Communications System: Integral phone system provided.
- C. Auxiliary Operating Panel:
- D. Column Mounted Car Riding Lantern: A car riding lantern shall be installed in the elevator cab and located in the entrance. The lantern, when illuminated, will indicate the intended direction of travel. The lantern will illuminate and a signal will sound when the car arrives at a floor where it will stop. The lantern shall remain illuminated until the door(s) begin to close.
- E. Special Equipment:
Limited Access Operation: NA
- F. Digital Services: Cloud-based IoT monitoring system comes standard with these options:



Remote Monitoring with Application Programming Interface (API) Integration

ADA Phone - Code Compliant Cellular Connectivity

A17.1 2019 Code - Enhanced Communications

2.09 CONTROL SYSTEMS

- A. Controller: Shall be integrated in a hoistway entrance jamb. Should be microprocessor based, software oriented and protected from environmental extremes and excessive vibrations in a NEMA 1 enclosure. Control of the elevator shall be automatic in operation by means of push buttons in the car numbered to correspond to floors served, for registering car stops, and by "up-down" push buttons at each intermediate landing and "call" push buttons at terminal landings.
- B. Service Panel – to be located outside the hoistway in the controller entrance jamb and shall provide the following functionality/features:
1. Access to main control board and CPU
 2. Main controller diagnostics
 3. Main controller fuses
 4. Universal Interface Tool (UIT)
 5. Remote valve adjustment
 6. Electronic motor starter adjustment and diagnostics
 7. Operation of pit motorized shut-off valve with LED feedback to the state of the valve in the pit
 8. Operation of auxiliary pump/motor (secondary hydraulic power source)
 9. Operation of electrical assisted manual lowering
 10. Provide male plug to supply 110VAC into the controller
 11. Run/Stop button
- C. Automatic Light and Fan shut down: The control system shall evaluate the system activity and automatically turn off the cab lighting and ventilation fan during periods of inactivity. The settings shall be field programmable.
- D. Emergency Power Operation: (Battery Lowering 10-DOC) When the loss of normal power is detected, a battery lowering feature is to be activated. The elevator will lower to a predetermined level and open the doors. After passengers have exited the car, the doors will close and the car will shutdown. When normal power becomes available, the elevator will automatically resume operation. The battery lowering feature is included in the elevator contract and does not utilize a building-supplied standby power source.
- E. Special Operation:
- Limited Access Operation: The activation of this operation shall restrict the operation of the elevator car calls to selected floors on a per-floor, per elevator basis. Travel to the restricted floors shall be allowed after the entry of the required access code via a card reader device supplied by others. The card reader entry shall override the car call restrictions and allow entry of a car call to a restricted floor.



F. Digital Services:

Cloud-based IoT Monitoring System (standard): Contractor shall provide a cloud-based IoT (internet of things) monitoring system capable of tracking door movements and timing, trips, power cycles, car calls, out-of-service events and modes. This observation will continue 24/7 and it shall be capable of providing service technicians a minimum of three recommended solutions for defined failure events and automatically dispatch service technicians in the event of failure(s) while sending notifications to end users of changes in their equipment's state via both email and mobile device. Access to IoT and related equipment data and status will be made available in both a web portal and mobile application secured by password and username with at least two-factor authentication. Finally, this system must be self-contained and not require internet provision by others.

Along with the monitoring system, options are available.

Remote Monitoring with Application Programming Interface (API) Integration: Contractor shall provide a portal and mobile device application (app) that communicates relevant service and operational information such as elevator operational status, open service call tickets, call ticket history and performance and service history. This system shall provide a REST application programming interface (API) capable of transmitting relevant information from the cloud-based IoT monitoring system. This data includes equipment operational status, door movements, service and maintenance history, traffic statistics and failure alerts.

ADA Phone – Code Compliant Cellular Connectivity: Contractor shall provide a phone service through a self-contained cellular based VoIP system. This system shall meet code, include a backup battery capable of powering the emergency communication equipment for 4+ hours in the event of a power outage. The solution shall have remote monitoring capability to ensure continuous connectivity with a means of remote troubleshooting. Remote monitoring capability shall include, at a minimum, the ability to monitor connectivity and power supply. Remote monitoring shall be capable of providing local alerts to response personnel when on-site intervention is required.

A17.1 2019 Code – Enhanced Communications: For jobs installed under enforcement of 2018 International Building Code or ASME A17.1-2019/CSA B44:19 Safety Code, contractor will provide a video camera necessary for viewing the elevator cab interior floor as well as a position indicator display in the cab operating panel capable of providing means of two-way, text-based communication when the emergency call button is engaged in the elevator car. These components, and associated cloud-based monitoring platform, will be non-proprietary in nature, allowing customization on where to direct emergency calls, while offering capability for any party to provide the emergency monitoring services.

2.10 HALL STATIONS

- A. Hall Stations, General: Vandal resistant buttons with center jewels which illuminate to indicate that a call has been registered at that floor for the indicated direction. Each button shall be provided with an internal automatic stop to prevent damage of switches that register the call. Provide 1 set of pushbutton risers. All fixtures shall be vandal resistant type.
 1. Provide one pushbutton riser with faceplates having a brushed stainless steel finish.



- a. Phase 1 firefighter's service key switch, with instructions, shall be incorporated into the hall station at the designated level.
- B. Floor Identification Pads: Provide door jamb pads at each floor. Jamb pads shall comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
- C. Hall Position Indicator: Not Applicable
- D. Hall lanterns: Not Applicable
- E. Special Equipment:
Limited access operation: Card reader provisions at hall stations.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS ELEVATOR COMPONENTS

- A. Oil Hydraulic Silencer: Install multiple oil hydraulic silencers (muffler device) at the power unit location. The silencers shall contain pulsation absorbing material inserted in a blowout proof housing.
- B. Lockable three phase circuit breaker with auxiliary contact with shunt trip capability to be provided. Circuit breaker to be located behind locked panel (Group 2 security access) at controller landing entrance jamb and should be sized according to the National Electrical Code.
- C. Lockable single phase 110V circuit breaker for cab light and fan to be provided. Circuit breaker to be located behind locked panel (Group 2 security access) at controller landing entrance jamb should be sized according to the National Electrical Code

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Before starting elevator installation, inspect hoistway, hoistway openings, pits and/or control room, as constructed, verify all critical dimensions, and examine supporting structures and all other conditions under which elevator work is to be installed. Do not proceed with elevator installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the installer.
- B. Installation constitutes acceptance of existing conditions and responsibility for satisfactory performance.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install elevator systems components and coordinate installation of hoistway wall construction.
 - 1. Work shall be performed by competent elevator installation personnel in accordance with ASME A17.1, manufacturer's installation instructions and approved shop drawings.
 - 2. Comply with the National Electrical Code for electrical work required during installation.



- B. Perform work with competent, skilled workmen under the direct control and supervision of the elevator manufacturer's experienced foreman.
- C. Supply in ample time for installation by other trades, inserts, anchors, bearing plates, brackets, supports, and bracing including all setting templates and diagrams for placement.
- D. Welded construction: Provide welded connections for installation of elevator work where bolted connections are not required for subsequent removal or for normal operation, adjustment, inspection, maintenance, and replacement of worn parts. Comply with AWS standards for workmanship and for qualification of welding operators.
- E. Coordination: Coordinate elevator work with the work of other trades, for proper time and sequence to avoid construction delays. Use benchmarks, lines, and levels designated by the Contractor, to ensure dimensional coordination of the work.
- F. Install machinery, guides, controls, car and all equipment and accessories to provide a quiet, smoothly operating installation, free from side sway, oscillation or vibration.
- G. Alignment: Coordinate installation of hoistway entrances with installation of elevator guide rails for accurate alignment of entrances with cars. Where possible, delay final adjustment of sills and doors until car is operable in shaft. Reduce clearances to minimum safe, workable dimensions at each landing.
- H. Erect hoistway sills, headers, and frames before erection of rough walls and doors; erect fascia and toe guards after rough walls finished. Set sill units accurately aligned and slightly above finish floor at landings.
- I. Lubricate operating parts of system, where recommended by manufacturer.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance testing: Upon completion of the elevator installation and before permitting use of elevator, perform acceptance tests as required and recommended by Code and governing regulations or agencies. Perform other tests, if any, as required by governing regulations or agencies.
- B. Advise Owner, Contractor, Architect, and governing authorities in advance of dates and times tests are to be performed on the elevator.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Make necessary adjustments of operating devices and equipment to ensure elevator operates smoothly and accurately.



3.05 CLEANING

- A. Before final acceptance, remove protection from finished surfaces and clean and polish surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for type of material and finish provided. Stainless steel shall be cleaned with soap and water and dried with a non-abrasive surface; it shall not be cleaned with bleach-based cleansers.
- B. At completion of elevator work, remove tools, equipment, and surplus materials from site. Clean equipment rooms and hoistway. Remove trash and debris.
 - 1. Use environmentally preferable and low VOC emitting cleaners for each application type. Cleaners that contain solvents, pine and/or citrus oils are not permitted.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. At time of Substantial Completion of elevator work, or portion thereof, provide suitable protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other such methods or procedures to protect elevator work from damage or deterioration. Maintain protective measures throughout remainder of construction period.

3.07 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Instruct Owner's personnel in proper use, operations, and daily maintenance of elevators. Review emergency provisions, including emergency access and procedures to be followed at time of failure in operation and other building emergencies. Train Owner's personnel in normal procedures to be followed in checking for sources of operational failures or malfunctions.
- B. Make a final check of each elevator operation, with Owner's personnel present, immediately before date of substantial completion. Determine that control systems and operating devices are functioning properly.

3.08 ELEVATOR SCHEDULE

- A. Elevator Qty. 1
 - 1. Elevator Model: endura MRL Twinpost above-ground 2-stage
 - 2. Elevator Type: Hydraulic Machine Room-Less, Passenger
 - 3. Rated Capacity: 4500 lbs.
 - 4. Rated Speed: 75 ft./min.
 - 5. Operation System: TAC32H
 - 6. Travel: 14'-8"
 - 7. Landings: 2 total
 - 8. Openings:
 - a. Front: 2
 - b. Rear: 0
 - 9. Clear Car Inside: 5'-8" wide x 7'-9 1/2" deep
 - 10. Inside clear height: 7'-4" standard
 - 11. Door clear height: 7'-0" standard
 - 12. Hoistway Entrance Size: 4'-0" wide x 7'-0" high



13. Door Type: Two-speed | LH Side opening
14. Power Characteristics: 208 volts, 3 Phase, 60 Hz.
15. Seismic Requirements: Zone
16. Hoistway Dimensions: 7'-4" wide x 9'-6 1/2" deep
17. Pit Depth: 4'-0"
18. Button & Fixture Style: Vandal Resistant Signal Fixtures
19. Special Operations:
 - Limited Access at Hall Stations with card readers by others
20. Digital Services:
 - Remote Monitoring with Application Programming Interface (API) Integration
 - ADA Phone - Code Compliant Cellular Connectivity
 - A17.1 2019 Code - Enhanced Communications

END OF SECTION 14 24 00



1 **SECTION 21 01 00 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 6 B. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 21 Specification Sections.

7 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 8 A. Section includes basic requirements for fire-suppression systems.

9 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 10 A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, “experienced” unless otherwise further
11 described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in
12 nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and
13 having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 14 B. Furnish: Supply and deliver to project site, ready for subsequent requirements.
- 15 C. Install: Operations at project site, including unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing,
16 anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar
17 requirements.
- 18 D. Provide: Furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use.
- 19 E. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of
20 subsequent work.
- 21 F. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after
22 installation of subsequent work.
- 23 G. Concealed Work: Work hidden from view, including inside chases, furred spaces, or above
24 ceilings.
- 25 H. Exposed Work: Work open to view, including inside mechanical and equipment rooms.

26 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 27 A. General:
- 28 1. It is the intent of the plans and specifications to obtain a complete, operable and satisfactory
29 installation.



- 1 2. All materials shall be new, be properly labeled and/or identified and be in full compliance
2 with the contract documents.
3 3. All work shall comply with applicable Codes and Standards.
4 4. Manufacturer's model names and numbers used in these specifications are subject to
5 change per manufacturer's action. Contractor shall therefore verify them with
6 manufacturer's representative before ordering any product or equipment
- 7 B. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment manufactured in the U.S.A. Where two or
8 more units of the same type or class of equipment are required provide units of a single
9 manufacturer.
- 10 **1.5 CODES AND STANDARDS**
- 11 A. Perform work in accordance with the following codes and any applicable statutes, ordinances,
12 codes, and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.
- 13 1. ASME
- 14 a. ASME A17.1 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators - 2019
- 15 2. Occupational Safety and Health Regulations (OSHA).
16 3. National Fire Codes
- 17 a. NFPA 1 Fire Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
18 b. NFPA 13 Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems - 2019
19 c. NFPA 25 Standard for the Inspection, Testing and Maintenance of Water-Based
20 Fire Protection Systems - 2020
21 d. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code – 2020
22 e. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code – 2019
23 f. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
24 g. NFPA 2001 Standard on Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems – 2020
- 25 4. Florida Building Code, 2023 Edition
- 26 a. Building Code
27 b. Energy Conservation Code
28 c. Mechanical Code
29 d. Plumbing Code
30 e. Fuel Gas Code
31 f. Accessibility Code
- 32 5. Florida Statutes
- 33 a. Chapter 471 Engineering
34 b. Chapter 533.80 Building Construction Standards; Florida Building Code -
35 Enforcement
- 36 6. Florida Administrative Code
37 a. Chapter 9B-7 Florida Building Commission Handicapped Accessibility
38 Standards
39 b. Chapter 61C-5 Florida Elevator Safety Code
40 c. Chapter 61G15-32 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning
41 the Design of Fire Protection Systems



- 1 d. Chapter 69A-3 Fire Prevention – General Provisions
 2 e. Chapter 69A-47 Uniform Fire Safety Standards for Elevators
 3 f. Chapter 69A-58 Fire Safety in Educational Facilities
 4 g. Chapter 69A-60 The Florida Fire Prevention Code
 5 h.
 6 7. ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings (ADAAG)
- 7 B. Resolve, in writing, any code violation discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior
 8 to bidding. After award of the contract, make any correction or addition necessary for compliance
 9 with applicable codes at no additional cost to Owner.
- 10 C. The Contractor shall include in the Work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials,
 11 services, apparatus, and drawings required to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules,
 12 and regulations.
- 13 D. Where there is conflict between the Contract Documents and the applicable Codes, the Codes
 14 shall govern, except where the requirements of the Contract Documents are more stringent.

15 **1.6 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS**

- 16 A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or
 17 AWWA Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with
 18 latest editions, revisions, amendments, or supplements in effect on date bids are received.
 19 Specifications and standards are minimum requirements for all equipment, material and work. In
 20 instances where capacities, size or other feature of equipment, devices or materials exceed these
 21 minimums, meet listed or shown capacities.
- 22 B. Whenever a reference is made to a standard, installation and materials shall comply with the
 23 latest published edition of the standard at the time project is bid unless otherwise specified herein

24 **1.7 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES**

- 25 A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design
 26 professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products
 27 and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

28 **1.8 PERMITS FEES AND INSPECTIONS**

- 29 A. Obtain and pay for all permits, fees, tap fees, connection charges, demand charges, systems
 30 charges, impact fees, and inspections.
- 31 B. Deliver all certificates of inspection issued by authorities having jurisdiction to the Engineer.

32 **1.9 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS**

- 33 A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or
 34 requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting
 35 requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement.
 36 Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Engineer for direction
 37 before proceeding.



1 1. If discrepancies or conflicts occur between drawings, or between drawings and
 2 specifications, notify the Engineer in writing prior to bid date; however, the most stringent
 3 requirement shall govern.

4 B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the
 5 minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum
 6 quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply
 7 with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for
 8 the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Engineer for a decision before proceeding.

9 **1.10 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)**

10 A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or
 11 interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form
 12 specified.

- 13 1. Engineer will return without response those RFIs submitted to Engineer by other entities
 14 controlled by Contractor.
 15 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or
 16 work of subcontractors.

17 B. Prepare RFIs as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or
 18 web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All**
 19 **electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be**
 20 **transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals
 21 shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

22 C. Engineer's Action: Engineer will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow
 23 seven days for Engineer's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m.
 24 Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.

25 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:

- 26 a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 27 b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 28 c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 29 d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 30 e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 31 f. Requests for interpretation of Engineer's actions on submittals.
 32 g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.

33 2. Engineer's action may include a request for additional information, in which case
 34 Engineer's time for response will date from time of receipt by Engineer of additional
 35 information.

36 **1.11 SUBMITTALS**

37 A. Submittals (including Product Data, Shop Drawings, and any other Action Submittal or Information
 38 Submittal) will only be reviewed if they are submitted in full accordance with the General and
 39 Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:



1. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved by the Engineer.
3. Submittals shall only contain relevant product data. Remove or strikeout irrelevant product data.
4. Prepare submittals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
- Options: Identify options requiring selection by Engineer.
6. Deviations: Clearly identify deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations.
7. Revisions: Include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those specifically requested by Engineer on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached submittal sheet.
8. Contractor's Review:
- Submittals shall have been reviewed and approved by the General Contractor / Construction Manager. Include approval stamp, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
 - Engineer will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.
9. Electrical Modifications:
- The electrical design indicated on the plans supports the Basis of Design specifications for the Fire Suppression systems at the time of design.
 - If Fire Suppression equipment is submitted with different electrical requirements, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to resolve all required electrical design changes, including, but not limited to: wire and conduit size, type or size of disconnect or overload protection, breaker coordination, point(s) of connection, etc. Any corrections required shall be provided at no additional cost.
 - Submittal shall clearly show the electrical design revisions with a written statement that this change will be provided at no additional cost. Submittals made with no written reference to the electrical design revisions will be presumed to work with the electrical design.
- B. Processing Time: Time of review shall commence on Engineer's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of the failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
- Allow not less than 15 days for submittal review. Allow not less than 21 days for review of large or complex submittals. Submittals received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
 - If Contractor transmits more than five submittals over two consecutive business days, review time shall increase by no less than 7 days for submittal review.
 - Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Engineer will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 - Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received. Time of review shall commence on receipt of all other related submittals.



- 1 C. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the
 2 contract documents by the Engineer's approval of shop drawings, product data, samples, or
 3 similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Engineer in writing of such
 4 deviation at the time of submittal, and the Engineer has given written approval to the specific
 5 deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in shop
 6 drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals by the Engineer's approval thereof.
- 7 D. Submittal Review Fees:
- 8 1. Additional Reviews: Submittals on any particular phase of Work will receive only one
 9 review and one re-review (if required). If additional reviews are required beyond these two,
 10 the Contractor will be charged \$200.00 per hour for review time, in addition to any
 11 expedited review charges. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.
 12 2. Expedited Reviews: If General Contractor / Construction Manager requests for an
 13 expedited review, whether by official request or unofficially by assigning a review time less
 14 than required above, the General Contractor / Construction Manager will be charged
 15 \$1,000.00 per Submittal, in addition to any charges for additional reviews. This fee shall
 16 be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.

17 1.12 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- 18 A. Sustainable Certification Program: Comply with requirements for Project to obtain certification
 19 based on GBI's "Green Globes for New Construction" (hereafter, "Certification Program").
 20 Compliance with requirements needed to obtain Certification Program prerequisites and credits
 21 may be used as one criterion to evaluate substitution requests and comparable product requests.
- 22 B. Related Requirements:
- 23 1. General and Supplementary Conditions
 24 2. Division 01 for general sustainable design certification and reporting requirements.
 25 3. Comply with requirements in various Division 21 Sections specifying sustainable products
 26 and methods.
- 27 C. Sustainable design submittals are in addition to other submittals.
- 28 1. Comply with "Submittals" article in this Section.
 29 2. If submitted item is identical to that submitted to comply with other requirements, include
 30 an additional copy with other submittal as a record of compliance with indicated
 31 Certification Program requirements instead of separate sustainable design submittal. Mark
 32 additional copy "Sustainable design submittal."
- 33 D. Sustainable Design Documentation Submittals
- 34 1. Environmental management system documents.
 35 2. Environmental product declarations.
 36 3. Third-party certifications based on multiple attribute standards.
 37 4. Product Data and laboratory test reports for adhesives and sealants indicating VOC
 38 content and compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
 39 5. Product Data and laboratory test reports for paints indicating VOC content and compliance
 40 with requirements for low-emitting materials.



1 **1.13 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

2 A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in
3 individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop
4 Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required
5 to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.

6 1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate
7 and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include
8 the following information, as applicable:

- 9 a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings.
10 Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of
11 various systems and components.
- 12 b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings by
13 multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the
14 information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before
15 submitting for review.
- 16 c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural,
17 structural, civil, fire protection, mechanical, electrical, and communication systems.
- 18 d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated
19 replacement of components during the life of the installation.
- 20 e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers,
21 valves, pull boxes, junction boxes, and other controls.
- 22 f. Indicate required installation sequences.
- 23 g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear
24 to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements.
25 Provide alternative sketches to Engineer indicating proposed resolution of such
26 conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered
27 changes to the Contract.

28 B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:

29 1. Floor Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and Work associated with
30 Divisions 21 through 29, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and
31 coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved. Supplement
32 plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.

33 a. Mechanical Systems (Divisions 21, 22, 23, 25):

- 34 1) Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork and piping runs, including insulation,
35 heat tracing, bracing, flanges, and support systems. Indicate proposed
36 changes to layout.
- 37 2) Locations and sizes of major equipment and components.
- 38 3) Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
- 39 4) Structural members to which ductwork and piping will be attached or
40 suspended from.

41 b. Electrical and Communication Systems (Divisions 25, 26, 27, 28, 29):

- 42 1) Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
- 43 2) Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other
44 fire-alarm locations.



- 1 3) Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and
2 motor-control center locations.
3 4) Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center
4 lines.
5 5) Structural members to which luminaire and equipment will be attached or
6 suspended from.
7 6) Lightning protection system components attaching to or penetrating through
8 the roofing and moisture protection systems, coordinated with the roofing
9 system manufacturer.
10 7) Cable tray layout, offsets, transitions, clearances, elevations, and
11 relationships between components and adjacent structural, mechanical and
12 electrical elements.
- 13 2. Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show locations of visible devices mounted to, suspended from,
14 or penetrating through the ceiling, relative to the finished ceiling, including the following:
- 15 a. Fire suppression sprinklers and nozzles.
16 b. Air outlets and inlets.
17 c. Luminaires (Lighting fixtures).
18 d. Lighting control devices.
19 e. Speakers.
20 f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
21 g. Access control devices.
22 h. Video surveillance devices.
23 i. Fire alarm devices.
24 j. Access panels.
25 k. Perimeter moldings.
26 l. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of the
27 plane of the ceiling.
- 28 3. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, equipment for
29 Divisions 21 through 29, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to
30 accommodate layout of components indicated on Drawings for Divisions 21 through 29.
31 Indicate areas of conflict between components of Divisions 21 through 29.
32 4. Equipment Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for equipment rooms showing plans and
33 elevations of equipment for Divisions 21 through 29.
34 5. Penetrations: Indicate locations of penetrations and openings in structural components,
35 smoke barriers, and fire-rated construction.
36 6. Review: Engineer will review coordination drawings to confirm that in general the Work is
37 being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's
38 responsibility. If Engineer determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in
39 sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Engineer will so inform Contractor,
40 who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
- 41 C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following
42 requirements:
- 43 1. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.
44 2. BIM File Incorporation: Develop and incorporate coordination drawing files into BIM
45 established for Project.
- 46 a. Perform three-dimensional component conflict analysis as part of preparation of
47 coordination drawings. Resolve component conflicts prior to submittal. Indicate
48 where conflict resolution requires modification of design requirements by Engineer.



- 1 3. Engineer will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing
2 coordination digital data files.
- 3 a. Engineer makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital
4 data files as they relate to Drawings.
- 5 b. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form
6 acceptable to Engineer.

7 **1.14 SUBSTITUTIONS**

- 8 A. By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment
9 described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are
10 encouraged to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the
11 Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.
- 12 B. Substitution Requests shall include, at a minimum:
- 13 1. Statement indicating why specified material, equipment, or installation method cannot be
14 provided, if applicable.
- 15 2. Coordination of information, including a list of changes and revisions needed to other parts
16 of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be
17 necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
- 18 3. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the
19 Work specified. Include an annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant
20 qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect,
21 sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements
22 indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
- 23 4. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and
24 installation procedures.
- 25 5. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions
26 with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If
27 specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time,
28 include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of
29 purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
- 30 6. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
- 31 7. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the
32 Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related
33 materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
- 34 8. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become
35 necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- 36 C. Procurement Substitution Requests submitted prior to receipt of bids will be received and
37 considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Engineer;
38 otherwise, requests will be returned without action:
- 39 1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment are received no later than 10 days
40 prior to date of bid opening.
- 41 2. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
- 42 3. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents,
43 including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
- 44 4. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- 45 D. Substitutions for Cause, as required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of
46 product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms will be received and



1 considered by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will
2 be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- 3 1. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce
4 indicated results.
- 5 2. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- 6 3. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 7 4. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- 8 5. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- 9 6. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- 10 7. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has
11 been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible
12 with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

- 13 E. Substitutions for Convenience, not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may
14 offer advantage to Contractor or Owner, will be received and considered by Owner, as determined
15 by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned
16 without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- 17 1. Requested substitution is received within 60 days after the Notice of Award.
- 18 2. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy
19 conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner
20 must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Engineer
21 for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and
22 similar considerations.
- 23 3. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
- 24 4. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce
25 indicated results.
- 26 5. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- 27 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 28 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- 29 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- 30 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- 31 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has
32 been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible
33 with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

- 34 F. If a requested substitution is approved but contains differences or omissions not specifically
35 identified to the attention of the Engineer in the substitution request, the Owner reserves the right
36 to require equal or similar features to be added to the substituted products or to have the
37 substituted products replaced at the Contractor's expense.

38 1.15 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- 39 A. Recording: Maintain one copy of the Contract Documents and Shop Drawings during the
40 construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project
41 record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

- 42 B. Preparation:

- 43 1. Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings:
 - 44 a. Mark revisions to show where the actual installation varies from that shown
45 originally.



- 1 b. Mark record sets completely and accurately, including important information that
 2 was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 3 c. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish
 4 between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 5 d. Record underground and under-slab piping installed, dimensioning exact location
 6 and elevation of piping.
- 7 2. Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from
 8 that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
 9 3. Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies
 10 substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
- 11 C. Deliver: Prior to Final Completion, provide record documents to Owner as indicated below:
- 12 1. Record Drawings: Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of
 13 prints.
 14 2. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications,
 15 including addenda and contract modifications.
 16 3. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each
 17 submittal.
 18 4. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Submit annotated PDF electronic files directories of
 19 each submittal.

20 1.16 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- 21 A. Prepare and submit a comprehensive manual of emergency, operation, and maintenance data
 22 and materials in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01,
 23 and the following:
- 24 1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating
 25 operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part
 26 of a system, including:
- 27 a. Information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and
 28 routine and special operating procedures.
 29 b. Manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventative maintenance procedures
 30 and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, list of spare parts,
 31 and warranty information.
- 32 2. Submit manuals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through
 33 email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification
 34 Sections. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

35 1.17 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

- 36 A. Prepare and provide services of qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust,
 37 operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not a part of a system in accordance
 38 with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, individual Specification Sections,
 39 and the following:
- 40 1. Demonstration and training shall occur upon completion of the Work and at a time
 41 designated by the Owner's representative.



- 1 2. Provide a high-resolution, digital video recording of each training session to the Owner.

2 **1.18 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 3 A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage,
4 deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written
5 instructions.
- 6 B. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to
7 determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

8 **1.19 WARRANTY**

- 9 A. Warranty work and equipment within specified warranty period. During the warranty period,
10 provide labor and materials to make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects
11 or omissions in materials or workmanship without expense to the Owner.
- 12 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
- 13 B. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other
14 warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on
15 product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of Contract
16 Documents.
- 17 C. Owner reserves the right to make emergency repairs as required to keep equipment in operation
18 without voiding Contractor's Guarantee Bond nor relieving the Contractor of responsibilities
19 during the warranty period.

20 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NONE)**

21 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

22 **3.1 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

- 23 A. Examine all drawings and specifications carefully before submitting a bid. Architectural drawings
24 take precedence over mechanical or electrical drawings with reference to building construction.
- 25 B. For purposes of clearness and legibility, drawings are essentially diagrammatic and, although
26 size and location of equipment are drawn to scale wherever possible, Contractor shall make use
27 of all data in all of the contract documents and shall verify this information at the building site.
- 28 C. The drawings indicate required size and points of termination of pipes, conduits, and ducts and
29 suggest proper routes to conform to structure avoid obstructions and preserve clearances.
30 However, it is not intended that drawings indicate all necessary offsets, and it shall be the
31 responsibility of the Contractor to make the installation in such a manner as to conform to
32 structure, avoid obstructions, preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear,
33 without further instructions or cost to the Owner.



- 1 D. Furnish, install and/or connect with appropriate services all items shown on any drawing without
2 additional compensation.
- 3 E. Any and all questions about a subcontractor's scope of work responsibility shall be addressed to
4 and answered by the General Contractor / Construction Manager.
- 5 F. Questions About Construction Documents: Any and all questions shall be submitted through the
6 proper channels IN WRITING and, in turn, shall be answered by the Engineer in writing. All
7 telephone conversations shall be considered unofficial and, as such, shall not be considered
8 official or binding responses to Contractor's questions.
- 9 G. Drawings, specifications, or other documents issued by the Engineer in electronic format and/or
10 electronic media are provided for convenience only and are not intended for use as Contract
11 Documents.
- 12 1. The electronic files are provided merely as a convenience to the Recipient.
- 13 2. The electronic files do not replace or supplement the paper copies of any drawings,
14 specifications, or other documents included in the Contract Documents for use on the
15 project.
- 16 3. The Engineer makes no representation, warranty, or guarantee that electronic files:
- 17 a. Are suitable for any other usage or purpose.
- 18 b. Have any particular durability.
- 19 c. Will not damage or impair the Recipient's computer or software.
- 20 d. Contain no errors or mechanical flaws or other discrepancies that may render them
21 unsuitable for the purpose intended by the Recipient.
- 22 4. Due to the unsecured nature of the electronic files and the inability of Engineer or the
23 Recipient to establish controls over their use, the Engineer assumes no responsibility for
24 any consequences arising out of the use of the data. It is the sole responsibility of the
25 Recipient to check the validity of all information contained therein. The Recipient shall at
26 all times refer to the signed and sealed drawings, specification or other documents for the
27 project during all phases of the project. The Recipient shall assume all risks and liabilities
28 resulting from the use of the electronic files.

29 3.2 SUPERVISION OF WORK

- 30 A. Perform all work under the direct supervision of an experienced, qualified superintendent. The
31 Engineer has the right to remove a superintendent who, in the Engineer's opinion, is not
32 satisfactory.

33 3.3 EXAMINATION

- 34 A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and
35 construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and
36 verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and
37 other construction affecting the Work.
- 38 B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work,
39 examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated,
40 for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting
41 performance.



- 1 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of
2 connections before equipment and fixture installation.
3 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to
4 be installed.
5 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing
6 finishes or primers.
- 7 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding
8 with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

9 **3.4 PREPARATION**

- 10 A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or
11 relocate existing utility structures, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or
12 affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- 13 B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck
14 measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to
15 other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before
16 fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the
17 Work.
- 18 C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown
19 diagrammatically on Drawings.
- 20 D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for
21 clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of
22 Contractor, submit a request for information to Engineer.
- 23 E. Interruption of Service: Before any existing equipment or system is shut down for disconnecting
24 or tie-ins, coordinate with Engineer and Owner regarding acceptable dates and times for this
25 Work to be performed. Work shall be performed at the time best suited for the Owner, which
26 typically is either on weekends, holidays, and/or after normal working hours. Services shall be
27 restored the same day unless prior arrangements are made. All overtime or premium costs
28 associated with this Work shall be included in the Contractor's bid.

29 **3.5 INSTALLATION**

- 30 A. Install materials and equipment in a professional manner. The Engineer may direct replacement
31 of items which, in the Engineer's opinion, do not present a professional appearance or do not
32 allow adequate space for maintenance. Replace or reinstall items at the expense of the
33 Contractor.
- 34 B. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and
35 elevation, as indicated.
- 36 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
37 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance
38 and ease of removal for replacement.
39 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
40 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in
41 unoccupied spaces.



- 1 C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in
2 applications indicated.
- 3 D. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results.
4 Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- 5 E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or
6 loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- 7 F. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction
8 items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- 9 G. Obstructions
- 10 1. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface
11 obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not
12 guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
- 13 2. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative,
14 utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information
15 has been provided. Verify locations given.
- 16 3. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work,
17 reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever
18 work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and
19 structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.
- 20 4. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction,
21 whether or not such existing facilities are shown.
- 22 H. Where "rated" walls, floor, roofs and ceilings are penetrated or cut to install equipment, materials,
23 devices, etc. the Contractor shall provide and install all materials required to re-establish the rating
24 of the wall, floor, roof, or ceiling to the satisfaction of the authority having jurisdiction.
- 25 I. Structural Elements: Do not cut structural elements without written approval from Engineer. Notify
26 Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding.
27 If approved by Engineer:
- 28 1. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching.
- 29 2. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying
30 capacity or increase deflection.
- 31 J. Space Requirements: Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and
32 location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material which is not suitable
33 in this respect.
- 34 K. Tools and Equipment: Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If
35 objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by
36 equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions without cost to the Owner.
- 37 L. Phasing: Provide all temporary valves, piping, ductwork, equipment, and devices as required.
38 Maintain temporary services to areas as required. Remove all temporary material and equipment
39 on completion of work unless Engineer concurs that such material and equipment would be
40 beneficial to the Owner on a permanent basis.



1 **3.6 PROTECTION OF EXISTING FINISHES, CARPET, AND FURNISHING**

2 A. Protect existing finishes, carpet, casework, furnishing, and other building components against
3 damage and soiling throughout construction activities. Take care during construction not to
4 damage existing items. Contractor shall be responsible for replacing damaged material or
5 restoring damaged materials to the Owner's satisfaction.

6 B. When permitted by Engineer, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location
7 during construction and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after construction
8 operations are complete.

9 C. Furniture may be relocated during construction and reinstalled in their original locations after
10 construction operations are complete.

11 D. Means and methods for protection are the responsibility of the Contractor. Utilize plywood,
12 polyethylene sheeting, dust cloths, and other means as required.

13 **3.7 CUTTING AND PATCHING**

14 A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed
15 with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.

16 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of
17 other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original
18 condition.

19 B. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.

20 C. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide
21 protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during
22 cutting and patching operations.

23 D. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Engineer of locations
24 and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. Shore, brace, and
25 support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements
26 in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.

27 E. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a
28 manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased
29 maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.

30 F. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components
31 in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity
32 to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or
33 safety.

34 G. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of
35 cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in
36 Engineer's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction
37 that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.



- 1 H. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar
 2 operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or
 3 adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with
 4 original Installer's written recommendations.
- 5 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering
 6 and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum
 7 disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 8 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 9 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a
 10 diamond-core drill.
 11 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where
 12 required by cutting and patching operations.
 13 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be
 14 removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent
 15 entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 16 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- 17 I. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations
 18 following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable.
 19 Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where
 20 applicable or with in-place materials.
- 21 1. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the
 22 fullest extent possible.
 23 2. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed,
 24 will provide a match acceptable to Engineer for the visual and functional performance of
 25 in-place materials.
- 26 J. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint,
 27 mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

28 3.8 PAINTING

- 29 A. Comply with requirements with General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, Division 09,
 30 and individual Specification Sections.
- 31 B. Touch-up factory finishes on equipment provided under Division 21. Obtain matched color
 32 coatings from the manufacturer and apply as directed. If corrosion is found during inspection on
 33 the surface of any equipment, clean, prime, and paint, as required.
- 34 C. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
- 35 1. Uninsulated Metal Piping (bare copper piping not required to be painted unless noted
 36 otherwise):
- 37 a. Fire Protection: Color to be determined by Architect
 38 b. Other: Color to be determined by Architect
- 39 2. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
 40 3. Equipment, and pipe insulation having a cotton or canvas insulation covering or other
 41 paintable jacket material, as outlined in individual Specification Sections.



- 1 D. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
- 2 1. Equipment and pipe insulation having a cotton or canvas insulation covering or other
- 3 paintable jacket material, as outlined in individual Specification Sections.
- 4 2. Other items as directed by Engineer.

5 **3.9 REPAIR OF WORK**

- 6 A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of
- 7 Substantial Completion.
- 8 B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective
- 9 parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting
- 10 operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide
- 11 replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore
- 12 damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
- 13 1. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces.
- 14 Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
- 15 a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including
- 16 mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and
- 17 identification.
- 18 2. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede
- 19 operation or reduce longevity.

20 **3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 21 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and
- 22 inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- 23 B. Tests
- 24 1. Include all tests specified and/or required under laws, rules and regulations of all
- 25 departments having jurisdiction. Tests shall also be performed as indicated herein and
- 26 other sections of the specifications.
- 27 2. After all systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an
- 28 operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequence and operation
- 29 throughout the range of operation. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper
- 30 functioning of all systems.
- 31 3. All parts of the work and associated equipment shall be tested and adjusted to work
- 32 properly and be left in perfect operating condition.
- 33 4. Correct defects disclosed by these tests without any additional cost to the Owner. Repeat
- 34 tests on repaired or replaced work.
- 35 5. Maintain a log of all tests being conducted and have it available for review by the Engineer.
- 36 Log to indicate date, type of tests, duration, and defects noted and when corrected.
- 37 6. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual Specification Sections.
- 38 C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's
- 39 responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for
- 40 construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.



1 **3.11 CLEANING**

2 A. Progress Cleaning: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce
3 requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.

4 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and
5 debris.

6 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if
7 the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.

8 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark
9 containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.

10 B. Final Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean
11 each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and
12 maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

13 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of
14 Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:

15 a. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from
16 Project site.

17 b. Remove labels that are not permanent.

18 c. Wipe surfaces of equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar
19 droppings, and other foreign substances.

20 **END OF SECTION 21 01 00**



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 21 05 17 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Sleeves.
9 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
10 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
11 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
12 5. Grout.
13 6. Silicone sealants.

14 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 15 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

16 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Field quality-control reports.

18 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

19 **2.1 SLEEVES**

- 20 A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, with plain
21 ends.
22 B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded
23 longitudinal joint.

24 **2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS**

- 25 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
26 following:
27 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.



- 1 2. Metraflex Company (The).
 2 3. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- 3 B. Description:
- 4 1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space
 5 between piping and sleeve.
 6 2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.
 7 3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include
 8 type and number required for pipe material and size.
 9 4. Pressure Plates: Composite plastic.
 10 5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to
 11 sealing elements.
- 12 **2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS**
- 13 A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in
 14 concrete slab or wall.
- 15 B. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.
- 16 **2.4 GROUT**
- 17 A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- 18 B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry,
 19 hydraulic-cement grout.
- 20 C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- 21 D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.
- 22 **2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS**
- 23 A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent
 24 movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C 920, Type S,
 25 Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
- 26 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
- 27 B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent
 28 movement capability, traffic- and non-traffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant;
 29 ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling)
 30 formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- 31 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
- 32 C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and
 33 cure in place to produce a flexible, non-shrinking foam.
- 34 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION**

- 3 A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- 4 B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to
5 provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
- 6 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- 7 C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls
8 are constructed.
- 9 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP
10 sleeves.
- 11 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
- 12 a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other
13 wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
- 14 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without
15 sleeve-seal system.
- 16 D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
- 17 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
- 18 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between
19 sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
- 20 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants
21 appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- 22 E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier
23 Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at
24 pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with
25 requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."

26 **3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION**

- 27 A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
- 28 1. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane
29 waterproofing.
- 30 2. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
- 31 3. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring
32 is specified.
- 33 4. Use silicone sealant to seal around the outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- 34 B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier
35 Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe



1 penetrations with fire- or smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping
2 specified in Division 07.

3 **3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION**

4 A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service
5 piping entries into building.

6 B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for
7 sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble
8 sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten
9 bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

10 **3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION**

11 A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

12 B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls.
13 Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

14 C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

15 D. Use grout or silicone sealant, to seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

16 **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

17 A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

18 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair
19 leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

20 B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

21 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

22 **3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE**

23 A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

24 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:

25 a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 : Steel pipe sleeves.

26 b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.

27 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:

28 a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 4 (DN 100) : Sleeve seal fittings.

29 b. Piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system .



- 1 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and
2 sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 3 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
- 4 a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 4 (DN 100): Sleeve-seal fittings.
- 5 b. Piping NPS 4 (DN 100): Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
- 6 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and
7 sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 8 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
- 9 a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves
- 10 b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
- 11 5. Interior Partitions:
- 12 a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
- 13 b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.
- 14 **END OF SECTION 21 05 17**



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 21 05 18 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Escutcheons.
9 2. Floor plates.

10 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 11 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

12 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

13 **2.1 ESCUTCHEONS**

- 14 A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- 15 B. One-Piece, Stainless-Steel Type: With polished stainless-steel finish.
- 16 C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and setscrew
17 fastener.
- 18 D. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished, chrome-plated
19 finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- 20 E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- 21 F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed hinge; and
22 spring-clip fasteners.
- 23 G. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and with
24 concealed hinge and setscrew.

25 **2.2 FLOOR PLATES**

- 26 A. Split Floor Plates: Steel or cast brass with concealed hinge.



- 1 B. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

2 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3 **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- 4 A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

- 5 B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD
6 that completely covers opening.

- 7 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

- 8 a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
9 b. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
10 c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast
11 brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
12 d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with
13 polished, chrome-plated finish.
14 e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece cast brass with rough-brass
15 finish.
16 f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece cast brass with rough-brass finish.

- 17 C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

- 18 D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD
19 that completely covers opening.

- 20 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor plate.
21 2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

22 **3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 23 A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

24 **END OF SECTION 21 05 18**



1 **SECTION 21 05 23 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Two-piece ball valves with indicators.
9 2. Iron butterfly valves with indicators.
10 3. Check valves.
11 4. Iron OS&Y gate valves.
12 5. NRS gate valves.
13 6. Trim and drain valves.

14 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 15 A. NRS: Non-rising stem.
16 B. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
17 C. SBR: Styrene-butadiene rubber.

18 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 19 A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

20 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 21 A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

- 22 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
23 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
24 3. Set valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

- 25 B. Use the following precautions during storage:

- 26 1. Maintain valve end protection.
27 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor
28 storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.



1 C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating
2 handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

3 D. Protect flanges and specialties from moisture and dirt.

4 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

5 **2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES**

6 A. UL Listed: Valves shall be listed in UL's "Online Certifications Directory" under the headings listed
7 below and shall bear UL mark:

8 1. Main Level: HAMV - Fire Main Equipment.

- 9 a. Level 1: HCBZ - Indicator Posts, Gate Valve.
10 b. Level 1: HLOT - Valves.

- 11 1) Level 3: HLUG - Ball Valves, System Control.
12 2) Level 3: HLXS - Butterfly Valves.
13 3) Level 3: HMER - Check Valves.
14 4) Level 3: HMRZ - Gate Valves.

15 2. Main Level: VDGT - Sprinkler System & Water Spray System Devices.

- 16 a. Level 1: VQGU - Valves, Trim and Drain.

17 B. FM Global Approved: Valves shall be listed in its "Approval Guide," under the headings listed
18 below:

19 1. Automated Sprinkler Systems:

- 20 a. Indicator posts.
21 b. Valves.

- 22 1) Gate valves.
23 2) Check valves.

24 a) Single check valves.

25 3) Miscellaneous valves.

26 C. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain valves for each valve type from single manufacturer.

27 D. ASME Compliance:

- 28 1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
29 2. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
30 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

31 E. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.

32 F. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for valves.



- 1 G. Valve Pressure Ratings: Not less than the minimum pressure rating indicated or higher as
2 required by system pressures.
- 3 H. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- 4 I. Valve Actuator Types:
- 5 1. Worm-gear actuator with handwheel for quarter-turn valves, except for trim and drain
6 valves.
- 7 2. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
- 8 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves NPS 2 and smaller.

9 **2.2 TWO-PIECE BALL VALVES WITH INDICATORS**

- 10 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Nibco, Inc.; KG/KT-
11 505-W-8 or comparable product by one of the following:
- 12 1. NIBCO INC.
- 13 2. Victaulic Company.
- 14 B. Description:
- 15 1. UL 1091, except with ball instead of disc and FM Global standard for indicating valves
16 (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
- 17 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- 18 3. Body Design: Two piece.
- 19 4. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
- 20 5. Port Size: Full or standard.
- 21 6. Seats: PTFE.
- 22 7. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
- 23 8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- 24 9. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
- 25 10. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
- 26 11. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2: Threaded ends.
- 27 12. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

28 **2.3 IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS**

- 29 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Nibco, Inc.; GD-4765-
30 8N or comparable product by one of the following:
- 31 1. Anvil International, Inc.
- 32 2. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
- 33 3. NIBCO INC.
- 34 4. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
- 35 5. Victaulic Company.
- 36 B. Description:



1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 112.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Seat Material: EPDM.
5. Stem: Stainless steel.
6. Disc: Ductile iron, nickel plated.
7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Body Design: Lug,-wafer, or Grooved-end connections.

2.4 CHECK VALVES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Nibco, Inc.; F-908-W or G-917-W or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Anvil International, Inc.
2. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
3. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
4. NIBCO INC.
5. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
6. Shurjoint Piping Products.
7. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
8. Victaulic Company.
9. Viking Corporation.
10. Watts Water Technologies, Inc

- B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 312 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Type: Single swing check.
4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
6. Clapper Seat: Brass, bronze, or stainless steel.
7. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.
8. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
9. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

2.5 BRONZE OS&Y GATE VALVES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Nibco, Inc.; T-104-0 or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Milwaukee Valve Company.
2. NIBCO INC.

- B. Description:



- 1 1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and
- 2 NRS-type gate valves).
- 3 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- 4 3. Body and Bonnet Material: Bronze or brass.
- 5 4. Wedge: One-piece bronze or brass.
- 6 5. Wedge Seat: Bronze.
- 7 6. Stem: Bronze or brass.
- 8 7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
- 9 8. Supervisory Switch: External.
- 10 9. End Connections: Threaded.

11 2.6 IRON OS&Y GATE VALVES

- 12 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mueller Co.;R-2360-
- 13 6 or comparable product by one of the following:

- 14 1. Hammond Valve.
- 15 2. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
- 16 3. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
- 17 4. NIBCO INC.
- 18 5. Victaulic Company.
- 19 6. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

- 20 B. Description:

- 21 1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and
- 22 NRS-type gate valves).
- 23 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- 24 3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- 25 4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze.
- 26 5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze.
- 27 6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
- 28 7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
- 29 8. Supervisory Switch: External.
- 30 9. End Connections: Flanged or Grooved.

31 2.7 NRS GATE VALVES

- 32 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mueller Co.; I-2360
- 33 or comparable product by one of the following:

- 34 1. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
- 35 2. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
- 36 3. NIBCO INC.
- 37 4. Victaulic Company.

- 38 B. Description:

- 39 1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and
- 40 NRS-type gate valves).
- 41 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.



- 1 3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- 2 4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron.
- 3 5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze.
- 4 6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
- 5 7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
- 6 8. Supervisory Switch: External.
- 7 9. End Connections: Flanged.

8 **2.8 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES**

9 A. Ball Valves:

- 10 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 11 following:
 - 12 a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - 13 b. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
 - 14 c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - 15 d. NIBCO INC.
 - 16 e. Potter Roemer.
 - 17 f. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - 18 g. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - 19 h. Victaulic Company.
 - 20 i. Watts Water Technologies, Inc
- 21 2. Description:
 - 22 a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 - 23 b. Body Design: Two piece.
 - 24 c. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
 - 25 d. Port size: Full or standard.
 - 26 e. Seats: PTFE.
 - 27 f. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
 - 28 g. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - 29 h. Actuator: Handlever.
 - 30 i. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2-1/2: Threaded ends.

31 B. Angle Valves:

- 32 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 33 following:
 - 34 a. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
 - 35 b. NIBCO INC.
 - 36 c. United Brass Works, Inc.
- 37 2. Description:
 - 38 a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 - 39 b. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
 - 40 c. Ends: Threaded.
 - 41 d. Stem: Bronze.



- 1 e. Disc: Bronze.
 2 f. Packing: Asbestos free.
 3 g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.
- 4 C. Globe Valves:
- 5 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 6 following:
- 7 a. NIBCO INC.
 8 b. United Brass Works, Inc.
- 9 2. Description:
- 10 a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 11 b. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 12 c. Ends: Threaded.
 13 d. Stem: Bronze.
 14 e. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
 15 f. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
 16 g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 17 h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

18 PART 3 - EXECUTION

19 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 20 A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove
 21 special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and
 22 handling.
- 23 B. Operate valves in positions from fully open, to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made
 24 accessible by such operations.
- 25 C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- 26 D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper
 27 size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is
 28 suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- 29 E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

30 3.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE INSTALLATION

- 31 A. Comply with requirements in the following Sections for specific valve installation requirements
 32 and applications:
- 33 1. Section 21 11 00 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for application of valves
 34 in fire-suppression water-service piping outside the building.
 35 2. Section 21 13 13 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in wet-pipe, fire-
 36 suppression sprinkler systems.



- 1 B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water
2 supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating
3 portion of system controlled by each valve.
- 4 C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check
5 valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- 6 D. Install valves having threaded connections with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to
7 allow easy access, service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
8 Provide separate support where necessary.
- 9 E. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the pipe center.
- 10 F. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- 11 G. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 21 05 53 "Identification for Fire-
12 Suppression Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules and signs on surfaces
13 concealing valves; and the NFPA standard applying to the piping system in which valves are
14 installed. Install permanent identification signs indicating the portion of system controlled by each
15 valve.
- 16 H. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water
17 supply except from fire-department connections.
- 18 I. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check
19 valves in potable-water-supply sources.

20 **END OF SECTION 21 05 23**



1 **SECTION 21 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND**
 2 **EQUIPMENT**

3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 5 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
 6 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

7 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 8 A. Section Includes:
- 9 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
 - 10 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 11 3. Metal framing systems.
 - 12 4. Fastener systems.
 - 13 5. Equipment supports.

14 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 15 A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

16 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- 18 B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
- 19 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 20 2. Metal framing systems.
 - 21 3. Equipment supports.

22 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

23 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 24 A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for fire-suppression piping and equipment shall
 25 withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated
 26 according to ASCE / SEI 7.
- 27 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined
 28 weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 - 29 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported
 30 equipment and connected systems and components.



1 B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 13.

2 C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 203.

3 **2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

4 A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

5 1. Description: Factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM approved
6 for fire-suppression piping support.

7 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pre-galvanized or hot-dip galvanized.

8 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

9 B. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:

10 1. Description: Copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL
11 listed, or FM approved for fire-suppression piping support.

12 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

13 **2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS**

14 A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from
15 structural-carbon-steel shapes, with NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved carbon-steel
16 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

17 **2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS**

18 A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

19 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
20 following:

21 a. B-line, an Eaton business.

22 b. Flex-Strut Inc.

23 c. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.

24 2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels,
25 accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.

26 3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.

27 4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.

28 5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.

29 6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot
30 and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.

31 7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

32 8. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc or Hot-dip galvanized.

33 B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

34 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels,
35 accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.

36 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.



- 1 3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturred lips.
- 2 4. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
- 3 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot
- 4 and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
- 5 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- 6 7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dip galvanized.

7 2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- 8 A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved threaded-steel stud, for
- 9 use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities
- 10 appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- 11 B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, insert-wedge-type
- 12 anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear
- 13 capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

14 2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- 15 A. Description: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, welded, shop- or field-fabricated
- 16 equipment support, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

17 2.7 MATERIALS

- 18 A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221.
- 19 B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- 20 C. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- 21 D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M.
- 22 E. Grout: ASTM C 1107 / C 1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, non-shrink
- 23 and non-metallic grout, suitable for interior and exterior applications.
- 24 1. Properties: Non-staining, non-corrosive, and non-gaseous.
- 25 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

26 PART 3 - EXECUTION

27 3.1 APPLICATION

- 28 A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping materials and installation, for
- 29 penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- 30 B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength
- 31 will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum
- 32 static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus
- 33 200 lb.



- 1 **3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**
- 2 A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with installation requirements of approvals and listings.
3 Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from
4 building structure.
- 5 B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel
6 runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
- 7 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or
8 install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe
9 hangers.
- 10 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36 / A 36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being
11 supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- 12 C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support
13 together on field-assembled metal strut systems.
- 14 D. Fastener System Installation:
- 15 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less
16 than 4 inches thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use
17 operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners
18 according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual. Install in accordance
19 with approvals and listings.
- 20 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely
21 cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install in
22 accordance with approvals and listings.
- 23 E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts,
24 washers, and other accessories.
- 25 F. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- 26 G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems,
27 to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints,
28 expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- 29 H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- 30 I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional
31 attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger
32 and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten
33 inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- 34 J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses
35 from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- 36 K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed
37 maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.



1 **3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS**

- 2 A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support
3 equipment above floor.
- 4 B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- 5 C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

6 **3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS**

- 7 A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment
8 supports.
- 9 B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be
10 shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- 11 C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 / D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding;
12 appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the
13 following:
- 14 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion
15 resistance of base metals.
- 16 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
- 17 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
- 18 4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so
19 contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

20 **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- 21 A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve
22 indicated slope of pipe.
- 23 B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

24 **3.6 PAINTING**

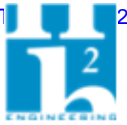
- 25 A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately
26 after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply
27 with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
- 28 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- 29 B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded, shop-
30 painted areas on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09.
- 31 C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply
32 galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780 / A 780M.



1 **3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE**

- 2 A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and
3 equipment.
- 4 B. Comply with NFPA requirements for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not
5 specified in piping system Sections.
- 6 C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will
7 not have field-applied finishes.
- 8 D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in
9 direct contact with copper tubing.
- 10 E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and metal framing
11 systems and attachments for general service applications.
- 12 F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- 13 G. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise
14 indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
- 15 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or
16 insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
- 17 2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no
18 insulation is required.
- 19 3. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-
20 pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
- 21 H. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system
22 Sections, install the following types:
- 23 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to
24 NPS 24.
- 25 I. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements.
- 26 J. Building Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements.
- 27 K. Comply with NFPA requirements for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not
28 specified in piping system Sections.
- 29 L. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not
30 specified in piping system Sections.
- 31 M. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building
32 attachments where required in concrete construction.

33 **END OF SECTION 21 05 29**



1 **SECTION 21 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Equipment labels.
9 2. Warning signs and labels.
10 3. Pipe labels.
11 4. Valve tags.
12 5. Warning tags.

13 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 14 A. Product Data: For each type of product.
15 B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification
16 material and device.
17 C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled and the proposed
18 content for each label.
19 D. Valve Schedules: Valve numbering scheme.

20 **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 21 A. Maintenance Data: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

22 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

23 **2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS**

- 24 A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
25 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving,
26 1/8 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
27 2. Letter Color: White.
28 3. Background Color: Red.
29 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.



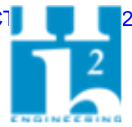
- 1 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than
 2 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 3 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches,
 4 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for
 5 greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size
 6 of principal lettering.
 7 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 8 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- 9 B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number.
- 10 C. Equipment-Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, tabulate equipment label
 11 content. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

12 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- 13 A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch
 14 thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- 15 B. Letter Color: Black.
- 16 C. Background Color: Yellow.
- 17 D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- 18 E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2
 19 by 3/4 inch.
- 20 F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2
 21 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater
 22 viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal
 23 lettering.
- 24 G. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- 25 H. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification
 26 instructions.

27 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- 28 A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering
 29 indicating service and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- 30 B. Self-adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- 31 C. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or
 32 abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
- 33 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both
 34 directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 35 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.



1 D. Pipe-Label Colors:

- 2 1. Background Color: Red.
3 2. Letter Color: White.

4 **2.4 VALVE TAGS**

5 A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping-system abbreviation and 1/2-
6 inch numbers.

- 7 1. Tag Material: Aluminum, 0.032 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
8 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain or S-hook.
9 3. Valve-Tag Color: Safety Red.
10 4. Letter Color: White.

11 B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve
12 number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or
13 space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification.
14 Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

- 15 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

16 **2.5 WARNING TAGS**

17 A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock
18 with matte finish suitable for writing.

- 19 1. Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches .
20 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
21 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT
22 OPERATE."
23 4. Color: Safety Yellow background with black lettering.

24 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

25 **3.1 PREPARATION**

26 A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well
27 as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification
28 devices.

29 **3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

30 A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of
31 surfaces where devices are to be installed.

32 B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

33 C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.



1 **3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION**

- 2 A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- 3 B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

4 **3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION**

- 5 A. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings
6 in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels,
7 and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

- 8 1. Near each valve and control device.
- 9 2. Near each branch connection excluding short takeoffs. Where flow pattern is not obvious,
10 mark each pipe at branch.
- 11 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible
12 enclosures.
- 13 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit a view of concealed
14 piping.
- 15 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
- 16 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in
17 areas of congested piping and equipment.
- 18 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- 19 B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes including
20 pipes where flow is allowed in both directions. Install marker tape with arrows around the entire
21 circumference of the pipe at the beginning and end of the pipe-label content.

22 **3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION**

- 23 A. Install tags on valves and control devices in fire-suppression piping systems. List tagged valves
24 in a valve-tag schedule.
- 25 B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and with captions similar
26 to those indicated in "Valve-Tag Size and Shape" Subparagraph below:
- 27 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
- 28 a. Fire-Suppression Standpipe: 1-1/2 inches.
- 29 b. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: 1-1/2 inches.
- 30 c. Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System: 1-1/2 inches .
- 31 d. Clean-Agent Fire-Extinguishing System: 1-1/2 inches.

32 **3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION**

- 33 A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where
34 required.

35 **END OF SECTION 21 05 53**



1 **SECTION 21 11 00 - FACILITY FIRE-SUPPRESSION WATER-SERVICE PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes fire-suppression water-service piping and related components outside the
8 building and service entrance piping into the building and the following:

- 9 1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
10 2. Fire-suppression specialty valves.
11 3. Protective enclosures.
12 4. Alarm devices.

- 13 B. Utility-furnished products include water meters that are furnished to the site, ready for
14 installation.

15 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 16 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

17 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 18 A. Regulatory Requirements:

- 19 1. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying the water. Include tapping of
20 water mains and backflow prevention.
21 2. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service
22 piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.

- 23 B. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

- 24 C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
25 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- 26 D. Comply with FM Global's "Approval Guide" or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for
27 fire-service-main products.

- 28 E. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve
29 and hydrant supervision for fire-suppression water-service piping.



1 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 2 A. Preparation for Transport: Prepare valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
- 3 1. Ensure that valves are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
- 4 2. Protect valves against damage to threaded ends and flange faces.
- 5 3. Set valves in best position for handling. Set valves closed to prevent rattling.
- 6 B. During Storage: Use precautions for valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
- 7 1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.
- 8 2. Protect from weather. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew
- 9 point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when
- 10 outdoor storage is necessary.
- 11 C. Handling: Use sling to handle valves and fire hydrants if size requires handling by crane or lift.
- 12 Rig valves to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or
- 13 rigging points.
- 14 D. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and
- 15 handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- 16 E. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural
- 17 capacity of floor when storing inside.
- 18 F. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.
- 19 G. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

20 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

21 **2.1 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- 22 A. Grooved-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with cut, rounded-grooved ends.
- 23 B. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot
- 24 end.
- 25 C. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end.
- 26 D. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe Appurtenances:
- 27 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 28 following:
- 29 a. Anvil International, Inc.
- 30 b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
- 31 c. Victaulic Company.
- 32 2. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron castings or
- 33 ASTM A536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching pipe.



- 1 3. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping Couplings: AWWA C606, for ductile-iron-pipe
2 dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and
3 nuts.
- 4 E. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or
5 AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
- 6 1. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets,
7 and steel bolts.
- 8 F. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
- 9 1. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
- 10 G. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.
- 11 **2.2 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS**
- 12 A. PVC Pipe: AWWA C900 or UL 1285, Class 150 and Class 200, with bell end with gasket, and
13 with spigot end.
- 14 B. PVC Fittings: AWWA C900 or UL 1285, Class 150 and Class 200, with bell-and-spigot or
15 double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.
- 16 **2.3 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS**
- 17 A. Ductile-Iron Flexible Expansion Joints:
- 18 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
19 following:
- 20 a. EBAA Iron, Inc. (Flex-Tend)
21 b. ROMAC Industries Inc.
22 c. Star Pipe Products (StarFlex 5000).
- 23 2. Description: Compound, ductile-iron fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-
24 joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include two gasketed ball-joint
25 sections and one or more gasketed sleeve sections. Assemble components for offset and
26 expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel
27 bolts.
28 3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
- 29 **2.4 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING**
- 30 A. Standard: ASTM A674 or AWWA C105.
- 31 B. Material: Linear low-density PE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness or high-density, cross-
32 laminated PE film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
- 33 C. Form: Sheet or tube.



1 D. Color: Black.

2 **2.5 JOINING MATERIALS**

3 A. Gaskets for Ferrous Piping and Copper-Alloy Tubing: ASME B16.21, asbestos free.

4 **2.6 SINGLE-PIECE, CUSTOMIZABLE, IN-BUILDING RISER**

5 A. Description: Single-piece, extended 90-degree fitting that passes under the foundation without
6 joints and extends through the floor to transition from exterior underground piping to interior
7 aboveground piping.

8 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ames Fire &
9 Waterworks; Series IBR (NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger) / Series IBR2 (NPS 3 (DN 80)
10 and Smaller) or a comparable product by one of the following:

11 a. Watts; Series TR / TR2.

12 B. Tubing: ASTM A312; Type 304 stainless steel tubing.

13 C. End Connections:

14 1. NPS 2 (DN 50): Threaded or grooved.

15 a. Threaded: ASTM B1.20.1

16 b. Grooved: AWWA C606 for roll grooved pipe.

17 2. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) or Larger: Flanged, grooved, or CIPS coupler.

18 a. CIPS Coupler: AWWA C900 for connection to PVC or Ductile Iron Pipe.

19 b. Flanged: AWWA C207, Class D and ANSI B16.5, Class 150.

20 c. Grooved: AWWA C606 for roll grooved pipe.

21 D. Lengths:

22 1. NPS 3 (DN 80) and Smaller: Customizable leg lengths, from 3-feet (0.9 m) to 16-feet
23 (4.9 m), not to exceed a combined length of 19-feet (5.8 m).

24 2. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger: Customizable leg lengths, from 3-feet (0.9 m) to 16-feet
25 (4.9 m), not to exceed a combined length of 20-feet (6.1 m).

26 E. Maximum Working Pressure: 200 psig.

27 F. Approvals: NFPA 24, FM Class 1920, UL HKQA.

28 G. Accessories include the following:

29 1. Test cap and coupler.

30 2. Flange adapter.



1 **2.7 PIPING SPECIALTIES**

2 A. Transition Fittings: Manufactured fitting or coupling same size as, with pressure rating at least
3 equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.

4 B. Tubular-Sleeve Pipe Couplings:

5 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
6 following:

- 7 a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
8 b. Dresser, Inc.; Dresser Piping Specialties.
9 c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The); Pipe Products Division.
10 d. JCM Industries.
11 e. ROMAC Industries Inc.
12 f. Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
13 g. Viking Johnson.

14 2. Description: Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, with center
15 sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners, and with ends of same sizes as piping to
16 be joined.

17 3. Standard: AWWA C219.

18 4. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.

19 5. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.

20 6. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.

21 7. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

22 **2.8 GATE VALVES**

23 A. AWWA Gate Valves:

24 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
25 following:

- 26 a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
27 b. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
28 c. NIBCO INC.

29 2. 250-psig, AWWA, Iron, Nonrising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:

30 a. Description: Ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or ductile-iron gate,
31 resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.

32 b. Standard: AWWA C509.

33 c. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.

34 d. End Connections: Mechanical or push-on joint.

35 e. Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.

36 3. 250-psig, AWWA, Iron, OS&Y, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:

37 a. Description: Cast- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze, gray-iron, or
38 ductile-iron gate; resilient seats; and bronze stem.

39 b. Standard: AWWA C509.



- 1 c. Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
 2 d. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- 3 B. UL-Listed or FM-Approved Gate Valves:
- 4 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 5 following:
- 6 a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 7 b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 8 c. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
 9 d. NIBCO INC.
- 10 2. 250-psig, UL-Listed or FM-Approved, Iron, Non-rising-Stem Gate Valves:
- 11 a. Description: Iron body and bonnet, bronze seating material, and inside screw.
 12 b. Standards: UL 262 and "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
 13 c. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
 14 d. End Connections: Mechanical or push-on joint.
 15 e. Indicator-Post Flange: Include on valves used with indicator posts.
- 16 3. 250-psig, UL-Listed or FM-Approved, Iron, OS&Y Gate Valves:
- 17 a. Description: Iron body and bonnet and bronze seating material.
 18 b. Standards: UL 262 and "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
 19 c. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
 20 d. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

21 2.9 GATE VALVE ACCESSORIES AND SPECIALTIES

- 22 A. Tapping-Sleeve Assemblies:
- 23 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 24 following:
- 25 a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
 26 b. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 27 c. East Jordan Iron Works, Inc.
 28 d. Flowserve.
 29 e. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 30 f. M&H Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 31 g. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
 32 h. U.S. Pipe.
- 33 2. Description: Sleeve and valve compatible with drilling machine.
 34 3. Standard: MSS SP-60.
 35 4. Tapping Sleeve: Cast-iron, ductile-iron, or stainless-steel, two-piece bolted sleeve with
 36 flanged outlet for new branch connection. Sleeve shall match size and type of pipe
 37 material being tapped and have recessed flange for branch valve.
 38 5. Valve: AWWA, cast-iron, non-rising-stem, resilient-seated gate valve with one raised-
 39 face flange mating tapping-sleeve flange.



1 B. Valve Boxes: Comply with AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve boxes. Include top section,
 2 adjustable extension of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER,"
 3 and bottom section with base that fits over valve and with a barrel approximately 5 inches in
 4 diameter.

5 1. Operating Wrenches: Steel; with tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to
 6 operate deepest buried valve, and socket matching valve operating nut.

7 **2.10 INDICATOR POSTS**

8 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mueller Co.;
 9 A20808 or comparable product by one of the following:

- 10 1. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
- 11 2. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
- 12 3. NIBCO INC.

13 B. Description:

- 14 1. Standard: UL 789 and FM Global standard for indicator posts.
- 15 2. Type: Underground.
- 16 3. Base Barrel Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- 17 4. Extension Barrel: Cast or ductile iron.
- 18 5. Cap: Cast or ductile iron.
- 19 6. Operation: Wrench.

20 **2.11 CHECK VALVES**

21 A. AWWA Check Valves:

22 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 23 following:

- 24 a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- 25 b. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
- 26 c. NIBCO INC.
- 27 d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

28 2. Description: Swing-check type with resilient seat; with interior coating according to
 29 AWWA C550 and ends to match piping.

- 30 3. Standard: AWWA C508.
- 31 4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.

32 B. UL-Listed or FM-Approved Check Valves:

33 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 34 following:

- 35 a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- 36 b. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
- 37 c. NIBCO INC.



- 1 d. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 2 e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 3 2. Description: Swing-check type with pressure rating, rubber-face checks unless otherwise
 4 indicated, and ends matching piping.
 5 3. Standards: UL 312 and "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
 6 4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.

7 **2.12 WATER METERS**

- 8 A. Water meters are furnished by utility company.

9 **2.13 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS**

- 10 A. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:
- 11 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide FEBCO; 856
 12 (Straight) or 876V (Vertical) or comparable product by one of the following:
- 13 a. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 14 b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products Division.
- 15 2. Standards: ASSE 1048 and UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or FM
 16 Global's "Approval Guide."
 17 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 18 4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle one-third of flow range.
 19 5. Size: As indicated on Drawings.
 20 6. Design Flow Rate: As indicated on Drawings.
 21 7. Body Material: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA
 22 approved.
 23 8. End Connections: Flanged.
 24 9. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through or vertical inlet, horizontal center
 25 section, and vertical outlet flow.
 26 10. Accessories:
- 27 a. Valves: UL 262 and FM Global's "Approval Guide" listing; OS&Y gate type with
 28 flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 29 b. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-
 30 pressure backflow preventer.

31 **2.14 WATER METER BOXES**

- 32 A. Description: Polymer-concrete body and cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering
 33 "WATER" on cover; and with slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service
 34 piping. Include vertical and lateral design loadings of 15,000 lb minimum over 10 by 10 inches
 35 square.



1 **2.15 PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURES**

2 A. Freeze-Protection Enclosures:

3 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
4 following:

- 5 a. Hot Box, Inc.
6 b. HydroCowl, Inc.
7 c. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

8 2. Description: Insulated enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping,
9 equipment, or specialties from freezing and damage, with heat source to maintain
10 minimum internal temperature of 40 deg F when external temperatures reach as low as
11 minus 34 deg F.

12 3. Standard: ASSE 1060.

13 4. Class I: For equipment or devices other than pressure or atmospheric vacuum breakers.

14 5. Class I-V: For pressure or atmospheric vacuum breaker equipment or devices. Include
15 drain opening in housing.

16 a. Housing: Reinforced-aluminum or -fiberglass construction.

17 1) Size: Of dimensions indicated, but not less than those required for access
18 and service of protected unit.

19 2) Drain opening for units with drain connection.

20 3) Access doors with locking devices.

21 4) Insulation inside housing.

22 5) Anchoring devices for attaching housing to concrete base.

23 b. Electric heating cable or heater with self-limiting temperature control.

24 B. Weather-Resistant Enclosures:

25 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
26 following:

- 27 a. Hot Box, Inc.
28 b. HydroCowl, Inc.
29 c. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

30 2. Description: Uninsulated enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping,
31 equipment, or specialties from weather and damage.

32 3. Standard: ASSE 1060.

33 4. Class III: For equipment or devices other than pressure or atmospheric vacuum breakers.

34 5. Class III-V: For pressure or atmospheric vacuum breaker equipment or devices. Include
35 drain opening in housing.

36 a. Housing: Reinforced-aluminum or -fiberglass construction.

37 1) Size: Of dimensions indicated, but not less than those required for access
38 and service of protected unit.

39 2) Drain opening for units with drain connection.

40 3) Access doors with locking devices.

41 4) Anchoring devices for attaching housing to concrete base.



1 **2.16 ALARM DEVICES**

- 2 A. General: UL 753 and FM Global's "Approval Guide" listing, of types and sizes to mate and
3 match piping and equipment.
- 4 B. Supervisory Switches: Single pole, double throw; designed to signal valve in other than fully
5 open position.

6 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

7 **3.1 EARTHWORK**

- 8 A. Comply with excavating, trenching, and backfilling requirements in Section 31 20 00 "Earth
9 Moving."

10 **3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION**

- 11 A. Water-Main Connection: Arrange with water utility company for tap of size and in location
12 indicated in water main.
- 13 B. Make connections larger than NPS 2 with tapping machine according to the following:
- 14 1. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve according to MSS SP-60.
15 2. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for gate valve.
16 3. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main.
17 Remove tapping machine and connect water-service piping.
18 4. Install gate valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with MSS SP-60. Install valve with stem
19 pointing up and with valve box.
- 20 C. Comply with NFPA 24 for fire-service-main piping materials and installation.
- 21 D. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- 22 1. Install encasement for piping according to ASTM A674 or AWWA C105.
- 23 E. Install PVC, AWWA pipe according to ASTM F645 and AWWA M23.
- 24 F. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 30 inches, with top at least 12 inches below
25 level of maximum frost penetration, and according to the following:
- 26 1. Under Driveways: With at least 36 inches of cover over top.
27 2. In Loose Gravelly Soil and Rock: With at least 12 inches of additional cover.
- 28 G. Install piping by tunneling or jacking, or combination of both, under streets and other
29 obstructions that cannot be disturbed.
- 30 H. Extend fire-suppression water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building
31 fire-suppression water-service piping systems at locations and pipe sizes indicated using single-
32 piece, in-building risers.



- 1 1. Coordinate horizontal and vertical lengths of single-piece, in-building risers to extend
 2 from the exterior of the building, underneath the foundation, and through the floor up to
 3 24 inches to 36 inches above finished floor.
- 4 2. Coordinate horizontal and vertical end connections of single-piece, in-building risers with
 5 fire-suppression water-service piping inside the building in the following Sections:
- 6 a. Section 21 12 00 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes"
 7 b. Section 21 13 13 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems"
 8 c. Section 21 13 16 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems"
- 9 3. Terminate fire-suppression water-service piping within the building at the service
 10 entrance until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps,
 11 plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building's fire-
 12 suppression water-service piping systems when those systems are installed.
- 13 I. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction.
 14 Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.
- 15 J. Comply with requirements for fire-suppression water-service piping inside the building in the
 16 following Sections:
- 17 1. Section 21 12 00 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes"
 18 2. Section 21 13 13 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems"
 19 3. Section 21 13 16 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems"
- 20 K. Comply with requirements in Division 22 for potable-water piping inside the building.
- 21 L. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for
 22 sleeves specified in Section 21 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- 23 M. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with
 24 requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 21 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-
 25 Suppression Piping."
- 26 **3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**
- 27 A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that
 28 have finish and pressure rating same as or higher than systems pressure rating for
 29 aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- 30 B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in tubing NPS 2 and smaller.
- 31 C. Install flanges, flange adaptors, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and
 32 equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- 33 D. Ream ends of tubes and remove burrs.
- 34 E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from outside and inside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before
 35 assembly.
- 36 F. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Fire-Service-Main Piping: UL 194.



- 1 G. Ductile-Iron Piping, Grooved Joints: Cut-groove pipe. Assemble joints with grooved-end, ductile-
2 iron-piping couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts.
- 3 H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water
4 service. Join flanges with bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- 5 I. PVC Piping Gasketed Joints: Use joining materials according to AWWA C900. Construct joints
6 with elastomeric seals and lubricant according to ASTM D2774 or ASTM D3139.
- 7 J. Dissimilar Materials Piping Joints: Use adapters compatible with both piping materials, with OD,
8 and with system working pressure.
- 9 K. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.

10 3.4 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION

- 11 A. Anchorage, General: Install water-distribution piping with restrained joints. Anchorages and
12 restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:
- 13 1. Concrete thrust blocks.
14 2. Locking mechanical joints.
15 3. Bolted flanged joints.
16 4. Pipe clamps and tie rods.
- 17 B. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches in
18 fire-suppression water-service piping according to NFPA 24 and the following:
- 19 1. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA C600.
20 2. Gasketed-Joint, PVC Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M23.
- 21 C. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed
22 ferrous anchorage devices.

23 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- 24 A. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground
25 valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- 26 B. AWWA Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44.
- 27 C. UL-Listed or FM Global-Approved Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24. Install each
28 underground valve and valves in vaults with stem pointing up and with vertical cast-iron
29 indicator post.
- 30 D. UL-Listed or FM Global-Approved Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24.
- 31 E. MSS Valves: Install as component of connected piping system.
- 32 F. Support valves and piping, not direct buried, on concrete piers. Comply with requirements for
33 concrete piers in Division 03



1 **3.6 WATER METER INSTALLATION**

- 2 A. Install water meters, piping, and specialties according to utility company's written instructions.

3 **3.7 ROUGHING-IN FOR WATER METERS**

- 4 A. Rough-in piping and specialties for water meter installation according to utility company's written instructions.
5

6 **3.8 BACKFLOW PREVENTER INSTALLATION**

- 7 A. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks.
8 Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having
9 jurisdiction.

- 10 B. Do not install backflow preventers that have relief drain in vault or in other spaces subject to
11 flooding.

- 12 C. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.

- 13 D. Support NPS 2-1/2 and larger backflow preventers and piping on concrete piers. Comply with
14 requirements for concrete piers in Division 03.

15 **3.9 WATER METER BOX INSTALLATION**

- 16 A. Install water meter boxes in paved areas flush with surface.

- 17 B. Install water meter boxes in grass or earth areas with top 2 inches above surface.

18 **3.10 PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURE INSTALLATION**

- 19 A. Install concrete base level and with top approximately 2 inches above grade.

- 20 B. Install protective enclosure over valves and equipment.

- 21 C. Anchor protective enclosure to concrete base.

22 **3.11 ALARM DEVICE INSTALLATION**

- 23 A. General: Comply with NFPA 24 for devices and methods of valve supervision. Underground
24 valves with valve box do not require supervision.

- 25 B. Supervisory Switches: Supervise valves in open position.

- 26 1. Valves: Grind away portion of exposed valve stem. Bolt switch, with plunger in stem
27 depression, to OS&Y gate-valve yoke.

- 28 2. Indicator Posts: Drill and thread hole in upper-barrel section at target plate. Install switch,
29 with toggle against target plate, on barrel of indicator post.



- 1 C. Locking and Sealing: Secure unsupervised valves as follows:
- 2 1. Valves: Install chain and padlock on open OS&Y gate valve.
- 3 2. Post Indicators: Install padlock on wrench on indicator post.
- 4 D. Connect alarm devices to building's fire-alarm system. Wiring and fire-alarm devices are
- 5 specified in Division 29.
- 6 **3.12 CONNECTIONS**
- 7 A. Connect fire-suppression water-service piping to utility water main. Use tapping sleeve and
- 8 tapping valve.
- 9 B. Connect fire-suppression water-service piping to interior fire-suppression piping.
- 10 **3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**
- 11 A. Use test procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed
- 12 by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described below.
- 13 B. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks
- 14 have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to
- 15 stabilize system. Use only potable water.
- 16 C. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times the working pressure for two
- 17 hours.
- 18 1. Increase pressure in 50-psig increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold
- 19 at test pressure for one hour; decrease to zero psig. Slowly increase again to test
- 20 pressure and hold for one more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 quarts per hour
- 21 per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is
- 22 within allowed limits.
- 23 D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 24 **3.14 IDENTIFICATION**
- 25 A. Install continuous underground detectable warning tape during backfilling of trench for
- 26 underground fire-suppression water-service piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over
- 27 piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Division 31.
- 28 B. Permanently attach equipment nameplate or marker indicating plastic fire-suppression water-
- 29 service piping or fire-suppression water-service piping with electrically insulated fittings, on main
- 30 electrical meter panel. Comply with requirements for identifying devices in Division 21 .
- 31 **3.15 CLEANING**
- 32 A. Clean and disinfect fire-suppression water-service piping as follows:



- 1 1. Purge new piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered,
 2 extended, or repaired before use.
 3 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if
 4 method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in
 5 AWWA C651 or do as follows:
- 6 a. Drain system or part of system of previous solution and refill with water/chlorine
 7 solution containing at least 200 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow it to stand for
 8 three hours.
 9 b. After standing time, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine
 10 remains in water coming from system.
 11 c. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat
 12 procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.
- 13 B. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

14 **3.16 PIPING SCHEDULE**

- 15 A. Underground fire-suppression water-service piping NPS 4 to NPS 12 shall be one of the
 16 following:
- 17 1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; mechanical-joint, ductile- or gray-iron, standard-
 18 pattern fittings; glands, gaskets, and bolts; and gasketed joints.
 19 2. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; push-on-joint, ductile-iron compact-pattern fittings; and
 20 gasketed joints.
 21 3. PVC, Class 150 pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC fittings of same class as pipe;
 22 and gasketed joints.
- 23 B. Aboveground fire-suppression water-service piping NPS 4 to NPS 12 shall be grooved-end,
 24 ductile-iron pipe; grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

25 **3.17 VALVE SCHEDULE**

- 26 A. Underground fire-suppression water-service shutoff valves NPS 4 and larger shall be one of the
 27 following:
- 28 1. 250-psig, AWWA, iron, nonrising-stem, resilient-seated gate valves.
 29 2. 250-psig, UL-listed or FM Global-approved, iron, nonrising-stem gate valves.
- 30 B. Indicator-post underground fire-suppression water-service valves NPS 4 and larger shall be
 31 250-psig, UL-listed or FM Global-approved, iron, nonrising-stem gate valves with indicator-post
 32 flange.
- 33 C. Standard-pressure, aboveground fire-suppression water-service shutoff valves NPS 3 and
 34 larger shall be one of the following:
- 35 1. 250-psig, AWWA, iron, OS&Y, resilient-seated gate valves.
 36 2. 250-psig, UL-listed or FM Global-approved, iron, OS&Y gate valves.

37 **END OF SECTION 21 11 00**

38



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 21 11 19 – FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
8 1. Yard-type fire-department connections.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

11 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components
12 and profiles, and finishes for each fire-department connection.

13 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

14 **2.1 YARD-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION**

- 15 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Elkhart Brass Mfg.
16 Company, Inc.; 15 or comparable product by one of the following:

17 1. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
18 2. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
19 3. Potter Roemer.

20 B. Standard: UL 405.

21 C. Type: Exposed, freestanding.

22 D. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.

23 E. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.

24 F. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes
25 and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check
26 devices or clappers.

27 G. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.

28 H. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, floor type.



- 1 I. Outlet: Bottom, with pipe threads.
- 2 J. Number of Inlets: Two.
- 3 K. Sleeve: Brass.
- 4 L. Sleeve Height: 18 inches.
- 5 M. Finish, Including Sleeve: Polished chrome plated.
- 6 N. Outlet Size: NPS 4.

7 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

8 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 9 A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation
10 tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fire-department connections.
- 11 B. Examine roughing-in for fire-suppression standpipe system to verify actual locations of piping
12 connections before fire-department connection installation.
- 13 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

14 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- 15 A. Install yard-type fire-department connections in concrete slab support. Comply with
16 requirements for concrete in Division 03.
- 17 B. Install two protective pipe bollards around each fire-department connection. Comply with
18 requirements for bollards in Division 05.
- 19 C. Install automatic (ball-drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

20 **END OF SECTION 21 11 19**



1 **SECTION 21 13 13 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
9 2. Cover system for sprinkler piping.
10 3. Specialty valves.
11 4. Sprinklers.
12 5. Alarm devices.
13 6. Pressure gages.

14 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 15 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 16 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and
17 furnished specialties and accessories.

- 18 B. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.

- 19 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
20 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

- 21 C. Fire Protection System Layout Documents: Layout drawings, supporting calculations (hydraulic,
22 etc.), catalog information on standard products, and other construction data prepared by either
23 a licensed contractor or a licensed Engineer that provides detail on the location of risers, service
24 mains, distribution lines, devices, equipment, sizing of pipe and/or circuits, hanger locations,
25 and supporting calculations and also serves as a guide for fabrication and installation of a fire
26 protection system. Fire Protection System Layout Documents are based upon engineering
27 direction (performance requirements and design criteria) provided in the Fire Protection System
28 Engineering Documents and require no additional engineering input.

- 29 1. If prepared by a licensed contractor, these documents do not require the seal of a
30 licensed engineer.
31 2. If prepared by a licensed engineer, these documents are Engineering Documents and
32 therefore require sealing by a licensed engineer.



1 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

2 A. Design Data:

- 3 1. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13,
4 that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic
5 calculations if applicable.

6 B. Field Test Reports:

- 7 1. Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as
8 described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for
9 Aboveground Piping."
10 2. Fire-hydrant flow test report.

11 C. Field quality-control reports.

12 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 13 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in
14 emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

15 **1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS** [See Alternates](#)

- 16 A. Extra Sprinkler Allowance: Provide and identify a line-item allowance on bid day to furnish and
17 install 10% (time and material) of sprinklers and associated branch piping on project. Extra
18 materials shall be installed as directed by Engineer and/or AHJ as building components are
19 installed to provide adequate coverage around obstructions or to otherwise coordinate with
20 competing systems. At the end of project provide an accounting of extra time and materials
21 used against allowance; any remaining allowance shall revert to the Owner's contingency for
22 the Owner's benefit.

23 **1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- 24 A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective
25 covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- 26 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with
27 space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of
28 sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with
29 sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

30 **1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

31 A. Installer Qualifications:

- 32 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems
33 and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering
34 responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.



- 1 a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field
2 test reports by a qualified professional engineer.
- 3 B. Furnish new and unused piping materials manufactured in the United States of America. Piping
4 shall be marked with country of origin from the manufacturer.

5 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

6 **2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS**

- 7 A. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing water and
8 that is connected to water supply through alarm valve. Water discharges immediately from
9 sprinklers when they are opened. Sprinklers open when heat melts fusible link or destroys
10 frangible device. Hose connections are included if indicated.

11 **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 12 A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with
13 the following:
- 14 1. NFPA 13.
- 15 B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- 16 C. Fire Protection System Layout Documents: Engage either a licensed contractor or a qualified
17 professional engineer to provide Fire Protection System Layout Documents for the wet-pipe
18 sprinkler systems based upon the engineering direction (performance requirements and design
19 criteria) provided in the Fire Protection Engineering Documents.
- 20 1. Available fire-hydrant flow test records: As indicated on the Drawings.
21 2. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 22 a. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 psi, measured at the
23 base of the riser at design system demand.
24 b. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications: As indicated on the Drawings.
- 25 3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design: As indicated on the Drawings.
26 4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: According to UL listing.
27 5. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: As indicated on the Drawings.

28 **2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- 29 A. Standard-Weight, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be
30 factory or field formed to match joining method.
- 31 B. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M, Schedule 10 in
32 NPS 5 and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10, plain end.
- 33 C. Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M, standard-weight, seamless
34 steel pipe with threaded ends.



- 1 D. Uncoated-Steel Couplings: ASTM A865/A865M, threaded.
- 2 E. Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- 3 F. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- 4 G. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- 5 H. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
- 6 1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick.
- 7 a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
- 8 b. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type
- 9 gaskets.
- 10 2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- 11 I. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
- 12 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 13 following:
- 14 a. Anvil International, Inc.
- 15 b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
- 16 c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
- 17 d. Victaulic Company.
- 18 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
- 19 3. Uncoated Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron
- 20 casting or ASTM A536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
- 21 4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern,
- 22 unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections,
- 23 EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

24 **2.4 SPECIALTY VALVES**

- 25 A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- 26 B. Pressure Rating:
- 27 1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.
- 28 C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- 29 D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 30 E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- 31 F. Alarm Valves:



- 1 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tyco Fire &
2 Building Products LP; AV-1-300 or comparable product by one of the following:
- 3 a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
4 b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
5 c. Viking Corporation.
- 6 2. Standard: UL 193.
7 3. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
8 4. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, and
9 fill-line attachment with strainer.
10 5. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping.
11 6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in
12 NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and
13 application.
- 14 G. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
- 15 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tyco Fire &
16 Building Products LP; AD-2 or comparable product by one of the following:
- 17 a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
18 b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
- 19 2. Standard: UL 1726.
20 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
21 4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
22 5. Size: NPS 3/4.
23 6. End Connections: Threaded.

24 **2.5 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES**

- 25 A. Branch Outlet Fittings:
- 26 1. Standard: UL 213.
27 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
28 3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
29 4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
30 5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
31 6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to
32 match connected branch piping.
33 7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.
- 34 B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:
- 35 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
36 following:
- 37 a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
38 b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
- 39 2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."



- 1 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 2 4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test
 3 valve.
 4 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
 5 6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.
- 6 C. Branch Line Testers:
- 7 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 8 following:
- 9 a. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
 10 b. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
 11 c. Potter Roemer.
- 12 2. Standard: UL 199.
 13 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 14 4. Body Material: Brass.
 15 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
 16 6. Inlet: Threaded.
 17 7. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
 18 8. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.
- 19 D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:
- 20 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 21 following:
- 22 a. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 23 b. Viking Corporation.
- 24 2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 25 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 26 4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
 27 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
 28 6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- 29 E. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:
- 30 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 31 following:
- 32 a. Fivalco Inc.
 33 b. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
 34 c. Gateway Tubing, Inc.
- 35 2. Standard: UL 1474.
 36 3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling
 37 grid.
 38 4. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 39 5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.



1 **2.6 SPRINKLERS (COMMERCIAL)**

2 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
3 following:

- 4 1. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
5 2. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
6 3. Victaulic Company.
7 4. Viking Corporation.

8 B. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."

9 C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.

10 D. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:

- 11 1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: UL 1767.
12 2. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
13 3. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for
14 "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by
15 application.

16 E. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated, bronze, and painted.

17 F. Special Coatings: Wax, lead, and corrosion-resistant paint.

18 G. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are
19 specified with sprinklers.

20 H. Sprinkler Guards:

- 21 1. Standard: UL 199.
22 2. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

23 **2.7 ALARM DEVICES**

24 A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

25 B. Water-Flow Indicators:

26 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
27 following:

- 28 a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
29 b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
30 c. Viking Corporation.

31 2. Standard: UL 346.

32 3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.

33 4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and
34 auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-



- 1 adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends
 2 signal if removed.
 3 5. Type: Paddle operated.
 4 6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
 5 7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

6 C. Valve Supervisory Switches:

- 7 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 8 following:
 9 a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
 10 b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
 11 2. Standard: UL 346.
 12 3. Type: Electrically supervised.
 13 4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
 14 5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
 15 6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in
 16 NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and
 17 application.

18 **2.8 PRESSURE GAGES**

- 19 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 20 following:
 21 1. AMETEK; U.S. Gauge Division.
 22 2. Ashcroft, Inc.
 23 3. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
 24 B. Standard: UL 393.
 25 C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
 26 D. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.
 27 E. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

28 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

29 **3.1 PREPARATION**

- 30 A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system
 31 design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
 32 B. Report test results promptly and in writing.



1 **3.2 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING**

- 2 A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with
 3 requirements for exterior piping in Section 21 11 00 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service
 4 Piping" for exterior piping.
- 5 B. Install shutoff valve, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to
 6 water-service piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 21 11 00
 7 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping."

8 **3.3 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS**

- 9 A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with
 10 requirements for interior piping in Division 22
- 11 B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated
 12 at connection to water-distribution piping.
- 13 C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water supply.

14 **3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION**

- 15 A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general
 16 location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
- 17 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from
 18 authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from
 19 approved working plans.
- 20 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates
 21 ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- 22 B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- 23 C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in
 24 pipe sizes.
- 25 D. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- 26 E. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and
 27 equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- 28 F. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve,
 29 and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- 30 G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- 31 H. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when
 32 sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- 33 I. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to
 34 drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and
 35 spill over floor drain or to outside building.



- 1 J. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- 2 K. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with
3 requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13. In seismic-rated areas, refer to Section
4 21 05 48.14 " Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- 5 L. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of
6 each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-
7 metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to
8 permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- 9 M. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- 10 N. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for
11 sleeves specified in Section 21 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- 12 O. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with
13 requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 21 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-
14 Suppression Piping."
- 15 P. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with
16 requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 21 05 18 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression
17 Piping."

18 3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- 19 A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that
20 have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for
21 aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- 22 B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- 23 C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and
24 equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- 25 D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- 26 E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before
27 assembly.
- 28 F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water
29 service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- 30 G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut
31 threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore
32 full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
- 33 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
- 34 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or
35 damaged.



- 1 H. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to
 2 AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and
 3 grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- 4 I. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to
 5 AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and
 6 grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- 7 J. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both
 8 piping systems.

9 3.6 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- 10 A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and
 11 specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- 12 B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water
 13 supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating
 14 portion of system controlled by each valve.
- 15 C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of
 16 check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- 17 D. Specialty Valves:
- 18 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
 19 2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line
 20 connection.

21 3.7 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- 22 A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels.
- 23 B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or
 24 sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- 25 C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.
- 26 D. Install sprinklers per manufacturer's installation instructions.

27 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- 28 A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in
 29 NFPA 13.
- 30 B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for
 31 identification specified in Division 26.



1 **3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

2 A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

- 3 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest
4 until no leaks exist.
- 5 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
6 equipment.
- 7 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance"
8 Chapter.
- 9 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
- 10 5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
- 11 6. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.

12 B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

13 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

14 **3.10 CLEANING**

15 A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.

16 B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any
17 sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

18 **3.11 DEMONSTRATION**

19 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves and
20 pressure-maintenance pumps.

21 **3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE**

22 A. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified
23 fittings.

24 B. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:

- 25 1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded
26 fittings; and threaded joints.

27 C. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be the following:

- 28 1. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for
29 steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

30 D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 5 and larger, shall be the following:

- 31 1. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for
32 steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.



1 **3.13 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE**

2 A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:

- 3 1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
4 2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Pendent, recessed, flush, and concealed sprinklers as
5 indicated.
- 6 a. Acoustical Ceiling Tiles: Recessed sprinklers
7 b. Gypsum Wall Board: Concealed sprinklers.
- 8 3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
9 4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright, pendent, dry sprinklers; and sidewall, dry sprinklers
10 as indicated.
11 5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage, flow-control, and quick-response sprinklers
12 where indicated, Attic sprinklers, Combustible concealed space sprinklers, and
13 Institutional space sprinklers.

14 B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.

- 15 1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
16 2. Recessed Sprinklers: Painted white, with white escutcheon.
17 3. Upright Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Painted white in finished spaces exposed to
18 view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed
19 to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

20 **END OF SECTION 21 13 13**

21



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 21 13 16 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
9 2. Specialty valves.
10 3. Sprinkler specialty pipe fittings.
11 4. Sprinklers.
12 5. Alarm devices.
13 6. Manual control stations.
14 7. Control panels.
15 8. Pressure gages.

16 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 18 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished
19 specialties and accessories.

- 20 B. Shop Drawings: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems.

- 21 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
22 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

- 23 C. Fire Protection System Layout Documents: Layout drawings, supporting calculations (hydraulic,
24 etc.), catalog information on standard products, and other construction data prepared by either a
25 licensed contractor or a licensed Engineer that provides detail on the location of risers, service
26 mains, distribution lines, devices, equipment, sizing of pipe and/or circuits, hanger locations, and
27 supporting calculations and also serves as a guide for fabrication and installation of a fire
28 protection system. Fire Protection System Layout Documents are based upon engineering
29 direction (performance requirements and design criteria) provided in the Fire Protection System
30 Engineering Documents and require no additional engineering input.

- 31 1. If prepared by a licensed contractor, these documents do not require the seal of a licensed
32 engineer.
33 2. If prepared by a licensed engineer, these documents are Engineering Documents and
34 therefore require sealing by a licensed engineer.



1 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

2 A. Design Data:

- 3 1. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that
4 have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if
5 applicable.

6 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 7 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in
8 emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

9 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

10 A. Installer Qualifications:

- 11 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems
12 and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering
13 responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.

- 14 a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test
15 reports by a qualified professional engineer.

- 16 B. Furnish new and unused piping materials manufactured in the United States of America. Piping
17 shall be marked with country of origin from the manufacturer.

18 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

19 **2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS**

- 20 A. Combined Dry-Pipe and Preaction Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping
21 containing compressed air. Fire-detection system, located in same area as sprinklers, actuates
22 tripping devices that open dry-pipe valve without loss of air pressure and actuates fire alarm.
23 Water discharges from opened sprinklers.

24 **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 25 A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with
26 the following:

- 27 1. NFPA 13.

- 28 B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.

- 29 C. Fire Protection System Layout Documents: Engage either a licensed contractor or a qualified
30 professional engineer to provide Fire Protection System Layout Documents for the wet-pipe
31 sprinkler systems based upon the engineering direction (performance requirements and design
32 criteria) provided in the Fire Protection Engineering Documents.



- 1 1. Available fire-hydrant flow test records: As indicated on the Drawings.
- 2 D. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 3 1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10psi, measured at the base of
4 the riser at design system demand.
- 5 2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications: As indicated on the Drawings.
- 6 3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design: As indicated on the Drawings.
- 7 4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: According to UL listing.
- 8 5. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: As indicated on the Drawings.
- 9 **2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS**
- 10 A. Standard-Weight, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be
11 factory or field formed to match joining method.
- 12 B. Thinwall Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M, threadable, with
13 wall thickness less than Schedule 30 and equal to or greater than Schedule 10. Pipe ends may
14 be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- 15 C. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M, standard-weight,
16 seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- 17 D. Galvanized-Steel Couplings: ASTM A865/A865M, threaded.
- 18 E. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- 19 F. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- 20 G. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
- 21 H. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
- 22 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
23 following:
- 24 a. Anvil International, Inc.
- 25 b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
- 26 c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
- 27 d. Victaulic Company.
- 28 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
- 29 3. Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron
30 casting or ASTM A536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
- 31 4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern,
32 unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections,
33 EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.
- 34 **2.4 SPECIALTY VALVES**
- 35 A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."



- 1 B. Pressure Rating:
- 2 1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.
- 3 C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- 4 D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 5 E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- 6 F. Dry-Pipe Valves:
- 7 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tyco Fire &
8 Building Products LP; DPV-1 or comparable product by one of the following:
- 9 a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
10 b. Viking Corporation.
- 11 2. Standard: UL 260.
12 Design: Differential-pressure type.
13 3. Include UL 1486, quick-opening devices, trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm
14 connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line
15 attachment.
16 4. Air-Pressure Maintenance Device:
- 17 a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tyco
18 Fire & Building Products LP; AMD-2 (for systems up to 500 gallons) and AMD-1 (for
19 systems greater than 500 gallons) or comparable product by one of the following:
- 20 1) Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
21 2) Viking Corporation.
- 22 6. Standard: UL 260.
23 7. Type: Automatic device to maintain minimum air pressure in piping.
24 8. Include shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler piping, bypass
25 valve for quick filling, pressure regulator or switch to maintain pressure, strainer, pressure
26 ratings with 14- to 60-psig adjustable range, and 175-psig outlet pressure.
27 9. Air Compressor:
- 28 a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide
29 General Air Products, Inc.; OLT or comparable product by one of the following:
- 30 1) Gast Manufacturing Inc.
31 2) Viking Corporation.
- 32 b. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval
33 Guide."
34 c. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
35 d. Power: As indicated on Drawings.

36 2.5 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

- 37 A. General Requirements for Dry-Pipe System Fittings: UL listed for dry-pipe service.



- 1 B. Branch Outlet Fittings:
- 2 1. Standard: UL 213.
- 3 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
- 4 3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
- 5 4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
- 6 5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
- 7 6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to
- 8 match connected branch piping.
- 9 7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.
- 10 C. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:
- 11 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 12 following:
- 13 a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
- 14 b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
- 15 2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- 16 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
- 17 4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
- 18 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 19 6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- 20 D. Branch Line Testers:
- 21 1. Standard: UL 199.
- 22 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
- 23 3. Body Material: Brass.
- 24 4. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 25 5. Inlet: Threaded.
- 26 6. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
- 27 7. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.
- 28 E. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:
- 29 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 30 following:
- 31 a. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
- 32 b. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
- 33 c. Potter Roemer.
- 34 2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- 35 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
- 36 4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
- 37 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 38 6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- 39 F. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:
- 40 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 41 following:



- 1 a. Fivalco Inc.
 2 b. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
 3 c. Gateway Tubing, Inc.
- 4 2. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling
 5 grid.
 6 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 7 4. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

8 **2.6 SPRINKLERS**

- 9 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 10 following:
- 11 1. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 12 2. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 13 3. Viking Corporation.
- 14 B. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- 15 C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.
- 16 D. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
- 17 1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
 18 2. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for
 19 "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by
 20 application.
- 21 E. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated, bronze, and painted.
- 22 F. Special Coatings: Wax, lead, and corrosion-resistant paint.
- 23 G. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are
 24 specified with sprinklers.
- 25 H. Sprinkler Guards:
- 26 1. Standard: UL 199.
 27 2. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

28 **2.7 ALARM DEVICES**

- 29 A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.
- 30 B. Pressure Switches:
- 31 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 32 following:
- 33 a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
 34 b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.



- 1 c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 2 d. Viking Corporation.
- 3 2. Standard: UL 346.
 4 3. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
 5 4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
 6 5. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.
- 7 C. Valve Supervisory Switches:
- 8 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 9 following:
- 10 a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
 11 b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
- 12 2. Standard: UL 346.
 13 3. Type: Electrically supervised.
 14 4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
 15 5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
 16 6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in
 17 NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application
- 18 **2.8 CONTROL PANELS**
- 19 A. Description: Single-area, two-area, or single-area cross-zoned type control panel as indicated,
 20 including NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure, detector, alarm, and solenoid-valve circuitry for
 21 operation of deluge valves.
- 22 1. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" when
 23 used with thermal detectors and Class A detector circuit wiring.
 24 2. Electrical characteristics are 120-V ac, 60 Hz, with 24-V dc rechargeable batteries.
 25 3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in
 26 NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application
- 27 B. Manual Control Stations: Electric operation, metal enclosure, labeled "MANUAL CONTROL
 28 STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent
 29 accidental opening.
- 30 C. Panels Components:
- 31 1. Power supply.
 32 2. Battery charger.
 33 3. Standby batteries.
 34 4. Field-wiring terminal strip.
 35 5. Electrically supervised solenoid valves and polarized fire-alarm bell.
 36 6. Lamp test facility.
 37 7. Single-pole, double-throw auxiliary alarm contacts.
 38 8. Rectifier.



1 **2.9 PRESSURE GAGES**

2 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
3 following:

- 4 1. AMETEK; U.S. Gauge Division.
5 2. Ashcroft, Inc.
6 3. WIKA Instrument Corporation.

7 B. Standard: UL 393.

8 C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.

9 D. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.

10 E. Label: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

11 F. Air System Piping Gage: Include retard feature and "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

12 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

13 **3.1 PREPARATION**

14 A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system
15 design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

16 B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

17 **3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION**

18 A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location
19 and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.

20 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities
21 having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved
22 working plans.

23 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates
24 ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.

25 B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.

26 C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in
27 pipe sizes.

28 D. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.

29 E. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and
30 equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.

31 F. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and
32 sized and located according to NFPA 13.



- 1 G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- 2 H. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when
3 sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- 4 I. Connect compressed-air supply to dry-pipe sprinkler piping.
- 5 J. Connect air compressor to the following piping and wiring:
- 6 1. Pressure gages and controls.
7 2. Electrical power system.
8 3. Fire-alarm devices, including low-pressure alarm.
- 9 K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- 10 L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with
11 requirements in NFPA 13.
- 12 M. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each
13 standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal
14 seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit
15 removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- 16 N. Drain dry-pipe sprinkler piping.
- 17 O. Pressurize and check dry-pipe sprinkler system piping, air-pressure maintenance devices, and
18 air compressors.
- 19 P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for
20 sleeves specified in Section 21 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- 21 Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements
22 for sleeve seals specified in Section 21 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression
23 Piping."
- 24 R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements
25 for escutcheons specified in Section 21 05 18 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

26 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- 27 A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that
28 have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground
29 applications unless otherwise indicated.
- 30 B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- 31 C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and
32 equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- 33 D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- 34 E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before
35 assembly.



- 1 F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water
2 service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- 3 G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads
4 full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID.
5 Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
- 6 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
7 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or
8 damaged.
- 9 H. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both
10 piping systems.

11 3.4 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- 12 A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and
13 specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- 14 B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water
15 supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating
16 portion of system controlled by each valve.
- 17 C. Specialty Valves:
- 18 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
19 2. Install dry-pipe and deluge valves with trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm
20 connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line
21 attachment.
- 22 a. Install air compressor and compressed-air-supply piping.
23 b. Install air-pressure maintenance device with shutoff valves to permit servicing
24 without shutting down sprinkler system; bypass valve for quick system filling;
25 pressure regulator or switch to maintain system pressure; strainer; pressure ratings
26 with 14- to 60-psig adjustable range; and 175-psig maximum inlet pressure.
27 c. Install compressed-air-supply piping from building's compressed-air piping system.

28 3.5 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- 29 A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels.
- 30 B. Install sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall
31 sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- 32 C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

33 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- 34 A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.



- 1 B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for
2 identification specified in Division 26.

3 **3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 4 A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

- 5 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest
6 until no leaks exist.
7 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
8 equipment.
9 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance"
10 Chapter.
11 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
12 5. Start and run air compressors.
13 6. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
14 7. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.

- 15 B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

- 16 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

17 **3.8 CLEANING**

- 18 A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.

- 19 B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers
20 that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

21 **3.9 DEMONSTRATION**

- 22 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

23 **3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE**

- 24 A. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.

- 25 B. Copper-tube, extruded-tee connections may be used for tee branches in copper tubing instead of
26 specified copper fittings. Branch-connection joints must be brazed.

- 27 C. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:

- 28 1. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded
29 fittings; and threaded joints.

- 30 D. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be the following:

- 31 1. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end
32 fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.



1 **3.11 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE**

2 A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:

- 3 1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
4 2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Dry recessed and concealed sprinklers as indicated.
5 3. Wall Mounting: Dry sidewall sprinklers.
6 4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright, dry pendent sprinklers; and dry sidewall sprinklers
7 as indicated.
8 5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage and quick-response sprinklers where indicated.

9 B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.

- 10 1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
11 2. Recessed Sprinklers: Painted white, with white escutcheon.
12 3. Upright, Pendent, and Sidewall Sprinklers: White painted in finished spaces exposed to
13 view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed
14 to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

15 **END OF SECTION 21 13 16**



1 **SECTION 22 01 00 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 6 B. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 22 Specification Sections.

7 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 8 A. Section includes basic requirements for plumbing systems.

9 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 10 A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" unless otherwise further
11 described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in
12 nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and
13 having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 14 B. Furnish: Supply and deliver to project site, ready for subsequent requirements.
- 15 C. Install: Operations at project site, including unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing,
16 anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar
17 requirements.
- 18 D. Provide: Furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use.
- 19 E. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of
20 subsequent work.
- 21 F. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after
22 installation of subsequent work.
- 23 G. Concealed Work: Work hidden from view, including inside chases, furred spaces, or above
24 ceilings.
- 25 H. Exposed Work: Work open to view, including inside mechanical and equipment rooms.

26 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 27 A. General:
- 28 1. It is the intent of the plans and specifications to obtain a complete, operable and satisfactory
29 installation.



- 1 2. All materials shall be new, be properly labeled and/or identified and be in full compliance
2 with the contract documents.
3 3. All work shall comply with applicable Codes and Standards.
4 4. Manufacturer's model names and numbers used in these specifications are subject to
5 change per manufacturer's action. Contractor shall therefore verify them with
6 manufacturer's representative before ordering any product or equipment
- 7 B. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment manufactured in the U.S.A. Where two or
8 more units of the same type or class of equipment are required provide units of a single
9 manufacturer.
- 10 **1.5 CODES AND STANDARDS**
- 11 A. Perform work in accordance with the following codes and any applicable statutes, ordinances,
12 codes, and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.
- 13 1. ASHRAE
- 14 a. Standard 90.1 Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low Rise Residential
15 Buildings
- 16 2. ASME
- 17 a. Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code - 2019
18 1) Section IV Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers
19 2) ASME A17.1 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators - 2019
- 20 3. Occupational Safety and Health Regulations (OSHA).
21 4. National Fire Codes
- 22 a. NFPA 1 Fire Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
23 b. NFPA 30 Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code - 2021
24 c. NFPA 54 National Fuel Gas Code – 2021
25 d. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code – 2020
26 e. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
- 27 5. Florida Building Code, 2023 Edition
- 28 a. Building Code
29 b. Energy Conservation Code
30 c. Mechanical Code
31 d. Plumbing Code
32 e. Fuel Gas Code
33 f. Accessibility Code
- 34 6. Florida Statutes
- 35 a. Chapter 471 Engineering
36 b. Chapter 533.80 Building Construction Standards; Florida Building Code -
37 Enforcement
- 38 7. Florida Administrative Code
39 a. Chapter 61C-5 Florida Elevator Safety Code



- 1 b. Chapter 61G15-34 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning
2 the Design of Mechanical Systems
3 c. Chapter 69A-3 Fire Prevention – General Provisions
4 d. Chapter 69A-47 Uniform Fire Safety Standards for Elevators
5 e. Chapter 69A-60 The Florida Fire Prevention Code
6 8. ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings (ADAAG)

7 B. Resolve, in writing, any code violation discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior
8 to bidding. After award of the contract, make any correction or addition necessary for compliance
9 with applicable codes at no additional cost to Owner.

10 C. The Contractor shall include in the Work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials,
11 services, apparatus, and drawings required to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules,
12 and regulations.

13 D. Where there is conflict between the Contract Documents and the applicable Codes, the Codes
14 shall govern, except where the requirements of the Contract Documents are more stringent.

15 **1.6 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS**

16 A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or
17 AWWA Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with
18 latest editions, revisions, amendments, or supplements in effect on date bids are received.
19 Specifications and standards are minimum requirements for all equipment, material and work. In
20 instances where capacities, size or other feature of equipment, devices or materials exceed these
21 minimums, meet listed or shown capacities.

22 B. Whenever a reference is made to a standard, installation and materials shall comply with the
23 latest published edition of the standard at the time project is bid unless otherwise specified herein

24 **1.7 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES**

25 A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design
26 professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products
27 and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

28 **1.8 PERMITS FEES AND INSPECTIONS**

29 A. Obtain and pay for all permits, fees, tap fees, connection charges, demand charges, systems
30 charges, impact fees, and inspections.

31 B. Deliver all certificates of inspection issued by authorities having jurisdiction to the Engineer.

32 **1.9 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS**

33 A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or
34 requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting
35 requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement.
36 Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Engineer for direction
37 before proceeding.



- 1 1. If discrepancies or conflicts occur between drawings, or between drawings and
 2 specifications, notify the Engineer in writing prior to bid date; however, the most stringent
 3 requirement shall govern.
- 4 B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the
 5 minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum
 6 quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply
 7 with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for
 8 the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Engineer for a decision before proceeding.
- 9 **1.10 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)**
- 10 A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or
 11 interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form
 12 specified.
- 13 1. Engineer will return without response those RFIs submitted to Engineer by other entities
 14 controlled by Contractor.
 15 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or
 16 work of subcontractors.
- 17 B. Prepare RFIs as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or
 18 web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All**
 19 **electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be**
 20 **transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals
 21 shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
- 22 C. Engineer's Action: Engineer will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow
 23 seven days for Engineer's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m.
 24 Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
- 25 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
- 26 a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 27 b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 28 c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 29 d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 30 e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 31 f. Requests for interpretation of Engineer's actions on submittals.
 32 g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
- 33 2. Engineer's action may include a request for additional information, in which case
 34 Engineer's time for response will date from time of receipt by Engineer of additional
 35 information.
- 36 **1.11 SUBMITTALS**
- 37 A. Submittals (including Product Data, Shop Drawings, and any other Action Submittal or Information
 38 Submittal) will only be reviewed if they are submitted in full accordance with the General and
 39 Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:



1. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved by the Engineer.
3. Submittals shall only contain relevant product data. Remove or strikeout irrelevant product data.
4. Prepare submittals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
- Options: Identify options requiring selection by Engineer.
6. Deviations: Clearly identify deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations.
7. Revisions: Include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those specifically requested by Engineer on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached submittal sheet.
8. Contractor's Review:
- Submittals shall have been reviewed and approved by the General Contractor / Construction Manager. Include approval stamp, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
 - Engineer will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.
9. Electrical Modifications:
- The electrical design indicated on the plans supports the Basis of Design specifications for the Plumbing systems at the time of design.
 - If Plumbing equipment is submitted with different electrical requirements, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to resolve all required electrical design changes, including, but not limited to: wire and conduit size, type or size of disconnect or overload protection, breaker coordination, point(s) of connection, etc. Any corrections required shall be provided at no additional cost.
 - Submittal shall clearly show the electrical design revisions with a written statement that this change will be provided at no additional cost. Submittals made with no written reference to the electrical design revisions will be presumed to work with the electrical design.
- B. Processing Time: Time of review shall commence on Engineer's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of the failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
- Allow not less than 15 days for submittal review. Allow not less than 21 days for review of large or complex submittals. Submittals received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
 - If Contractor transmits more than five submittals over two consecutive business days, review time shall increase by no less than 7 days for submittal review.
 - Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Engineer will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 - Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received. Time of review shall commence on receipt of all other related submittals.



- 1 C. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the
 2 contract documents by the Engineer's approval of shop drawings, product data, samples, or
 3 similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Engineer in writing of such
 4 deviation at the time of submittal, and the Engineer has given written approval to the specific
 5 deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in shop
 6 drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals by the Engineer's approval thereof.

7 1.12 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- 8 A. Sustainable Certification Program: Comply with requirements for Project to obtain certification
 9 based on GBI's "Green Globes for New Construction" (hereafter, "Certification Program").
 10 Compliance with requirements needed to obtain Certification Program prerequisites and credits
 11 may be used as one criterion to evaluate substitution requests and comparable product requests.
- 12 B. Related Requirements:
- 13 1. General and Supplementary Conditions
 - 14 2. Division 01 for general sustainable design certification and reporting requirements.
 - 15 3. Comply with requirements in various Division 21 Sections specifying sustainable products
 16 and methods.
- 17 C. Sustainable design submittals are in addition to other submittals.
- 18 1. Comply with "Submittals" article in this Section.
 - 19 2. If submitted item is identical to that submitted to comply with other requirements, include
 20 an additional copy with other submittal as a record of compliance with indicated
 21 Certification Program requirements instead of separate sustainable design submittal. Mark
 22 additional copy "Sustainable design submittal."
- 23 D. Sustainable Design Documentation Submittals
- 24 1. Environmental management system documents.
 - 25 2. Environmental product declarations.
 - 26 3. Third-party certifications based on multiple attribute standards.
 - 27 4. Product Data and laboratory test reports for adhesives and sealants indicating VOC
 28 content and compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
 - 29 5. Product Data and laboratory test reports for paints indicating VOC content and compliance
 30 with requirements for low-emitting materials.

31 1.13 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- 32 A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in
 33 individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop
 34 Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required
 35 to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
- 36 1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate
 37 and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include
 38 the following information, as applicable:



- 1 a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings.
 2 Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of
 3 various systems and components.
- 4 b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings by
 5 multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the
 6 information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before
 7 submitting for review.
- 8 c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural,
 9 structural, civil, fire protection, mechanical, electrical, and communication systems.
- 10 d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated
 11 replacement of components during the life of the installation.
- 12 e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers,
 13 valves, pull boxes, junction boxes, and other controls.
- 14 f. Indicate required installation sequences.
- 15 g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear
 16 to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements.
 17 Provide alternative sketches to Engineer indicating proposed resolution of such
 18 conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered
 19 changes to the Contract.
- 20 B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
- 21 1. Floor Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and Work associated with
 22 Divisions 21 through 29, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and
 23 coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved. Supplement
 24 plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
- 25 a. Mechanical Systems (Divisions 21, 22, 23, 25):
- 26 1) Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork and piping runs, including insulation,
 27 heat tracing, bracing, flanges, and support systems. Indicate proposed
 28 changes to layout.
- 29 2) Locations and sizes of major equipment and components.
- 30 3) Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
- 31 4) Structural members to which ductwork and piping will be attached or
 32 suspended from.
- 33 b. Electrical and Communication Systems (Divisions 25, 26, 27, 28, 29):
- 34 1) Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
- 35 2) Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other
 36 fire-alarm locations.
- 37 3) Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and
 38 motor-control center locations.
- 39 4) Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center
 40 lines.
- 41 5) Structural members to which luminaire and equipment will be attached or
 42 suspended from.
- 43 6) Lightning protection system components attaching to or penetrating through
 44 the roofing and moisture protection systems, coordinated with the roofing
 45 system manufacturer.
- 46 7) Cable tray layout, offsets, transitions, clearances, elevations, and
 47 relationships between components and adjacent structural, mechanical and
 48 electrical elements.



- 1 2. Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show locations of visible devices mounted to, suspended from,
2 or penetrating through the ceiling, relative to the finished ceiling, including the following:
- 3 a. Fire suppression sprinklers and nozzles.
4 b. Air outlets and inlets.
5 c. Luminaires (Lighting fixtures).
6 d. Lighting control devices.
7 e. Speakers.
8 f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
9 g. Access control devices.
10 h. Video surveillance devices.
11 i. Fire alarm devices.
12 j. Access panels.
13 k. Perimeter moldings.
14 l. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of the
15 plane of the ceiling.
- 16 3. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, equipment for
17 Divisions 21 through 29, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to
18 accommodate layout of components indicated on Drawings for Divisions 21 through 29.
19 Indicate areas of conflict between components of Divisions 21 through 29.
- 20 4. Equipment Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for equipment rooms showing plans and
21 elevations of equipment for Divisions 21 through 29.
- 22 5. Penetrations: Indicate locations of penetrations and openings in structural components,
23 smoke barriers, and fire-rated construction.
- 24 6. Review: Engineer will review coordination drawings to confirm that in general the Work is
25 being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's
26 responsibility. If Engineer determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in
27 sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Engineer will so inform Contractor,
28 who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
- 29 C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following
30 requirements:
- 31 1. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.
32 2. BIM File Incorporation: Develop and incorporate coordination drawing files into BIM
33 established for Project.
- 34 a. Perform three-dimensional component conflict analysis as part of preparation of
35 coordination drawings. Resolve component conflicts prior to submittal. Indicate
36 where conflict resolution requires modification of design requirements by Engineer.
- 37 3. Engineer will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing
38 coordination digital data files.
- 39 a. Engineer makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital
40 data files as they relate to Drawings.
41 b. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form
42 acceptable to Engineer.



1 **1.14 SUBSTITUTIONS**

2 A. By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment
3 described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are
4 encouraged to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the
5 Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.

6 B. Substitution Requests shall include, at a minimum:

- 7 1. Statement indicating why specified material, equipment, or installation method cannot be
8 provided, if applicable.
- 9 2. Coordination of information, including a list of changes and revisions needed to other parts
10 of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be
11 necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
- 12 3. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the
13 Work specified. Include an annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant
14 qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect,
15 sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements
16 indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
- 17 4. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and
18 installation procedures.
- 19 5. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions
20 with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If
21 specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time,
22 include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of
23 purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
- 24 6. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
- 25 7. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the
26 Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related
27 materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
- 28 8. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become
29 necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.

30 C. Procurement Substitution Requests submitted prior to receipt of bids will be received and
31 considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Engineer;
32 otherwise, requests will be returned without action:

- 33 1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment are received no later than 10 days
34 prior to date of bid opening.
- 35 2. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
- 36 3. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents,
37 including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
- 38 4. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.

39 D. Substitutions for Cause, as required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of
40 product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms will be received and
41 considered by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will
42 be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- 43 1. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce
44 indicated results.
- 45 2. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- 46 3. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 47 4. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- 48 5. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.



- 1 6. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- 2 7. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has
- 3 been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible
- 4 with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- 5 E. Substitutions for Convenience, not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may
- 6 offer advantage to Contractor or Owner, will be received and considered by Owner, as determined
- 7 by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned
- 8 without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- 9 1. Requested substitution is received within 60 days after the Notice of Award.
- 10 2. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy
- 11 conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner
- 12 must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Engineer
- 13 for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and
- 14 similar considerations.
- 15 3. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
- 16 4. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce
- 17 indicated results.
- 18 5. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- 19 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 20 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- 21 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- 22 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- 23 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has
- 24 been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible
- 25 with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- 26 F. If a requested substitution is approved but contains differences or omissions not specifically
- 27 identified to the attention of the Engineer in the substitution request, the Owner reserves the right
- 28 to require equal or similar features to be added to the substituted products or to have the
- 29 substituted products replaced at the Contractor's expense.

30 **1.15 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

- 31 A. Recording: Maintain one copy of the Contract Documents and Shop Drawings during the
- 32 construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project
- 33 record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- 34 B. Preparation:
- 35 1. Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings:
- 36 a. Mark revisions to show where the actual installation varies from that shown
- 37 originally.
- 38 b. Mark record sets completely and accurately, including important information that
- 39 was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
- 40 c. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish
- 41 between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
- 42 d. Record underground and under-slab piping installed, dimensioning exact location
- 43 and elevation of piping.
- 44 2. Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from
- 45 that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.



- 1 3. Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies
2 substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
- 3 C. Deliver: Prior to Final Completion, provide record documents to Owner as indicated below:
- 4 1. Record Drawings: Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of
5 prints.
6 2. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications,
7 including addenda and contract modifications.
8 3. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each
9 submittal.
10 4. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Submit annotated PDF electronic files directories of
11 each submittal.

12 **1.16 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- 13 A. Prepare and submit a comprehensive manual of emergency, operation, and maintenance data
14 and materials in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01,
15 and the following:
- 16 1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating
17 operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part
18 of a system, including:
- 19 a. Information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and
20 routine and special operating procedures.
21 b. Manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventative maintenance procedures
22 and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, list of spare parts,
23 and warranty information.
- 24 2. Submit manuals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through
25 email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification
26 Sections. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

27 **1.17 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

- 28 A. Prepare and provide services of qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust,
29 operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not a part of a system in accordance
30 with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, individual Specification Sections,
31 and the following:
- 32 1. Demonstration and training shall occur upon completion of the Work and at a time
33 designated by the Owner's representative.
34 2. Provide a high-resolution, digital video recording of each training session to the Owner.

35 **1.18 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 36 A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage,
37 deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written
38 instructions.



- 1 B. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to
2 determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

3 **1.19 WARRANTY**

- 4 A. Warranty work and equipment within specified warranty period. During the warranty period,
5 provide labor and materials to make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects
6 or omissions in materials or workmanship without expense to the Owner.

- 7 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

- 8 B. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other
9 warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on
10 product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of Contract
11 Documents.

- 12 C. Owner reserves the right to make emergency repairs as required to keep equipment in operation
13 without voiding Contractor's Guarantee Bond nor relieving the Contractor of responsibilities
14 during the warranty period.

15 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NONE)**

16 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

17 **3.1 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

- 18 A. Examine all drawings and specifications carefully before submitting a bid. Architectural drawings
19 take precedence over mechanical or electrical drawings with reference to building construction.

- 20 B. For purposes of clearness and legibility, drawings are essentially diagrammatic and, although
21 size and location of equipment are drawn to scale wherever possible, Contractor shall make use
22 of all data in all of the contract documents and shall verify this information at the building site.

- 23 C. The drawings indicate required size and points of termination of pipes, conduits, and ducts and
24 suggest proper routes to conform to structure avoid obstructions and preserve clearances.
25 However, it is not intended that drawings indicate all necessary offsets, and it shall be the
26 responsibility of the Contractor to make the installation in such a manner as to conform to
27 structure, avoid obstructions, preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear,
28 without further instructions or cost to the Owner.

- 29 D. Furnish, install and/or connect with appropriate services all items shown on any drawing without
30 additional compensation.

- 31 E. Any and all questions about a subcontractor's scope of work responsibility shall be addressed to
32 and answered by the General Contractor / Construction Manager.

- 33 F. Questions About Construction Documents: Any and all questions shall be submitted through the
34 proper channels IN WRITING and, in turn, shall be answered by the Engineer in writing. All
35 telephone conversations shall be considered unofficial and, as such, shall not be considered
36 official or binding responses to Contractor's questions.



- 1 G. Drawings, specifications, or other documents issued by the Engineer in electronic format and/or
 2 electronic media are provided for convenience only and are not intended for use as Contract
 3 Documents.
- 4 1. The electronic files are provided merely as a convenience to the Recipient.
 5 2. The electronic files do not replace or supplement the paper copies of any drawings,
 6 specifications, or other documents included in the Contract Documents for use on the
 7 project.
 8 3. The Engineer makes no representation, warranty, or guarantee that electronic files:
- 9 a. Are suitable for any other usage or purpose.
 10 b. Have any particular durability.
 11 c. Will not damage or impair the Recipient's computer or software.
 12 d. Contain no errors or mechanical flaws or other discrepancies that may render them
 13 unsuitable for the purpose intended by the Recipient.
- 14 4. Due to the unsecured nature of the electronic files and the inability of Engineer or the
 15 Recipient to establish controls over their use, the Engineer assumes no responsibility for
 16 any consequences arising out of the use of the data. It is the sole responsibility of the
 17 Recipient to check the validity of all information contained therein. The Recipient shall at
 18 all times refer to the signed and sealed drawings, specification or other documents for the
 19 project during all phases of the project. The Recipient shall assume all risks and liabilities
 20 resulting from the use of the electronic files.

21 3.2 SUPERVISION OF WORK

- 22 A. Perform all work under the direct supervision of an experienced, qualified superintendent. The
 23 Engineer has the right to remove a superintendent who, in the Engineer's opinion, is not
 24 satisfactory.

25 3.3 EXAMINATION

- 26 A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and
 27 construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and
 28 verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and
 29 other construction affecting the Work.
- 30 B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work,
 31 examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated,
 32 for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting
 33 performance.
- 34 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of
 35 connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 36 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to
 37 be installed.
 38 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing
 39 finishes or primers.
- 40 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding
 41 with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.



1 **3.4 PREPARATION**

2 A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or
3 relocate existing utility structures, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or
4 affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.

5 B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck
6 measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to
7 other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before
8 fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the
9 Work.

10 C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown
11 diagrammatically on Drawings.

12 D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for
13 clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of
14 Contractor, submit a request for information to Engineer.

15 **3.5 INSTALLATION**

16 A. Install materials and equipment in a professional manner. The Engineer may direct replacement
17 of items which, in the Engineer's opinion, do not present a professional appearance or do not
18 allow adequate space for maintenance. Replace or reinstall items at the expense of the
19 Contractor.

20 B. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and
21 elevation, as indicated.

- 22 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
23 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance
24 and ease of removal for replacement.
25 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
26 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in
27 unoccupied spaces.

28 C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in
29 applications indicated.

30 D. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results.
31 Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.

32 E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or
33 loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.

34 F. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction
35 items on site and placement in permanent locations.

36 G. Obstructions

- 37 1. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface
38 obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not
39 guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.



- 1 2. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative,
2 utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information
3 has been provided. Verify locations given.
- 4 3. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work,
5 reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever
6 work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and
7 structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.
- 8 4. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction,
9 whether or not such existing facilities are shown.
- 10 H. Where "rated" walls, floor, roofs and ceilings are penetrated or cut to install equipment, materials,
11 devices, etc. the Contractor shall provide and install all materials required to re-establish the rating
12 of the wall, floor, roof, or ceiling to the satisfaction of the authority having jurisdiction.
- 13 I. Structural Elements: Do not cut structural elements without written approval from Engineer. Notify
14 Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding.
15 If approved by Engineer:
- 16 1. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching.
- 17 2. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying
18 capacity or increase deflection.
- 19 J. Space Requirements: Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and
20 location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material which is not suitable
21 in this respect.
- 22 K. Tools and Equipment: Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If
23 objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by
24 equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions without cost to the Owner.
- 25 L. Phasing: Provide all temporary valves, piping, ductwork, equipment, and devices as required.
26 Maintain temporary services to areas as required. Remove all temporary material and equipment
27 on completion of work unless Engineer concurs that such material and equipment would be
28 beneficial to the Owner on a permanent basis.
- 29 **3.6 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS**
- 30 A. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by
31 Owner's construction personnel.
- 32 **3.7 PROTECTION OF EXISTING FINISHES, CARPET, AND FURNISHING**
- 33 A. Protect existing finishes, carpet, casework, furnishing, and other building components against
34 damage and soiling throughout construction activities. Take care during construction not to
35 damage existing items. Contractor shall be responsible for replacing damaged material or
36 restoring damaged materials to the Owner's satisfaction.
- 37 B. When permitted by Engineer, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location
38 during construction and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after construction
39 operations are complete.



1 C. Furniture may be relocated during construction and reinstalled in their original locations after
2 construction operations are complete.

3 D. Means and methods for protection are the responsibility of the Contractor. Utilize plywood,
4 polyethylene sheeting, dust cloths, and other means as required.

5 **3.8 CUTTING AND PATCHING**

6 A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed
7 with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.

8 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of
9 other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original
10 condition.

11 B. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.

12 C. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide
13 protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during
14 cutting and patching operations.

15 D. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Engineer of locations
16 and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. Shore, brace, and
17 support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements
18 in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.

19 E. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a
20 manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased
21 maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.

22 F. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components
23 in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity
24 to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or
25 safety.

26 G. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of
27 cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in
28 Engineer's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction
29 that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

30 H. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar
31 operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or
32 adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with
33 original Installer's written recommendations.

34 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering
35 and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum
36 disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.

37 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.

38 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a
39 diamond-core drill.

40 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where
41 required by cutting and patching operations.



- 1 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be
2 removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent
3 entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
4 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- 5 I. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations
6 following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable.
7 Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where
8 applicable or with in-place materials.
- 9 1. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the
10 fullest extent possible.
11 2. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed,
12 will provide a match acceptable to Engineer for the visual and functional performance of
13 in-place materials.
- 14 J. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint,
15 mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.
- 16 **3.9 PAINTING**
- 17 A. Comply with requirements with General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, Division 09,
18 and individual Specification Sections.
- 19 B. Touch-up factory finishes on equipment provided under Division 21. Obtain matched color
20 coatings from the manufacturer and apply as directed. If corrosion is found during inspection on
21 the surface of any equipment, clean, prime, and paint, as required.
- 22 C. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
- 23 1. Uninsulated Metal Piping (bare copper piping not required to be painted unless noted
24 otherwise):
- 25 a. Natural or LP Gas: Yellow
26 b. Other: To be determined by Engineer
- 27 2. Uninsulated plastic piping
28 3. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
29 4. Equipment, and pipe insulation having a cotton or canvas insulation covering or other
30 paintable jacket material, as outlined in individual Specification Sections.
- 31 D. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
- 32 1. Equipment and pipe insulation having a cotton or canvas insulation covering or other
33 paintable jacket material, as outlined in individual Specification Sections.
34 2. Other items as directed by Engineer.
- 35 **3.10 REPAIR OF WORK**
- 36 A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of
37 Substantial Completion.



- 1 B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective
 2 parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting
 3 operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide
 4 replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore
 5 damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
- 6 1. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces.
 7 Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
- 8 a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including
 9 mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and
 10 identification.
- 11 2. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede
 12 operation or reduce longevity.
- 13 **3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**
- 14 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and
 15 inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- 16 B. Tests
- 17 1. Include all tests specified and/or required under laws, rules and regulations of all
 18 departments having jurisdiction. Tests shall also be performed as indicated herein and
 19 other sections of the specifications.
- 20 2. After all systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an
 21 operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequence and operation
 22 throughout the range of operation. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper
 23 functioning of all systems.
- 24 3. All parts of the work and associated equipment shall be tested and adjusted to work
 25 properly and be left in perfect operating condition.
- 26 4. Correct defects disclosed by these tests without any additional cost to the Owner. Repeat
 27 tests on repaired or replaced work.
- 28 5. Maintain a log of all tests being conducted and have it available for review by the Engineer.
 29 Log to indicate date, type of tests, duration, and defects noted and when corrected.
- 30 6. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual Specification Sections.
- 31 C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's
 32 responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for
 33 construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- 34 **3.12 CLEANING**
- 35 A. Progress Cleaning: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce
 36 requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
- 37 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and
 38 debris.
- 39 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if
 40 the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.



- 1 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark
2 containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- 3 B. Final Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean
4 each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and
5 maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- 6 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of
7 Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
- 8 a. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from
9 Project site.
- 10 b. Remove labels that are not permanent.
- 11 c. Wipe surfaces of equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar
12 droppings, and other foreign substances.

13 **END OF SECTION 22 01 00**
14



1 THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 22 05 13 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose,
8 horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current
9 power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped
10 separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

11 **1.3 COORDINATION**

- 12 A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the
13 following:
- 14 1. Motor controllers.
 - 15 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 16 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 17 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

18 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

19 **2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS**

- 20 A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

21 **2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS**

- 22 A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above
23 sea level.
- 24 B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected
25 loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating
26 sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

27 **2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS**

- 28 A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.



- 1 B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- 2 C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- 3 D. Power Factor: 0.80.
- 4 E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- 5 F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- 6 G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- 7 H. Insulation: Class F.
- 8 I. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- 9 J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 10 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 11 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- 12 K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame
 - 13 sizes smaller than 324T.

14 **2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS**

- 15 A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection
 - 16 requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box,
 - 17 suited to control method.
- 18 B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers:
 - 19 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and
 - 20 tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by
 - 21 pulse-width-modulated inverters.

22 **2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS**

- 23 A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements
 - 24 of specific motor application:
 - 25 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 26 B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
 - 27 C. Bearings: Pre-lubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and
 - 28 thrust loading.
 - 29 D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
 - 30 E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when
 - 31 winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation.



1 Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal
2 range.

3 **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)**

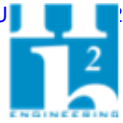
4 **END OF SECTION 22 05 13**

5



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 22 05 17 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Sleeves.
9 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
10 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
11 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
12 5. Grout.
13 6. Silicone sealants.

14 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 15 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

16 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

17 **2.1 SLEEVES**

- 18 A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, with plain
19 ends.

- 20 B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with
21 welded longitudinal joint.

22 **2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS**

- 23 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
24 following:

- 25 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
26 2. Metraflex Company (The).
27 3. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.



- 1 B. Description:
- 2 1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space
3 between piping and sleeve.
- 4 2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.
- 5 3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include
6 type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
- 7 4. Pressure Plates: Composite plastic.
- 8 5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates
9 to sealing elements.
- 10 **2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS**
- 11 A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in
12 concrete slab or wall.
- 13 B. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.
- 14 **2.4 GROUT**
- 15 A. Description: Non-shrinking, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or
16 floors.
- 17 B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry,
18 hydraulic-cement grout.
- 19 C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- 20 D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.
- 21 **2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS**
- 22 A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, non-sag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent
23 movement capability, non-traffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C 920, Type S,
24 Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
- 25 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
- 26 B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent
27 movement capability, traffic- and non-traffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant;
28 ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling)
29 formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- 30 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
- 31 C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and
32 cure in place to produce a flexible, non-shrinking foam.
- 33 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.



1 PART 3 - EXECUTION

2 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- 3 A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- 4 B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to
5 provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
- 6 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- 7 C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and
8 walls are constructed.
- 9 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
- 10 a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or
11 other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
- 12 2. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls
13 without sleeve-seal system.
- 14 D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
- 15 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
- 16 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between
17 sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
- 18 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants
19 appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- 20 E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier
21 Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at
22 pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with
23 requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Division 07 "Penetration
24 Firestopping."

25 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- 26 A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service
27 piping entries into building.
- 28 B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for
29 sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration,
30 assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and
31 sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make
32 a watertight seal.

33 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- 34 A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.



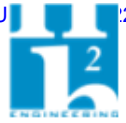
- 1 B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and
- 2 walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- 3 C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- 4 D. Use grout or silicone sealant to seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

5 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 6 A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 7 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair
 - 8 leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- 9 B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- 10 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

11 **3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE**

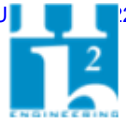
- 12 A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 13 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - 14 a. Piping Smaller than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - 15 b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - 16 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - 17 a. Piping Smaller than NPS 4 (DN 100): Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 18 b. Piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 19 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping
 - 20 and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 21 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - 22 a. Piping Smaller than NPS 4 (DN 100): Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 23 b. Piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 24 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping
 - 25 and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 26 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - 27 a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - 28 b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - 29 5. Interior Partitions:



- 1 a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
- 2 b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

3 **END OF SECTION 22 05 17**

4



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 22 05 18 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Escutcheons.
9 2. Floor plates.

10 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 11 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

12 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

13 **2.1 ESCUTCHEONS**

- 14 A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and polished brass finish and
15 setscrew fastener.
- 16 B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished, chrome-plated
17 finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- 18 C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

19 **2.2 FLOOR PLATES**

- 20 A. Split Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.
- 21 B. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange

22 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

23 **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- 24 A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.



- 1 B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and
2 with OD that completely covers opening.
- 3 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
- 4 a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
5 b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
6 c. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
7 d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast
8 brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
9 e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with
10 polished, chrome-plated finish.
11 f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece cast brass with rough-brass
12 finish.
13 g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece cast brass with rough-brass finish.
- 14 C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- 15 D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD
16 that completely covers opening.
- 17 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor plate.
18 2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

19 **3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 20 A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

21 **END OF SECTION 22 05 18**



1 **SECTION 22 05 19 - METERS AND GAGES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
8 1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
9 2. Thermowells.
10 3. Dial-type pressure gages.
11 4. Gage attachments.
12 5. Test plugs.
13 6. Test-plug kits.

14 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 15 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

16 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

18 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 19 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and
20 maintenance manuals.

21 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

22 **2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS**

- 23 A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
24 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Terrice H.O.
25 Co.; BX9 or comparable product by one of the following:
26 a. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
27 b. Winters Instruments - U.S.



- 1 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2 3. Case: Cast aluminum; 9-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3 4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4 5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
 - 5 6. Tube Background: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings
 - 6 graduated in deg F.
 - 7 7. Window: Glass.
 - 8 8. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
- 9 a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
- 10 9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 11 10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of
 - 12 1.5 percent of scale range.

13 2.2 THERMOWELLS

14 A. Thermowells:

- 15 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 16 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
 - 17 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR (copper nicket 90-10).
 - 18 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES (stainless steel).
 - 19 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
 - 20 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
 - 21 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 22 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 - 23 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 - 24 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
 - 25 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of
 - 26 thermometer connection.
- 27 B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

28 2.3 PRESSURE GAGES

29 A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

- 30 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Terrice H.O.
- 31 Co.; 600CB or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 32 a. Ashcroft Inc.
 - 33 b. Miljoco Corporation.
 - 34 c. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - 35 d. Winters Instruments - U.S.
- 36 2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
- 37 3. Case: Solid-front, pressure relief type(s); cast aluminum; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
- 38 4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
- 39 5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-
- 40 outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.



- 1 6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
- 2 7. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
- 3 8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- 4 9. Window: Glass.
- 5 10. Ring: Stainless steel.
- 6 11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

7 2.4 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

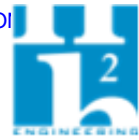
- 8 A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- 9
- 10 B. Valves: Brass ball, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

11 2.5 TEST PLUGS

- 12 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Peterson
- 13 Equipment Co., Inc.; Model 110 XL or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 14 1. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - 15 2. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - 16 3. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- 17 B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- 18 C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include
- 19 extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- 20 D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- 21 E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- 22 F. Core Inserts: EPDM self-sealing rubber.

23 2.6 TEST-PLUG KITS

- 24 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Peterson
- 25 Equipment Co., Inc.; Model 1500XL or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 26 1. Miljoco Corporation.
 - 27 2. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - 28 3. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - 29 4. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- 30 B. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing two thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and
- 31 carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of
- 32 diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- 33 C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and
- 34 tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.



- 1 D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and
2 tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.
- 3 E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch-diameter dial and probe.
4 Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.
- 5 F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

6 PART 3 - EXECUTION

7 3.1 INSTALLATION

- 8 A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches into fluid and in vertical position
9 in piping tees.
- 10 B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if
11 required to match sizes.
- 12 C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- 13 D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- 14 E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- 15 F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the
16 most readable position.
- 17 G. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- 18 H. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- 19 I. Install thermometers in the following locations:
- 20 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
21 2. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
- 22 J. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
- 23 1. Building water service entrance into building.
24 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
25 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

26 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- 27 A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and
28 maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.



1 **3.3 ADJUSTING**

2 A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3 **3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE**

4 A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be the following:

5 1. Metal case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

6 B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger shall be the
7 following:

8 1. Metal case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
9 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

10 C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be the following:

11 1. Metal case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

12 D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller shall be the following:

13 1. Metal case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
14 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

15 E. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

16 **3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE**

17 A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F.

18 B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F.

19 **3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE**

20 A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be the following:

21 1. Solid-front, pressure-relief, direct-mounted, metal case.

22 B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be the following:

23 1. Solid-front, pressure-relief, direct-mounted, metal case.
24 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

25 C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be the following:

26 1. Solid-front, pressure-relief, direct-mounted, metal case.
27 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.



1 **3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE**

2 A. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi.

3 **END OF SECTION 22 05 19**

4



1 **SECTION 22 05 23.11 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Bronze ball valves.
9 2. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
10 3. Bronze swing check valves.
11 4. Iron swing check valves.
12 5. Iron, center-guided check valves.

13 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 14 A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
15 B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

16 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
18 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61.

19 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 20 A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

- 21 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
22 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and soldered ends.
23 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
24 4. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
25 5. Set check valves in either closed or open position.

- 26 B. Use the following precautions during storage:

- 27 1. Maintain valve end protection.
28 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If
29 outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.



- 1 C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use
2 operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

3 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

4 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- 5 A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single
6 manufacturer.
- 7 B. ASME Compliance:
- 8 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
9 2. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
10 3. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
11 4. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
12 5. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
13 6. ASME B31.9 for building service piping valves.
- 14 C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- 15 D. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.
- 16 E. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with
17 copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- 18 F. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system
19 pressures and temperatures.
- 20 G. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- 21 H. Valve Actuator Types:
- 22 1. Gear Actuator: For valves NPS 8 and larger.
23 2. Handlever: For valves NPS 6 and smaller.
- 24 I. Valves in Insulated Piping:
- 25 1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
26 2. Extended operating handles of non-thermal conductive material and protective sleeves
27 that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
28 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.
- 29 J. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.
- #### 30 2.2 BRONZE BALL VALVES
- 31 A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
- 32 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
33 following:



- 1 a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- 2 b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- 3 c. Hammond Valve.
- 4 d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- 5 e. NIBCO INC.
- 6 f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

7 2. Description:

- 8 a. Standard: MSS SP-110 or MSS-145.
- 9 b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- 10 c. Body Design: Two piece.
- 11 d. Body Material: Bronze.
- 12 e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
- 13 f. Seats: PTFE.
- 14 g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- 15 h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- 16 i. Port: Full.

17 **2.3 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES**

18 A. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

- 19 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 20 following:
- 21 a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- 22 b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- 23 c. NIBCO INC.
- 24 d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

25 2. Description:

- 26 a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- 27 b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- 28 c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated
- 29 pressure without use of downstream flange.
- 30 d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- 31 e. Seat: EPDM.
- 32 f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- 33 g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

34 **2.4 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES**

35 A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 150:

- 36 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 37 following:
- 38 a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- 39 b. Milwaukee Valve Company.



- 1 c. NIBCO INC.
 2 d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

3 2. Description:

- 4 a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 5 b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 6 c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 7 d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 8 e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
 9 f. Disc: PTFE.

10 **2.5 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES**

11 A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats, Class 125:

- 12 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 13 following:

- 14 a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 15 b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 16 c. NIBCO INC.
 17 d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

18 2. Description:

- 19 a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 20 b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 21 c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 22 d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 23 e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
 24 f. Trim: Bronze.
 25 g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

26 **2.6 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED, SPRING-LOADED CHECK VALVES**

27 A. Iron Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 125:

- 28 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 29 following:

- 30 a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 31 b. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
 32 c. NIBCO INC.
 33 d. Watts Regulator Co.; A division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

34 2. Description:

- 35 a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 36 b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 37 c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.



- 1 d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
- 2 e. Ends: Flanged.
- 3 f. Seat: Bronze.

4 PART 3 - EXECUTION

5 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 6 A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove
7 special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and
8 handling.
- 9 B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made
10 accessible by such operations.
- 11 C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- 12 D. Examine mating flange faces for damage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material.
13 Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that
14 it is free from defects and damage.
- 15 E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

16 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- 17 A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service,
18 maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- 19 B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- 20 C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- 21 D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- 22 E. Check Valves: Install check valves for proper direction of flow.
 - 23 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
 - 24 2. Center-Guided Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
 - 25 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
- 26 F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing
27 Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

28 3.3 ADJUSTING

- 29 A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but
30 before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.



1 **3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS**

2 A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP
3 ratings may be substituted.

4 B. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

5 1. Shutoff Service:

6 a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball valves.

7 b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Butterfly valves.

8 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.

9 3. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:

10 a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc.

11 b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron, center-guided, metal-seat check valves.

12 C. Select valves with the following end connections:

13 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-
14 end option or press-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

15 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged or threaded.

16 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.

17 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

18 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged or threaded.

19 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.

20 **3.5 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE**

21 A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

22 1. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with full port and stainless-steel trim. Provide with threaded
23 or solder [**or press connection**] joint ends.

24 2. Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc, Class 150, with threaded [**or press**
25 **connection**] joint ends.

26 B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

27 1. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, aluminum-bronze disc.

28 2. Iron swing check valves with metal seats, Class 125, with flanged end connections.

29 3. Iron, center-guided check valves with globe, metal seat, Class 125, with flanged end
30 connections.

31 **END OF SECTION 22 05 23.11**



1 **SECTION 22 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
9 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
10 3. Metal framing systems.
11 4. Fastener systems.
12 5. Pipe-positioning systems.
13 6. Equipment supports.

14 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 15 A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

16 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 18 B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the
19 following:

- 20 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
21 2. Metal framing systems.
22 3. Pipe stands.
23 4. Equipment supports.

24 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

25 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 26 A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Division 01 "Quality
27 Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

- 28 B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall
29 withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated
30 according to ASCE/SEI 7.



- 1 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting
- 2 combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
- 3 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of
- 4 supported equipment and connected systems and components.

5 2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

6 A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

- 7 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
- 8 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pre-galvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
- 9 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated or epoxy powder coated.
- 10 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to
- 11 support bearing surface of piping.
- 12 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

13 B. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:

- 14 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated
- 15 components.
- 16 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

17 2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- ### 18 A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from
- 19 structural-carbon-steel shapes, with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and
- 20 U-bolts.

21 2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

22 A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

- 23 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 24 following:
 - 25 a. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 - 26 b. Flex-Strut Inc.
 - 27 c. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
- 28 2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels,
- 29 accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
- 30 3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
- 31 4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with intumed lips.
- 32 5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- 33 6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot
- 34 and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
- 35 7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- 36 8. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc or Hot-dip galvanized.

37 B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:



- 1 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels,
2 accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
- 3 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
- 4 3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
- 5 4. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
- 6 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot
7 and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
- 8 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- 9 7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dip galvanized

10 2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- 11 A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement
12 concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and
13 building materials where used.
- 14 B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland
15 cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads
16 and building materials where used.

17 2.6 PIPE-POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- 18 A. Description: IAPMO PS 42 positioning system composed of metal brackets, clips, and straps for
19 positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

20 2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- 21 A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-carbon-
22 steel shapes.

23 2.8 MATERIALS

- 24 A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221.
- 25 B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- 26 C. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and
27 galvanized.
- 28 D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M.
- 29 E. Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, non-shrink
30 and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
- 31 1. Properties: Non-staining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
- 32 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 APPLICATION**

3 A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping materials and installation, for
4 penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.

5 B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength
6 will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum
7 static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus
8 200 lb.

9 **3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

10 A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and
11 attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.

12 B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of
13 parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

14 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or
15 install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe
16 hangers.

17 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being
18 supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

19 C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support
20 together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

21 D. Fastener System Installation:

22 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less
23 than 4 inches thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use
24 operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners
25 according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.

26 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and
27 completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

28 E. Pipe-Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste
29 piping connections to each plumbing fixture.

30 F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts,
31 washers, and other accessories.

32 G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

33 H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping
34 systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of
35 expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

36 I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.



- 1 J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional
2 attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and
3 larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed;
4 fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- 5 K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses
6 from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- 7 L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed
8 maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- 9 M. Insulated Piping:
- 10 1. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39 protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is
11 indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
- 12 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40 protective shields on piping. Shields shall span an arc of 180
13 degrees. Secure shield to pipe on both ends with stainless steel bands.
- 14 3. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
- 15 a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
- 16 b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
- 17 c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
- 18 d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.

19 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- 20 A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support
21 equipment above floor.
- 22 B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- 23 C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

24 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- 25 A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment
26 supports.
- 27 B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be
28 shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- 29 C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 / D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding;
30 appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the
31 following:
- 32 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion
33 resistance of base metals.
- 34 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
- 35 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
- 36 4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so
37 contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.



1 **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- 2 A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve
3 indicated slope of pipe.
- 4 B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

5 **3.6 PAINTING**

- 6 A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately
7 after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting.
8 Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
- 9 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- 10 B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded, shop-
11 painted areas on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09.
- 12 C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply
13 galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780 / A 780M.

14 **3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE**

- 15 A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and
16 equipment.
- 17 B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in
18 piping system Sections.
- 19 C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will
20 not have field-applied finishes.
- 21 D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in
22 direct contact with copper tubing.
- 23 E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and metal framing
24 systems and attachments for general service applications.
- 25 F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- 26 G. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in
27 piping system Sections, install the following types:
- 28 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or
29 insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
- 30 2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to
31 NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
- 32 3. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-
33 pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
- 34 H. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system
35 Sections, install the following types:



- 1 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to
2 NPS 24.
- 3 I. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system
4 Sections, install the following types:
- 5 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with
6 insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
- 7 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to
8 prevent crushing insulation.
- 9 J. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not
10 specified in piping system Sections.
- 11 K. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not
12 specified in piping system Sections.
- 13 L. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building
14 attachments where required in concrete construction.
- 15 M. Use pipe-positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and
16 waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

17 **END OF SECTION 22 05 29**

18



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 22 05 48.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Elastomeric isolation pads.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 11 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation
12 device.
13 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each
14 type and size of vibration isolation device type required.

15 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

16 **2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS**

- 17 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mason Industries,
18 Inc.; Mason Super W or comparable product by one of the following:

- 19 a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
20 b. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

- 21 2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading
22 over pad area.
23 3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
24 4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
25 5. Surface Pattern: Waffle pattern.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 3 A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with
4 requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 5 B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before
6 installation.
- 7 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

8 **3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION**

- 9 A. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or
10 ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

11 **END OF SECTION 22 05 48.13**



1 **SECTION 22 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Equipment labels.
9 2. Warning signs and labels.
10 3. Pipe labels.
11 4. Valve tags.
12 5. Warning tags.

13 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 14 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- 15 B. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed
16 content for each label.
- 17 C. Valve numbering scheme.
- 18 D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

19 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

20 **2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS**

- 21 A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

- 22 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving,
23 1/8 inch thick and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- 24 2. Letter Color: White.
- 25 3. Background Color: Black.
- 26 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- 27 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than
28 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- 29 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches,
30 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for



- 1 greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the
2 size of principal lettering.
- 3 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
4 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

5 B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number.

6 C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, tabulate equipment label
7 content. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

8 **2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS**

9 A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch
10 thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

11 B. Letter Color: Black.

12 C. Background Color: Yellow.

13 D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

14 E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2
15 by 3/4 inch.

16 F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2
17 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater
18 viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal
19 lettering.

20 G. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

21 H. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

22 **2.3 PIPE LABELS**

23 A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering
24 indicating service, and showing flow direction.

25 B. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

26 C. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or
27 abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow
28 direction.

29 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both
30 directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.

31 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.



1 **2.4 VALVE TAGS**

2 A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-

3 inch numbers.

- 4 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped
- 5 holes for attachment hardware.
- 6 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain.

7 B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve

8 number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or

9 space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification.

10 Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

- 11 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

12 **2.5 WARNING TAGS**

13 A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock

14 with matte finish suitable for writing.

- 15 1. Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches.
- 16 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
- 17 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT
- 18 OPERATE."
- 19 4. Color: Safety yellow background with black lettering.

20 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

21 **3.1 PREPARATION**

22 A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification

23 devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and

24 encapsulants.

25 **3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

26 A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of

27 surfaces where devices are to be applied.

28 B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

29 C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

30 **3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION**

31 A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.



- 1 B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

2 **3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION**

- 3 A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings
4 in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels,
5 and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

- 6 1. Near each valve and control device.
7 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units.
8 Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
9 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
10 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed
11 piping.
12 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
13 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in
14 areas of congested piping and equipment.
15 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

- 16 B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including
17 pipes where flow is allowed in both directions. Install marker tape with arrows around the entire
18 circumference of the pipe at the beginning and end of the pipe-label content.

- 19 C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

- 20 1. Domestic Water Piping
21 a. Background: Safety green.
22 b. Letter Colors: White.
23 2. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
24 a. Background Color: Safety black.
25 b. Letter Color: White.

26 **3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION**

- 27 A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within
28 factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering
29 hose connections, and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged
30 valves in a valve schedule.

- 31 B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and
32 with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:

- 33 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
34 a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
35 b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
36 c. Sanitary Waste: 1-1/2 inches, round.

- 37 2. Valve-Tag Colors:



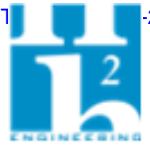
- 1 a. Cold Water: Natural.
- 2 b. Hot Water: Natural.

3 **3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION**

- 4 A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where
- 5 required.

6 **END OF SECTION 22 05 53**

7



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 22 07 16.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER EQUIPMENT**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing equipment:
8 1. Domestic water storage tanks.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor
11 permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).

- 12 B. Shop Drawings:

13 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 14 A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship
15 program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of
16 Apprenticeship and Training.

- 17 B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing
18 identical products according to ASTM E84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having
19 jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and
20 cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- 21 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed
22 index of 50 or less.
23 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed
24 index of 150 or less.

25 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 26 A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate
27 ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

28 **1.6 COORDINATION**

- 29 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in
30 Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."



- 1 B. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for equipment insulation
2 application.

3 1.7 SCHEDULING

- 4 A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after
5 installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have
6 satisfactory test results.
- 7 B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of
8 construction.

9 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

10 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- 11 A. Comply with requirements in "Equipment Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating
12 materials shall be applied.
- 13 B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- 14 C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less
15 than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- 16 D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable
17 according to ASTM C795.
- 18 E. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting
19 resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C1393, Type II or
20 Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5
21 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F
22 or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- 23 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 24 a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
- 25 b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
- 26 c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
- 27 d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

28 2.2 ADHESIVES

- 29 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding
30 insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- 31 B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- 32 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:



- 1 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 2 Company; CP-127.
 3 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 4 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 5 Company; 85-60/85-70.
 6 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
- 7 C. ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap
 8 seams and joints.

9 **2.3 MASTICS AND COATINGS**

- 10 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 11 B. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
- 12 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 13 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 14 Company; CP-10.
 15 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 16 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 17 Company; 46-50.
 18 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
- 19 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM 96, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's
 20 recommended dry film thickness.
- 21 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
- 22 4. Color: White.

23 **2.4 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS**

- 24 A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When
 25 factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
- 26 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing;
 27 complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.

28 **2.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS**

- 29 A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- 30 B. Metal Jacket:
- 31 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005,
 32 Temper H-14.
- 33 a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
- 34 b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.



- 1 c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.
 2 d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.

3 2.6 TAPES

- 4 A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive,
 5 complying with ASTM C1136.
- 6 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 7 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 - 8 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 9 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 10 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 11 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

12 2.7 SECUREMENTS

13 A. Bands:

- 14 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch
 15 wide with wing seal.
- 16 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch
 17 thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.
- 18 3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept
 19 metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

20 B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

- 21 1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to
 22 projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in
 23 position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
- 24 a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 25 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
 - 26 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
 - 27 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
 - 28 b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches
 29 square.
 - 30 c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-
 31 diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - 32 d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated
 33 capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without
 34 damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
 - 35 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick,
 36 galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in
 37 place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.



- 1 a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 2 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC 150.
- 3 2) GEMCO; R-150.
- 4 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
- 5 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
- 6 b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to
- 7 ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- 8 C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

9 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

10 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 11 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
- 12 and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
- 13 1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of
- 14 defects.
- 15 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- 16 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

17 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 18 A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will
- 19 adversely affect insulation application.

20 **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- 21 A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces;
- 22 free of voids throughout the length of equipment.
- 23 B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required
- 24 for each item as specified in insulation system schedules.
- 25 C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install
- 26 accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or
- 27 dry state.
- 28 D. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- 29 E. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- 30 F. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with
- 31 adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.



- 1 G. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- 2 H. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet
3 and dry film thicknesses.
- 4 I. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
- 5 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
- 6 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket.
7 Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip,
8 spaced 4 inches o.c.
- 9 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal
10 seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps
11 with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
- 12 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written
13 instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
- 14 J. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal
15 thickness.
- 16 K. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking
17 due to thermal movement.
- 18 L. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas.
19 Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches
20 similar to butt joints.
- 21 M. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
- 22 1. Vibration-control devices.
- 23 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
- 24 3. Nameplates and data plates.
- 25 4. Manholes.
- 26 5. Handholes.
- 27 6. Cleanouts.

28 3.4 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION

- 29 A. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe, and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation
30 with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
- 31 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit
32 area, for 50 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
- 33 2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including
34 contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end
35 joints.
- 36 3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
- 37 4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on
38 sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
- 39 a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
- 40 b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service
41 temperature and with substrate.



- 1 c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation
 2 end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
 3 d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 4 e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks
 5 and vessels.
 6 f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
 7 g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with
 8 insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation
 9 facing.
- 10 5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band
 11 material compatible with insulation materials.
 12 6. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
 13 7. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes,
 14 handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
 15 8. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and
 16 nameplates.
 17 9. Apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

18 3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- 19 A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end
 20 joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof
 21 sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12
 22 inches o.c. and at end joints.

23 3.6 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

- 24 A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for
 25 a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- 26 B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.
- 27 C. Domestic hot-water storage tank insulation shall be the following:
- 28 1. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: Of thickness to provide an R-value of 12.5.

29 3.7 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- 30 A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-
 31 applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- 32 B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- 33 C. Equipment, Concealed:
- 34 1. None.
- 35 D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:



- 1 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.016 inch thick.
- 2 E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72
3 Inches:
- 4 1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed with 1-1/4-Inch-Deep Corrugations: 0.032 inch thick.
- 5 **3.8 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE**
- 6 A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-
7 applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- 8 B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- 9 C. Equipment, Concealed:
- 10 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.024 inch thick.
- 11 D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
- 12 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.024 inch thick.
- 13 E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72
14 Inches:
- 15 1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed with 1-1/4-Inch-Deep Corrugations: 0.032 inch thick.
- 16 **END OF SECTION 22 07 16.12**



1 **SECTION 22 07 19.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:

- 8 1. Domestic hot-water piping.
9 2. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.

10 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 11 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor
12 permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).

- 13 B. Shop Drawings:

- 14 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of
15 insulation and hanger.
16 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each
17 type of insulation.
18 3. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access
19 panels.
20 4. Detail application of field-applied jackets.

21 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 22 A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship
23 program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of
24 Apprenticeship and Training.

- 25 B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing
26 identical products according to ASTM E84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having
27 jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and
28 cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- 29 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed
30 index of 50 or less.
31 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed
32 index of 150 or less.



1 C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for
2 miscellaneous components:

3 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

4 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

5 A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate
6 ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

7 **1.6 COORDINATION**

8 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in
9 Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

10 B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before
11 preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation
12 of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

13 C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing, where applicable.

14 **1.7 SCHEDULING**

15 A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after
16 installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have
17 satisfactory test results.

18 B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of
19 construction.

20 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

21 **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

22 A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation
23 Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground
24 Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

25 B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

26 C. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

27 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

28 a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok HP.

29 b. Owens Corning; SSL II with ASJ Max Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.

30 2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin.
31 Comply with ASTM C547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-



1 applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article. UL listed
2 and labeled for installation over PVC and other polymer pipes within a plenum.

3 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

4 A. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.

5 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
6 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

7 a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

8 2.3 ADHESIVES

9 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding
10 insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

11 B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

12 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

13 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
14 Company; CP-127.

15 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.

16 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
17 Company; 85-60/85-70.

18 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

19 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when
20 calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

21 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
22 Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic
23 Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

24 C. ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap
25 seams and joints.

26 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

27 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
28 Company; CP-82.

29 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.

30 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
31 Company; 85-20.

32 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

33 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when
34 calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

35 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
36 Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic
37 Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."



1 **2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS**

2 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

3 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when
4 calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

5 B. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.

6 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

7 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
8 Company; CP-10.

9 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.

10 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
11 Company; 46-50.

12 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.

13 e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.

14 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's
15 recommended dry film thickness.

16 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.

17 4. Color: White.

18 **2.5 SEALANTS**

19 A. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

20 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
21 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

22 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
23 Company; CP-76.

24 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

25 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.

26 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

27 5. Color: White.

28 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when
29 calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

30 7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
31 Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic
32 Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

33 **2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS**

34 A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When
35 factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

36 1. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a
37 removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.



1 **2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH**

2 A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10
3 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.

4 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
5 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

6 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
7 Company; Chil-Glas Number 10.

8 **2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS**

9 A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

10 B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784,
11 Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming.
12 Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

13 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- 14 a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
15 b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
16 c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
17 d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.

18 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.

19 3. Color: White.

20 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.

21 a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges,
22 unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap
23 and supply covers for lavatories.

24 C. Metal Jacket:

25 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005,
26 Temper H-14.

27 a. Factory cut and rolled to size.

28 b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

29 c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.

30 d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.

31 e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

32 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.

33 2) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not
34 available.



1 **2.9 TAPES**

2 A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive,
3 complying with ASTM C1136.

- 4 1. Width: 3 inches.
5 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
6 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
7 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
8 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
9 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

10 B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive;
11 suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

- 12 1. Width: 2 inches.
13 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
14 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
15 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
16 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

17 **2.10 SECUREMENTS**

18 A. Bands:

19 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- 20 a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
21 b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping and Seals.

22 2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch
23 wide with wing seal.

24 B. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

25 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

26 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

27 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
28 and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

- 29 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
30 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

31 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



1 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 2 A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will
3 adversely affect insulation application.
- 4 B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements
5 for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- 6 C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with
7 stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

8 **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- 9 A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces;
10 free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- 11 B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required
12 for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- 13 C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install
14 accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or
15 dry state.
- 16 D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- 17 E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- 18 F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- 19 G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- 20 H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with
21 adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- 22 I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- 23 J. Above Ambient Systems:
- 24 1. Where mastic is indicated provide breather mastic.
- 25 2. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with
26 continuous thermal integrity unless otherwise indicated.
- 27 3. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
- 28 K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet
29 and dry film thicknesses.
- 30 L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
- 31 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
- 32 2. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written
33 instructions, to maintain vapor seal.



- 1 M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal
2 thickness.
- 3 N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas.
4 Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches
5 similar to butt joints.
- 6 O. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
- 7 1. Vibration-control devices.
8 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
9 3. Nameplates and data plates.
10 4. Cleanouts.

11 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- 12 A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated):
13 Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- 14 B. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation
15 continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
- 16 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- 17 C. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
- 18 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
19 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

20 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- 21 A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
- 22 1. Provide factory applied ASJ-SSL jacket.
- 23 B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges, Fittings, Elbows, Valves and Pipe Specialties:
- 24 1. Insulate pipe elbows and tee fittings using preformed fitting insulation. Each piece shall
25 be butted tightly against adjoining piece.
- 26 2. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Install
27 preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange. Overlap adjoining pipe
28 insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe
29 diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange
30 insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with insulating
31 cement.
- 32 3. Insulate strainers, valves, and other pipe specialties using preformed fitting insulation.
33 When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
34 Secure mitered sections with wire or bands.
- 35 4. Arrange valve insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without
36 disturbing insulation.



- 1 5. In concealed locations install fitted PVC cover over preformed fitting insulation. Terminate
- 2 ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC
- 3 tape.
- 4 6. Cover pipe fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties in exposed
- 5 locations and any segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and
- 6 install field-applied glass-cloth jacket.
- 7 7. Apply breather mastic at exposed ends of insulation at pipe flanges, unions, and fittings.
- 8 8. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match
- 9 size and color of pipe labels.

10 C. Insulation Installation on Instrument Connections:

- 11 1. Install insulation on instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure
- 12 temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on
- 13 insulated pipes.
- 14 2. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with
- 15 insulating cement and finish with mastic.
- 16 3. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive
- 17 to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

18 **3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION**

- 19 A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with
- 20 factory-applied jackets.

- 21 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
- 22 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of mastic.
- 23 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- 24 4. Finish to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

- 25 B. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end
- 26 joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof
- 27 sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12
- 28 inches o.c. and at end joints.

- 29 1. Do not install metal jacket over glass-cloth jacket.

30 **3.7 FINISHES**

- 31 A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint
- 32 system identified below. Color per schedule below.

- 33 1. Semi-gloss Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket
- 34 material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

- 35 a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, semi-gloss, latex-emulsion size.

- 36 2. Paint exposed piping without field applied metal jacket.

- 37 B. Color: Final color as selected by Engineer. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection
- 38 of the completed Work.



1 1. White.

2 C. Do not field paint aluminum jackets.

3 **3.8 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

4 A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for
5 each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system,
6 selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

7 **3.9 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE**

8 A. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

9 1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:

10 a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inch thick.

11 2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:

12 a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inch thick.

13 **3.10 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE**

14 A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-
15 applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

16 B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

17 C. Piping, Concealed:

18 1. None.

19 D. Piping, Exposed:

20 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.016 inch thick.

21 E. Exposed fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties:

22 1. Glass cloth jacket.

23 F. Concealed fittings:

24 1. PVC jacket.

25 **END OF SECTION 22 07 19.12**



1 **SECTION 22 07 19.13 - INSULATION FOR STORM-WATER PIPING AND DRAINS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:

- 8 1. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
9 2. Floor drains, traps, and drain piping receiving condensate and equipment drain water
10 below 60 deg F.

11 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 12 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor
13 permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).

14 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 15 A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship
16 program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of
17 Apprenticeship and Training.

- 18 B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing
19 identical products according to ASTM E84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having
20 jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and
21 cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- 22 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed
23 index of 50 or less.
24 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed
25 index of 150 or less.

- 26 C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for
27 miscellaneous components:

- 28 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

29 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 30 A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate
31 ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.



1 **1.6 COORDINATION**

- 2 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in
3 Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- 4 B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before
5 preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation
6 of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

7 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

8 **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- 9 A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation
10 Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground
11 Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- 12 B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- 13 C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less
14 than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- 15 D. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply
16 with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.
- 17 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
- 18 a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
19 b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
20 c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.

21 **2.2 ADHESIVES**

- 22 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding
23 insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- 24 B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- 25 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 26 a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
27 b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
28 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
29 Company; 85-75.
30 d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
- 31 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when
32 calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).



- 1 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
2 Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic
3 Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

4 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

5 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 6 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
7 and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
- 8 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
9 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- 10 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

11 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 12 A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will
13 adversely affect insulation application.

14 **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- 15 A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces;
16 free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- 17 B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required
18 for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- 19 C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install
20 accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or
21 dry state.
- 22 D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- 23 E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- 24 F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- 25 G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- 26 H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with
27 adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- 28 I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- 29 J. Below Ambient Systems:



- 1 1. Provide continuous vapor barrier; seal joints, longitudinal seams, and penetrations in
 2 insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic
 3 and joint sealant.
- 4 2. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with
 5 continuous vapor barrier and thermal integrity unless otherwise indicated.
- 6 3. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
- 7 4. Extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of
 8 attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-
 9 barrier mastic.
- 10 K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet
 11 and dry film thicknesses.
- 12 L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal
 13 thickness.
- 14 M. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas.
 15 Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches
 16 similar to butt joints.
- 17 **3.4 PENETRATIONS**
- 18 A. Insulation Installation at Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal.
 19 Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- 20 B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated):
 21 Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- 22 C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation
 23 continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
- 24 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- 25 D. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
- 26 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 27 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.
- 28 **3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION**
- 29 A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate
 30 openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- 31 B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
- 32 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 33 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the
 34 thickness of pipe insulation.
 35 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of
 36 adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness
 37 as pipe insulation.



- 1 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive
2 to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- 3 C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
- 4 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
5 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive
6 to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- 7 D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
- 8 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when
9 available.
10 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet
11 insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow
12 valve operation without disturbing insulation.
13 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
14 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's
15 recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to
16 surface being insulated.

17 **3.6 FINISHES**

- 18 A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of
19 insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating. Color per schedule below.
- 20 B. Color: Final color as selected by Engineer. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection
21 of the completed Work.
- 22 1. White.

23 **3.7 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

- 24 A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for
25 each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system,
26 selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

27 **3.8 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE**

- 28 A. Stormwater and Overflow:
- 29 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
- 30 a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- 31 B. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:
- 32 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
- 33 a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inchthick.



1 C. Floor Drains, Traps, and Drain Piping within 10 Feet of Drain Receiving Condensate and
2 Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:

3 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

4 a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

5 **END OF SECTION 22 07 19.13**

6



1 **SECTION 22 07 19.15 - INSULATION FOR ADA PLUMBING FIXTURES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
8 1. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor
11 permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).

12 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 13 A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship
14 program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of
15 Apprenticeship and Training.
- 16 B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing
17 identical products according to ASTM E84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having
18 jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and
19 cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- 20 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed
21 index of 50 or less.
- 22 C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for
23 miscellaneous components:
- 24 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

25 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 26 A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate
27 ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.



1 **1.6 SCHEDULING**

- 2 A. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of
3 construction.

4 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

5 **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- 6 A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" and "Indoor Piping
7 Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- 8 B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

9 **2.2 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS**

- 10 A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers,:

- 11 1. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water
12 supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)
13 requirements.

- 14 B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures,:

- 15 1. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-
16 water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

17 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

18 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 19 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
20 and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

- 21 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
22 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

- 23 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

24 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 25 A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will
26 adversely affect insulation application.



1 **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- 2 A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces;
3 free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- 4 B. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install
5 accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or
6 dry state.
- 7 C. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- 8 D. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- 9 E. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with
10 adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- 11 F. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- 12 G. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas.
13 Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches
14 similar to butt joints.

15 **3.4 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING PIPE COVERS INSTALLATION**

- 16 A. Install directly over bare piping or insulation with factory-applied jackets. Press seams together
17 to engage internal fasteners.

18 **3.5 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

- 19 A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for
20 each piping system and pipe size range.

21 **3.6 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE**

- 22 A. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing
23 Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
- 24 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
- 25 a. Manufactured Protective Shielding Pipe Covers.

26 **END OF SECTION 22 07 19.15**

27



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 22 11 16 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Copper tube and fittings.
9 2. PVC pipe and fittings.
10 3. PP-R pipe and fittings.
11 4. Piping joining materials.
12 5. Encasement for piping.
13 6. Transition fittings.
14 7. Dielectric fittings.

15 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 16 A. Product Data:

- 17 1. Pipe and tube.
18 2. Fittings.
19 3. Joining materials.
20 4. Transition fittings.

21 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 22 A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
23 B. Field quality-control reports.

24 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

25 **2.1 PIPING MATERIALS**

- 26 A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14, NSF 61, and NSF 372.
27 B. Furnish new and unused piping materials manufactured in the United States of America. Piping
28 shall be marked with country of origin from the manufacturer.



1 **2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS**

- 2 A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type L.
- 3 B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type K.
- 4 C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, pressure fittings.
- 5 D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- 6 E. Cast Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- 7
- 8 F. Wrought Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- 9 G. Copper Tube, Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
- 10 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Viega LLC ;
- 11 ProPress Copper. or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 12 a. Mueller Streamline Co.; a company of Mueller Industries.
- 13 2. Fittings: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
- 14 3. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.

15 **2.3 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- 16 A. PVC Pipe: ASTM D1785, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- 17 B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D2466 for Schedule 40.
- 18 C. PVC Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D2464.

19 **2.4 POLYPROPYLENE (PP-R) PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- 20 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Aquatherm; Green
- 21 Pipe.
- 22 B. Polypropylene Pipe: ASTM F2389, pipe pressure rating to comply with temperature and
- 23 pressure ratings of code requirements for the applicable service.
- 24 1. Polypropylene Fittings: ASTM F2389, socket fusion, butt fusion, electrofusion, or fusion
- 25 outlet fittings to be used for fusion-welded joints between pipe and fittings.
- 26 2. Mechanical fittings and transition fittings to be used where transitions are made to other
- 27 piping materials or to valves and appurtenances.
- 28 3. Polypropylene pipe is to be unthreaded. Threaded transition fittings per ASTM F2389 to
- 29 be used where a threaded connection is required.
- 30 C. Smoke and Fire Ratings:



- 1 1. Where indicated on the Drawings that a plenum-rated piping system is required, the pipe
2 is to be wrapped and/or insulated with fiberglass or mineral wool pipe insulation, and field
3 installed.
- 4 2. The system is to have a flame spread classification of less than 25 and smoke
5 development rating of less than 50.
- 6 3. Pipe, wrap, or insulation as a system to meet the requirements of CAN/ULC-S102.2-03,
7 ASTM E84, or UL 2846.
- 8 4. For insulation required for thermal and condensation reasons, see Section 22 07 19
9 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

10 D. Integration of PP-R Piping Systems with Other Systems:

- 11 1. When integrating PP-R piping systems with other systems or with components not made
12 of PP-R (for example, valves, pumps, other piping, check valves, or strainers), ensure the
13 operating parameters for PP-R will not damage other materials in the system or vice
14 versa.
- 15 2. Verify that all parts of the system are compatible with the medium being carried before
16 installation. PP-R pipe does not require treatment to protect it from corrosion. Metals
17 (ferrous and non-ferrous) in the system may be susceptible to corrosion. Provide water
18 treatment to protect system metals.
- 19 3. Do not mix PP-R pipe with other piping systems in conditions that will cause the other
20 system or components to fail.
- 21 4. For Domestic Hot Water Recirculation (DHWR) Systems:
 - 22 a. When copper piping used in conjunction with PP-R in a domestic hot water
23 recirculation system, ensure the operating conditions will not cause degradation or
24 erosion/corrosion of the copper.
 - 25 b. Follow the Copper Development Association guidelines (CDA Publication A4015-
26 14/16: "Copper Tube Handbook") for sizing, temperature and flow velocity in the
27 copper tubing.
 - 28 c. Sustained high levels of copper in DHWR piping can damage components within
29 the system, even PP-R.
 - 30 d. Ensure that the maximum hot water-temperature within any part of the system/loop
31 does not exceed 140 deg F. Some regulations and codes further restrict the
32 temperature at any fixture to a maximum of 120 deg F. Do not exceed the
33 temperature rating of the pipe for the operating pressure.
 - 34 e. Maximum temperature used must not exceed the rating of the pipe for the
35 operating pressure.
 - 36 f. Flow rates in a domestic hot water recirculation system should not exceed 1.5
37 ft./sec anywhere in the system, except in some special cases where velocities up
38 to 3 ft./sec are needed to achieve proper flow temperature.
 - 39 g. When adding PP-R to an existing copper system in a domestic hot water
40 recirculation application, the level of copper in the water must be tested. Do not
41 install PP-R where levels exceed 0.1 mg/L (ppm).

42 E. PP-R Socket Fittings: ASTM F2389.

43 **2.5 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS**

44 A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:

- 45 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and
46 asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.



- 1 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- 2 B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- 3 C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys.
- 4 D. Flux: ASTM B813, water flushable.
- 5 E. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D2564. Include primer according to
6 ASTM F656.
- 7 1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated
8 according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 9 2. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according
10 to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 11 3. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product
12 requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the
13 Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale
14 Environmental Chambers."
- 15 F. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping
16 system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

17 **2.6 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING**

- 18 A. Standard: ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- 19 B. Form: Sheet .
- 20 C. Color: Black.

21 **2.7 TRANSITION FITTINGS**

- 22 A. General Requirements:
- 23 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
- 24 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
- 25 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- 26 B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system
27 fitting.
- 28 C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
- 29 D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
- 30 1. Description:
- 31 a. CPVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
- 32 b. One end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket or threaded
33 end.



- 1 E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
- 2 1. Description:
- 3 a. CPVC four-part union.
- 4 b. Brass or stainless steel threaded end.
- 5 c. Solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end.
- 6 d. Rubber O-ring.
- 7 e. Union nut.
- 8 **2.8 SINGLE-PIECE, CUSTOMIZABLE, IN-BUILDING RISER**
- 9 A. Description: Single-piece, extended 90-degree fitting that passes under the foundation without
- 10 joints and extends through the floor to transition from exterior underground piping to interior
- 11 aboveground piping.
- 12 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ames Fire &
- 13 Waterworks; Series IBR (NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger) / Series IBR2 (NPS 3 (DN 80)
- 14 and Smaller) or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 15 a. Watts; Series TR / TR2.
- 16 B. Tubing: ASTM A312; Type 304 stainless steel tubing.
- 17 C. End Connections:
- 18 1. NPS 2 (DN 50): Threaded or grooved.
- 19 a. Threaded: ASTM B1.20.1
- 20 b. Grooved: AWWA C606 for roll grooved pipe.
- 21 2. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) or Larger: Flanged, grooved, or CIPS coupler.
- 22 a. CIPS Coupler: AWWA C900 for connection to PVC or Ductile Iron Pipe.
- 23 b. Flanged: AWWA C207, Class D and ANSI B16.5, Class 150.
- 24 c. Grooved: AWWA C606 for roll grooved pipe.
- 25 D. Lengths:
- 26 1. NPS 3 (DN 80) and Smaller: Customizable leg lengths, from 3-feet (0.9 m) to 16-feet
- 27 (4.9 m), not to exceed a combined length of 19-feet (5.8 m).
- 28 2. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger: Customizable leg lengths, from 3-feet (0.9 m) to 16-feet
- 29 (4.9 m), not to exceed a combined length of 20-feet (6.1 m).
- 30 E. Maximum Working Pressure: 200 psig.
- 31 F. Approvals: NFPA 24, FM Class 1920, UL HKQA.
- 32 G. Accessories include the following:
- 33 1. Test cap and coupler.
- 34 2. Flange adapter.



1 **2.9 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS**

2 A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating
3 nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

4 B. Dielectric Unions:

- 5 1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
- 6 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- 7 3. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

8 C. Dielectric Flanges:

- 9 1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
- 10 2. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
- 11 3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- 12 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint
13 copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

14 D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

- 15 1. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
- 16 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- 17 3. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
- 18 4. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
- 19 5. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

20 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

21 **3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS**

22 A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used
23 in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

24 B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.

25 C. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping shall be one of the following:

- 26 1. PVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
- 27 2. Polypropylene (PP-R), SDR 7.4 pipe and socket fusion, butt fusion, fusion outlet, or
28 electrofusion fittings and joints.

29 D. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:

- 30 1. Annealed-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings;
31 and brazed joints.
- 32 2. PVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
- 33 3. Polypropylene (PP-R), SDR 7.4 pipe and socket fusion, butt fusion, fusion outlet, or
34 electrofusion fittings and joints.

35 E. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:



- 1 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings;
2 and soldered joints.
- 3 2. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and
4 pressure-sealed joints.
- 5 F. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be one of the following:
- 6 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings;
7 and soldered joints.
- 8 **3.2 EARTHWORK**
- 9 A. Comply with requirements in Division 31 for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
- 10 **3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING**
- 11 A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of
12 domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and
13 calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated
14 unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- 15 B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- 16 C. Install underground copper tube in PE encasement according to ASTM A674 or
17 AWWA C105/A21.5.
- 18 D. Install valves according to Section 22 05 23.11 "General Duty Valves for Domestic Water
19 Piping."
- 20 E. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves if service static pressure
21 exceeds 60 psig. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 22 11 19
22 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- 23 F. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- 24 G. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants
25 unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- 26 H. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right
27 angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated
28 otherwise.
- 29 I. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and
30 coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- 31 J. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- 32 K. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher
33 than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- 34 L. Install piping free of sags and bends.



- 1 M. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- 2 N. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and
3 specialty.
- 4 O. Install pressure gauges on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged
5 booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gauges in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and
6 Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- 7 P. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in
8 Section 22 11 23 "Domestic Water Pumps."
- 9 Q. Install thermometers on outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for
10 thermometers in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- 11 R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for
12 sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- 13 S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with
14 requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for
15 Plumbing Piping."
- 16 T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with
17 requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- 18 **3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**
- 19 A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- 20 B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before
21 assembly.
- 22 C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut
23 threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore
24 full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
- 25 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
- 26 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or
27 damaged.
- 28 D. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join
29 copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- 30 E. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with
31 tools and procedure recommended by pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer. Leave insertion marks
32 on pipe after assembly.
- 33 F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and
34 thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to
35 ASME B31.9.
- 36 G. Joint Construction for Solvent-Cemented Plastic Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join
37 pipe and fittings according to the following:



- 1 1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent
- 2 cements. Apply primer.
- 3 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2846/D2846M Appendix.
- 4 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2855.

- 5 H. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of
- 6 both piping systems.

- 7 **3.5 INSTALLATION OF TRANSITION FITTINGS**

- 8 A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.

- 9 B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
- 10 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
- 11 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.

- 12 C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal
- 13 transition unions.

- 14 **3.6 INSTALLATION OF DIELECTRIC FITTINGS**

- 15 A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

- 16 B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.

- 17 C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.

- 18 D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

- 19 **3.7 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

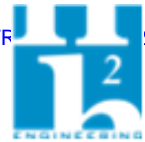
- 20 A. Comply with requirements for hangers, supports, and anchor devices in Section 22 05 29
- 21 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

- 22 B. Install hangers for copper tubing and piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod
- 23 diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction
- 24 requirements, whichever are most stringent.

- 25 C. Install vinyl-coated hangers for CPVC, PVC, and PP piping, with maximum horizontal spacing
- 26 and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced
- 27 codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

- 28 D. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.

- 29 E. Support vertical runs of copper tubing and piping to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced
- 30 codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.



- 1 F. Support vertical runs of CPVC, PVC, and PP-R piping to comply with manufacturer's written
2 instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever
3 are most stringent.

4 3.8 CONNECTIONS

- 5 A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

- 6 B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and
7 maintenance.

- 8 C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join
9 dissimilar piping materials.

- 10 D. Connect to underground water-service piping where it passes under the building. Extend
11 underground water-service piping and connect to building domestic water piping systems at
12 locations and pipe sizes indicated using single-piece, in-building risers.

- 13 1. Coordinate horizontal and vertical lengths of single-piece, in-building risers to extend
14 from the exterior of the building, underneath the foundation, and through the floor up to
15 between 24 inches and 36 inches above finished floor.

- 16 2. Coordinate horizontal and vertical end connections of single-piece, in-building risers with
17 underground water-service piping and domestic water piping inside the building.

- 18 3. Terminate domestic water piping within the building at the service entrance until building
19 domestic water piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or
20 flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building's domestic water
21 piping systems when those systems are installed.

- 22 E. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to
23 the following:

- 24 1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.

- 25 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not
26 smaller than sizes of water heater connections.

- 27 3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller
28 than that required by plumbing code.

- 29 4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than
30 equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use
31 flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

32 3.9 IDENTIFICATION

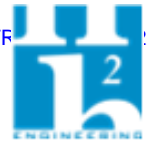
- 33 A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and
34 installation in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

35 3.10 ADJUSTING

- 36 A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

- 37 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.

- 38 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.



- 1 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
- 2 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
- 3 a. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
- 4 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during
- 5 installation.
- 6 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
- 7 7. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

8 **3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

9 A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

10 1. Piping Inspections:

- 11 a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and
- 12 approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 13 b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before
- 14 inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities
- 15 having jurisdiction:
 - 16 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing
 - 17 or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
 - 18 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests
 - 19 specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance
 - 20 with requirements.
- 21 c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or
- 22 inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- 23 d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having
- 24 jurisdiction.

25 2. Piping Tests:

- 26 a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air
- 27 bound and that piping is full of water.
- 28 b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been
- 29 altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a
- 30 separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- 31 c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and
- 32 unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered
- 33 or concealed before it was tested.
- 34 d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating
- 35 pressure but not less than 150 psig (1034 kPa), without exceeding pressure rating
- 36 of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours.
- 37 Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- 38 e. Hydrostatic testing and documentation of test results for polypropylene piping to be
- 39 in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and submitted to the
- 40 manufacturer upon successful completion per warranty requirements.
- 41 f. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof
- 42 until satisfactory results are obtained.
- 43 g. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.



1 B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

2 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3 **3.12 CLEANING**

4 A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:

5 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or
6 repaired before using.

7 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if
8 methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or
9 AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:

10 a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at
11 outlets.

12 b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:

13 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm
14 of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.

15 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm
16 of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.

17 c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from
18 system after the standing time.

19 d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

20 e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.

21 B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-
22 sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.

23 C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

24 **END OF SECTION 22 11 16**



1 **SECTION 22 11 19 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Vacuum breakers.
9 2. Backflow preventers.
10 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
11 4. Balancing valves.
12 5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
13 6. Strainers for domestic water piping.
14 7. Hose bibbs.
15 8. Wall hydrants.
16 9. Drain valves.
17 10. Water-hammer arresters.
18 11. Trap-seal primer device.
19 12. Electronic trap-seal primer systems.
20 13. Flexible connectors.
21 14. Water meters.

22 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 23 A. AMI: Advanced Metering Infrastructure.
24 B. FKM: A family of fluoroelastomer materials defined by ASTM D1418.

25 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 26 A. Product Data: For each type of product.
27 B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.
28 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

29 **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 30 A. Test and inspection reports.
31 B. Field quality-control reports.



1 **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 2 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in
3 emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

4 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

5 **2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES**

- 6 A. Domestic water piping specialties intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption
7 are to comply with the SDWA, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and NSF 61 and
8 NSF 372, or to be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an American National
9 Standards Institute (ANSI)-accredited third-party certification body that the weighted average
10 lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

11 **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 12 A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise
13 indicated.

14 **2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS**

- 15 A. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
- 16 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Watts; 8FR
17 or comparable product by one of the following:
- 18 a. Conbraco Industries, Inc
19 b. Zurn Industries, LLC
20 c. Plumbing Products Group
- 21 d. Wilkins Water Control Products
- 22 2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
23 3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
24 4. Freeze relief feature.
25 5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
26 6. Finish: Rough bronze.

27 **2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS**

- 28 A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers:
- 29 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Watts; 9D or
30 comparable product by one of the following:
- 31 a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
32 b. Zurn Industries, LLC
33 c. Plumbing Products Group



- 1 d. Wilkins Water Control Products.
- 2 2. Standard: ASSE 1012.
- 3 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
- 4 4. Size: NPS 3/4.
- 5 5. Body: Bronze.
- 6 6. End Connections: Union, solder joint.
- 7 7. Finish: Rough bronze.
- 8 B. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:
- 9 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Watts;
- 10 LF719 or LF709 or comparable product by one of the following:
- 11 a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc
- 12 b. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc
- 13 c. Zurn Industries, LLC
- 14 d. Plumbing Products Group
- 15 e. Wilkins Water Control Products
- 16 2. Standard: ASSE 1015.
- 17 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications unless otherwise indicated.
- 18 4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
- 19 5. Body: Bronze, lead free for NPS 2 and smaller; ductile or cast iron with interior lining that
- 20 complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 21 6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 22 7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
- 23 8. Accessories:
- 24 a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
- 25 b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged
- 26 ends on inlet and outlet.
- 27 C. Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:
- 28 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Watts; LF7
- 29 or comparable product by one of the following:
- 30 a. Conbraco Industries, Inc
- 31 b. Zurn Industries, LLC
- 32 c. Plumbing Products Group
- 33 d. Wilkins Water Control Products
- 34 2. Standard: ASSE 1024.
- 35 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
- 36 4. Size: As required.
- 37 5. Body: Bronze, lead free, with union inlet.
- 38 D. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits:
- 39 1. Description: Factory calibrated, with gauges, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-
- 40 procedure instructions.



1 **2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES**

2 A. Water Regulators:

- 3 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Watts;
4 LF223S or LFN223BS or comparable product by one of the following:
- 5 a. Conbraco Industries, Inc
6 b. Zurn Industries, LLC
7 c. Plumbing Products Group
- 8 d. Wilkins Water Control Products
- 9 2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
10 3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
11 4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with
12 AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
13 5. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
14 6. End Connections: Threaded.

15 **2.6 BALANCING VALVES**

16 A. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:

- 17 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide NIBCO Inc.;
18 T1710 or comparable product by one of the following:
- 19 a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
20 b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- 21 2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
22 3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
23 4. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
24 5. Body: Copper alloy.
25 6. Port: Standard or full port.
26 7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass or stainless steel.
27 8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
28 9. End Connections: Threaded.
29 10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

30 **2.7 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES**

31 A. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves:

- 32 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product
33 indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- 34 a. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
35 b. Leonard Valve Company.
36 c. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
37 d. Symmons Industries, Inc.



- 1 2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
- 2 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- 3 4. Type: Exposed-mounted, thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
- 4 5. Material: Bronze body, lead free, with corrosion-resistant interior components.
- 5 6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
- 6 7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies,
- 7 and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
- 8 8. Tempered-Water Setting: As indicated on Plans.
- 9 9. Pressure Drop at Design Flow Rate: As indicated on Plans.
- 10 10. Valve Finish: Rough bronze.

11 B. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:

- 12 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product
13 indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- 14 a. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
- 15 b. Leonard Valve Company.
- 16 c. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 17 d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 18 e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

- 19 2. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
- 20 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- 21 4. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
- 22 5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
- 23 6. Connections: Threaded inlets and outlet.
- 24 7. Finish: Chrome plated.
- 25 8. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies,
- 26 and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
- 27 9. Tempered-Water Setting: As indicated on Plans.
- 28 10. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: As indicated on Plans.

29 **2.8 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING**

30 A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

- 31 1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- 32 2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with
33 AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 34 3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 35 4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
- 36 5. Perforation Size:
 - 37 a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.020 inch.
 - 38 b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.045 inch.
 - 39 c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.10 inch.
- 40 6. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.



1 **2.9 HOSE BIBBS**

2 A. Hose Bibbs:

- 3 1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
4 2. Body Material: Bronze.
5 3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
6 4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
7 5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8 6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
9 7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker
10 complying with ASSE 1011.
11 8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
12 9. Finish for Service Areas: Rough bronze.
13 10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
14 11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
15 12. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle.
16 13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
17 14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
18 15. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

19 **2.10 WALL HYDRANTS**

20 A. Non-freeze Wall Hydrants:

- 21 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z1310-
22 PB-WC-34UN or comparable product by one of the following:
23 a. Josam Company.
24 b. MIFAB, Inc.
25 c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
26 d. Watts Drainage Products.
27 2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for exposed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
28 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
29 4. Operation: Loose key.
30 5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall
31 clamp.
32 6. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
33 7. Outlet, Exposed: With integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with
34 ASME B1.20.7.
35 8. Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
36 9. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

37 **2.11 DRAIN VALVES**

38 A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

- 39 1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
40 2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
41 3. Size: NPS 3/4.
42 4. Body: Copper alloy.



- 1 5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- 2 6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
- 3 7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
- 4 8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
- 5 9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7
- 6 and cap with brass chain.

7 **2.12 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS**

8 A. Water-Hammer Arresters:

- 9 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn;
- 10 1250XL or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 11 a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - 12 b. Josam Company.
 - 13 c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - 14 d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - 15 e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - 16 f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - 17 g. Watts Drainage Products.
- 18 2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
- 19 3. Type: Piston.
- 20 4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

21 **2.13 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE**

22 A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:

- 23 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Precision
- 24 Plumbing Products; P1-500 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 25 a. MIFAB, Inc.
 - 26 b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - 27 c. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
- 28 2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
- 29 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
- 30 4. Body: Bronze.
- 31 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
- 32 6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
- 33 7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome
- 34 finished.
- 35 8. Provide adjusting screw to adjust between high and low pressures.

36 **2.14 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER SYSTEMS**

37 A. Electronic Trap-Seal Primer Systems:



- 1 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Precision
2 Plumbing Products; PTS-x-500 or comparable product by one of the following:
- 3 a. MIFAB, Inc.
4 b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
5 c. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
- 6 2. Standard: ASSE 1044.
7 3. Inlet Size: NPS 3/4, ASTM B88, Type L; copper, water tubing.
8 4. Cabinet: Surface-mounted steel box with stainless steel cover.
9 5. Electric Controls: 24-hour timer, solenoid valve, and manual switch for 120 V ac power.
- 10 a. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in
11 NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and
12 application.
- 13 6. Vacuum Breaker: ASSE 1001.
14 7. Number Outlets: From four to twelve, as required..
15 8. Size Outlets: NPS 1/2.

16 **2.15 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS**

- 17 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Metraflex; BBS
18 (Bronze) or SST/MLP (Steel) or comparable product by one of the following:
- 19 1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
20 2. Flexicraft Industries.
- 21 B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering
22 and ends brazed to inner tubing.
- 23 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
24 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
25 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- 26 C. Stainless Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless steel tubing with stainless steel
27 wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
- 28 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
29 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
30 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

31 **2.16 WATER METERS**

- 32 A. Displacement-Type Water Meters:
- 33 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
34 following:
- 35 a. ABB.
36 b. Badger Meter, Inc.
37 c. Mueller Co. Ltd.; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.



- 1 2. Standard: AWWA C700.
- 2 3. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
- 3 4. Body Design: Nutating disc; totalization meter.
- 4 5. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.

- 5 a. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified
- 6 with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote
- 7 register assembly as required by utility company.

- 8 1) System shall be capable of transmitting data using AMR/AMI technology.

- 9 6. Case: Bronze.
- 10 7. End Connections: Threaded or flanged.

11 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

12 **3.1 INSTALLATION OF PIPING SPECIALTIES**

- 13 A. Backflow Preventers: Install in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to
- 14 other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with
- 15 authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 16 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
 - 17 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap
 - 18 fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe
 - 19 diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or
 - 20 under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
 - 21 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.

- 22 B. Water Regulators: Install with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop
- 23 balancing valve. Install pressure gauges on inlet and outlet.

- 24 C. Water Control Valves: Install with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with globe valve.
- 25 Install pressure gauges on inlet and outlet.

- 26 D. Balancing Valves: Install in locations where they can easily be adjusted. Set at indicated design
- 27 flow rates.

- 28 E. Temperature-Actuated, Water Mixing Valves: Install with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets
- 29 and with shutoff valve on outlet.
 - 30 1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.

- 31 F. Y-Pattern Strainers: For water, install on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-
- 32 reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.

- 33 G. Water-Hammer Arresters: Install in water piping in accordance with PDI-WH 201.

- 34 H. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device: Install with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap
- 35 a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for
- 36 proper flow.



- 1 I. Electronic Trap-Seal Primer Systems: Install with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a
2 minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for
3 proper flow.

4 3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- 5 A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
6 B. When installing piping specialties adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service
7 and maintenance.

8 3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- 9 A. Connect wiring in accordance with Division 26.
10 B. Ground equipment in accordance with Division 26
11 C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with
12 NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

13 3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- 14 A. Connect control wiring in accordance with Division 26.

15 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- 16 A. Plastic Labels for Equipment: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on
17 or near each of the following:
18 1. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
19 2. Manifold, thermostatic, water mixing valves assemblies.
20 3. Electronic trap-seal primer systems.
21 B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety
22 and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to
23 identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for
24 Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

25 3.6 ADJUSTING

- 26 A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
27 B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
28 C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
29 D. Adjust each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, and
30 double-check, backflow-prevention assembly in accordance with manufacturer's written
31 instructions, authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.



1 **3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

2 A. Perform the following tests and inspections.

3 1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, and
4 double-check, backflow-prevention assembly according to authorities having jurisdiction
5 and the device's reference standard.

6 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest
7 until no leaks exist.

8 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm unit
9 operation.

10 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
11 equipment.

12 B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and
13 inspections.

14 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

15 **END OF SECTION 22 11 19**

16



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



Alternate

1 SECTION 22 11 23.13 - DOMESTIC-WATER PACKAGED BOOSTER PUMPS

2 PART 1 - GENERAL

3 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 1.2 SUMMARY

- 7 A. Section Includes:
8 1. Multiplex, variable-speed booster pumps.

9 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 11 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of individual
12 components and profiles.
13 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and
14 furnished specialties and accessories.

- 15 B. Shop Drawings: For booster pumps.

- 16 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
17 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
18 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
19 connection.
20 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

21 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

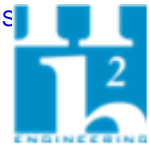
- 22 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For booster pumps to include in emergency, operation, and
23 maintenance manuals.

24 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- 25 A. Retain protective coatings and flange's protective covers during storage.

26 1.6 COORDINATION

- 27 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.



Alternate

1 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- 3 A. Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects and Drinking Water System Components -
4 Lead Content Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372.

5 2.2 MULTIPLEX, VARIABLE-SPEED BOOSTER PUMPS

- 6 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on
7 Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- 8 1. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation.
9 2. Canariis Corporation.
10 3. TIGERFLOW Systems, Inc.
11 4. VC Systems and Controls.

- 12 B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, fluid-handling system for domestic water, with
13 pumps, piping, valves, specialties, and controls, and mounted on base.

- 14 C. Pumps:

- 15 1. Type: End suction as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for end-suction, close-coupled,
16 single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
17 2. Casing: Radially split; cast iron.
18 3. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B584 cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced and
19 keyed to shaft.
20 4. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve and deflector.
21 5. Seal: Mechanical.
22 6. Orientation: Mounted vertically.

- 23 D. Motors: Single speed, with grease-lubricated, ball-bearings. Select motors that will not overload
24 through full range of pump performance curve.

- 25 E. Piping: Copper tube and copper fittings.

- 26 F. Valves:

- 27 1. Shutoff Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Two-piece, full-port ball valve, in each pump's
28 suction and discharge piping.
29 2. Shutoff Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Lug-type butterfly valve, in each pump's suction
30 and discharge piping and in inlet and outlet headers.
31 3. Check Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Silent type in each pump's discharge piping.
32 4. Check Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Silent type in each pump's discharge piping.
33 5. Thermal-Relief Valve: Temperature-and-pressure relief type in pump's discharge header
34 piping.
35 6. Control Valve: Adjustable, automatic, pilot-operated, pressure-reducing type in pump
36 discharge piping.

- 37 G. Dielectric Fittings: With insulating material to isolate joined dissimilar metals.



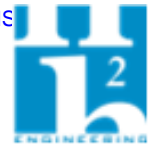
Alternate

- 1 H. Hydropneumatic Tank: Precharged, ASME-construction, diaphragm or bladder tank made of
2 materials complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372.
- 3 I. Control Panel: Factory installed and connected as an integral part of booster pump; automatic
4 for single-pump, variable-speed operation, with load control and protection functions.
- 5 1. Control Logic: Solid-state system with transducers, programmable microprocessor, VFC,
6 and other devices in the controller.
- 7 2. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, variable-frequency, solid-state type.
- 8 a. Control Voltage: 24-V ac, with integral control-power transformer.
- 9 3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1.
- 10 4. Motor Overload Protection: Overload relay in each phase.
- 11 5. Starting Devices: Hand-off-automatic selector switch in cover of control panel, plus pilot
12 device for automatic control.
- 13 6. Pump Operation: Pressure-sensing method.
- 14 a. Time Delay: Controls minimum pump on-off operation; adjustable from 1 to 300
15 seconds.
- 16 b. Shuts down pumps if setpoint is satisfied and pump has run for time delay
17 adjustable from 60 to 600 seconds.
- 18 7. VFC: Voltage-source, pulse-width, modulating-frequency converter; installed in control
19 panel.
- 20 8. Manual Bypass: Magnetic contactor arranged to transfer to constant-speed operation
21 upon VFC failure.
- 22 9. Instrumentation: Suction and discharge pressure gages.
- 23 10. Light: Running light for pump.
- 24 11. Thermal-bleed cutoff.
- 25 12. Low-suction-pressure cutout.
- 26 13. High-suction-pressure cutout.
- 27 14. Low-discharge-pressure cutout.
- 28 15. High-discharge-pressure cutout.
- 29 16. Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC: Provide auxiliary contacts for interface to
30 BACnet DDC system. DDC systems are specified in Division 25. Include the following:
- 31 a. On-off status of each pump.
- 32 b. Alarm status.
- 33 J. VFC: Serving each pump in pump array.
- 34 1. Manufactured Units: Pulse-width modulated; variable torque for inverter-duty motors.
- 35 2. Output Rating: Three phase; 10 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency
36 throughout voltage range; maximum voltage equals input voltage.
- 37 3. Unit Operating Requirements:
- 38 a. Internal Adjustability:
- 39 1) Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
- 40 2) Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
- 41 3) Acceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
- 42 4) Deceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
- 43 5) Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.



Alternate

- 1 b. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
- 2 1) Surge suppression.
- 3 2) Loss of input signal protection.
- 4 3) Under- and overvoltage trips.
- 5 4) VFC and motor overload/overtemperature protection.
- 6 5) Critical frequency rejection.
- 7 6) Loss-of-phase protection.
- 8 7) Reverse-phase protection.
- 9 8) Motor-overtemperature fault.
- 10 c. Bidirectional autospeed search.
- 11 d. Torque boost.
- 12 e. Motor temperature compensation at slow speeds.
- 13 1) Panel-mounted operator station.
- 14 2) Historical logging information and displays.
- 15 3) Digital indicating devices.
- 16 f. Control Signal Interface: Electric.
- 17 g. Proportional Integral Derivative (PID) control interface.
- 18 h. DDC System for HVAC Protocols for Network Communications: ASHRAE 135.
- 19 4. Line Conditioning:
- 20 a. Input line conditioning.
- 21 b. Output filtering.
- 22 c. EMI/RFI filtering.
- 23 5. Bypass Systems:
- 24 a. Bypass Mode: Field-selectable automatic or manual.
- 25 b. Bypass Controller: Three-contactor style, with bypass and input and output
26 isolating contactors and isolating switch.
- 27 c. Bypass Contactor Configuration: Full-voltage (across the line) type.
- 28 K. Base: Structural steel.
- 29 **2.3 MOTORS**
- 30 A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and
31 efficiency requirements for motors.
- 32 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will
33 not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- 34 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical
35 devices and connections specified in NFPA 70.
- 36 **2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**
- 37 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
38 by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.



Alternate

- 1 B. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9 for piping.
- 2 C. UL Compliance for Packaged Pumping Systems:
- 3 1. UL 508, "Industrial Control Equipment."
- 4 2. UL 508A, "Industrial Control Panels."
- 5 3. UL 778, "Motor-Operated Water Pumps."
- 6 4. UL 1995, "Heating and Cooling Equipment."
- 7 D. Booster pumps shall be listed and labeled as packaged pumping systems by testing agency
- 8 acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

9 PART 3 - EXECUTION

10 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 11 A. Examine roughing-in for booster pumps to verify actual locations of piping connections before
- 12 booster-pump installation.

13 3.2 INSTALLATION

- 14 A. Booster-Pump Mounting:
- 15 1. Install booster pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with
- 16 requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03.
- 17 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 22 05 48.13
- 18 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- 19 B. Support connected domestic-water piping so weight of piping is not supported by booster
- 20 pumps.

21 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- 22 A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
- 23 Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- 24 B. Booster-Pump Piping Connections: Connect domestic-water piping to booster pumps. Install
- 25 suction and discharge pipe equal to or greater than size of system suction and discharge
- 26 headers.
- 27 1. Install shutoff valves on piping connections to booster-pump suction and discharge
- 28 headers. Install ball, butterfly, or gate valves same size as suction and discharge
- 29 headers. Comply with requirements for general-duty valves specified in
- 30 Section 22 05 23.11 "General Duty Valves for Domestic Water Piping."
- 31 2. Install union, flanged, or grooved-joint connections on suction and discharge headers at
- 32 connection to domestic-water piping. Comply with requirements for unions and flanges
- 33 specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
- 34 3. Install valved bypass, same size as and between piping, at connections to booster-pump
- 35 suction and discharge headers. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping
- 36 specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."



Alternate

- 1 4. Install flexible connectors, same size as piping, on piping connections to booster-pump
2 suction and discharge headers. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors
3 specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
4 5. Where installing piping adjacent to booster pumps, allow space for service and
5 maintenance.
- 6 **3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS**
- 7 A. Connect wiring according to Division 26.
8 B. Ground equipment according to Division 26.
9 C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to
10 NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- 11 **3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS**
- 12 A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
13 B. Connect control wiring according to Division 26.
- 14 **3.6 IDENTIFICATION**
- 15 A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in
16 Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
17 B. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and
18 circuit number feeding connection.
19 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Division
20 26.
21 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background
22 and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.
- 23 **3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**
- 24 A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
25 1. Perform visual and mechanical inspection.
26 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge booster pump and test for leaks. Repair leaks and
27 retest until no leaks exist.
28 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start booster pumps to
29 confirm proper motor rotation and booster-pump operation.
30 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
31 equipment.
- 32 B. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
33 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.



Alternate

1 **3.8 STARTUP SERVICE**

2 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

3 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

4 **3.9 ADJUSTING**

5 A. Adjust booster pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

6 B. Adjust pressure set points.

7 **3.10 DEMONSTRATION**

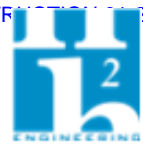
8 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain booster pumps.

9 **END OF SECTION 22 11 23.13**
10



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 22 11 23.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction materials, rated capacities,
11 certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics,
12 electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

13 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 14 A. Field quality-control reports.

15 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 16 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For inline, domestic-water pumps to include in operation and
17 maintenance manuals.

18 **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 19 A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
20 B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
21 C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written instructions for handling.

22 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

23 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 24 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
25 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.



- 1 B. UL Compliance: UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.
- 2 C. Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects and Drinking Water System Components -
- 3 Lead Content Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372.

4 **2.2 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS**

- 5 A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless,
- 6 overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.

- 7 B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated
- 8 on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- 9 1. Armstrong Pumps Inc
- 10 2. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation
- 11 3. TACO Incorporated

- 12 C. Pump Construction:

- 13 1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor
- 14 and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft
- 15 horizontal.
- 16 2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.
- 17 3. Maximum Continuous Operating Temperature: 220 deg F.
- 18 4. Casing: Bronze, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
- 19 5. Impeller: Plastic.
- 20 6. Motor: Single speed.

21 **2.3 MOTORS**

- 22 A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and
- 23 efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 22 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements
- 24 for Plumbing Equipment."

- 25 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will
- 26 not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

27 **2.4 CONTROLS**

- 28 A. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.

- 29 1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
- 30 2. Range: 65 to 200 deg F.
- 31 3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
- 32 4. Operation of Pump: On or off.
- 33 5. Transformer: Provide if required.
- 34 6. Power Requirement: 120 V ac.
- 35 7. Settings: Start pump at 110 deg F and stop pump at 120 deg F.

- 36 B. Timers: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump.



- 1 1. Type: Programmable, seven-day clock with manual override on-off switch.
- 2 2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, suitable for wall mounting.
- 3 3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
- 4 4. Transformer: Provide if required.
- 5 5. Power Requirement: 120 V ac.
- 6 6. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Up to two on-off cycles each day for seven days.

7 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

8 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 9 A. Examine roughing-in for domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of piping
- 10 connections before pump installation.

11 **3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION**

- 12 A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- 13 B. Mount pumps in orientation complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
- 14 C. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and vibration isolation of size required to support pump
- 15 weight.
- 16 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 22 05 48.13
- 17 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Fabricate brackets or supports
- 18 as required.
- 19 2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 22 05 29
- 20 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- 21 D. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.
- 22 E. Install timers adjacent to water heater.

23 **3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS**

- 24 A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
- 25 Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- 26 B. Where installing piping adjacent to inline, domestic-water pumps, allow space for service and
- 27 maintenance.
- 28 C. Connect domestic-water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or
- 29 greater than size of pump nozzles.
- 30 D. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling
- 31 valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply
- 32 with requirements for strainers specified in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping
- 33 Specialties." Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 22 05 23.11 "General
- 34 Duty Valves for Domestic Water Piping."



- 1 E. Install pressure gauge and snubber at suction of each pump and pressure gauge and snubber
 2 at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gauge tapings where provided or install
 3 pressure-gauge connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with
 4 requirements for pressure gauges and snubbers specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and
 5 Gages for Domestic Water Piping."

6 3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- 7 A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
 8 B. Connect control wiring between temperature controllers and devices.

9 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- 10 A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in
 11 Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

12 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- 13 A. Perform tests and inspections.
 14 B. Tests and Inspections:
 15 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest
 16 until no leaks exist.
 17 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm
 18 proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 19 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
 20 equipment.
 21 C. Inline, domestic-water pump will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and
 22 inspections.
 23 D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

24 3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- 25 A. Perform startup service.
 26 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 27 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 28 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 29 4. Set thermostats, and timers for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
 30 5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 31 a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 32 b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is
 33 free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate
 34 until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 35 c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.



- 1 6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for
- 2 operation.
- 3 7. Start motor.
- 4 8. Open discharge valve slowly.
- 5 9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
- 6 10. Adjust timer settings.

7 **3.8 ADJUSTING**

- 8 A. Adjust inline, domestic-water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by
- 9 manufacturer.
- 10 B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- 11 C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

12 **END OF SECTION 22 11 23.21**

13



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 22 13 16 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
8 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
9 2. Galvanized-steel pipe and fittings.
10 3. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
11 4. PVC pipe and fittings.
12 5. Specialty pipe fittings.

13 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 14 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

15 **1.4 WARRANTY**

- 16 A. Listed manufacturers to provide labeling and warranty of their respective products.

17 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

18 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 19 A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working
20 pressure unless otherwise indicated:
21 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.
22 2. Waste, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig.

23 **2.2 PIPING MATERIALS**

- 24 A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
25 B. Furnish new and unused piping materials manufactured in the United States of America. Piping
26 shall be marked with country of origin from the manufacturer.



- 1 C. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting
2 materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

3 2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- 4 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
5 following:

- 6 1. AB & I Foundry; a part of the McWane family of companies.
7 2. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
8 3. Tyler Pipe; a part of McWane family of companies.

- 9 B. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

- 10 C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

- 11 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
12 following:
- 13 a. ANACO-Husky (SD 4000).
14 b. Clamp-All Corp (Hi-Torq 80).
15 c. MIFAB, Inc (MI-XHUB).
16 d. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc (HeavyWeight).
- 17 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
18 3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and
19 ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

20 2.4 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- 21 A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Standard Weight class. Include square-cut-
22 grooved or threaded ends matching joining method.

- 23 B. Galvanized-Cast-Iron Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, threaded.

- 24 C. Steel Pipe Pressure Fittings:

- 25 1. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or
26 ASTM A 106/A 106M, Schedule 40, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining
27 method.
28 2. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-
29 socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
30 3. Galvanized-Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

- 31 D. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.

- 32 1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-
33 inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.



- 1 2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

2 **2.5 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- 3 A. Ductile-Iron, Push-on-Joint Piping:

- 4 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot ends
5 unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
6 2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, push-on-joint, ductile- or gray-iron standard
7 pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
8 3. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

9 **2.6 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS**

- 10 A. Copper Type DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.

- 11 B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-
12 joint fittings.

- 13 C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and Type M, water tube, drawn temper.

- 14 D. Copper Pressure Fittings:

- 15 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper,
16 solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
17 2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket,
18 metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

- 19 E. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.

- 20 1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-
21 inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.

- 22 2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

- 23 F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

24 **2.7 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- 25 A. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic
26 piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping
27 and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

- 28 B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.

- 29 C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns
30 and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.

- 31 D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.

- 32 E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.



1 **2.8 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS**

2 A. Transition Couplings:

- 3 1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's
 4 or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with
 5 pipes to be joined.
 6 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping
 7 system fitting.
 8 3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:

- 9 a. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
 10 b. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear
 11 ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each
 12 end.
 13 c. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 14 d. Sleeve Materials:
 15 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 16 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 17 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with
 18 pipe materials being joined.

19 4. Pressure Transition Couplings:

- 20 a. Standard: AWWA C219.
 21 b. Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to,
 22 and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
 23 c. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 24 d. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 25 e. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

26 B. Dielectric Fittings:

- 27 1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating
 28 nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be
 29 joined.

30 2. Dielectric Unions:

31 a. Description:

- 32 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 33 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 34 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

35 3. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

36 a. Description:

- 37 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 38 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 39 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 40 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.



1 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

2 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3 **3.1 EARTH MOVING**

4 A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 31.

5 **3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION**

6 A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping
7 systems.

8 1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss,
9 expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.

10 2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination
11 drawings.

12 B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms
13 and service areas.

14 C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right
15 angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated
16 otherwise.

17 D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

18 E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

19 F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

20 G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

21 H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

22 I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

23 J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate
24 branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.

25 1. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in
26 direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical.

27 2. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to
28 back or side by side with common drain pipe.

29 a. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines.

30 3. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.

31 4. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are
32 connected.



- 1 a. Reducing size of waste piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- 2 K. Lay buried building waste piping beginning at low point of each system.
- 3 1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place
4 hub ends of piping upstream.
- 5 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of
6 lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- 7 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- 8 L. Install soil and waste and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise
9 indicated:
- 10 1. Building Sanitary Waste: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and
11 smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
- 12 2. Horizontal Sanitary Waste Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
- 13 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- 14 M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook,"
15 Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- 16 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or
17 AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- 18 N. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.
- 19 O. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- 20 P. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- 21 Q. Install engineered soil and waste and vent piping systems as follows:
- 22 1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 23 R. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600.
- 24 1. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to
25 sanitary sewer piping outside building with restrained joints.
- 26 2. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
- 27 S. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- 28 T. Plumbing Specialties:
- 29 1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waster gravity-flow piping.
- 30 a. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 22 13 19
31 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- 32 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building
33 sanitary sewers in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.



- 1 a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage
2 force-main piping.
- 3 b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary
4 Waste Piping Specialties."
- 5 3. Install drains in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
- 6 a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste
7 Piping Specialties."
- 8 U. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by
9 authorities having jurisdiction.
- 10 V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- 11 1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve
12 Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- 13 W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- 14 1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and
15 Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- 16 X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- 17 1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons
18 for Plumbing Piping."
- 19 **3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**
- 20 A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil
21 Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- 22 B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and
23 Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- 24 C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- 25 1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
- 26 2. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and
27 valves as follows:
- 28 a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry
29 seal threading is specified.
- 30 b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded
31 or damaged.
- 32 c. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- 33 D. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813,
34 water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.



- 1 E. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness.
 2 Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in
 3 cross pattern.
- 4 F. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe
 5 and fittings according to the following:
- 6 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent
 7 cements.
 8 2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 appendixes.

9 3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- 10 A. Transition Couplings:
- 11 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
 12 2. In Waste Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
 13 3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
 14 4. In Underground Force Main Piping:
- 15 a. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
 16 b. NPS 2 and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.
- 17 B. Dielectric Fittings:
- 18 1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
 19 2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
 20 3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.
 21 4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

22 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- 23 A. Install valves according to Section 22 05 23.31 "General Duty Valves for Sanitary Waste and
 24 Storm Drainage Piping."
- 25 B. Shutoff Valves:
- 26 1. Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
 27 2. Install full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
 28 3. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 29 C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage
 30 pump discharge.
- 31 D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
- 32 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves.
 33 2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
 34 3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.



- 1 4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary
2 Waste Piping Specialties."

3 **3.6 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- 4 A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in
5 Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- 6 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
7 2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
8 3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
9 4. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
- 10 a. MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
- 11 5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls.
12 Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
13 6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- 14 B. Install hangers for cast-iron, steel, and copper soil piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and
15 minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having
16 jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- 17 C. Install hangers for PVC piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters,
18 to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities
19 having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- 20 D. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- 21 E. Support vertical runs of cast iron, steel, and copper soil piping to comply with MSS-58, locally
22 enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- 23 F. Support vertical runs of PVC piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally
24 enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

25 **3.7 CONNECTIONS**

- 26 A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- 27 B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join
28 dissimilar piping materials.
- 29 C. Connect waste and vent piping to the following:
- 30 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect waste piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required
31 by plumbing code.
32 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated,
33 but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
34 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect waste and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller
35 than required by plumbing code.



- 1 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover
 2 flush with floor.
 3 5. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
 4 6. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts, and drains specified in
 5 Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 6 7. Equipment: Connect waste piping as indicated.
- 7 a. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection.
 8 b. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 9 D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
- 10 1. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main.
 11 2. Sewage Pump: To sewage pump discharge.
- 12 E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of
 13 equipment.
- 14 F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
- 15 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection
 16 to each piece of equipment.
 17 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final
 18 connection to each piece of equipment.

19 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- 20 A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping.
 21 B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for
 22 Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

23 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- 24 A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must
 25 be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 26 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in
 27 after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 28 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe
 29 tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- 30 B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection,
 31 make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- 32 C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 33 D. Test sanitary waste and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or,
 34 in absence of published procedures, as follows:



- 1 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been
2 altered, extended, or repaired.
- 3 a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete
4 with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- 5 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced waste and vent
6 piping until it has been tested and approved.
- 7 a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
- 8 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test waste and vent piping except outside
9 leaders on completion of roughing-in.
- 10 a. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less
11 than 10-foot head of water.
- 12 b. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level
13 must not drop.
- 14 c. Inspect joints for leaks.
- 15 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled
16 with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight.
- 17 a. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building.
18 Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg.
- 19 b. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this
20 pressure.
- 21 c. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout
22 period of inspection.
- 23 d. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
- 24 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until
25 satisfactory results are obtained.
- 26 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- 27 E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence
28 of published procedures, as follows:
- 29 1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping
30 until it has been tested and approved.
- 31 a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
- 32 2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure,
33 without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials.
- 34 a. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours.
- 35 b. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- 36 3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until
37 satisfactory results are obtained.
- 38 4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.



1 **3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- 2 A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- 3 B. Protect sanitary waste and vent piping during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging
4 with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- 5 C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- 6 D. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based
7 latex paint.
- 8 E. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by waste and vent piping installation.

9 **3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE** See alternates for cast-iron piping.

- 10 A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- 11 B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
12 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and
13 coupled joints.
14 2. Copper Type DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
15 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- 16 C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
17 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and
18 coupled joints.
19 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- 20 D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
21 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and
22 coupled joints.
23 2. Copper Type DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
24 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- 25 E. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
26 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and
27 coupled joints.
28 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- 29 F. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
30 1. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
31 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- 32 G. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
33 1. Solid-wall PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
34 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- 35 H. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 shall be any of the following:
36 1. Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.



- 1 2. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
- 2 I. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 shall be any of the following:
- 3 1. Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
- 4 2. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
- 5 J. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
- 6 1. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
- 7 2. Fitting-type transition coupling for piping smaller than NPS 1-1/2 and pressure transition
- 8 coupling for NPS 1-1/2 and larger if dissimilar pipe materials.
- 9 K. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:
- 10 1. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
- 11 2. Pressure transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials.

12 **END OF SECTION 22 13 16**

13



1 THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 22 13 19 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
8 1. Cleanouts.
9 2. Air-admittance valves.
10 3. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.

11 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 12 A. ABS: Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene.
13 B. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

14 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 15 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

16 **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Field quality-control reports.

18 **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 19 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sanitary waste piping specialties to include in emergency,
20 operation, and maintenance manuals.

21 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

22 **2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTIONS**

- 23 A. Sanitary waste piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing
24 agency.
25 B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary waste piping specialty components.



1 **2.2 CLEANOUTS**

2 A. Cast-Iron Exposed Cleanouts:

3 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
4 following:

- 5 a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
6 b. MIFAB, Inc.
7 c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
8 d. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
9 e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

- 10 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
11 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
12 4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe
13 test tee as required to match connected piping.
14 5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
15 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

16 B. Cast-Iron Exposed Floor Cleanouts:

17 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z1400-
18 K or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 19 a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
20 b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
21 c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.

- 22 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
23 3. Size: Same as connected branch.
24 4. Type: Threaded, adjustable housing.
25 5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
26 6. Clamping Device: Required.
27 7. Outlet Connection: Inside caulk.
28 8. Closure: Brass plug with tapered threads.
29 9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
30 10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
31 11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
32 12. Top-Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
33 13. Riser: ASTM A74, Service Class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

34 C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

35 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z1446
36 or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 37 a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
38 b. MIFAB, Inc.
39 c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; d of Smith Industries, Inc.
40 d. Watts Drainage Products Inc (CO-460-RD).

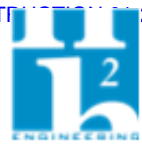
41 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.



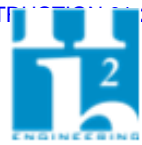
- 1 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
 2 4. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee
 3 as required to match connected piping.
 4 5. Closure Plug:
- 5 a. Brass.
 6 b. Countersunk head.
 7 c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
 8 d. Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
- 9 6. Wall Access, Cover Plate: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze cover plate with screw.
- 10 D. Plastic Floor Cleanouts:
- 11 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; CO-
 12 2449 or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 13 a. NDS Inc.
 14 b. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
- 15 2. Size: Same as connected branch.
 16 3. Body: PVC.
 17 4. Outlet Connection: PVC hub.
 18 5. Closure Plug: ABS plug with tapered threads.
 19 6. Adjustable Housing Material: PVC with threads.
 20 7. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
 21 8. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
 22 9. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
 23 10. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.

24 **2.3 AIR-ADMITTANCE VALVES**

- 25 A. Fixture Air-Admittance Valves:
- 26 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 27 following:
- 28 a. Oatey.
 29 b. RectorSeal.
 30 c. Studor, Inc.
- 31 2. Standard: ASSE 1051, Type A for single fixture or Type B for branch piping.
 32 3. Housing: Plastic.
 33 4. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.
 34 5. Size: Same as connected fixture or branch vent piping.
- 35 B. Wall Box for Air-Admittance Valves:
- 36 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 37 following:
- 38 a. Oatey.



- 1 b. RectorSeal.
 2 c. Studor, Inc.
- 3 2. Description: White plastic housing with white plastic grille, made for recessed installation.
 4 Include bottom pipe connection and space to contain one air-admittance valve.
 5 3. Size: Approximately 6 inches wide by 6 inches high by 4 inches deep.
- 6 **2.4 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES**
- 7 A. Open Drains:
- 8 1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A74, Service Class, hub-and-spigot, cast-
 9 iron soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required,
 10 increaser fitting joined with ASTM C564 rubber gaskets.
 11 2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
- 12 B. Deep-Seal Traps:
- 13 1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping
 14 and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
 15 2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
- 16 a. NPS 2: 4-inch-minimum water seal.
 17 b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch-minimum water seal.
- 18 C. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:
- 19 1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal
 20 primer valve connection.
 21 2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.
- 22 D. Air-Gap Fittings:
- 23 1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between
 24 installed inlet and outlet piping.
 25 2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
 26 3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
 27 4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
 28 5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect
 29 waste piping.
- 30 E. Stack Flashing Fittings:
- 31 1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof
 32 membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
 33 2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- 3 A. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following,
4 unless otherwise indicated:
- 5 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless
6 larger cleanout is indicated.
 - 7 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 - 8 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for
9 larger piping.
 - 10 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- 11 B. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with
12 finished floor.
- 13 C. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types
14 indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- 15 D. Install fixture air-admittance valves on fixture drain piping.
- 16 E. Install air-admittance-valve wall boxes recessed in wall.
- 17 F. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 2 inches above floor.
- 18 G. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets.
- 19 H. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer
20 connection.
- 21 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
 - 22 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- 23 I. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping
24 discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- 25 J. Install sleeve and sleeve seals with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof
26 membrane.
- 27 K. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- 28 L. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is
29 indicated.

30 **3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS**

- 31 A. Comply with requirements in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping
32 installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and
33 specialties.
- 34 B. Install piping adjacent to equipment, to allow service and maintenance.



1 **3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING**

2 A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety
3 and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to
4 identifying unit.

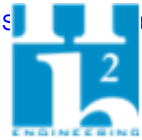
5 1. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing
6 Piping and Equipment."

7 **3.4 PROTECTION**

8 A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and
9 to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

10 B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

11 **END OF SECTION 22 13 19**



1 **SECTION 22 13 19.13 - SANITARY DRAINS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Floor drains.
9 2. Floor sinks.

10 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 11 A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

12 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 13 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

14 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

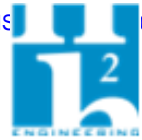
15 **2.1 DRAIN ASSEMBLIES**

- 16 A. Sanitary drains shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
17 B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

18 **2.2 FLOOR DRAINS**

- 19 A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

- 20 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Watts; FD-
21 100-A (Round) / Watts: FD-100-M (Square) or a comparable product by one of the
22 following:
23 a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
24 b. MIFAB, Inc.
25 c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
26 d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.



- 1 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
- 2 3. Pattern: Floor drain.
- 3 4. Body: Gray iron, with seepage flange, anchoring flange, and clamping device.
- 4 5. Outlet: Bottom, push-on type with gasket.
- 5 6. Inlet: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
- 6
- 7 7. Strainer: Nickel bronze, medium duty, shape as indicated below:
- 8
- 9 a. Tile Floors: Square, 6 inch x 6 inch.
- 9 b. All Floors Except Tile Floors: Round, 6 inch for all floors except tile floors.
- 10 8. Trap: Deep-seal P-trap.
- 11 9. Funnel: Provide where indicated on plans.

12 **2.3 FLOOR SINKS**

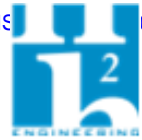
13 A. Cast-Iron Floor Sinks:

- 14 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Watts; FS-730 or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 15
- 16 a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
- 17 b. MIFAB, Inc.
- 18 c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
- 19 d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
- 20 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.7. Pattern: Floor drain.
- 21 3. Body: Acid-resistant enamel coated cast iron, with seepage holes, anchoring flange, and clamping device.
- 22
- 23 4. Outlet: Bottom, push-on type with gasket.
- 24 5. Inlet: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
- 25
- 26 6. Strainer: Polypropylene, internal dome bottom.
- 27 7. Grate: Acid-resistant enamel coated cast iron, square, 12 inch x 12 inch, loose.
- 28 8. Sink Depth: 6 inch.
- 29 9. Trap: Deep-seal P-trap.

30 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

31 **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- 32 A. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
- 33
- 34 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
- 35 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage.
- 36 3. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
- 37 a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-
- 38 inch total depression.



- 1 b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
2 c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-
3 inch total depression.
- 4 4. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange, so no leakage occurs between drain and
5 adjoining flooring.
- 6 a. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
- 7 5. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless
8 otherwise indicated.
- 9 B. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained.
- 10 1. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- 11 C. Install open drain fittings with top of hub 2 inches above floor.

12 **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- 13 A. Comply with requirements in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping
14 installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and
15 specialties.
- 16 B. Comply with requirements in Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for
17 backwater valves, air admittance devices and miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping
18 specialties.
- 19 C. Comply with requirements in Section 22 13 23 "Sanitary Waste Interceptors" for grease
20 interceptors, grease-removal devices, oil interceptors, sand interceptors, and solid interceptors.
- 21 D. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

22 **3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING**

- 23 A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety
24 and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to
25 identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for
26 Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

27 **3.4 PROTECTION**

- 28 A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and
29 to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- 30 B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

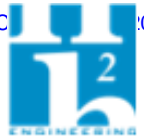
31 **END OF SECTION 22 13 19.13**

32



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 22 14 13 - FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
8 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
9 2. PVC pipe and fittings.
10 3. Specialty pipe and fittings.

11 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 12 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

13 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 14 A. Furnish new and unused piping materials manufactured in the United States of America. Piping
15 shall be marked with country of origin from the manufacturer.
16 B. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

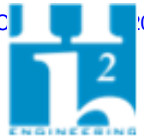
17 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

18 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 19 A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working
20 pressure unless otherwise indicated:
21 1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.

22 **2.2 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- 23 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
24 following:
25 1. AB & I Foundry; a part of the McWane family of companies.
26 2. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.



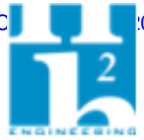
- 1 3. Tyler Pipe; a part of McWane family of companies.
- 2 B. Pipe and Fittings:
- 3 1. Marked with CISPI collective trademark and NSF certification mark.
- 4 2. Standard: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- 5 C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
- 6 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 7 following:
- 8 a. ANACO-Husky (SD 4000).
- 9 b. Clamp-All Corp (Hi-Torq 80).
- 10 c. MIFAB, Inc (MI-XHUB).
- 11 d. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc (HeavyWeight).
- 12 2. Standard: ASTM C 1540..
- 13 3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and
- 14 ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

15 2.3 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- 16 A. NSF Marking: Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related
- 17 Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic storm
- 18 drain and "NSF-sewer" for plastic storm sewer piping.
- 19 B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665; drain, waste, and vent.
- 20 C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns
- 21 and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- 22 D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
- 23 E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

24 2.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- 25 A. Transition Couplings:
- 26 1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in ODs or
- 27 of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to
- 28 be joined.
- 29 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified-piping-
- 30 system fitting.
- 31 3. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
- 32 a. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
- 33 b. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer
- 34 shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on
- 35 each end.



- 1 c. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
- 2 B. Dielectric Fittings:
- 3 1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating
4 nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be
5 joined.
- 6 2. Dielectric Unions:
- 7 a. Description:
- 8 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
9 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
10 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- 11 3. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
- 12 a. Description:
- 13 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
14 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
15 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
16 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
17 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel-backing washers.

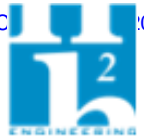
18 PART 3 - EXECUTION

19 3.1 EARTH MOVING

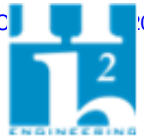
- 20 A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 31.

21 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

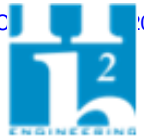
- 22 A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping
23 systems.
- 24 1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss,
25 expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
- 26 2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination
27 drawings.
- 28 B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms
29 and service areas.
- 30 C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right
31 angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated
32 otherwise.
- 33 D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- 34 E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.



- 1 F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- 2 G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- 3 H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- 4 I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- 5 J. Make changes in direction for piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep
6 bends.
- 7 1. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
- 8 2. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are
9 connected.
- 10 a. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- 11 K. Lay buried building piping beginning at low point of each system.
- 12 1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place
13 hub ends of piping upstream.
- 14 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of
15 lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- 16 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- 17 L. Install piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
- 18 1. Building Storm Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and
19 smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
- 20 2. Horizontal Storm Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
- 21 M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook,"
22 Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- 23 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or
24 AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- 25 N. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- 26 O. Plumbing Specialties:
- 27 1. Install backwater valves in storm drainage gravity-flow piping.
- 28 a. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 22 14 23
29 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- 30 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building
31 storm sewers in storm drainage gravity-flow piping.
- 32 a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-
33 main piping.
- 34 b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 22 14 23 "Storm
35 Drainage Piping Specialties."



- 1 3. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping.
- 2 a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 22 14 23.13 "Storm
- 3 Drains."
- 4 P. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by
- 5 authorities having jurisdiction.
- 6 Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- 7 1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve
- 8 Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- 9 R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- 10 1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and
- 11 Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- 12 S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- 13 1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons
- 14 for Plumbing Piping."
- 15 **3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**
- 16 A. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints:
- 17 1. Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for
- 18 hubless-piping coupling joints.
- 19 B. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join
- 20 pipe and fittings according to the following:
- 21 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent
- 22 cements.
- 23 2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 appendices.
- 24 **3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION**
- 25 A. Transition Couplings:
- 26 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
- 27 2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- 28 B. Dielectric Fittings:
- 29 1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- 30 2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- 31 3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.
- 32 4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.



1 **3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION**

- 2 A. General valve installation requirements for general-duty valve installations are specified in
3 Section 22 05 23.31 "General Duty Valves for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping."
- 4 B. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
- 5 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves.
6 2. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
7 3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 22 14 23 "Storm
8 Drainage Piping Specialties."

9 **3.6 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- 10 A. Comply with requirements for hangers, supports, and anchor devices specified in
11 Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- 12 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
13 2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
14 3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
15 4. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
- 16 a. MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
- 17 5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls.
18 Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
- 19 B. Install hangers for cast-iron, galvanized steel, and copper soil tubing and piping, with maximum
20 horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes,
21 and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- 22 C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- 23 D. Support vertical cast-iron, galvanized steel, and copper tubing and piping to comply with MSS-
24 58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most
25 stringent, but as a minimum at base and at each floor.

26 **3.7 CONNECTIONS**

- 27 A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- 28 B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to
29 join dissimilar piping materials.
- 30 C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
- 31 1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor, and floor cleanouts with cover
32 flush with floor.
33 2. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
34 3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts, and drains specified in
35 Section 22 14 23 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."



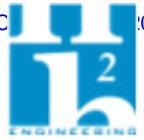
- 1 D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- 2 E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
- 3 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection
- 4 to each piece of equipment.
- 5 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final
- 6 connection to each piece of equipment.

7 **3.8 IDENTIFICATION**

- 8 A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping.
- 9 B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for
- 10 Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

11 **3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 12 A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must
- 13 be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 14 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in
- 15 after roughing-in.
- 16 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe
- 17 tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- 18 B. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in
- 19 absence of published procedures, as follows:
- 20 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been
- 21 altered, extended, or repaired.
- 22 a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete
- 23 with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- 24 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage
- 25 piping until it has been tested and approved.
- 26 a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
- 27 3. Test Procedure:
- 28 a. Test storm drainage piping on completion of roughing-in.
- 29 b. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less
- 30 than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts until
- 31 completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
- 32 4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until
- 33 satisfactory results are obtained.
- 34 5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- 35 C. Piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.



1 D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

2 **3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

3 A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

4 B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and
5 to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

6 C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

7 **3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE** See alternates for cast-iron piping.

8 A. Aboveground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be any of the following:

- 9 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty, hubless-piping couplings; and
10 coupled joints.
11 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

12 B. Aboveground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 and larger shall be any of the following:

- 13 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty, hubless-piping couplings; and
14 coupled joints.
15 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

16 C. Underground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be any of the following:

- 17 1. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
18 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

19 D. Underground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 and larger shall be any of the following:

- 20 1. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
21 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

22 **END OF SECTION 22 14 13**



1 **SECTION 22 14 23 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
9 2. Cleanouts.
10 3. Backwater valves.

11 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 12 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

13 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 14 A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing
15 agency.

16 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

17 **2.1 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES**

- 18 A. Metal Downspout Nozzles:

- 19 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z199
20 or comparable product by one of the following:

- 21 a. Josam Company.
22 b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
23 c. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

- 24 2. Description: Nozzle with wall flange and mounting holes to cover rough opening and
25 serve as anchor.
26 3. Size: Same as connected downspout.
27 4. Material: Cast bronze or nickel bronze nozzle and flange.
28 5. Piping Connection Type: Threaded or No-hub for connecting to cast-iron pipes.
29 6. Opening Protection: None.



1 **2.2 CLEANOUTS**

2 A. Cast-Iron Exposed Cleanouts:

3 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z1446
4 or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 5 a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
6 b. MIFAB, Inc.
7 c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
8 d. Watts Drainage Products Inc.

9 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.

10 3. Size: Same as connected branch.

11 4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or No-hub, cast-iron soil pipe
12 test tee as required to match connected piping.

13 5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.

14 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.

15 B. Cast-Iron Exposed Floor Cleanouts:

16 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z1400-
17 K or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 18 a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
19 b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
20 c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.

21 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.

22 3. Size: Same as connected branch.

23 4. Type: Threaded, adjustable housing.

24 5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.

25 6. Clamping Device: Required.

26 7. Outlet Connection: Hub with inside caulk.

27 8. Closure: Brass plug with tapered threads.

28 9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.

29 10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.

30 11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.

31 12. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.

32 13. Riser: ASTM A74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

33 C. Plastic Floor Cleanouts:

34 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; CO-
35 2449 or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 36 a. NDS Inc.
37 b. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.

38 2. Size: Same as connected branch.

39 3. Body Material: PVC.

40 4. Outlet Connection: PVC hub.

41 5. Closure Plug: ABS plug with tapered threads.



- 1 6. Adjustable Housing Material: PVC with threads.
 2 7. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
 3 8. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
 4 9. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
 5 10. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.
- 6 D. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:
- 7 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z1446
 8 or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 9 a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 10 b. MIFAB, Inc.
 11 c. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 12 d. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
- 13 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
 14 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
 15 4. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or No-hub, cast-iron soil pipe test tee
 16 as required to match connected piping.
 17 5. Closure Plug:
- 18 a. Brass.
 19 b. Countersunk head.
 20 c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
 21 d. Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.
- 22 6. Wall Access, Cover Plate: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze cover plate with screw.

23 **2.3 BACKWATER VALVES**

- 24 A. Cast-Iron, Horizontal Backwater Valves:
- 25 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z1090
 26 / Z1095 or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 27 a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 28 b. MIFAB, Inc.
 29 c. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 30 d. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
- 31 2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
 32 3. Size: Same as connected piping.
 33 4. Body Material: Cast iron.
 34 5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted access check valve.
 35 6. End Connections: Hub and spigot or no hub.
 36 7. Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to
 37 hang open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
 38 8. Extension: ASTM A74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron soil-pipe extension to field-
 39 installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.
- 40 B. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:



- 1 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z325 or a
2 comparable product by one of the following:
- 3 a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
4 b. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
5 c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
6 d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
- 7 2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
8 3. Body: Cast iron indirect waste funnel.
9 4. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
10 5. Inlet: Threaded.
11 6. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.
- 12 C. Plastic, Horizontal Backwater Valves:
- 13 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn;
14 BW2930 or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 15 a. NDS Inc.
16 b. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
- 17 2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
18 3. Size: Same as connected piping.
19 4. Body Material: PVC.
20 5. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
21 6. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
22 7. End Connections: Socket type.
23 8. Extension: Full-size, PVC pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces
24 backwater valve cover.

25 PART 3 - EXECUTION

26 3.1 INSTALLATION

- 27 A. Install downspout nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.
- 28 B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping in accordance with the
29 following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
- 30 1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger
31 drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
32 2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
33 3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100
34 feet for larger piping.
35 4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical storm piping conductor.
- 36 C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with
37 finished floor.



- 1 D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types
2 indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- 3 E. Install horizontal backwater valves in floor with cover flush with floor.
- 4 F. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.
- 5 G. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.
- 6 H. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies for penetrations of fire- and smoke-rated
7 assemblies.
- 8 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07.

9 **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

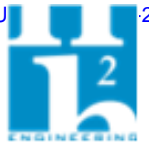
- 10 A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 14 13 "Facility Storm Drainage
11 Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

12 **3.3 PROTECTION**

- 13 A. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

14 **END OF SECTION 22 14 23**

15



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 22 14 23.13 - STORM DRAINS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Metal roof drains.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

11 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 12 A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing
13 agency.

14 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

15 **2.1 METAL ROOF DRAINS**

- 16 A. Cast-Iron, Large-Sump, Combination Main Roof and Overflow Drains:

- 17 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z163
18 or comparable product by one of the following:

- 19 a. Josam Company.
20 b. MIFAB, Inc.
21 c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
22 d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

- 23 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
24 3. Drain Quantity: Two.
25 4. Body Material: Cast iron.
26 5. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-to 16-inch diameter.
27 6. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.
28 7. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required.
29 8. Outlets: Bottom.



- 1 9. Outlet Types: No hub.
 - 2 10. Extension Collars: Required.
 - 3 11. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
 - 4 12. Expansion Joint: Not required.
 - 5 13. Sump Receiver Plate: Double.
 - 6 14. Dome Materials: Aluminum.
 - 7 15. Perforated Gravel Guard: Not required.
 - 8 16. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required.
 - 9 17. Water Dam:
-
- 10 a. Primary Drains: Not required.
 - 11 b. Overflow Drains: External 2 inches high.

12 PART 3 - EXECUTION

13 3.1 INSTALLATION

- 14 A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas in accordance with roof membrane manufacturer's
15 written installation instructions.
 - 16 1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and
17 adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 - 18 2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
 - 19 3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- 20 B. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.
- 21 C. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies for penetrations of fire- and smoke-rated
22 assemblies.
 - 23 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07.

24 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- 25 A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 14 13 "Facility Storm Drainage
26 Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

27 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FLASHING

- 28 A. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Division 07.
- 29 B. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage
30 shapes are required.
- 31 C. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors
32 and roofs with waterproof membrane.
- 33 D. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- 34 E. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.



1 **3.4 PROTECTION**

2 A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and
3 to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

4 B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

5 **END OF SECTION 22 14 23.13**

6



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 22 14 29 - SUMP PUMPS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Packaged drainage-pump units.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating
11 characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

- 12 B. Shop Drawings:

- 13 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
14 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
15 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
16 connection.
17 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

18 **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 19 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps and controls, to include in operation and
20 maintenance manuals.

21 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 22 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
23 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- 24 B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

25 **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 26 A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.

- 27 B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.



- 1 C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling.

2 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

3 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 4 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
5 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 6 B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

7 **2.2 PACKAGED DRAINAGE-PUMP UNITS**

- 8 A. Packaged Pedestal Drainage-Pump Units:

- 9 1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, automatic-operation, freestanding, sump-
10 pump unit.
- 11 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Little Giant
12 Pump Co.; 10ECH-CIA-RFS or comparable product by one of the following:
- 13 a. Pentair Pump Group; Hydromatic Pumps.
- 14 b. Zoeller Company.
- 15 3. Pump Type: Wet-pit-volute, single-stage, separately coupled, overhung-impeller
16 centrifugal pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
- 17 4. Pump Casing: Corrosion-resistant material, with strainer inlet, design that permits flow
18 into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
- 19 5. Impeller: Aluminum, brass, or plastic.
- 20 6. Motor: With built-in overload protection and mounted vertically on sump pump column.
- 21 7. Power Cord: Three-conductor, waterproof cable of length required, but not less than 72
22 inches, with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
- 23 8. Control: Float switch.
- 24 B. Capacities and Characteristics:
- 25 1. Capacity: 50 gpm.
- 26 2. Total Dynamic Head: 15 feet.
- 27 3. Discharge Pipe Size: 2 inch NPS.
- 28 4. Electrical Characteristics:
- 29 a. Motor Horsepower: 1/2 hp.
- 30 b. Volts: 120 V.
- 31 c. Phases: Single.
- 32 d. Hertz: 60.
- 33 e. Full-Load Amperes: 11.4 A.
- 34 f. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: 14.3 A.
- 35 g. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: 20 A.
- 36 5. Basin: Not required.



1 **2.3 MOTORS**

2 A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and
3 efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 22 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements
4 for Plumbing Equipment."

5 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will
6 not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

7 B. Motors for submersible pumps shall be hermetically sealed.

8 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

9 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

10 A. Examine roughing-in for plumbing piping to verify actual locations of storm drainage piping
11 connections before sump pump installation.

12 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

13 A. Pump Installation Standards: Comply with HI 1.4 for installation of sump pumps.

14 **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

15 A. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.

16 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

17 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test,
18 inspect, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including
19 connections.

20 B. Perform the following tests and inspections:

21 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.

22 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest
23 until no leaks exist.

24 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm
25 proper motor rotation and unit operation.

26 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
27 equipment.

28 C. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

29 D. Prepare test and inspection reports.



1 **3.5 STARTUP SERVICE**

2 A. Perform startup service.

3 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

4 **3.6 ADJUSTING**

5 A. Adjust pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

6 B. Adjust control set points.

7 **3.7 DEMONSTRATION**

8 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain pumps.

9 **END OF SECTION 22 14 29**



1 **SECTION 22 16 23 - FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 4 A. Section Includes:
- 5 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
- 6 2. Piping specialties.
- 7 3. Joining materials.
- 8 4. Manual gas shutoff valves.
- 9 5. Pressure regulators.

10 **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- 11 A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- 12 B. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient
13 temperatures and weather conditions. An example includes rooftop locations.
- 14 C. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied
15 spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- 16 D. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces,
17 pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings,
18 unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

19 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 20 A. Product Data:
- 21 1. Piping specialties.
- 22 2. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of
23 selected models.
- 24 3. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.

25 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 26 A. Certificates:
- 27 1. Welding certificates.
- 28 B. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
- 29 1. Field quality-control reports.



1 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 2 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For motorized gas valves to include in emergency, operation,
3 and maintenance manuals.

4 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 5 A. Qualifications:

- 6 1. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with
7 AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
8 2. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators in accordance with the ASME Boiler and
9 Pressure Vessel Code.

10 **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 11 A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping in
12 accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 13 B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping,
14 storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and
15 moisture.
- 16 C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging
17 coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
- 18 D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

19 **1.8 COORDINATION**

- 20 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- 21 B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed and concealed behind
22 finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Division 08.
- 23 C. Coordinate requirements for piping identification for natural-gas piping. Comply with
24 requirements in Section 22 05 53 "Identification of Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

25 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

26 **2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS**

- 27 A. Obtain each product type from single source from single manufacturer.

28 **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 29 A. Comply with NFPA 54.



- 1 B. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
- 2 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- 3 2. Service Regulators: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- 4 3. Minimum Operating Pressure of Service Meter: 5 psig.
- 5 C. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings:
- 6 1. Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 0.5 psig, but not more than 2 psig,
- 7 and is reduced to secondary pressure of 0.5 psig or less.
- 8 D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
- 9 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 10 **2.3 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS**
- 11 A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
- 12 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
- 13 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M for butt welding and socket welding.
- 14 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint,
- 15 and threaded ends.
- 16 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including
- 17 bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
- 18 a. Material Group: 1.1.
- 19 b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
- 20 c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
- 21 d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum O-rings,
- 22 and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
- 23 e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel
- 24 underground.
- 25 5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy,
- 26 adhesive, and PE.
- 27 a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
- 28 B. PE Pipe: ASTM D2513, SDR 11.
- 29 1. PE Fittings: ASTM D2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D3261, butt-fusion type with
- 30 dimensions matching PE pipe.
- 31 2. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with
- 32 ASTM D2513, SDR 11; and steel pipe complying with ASTM A53/A53M, black steel,
- 33 Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
- 34 3. Transition Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
- 35 a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D2513, SDR 11 inlet
- 36 connected to steel pipe complying with ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, Type E or
- 37 S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating for aboveground outlet.
- 38 b. Outlet is threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
- 39 c. Bridging sleeve over mechanical coupling.
- 40 d. Factory-connected anode.



- 1 e. Tracer wire connection.
- 2 f. UV shield.
- 3 g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.

4 2.4 PIPING SPECIALTIES

5 A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

- 6 1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
- 7 2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
- 8 3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
- 9 4. Corrugated, stainless steel tubing with polymer coating.
- 10 5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
- 11 6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
- 12 7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
- 13 8. Maximum Length: 72 inches.

14 B. Y-Pattern Strainers:

- 15 1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
- 16 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and
- 17 larger.
- 18 3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless steel basket with 50
- 19 percent free area.
- 20 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

21 C. Weatherproof Vent Cap:

- 22 1. Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free
- 23 area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end
- 24 connection.

25 2.5 JOINING MATERIALS

26 A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.

27 B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for

28 wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

29 2.6 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

30 A. See "Underground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground, Manual Gas

31 Shutoff Valve Schedule" articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.

32 B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.

- 33 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
- 34 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
- 35 3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground, Manual Gas
- 36 Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule"
- 37 articles.



- 1 4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1
2 inch and smaller.
- 3 5. Service Mark: Valves NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 having initials "WOG" permanently marked on
4 valve body.
- 5 C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
- 6 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
7 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
8 3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground, Manual Gas
9 Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule"
10 articles.
11 4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- 12 D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim: MSS SP-110.
- 13 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
14 following:
- 15 a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
16 b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
17 c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
18 d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
19 e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
- 20 2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
21 3. Ball: Chrome-plated stainless-steel.
22 4. Stem: Stainless-steel; blowout proof.
23 5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
24 6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
25 7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground, Manual Gas Shutoff
26 Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" articles.
27 8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
28 9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller are to be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to
29 authorities having jurisdiction.
30 10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- 31 E. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
- 32 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
33 following:
- 34 a. Lee Brass Company.
35 b. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
- 36 2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
37 3. Plug: Bronze.
38 4. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground, Manual Gas Shutoff
39 Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" articles.
40 5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
41 6. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
42 7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller are to be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to
43 authorities having jurisdiction.



- 1 8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- 2 F. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
- 3 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 4 following:
- 5 a. Flowserve.
- 6 b. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
- 7 c. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
- 8 d. Milliken Valve Company.
- 9 e. Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
- 10 f. R&M Energy Systems, A Unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
- 11 2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A126, Class B.
- 12 3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
- 13 4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
- 14 5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
- 15 6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve
- 16 Schedule" and "Aboveground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" articles.
- 17 7. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
- 18 8. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
- 19 9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller are to be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to
- 20 authorities having jurisdiction.
- 21 10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- 22 G. Valve Boxes:
- 23 1. Cast-iron, two-section box.
- 24 2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
- 25 3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches in diameter.
- 26 4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
- 27 5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head,
- 28 and with stem of length required to operate valve.

29 **2.7 PRESSURE REGULATORS**

- 30 A. General Requirements:
- 31 1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
- 32 2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
- 33 3. Elevation compensator.
- 34 4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators
- 35 NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 36 B. Service Pressure Regulators: By utility provider.
- 37 C. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80A.
- 38 1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
- 39 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
- 40 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.



- 1 4. Seat Disc: NBR; resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
- 2 5. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
- 3 6. Seal Plug: UV-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
- 4 7. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum
- 5 pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to regulator.
- 6 8. Pressure regulator is to maintain discharge pressure setting downstream and is to not
- 7 exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
- 8 9. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
- 9 10. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless steel screen in opening if not
- 10 connected to vent piping.
- 11 11. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig.

12 D. Appliance Pressure Regulators: By equipment provider(s).

13 **2.8 SERVICE METERS (BY UTILITY PROVIDER)**

14 **2.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING**

- 15 A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for
- 16 marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick,
- 17 continuously inscribed with a description and rated pressure of utility, with metallic core encased
- 18 in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried
- 19 up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.
- 20 B. Label and identify gas piping and pressure outside a multitenant building by tenant.

21 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

22 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 23 A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping
- 24 connections before equipment installation.
- 25 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

26 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 27 A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- 28 B. Inspect natural-gas piping in accordance with NFPA 54 to determine that natural-gas utilization
- 29 devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- 30 C. Comply with NFPA 54 requirements for preventing accidental ignition.

31 **3.3 INSTALLATION OF OUTDOOR PIPING**

- 32 A. Comply with NFPA 54 for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.



- 1 B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 36 inches below finished grade. Comply
2 with requirements in Division 31 for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
- 3 1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in
4 containment conduit.
- 5 C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping in accordance with ASTM D2774.
- 6 D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
- 7 1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
8 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating
9 manufacturer.
10 3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- 11 E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- 12 **3.4 INSTALLATION OF INDOOR PIPING**
- 13 A. Comply with NFPA 54 for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- 14 B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping
15 systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss,
16 expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to
17 layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- 18 C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during
19 progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- 20 D. Do not install piping in concealed locations unless sleeved with the sleeve open at both ends.
- 21 E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right
22 angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated
23 otherwise.
- 24 F. Where installing piping above accessible ceilings, allow sufficient space for ceiling panel
25 removal.
- 26 G. Locate valves for easy access. Do not locate valves within return air plenums.
- 27 H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- 28 I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- 29 J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- 30 K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- 31 L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for
32 roughing-in requirements.



- 1 M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including
2 service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install
3 where condensate is subject to freezing.
- 4 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped.
5 Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and
6 same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or
7 cap.
8 2. Install sediment trap on both sides of regulators for gas reduction to 2 psig with valve and
9 capped.
- 10 N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure
11 protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- 12 O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or
13 floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- 14 P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas
15 piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe
16 with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to
17 outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- 18 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be
19 installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
20 2. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover
21 and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
22 3. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from
23 physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
- 24 a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker
25 barriers.
- 26 4. Prohibited Locations:
- 27 a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash
28 chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator
29 shafts.
30 b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- 31 Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side
32 down.
- 33 R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- 34 S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each
35 piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- 36 T. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- 37 U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated
38 valve.
- 39 V. Install pressure gauge downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gauges are specified in
40 Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gauges for Plumbing Piping."



- 1 W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for
2 sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- 3 X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with
4 requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for
5 Plumbing Piping."
- 6 Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with
7 requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- 8 **3.5 INSTALLATION OF SERVICE-METER ASSEMBLIES**
- 9 A. Service meter, shutoff valve, and service regulator to be provided by utility.
- 10 B. Install metal bollards to protect meter assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 05 for
11 pipe bollards.
- 12 **3.6 INSTALLATION OF VALVES**
- 13 A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless steel
14 tubing connector.
- 15 B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- 16 C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space
17 adequate for servicing and testing.
- 18 D. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.
- 19 E. Do not install valves in return-air plenums.
- 20 **3.7 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION**
- 21 A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- 22 B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before
23 assembly.
- 24 C. Threaded Joints:
- 25 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
- 26 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
- 27 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
- 28 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal
29 threading is specified.
- 30 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or
31 damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- 32 D. Welded Joints:



- 1 1. Construct joints in accordance with AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and
2 welding operators.
- 3 2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- 4 3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds
5 and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

- 6 E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints in accordance with AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube"
7 Chapter.

- 8 F. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas
9 service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

- 10 G. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare
11 dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, and then use wrench. Do not
12 overtighten.

- 13 H. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or
14 paper towels. Join in accordance with ASTM D2657.

- 15 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
- 16 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

17 3.8 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- 18 A. Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and
19 Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.

- 20 B. Install hangers for steel piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters,
21 to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction
22 requirements, whichever are most stringent.

- 23 C. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.

- 24 D. Support vertical runs of steel piping to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and
25 authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

- 26 E. Support vertical runs of corrugated stainless steel tubing to comply with manufacturer's written
27 instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever
28 are most stringent.

29 3.9 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- 30 A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.

- 31 B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas-appliance equipment
32 grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance in accordance with NFPA 70.

- 33 C. Where installing piping adjacent to appliances, allow space for service and maintenance of
34 appliances.



- 1 D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within
2 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and
3 appliances or equipment.

4 3.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFICATION

- 5 A. Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and
6 Equipment" for piping and valve identification.
- 7 B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade,
8 except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

9 3.11 PAINTING

- 10 A. Comply with requirements in Division 09 and Section 22 01 00 "General Provisions for
11 Plumbing" for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.

12 3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- 13 A. Tests and Inspections:
- 14 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas in accordance with NFPA 54 and authorities having
15 jurisdiction.
16 2. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- 17 B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

18 3.13 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- 19 A. Underground natural-gas piping is to be the following:
- 20 1. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat fusion, or mechanical couplings; service-line risers
21 with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.
22 2. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe
23 and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- 24 B. Aboveground natural-gas piping is to be the following:
- 25 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
26 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

27 3.14 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

- 28 A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller is to be the following:
- 29 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- 30 B. Aboveground, distribution piping is to be the following:



- 1 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
2 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- 3 C. Underground, below building, piping is to be the following:
- 4 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
5 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
6 3. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe
7 and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
8 4. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or
9 wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground portion of vent pipe and
10 fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

11 **3.15 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES MORE THAN 0.5 PSIG AND**
12 **LESS THAN 5 PSIG**

- 13 A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller is to be the following:
- 14 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- 15 B. Aboveground, distribution piping is to be the following:
- 16 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
17 2. Steel pipe with steel welding fittings and welded joints.
- 18 C. Underground, below building, piping is to be the following:
- 19 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
20 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
21 3. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat
22 underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
23 4. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or
24 wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground portion of vent pipe and
25 fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

26 **3.16 UNDERGROUND, MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE**

- 27 A. Connections to Existing Gas Piping: Use valve and fitting assemblies made for tapping utility's
28 gas mains and listed by an NRTL.
- 29 B. Underground:
- 30 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze plug valves.
31 2. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Cast-iron, lubricated plug valves.

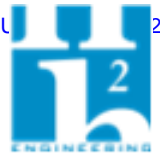
32 **3.17 ABOVEGROUND, MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE**

- 33 A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter are to be the following:
- 34 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with stainless-steel trim.



- 1 B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter are to be the following:
- 2 1. Cast-iron, lubricated plug valve.
- 3 C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller are to be the following:
- 4 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with stainless-steel trim.
- 5 D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger are to be the following:
- 6 1. Cast-iron, lubricated plug valve.
- 7 E. Valves in branch piping for single appliance are to be the following:
- 8 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with stainless-steel trim.

9 **END OF SECTION 22 16 23**



1 **SECTION 22 33 00 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
- 8 1. Commercial, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
9 2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

10 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 11 A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- 12 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and
13 furnished specialties and accessories.
- 14 B. Shop Drawings:
- 15 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

16 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

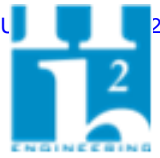
- 17 A. Product Certificates: For each type of electric, domestic-water heater.
- 18 B. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to
19 authorities having jurisdiction.
- 20 C. Field quality-control reports.
- 21 D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

22 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 23 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include emergency,
24 operation, and maintenance manuals.

25 **1.6 COORDINATION**

- 26 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.



1 **1.7 WARRANTY**

2 A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-
3 water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

4 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 5 a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
6 b. Faulty operation of controls.
7 c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.

8 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.

9 a. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

- 10 1) Storage Tank: Three years.
11 2) Controls and Other Components: One year.

12 b. Expansion Tanks: Five years.

13 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

14 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

15 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
16 by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and use.

17 B. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

18 C. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label
19 commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure
20 Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

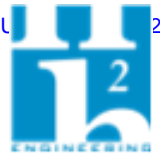
21 D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable
22 water to comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

23 **2.2 COMMERCIAL, ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS**

24 A. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

25 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product
26 indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

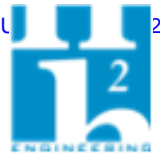
- 27 a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
28 b. Bradford White Corporation.
29 c. Lochinvar, LLC.
30 d. PVI; A WATTS Brand.



- 1 e. State Industries.
- 2 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single
3 manufacturer.
- 4 3. Standard: UL 1453.
- 5 4. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code, steel vertical arrangement.
- 6 a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank and piping
7 connections. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
- 8 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.
- 9 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends in accordance with ASME B16.5 for
10 steel and stainless steel flanges, and in accordance with ASME B16.24 for
11 copper and copper-alloy flanges.
- 12 b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- 13 c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-
14 water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
- 15 5. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
- 16 a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
- 17 b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
- 18 c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- 19 d. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish or high-impact composite material.
- 20 e. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in
21 multiples of three.
- 22 f. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
- 23 g. Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
- 24 h. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-
25 pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity
26 at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-
27 pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select one relief valve with sensing
28 element that extends into storage tank.
- 29 6. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.

30 **2.3 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES**

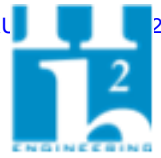
- 31 A. Domestic-Water Expansion Tanks:
- 32 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
33 following:
- 34 a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
- 35 b. AMTROL, Inc.
- 36 c. State Industries.
- 37 d. Taco Comfort Solutions.



- 1 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water expansion tanks from single source from
2 single manufacturer.
- 3 3. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-
4 installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating
5 pressure at tank.
- 6 4. Construction:
- 7 a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
8 Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- 9 b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-
10 water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and
11 outlets.
- 12 c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
- 13 5. Capacity and Characteristics:
- 14 a. Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- 15 b. Capacity Acceptable: 2 gal. minimum.
- 16 c. Air Precharge Pressure: 40 psig.
- 17 B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base
18 of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1
19 pipe threads.
- 20 C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement in accordance with
21 ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- 22 D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- 23 E. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include
24 relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-
25 pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends
26 into storage tank.
- 27 F. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
- 28 G. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.
- 29 H. Domestic-Water Heater Suspended Platform:
- 30 1. Basis of Design: Holdrite QuickStand 50-SWHP-WM or Approved Equal.
- 31 2. Corrosion-resistant metal platform not less than the base of the water heater for wall
32 mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Platform shall have
33 raised edge and NPS 1 metal drain fitting with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with
34 ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads to serve as a drain pan.

35 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- 36 A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code
37 construction, in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- 38 B. Hydrostatically test domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure
39 rating before shipment.



1 C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and
2 inspections.

3 D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

4 PART 3 - EXECUTION

5 3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

6 A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial, electric, domestic-
7 water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in
8 Division 03.

- 9 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters if
10 installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
- 11 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
- 12 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.

13 B. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings,
14 original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
15 Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.

- 16 1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on
17 domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in
18 Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 22 05 23.13 "Butterfly
19 Valves for Plumbing Piping."

20 C. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use
21 relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend domestic-water heater relief-
22 valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch,
23 and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

24 D. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or
25 over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for electric,
26 domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end
27 drain valves specified in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

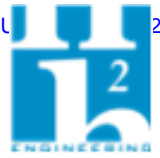
28 E. Install thermometers on outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with
29 requirements for thermometers specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing
30 Piping."

31 F. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heater storage
32 tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.

33 G. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.

34 H. Charge domestic-water expansion tanks with air to required system pressure.

35 I. Install dielectric fittings in all locations where piping of dissimilar metals is to be joined. The
36 wetted surface of the dielectric fitting contacted by potable water shall contain less than 0.25
37 percent of lead by weight.



1 **3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS**

- 2 A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
3 Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- 4 B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and
5 maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

6 **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

- 7 A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in
8 Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

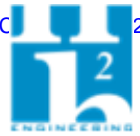
9 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 10 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and
11 inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- 12 B. Perform tests and inspections.
- 13 C. Tests and Inspections:
- 14 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest
15 until no leaks exist.
- 16 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm
17 proper operation.
- 18 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
19 equipment.
- 20 D. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and
21 inspections.
- 22 E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

23 **3.5 DEMONSTRATION**

- 24 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain electric, domestic-water
25 heaters.

26 **END OF SECTION 22 33 00**



1 **SECTION 22 42 00 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Water closets.
9 2. Urinals.
10 3. Lavatories.
11 4. Sinks.
12 5. Water coolers, drinking fountains, and bottle filling stations.
13 6. Showers.
14 7. Service sinks and basins.
15 8. Outlet boxes.
16 9. Grout.

17 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 18 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 19 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components
20 and profiles, and finishes for water closets.
21 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and
22 furnished specialties and accessories.

- 23 B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

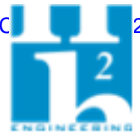
24 **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 25 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For plumbing fixtures and accessories to include in operation
26 and maintenance manuals.

27 **1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- 28 A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified
29 with labels describing contents.

- 30 1. Flush-o-meter-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed,
31 but no fewer than one of each type.



- 1 2. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size
- 2 installed.
- 3 3. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size
- 4 installed.
- 5 4. Filter Cartridges: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each type and size of water
- 6 cooler indicated, but no fewer than one of each.

7 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

8 **2.1 WATER CLOSETS**

9 A. Fixture (WC-#):

- 10 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product
- 11 indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- 12 a. American Standard.
- 13 b. Kohler Co.
- 14 c. TOTO USA, Inc.
- 15 d. Zurn Industries.

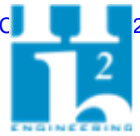
16 B. Accessories:

- 17 1. Flushometer: Valve or tank, as indicated on Drawings.
- 18 2. Toilet Seat: As indicated on Drawings.
- 19 3. Water Closet Carrier (for Wall-Mounted Applications):
- 20 a. ASME A112.6.1M, waste-fitting assembly, as required to match drainage piping
- 21 material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and
- 22 hardware matching fixture. Include additional extension coupling, faceplate, and
- 23 feet for installation in wide pipe space.
- 24 b. Water-Closet Mounting Height: As indicated in drawings.

25 **2.2 URINALS**

26 A. Fixture (UR-#):

- 27 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product
- 28 indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- 29 a. American Standard.
- 30 b. Kohler Co.
- 31 c. Sloan Valve Company.
- 32 d. TOTO USA, Inc.



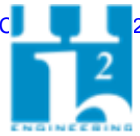
- 1 e. Zurn Industries.
- 2 B. Accessories:
- 3 1. Flushometer Valve: As indicated on Drawings.
- 4 2. Urinal Carrier:
- 5 a. ASME A112.6.1M. with fixture support plates and fixture bolts and hardware
- 6 matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.
- 7 b. Urinal Mounting Height: As indicated on Drawings.

8 **2.3 LAVATORIES**

- 9 A. Fixture (LV-#):
- 10 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product
- 11 indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- 12 a. American Standard.
- 13 b. Bradley Corporation.
- 14 c. Kohler Co.
- 15 d. TOTO USA, Inc.
- 16 e. Zurn Industries.
- 17 B. Accessories:
- 18 1. Faucet: As indicated on Drawings.
- 19 2. Thermostatic Mixing Valve: As indicated on Drawings (for tempered water applications
- 20 only).
- 21 3. Waste Fittings: As indicated on Drawings.
- 22 4. Supply Fittings:
- 23 a. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in
- 24 contact with potable water.
- 25 b. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression
- 26 valve with inlet connection matching supply piping and cross handle operation.
- 27 c. Risers: ASME A112.18.6, braided- stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.
- 28 5. Lavatory Carrier (for Wall-Mounted Applications):
- 29 a. ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier with rectangular, steel
- 30 uprights.
- 31 b. Lavatory Mounting Height: As indicated on Drawings.

32 **2.4 SINKS**

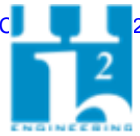
- 33 A. Fixture (SK-#):



- 1 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product
2 indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- 3 a. Elkay Manufacturing Company.
- 4 b. Fiat Products.
- 5 c. Franke Group.
- 6 d. Just Manufacturing Company.
- 7 B. Accessories:
- 8 1. Faucet: As indicated on Drawings.
- 9 2. Thermostatic Mixing Valve: As indicated on Drawings.
- 10 3. Waste Fittings: As indicated on Drawings.
- 11 4. Supply Fittings:
- 12 a. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in
13 contact with potable water.
- 14 b. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression
15 valve with inlet connection matching supply piping and cross handle operation.
- 16 c. Risers: ASME A112.18.6, braided- stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.
- 17 5. Sink Carrier (for Wall-Mounted Applications):
- 18 a. ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, concealed-arm sink carrier with rectangular, steel
19 uprights.
- 20 b. Sink Mounting Height: As indicated on Drawings.

21 2.5 **WATER COOLERS, DRINKING FOUNTAINS, & BOTTLE FILLING STATIONS**

- 22 A. Fixture (EWC-#, DF-#, or BFS-#):
- 23 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product
24 indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- 25 a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- 26 b. Halsey Taylor.
- 27 c. Haws Corporation.
- 28 B. Accessories:
- 29 1. Faucet: As indicated on Drawings.
- 30 2. Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2 / CSA B125.2, brass P-trap.
- 31 3. Supply Fittings:
- 32 a. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in
33 contact with potable water.
- 34 b. Supply Stops: Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for
35 Domestic Water Piping."
- 36 c. Supply Piping: ASME A112.18.6, braided- stainless-steel, flexible hose riser..



- 1 4. Water Cooler Carrier:
- 2 a. ASME A112.6.1M with fixture support plates and fixture bolts and hardware
- 3 matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.
- 4 b. Mounting Height: As indicated on Drawings.

5 **2.6 SHOWERS**

6 A. Fixture (SH-#):

- 7 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product
- 8 indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- 9 a. American Standard.
- 10 b. Bradley Corporation.
- 11 c. Comfort Designs.
- 12 d. Just Manufacturing Company.
- 13 e. Zurn Industries.

14 B. Accessories:

- 15 1. Faucet: As indicated on Drawings.
- 16 2. Waste Fittings: As indicated on Drawings.
- 17 3. Supply Fittings:
- 18 a. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in
- 19 contact with potable water.
- 20 b. Supply Stops: Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for
- 21 Domestic Water Piping."
- 22 c. Supply Piping: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1, copper tube matching water-supply
- 23 piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- 24 4. Shower Mounting Height: As indicated on Drawings.

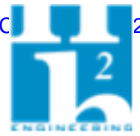
25 **2.7 SERVICE SINKS & BASINS**

26 A. Fixture (MSB-#):

- 27 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product
- 28 indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- 29 a. Fiat Products.
- 30 b. Stern Williams Co., Inc.

31 B. Accessories:

- 32 1. Faucet: As indicated on Drawings.



- 1 2. Rim Guard: As indicated on Drawings.
- 2 3. Flexible Hose: As indicated on Drawings.
- 3 4. Mop Hanger: As indicated on Drawings.
- 4 5. Waste Fittings: As indicated on Drawings.
- 5 6. Supply Fittings:
 - 6 a. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in
 - 7 contact with potable water.
 - 8 b. Supply Stops: Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for
 - 9 Domestic Water Piping."
 - 10 c. Supply Piping: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1, copper tube matching water-supply
 - 11 piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.

12 2.8 OUTLET BOXES

- 13 A. Icemaker Outlet Boxes (IMB):
 - 14 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product
 - 15 indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 16 a. Guy Gray; IPS Corporation.
 - 17 b. Oatey.
 - 18 2. Mounting: Recessed.
 - 19 3. Material and Finish: White powder-coated steel box and faceplate.
 - 20 4. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller
 - 21 copper tube outlet.
 - 22 5. Accessory: Water hammer arrestor.
 - 23 6. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water
 - 24 tubing.

25 2.9 GROUT

- 26 A. Standard: ASTM C 1107 / C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry,
- 27 hydraulic-cement grout.
- 28 B. Characteristics: Non-shrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- 29 C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- 30 D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

31 PART 3 - EXECUTION

32 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 33 A. Examine roughing-in of water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify
- 34 actual locations of piping connections before plumbing-fixture installation.



1 B. Examine walls, floors, cabinets, and counters for suitable conditions where fixtures will be
2 installed.

3 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

4 3.2 INSTALLATION

5 A. Water-Closet Installation:

- 6 1. Install water closets level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- 7 2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to
8 piping or building substrate.
- 9 3. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and
10 waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.
- 11 4. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for
12 handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- 13 5. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, wall-mounted water closets.
- 14 6. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
- 15 7. Install toilet seats on water closets.

16 B. Urinal Installation:

- 17 1. Install urinals level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- 18 2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
- 19 3. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly,
20 according to ICC / ANSI A117.1.
- 21 4. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
- 22 5. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.
- 23 6. Use carriers without waste fitting for urinals with tubular waste piping.
- 24 7. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.

25 C. Flush-o-meter-Valve Installation:

- 26 1. Install flush-o-meter-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet and
27 urinal.
- 28 2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
- 29 3. Install lever-handle flush-o-meter valves for accessible water closets and urinals with
30 handle mounted on open side of compartment.
- 31 4. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- 32 5. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

33 D. Lavatories:

- 34 1. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- 35 2. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.
- 36 3. Install counter-mounting lavatories in and attached to casework.
- 37 4. Indicate on Drawing those lavatories that are required to be accessible.
- 38 5. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for
39 people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- 40 6. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if
41 faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- 42 7. Install traps on fixture outlets.



- 1 8. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste
2 piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 22 07 19.14
3 "Insulation for ADA Plumbing Fixtures."
- 4 E. Sinks:
- 5 1. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
6 2. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
7 3. Install counter-mounting sinks in and attached to casework.
8 4. Indicate on Drawings those sinks that are required to be accessible.
9 5. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped / elderly mounting height according
10 to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
11 6. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
12 7. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if
13 faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
14 8. Install traps on fixture outlets.
15 9. Install unions on inlets and outlets of point-of-use sediment interceptors and dilution
16 tanks.
17 10. Install disposer in outlet of each sink indicated to have a disposer. Install switch where
18 indicated or in wall adjacent to sink if location is not indicated.
19 11. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste
20 piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 22 07 19.14 "Insulation
21 for ADA Plumbing Fixtures."
- 22 F. Showers:
- 23 1. Assemble shower components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
24 2. Install showers level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
25 3. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each shower faucet.
26 4. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
27 5. Set shower receptors and shower basins in leveling bed of cement grout.
28 6. Install traps on fixture outlets.
- 29 G. Water Coolers, Drinking Fountains, and Bottle Filling Stations:
- 30 1. Set freestanding pressure water coolers on floor.
31 2. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted
32 fixtures.
33 3. Install mounting frames, affixed to building construction, and attach recessed, pressure
34 water coolers to mounting frames.
35 4. Install traps on fixture outlets.
- 36 H. Outlet Boxes: Install boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 1-1/2-by-3-1/2-
37 inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with
38 requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Division 06.
- 39 I. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:
- 40 1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished
41 locations and within cabinets and millwork.
42 2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
43 3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for
44 Plumbing Piping."
- 45 J. Joint Sealing:



- 1 1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part,
2 mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
- 3 2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
- 4 3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Division 07.

5 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- 6 A. Connect water closets and urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size
7 fittings required to match water closets.
- 8 B. Connect lavatories, sinks, water coolers, and showers with water supplies, stops, and risers,
9 and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- 10 C. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
- 11 D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste
12 and Vent Piping."
- 13 E. Where installing piping adjacent to plumbing fixture, allow space for service and maintenance.

14 3.4 ADJUSTING

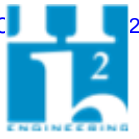
- 15 A. Operate and adjust plumbing fixtures and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning
16 plumbing fixtures, accessories, fittings, and controls.
- 17 B. Adjust water pressure at flush-o-meter valves and faucets to produce proper flow.
- 18 C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

19 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- 20 A. After completing installation of plumbing fixtures, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- 21 B. Clean plumbing fixtures, accessories, and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning
22 methods and materials.
- 23 C. Install protective covering for installed plumbing fixtures, accessories, and fittings.
- 24 D. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by
25 Owner.

26 **END OF SECTION 22 42 00**

27



1 THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 01 00 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 B. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 23 Specification Sections.

7 **1.2 SUMMARY**

8 A. Section includes basic requirements for heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning systems.

9 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

10 A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" unless otherwise further
11 described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in
12 nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and
13 having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

14 B. Furnish: Supply and deliver to project site, ready for subsequent requirements.

15 C. Install: Operations at project site, including unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing,
16 anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar
17 requirements.

18 D. Provide: Furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use.

19 E. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of
20 subsequent work.

21 F. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after
22 installation of subsequent work.

23 G. Concealed Work: Work hidden from view, including inside chases, furred spaces, or above
24 ceilings.

25 H. Exposed Work: Work open to view, including inside mechanical and equipment rooms and on
26 mezzanines.

27 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

28 A. General:

29 1. It is the intent of the plans and specifications to obtain a complete, operable and
30 satisfactory installation.



- 1 2. All materials shall be new, be properly labeled and/or identified and be in full compliance
 2 with the contract documents.
 3 3. All work shall comply with applicable Codes and Standards.
 4 4. Manufacturer's model names and numbers used in these specifications are subject to
 5 change per manufacturer's action. Contractor shall therefore verify them with
 6 manufacturer's representative before ordering any product or equipment
- 7 B. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment manufactured in the U.S.A. Where two or
 8 more units of the same type or class of equipment are required provide units of a single
 9 manufacturer.

10 1.5 **CODES AND STANDARDS**

- 11 A. Perform work in accordance with the following codes and any applicable statutes, ordinances,
 12 codes, and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.
- 13 1. ASHRAE
- 14 a. Standard 15 Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems - 2019
 15 b. Standard 55 Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy
 16 c. Standard 62.1 Ventilation Standard for Acceptable Indoor air Quality - 2016
 17 d. Standard 90.1 Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low Rise Residential
 18 Buildings
- 19 2. ASME
- 20 a. Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code - 2013
 21 1) Section IV Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers
- 22 b. ASME A17.1 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators - 2019
- 23 3. Occupational Safety and Health Regulations (OSHA).
 24 4. National Fire Codes
- 25 a. NFPA 1 Uniform Fire Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
 26 b. NFPA 54 National Fuel Gas Code – 2021
 27 c. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code – 2020
 28 d. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code - 2019
 29 e. NFPA 90A Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilation
 30 Systems - 2021
 31 f. NFPA 90B Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air
 32 Conditioning Systems - 2021
 33 g. NFPA 91 Standard for the Installation of Blower and Exhaust Systems - 2018
 34 h. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
- 35 5. Florida Building Code, 2023 Edition
- 36 a. Building Code
 37 b. Energy Conservation Code
 38 c. Mechanical Code
 39 d. Plumbing Code
 40 e. Fuel Gas Code
 41 f. Accessibility Code



- 1 6. Florida Statutes
- 2 a. Chapter 471 Engineering
- 3 b. Chapter 533.80 Building Construction Standards; Florida Building Code -
- 4 Enforcement
- 5 7. Florida Administrative Code
- 6 a. Chapter 6A-2 Educational Facilities
- 7 b. Chapter 9B-7 Florida Building Commission Handicapped Accessibility
- 8 Standards
- 9 c. Chapter 61C-5 Florida Elevator Safety Code
- 10 d. Chapter 61G15-34 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning
- 11 the Design of Mechanical Systems
- 12 e. Chapter 69A-3 Fire Prevention – General Provisions
- 13 f. Chapter 69A-47 Uniform Fire Safety Standards for Elevators
- 14 g. Chapter 69A-58 Fire Safety in Educational Facilities
- 15 h. Chapter 69A-60 The Florida Fire Prevention Code
- 16 B. Resolve, in writing, any code violation discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior
- 17 to bidding. After award of the contract, make any correction or addition necessary for
- 18 compliance with applicable codes at no additional cost to Owner.
- 19 C. The Contractor shall include in the Work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials,
- 20 services, apparatus, and drawings required to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances,
- 21 rules, and regulations.
- 22 D. Where there is conflict between the Contract Documents and the applicable Codes, the Codes
- 23 shall govern, except where the requirements of the Contract Documents are more stringent.

24 1.6 **REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS**

- 25 A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or
- 26 AWWA Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with
- 27 latest editions, revisions, amendments, or supplements in effect on date bids are received.
- 28 Specifications and standards are minimum requirements for all equipment, material and work.
- 29 In instances where capacities, size or other feature of equipment, devices or materials exceed
- 30 these minimums, meet listed or shown capacities.
- 31 B. Whenever a reference is made to a standard, installation and materials shall comply with the
- 32 latest published edition of the standard at the time project is bid unless otherwise specified
- 33 herein

34 1.7 **DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES**

- 35 A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a
- 36 design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide
- 37 products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.



1 **1.8 PERMITS FEES AND INSPECTIONS**

- 2 A. Obtain and pay for all permits, fees, tap fees, connection charges, demand charges, systems
3 charges, impact fees, and inspections.
- 4 B. Deliver all certificates of inspection issued by authorities having jurisdiction to the Engineer.

5 **1.9 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS**

- 6 A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or
7 requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting
8 requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent
9 requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Engineer
10 for direction before proceeding.
- 11 1. If discrepancies or conflicts occur between drawings, or between drawings and
12 specifications, notify the Engineer in writing prior to bid date; however, the most stringent
13 requirement shall govern.
- 14 B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the
15 minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum
16 quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply
17 with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate,
18 for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Engineer for a decision before
19 proceeding.

20 **1.10 SUBMITTALS**

- 21 A. Submittals (including Product Data, Shop Drawings, and any other Action Submittal or
22 Information Submittal) will only be reviewed if they are submitted in full accordance with the
23 General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
- 24 1. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of
25 submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- 26 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless
27 partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved by the Engineer.
- 28 3. Submittals shall only contain relevant product data. Remove or strikeout irrelevant
29 product data.
- 30 4. Prepare submittals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through
31 email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification
32 Sections. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
- 33 5. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Engineer.
- 34 6. Deviations: Clearly identify deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents,
35 including minor variations and limitations.
- 36 7. Revisions: Include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those
37 specifically requested by Engineer on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on
38 each submittal or noting on attached submittal sheet.
- 39 8. Contractor's Review:
- 40 a. Submittals shall have been reviewed and approved by the General Contractor /
41 Construction Manager. Include approval stamp, name of reviewer, date of



- 1 Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed,
 2 checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
- 3 b. Engineer will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have
 4 Contractor's review and approval.
- 5 9. Electrical Modifications:
- 6 a. The electrical design indicated on the plans supports the Basis of Design
 7 specifications for the HVAC systems at the time of design.
- 8 b. If HVAC equipment is submitted with different electrical requirements, it is the
 9 responsibility of the Contractor to resolve all required electrical design changes,
 10 including, but not limited to: wire and conduit size, type or size of disconnect or
 11 overload protection, breaker coordination, point(s) of connection, etc. Any
 12 corrections required shall be provided at no additional cost.
- 13 c. Submittal shall clearly show the electrical design revisions with a written statement
 14 that this change will be provided at no additional cost. Submittals made with no
 15 written reference to the electrical design revisions will be presumed to work with
 16 the electrical design.
- 17 B. Processing Time: Allow 15 days for submittal review. Time of review shall commence on
 18 Engineer's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because
 19 of the failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing,
 20 including resubmittals.
- 21 1. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Engineer will
 22 advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
- 23 2. Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with
 24 other submittals until related submittals are received.
- 25 C. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the
 26 contract documents by the Engineer's approval of shop drawings, product data, samples, or
 27 similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Engineer in writing of such
 28 deviation at the time of submittal, and the Engineer has given written approval to the specific
 29 deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in shop
 30 drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals by the Engineer's approval thereof.
- 31 **1.11 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**
- 32 A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in
 33 individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop
 34 Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is
 35 required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than
 36 one entity.
- 37 1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to
 38 indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed
 39 data. Include the following information, as applicable:
- 40 a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings.
 41 Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of
 42 various systems and components.
- 43 b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings by
 44 multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the



- 1 information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before
 2 submitting for review.
- 3 c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural,
 4 structural, civil, fire protection, mechanical, electrical, and communication systems.
- 5 d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated
 6 replacement of components during the life of the installation.
- 7 e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers,
 8 valves, pull boxes, junction boxes, and other controls.
- 9 f. Indicate required installation sequences.
- 10 g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear
 11 to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements.
 12 Provide alternative sketches to Engineer indicating proposed resolution of such
 13 conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered
 14 changes to the Contract.
- 15 B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
- 16 1. Floor Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and Work associated with
 17 Divisions 21 through 29, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and
 18 coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved. Supplement
 19 plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
- 20 a. Mechanical Systems (Divisions 21, 22, 23, 25):
- 21 1) Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork and piping runs, including
 22 insulation, heat tracing, bracing, flanges, and support systems. Indicate
 23 proposed changes to layout.
- 24 2) Locations and sizes of major equipment and components.
- 25 3) Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
- 26 4) Structural members to which ductwork and piping will be attached or
 27 suspended from.
- 28 b. Electrical and Communication Systems (Divisions 25, 26, 27, 28, 29):
- 29 1) Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
- 30 2) Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other
 31 fire-alarm locations.
- 32 3) Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and
 33 motor-control center locations.
- 34 4) Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center
 35 lines.
- 36 5) Structural members to which luminaire and equipment will be attached or
 37 suspended from.
- 38 6) Lightning protection system components attaching to or penetrating through
 39 the roofing and moisture protection systems, coordinated with the roofing
 40 system manufacturer.
- 41 7) Cable tray layout, offsets, transitions, clearances, elevations, and
 42 relationships between components and adjacent structural, mechanical and
 43 electrical elements.
- 44 2. Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show locations of visible devices mounted to, suspended from,
 45 or penetrating through the ceiling, relative to the finished ceiling, including the following:
- 46 a. Fire suppression sprinklers and nozzles.
- 47 b. Air outlets and inlets.



- 1 c. Luminaires (Lighting fixtures).
- 2 d. Lighting control devices.
- 3 e. Speakers.
- 4 f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
- 5 g. Access control devices.
- 6 h. Video surveillance devices.
- 7 i. Fire alarm devices.
- 8 j. Access panels.
- 9 k. Perimeter moldings.
- 10 l. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of
- 11 the plane of the ceiling.

- 12 3. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, equipment
- 13 for Divisions 21 through 29, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to
- 14 accommodate layout of components indicated on Drawings for Divisions 21 through 29.
- 15 Indicate areas of conflict between components of Divisions 21 through 29.
- 16 4. Equipment Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for equipment rooms showing plans
- 17 and elevations of equipment for Divisions 21 through 29.
- 18 5. Penetrations: Indicate locations of penetrations and openings in structural components,
- 19 smoke barriers, and fire-rated construction.
- 20 6. Review: Engineer will review coordination drawings to confirm that in general the Work is
- 21 being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's
- 22 responsibility. If Engineer determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared
- 23 in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Engineer will so inform Contractor,
- 24 who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.

25 C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following
26 requirements:

- 27 1. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.
- 28 2. BIM File Incorporation: Develop and incorporate coordination drawing files into BIM
- 29 established for Project.
 - 30 a. Perform three-dimensional component conflict analysis as part of preparation of
 - 31 coordination drawings. Resolve component conflicts prior to submittal. Indicate
 - 32 where conflict resolution requires modification of design requirements by Engineer.
- 33 3. Engineer will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in
- 34 preparing coordination digital data files.
 - 35 a. Engineer makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital
 - 36 data files as they relate to Drawings.
 - 37 b. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form
 - 38 acceptable to Engineer.

39 1.12 SUBSTITUTIONS

- 40 A. By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment
- 41 described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are
- 42 encouraged to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the
- 43 Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.
- 44 B. Substitution Requests shall include, at a minimum:



1. Statement indicating why specified material, equipment, or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
2. Coordination of information, including a list of changes and revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
3. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include an annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
4. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
5. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
6. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
7. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
8. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- C. Procurement Substitution Requests submitted prior to receipt of bids will be received and considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Engineer; otherwise, requests will be returned without action:
1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment are received no later than 10 days prior to date of bid opening.
 2. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
 3. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents, including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
 4. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- D. Substitutions for Cause, as required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms will be received and considered by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 2. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 3. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 5. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 6. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 7. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- E. Substitutions for Convenience, not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner, will be received and considered by Owner, as



1 determined by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests
2 will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- 3 1. Requested substitution is received within 60 days after the Notice of Award.
- 4 2. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy
5 conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner
6 must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Engineer
7 for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and
8 similar considerations.
- 9 3. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
- 10 4. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce
11 indicated results.
- 12 5. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- 13 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having
14 jurisdiction.
- 15 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- 16 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- 17 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- 18 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has
19 been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible
20 with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

- 21 F. If a requested substitution is approved but contains differences or omissions not specifically
22 identified to the attention of the Engineer in the substitution request, the Owner reserves the
23 right to require equal or similar features to be added to the substituted products or to have the
24 substituted products replaced at the Contractor's expense.

25 1.13 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- 26 A. Recording: Maintain one copy of the Contract Documents and Shop Drawings during the
27 construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to
28 project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

- 29 B. Preparation:

- 30 1. Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings:
 - 31 a. Mark revisions to show where the actual installation varies from that shown
32 originally.
 - 33 b. Mark record sets completely and accurately, including important information that
34 was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - 35 c. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish
36 between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 - 37 d. Record underground and under-slab piping installed, dimensioning exact location
38 and elevation of piping.
- 39 2. Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies
40 from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
- 41 3. Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies
42 substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

- 43 C. Deliver: Prior to Final Completion, provide record documents to Owner as indicated below:



- 1 1. Record Drawings: Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of
- 2 prints.
- 3 2. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications,
- 4 including addenda and contract modifications.
- 5 3. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each
- 6 submittal.
- 7 4. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Submit annotated PDF electronic files directories of
- 8 each submittal.

9 **1.14 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- 10 A. Prepare and submit a comprehensive manual of emergency, operation, and maintenance data
- 11 and materials in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01,
- 12 and the following:
 - 13 1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating
 - 14 operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part
 - 15 of a system, including:
 - 16 a. Information required for daily operation and management, operating standards,
 - 17 and routine and special operating procedures.
 - 18 b. Manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventative maintenance
 - 19 procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, list of
 - 20 spare parts, and warranty information.
 - 21 2. Submit manuals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through
 - 22 email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification
 - 23 Sections. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

24 **1.15 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

- 25 A. Prepare and provide services of qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust,
- 26 operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not a part of a system in
- 27 accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, individual
- 28 Specification Sections, and the following:
 - 29 1. Demonstration and training shall occur upon completion of the Work and at a time
 - 30 designated by the Owner's representative.
 - 31 2. Provide a high-resolution, digital video recording of each training session to the Owner.

32 **1.16 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 33 A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage,
- 34 deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written
- 35 instructions.
- 36 B. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to
- 37 determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.



1 **1.17 WARRANTY**

2 A. Warranty work and equipment within specified warranty period. During the warranty period,
3 provide labor and materials to make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to
4 defects or omissions in materials or workmanship without expense to the Owner.

5 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

6 B. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other
7 warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on
8 product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of Contract
9 Documents.

10 C. Owner reserves the right to make emergency repairs as required to keep equipment in
11 operation without voiding Contractor's Guarantee Bond nor relieving the Contractor of
12 responsibilities during the warranty period.

13 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NONE)**

14 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

15 **3.1 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

16 A. Examine all drawings and specifications carefully before submitting a bid. Architectural
17 drawings take precedence over mechanical or electrical drawings with reference to building
18 construction.

19 B. For purposes of clearness and legibility, drawings are essentially diagrammatic and, although
20 size and location of equipment are drawn to scale wherever possible, Contractor shall make use
21 of all data in all of the contract documents and shall verify this information at the building site.

22 C. The drawings indicate required size and points of termination of pipes, conduits, and ducts and
23 suggest proper routes to conform to structure avoid obstructions and preserve clearances.
24 However, it is not intended that drawings indicate all necessary offsets, and it shall be the
25 responsibility of the Contractor to make the installation in such a manner as to conform to
26 structure, avoid obstructions, preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear,
27 without further instructions or cost to the Owner.

28 D. Furnish, install and/or connect with appropriate services all items shown on any drawing without
29 additional compensation.

30 E. Any and all questions about a subcontractor's scope of work responsibility shall be addressed to
31 and answered by the General Contractor / Construction Manager.

32 F. Questions About Construction Documents: Any and all questions shall be submitted through
33 the proper channels IN WRITING and, in turn, shall be answered by the Engineer in writing. All
34 telephone conversations shall be considered unofficial and, as such, shall not be considered
35 official or binding responses to Contractor's questions.



- 1 G. Drawings, specifications, or other documents issued by the Engineer in electronic format and/or
 2 electronic media are provided for convenience only and are not intended for use as Contract
 3 Documents.
- 4 1. The electronic files are provided merely as a convenience to the Recipient.
 5 2. The electronic files do not replace or supplement the paper copies of any drawings,
 6 specifications, or other documents included in the Contract Documents for use on the
 7 project.
 8 3. The Engineer makes no representation, warranty, or guarantee that electronic files:
- 9 a. Are suitable for any other usage or purpose.
 10 b. Have any particular durability.
 11 c. Will not damage or impair the Recipient's computer or software.
 12 d. Contain no errors or mechanical flaws or other discrepancies that may render them
 13 unsuitable for the purpose intended by the Recipient.
- 14 4. Due to the unsecured nature of the electronic files and the inability of Engineer or the
 15 Recipient to establish controls over their use, the Engineer assumes no responsibility for
 16 any consequences arising out of the use of the data. It is the sole responsibility of the
 17 Recipient to check the validity of all information contained therein. The Recipient shall at
 18 all times refer to the signed and sealed drawings, specification or other documents for the
 19 project during all phases of the project. The Recipient shall assume all risks and liabilities
 20 resulting from the use of the electronic files.
- 21 **3.2 SUPERVISION OF WORK**
- 22 A. Perform all work under the direct supervision of an experienced, qualified superintendent. The
 23 Engineer has the right to remove a superintendent who, in the Engineer's opinion, is not
 24 satisfactory.
- 25 **3.3 EXAMINATION**
- 26 A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and
 27 construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate
 28 and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical
 29 systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
- 30 B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the
 31 Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where
 32 indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions
 33 affecting performance.
- 34 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of
 35 connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 36 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are
 37 to be installed.
 38 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing
 39 finishes or primers.
- 40 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding
 41 with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.



1 **3.4 PREPARATION**

- 2 A. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck
3 measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to
4 other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before
5 fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the
6 Work.
- 7 B. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown
8 diagrammatically on Drawings.
- 9 C. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for
10 clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of
11 Contractor, submit a request for information to Engineer.

12 **3.5 INSTALLATION**

- 13 A. Install materials and equipment in a professional manner. The Engineer may direct
14 replacement of items which, in the Engineer's opinion, do not present a professional
15 appearance or do not allow adequate space for maintenance. Replace or reinstall items at the
16 expense of the Contractor.
- 17 B. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and
18 elevation, as indicated.
- 19 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
20 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance
21 and ease of removal for replacement.
22 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
23 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in
24 unoccupied spaces.
- 25 C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in
26 applications indicated.
- 27 D. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results.
28 Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- 29 E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or
30 loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- 31 F. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction
32 items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- 33 G. Obstructions
- 34 1. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface
35 obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not
36 guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
37 2. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative,
38 utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information
39 has been provided. Verify locations given.



- 1 3. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work,
2 reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform
3 whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing
4 services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.
- 5 4. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction,
6 whether or not such existing facilities are shown.
- 7 H. Where "rated" walls, floor, roofs and ceilings are penetrated or cut to install equipment,
8 materials, devices, etc. the Contractor shall provide and install all materials required to re-
9 establish the rating of the wall, floor, roof, or ceiling to the satisfaction of the authority having
10 jurisdiction.
- 11 I. Structural Elements: Do not cut structural elements without written approval from Engineer.
12 Notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before
13 proceeding. If approved by Engineer:
- 14 1. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching.
15 2. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-
16 carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- 17 J. Space Requirements: Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and
18 location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material which is not suitable
19 in this respect.
- 20 K. Tools and Equipment: Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If
21 objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by
22 equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions without cost to the
23 Owner.
- 24 **3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING**
- 25 A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed
26 with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
- 27 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance
28 of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their
29 original condition.
- 30 B. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- 31 C. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage.
32 Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be
33 exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- 34 D. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Engineer of locations
35 and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. Shore, brace, and
36 support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural
37 elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- 38 E. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a
39 manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased
40 maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.



- 1 F. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components
 2 in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity
 3 to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or
 4 safety.
- 5 G. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence
 6 of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in
 7 Engineer's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction
 8 that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- 9 H. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar
 10 operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or
 11 adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply
 12 with original Installer's written recommendations.
- 13 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not
 14 hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with
 15 minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 16 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 17 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a
 18 diamond-core drill.
 19 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where
 20 required by cutting and patching operations.
 21 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be
 22 removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent
 23 entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 24 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- 25 I. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations
 26 following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as
 27 practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other
 28 Sections, where applicable or with in-place materials.
- 29 1. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the
 30 fullest extent possible.
 31 2. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when
 32 installed, will provide a match acceptable to Engineer for the visual and functional
 33 performance of in-place materials.
- 34 J. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint,
 35 mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

36 3.7 PAINTING

- 37 A. Comply with requirements with General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, Division
 38 09, and individual Specification Sections.
- 39 B. Touch-up factory finishes on equipment provided under Division 23. Obtain matched color
 40 coatings from the manufacturer and apply as directed. If corrosion is found during inspection on
 41 the surface of any equipment, clean, prime, and paint, as required.
- 42 C. Paint the following work where exposed to view:



- 1 1. Uninsulated Metal Piping (bare copper piping not required to be painted unless noted
2 otherwise):
- 3 a. Natural or LP Gas: Yellow
4 b. Other: To be determined by Engineer
- 5 2. Uninsulated plastic piping
6 3. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
7 4. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having a cotton or canvas insulation covering or
8 other paintable jacket material, as outlined in individual Specification Sections.
- 9 D. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
- 10 1. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having a cotton or canvas insulation covering or
11 other paintable jacket material, as outlined in individual Specification Sections.
12 2. Other items as directed by Engineer.
- 13 E. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that
14 are visible from occupied spaces.
- 15 **3.8 REPAIR OF WORK**
- 16 A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of
17 Substantial Completion.
- 18 B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective
19 parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly
20 adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored,
21 provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.
22 Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified
23 condition.
- 24 1. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces.
25 Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
- 26 a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including
27 mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels
28 and identification.
- 29 2. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede
30 operation or reduce longevity.
- 31 **3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**
- 32 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and
33 inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- 34 B. Furnish a letter from the control manufacturer stating that all controls have been checked for
35 operation and calibration, and the system is operating as designed.



- 1 C. Furnish a letter from an authorized factory representative of the air conditioning unit
 2 manufacturer stating that the complete refrigeration installation including pipe sizing and routing
 3 and operating and safety controls has been checked and is operating properly.
- 4 D. Tests
- 5 1. Include all tests specified and/or required under laws, rules and regulations of all
 6 departments having jurisdiction. Tests shall also be performed as indicated herein and
 7 other sections of the specifications.
- 8 2. After all systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an
 9 operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequence and operation
 10 throughout the range of operation. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper
 11 functioning of all systems.
- 12 3. All parts of the work and associated equipment shall be tested and adjusted to work
 13 properly and be left in perfect operating condition.
- 14 4. Correct defects disclosed by these tests without any additional cost to the Owner.
 15 Repeat tests on repaired or replaced work.
- 16 5. Maintain a log of all tests being conducted and have it available for review by the
 17 Engineer. Log to indicate date, type of tests, duration, and defects noted and when
 18 corrected.
- 19 6. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual Specification Sections.
- 20 E. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's
 21 responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for
 22 construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

23 3.10 CLEANING

- 24 A. Progress Cleaning: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce
 25 requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
- 26 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and
 27 debris.
- 28 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if
 29 the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
- 30 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste.
 31 Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- 32 B. Final Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean
 33 each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and
 34 maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- 35 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification
 36 of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
- 37 a. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from
 38 Project site.
- 39 b. Remove labels that are not permanent.
- 40 c. Wipe surfaces of equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar
 41 droppings, and other foreign substances.

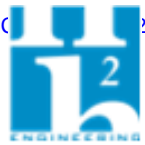
42 **END OF SECTION 23 01 00**

43



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 05 13 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT**

2 **GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose,
8 horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current
9 power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped
10 separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

11 **1.3 COORDINATION**

- 12 A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the
13 following:
- 14 1. Motor controllers.
 - 15 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 16 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 17 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

18 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

19 **2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS**

- 20 A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- 21 B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

22 **2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS**

- 23 A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above
24 sea level.
- 25 B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected
26 loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating
27 sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

28 **2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS**

- 29 A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.



- 1 B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- 2 C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- 3 D. Power factor: 0.80.
- 4 E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- 5 F. Bearings: Re-greasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- 6 G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- 7 H. Insulation: Class F.
- 8 I. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- 9 J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 10 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 11 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- 12 K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame
 - 13 sizes smaller than 324T.

14 **2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS**

- 15 A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection
 - 16 requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box,
 - 17 suited to control method.
- 18 B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers:
 - 19 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and
 - 20 tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by
 - 21 pulse-width-modulated inverters.
- 22 C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

23 **2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS**

- 24 A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements
 - 25 of specific motor application:

26 **Permanent-split capacitor.**

- 27 B. Bearings: Pre-lubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and
 - 28 thrust loading.
- 29 C. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

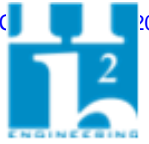


- 1 D. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when
2 winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation.
3 Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal
4 range.

5 **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)**

6 **END OF SECTION 23 05 13**

7



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 05 16 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
- 8 1. Metal, compensator packless expansion joints.
 - 9 2. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.

10 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 11 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

12 **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 13 A. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

14 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

15 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 16 A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures,
17 and temperatures.
- 18 B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

19 **2.2 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS**

- 20 A. Metal, Compensator Packless Expansion Joints:
- 21 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Twin City
22 Hose, Inc.; TCHS (steel pipe), TCHB (copper pipe) or comparable product by one of the
23 following:
 - 24 a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - 25 b. Metraflex, Inc.; SST / MLP (steel), BBS-NSF (copper).



- 1 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig, unless otherwise indicated.
- 2 3. Description: Totally enclosed, externally pressurized, multi-ply bellows isolated from fluid
- 3 flow by an internal pipe sleeve and external housing.
- 4 4. Joint Axial Movement: 2 inches of compression and 1/2 inch of extension.
- 5 5. Configuration for Copper Tubing: Multi-ply, phosphor-bronze bellows with copper pipe
- 6 ends.
- 7 a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint.
- 8 b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Threaded.
- 9 6. Configuration for Steel Piping: Multi-ply, stainless-steel bellows; steel-pipe end
- 10 connections; and carbon-steel shroud.
- 11 a. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
- 12 b. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged.
- 13 B. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:
- 14 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Metraflex
- 15 Company; Superflex or comparable product by one of the following:
- 16 a. Mason Industries, Inc.; Mercer Rubber Co.
- 17 b. Metraflex, Inc.
- 18 2. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
- 19 3. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded
- 20 end connections.

21 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

22 **3.1 EXPANSION JOINT INSTALLATION**

- 23 A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.
- 24 B. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint
- 25 Manufacturers Association, Inc."
- 26 C. Install rubber packless expansion joints according to FSA-PSJ-703.
- 27 D. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping.

28 **3.2 EXPANSION-JOINT SCHEDULE**

- 29 A. Chiller Evaporator Connections: Metal compensator packless expansion joints or metal-bellows
- 30 packless expansion joints
- 31 B. Boiler Connections: Metal compensator packless expansion joints or metal-bellows packless
- 32 expansion joints.



- 1 C. Hydronic Pump Suction and Discharge: Metal compensator packless expansion joints or metal-
2 bellows packless expansion joints.
- 3 D. Air Handling Unit Hydronic Coil Connections: Metal compensator packless expansion joints or
4 metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
- 5 E. Blower Coil & Fan Coil Unit Hydronic Coil Connections: Flexible hose packless expansion
6 joints.
- 7 F. Terminal Unit Hydronic Coil Connections: Flexible hose packless expansion joints.

8 **END OF SECTION 23 05 16**
9



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 05 17 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Sleeves.
9 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
10 3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
11 4. Hole-forming systems
12 5. Grout.
13 6. Silicone sealants.

14 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 15 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

16 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Field quality-control reports.

18 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

19 **2.1 SLEEVES**

- 20 A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain
21 ends.
22 B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with
23 welded longitudinal joint.

24 **2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS**

- 25 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
26 following:
27 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.



- 1 2. Metraflex Company (The).
 2 3. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- 3 B. Description:
- 4 1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space
 5 between piping and sleeve.
 6 2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20-psig.
 7 3. Sealing Elements: per Sleeve Seal Schedule interlocking links shaped to fit surface of
 8 pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
 9 4. Pressure Plates per Sleeve Seal Schedule.
 10 5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates
 11 to sealing elements.

12 **2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS**

- 13 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Pipeline Seal &
 14 Insulator, Inc.; Century-Line Sleeve.
- 15 B. Description: Molded non-metallic high density polyethylene (HDPE) sleeves with integral
 16 hollow, molded water-stop ring 4-inches larger than the outside diameter of the sleeve itself and
 17 nailing end caps for attachment to forms.

18 **2.4 HOLE-FORMING SYSTEM**

- 19 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Pipeline Seal &
 20 Insulator, Inc.; Cell-Cast Hole Forming Disks.
- 21 B. Description: Modular hole-forming system consisting of interlocking HDPE plastic discs.

22 **2.5 GROUT**

- 23 A. Description: Non-shrink, recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in nonfire-rated
 24 walls or floors.
- 25 B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry,
 26 hydraulic-cement grout.
- 27 C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- 28 D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

29 **2.6 SILICONE SEALANTS**

- 30 A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, non-sag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent
 31 movement capability, non-traffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C 920, Type S,
 32 Grade NS, Class 25, use NT.
- 33 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.



1 B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent
2 movement capability, traffic- and non-traffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant;
3 ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling)
4 formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

5 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.

6 C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and
7 cure in place to produce a flexible, non-shrinking foam.

8 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.

9 PART 3 - EXECUTION

10 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

11 A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

12 B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to
13 provide 2-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

14 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

15 C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and
16 walls are constructed.

17 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP
18 sleeves.

19 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

20 a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or
21 other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

22 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without
23 sleeve-seal system.

24 D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

25 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

26 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between
27 sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.

28 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use sealants
29 appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.

30 E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke-Barrier
31 Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at
32 pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with
33 requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified Division 07.



1 **3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION**

2 A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service
3 piping entries into building.

4 B. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls at underground duct entries into
5 building.

6 C. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for
7 sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration,
8 assemble sleeve-seal-system components, and install in annular space between piping and
9 sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make
10 a watertight seal.

11 **3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION**

12 A. Install sleeve-seal fittings as new walls and slabs are constructed.

13 B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and
14 walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

15 C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

16 D. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

17 **3.4 HOLE-FORMING SYSTEM INSTALLATION**

18 A. Install hole-forming systems in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

19 B. Provide quantity of disks to match finished wall thickness.

20 C. Wrap seams between disks with tape to bridge gaps.

21 D. After removal of disks, repair voids and grind smooth any ridges to provide a smooth opening.

22 **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

23 A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

24 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair
25 leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

26 B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

27 **3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE**

28 A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

29 1. Exterior Concrete Walls Above Grade:



- 1 a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
2 b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
- 3 2. Exterior Concrete Walls Below Grade:
- 4 a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 20: Sleeve-seal fittings with sleeve-seal system.
- 5 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 2-inch annular clear space between piping
6 and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 7 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
- 8 a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 20: Sleeve-seal fittings with sleeve-seal system.
- 9 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 2-inch annular clear space between piping
10 and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 11 4. Concrete Slabs Above Grade:
- 12 a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
13 b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
- 14 5. Interior Partitions:
- 15 **Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves .**
- 16 a. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.
- 17 6. Sleeve-seal System:
- 18 a. Chilled Water:
- 19 1) Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber.
20 2) Pressure Plates: Plastic.
- 21 b. Heating Hot Water:
- 22 1) Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber.
23 2) Pressure Plates: Plastic.

24 **END OF SECTION 23 05 17**
25



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 05 18 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
- 8 1. Escutcheons.
9 2. Floor plates.

10 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 11 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

12 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

13 **2.1 ESCUTCHEONS**

- 14 A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and polished brass finish and
15 setscrew fastener.
- 16 B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished, chrome-plated
17 finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- 18 C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

19 **2.2 FLOOR PLATES**

- 20 A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange.

21 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

22 **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- 23 A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- 24 B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD
25 that completely covers opening.



- 1 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
- 2 a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
- 3 b. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- 4 c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast
- 5 brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- 6 d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with
- 7 polished, chrome-plated finish.
- 8 e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece cast brass with rough-brass
- 9 finish.
- 10 f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece cast brass with rough-brass finish.
- 11 C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- 12 D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD
- 13 that completely covers opening.
- 14 1. New Piping: Cast-iron flange
- 15 **3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**
- 16 A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.
- 17 **END OF SECTION 23 05 18**

1 **SECTION 23 05 19 - METERS AND GAUGES FOR HVAC PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
- 8 1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
 - 9 2. Thermowells.
 - 10 3. Dial-type pressure gages.
 - 11 4. Gage attachments.
 - 12 5. Test plugs.
 - 13 6. Test-plug kits.
 - 14 7. Flowmeters.
 - 15 8. Thermal-energy meters.

16 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

18 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 19 A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer

20 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 21 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and
22 maintenance manuals.

23 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

24 **2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS**

- 25 A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
- 26 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Trerice, H.O.
27 Co.; BX9 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 28 a. Miljoco Corporation.

- 1 b. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
2 c. Winters Instruments - U.S.
- 3 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
4 3. Case: Cast aluminum; 9-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
5 4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
6 5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
7 6. Tube Background: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings
8 graduated in deg F.
9 7. Window: Glass.
10 8. Stem: Brass and of length to suit installation.
- 11 a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With 6-inch³-inch.
12 b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
- 13 9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
14 10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of
15 1.5 percent of scale range.

16 **2.2 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS**

- 17 A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold
18 thermometer stem.

19 **2.3 THERMOWELLS**

- 20 A. Thermowells:
- 21 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
22 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.
23 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR (copper nickel 90-10).
24 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES (stainless steel).
25 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
26 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
27 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
28 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
29 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
30 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
31 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of
32 thermometer connection.
- 33 B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

34 **2.4 PRESSURE GAGES**

- 35 A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
- 36 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Trerice, H.O.
37 Co.; 600CB or comparable product by one of the following:

- 1 a. Ashcroft Inc.
- 2 b. Miljoco Corporation.
- 3 c. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- 4 d. Winters Instruments - U.S.

- 5 2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
- 6 3. Case: Solid-front, pressure relief type(s); cast aluminum; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
- 7 4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
- 8 5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and
- 9 bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
- 10 6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
- 11 7. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
- 12 8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- 13 9. Window: Glass.
- 14 10. Ring: Stainless steel.
- 15 11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

16 2.5 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- 17 A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and
- 18 porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.

- 19 B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of stainless-steel pipe with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 pipe threads.

- 20 C. Valves: Brass ball, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

21 2.6 TEST PLUGS

- 22 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Petersen
- 23 Equipment Co., Inc.; Model 310-110-XL or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 24 1. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - 25 2. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - 26 3. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

- 27 B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.

- 28 C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include
- 29 extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.

- 30 D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

- 31 E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.

- 32 F. Core Inserts: EPDM self-sealing rubber.

1 **2.7 TEST-PLUG KITS**

2 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Petersen
3 Equipment Co., Inc.; Model 312-1500-XL or comparable product by one of the following:

- 4 1. Miljoco Corporation.
- 5 2. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
- 6 3. Trerice, H. O. Co.
- 7 4. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

8 B. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing two thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and
9 carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of
10 diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.

11 C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and
12 tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.

13 D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and
14 tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.

15 E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch-diameter dial and probe.
16 Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.

17 F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

18 **2.8 FLOWMETERS**

19 A. Electromagnetic Insertion Flowmeters:

20 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ONICON,
21 Inc.; F-3500 (or FB-3500 for bi-directional flow) or comparable product by one of the
22 following:

- 23 a. ABB; Instrumentation and Analytical.
- 24 b. Data Industrial Corp.
- 25 c. EMCO Flow Systems; a division of Spirax Sarco, Inc.

26 2. Description: Flowmeter with sensor.

27 3. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system
28 served.

29 4. Sensor: Dual electrode; for inserting into pipe fitting and measuring flow directly in
30 gallons per minute.

31 a. Design: Device or pipe fitting with integral direct-reading scale for water.

32 b. Construction: 316 stainless-steel body, with no moving parts.

33 c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 400 psig.

34 d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F.

35 5. Hot Tap Isolation Valve: 1-1/4" (DN 32) full port stainless steel ball valve.

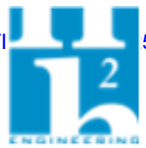
36 6. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.

37 7. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

- 1 B. Venturi Flowmeters:
- 2 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Griswold
3 Controls; 3QF (flanged) or MS (threaded) Metering Station or comparable product by one
4 of the following:
- 5 a. ABB; Instrumentation and Analytical.
6 b. Gerand Engineering Co.
- 7 2. Description: Flowmeter with calibrated flow-measuring element, hoses or tubing, fittings,
8 valves, indicator, and conversion chart.
- 9 3. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system
10 served.
- 11 4. Sensor: Venturi-type, calibrated, flow-measuring element; for installation in piping.
- 12 a. Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement for water.
13 b. Construction: Bronze, brass, or factory-primed steel, with brass fittings and
14 attached tag with flow conversion data.
15 c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1656 kPa)
16 d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F.
17 e. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
18 f. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged or welded.
19 g. Flow Range: Flow-measuring element and flowmeter shall cover operating range
20 of equipment or system served.
- 21 5. Permanent Indicators: Meter suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for
22 connected flowmeter element, and having 6-inch-diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings
23 and copper tubing for connecting to flowmeter element.
- 24 a. Scale: Gallons per minute.
25 b. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
- 26 6. Portable Indicators: Hand-held, differential-pressure type, calibrated for connected
27 flowmeter element and having two 12-foot hoses, with carrying case.
- 28 a. Scale: Gallons per minute.
29 b. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
- 30 7. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons.
31 8. Conversion Chart: Flow rate data compatible with sensor.
32 9. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

33 **2.9 THERMAL-ENERGY METERS**

- 34 A. Thermal-Energy Meters:
- 35 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ONICON
36 Incorporated; System-10 or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 37 a. Data Industrial Corp.
38 b. Hoffer Flow Controls, Inc.



- 1 2. Description: System with flow sensor, temperature sensors, transmitter, indicator, and
2 connecting wiring.
- 3 3. Flow Sensor: Electromagneticas specified herein. Temperature Sensors: Insertion-type
4 transducer.
- 5 4. Indicator: Solid-state, integrating-type meter with integral battery pack; for wall mounting.
- 6 a. Data Output: Six-digit electromechanical counter with readout in kilowatts per hour
7 or British thermal units.
- 8 b. Battery Pack: Five-year lithium battery.
- 9 5. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.
- 10 6. Display: Visually indicates total fluid volume in gallons and thermal-energy flow in
11 kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
- 12 7. Strainer: Full size of main line piping.
- 13 8. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each thermal-energy meter
14 system.

15 PART 3 - EXECUTION

16 3.1 INSTALLATION

- 17 A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches into fluid and in vertical position
18 in piping tees.
- 19 B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if
20 required to match sizes.
- 21 C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- 22 D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- 23 E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- 24 F. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
- 25 G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the
26 most readable position.
- 27 H. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).
- 28 I. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- 29 J. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements
30 and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 31 K. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.
- 32 L. Install flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and
33 downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 34 M. Install Venturi flowmeter downstream of turbine or electromagnetic flowmeters, with at least
35 minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from meter according to

- 1 manufacturer's written instructions. Straight lengths of pipe required downstream of turbine or
2 electromagnetic flowmeter and upstream of Venturi flowmeter may be shared.
- 3 N. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.
- 4 O. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.
- 5 P. Mount thermal-energy meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.
- 6 Q. Install thermometers in the following locations:
- 7 1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
8 2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
9 3. Inlet and outlet of each chiller.
10 4. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
- 11 R. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
- 12 1. Inlet and outlet of each chiller connection.
13 2. Suction and discharge of each pump.
14 3. Inlet and outlet of each air handling unit hydronic coil.
- 15 S. Install test plugs in the following locations:
- 16 1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil.
17 2. Inlet and outlet of each control valve.

18 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- 19 A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow space for service and
20 maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.
- 21 B. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.
- 22 C. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.
- 23 D. Connect thermal-energy meter transmitters to meters.

24 3.3 ADJUSTING

- 25 A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 26 B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

27 3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- 28 A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler shall be the following:
29 1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
30 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts shall be provided in addition to industrial
31 or remote mounted thermometers.

- 1 B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each chiller shall be the following:
2 1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
3 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts shall be provided in addition to industrial
4 or remote mounted thermometers.
- 5 C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units and built-up central
6 systems shall be the following:
7 1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
8 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts shall be provided in addition to industrial
9 or remote mounted thermometers.
- 10 D. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

11 3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- 12 A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.
13 B. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F.

14 3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- 15 A. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water connection shall be the following:
16 1. Solid-front, pressure-relief, direct mounted, metal case.
17 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts shall be provided in addition to direct or
18 remote mounted gages.
- 19 B. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump shall be the following:
20 1. Solid-front, pressure-relief, direct mounted, metal case.
21 2. Test plug with self-sealing rubber inserts shall be provided in addition to direct or remote
22 mounted gages.

23 3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- 24 A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi.
25 B. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi.

26 3.8 FLOWMETER SCHEDULE

27 **Flowmeters for Chilled-Water Piping: Provide Electromagnetic for Building Automation System**
28 **and Venturi type as indicated on plans for testing, adjusting and balancing..**

- 29 A. Flowmeters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Provide Electromagnetic for Building Automation
30 System and Venturi type as indicated on plans for testing, adjusting and balancing.

31 **END OF SECTION 23 05 19**



1 **SECTION 23 05 23.11 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR HYDRONIC PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Bronze ball valves.
9 2. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
10 3. Bronze swing check valves.
11 4. Iron, center-guided check valves.
12 5. Bronze globe valves.

13 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 14 A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
15 B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
16 C. SWP: Steam working pressure.

17 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 18 A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

19 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 20 A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

- 21 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
22 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and soldered ends.
23 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
24 4. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
25 5. Set check valves in either closed or open position.
26 6. Set angle and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.

- 27 B. Use the following precautions during storage:

- 28 1. Maintain valve end protection.
29 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If
30 outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.



- 1 C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use
2 operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

3 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

4 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- 5 A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single
6 manufacturer.
- 7 B. ASME Compliance:
- 8 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
9 2. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
10 3. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
11 4. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
12 5. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
13 6. ASME B31.9 for building service piping valves.
- 14 C. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- 15 D. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system
16 pressures and temperatures.
- 17 E. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- 18 F. Valve Actuator Types:
- 19 1. Gear Actuator: For valves NPS 8 and larger.
20 2. Handlever: For valves NPS 6 and smaller.
- 21 G. Valves in Insulated Piping:
- 22 1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
23 2. Extended operating handles of non-thermal conductive material and protective sleeves
24 that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
25 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.
- 26 H. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.
- #### 27 2.2 BRONZE BALL VALVES
- 28 A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
- 29 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
30 following:
- 31 a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
32 b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
33 c. Hammond Valve.
34 d. Milwaukee Valve Company.



- 1 e. NIBCO INC.
2 f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

3 2. Description:

- 4 a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
5 b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
6 c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
7 d. Body Design: Two piece.
8 e. Body Material: Bronze.
9 f. Ends: Threaded.
10 g. Seats: PTFE.
11 h. Stem: Stainless steel.
12 i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
13 j. Port: Full.

14 2.3 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

15 A. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

16 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
17 following:

- 18 a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
19 b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
20 c. NIBCO INC.
21 d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

22 2. Description:

- 23 a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
24 b. CWP Rating: 150 psig and 200 psig.
25 c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated
26 pressure without use of downstream flange.
27 d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
28 e. Seat: EPDM.
29 f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
30 g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

31 2.4 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

32 A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 150:

33 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
34 following:

- 35 a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
36 b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
37 c. NIBCO INC.
38 d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.



- 1 2. Description:
- 2 a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
- 3 b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- 4 c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
- 5 d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
- 6 e. Ends: Threaded.
- 7 f. Disc: PTFE.

8 **2.5 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED, SPRING-LOADED CHECK VALVES**

9 A. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 125:

- 10 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 11 following:
- 12 a. Crispin Valve.
- 13 b. Hammond Valve.
- 14 c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- 15 d. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
- 16 e. NIBCO INC.
- 17 f. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International.
- 18 g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

19 2. Description:

- 20 a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
- 21 b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- 22 c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
- 23 d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
- 24 e. Style: Compact wafer.
- 25 f. Seat: Bronze.

26 B. Iron Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 125:

- 27 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 28 following:
- 29 a. Crispin Valve.
- 30 b. Hammond Valve.
- 31 c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- 32 d. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
- 33 e. NIBCO INC.
- 34 f. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International.
- 35 g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

36 2. Description:

- 37 a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
- 38 b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- 39 c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.



- 1 d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
- 2 e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
- 3 f. Ends: Flanged.
- 4 g. Seat: Bronze.

5 2.6 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

6 A. Bronze Globe Valves, Class 150:

- 7 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 8 following:
 - 9 a. Hammond Valve.
 - 10 b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - 11 c. NIBCO INC.
 - 12 d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 13 2. Description:
 - 14 a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - 15 b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - 16 c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
 - 17 d. Ends: Threaded.
 - 18 e. Stem: Bronze.
 - 19 f. Disc: PTFE.
 - 20 g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - 21 h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

22 PART 3 - EXECUTION

23 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 24 A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove
- 25 special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and
- 26 handling.
- 27 B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made
- 28 accessible by such operations.
- 29 C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- 30 D. Examine mating flange faces for damage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material.
- 31 Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that
- 32 it is free from defects and damage.
- 33 E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.



1 **3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION**

- 2 A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service,
3 maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- 4 B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- 5 C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- 6 D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- 7 E. Check Valves: Install check valves for proper direction of flow.
- 8 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
9 2. Center-Guided Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
10 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
- 11 F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping
12 and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

13 **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- 14 A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but
15 before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

16 **3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS**

- 17 A. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves
18 with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- 19 B. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
- 20 1. Shutoff Service:
- 21 a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball valves.
22 b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Butterfly valves.
- 23 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
24 3. Throttling Service: Globe valves.
25 4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
- 26 a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc.
27 b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron, center-guided, metal -seat check valves.
- 28 C. Select valves with the following end connections:
- 29 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where press-end option
30 is indicated in valve schedules below.
31 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged.
32 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.



- 1 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where press-end option is
2 indicated in valve schedules below.
3 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged.
4 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.

5 3.5 CHILLED-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

6 A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

- 7 1. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with full port and stainless-steel trim. Provide with threaded
8 joint ends.
9 2. Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc, Class 150, with threaded joint ends.
10 3. Bronze globe valves, Class 150, PTFE disc, with threaded ends.

11 B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

- 12 1. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Aluminum-bronze disc,
13 200 CWP, and EPDM seat.
14 2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24: Aluminum-bronze disc,
15 150 CWP, and EPDM seat.
16 3. Iron, compact-wafer or globe, center-guided check valves, metal seat, Class 125, with
17 flanged end connections.
18 4. Iron globe valves, Class 125, with flanged ends.

19 3.6 HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

20 A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

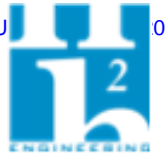
- 21 1. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with full port and stainless-steel trim. Provide with threaded
22 joint ends.
23 2. Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc, Class 150, with threaded joint ends.
24 3. Bronze angle or globe valves, Class 150, PTFE disc, with threaded ends.

25 B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

- 26 1. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Aluminum-bronze disc,
27 200 CWP, and EPDM seat.
28 2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24: Aluminum-bronze disc,
29 150 CWP, and EPDM seat.
30 3. Iron, compact-wafer or globe, center-guided check valves, metal seat, Class 125, with
31 flanged end connections.
32 4. Iron globe valves, Class 125, with flanged ends.

33 **END OF SECTION 23 05 23.11**

34



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
9 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
10 3. Metal framing systems.
11 4. Fastener systems.
12 5. Equipment supports.

13 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 14 A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

15 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 16 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 17 B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the
18 following; include Product Data for components:

- 19 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
20 2. Metal framing systems.
21 3. Pipe stands.
22 4. Equipment supports.

23 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

24 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 25 A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand
26 the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according
27 to ASCE/SEI 7.

- 28 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting
29 combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.



- 1 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of
2 supported equipment and connected systems and components.

3 **2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

4 A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

- 5 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
6 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pre-galvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
7 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated, or epoxy powder-coated.
8 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to
9 support bearing surface of piping.
10 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

11 B. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:

- 12 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-plated steel, factory-fabricated
13 components.
14 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-plated steel.

15 **2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS**

- 16 A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from
17 structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-
18 bolts.

19 **2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS**

20 A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

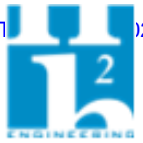
- 21 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
22 following:

- 23 a. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
24 b. Flex-Strut Inc.
25 c. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.

- 26 2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels,
27 accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
28 3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
29 4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
30 5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
31 6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot
32 and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
33 7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
34 8. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc indoors and Hot-dip galvanized outdoors.

35 B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

- 36 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels,
37 accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.



- 1 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
- 2 3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
- 3 4. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
- 4 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot
- 5 and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
- 6 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- 7 7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dip galvanized.

8 **2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS**

- 9 A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement
- 10 concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and
- 11 building materials where used.
- 12 B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors for use in hardened portland
- 13 cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads
- 14 and building materials where used.

15 **2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS**

- 16 A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-
- 17 steel shapes.

18 **2.7 MATERIALS**

- 19 A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221.
- 20 B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 1011 / A 1011M.
- 21 C. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36 / A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.
- 22 D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240 / A 240M.
- 23 E. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated or galvanized steel for indoor applications
- 24 and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar materials as
- 25 rods.
- 26 F. Grout: ASTM C 1107 / C 1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, non-
- 27 shrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
- 28 1. Properties: Non-staining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
- 29 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

30 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

31 **3.1 APPLICATION**

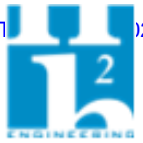
- 32 A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping materials and installation for
- 33 penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.



- 1 B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength
2 will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum
3 static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus
4 200 lb.

5 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- 6 A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and
7 attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- 8 B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of
9 parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
- 10 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or
11 install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe
12 hangers.
- 13 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36 / A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being
14 supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1 / D1.1M.
- 15 C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support
16 together on field-assembled strut systems.
- 17 D. Fastener System Installation:
- 18 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less
19 than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use
20 operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners
21 according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
- 22 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely
23 cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 24 E. Pipe Stand Installation:
- 25 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on
26 smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
- 27 F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts,
28 washers, and other accessories.
- 29 G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- 30 H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit
31 freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints,
32 expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- 33 I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- 34 J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional
35 attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and
36 larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed;
37 fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.



- 1 K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses
2 from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- 3 L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed
4 maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- 5 M. Insulated Piping:
- 6 1. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on piping. Shields shall span an arc of
7 180 degrees. Secure shield to pipe on both ends with stainless steel bands.
- 8 2. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
- 9 a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
- 10 b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
- 11 c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
- 12 d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.

13 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- 14 A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support
15 equipment above floor.
- 16 B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- 17 C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

18 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- 19 A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment
20 supports.
- 21 B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be
22 shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- 23 C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 / D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding;
24 appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the
25 following:
- 26 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion
27 resistance of base metals.
- 28 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
- 29 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
- 30 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so
31 contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

32 3.5 ADJUSTING

- 33 A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve
34 indicated slope of pipe.
- 35 B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.



1 **3.6 PAINTING**

2 A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately
3 after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply
4 with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

5 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

6 B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 09 for cleaning and touchup painting of field
7 welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.

8 C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply
9 galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780 / A 780M.

10 **3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE**

11 A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and
12 equipment.

13 B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in
14 piping system Sections.

15 C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will
16 not have field-applied finish.

17 D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in
18 direct contact with copper tubing.

19 E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and metal framing
20 systems and attachments for general service applications.

21 F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.

22 G. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in
23 piping system Sections, install the following types:

24 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or
25 insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.

26 2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to
27 NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.

28 3. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-
29 pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.

30 4. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to
31 NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction
32 might occur.

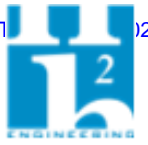
33 5. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal
34 movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is
35 unnecessary.

36 H. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system
37 Sections, install the following types:



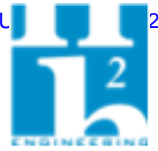
- 1 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to
2 NPS 24.
- 3 I. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system
4 Sections, install the following types:
- 5 1. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to
6 prevent crushing insulation.
- 7 J. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not
8 specified in piping system Sections.
- 9 K. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not
10 specified in piping system Sections.
- 11 L. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building
12 attachments where required in concrete construction.

13 **END OF SECTION 23 05 29**
14



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 05 48.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
9 2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
10 3. Elastomeric hangers.
11 4. Spring hangers.

12 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 13 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 14 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation
15 device.
16 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each
17 type and size of vibration isolation device type required.

18 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

19 **2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS**

- 20 A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

- 21 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mason
22 Industries, Inc.; Mason Super W or comparable product by one of the following:
23 a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
24 b. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
25 2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading
26 over pad area.
27 3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
28 4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
29 5. Surface Pattern: Waffle pattern.



1 **2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS**

2 A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

3 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mason
4 Industries, Inc.; Mason ND or comparable product by one of the following:

5 a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.

6 b. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

7 2. Mounting Plates:

8 a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and
9 threaded with threaded studs or bolts.

10 b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to
11 support structure.

12 3. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric
13 material.

14 **2.3 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS**

15 A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods: .

16 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mason
17 Industries, Inc.; Mason HD or comparable product by one of the following:

18 a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.

19 b. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

20 2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an
21 opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-
22 rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.

23 3. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric
24 material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel
25 contact.

26 **2.4 SPRING HANGERS**

27 A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:

28 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mason
29 Industries, Inc.; HS-B or comparable product by one of the following:

30 a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.

31 b. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

32 2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a
33 maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing
34 isolation efficiency.



- 1 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the
- 2 spring at rated load.
- 3 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
- 4 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
- 5 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without
- 6 deformation or failure.
- 7 7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced
- 8 cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
- 9 8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower
- 10 threaded rod.
- 11 9. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support
- 12 spring coil.

13 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

14 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 15 A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with
- 16 requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 17 B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before
- 18 installation.
- 19 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

20 **3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION**

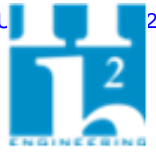
- 21 A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment
- 22 attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and
- 23 formwork specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete".
- 24 B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or
- 25 ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

26 **3.3 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES INSTALLATION**

- 27 A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment
- 28 attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and
- 29 formwork specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete".

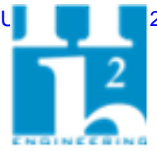
30 **END OF SECTION 23 05 48.13**

31



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Equipment labels.
9 2. Warning signs and labels.
10 3. Pipe labels.
11 4. Stencils.
12 5. Valve tags.
13 6. Warning tags.

14 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 15 A. Product Data: For each type of product.
16 B. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed
17 content for each label.
18 C. Valve numbering scheme.
19 D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.
20 E. Control System Diagrams and Descriptions: For each control system to include in maintenance
21 manuals.

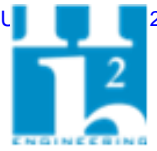
22 **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 23 A. Maintenance Data: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

24 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

25 **2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS**

- 26 A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
27 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving,
28 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.



- 1 2. Letter Color: White.
- 2 3. Background Color: Black.
- 3 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- 4 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than
- 5 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- 6 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches,
- 7 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for
- 8 greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the
- 9 size of principal lettering.
- 10 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- 11 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

- 12 B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number.

- 13 C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, tabulate equipment label
- 14 information. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

15 **2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS**

- 16 A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch
- 17 thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

- 18 B. Letter Color: White.

- 19 C. Background Color: Red.

- 20 D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

- 21 E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2
- 22 by 3/4 inch.

- 23 F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2
- 24 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater
- 25 viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal
- 26 lettering.

- 27 G. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

- 28 H. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

29 **2.3 PIPE LABELS**

- 30 A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering
- 31 indicating service, and showing flow direction.

- 32 B. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

- 33 C. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or
- 34 abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow
- 35 direction.



- 1 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both
- 2 directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
- 3 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

4 **2.4 STENCILS**

5 A. Stencils for Ducts:

- 6 1. Lettering Size: Minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for viewing distances up to 15 feet
- 7 and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
- 8 2. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
- 9 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

10 **2.5 VALVE TAGS**

11 A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-

12 inch numbers.

- 13 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped
- 14 holes for attachment hardware.
- 15 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain or beaded chain or S-hook.

16 B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve

17 number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or

18 space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification.

19 Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

- 20 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

21 **2.6 WARNING TAGS**

22 A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock

23 with matte finish suitable for writing.

- 24 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
- 25 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
- 26 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT
- 27 OPERATE."
- 28 4. Color: Safety-yellow background with black lettering.

29 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

30 **3.1 PREPARATION**

- ##### 31 A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification
- 32 devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and
- 33 encapsulants.



1 **3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- 2 A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of
3 surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- 4 B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- 5 C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

6 **3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION**

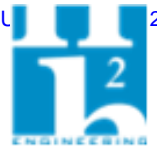
- 7 A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- 8 B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

9 **3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION**

- 10 A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings
11 in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels,
12 and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
- 13 1. Near each valve and control device.
- 14 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units.
15 Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
- 16 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible
17 enclosures.
- 18 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed
19 piping.
- 20 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
- 21 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in
22 areas of congested piping and equipment.
- 23 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- 24 B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including
25 pipes where flow is allowed in both directions. Install marker tape with arrows around the entire
26 circumference of the pipe at the beginning and end of the pipe-label content.
- 27 C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
- 28 1. Chilled-Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
- 29 2. Condenser-Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
- 30 3. Heating Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
- 31 4. Refrigerant Piping: Black letters on a safety-orange background.
- 32 5. Fuel Gas Piping: Black letters on a safety-yellow background.

33 **3.5 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION**

- 34 A. Stenciled Duct Label: Stenciled labels showing service and flow direction.



- 1 B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at
2 maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by
3 removable ceiling system.

4 **3.6 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION**

- 5 A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within
6 factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering
7 hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use
8 fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

- 9 B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and
10 with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:

- 11 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape: 1-1/2 inches

12 **Valve-Tag Colors:**

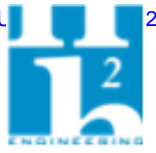
- 13 a. Potable and Other Water: White letters on a safety-green background.

14 **3.7 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION**

- 15 A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where
16 required.

17 **END OF SECTION 23 05 53**

18



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 05 93 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

8 1. Balancing Air Systems:

- 9 a. Constant-volume air systems.
10 b. Variable-air-volume systems.

11 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:

- 12 a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
13 b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
14 c. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.

15 3. Balancing steam systems.

16 4. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:

- 17 a. Motors.
18 b. Chillers.
19 c. Boilers.
20 d. Heat-transfer coils.

21 5. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.

22 6. Duct leakage tests.

23 7. Control system verification.

24 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 25 A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.

- 26 B. BAS: Building automation systems.

- 27 C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.

- 28 D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

- 29 E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.

- 30 F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.



1 G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

2 H. Special Inspector: An entity engaged to inspect smoke control systems.

3 **1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

4 A. TAB Conference: Conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies
5 and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14
6 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.

7 1. Minimum Agenda Items:

8 a. The Contract Documents examination report.

9 b. The TAB plan.

10 c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.

11 d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

12 **1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

13 A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that
14 the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in
15 "Quality Assurance" Article.

16 B. Report Format Submittals: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the
17 following as specified in "Preparation" Article.

18 1. TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures.

19 2. System readiness checklists.

20 C. Certified TAB reports.

21 **1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

22 A. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed,
23 submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.

24 B. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in
25 "Examination" Article.

26 C. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:

27 1. Instrument type and make.

28 2. Serial number.

29 3. Application.

30 4. Dates of use.

31 5. Dates of calibration.

32 **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

33 A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC or NEBB.



- 1 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC or NEBB. A
2 TAB Field Supervisor shall be on the project site at all times during TAB work and shall
3 have a minimum three years' of TAB experience with air, water, sound, and vibration
4 testing.
- 5 a. NEBB: Certified Professional (TAB-CP) or Certified Technician (TAB-CT).
6 b. AABC: Certified Test and Balance Engineer (TBE) or Certified Technician.
- 7 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC or NEBB as a
8 TAB technician.
- 9 a. NEBB: Certified Technician (TAB-CT).
10 b. AABC: Certified Technician.
- 11
- 12 B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in
13 ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- 14 C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air
15 Balancing."
- 16 D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 -
17 "System Balancing."
- 18 E. Warranty: Comply with the program requirements of either:
- 19 1. AABC National Performance Guaranty.
20 2. NEBB Conformance Certification.

21 **1.8 TAB CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES**

- 22 A. Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meeting.
- 23 B. Participate in verification of the TAB report by the CxA or Engineer for verification and
24 diagnostic purposes.

25 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)**

26 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

27 **3.1 TAB SPECIALISTS**

- 28 A. Subject to compliance with requirements, engage one of the following:
- 29 1. FTS Test and Balance
- 30 a. Location: Tallahassee, Florida
31 b. Contact: Heath Allbaugh, CP
32 c. Phone Number: (850) 519-7845



- 1 2. HVAC Testing Services, Inc.
- 2 a. Location: Thomasville, Georgia
- 3 b. Contact: Greg Lang, CP / Pete Lang
- 4 c. Phone Number: (229) 227-0255
- 5 3. Indoor Air Professionals, Inc.
- 6 a. Location: Fort Myers, Florida
- 7 b. Contact: Joseph Molloy, III, CP
- 8 c. Phone Number: (239) 707-9732
- 9 4. Dynamic Analysis, Inc.
- 10 a. Location: Pensacola, Florida
- 11 b. Contact: Brian Barr, CP
- 12 c. Phone Number: (850) 492-8325
- 13 5. W.W. Gay Mechanical
- 14 a. Location: Jacksonville, Florida
- 15 b. Contact: Don Eshelman, CP
- 16 c. Phone Number: (904) 394-7298
- 17 **3.2 EXAMINATION**
- 18 A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover
- 19 conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- 20 B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer
- 21 wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify
- 22 that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are
- 23 accessible.
- 24 C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- 25 D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions
- 26 for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and
- 27 assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- 28 E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to
- 29 verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum
- 30 walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- 31 F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
- 32 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects
- 33 that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all
- 34 or part of a system.
- 35 G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing,
- 36 cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.



- 1 H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- 2 I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight,
3 filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- 4 J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible
5 and their controls are connected and functioning.
- 6 K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with
7 indicated perforations.
- 8 L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or
9 mixing fluid flows.
- 10 M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- 11 N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- 12 O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- 13 P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe
14 and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from
15 indicated values.

16 3.3 PREPARATION

- 17 A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
- 18 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
19 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
20 3. Instrumentation to be used.
21 4. Project specific forms with specific identification for all equipment and systems. Project
22 specific forms shall include design data for all equipment and systems to be tested and
23 descriptions of any other necessary supporting data required in the final report that will be
24 included (i.e. fan/pump curves, layout drawings, balancing valve charts, etc).
- 25 B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness
26 for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
- 27 1. Airside:
- 28 a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been
29 satisfactorily completed.
30 b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
31 c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
32 d. Clean filters are installed.
33 e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
34 f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
35 g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
36 h. Ceilings are installed.
37 i. Windows and doors are installed.
38 j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.



- 1 2. Hydronics:
- 2 a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been
- 3 satisfactorily completed.
- 4 b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
- 5 c. Water treatment is complete.
- 6 d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
- 7 e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
- 8 f. Control valves are functioning per the sequence of operation.
- 9 g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
- 10 h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
- 11 i. Pump gage connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in
- 12 discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
- 13 j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
- 14 k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

15 **3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING**

- 16 A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures
- 17 contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance", ASHRAE 111, or NEBB's
- 18 "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" , and in
- 19 this Section.
- 20 B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the
- 21 minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
- 22 1. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with
- 23 requirements in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."
- 24 2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation,
- 25 coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 23 07 13 "Duct Insulation,"
- 26 Section 23 07 16 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 23 07 19 "HVAC Piping
- 27 Insulation."
- 28 C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position
- 29 indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other
- 30 suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- 31 D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

32 **3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS**

- 33 A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and
- 34 recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with
- 35 required fan volumes.
- 36 B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- 37 C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- 38 D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.



- 1 E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-
2 air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- 3 F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- 4 G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- 5 H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- 6 I. Check for airflow blockages.
- 7 J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- 8 K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- 9 L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts."

10 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- 11 A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by
12 fan manufacturer.
 - 13 1. Measure total airflow.
 - 14 a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates
15 minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - 16 b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary,
17 perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
 - 18 c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil
19 traverse may be acceptable.
 - 20 d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at
21 terminals and calculate the total airflow.
 - 22 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - 23 a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - 24 b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - 25 c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling
26 system.
 - 27 d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 - 28 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus
29 actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments
30 to accommodate actual conditions.
 - 31 4. Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated
32 speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment
33 of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 - 34 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment
35 manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-
36 motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling,
37 full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum
38 required brake horsepower.



- 1 6. Determine and make appropriate modifications for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley
2 sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
- 3 B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated
4 airflows.
- 5 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
6 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
7 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- 8 C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
- 9 1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
10 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
11 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
12 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- 13 D. Verify final system conditions.
- 14 1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within
15 design. Readjust to design if necessary.
16 2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
17 3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
18 4. Mark all final settings.
19 5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
20 6. Measure and record all operating data.
21 7. Record final fan-performance data.

22 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- 23 A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
 - 24 1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down
25 the duct from the fan discharge.
 - 26 2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
 - 27 3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static
28 pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static
29 pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit
30 manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure
31 needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
 - 32 4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as
33 follows:
 - 34 a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers
35 require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific
36 project.
 - 37 b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum
38 airflow. Record calibration factor.
 - 39 c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from
40 terminal units.
 - 41 d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.



- 1 e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum
2 airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any
3 deviation from design airflow.
- 4 f. When in full cooling or full heating, ensure that there is no mixing of hot-deck and
5 cold-deck airstreams unless so designed.
- 6 g. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be
7 maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full
8 cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
- 9 5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total
10 airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan
11 speed listed by fan manufacturer.
- 12 a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates
13 minimum outdoor-air conditions.
- 14 b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity (where the
15 total flow rate of all outlets is more than the indicated flow of the fans), adjust
16 terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches fan
17 selection and simulates actual load in the building.
- 18 1) Determine diversity factor.
- 19 2) Simulate system diversity by setting a required number of air terminals to
20 minimum airflows, as approved by the design engineer.
- 21 3) Set air terminals that were at minimum airflow to maximum airflow. Set a
22 sufficient number of air terminals that were previously at maximum airflow to
23 minimum airflow to maintain diversity, and balance terminals that were just
24 set to maximum.
- 25 c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary,
26 perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
- 27 d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil
28 traverse may be acceptable.
- 29 e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at
30 terminals and calculate the total airflow.
- 31 f. Obtain approval from Engineer before adjustment of fan speed higher or lower
32 than indicated speed. Determine and make appropriate modifications for
33 adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit
34 performance.
- 35 g. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult
36 equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and
37 measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure
38 amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode
39 to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- 40 6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
- 41 a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
- 42 b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
- 43 c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling
44 system.
- 45 d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
- 46 7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow
47 and minimum outdoor airflow.



- 1 a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume
- 2 air systems.
- 3 b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.

- 4 8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the
- 5 system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the
- 6 optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.
- 7 Coordinate maximum and minimum static pressure setpoints with Controls Contractor for
- 8 static pressure setpoint reset. Record damper positions for associated terminal units at
- 9 maximum and minimum static pressure setpoints.
- 10 9. Simulate maximum filter loading. The intent is for the variable frequency drive to operate
- 11 between 55-60 Hz at maximum filter loading. Remeasure the static pressure at the most
- 12 critical terminal unit and adjust the static pressure controller to ensure that adequate
- 13 static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit. Report the minimum static pressure
- 14 value and speed of variable frequency drives.
- 15 10. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - 16 a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are
 - 17 within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
 - 18 b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 - 19 c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - 20 d. Mark final settings.
 - 21 e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
 - 22 Measure and record all operating data.
 - 23 f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

24 3.8 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- 25 A. Prepare test reports for pumps, coils, and heat exchangers. Obtain approved submittals and
- 26 manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required coil
- 27 and heat exchanger flow rates with pump design flow rate.

- 28 B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.

- 29 C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare hydronic systems for testing and
- 30 balancing as follows:
 - 31 1. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
 - 32 2. Check highest vent for adequate pressure.
 - 33 3. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
 - 34 4. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
 - 35 5. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
 - 36 6. Check that air has been purged from the system.

37 3.9 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- 38 A. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - 39 1. Measure total water flow.
 - 40 a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 41 b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.



- 1 c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger
2 pressure drop.
- 3 2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - 4 a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe
5 prior to any valves.
 - 6 b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to
7 any valves or strainers.
 - 8 c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - 9 d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed.
10 Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump
11 has the intended impeller size.
- 12 1) If impeller sizes must be adjusted to achieve pump performance, obtain
13 approval from Engineer and comply with requirements of Division 23
14 Section "Hydronic Pumps".
- 15 e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water
16 flow is achieved.
- 17 3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded
18 condition.
- 19 B. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - 20 1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - 21 2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - 22 3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- 23 C. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - 24 1. Measure flow at terminals.
 - 25 2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - 26 3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - 27 4. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design
28 flow.
 - 29 5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- 30 D. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - 31 1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - 32 2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- 33 E. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - 34 1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - 35 2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been
36 verified.
- 37 F. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - 38 1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - 39 2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.



- 1 3. Mark final settings.
- 2 4. Mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve.

3 G. Verify that memory stops have been set.

4 3.10 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

5 A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at
6 maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals, and proceed as specified above for hydronic
7 systems.

8 B. Adjust the variable-flow hydronic system as follows:

- 9 1. Verify that the differential-pressure sensor is located as indicated.
- 10 2. Determine whether there is diversity in the system.

11 C. For systems with no diversity (when the total flow rate of all valves is equal to the indicated flow
12 of the pumps):

13 1. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.

14 a. Measure total water flow.

- 15 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
- 16 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
- 17 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or
18 exchanger pressure drop.

19 b. Measure pump TDH as follows:

- 20 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in
21 discharge pipe prior to any valves.
- 22 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe
23 prior to any valves or strainers.
- 24 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
- 25 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve
26 closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify
27 that the pump has the intended impeller size.

28 a) If impeller sizes must be adjusted to achieve pump performance,
29 obtain approval from Engineer and comply with requirements of
30 Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps".

31 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until
32 design water flow is achieved.

33 c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an
34 overloaded condition.

35 2. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.

36 a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.

37 b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.



- 1 c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- 2 3. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water
3 flows.
- 4 a. Measure flow at terminals.
- 5 b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
- 6 c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
- 7 d. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain
8 design flow.
- 9 e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- 10 4. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
- 11 a. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified
12 range.
- 13 b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- 14 5. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at
15 terminals:
- 16 a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
- 17 b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been
18 verified.
- 19 6. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine the system differential-pressure set
20 point. Re-measure the differential pressure at the most critical valve and adjust the
21 system differential pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the
22 optimum system differential pressure. Record set point and give to Controls Contractor.
23 Coordinate maximum and minimum differential pressure setpoints with Controls
24 Contractor for differential pressure setpoint reset. Record valve positions for associated
25 units at maximum and minimum differential pressure setpoints.
- 26 7. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency
27 controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-
28 frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data
29 under both conditions.
- 30 8. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
- 31 9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
- 32 a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
- 33 b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
- 34 c. Mark final settings.
- 35 d. Mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve.
- 36 10. Verify that memory stops have been set.
- 37 D. For systems with diversity (when the total flow rate of all valves is more than the indicated flow
38 of the pumps):
- 39 1. Determine diversity factor.
- 40 2. Simulate system diversity by closing required number of control valves, as approved by
41 the design engineer.
- 42 3. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.



- 1 a. Measure total water flow.
 - 2 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 3 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - 4 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or
 - 5 exchanger pressure drop.
- 6 b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - 7 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in
 - 8 discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - 9 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe
 - 10 prior to any valves or strainers.
 - 11 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - 12 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve
 - 13 closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify
 - 14 that the pump has the intended impeller size.
- 15 a) If impeller sizes must be adjusted to achieve pump performance,
- 16 obtain approval from Engineer and comply with requirements of
- 17 Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps".
- 18 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until
- 19 design water flow is achieved.
- 20 c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an
- 21 overloaded condition.
- 22 4. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - 23 a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - 24 b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - 25 c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- 26 5. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water
- 27 flows.
 - 28 a. Measure flow at terminals.
 - 29 b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - 30 c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - 31 d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain
 - 32 design flow.
 - 33 e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- 34 6. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - 35 a. Measure differential pressure, and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified
 - 36 range.
 - 37 b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- 38 7. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at
- 39 terminals:
 - 40 a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.



- 1 b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been
2 verified.

- 3 8. Open control valves that were shut. Close a sufficient number of control valves that were
4 previously open to maintain diversity, and balance terminals that were just opened.
- 5 9. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine system differential-pressure set point.
6 Re-measure the differential pressure at the most critical valve and adjust the system
7 differential pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the
8 optimum system differential pressure. Record set point and give to Controls Contractor.
9 Coordinate maximum and minimum differential pressure setpoints with Controls
10 Contractor for differential pressure setpoint reset. Record valve positions for associated
11 units at maximum and minimum differential pressure setpoints.
- 12 10. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency
13 controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-
14 frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data
15 under both conditions.
- 16 11. Mark final settings and verify that memory stops have been set.
- 17 12. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - 18 a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - 19 b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - 20 c. Mark final settings.
 - 21 d. Mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve.

- 22 13. Verify that memory stops have been set.

23 **3.11 PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY HYDRONIC SYSTEMS**

- 24 A. Balance the primary circuit flow first.
- 25 B. Balance the secondary circuits after the primary circuits are complete.
- 26 C. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - 27 1. Measure total water flow.
 - 28 a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 29 b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - 30 c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger
31 pressure drop.
 - 32 2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - 33 a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe
34 prior to any valves.
 - 35 b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to
36 any valves or strainers.
 - 37 c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - 38 d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed.
39 Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump
40 has the intended impeller size.



- 1) If impeller sizes must be adjusted to achieve pump performance, obtain approval from Engineer and comply with requirements of Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps".
- e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- D. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- E. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 1. Measure flow at terminals.
 2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 4. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- F. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- G. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- H. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 3. Mark final settings.
 4. Mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve.
- I. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 3. Motor rpm.
 4. Phase and hertz.



- 1 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
 - 2 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
 - 3 7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
 - 4 8. Service factor and frame size.
- 5 B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove
6 proper operation.

7 3.13 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

- 8 A. Balance water flow through each evaporator to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with
9 all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not
10 exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer.
- 11 B. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:
- 12 1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
 - 13 2. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments
14 furnished by chiller manufacturer.
 - 15 3. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
 - 16 4. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
 - 17 5. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
 - 18 6. For air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data
19 including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

20 3.14 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

- 21 A. Hydronic Boilers:
- 22 1. Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
 - 23 2. Measure and record water flow.
 - 24 3. Record relief valve pressure setting.

25 3.15 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- 26 A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
- 27 1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
 - 28 2. Water flow rate.
 - 29 3. Water pressure drop for major (more than 20 gpm) equipment coils, excluding unitary
30 equipment such as reheat coils, unit heaters, and fan-coil units.
 - 31 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 32 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
 - 33 6. Airflow.
 - 34 7. Air pressure drop.
 - 35 8. Coils with pressure independent control valves: Measure coil airflow rate, entering and
36 leaving air temperatures and calculate energy transfer. Measure coil entering and
37 leaving water temperatures and use energy balance calculation to determine actual flow
38 rate and record.
- 39 B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:



- 1 1. Nameplate data.
- 2 2. Airflow.
- 3 3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
- 4 4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
- 5 5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
- 6 6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

7 **3.16 CONTROLS VERIFICATION**

- 8 A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
- 9 1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
 - 10 2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
 - 11 3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
 - 12 4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
 - 13 5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
 - 14 6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
 - 15 7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
 - 16 8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller:
 - 17 open, closed, or modulating.
 - 18 9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended
 - 19 temperature, humidity, or pressure.
- 20 B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations
- 21 from indicated conditions.

22 **3.17 TOLERANCES**

- 23 A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
- 24 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 - 25 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 - 26 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 - 27 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
- 28 B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified
- 29 above.

30 **3.18 PROGRESS REPORTING**

- 31 A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as
- 32 specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems
- 33 balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to
- 34 facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to
- 35 HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and
- 36 balancing devices.
- 37 B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures,
- 38 procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems
- 39 found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and
- 40 each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.



1 **3.19 FINAL REPORT**

2 A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections
3 for tested systems and balanced systems.

- 4 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the
5 certified testing and balancing engineer.
6 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
7 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
8 4. Include warranty certificate meeting the requirements of one of the following programs:

- 9 a. AABC – National Performance Guaranty
10 b. NEBB – Conformance Certification

11 B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

- 12 1. Pump curves, marked with operating conditions.
13 2. Fan curves, marked with operating conditions.
14 3. Manufacturers' test data.
15 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
16 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and
17 Product Data.

18 C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

- 19 1. Title page.
20 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
21 3. Project name.
22 4. Project location.
23 5. Architect's name and address.
24 6. Engineer's name and address.
25 7. Contractor's name and address.
26 8. Report date.
27 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
28 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report.
29 Number each page in the report.
30 11. Summary of contents including the following:
31 a. Indicated versus final performance.
32 b. Notable characteristics of systems.
33 c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract
34 Documents.

- 35 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
36 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
37 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
38 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:

- 39 a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
40 b. Conditions of filters.
41 c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
42 d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
43 e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
44 f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
45 g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.



- 1 h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- 2 D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present
3 each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
- 4 1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
5 2. Water and steam flow rates.
6 3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
7 4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
8 5. Terminal units.
9 6. Balancing stations.
10 7. Position of balancing devices.
11 8. Quantities and sizes of doors in smoke control systems.
- 12 E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
- 13 1. Unit Data:
- 14 a. Unit identification.
15 b. Location.
16 c. Make and type.
17 d. Model number and unit size.
18 e. Manufacturer's serial number.
19 f. Unit arrangement and class.
20 g. Discharge arrangement.
21 h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
22 i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
23 j. Number, make, and size of belts.
24 k. Number, type, and size of filters.
- 25 2. Motor Data:
- 26 a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
27 b. Horsepower and rpm.
28 c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
29 d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
30 e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
31 f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
- 32 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- 33 a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
34 b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
35 c. Fan rpm.
36 d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
37 e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
38 f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
39 g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
40 h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
41 i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
42 j. Return airflow in cfm.
43 k. Outdoor-air damper position.
44 l. Return-air damper position.



- 1 m. Vortex damper position.
- 2 F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:
- 3 1. Coil Data:
- 4 a. System identification.
- 5 b. Location.
- 6 c. Coil type.
- 7 d. Number of rows.
- 8 e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- 9 f. Make and model number.
- 10 g. Face area in sq. ft..
- 11 h. Tube size in NPS.
- 12 i. Tube and fin materials.
- 13 j. Circuiting arrangement.
- 14 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- 15 a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- 16 b. Average face velocity in fpm.
- 17 c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
- 18 d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- 19 e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- 20 f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- 21 g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- 22 h. Water flow rate in gpm.
- 23 i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
- 24 j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
- 25 k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
- 26 l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- 27 m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
- 28 n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
- 29 o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.
- 30 G. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
- 31 1. Fan Data:
- 32 a. System identification.
- 33 b. Location.
- 34 c. Make and type.
- 35 d. Model number and size.
- 36 e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- 37 f. Arrangement and class.
- 38 g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- 39 h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
- 40 2. Motor Data:
- 41 a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
- 42 b. Horsepower and rpm.
- 43 c. Volts, phase, and hertz.



- 1 d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- 2 e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- 3 f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
- 4 g. Number, make, and size of belts.
- 5 h. Belt tension in lbs.

- 6 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - 7 a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - 8 b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - 9 c. Fan rpm.
 - 10 d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - 11 e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

- 12 H. Shaft Reports: For stairwell and elevator shafts, include the following:
 - 13 1. Shaft Data:
 - 14 a. System identification.
 - 15 b. Location.
 - 16 2. Door Data:
 - 17 a. Number of doors adjacent to building interior.
 - 18 b. Number of doors adjacent to building exterior.
 - 19 c. Dimensions of doors in inches.
 - 20 d. Door closing force in lbs.
 - 21 3. Test Data at Each Condition (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - 22 a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - 23 b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - 24 c. Fan rpm.
 - 25 d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - 26 e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
 - 27 f. Differential pressure across each shaft door in inches wg.

- 28 I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid
29 representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
 - 30 1. Report Data:
 - 31 a. System and air-handling-unit number.
 - 32 b. Location and zone.
 - 33 c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
 - 34 d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
 - 35 e. Duct size in inches.
 - 36 f. Duct area in sq. ft..
 - 37 g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
 - 38 h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
 - 39 i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
 - 40 j. Actual average velocity in fpm.



- 1 k. Barometric pressure in psig.
- 2 J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
- 3 1. Unit Data:
- 4 a. System and air-handling unit identification.
- 5 b. Location and zone.
- 6 c. Apparatus used for test.
- 7 d. Area served.
- 8 e. Make.
- 9 f. Number from system diagram.
- 10 g. Type and model number.
- 11 h. Size.
- 12 i. Effective area in sq. ft..
- 13 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- 14 a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- 15 b. Air velocity in fpm.
- 16 c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
- 17 d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
- 18 e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
- 19 f. Final velocity in fpm.
- 20 g. Space temperature in deg F.
- 21 K. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
- 22 1. Unit Data:
- 23 a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
- 24 b. Location and zone.
- 25 c. Room or riser served.
- 26 d. Coil make and size.
- 27 e. Flowmeter type.
- 28 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- 29 a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- 30 b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
- 31 c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
- 32 d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
- 33 e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
- 34 f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- 35 L. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and
- 36 include the following:
- 37 1. Unit Data:
- 38 a. Unit identification.
- 39 b. Location.
- 40 c. Service.



- 1 d. Make and size.
- 2 e. Model number and serial number.
- 3 f. Water flow rate in gpm.
- 4 g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
- 5 h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
- 6 i. Pump rpm.
- 7 j. Impeller diameter in inches.
- 8 k. Motor make and frame size.
- 9 l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
- 10 m. Voltage at each connection.
- 11 n. Amperage for each phase.
- 12 o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- 13 p. Seal type.

14 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- 15 a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
- 16 b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
- 17 c. Actual impeller size in inches.
- 18 d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
- 19 e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
- 20 f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
- 21 g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
- 22 h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
- 23 i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
- 24 j. Voltage at each connection.
- 25 k. Amperage for each phase.

26 M. Instrument Calibration Reports:

27 1. Report Data:

- 28 a. Instrument type and make.
- 29 b. Serial number.
- 30 c. Application.
- 31 d. Dates of use.
- 32 e. Dates of calibration.

33 **3.20 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT**

- 34 A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of
35 commissioning authority.
- 36 B. At Engineer's option, Commissioning authority shall randomly select measurements,
37 documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent
38 of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in
39 a normal 8-hour business day.
- 40 C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final
41 report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."



- 1 D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements
2 checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete
3 and shall be rejected.
- 4 E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
- 5 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final
6 report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and
7 request a second final inspection.
- 8 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB
9 specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the
10 cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
- 11 3. If the second verification also fails, design professional may contact AABC Headquarters
12 regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty or NEBB Headquarters regarding
13 the NEBB Conformance Certification.
- 14 F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

15 **3.21 ADDITIONAL TESTS**

- 16 A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are
17 being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- 18 B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and
19 winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

20 **END OF SECTION 23 05 93**

21



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 07 13.11 - INSULATION FOR INDOOR GENERAL HVAC DUCTS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:

- 8 1. Indoor, concealed supply, return, and outdoor air.
9 2. Indoor, exposed supply, return, and outdoor air.
10 3. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
11 4. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.

12 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 13 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor
14 permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

- 15 B. Shop Drawings:

- 16 1. Detail application for each type of insulation and hanger.
17 2. Detail insulation application for each type of insulation.

18 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 19 A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship
20 program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of
21 Apprenticeship and Training.

- 22 B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing
23 identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having
24 jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and
25 cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- 26 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed
27 index of 50 or less.

28 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 29 A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate
30 ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.



1 **1.6 COORDINATION**

- 2 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in
3 Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- 4 B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before
5 preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for
6 installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for
7 maintenance.

8 **1.7 SCHEDULING**

- 9 A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required. Insulation
10 application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- 11 B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of
12 construction.

13 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

14 **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- 15 A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," and "Indoor Duct and Plenum
16 Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- 17 B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- 18 C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less
19 than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- 20 D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable
21 according to ASTM C795.
- 22 E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing
23 process.
- 24 F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin.
25 Comply with ASTM C553, Type II and ASTM C1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket.
26 Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- 27 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 28 a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
- 29 b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
- 30 c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
- 31 d. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- 32 G. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin.
33 Comply with ASTM C612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide
34 insulation with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in
35 "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.



- 1 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 2 a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
- 3 b. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
- 4 c. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
- 5 d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.
- 6 H. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied FSK jacket complying with ASTM C1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 13 a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
- 14 b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
- 15 c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
- 16 d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

17 **2.2 ADHESIVES**

- 18 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- 19
- 20 B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- 21 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 22 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
- 23 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
- 24 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
- 25 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
- 26
- 27
- 28 2. Fiberglass adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 29
- 30 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- 31
- 32
- 33
- 34 C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- 35
- 36 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 37 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
- 38



- 1 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 2 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 3 Company; 85-50.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
- 4 2. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to
 5 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 6 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
 7 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
 8 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
 9 Chambers."
- 10 **2.3 MASTICS AND COATINGS**
- 11 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 12 1. VOC Content: 50 g/L or less.
 13 2. Low-Emitting Materials: Mastic coatings shall comply with the testing and product
 14 requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the
 15 Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources
 16 Using Environmental Chambers."
- 17 B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
- 18 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 19 a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 20 Company; 30-80/30-90.
 21 b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
- 22 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation
 23 type and service conditions.
 24 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 25 4. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
 26 5. Color: White.
- 27 C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
- 28 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 29 following:
- 30 a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products; CP-10.
 31 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 32 c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products; 46-50.
 33 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc; 55-50.
- 34 2. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, greater than
 35 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 36 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 37 4. Color: White.



1 **2.4 SEALANTS**

2 A. FSK Flashing Sealants:

3 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

4 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
5 Company; CP-76.Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.

6 b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
7 Company; 95-44.

8 c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.

9 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

10 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.

11 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

12 5. Color: Aluminum.

13 6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.

14 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
15 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
16 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
17 Chambers."

18 B. ASJ Flashing Sealants:

19 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :

20 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
21 Company; CP-76.

22 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

23 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.

24 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

25 5. Color: White.

26 6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.

27 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
28 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
29 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
30 Chambers."

31 **2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS**

32 A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When
33 factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

34 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing;
35 complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.

36 2. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing;
37 complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.



1 **2.6 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH**

2 A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5
3 strands/sq. in. for covering ducts.

4 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the
5 following:

6 a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products; Chil-Glas Number 5.

7 **2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS**

8 A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

9 B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

10 **2.8 TAPES**

11 A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive,
12 complying with ASTM C1136.

13 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

14 a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.

15 b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.

16 c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.

17 2. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ Width: 3 inches.

18 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.

19 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.

20 5. Elongation: 2 percent.

21 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.

22 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

23 B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive;
24 complying with ASTM C1136.

25 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :

26 a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.

27 b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.

28 c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.

29 d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.

30 2. Width: 3 inches.

31 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.

32 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.

33 5. Elongation: 2 percent.

34 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.

35 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.



1 **2.9 SECUREMENTS**

2 A. Bands:

- 3 1. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch
4 thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.
5 2. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept
6 metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

7 B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

- 8 1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to
9 projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in
10 position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following
11 requirements:
- 12 a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one
13 of the following:
- 14 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
15 2) Gemco.
16 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
- 17 b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches
18 square.
19 c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-
20 diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
21 d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated
22 capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without
23 damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
- 24 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick,
25 galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in
26 place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- 27 a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 28 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
29 2) GEMCO; R-150.
30 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
31 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
- 32 b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to
33 ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- 34 C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 3 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
4 and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
- 5 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
6 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- 7 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

8 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 9 A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will
10 adversely affect insulation application.

11 **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- 12 A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces;
13 free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- 14 B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for
15 each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- 16 C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install
17 accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or
18 dry state.
- 19 D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- 20 E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- 21 F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- 22 G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with
23 adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- 24 H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- 25 I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers,
26 supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
- 27 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
28 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor
29 legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper
30 and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
- 31 J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet
32 and dry film thicknesses.



- 1 K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
- 2 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
- 3 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket.
- 4 Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip,
- 5 spaced 4 inches o.c.
- 6 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive
- 7 self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
- 8 a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
- 9 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written
- 10 instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
- 11 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and
- 12 at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- 13 L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal
- 14 thickness.
- 15 M. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas.
- 16 Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches
- 17 similar to butt joints.

18 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- 19 A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated):
- 20 Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- 21 B. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire
- 22 damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves
- 23 to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
- 24 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
- 25 C. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
- 26 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper
- 27 sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct
- 28 insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
- 29 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07
- 30 "Penetration Firestopping."

31 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- 32 A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with insulation pins.
- 33 1. Install metal, adhesively attached, perforated-base insulation hangers on sides and
- 34 bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:



- 1 a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal
2 centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16
3 inches o.c.
4 b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c.
5 each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to
6 hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
7 c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and
8 plenums.
9 d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
10 e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
11 f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with
12 insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation
13 facing.
- 14 2. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous
15 unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with
16 insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment.
17 Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch
18 o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, field-
19 applied fabric-reinforcing mesh, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and
20 protrusions.
- 21 a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with mastic to maintain vapor-barrier
22 seal.
23 b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot
24 intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped
25 pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface.
26 Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the
27 insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
- 28 3. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At
29 end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
30 4. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section
31 for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually
32 mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
33 5. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with
34 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of
35 stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- 36 B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
- 37 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit
38 area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
39 2. Install metal, adhesively attached, perforated-base insulation hangers on sides and
40 bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
- 41 a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal
42 centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16
43 inches o.c.
44 b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c.
45 each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to
46 hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.



- 1 c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and
 2 plenums.
 3 d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 4 e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with
 5 insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation
 6 facing.
- 7 3. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous
 8 unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with
 9 insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment.
 10 Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch
 11 o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, field-
 12 applied fabric-reinforcing mesh, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and
 13 protrusions.
- 14 a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with mastic to maintain vapor-barrier
 15 seal.
 16 b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot
 17 intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped
 18 pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface.
 19 Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the
 20 insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
- 21 4. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section
 22 for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and
 23 inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with
 24 individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
- 25 5. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with
 26 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of
 27 stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

28 3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- 29 A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with
 30 factory-applied jackets.
- 31 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 32 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 33 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- 34 B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
- 35 1. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 36 2. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation
 37 with vapor-barrier mastic.

38 3.7 FINISHES

- 39 A. Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified
 40 below .



- 1 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material
2 and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
- 3 a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- 4 B. Color: Final color as selected by Engineer. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection
5 of the completed Work.
- 6 **3.8 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**
- 7 A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
- 8 1. Indoor, concealed supply, return, and outdoor air.
9 2. Indoor, exposed supply, return, and outdoor air.
10 3. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
11 4. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
- 12 B. Items Not Insulated:
- 13 1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and
14 ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
15 2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
16 3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
17 4. Flexible connectors.
18 5. Vibration-control devices.
19 6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.
- 20 **3.9 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE**
- 21 A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply, return, and outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the
22 following:
- 23 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2-3/16 inchesthick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- 24 B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be the following:
- 25 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2-3/16 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- 26 C. Concealed, rectangular, supply, return, and outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
- 27 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2-3/16 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- 28 D. Concealed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration
29 of building exterior shall be the following:
- 30 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2-3/16 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- 31 E. Concealed, supply, return, and outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
- 32 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- 33 F. Concealed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be the following:



- 1 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. **[6-lb/cu. ft.]** nominal density.
- 2 G. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply, return, and outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the
3 following:
- 4 1. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches thick.
- 5 H. Exposed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and
6 penetration of building exterior shall be the following:
- 7 1. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches thick.
- 8 I. Exposed, rectangular, supply, return, and outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
- 9 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and nominal density.
- 10 J. Exposed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of
11 building exterior shall be the following:
- 12 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and nominal density.
- 13 K. Exposed, supply, return, and outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
- 14 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- 15 L. Exposed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
- 16 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- 17 **END OF SECTION 23 07 13.11**



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 07 16.11 - INSULATION FOR CHILLED WATER EQUIPMENT**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC equipment that is not factory insulated:

- 8 1. Chillers.
9 2. Chilled-water pumps.
10 3. Expansion/compression tanks.
11 4. Air separators.

12 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 13 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor
14 permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

15 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 16 A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship
17 program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of
18 Apprenticeship and Training.

- 19 B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing
20 identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having
21 jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and
22 cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- 23 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed
24 index of 50 or less.
25 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed
26 index of 150 or less.

27 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 28 A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate
29 ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.



1 **1.6 COORDINATION**

- 2 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in
3 Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
4 B. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for equipment insulation
5 application.

6 **1.7 SCHEDULING**

- 7 A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems. Insulation application may begin
8 on segments that have satisfactory test results.
9 B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of
10 construction.

11 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

12 **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- 13 A. Comply with requirements in "Breeching Insulation Schedule" and "Equipment Insulation
14 Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
15 B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
16 C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less
17 than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
18 D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable
19 according to ASTM C795.
20 E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing
21 process.
22 F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid,
23 hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied
24 Jackets" Article.
25 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers
26 offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to
27 the following:
28 a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglass.
29 2. Block Insulation: ASTM C552, Type I.
30 3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C552, Type III.
31 4. Board Insulation: ASTM C552, Type IV.
32 5. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
33 G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply
34 with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.



- 1 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 2 a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
- 3 b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
- 4 c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Sheet and K-FLEX LS.
- 5 **2.2 ADHESIVES**
- 6 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding
- 7 insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- 8 B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no
- 9 flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
- 10 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
- 11 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 12 a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
- 13 Company; 81-84.
- 14 2. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
- 15 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
- 16 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
- 17 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
- 18 Chambers."
- 19 C. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- 20 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
- 21 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 22 a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
- 23 b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
- 24 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
- 25 Company; 85-75.
- 26 d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
- 27 2. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
- 28 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
- 29 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
- 30 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
- 31 Chambers."
- 32 D. ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap
- 33 seams and joints.
- 34 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
- 35 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 36 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
- 37 Company; CP-82.
- 38 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.



- 1 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 2 Company; 85-50.
 3 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
- 4 2. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to
 5 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 6 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
 7 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
 8 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
 9 Chambers."
- 10 **2.3 MASTICS AND COATINGS**
- 11 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 12 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when
 13 calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 14 2. VOC Content: 50 g/L or less.
 15 3. Low-Emitting Materials: Mastic coatings shall comply with the testing and product
 16 requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the
 17 Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources
 18 Using Environmental Chambers."
- 19 B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient
 20 services.
- 21 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
 22 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 23 a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H .B. Fuller
 24 Company; 30-80 / 30-90.
 25 b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
- 26 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation
 27 type and service conditions.
 28 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 29 4. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
 30 5. Color: White.
- 31 C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
- 32 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
 33 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 34 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 35 Company; Encacel.
 36 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
 37 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 38 Company; 60-95/60-96.
- 39 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation
 40 type and service conditions.



- 1 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
2 4. Color: White.

3 2.4 SEALANTS

4 A. Joint Sealants for Cellular Glass Products:

- 5 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated
6 into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 7 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
8 Company; CP-76.
9 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
10 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
11 Company; 30-45.
12 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
13 e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.

- 14 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
15 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
16 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
17 5. Color: White or gray.
18 6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
19 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
20 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
21 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
22 Chambers."

23 B. Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

- 24 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
25 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 26 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
27 Company; CP-76.
28 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
29 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
30 Company; 95-44.
31 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.

- 32 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
33 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
34 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
35 5. Color: Aluminum.
36 6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
37 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
38 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
39 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
40 Chambers."

41 C. ASJ Flashing Sealants:



- 1 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
2 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 3 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
4 Company; CP-76.
- 5 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
6 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
7 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
8 5. Color: White.
9 6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
10 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
11 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
12 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
13 Chambers."

14 2.5 **FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS**

- 15 A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When
16 factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
- 17 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing;
18 complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.

19 2.6 **FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS**

- 20 A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- 21 B. Metal Jacket:
- 22 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
23 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 24 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
25 Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
26 b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless-Steel Jacketing.
27 c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
- 28 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005,
29 Temper H-14.
- 30 a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
31 b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
32 c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.
33 d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.
34 e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
- 35 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
36 2) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not
37 available.



1 C. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing
 2 membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a
 3 rubberized bituminous resin on a cross laminated polyethylene film covered with stucco-
 4 embossed aluminum-foil facing.

5 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the
 6 following:

7 a. Polyguard Products, Inc.

8 2.7 TAPES

9 A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive,
 10 complying with ASTM C1136.

- 11 1. Width: 3 inches.
- 12 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
- 13 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
- 14 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
- 15 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
- 16 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

17 2.8 SECUREMENTS

18 A. Bands:

- 19 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch
 20 wide with wing seal.
- 21 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch
 22 thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.
- 23 3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept
 24 metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

25 B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

26 1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to
 27 projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in
 28 position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.

29 a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- 30 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
- 31 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
- 32 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.

33 b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches
 34 square.

35 c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-
 36 diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.



- 1 d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated
2 capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without
3 damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
- 4 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick,
5 galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in
6 place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- 7 a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one [<Double click](#)
8 [here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
9 b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to
10 ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- 11 C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
12 D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

13 2.9 CORNER ANGLES

- 14 A. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to
15 ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.
- 16 B. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according
17 to ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304.

18 PART 3 - EXECUTION

19 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 20 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
21 and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
- 22 1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of
23 defects.
24 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- 25 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

26 3.2 PREPARATION

- 27 A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will
28 adversely affect insulation application.
- 29 B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements
30 for heat tracing that apply to insulation.



1 **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- 2 A. On below ambient systems provide continuous vapor barrier.
- 3 B. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces;
4 free of voids throughout the length of equipment.
- 5 C. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required
6 for each item of equipment as specified in insulation system schedules.
- 7 D. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install
8 accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or
9 dry state.
- 10 E. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- 11 F. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- 12 G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- 13 H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with
14 adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- 15 I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- 16 J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers,
17 supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
- 18 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
19 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor
20 legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper
21 and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
- 22 K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet
23 and dry film thicknesses.
- 24 L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal
25 thickness.
- 26 M. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas.
27 Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches
28 similar to butt joints.

29 **3.4 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION**

- 30 A. Cellular Glass Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive
31 and bands or with anchor pins,,speed washers, and bands.
- 32 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit
33 area, for 50 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
- 34 2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including
35 contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end
36 joints.



- 1 3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
 2 4. Install adhesively attached insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and
 3 vessels as follows:
- 4 a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
 5 b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service
 6 temperature and with substrate.
 7 c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation
 8 end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
 9 d. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks
 10 and vessels.
 11 e. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
 12 f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with
 13 insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation
 14 facing.
- 15 5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band
 16 material compatible with insulation materials.
 17 6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and
 18 where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing
 19 insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut
 20 with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around
 21 equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two
 22 circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer
 23 periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire
 24 ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the
 25 body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for
 26 securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
 27 7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
 28 8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes,
 29 handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
 30 9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and
 31 nameplates.
 32 10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends,
 33 joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.
- 34 B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation
 35 over entire surface of tanks and vessels.
- 36 1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended
 37 adhesive.
 38 2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.
 39 3. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations.
 40 Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

41 **3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION**

- 42 A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with
 43 factory-applied jackets.
- 44 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 45 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 46 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.



- 1 B. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end
 2 joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof
 3 sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12
 4 inches o.c. and at end joints.

5 3.6 FINISHES

- 6 A. Equipment Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket
 7 with paint system identified below .
- 8 1. Semi-gloss Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket
 9 material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof. Color
 10 per schedule below.
- 11 a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, semi-gloss, latex-emulsion size.
- 12 B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of
 13 insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating. Color per schedule below.
- 14 C. Color: Final color as selected by Engineer. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection
 15 of the completed Work.
- 16 1. Chilled Water & Brine: Dark Green.
- 17 D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

18 3.7 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

- 19 A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for
 20 a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- 21 B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.
- 22 C. Chillers: Insulate cold surfaces on chillers, including, but not limited to, evaporator bundles,
 23 suction piping, compressor inlets, tube sheets, water boxes, and nozzles with one of the
 24 following:
- 25 1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches Insert dimension thick.
 26 2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1-1/2 inch thick.
- 27 D. Chilled-water pump insulation shall be the following:
- 28 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1-1/2 inches thick.
- 29 E. Chilled-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be the following:
- 30 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1-1/2 inch thick.
- 31 F. Chilled-water air-separator insulation shall be the following:
- 32 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.



1 **3.8 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE**

2 A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-
3 applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

4 B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

5 C. Equipment, Concealed:

6 1. None.

7 D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:

8 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.024 inch thick.

9 E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72
10 Inches:

11 1. Aluminum, with 1-1/4-Inch-Deep Corrugations: 0.032 inch thick.

12 **3.9 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE**

13 A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-
14 applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

15 B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

16 C. Equipment, Concealed:

17 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.024 inch thick.

18 D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:

19 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.024 inch thick.

20 E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72
21 Inches:

22 1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed with 1-1/4-Inch-Deep Corrugations: 0.032 inch thick.

23 **END OF SECTION 23 07 16.11**



1 **SECTION 23 07 16.13 - INSULATION FOR HEATING HOT WATER EQUIPMENT**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC equipment that is not factory insulated:
8 1. Expansion/compression tanks.
9 2. Air separators.

10 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 11 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor
12 permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

13 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 14 A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship
15 program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of
16 Apprenticeship and Training.
- 17 B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing
18 identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having
19 jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and
20 cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- 21 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed
22 index of 50 or less.
- 23 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed
24 index of 150 or less.

25 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 26 A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate
27 ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

28 **1.6 COORDINATION**

- 29 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in
30 Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."



- 1 B. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for equipment insulation
2 application.

3 1.7 SCHEDULING

- 4 A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems. Insulation application may begin
5 on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- 6 B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of
7 construction.

8 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

9 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- 10 A. Comply with requirements in ""Equipment Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating
11 materials shall be applied.
- 12 B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- 13 C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less
14 than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- 15 D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable
16 according to ASTM C795.
- 17 E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing
18 process.
- 19 F. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting
20 resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C1393, Type II or
21 Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5
22 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F
23 or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- 24 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 25 a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.Industrial Insulation Group (IIG); MinWool-1200
26 Industrial Board.
- 27 b. Rock Wool; Delta Board.
- 28 c. Roxul Inc.; RHT and RockBoard.
- 29 d. Thermafiber, Inc.; Thermafiber Industrial Felt.

30 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- 31 A. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.
- 32 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
33 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:



1 a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

2 **2.3 ADHESIVES**

3 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding
4 insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

5 B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

6 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
7 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

8 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
9 Company; CP-127.

10 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.

11 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
12 Company; 85-60 / 85-70.

13 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

14 2. Fiberglass adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated
15 according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

16 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
17 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
18 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
19 Chambers."

20 C. ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap
21 seams and joints.

22 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
23 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

24 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
25 Company; CP-82.

26 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.

27 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
28 Company; 85-50.

29 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

30 2. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to
31 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

32 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
33 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
34 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
35 Chambers."

36 **2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS**

37 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

38 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when
39 calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).



- 1 2. VOC Content: 50 g/L or less.
- 2 3. Low-Emitting Materials: Mastic coatings shall comply with the testing and product
- 3 requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the
- 4 Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources
- 5 Using Environmental Chambers."
- 6 B. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
- 7 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
- 8 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 9 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
- 10 Company; CP-10.
- 11 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
- 12 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
- 13 Company; 46-50.
- 14 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
- 15 e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
- 16 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's
- 17 recommended dry film thickness.
- 18 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
- 19 4. Color: White.

20 **2.5 SEALANTS**

- 21 A. Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
- 22 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
- 23 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 24 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
- 25 Company; CP-76.
- 26 b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
- 27 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
- 28 Company; 95-44.
- 29 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
- 30 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 31 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
- 32 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
- 33 5. Color: Aluminum.
- 34 6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
- 35 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
- 36 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
- 37 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
- 38 Chambers."
- 39 B. ASJ Flashing Sealants:
- 40 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
- 41 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:



- 1 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
2 Company; CP-76.
- 3 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
4 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
5 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
6 5. Color: White.
7 6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
8 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
9 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
10 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
11 Chambers."
- 12 **2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS**
- 13 A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When
14 factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
- 15 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing;
16 complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
- 17 **2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS**
- 18 A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- 19 B. Metal Jacket:
- 20 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
21 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 22 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
23 Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
24 b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless-Steel Jacketing.
25 c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
- 26 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-
27 14.
- 28 a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
29 b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
30 c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.
31 d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.
32 e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
- 33 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
34 2) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not
35 available.
- 36 C. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing
37 membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a
38 rubberized bituminous resin on a cross laminated polyethylene film covered with stucco-
39 embossed aluminum-foil facing.



1 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the
 2 following:

3 a. Polyguard Products, Inc.

4 **2.8 TAPES**

5 A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive,
 6 complying with ASTM C1136.

- 7 1. Width: 3 inches.
 8 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 9 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 10 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 11 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 12 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

13 **2.9 SECUREMENTS**

14 A. Bands:

- 15 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch
 16 wide with wing seal.
 17 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick,
 18 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.
 19 3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept
 20 metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

21 B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

22 1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to
 23 projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in
 24 position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.

25 a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- 26 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
 27 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
 28 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.

29 b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches
 30 square.

31 c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-
 32 diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

33 d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated
 34 capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without
 35 damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

36 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick,
 37 galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in
 38 place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.



- 1 a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 2 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
- 3 2) GEMCO; R-150.
- 4 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
- 5 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
- 6 b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to
- 7 ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- 8 C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- 9 D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

10 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

11 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 12 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
- 13 and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
- 14 1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of
- 15 defects.
- 16 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- 17 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

18 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 19 A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will
- 20 adversely affect insulation application.
- 21 B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements
- 22 for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- 23 C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with
- 24 stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

25 **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- 26 A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces;
- 27 free of voids throughout the length of equipment.
- 28 B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required
- 29 for each item of equipment as specified in insulation system schedules.
- 30 C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install
- 31 accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or
- 32 dry state.



- 1 D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- 2 E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- 3 F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- 4 G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with
5 adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- 6 H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- 7 I. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet
8 and dry film thicknesses.
- 9 J. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
- 10 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
- 11 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket.
12 Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip,
13 spaced 4 inches o.c.
- 14 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive
15 self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
- 16 a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
- 17 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written
18 instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
- 19 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints.
- 20 K. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal
21 thickness.
- 22 L. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas.
23 Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches
24 similar to butt joints.
- 25 M. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
- 26 1. Vibration-control devices.
- 27 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
- 28 3. Nameplates and data plates.
- 29 4. Manholes.
- 30 5. Handholes.
- 31 6. Cleanouts.

32 **3.4 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION**

- 33 A. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation
34 with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
- 35 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit
36 area, for 50 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.



- 1 2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including
2 contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end
3 joints.
4 3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
5 4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on
6 sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
- 7 a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
8 b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service
9 temperature and with substrate.
10 c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation
11 end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
12 d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
13 e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks
14 and vessels.
15 f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
16 g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with
17 insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation
18 facing.
- 19 5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band
20 material compatible with insulation materials.
21 6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and
22 where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing
23 insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut
24 with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around
25 equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two
26 circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around
27 outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from
28 the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles
29 along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this
30 network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
31 7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
32 8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes,
33 handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
34 9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and
35 nameplates.
36 10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends,
37 joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

38 **3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION**

- 39 A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end
40 joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof
41 sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12
42 inches o.c. and at end joints.

43 **3.6 FINISHES**

- 44 A. Equipment Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket
45 with paint system identified below .



- 1 1. Semi-gloss Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket
2 material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof. Color
3 per schedule below.
- 4 a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, semi-gloss, latex-emulsion size.
- 5 B. Color: Final color as selected by Engineer. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection
6 of the completed Work.
- 7 1. Heating Hot Water: Yellow.
- 8 C. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

9 **3.7 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE**

- 10 A. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.
- 11 B. Heating-hot-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be the following:
- 12 1. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inch thick.
- 13 C. Heating-hot-water air-separator insulation shall be the following:
- 14 1. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches thick.

15 **3.8 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE**

- 16 A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-
17 applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- 18 B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- 19 C. Equipment, Concealed:
- 20 1. None.
- 21 D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
- 22 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.024 inch thick.
- 23 E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72
24 Inches:
- 25 1. Aluminum, with 1-1/4-Inch-Deep Corrugations: 0.032 inch thick.

26 **3.9 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE**

- 27 A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-
28 applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- 29 B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.



- 1 C. Equipment, Concealed:
- 2 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.024 inch thick.
- 3 D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
- 4 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.024 inch thick.
- 5 E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72
- 6 Inches:
- 7 1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed with 1-1/4-Inch-Deep Corrugations: 0.032 inch thick.

8 **END OF SECTION 23 07 16.13**



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 07 19.11 - INSULATION FOR CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:

- 8 1. Condensate drain piping, indoors and outdoors.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor
11 permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

- 12 B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

- 13 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of
14 insulation and hanger.
15 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
16 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
17 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each
18 type of insulation.
19 5. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
20 6. Fabrication drawings for reusable thermal insulation covers.

21 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 22 A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship
23 program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of
24 Apprenticeship and Training.

- 25 B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing
26 identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to
27 authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive,
28 mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing
29 agency.

- 30 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed
31 index of 50 or less.
32 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed
33 index of 150 or less.



1 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 2 A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate
3 ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

4 **1.6 COORDINATION**

- 5 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in
6 Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

- 7 B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before
8 preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation
9 of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

10 **1.7 SCHEDULING**

- 11 A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after
12 installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have
13 satisfactory test results.

- 14 B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of
15 construction.

16 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

17 **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- 18 A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation
19 Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground
20 Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

- 21 B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

- 22 C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less
23 than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.

- 24 D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable
25 according to ASTM C795.

- 26 E. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply
27 with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.

- 28 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- 29 a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
30 b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
31 c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.



1 **2.2 ADHESIVES**

2 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding
3 insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

4 B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

5 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
6 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

7 a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aero seal.

8 b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.

9 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
10 Company; 85-75.

11 d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.

12 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

13 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

14 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
15 and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

16 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.

17 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

18 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

19 **3.2 PREPARATION**

20 A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will
21 adversely affect insulation application.

22 **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

23 A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces;
24 free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

25 B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required
26 for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

27 C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install
28 accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or
29 dry state.

30 D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

31 E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

32 F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.



- 1 G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- 2 H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with
3 adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- 4 I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- 5 J. Apply adhesives at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film
6 thicknesses.
- 7 K. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal
8 thickness.
- 9 L. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas.
10 Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches
11 similar to butt joints.

12 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- 13 A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated):
14 Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- 15 B. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation
16 continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
- 17 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
- 18 C. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
- 19 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
20 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division
21 07.

22 3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- 23 A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate
24 openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- 25 B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
- 26 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
27 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive
28 to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- 29 C. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
- 30 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when
31 available.
32 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet
33 insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow
34 valve operation without disturbing insulation.
35 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.



- 1 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's
2 recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to
3 surface being insulated.

4 **3.6 FINISHES**

5 A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of
6 insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating. Color per schedule below.

7 B. Color: Final color as selected by Engineer. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection
8 of the completed Work.

- 9 1. White.

10 **3.7 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

11 A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for
12 each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system,
13 selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

14 **3.8 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE**

15 A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:

16 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

17 a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.

18 **3.9 END OF SECTION 23 07 19.11**

19



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 07 19.12 - INSULATION FOR CHILLED WATER PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:

- 8 1. Chilled-water piping, indoors and outdoors.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor
11 permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

- 12 B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

- 13 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of
14 insulation and hanger.
15 2. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
16 3. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each
17 type of insulation.
18 4. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
19 5. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

20 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 21 A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship
22 program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of
23 Apprenticeship and Training.

- 24 B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing
25 identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to
26 authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive,
27 mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing
28 agency.

- 29 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed
30 index of 50 or less.
31 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed
32 index of 150 or less.



1 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 2 A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate
3 ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

4 **1.6 COORDINATION**

- 5 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in
6 Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

- 7 B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before
8 preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation
9 of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

- 10 C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

11 **1.7 SCHEDULING**

- 12 A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after
13 installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have
14 satisfactory test results.

- 15 B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of
16 construction.

17 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

18 **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- 19 A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation
20 Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground
21 Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

- 22 B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

- 23 C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less
24 than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.

- 25 D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable
26 according to ASTM C795.

- 27 E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing
28 process.

- 29 F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid,
30 hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied
31 Jackets" Article.

- 32 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
33 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:



- 1 a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.
- 2 2. Block Insulation: ASTM C552, Type I.
- 3 3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C552, Type III.
- 4 4. Board Insulation: ASTM C552, Type IV.
- 5 5. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C552, Type II, Class 1.
- 6 6. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ-SSL: Comply with ASTM C552,
- 7 Type II, Class 2.
- 8 7. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
- 9 G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply
- 10 with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.
- 11 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 12 a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
- 13 b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
- 14 c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.
- 15 **2.2 ADHESIVES**
- 16 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding
- 17 insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- 18 B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no
- 19 flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
- 20 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the
- 21 following:
- 22 a. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products; 81-84.
- 23 2. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
- 24 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
- 25 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
- 26 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
- 27 Chambers."
- 28 C. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- 29 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
- 30 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 31 a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
- 32 b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
- 33 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
- 34 Company; 85-75.
- 35 d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
- 36 D. ASJ Adhesive Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding
- 37 insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- 38 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
- 39 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:



- 1 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 2 Company; CP-82.
 3 b. Marathon Industries; 225.
 4 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 5 Company; 85-50.
 6 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
- 7 2. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to
 8 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 9 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
 10 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
 11 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
 12 Chambers."
- 13 **2.3 MASTICS AND COATINGS**
- 14 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 15 1. VOC Content: 50 g/L or less.
 16 2. Low-Emitting Materials: Mastic coatings shall comply with the testing and product
 17 requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the
 18 Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources
 19 Using Environmental Chambers."
- 20 B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
- 21 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
 22 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 23 a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 24 Company; 30-80 / 30-90.
 25 b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
- 26 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation
 27 type and service conditions.
 28 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 29 4. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
 30 5. Color: White.
- 31 C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
- 32 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
 33 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 34 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 35 Company; Encacel.
 36 b. Marathon Industries; 570.
 37 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 38 Company; 60-95 / 60-96.
- 39 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation
 40 type and service conditions.



- 1 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
2 4. Color: White.

3 **2.4 SEALANTS**

4 A. Cellular-Glass Joint Sealants:

- 5 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated
6 into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 7 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
8 Company; CP-76.
9 b. Marathon Industries; 405.
10 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
11 Company; 30-45.
12 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
13 e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.

- 14 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
15 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
16 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
17 5. Color: White or gray.
18 6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
19 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
20 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
21 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
22 Chambers."

23 B. ASJ Flashing Sealants:

- 24 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the
25 following:

- 26 a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products; CP-76.

- 27 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
28 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
29 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
30 5. Color: White.
31 6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
32 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
33 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
34 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
35 Chambers."

36 **2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS**

- 37 A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When
38 factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:



- 1 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing;
 2 complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 3 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a
 4 removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
- 5 **2.6 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH**
- 6 A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10
 7 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
- 8 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
 9 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 10 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 11 Company; Chil-Glas Number 10.
- 12 **2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS**
- 13 A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- 14 B. Metal Jacket:
- 15 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
 16 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 17 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 18 Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 19 b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 20 c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
- 21 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005,
 22 Temper H-14.
- 23 a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
 24 b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 25 c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.
 26 d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: .
 27 e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
- 28 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 29 2) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not
 30 available.
- 31 C. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil-thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane
 32 consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester
 33 scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
- 34 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 35 a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittwrap.
 36 b. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Insulrap No Torch 125.



1 **2.8 TAPES**

2 A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive,
3 complying with ASTM C1136.

4 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
5 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 6 a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
7 b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
8 c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
9 d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

10 2. Width: 3 inches.

11 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.

12 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.

13 5. Elongation: 2 percent.

14 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.

15 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

16 **2.9 SECUREMENTS**

17 A. Bands:

18 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
19 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 20 a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
21 b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.

22 2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch
23 wide with wing seal.

24 B. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

25 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

26 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

27 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
28 and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

29 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.

30 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

31 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

32 **3.2 PREPARATION**

33 A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will
34 adversely affect insulation application.



- 1 B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements
2 for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- 3 C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with
4 stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.
- 5 **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**
- 6 A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces;
7 free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- 8 B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required
9 for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- 10 C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install
11 accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or
12 dry state.
- 13 D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- 14 E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- 15 F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- 16 G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- 17 H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with
18 adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- 19 I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- 20 J. Below Ambient Systems.
- 21 1. Provide continuous vapor barrier; seal joints, longitudinal seams, and penetrations in
22 insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic
23 and joint sealant.
- 24 2. Where mastic is indicated provide vapor-barrier mastic as required for indoor or outdoor
25 application.
- 26 3. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties
- 27 K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet
28 and dry film thicknesses.
- 29 L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
- 30 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
- 31 2. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written
32 instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
- 33 M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal
34 thickness.



- 1 N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas.
 2 Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches
 3 similar to butt joints.

4 **3.4 PENETRATIONS**

- 5 A. Insulation Installation at Slab Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal
 6 terminations with flashing sealant.

- 7 B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously
 8 through wall penetrations.

- 9 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 10 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface
 11 and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install
 12 insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with
 13 joint sealant.
 14 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least
 15 2 inches.
 16 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

- 17 C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated):
 18 Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

- 19 D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation
 20 continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

- 21 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

- 22 E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

- 23 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 24 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division
 25 07.

26 **3.5 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION**

- 27 A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

- 28 1. Provide factory applied ASJ-SSL jacket.
 29 2. Create a water stop between insulation and pipe by brushing vapor barrier mastic around
 30 circumference of pipe every 3 feet.

- 31 B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges, Fittings, Elbows, Valves and Pipe Specialties:

- 32 1. Provide insulation without factory applied jacket.
 33 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same
 34 material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly
 35 against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular
 36 surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is
 37 uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.



- 1 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same
2 material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt
3 each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with
4 adhesive.
- 5 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same
6 material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe
7 insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe
8 diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve
9 stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with
10 insulating cement.
- 11 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same
12 material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe
13 insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe
14 diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating
15 cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and
16 replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable
17 insulation cover. Provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
- 18 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation.
19 Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange. Overlap adjoining pipe
20 insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe
21 diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange
22 insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with insulating
23 cement.
- 24 7. Secure mitered sections or segmented insulation with wire or bands.
- 25 8. Cover pipe fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties and any
26 segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and install field-applied
27 glass-cloth jacket.
- 28 9. Apply vapor-barrier mastic at exposed ends of insulation at pipe flanges, unions, and
29 fittings.
- 30 10. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match
31 size and color of pipe labels.

32 3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- 33 A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate
34 openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- 35 B. Insulation Installation on Instrument Connections:
 - 36 1. Install insulation on instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure
37 temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on
38 insulated pipes.
 - 39 2. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection.
 - 40 3. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive
41 to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

42 3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- 43 A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with
44 factory-applied jackets.
 - 45 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.



- 1 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of mastic.
- 2 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- 3 4. Finish to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

- 4 B. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end
- 5 joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof
- 6 sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12
- 7 inches o.c. and at end joints.

- 8 C. Do not install metal jacket over field-applied glass-cloth jacket unless indicated in schedule.

9 **3.8 FINISHES**

- 10 A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint
- 11 system identified below.

- 12 1. Semi-glass Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket
- 13 material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof. Color
- 14 per schedule below.

- 15 a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, semi-gloss, latex-emulsion size.

- 16 2. Paint exposed piping without field applied metal jacket.

- 17 B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of
- 18 insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating. Color per schedule below.

- 19 C. Color: Final color as selected by Engineer. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection
- 20 of the completed Work.

- 21 1. Chilled Water: Dark Green.

- 22 D. Do not field paint aluminum jackets.

23 **3.9 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

- 24 A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for
- 25 each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system,
- 26 selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

27 **3.10 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE**

- 28 A. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.

- 29 B. Instrument Connections: Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

30 **3.11 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE**

- 31 A. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.



1 B. Instrument Connections: Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

2 **3.12 OUTDOOR, UNDERGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE**

3 A. Cellular glass, 2 inches thick.

4 **3.13 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE**

5 A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-
6 applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

7 B. Piping, Concealed:

8 1. None.

9 C. Piping, Exposed:

10 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.016 inch thick.

11 D. Fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties, Concealed:

12 1. Glass cloth jacket.

13 E. Fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties, Exposed:

14 1. Glass cloth jacket, painted finish per finish schedule.

15 **3.14 OUTDOOR, ABOVE GROUND, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE**

16 A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-
17 applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

18 B. Piping:

19 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.024 inch thick.

20 C. Fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties, Exposed:

21 1. Glass cloth jacket. Install metal jacket over finished glass-cloth jacket.

22 **3.15 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET**

23 A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over
24 insulation material.

25 **END OF SECTION 23 07 19.12**



1 **SECTION 23 07 19.14 - INSULATION FOR HEATING HOT WATER PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:

- 8 1. Heating hot-water piping, indoors and outdoors.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor
11 permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

- 12 B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

- 13 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of
14 insulation and hanger.
15 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
16 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
17 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each
18 type of insulation.
19 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
20 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
21 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

22 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 23 A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship
24 program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of
25 Apprenticeship and Training.

- 26 B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing
27 identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to
28 authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive,
29 mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing
30 agency.

- 31 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed
32 index of 50 or less.
33 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed
34 index of 150 or less.



1 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 2 A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate
3 ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

4 **1.6 COORDINATION**

- 5 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in
6 Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

- 7 B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before
8 preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation
9 of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

- 10 C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

11 **1.7 SCHEDULING**

- 12 A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after
13 installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have
14 satisfactory test results.

- 15 B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of
16 construction.

17 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

18 **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- 19 A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation
20 Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground
21 Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

- 22 B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

- 23 C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less
24 than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.

- 25 D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable
26 according to ASTM C795.

- 27 E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing
28 process.

- 29 F. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
30 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- 31 a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok HP.
32 b. Owens Corning; SSL II with ASJ Max Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.



- 1 2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin.
 2 Comply with ASTM C547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-
 3 applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article. UL listed
 4 and labeled for installation over PVC and other polymer pipes within a plenum.

5 **2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS**

- 6 A. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.

- 7 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
 8 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 9 a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

10 **2.3 ADHESIVES**

- 11 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding
 12 insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

- 13 B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

- 14 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
 15 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 16 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 17 Company; CP-127.
 18 b. - Marathon Industries; 225.
 19 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 20 Company; 85-60/85-70.
 21 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

- 22 2. Fiberglass adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated
 23 according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

- 24 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
 25 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
 26 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
 27 Chambers."

- 28 C. ASJ Adhesive Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding
 29 insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

- 30 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
 31 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 32 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 33 Company; CP-82.
 34 b. Marathon Industries; 225.
 35 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 36 Company; 85-50.
 37 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.



- 1 2. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to
 2 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
 4 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
 5 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
 6 Chambers."

7 **2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS**

- 8 A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 9 B. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
- 10 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
 11 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 12 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 13 Company; CP-10.
 14 b. Marathon Industries; 550.
 15 c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 16 Company; 46-50.
 17 d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
 18 e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
- 19 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's
 20 recommended dry film thickness.
 21 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 22 4. Color: White.

23 **2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS**

- 24 A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When
 25 factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
- 26 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing;
 27 complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 28 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a
 29 removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.

30 **2.6 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH**

- 31 A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10
 32 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
- 33 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
 34 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 35 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
 36 Company; Chil-Glas Number 10



1 **2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS**

2 A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

3 B. Metal Jacket:

4 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
5 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

6 a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller
7 Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.

8 b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.

9 c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.

10 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005,
11 Temper H-14.

12 a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.

13 b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

14 c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.

15 d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: .

16 e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

17 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.

18 2) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not
19 available.

20 **2.8 TAPES**

21 A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive,
22 complying with ASTM C1136.

23 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
24 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

25 a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.

26 b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.

27 c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.

28 d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

29 2. Width: 3 inches.

30 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.

31 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.

32 5. Elongation: 2 percent.

33 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.

34 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

35 **2.9 SECUREMENTS**

36 A. Bands:



- 1 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be
 2 incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 3 a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 4 b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
- 5 2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch
 6 wide with wing seal.
- 7 B. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

8 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

9 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 10 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
 11 and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
- 12 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 13 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
 14 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

15 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 16 A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will
 17 adversely affect insulation application.
- 18 B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements
 19 for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- 20 C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with
 21 stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

22 **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- 23 A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces;
 24 free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- 25 B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required
 26 for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- 27 C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install
 28 accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or
 29 dry state.
- 30 D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- 31 E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- 32 F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.



- 1 G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- 2 H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with
3 adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- 4 I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- 5 J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet
6 and dry film thicknesses.
- 7 K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
- 8 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
- 9 2. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written
10 instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
- 11 L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal
12 thickness.
- 13 M. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas.
14 Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches
15 similar to butt joints.
- 16 N. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
- 17 1. Vibration-control devices.
- 18 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
- 19 3. Nameplates and data plates.
- 20 4. Manholes.
- 21 5. Handholes.
- 22 6. Cleanouts.

23 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- 24 A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated):
25 Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- 26 B. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation
27 continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
- 28 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- 29 C. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
- 30 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
- 31 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division
32 07.

33 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- 34 A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:



- 1 1. Provide factory applied ASJ-SSL jacket.
- 2 B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges, Fittings, Elbows, Valves and Pipe Specialties:
- 3 1. Insulate pipe elbows and tee fittings using preformed fitting insulation. Each piece shall
4 be butted tightly against adjoining piece.
- 5 2. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Install
6 preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange. Overlap adjoining pipe
7 insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe
8 diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange
9 insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with insulating
10 cement.
- 11 3. Insulate strainers, valves, and other pipe specialties using preformed fitting insulation.
12 When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
13 Secure mitered sections with wire or bands.
- 14 4. Arrange valve insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without
15 disturbing insulation.
- 16 5. In concealed locations install fitted aluminum cover or field applied glass cloth jacket over
17 preformed fitting insulation. Terminate ends with field applied glass cloth jacket .
- 18 6. Cover pipe fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties in exposed
19 locations and any segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and
20 install field-applied glass-cloth jacket.
- 21 7. Apply breather mastic at exposed ends of insulation at pipe flanges, unions, and fittings.
- 22 8. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match
23 size and color of pipe labels.
- 24 C. Insulation Installation on Instrument Connections:
- 25 1. Install insulation on instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure
26 temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on
27 insulated pipes.
- 28 2. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with
29 insulating cement and finish with mastic.
- 30 3. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive
31 to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- 32 **3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION**
- 33 A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with
34 factory-applied jackets.
- 35 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
- 36 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of mastic.
- 37 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- 38 4. Finish to achieve smooth, uniform finish.
- 39 B. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end
40 joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof
41 sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12
42 inches o.c. and at end joints.
- 43 C. Do not install metal jacket over field-applied glass-cloth jacket unless indicated in schedule.



1 **3.7 FINISHES**

2 A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint
3 system identified below.

4 1. Semi-glass Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket
5 material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof. Color
6 per schedule below.

7 a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, semi-gloss, latex-emulsion size.

8 2. Paint exposed piping without field applied metal jacket.

9 B. Color: Final color as selected by Engineer. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection
10 of the completed Work.

11 1. Heating Hot Water: Yellow.

12 C. Do not field paint aluminum jackets.

13 **3.8 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

14 A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for
15 each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system,
16 selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

17 **3.9 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE**

18 A. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return:

19 a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 2 inches thick.

20 2. Instrument Connections:

21 a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1 inch thick

22 **3.10 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE**

23 A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-
24 applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

25 B. Piping, Concealed:

26 1. None.

27 C. Piping, Exposed:

28 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.016 inch thick.

29 D. Fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties, Concealed:



- 1 1. Aluminum, Smooth or glass cloth jacket.
- 2 E. Fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties, Exposed:
- 3 1. Glass cloth jacket.

- 4 **END OF SECTION 23 07 19.14**

1 **SECTION 23 08 00 – MECHANICAL SYSTEMS COMMISSIONING**

2
3
4 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

5
6 **1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- 7
8 A. The purpose of this section is to specify Division 23 responsibilities in the commissioning
9 process.
- 10
11 B. The systems to be commissioned are listed in Section 01 91 13.
- 12
13 C. Commissioning requires the participation of Division 23 to ensure that all systems are
14 operating in a manner consistent with the Contract Documents. The general commissioning
15 requirements and coordination are detailed in Division 01. Division 23 shall be familiar with all
16 parts of Division 26 and the commissioning plan issued by the CA and shall execute all
17 commissioning responsibilities assigned to them in the Contract Documents.

18
19 **1.2 RESPONSIBILITIES**

- 20
21 A. Mechanical, Controls and TAB Contractors. The commissioning responsibilities applicable to
22 each of the mechanical, controls and TAB contractors of Division 23 are as follows (all
23 references apply to commissioned equipment only):

24
25 *Construction and Acceptance Phases*

- 26 1. Include the cost of commissioning in the contract price (do NOT include the cost of the
27 Commissioning Authority as they are under contract to A/E).
- 28 2. In each purchase order or subcontract written, include requirements for submittal data,
29 commissioning documentation, O&M data and training requirements.
- 30 3. Attend a pre-commissioning meeting and other meetings necessary to facilitate the Cx
31 process. Meetings regarding the Commissioning Process that may be required
32 throughout the construction period will be scheduled as agenda items at the General
33 Contractor's regularly scheduled construction coordination meetings. An exception to this
34 policy would be extraordinary meetings which are deemed necessary by the CA and the
35 General Contractor with necessary parties attending in order to resolve outstanding
36 deficiencies toward the end of the construction period.
- 37 4. Contractors shall provide the CA with normal cut sheets and shop drawing submittals of
38 commissioned equipment in digital PDF format.
- 39 5. Provide additional requested documentation, prior to normal O&M manual submittals, to
40 the CA for development of start-up and functional testing procedures.
- 41 a. Typically this will include detailed manufacturer installation and start-up, operating,
42 troubleshooting and maintenance procedures, full details of any owner-contracted
43 tests, fan and pump curves, full factory testing reports, if any, and full warranty
44 information, including all responsibilities of the Owner to keep the warranty in force
45 clearly identified. In addition, the installation, start-up and checkout materials that
46 are actually shipped inside the equipment and the actual field checkout sheet forms
47 to be used by the factory or field technicians shall be submitted to the
48 Commissioning Agent.
- 49 b. The Commissioning Agent may request further documentation necessary for the
50 commissioning process.
- 51 c. This data request may be made prior to normal submittals.
- 52 6. Provide a copy of the O&M manuals and submittals of commissioned equipment, through
53 normal channels, to the CA for review and approval. O&M manuals shall be provided in
54 digital PDF format.

7. Contractors shall assist (along with the design engineers) in clarifying the operation and control of commissioned equipment in areas where the specifications, control drawings or equipment documentation is not sufficient for writing detailed testing procedures.
8. Provide limited assistance to the CA in preparing the specific functional performance test procedures for the *Commissioning Plan – Construction Phase*. Subs shall review test procedures to ensure feasibility, safety and equipment protection and provide necessary written alarm limits to be used during the tests.
9. Assist the CA in completion of the prefunctional checklists, in particular execute the mechanical-related start-up and check-out portions of the prefunctional checklists for all commissioned equipment.
10. Perform and clearly document all completed startup and system operational checkout procedures, providing a copy to the CA.
11. Address current A/E punch list items before functional testing. Air and water TAB shall be completed with discrepancies and problems remedied before functional testing of the respective air- or water-related systems.
12. Provide skilled technicians to execute starting of equipment and to execute the functional performance tests. Ensure that the technicians are available and present during the agreed upon schedules and for sufficient duration to complete the necessary tests, adjustments and problem-solving.
13. Provide skilled technicians to perform functional performance testing under the direction of the CA for specified equipment in the *Commissioning Plan* and Section 01 91 13. Assist the CA in interpreting the monitoring data, as necessary.
14. Correct deficiencies (differences between specified and observed performance) as interpreted by the CA, PM and A/E and retest the equipment.
15. Prepare O&M manuals according to the Contract Documents, including clarifying and updating the original sequences of operation to as-built conditions.
16. During construction, maintain as-built red-line drawings for all drawings and final CAD as-builts for contractor-generated coordination drawings. Update after completion of commissioning (excluding deferred testing).
17. Provide training of the Owner's operating staff using expert qualified personnel, as specified.
18. Coordinate with equipment manufacturers to determine specific requirements to maintain the validity of the warranty.

Warranty Period

1. If specified, execute seasonal or deferred manual functional performance testing, witnessed by the CA, according to the specifications.
2. Provide assistance to the CA as required to configure the Cx-PMOR performance monitoring system.
3. Correct deficiencies according to the contract warranty process and make necessary adjustments to O&M manuals and as-built drawings for applicable issues identified in any seasonal testing or through the Cx-PMOR system.

B. Mechanical Contractor. The responsibilities of the HVAC mechanical contractor, during construction and acceptance phases in addition to those listed in (A) are:

1. Provide startup for all HVAC equipment, except for the building automation control system.
2. Assist and cooperate with the TAB contractor and CA by:
 - a. Putting all HVAC equipment and systems into operation and continuing the operation during each working day of TAB and commissioning, as required.
 - b. Including cost of sheaves and belts that may be required by TAB.
 - c. Providing test holes in ducts and plenums where directed by TAB to allow air measurements and air balancing.

- 1 i. Provide factory fabricated, airtight, and non-corrosive test ports with screw cap
 2 and gasket equal to Ventlok type 699 at all locations where TAB Contractor shall
 3 make temperature, pressure, or velocity measurements. For duct which is
 4 externally insulated provide Ventlok type 699-2 which are 2-5/8" long. Mechanical
 5 Contractor shall coordinate location and quantity of TAB test ports with TAB
 6 Contractor.
 7 ii. The TAB team shall permanently mark and identify the location points of the duct
 8 test ports with computer generated (DYMO type) labels. If the ducts have
 9 exterior insulation, these markings shall be made on the exterior side of the duct
 10 insulation. All test port locations shall be labeled corresponding to final TAB
 11 report.
 12 d. Providing pressure and / or temperature testing taps / ports (a.k.a. P/T ports)
 13 according to the Construction Documents to facilitate TAB and commissioning
 14 testing or as required based on specified testing procedures.
 15 3. Install a P/T test port at each water sensor which is an input point to the control system.
 16 P/T ports shall be located within six inches of the control system sensor. P/T ports
 17 installed on insulated piping shall be of the extended length type such that the port's
 18 threaded cap clears the specified insulation thickness.
 19 4. Provide hinged and rubber gasketed duct access doors (minimum size of 12"x12" unless
 20 duct size does not allow) where indicated by other Division 23 specifications and as per
 21 the contract drawings but at minimum access doors shall be provided:
 22 a. Adjacent to all automatic control dampers (e.g. dampers controlled by BAS / DDC).
 23 b. Adjacent to all airflow measurement stations (AFMS) or duct-mounted CO2
 24 sensors.
 25 c. Upstream of all duct-mounted heating coils.
 26 5. List and clearly identify on the as-built drawings the locations of all air-flow stations.
 27 6. Prepare a preliminary schedule for Division 23 pipe and duct system testing, flushing and
 28 cleaning, equipment start-up and TAB start and completion for use by the CA. Update
 29 the schedule as appropriate.
 30 7. Notify the PM or CA depending on protocol, when pipe and duct system testing, flushing,
 31 cleaning, startup of each piece of equipment and TAB will occur. Be responsible to notify
 32 the PM or CA, ahead of time, when commissioning activities not yet performed or not yet
 33 scheduled will delay construction. Be proactive in seeing that commissioning processes
 34 are executed and that the CA has the scheduling information needed to efficiently
 35 execute the commissioning process.
 36

37 C. Controls Contractor. The commissioning responsibilities of the controls contractor, during
 38 construction and acceptance phases in addition to those listed in (A) are:
 39

- 40 1. Sequences of Operation Submittals. The Controls Contractor's submittals of control
 41 drawings shall include complete detailed sequences of operation for each piece of
 42 equipment, regardless of the completeness and clarity of the sequences in the
 43 specifications. Submittals shall be provided to the CA in print and digital PDF format,
 44 they shall include:
 45 a. An overview narrative of the system (1 or 2 paragraphs) generally describing its
 46 purpose, components and function.
 47 b. All interactions and interlocks with other systems.
 48 c. Detailed delineation of control between any packaged controls and the building
 49 automation system, listing what points the BAS monitors only and what BAS points
 50 are control points and are adjustable.
 51 d. Written sequences of control for packaged controlled equipment. (Equipment
 52 manufacturers' stock sequences may be included, but will generally require
 53 additional narrative).
 54 e. Start-up sequences.
 55 f. Warm-up mode sequences.
 56 g. Normal operating mode sequences.

- 1 h. Unoccupied mode sequences.
 2 i. Shutdown sequences.
 3 j. Capacity control sequences and equipment staging.
 4 k. Temperature and pressure control: setbacks, setups, resets, etc.
 5 l. Detailed sequences for all control strategies, e.g., economizer control, optimum
 6 start/stop, staging, optimization, demand limiting, etc.
 7 m. Effects of power or equipment failure with all standby component functions.
 8 n. Sequences for all alarms and emergency shut downs.
 9 o. Initial and recommended values for all adjustable settings, setpoints and
 10 parameters that are typically set or adjusted by operating staff; and any other
 11 control settings or fixed values, delays, etc. that will be useful during testing and
 12 operating the equipment.
 13 p. Schedules, if known.
 14 q. To facilitate referencing in testing procedures, all sequences shall be written in
 15 small statements, each with a number for reference. For a given system, numbers
 16 will not repeat for different sequence sections, unless the sections are numbered.
 17
 18 2. Control Drawings Submittal
 19 Submittals shall be provided to the CA in print and digital PDF format, they shall include:
 20 a. The control drawings shall have a key to all abbreviations.
 21 b. The control drawings shall contain graphic schematic depictions of the systems
 22 and each component.
 23 c. The schematics will include the system and component layout of any equipment
 24 that the control system monitors, enables or controls, even if the equipment is
 25 primarily controlled by packaged or integral controls.
 26 d. Provide a full points list with at least the following included for each point:
 27 1) Controlled system
 28 2) Point abbreviation
 29 3) Point description
 30 4) Display unit
 31 5) Control point or setpoint (Yes / No)
 32 6) Monitoring point (Yes / No)
 33 7) Intermediate point (Yes / No)
 34 8) Calculated point (Yes / No)
 35 Key:
 36 Point Description: DB temp, airflow, etc.
 37 Control or Setpoint: Point that controls equipment and can have its setpoint
 38 changed (OSA, SAT, etc.)
 39 Intermediate Point: Point whose value is used to make a calculation which
 40 then controls equipment (space temperatures that are averaged to a virtual
 41 point to control reset).
 42 Monitoring Point: Point that does not control or contribute to the control of
 43 equipment, but is used for operation, maintenance, or performance
 44 verification.
 45 Calculated Point: "Virtual" point generated from calculations of other point
 46 values.
 47 The Controls Contractor shall keep the CA informed of all changes to this list
 48 during programming and setup.
 49
 50 3. An updated as-built version of the control drawings and sequences of operation shall be
 51 included in the final controls O&M manual submittal.
 52
 53 4. Assist and cooperate with the TAB contractor in the following manner:
 54
 55 a. Meet with the TAB contractor prior to beginning TAB and review the TAB plan to
 56 determine the capabilities of the control system toward completing TAB. Provide

- 1 the TAB any needed unique instruments for setting terminal unit boxes and instruct
2 TAB in their use (handheld control system interface for use around the building
3 during TAB, etc.).
- 4 b. For a given area, have all required prefunctional checklists, calibrations, startup
5 and selected functional tests of the system completed and approved by the CA
6 prior to TAB.
- 7 c. Provide a qualified technician to operate the controls to assist the TAB contractor in
8 performing TAB, or provide sufficient training for TAB to operate the system without
9 assistance.
- 10
- 11 5. Assist and cooperate with the CA in the following manner:
- 12
- 13 a. Using a skilled technician who is familiar with this building, execute the functional
14 testing of the controls system as specified for the controls contractor in the
15 *Commissioning Plan – Construction Phase*. Assist in the functional testing of all
16 equipment specified in the *Commissioning Plan – Construction Phase*.
- 17 b. Execute all control system trend logs specified in the *Commissioning Plan* or as
18 requested by the CA.
- 19
- 20 6. Provide the signed and completed DDC Test Readiness Checklist document upon
21 completion of the checkout of each controlled device, equipment and system prior to
22 functional testing for each piece of equipment or system. CC shall verify with this
23 Checklist that all system programming is complete as to all respects of the Contract
24 Documents, except functional testing requirements.
- 25
- 26 7. Beyond the control points necessary to execute all documented control sequences,
27 provide monitoring, control and virtual points as required to implement the full sequence
28 of control as specified in the Contract Documents.
- 29
- 30 8. List and clearly identify on the as-built duct and piping drawings the locations of all static
31 and differential pressure sensors (air, water and building pressure).
- 32
- 33 9. System Data Trending & Reporting Detailed Requirements. The Controls Contractor for
34 this project shall provide automated data reporting through the building automation
35 system which shall deliver system operating data and utility consumption data (if
36 available) daily to the PMOR system via trend reports which are automatically emailed to
37 the PMOR system. The complete cost for the Controls Contractor to set up ALL required
38 trending and reporting shall be included in the project contract cost (also see Section 01
39 91 13, 3.6).
- 40
- 41 a. Trend reports shall be emailed to the PMOR server on a daily basis between
42 12am and 6am.
- 43 b. The duration of each trend report shall include at least the entire previous day's
44 (e.g. midnight to midnight) data. Optionally, the report could be required to
45 include the previous three days' data so that 1-2 days of missing reports could
46 be made up by the subsequent report. The reports shall NEVER include more
47 than a maximum five days data. The CA shall provide direction as to the desired
48 duration.
- 49 c. All required system operating data trends shall report the instantaneous value of
50 the data point being trended at 15-minute intervals unless specifically directed
51 otherwise by the CA. The trend sampling interval for each data point must be
52 consistent, e.g. data cannot start at a five-minute interval and then change to a
53 fifteen-minute interval.
- 54 d. All utility consumption data (kWh, ton-hr, btu, etc.) trends shall report the
55 accumulated consumption across the interval period (e.g. electrical
56 consumption, kWh, total for the 15-minute period) and shall not report total

1 accumulating consumption. Demand shall be calculated as a virtual point by the
 2 PMOR analysis system.

3 e. The Contractor shall submit their proposed trending file format to the CA for
 4 approval prior to implementing for all requested trend points (CSV or XLS files
 5 are preferred format however PDF may also be acceptable). Once approved and
 6 set up the trend file formatting shall NOT change from one report to the next. If
 7 trend formatting changes due to software upgrade then the Contractor shall be
 8 required to compensate CA for any changes required to the PMOR system
 9 configuration to accept the new data formatting.

10 f. The following data point naming convention shall be utilized for all trend reports
 11 and for the subject line of emails delivering the automated report:

12 < building name >.< system name >.<point name>

13 All data point names must be unique from other points in the same project.

14 g. Minimum Required Monitoring Points:

15 i. The final list of points to be monitored will be furnished by CA to the
 16 Controls Contractor after the building automation system submittal has
 17 been reviewed.

18 ii. A formal trend request document will be provided to the Controls
 19 Contractor with the monitored points list and this same document shall be
 20 completed and returned to the CA as proof that set-up has been
 21 completed.

22 iii. Example of Monitored Points by System Type:

23 1. Variable Air Volume Air Handling Units

24 Outside Air Setpoint, cfm

25 Outside Air Flow, cfm

26 Mixed Air Temperature, deg F

27 Return Air Temperature, deg F

28 Supply Air Temperature, deg F

29 Chilled Water Control Valve, %OPEN

30 Heating Water Control Valve, %OPEN

31 Supply Fan Speed, %

32 Static Pressure Setpoint, " w.c.

33 Static Pressure, " w.c.

34 2. Variable Volume Terminal Units

35 Airflow, cfm

36 Airflow Required, cfm

37 Space Temperature, deg F

38 Discharge Air Temperature, deg F

39 Effective Temp Setpoint, deg F

40 Cooling Loop Output, %

41 Heating Loop Output, %

42 Primary Air Damper, %OPEN

43 3. Chilled Water Plant

44 Cooling Load, tons

45 Chiller Operating Capacity, %

46 Chiller CHW EWT, deg F

47 Chiller CHW LWT, deg F

48 Plant Bypass Valve, %OPEN (to plant)

49 Building Supply Temperature, deg F

50 Building Return Temperature, deg F

51 Building Chilled Water Flow, gpm

52 Plant Supply Temperature, deg F

53 Plant Return Temperature, deg F

54 Plant Chilled Water Flow, gpm

55 CH Supply Setpoint, deg F

56

- 1 D. TAB Contractor. The duties of the TAB contractor, in addition to those listed in (A) are:
2
3 1. Six weeks prior to starting TAB, submit to the PM the qualifications of the site technician
4 for the project, including the name of the contractors and facility managers of recent
5 projects the technician on which was lead. The Owner will approve the site technician's
6 qualifications for this project.
7 2. Submit the outline of the TAB plan and approach for each system and component to the
8 CA, PM and the controls contractor six weeks prior to starting the TAB. This plan will be
9 developed after the TAB has some familiarity with the control system.
10 3. The submitted plan will include:
11 a. Certification that the TAB contractor has reviewed the construction documents and
12 the systems with the design engineers and contractors to sufficiently understand
13 the design intent for each system.
14 b. An explanation of the intended use of the building control system. The controls
15 contractor will comment on feasibility of the plan.
16 c. All field checkout sheets and logs to be used that list each piece of equipment to be
17 tested, adjusted and balanced with the data cells to be gathered for each.
18 d. Discussion of what notations and markings will be made on the duct and piping
19 drawings during the process.
20 e. Final test report forms to be used.
21 f. List of all air flow, water flow, sound level, system capacity and efficiency
22 measurements to be performed and a description of specific test procedures,
23 parameters, formulas to be used.
24 g. Details of how *total* flow will be determined (Air: sum of terminal flows via BAS
25 calibrated readings or via hood readings of all terminals, supply (SA) and return air
26 (RA) pitot traverse, SA or RA flow stations. Water: pump curves, circuit setter,
27 flow station, ultrasonic, etc.).
28 h. Specific procedures that will ensure that both air and water side are operating at
29 the lowest possible pressures and provide methods to verify this.
30 i. Confirmation that TAB understands the outside air ventilation criteria under all
31 conditions.
32 j. Details of whether and how minimum outside air cfm will be verified and set, and
33 for what level (total building, zone, etc.).
34 k. Details of how building static and exhaust fan / relief damper capacity will be
35 checked.
36 l. Details of methods for making any specified coil or other system plant capacity
37 measurements.
38 m. Details of any TAB work to be done in phases (by floor, etc.), or of areas to be built
39 out later.
40 n. Details regarding specified deferred or seasonal TAB work.
41 o. Details of any specified false loading of systems to complete TAB work.
42 p. Details of all exhaust fan balancing and capacity verifications, including any
43 required room pressure differentials.
44 q. Details of any required interstitial cavity differential pressure measurements and
45 calculations.
46 r. Plan for hand-written field technician logs of discrepancies, deficient or
47 uncompleted work by others, contract interpretation requests and lists of completed
48 tests (scope and frequency).
49 s. Plan for formal progress reports (scope and frequency).
50 t. Plan for formal deficiency reports (scope, frequency and distribution).
51
52 4. A running log of events and issues shall be kept by the TAB field technicians. Submit
53 hand-written reports of discrepancies, deficient or uncompleted work by others, contract
54 interpretation requests and lists of completed tests to the CA and PM at least twice a
55 week.

- 1 5. Communicate in writing to the controls contractor all setpoint and parameter changes
- 2 made or problems and discrepancies identified during TAB which affect the control
- 3 system setup and operation.
- 4 6. Provide a draft TAB report within two weeks of completion. A copy will be provided to the
- 5 CA. The report will contain a full explanation of the methodology, assumptions and the
- 6 results in a clear format with designations of all uncommon abbreviations and column
- 7 headings. The report should follow the latest and most rigorous reporting
- 8 recommendations by AABC, NEBB or ASHRAE Standard 111.
- 9 7. Provide a final TAB report for the CA with details, as in the draft.
- 10 8. Conduct functional performance tests and checks (a.k.a. 'Tab Verification Process) on
- 11 the original TAB. Tab Verification shall consist of repeating measurements made during
- 12 the original TAB procedures and comparing results against that of the submitted TAB
- 13 report as well as the design parameters.

- 14
- 15 E. Mechanical Designer. Refer to Section 01 91 13 for the responsibilities of the mechanical
- 16 designer.
- 17

18 **1.3 RELATED WORK**

- 19
- 20 A. Refer to Section 01 91 13, Part 1.4 for a listing of all sections where commissioning
- 21 requirements are found.
- 22
- 23 B. Refer to Section 01 91 13 Part 1.7 for systems to be commissioned.
- 24

25 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

26 **2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT**

- 27
- 28
- 29 A. Division 23 shall provide all test equipment necessary to fulfill the testing requirements of this
- 30 Division.
- 31
- 32 B. Refer to Section 01 91 13 Part 2.1 for additional Division 23 requirements.
- 33

34 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

35 **3.1 SUBMITTALS**

- 36
- 37
- 38
- 39 A. Division 23 shall provide submittal documentation relative to commissioning as required in this
- 40 Section Part 1 and Section 01 91 13.
- 41

42 **3.2 STARTUP**

- 43
- 44 A. The HVAC mechanical and controls contractors shall follow the start-up and initial checkout
- 45 procedures listed in the Responsibilities list in this section and in 01 91 13. Division 23 has
- 46 start-up responsibility and is required to complete systems and sub-systems so they are fully
- 47 functional, meeting the design objectives of the Contract Documents. The commissioning
- 48 procedures and functional testing do not relieve or lessen this responsibility or shift that
- 49 responsibility partially to the commissioning agent or Owner.
- 50
- 51 B. Functional testing is intended to begin upon completion of a system. Functional testing may
- 52 proceed prior to the completion of systems or sub-systems at the discretion of the CA and GC.
- 53 Beginning system testing before full completion, does not relieve the Contractor from fully
- 54 completing the system, including all prefunctional checklists as soon as possible.
- 55

56 **3.3 TAB**

- 1
2 A. Refer to the TAB responsibilities in Part 1.2 above.
3

4 **3.4 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TESTS**
5

- 6 A. Refer to Section 01 91 13 Part 1.7 for a list of systems to be commissioned and to Part 3.6 for
7 a description of the process and to the *Commissioning Plan – Construction Phase* for specific
8 details on the required functional performance tests.
9

10 **3.5 TESTING DOCUMENTATION, NON-CONFORMANCE AND APPROVALS**
11

- 12 A. Refer to Section 01 91 13 Part 3.4 for specific details on non-conformance issues relating to
13 prefunctional checklists and tests.
14
15 B. Refer to Section 01 91 13 Part 3.7 for issues relating to functional performance tests.
16

17 **3.6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) MANUALS**
18

- 19 A. The following O&M manual requirements do not replace O&M manual documentation
20 requirements elsewhere in these specifications.
21
22 B. Division 23 shall compile and prepare documentation for all equipment and systems covered
23 in Division 23 and deliver this documentation to the General Contractor for inclusion in the
24 O&M manuals, according to this section prior to the training of owner personnel.
25
26 C. The CA shall receive a copy of the final compiled O&M manuals for review.
27
28 D. Special Control System O&M Manual Requirements. In addition to documentation that may
29 be specified elsewhere, the controls contractor shall compile and organize at minimum the
30 following data on the control system in labeled 3-ring binders with indexed tabs.
31
32 1. Three copies of the controls training manuals in a separate manual from the O&M
33 manuals.
34 2. Operation and Maintenance Manuals containing:
35
36 a. Specific instructions on how to perform and apply all functions, features, modes,
37 etc. mentioned in the controls training sections of this specification and other
38 features of this system. These instructions shall be step-by-step. Indexes and
39 clear tables of contents shall be included. The detailed technical manual for
40 programming and customizing control loops and algorithms shall be included.
41 b. Full as-built set of control drawings (refer to Submittal section above for details).
42 c. Full as-built sequence of operations for each piece of equipment.
43 d. Full points list. In addition to the updated points list required in the original
44 submittals (Part 1 of this section), a listing of all rooms shall be provided with the
45 following information for each room:
46 1) Floor
47 2) Room number
48 3) Room name
49 4) Air handler unit ID
50 5) Reference drawing number
51 6) Air terminal unit tag ID
52 7) Heating and/or cooling valve tag ID
53 8) Minimum cfm
54 9) Maximum cfm
55

- 1 e. Full print out of all schedules and set points after testing and acceptance of the
 2 system.
 3 f. Full as-built print out of software program.
 4 g. Electronic copy on disk of the entire program for this facility.
 5 h. Marking of all system sensors and thermostats on the as-built floor plan and
 6 mechanical drawings with their control system designations.
 7 i. Maintenance instructions, including sensor calibration requirements and methods
 8 by sensor type, etc.
 9 j. Control equipment component submittals, parts lists, etc.
 10 k. Warranty requirements.
 11 l. Copies of all checkout tests and calibrations performed by the Contractor (not
 12 commissioning tests).
 13
 14 3. The manual shall be organized and subdivided with permanently labeled tabs for each of
 15 the following data in the given order:
 16 a. Sequences of operation
 17 b. Control drawings
 18 c. Points lists
 19 d. Controller / module data
 20 e. Thermostats and timers
 21 f. Sensors and DP switches
 22 g. Valves and valve actuators
 23 h. Dampers and damper actuators
 24 i. Program setups (software program printouts)
 25
 26 4. Field checkout sheets and trend logs should be provided to the CA for inclusion in the
 27 Commissioning Record Book.
 28
 29 E. Special TAB Documentation Requirements. The TAB will compile and submit the following
 30 with other documentation that may be specified elsewhere in the *Specifications*.
 31
 32 1. Final report containing an explanation of the methodology, assumptions, test conditions
 33 and the results in a clear format with designations of all uncommon abbreviations and
 34 column headings.
 35
 36 F. Review and Approvals. Review of the commissioning related sections of the O&M manuals
 37 shall be made by the A/E and by the CA. Refer to Section 01 91 13, Part 3.8 for details.
 38
 39 **3.7. TRAINING OF OWNER PERSONNEL**
 40
 41 A. The GC shall coordinate with the Owner for desired training sequencing and scheduling and
 42 shall provide the approved schedule of training to the Owner and CA for review and approval.
 43 The Mechanical Contractor, Controls Contractor and Equipment Suppliers shall complete all
 44 training activities and documentation as directed by the GC, the approved schedule, and the
 45 specific equipment specification sections.
 46
 47
 48
 49

END OF SECTION 23 08 00



1 **SECTION 23 21 13.11 - CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section Includes:

- 5 1. Copper tube and fittings.
6 2. Piping joining materials.
7 3. Dielectric fittings.

8 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

9 A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

- 10 1. Pipe and tube.
11 2. Fittings.
12 3. Joining materials.
13 4. Transition fittings.

14 **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

15 A. Furnish new and unused piping materials manufactured in the United States of America. Piping
16 shall be marked with country of origin from the manufacturer.

17 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

18 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

19 A. Hydronic piping components and installation are to be capable of withstanding the following
20 minimum working pressures and temperatures unless otherwise indicated:

- 21 1. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.

22 **2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS**

23 A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type L.

24 B. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22 pressure fittings. Do not use solder joints
25 on pipe sizes greater than NPS 4.

26 C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than
27 NPS 4.



1 **2.3 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS**

2 A. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys.

3 B. Flux: ASTM B813, water flushable.

4 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

5 **3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS**

6 A. Condensate-Drain Piping Installed Aboveground to Be Any of the Following:

7 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

8 **3.2 INSTALLATION OF PIPING**

9 A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping
10 systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss,
11 expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to
12 layout are approved on coordination drawings.

13 B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms
14 and service areas.

15 C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right
16 angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated
17 otherwise.

18 D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

19 E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

20 F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

21 G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

22 H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

23 I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

24 J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating
25 pressure.

26 K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing
27 of valves.

28 L. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.

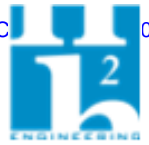
29 M. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to
30 the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.



- 1 N. Install valves according to the following:
- 2 1. Section 23 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping."
- 3 O. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of
4 equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- 5 P. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment"
6 for identifying piping.
- 7 Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for
8 sleeves specified in Section 23 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- 9 R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with
10 requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 23 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for
11 HVAC Piping."
- 12 S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with
13 requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 23 05 18 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."
- 14 **3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**
- 15 A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- 16 B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before
17 assembly.
- 18 C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube
19 end. Construct joints in accordance with ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using
20 lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B32.
- 21 **3.4 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**
- 22 A. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and
23 Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.
- 24 B. Install hangers for copper tubing , with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod
25 diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having
26 jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- 27 C. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- 28 D. Support vertical runs of copper tubing to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and
29 authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- 30 **3.5 IDENTIFICATION**
- 31 A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and
32 installation in Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."



1 **END OF SECTION 23 21 13.11**
2



1 **SECTION 23 21 13.12 - ABOVEGROUND METAL HYDRONIC PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section Includes:

- 5 1. Copper tube and fittings.
- 6 2. Steel pipe and fittings.
- 7 3. Piping joining materials.
- 8 4. Transition fittings.
- 9 5. Dielectric fittings.

10 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

11 A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

- 12 1. Pipe and tube.
- 13 2. Fittings.
- 14 3. Joining materials.
- 15 4. Transition fittings.

16 **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

17 A. Furnish new and unused piping materials manufactured in the United States of America. Piping
18 shall be marked with country of origin from the manufacturer.

19 B. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure
20 Vessel Code: Section IX.

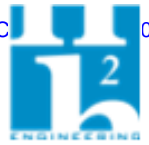
- 21 1. Comply with ASME B31.9 for materials, products, and installation.
- 22 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes
23 involved and that certification is current.

24 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

25 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

26 A. Hydronic piping components and installation are to be capable of withstanding the following
27 minimum working pressures and temperatures unless otherwise indicated:

- 28 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
- 29 2. Chilled-Water Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
- 30 3. Makeup-Water Piping: 150 psig at 150 deg F.
- 31 4. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.



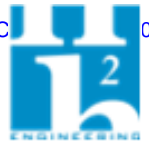
- 1 5. Pressure-Relief-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system
2 to which it is attached.

3 **2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS**

- 4 A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type L.
5 B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type K.
6 C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22 pressure fittings. Do not use solder joints
7 on pipe sizes greater than NPS 4.
8 D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends. Do not use solder joints on
9 pipe sizes greater than NPS 4.
10 E. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than
11 NPS 4.
12 F. Copper-Tube, Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings - Copper or Bronze:
13 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
14 following:
15 a. Mueller Streamline Co.; a company of Mueller Industries.
16 b. Victaulic Company.
17 c. Viega LLC.
18 2. Source Limitations: Obtain copper-tube pressure-seal-joint fittings from single
19 manufacturer.
20 3. Housing: Copper or bronze.
21 4. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.
22 5. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
23 6. Minimum 200 psig working pressure rating at 250 deg F.

24 **2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- 25 A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and
26 schedule number as indicated in Part 3, "Piping Applications" Article.
27 B. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in Part 3,
28 "Piping Applications" Article.
29 C. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in Part 3, "Piping
30 Applications" Article.
31 D. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised
32 ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
33 E. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M; wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.



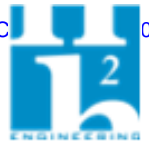
- 1 F. Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and
2 gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
- 3 1. Material Group: 1.1.
4 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
5 3. Facings: Raised face.
- 6 G. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
- 7 1. Source Limitations: Obtain grooved mechanical-joint fittings and couplings from single
8 manufacturer.
9 2. Joint Fittings: ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A47/A47M, Grade 32510
10 malleable iron; ASTM A53/A53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or
11 ASTM A106/A106M, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to
12 accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to
13 secure grooved pipe and fittings.
14 3. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and EPDM gasket of central cavity
15 pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure
16 grooved pipe and fittings.
- 17 H. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which
18 they are installed.

19 2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- 20 A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system
21 contents.
- 22 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless
23 otherwise indicated.
- 24 a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
25 b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- 26 B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- 27 C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys.
- 28 D. Flux: ASTM B813, water flushable.
- 29 E. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for
30 wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

31 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- 32 A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating
33 nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- 34 B. Dielectric Unions:
- 35 1. Source Limitations: Obtain dielectric unions from single manufacturer.
36 2. Description:



- 1 a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
- 2 b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
- 3 c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous. Solder joints are
- 4 not to be used on pipe sizes greater than NPS 4.

- 5 C. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

- 6 1. Source Limitations: Obtain dielectric-flange insulating kits from single manufacturer.
- 7 2. Description:

- 8 a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
- 9 b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- 10 c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
- 11 d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
- 12 e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

13 PART 3 - EXECUTION

14 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- 15 A. Hot-Water Heating Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller, to Be Any of the Following:
 - 16 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
 - 17 2. Schedule 40, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.

- 18 B. Hot-Water Heating Piping, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger, to Be Any of the Following:
 - 19 1. Schedule 40, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; welded joints, cast-
 - 20 iron flanges, flange-fittings, and flanged joints.

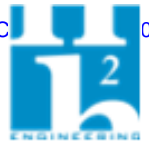
- 21 C. Chilled-Water Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller, to be Any of the Following:
 - 22 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
 - 23 2. Schedule 40, Grade B steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.

- 24 D. Chilled-Water Piping, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger, to Be Any of the Following:
 - 25 1. Schedule 40, Grade B, steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel
 - 26 flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.

- 27 E. Makeup-Water Piping Installed Aboveground to Be Any of the Following:
 - 28 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

- 29 F. Air-Vent Piping:
 - 30 1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic
 - 31 piping systems, according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 32 2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered joints.

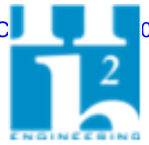
- 33 G. Pressure-Relief-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping:



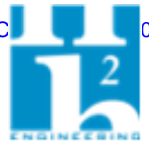
- 1 1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic
- 2 piping systems, according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- 3 2. Outlet: Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing with soldered joints.

4 3.2 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- 5 A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping
- 6 systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss,
- 7 expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to
- 8 layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- 9 B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms
- 10 and service areas.
- 11 C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right
- 12 angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated
- 13 otherwise.
- 14 D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- 15 E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- 16 F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- 17 G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- 18 H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- 19 I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- 20 J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating
- 21 pressure.
- 22 K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing
- 23 of valves.
- 24 L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple
- 25 with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- 26 M. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- 27 N. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to
- 28 the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- 29 O. Install valves according to Section 23 05 23.11 "General Duty Valves for Hydronic Piping."
- 30 P. Install air vents and pressure-relief valves in accordance with Section 23 21 16 "Hydronic Piping
- 31 Specialties."
- 32 Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of
- 33 equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.



- 1 R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere
2 as indicated.
- 3 S. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- 4 T. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 16 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping"
5 for installation of expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides.
- 6 U. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment"
7 for identifying piping.
- 8 V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for
9 sleeves specified in Section 23 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- 10 W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with
11 requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 23 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for
12 HVAC Piping."
- 13 X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with
14 requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 23 05 18 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."
- 15 **3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**
- 16 A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- 17 B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before
18 assembly.
- 19 C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube
20 end. Construct joints in accordance with ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using
21 lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B32.
- 22 D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads in accordance with ASME B1.20.1. Cut
23 threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore
24 full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
- 25 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal
26 threading is specified.
- 27 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or
28 damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- 29 E. Welded Joints: Construct joints in accordance with AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified
30 processes and welding operators in accordance with "Quality Assurance" Article.
- 31 F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service
32 application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- 33 G. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll
34 grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe
35 wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.



1 **3.4 INSTALLATION OF DIELECTRIC FITTINGS**

- 2 A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- 3 B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- 4 C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

5 **3.5 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- 6 A. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and
7 Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.
- 8 B. Install hangers for copper tubing and steel piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and
9 minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities
10 having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- 11 C. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- 12 D. Support vertical runs of copper tubing and steel piping to comply with MSS SP-58, locally
13 enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

14 **3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS**

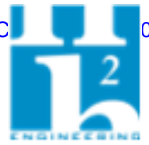
- 15 A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections are to be the same as or larger than equipment
16 connections.
- 17 B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- 18 C. Where 3-way control valve is specified, install bypass piping with globe valve around control
19 valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- 20 D. Install ports for pressure gauges and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply
21 with requirements in Section 23 05 19 "Meters and Gauges for HVAC Piping."

22 **3.7 IDENTIFICATION**

- 23 A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and
24 installation in Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

25 **3.8 SYSTEM STARTUP**

- 26 A. Perform the following before operating the system:
- 27 1. Open manual valves fully.
- 28 2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
- 29 3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
- 30 4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating
31 freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
- 32 5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.



- 1 6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers,
2 cooling towers, to specified values.
- 3 7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.
- 4 8. Verify installation of system pressure relief valve(s) and that they are set at as indicated
5 on the plan documents but in no case greater than 100 psig.

6 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

7 A. Perform the following low pressure leak test on hydronic piping as follows:

- 8 1. Isolate sections of piping to be tested.
- 9 2. Leave joints uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
- 10 3. Subject piping system to a maximum pneumatic test pressure of 15 psig.
- 11 4. After pneumatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping,
12 joints, and connections for leakage by using a lead finder solution.
- 13 5. If a leak is detected or test pressure drops to 0 psig, eliminate leaks by tightening,
14 repairing, or replacing components, and repeat pneumatic test until there are no leaks.

15 B. Prepare hydronic piping in accordance with ASME B31.9 and as follows:

- 16 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
- 17 2. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace
18 strainer screens.
- 19 3. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure is to be
20 capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged
21 joints to isolate equipment.
- 22 4. Install pressure-relief valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test
23 pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure
24 during test.

25 C. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

- 26 1. Use ambient-temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due
27 to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be
28 used.
- 29 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains
30 installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
- 31 3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
- 32 4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the
33 system's working pressure. Test pressure is not to exceed maximum pressure for any
34 vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to
35 pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum
36 yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9.
- 37 5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping,
38 joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing
39 components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
- 40 6. Prepare written report of testing.

41 **END OF SECTION 23 21 13.12**



1 **SECTION 23 21 13.13 - UNDERGROUND METAL HYDRONIC PIPING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes the following underground hydronic piping:

- 8 1. Steel pipes and fittings.
9 2. Transition fittings.
10 3. Flowable fill.

11 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 12 A. Product Data: For the following:
13 1. Flowable fill.

- 14 B. Furnish new and unused piping materials manufactured in the United States of America. Piping
15 shall be marked with country of origin from the manufacturer.

16 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Field quality-control reports.

18 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 19 A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with ASME Boiler and
20 Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

- 21 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
22 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes
23 involved and that certification is current.

- 24 B. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials,
25 products, and installation.

26 **1.6 COORDINATION**

- 27 A. Coordinate pipe-fitting pressure classes with products specified in related Sections.



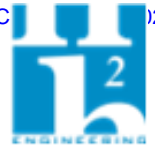
1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 3 A. Provide components and installation capable of producing hydronic piping systems with the
 4 following minimum working-pressure ratings:
 5 1. Chilled-Water Piping: 150 psig at 100 deg F.

6 **2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- 7 A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, black
 8 with plain ends; wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Application" Article.
- 9 B. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3; Class 150 and Class 300 as indicated in "Piping
 10 Application" Article.
- 11 C. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping
 12 Application" Article.
- 13 D. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Class 125 and Class 250; raised
 14 ground face, and bolt holes spot faced.
- 15 E. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- 16 F. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts,
 17 nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
- 18 1. Material Group: 1.1.
 19 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
 20 3. Facings: Raised face.
- 21 G. Steel Welding Fittings: ASME B16.9 seamless or welded.
- 22 1. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials
 23 appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- 24 H. Nipples: ASTM A733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are
 25 installed.
- 26 I. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system
 27 contents.
- 28 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch-maximum thickness unless
 29 thickness or specific material is indicated.
- 30 a. Full-Face Type: For flat face, Class 125, cast-iron and -bronze flanges.
 31 b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- 32 J. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.



1 **2.3 FLOWABLE FILL**

2 A. Description: Low-strength-concrete, flowable-slurry mix.

3 1. Cement: ASTM C150, Type I, portland.

4 2. Density: 115- to 145-lb/cu. ft..

5 3. Aggregates:

6 a. ASTM C33, natural sand, fine and crushed gravel or stone, coarse.

7 4. Admixture: ASTM C618, fly-ash mineral.

8 5. Water: Comply with ASTM C94/C94M.

9 6. Strength: 100 to 200 psig at 28 days.

10 7. Color: Yellow.

11 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

12 **3.1 EARTHWORK**

13 A. See Division 31 for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

14 **3.2 PIPING APPLICATION**

15 A. Chilled-Water Piping:

16 1. NPS 2 and smaller shall be the following:

17 a. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and
18 flange fittings; and threaded joints.

19 2. NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be the following:

20 a. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel
21 flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.

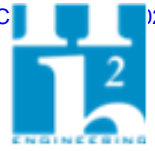
22 **3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION**

23 A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping
24 systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and
25 calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as
26 indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

27 B. Remove standing water in the bottom of trench.

28 C. Bed the pipe on a minimum 6-inch layer of pipe system manufacturer's recommended granular
29 fill material with a minimum 6-inch clearance between pipes.

30 D. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 30 inches, with top at least 12 inches below
31 level of maximum frost penetration, and according to the following:



- 1 1. Under Driveways: With at least 36 inches of cover over top.
 2 2. In Loose Gravelly Soil and Rock: With at least 12 inches of additional cover.
- 3 E. Where cover over top of piping is less than required depth, cover with flowable fill up to 6 inches
 4 below finished grade.
- 5 F. Do not backfill piping trench until field quality-control testing has been completed and results
 6 approved.
- 7 G. Maintain continuous bedding under piping. Do not leave gaps in pipe bedding, allowing pipe to
 8 sag between contact points with the bedding.
- 9 H. Install components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- 10 I. Install piping in straight lines. Do not bend pipe.
- 11 J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- 12 K. See Section 23 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping" for sleeves and mechanical
 13 sleeve seals through exterior building walls.
- 14 L. Secure anchors with concrete thrust blocks. Concrete is specified in Division 03.
- 15 M. Connect to hydronic piping where it passes through the building wall.
- 16 N. Connect to hydronic piping where it passes under the building. Extend underground hydronic
 17 piping and connect to building hydronic piping systems at locations and pipe sizes indicated
 18 using single-piece, in-building risers.
- 19 1. Coordinate horizontal and vertical lengths of single-piece, in-building risers to extend
 20 from the exterior of the building, underneath the foundation, and through the floor up to
 21 between 24 inches and 36 inches above finished floor.
- 22 2. Coordinate horizontal and vertical end connections of single-piece, in-building risers with
 23 hydronic piping inside the building in the following Sections:
- 24 a. Section 23 21 13.12 "Aboveground Metal Hydronic Piping"
- 25 3. Terminate hydronic piping within the building at the service entrance until building
 26 hydronic piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as
 27 required for piping material. Make connections to building's hydronic piping systems
 28 when those systems are installed.
- 29 O. Secure anchors and fittings where piping changes direction, and where elsewhere required by
 30 manufacturer's written installation instructions, with concrete thrust blocks. Concrete is specified
 31 in Division 03.
- 32 P. Apply bitumastic coating to carbon-steel anchors and guides. Pour concrete thrust blocks and
 33 anchors. See Division 03 for concrete and reinforcement.
- 34 Q. After field quality-control testing is complete, backfill with 6 inches of clean, granular material in
 35 accordance with piping system manufacturer's written instructions. If mechanical compaction is
 36 required, manually backfill to 12 inches before using mechanical-compaction equipment.



1 **3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

2 A. Join pipe and fittings in accordance with the following requirements and other hydronic piping
3 Sections in Division 23:

- 4 1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
5 2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before
6 assembly.

7 B. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads in accordance with ASME B1.20.1 or
8 ISO 7-1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs
9 and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

- 10 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal
11 threading is specified.
12 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or
13 damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

14 C. Welded Joints: Construct joints in accordance with AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified
15 processes and welding operators, in accordance with "Quality Assurance" Article.

16 D. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service
17 application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

18 **3.5 IDENTIFICATION**

19 A. Install continuous plastic underground warning tapes during backfilling of trenches for
20 underground hydronic piping. Locate tapes 6 to 8 inches below finished grade, directly over
21 piping. See Section Division 31 for warning-tape materials and devices and their installation.

22 **3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

23 A. Tests and Inspections:

24 1. Prepare hydronic piping for testing in accordance with ASME B31.9 and as follows:

- 25 a. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
26 b. Isolate equipment and instrumentation. Do not subject equipment and
27 instrumentation to test pressure.
28 c. Install relief valve set to relieve at pressure no more than one-third higher than test
29 pressure.
30 d. Fill system with water. Where there is risk of freezing, perform testing with air or
31 liquid that will not freeze or cause damage to piping system materials.
32 e. For hydrostatic testing, install vents at high points to release trapped air while filling
33 system. Remove test liquid at accessible low points.

34 2. Test hydronic piping as follows:

- 35 a. Subject hydronic piping to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times
36 system design pressure.



- 1 b. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for 10 minutes, examine joints for
2 leakage. Remake leaking joints using new materials and repeat hydrostatic test
3 until no leaks exist.
4 c. Do not pressurize carrier pipe with air.
5 d. Maintain test pressure for four hours with no loss of pressure.
- 6 B. Piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- 7 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 8 D. When successful testing is complete, flush carrier piping to remove dirt or debris remaining after
9 construction. Drain piping after flushing is complete.
- 10 E. Fill underground piping system with permanent system liquid prior to system testing and
11 balancing.

12 **END OF SECTION 23 21 13.13**



1 **SECTION 23 21 16 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section Includes:

- 5 1. Hydronic specialty valves.
6 2. Hydronic coil packages.
7 3. Air vents.
8 4. Expansion tanks and fittings.
9 5. Air/dirt separators.
10 6. Strainers.

11 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

12 A. Product Data: For each type of product:

- 13 1. Include construction details and material descriptions for hydronic piping specialties.
14 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and
15 accessories.
16 3. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-
17 orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.

18 **1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 19 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For hydronic piping specialties to include in emergency,
20 operation, and maintenance manuals.

21 **1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- 22 A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve,
23 include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

24 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 25 A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section IX.
26 B. Pressure-relief and safety-relief valves and pressure vessels bear the appropriate ASME label.
27 Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME BPVC,
28 Section VIII, Division 1.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 HYDRONIC SPECIALTY VALVES**

3 A. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

4 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Taco Comfort
5 Solutions; Accu-Flo or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 6 a. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
7 b. Griswold Controls, LLC.

- 8 2. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
9 3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
10 4. Plug: Resin.
11 5. Seat: PTFE.
12 6. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
13 7. Pressure Gauge Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
14 8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
15 9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
16 10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

17 B. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

18 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Bell &
19 Gossett; CB or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 20 a. Taco Comfort Solutions; Accu-flo
21 b. Watts; CSM-81-F.
22 c. Wheatley; PSV

- 23 2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, butterfly, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice
24 or venturi.
25 3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
26 4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
27 5. Disc: Glass- and carbon-filled PTFE.
28 6. Seat: PTFE.
29 7. End Connections: Flanged.
30 8. Pressure Gauge Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
31 9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
32 10. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
33 11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

34 C. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.

- 35 1. Body: Bronze or brass.
36 2. Disc: EPDM.
37 3. Seat: Brass.
38 4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
39 5. Diaphragm: EPDM.
40 6. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
41 7. Inlet Strainer: Stainless steel, removable without system shutdown.
42 8. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.



- 1 9. Valve Size and Capacity: As indicated on Drawings.
 2 10. Operating Pressure: Factory set and field adjustable.
- 3 D. Diaphragm-Operated Pressure-Relief Valves: ASME labeled.
- 4 1. Body: Bronze or brass.
 5 2. Disc: Brass.
 6 3. Seat: Brass.
 7 4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
 8 5. Diaphragm: EPDM.
 9 6. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
 10 7. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME BPVC, Section IV,
 11 and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity
 12 factory set and field adjustable.
- 13 E. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:
- 14 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide FlowCon
 15 International; ABV (NPS 1-1/2 and smaller) and SH (NPS 2 and larger) or a comparable
 16 product by one of the following:
- 17 a. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
 18 b. Griswold Controls, LLC.
- 19 2. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
 20 3. Dual pressure / temperature test plugs across flow control cartridge.
 21 4. External adjustable flow control cartridge.
 22 5. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
 23 6. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
 24 7. Size and Capacity: For each application, provide a valve with rated capacity equal to or
 25 greater than capacity of device being served.
 26 8. Performance: Maintain constant flow within plus or minus 10 percent, regardless of
 27 system pressure fluctuations.
 28 9. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig.
 29 10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.
- 30 **2.2 HYDRONIC COIL PACKAGES**
- 31 A. Combination Strainer / Isolation Ball Valve:
- 32 1. Body: Forged or cast brass.
 33 2. Connections: Threaded with union inlet.
 34 3. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze ball valve, union and strainer.
 35 4. Strainer: 20 mesh stainless steel; provide drain valve with hose bibb adaptor and cap on
 36 strainer port. Provide a pressure/temperature test plug at the strainer inlet and outlet.
 37 5. Valve: Bronze ball valve with stainless-steel trim.
 38 6. Size: NPS 2 and smaller.
 39 7. Minimum CWP Rating: 275 psig.
 40 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.
- 41 B. Combination Union / Isolation Ball Valve:
- 42 1. Body: Forged or cast brass.



- 1 2. Connections: Threaded with union inlet.
- 2 3. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze ball valve and union.
- 3 4. Union: Provide union with four 1/4-inch body tappings with brass end connections.
- 4 Union seal shall be EPDM O-rings. Provide an automatic air vent in the top tapping and
- 5 a pressure / temperature test plug.
- 6 5. Valve: Bronze ball valve with stainless-steel trim.
- 7 6. Size: NPS 2 and smaller.
- 8 7. Minimum CWP Rating: 275 psig.
- 9 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

10 C. Isolation Union:

- 11 1. Body: Forged or cast brass.
- 12 2. Connections: Threaded.
- 13 3. Union: Provide union with four 1/4-inch body tappings with brass end connections.
- 14 Union seal shall be EPDM O-rings. Provide a pressure/temperature test plug.
- 15 4. Size: NPS 2 and smaller.
- 16 5. Minimum CWP Rating: 275 psig.
- 17 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

18 D. Stainless Steel, Flexible Connectors:

- 19 1. Body: Flame retardant, flexible, stainless steel braided hose with EPDM core.
- 20 2. End Connections: Threaded to match equipment connected.
- 21 3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
- 22 4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
- 23 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

24 **2.3 AIR VENTS**

25 A. Manual Air Vents:

- 26 1. Body: Bronze.
- 27 2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
- 28 3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
- 29 4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
- 30 5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
- 31 6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
- 32 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

33 B. Automatic Air Vents:

- 34 1. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
- 35 2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
- 36 3. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
- 37 4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
- 38 5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4.
- 39 6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
- 40 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.



1 **2.4 EXPANSION TANKS AND FITTINGS**

2 A. Bladder-Type ASME Expansion Tanks:

- 3 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product
4 indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- 5 a. Amtrol, Inc.
- 6 b. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
- 7 c. Taco Comfort Solutions.
- 8 2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125 psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum
9 operating temperature. Factory test after taps are fabricated and supports installed and
10 are labeled in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1.
- 11 3. Bladder: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain
12 required expansion capacity. Field-replaceable bladder.
- 13 4. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

14 **2.5 AIR/DIRT SEPARATORS AND PURGERS**

15 A. Coalescing-Type Air and Dirt Separators:

- 16 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product
17 indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- 18 a. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
- 19 b. Spirotherm, Inc.
- 20 c. Taco Comfort Solutions.
- 21 2. Tank: Fabricated steel tank; ASME constructed and stamped for 125 psig working
22 pressure and 270 deg F maximum operating temperature.
- 23 3. Coalescing Medium: Stainless steel.
- 24 4. Air Vent: Threaded to top of separator.
- 25 5. Inline Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; Class 150
26 flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 27 6. Blowdown Connection: Threaded to bottom of separator with ball valve.
- 28 7. Flushing Connection: Threaded to side of separator with ball valve.
- 29 8. Size: Match system flow capacity.

30 **2.6 STRAINERS**

31 A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

- 32 1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
- 33 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and
34 larger.
- 35 3. Strainer Screen: Stainless steel, 20-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless steel basket.
- 36 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 3 A. Examine all piping specialties for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion.
4 Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during
5 shipping and handling.
- 6 B. Examine threads on all devices for form and cleanliness.
- 7 C. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper
8 size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is
9 suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- 10 D. Do not attempt to repair defective piping specialties; replace with new devices. Remove
11 defective piping specialties from site.

12 **3.2 INSTALLATION OF VALVES**

- 13 A. Install calibrated-orifice balancing valve at each branch connection to return main.
- 14 B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valve in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- 15 C. Install pressure-relief and safety-relief valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required
16 by ASME BPVC. Pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with
17 ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

18 **3.3 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION**

- 19 A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required
20 for system air venting.
- 21 B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only.
- 22 1. Provide air outlet drain line full size of air outlet to floor drain or to other point indicated on
23 Drawings.
- 24 C. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
- 25 D. Install air/dirt separators in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve
26 full size of separator outlet; extend full size to nearest floor drain.
- 27 E. Install bladder-type expansion tanks on the floor.
- 28 F. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to
29 suit system Project requirements.



1 **3.4 MAKEUP-WATER SYSTEM INSTALLATION**

- 2 A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 for backflow preventers, water meters, and water
3 regulators associated with makeup-water system.
- 4 B. Install reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers in each makeup-water supply to
5 mechanical equipment and systems. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- 6 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
7 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap
8 fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe
9 diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or
10 under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
11 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- 12 C. Install water meter in each makeup-water supply to mechanical equipment and systems.
- 13 D. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop
14 balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

15 **3.5 BALANCING VALVE SCHEDULE**

- 16 1. Coil Connections, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following (as indicated on the
17 Drawings):
- 18 B. Automatic Flow-Control Valves
- 19 1. Coil Connections, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be the following (as indicated on the
20 Drawings):
- 21 C. Automatic Flow-Control Valves
- 22 1. Pump Connections, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
- 23 2. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves
- 24 3. Pump Connections, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be the following:
- 25 4. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves
- 26 5. Chiller Connections, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be the following:
- 27 6. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves
- 28 7. Boiler Connections, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be the following:
- 29 8. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves

30 **3.6 HYDRONIC COIL PACKAGE SCHEDULE**

- 31 A. Coil Connections, NPS 2 and Smaller, where indicated on the Drawings:



- 1 1. Combination Strainer / Isolation Ball Valve: Supply side of coil.
- 2 2. Isolation Union: Return side of coil, on inlet side of control valve.
- 3 3. Combination Union / Isolation Ball Valve: Return side of coil, on leaving side of control
- 4 valve.
- 5 4. Stainless Steel, Flexible Connectors: Supply and return sides of coil.

6 **END OF SECTION 23 21 16**



1 **SECTION 23 21 23 - HYDRONIC PUMPS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
- 8 1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.
9 2. Close-coupled, end-suction centrifugal pumps.

10 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 11 A. EPDM: Ethylene propylene diene monomer.
12 B. EPR: Ethylene propylene rubber.
13 C. HI: Hydraulic Institute.

14 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 15 A. Product Data: For each type of pump.
- 16 1. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics,
17 furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product
18 indicated.
19 2. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.

20 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 21 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and
22 maintenance manuals.

23 **1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- 24 A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective
25 covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- 26 1. Mechanical Seals: One mechanical seal(s) for each pump.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 3 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
4 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

5 **2.2 CLOSE-COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS**

- 6 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
7 following:

- 8 1. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
9 2. ITT Corporation.
10 3. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.

- 11 B. Source Limitations: Obtain pumps from single source from single manufacturer.

- 12 C. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-
13 line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor
14 shafts mounted horizontally or vertically.

- 15 D. Pump Construction:

- 16 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gauge tappings at inlet and
17 outlet, replaceable bronze wear rings, and threaded companion-flange connections.
18 2. Impeller: ASTM B584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft,
19 and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match
20 specified performance.
21 3. Pump Shaft Sleeve: Type 304 stainless steel.
22 4. Pump Stub Shaft: Type 304 stainless steel.
23 5. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a
24 stainless steel spring, and EPDM rubber bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on
25 shaft between motor and seal.

- 26 E. Shaft Coupling: Rigid, axially-split spacer coupling to allow service of pump seal without
27 disturbing pump or motor.

- 28 F. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency
29 requirements for motors specified in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC
30 Equipment."

- 31 1. Enclosure : Open, drip-proof (interior applications) and Totally enclosed, fan cooled
32 (exterior applications).
33 2. NEMA Premium Efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
34 3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will
35 not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
36 4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical
37 devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
38 5. Single-speed motor.



1 **2.3 CLOSE-COUPLED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS**

2 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
3 following:

- 4 1. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
5 2. ITT Corporation.
6 3. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.

7 B. Source Limitations: Obtain pumps from single source from single manufacturer.

8 C. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, end-
9 suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor
10 shafts mounted horizontally.

11 D. Pump Construction:

- 12 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute,
13 threaded gauge tapings at inlet and outlet, and flanged connections.
14 2. Impeller: ASTM B584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft,
15 and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match
16 specified performance.
17 3. Pump Shaft Sleeve: Type 304 stainless steel.
18 4. Pump Stub Shaft: Type 304 stainless steel.
19 5. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a
20 stainless steel spring, and EPDM bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft
21 between motor and seal.

22 E. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency
23 requirements for motors specified in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC
24 Equipment."

- 25 1. Enclosure: Open, drip-proof (interior applications) and Totally enclosed, fan cooled
26 (exterior applications).
27 2. NEMA Premium Efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
28 3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will
29 not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
30 4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical
31 devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
32 5. Single-speed motor.

33 **2.4 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS**

34 A. Suction Diffuser:

- 35 1. Angle pattern.
36 2. 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting.
37 3. Bronze 16-mesh wire startup and bronze or Type 304 stainless steel permanent strainers
38 with 3/16-inch.
39 4. Bronze or Type 304 stainless steel straightening vanes.
40 5. Drain plug.
41 6. Factory-fabricated support.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 3 A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for
4 installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 5 B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before
6 pump installation.
- 7 C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps will be installed.
- 8 D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

9 **3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION**

- 10 A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- 11 B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers,
12 couplings, and accessories.
- 13 C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and
14 weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
- 15 D. Equipment Mounting:
- 16 1. Install base-mounted pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases or inertia bases
17 with restrained spring isolators, as indicated on the plans. Comply with requirements for
18 equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03.
- 19 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 23 05 48.13
20 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- 21 E. Equipment Mounting: Install in-line pumps with continuous-thread hanger rods and spring
22 hangers of size required to support weight of in-line pumps.
- 23 1. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 23 05 29
24 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

25 **3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS**

- 26 A. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.
- 27 B. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.
- 28 C. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
- 29 D. Install check, shutoff, and calibrated balancing valves on discharge side of pumps.
- 30 E. Install Y-type strainer or suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.



- 1 1. Use startup strainer for initial system startup. Install permanent strainer element before
2 turnover of system to Owner.
- 3 F. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between
4 pump casing and valves.
- 5 G. Install pressure gauges on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gauge tapping,
6 or install single gauge with multiple-input selector valve.
- 7 **3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS**
- 8 A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors
9 and Cables."
- 10 B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical
11 Systems."
- 12 C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with
13 NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- 14 D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and
15 circuit number feeding connection.
- 16 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in
17 Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
18 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background
19 and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.
- 20 **3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS**
- 21 A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- 22 B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 23 05 23 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power
23 Cables."
- 24 **3.6 STARTUP SERVICE**
- 25 A. Perform startup service.
- 26 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written
27 instructions.
28 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
29 3. Clean strainers on suction piping. Use startup strainer for initial startup.
30 4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
- 31 a. Verify bearing lubrication.
32 b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is
33 free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate
34 until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
35 c. Verify that pump is rotating in correct direction.



- 1 5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for
- 2 operation.
- 3 6. Start motor.
- 4 7. Open discharge valve slowly.

5 **3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 6 A. Perform tests and inspections.
- 7 B. Hydronic pumps will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

8 **3.8 DEMONSTRATION**

- 9 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps.

10 **END OF SECTION 23 21 23**



1 **SECTION 23 25 13 - WATER TREATMENT FOR CLOSED-LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes the following water treatment for closed-loop hydronic systems:

- 8 1. Manual chemical-feed equipment.
9 2. Chemicals.

10 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 11 A. TDS: Total dissolved solids consist of salts and other materials that combine with water as a
12 solution.
- 13 B. TSS: Total suspended solids include both organic and inorganic solids that are suspended in
14 the water. These solids may include silt, plankton, and industrial wastes.

15 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 16 A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and
17 accessories for the following products:
- 18 1. Bypass feeders.
19 2. Chemical-treatment test equipment.
20 3. Chemical material safety data sheets.

21 **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 22 A. Water-Analysis Provider Qualifications: Verification of experience and capability of HVAC water-
23 treatment service provider.
- 24 B. Field quality-control reports.
- 25 C. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application
26 equipment required to achieve water quality defined in "Performance Requirements" Article.
- 27 D. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.



1 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 2 A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment
 3 service provider, capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and
 4 applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

5 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

6 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 7 A. Provide all hardware, chemicals, and other material necessary to maintain HVAC water quality
 8 in all systems, as indicated in this Specification. Water quality for hydronic systems shall
 9 minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of hydronic
 10 equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.
- 11 B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, hydronic system
 12 equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating
 13 personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 14 C. Closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating below 250 deg F and chilled water, shall
 15 have the following water qualities:
- 16 1. pH: Maintain a value within 9.0 to 10.5.
 - 17 2. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
 - 18 3. Boron: Maintain a value within 100 to 200 ppm.
 - 19 4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
 - 20 5. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
 - 21 6. TSS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
 - 22 7. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
 - 23 8. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
 - 24 9. Microbiological Limits:
- 25 a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/mL.
 - 26 b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
 - 27 c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
 - 28 d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.
 - 29 e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.

30 **2.2 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT**

- 31 A. Bypass Feeders: Provide steel feeders with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-
 32 inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Provide quarter turn or
 33 threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to
 34 system pressure in the vessel.
- 35 1. Capacity: 5 gal..
 - 36 2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.



1 **2.3 CHEMICAL-TREATMENT TEST EQUIPMENT**

2 A. Test Kit: Manufacturer-recommended equipment and chemicals in a wall-mounted cabinet for
3 testing pH, corrosion inhibitors, alkalinity, hardness, and other properties recommended by
4 manufacturer.

5 B. Corrosion Test-Coupon Assembly: Constructed of corrosive-resistant material, complete with
6 piping, valves, and mild steel and copper coupons. Locate copper coupon downstream from
7 mild steel coupon in the test-coupon assembly.

8 1. Two-station rack for closed-loop systems.

9 **2.4 CHEMICALS**

10 A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer, compatible with
11 piping system components and connected equipment, and able to attain water quality specified
12 in "Performance Requirements" Article.

13 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

14 **3.1 WATER ANALYSIS**

15 A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

16 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

17 A. Install chemical-application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain
18 manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units, so controls and devices that require
19 servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
20 Install all chemical application equipment within a spill-containment area without floor drain.

21 B. Install water-testing equipment on wall near water-chemical-application equipment.

22 C. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, chilled
23 water, and glycol cooling, and equip with the following:

24 1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless indicated
25 otherwise on Drawings.

26 2. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise
27 indicated on Drawings.

28 3. Install a full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below the feeder inlet.

29 4. Install a swing check on the inlet after the isolation valve.

30 **3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS**

31 A. Piping installation requirement are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general
32 arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

33 B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.



- 1 C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping
2 with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Section 23 21 13 "Hydronic Piping."
- 3 D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty
4 valves are specified in:
- 5 1. Section 23 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping".
6 2. Section 23 05 23.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping".
- 7 E. Comply with requirements in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow
8 preventers required in makeup-water connections to potable-water systems.

9 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- 10 A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- 11 B. Tests and Inspections:
- 12 1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and
13 electrical connections.
- 14 2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been
15 cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing
16 chemicals for water-treatment system.
- 17 3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the
18 preliminary phase of hydronic systems' startup procedures.
- 19 4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test
20 results are achieved.
- 21 5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for
22 each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- 23 6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping
24 until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed
25 before it has been tested and approved.
- 26 7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure,
27 without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and
28 allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute
29 defects.
- 30 8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- 31 C. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- 32 D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 33 E. At six-week intervals following Substantial Completion, perform separate water analyses on
34 hydronic systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality
35 within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water
36 analysis, advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to "Performance Requirements"
37 Article.
- 38 F. Comply with ASTM D3370 and with the following standards:
- 39 1. Silica: ASTM D859.
40 2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D1067.
41 3. Iron: ASTM D1068.



1 4. Water Hardness: ASTM D1126.

2 **3.5 MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

3 A. Scope of Maintenance Service: Provide chemicals and service program to maintain water
4 conditions required above, to inhibit corrosion and scale formation for hydronic piping and
5 equipment. Services and chemicals shall be provided for a period of one year from date of
6 Substantial Completion and shall include the following:

- 7 1. Initial water analysis and HVAC water-treatment recommendations.
8 2. Startup assistance for Contractor to flush the systems, clean with detergents, and initially
9 fill systems with required chemical treatment prior to operation.
10 3. Periodic field service and consultation.
11 4. Customer report charts and log sheets.
12 5. Laboratory technical analysis.
13 6. Analyses and reports of all chemical items concerning safety and compliance with
14 government regulations.

15 **3.6 DEMONSTRATION**

16 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to
17 adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.

18 **END OF SECTION 23 25 13**

19



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 29 23 - VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 4 A. Section includes separately enclosed, preassembled, combination VFCs, rated 600 V and less,
5 for speed control of three-phase, squirrel-cage induction motors.

6 **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- 7 A. CPT: Control power transformer.
- 8 B. DDC: Direct digital control.
- 9 C. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- 10 D. NC: Normally closed.
- 11 E. NO: Normally open.
- 12 F. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- 13 G. PID: Control action, proportional plus integral plus derivative.
- 14 H. VFC: Variable-frequency motor controller.

15 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 16 A. Product Data: For each type and rating of VFC indicated.
- 17 1. Include dimensions and finishes for VFCs.
- 18 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and
19 furnished specialties and accessories.
- 20 B. Shop Drawings: For each VFC indicated.
- 21 1. Include mounting and attachment details.
- 22 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
23 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
24 connection.
- 25 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

26 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 27 A. Product Certificates: For each VFC from manufacturer.



- 1 B. Field quality-control reports.
- 2 C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

3 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- 4 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VFCs to include in emergency, operation, and
5 maintenance manuals.

- 6 1. In addition to items specified in Division 01, include the following:

- 7 a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting thermal-magnetic
8 circuit breaker and motor-circuit protector trip settings.
- 9 b. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
- 10 c. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming
11 microprocessor control modules.
- 12 d. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable timers, controls, and
13 status and alarm points.

14 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- 15 A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective
16 covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- 17 1. Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no
18 fewer than three of each size and type.
- 19 2. Control Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but
20 no fewer than two of each size and type.
- 21 3. Indicating Lights: Two of each type and color installed.
- 22 4. Auxiliary Contacts: Furnish one spare(s) for each size and type of magnetic controller
23 installed.
- 24 5. Power Contacts: Furnish three spares for each size and type of magnetic contactor
25 installed.

26 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- 27 A. Store in space that is enclosed, air conditioned, and free of construction born debris and dust.
- 28 B. If stored in space that is not permanently enclosed and air conditioned, remove loose packing
29 and flammable materials from inside controllers and connect factory-installed space heaters to
30 temporary electrical service.
- 31 C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for VFCs,
32 including clearances between VFCs, and adjacent surfaces and other items.

33 1.8 WARRANTY

- 34 A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace VFCs that fail in materials or
35 workmanship within specified warranty period.



- 1 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

2 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

3 **2.1 VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS**

- 4 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated
5 on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- 6 1. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
7 2. Danfoss, Inc; VLT HVAC Drive FS 102 Series.
8 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
9 4. Yaskawa Electric America, Inc; HV600 Series.

10 **2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- 11 A. General Requirements for VFCs:

- 12 1. VFCs and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing
13 agency, and marked for intended location and application.
14 2. Comply with NEMA ICS 7, NEMA ICS 61800-2, and UL 508C.

- 15 B. Application: Variable torque.

- 16 C. VFC Description: Variable-frequency motor controller, consisting of power converter that
17 employs pulse-width-modulated inverter, factory built and tested in an enclosure, with integral
18 disconnecting means and overcurrent and overload protection; listed and labeled by an NRTL
19 as a complete unit; arranged to provide self-protection, protection, and variable-speed control of
20 one or more three-phase induction motors by adjusting output voltage and frequency.

- 21 1. Units suitable for operation of inverter-duty motors as defined by NEMA MG 1,
22 Section IV, Part 31, "Definite-Purpose Inverter-Fed Polyphase Motors."
23 2. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating by an NRTL
24 acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- 25 D. Design and Rating: Match load type, such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection
26 used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.

- 27 E. Output Rating: Three phase; 10 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout
28 voltage range; maximum voltage equals input voltage.

- 29 F. Pulse-Width-Modulated Inverter: 6-pulse, unless noted otherwise on Drawings.

- 30 G. Unit Operating Requirements:

- 31 1. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus 15 percent of VFC input voltage rating.
32 2. Input AC Voltage Unbalance: Not exceeding 5 percent.
33 3. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of VFC frequency rating.
34 4. Minimum Efficiency: 97 percent at 60 Hz, full load.



- 1 5. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 98 percent under any load or speed
 2 condition.
 3 6. Minimum Short-Circuit Current (Withstand) Rating: 100 kA.
 4 7. Ambient Temperature Rating: Not less than 32 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
 5 8. Ambient Storage Temperature Rating: Not less than minus 4 deg F and not exceeding
 6 140 deg F
 7 9. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
 8 10. Altitude Rating: Not exceeding 3300 feet.
 9 11. Vibration Withstand: Comply with NEMA ICS 61800-2.
 10 12. Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8
 11 times the base load current for three seconds.
 12 13. Starting Torque: Minimum 100 percent of rated torque from 3 to 60 Hz.
 13 14. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 0.1 percent.
 14 15. Output Carrier Frequency: Selectable; 0.5 to 15 kHz.
 15 16. Stop Modes: Programmable; includes fast, free-wheel, and dc injection braking.
- 16 H. Inverter Logic: Microprocessor based, 32 bit, isolated from all power circuits.
- 17 I. Isolated Control Interface: Allows VFCs to follow remote-control signal over a minimum 40:1
 18 speed range.
- 19 1. Signal: Electrical.
- 20 J. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:
- 21 1. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
 22 2. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
 23 3. Acceleration: 0.1 to 6,000 seconds.
 24 4. Deceleration: 0.1 to 6,000 seconds.
 25 5. Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.
- 26 K. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
- 27 1. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of the VFC, complying with
 28 UL 1449 SPD, Type 1 or Type 2.
 29 2. Loss of Input Signal Protection: Selectable response strategy, including speed default to
 30 a percent of the most recent speed, a preset speed, or stop; with alarm.
 31 3. Under- and overvoltage trips.
 32 4. Inverter overcurrent trips.
 33 5. VFC and Motor-Overload/Overtemperature Protection: Microprocessor-based thermal
 34 protection system for monitoring VFCs and motor thermal characteristics, and for
 35 providing VFC overtemperature and motor-overload alarm and trip; settings selectable
 36 via the keypad.
 37 6. Critical frequency rejection, with three selectable, adjustable deadbands.
 38 7. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
 39 8. Loss-of-phase protection.
 40 9. Reverse-phase protection.
 41 10. Short-circuit protection.
 42 11. Motor-overttemperature fault.
- 43 L. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempt three restarts after drive fault or on return of power after an
 44 interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction; adjustable delay time
 45 between restart attempts.



- 1 M. Bidirectional Autospeed Search: Capable of starting VFC into rotating loads spinning in either
2 direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without causing damage to drive,
3 motor, or load.
- 4 N. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the
5 minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.
- 6 O. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on
7 output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow
8 speeds.
- 9 P. Integral Input Disconnecting Means and OCPD: UL 489, instantaneous-trip circuit breaker with
10 pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.
- 11 1. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of NFPA 70 motor full-load current rating
12 or VFC input current rating, whichever is larger.
- 13 2. Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with circuit-breaker handle.
- 14 3. NC alarm contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.

15 2.3 CONTROLS AND INDICATION

- 16 A. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators displaying the following conditions:
- 17 1. Power on.
- 18 2. Run.
- 19 3. Overvoltage.
- 20 4. Line fault.
- 21 5. Overcurrent.
- 22 6. External fault.
- 23 B. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Manufacturer's standard front-accessible, sealed keypad and
24 plain-English-language digital display; allows complete programming, program copying,
25 operating, monitoring, and diagnostic capability.
- 26 1. Keypad: In addition to required programming and control keys, include keys for HAND,
27 OFF, and AUTO modes.
- 28 2. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and
29 password with at least three levels of access: View only; view and operate; and view,
30 operate, and service.
- 31 a. Control Authority: Supports at least four conditions: Off, local manual control at
32 VFC, local automatic control at VFC, and automatic control through a remote
33 source.
- 34 C. Historical Logging Information and Displays:
- 35 1. Real-time clock with current time and date.
- 36 2. Running log of total power versus time.
- 37 3. Total run time.
- 38 4. Fault log, maintaining last four faults with time and date stamp for each.
- 39 D. Indicating Devices: Digital display mounted flush in VFC door and connected to display VFC
40 parameters including, but not limited to:



- 1 1. Output frequency (Hz).
 - 2 2. Motor speed (rpm).
 - 3 3. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
 - 4 4. Motor current (amperes).
 - 5 5. Motor torque (percent).
 - 6 6. Fault or alarming status (code).
 - 7 7. PID feedback signal (percent).
 - 8 8. DC-link voltage (V dc).
 - 9 9. Set point frequency (Hz).
 - 10 10. Motor output voltage (V ac).
- 11 E. Control Signal Interfaces:
- 12 1. Electric Input Signal Interface:
 - 13 a. A minimum of two programmable analog inputs: 0- to 10-V dc or 4- to 20-mA dc.
 - 14 b. A minimum of six multifunction programmable digital inputs.
 - 15 2. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input
 - 16 signals from the DDC system for HVAC or other control systems:
 - 17 a. 0- to 10-V dc.
 - 18 b. 4- to 20-mA dc.
 - 19 c. Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
 - 20 3. Output Signal Interface: A minimum of two programmable analog output signal(s) (0- to
 - 21 10-V dc or 4- to 20-mA dc), which can be configured for any of the following:
 - 22 a. Output frequency (Hz).
 - 23 b. Output current (load).
 - 24 c. DC-link voltage (V dc).
 - 25 d. Motor torque (percent).
 - 26 e. Motor speed (rpm).
 - 27 f. Set point frequency (Hz).
 - 28 4. Remote Indication Interface: A minimum of three programmable dry-circuit relay outputs
 - 29 (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:
 - 30 a. Motor running.
 - 31 b. Set point speed reached.
 - 32 c. Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
 - 33 d. PID high- or low-speed limits reached.
- 34 F. PID Control Interface: Provides closed-loop set point, differential feedback control in response
 - 35 to dual feedback signals. Allows for closed-loop control of fans and pumps for pressure, flow, or
 - 36 temperature regulation.
 - 37 1. Number of Loops: One.

38 G. Interface with DDC System for HVAC: Factory-installed hardware and software shall interface

 - 39 with DDC system for HVAC to monitor, control, display, and record data for use in processing
 - 40 reports. VFC settings shall be retained within VFC's nonvolatile memory.
 - 41 1. Hardwired Points:



- 1 a. Monitoring: On-off status.
2 b. Control: On-off operation and speed operation.
- 3 2. Communication Interface: Comply with ASHRAE 135 and Modbus. Communication shall
4 interface with DDC system for HVAC to remotely control and monitor lighting from a DDC
5 system for HVAC operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed
6 locally at lighting panel shall be available through the DDC system for HVAC.
- 7 **2.4 LINE CONDITIONING AND FILTERING**
- 8 A. Input Line Conditioning (Harmonic Mitigation): As indicated on Drawings.
- 9 **2.5 BYPASS SYSTEMS**
- 10 A. Bypass Operation: Safely transfers motor between power converter output and bypass circuit,
11 manually, automatically, or both. Selector switches set modes and indicator lights indicate mode
12 selected. Unit is capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running) with motor
13 completely disconnected from power converter.
- 14 B. Bypass Mode:
- 15 1. Field-selectable automatic or manual, allows local and remote transfer between power
16 converter and bypass contactor and retransfer, either via manual operator interface or
17 automatic-control system feedback.
- 18 C. Bypass Controller:
- 19 1. Three-Contactor-Style Bypass: Three-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via
20 the power converter or the bypass controller; with input isolating switch and barrier
21 arranged to isolate the power converter input and output and permit safe testing and
22 troubleshooting of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is
23 operating in bypass mode.
- 24 a. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, NEMA-rated contactor.
25 b. Input and Output Isolating Contactors: Non-load-break, NEMA-rated contactors.
26 c. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and
27 permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and
28 de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-
29 mounted handle mechanism.
- 30 D. Bypass Contactor Configuration: Full-voltage (across-the-line) type.
- 31 1. NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch.
32 2. HAND/OFF/AUTO selector switch.
33 3. NORMAL/TEST Selector Switch: Allows testing and adjusting of VFC while the motor is
34 running in the bypass mode.
35 4. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors.
- 36 a. Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating,
37 manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.



- 1 1. Push Buttons: Covered.
- 2 2. Pilot Lights: Push to test.
- 3 3. Selector Switches: Rotary type.

- 4 B. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable solid-state time-delay relays.

- 5 C. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing
- 6 circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable
- 7 undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.

- 8 1. Current Transformers: Continuous current rating, basic impulse insulating level (BIL)
- 9 rating, burden, and accuracy class suitable for connected circuitry. Comply with
- 10 IEEE C57.13.

- 11 D. Supplemental Digital Meters:

- 12 1. Elapsed-time meter.
- 13 2. Kilowatt meter.
- 14 3. Kilowatt-hour meter.

15 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

16 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 17 A. Examine areas, surfaces, and substrates to receive VFCs, with Installer present, for compliance
- 18 with requirements for installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the
- 19 Work.

- 20 B. Examine VFC before installation. Reject VFCs that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold
- 21 damaged.

- 22 C. Examine roughing-in for conduit systems to verify actual locations of conduit connections before
- 23 VFC installation.

- 24 D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the
- 25 Work

- 26 E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

27 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- 28 A. Wall-Mounting Controllers: Install with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating
- 29 handles not higher than 79 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated, and by
- 30 bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For
- 31 controllers not on walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Division 26.

- 32 B. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and
- 33 temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

- 34 C. Install fuses in each fusible-switch VFC.



- 1 D. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed. Comply with requirements in Division 26.
- 2 E. Install heaters in thermal-overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load
- 3 amperes after motors are installed.
- 4 F. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven
- 5 equipment.
- 6 G. Comply with NECA 1.

7 **3.3 CONTROL WIRING INSTALLATION**

- 8 A. Install wiring between VFCs and remote devices. Comply with requirements in Division 25 and
- 9 Division 26.
- 10 B. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.
- 11 C. Connect selector switches and other automatic-control devices where applicable.
- 12 1. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic-control devices
- 13 that have no safety functions when switches are in manual-control position.
- 14 2. Connect selector switches with control circuit in both manual and automatic positions for
- 15 safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature
- 16 cutouts, and motor-overload protectors.

17 **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

- 18 A. Identify VFCs, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification
- 19 specified in Division 25 and Division 26.
- 20 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide
- 21 warning signs.
- 22 2. Label each VFC with engraved nameplate.
- 23 3. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.
- 24 B. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for VFCs, including control
- 25 sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished metal, and cover
- 26 instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of VFC units.

27 **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 28 A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- 29 B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and
- 30 inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- 31 C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
- 32 1. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, bus, component, connecting supply,
- 33 feeder, and control circuit.
- 34 2. Test continuity of each circuit.



- 1 D. Tests and Inspections:
- 2 1. Inspect VFC, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and
3 adjust controllers, components, and equipment.
- 4 2. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, component, connecting motor supply,
5 feeder, and control circuits.
- 6 3. Test continuity of each circuit.
- 7 4. Verify that voltages at VFC locations are within 10 percent of motor nameplate rated
8 voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify Engineer before starting the motor(s).
- 9 5. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
- 10 6. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate
11 compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- 12 7. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and
13 malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- 14 E. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- 15 F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies the VFC and
16 describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and
17 observations made after remedial action.
- 18 **3.6 STARTUP SERVICE**
- 19 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
- 20 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
21 2. Document all internal configurations and settings upon completion of startup and include
22 with startup report.
- 23 **3.7 ADJUSTING**
- 24 A. Program microprocessors for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event
25 recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to
26 Substantial Completion.
- 27 B. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay
28 pickup and trip ranges.
- 29 C. Adjust the trip settings of instantaneous-only circuit breakers and thermal-magnetic circuit
30 breakers with adjustable, instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to 6 times the motor
31 nameplate full-load amperes and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cool-
32 down between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until
33 motors start without tripping. Do not exceed 8 times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for
34 NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow
35 starting of a motor, notify Engineer before increasing settings.
- 36 D. Set the taps on reduced-voltage autotransformer controllers.
- 37 E. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges per coordination studies as specified in Division
38 26.
- 39 F. Set field-adjustable pressure switches.



1 **3.8 PROTECTION**

2 A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's
3 written instructions until controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.

4 B. Replace VFCs whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Substantial
5 Completion.

6 **3.9 DEMONSTRATION**

7 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to
8 adjust, operate, reprogram, and maintain VFCs.

9 **3.10 END OF SECTION 23 29 23**



1 **SECTION 23 31 13.11 - METAL DUCTS FOR GENERAL HVAC**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes duct services for supply, return, outdoor air, and general exhaust
8 (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2):

- 9 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
10 2. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
11 3. Double-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
12 4. Sheet metal materials.
13 5. Duct liner.
14 6. Sealants and gaskets.
15 7. Hangers and supports.

16 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

- 18 1. Liners and adhesives.
19 2. Sealants and gaskets.

- 20 B. Delegated-Design Submittal:

- 21 1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
22 2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
23 3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
24 4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

25 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 26 A. Coordination Drawings: Plans or BIM model, drawn to scale, on which the following items are
27 shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

- 28 1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction,
29 building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct
30 layout.
31 2. Suspended ceiling components.
32 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
33 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
34 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.



- 1 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
- 2 a. Luminaires (Lighting fixtures).
- 3 b. Air outlets and inlets.
- 4 c. Speakers.
- 5 d. Sprinklers.
- 6 e. Access panels.
- 7 f. Perimeter moldings.
- 8 g. Fire alarm devices.
- 9 h. Lighting control devices.

10 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

11 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 12 A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint
13 construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC
14 Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and with performance requirements and
15 design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- 16 B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads
17 and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct
18 Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible".
- 19 C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in
20 ASHRAE 62.1.
- 21 D. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and
22 Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Startup."
- 23 E. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 -
24 "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
- 25 F. Duct Dimensions: Unless otherwise indicated, all duct dimensions indicated on Drawings are
26 inside clear dimensions and do not include insulation or duct wall thickness.

27 **2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS**

- 28 A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction
29 Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise
30 indicated.
- 31 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
- 32 2. For ducts exposed to weather, comply with requirements per "Ductwork Exposed to
33 Weather" Article.
- 34 B. Transverse Joints: Fabricate joints in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction
35 Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-
36 pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and
37 other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."



- 1 1. For ducts with longest side less than 36 inches, select joint types in accordance with
2 Figure 2-1.
- 3 2. For ducts with longest side 36 inches or greater, use flange joint connector Type T-22, T-
4 24, T-24A, T-25a, or T-25b. Factory-fabricated flanged duct connection system may be
5 used if submitted and approved by engineer of record.
- 6 C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC
7 Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal
8 Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-
9 support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards -
10 Metal and Flexible." All longitudinal seams shall be Pittsburgh lock seams unless otherwise
11 specified for specific application.
- 12 D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types
13 and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and
14 Flexible," Ch. 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing
15 requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's
16 "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- 17 **2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS**
- 18 A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction
19 Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated
20 static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- 21 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
- 22 2. For ducts exposed to weather, comply with requirements per "Ductwork Exposed to
23 Weather" Article.
- 24 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide SEMCO,
25 LLC; SEMCO Single-Wall Round Duct & Fittings or a comparable product by one of the
26 following:
- 27 a. Crown Products Company, Inc.
- 28 b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
- 29 c. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
- 30 B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the
31 round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).
- 32 C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct
33 Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for
34 static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support
35 intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and
36 Flexible."
- 37 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- 38 D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC
39 Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal
40 Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-
41 support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards -
42 Metal and Flexible."



- 1 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal
2 seams.
- 3 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded
4 longitudinal seams.
- 5 E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct
6 Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and
7 Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials
8 involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction
9 Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- 10 **2.4 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS**
- 11 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide SEMCO, LLC;
12 SEMCO Double-Wall Round Duct & Fittings or comparable product by one of the following:
- 13 1. Lindab Inc.
- 14 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
- 15 3. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc
- 16 B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the
17 round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension) of the inner duct.
- 18 1. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and
19 Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless
20 otherwise indicated.
- 21 a. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
- 22 b. For ducts exposed to weather, comply with requirements per "Ductwork Exposed
23 to Weather" Article.
- 24 2. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC
25 Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse
26 Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved,
27 duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction
28 Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- 29 a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- 30 3. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's
31 "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct
32 Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials
33 involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct
34 Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- 35 a. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded
36 longitudinal seams.
- 37 b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-
38 welded longitudinal seams.



- 1 4. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC
2 Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and
3 Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing
4 requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in
5 SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- 6 C. Inner Duct: Minimum 24-gauge perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch-diameter
7 perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.
- 8 D. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C1071, NFPA 90A, or
9 NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
- 10 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean
11 temperature.
12 2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without
13 compressing insulation.
14 3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
- 15 E. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II
16 for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
- 17 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean
18 temperature.
- 19 **2.5 SHEET METAL MATERIALS**
- 20 A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards -
21 Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction
22 methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks,
23 roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- 24 B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
- 25 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
26 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- 27 C. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in
28 "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B,
29 No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- 30 D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and
31 galvanized.
- 32 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum
33 ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- 34 E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch-minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch-
35 minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.



1 **2.6 DUCT LINER**

2 A. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with
3 ASTM C534/C534M, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

4 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum
5 smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an
6 NRTL.

7 2. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with
8 NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

9 a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.

10 b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
11 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
12 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
13 Chambers."

14 B. Insulation Pins and Washers:

15 1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully
16 annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit
17 depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

18 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick
19 galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place,
20 but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

21 C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards -
22 Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

23 1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive
24 coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers
25 of duct liner is prohibited.

26 2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal
27 nosing.

28 3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.

29 4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-
30 edge overlapping.

31 5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts,
32 unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.

33 6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm or
34 greater.

35 7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not
36 exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not
37 exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.

38 8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that
39 have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge
40 facings at the following locations:

41 a. Fan discharges.

42 b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.

43 c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than
44 2500 fpm or where indicated.



- 1 9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as
 2 specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform
 3 distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
- 4 a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area
 5 of 23 percent.
- 6 10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning
 7 vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other
 8 buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts,
 9 screws, rivets, or welds.
- 10 **2.7 SEALANT AND GASKETS**
- 11 A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and
 12 gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index
 13 of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- 14 B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
- 15 1. Application Method: Brush on.
 16 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
 17 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
 18 4. Water resistant.
 19 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 20 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
 21 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
 22 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 23 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless
 24 steel, or aluminum sheets.
- 25 C. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
- 26 1. Application Method: Brush on.
 27 2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
 28 3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
 29 4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
 30 5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
 31 6. Water resistant.
 32 7. Mold and mildew resistant.
 33 8. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
 34 9. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
 35 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
 36 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
 37 Chambers."
 38 10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
 39 11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 40 12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless
 41 steel, or aluminum sheets.
- 42 D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C920.
- 43 1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.



- 1 2. Type: S.
 2 3. Grade: NS.
 3 4. Class: 25.
 4 5. Use: O.
 5 6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
 6 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California
 7 Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of
 8 Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental
 9 Chambers."
- 10 E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- 11 F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
- 12 1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be
 13 rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
 14 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
 15 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings
 16 and fitting spigots.
- 17 **2.8 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**
- 18 A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Galvanized-steel rods and nuts.
- 19 B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods
 20 with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- 21 C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and
 22 Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum
 23 Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- 24 D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A603.
- 25 E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A492.
- 26 F. Steel Cable End Connections: Galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts
 27 designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- 28 G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible
 29 with duct materials.
- 30 H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
- 31 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

32 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

33 **3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION**

- 34 A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct
 35 system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and



- 1 calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations.
 2 Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings
 3 and coordination drawings.
- 4 B. Install ducts in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and
 5 Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- 6 C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths with fewest possible joints.
- 7 D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for
 8 branch connections.
- 9 E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and
 10 perpendicular to building lines.
- 11 F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent
 12 enclosure elements of building.
- 13 G. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- 14 H. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and
 15 enclosures.
- 16 I. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed
 17 to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal
 18 flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2
 19 inches.
- 20 J. Install fire, combination fire/smoke, and smoke dampers where indicated on Drawings and as
 21 required by code, and by local authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with requirements in
 22 Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and specific installation
 23 requirements of the damper UL listing.
- 24 K. Install heating coils, cooling coils, air filters, dampers, and all other duct-mounted accessories in
 25 air ducts where indicated on Drawings.
- 26 L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials
 27 both before and after installation.
- 28 M. Elbows: Use long-radius elbows wherever they fit.
- 29 1. Fabricate 90-degree rectangular mitered elbows to include turning vanes.
 30 2. Fabricate 90-degree round elbows with a minimum of three segments for 12 inches and
 31 smaller and a minimum of five segments for 14 inches and larger.
- 32 N. Branch Connections: Use lateral or conical branch connections.
- 33 **3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK**
- 34 A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- 35 B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use
 36 two-part tape sealing system.



- 1 C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When
 2 welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds,
 3 and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- 4 D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in arrangement and fabrication of fittings,
 5 hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- 6 E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these
 7 requirements.

8 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- 9 A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct
 10 Schedule" Article in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal
 11 and Flexible."
- 12 B. Seal ducts to Seal Class A in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards
 13 - Metal and Flexible":

14 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- 15 A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5,
 16 "Hangers and Supports."
- 17 B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners
 18 appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
- 19 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 20 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 21 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for
 22 slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 23 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for
 24 slabs less than 4 inches thick.
 25 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- 26 C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and
 27 Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum
 28 Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports
 29 within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- 30 D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- 31 E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds,
 32 bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16
 33 feet.
- 34 F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out,
 35 tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where
 36 used.



1 **3.5 CONNECTIONS**

- 2 A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 23 33 00 "Air
3 Duct Accessories."
4 B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch,
5 outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

6 **3.6 PAINTING**

- 7 A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have
8 duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer.

9 **3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 10 A. Perform tests and inspections.
- 11 B. Leakage Tests:
- 12 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for
13 each test.
14 2. Test the following systems:
- 15 a. Ducts with a Pressure Class of 3-Inch wg: Test representative duct
16 sections, selected by Engineer from sections installed, totaling no less than 25
17 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
- 18 3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage
19 testing and for compliance with test requirements.
- 20 4. Testing of each duct section is to be performed with access doors, coils, filters, dampers,
21 and other duct-mounted devices in place as designed. No devices are to be removed or
22 blanked off so as to reduce or prevent additional leakage.
- 23 5. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
- 24 6. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section
25 being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system
26 design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
27 7. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- 28 C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
- 29 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
- 30 2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness in
31 accordance with "Description of Method 3 - NADCA Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR,
32 "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
- 33 a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media
34 shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- 35 D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- 36 E. Prepare test and inspection reports.



1 **3.8 STARTUP**

- 2 A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 93 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing
3 for HVAC."

4 **3.9 DUCT SCHEDULE**

- 5 A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:

- 6 1. Fabricate all ducts to achieve SMACNA pressure class, seal class, and leakage class as
7 indicated below.

- 8 B. Supply Ducts:

- 9 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Blower Coil Units, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

- 10 a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.

- 11 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- 12 a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.

- 13 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

- 14 a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.

- 15 C. Return Ducts:

- 16 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

- 17 a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.

- 18 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- 19 a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.

- 20 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed above:

- 21 a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.

- 22 D. Exhaust Ducts:

- 23 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:

- 24 a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.

- 25 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- 26 a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.

- 27 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed above:



- 1 a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- 2 E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
- 3 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
- 4 a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- 5 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
- 6 a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- 7 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
- 8 a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- 9 F. Liner:
- 10 1. Return- and Exhaust-Fan Plenums: Flexible elastomeric, 2 inches thick.
- 11 2. Transfer Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch(es thick.
- 12 G. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:
- 13 1. Supply-Air Ducts: 2 inch(es thick.
- 14 2. Return-Air Ducts: 2 inch(es thick.
- 15 H. Elbow Configuration:
- 16 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal
- 17 and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
- 18 a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
- 19 b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
- 20 c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct
- 21 Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane
- 22 Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- 23 1) Mitered elbows are not permitted in Noise Critical Spaces.
- 24 2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and
- 25 Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
- 26 a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's
- 27 "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered
- 28 Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately
- 29 fewer segments.
- 30 b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
- 31 c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Welded.
- 32 I. Branch Configuration:
- 33 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal
- 34 and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."



- 1 a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
- 2 b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: 45-degree entry.
- 3 2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards -
- 4 Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical
- 5 Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
- 6 a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: Conical tap.
- 7 b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
- 8 c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

9 **END OF SECTION 23 31 13.11**
10



1 **SECTION 23 33 00 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
9 2. Manual volume dampers.
10 3. Control dampers.
11 4. Fire dampers.
12 5. Smoke dampers.
13 6. Flange connectors.
14 7. Turning vanes.
15 8. Duct-mounted access doors.
16 9. Flexible connectors.
17 10. Duct accessory hardware.

18 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 19 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 20 1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include
21 breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.

22 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 23 A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted
24 access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and
25 coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.

26 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 27 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and
28 maintenance manuals.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION**

3 A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with
4 NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

5 B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for
6 acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise
7 indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains,
8 discolorations, and other imperfections.

9 **2.2 MATERIALS**

10 A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.

- 11 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
12 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

13 B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2D finish
14 for concealed ducts and No. 2B finish for exposed ducts.

15 C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for
16 concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

17 D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.

18 E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on
19 galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

20 F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch
21 minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

22 **2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS**

23 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ruskin Company;
24 CBD4 or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 25 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
26 2. Nailor Industries Inc.

27 B. Description: Gravity balanced with adjustable counterweights.

28 C. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm.

29 D. Maximum System Pressure: 3-inch wg.

30 E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.063-inch-thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners or mechanically
31 attached.



- 1 F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, end pivoted, maximum 6-inch width, 0.063-inch-thick
2 extruded aluminum with sealed edges.
- 3 G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- 4 H. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked.
- 5 I. Blade Axles:
- 6 1. Material: Nonmetallic.
7 2. Diameter: 0.50 inch.
- 8 J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- 9 K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- 10 L. Bearings: Steel ball.
- 11 M. Accessories:
- 12 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure between 0.01-
13 inch wg and 0.05-inch wg.
14 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
15 3. 90-degree stops.

16 2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- 17 A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
- 18 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ruskin
19 Company; MD35 (rectangular) and MDRS25 (round) or a comparable product by one of
20 the following:
- 21 a. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
22 b. Nailor Industries Inc.
- 23 2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
24 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
25 4. Frames:
- 26 a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.064-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
27 b. Mitered and welded corners.
28 c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
- 29 5. Blades:
- 30 a. Multiple or single blade.
31 b. Opposed-blade design.
32 c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
33 d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
- 34 6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.



- 1 7. Bearings:
- 2 a. Molded synthetic.
- 3 b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full
- 4 length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- 5 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- 6 B. Jackshaft:
- 7 1. Size: 1-inch diameter.
- 8 2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on
- 9 supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
- 10 3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in
- 11 multiple-damper assembly.
- 12 C. Damper Hardware:
- 13 1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel,
- 14 and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
- 15 2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
- 16 3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.
- 17 **2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS**
- 18 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ruskin Company;
- 19 CD60 or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 20 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
- 21 2. Nailor Industries Inc.
- 22 B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal
- 23 for both air performance and air leakage.
- 24 C. Frames:
- 25 1. Hat shaped.
- 26 2. 0.064-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
- 27 3. Mitered and welded corners.
- 28 D. Blades:
- 29 1. Multiple airfoil-shaped blades with maximum blade width of 6 inches.
- 30 2. Opposed-blade design.
- 31 3. Galvanized-steel.
- 32 4. 0.0747-inch-thick dual skin.
- 33 5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
- 34 6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
- 35 E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch-diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel
- 36 and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.



- 1 1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- 2 F. Bearings:
- 3 1. Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve.
- 4 2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length
- 5 of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- 6 3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
- 7 G. Damper Operators: Comply with requirements in Section 25 09 23.12 "Control Damper
- 8 Accessories."

9 **2.6 FIRE DAMPERS**

- 10 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ruskin Company;
- 11 DFD35 or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 12 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
- 13 2. Nailor Industries Inc.
- 14 B. Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.
- 15 C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.
- 16 D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- 17 E. Frame:: Multiple-blade type; fabricated with roll-formed galvanized steel; with mitered and
- 18 interlocking corners; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- 19 F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel; gauge in accordance with
- 20 UL listing.
- 21 G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- 22 H. Blades: galvanized sheet steel, triple vee-groove; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- 23 I. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.
- 24 J. Heat-Responsive Device: , replaceable link and switch package, factory installed, 165 deg F
- 25 rated.

26 **2.7 SMOKE DAMPERS**

- 27 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ruskin Company;
- 28 SD60 or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 29 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
- 30 2. Nailor Industries Inc.
- 31 B. General Requirements: Label according to UL 555S by an NRTL.



- 1 C. Smoke Detector: Furnished by Division 29.
- 2 D. Frame: Hat-shaped, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners and mounting flange; gauge in
3 accordance with UL listing.
- 4 E. Blades: Roll-formed Opposed blade, airfoil-shaped, horizontal, overlapping, galvanized sheet
5 steel; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- 6 F. Leakage: Class I.
- 7 G. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.
- 8 H. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor
9 application; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- 10 I. Damper Operators: Comply with requirements in Section 25 09 23.12 "Control Damper
11 Accessories."
- 12 J. Damper Motors: Modulating or two-position action.
- 13 K. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and
14 efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements
15 for HVAC Equipment."
- 16 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will
17 not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- 18 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical
19 devices and connections specified Division 25.
- 20 3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear
21 trains.
- 22 4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated.
23 Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or
24 adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating
25 of 150 in. x lbf.
- 26 5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed
27 to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal
28 operation at minus 40 deg F.
- 29 6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running
30 torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
- 31 7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.
- 32 L. Accessories:
- 33 1. Auxiliary switches for position indication.
- 34 2. Test and reset switches, mounted.

35 2.8 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- 36 A. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors,
37 gaskets, and components.
- 38 B. Material: Galvanized steel.



1 C. Gauge and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2 **2.9 TURNING VANES**

3 A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support
4 with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

5 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated
6 faces and fibrous-glass fill.

7 B. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal
8 and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

9 C. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger
10 dimensions.

11 **2.10 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS**

12 A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct
13 Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels,"
14 and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."

15 1. Door:

16 a. Double wall, rectangular.

17 b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct
18 pressure class.

19 c. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.

20 d. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.

21 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.

22 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:

23 a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.

24 b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.

25 c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression
26 latches with outside and inside handles.

27 d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Four hinges and two compression
28 latches with outside and inside handles.

29 **2.11 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES**

30 A. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.

31 B. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0428-inch stainless steel.

32 C. Fasteners: Stainless steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.

33 D. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum
34 2000 deg F.



1 E. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

2 **2.12 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS**

3 A. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.

4 B. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

5 C. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 5-3/4 inches wide attached to
6 two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick
7 aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

8 D. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.

9 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..

10 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.

11 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

12 E. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof,
13 synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

14 1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..

15 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.

16 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

17 **2.13 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE**

18 A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and
19 gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit
20 duct-insulation thickness.

21 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

22 **3.1 COORDINATION OF WORK WITH OTHER TRADES**

23 A. Smoke Dampers and Combination Fire and Smoke Dampers:

24 1. Damper furnished and installed by Division 23.

25 2. Damper actuator furnished and installed by Division 23.

26 3. Electrical power for damper actuator furnished and installed by Division 26.

27 4. Smoke detector furnished by Division 29.

28 5. Smoke detector installed in ductwork by Division 23.

29 6. Control and/or signal wiring for smoke detector and damper actuator furnished and
30 installed by Division 29.

31 B. Control Dampers:

32 1. Damper furnished and installed by Division 23.

33 2. Damper actuator furnished and installed by Division 25.



1 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- 2 A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction
3 Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct
4 Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- 5 B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories
6 in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts,
7 and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- 8 C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to
9 exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- 10 D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches
11 extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install
12 dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat
13 channel.
- 14 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
15 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- 16 E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- 17 F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- 18 G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
- 19 H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining
20 accessories and equipment at the following locations:
- 21 1. On both sides of duct coils.
22 2. Upstream from duct filters.
23 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
24 4. At drain pans and seals.
25 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and
26 equipment.
27 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links.
28 Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure
29 relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream
30 from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from
31 dampers.
32 7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
33 8. Downstream of air terminal units with reheat coils.
34 9. Control devices requiring inspection.
35 10. Elsewhere as indicated.
- 36 I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- 37 J. Access Door Sizes:
- 38 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
39 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
40 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
41 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.



- 1 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
 2 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- 3 K. Label access doors according to Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and
 4 Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- 5 L. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- 6 M. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with
 7 loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- 8 N. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

9 **FLEXIBLE CONNECTOR SCHEDULE**

- 10 O. Indoor equipment, non-corrosive environment with airstream not in excess of 200 deg F: Indoor
 11 system, flexible connector fabric.
- 12 P. Outdoor equipment, non-corrosive environment with airstream not in excess of 200 deg F:
 13 Outdoor system, flexible connector fabric.

14 **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 15 A. Tests and Inspections:
- 16 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
 17 2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be
 18 performed.
 19 3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of
 20 movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
 21 4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
 22 5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and
 23 damper.

24 **END OF SECTION 23 33 00**



1 **SECTION 23 33 46 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
- 8 1. Insulated flexible ducts.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

11 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

12 **2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION**

- 13 A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with
14 NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- 15 B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for
16 acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise
17 indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains,
18 discolorations, and other imperfections.
- 19 C. Comply with the Air Diffusion Council's "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1."
- 20 D. Comply with ASTM E96/E96M, "Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials."

21 **2.2 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS**

- 22 A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- 23 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc; 1M.
24 2. JP Lamborn Co.; AMR.
25 3. Thermafex; a Flex-Tek Group company; M-KE.
26 4. Atco; UPC 036.



- 1 B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, two-ply vinyl film or polyethylene fabric supported by
 2 helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
- 3 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 4 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 5 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
 6 4. Insulation R-Value: R6.

7 2.3 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- 8 A. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear
 9 action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

10 PART 3 - EXECUTION

11 3.1 INSTALLATION

- 12 A. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction
 13 Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct
 14 Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- 15 B. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.
- 16 C. Connect terminal units to supply ducts with maximum 24-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not
 17 use flexible ducts to change directions.
- 18 D. Connect diffusers to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped
 19 in place.
- 20 E. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- 21 F. Installation:
- 22 1. Install ducts fully extended.
 23 2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
 24 3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
 25 4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
 26 5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.
- 27 G. Supporting Flexible Ducts:
- 28 1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches wide or wider and spaced a maximum of
 29 48 inches apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch per
 30 12 inches.
 31 2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line
 32 of the bend.
 33 3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not
 34 exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 35 4. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches
 36 o.c.



1 **END OF SECTION 23 33 46**
2



1 THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 34 23.13 - CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Centrifugal ventilators - roof upblast.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 11 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and
12 profiles, and finishes for fans.
- 13 2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- 14 3. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
- 15 4. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
- 16 5. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
- 17 6. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
- 18 7. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
- 19 8. Prefabricated roof curbs.
- 20 9. Fan speed controllers.

21 **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 22 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC power ventilators to include in normal and
23 emergency operation, and maintenance manuals.

24 **1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- 25 A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are
26 packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- 27 1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 CENTRIFUGAL VENTILATORS - ROOF UPBLAST**

- 3 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated
 4 on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- 5 1. Carnes Company.
- 6 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
- 7 3. Loren Cook Company.
- 8 4. PennBarry.
- 9 B. Housing: Removable spun-aluminum dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece aluminum
 10 base with venturi inlet cone.
- 11 1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward,
 12 with rain and snow drains.
- 13 C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- 14 D. Belt Drives:
- 15 1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
- 16 2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
- 17 3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings;
 18 minimum ABMA9, L(10) of 100,000 hours.
- 19 4. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at
 20 factory.
- 21 5. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch
 22 adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed
 23 pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp.
- 24 6. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- 25 E. Accessories:
- 26 1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan
 27 housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
- 28 2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch (13-mm) mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
- 29 3. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base;
 30 factory set to close when fan stops.
- 31 4. Spark-resistant, all-aluminum wheel construction.
- 32 5. Extended Lubrication Lines.



- 1
- 2 A. Wind Rating: High wind rated with Florida Product Approval number and Miami-Dade NOA
3 number.
- 4 B. Prefabricated Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-)
5 thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch (40-mm) wood nailer.
6 Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
- 7 1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange.
- 8 2. Overall Height: 24 inches (600 mm).
- 9 3. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
- 10 4. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.

11 2.2 MOTORS

- 12 A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements
13 for motors specified in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
- 14 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will
15 not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

16 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- 17 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
18 by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- 19 B. AMCA Certification: Fans shall comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings
20 Seal.
- 21 C. Fan Sound Ratings: Comply with AMCA 311, and label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings
22 Seal. Sound ratings shall comply with AMCA 301. The fans shall be tested according to
23 AMCA 300.
- 24 D. Fan Performance Ratings: Comply with AMCA 211 and label fans with AMCA-Certified Rating
25 Seal. The fans shall be tested for air performance - flow rate, fan pressure, power, fan
26 efficiency, air density, speed of rotation, and fan efficiency - according to
27 AMCA 210/ASHRAE 51.
- 28 E. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.
- 29 F. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for
30 restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

31 PART 3 - EXECUTION

32 3.1 INSTALLATION OF HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

- 33 A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.



- 1 B. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with zinc-plated hardware. See Division 07 for
2 installation of roof curbs.
- 3 C. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- 4 D. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC
5 Piping and Equipment."
- 6 **3.2 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS**
- 7 A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct
8 connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 23 33 00 "Air
9 Duct Accessories."
- 10 **3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS**
- 11 A. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and
12 Cables."
- 13 B. Ground equipment according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical
14 Systems."
- 15 C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to
16 NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- 17 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in
18 Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 19 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background
20 and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.
- 21 **3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS**
- 22 A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- 23 B. Connect control wiring according to Section 25 05 23 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- 24 **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**
- 25 A. Perform tests and inspections.
- 26 B. Tests and Inspections:
- 27 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
- 28 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to
29 ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload
30 protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
- 31 3. Verify that there is adequate maintenance and access space.
- 32 4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.



- 1 5. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan
2 wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and
3 adjust belts, and install belt guards.
- 4 6. Adjust belt tension.
- 5 7. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- 6 8. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
- 7 9. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in
8 connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
- 9 10. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to
10 indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
- 11 11. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
- 12 12. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- 13 C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Controls and equipment will be considered defective if
14 they do not pass tests and inspections.
- 15 D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 16 **3.6 ADJUSTING**
- 17 A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- 18 B. Adjust belt tension.
- 19 C. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 93 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for
20 testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- 21 D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- 22 E. Lubricate bearings.
- 23 **3.7 DEMONSTRATION**
- 24 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

25 **END OF SECTION 23 34 23.13**

26



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 35 00 - ROOF ACCESSORIES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Roof curbs.

9 **1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 10 A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist
11 thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to
12 defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

13 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 14 A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory indicated. Include construction details, material
15 descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

- 16 B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments
17 to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant-
18 and field-assembled work.

19 **1.5 COORDINATION**

- 20 A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing
21 and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leak-proof, weather-tight, secure, and
22 noncorrosive installation.

- 23 B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be
24 supported.

25 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

26 **2.1 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- 27 A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other
28 miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.



- 1 B. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 726, thickness as indicated.
- 2 C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for
3 aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, containing no arsenic or
4 chromium, and complying with AWPA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.
- 5 D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- 6 E. Underlayment:
- 7 1. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, non-perforated.
8 2. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil-thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.
9 3. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3-lb/100 sq. ft. minimum, rosin sized.
- 10 F. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and
11 metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened.
12 Provide non-removable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following
13 unless otherwise indicated:
- 14 1. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless
15 steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
16 2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
17 3. Fasteners for Copper Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze, or passivated Series 300
18 stainless steel.
19 4. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- 20 G. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or
21 silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- 22 H. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant as recommended by
23 roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and
24 use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.
- 25 I. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

26 2.2 ROOF CURBS

- 27 A. Roof Curbs: Internally reinforced roof-curb units capable of supporting superimposed live and
28 dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings; with
29 welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, integral metal cant, and integrally
30 formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
- 31 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
32 following :
- 33 a. AES Industries, Inc.
34 b. Milcor Inc.; Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
35 c. Pate Company (The).
36 d. Thybar Corporation.
- 37 B. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be
38 supported.



- 1 C. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.052 inch thick.
- 2 1. Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- 3 D. Construction:
- 4 1. Insulation: Factory insulated with 1-1/2-inch-3-inch-thick glass-fiber board insulation.
- 5 2. Liner: Same material as curb, of manufacturer's standard thickness and finish.
- 6 3. Factory-installed wood nailer at top of curb, continuous around curb perimeter.
- 7 4. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom to
- 8 conform to roof profile.
- 9 5. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 24 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- 10 6. Top Surface: Level around perimeter with roof slope accommodated by sloping the deck-
- 11 mounting flange.
- 12 7. Sloping Roofs: Where roof slope exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb with perimeter curb height
- 13 tapered to accommodate roof slope so that top surface of perimeter curb is level. Equip
- 14 unit with water diverter or cricket on side that obstructs water flow.

15 2.3 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- 16 A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for
- 17 recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- 18 B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable.
- 19 Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of
- 20 approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

21 PART 3 - EXECUTION

22 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 23 A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations,
- 24 dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 25 B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- 26 C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- 27 D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

28 3.2 INSTALLATION

- 29 A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 30 1. Install roof accessories level, plumb, true to line and elevation, and without warping, jogs
- 31 in alignment, excessive oil canning, buckling, or tool marks.
- 32 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated
- 33 loads.
- 34 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to
- 35 complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.



- 1 4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or
2 loosening of fasteners and seals.
- 3 B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from
4 contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with
5 bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
- 6 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof accessories with bituminous coating
7 where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
8 2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood
9 substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet, or install a
10 course of polyethylene sheet.
11 3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of
12 roof accessories for waterproof performance.
- 13 C. Roof Curb Installation: Install each roof curb so top surface is level.
- 14 D. Seal joints with elastomeric sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.
- 15 **3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING**
- 16 A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair
17 galvanizing according to ASTM A 780.
- 18 B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to
19 Division 09.
- 20 C. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 21 D. Clean off excess sealants.
- 22 E. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by
23 finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- 24 **END OF SECTION 23 35 00**



1 **SECTION 23 36 00 - AIR TERMINAL UNITS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
- 8 1. Shutoff, single-duct air terminal units.
9 2. Casing liner.

10 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 11 A. Product Data: For each type of air terminal unit.
- 12 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components
13 and profiles, and finishes for air terminal units.
14 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and
15 furnished specialties and accessories.

16 **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and
18 maintenance manuals.

19 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

20 **2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- 21 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
22 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 23 B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and
24 Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- 25 C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, "Section 6 - Heating,
26 Ventilating, and Air Conditioning."



1 **2.2 SHUTOFF, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS**

2 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
3 following:

- 4 1. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
5 2. ENVIRO-TEC; by Johnson Controls, Inc.
6 3. METALAIRE, Inc.
7 4. Price Industries.
8 5. Titus.
9 6. Trane.

10 B. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a
11 protective metal shroud.

12 C. Casing: 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel, single wall.

- 13 1. Casing Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article for flexible elastomeric
14 duct liner.
15 2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
16 3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.
17 4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or
18 maintenance; with airtight gasket.
19 5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with
20 requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

21 D. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.

- 22 1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg
23 inlet static pressure.

24 E. Velocity Sensors: Multi-point, multi-axis flow ring or cross sensor in air inlet. Single point or flow
25 bar sensors are not acceptable. Sensor shall be capable of maintaining airflow to within plus or
26 minus 5 percent of rated unit airflow setpoint with 1.5 duct diameters straight duct upstream from
27 the unit.

28 F. Hydronic Heating Coils: Minimum of two rows. Copper tube, with mechanically bonded
29 aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch, and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200
30 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and
31 drain valve.

32 G. Factory-Mounted and -Wired Controls: Electrical components mounted in control box with
33 removable cover. Incorporate single-point electrical connection to power source.

- 34 1. Control Transformer: Factory mounted for control voltage on electric and electronic
35 control units with terminal strip in control box for field wiring of thermostat and power
36 source.
37 2. Wiring Terminations: Fan and controls to terminal strip. Terminal lugs to match quantities,
38 sizes, and materials of branch-circuit conductors. Enclose terminal lugs in terminal box
39 that is sized according to NFPA 70.
40 3. Disconnect Switch: Factory-mounted, fuse type.
41 4. Damper actuator, differential pressure transmitter, transformer, and microprocessor-
42 based application specific controller shall be provided by the Division 25 contractor to the
43 air terminal unit manufacturer for factory installation prior to shipment to the project.



1 H. Control Panel Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, with access panel sealed from airflow and
2 mounted on side of unit.

3 I. Control devices shall be compatible with temperature controls system specified in Division 25.

4 **2.3 CASING LINER**

5 A. Casing Liner: Flexible elastomeric duct liner fabricated of preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet
6 materials complying with ASTM C534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

7 1. Minimum Thickness: 1/2 inch.

8 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum
9 smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

10 3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with
11 NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

12 a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.

13 **2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

14 A. Factory Tests: Test assembled air terminal units according to AHRI 880.

15 1. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum
16 factory-set airflows, coil type, and AHRI certification seal.

17 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

18 **3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

19 A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 5,
20 "Hangers and Supports" and with Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping
21 and Equipment."

22 B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners
23 appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.

24 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.

25 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.

26 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes and
27 for slabs more than 4 inches thick.

28 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes and
29 for slabs less than 4 inches thick.

30 C. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

31 D. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out,
32 tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where
33 used.



1 **3.2 TERMINAL UNIT INSTALLATION**

- 2 A. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air
3 Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."
- 4 B. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and
5 maintenance.

6 **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- 7 A. Where installing piping adjacent to air terminal unit, allow space for service and maintenance.
- 8 B. Hot-Water Piping: Comply with requirements in Section 23 21 13.12 "Aboveground Metal
9 Hydronic Piping" and Section 23 21 16 Hydronic Piping Specialties," and connect heating coils
10 to supply with shutoff valve, strainer, control valve, and union or flange; and to return with
11 balancing valve and union or flange.
- 12 C. Comply with requirements in Section 23 31 13.11 "Metal Ducts for General HVAC", 233113.13
13 "Metal Ducts for Laboratory Exhaust", and Section 23 31 16 "Nonmetal Ducts" for connecting
14 ducts to air terminal units.
- 15 D. Make connections to fan-powered air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with
16 requirements in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."

17 **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

- 18 A. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, and maximum and minimum
19 factory-set airflows. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC
20 Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

21 **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 22 A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
- 23 1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for
24 compliance with requirements.
- 25 2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until
26 no leaks exist.
- 27 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm
28 proper motor rotation and unit operation.
- 29 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
30 equipment.
- 31 B. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- 32 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

33 **3.6 STARTUP SERVICE**

- 34 A. Perform startup service.



- 1 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2 2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer
- 3 to achieve proper performance.
- 4 3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
- 5 4. Verify that control connections are complete.
- 6 5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
- 7 6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

8 **3.7 DEMONSTRATION**

- 9 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

10 **END OF SECTION 23 36 00**

11



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 37 13.13 - AIR DIFFUSERS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
9 2. Linear slot diffusers.
10 3. Ceiling-integral continuous slot diffusers.

- 11 B. Related Requirements:

- 12 1. Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control
13 dampers not integral to diffusers.
14 2. Section 23 37 13.23 "Air Registers and Grilles" for adjustable-bar register and grilles,
15 fixed-face registers and grilles, and linear bar grilles.
16 3. Section 23 37 13.43 "Security Registers and Grilles" for security registers and security
17 grilles.
18 4. Section 23 37 16 "Fabric Air-Diffusion Devices" for continuous tubular diffusers.

19 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 20 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 21 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and
22 performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
23 2. Diffuser Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number,
24 size, and accessories furnished.

25 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

26 **2.1 RECTANGULAR AND SQUARE CEILING DIFFUSERS**

- 27 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Price Industries;
28 SCD or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 29 1. Carnes Company.
30 2. METALAIRE, Inc.
31 3. Nailor Industries Inc.



- 1 4. Titus.
 2 5. Tuttle & Bailey.
- 3 B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- 4 C. Material: Steel.
- 5 D. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- 6 E. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches.
- 7 F. Face Style: 3-Cone.
- 8 G. Pattern: Adjustable.
- 9 H. Dampers: Radial opposed blade, where indicated on Plans.
- 10 I. Insulation: Factory applied, foil faced, R-6 insulation formed to fit contour of diffuser back,
 11 continuously glued and sealed around perimeter of outer cone to form vapor seal.

12 **2.2 LINEAR SLOT DIFFUSERS**

- 13 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Price Industries;
 14 TBD3 (supply), Price TBR (return) or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 15 1. Carnes Company.
 16 2. METALAIRE, Inc.
 17 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
 18 4. Titus.
 19 5. Tuttle & Bailey.
- 20 B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- 21 C. Material - Shell: Aluminum, insulated.
- 22 D. Material - Pattern Controller and Tees: Aluminum.
- 23 E. Finish - Face and Shell: Baked enamel, black.
- 24 F. Finish - Pattern Controller: Baked enamel, black.
- 25 G. Finish - Tees: Baked enamel, white.
- 26 H. Slot Width: As indicated on plans.
- 27 I. Number of Slots: As indicated on plans .
- 28 J. Insulation: Factory applied, foil faced, R-6 insulation formed to fit contour of diffuser back,
 29 continuously glued and sealed around perimeter of outer cone to form vapor seal.



1 **2.3 CEILING-INTEGRAL CONTINUOUS DIFFUSERS**

2 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Price Industries; AS
3 or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 4 1. Carnes Company.
5 2. METALAIRE, Inc.
6 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
7 4. Titus.
8 5. Tuttle & Bailey.

9 B. Slot Width: As indicated on plans.

10 C. Straight and curved sections as required to accommodate layout.

11 D. Mitered tees and corners.

12 E. Material: Aluminum, extruded, heavy wall.

13 F. Finishes:

- 14 1. Exterior: Standard white.
15 2. Interior: Standard black.

16 G. Throw: High.

17 H. Plenum: Insulated.

18 I. Other Features:

- 19 1. Painted interior.
20 2. Blank-offs.
21 3. Insulated light shield on return slots.

22 **2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

23 A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for
24 Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

25 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

26 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

27 A. Examine areas where diffusers are installed for compliance with requirements for installation
28 tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.

29 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



1 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

2 A. Install diffusers level and plumb.

3 B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings,
4 and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design
5 requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final
6 locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels,
7 locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with
8 installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

9 C. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of
10 dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

11 **3.3 ADJUSTING**

12 A. After installation, adjust diffusers to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air
13 balancing.

14 **END OF SECTION 23 37 13.13**



1 **SECTION 23 37 13.23 - REGISTERS AND GRILLES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Adjustable blade face registers and grilles.
9 2. Fixed face registers and grilles.
10 3. Linear bar grilles.

- 11 B. Related Requirements:

- 12 1. Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control
13 dampers not integral to registers and grilles.
14 2. Section 23 37 13.13 "Air Diffusers" for various types of air diffusers.
15 3. Section 23 37 13.43 "Security Registers and Grilles" for security registers and security
16 grilles.
17 4. Section 23 37 16 "Fabric Air-Diffusion Devices" for continuous tubular diffusers.

18 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 19 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 20 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and
21 performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.

22 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

23 **2.1 REGISTERS**

- 24 A. Fixed Face Register:

- 25 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Price
26 Industries; 630 (no filter) and 630FF (with filter) or a comparable product by one of the
27 following:
28 a. Carnes Company.
29 b. METALAIRE, Inc.
30 c. Nailor Industries Inc.



- 1 d. Titus.
 2 e. Tuttle & Bailey.
- 3 2. Material: Aluminum.
 4 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 5 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced 3/4 inch apart.
 6 5. Core Construction: Removable.
 7 6. Frame: 1 inch wide.
 8 7. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
 9 8. Damper Type: Adjustable, aluminum, opposed blade.
- 10 **2.2 GRILLES**
- 11 A. Fixed Face Grille:
- 12 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Price
 13 Industries; 630 (no filter) and 630FF (with filter) or a comparable product by one of the
 14 following:
- 15 a. Carnes Company.
 16 b. METALAIRE, Inc.
 17 c. Nailor Industries Inc.
 18 d. Titus.
 19 e. Tuttle & Bailey.
- 20 2. Material: Aluminum.
 21 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 22 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal; spaced 3/4 inch apart.
 23 5. Core Construction: Removable.
 24 6. Frame: 1 inch wide.
 25 7. Mounting: Countersunk screw or Lay in, as required by ceiling type.
- 26 B. Linear Bar Grilles
- 27 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Price
 28 Industries; LBP or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 29 a. Carnes Company.
 30 b. METALAIRE, Inc.
 31 c. Nailor Industries Inc.
 32 d. Titus.
 33 e. Tuttle & Bailey.
- 34 2. Material: Aluminum.
 35 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 36 4. Wide Core Spacing Arrangement: 1/8-inch-thick blades spaced 1/2 inch apart, horizontal
 37 blades; zero-degree deflection.
 38 5. Core Construction: Removable.
 39 6. Distribution plenum.
- 40 a. Internal insulation.



- 1 7. Frame: 1 inch wide.
- 2 8. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
- 3 9. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade

4 **2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- 5 A. Verification of Performance: Rate registers and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of
- 6 Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

7 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

8 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 9 A. Examine areas where registers and grilles are installed for compliance with requirements for
- 10 installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- 11 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

12 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- 13 A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- 14 B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and
- 15 accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements
- 16 for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations
- 17 where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in
- 18 the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify
- 19 Architect for a determination of final location.
- 20 C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and
- 21 maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

22 **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- 23 A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before
- 24 starting air balancing.

25 **END OF SECTION 23 37 13.23**

26



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 39 13 – LOUVERED PENTHOUSE VENTILATORS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section Includes:

5 1. Louvered-penthouse ventilators.

6 **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

7 A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this
8 Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

9 B. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades (i.e., the axis of the blades are horizontal).

10 C. Vertical Louver: Louver with vertical blades (i.e., the axis of the blades are vertical).

11 D. Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified wind-driven-rain
12 performance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 550.

13 E. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified windborne-debris-
14 impact resistance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 540.

15 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

16 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

17 1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing
18 specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.

19 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

20 A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:

21 1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

22 **1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS**

23 A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before
24 fabrication.



1 **1.6 WARRANTY**

2 A. Special Finish Warranty, Factory-Applied Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to
3 repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of baked enamel,
4 powder coat, or organic finishes within specified warranty period.

5 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

6 a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with
7 ASTM D2244.

8 b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.

9 c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

10 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

11 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

12 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

13 A. Source Limitations: Obtain fixed louvers from single source from a single manufacturer where
14 indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.

15 **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

16 A. Structural Performance: Louvered penthouse ventilators withstand the effects of gravity loads
17 and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without
18 permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver-blade
19 rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures are considered
20 to act normal to the face of the building.

21 1. Wind Loads:

22 a. Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.

23 B. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Louvers located within 30 feet of grade pass enhanced
24 protection, when tested in accordance with AMCA 540.

25 C. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as
26 demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length
27 and width in accordance with AMCA 550 and AMCA 540.

28 D. SMACNA Standard: Comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal
29 Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.

30 **2.3 LOUVERED-PENTHOUSE VENTILATORS**

31 A. Description: Boxed corner penthouse with vertical or horizontal blades, with hinged roof for
32 intake or relief air.



- 1 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Greenheck
 2 Fan Corporation; EHH-601PD or a comparable product by one of the following:
 3 a. Pottorff.
 4 b. Ruskin.
- 5 B. Source Limitations: Obtain louvered-penthouse ventilators from single manufacturer.
- 6 C. Construction:
- 7 1. Material: All-welded assembly with 6-inch -deep louvers, mitered corners, and aluminum
 8 sheet roof.
- 9 2. Penthouse Frame, Extruded Aluminum: Thickness required to comply with structural
 10 performance requirements, but not less than 0.125 inch for frames and sills and not less
 11 than 0.080 inch for flashing and roof.
- 12 3. Louver Frame and Blade Material, Extruded Aluminum: Thickness required to comply
 13 with structural performance requirements, but not less than 0.080 inch for frames and
 14 0.080 inch for blades.
- 15 4. Insulation: None.
- 16 5. Bird Screening: Aluminum, 1/2-inch-square mesh or flattened, expanded aluminum, 3/4-
 17 inch-diamond mesh wire.
- 18 6. Louver Performance Ratings:
- 19 a. Free Area: Not less than 6.8 sq.ft for 48-inch-wide by 48-inch-high louver.
- 20 b. Air Performance: Not more than 0.18-inch wg static pressure drop at 1250-fpm
 21 free-area intake velocity.
- 22 c. Wind-Driven Rain Performance: Not less than 99 percent effectiveness when
 23 subjected to a rainfall rate of 8 inches per hour and a wind speed of 50 mph at a
 24 free-area intake velocity of 2175 fpm.
- 25 d. AMCA 540 and 550
- 26 D. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid
 27 fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to fit
 28 roof opening and ventilator base.
- 29 1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange.
- 30 2. Overall Height: 24 inches.

31 2.4 **LOUVER SCREENS**

- 32 A. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver.
- 33 1. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
- 34 2. Screening Type: Bird screening.
- 35 B. Secure screen frames to louver frames with machine screws with heads finished to match
 36 louver, spaced a maximum of 6 inches from each corner and at 12 inches o.c.
- 37 C. Louver Screen Frames: Fabricate with mitered corners to louver sizes indicated.
- 38 1. Metal: Same type and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are
 39 attached. Reinforce extruded-aluminum screen frames at corners with clips.



- 1 2. Finish: Same finish as louver frames to which louver screens are attached.
 2 3. Type: Non-rewirable, U-shaped frames.
- 3 D. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:
- 4 1. Bird Screening, Aluminum: 1/2-inch-square mesh, 0.063-inch wire.
- 5 **2.5 MATERIALS**
- 6 A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.
- 7 B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003 or 5005, with temper as required for forming, or as
 8 otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- 9 C. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
- 10 1. Use Phillips flat-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 11 2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless steel fasteners.
 12 3. For fastening galvanized steel, use hot-dip-galvanized-steel or 300 series stainless steel
 13 fasteners.
 14 4. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.
- 15 D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- 16 **2.6 FABRICATION**
- 17 A. Factory assemble louvers to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as
 18 necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and
 19 coordinated installation.
- 20 B. Vertical Assemblies: Where height of louver units exceeds fabrication and handling limitations,
 21 fabricate units to permit field-bolted assembly with close-fitting joints in jambs and mullions,
 22 reinforced with splice plates.
- 23 1. Continuous Vertical Assemblies: Fabricate units without interrupting blade-spacing
 24 pattern unless horizontal mullions are indicated.
- 25 C. Maintain equal louver blade spacing, including separation between blades and frames at head
 26 and sill, to produce uniform appearance.
- 27 D. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances
 28 made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter
 29 sealant joints.
- 30 1. Frame Type: Exterior flange unless otherwise indicated.
- 31 E. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- 32 F. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacings indicated, but not more than is recommended
 33 by manufacturer, or 72 inches o.c., whichever is less.



1 1. Exposed Mullions: Where indicated, provide units with exposed mullions of same width
 2 and depth as louver frame. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling
 3 limitations, provide interlocking split mullions designed to permit expansion and
 4 contraction.

5 G. Provide extended sills for recessed louvers.

6 H. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds, threaded
 7 fasteners, or both, as standard with louver manufacturer unless otherwise indicated or size of
 8 louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

9 **2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES**

10 A. Finish louvers after assembly.

11 B. Superior-Performance Organic Finish, Three-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with
 12 AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat
 13 and clear topcoat.

14 1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating
 15 and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.

16 2. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

17 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

18 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

19 A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for
 20 installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

21 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

22 **3.2 PREPARATION**

23 A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of
 24 anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery
 25 of such items to Project site.

26 **3.3 INSTALLATION**

27 A. Locate and place louvered penthouse ventilators level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with
 28 adjacent work.

29 B. Secure louvered penthouse ventilators to roof curbs with zinc-plated hardware, that comply with
 30 the wind fastening requirements. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or
 31 lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a
 32 weathertight connection. Refer to Division 07.

33 C. Install louvered penthouse ventilators with clearances for service and maintenance.



- 1 D. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- 2 E. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as
3 indicated.
- 4 F. Protect unpainted galvanized- and nonferrous-metal surfaces that are in contact with concrete,
5 masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of
6 bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
- 7 G. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses,
8 where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Division 07 for sealants applied
9 during louvered penthouse ventilator installation.
- 10 H. Label louvered penthouse ventilators according to requirements specified in Section 23 05 53
11 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- 12 I. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes, so no
13 evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the
14 factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.
- 15 J. Refer to Division 07 for flashing and counterflashing of roof curbs.

16 **3.4 CONNECTIONS**

- 17 A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts"
18 and Section 23 31 16 "Nonmetal Ducts." Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and
19 duct accessories.

20 **3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- 21 A. Clean exposed louver surfaces that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove
22 fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction
23 period.
- 24 B. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not
25 harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.
- 26 C. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction, so no evidence remains of
27 corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove
28 damaged units and replace with new units.
- 29 1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss
30 of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

31 **END OF SECTION 23 39 13**



1 **SECTION 23 39 19 - FIXED LOUVERS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section Includes:

- 5 1. Fixed extruded-aluminum louvers.
6 2. Blank-off panels for louvers

7 **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

8 A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this
9 Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

10 B. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades (i.e., the axis of the blades are horizontal).

11 C. Vertical Louver: Louver with vertical blades (i.e., the axis of the blades are vertical).

12 D. Drainable-Blade Louver: Louver with blades having gutters that collect water and drain it to
13 channels in jambs and mullions, which carry it to bottom of unit and away from opening.

14 E. Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified wind-driven-rain
15 performance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 550.

16 F. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified windborne-debris-
17 impact resistance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 540.

18 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

19 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 20 1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing
21 specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.

22 B. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and
23 attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.

- 24 1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashings, sealants, and other means of preventing water
25 intrusion.

- 26 2. Show mullion profiles and locations.

27 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

28 A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed in accordance
29 with AMCA 550 and AMCA 540 by a qualified testing agency or by manufacturer and witnessed



1 by a qualified testing agency, for each type of louver and showing compliance with performance
2 requirements specified.

3 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

4 A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:

5 1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

6 **1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS**

7 A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before
8 fabrication.

9 **1.7 WARRANTY**

10 A. Special Finish Warranty, Factory-Applied Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees
11 to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of baked enamel,
12 powder coat, or organic finishes within specified warranty period.

13 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

14 a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with
15 ASTM D2244.

16 b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.

17 c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

18 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

19 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

20 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

21 A. Source Limitations: Obtain fixed louvers from single source from a single manufacturer where
22 indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.

23 **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

24 A. Structural Performance: Louvers withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads
25 and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of
26 louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver-blade rattle or flutter, or permanent
27 damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures are considered to act normal to the face of
28 the building.

29 1. Wind Loads:

30 a. Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.



- 1 B. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Louvers located within 30 feet of grade pass enhanced
2 protection, when tested in accordance with AMCA 540.
- 3 C. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as
4 demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length
5 and width in accordance with AMCA 550 and AMCA 540.
- 6 D. SMACNA Standard: Comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal
7 Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.

8 **2.3 FIXED EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS**

- 9 A. Vertical, Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant, Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Louver, Extruded
10 Aluminum:
- 11 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Greenheck
12 Fan Corporation; EVH501D or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 13 a. Cesco Products; MESTEK, Inc.
14 b. Pottorff.
15 c. Ruskin.
- 16 2. Louver Depth: 6 inches.
17 3. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.060 inch for blades and 0.095 inch
18 for frames.
19 4. Louver Performance Ratings:
- 20 a. Free Area: Not less than 6.0 sq.ft for 48-inch-wide by 48-inch-high louver.
21 b. Air Performance: Not more than 0.18-inch wg static pressure drop at 1250-fpm
22 free-area intake velocity.
23 c. Wind-Driven Rain Performance: Not less than 99 percent effectiveness when
24 subjected to a rainfall rate of 8 inches per hour and a wind speed of 50 mph at a
25 core-area intake velocity of 969 fpm.
- 26 5. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
27 6. AMCA Rating: AMCA 540, AMCA 550.

28 **2.4 LOUVER SCREENS**

- 29 A. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver.
- 30 1. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
31 2. Screening Type: Bird screening.
- 32 B. Secure screen frames to louver frames with machine screws with heads finished to match
33 louver, spaced a maximum of 6 inches from each corner and at 12 inches o.c.
- 34 C. Louver Screen Frames: Fabricate with mitered corners to louver sizes indicated.
- 35 1. Metal: Same type and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are
36 attached. Reinforce extruded-aluminum screen frames at corners with clips.



- 1 2. Finish: Same finish as louver frames to which louver screens are attached.
2 3. Type: Non-rewirable, U-shaped frames.

3 D. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:

- 4 1. Bird Screening, Aluminum: 1/2-inch-square mesh, 0.063-inch wire.

5 **2.5 BLANK-OFF PANELS**

6 A. Insulated Blank-Off Panels: Laminated panels consisting of an insulating core surfaced on back
7 and front with metal sheets and attached to back of louver.

- 8 1. Thickness: 2 inches.
9 2. Metal Facing Sheets, Aluminum: Not less than 0.032-inch nominal thickness.
10 3. Insulating Core: Extruded-polystyrene foam.
11 4. Edge Treatment: Trim perimeter edges of blank-off panels with louver manufacturer's
12 standard extruded-aluminum-channel frames, not less than 0.080-inch nominal
13 thickness, with corners mitered and with same finish as panels.
14 5. Seal perimeter joints between panel faces and louver frames with gaskets or sealant.
15 6. Panel Finish: Same type of finish applied to louvers, but black color.
16 7. Attach blank-off panels with sheet metal screws.

17 **2.6 MATERIALS**

18 A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.

19 B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003 or 5005, with temper as required for forming, or as
20 otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.

21 C. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.

- 22 1. Use Phillips flat-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
23 2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless steel fasteners.
24 3. For fastening galvanized steel, use hot-dip-galvanized-steel or 300 series stainless steel
25 fasteners.
26 4. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.

27 D. Postinstalled Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors,
28 fabricated from stainless steel components, with allowable load or strength design capacities
29 calculated in accordance with ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design
30 load, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M conducted by a qualified
31 testing agency.

32 E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

33 **2.7 FABRICATION**

34 A. Factory assemble louvers to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as
35 necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and
36 coordinated installation.



- 1 B. Vertical Assemblies: Where height of louver units exceeds fabrication and handling limitations,
 2 fabricate units to permit field-bolted assembly with close-fitting joints in jambs and mullions,
 3 reinforced with splice plates.
- 4 1. Continuous Vertical Assemblies: Fabricate units without interrupting blade-spacing
 5 pattern unless horizontal mullions are indicated.
- 6 C. Maintain equal louver blade spacing, including separation between blades and frames at head
 7 and sill, to produce uniform appearance.
- 8 D. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances
 9 made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter
 10 sealant joints.
- 11 1. Frame Type: Exterior flange unless otherwise indicated.
- 12 E. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- 13 F. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacings indicated, but not more than is recommended
 14 by manufacturer, or 72 inches o.c., whichever is less.
- 15 1. Exposed Mullions: Where indicated, provide units with exposed mullions of same width
 16 and depth as louver frame. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling
 17 limitations, provide interlocking split mullions designed to permit expansion and
 18 contraction.
- 19 G. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds, threaded
 20 fasteners, or both, as standard with louver manufacturer unless otherwise indicated or size of
 21 louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

22 2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- 23 A. Finish louvers after assembly.
- 24 B. Superior-Performance Organic Finish, Three-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with
 25 AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat
 26 and clear topcoat.
- 27 1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating
 28 and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
- 29 2. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

30 PART 3 - EXECUTION

31 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 32 A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for
 33 installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 34 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



1 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 2 A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of
3 anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery
4 of such items to Project site.

5 **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- 6 A. Locate and place louvers level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- 7 B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws
8 where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
- 9 C. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- 10 D. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as
11 indicated.
- 12 E. Protect unpainted galvanized- and nonferrous-metal surfaces that are in contact with concrete,
13 masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of
14 bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
- 15 F. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses,
16 where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Division 07 for sealants applied
17 during louver installation.

18 **3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- 19 A. Clean exposed louver surfaces that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove
20 fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction
21 period.
- 22 B. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not
23 harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.
- 24 C. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction, so no evidence remains of
25 corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove
26 damaged units and replace with new units.
- 27 1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss
28 of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

29 **END OF SECTION 23 39 19**



1 **SECTION 23 41 00 - PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
8 1. Pleated panel filters.

9 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 10 A. HIPS: High-impact polystyrene.

11 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 12 A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include dimensions; operating characteristics; required
13 clearances and access; rated flow capacity, including initial and final pressure drop at rated
14 airflow; efficiency and test method; fire classification; furnished specialties; and accessories for
15 each model indicated.

16 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of filter and rack to include in emergency,
18 operation, and maintenance manuals.

19 **1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- 20 A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective
21 covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
22 1. Provide one complete set(s) of filters for each filter bank. If system includes prefilters,
23 provide only prefilters.

24 **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 25 A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.



1 **1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 2 A. Deliver and store products in a clean, dry place.
- 3 B. Comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading and
4 moving to final installed location.
- 5 C. Handle products carefully to prevent damage, breaking, denting, and scoring. Do not install
6 damaged products.
- 7 D. Protect products from weather, dirt, dust, water, construction debris, and physical damage.
- 8 1. Retain factory-applied coverings on equipment to protect finishes during construction and
9 remove just prior to operating unit.
- 10 2. Cover unit openings before installation to prevent dirt and dust from entering inside of
11 units. If required to remove coverings during unit installation, reapply coverings over
12 openings after unit installation and remove just prior to operating unit.
- 13 3. Replace installed products damaged during construction.

14 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

15 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 16 A. ASHRAE Compliance:
- 17 1. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality";
18 Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment"; and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
19 2. Comply with ASHRAE 52.2 for MERV for methods of testing and rating air-filter units.
- 20 B. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
- 21 C. Comply with UL 900.

22 **2.2 PLEATED PANEL FILTERS - STANDARD**

- 23 A. Description: Factory-fabricated, self-supported, extended-surface, pleated, panel-type,
24 disposable air filters with holding frames.
- 25 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Camfil; AP-
26 Thirteen or comparable product by one of the following:
- 27 a. AAF / Flanders.
- 28 b. Airguard.
- 29 c. Purafil, Inc.
- 30 B. Source Limitations: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
- 31 C. Capacities and Characteristics:
- 32 1. Depth: 1 inch, 2 inches, or 4 inches nominal, as indicated in Equipment Schedules.



- 1 2. Maximum or Rated Face Velocity: 625 fpm.
 2 3. Initial Resistance: 0.25-inch wg at 350 fpm.
 3 4. Recommended Final Resistance: 1.0 inches wg.
 4 5. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value: MERV 13, with "Composite Average Particle Size
 5 Efficiency, Percent in Size Range, Micrometers" according to ASHRAE 52.2.
- 6 D. Media: Interlaced glass or synthetic fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.
- 7 1. Separators shall be bonded to the media to maintain pleat configuration.
 8 2. Welded-wire grid shall be on downstream side to maintain pleat.
 9 3. Media shall be bonded to frame to prevent air bypass.
 10 4. Support members on upstream and downstream sides to maintain pleat spacing.
- 11 E. Filter-Media Frame: Cardboard frame with perforated metal retainer sealed or bonded to the
 12 media.

13 **2.3 PLEATED PANEL FILTERS – MOISTURE RESISTANT**

- 14 A. Description: Factory-fabricated, self-supported, extended-surface, pleated, panel-type,
 15 disposable air filters with holding frames.
- 16 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Camfil; Opti-
 17 Pac Durable or comparable product by one of the following:
- 18 a. AAF / Flanders; PrecisionCell III.
- 19 B. Source Limitations: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
- 20 C. Capacities and Characteristics:
- 21 1. Depth: 2 inches or 4 inches nominal, as indicated in Equipment Schedules.
 22 2. Maximum or Rated Face Velocity: 625 fpm.
 23 3. Initial Resistance: 0.25-inch wg at 350 fpm.
 24 4. Recommended Final Resistance: 1.5 inches wg.
 25 5. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value: MERV 13, with "Composite Average Particle Size
 26 Efficiency, Percent in Size Range, Micrometers" according to ASHRAE 52.2.
- 27 D. Media: Synthetic polypropylene fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.
- 28 1. Separators shall be bonded to the media to maintain pleat configuration.
 29 2. Media shall be bonded to frame to prevent air bypass.
- 30 E. Filter-Media Frame: Plastic frame bonded to the entire periphery of media.

31 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

32 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 33 A. Examine ducts, air-handling units, and conditions for compliance with requirements for
 34 installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.



1 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

2 **3.2 INSTALLATION OF FILTERS**

3 A. Position each filter unit with clearance for normal service and maintenance. Anchor filter holding
4 frames to substrate.

5 B. Install filters in position to prevent passage of unfiltered air.

6 C. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace
7 temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.

8 D. Coordinate filter installations with duct and air-handling-unit installations.

9 **3.3 FILTER SCHEDULE**

10 A. Indoor equipment with outside airflow less than 100 percent of supply airflow:

11 1. Pleated panel filters - standard.

12 B. Indoor equipment with outside airflow equal to 100 percent of supply airflow:

13 1. Pleated panel filters – moisture resistant.

14 **3.4 CLEANING**

15 A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing of air-handling and air-
16 distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filter media.

17 **END OF SECTION 23 41 00**



1 **SECTION 23 51 23 - GAS VENTS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
8 1. Listed double-wall vents.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product.
11 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components
12 and profiles, and finishes for product.
13 B. Shop Drawings: For vents.
14 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
15 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
16 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
17 connection.
18 3. Detail fabrication and assembly of hangers and seismic restraints.

19 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 20 A. Welding certificates.

21 **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 22 A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
23 1. AWS D1.1 / D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
24 2. AWS D9.1 / D9.1M, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for shop and field welding of joints and
25 seams in vents.
26 B. Certified Sizing Calculations: Manufacturer shall certify venting system sizing calculations.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 LISTED SPECIAL GAS VENTS**

3 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Simpson Dura-Vent
4 Co. Inc.; FasNSeal W2 or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 5 1. Heat-Fab, Inc.
6 2. Metal-Fab, Inc.

7 B. Description: Double-wall metal vents tested according to UL 1738 and rated for 480 deg F
8 continuously, with positive or negative flue pressure complying with NFPA 211.

9 C. Construction: Inner shell and outer jacket separated by at least a 1/2-inch airspace.

10 D. Inner Shell: ASTM A 959, Type 29-4C stainless steel.

11 E. Outer Jacket: Aluminized steel.

12 F. Accessories: Tees, elbows, increasers, draft-hood connectors, terminations, adjustable roof
13 flashings, storm collars, support assemblies, thimbles, firestop spacers, and fasteners;
14 fabricated from similar materials and designs as vent-pipe straight sections; all listed for same
15 assembly.

16 1. Termination: Round chimney top designed to exclude minimum 98 percent of rainfall.

17 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

18 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

19 A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and
20 other conditions affecting performance of work.

21 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

22 **3.2 APPLICATION**

23 A. Listed Special Gas Vent: Condensing gas appliances.

24 **3.3 INSTALLATION OF LISTED VENTS**

25 A. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items
26 are specified in Division 07.

27 B. Comply with minimum clearances from combustibles and minimum termination heights
28 according to product listing or NFPA 211, whichever is most stringent.



- 1 C. Seal between sections of positive-pressure vents according to manufacturer's written
2 installation instructions, using sealants recommended by manufacturer.
- 3 D. Support vents at intervals recommended by manufacturer to support weight of vents and all
4 accessories, without exceeding appliance loading.
- 5 E. Lap joints in direction of flow.

6 **3.4 CLEANING**

- 7 A. After completing system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish.
8 Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris, and repair damaged finishes.

9 **END OF SECTION 23 51 23**
10



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 52 16 - CONDENSING BOILERS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes gas-fired, water-tube condensing boilers, trim, and accessories for generating
8 hot water.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 11 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components
12 and profiles, and finishes for boilers.
13 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and
14 accessories.

- 15 B. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories.

- 16 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
17 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
18 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
19 connection.
20 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
21 4. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

22 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 23 A. Field quality-control reports.

- 24 B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

- 25 C. Product Certificates:

- 26 1. ASME Stamp Certification and Report: Submit "A," "S," or "PP" stamp certificate of
27 authorization, as required by authorities having jurisdiction, and document hydrostatic
28 testing of piping external to boiler.
29 2. CSA B51 pressure vessel Canadian Registration Number (CRN).



1 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 2 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For boilers to include in emergency, operation, and
3 maintenance manuals.

4 **1.6 COORDINATION**

- 5 A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete,
6 reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

7 **1.7 WARRANTY**

- 8 A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or
9 replace components of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty
10 period.

- 11 B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of boilers that
12 fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 13 1. Warranty Period for Water-Tube Condensing Boilers:

- 14 a. Leakage and Materials: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
15 b. Heat Exchanger Damaged by Thermal Stress and Corrosion: Non-prorated for ten
16 years from date of Substantial Completion.

17 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

18 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 19 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
20 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- 21 B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure
22 Vessel Code.

- 23 C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Boilers shall have minimum efficiency according to "Gas and
24 Oil Fired Boilers - Minimum Efficiency Requirements."

- 25 D. DOE Compliance: Minimum efficiency shall comply with 10 CFR 430, Subpart B, Appendix N.

- 26 E. UL Compliance: Test boilers for compliance with UL 795. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a
27 testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- 28 F. CSA Compliance: Test boilers for compliance with CSA B51.

- 29 G. Mounting Base: For securing boiler to concrete base.

- 30 1. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting base and attachment to boiler
31 pressure vessel, accessories, and components with reinforcement strong enough to



1 withstand seismic forces defined in Section 23 05 48.14 " Seismic Controls for HVAC"
2 when mounting base is anchored to building structure.

3 2.2 WATER-TUBE CONDENSING BOILERS

4 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product
5 indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 6 1. Hydrotherm, Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
- 7 2. Harsco Industrial; Patterson-Kelly.
- 8 3. Viessmann Manufacturing Co. (US) Inc.

9 B. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, and -tested for outdoor installations, copper-finned,
10 water-tube condensing boiler with stainless-steel heat exchanger sealed pressure tight, built on
11 a steel base, including insulated jacket; flue-gas vent; combustion-air intake connections; water
12 supply, return, and condensate drain connections; and controls. Water-heating service only.

13 C. Heat Exchanger: Stainless-steel primary and stainless-steel secondary heat exchangers.

14 D. Combustion Chamber: Stainless steel, sealed.

15 E. Burner: Natural gas, forced draft drawing from gas premixing valve.

16 F. Blower: Centrifugal fan to operate during each burner firing sequence and to prepurge and
17 postpurge the combustion chamber.

18 1. Motors: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency
19 requirements for motors specified in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for
20 HVAC Equipment."

21 a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated; if not indicated, large enough so driven
22 load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

23 G. Gas Train: Combination gas valve with manual shutoff and pressure regulator.

24 H. Ignition: Electric spark ignition that includes flame safety supervision and 100 percent main-
25 valve shutoff.

26 I. Integral Circulator: Cast-iron body and stainless-steel impeller sized for minimum flow required
27 in heat exchanger.

28 J. Casing:

- 29 1. Installation Environment: Outdoor.
- 30 2. Jacket: Sheet metal, with snap-in or interlocking closures.
- 31 3. Control Compartment Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1A.
- 32 4. Finish: Powder-coated protective finish.
- 33 5. Insulation: Minimum 2-inch-thick, mineral-fiber insulation surrounding the heat exchanger.
- 34 6. Combustion-Air Connections: Inlet and vent duct collars.



1 **2.3 TRIM**

- 2 A. Include devices sized to comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
3 B. Aquistat Controllers: Operating, firing rate, and high limit.
4 C. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.
5 D. Pressure and Temperature Gage: Minimum 3-1/2-inch-diameter, combination water-pressure
6 and -temperature gage. Gages shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges, so
7 normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.
8 E. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic.
9 F. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 hose-end gate valve.

10 **2.4 CONTROLS**

- 11 A. Boiler operating controls shall include the following devices and features:
12 1. Control transformer.
13 2. Set-Point Adjust: Set points shall be adjustable.
14 3. Sequence of Operation: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control
15 burner firing rate to maintain supply-water temperature.
16 B. Burner Operating Controls: To maintain safe operating conditions, burner safety controls limit
17 burner operation.
18 1. High Cutoff: Automatic reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum
19 boiler design temperature.
20 2. Low-Water Cutoff Switch: Electronic probe shall prevent burner operation on low water.
21 Cutoff switch shall be manual-reset type.
22 3. Blocked Inlet Safety Switch: Manual-reset pressure switch field mounted on boiler
23 combustion-air inlet.
24 4. Audible Alarm: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; shall sound alarm
25 for above conditions.
26 C. Building Automation System Interface: Factory installed hardware and software to enable
27 building automation system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.
28 1. Hardwired Points:
29 a. Monitoring: On/off status, common trouble alarm.
30 b. Control: On/off operation, hot-water-supply temperature set-point adjustment.
31 2. A BACnet communication interface with building automation system shall enable building
32 automation system operator to remotely control and monitor the boiler from an operator
33 workstation. Control features available, and monitoring points displayed, locally at boiler
34 control panel shall be available through building automation system.



1 **2.5 ELECTRICAL POWER**

2 A. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in
3 electrical Sections.

4 B. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers,
5 transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power
6 connection to boiler.

- 7 1. House in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
- 8 2. Wiring shall be numbered and color coded to match wiring diagram.
- 9 3. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a metal raceway.
- 10 4. Field power interface shall be to non-fused disconnect switch.
- 11 5. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls.
- 12 6. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

13 **2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

14 A. Burner and Hydrostatic Test: Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide,
15 oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion
16 efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.

17 B. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, according to 2010 ASME Boiler
18 and Pressure Vessel Code.

19 C. Allow Owner access to source quality-control testing of boilers. Notify Engineer 14 days in
20 advance of testing.

21 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

22 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

23 A. Examine roughing-in for concrete equipment bases, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, and piping
24 and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting
25 performance of the Work.

26 1. Final boiler locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations
27 before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.

28 B. Examine mechanical spaces for suitable conditions where boilers will be installed.

29 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

30 **3.2 BOILER INSTALLATION**

31 A. Equipment Mounting:

32 1. Install boilers on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for
33 equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03.



- 1 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 23 05 48.13
2 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- 3 a. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch.
4 b. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
5 Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
6 c. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise
7 indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of
8 concrete base.
9 d. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through
10 concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
11 e. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams,
12 instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
13 f. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported
14 equipment.
15 g. Install on 4-inch-high concrete base.
- 16 B. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.
- 17 C. Assemble and install boiler trim.
- 18 D. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.
- 19 E. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.
- 20 **3.3 CONNECTIONS**
- 21 A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general
22 arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- 23 B. Install piping adjacent to boiler to allow service and maintenance.
- 24 C. Install piping from equipment drain connection to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full
25 size of connection. Provide an isolation valve if required.
- 26 D. Connect piping to boilers, except safety relief valve connections, with flexible connectors of
27 materials suitable for service.
- 28 E. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas-
29 train connection. Provide a reducer if required.
- 30 F. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tappings with shutoff valve and union or
31 flange at each connection.
- 32 G. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.
- 33 H. Boiler Venting:
- 34 1. Connect full size to boiler connections. Comply with requirements in Section 23 51 23
35 "Gas Vents" and Section 23 51 33 "Insulated Sectional Chimneys."
- 36 I. Ground equipment according to Division 26.



1 J. Connect wiring according to Division 26.

2 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

3 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and
4 inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

5 B. Perform the following tests and inspections:

6 1. Perform installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

7 2. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

8 3. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust
9 air-fuel ratio and combustion.

10 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
11 equipment.

12 a. Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set
13 points of fuel supply, water level, and water temperature.

14 b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

15 5. Verify, adjust as necessary, and record all final boiler internal control settings.

16 C. Boiler will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

17 D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

18 E. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion,
19 provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to
20 two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

21 F. Performance Tests:

22 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect component assemblies
23 and equipment installations, including connections, and to conduct performance testing.

24 2. Boilers shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as determined by field
25 performance tests. Adjust, modify, or replace equipment to comply.

26 3. Perform field performance tests to determine capacity and efficiency of boilers.

27 a. Test for full capacity.

28 b. Test for boiler efficiency at low fire 20, 40, 60, 80, 100, 80, 60, 40, and 20 percent
29 of full capacity. Determine efficiency at each test point.

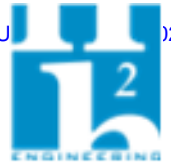
30 4. Repeat tests until results comply with requirements indicated.

31 5. Provide analysis equipment required to determine performance.

32 6. Provide temporary equipment and system modifications necessary to dissipate the heat
33 produced during tests if building systems are inadequate.

34 7. Notify Engineer 24 hours minimum in advance of test dates.

35 8. Document test results in a report and submit to Engineer.



1 **3.5 DEMONSTRATION**

2 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to
3 adjust, operate, and maintain boilers. Video record the training sessions.

4 **END OF SECTION 23 52 16**

5



1 **SECTION 23 64 26.13 - AIR-COOLED, ROTARY-SCREW WATER CHILLERS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
- 8 1. Packaged, air-cooled chillers.

9 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 10 A. BAS: Building automation system.
- 11 B. COP: Coefficient of performance. The ratio of the rate of heat removal to the rate of energy
12 input using consistent units for any given set of rating conditions.
- 13 C. DDC: Direct digital control.
- 14 D. EER: Energy-efficiency ratio. The ratio of the cooling capacity given in terms of Btu/h to the total
15 power input given in terms of watts at any given set of rating conditions.
- 16 E. IPLV: Integrated part-load value. A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit calculated
17 per the method defined by AHRI 550 / 590 and referenced to AHRI standard rating conditions.
- 18 F. kW/Ton: The ratio of total power input of the chiller in kilowatts to the net refrigerating capacity
19 in tons at any given set of rating conditions.
- 20 G. NPLV: Nonstandard part-load value. A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit
21 calculated per the method defined by AHRI 550/590 and intended for operating conditions other
22 than AHRI standard rating conditions.

23 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 24 A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- 25 1. Include refrigerant, rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and
26 accessories.
- 27 2. Performance at AHRI standard conditions and at conditions indicated.
- 28 3. Performance at AHRI standard unloading conditions.
- 29 4. Minimum evaporator flow rate.
- 30 5. Refrigerant capacity of chiller.
- 31 6. Oil capacity of chiller.



- 1 7. Fluid capacity of evaporator.
 2 8. Characteristics of safety relief valves.
 3 9. Minimum entering condenser-air temperature.
 4 10. Maximum entering condenser-air temperature.
 5 11. Performance at varying capacities with constant-design, entering condenser-air
 6 temperature. Repeat performance at varying capacities for different entering condenser-
 7 air temperatures from design to minimum in 10 deg F increments.
- 8 B. Shop Drawings:
- 9 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 10 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
 11 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
 12 connection.
 13 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- 14 **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**
- 15 A. Product Certificates: For certification required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
 16 B. Source quality-control reports.
 17 C. Field Test Reports: Include startup service reports.
 18 D. Sample Warranty: For AHRI special warranty.
- 19 **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**
- 20 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each chiller to include in emergency, operation, and
 21 maintenance manuals.
- 22 **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**
- 23 A. AHRI Certification: Certify chiller according to AHRI 590 certification program(s).
 24 B. AHRI Rating: Rate chiller performance according to requirements in AHRI 550/590.
 25 C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
 26 D. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label chiller to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel
 27 Code: Section VIII, Division 1, and include an ASME U-stamp and nameplate certifying
 28 compliance.
 29 E. Comply with NFPA 70.
 30 F. Comply with requirements of UL and UL Canada and include label by a qualified testing agency
 31 showing compliance.



1 **1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 2 A. Ship chillers from the factory fully charged with refrigerant.
- 3 B. Ship each oil-lubricated chiller with a full charge of oil.
- 4 1. Ship oil factory installed in chiller.

5 **1.9 COORDINATION**

- 6 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-
- 7 bolt inserts into bases.
- 8 B. Coordinate sizes, locations, and anchoring attachments of structural-steel support structures.
- 9 C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with
- 10 actual equipment provided.

11 **1.10 WARRANTY**

- 12 A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of chillers that fail in
- 13 materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- 14 1. Extended warranties include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 15 a. Complete chiller including refrigerant and oil charge.
- 16 b. Complete compressor and drive assembly including refrigerant and oil charge.
- 17 c. Parts and labor.
- 18 d. Loss of refrigerant charge for any reason.
- 19 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

20 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

21 **2.1 PACKAGED, AIR-COOLED CHILLERS**

- 22 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated
- 23 on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- 24 1. Carrier Corporation; a United Technologies company.
- 25 2. Daikin.
- 26 3. Trane; a division of American Standard.
- 27 B. Description: Factory-assembled and run-tested chiller complete with base and frame,
- 28 condenser casing, compressors, compressor motors and motor controllers, evaporator,
- 29 condenser coils, condenser fans and motors, electrical power, controls, and accessories.
- 30 C. Cabinet:



- 1 1. Base: Galvanized-steel base extending the perimeter of chiller. Secure frame,
 2 compressors, and evaporator to base to provide a single-piece unit.
- 3 2. Frame: Rigid galvanized-steel frame secured to base and designed to support cabinet,
 4 condenser, control panel, and other chiller components not directly supported by base.
- 5 3. Casing: Galvanized steel.
- 6 4. Finish: Coat base, frame, and casing with a corrosion-resistant coating.
- 7 5. Sound-reduction package designed to reduce sound level without affecting performance
 8 and consisting of the following:
- 9 a. Acoustic enclosure around compressors.
- 10 6. Security Package: Provide removable grilles with fasteners for additional protection of
 11 compressors, evaporator, and condenser coils without inhibiting service access. Finish to
 12 match cabinet.
- 13 D. Compressors:
- 14 1. Description: Positive displacement, hermetically sealed.
- 15 2. Casing: Cast iron, precision machined for minimum clearance about periphery of rotors.
- 16 3. Rotors: Manufacturer's standard one- or two-rotor design.
- 17 4. Each compressor provided with suction and discharge shutoff valves, crankcase oil
 18 heater, and suction strainer.
- 19 E. Service: Easily accessible for inspection and service.
- 20 F. Capacity Control: On-off compressor cycling and modulating slide-valve assembly or port
 21 unloaders combined with hot-gas bypass, if necessary, to achieve performance indicated.
- 22 1. Maintain stable operation throughout range of operation. Configure to achieve most
 23 energy-efficient operation possible.
- 24 2. Operating Range: From 100 to 20 percent of design capacity.
- 25 3. Condenser-Air Unloading Requirements over Operating Range: Drop-in, entering
 26 condenser-air temperature of 5 deg F drop for each 10 percent in capacity reduction.
- 27 G. Oil Lubrication System: Consisting of pump if required, filtration, heater, cooler, factory-wired
 28 power connection, and controls.
- 29 1. Provide lubrication to bearings, gears, and other rotating surfaces at all operating,
 30 startup, shutdown, and standby conditions including power failure.
- 31 2. Thermostatically controlled oil heater properly sized to remove refrigerant from oil.
- 32 3. Factory-installed and pressure-tested piping with isolation valves and accessories.
- 33 4. Oil compatible with refrigerant and chiller components.
- 34 5. Positive visual indication of oil level.
- 35 6. Service valve for oil filter.
- 36 H. Vibration Control:
- 37 1. Vibration Balance: Balance chiller compressors and drive assemblies to provide a
 38 precision balance that is free of noticeable vibration over the entire operating range.
- 39 a. Over-speed Test: 25 percent above design operating speed.
- 40 2. Isolation: Mount individual compressors on vibration isolators.



- 1 I. Compressor Motors:
- 2 1. Hermetically sealed and cooled by refrigerant suction gas.
- 3 2. High-torque, induction type with inherent thermal-overload protection on each phase.
- 4 J. Compressor Motor Controllers:
- 5 1. Variable-Frequency Controller:
- 6 a. Motor controller shall be factory mounted and wired on the chiller to provide a
- 7 single-point, field-power termination to the chiller and its auxiliaries.
- 8 b. Description: NEMA ICS 2; listed and labeled as a complete unit and arranged to
- 9 provide variable speed by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
- 10 c. Enclosure: Unit mounted, NEMA 250, Type 3R, with hinged full-front access door
- 11 with lock and key.
- 12 d. Integral Disconnecting Means: Door-interlocked, UL 489, instantaneous-trip circuit
- 13 breaker with lockable handle. Minimum withstand rating shall be as required by
- 14 electrical power distribution system, but not less than 65,000 A.
- 15 e. Technology: Pulse-width-modulated output suitable for constant or variable torque
- 16 loads.
- 17 f. Motor current at start shall not exceed the rated load amperes, providing no
- 18 electrical inrush.
- 19 K. Refrigerant Circuits:
- 20 1. Refrigerant Type: R-513A or R-514B. Classified as Safety Group A1 or B1, according to
- 21 ASHRAE 34.
- 22 2. Refrigerant Compatibility: Chiller parts exposed to refrigerants shall be fully compatible
- 23 with refrigerants, and pressure components shall be rated for refrigerant pressures.
- 24 3. Refrigerant Circuit: Each shall include a thermal- or electronic-expansion valve,
- 25 refrigerant charging connections, a hot-gas muffler, compressor suction and discharge
- 26 shutoff valves, a liquid-line shutoff valve, a replaceable core filter-dryer, a sight glass with
- 27 moisture indicator, a liquid-line solenoid valve, and an insulated suction line.
- 28 4. Pressure Relief Device:
- 29 a. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 15 and in applicable portions of ASME
- 30 Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- 31 b. ASME-rated, spring-loaded pressure relief valve; single- or multiple-reseating type.
- 32 L. Evaporator:
- 33 1. Description: Shell-and-tube design.
- 34 a. Flooded type with fluid flowing through tubes and refrigerant flowing around tubes
- 35 within the shell.
- 36 2. Code Compliance: Tested and stamped according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel
- 37 Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- 38 3. Shell Material: Carbon steel.
- 39 4. Shell Heads: Removable carbon-steel heads located at each end of the tube bundle.
- 40 5. Fluid Nozzles: Terminated with flanged end connections for connection to field piping.
- 41 6. Tube Construction: Individually replaceable copper tubes with enhanced fin design,
- 42 expanded into tube sheets.
- 43 7. Heater: Factory-installed and -wired electric heater with integral controls designed to
- 44 protect the evaporator to minus 20 deg F.



- 1 M. Air-Cooled Condenser:
- 2 1. Plate-fin coil with integral sub-cooling on each circuit, rated at 450 psig.
- 3 a. Construct coil casing of galvanized steel.
- 4 b. Construct coils of copper tubes mechanically bonded to aluminum fins.
- 5 c. Coat coils with a corrosion-resistant coating after fabrication.
- 6 d. Hail Protection: Provide condenser coils with louvers, baffles, or hoods to protect
- 7 against hail damage.
- 8 2. Fans: Direct-drive propeller type with statically and dynamically balanced fan blades,
- 9 arranged for vertical air discharge.
- 10 3. Fan Motors: Totally enclosed non-ventilating or totally enclosed air over enclosure, with
- 11 permanently lubricated bearings. Equip each motor with overload protection integral to
- 12 either the motor or chiller controls.
- 13 4. Fan Guards: Steel safety guards with PVC.
- 14 N. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Apply a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a
- 15 10,000 -hour salt-spray test according to ASTM B 117 to base, frame, and casing.
- 16 1. Standards:
- 17 a. ASTM B-117 for salt spray.
- 18 b. ASTM D-2794 for minimum impact resistance of 100 in-lb.
- 19 c. ASTM B-3359 for cross-hatch adhesion of 5B.
- 20 2. Application: Immersion or Spray.
- 21 3. Thickness: 1 mil.
- 22 4. Gloss: Minimum of 50 gloss units on a single-angle, 60-degree meter.
- 23 5. UV Protection: Spray-applied topcoat.
- 24 O. Electrical Power:
- 25 1. Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical
- 26 devices necessary shall provide a single-point, field-power connection to chiller.
- 27 2. House in a unit-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure with hinged access door.
- 28 3. Wiring shall be numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.
- 29 4. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a raceway.
- 30 5. Field-power interface shall be to NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, non-fused disconnect switch.
- 31 a. Disconnect means shall be interlocked with door operation.
- 32 b. Minimum withstand rating shall be as required by electrical power distribution
- 33 system, but not less than 65,000 A.
- 34 6. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with one of the following
- 35 disconnecting means:
- 36 a. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, fusible switch with rejection-type fuse clips rated for
- 37 fuses. Select and size fuses to provide Type 2 protection according to IEC 60947-
- 38 4-1.
- 39 b. UL 489, motor-circuit protector (circuit breaker) with field-adjustable, short-circuit-
- 40 trip set point.
- 41 7. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.



- 1 8. Overload relay sized according to UL 1995 or an integral component of chiller control
 2 microprocessor.
 3 9. Phase-Failure and Under-voltage Relays: Solid-state sensing with adjustable settings.
 4 10. Provide power factor correction capacitors to correct power factor to 0.95 at full load.
 5 11. Control Transformer: Unit-mounted transformer with primary and secondary fuses and
 6 sized with enough capacity to operate electrical load plus spare capacity.
- 7 a. Power unit-mounted controls where indicated.
 8 b. Power unit-mounted, ground fault interrupt duplex receptacle.
- 9 12. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable time-delay relays.
 10 13. For chiller electrical power supply, indicate the following:
- 11 a. Current and phase to phase for all three phases.
 12 b. Voltage, phase to phase, and phase to neutral for all three phases.
 13 c. Three-phase real power (kilowatts).
 14 d. Three-phase reactive power (kilovolt amperes reactive).
 15 e. Power factor.
 16 f. Running log of total power versus time (kilowatt-hours).
 17 g. Fault log, with time and date of each.
- 18 P. Controls:
- 19 1. Standalone and microprocessor based.
 20 2. Enclosure: Share enclosure with electrical power devices or provide a separate
 21 enclosure.
 22 3. Operator Interface: Multiple-character digital or graphic display with dynamic update of
 23 information and with keypad or touch-sensitive display located on front of control
 24 enclosure. In either imperial or metric units, display the following information:
- 25 a. Date and time.
 26 b. Operating or alarm status.
 27 c. Operating hours.
 28 d. Outdoor-air temperature if required for chilled-water reset.
 29 e. Temperature and pressure of operating set points.
 30 f. Entering and leaving temperatures of chilled water.
 31 g. Refrigerant pressures in evaporator and condenser.
 32 h. Saturation temperature in evaporator and condenser.
 33 i. No cooling load condition.
 34 j. Elapsed time meter (compressor run status).
 35 k. Pump status.
 36 l. Anti-recycling timer status.
 37 m. Percent of maximum motor amperage.
 38 n. Current-limit set point.
 39 o. Number of compressor starts.
- 40 4. Control Functions:
- 41 a. Manual or automatic startup and shutdown time schedule.
 42 b. Entering and leaving chilled-water temperatures, control set points, and motor load
 43 limits. Current limit and demand limit.
 44 c. External chiller emergency stop.
 45 d. Anti-recycling timer.
 46 e. Automatic lead-lag switching.
 47 f. Variable evaporator flow.



- 1 g. Thermal storage.
- 2 5. Manually Reset Safety Controls: The following conditions shall shut down chiller and
3 require manual reset:
- 4 a. Low evaporator pressure or high condenser pressure.
5 b. Low chilled-water temperature.
6 c. Refrigerant high pressure.
7 d. High or low oil pressure.
8 e. High oil temperature.
9 f. Loss of chilled-water flow.
10 g. Control device failure.
- 11 6. Trending: Capability to trend analog data of up to five parameters simultaneously over an
12 adjustable period and frequency of polling.
- 13 7. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and
14 password with at least three levels of access: view only; view and operate; and view,
15 operate, and service.
- 16 8. Control Authority: At least four conditions: Off, local manual control at chiller, local
17 automatic control at chiller, and automatic control through a remote source.
- 18 9. Interface with DDC System for HVAC: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable
19 the DDC system for HVAC to monitor, control, and display chiller status and alarms.
- 20 a. Hardwired Points:
- 21 1) Monitoring: On-off status, common trouble alarm.
22 2) Control: On-off operation, chilled-water, discharge temperature set-point
23 adjustment, electrical power demand limit.
- 24 b. Modbus communication interface with the DDC system for HVAC shall enable the
25 DDC system for HVAC operator to remotely control and monitor the chiller from an
26 operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at
27 chiller control panel shall be available through the DDC system for HVAC.
- 28 Q. Insulation:
- 29 1. Material: Closed-cell, flexible elastomeric, thermal insulation complying with
30 ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
31 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
32 3. Factory-applied insulation over cold surfaces of chiller components.
- 33 a. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and applied to 100 percent
34 of insulation contact surface. Seal seams and joints.
- 35 4. Apply protective coating to exposed surfaces of insulation to protect insulation from
36 weather.
- 37 R. Accessories:
- 38 1. Factory-furnished, chilled-water differential pressure switches for field installation.
39 2. Individual compressor suction and discharge pressure gages with shutoff valves for each
40 refrigerant circuit.
41 3. Factory-furnished neoprene isolators for field installation.



- 1 4. Tool Kit: Chiller manufacturer shall assemble a tool kit specially designed for use in
 2 serving the chiller(s) furnished. Include special tools required to service chiller
 3 components not readily available to Owner service personnel in performing routine
 4 maintenance. Place tools in a lockable case with hinged cover. Provide a list of each tool
 5 furnished and attach the list to underside of case cover.
- 6 S. Capacities and Characteristics:
- 7 1. Low Ambient Operation: Chiller designed for operation to 0 deg F.
 8 2. High Ambient Operation: Chiller designed for operation to 115 deg F.
 9 3. Evaporator:
- 10 a. Configuration: Integral to chiller.
 11 b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 12 c. Fouling Factor: 0.0001 sq. ft. x h x deg F/Btu.
- 13 4. Number of Refrigerant Circuits: Each compressor on an independent circuit.
 14 5. Control Electrical Requirements:
- 15 a. Power Connection: Separate field-power connection.
 16 b. Power Input: 600 Watts.
 17 c. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: 6 Amps.
 18 d. Maximum Overcurrent Protection Device: 20 Amps.
 19 e. Volts: 120-V ac.
 20 f. Phase: Single.
 21 g. Hertz: 60.

22 2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- 23 A. Perform functional tests of chillers before shipping. Provide documentation of functional tests at
 24 delivery of unit.
- 25 B. Factory run test each air-cooled chiller with water flowing through evaporator.
- 26 C. Factory sound test air-cooled chillers, before shipping, according to AHRI 370.
- 27 1. Test the following conditions:
- 28 a. Design conditions indicated.
 29 b. Chiller operating at calculated worst-case sound condition.
- 30 2. Prepare test report indicating test procedures, instrumentation, test conditions, and
 31 results. Submit copy of results within one week of test date.
- 32 D. Factory test and inspect evaporator according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code:
 33 Section VIII, Division 1.
- 34 E. For chillers located outdoors, rate sound power level according to AHRI 370.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 3 A. Examine chillers before installation. Reject chillers that are damaged.
- 4 B. Examine roughing-in for equipment support, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, piping, and
5 electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting chiller
6 performance, maintenance, and operations before equipment installation.
- 7 1. Final chiller locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations
8 before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.
- 9 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

10 **3.2 CHILLER INSTALLATION**

- 11 A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-
12 bolt inserts into bases.
- 13 B. Coordinate sizes, locations, and anchoring attachments of structural-steel support structures.
- 14 C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with
15 actual equipment provided.
- 16 D. Install chillers on support structure indicated.
- 17 E. Equipment Mounting:
- 18 1. Install chillers on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for
19 equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03.
- 20 a. Minimum Deflection: 1/2 inch.
- 21 b. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend into
22 concrete base.
- 23 c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams,
24 instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
- 25 d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported
26 equipment.
- 27 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 23 05 48.13
28 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- 29 F. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
- 30 G. Charge chiller with refrigerant and fill with oil if not factory installed.
- 31 H. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.



1 **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

2 A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 23 21 13.12 "Aboveground Metal
3 Hydronic Piping," Section 23 21 16 Hydronic Piping Specialties," Drawings indicate general
4 arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

5 B. Install piping adjacent to chiller to allow service and maintenance.

6 C. Evaporator Fluid Connections: Connect to evaporator inlet with shutoff valve, strainer, flexible
7 connector, thermometer, and plugged tee with pressure gage. Connect to evaporator outlet with
8 shutoff valve, balancing valve, flexible connector, flow switch, thermometer, pressure relief
9 valve, plugged tee with shutoff valve and pressure gage, and drain connection with valve. Make
10 connections to chiller with a flange.

11 **3.4 STARTUP SERVICE**

12 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

- 13 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
14 2. Verify that refrigerant charge is sufficient and chiller has been leak tested.
15 3. Verify that pumps are installed and functional.
16 4. Verify that thermometers and gages are installed.
17 5. Operate chiller for run-in period.
18 6. Check bearing lubrication and oil levels.
19 7. Verify proper motor rotation.
20 8. Verify static deflection of vibration isolators, including deflection during chiller startup and
21 shutdown.
22 9. Verify and record performance of fluid flow and low-temperature interlocks for evaporator
23 and condenser.
24 10. Verify and record performance of chiller protection devices.
25 11. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and
26 equipment.
27 12. Verify, adjust as necessary, and record all final chiller internal control settings.

28 B. Inspect field-assembled components, equipment installation, and piping and electrical
29 connections for proper assembly, installation, and connection.

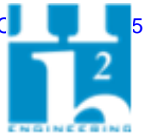
30 C. Prepare test and inspection startup reports.

31 **3.5 DEMONSTRATION**

32 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to
33 adjust, operate, and maintain chillers. Video record the training sessions.

34 **END OF SECTION 23 64 26.13**

35



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 23 73 13.16 - INDOOR, SEMI-CUSTOM AIR-HANDLING UNITS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes insulated, double-wall-casing, indoor, semi-custom air-handling units that are
8 factory assembled using multiple section components, including the following:

- 9 1. Casings.
10 2. Fans, drives, and motors.
11 3. Coils.
12 4. Air filtration.
13 5. Dampers.

14 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 15 A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit.

- 16 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components
17 and profiles, and finishes.
18 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and
19 furnished specialties and accessories.
20 3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
21 4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
22 5. Fans:
23 a. Include certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions
24 indicated.
25 b. Include certified fan-sound power ratings for discharge, radiated, and return
26 positions by octave band.
27 c. Include fan construction and accessories.
28 d. Include motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
29 6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
30 Include psychrometric chart for each cooling coil with both design and final operating
31 points.
32 7. Include calculations for required base rail heights to satisfy condensate trapping
33 requirements of cooling coil.
34 8. Include filters with performance characteristics.
35 9. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
36 10. Include installation instructions.

- 37 B. Shop Drawings: For each type and configuration of indoor, semi-custom air handling unit.



- 1 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 2 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
 3 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
 4 connection.
 5 3. Detail fabrication and assembly of indoor, semi-custom air-handling units, as well as
 6 procedures and diagrams.
 7 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- 8 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**
- 9 A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing
 10 the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- 11 B. Startup service reports.
- 12 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**
- 13 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-handling units to include in emergency, operation, and
 14 maintenance manuals.
- 15 **1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**
- 16 A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective
 17 covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- 18 1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
 19 2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
 20 3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each air-handling unit fan.
- 21 **1.7 WARRANTY**
- 22 A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of indoor, semi-custom air-
 23 handling units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- 24 1. Warranty Period for Entire Unit: Manufacturer's standard but not less than one year(s)
 25 from date of Substantial Completion.
- 26 **1.8 COORDINATION**
- 27 A. Provide air handling unit(s) that will not exceed the allocated space shown on the drawings,
 28 including required clearances for service and future overhaul or for removal of unit components.
 29 All structural, piping, wiring, and ductwork alterations of unit(s) which are dimensionally different
 30 than those specified shall be the responsibility of the Contractor at no additional cost to the
 31 Owner.
- 32 B. Provide knockdown capable air handling unit(s), if required, to accommodate any installation
 33 limitations. The knockdown and re-assembly of the air handling unit(s) shall be performed by
 34 personnel approved by the equipment manufacturer, such as not to void the equipment

1 warranty. The equipment warranty shall not be voided by the knockdown and re-assembly
2 process of the air handling unit(s).

3 C. Coordinate factory-applied coating of heat transfer coils. Verify with the coating manufacturer
4 whether coatings required must be applied and cured in factory-certified application shop. If
5 required, provide coils to factory-certified application shop for application. Following application,
6 provide coils back to air handling unit manufacturer to install in air handling unit.

7 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

8 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

9 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
10 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

11 B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-
12 handling units and components.

13 C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems
14 and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

15 D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 -
16 "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

17 E. Structural Performance: Casing panels shall be self-supporting and capable of withstanding the
18 greater of positive/negative 6-inch wg or 125 percent of internal static pressure, without
19 exceeding a midpoint deflection of 0.0042 inch/inch of panel span.

20 F. Casing Leakage Performance: ASHRAE 111, Class 6 leakage or better at plus or minus 6 inch
21 wg.

22 G. Acoustical Performance: Unit shall be tested by accredited independent laboratory for sound
23 transmission per ASTM E90-85 and E413-73 and sound absorption per ASTM C423-84A and
24 E795-83. Sound power levels (dB) for the unit shall not exceed specified levels. The
25 manufacturer shall provide necessary sound treatment to meet these levels if required.

26 H. Condensation: During first year guarantee period, if condensation forms on any section of air
27 handler when unit is operating at design conditions, contractor shall replace or repair unit to
28 correct the situation. Repairs shall not impair unit or component accessibility and future repair
29 ability and inherent access for maintenance. All repairs shall be subject to Engineer's approval.

30 **2.2 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS**

31 A. Supply Fan:

- 32 1. Type: SWSI, airfoil unhooded centrifugal fan.
- 33 2. Class II: AMCA 99-2408.
- 34 3. Drive: Direct.
- 35 4. Fan Efficiency:

36 a. Minimum Fan Efficiency Grade (FEG): AMCA 205



- 1) Single fans with motor nameplate horsepower greater than 5 hp: 67
 - 2) Multiple fans with combined motor nameplate horsepower greater than 5 hp: 67
- b. Total efficiency of fan at the design point: Within 15 percentage points of the maximum total efficiency of the fan.
- B. Preheat Coil:
1. Maximum Air-Side, Static-Pressure Drop: 0.25 inches wg.
 2. Maximum Water Pressure Drop: 5 feet of head.
- C. Heating Coil:
1. Maximum Air-Side, Static-Pressure Drop: 0.25 inches wg.
 2. Maximum Water Pressure Drop: 5 feet of head
- D. Cooling Coil:
1. Maximum Face Velocity: 500 fpm.
 2. Maximum Air-Side, Static-Pressure Drop: 1.0 inches wg.
 3. Maximum Water Pressure Drop: 10 feet of head
- E. Dampers: Face and bypass.

2.3 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Daikin Applied.
 2. Trane.
 3. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.

2.4 UNIT CASINGS

- A. Frame: Modular and providing overall structural integrity without reliance on casing panels for structural support.
- B. Base Rail:
1. Material: Galvanized steel or Welded structural steel.
 2. Height: Minimum **6 inches** or as indicated on drawings, full perimeter.
 3. Include integral lifting lugs.
 4. Include welded or bolted cross members as required for lateral stability.
- C. Casing Joints: Hermetically sealed at each corner and around entire perimeter.
- D. Double-Wall Construction:

- 1 1. Outside Casing Wall:
 - 2 a. Material, G90 Galvanized Steel: Minimum 18 gauge thick.
 - 3 b. Factory Finish: Provide manufacturer's standard finish.
- 4 2. Inside Casing Wall:
 - 5 a. Material, G90 Galvanized Steel: Solid, minimum 18 gauge thick.
- 6 E. Floor Plate:
 - 7 1. Material, G90 Galvanized Steel: Treadplate, minimum 16 gauge thick.
- 8 F. Casing Insulation:
 - 9 1. Materials: Injected polyurethane foam insulation.
 - 10 2. Casing Panel R-Value: Minimum R-13.
 - 11 3. Insulation Thickness: 2 inches.
 - 12 4. Thermal Break: Provide continuity of insulation with no through-casing metal in casing
 - 13 walls, floors, or roofs of air-handling unit.
- 14 G. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in
- 15 ASHRAE 62.1.
- 16 H. Static-Pressure Classifications:
 - 17 1. For Unit Sections Upstream of Fans: Minus 6-inch wg.
 - 18 2. For Unit Sections Downstream and Including Fans: 6-inch wg.
- 19 I. Doors and Windows:
 - 20 1. Doors:
 - 21 a. Fabrication: Formed and reinforced, double-wall and insulated panels of same
 - 22 materials and thicknesses as casing.
 - 23 b. Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless-steel piano hinge and
 - 24 two wedge-lever latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be
 - 25 opened against airflow. Provide safety latch retainers on doors so that doors do
 - 26 not open uncontrollably.
 - 27 c. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
 - 28 d. Size: Large enough to allow for unobstructed access for inspection and
 - 29 maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components. At least 24 inches wide by
 - 30 full height of unit casing up to a maximum height of 72 inches.
 - 31 2. Windows:
 - 32 a. Construction: Fabricate windows in access panels and doors of double-glazed,
 - 33 safety glass with an airspace between panes and sealed with interior and exterior
 - 34 rubber seals.
 - 35 b. Size: Minimum 6 inches, square or round.
 - 36 3. Locations and Applications:

- 1 a. Fan Section: Doors, with windows.
 2 b. Access Section: Doors.
 3 c. Access Sections Immediately Upstream and Downstream of Coil Sections:
 4 Doors, with windows.
 5 d. Filter Section: Doors large enough to allow periodic removal and installation of
 6 filters.
 7 e. Mixing Section: Doors.
- 8 J. Condensate Drain Pans:
- 9 1. Construction:
- 10 a. Double-wall, stainless-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam
 11 insulation and moisture-tight seal.
- 12 2. Drain Connection:
- 13 a. Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with
 14 threaded nipple on both ends of pan.
 15 b. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 2.
- 16 3. Slope: Minimum 0.125-in./ft. slope, to comply with ASHRAE 62.1, in at least two planes
 17 to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers,
 18 and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.
- 19 4. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face for distance to comply with
 20 ASHRAE 62.1.
- 21 5. Width: Entire width of water producing device.
 22 6. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
 23 7. Formed sections.
 24 8. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from
 25 top coil.

26 2.5 FAN, DRIVE, AND MOTOR SECTION

- 27 A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced on all three planes and at all
 28 bearing points and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor
 29 horsepower.
- 30 B. Fans: Centrifugal, rated according to AMCA 210; galvanized steel; mounted on solid-steel shaft.
- 31 1. Performance: Select at a maximum total static pressure of 90% of the fan's peak static
 32 pressure capability at the specified fan / motor speed.
 33 2. Shafts: With field-adjustable alignment.
- 34 a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway.
- 35 3. Shaft Bearings:
- 36 a. Grease-Lubricated Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings
 37 with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing with grease lines extended to
 38 outside unit and an L-50 rated life of 200,000.



- 1 4. Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with
2 shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.
- 3 a. Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll,
4 wheel, motor, and accessories.
- 5 5. Housings, Plenum Fans: Steel frame and panel; fabricated without fan scroll and volute
6 housing. Provide inlet screens for Type SWSI fans.
- 7 6. Plenum Fan Arrays: Steel or aluminum frame with inlet cone and structural framing
8 around each fan built into an array of multiple fans. Provide blank off plate for each fan to
9 prevent short circuiting of flow if one fan is not operating.
- 10 a. Each motor shall be wired to a control panel with integral disconnect, individual
11 motor protection, and control terminals.
- 12
- 13 7. Airfoil, Centrifugal Fan Wheels (Plenum Fan Wheels): Smooth-curved inlet flange,
14 backplate, and hollow die-formed airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange
15 and backplate; steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
- 16 8. Mounting: For internal vibration isolation. Factory-mount fans with manufacturer's
17 standard restrained spring vibration isolation mounting devices having a minimum static
18 deflection of 2 inches.
- 19 9. Shaft Lubrication Lines: Extended to a location outside the casing.
- 20 10. Flexible Connector: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip minimum 5-3/4 inches wide,
21 attached to two strips of minimum 2-3/4-inch-wide by 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized-steel
22 sheet or 0.032-inch-thick, aluminum sheets.
- 23 a. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric, double coated with neoprene. Fabrics,
24 coatings, and adhesives shall comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- 25 1) Fabric Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
- 26 2) Fabric Minimum Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch
27 in the filling.
- 28 3) Fabric Minimum Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- 29 C. Drive, Direct: Factory-mounted, direct drive.
- 30 D. Motors:
- 31 1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and
32 efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor
33 Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
- 34 2. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will
35 not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- 36 3. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
- 37 4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with 7-1/2 hp motors and smaller; fixed pitch for
38 use with motors larger than 7-1/2 hp. Select pulley size so pitch adjustment is at the
39 middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
- 40 5. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical
41 devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
- 42 6. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.
- 43 7. Electrically commutated motors: Provide hand-off-auto (H-O-A) single point switch on
44 control panel.

1 **2.6 COIL SECTION**

2 A. General Requirements for Coil Section:

- 3 1. Comply with AHRI 410.
- 4 2. Fabricate coil section to allow removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to
- 5 allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
- 6 3. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit and shall be removable through side
- 7 and/or top panels of unit without the need to remove and disassemble the entire section
- 8 from the unit.
- 9 4. Enclose coil headers and return bends completely within unit casing.
- 10 5. Coil connections shall be factory sealed with grommets on interior and exterior and
- 11 gasket sleeve between outer wall and liner to minimize air leakage and condensation
- 12 inside panel assembly. If not factory packaged, contractor shall supply all coil connection
- 13 grommets and sleeves.
- 14 6. Vent and drain fittings shall be furnished on coil connections exterior to the air handler.

15 B. Preheat Coils:

16 1. Hot-Water Coils: Self-draining.

- 17 a. Piping Connections: Threaded, same end of coil.
- 18 b. Tube Material: Copper.
- 19 c. Tube Thickness: 0.025 inches.
- 20 d. Tube Diameter: 0.625 inches
- 21 e. Fin Type: Plate.
- 22 f. Fin Material: Aluminum.
- 23 g. Fin Spacing: Maximum 12 fins per inch.
- 24 h. Fin Thickness 0.0075 inches.
- 25 i. Fin and Tube Joint: Mechanical bond.
- 26 j. Headers:
- 27 1) Seamless copper tube with brazed joints, prime coated.
- 28 k. Frames: Channel frame, 0.0625-inch-thick, stainless steel.
- 29 l. Coil Working-Pressure Ratings: 200 psig, 325 deg F.

30 C. Heating Coils:

31 1. Hot-Water Coils: Self-draining.

- 32 a. Piping Connections: Threaded, same end of coil.
- 33 b. Tube Material: Copper.
- 34 c. Tube Thickness: 0.025 inches.
- 35 d. Tube Diameter: 0.625 inches
- 36 e. Fin Type: Plate.
- 37 f. Fin Material: Aluminum.
- 38 g. Fin Spacing: Maximum 12 fins per inch.
- 39 h. Fin Thickness: 0.0075 inches.
- 40 i. Fin and Tube Joint: Mechanical bond.
- 41 j. Headers:
- 42 1) Seamless copper tube with brazed joints, prime coated.

- 1 k. Frames: Channel frame, 0.0625-inch-thick, stainless steel.
 2 l. Coil Working-Pressure Ratings: 200 psig, 325 deg F.

3 D. Cooling Coils:

- 4 1. Chilled-Water Coil: Self-draining.
- 5 a. Piping Connections: Threaded, same end of coil.
 6 b. Tube Material: Copper.
 7 c. Tube Thickness: 0.025 inches.
 8 d. Tube Diameter: 0.625 inches
 9 e. Maximum Number of Rows: 10.
 10 f. Fin Type: Plate.
 11 g. Fin Material: Aluminum.
 12 h. Fin Spacing: Maximum 12 fins per inch .
 13 i. Fin Thickness: 0.0075 inches.
 14 j. Fin and Tube Joint: Mechanical bond.
 15 k. Headers:
- 16 1) Seamless copper tube with brazed joints, prime coated.
- 17 l. Frames: Channel frame, 0.0625-inch-thick, stainless steel.
 18 m. Working-Pressure Ratings: 200 psig, 325 deg F.

19 **2.7 AIR FILTRATION SECTION**

- 20 A. Particulate air filtration is specified in Section 23 41 00 "Particulate Air Filtration."
 21 B. Side-Access Filter Mounting Frames:
- 22 1. Particulate Air Filter Frames: Match inner casing and outer casing material, and insulation
 23 thickness. Aluminum track.
- 24 a. Prefilters: Incorporate an integral 2-inch-thick track.
 25 b. Sealing: Incorporate positive-sealing device to ensure seal between gasketed
 26 material on channels to seal top and bottom of filter cartridge frames to prevent
 27 bypass of unfiltered air.

28 **2.8 DAMPERS**

- 29 A. Damper Operators: Comply with requirements in Section 25 09 23.12 "Control Damper
 30 Accessories."

31 **2.9 ADDITIONAL SECTIONS**

- 32 A. Combination Filter and Mixing Section:
- 33 1. Cabinet support members shall hold 2-inch-thick, pleated, flat, permanent or throwaway
 34 filters.

- 1 B. Access Sections: Provide to allow access between coils and as otherwise required or indicated.
2 Access section shall be a minimum of 30 inches (762 mm) deep.
- 3 C. Custom Section(s): Provided by the air handler manufacturer as an integral section of the unit
4 for field installation of special components.
- 5 D. Inlet and/or Discharge Plenum: Provide with single or multiple openings as indicated.
- 6 E. Heat-Pipe Heat Exchangers:
- 7 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
8 following:
- 9 a. Applied Air; Mestek Technology, Inc.
10 b. Des Champs Technologies.
11 c. Engineered Air.
12 d. Gaylord Industries, Inc.
13 e. Heat Pipe Technology, Inc.
- 14 2. Casing: Galvanized-steel flanged casing, with airtight partition between airstreams.
15 3. Refrigerant: ASHRAE 15, Group 1. HCFC-free refrigerant.
16 4. Tubes: 5/8-inch-diameter, copper.
17 5. Fins: Aluminum .
- 18 a. Maximum Fin Spacing: 12 fins per inch.
19 b. Fin and Tube Joint: Mechanical bond.

20 2.10 MATERIALS

- 21 A. Steel:
- 22 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
23 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.
- 24 B. Stainless Steel:
- 25 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
26 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or
27 moisture.
- 28 C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- 29 D. Aluminum: ASTM B 09.

30 2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- 31 A. AHRI 430 Certification: Air-handling units and their components shall be factory tested
32 according to AHRI 430 and shall be listed and labeled by AHRI.
- 33 B. AHRI 1060 Certification: Air-handling units that include air-to-air energy recovery devices shall
34 be factory tested according to AHRI 1060 and shall be listed and labeled by AHRI.



- 1 C. AMCA 301 or AHRI 260: Air-handling unit fan sound ratings shall comply with AMCA 301,
 2 "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data," or AHRI 260, "Sound
 3 Rating of Ducted Air Moving and Conditioning Equipment."
- 4 D. Fan Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound
 5 Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room
 6 Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Fans shall bear AMCA-certified sound ratings seal.
- 7 E. Fan Performance Rating: Factory test fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density,
 8 rotation speed, and efficiency. Rate performance according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods
 9 of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating."
- 10 F. Water Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

11 PART 3 - EXECUTION

12 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 13 A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for
 14 installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 15 B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-handling unit installation. Reject
 16 insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- 17 C. Examine roughing-in for hydronic, and condensate drainage piping systems and electrical
 18 services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- 19 D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

20 3.2 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- 21 A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site.
- 22 B. Accept products on site in factory-fabricated protective containers, with factory-installed
 23 shipping skids. Inspect for damage.
- 24 C. Store in clean dry place and protect from weather and construction traffic. Handle carefully to
 25 avoid damage to components, enclosures, and finish.
- 26 D. Knockdown and re-assemble air handling unit(s), as required, to accommodate any installation
 27 limitations. The knockdown and re-assembly of the air handling unit(s) shall be performed by
 28 personnel approved by the equipment manufacturer, such as not to void the equipment
 29 warranty.

30 3.3 INSTALLATION

- 31 A. Equipment Mounting:
- 32 1. Install air-handling units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases with elastomeric
 33 mounts. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment

- 1 provided. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in
2 Division 03
- 3 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 23 05 48.13
4 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- 5 B. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and
6 maintenance.
- 7 C. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace
8 temporary filters used during construction and testing, with new, clean filters.
- 9 D. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in
10 Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."
- 11 **3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS**
- 12 A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general
13 arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- 14 B. Where installing piping adjacent to air-handling unit, allow for service and maintenance.
- 15 C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- 16 D. Connect condensate drain pans using, ASTM B88, Type M copper tubing. Extend to nearest
17 equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at
18 changes in direction.
- 19 E. Hot- and Chilled-Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 23 21 13
20 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 23 21 16 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Install shutoff valve and
21 union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at
22 each coil return connection.
- 23 **3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS**
- 24 A. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and
25 Cables."
- 26 B. Ground equipment according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical
27 Systems."
- 28 C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to
29 NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- 30 D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and
31 circuit number feeding connection.
- 32 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in
33 Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 34 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background
35 and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.



1 **3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS**

- 2 A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- 3 B. Connect control wiring according to Section 25 05 23 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

4 **3.7 STARTUP SERVICE**

- 5 A. Perform startup service.
- 6 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 7 2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
- 8 3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to
- 9 piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload
- 10 protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
- 11 4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing
- 12 operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
- 13 5. Verify that bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-
- 14 recommended lubricants.
- 15 6. Verify that face-and-bypass dampers provide full face flow.
- 16 7. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain
- 17 minimum outdoor-air setting.
- 18 8. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.
- 19 9. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed for electric coils.
- 20 10. Install new, clean filters.
- 21 11. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in
- 22 connected duct systems are in fully open position.

- 23 B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:
- 24 1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan
- 25 to indicated rpm. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design conditions.
- 26 2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
- 27 3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan
- 28 performance.

29 **3.8 ADJUSTING**

- 30 A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- 31 B. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 93 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for
- 32 air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

33 **3.9 CLEANING**

- 34 A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling unit and
- 35 air-distribution systems and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally
- 36 to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers,
- 37 coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.



1 **3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

2 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and
3 inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

4 B. Perform the following tests and inspections:

5 1. Leak Test: After installation, fill water and steam coils with water, and test coils and
6 connections for leaks.

7 2. Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.

8 3. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm
9 proper motor rotation and unit operation.

10 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
11 equipment.

12 C. Air-handling unit or components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass
13 tests and inspections.

14 D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

15 **3.11 DEMONSTRATION**

16 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

17 **END OF SECTION 23 73 13.16**



1 **SECTION 23 81 23 - COMPUTER-ROOM AIR-CONDITIONERS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
- 8 1. Floor-mounted computer-room air conditioners.

9 **1.3 DEFINITION**

- 10 A. BAS: Building automation system.

11 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 12 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating
13 characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

14 **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 15 A. Field quality-control reports.
- 16 B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

17 **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 18 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For computer-room air conditioners to include in emergency,
19 operation, and maintenance manuals.

20 **1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- 21 A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective
22 covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- 23 1. Filters: One set of filters for each unit.



1 **1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

2 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
3 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

4 B. ASHRAE Compliance:

5 1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for
6 Refrigeration Systems."

7 2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor
8 Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Ventilation Rate
9 Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

10 C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

11 D. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label water-cooled condenser shell to comply with ASME
12 Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," Division 1.

13 **1.9 COORDINATION**

14 A. Coordinate layout and installation of computer-room air conditioners and suspension system
15 with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures,
16 HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

17 B. Coordinate installation of computer-room air conditioners with computer-room access flooring
18 Installer.

19 C. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

20 D. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with
21 actual equipment provided.

22 **1.10 WARRANTY**

23 A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or
24 replace components of computer-room air conditioners that fail in materials or workmanship
25 within specified warranty period.

26 1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years
27 from date of Substantial Completion.

28 2. Warranty Period for Control Boards: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three
29 years from date of Substantial Completion.

30 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

31 **2.1 FLOOR-MOUNTED UNITS**

32 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated
33 on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:



- 1 1. Liebert Corporation (CW/DS).
- 2 B. Description: Packaged, factory assembled, prewired, and prepiped; consisting of cabinet, fans,
3 filters, and controls.
- 4 C. Cabinet and Frame: Welded steel, braced for rigidity, and supporting compressors and other
5 mechanical equipment and fittings.
- 6 1. Doors and Access Panels: Galvanized steel with polyurethane gaskets, hinges, and
7 concealed fastening devices.
- 8 2. Insulation: Thermally and acoustically insulate cabinet interior with 1-inch-thick 1.5 lb.
9 (0.68 kg) duct liner.
- 10 3. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with
11 requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- 12 4. Finish of Exterior Surfaces: Baked-on, textured vinyl enamel; color as selected from
13 manufacturer's standard colors.
- 14 D. Supply-Air Fan(s):
- 15 1. Single inlet, plug type fan(s); statically and dynamically balanced.
- 16 2. Drive: Direct drive, electronically commutated and variable speed.
- 17 3. Fans shall be located to draw air over the coil to ensure even distribution and maximum
18 coil performance.
- 19 E. Hydronic Cooling Coil: Seamless copper tubes expanded into aluminum fins with modulating
20 two-way control valve.
- 21 1. Cooling Medium: Water.
- 22 2. Mount coil assembly over stainless-steel drain pan complying with ASHRAE 62.1 and
23 having a condensate pump unit with integral float switch, pump-motor assembly, and
24 condensate reservoir.
- 25 F. Extended-Surface, Disposable, Panel Filter: Pleated, lofted, nonwoven, reinforced cotton fabric;
26 supported and bonded to welded-wire grid; enclosed in cardboard frame.
- 27 1. Thickness: 2 inches .
- 28 2. Initial Resistance: 0.25-inch wg at 350 fpm.
- 29 3. Recommended Final Resistance: 1.0-inch wg.
- 30 4. Merv (ASHRAE 52.2): 13.
- 31 G. Integral Electrical Controls: Unit-mounted electrical enclosure with piano-hinged door,
32 grounding lug, combination magnetic starters with overload relays, circuit breakers and cover
33 interlock, and fusible control-circuit transformer.
- 34 H. Disconnect Switch: Nonautomatic, molded-case circuit breaker with handle accessible when
35 panel is closed and capable of preventing access until switched to off position.
- 36 I. Microprocessor-Control System: Continuously monitors operation of process cooling system;
37 continuously displays room temperature and room relative humidity; sounds alarm on system
38 malfunction and simultaneously displays problem. If more than one malfunction occurs, system
39 displays fault in sequence with room temperature and continues to display fault when
40 malfunction is cleared until system is reset.



- 1 1. Malfunctions:
- 2 a. Power loss.
- 3 b. Loss of airflow.
- 4 c. Clogged air filter.
- 5 d. High room temperature.
- 6 e. Low room temperature.
- 7 f. High humidity.
- 8 g. Low humidity.
- 9 h. Smoke/fire.
- 10 i. Water under floor.
- 11 j. Supply fan overload.
- 12 2. Digital Display: 128x64 dot matrix graphic front monitor display and control keys for user
- 13 inputs.
- 14 a. Control power on.
- 15 b. Compressor No. 1 - Operating.
- 16 c. Compressor No. 2 - Operating.
- 17 d. Heat operating.
- 18 3. System Auto Restart: The auto restart feature will automatically restart the system after a
- 19 power failure. Time delay is programmable.
- 20 4. Sequential Load Activation: On initial startup or restart after power failure, each
- 21 operational load is sequenced with a minimum of one second delay to minimize total
- 22 inrush current.
- 23 5. Push buttons shall stop and start process cooling system, silence audible alarm, test
- 24 indicators, and display room's relative humidity.
- 25 6. BAS Interface: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable the BAS to monitor,
- 26 control, and display unit status and alarms.
- 27 a. The control shall include four customer accessible analog inputs for sensors
- 28 provided by others. The analog inputs shall accept a 4 to 20mA signal. The user
- 29 shall be able to change the input to 0 to 5VDC or 0 to 10VDC if desired. The gains
- 30 for each analog input shall be programmable from the front display. The analog
- 31 inputs shall be able to be monitored from the front display.
- 32 b. Hardwired Points:
- 33 1) Monitoring: On-off status, common trouble alarm space temperature space
- 34 relative humidity.
- 35 2) Control: On-off operation, space temperature set-point adjustment space
- 36 relative humidity set-point adjustment .
- 37 c. ASHRAE 135 (BACnet) communication interface with the BAS shall enable the
- 38 BAS operator to remotely control and monitor the unit from an operator
- 39 workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at unit control
- 40 panel shall be available through the BAS.
- 41 J. Flow Switch: Factory mounted and wired flow switch to activate alarm system should cooling
- 42 water supply be interrupted.



1 **2.2 FAN MOTORS**

- 2 A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and
 3 efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements
 4 for HVAC Equipment."
- 5 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load
 6 will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- 7 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical
 8 devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.

9 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

10 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 11 A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with
 12 requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 13 B. Examine roughing-in for hydronic piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections
 14 before equipment installation.
- 15 C. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where computer-room air conditioners
 16 will be installed.
- 17 D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

18 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- 19 A. Install computer-room air conditioners level and plumb, maintaining manufacturer's
 20 recommended clearances. Install according to ARI Guideline B.
- 21 B. Computer-Room Air-Conditioner Mounting: Install using elastomeric mounts . Comply with
 22 requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 23 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic
 23 Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- 24 1. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch.

25 **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- 26 A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning
 27 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- 28 B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- 29 C. Water and Drainage Connections: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 22 11 16
 30 "Domestic Water Piping." Provide adequate connections for water-cooled units, condensate
 31 drain, and humidifier flushing system.



- 1 D. Chilled-Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 23 21 13 "Hydronic
2 Piping" and Section 23 21 16 Hydronic Piping Specialties." Provide shutoff valves in inlet and
3 outlet piping to cooling coils.

4 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 5 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect,
6 test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

- 7 B. Perform tests and inspections.

- 8 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to
9 inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and
10 to assist in testing.

- 11 C. Tests and Inspections:

- 12 1. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
13 2. After installing computer-room air conditioners and after electrical circuitry has been
14 energized, test for compliance with requirements.
15 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm
16 proper motor rotation and unit operation.
17 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls
18 and equipment.

- 19 D. Computer-room air conditioners will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and
20 inspections.

- 21 E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

- 22 F. After startup service and performance test, change filters and flush humidifier.

23 **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- 24 A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

- 25 B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

- 26 C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion,
27 provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to
28 two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

29 **3.6 DEMONSTRATION**

- 30 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to
31 adjust, operate, and maintain computer-room air conditioners.

32 **END OF SECTION 23 81 23**



1 **SECTION 23 82 19 - FAN COIL UNITS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
8 1. Horizontal, suspended fan coil units and accessories.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

11 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and
12 accessories.

13 **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 14 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fan coil units to include in emergency, operation, and
15 maintenance manuals.

16 1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 include the following:

17 a. Maintenance schedules and repair part lists for motors, coils, integral controls, and
18 filters.

19 **1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- 20 A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective
21 covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

22 1. Fan Coil Unit Filters: Furnish 1 spare filters for each filter installed.
23 2. Fan Belts: Furnish 2 spare fan belts for each unit installed.

24 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 25 A. Comply with NFPA 70.

26 B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and
27 Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."



- 1 C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 -
2 "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

3 1.7 COORDINATION

- 4 A. Coordinate layout and installation of fan coil units and suspension system components with
5 other construction that penetrates or is supported by ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC
6 equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.
- 7 B. Coordinate size and location of wall sleeves for outdoor-air intake.

8 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

9 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- 10 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
11 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 12 B. Factory-packaged and -tested units rated according to AHRI 440, ASHRAE 33, and UL 1995.

13 2.2 HORIZONTAL, SUSPENDED FAN COIL UNITS

- 14 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
15 following:

- 16 1. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
- 17 2. Daikin Applied.
- 18 3. ENVIRO-TEC; by Johnson Controls, Inc.
- 19 4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
- 20 5. Titus.
- 21 6. Trane Inc.

- 22 B. Fan Coil Unit Configurations: Row split.

- 23 C. Coil Section Insulation: 1-inch-thick, foil-faced glass fiber complying with ASTM C1071 and
24 attached with adhesive complying with ASTM C916.

- 25 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Insulation and adhesive shall have a combined
26 maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested
27 according to ASTM E84 by a qualified testing agency.
- 28 2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with
29 requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

- 30 D. Main and Auxiliary Drain Pans: Stainless steel. Fabricate pans and drain connections to comply
31 with ASHRAE 62.1.

- 32 E. Chassis: Galvanized steel where exposed to moisture, with baked-enamel finish and removable
33 access panel. Floor-mounting units shall have leveling screws.

- 34 F. Cabinets: Steel with baked-enamel finish in manufacturer's standard paint color.



- 1 G. Filters: Minimum arresstance and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to
2 ASHRAE 52.2 and all addendums.
- 3 1. Pleated Cotton-Polyester Media: 90 percent arresstance and MERV 7.
- 4 H. Hydronic Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than
5 0.1 inch, rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water
6 temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain.
- 7 I. Direct-Driven Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated,
8 electronically commutated motor (ECM) resiliently mounted in the fan inlet. Aluminum or
9 painted-steel wheels, and painted-steel or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
- 10 1. Motors: Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for
11 HVAC Equipment."
- 12 J. Control devices and operational sequence are specified in Division 25.
- 13 K. Interface with DDC System for HVAC Requirements:
- 14 1. Interface terminal board, with 24-Vac transformer, for field installed controller by Division
15 25.
- 16 L. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single electrical connection.

17 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

18 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 19 A. Examine areas, with Installer present, to receive fan coil units for compliance with requirements
20 for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 21 B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before fan
22 coil unit installation.
- 23 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

24 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- 25 A. Install fan coil units level and plumb.
- 26 B. Install fan coil units to comply with NFPA 90A.
- 27 C. Suspend fan coil units from structure with elastomeric hangers. Vibration isolators are specified
28 in Section 23 05 48.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- 29 D. Install new filters in each fan coil unit within two weeks after Substantial Completion.



1 **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

2 A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general
3 arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:

- 4 1. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
5 2. Connect piping to fan coil unit factory hydronic piping package. Install piping package if
6 shipped loose.
7 3. Connect condensate drain to indirect waste.

8 a. Install condensate trap of adequate depth to seal against fan pressure. Install
9 cleanouts in piping at changes of direction.

10 B. Connect supply-air and return-air ducts to fan coil units with flexible duct connectors specified in
11 Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories." Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995 for duct
12 connections.

13 C. Ground equipment according to Division 26.

14 D. Connect wiring according to Division 26.

15 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

16 A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

- 17 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm
18 proper motor rotation and unit operation.
19 2. Operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and
20 electrical connections.
21 3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning
22 controls and equipment.

23 B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

24 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

25 **3.5 ADJUSTING**

26 A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

27 **3.6 DEMONSTRATION**

28 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fan coil units.

29 **END OF SECTION 23 82 19**



1 **SECTION 25 01 00 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 6 B. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 25 Specification Sections.

7 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 8 A. Section includes basic requirements for Instrumentation and Control systems.

9 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 10 A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" unless otherwise further
11 described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in
12 nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and
13 having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 14 B. Furnish: Supply and deliver to project site, ready for subsequent requirements.
- 15 C. Install: Operations at project site, including unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing,
16 anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar
17 requirements.
- 18 D. Provide: Furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use.
- 19 E. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of
20 subsequent work.
- 21 F. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after
22 installation of subsequent work.
- 23 G. Concealed Work: Work hidden from view, including inside chases, furred spaces, or above
24 ceilings.
- 25 H. Exposed Work: Work open to view, including inside mechanical and equipment rooms.

26 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 27 A. General:
- 28 1. It is the intent of the plans and specifications to obtain a complete, operable and
29 satisfactory installation.



- 1 2. All materials shall be new, be properly labeled and/or identified and be in full compliance
2 with the contract documents.
- 3 3. All work shall comply with applicable Codes and Standards.
- 4 4. Manufacturer's model names and numbers used in these specifications are subject to
5 change per manufacturer's action. Contractor shall therefore verify them with
6 manufacturer's representative before ordering any product or equipment
- 7 B. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment manufactured in the U.S.A. Where two or
8 more units of the same type or class of equipment are required provide units of a single
9 manufacturer.
- 10 **1.5 CODES AND STANDARDS**
- 11 A. Perform work in accordance with the following codes and any applicable statutes, ordinances,
12 codes, and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.
- 13 1. ASHRAE
- 14 a. Standard 15 Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems - 2019
- 15 b. Standard 55 Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy –
16 2017
- 17 c. Standard 62.1 Ventilation Standard for Acceptable Indoor air Quality - 2019
- 18 d. Standard 170 Ventilation of Health Care Facilities - 2017
- 19 e. Standard 90.1 Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low Rise Residential
20 Buildings - 2019
- 21 2. ASME
- 22 a. ASME A17.1 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators - 2019
- 23 b. ASME A17.3 Safety Code for Existing Elevators and Escalators - 2020
- 24 3. Occupational Safety and Health Regulations (OSHA).
- 25 4. National Fire Codes
- 26 a. NFPA 1 Uniform Fire Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
- 27 b. NFPA 45 Standard on Fire Protection for Laboratories using Chemicals - 2019
- 28 c. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code – 2020
- 29 d. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code - 2019
- 30 e. NFPA 90A Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilation
31 Systems - 2021
- 32 f. NFPA 90B Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air
33 Conditioning Systems - 2021
- 34 g. NFPA 91 Standard for the Installation of Blower and Exhaust Systems - 2020
- 35 h. NFPA 92 Standard for Smoke Control Systems – 2018
- 36 i. NFPA 96 Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial
37 Cooking Operations – 2021
- 38 j. NFPA 99 Standard for Health Care Facilities - 2021
- 39 k. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
- 40 5. Florida Building Code, 2023 Edition
- 41 a. Building Code
- 42 b. Existing Building Code



- 1 c. Energy Conservation Code
 2 d. Mechanical Code
 3 e. Plumbing Code
 4 f. Fuel Gas Code
 5 g. Accessibility Code
- 6 6. Florida Statutes
- 7 a. Chapter 471 Engineering
 8 b. Chapter 533.80 Building Construction Standards; Florida Building Code -
 9 Enforcement
- 10 7. Florida Administrative Code
- 11 a. Chapter 6A-2 Educational Facilities
 12 b. Chapter 9B-7 Florida Building Commission Handicapped Accessibility
 13 Standards
 14 c. Chapter 59A-3 Hospital Licensure
 15 d. Chapter 59A-4 Minimum Standards for Nursing Homes
 16 e. Chapter 59A-5 Ambulatory Surgical Center Licensure
 17 f. Chapter 61C-5 Florida Elevator Safety Code
 18 g. Chapter 61G15-34 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning
 19 the Design of Mechanical Systems
 20 h. Chapter 69A-3 Fire Prevention – General Provisions
 21 i. Chapter 69A-47 Uniform Fire Safety Standards for Elevators
 22 j. Chapter 69A-53 Uniform Fire Safety Standards for Hospitals and Nursing
 23 Homes
 24 k. Chapter 69A-58 Fire Safety in Educational Facilities
 25 l. Chapter 69A-60 The Florida Fire Prevention Code
- 26 8. International Building Code, 2024 Edition
- 27 a. Building Code
 28 b. Existing Building Code
 29 c. Energy Conservation Code
 30 d. Fire Code
 31 e. Fuel Gas Code
 32 f. Green Construction Code
 33 g. Mechanical Code
 34 h. Plumbing Code
 35 i. Accessibility Code
 36 j. Private Sewage Disposal Code
 37 k. Swimming Pool and Spa Code
- 38 9. Georgia Fire Standards
 39 10. Georgia Accessibility Code 120-3-20
 40 11. ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings (ADAAG)
- 41 B. Resolve, in writing, any code violation discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior
 42 to bidding. After award of the contract, make any correction or addition necessary for
 43 compliance with applicable codes at no additional cost to Owner.
- 44 C. The Contractor shall include in the Work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials,
 45 services, apparatus, and drawings required to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances,
 46 rules, and regulations.



- 1 D. Where there is conflict between the Contract Documents and the applicable Codes, the Codes
2 shall govern, except where the requirements of the Contract Documents are more stringent.

3 **1.6 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS**

- 4 A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or
5 AWWA Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with
6 latest editions, revisions, amendments, or supplements in effect on date bids are received.
7 Specifications and standards are minimum requirements for all equipment, material and work.
8 In instances where capacities, size or other feature of equipment, devices or materials exceed
9 these minimums, meet listed or shown capacities.
- 10 B. Whenever a reference is made to a standard, installation and materials shall comply with the
11 latest published edition of the standard at the time project is bid unless otherwise specified
12 herein

13 **1.7 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES**

- 14 A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a
15 design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide
16 products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

17 **1.8 PERMITS FEES AND INSPECTIONS**

- 18 A. Obtain and pay for all permits, fees, tap fees, connection charges, demand charges, systems
19 charges, impact fees, and inspections.
- 20 B. Deliver all certificates of inspection issued by authorities having jurisdiction to the Engineer.

21 **1.9 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS**

- 22 A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or
23 requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting
24 requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent
25 requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Engineer
26 for direction before proceeding.
- 27 1. If discrepancies or conflicts occur between drawings, or between drawings and
28 specifications, notify the Engineer in writing prior to bid date; however, the most stringent
29 requirement shall govern.
- 30 B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the
31 minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum
32 quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply
33 with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate,
34 for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Engineer for a decision before
35 proceeding.



1 **1.10 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)**

2 A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or
3 interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the
4 form specified.

- 5 1. Engineer will return without response those RFIs submitted to Engineer by other entities
6 controlled by Contractor.
7 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or
8 work of subcontractors.

9 B. Prepare RFIs as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or
10 web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All**
11 **electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be**
12 **transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals
13 shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

14 C. Engineer's Action: Engineer will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow
15 seven days for Engineer's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m.
16 Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.

17 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:

- 18 a. Requests for approval of submittals.
19 b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
20 c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
21 d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract
22 Documents.
23 e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
24 f. Requests for interpretation of Engineer's actions on submittals.
25 g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.

26 2. Engineer's action may include a request for additional information, in which case
27 Engineer's time for response will date from time of receipt by Engineer of additional
28 information.

29 **1.11 SUBMITTALS**

30 A. Submittals (including Product Data, Shop Drawings, and any other Action Submittal or
31 Information Submittal) will only be reviewed if they are submitted in full accordance with the
32 General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:

- 33 1. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of
34 submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
35 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless
36 partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved by the Engineer.
37 3. Submittals shall only contain relevant product data. Remove or strikeout irrelevant
38 product data.
39 4. Prepare submittals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through
40 email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification
41 Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to**
42 **inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email**



- 1 **addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF
 2 format and not a scanned copy.
- 3 5. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Engineer.
- 4 6. Deviations: Clearly identify deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents,
 5 including minor variations and limitations.
- 6 7. Revisions: Include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those
 7 specifically requested by Engineer on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on
 8 each submittal or noting on attached submittal sheet.
- 9 8. Contractor's Review:
- 10 a. Submittals shall have been reviewed and approved by the General Contractor /
 11 Construction Manager. Include approval stamp, name of reviewer, date of
 12 Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed,
 13 checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
- 14 b. Engineer will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have
 15 Contractor's review and approval.
- 16 9. Electrical Modifications:
- 17 a. The electrical design indicated on the plans supports the Basis of Design
 18 specifications for the Instrumentation and Control systems at the time of design.
- 19 b. If Instrumentation and Control equipment is submitted with different electrical
 20 requirements, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to resolve all required
 21 electrical design changes, including, but not limited to: wire and conduit size, type
 22 or size of disconnect or overload protection, breaker coordination, point(s) of
 23 connection, etc. Any corrections required shall be provided at no additional cost.
- 24 c. Submittal shall clearly show the electrical design revisions with a written statement
 25 that this change will be provided at no additional cost. Submittals made with no
 26 written reference to the electrical design revisions will be presumed to work with
 27 the electrical design.
- 28 B. Processing Time: Time of review shall commence on Engineer's receipt of submittal. No
 29 extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of the failure to transmit submittals
 30 enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
- 31 1. Allow not less than 15 days for submittal review. Allow not less than 21 days for review
 32 of large or complex submittals. Submittals received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern
 33 Time will be considered as received the following working day.
- 34 2. If Contractor transmits more than five submittals over two consecutive business days,
 35 review time shall increase by no less than 7 days for submittal review.
- 36 3. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Engineer will
 37 advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
- 38 4. Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with
 39 other submittals until related submittals are received. Time of review shall commence on
 40 receipt of all other related submittals.
- 41 C. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the
 42 contract documents by the Engineer's approval of shop drawings, product data, samples, or
 43 similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Engineer in writing of such
 44 deviation at the time of submittal, and the Engineer has given written approval to the specific
 45 deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in shop
 46 drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals by the Engineer's approval thereof.
- 47 D. Submittal Review Fees:



- 1 1. Additional Reviews: Submittals on any particular phase of Work will receive only one
 2 review and one re-review (if required). If additional reviews are required beyond these
 3 two, the Contractor will be charged \$200.00 per hour for review time, in addition to any
 4 expedited review charges. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal
 5 release.
 6 2. Expedited Reviews: If General Contractor / Construction Manager requests for an
 7 expedited review, whether by official request or unofficially by assigning a review time
 8 less than required above, the General Contractor / Construction Manager will be charged
 9 \$1,000.00 per Submittal, in addition to any charges for additional reviews. This fee shall
 10 be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.

11 **1.12 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

- 12 A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in
 13 individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop
 14 Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is
 15 required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than
 16 one entity.
- 17 1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to
 18 indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed
 19 data. Include the following information, as applicable:
- 20 a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings.
 21 Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of
 22 various systems and components.
 23 b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings by
 24 multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the
 25 information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before
 26 submitting for review.
 27 c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural,
 28 structural, civil, fire protection, mechanical, electrical, and communication systems.
 29 d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated
 30 replacement of components during the life of the installation.
 31 e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers,
 32 valves, pull boxes, junction boxes, and other controls.
 33 f. Indicate required installation sequences.
 34 g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear
 35 to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements.
 36 Provide alternative sketches to Engineer indicating proposed resolution of such
 37 conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered
 38 changes to the Contract.
- 39 B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
- 40 1. Floor Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and Work associated with
 41 Divisions 21 through 29, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and
 42 coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved. Supplement
 43 plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
- 44 a. Mechanical Systems (Divisions 21, 22, 23, 25):



- 1) Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork and piping runs, including insulation, heat tracing, bracing, flanges, and support systems. Indicate proposed changes to layout.
- 2) Locations and sizes of major equipment and components.
- 3) Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
- 4) Structural members to which ductwork and piping will be attached or suspended from.
- b. Electrical and Communication Systems (Divisions 25, 26, 27, 28, 29):
- 1) Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
- 2) Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
- 3) Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor-control center locations.
- 4) Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
- 5) Structural members to which luminaire and equipment will be attached or suspended from.
- 6) Lightning protection system components attaching to or penetrating through the roofing and moisture protection systems, coordinated with the roofing system manufacturer.
- 7) Cable tray layout, offsets, transitions, clearances, elevations, and relationships between components and adjacent structural, mechanical and electrical elements.
2. Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show locations of visible devices mounted to, suspended from, or penetrating through the ceiling, relative to the finished ceiling, including the following:
- a. Fire suppression sprinklers and nozzles.
- b. Air outlets and inlets.
- c. Luminaires (Lighting fixtures).
- d. Lighting control devices.
- e. Speakers.
- f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
- g. Access control devices.
- h. Video surveillance devices.
- i. Fire alarm devices.
- j. Access panels.
- k. Perimeter moldings.
- l. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of the plane of the ceiling.
3. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, equipment for Divisions 21 through 29, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of components indicated on Drawings for Divisions 21 through 29. Indicate areas of conflict between components of Divisions 21 through 29.
4. Equipment Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for equipment rooms showing plans and elevations of equipment for Divisions 21 through 29.
5. Penetrations: Indicate locations of penetrations and openings in structural components, smoke barriers, and fire-rated construction.
6. Review: Engineer will review coordination drawings to confirm that in general the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Engineer determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared



1 in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Engineer will so inform Contractor,
2 who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.

3 C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following
4 requirements:

5 1. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.
6 2. BIM File Incorporation: Develop and incorporate coordination drawing files into BIM
7 established for Project.

8 a. Perform three-dimensional component conflict analysis as part of preparation of
9 coordination drawings. Resolve component conflicts prior to submittal. Indicate
10 where conflict resolution requires modification of design requirements by Engineer.

11 3. Engineer will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in
12 preparing coordination digital data files.

13 a. Engineer makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital
14 data files as they relate to Drawings.

15 b. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form
16 acceptable to Engineer.

17 1.13 SUBSTITUTIONS

18 A. By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment
19 described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are
20 encouraged to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the
21 Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.

22 B. Substitution Requests shall include, at a minimum:

23 1. Statement indicating why specified material, equipment, or installation method cannot be
24 provided, if applicable.

25 2. Coordination of information, including a list of changes and revisions needed to other
26 parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that
27 will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.

28 3. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the
29 Work specified. Include an annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant
30 qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual
31 effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and
32 requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.

33 4. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and
34 installation procedures.

35 5. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions
36 with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If
37 specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time,
38 include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of
39 purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.

40 6. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.

41 7. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the
42 Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with
43 related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.

44 8. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become
45 necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.



- 1 C. Procurement Substitution Requests submitted prior to receipt of bids will be received and
 2 considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Engineer;
 3 otherwise, requests will be returned without action:
- 4 1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment are received no later than 10 days
 5 prior to date of bid opening.
 6 2. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
 7 3. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents,
 8 including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
 9 4. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- 10 D. Substitutions for Cause, as required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of
 11 product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms will be received and
 12 considered by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests
 13 will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- 14 1. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce
 15 indicated results.
 16 2. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 17 3. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having
 18 jurisdiction.
 19 4. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 20 5. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 21 6. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 22 7. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has
 23 been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible
 24 with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- 25 E. Substitutions for Convenience, not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may
 26 offer advantage to Contractor or Owner, will be received and considered by Owner, as
 27 determined by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests
 28 will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- 29 1. Requested substitution is received within 60 days after the Notice of Award.
 30 2. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy
 31 conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner
 32 must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Engineer
 33 for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and
 34 similar considerations.
 35 3. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
 36 4. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce
 37 indicated results.
 38 5. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 39 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having
 40 jurisdiction.
 41 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 42 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 43 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 44 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has
 45 been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible
 46 with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- 47 F. If a requested substitution is approved but contains differences or omissions not specifically
 48 identified to the attention of the Engineer in the substitution request, the Owner reserves the



1 right to require equal or similar features to be added to the substituted products or to have the
2 substituted products replaced at the Contractor's expense.

3 **1.14 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

4 A. Recording: Maintain one copy of the Contract Documents and Shop Drawings during the
5 construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to
6 project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

7 B. Preparation:

8 1. Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings:

- 9 a. Mark revisions to show where the actual installation varies from that shown
10 originally.
- 11 b. Mark record sets completely and accurately, including important information that
12 was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
- 13 c. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish
14 between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
- 15 d. Record underground and under-slab piping installed, dimensioning exact location
16 and elevation of piping.

17 2. Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies
18 from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.

19 3. Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies
20 substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

21 C. Deliver: Prior to Final Completion, provide record documents to Owner as indicated below:

- 22 1. Record Drawings: Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of
23 prints.
- 24 2. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications,
25 including addenda and contract modifications.
- 26 3. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each
27 submittal.
- 28 4. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Submit annotated PDF electronic files directories of
29 each submittal.

30 **1.15 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

31 A. Prepare and submit a comprehensive manual of emergency, operation, and maintenance data
32 and materials in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01,
33 and the following:

34 1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating
35 operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part
36 of a system, including:

- 37 a. Information required for daily operation and management, operating standards,
38 and routine and special operating procedures.



- 1 b. Manufacturers’ maintenance documentation, preventative maintenance
- 2 procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, list of
- 3 spare parts, and warranty information.
- 4 2. Submit manuals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through
- 5 email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification
- 6 Sections. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

7 **1.16 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

- 8 A. Prepare and provide services of qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust,
- 9 operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not a part of a system in
- 10 accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, individual
- 11 Specification Sections, and the following:
- 12 1. Demonstration and training shall occur upon completion of the Work and at a time
- 13 designated by the Owner’s representative.
- 14 2. Provide a high-resolution, digital video recording of each training session to the Owner.

15 **1.17 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 16 A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage,
- 17 deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written
- 18 instructions.
- 19 B. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to
- 20 determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

21 **1.18 WARRANTY**

- 22 A. Warranty work and equipment within specified warranty period. During the warranty period,
- 23 provide labor and materials to make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to
- 24 defects or omissions in materials or workmanship without expense to the Owner.
- 25 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
- 26 B. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other
- 27 warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer’s disclaimers and limitations on
- 28 product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of Contract
- 29 Documents.
- 30 C. Owner reserves the right to make emergency repairs as required to keep equipment in
- 31 operation without voiding Contractor’s Guarantee Bond nor relieving the Contractor of
- 32 responsibilities during the warranty period.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NONE)**

2 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3 **3.1 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Examine all drawings and specifications carefully before submitting a bid. Architectural
5 drawings take precedence over mechanical or electrical drawings with reference to building
6 construction.
- 7 B. For purposes of clearness and legibility, drawings are essentially diagrammatic and, although
8 size and location of equipment are drawn to scale wherever possible, Contractor shall make use
9 of all data in all of the contract documents and shall verify this information at the building site.
- 10 C. The drawings indicate required size and points of termination of pipes, conduits, and ducts and
11 suggest proper routes to conform to structure avoid obstructions and preserve clearances.
12 However, it is not intended that drawings indicate all necessary offsets, and it shall be the
13 responsibility of the Contractor to make the installation in such a manner as to conform to
14 structure, avoid obstructions, preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear,
15 without further instructions or cost to the Owner.
- 16 D. Furnish, install and/or connect with appropriate services all items shown on any drawing without
17 additional compensation.
- 18 E. Any and all questions about a subcontractor's scope of work responsibility shall be addressed to
19 and answered by the General Contractor / Construction Manager.
- 20 F. Questions About Construction Documents: Any and all questions shall be submitted through
21 the proper channels IN WRITING and, in turn, shall be answered by the Engineer in writing. All
22 telephone conversations shall be considered unofficial and, as such, shall not be considered
23 official or binding responses to Contractor's questions.
- 24 G. Drawings, specifications, or other documents issued by the Engineer in electronic format and/or
25 electronic media are provided for convenience only and are not intended for use as Contract
26 Documents.
- 27 1. The electronic files are provided merely as a convenience to the Recipient.
- 28 2. The electronic files do not replace or supplement the paper copies of any drawings,
29 specifications, or other documents included in the Contract Documents for use on the
30 project.
- 31 3. The Engineer makes no representation, warranty, or guarantee that electronic files:
- 32 a. Are suitable for any other usage or purpose.
- 33 b. Have any particular durability.
- 34 c. Will not damage or impair the Recipient's computer or software.
- 35 d. Contain no errors or mechanical flaws or other discrepancies that may render them
36 unsuitable for the purpose intended by the Recipient.
- 37 4. Due to the unsecured nature of the electronic files and the inability of Engineer or the
38 Recipient to establish controls over their use, the Engineer assumes no responsibility for
39 any consequences arising out of the use of the data. It is the sole responsibility of the
40 Recipient to check the validity of all information contained therein. The Recipient shall at



1 all times refer to the signed and sealed drawings, specification or other documents for the
 2 project during all phases of the project. The Recipient shall assume all risks and liabilities
 3 resulting from the use of the electronic files.

4 **3.2 SUPERVISION OF WORK**

5 A. Perform all work under the direct supervision of an experienced, qualified superintendent. The
 6 Engineer has the right to remove a superintendent who, in the Engineer's opinion, is not
 7 satisfactory.

8 **3.3 EXAMINATION**

9 A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and
 10 construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate
 11 and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical
 12 systems, and other construction affecting the Work.

13 B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the
 14 Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where
 15 indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions
 16 affecting performance.

- 17 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of
- 18 connections before equipment and fixture installation.
- 19 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are
- 20 to be installed.
- 21 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing
- 22 finishes or primers.

23 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding
 24 with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

25 **3.4 PREPARATION**

26 A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or
 27 relocate existing utility structures, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or
 28 affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.

29 B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck
 30 measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to
 31 other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before
 32 fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the
 33 Work.

34 C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown
 35 diagrammatically on Drawings.

36 D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for
 37 clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of
 38 Contractor, submit a request for information to Engineer.



1 E. Interruption of Service: Before any existing equipment or system is shut down for disconnecting
 2 or tie-ins, coordinate with Engineer and Owner regarding acceptable dates and times for this
 3 Work to be performed. Work shall be performed at the time best suited for the Owner, which
 4 typically is either on weekends, holidays, and/or after normal working hours. Services shall be
 5 restored the same day unless prior arrangements are made. All overtime or premium costs
 6 associated with this Work shall be included in the Contractor's bid.

7 **3.5 INSTALLATION**

8 A. Install materials and equipment in a professional manner. The Engineer may direct
 9 replacement of items which, in the Engineer's opinion, do not present a professional
 10 appearance or do not allow adequate space for maintenance. Replace or reinstall items at the
 11 expense of the Contractor.

12 B. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and
 13 elevation, as indicated.

- 14 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
- 15 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance
 16 and ease of removal for replacement.
- 17 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
- 18 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in
 19 unoccupied spaces.

20 C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in
 21 applications indicated.

22 D. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results.
 23 Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.

24 E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or
 25 loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.

26 F. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction
 27 items on site and placement in permanent locations.

28 G. Obstructions

- 29 1. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface
 30 obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not
 31 guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
- 32 2. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative,
 33 utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information
 34 has been provided. Verify locations given.
- 35 3. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work,
 36 reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform
 37 whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing
 38 services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.
- 39 4. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction,
 40 whether or not such existing facilities are shown.

41 H. Where "rated" walls, floor, roofs and ceilings are penetrated or cut to install equipment,
 42 materials, devices, etc. the Contractor shall provide and install all materials required to re-



- 1 establish the rating of the wall, floor, roof, or ceiling to the satisfaction of the authority having
2 jurisdiction.
- 3 I. Structural Elements: Do not cut structural elements without written approval from Engineer.
4 Notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before
5 proceeding. If approved by Engineer:
- 6 1. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching.
7 2. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-
8 carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- 9 J. Space Requirements: Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and
10 location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material which is not suitable
11 in this respect.
- 12 K. Tools and Equipment: Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If
13 objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by
14 equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions without cost to the
15 Owner.
- 16 L. Phasing: Provide all temporary valves, piping, ductwork, equipment, and devices as required.
17 Maintain temporary services to areas as required. Remove all temporary material and
18 equipment on completion of work unless Engineer concurs that such material and equipment
19 would be beneficial to the Owner on a permanent basis.
- 20 **3.6 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS**
- 21 A. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by
22 Owner's construction personnel.
- 23 **3.7 CUTTING AND PATCHING**
- 24 A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed
25 with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
- 26 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance
27 of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their
28 original condition.
- 29 B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged
30 during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not
31 to void existing warranties.
- 32 C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- 33 D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage.
34 Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be
35 exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- 36 E. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Engineer of locations
37 and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. Shore, brace, and



- 1 support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural
2 elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- 3 F. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a
4 manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased
5 maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- 6 G. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components
7 in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity
8 to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or
9 safety.
- 10 H. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence
11 of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in
12 Engineer's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction
13 that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- 14 I. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar
15 operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or
16 adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply
17 with original Installer's written recommendations.
- 18 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not
19 hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with
20 minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
21 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
22 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a
23 diamond-core drill.
24 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where
25 required by cutting and patching operations.
26 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be
27 removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent
28 entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
29 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- 30 J. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations
31 following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as
32 practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other
33 Sections, where applicable or with in-place materials.
- 34 1. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the
35 fullest extent possible.
36 2. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when
37 installed, will provide a match acceptable to Engineer for the visual and functional
38 performance of in-place materials.
- 39 K. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint,
40 mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.
- 41 **3.8 PAINTING**
- 42 A. Comply with requirements with General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, Division
43 09, and individual Specification Sections.



1 B. Touch-up factory finishes on equipment provided under Division 25. Obtain matched color
2 coatings from the manufacturer and apply as directed. If corrosion is found during inspection on
3 the surface of any equipment, clean, prime, and paint, as required.

4 C. Paint the following work where exposed to view:

- 5 1. Metal conduit
- 6 2. Plastic conduit

7 D. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:

- 8 1. Other items as directed by Engineer.

9 **3.9 REPAIR OF WORK**

10 A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of
11 Substantial Completion.

12 B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective
13 parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly
14 adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored,
15 provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.
16 Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified
17 condition.

18 1. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces.
19 Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.

20 a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including
21 mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels
22 and identification.

23 2. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede
24 operation or reduce longevity.

25 **3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

26 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and
27 inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

28 B. Furnish a letter from the control manufacturer stating that all controls have been checked for
29 operation and calibration, and the system is operating as designed.

30 C. Furnish a letter from an authorized factory representative of the air conditioning unit
31 manufacturer stating that the complete refrigeration installation including pipe sizing and routing
32 and operating and safety controls has been checked and is operating properly.

33 D. Tests

34 1. Include all tests specified and/or required under laws, rules and regulations of all
35 departments having jurisdiction. Tests shall also be performed as indicated herein and
36 other sections of the specifications.



- 1 2. After all systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an
2 operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequence and operation
3 throughout the range of operation. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper
4 functioning of all systems.
- 5 3. All parts of the work and associated equipment shall be tested and adjusted to work
6 properly and be left in perfect operating condition.
- 7 4. Correct defects disclosed by these tests without any additional cost to the Owner.
8 Repeat tests on repaired or replaced work.
- 9 5. Maintain a log of all tests being conducted and have it available for review by the
10 Engineer. Log to indicate date, type of tests, duration, and defects noted and when
11 corrected.
- 12 6. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual Specification Sections.
- 13 E. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's
14 responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for
15 construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

16 **3.11 CLEANING**

- 17 A. Progress Cleaning: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce
18 requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
- 19 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and
20 debris.
- 21 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if
22 the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
- 23 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste.
24 Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- 25 B. Final Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean
26 each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and
27 maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- 28 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification
29 of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
- 30 a. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from
31 Project site.
- 32 b. Remove labels that are not permanent.
- 33 c. Wipe surfaces of equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar
34 droppings, and other foreign substances.

35 **3.12 MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

- 36 A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include
37 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of systems and equipment Installer. Include
38 quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components,
39 lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be
40 manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

41 **END OF SECTION 25 01 00**

42



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 25 05 28 - PATHWAYS FOR CONTROL SYSTEMS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes pathways for control-voltage cables and communication cables for control
8 systems:

- 9 1. Metal conduits and fittings.
10 2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
11 3. Optical-fiber-cable pathways and fittings.
12 4. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
13 5. Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters.
14 6. Hooks.
15 7. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

16 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 17 A. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
18 B. GRC: Galvanized rigid conduit.
19 C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
20 D. LFMC: Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit.
21 E. RNC: Rigid non-metallic conduit.

22 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

23 **2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS**

- 24 A. Description: Metal raceway of circular cross section with manufacturer-fabricated fittings.
25 B. General Requirements for Metal Conduits and Fittings:
26 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory,
27 and marked for intended location and application.
28 2. Comply with TIA-569-D.
29 C. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.



- 1 D. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
- 2 E. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- 3 F. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
- 4 G. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- 5 H. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
- 6 1. Fittings for EMT:
 - 7 a. Material: Steel or die cast.
 - 8 b. Type: Set screw or compression.
- 9 I. Joint Compound for IMC or GRC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having
 - 10 jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect
 - 11 threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

12 2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- 13 A. Description: Nonmetallic raceway of circular section with manufacturer-fabricated fittings.
- 14 B. General Requirements for Nonmetallic Conduits and Fittings:
 - 15 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location
 - 16 and application.
 - 17 2. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- 18 C. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
- 19 D. Fittings: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- 20 E. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

21 2.3 OPTICAL-FIBER-CABLE PATHWAYS AND FITTINGS

- 22 A. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible-type pathway with a circular cross section, approved
 - 23 for plenum, riser, or general-use installation unless otherwise indicated.
- 24 B. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and
 - 25 application.
- 26 C. Comply with TIA-569-D.

27 2.4 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- 28 A. Description: Sheet metal trough of rectangular cross section fabricated to required size and
 - 29 shape, without holes or knockouts, and with hinged or removable covers.
- 30 B. General Requirements for Metal Wireways and Auxiliary Gutters:



- 1 1. Comply with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated, and sized
2 according to NFPA 70.
- 3 2. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by
4 an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- 5 3. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- 6 C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters,
7 hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for
8 complete system.
- 9 D. Wireway Covers: Screw-cover type unless otherwise indicated.
- 10 E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

11 **2.5 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS**

- 12 A. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on
13 cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.
- 14 B. General Requirements for Nonmetallic Wireways and Auxiliary Gutters:
 - 15 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location
16 and application.
 - 17 2. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- 18 C. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down
19 straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for
20 complete system.
- 21 D. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

22 **2.6 HOOKS**

- 23 A. Description: Prefabricated sheet metal cable supports for telecommunications cable.
- 24 B. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and
25 application.
- 26 C. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- 27 D. Galvanized steel.
- 28 E. J shape.

29 **2.7 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS**

- 30 A. Description: Enclosures for communications.
- 31 B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets:
 - 32 1. Comply with TIA-569-D.



- 1 2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed and labeled as
- 2 defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for use in wet locations.
- 3 3. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as
- 4 recessed box.
- 5 4. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches by 2-1/8 inches by 2-1/8 inches deep.

- 6 C. Sheet Metal Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

- 7 D. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

- 8 E. Nonmetallic Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.

- 9 F. Cabinets:

- 10 1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable
- 11 front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- 12 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
- 13 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
- 14 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
- 15 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
- 16 6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified
- 17 testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

18 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

19 **3.1 PATHWAY APPLICATION**

- 20 A. Outdoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

- 21 1. Exposed Conduit: GRC or IMC.
- 22 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC or IMC.
- 23 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, direct buried.
- 24 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic,
- 25 Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
- 26 5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 4.

- 27 B. Indoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

- 28 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
- 29 2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
- 30 3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Pathway locations include the
- 31 following:

- 32 a. Loading dock.
- 33 b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
- 34 c. Gymnasiums

- 35 4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: Plenum-type, hooks.
- 36 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic,
- 37 Electric-Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet
- 38 locations.
- 39 6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC or IMC.



- 1 7. Pathways for Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental
2 Air: Plenum-type, hooks.
- 3 8. Pathways for Optical-Fiber or Communications-Cable Risers in Vertical Shafts: EMT.
- 4 9. Pathways for Concealed General-Purpose Distribution of Optical-Fiber or
5 Communications Cable: Plenum-type, hooks .
- 6 10. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless
7 steel units in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- 8 C. Minimum Pathway Size: 3/4-inch trade size for copper and aluminum cables, and 1 inch for
9 optical-fiber cables.
- 10 D. Pathway Fittings: Compatible with pathways and suitable for use and location.
- 11 1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless
12 otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
- 13 2. EMT: Use set-screw or compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
- 14 E. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.
- 15 **3.2 INSTALLATION**
- 16 A. Comply with the following standards for installation requirements except where requirements on
17 Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
- 18 1. NECA 1.
- 19 2. NECA/BICSI 568.
- 20 3. TIA-569-D.
- 21 4. NECA 101
- 22 5. NECA 102.
- 23 6. NECA 105.
- 24 7. NECA 111.
- 25 B. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of pathways allowed in specific occupancies and
26 number of floors.
- 27 C. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping materials and installation for
28 penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- 29 D. Comply with requirements in Section 25 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Control Systems" for
30 hangers and supports.
- 31 E. Comply with requirements in Section 25 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Control Pathways
32 and Cabling" for sleeves and sleeve seals.
- 33 F. Keep pathways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes.
34 Install horizontal pathway runs above water and steam piping.
- 35 G. Complete pathway installation before starting conductor installation.
- 36 H. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- 37 I. Install no more than the equivalent of two 90-degree bends in any pathway run. Support within
38 12 inches of changes in direction. Utilize long radius ells for all optical-fiber cables.



- 1 J. Conceal rigid conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install
2 conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- 3 K. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- 4 L. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
- 5 1. Use EMT for pathways.
6 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or
7 in an enclosure.
- 8 M. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply
9 listed compound to threads of pathway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound
10 manufacturer's written instructions.
- 11 N. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated pathway with a corrosion-preventing conductive
12 compound prior to assembly.
- 13 O. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes
14 or cabinets. Install insulated bushings on conduits terminated with locknuts.
- 15 P. Install pathways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install
16 locknuts hand tight plus one additional quarter-turn.
- 17 Q. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in
18 the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure, to assure a continuous ground path.
- 19 R. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits of 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll
20 cutter or a guide to ensure cut is straight and perpendicular to the length.
- 21 S. Install pull wires in empty pathways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not
22 less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire.
23 Secure pull wire, so it cannot fall into conduit. Cap pathways designated as spare alongside
24 pathways in use.
- 25 T. Pathways for Optical-Fiber and Communications Cable: Install pathways as follows:
- 26 1. 3/4-Inch Trade Size and Smaller: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 50 feet.
27 2. 1-Inch Trade Size and Larger: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 75 feet.
28 3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of pathway
29 unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes
30 or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these
31 requirements.
- 32 U. Install pathway-sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with
33 listed sealing compound. For concealed pathways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a
34 blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install pathway-
35 sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- 36 V. Install devices to seal pathway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals, so no fittings or
37 boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all
38 pathways at the following points:



- 1 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated
2 spaces.
- 3 2. Where an underground service pathway enters a building or structure.
- 4 3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- 5 W. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding PVC conduit and fittings.
- 6 X. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of
7 flexible conduit for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for
8 transformers and motors.
- 9 1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
- 10 2. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- 11 Y. Hooks:
- 12 1. Size to allow a minimum of 25 percent future capacity without exceeding design capacity
13 limits.
- 14 2. Shall be supported by dedicated support wires. Do not use ceiling grid support wire or
15 support rods.
- 16 3. Hook spacing shall allow no more than 6 inches of slack. The lowest point of the cables
17 shall be no less than 6 inches adjacent to ceilings, mechanical ductwork and fittings,
18 luminaires, power conduits, power and telecommunications outlets, and other electrical
19 and communications equipment.
- 20 4. Space hooks no more than 5 feet o.c.
- 21 5. Provide a hook at each change in direction.
- 22 Z. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually
23 indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box
24 unless otherwise indicated.
- 25 AA. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block,
26 and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surface to provide a flat surface for a
27 raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- 28 BB. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls, so they are not in the same
29 vertical channel.
- 30 CC. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing
31 members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- 32 DD. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by
33 conduits.
- 34 **3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT**
- 35 A. Direct-Buried Conduit:
- 36 1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench
37 bottom as specified in Division 31 for "Earth Moving" for pipe of less than 6 inches in
38 nominal diameter.
- 39 2. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 for "Earth Moving."



- 1 3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of
 2 conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as
 3 temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to
 4 provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches
 5 of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling
 6 with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 for "Earth Moving."
 7 4. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and
 8 at building entrances through floor.
- 9 a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and
 10 encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete around conduit for a minimum of 12
 11 inches on each side of the coupling.
 12 b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where
 13 conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a
 14 minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated
 15 grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

16 **3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES**

- 17 A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with
 18 connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- 19 B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from
 20 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- 21 C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of
 22 other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.
- 23 D. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and
 24 insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.
 25 Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough
 26 to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- 27 E. Field cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut
 28 wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to
 29 be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

30 **3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS PENETRATIONS**

- 31 A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply
 32 with requirements in Section 25 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Controls Pathways and
 33 Cabling."

34 **3.6 FIRESTOPPING**

- 35 A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with
 36 requirements in Division 07.



1 **3.7 PROTECTION**

2 A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage or deterioration.

3 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by
4 manufacturer.

5 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating
6 recommended by manufacturer.

7 **END OF SECTION 25 05 28**

8



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 25 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR CONTROL SYSTEMS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Steel slotted support systems for control raceways.
9 2. Aluminum slotted support systems for control raceways.
10 3. Conduit and cable support devices.
11 4. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
12 5. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
13 6. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners,
14 mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and
15 hanger rods.
16 7. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

17 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

18 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 19 A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency.
20 Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- 21 1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
22 2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

23 **2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS**

- 24 A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch-
25 diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c. in at least one surface.
- 26 1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
27 2. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
28 3. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
29 4. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
30 5. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating
31 applied according to MFMA-4.
32 6. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary
33 protective covering before shipping.
34 7. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.



- 1 B. Aluminum Slotted Support Systems: Extruded aluminum channels and angles with minimum
2 13/32-inch-diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c. in at least one surface.
- 3 1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4 2. Channel Material: 6063-T6 aluminum alloy.
5 3. Fittings and Accessories Material: 5052-H32 aluminum alloy.
6 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
7 5. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating
8 applied according to MFMA-4.
9 6. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary
10 protective covering before shipping.
11 7. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- 12 C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel clamps, hangers, and associated fittings, designed
13 for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- 14 D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded
15 body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored communications conductors or
16 cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces
17 as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable
18 iron.
- 19 E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates,
20 shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- 21 F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their
22 supports to building surfaces include the following:
- 23 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud for use in hardened portland cement
24 concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for
25 supported loads and building materials where used.
26 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type zinc-coated steel for use in hardened
27 portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for
28 supported loads and building materials where used.
29 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS
30 Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
31 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for
32 attached structural element.
33 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with
34 ASTM F 3125/F 3125M, Grade A325.
35 6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
36 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

37 **2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES**

- 38 A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions
39 of supported equipment.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 APPLICATION**

- 3 A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and
4 supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
- 5 1. NECA 1.
6 2. NECA/BICSI 568.
7 3. TIA-569-D.
8 4. NECA 101.
9 5. NECA 102.
10 6. NECA 105.
11 7. NECA 111.
- 12 B. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping materials and installation for
13 penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- 14 C. Comply with requirements for pathways specified in Division 26 and Division 27.
- 15 D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for
16 EMTs, IMCs, and RMCs as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in
17 diameter.
- 18 E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support
19 system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding
20 specified design load limits.
- 21 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.
- 22 F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-
23 1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above
24 suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

25 **3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- 26 A. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT IMC and RMC
27 may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- 28 B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength
29 will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum
30 static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus
31 200 lb.
- 32 C. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten
33 communications items and their supports to building structural elements by the following
34 methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
- 35 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
36 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
37 3. To Masonry: Use approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion
38 anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.



- 1 4. To Existing Concrete: Use expansion anchor fasteners.
 2 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated-driven threaded studs, provided with lock
 3 washers and nuts, may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or
 4 greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than
 5 4 inches thick.
 6 6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with
 7 MSS SP-69.
 8 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 9 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets,
 10 panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes,
 11 transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- 12 D. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for
 13 reinforcing bars.

14 **3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS**

- 15 A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation
 16 to support and anchor communications materials and equipment.
- 17 B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

18 **3.4 PAINTING**

- 19 A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately
 20 after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply
 21 with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
- 22 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- 23 B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply
 24 galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

25 **END OF SECTION 25 05 29**



1 **SECTION 25 09 23 - DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. DDC system for monitoring and controlling of systems.
9 2. Delivery of selected control devices to equipment and systems manufacturers for factory
10 installation and to systems installers for field installation.

11 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 12 A. Algorithm: A logical procedure for solving a recurrent mathematical problem. A prescribed set of
13 well-defined rules or processes for solving a problem in a finite number of steps.

- 14 B. Analog: A continuously varying signal value, such as current, flow, pressure, or temperature.

- 15 C. BACnet Specific Definitions:

- 16 1. BACnet: Building Automation Control Network Protocol, ASHRAE 135. A
17 communications protocol allowing devices to communicate data over and services over a
18 network.
19 2. BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs): BIBB defines a small portion of BACnet
20 functionality that is needed to perform a particular task. BIBBs are combined to build the
21 BACnet functional requirements for a device.
22 3. BACnet / IP: Defines and allows using a reserved UDP socket to transmit BACnet
23 messages over IP networks. A BACnet / IP network is a collection of one or more IP
24 subnetworks that share the same BACnet network number.
25 4. BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL): Organization responsible for testing products for
26 compliance with ASHRAE 135, operated under direction of BACnet International.
27 5. PICS (Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement): Written document that
28 identifies the particular options specified by BACnet that are implemented in a device.

- 29 D. Binary: Two-state signal where a high signal level represents "ON" or "OPEN" condition and a
30 low signal level represents "OFF" or "CLOSED" condition. "Digital" is sometimes used
31 interchangeably with "Binary" to indicate a two-state signal.

- 32 E. Controller: Generic term for any standalone, microprocessor-based, digital controller residing on
33 a network, used for local or global control. Three types of controllers are indicated: Network
34 Controller, Programmable Application Controller, and Application-Specific Controller.



- 1 F. Control System Integrator: An entity that assists in expansion of existing enterprise system and
2 support of additional operator interfaces to I/O being added to existing enterprise system.
- 3 G. COV: Changes of value.
- 4 H. DDC System Provider: Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer
5 and responsible for execution of DDC system Work indicated.
- 6 I. Distributed Control: Processing of system data is decentralized and control decisions are made
7 at subsystem level. System operational programs and information are provided to remote
8 subsystems and status is reported back. On loss of communication, subsystems shall be
9 capable of operating in a standalone mode using the last best available data.
- 10 J. DOCSIS: Data-Over Cable Service Interface Specifications.
- 11 K. Gateway: Bidirectional protocol translator that connects control systems that use different
12 communication protocols.
- 13 L. HLC: Heavy load conditions.
- 14 M. I/O: System through which information is received and transmitted. I/O refers to analog input
15 (AI), binary input (BI), analog output (AO) and binary output (BO). Analog signals are
16 continuous and represent control influences such as flow, level, moisture, pressure, and
17 temperature. Binary signals convert electronic signals to digital pulses (values) and generally
18 represent two-position operating and alarm status. "Digital," (DI and (DO), is sometimes used
19 interchangeably with "Binary," (BI) and (BO), respectively.
- 20 N. LAN: Local area network.
- 21 O. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or
22 for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- 23 P. Mobile Device: A data-enabled phone or tablet computer capable of connecting to a cellular
24 data network and running a native control application or accessing a web interface.
- 25 Q. Modbus TCP/IP: An open protocol for exchange of process data.
- 26 R. MS/TP: Master-slave/token-passing, IEE 8802-3. Datalink protocol LAN option that uses
27 twisted-pair wire for low-speed communication.
- 28 S. MTBF: Mean time between failures.
- 29 T. Network Controller: Digital controller, which supports a family of programmable application
30 controllers and application-specific controllers that communicates on peer-to-peer network for
31 transmission of global data.
- 32 U. Network Repeater: Device that receives data packet from one network and rebroadcasts it to
33 another network. No routing information is added to protocol.
- 34 V. Peer to Peer: Networking architecture that treats all network stations as equal partners.
- 35 W. POT: Portable operator's terminal.
- 36 X. PUE: Performance usage effectiveness.



- 1 Y. RAM: Random access memory.
- 2 Z. RF: Radio frequency.
- 3 AA. Router: Device connecting two or more networks at network layer.
- 4 BB. Server: Computer used to maintain system configuration, historical and programming database.
- 5 CC. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol.
- 6 DD. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- 7 EE. USB: Universal Serial Bus.
- 8 FF. User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol assumes that the IP is used as the underlying
9 protocol.
- 10 GG. VAV: Variable air volume.
- 11 HH. WLED: White light emitting diode.

12 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 13 A. Multiple Submissions:
- 14 1. Submit Product Data and Shop Drawings in separate submittals. Incorporate approved
15 Product Data into Shop Drawings.
- 16 B. Product Data: For each type of product include the following:
- 17 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and
18 profiles, and finishes.
- 19 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating
20 process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control
21 signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical
22 power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including
23 temperature and humidity.
- 24 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product
25 specification sheets.
- 26 4. Installation, operation and maintenance instructions including factors effecting
27 performance.
- 28 5. Bill of materials of indicating quantity, manufacturer, and extended model number for
29 each unique product.
- 30 6. When manufacturer's product datasheets apply to a product series rather than a specific
31 product model, clearly indicate and highlight only applicable information.
- 32 7. Each submitted piece of product literature shall clearly cross reference specification and
33 drawings that submittal is to cover.
- 34 C. Software Submittal:
- 35 1. Cross-referenced listing of software to be loaded on each operator workstation, server,
36 gateway, and DDC controller.



- 1 2. Description and technical data of all software provided, and cross-referenced to products
2 in which software will be installed.
- 3 3. Operating system software, operator interface and programming software, color graphic
4 software, DDC controller software, maintenance management software, and third-party
5 software.
- 6 D. Shop Drawings:
- 7 1. General Requirements:
- 8 a. Include cover drawing with Project name, location, Owner, Engineer, Contractor
9 and issue date with each Shop Drawings submission.
- 10 b. Include a drawing index sheet listing each drawing number and title that matches
11 information in each title block.
- 12 c. Drawings Size: 11"x17".
- 13 2. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details where applicable.
- 14 3. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
15 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
16 connection.
- 17 4. Detail means of vibration isolation and show attachments to rotating equipment.
- 18 5. Plan Drawings indicating the following:
- 19 a. Screened backgrounds of walls, structural grid lines, controlled equipment,
20 ductwork, and piping.
- 21 b. Room names and numbers with coordinated placement to avoid interference with
22 control products indicated.
- 23 c. Each desktop workstation, server, gateway, router, DDC controller, control panel
24 instrument connecting to DDC controller, and damper and valve connecting to
25 DDC controller, if included in Project.
- 26 d. Exact placement of products in rooms, ducts, and piping to reflect proposed
27 installed condition.
- 28 e. Network communication cable and raceway routing.
- 29 f. Proposed routing of wiring, cabling, conduit, and tubing, coordinated with building
30 services for review before installation.
- 31 6. Schematic drawings for each controlled system indicating the following:
- 32 a. I/O points labeled with point names shown. Indicate instrument range, normal
33 operating set points, and alarm set points. Indicate fail position of each damper
34 and valve, if included in Project.
- 35 b. I/O listed in table format showing point name, type of device, manufacturer, model
36 number, and cross-reference to product data sheet number.
- 37 c. A graphic showing location of control I/O in proper relationship to system.
- 38 d. Wiring diagram with each I/O point having a unique identification and indicating
39 labels for all wiring terminals.
- 40 e. Unique identification of each I/O that shall be consistently used between different
41 drawings showing same point.
- 42 f. Elementary wiring diagrams of controls for equipment motor circuits including
43 interlocks, switches, relays and interface to DDC controllers.
- 44 g. Narrative sequence of operation.
- 45 h. Graphic sequence of operation, showing all inputs and output logical blocks.
- 46 7. Control panel drawings indicating the following:



- 1 a. Panel dimensions, materials, size, and location of field cable, raceways, and tubing
2 connections.
- 3 b. Interior subpanel layout, drawn to scale and showing all internal components,
4 cabling and wiring raceways, nameplates and allocated spare space.
- 5 c. Front, rear, and side elevations and nameplate legend.
- 6 d. Unique drawing for each panel.
- 7 8. DDC system network riser diagram indicating the following:
- 8 a. Each device connected to network with unique identification for each.
- 9 b. Interconnection of each different network in DDC system.
- 10 c. For each network, indicate communication protocol, speed and physical means of
11 interconnecting network devices, such as copper cable type, or optical fiber cable
12 type. Indicate raceway type and size for each.
- 13 d. Each network port for connection of an operator workstation or other type of
14 operator interface with unique identification for each.
- 15 9. DDC system electrical power riser diagram indicating the following:
- 16 a. Each point of connection to field power with requirements (volts / phase / hertz /
17 amperes / connection type) listed for each.
- 18 b. Each control power supply including, as applicable, transformers, power-line
19 conditioners, transient voltage suppression and high filter noise units, DC power
20 supplies, and UPS units with unique identification for each.
- 21 c. Each product requiring power with requirements (volts / phase / hertz / amperes /
22 connection type) listed for each.
- 23 d. Power wiring type and size, race type, and size for each.
- 24 10. Monitoring and control signal diagrams indicating the following:
- 25 a. Control signal cable and wiring between controllers and I/O.
- 26 b. Point-to-point schematic wiring diagrams for each product.
- 27 c. Control signal tubing to sensors, switches and transmitters.
- 28 11. Color graphics indicating the following:
- 29 a. Itemized list of color graphic displays to be provided.
- 30 b. For each display screen to be provided, a true color copy showing layout of
31 pictures, graphics and data displayed.
- 32 c. Intended operator access between related hierarchical display screens.
- 33 E. System Description:
- 34 1. Complete listing and description of each report, log and trend for format and timing and
35 events which initiate generation.
- 36 2. Description of testing plans and procedures.
- 37 3. Description of Owner training.
- 38 F. Delegated-Design Submittal: For DDC system products and installation indicated as being
39 delegated.
- 40 1. Supporting documentation showing DDC system design complies with performance
41 requirements indicated, including calculations and other documentation necessary to
42 prove compliance.



- 1 2. Schedule for control-damper actuators.
- 2 a. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.
- 3 b. Actuator signal to control damper (on, close or modulate).
- 4 c. Actuator position on loss of power.
- 5 d. Actuator position on loss of control signal.
- 6 3. Schedule and design calculations for control valves and actuators.
- 7 a. Flow at Project design and minimum flow conditions.
- 8 b. Pressure-differential drop across valve at Project design flow condition.
- 9 c. Maximum system pressure-differential drop (pump close-off pressure) across valve
10 at Project minimum flow condition.
- 11 d. Design and minimum control valve coefficient with corresponding valve position.
- 12 e. Maximum close-off pressure.
- 13 f. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.
- 14 g. Actuator signal to control damper (on, close or modulate).
- 15 h. Actuator position on loss of power.
- 16 i. Actuator position on loss of control signal.
- 17 4. Schedule and design calculations for selecting flow instruments.
- 18 a. Instrument flow range.
- 19 b. Project design and minimum flow conditions with corresponding accuracy, control
20 signal to transmitter and output signal for remote control.
- 21 c. Extreme points of extended flow range with corresponding accuracy, control signal
22 to transmitter and output signal for remote control.
- 23 d. Pressure-differential loss across instrument at Project design flow conditions.
- 24 e. Where flow sensors are mated with pressure transmitters, provide information for
25 each instrument separately and as an operating pair.

26 1.5 **INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 27 A. Qualification Data:
- 28 1. Systems Provider Qualification Data:
- 29 a. Resume of project manager assigned to Project.
- 30 b. Resumes of application engineering staff assigned to Project.
- 31 c. Resumes of installation and programming technicians assigned to Project.
- 32 d. Resumes of service technicians assigned to Project.
- 33 e. Brief description of past project including physical address, floor area, number of
34 floors, building system cooling and heating capacity and building's primary
35 function.
- 36 f. Description of past project DDC system, noting similarities to Project scope and
37 complexity indicated.
- 38 g. Names of staff assigned to past project that will also be assigned to execute work of
39 this Project.
- 40 h. Owner contact information for past project including name, phone number, and e-
41 mail address.
- 42 i. Contractor contact information for past project including name, phone number, and
43 e-mail address.
- 44 j. Engineer contact information for past project including name, phone number, and e-
45 mail address.



1 **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

2 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For DDC system to include in emergency, operation and
3 maintenance manuals.

4 1. In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data,"
5 include the following:

- 6 a. Project Record Drawings of as-built versions of submittal Shop Drawings provided
7 in electronic PDF format.
- 8 b. Testing and commissioning reports and checklists of completed final versions of
9 reports, checklists, and trend logs.
- 10 c. As-built versions of submittal Product Data.
- 11 d. Names, addresses, e-mail addresses and 24-hour telephone numbers of Installer
12 and service representatives for DDC system and products.
- 13 e. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems including logging
14 on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding
15 computer control and changing set points and variables.
- 16 f. Programming manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of
17 statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and
18 modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
- 19 g. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manuals that explain how to:
- 20 1) Design and install new points, panels, and other hardware.
- 21 2) Perform preventive maintenance and calibration.
- 22 3) Debug hardware problems.
- 23 4) Repair or replace hardware.
- 24 h. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language
25 including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
- 26 i. Backup copy of graphic files, programs, and database on electronic media such as
27 DVDs.
- 28 j. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
- 29 k. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information
30 for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
- 31 l. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems,
32 custom programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics
33 software.
- 34 m. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents.
- 35 n. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components,
36 including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time
37 between tasks; and task descriptions.
- 38 o. Owner training materials.

39 **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

40 A. DDC System Manufacturer Qualifications:

- 41 1. Nationally recognized manufacturer of DDC systems and products.
- 42 2. DDC systems with similar requirements to those indicated for a continuous period of 10
43 years within time of bid.
- 44 3. DDC systems and products that have been successfully tested and in use on at least
45 three past projects.



- 1 4. Having complete published catalog literature, installation, operation and maintenance
 2 manuals for all products intended for use.
 3 5. Having full-time in-house employees for the following:
- 4 a. Product research and development.
 5 b. Product and application engineering.
 6 c. Product manufacturing, testing and quality control.
 7 d. Technical support for DDC system installation training, commissioning and
 8 troubleshooting of installations.
 9 e. Owner operator training.
- 10 B. DDC System Provider Qualifications: [See Allstate Construction's bid package.](#)
- 11 1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer.
 12 2. In-place facility located within 100 miles of Project.
 13 3. Demonstrated past experience with installation of DDC system products being installed
 14 for period within five consecutive years before time of bid.
 15 4. Demonstrated past experience on 10 projects of similar complexity, scope and value.
 16 5. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
 17 6. Staffing resources of competent and experienced full-time employees that are assigned
 18 to execute work according to schedule.
 19 7. Service and maintenance staff assigned to support Project during warranty period.
 20 8. Product parts inventory to support on-going DDC system operation for a period of not
 21 less than 10 years after Substantial Completion.
 22 9. DDC system manufacturer's backing to take over execution of Work if necessary to
 23 comply with requirements indicated. Include Project-specific written letter, signed by
 24 manufacturer's corporate officer, if requested.

25 1.8 WARRANTY

- 26 A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer warrants DDC system free from defects
 27 within specified warranty period.
- 28 1. Warranties include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 29 a. Recalibration of sensors.
 30 b. Tuning of PID control loops.
 31 c. Labor and materials.
 32 d. Update of operator workstation software, project specific software, graphics,
 33 database, and firmware.
- 34 2. Failures shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost or reduction in
 35 service to Owner.
 36 3. Install updates to software, graphics, database, or firmware only after receiving Owner's
 37 written authorization.
 38 4. Warranty service shall occur during normal business hours by qualified factory trained
 39 technician(s) and commence within [4] [24] hours of Owner's verbal or written warranty
 40 service request, 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, 365 days a year, including holidays and
 41 weekends.
 42 5. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Final Completion, or as listed below,
 43 whichever comes first.
- 44 a. At the end of the final start-up/testing, if equipment and systems are operating
 45 satisfactorily to the Owner and Engineer, the Owner shall sign certificates certifying



1 that the control system's operation has been tested and accepted in accordance
 2 with the terms of this specification. The date of Owner's acceptance shall be the
 3 start of warranty.

4 6. Extended Warranty: Provide warranty on system programming for an additional three (3)
 5 years.

6 7. Extended Warranty: Provide alternate pricing along with project warranty letter to extend
 7 all provisions of warranty for an additional two (2) years.

8 **1.9 SYSTEM COMMISSIONING ALLOWANCE** See Allstate Construction's bid package.

9 A. Testing and Inspection Allowance: Include the sum of \$3,000.00 to meet with the Engineer for
 10 the purpose of testing and validating the system, as outlined in "Final Review" Article of this
 11 Section.

12 1. Time for the Engineer shall be charged at the Engineer's standard billing rates and billed
 13 directly to the DDC contractor from the Engineer.

14 2. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the Allowance to Owner by
 15 Change Order.

16 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

17 **2.1 DDC SYSTEM MANUFACTURERS**

18 A. Manufacturers: The following list of approved manufacturers applies to controller software,
 19 custom application programming language, building controllers, advanced application
 20 controllers, and application specific controllers. All other products specified herein and
 21 elsewhere in Division 25 specifications are not required to be manufactured by the above
 22 manufacturers. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 23 following:

24 1. Honeywell International Inc.

25 2. KMC Controls.

26 **2.2 DDC SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

27 A. Microprocessor-based monitoring and control including analog/digital conversion and program
 28 logic. A control loop or subsystem in which digital and analog information is received and
 29 processed by a microprocessor, and digital control signals are generated based on control
 30 algorithms and transmitted to field devices to achieve a set of predefined conditions.

31 1. DDC system shall consist of a high-speed, peer-to-peer network of distributed DDC
 32 controllers, other network devices, operator interfaces, and software.

33 B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
 34 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.



1 **2.3 WEB ACCESS**

2 A. DDC system shall be Web compatible.

3 1. Web-Compatible Access to DDC System:

4 a. Workstation and/or server shall perform overall system supervision and
5 configuration, graphical user interface, management report generation, and alarm
6 annunciation.

7 b. DDC system shall support Web browser access to building data. Operator using a
8 standard Web browser shall be able to access control graphics and change
9 adjustable set points.

10 c. Web access shall be password protected.

11 **2.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

12 A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Products installed in ducts, equipment, and return-air paths
13 shall comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with
14 appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

15 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.

16 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

17 B. DDC System Speed:

18 1. Response Time of Connected I/O:

19 a. AI point values connected to DDC system shall be updated at least every five
20 seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally shall also comply with
21 this requirement.

22 b. BI point values connected to DDC system shall be updated at least every five
23 seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally shall also comply with
24 this requirement.

25 c. AO points connected to DDC system shall begin to respond to controller output
26 commands within two second(s). Global commands shall also comply with this
27 requirement.

28 d. BO point values connected to DDC system shall respond to controller output
29 commands within two second(s). Global commands shall also comply with this
30 requirement.

31 2. Display of Connected I/O:

32 a. Analog point COV connected to DDC system shall be updated and displayed at
33 least every five seconds for use by operator.

34 b. Binary point COV connected to DDC system shall be updated and displayed at
35 least every five seconds for use by operator.

36 c. Alarms of analog and digital points connected to DDC system shall be displayed
37 within 15 seconds of activation or change of state.

38 d. Graphic display refresh shall update within eight seconds.

39 e. Point change of values and alarms displayed from workstation to workstation when
40 multiple operators are viewing from multiple workstations shall not exceed graphic
41 refresh rate indicated.



- 1 C. Network Bandwidth: Design each network of DDC system to include at least 30 percent
 2 available spare bandwidth with DDC system operating under normal and heavy load conditions
 3 indicated. Calculate bandwidth usage, and apply a safety factor to ensure that requirement is
 4 satisfied when subjected to testing under worst case conditions.
- 5 D. DDC System Data Storage:
- 6 1. Include capability to archive not less than 24 consecutive months of historical data for all
 7 I/O points connected to system, including alarms, event histories, transaction logs, trends
 8 and other information indicated.
- 9 2. Local Storage:
- 10 a. Provide server and/or workstation with data storage indicated. Server(s) shall use IT
 11 industry standard database platforms and be capable of functions described in
 12 "DDC Data Access" Paragraph.
- 13 3. Cloud Storage:
- 14 a. Provide application-based and web browser interfaces to configure, upload,
 15 download, and manage data, and service plan with storage adequate to store all
 16 data for term indicated. Cloud storage shall use IT industry standard database
 17 platforms and be capable of functions described in "DDC Data Access" Paragraph.
- 18 E. DDC Data Access:
- 19 1. When logged into the system, operator shall be able to also interact with any DDC
 20 controller connected to DDC system as required for functional operation of DDC system.
- 21 2. System(s) shall be used for application configuration; for archiving, reporting and trending
 22 of data; for operator transaction archiving and reporting; for network information
 23 management; for alarm annunciation; and for operator interface tasks and controls
 24 application management.
- 25 F. Future Expandability:
- 26 1. DDC system size shall be expandable to an ultimate capacity of at least four times total
 27 I/O points indicated.
- 28 2. Additional DDC controllers, I/O and associated wiring shall be all that is needed to
 29 achieve ultimate capacity. Initial network infrastructure shall be designed and installed to
 30 support ultimate capacity.
- 31 3. Operator interfaces installed initially shall not require hardware and software additions
 32 and revisions for ultimate capacity.
- 33 G. Input Point Displayed Accuracy: Input point displayed values shall meet following end-to-end
 34 overall system accuracy, including errors associated with meter, sensor, transmitter, lead wire
 35 or cable, and analog to digital conversion.
- 36 1. Energy:
- 37 a. Thermal: Within 5 percent of reading.
- 38 b. Electric Power: Within 1 percent of reading.
- 39 c. Requirements indicated on Drawings for meters not supplied by utility.
- 40 2. Flow:



- 1 a. Air: Within 5 percent of design flow rate.
 2 b. Air (Terminal Units): Within 10 percent of design flow rate.
 3 c. Water: Within 5 percent of design flow rate.
 4 d. Steam: Within 5 percent of design flow rate.
- 5 3. Gas:
- 6 a. Carbon Dioxide: Within 50 ppm.
 7 b. Carbon Monoxide: Within 5 percent of reading.
 8 c. Oxygen: Within 5 percent of reading.
 9 d. Refrigerant: Within 50 ppm.
- 10 4. Moisture (Relative Humidity):
- 11 a. Air: Within 2 percent RH.
 12 b. Space: Within 2 percent RH.
 13 c. Outdoor: Within 2 percent RH.
- 14 5. Level: Within 5 percent of reading.
 15 6. Pressure:
- 16 a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: Within 0.1 inch wg .
 17 b. Space: Within 0.01 inch wg .
 18 c. Water: Within 2 percent of instrument reading.
 19 d. Steam: Within 1 percent of instrument span.
- 20 7. Speed: Within 10 percent of reading.
 21 8. Temperature, Dew Point:
- 22 a. Air: Within 1 deg F.
 23 b. Space: Within 1 deg F.
 24 c. Outdoor: Within 3 deg F.
- 25 9. Temperature, Dry Bulb:
- 26 a. Air: Within 1 deg F.
 27 b. Space: Within 1 deg F.
 28 c. Outdoor: Within 2 deg F.
 29 d. Chilled Water: Within 1 deg F.
 30 e. Condenser Water: Within 1 deg F.
 31 f. Heating Hot Water: Within 1 deg F.
 32 g. Energy Recovery Runaround Liquid: Within 1 deg F.
 33 h. Steam: Within 2 deg F.
 34 i. Temperature Difference: Within 0.25 deg F.
 35 j. Other Temperatures Not Indicated: Within 1 deg F.
- 36 10. Temperature, Wet Bulb:
- 37 a. Air: Within 1 deg F.
 38 b. Space: Within 1 deg F.
 39 c. Outdoor: Within 2 deg F.
- 40 11. Vibration: Within 5 percent of reading.



- 1 H. Precision of I/O Reported Values: Values reported in database and displayed shall have
2 following precision:
- 3 1. Current:
- 4 a. Milliamperes: Nearest 1/100th of a milliampere.
5 b. Amperes: Nearest 1/10th of an ampere up to 100 A; nearest ampere for 100 A and
6 more.
- 7 2. Energy:
- 8 a. Electric Power:
- 9 1) Demand (Kilowatts): Nearest 1/10th of a kilowatt through 1000 kW; nearest
10 kilowatt above 1000 kW.
11 2) Consumption (Kilowatt-Hours): Nearest kilowatt through 10,000 kW; nearest
12 10 kW between 10,000 and 100,000 kW; nearest 100 kW for above 100,000
13 kW.
- 14 b. Thermal:
- 15 1) Heating Demand (Mbh): Nearest Mbh up to 1000 Mbh; nearest 10 Mbh
16 between 1000 and 10,000 Mbh; nearest 100 Mbh above 10,000 Mbh.
17 2) Cooling Demand (Tons): Nearest ton up to 1000 tons; nearest 10 tons
18 between 1000 and 10,000 tons; nearest 100 tons above 10,000 tons.
19 3) Heating Consumption (Mbtu): Nearest Mbtu up to 1000 Mbtu; nearest 10
20 Mbtu between 1000 and 10,000 Mbtu; nearest 100 Mbtu above 10,000
21 Mbtu.
22 4) Cooling Consumption (Ton-Hours): Nearest ton-hours up to 1000 ton-hours;
23 nearest 10 ton-hours between 1000 and 10,000 ton-hours; nearest 100 tons
24 above 10,000 tons.
- 25 3. Flow:
- 26 a. Air: Nearest cfm through 1000 cfm; nearest 10 cfm between 1000 and 10,000 cfm;
27 nearest 100 cfm above 10,000 cfm.
28 b. Water: Nearest gpm through 1000 gpm; nearest 10 gpm between 1000 and
29 10,000 gpm; nearest 100 gpm above 10,000 gpm.
30 c. Steam: Nearest lbs/hr through 1000 lbs/hr; nearest 10 lbs/hr above 1000 lbs/hr.
- 31 4. Gas:
- 32 a. Carbon Dioxide (ppm): Nearest ppm.
33 b. Carbon Monoxide (ppm): Nearest ppm.
34 c. Oxygen (Percentage): Nearest 1/10th of 1 percent.
35 d. Refrigerant (ppm): Nearest ppm.
- 36 5. Moisture (Relative Humidity):
- 37 a. Relative Humidity (Percentage): Nearest 1 percent.
- 38 6. Level: Nearest 1/100th of an inch through 10 inches; nearest 1/10 of an inch between 10
39 and 100 inches; nearest inch above 100 inches.



- 1 7. Speed:
- 2 a. Rotation (rpm): Nearest 1 rpm.
- 3 b. Velocity: Nearest 1/10th fpm through 100 fpm; nearest fpm between 100 and
- 4 1000 fpm; nearest 10 fpm above 1000 fpm.
- 5 8. Position, Dampers and Valves (Percentage Open): Nearest 1 percent.
- 6 9. Pressure:
- 7 a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: Nearest 1/10th in. w.c..
- 8 b. Space: Nearest 1/100th in. w.c..
- 9 c. Steam: Nearest 1/10th psig through 100 psig; nearest psig above 100 psig.
- 10 d. Water: Nearest 1/10 psig through 100 psig; nearest psig above 100 psig.
- 11 10. Temperature:
- 12 a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
- 13 b. Outdoor: Nearest degree.
- 14 c. Space: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
- 15 d. Chilled Water: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
- 16 e. Condenser Water: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
- 17 f. Heating Hot Water: Nearest degree.
- 18 g. Heat Recovery Runaround: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
- 19 h. Steam: Nearest degree.
- 20 11. Vibration: Nearest 1/10th in/s.
- 21 12. Voltage: Nearest 1/10 volt up to 100 V; nearest volt above 100 V.
- 22 I. Control Stability: Control variables indicated within the following limits:
- 23 1. Flow:
- 24 a. Air, Ducts and Equipment, except Terminal Units: Within 5 percent of design flow
- 25 rate.
- 26 b. Air, Terminal Units: Within 5 percent of design flow rate.
- 27 c. Water: Within 5 percent of design flow rate.
- 28 d. Steam: Within 5 percent of design flow rate.
- 29 2. Gas:
- 30 a. Carbon Dioxide: Within 50 ppm.
- 31 b. Carbon Monoxide: Within 5 percent of reading.
- 32 c. Oxygen: Within 5 percent of reading.
- 33 3. Moisture (Relative Humidity):
- 34 a. Air: Within 5 percent RH.
- 35 b. Space: Within 5 percent RH.
- 36 c. Outdoor: Within 5 percent RH.
- 37 4. Level: Within 5 percent of reading.
- 38 5. Pressure:



- 1 a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: Within 0.2 inch wg .
 2 b. Space: Within 0.01 inch wg.
 3 c. Water: Within 1.5 psi .
 4 d. Steam: Within 2 psi .
- 5 6. Temperature, Dew Point:
- 6 a. Air: Within 1 deg F.
 7 b. Space: Within 1 deg F.
- 8 7. Temperature, Dry Bulb:
- 9 a. Air: Within 2 deg F.
 10 b. Space: Within 2 deg F.
 11 c. Chilled Water: Within 1 deg F.
 12 d. Condenser Water: Within 1 deg F.
 13 e. Heating Hot Water: Within 2 deg F.
 14 f. Energy Recovery Runaround Liquid: Within 1 deg F.
- 15 8. Temperature, Wet Bulb:
- 16 a. Air: Within 1 deg F.
 17 b. Space: Within 1 deg F.
- 18 J. Environmental Conditions for Controllers, Gateways, and Routers:
- 19 1. Products shall operate without performance degradation under ambient environmental
 20 temperature, pressure and humidity conditions encountered for installed location.
- 21 a. If product alone cannot comply with requirement, install product in a protective
 22 enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance.
 23 Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated, cooled and ventilated as
 24 required by product and application.
- 25 2. Products shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum
 26 requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Products not available
 27 with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated shall be housed in
 28 protective secondary enclosures. Installed location shall dictate the following NEMA 250
 29 enclosure requirements:
- 30 a. Outdoors, Non-Corrosive Environment: Type 4.
 31 b. Outdoors, Corrosive Environment: Type 4X.
 32 c. Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: Type 1.
 33 d. Indoors, Heated with Non-Filtered Ventilation: Type 12.
 34 e. Indoors, Heated and Air Conditioned: Type 1.
 35 f. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
- 36 1) Chiller and Boiler Rooms: Type 4.
 37 2) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: Type 1.
- 38 g. Localized Areas Exposed to Washdown: Type 4.
 39 h. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Not Exposed to Possible
 40 Condensation: Type 12.



- 1 i. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Exposed to Possible
 2 Condensation: Type 4X.
 3 j. Hazardous Locations: Explosion-proof rating for condition.
- 4 K. Environmental Conditions for Instruments and Actuators:
- 5 1. Instruments and actuators shall operate without performance degradation under the
 6 ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions
 7 specified and encountered for installed location.
- 8 a. If instruments and actuators alone cannot comply with requirement, install
 9 instruments and actuators in protective enclosures that are isolated and protected
 10 from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated,
 11 electrically heated and ventilated as required by instrument and application.
- 12 2. Instruments, actuators and accessories shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the
 13 following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
 14 Instruments and actuators not available with integral enclosures complying with
 15 requirements indicated shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Installed
 16 location shall dictate the following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:
- 17 a. Outdoors, Non-Corrosive Environment: Type 4.
 18 b. Outdoors, Corrosive Environment: Type 4X.
 19 c. Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: Type 1.
 20 d. Indoors, Heated with Non-Filtered Ventilation: Type 12.
 21 e. Indoors, Heated and Air-conditioned: Type 1.
 22 f. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
- 23 1) Chiller and Boiler Rooms: Type 4.
 24 2) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: Type 1.
- 25 g. Localized Areas Exposed to Washdown: Type 4.
 26 h. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Not Exposed to Possible
 27 Condensation: Type 12.
 28 i. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Exposed to Possible
 29 Condensation: Type 4X.
 30 j. Hazardous Locations: Explosion-proof rating for condition.
- 31 L. Electric Power Quality:
- 32 1. Power-Line Surges:
- 33 a. Protect susceptible DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from
 34 power-line surges to comply with requirements of IEEE C62.41.
 35 b. Do not use fuses for surge protection.
 36 c. Test protection in the normal mode and in the common mode, using the following
 37 two waveforms:
- 38 1) 10-by-1000-mic.sec. waveform with a peak voltage of 1500 V and a peak
 39 current of 60 A.
 40 2) 8-by-20-mic.sec. waveform with a peak voltage of 1000 V and a peak
 41 current of 500 A.
- 42 2. Power Conditioning:



- 1 a. Protect susceptible DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from
 2 irregularities and noise rejection. Characteristics of power-line conditioner shall be
 3 as follows:
- 4 1) At 85 percent load, output voltage shall not deviate by more than plus or
 5 minus 1 percent of nominal when input voltage fluctuates between minus 20
 6 percent to plus 10 percent of nominal.
- 7 2) During load changes from zero to full load, output voltage shall not deviate
 8 by more than plus or minus 3 percent of nominal.
- 9 3) Accomplish full correction of load switching disturbances within five cycles,
 10 and 95 percent correction within two cycles of onset of disturbance.
- 11 4) Total harmonic distortion shall not exceed 3-1/2 percent at full load.
- 12 3. Ground Fault: Protect products from ground fault by providing suitable grounding.
 13 Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition.
- 14 M. Backup Power Source:
- 15 1. Controlled systems and equipment served by a backup power source shall have
 16 associated DDC system products that control such systems and equipment also served
 17 from a backup power source.
- 18 N. UPS:
- 19 1. DDC system products powered by UPS units shall include the following:
- 20 a. Desktop workstations.
 21 b. Printers.
 22 c. Servers.
 23 d. Gateways.
 24 e. DDC controllers, except application-specific controllers.
- 25 O. Continuity of Operation after Electric Power Interruption:
- 26 1. Equipment and associated factory-installed controls, field-installed controls, electrical
 27 equipment, and power supply connected to building normal and backup power systems
 28 shall automatically return equipment and associated controls to operating state occurring
 29 immediately before loss of normal power, without need for manual intervention by
 30 operator when power is restored either through backup power source or through normal
 31 power if restored before backup power is brought online.

32 2.5 SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

- 33 A. System architecture shall consist of no more than three levels of LANs.
- 34 1. Level one LAN shall connect network controllers and operator workstations.
 35 2. Level two LAN shall connect programmable application controllers to other
 36 programmable application controllers, and to network controllers.
 37 3. Level three LAN shall connect application-specific controllers to programmable
 38 application controllers and network controllers.
 39 4. Level three LAN shall connect application-specific controllers to application-specific
 40 controllers.



- 1 B. DDC system shall consist of dedicated and separated LANs that are not shared with other
2 building systems and tenant data and communication networks.
- 3 C. System architecture shall be modular and have inherent ability to expand to not less than three
4 times system size indicated with no impact to performance indicated.
- 5 D. System architecture shall perform modifications without having to remove and replace existing
6 network equipment.
- 7 E. Number of LANs and associated communication shall be transparent to operator. All I/O points
8 residing on any LAN shall be capable of global sharing between all system LANs.
- 9 F. System design shall eliminate dependence on any single device for system alarm reporting and
10 control execution. Each controller shall operate independently by performing its' own control,
11 alarm management and historical data collection.
- 12 G. Special Network Architecture Requirements:
- 13 1. Air-Handling Systems: For control applications of an air-handling system that consists of
14 air-handling unit(s) and air terminal units, include a dedicated LAN of application-specific
15 controllers serving air terminal units connected directly to controller that is controlling air-
16 handling system air-handling unit(s). Basically, create a DDC system LAN that aligns with
17 air-handling system being controlled.

18 2.6 DDC SYSTEM OPERATOR INTERFACES

- 19 A. Operator Means of System Access: Operator shall be able to access entire DDC system
20 through any of multiple means, including, but not limited to, the following:
- 21 1. Desktop and portable workstation with hardwired connection through LAN port.
22 2. Portable operator terminal with hardwired connection through LAN port.
23 3. Portable operator workstation with wireless connection through LAN router.
24 4. Mobile device and application with secured wireless connection through LAN router or
25 cellular data service.
26 5. Remote connection through web access.
- 27 B. Access to system, regardless of operator means used, shall be transparent to operator.
- 28 C. Network Ports: For hardwired connection of desktop or portable workstation. Network port shall
29 be easily accessible, properly protected, clearly labeled, and installed at the following locations:
- 30 1. Each mechanical equipment room.
31 2. Each boiler room.
32 3. Each chiller room or outdoor chiller yard.
33 4. Each cooling tower location.
34 5. Each different roof level with roof-mounted air-handling units or rooftop units.
35 6. Security system command center.
36 7. Fire-alarm system command center.
- 37 D. Desktop Workstations:
- 38 1. Connect to DDC system Level one LAN through a communications port directly on LAN
39 or through a communications port on a DDC controller.



- 1 2. Able to communicate with any device located on any DDC system LAN.
- 2 E. Portable Workstations:
- 3 1. Connect to DDC system Level one LAN through a communications port directly on LAN
4 or through a communications port on a DDC controller.
- 5 2. Able to communicate with any device located on any DDC system LAN.
- 6 3. Connect to DDC system Level three LAN through a communications port on an
7 application-specific controller, or a room temperature sensor connected to an application-
8 specific controller.
- 9 4. Connect to system through a wireless router connected to Level one LAN.
- 10 5. Connect to system through a cellular data service.
- 11 6. Portable workstation shall be able to communicate with any device connected to any
12 system LAN regardless of point of physical connection to system.
- 13 7. Monitor, program, schedule, adjust set points, and report capabilities of I/O connected
14 anywhere in system.
- 15 8. Have dynamic graphic displays that are identical to desktop workstations.
- 16 F. POT:
- 17 1. Connect DDC controller through a communications port local to controller.
- 18 2. Able to communicate with any DDC system controller that is directly connected or
19 connected to DDC system.
- 20 G. Mobile Device:
- 21 1. Connect to system through a wireless router connected to LAN.
- 22 2. Able to communicate with any DDC controller connected to DDC system using a
23 dedicated application and secure web access.
- 24 H. Critical Alarm Reporting:
- 25 1. Operator-selected critical alarms shall be sent by DDC system to notify operator of critical
26 alarms that require immediate attention.
- 27 2. DDC system shall send alarm notification to multiple recipients that are assigned for each
28 alarm.
- 29 3. DDC system shall notify recipients by any or all means, including e-mail, text message
30 and prerecorded phone message to mobile and landline phone numbers.
- 31 I. Simultaneous Operator Use: Capable of accommodating up to five simultaneous operators that
32 are accessing DDC system through any one of operator interfaces indicated.

33 **2.7 NETWORKS**

- 34 A. Acceptable networks for connecting workstations, mobile devices, and network controllers
35 include the following:
- 36 1. IP.
- 37 2. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.
- 38 B. Acceptable networks for connecting programmable application controllers include the following:
- 39 1. IP.



1 2. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.

2 C. Acceptable networks for connecting application-specific controllers include the following:

3 1. ATA 878.1, ARCNET.

4 2. EIA-485A.

5 **2.8 NETWORK COMMUNICATION PROTOCOL**

6 A. Network communication protocol(s) used throughout entire DDC system shall be open to Owner
7 and available to other companies for use in making future modifications to DDC system.

8 B. ASHRAE 135 Protocol:

9 1. ASHRAE 135 communication protocol shall be sole and native protocol used throughout
10 entire DDC system.

11 2. DDC system shall not require use of gateways except to integrate HVAC equipment and
12 other building systems and equipment, not required to use ASHRAE 135 communication
13 protocol.

14 3. If used, gateways shall connect to DDC system using ASHRAE 135 communication
15 protocol and Project object properties and read/write services indicated by interoperability
16 schedule.

17 4. Operator workstations, controllers and other network devices shall be tested and listed by
18 BACnet Testing Laboratories.

19 C. Industry Standard Protocols:

20 1. DDC system shall use any one or a combination of the following industry standard
21 protocols for network communication while complying with other DDC system
22 requirements indicated:

23 a. ASHRAE 135.

24 b. Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b.

25 2. Operator workstations and network controllers shall communicate through ASHRAE 135
26 protocol.

27 3. Portions of DDC system networks using ASHRAE 135 communication protocol shall be
28 an open implementation of network devices complying with ASHRAE 135. Network
29 devices shall be tested and listed by BACnet Testing Laboratories.

30 4. Portions of DDC system networks using Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b
31 communication protocol shall be an open implementation of network devices and
32 technology complying with Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b.

33 5. Gateways shall be used to connect networks and network devices using different
34 protocols.

35 **2.9 SERVERS**

36 A. Description: x86 based permanently installed computer used for client-server computing.

37 B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
38 following:



- 1 1. Dell Inc.
- 2 2. HP.
- 3 3. Lenovo.
- 4 C. Mounting: Rack.
- 5 D. Servers shall include the following:
- 6 1. Full-feature backup server (server and backup minimum requirement).
- 7 2. Software licenses.
- 8 3. Cable installation between server(s) and network.
- 9 E. Web Server:
- 10 1. If required to be separate, include Web server hardware and software to match, except
- 11 backup server is not required.
- 12 2. Firewalls between server Web and networks.
- 13 3. Password protection for access to server from Web server.
- 14 4. Cable installation between the server(s) and building Ethernet network.
- 15 F. Power each server through a dedicated UPS unit.
- 16 **2.10 SYSTEM SOFTWARE**
- 17 A. System Software Minimum Requirements:
- 18 1. Real-time multitasking and multiuser 32- or 64-bit operating system that allows
- 19 concurrent multiple operator workstations operating and concurrent execution of multiple
- 20 real-time programs and custom program development.
- 21 2. Operating system shall be capable of operating DOS and Microsoft Windows
- 22 applications.
- 23 3. Database management software shall manage all data on an integrated and non-
- 24 redundant basis. Additions and deletions to database shall be without detriment to
- 25 existing data. Include cross linkages so no data required by a program can be deleted by
- 26 an operator until that data have been deleted from respective programs.
- 27 4. Network communications software shall manage and control multiple network
- 28 communications to provide exchange of global information and execution of global
- 29 programs.
- 30 5. Operator interface software shall include day-to-day operator transaction processing,
- 31 alarm and report handling, operator privilege level and data segregation control, custom
- 32 programming, and online data modification capability.
- 33 6. Scheduling software shall schedule centrally based time and event, temporary, and
- 34 exception day programs.
- 35 B. Operator Interface Software:
- 36 1. Minimize operator training through use of English language pronating and English
- 37 language point identification.
- 38 2. Minimize use of a typewriter-style keyboard through use of a pointing device similar to a
- 39 mouse.
- 40 3. Operator sign-off shall be a manual operation or, if no keyboard or mouse activity takes
- 41 place, an automatic sign-off.



- 1 4. Automatic sign-off period shall be programmable from one to 60 minutes in one-minute
2 increments on a per operator basis.
- 3 5. Operator sign-on and sign-off activity shall be recorded and sent to printer.
- 4 6. Security Access:
- 5 a. Operator access to DDC system shall be under password control.
- 6 b. An alphanumeric password shall be field assignable to each operator.
- 7 c. Operators shall be able to access DDC system by entry of proper password.
- 8 d. Operator password shall be same regardless of which computer or other interface
9 means is used.
- 10 e. Additions or changes made to passwords shall be updated automatically.
- 11 f. Each operator shall be assigned an access level to restrict access to data and
12 functions the operator is cable of performing.
- 13 g. Software shall have at least five access levels.
- 14 h. Each menu item shall be assigned an access level so that a one-for-one
15 correspondence between operator assigned access level(s) and menu item access
16 level(s) is required to gain access to menu item.
- 17 i. Display menu items to operator with those capable of access highlighted. Menu and
18 operator access level assignments shall be online programmable and under
19 password control.
- 20 7. Data Segregation:
- 21 a. Include data segregation for control of specific data routed to a workstation, to an
22 operator or to a specific output device, such as a printer.
- 23 b. Include at least 32 segregation groups.
- 24 c. Segregation groups shall be selectable such as "fire points," "fire points on second
25 floor," "space temperature points," "HVAC points," and so on.
- 26 d. Points shall be assignable to multiple segregation groups. Display and output of
27 data to printer or monitor shall occur where there is a match of operator or
28 peripheral segregation group assignment and point segregations.
- 29 e. Alarms shall be displayed and printed at each peripheral to which segregation
30 allows, but only those operators assigned to peripheral and having proper
31 authorization level will be allowed to acknowledge alarms.
- 32 f. Operators and peripherals shall be assignable to multiple segregation groups and
33 all assignments are to be online programmable and under password control.
- 34 8. Operators shall be able to perform commands including, but not limited to, the following:
- 35 a. Start or stop selected equipment.
- 36 b. Adjust set points.
- 37 c. Add, modify, and delete time programming.
- 38 d. Enable and disable process execution.
- 39 e. Lock and unlock alarm reporting for each point.
- 40 f. Enable and disable totalization for each point.
- 41 g. Enable and disable trending for each point.
- 42 h. Override control loop set points.
- 43 i. Enter temporary override schedules.
- 44 j. Define holiday schedules.
- 45 k. Change time and date.
- 46 l. Enter and modify analog alarm limits.
- 47 m. Enter and modify analog warning limits.
- 48 n. View limits.
- 49 o. Enable and disable demand limiting.
- 50 p. Enable and disable duty cycle.



- 1 q. Display logic programming for each control sequence.
- 2 9. Reporting:
- 3 a. Generated automatically and manually.
- 4 b. Sent to displays, printers and disk files.
- 5 c. Types of Reporting:
- 6 1) General listing of points.
- 7 2) List points currently in alarm.
- 8 3) List of off-line points.
- 9 4) List points currently in override status.
- 10 5) List of disabled points.
- 11 6) List points currently locked out.
- 12 7) List of items defined in a "Follow-Up" file.
- 13 8) List weekly schedules.
- 14 9) List holiday programming.
- 15 10) List of limits and deadbands.
- 16 10. Summaries: For specific points, for a logical point group, for an operator selected
- 17 group(s), or for entire system without restriction due to hardware configuration.
- 18 C. Graphic Interface Software:
- 19 1. Include a full interactive graphical selection means of accessing and displaying system
- 20 data to operator. Include at least five levels with the penetration path operator assignable
- 21 (for example, site, building, floor, air-handling unit, and supply temperature loop). Native
- 22 language descriptors assigned to menu items are to be operator defined and modifiable
- 23 under password control.
- 24 2. Include a hierarchical-linked dynamic graphic operator interface for accessing and
- 25 displaying system data and commanding and modifying equipment operation. Interface
- 26 shall use a pointing device with pull-down or penetrating menus, color and animation to
- 27 facilitate operator understanding of system.
- 28 3. Include at least 10 levels of graphic penetration with the hierarchy operator assignable.
- 29 4. Descriptors for graphics, points, alarms and such shall be modified through operator's
- 30 workstation under password control.
- 31 5. Graphic displays shall be online user definable and modifiable using the hardware and
- 32 software provided.
- 33 6. Data to be displayed within a graphic shall be assignable regardless of physical hardware
- 34 address, communication or point type.
- 35 7. Graphics are to be online programmable and under password control.
- 36 8. Points may be assignable to multiple graphics where necessary to facilitate operator
- 37 understanding of system operation.
- 38 9. Graphics shall also contain software points.
- 39 10. Penetration within a graphic hierarchy shall display each graphic name as graphics are
- 40 selected to facilitate operator understanding.
- 41 11. Back-trace feature shall permit operator to move upward in the hierarchy using a pointing
- 42 device. Back trace shall show all previous penetration levels. Include operator with option
- 43 of showing each graphic full screen size with back trace as horizontal header or by
- 44 showing a "stack" of graphics, each with a back trace.
- 45 12. Display operator accessed data on the monitor.
- 46 13. Operator shall select further penetration using pointing device to click on a site, building,
- 47 floor, area, equipment, and so on. Defined and linked graphic below that selection shall
- 48 then be displayed.



- 1 14. Include operator with means to directly access graphics without going through
2 penetration path.
- 3 15. Dynamic data shall be assignable to graphics.
- 4 16. Display points (physical and software) with dynamic data provided by DDC system with
5 appropriate text descriptors, status or value, and engineering unit.
- 6 17. Use color, rotation, or other highly visible means, to denote status and alarm states.
7 Color shall be variable for each class of points, as chosen by operator.
- 8 18. Points shall be dynamic with operator adjustable update rates on a per point basis from
9 one second to over a minute.
- 10 19. For operators with appropriate privilege, points shall be commanded directly from display
11 using pointing device.
- 12 a. For an analog command point such as set point, current conditions and limits shall
13 be displayed and operator can position new set point using pointing device.
- 14 b. For a digital command point such as valve position, valve shall show its current
15 state such as open or closed and operator could select alternative position using
16 pointing device.
- 17 c. Keyboard equivalent shall be available for those operators with that preference.
- 18 20. Operator shall be able to split or resize viewing screen into quadrants to show one
19 graphic on one quadrant of screen and other graphics or spreadsheet, bar chart, word
20 processing, curve plot and other information on other quadrants on screen. This feature
21 shall allow real-time monitoring of one part of system while displaying other parts of
22 system or data to better facilitate overall system operation.
- 23 21. Help Features:
- 24 a. On-line context-sensitive help utility to facilitate operator training and understanding.
- 25 b. Bridge to further explanation of selected keywords. Document shall contain text and
26 graphics to clarify system operation.
- 27 1) If help feature does not have ability to bridge on keywords for more
28 information, a complete set of user manuals shall be provided in an indexed
29 word-processing program, which shall run concurrently with operating
30 system software.
- 31 c. Available for Every Menu Item:
- 32 1) Index items for each system menu item.
- 33 22. Graphic generation software shall allow operator to add, modify, or delete system graphic
34 displays.
- 35 a. Include libraries of symbols depicting HVAC symbols such as fans, coils, filters,
36 dampers, valves pumps, and electrical symbols.
- 37 b. Graphic development package shall use a pointing device in conjunction with a
38 drawing program to allow operator to perform the following:
- 39 1) Define background screens.
- 40 2) Define connecting lines and curves.
- 41 3) Locate, orient and size descriptive text.
- 42 4) Define and display colors for all elements.
- 43 5) Establish correlation between symbols or text and associated system points
44 or other displays.
- 45 D. Project-Specific Graphics: Graphics documentation including, but not limited to, the following:



- 1 1. Site plan showing each building, and additional site elements, which are being controlled
2 or monitored by DDC system.
- 3 2. Plan for each building floor, including interstitial floors, and each roof level of each
4 building, showing the following:
- 5 a. Room layouts with room identification and name.
- 6 b. Locations and identification of all monitored and controlled equipment and other
7 equipment being monitored and controlled by DDC system.
- 8 c. Location and identification of each hardware point being controlled or monitored by
9 DDC system.
- 10 3. Control schematic for each of following, including a graphic system schematic
11 representation, similar to that indicated on Drawings, with point identification, set point
12 and dynamic value indication, sequence of operation.
- 13 4. Graphic display for each piece of equipment connected to DDC system through a data
14 communications link. Include dynamic indication of all points associated with equipment.
- 15 5. DDC system network riser diagram that shows schematic layout for entire system
16 including all networks and all controllers, gateways operator workstations and other
17 network devices.
- 18 6. Graphic display for each major system showing all configuration parameters presented in
19 a tabular format. (The type of data on these pages are not changed frequently, but the
20 operator may wish to view it frequently). Configuration parameters include:
- 21 a. Set points.
- 22 b. Tuning parameters.
- 23 c. Calibration parameters.
- 24 d. Timing parameters.
- 25 e. Application parameters.
- 26 f. Reset schedules.
- 27 g. Lead / lag information.
- 28 h. Time schedules.
- 29 E. Customizing Software:
- 30 1. Software to modify and tailor DDC system to specific and unique requirements of
31 equipment installed, to programs implemented and to staffing and operational practices
32 planned.
- 33 2. Online modification of DDC system configuration, program parameters, and database
34 using menu selection and keyboard entry of data into preformatted display templates.
- 35 3. As a minimum, include the following modification capability:
- 36 a. Operator assignment shall include designation of operator passwords, access
37 levels, point segregation and auto sign-off.
- 38 b. Peripheral assignment capability shall include assignment of segregation groups
39 and operators to consoles and printers, designation of backup workstations and
40 printers, designation of workstation header points and enabling and disabling of
41 print-out of operator changes.
- 42 c. System configuration and diagnostic capability shall include communications and
43 peripheral port assignments, DDC controller assignments to network, DDC
44 controller enable and disable, assignment of command trace to points and
45 application programs and initiation of diagnostics.
- 46 d. System text addition and change capability shall include English or native language
47 descriptors for points, segregation groups and access levels and action messages
48 for alarms, run time and trouble condition.



- 1 e. Time and schedule change capability shall include time and date set, time and
 2 occupancy schedules, exception and holiday schedules and daylight savings time
 3 schedules.
- 4 f. Point related change capability shall include the following:
- 5 1) System and point enable and disable.
 6 2) Run-time enable and disable.
 7 3) Assignment of points to segregation groups, calibration tables, lockout, and
 8 run time and to a fixed I/O value.
 9 4) Assignment of alarm and warning limits.
- 10 g. Application program change capability shall include the following:
- 11 1) Enable and disable of software programs.
 12 2) Programming changes.
 13 3) Assignment of comfort limits, global points, time and event initiators, time
 14 and event schedules and enable and disable time and event programs.
- 15 4. Software shall allow operator to add points, or groups of points, to DDC system and to
 16 link them to energy optimization and management programs. Additions and modifications
 17 shall be online programmable using operator workstation, downloaded to other network
 18 devices and entered into their databases. After verification of point additions and
 19 associated program operation, database shall be uploaded and recorded on hard drive
 20 and disk for archived record.
- 21 5. Include high-level language programming software capability for implementation of
 22 custom DDC programs. Software shall include a compiler, linker, and up- and down-load
 23 capability.
- 24 6. Include a library of DDC algorithms, intrinsic control operators, arithmetic, logic and
 25 relational operators for implementation of control sequences. Also include, as a minimum,
 26 the following:
- 27 a. Proportional control (P).
 28 b. Proportional plus integral (PI).
 29 c. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID).
- 30 7. Fully implemented intrinsic control operators including sequence, reversing, ratio, time
 31 delay, time of day, highest select AO, lowest select AO, analog controlled digital output,
 32 analog control AO, and digitally controlled AO.
- 33 8. Logic operators such as "And," "Or," "Not," and others that are part of a standard set
 34 available with a high-level language.
- 35 9. Arithmetic operators such as "Add," "Subtract," "Multiply," "Divide," and others that are
 36 part of a standard set available with a high-level language.
- 37 10. Relational operators such as "Equal To," "Not Equal To," "Less Than," "Greater Than,"
 38 and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.
- 39 F. Alarm Handling Software:
- 40 1. Include alarm handling software to report all alarm conditions monitored and transmitted
 41 through DDC controllers, gateways, and other network devices.
- 42 2. Include first in, first out handling of alarms according to alarm priority ranking, with most
 43 critical alarms first, and with buffer storage in case of simultaneous and multiple alarms.
- 44 3. Alarm handling shall be active at all times to ensure that alarms are processed even if an
 45 operator is not currently signed on to DDC system.
- 46 4. Alarms display shall include the following:



- 1 a. Indication of alarm condition such as "Abnormal Off," "Hi Alarm," and "Low Alarm."
 2 b. "Analog Value" or "Status" group and point identification with native language point
 3 descriptor such as "Space Temperature, Building 110, 2nd Floor, Room 212."
 4 c. Discrete per point alarm action message, such as "Call Maintenance Dept. Ext-
 5 5561."
 6 d. Include extended message capability to allow assignment and printing of extended
 7 action messages. Capability shall be operator programmable and assignable on a
 8 per point basis.
- 9 5. Alarms shall be directed to appropriate operator workstations, printers, and individual
 10 operators by privilege level and segregation assignments.
 11 6. Send e-mail alarm messages to designated operators.
 12 7. Send e-mail, page, text and voice messages to designated operators for critical alarms.
 13 8. Alarms shall be categorized and processed by class.
- 14 a. Class 1 – Life Safety Alarms:
- 15 1) Associated with fire, security and other extremely critical equipment
 16 monitoring functions; have alarm, trouble, return to normal, and
 17 acknowledge conditions printed and displayed.
 18 2) Unacknowledged alarms to be placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer.
 19 3) All conditions shall cause an audible sound and shall require individual
 20 acknowledgment to silence audible sound.
 21 4) The purpose of a Class 1 alarm is for personnel to immediately take action
 22 to resolve issues with life safety and security equipment (i.e. fire alarm
 23 systems, smoke control systems, security systems, etc).
- 24 b. Class 2 – Critical Environmental Conditions:
- 25 1) Critical, but not life-safety related, and processed same as Class 1 alarms,
 26 except do not require individual acknowledgment.
 27 2) Acknowledgement may be through a multiple alarm acknowledgment.
 28 3) The purpose of a Class 2 alarm is for personnel to immediately take action
 29 to resolve potential damage to equipment or spaces (i.e. server room
 30 temperatures, dewpoints in chilled beam applications, etc).
- 31 c. Class 3 - Failure of Primary Equipment:
- 32 1) General alarms; printed, displayed and placed in unacknowledged alarm
 33 buffer queues.
 34 2) Acknowledgement of queued alarms shall be either on an individual basis or
 35 through a multiple alarm acknowledgment.
 36 3) Alarms returning to normal condition shall be printed and not cause an
 37 audible sound or require acknowledgment.
 38 4) The purpose of a Class 3 alarm is for personnel to immediately take action
 39 to resolve issues with primary equipment (i.e. AHUs, pumps, central exhaust
 40 fans, etc).
- 41 d. Class 4 – Out of Range Alarms:
- 42 1) Routine maintenance or other types of warning alarms.
 43 2) Alarms to be printed only, with no display, no audible sound and no
 44 acknowledgment required. Indication on graphics is acceptable by change
 45 of color or text.



- 1 3) The purpose of a Class 4 alarm is to track a history of all non-critical alarms,
2 including routine maintenance and points out-of-range. Class 4 alarms do
3 NOT remotely notify anyone.
- 4 9. Include an unacknowledged alarm indicator on display to alert operator that there are
5 unacknowledged alarms in system. Operator shall be able to acknowledge alarms on an
6 individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledge key, depending on alarm class.
- 7 10. To ensure that no alarm records are lost, it shall be possible to assign a backup printer to
8 accept alarms in case of failure of primary printer.
- 9 G. Reports and Logs:
- 10 1. Include reporting software package that allows operator to select, modify, or create
11 reports using DDC system I/O point data available.
- 12 2. Each report shall be definable as to data content, format, interval and date.
- 13 3. Report data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC
14 controller, and then uploaded to archive on workstation and/or server for historical
15 reporting.
- 16 4. Operator shall be able to obtain real-time logs of all I/O points by type or status, such as
17 alarm, point lockout, or normal.
- 18 5. Reports and logs shall be stored on workstation and/or server hard drives in a format that
19 is readily accessible by other standard software applications, including spreadsheets and
20 word processing.
- 21 6. Reports and logs shall be readily printed and set to be printed either on operator
22 command or at a specific time each day.
- 23 H. Standard Reports: Standard DDC system reports shall be provided and operator shall be able
24 to customize reports later.
- 25 1. All I/O: With current status and values.
- 26 2. Alarm: All current alarms, except those in alarm lockout.
- 27 3. Disabled I/O: All I/O points that are disabled.
- 28 4. Alarm Lockout I/O: All I/O points in alarm lockout, whether manual or automatic.
- 29 5. Alarm Lockout I/O in Alarm: All I/O in alarm lockout that are currently in alarm.
- 30 6. Logs:
- 31 a. Alarm history.
- 32 b. System messages.
- 33 c. System events.
- 34 d. Trends.
- 35 I. Custom Reports: Operator shall be able to easily define any system data into a daily, weekly,
36 monthly, or annual report. Reports shall be time and date stamped and shall contain a report
37 title.
- 38 J. Tenant Override Reports: Prepare Project-specific reports.
- 39 1. Weekly report showing daily total time in hours that each tenant has requested after-
40 hours HVAC.
- 41 2. Monthly report showing daily total time in hours that each tenant has requested after-
42 hours HVAC.
- 43 3. Annual summary report that shows after-hours HVAC usage on a monthly basis.
- 44 K. Standard Trends:



- 1 1. Trend all I/O point present values, set points, and other parameters indicated for trending.
 2 2. Trends shall be associated into groups, and a trend report shall be set up for each group.
 3 3. Trends shall be stored within DDC controller and uploaded to hard drives automatically
 4 on reaching 75 of DDC controller buffer limit, or by operator request, or by archiving time
 5 schedule.
 6 4. Preset trend intervals for each I/O point after review with Owner.
 7 5. Trend intervals shall be operator selectable from 10 seconds up to 60 minutes. Minimum
 8 number of consecutive trend values stored at one time shall be 100 per variable.
 9 6. When drive storage memory is full, most recent data shall overwrite oldest data.
 10 7. Archived and real-time trend data shall be available for viewing numerically and
 11 graphically by operators.
- 12 L. Custom Trends: Operator shall be able to define a custom trend log for any I/O point in DDC
 13 system.
- 14 1. Each trend shall include interval, start time, and stop time.
 15 2. Data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC
 16 controller, and then uploaded to archive on workstation and/or server hard drives.
 17 3. Data shall be retrievable for use in spreadsheets and standard database programs.
- 18 M. Programming Software:
- 19 1. Include programming software to execute sequences of operation indicated.
 20 2. Include programming routines in simple and easy to follow logic with detailed text
 21 comments describing what the logic does and how it corresponds to sequence of
 22 operation.
 23 3. Programming software shall be one of the following:
- 24 a. Graphic Based: Programming shall use a library of function blocks made from
 25 preprogrammed code designed for DDC control systems.
- 26 1) Function blocks shall be assembled with interconnection lines that represent
 27 to control sequence in a flowchart.
 28 2) Programming tools shall be viewable in real time to show present values
 29 and logical results of each function block.
- 30 b. Menu Based: Programming shall be done by entering parameters, definitions,
 31 conditions, requirements and constraints.
 32 c. Line by Line and Text Based: Programming shall declare variable types such as
 33 local, global, real, integer, and so on, at the beginning of the program. Use
 34 descriptive comments frequently to describe programming code.
- 35 4. Include means for detecting programming errors and testing software control strategies
 36 with a simulation tool before implementing in actual control. Simulation tool may be
 37 inherent with programming software or as a separate product.
- 38 N. Database Management Software:
- 39 1. Where a separate SQL database is used for information storage, DDC system shall
 40 include database management software that separates database monitoring and
 41 managing functions by supporting multiple separate windows.
 42 2. Database secure access shall be accomplished using standard SQL authentication
 43 including ability to access data for use outside of DDC system applications.
 44 3. Database management function shall include summarized information on trend, alarm,
 45 event, and audit for the following database management actions:



- 1 a. Backup.
 2 b. Purge.
 3 c. Restore.
- 4 4. Database management software shall support the following:
- 5 a. Statistics: Display database server information and trend, alarm, event, and audit
 6 information on database.
 7 b. Maintenance: Include method of purging records from trend, alarm, event and audit
 8 databases by supporting separate screens for creating a backup before purging,
 9 selecting database, and allowing for retention of a selected number of day's data.
 10 c. Backup: Include means to create a database backup file and select a storage
 11 location.
 12 d. Restore: Include a restricted means of restoring a database by requiring operator to
 13 have proper security level.
- 14 5. Database management software shall include information of current database activity,
 15 including the following:
- 16 a. Ready.
 17 b. Purging record from a database.
 18 c. Action failed.
 19 d. Refreshing statistics.
 20 e. Restoring database.
 21 f. Shrinking a database.
 22 g. Backing up a database.
 23 h. Resetting Internet information services.
 24 i. Starting network device manager.
 25 j. Shutting down the network device manager.
 26 k. Action successful.
- 27 6. Database management software monitoring functions shall continuously read database
 28 information once operator has logged on.
- 29 7. Include operator notification through on-screen pop-up display and e-mail message when
 30 database value has exceeded a warning or alarm limit.
- 31 8. Monitoring settings window shall have the following sections:
- 32 a. Allow operator to set and review scan intervals and start times.
 33 b. E-mail: Allow operator to create and review e-mail and phone text messages to be
 34 delivered when a warning or an alarm is generated.
 35 c. Warning: Allow operator to define warning limit parameters, set reminder frequency
 36 and link e-mail message.
 37 d. Alarm: Allow operator to define alarm limit parameters, set reminder frequency and
 38 link e-mail message.
 39 e. Database Login: Protect system from unauthorized database manipulation by
 40 creating a read access and a write access for each of trend, alarm, event and audit
 41 databases as well as operator proper security access to restore a database.
- 42 9. Monitoring settings taskbar shall include the following informational icons:
- 43 a. Normal: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that all
 44 databases are within their limits.
 45 b. Warning: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that one or
 46 more databases have exceeded their warning limit.



- 1 c. Alarm: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that one or
2 more databases have exceeded their alarm limit.

3 **2.11 OFFICE APPLICATION SOFTWARE**

- 4 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- 5 1. Microsoft Corporation.

- 6 B. Include current version of office application software at time of Substantial Completion.

- 7 C. Office application software package shall include multiple separate applications and use a
8 common platform for all applications, similar to Microsoft's "Office Professional."

- 9 1. E-mail.

- 10 2. Presentation.

- 11 3. Publisher.

- 12 4. Spreadsheet.

- 13 5. Word processing.

14 **2.12 ASHRAE 135 GATEWAYS**

- 15 A. Include BACnet communication ports, whenever available as an equipment OEM standard
16 option, for integration via a single communication cable. BACnet-controlled plant equipment
17 includes, but is not limited to, boilers, chillers, packaged air-conditioning equipment, and
18 variable-speed drives.

- 19 B. Include gateways to connect BACnet to legacy systems, existing non-BACnet devices, and
20 existing non-BACnet DDC-controlled equipment, only when specifically requested and approved
21 by Owner.

- 22 C. Include with each gateway an interoperability schedule showing each point or event on legacy
23 side that BACnet "client" will read, and each parameter that BACnet network will write to.
24 Describe this interoperability of BACnet services, or BIBBs, defined in ASHRAE 135, Annex K.

- 25 D. Gateway Minimum Requirements:

- 26 1. Read and view all readable object properties on non-BACnet network to BACnet network
27 and vice versa where applicable.

- 28 2. Write to all writeable object properties on non-BACnet network from BACnet network and
29 vice versa where applicable.

- 30 3. Include single-pass (only one protocol to BACnet without intermediary protocols)
31 translation from non-BACnet protocol to BACnet and vice versa.

- 32 4. Comply with requirements of Data Sharing Read Property, Data Sharing Write Property,
33 Device Management Dynamic Device Binding-B, and Device Management
34 Communication Control BIBBs according to ASHRAE 135.

- 35 5. Hardware, software, software licenses, and configuration tools for operator-to-gateway
36 communications.

- 37 6. Backup programming and parameters on CD media and the ability to modify, download,
38 backup, and restore gateway configuration.



1 **2.13 ASHRAE 135 PROTOCOL ANALYZER**

2 A. Analyzer and required cables and fittings for connection to ASHRAE 135 network.

3 B. Analyzer shall include the following minimum capabilities:

4 1. Capture and store to a file data traffic on all network levels.

5 2. Measure bandwidth usage.

6 3. Filtering options with ability to ignore select traffic.

7 **2.14 WIRELESS ROUTERS FOR OPERATOR INTERFACE**

8 A. Dual-Band Wireless Routers:

9 1. Description: High-speed, dual-band router with integral Ethernet ports and USB port.

10 2. Technology: IEEE 802.11n; 2.4- and 5-GHz speed bands.

11 3. Speed: Up to 300 Mbps on 2.4-GHz band and up to 450 Mbps on 5-GHz band.

12 4. Compatibility: IEEE 802.11n/g/b/a wireless devices.

13 5. Ethernet Ports: Four, gigabit (1000 Mbps).

14 6. USB Port: One, USB 2.0 or 3.0.

15 7. Wireless Security: Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) and WPA2 according to IEEE 802.11i.

16 **2.15 DDC CONTROLLERS**

17 A. DDC system shall consist of a combination of network controllers, programmable application
18 controllers and application-specific controllers to satisfy performance requirements indicated.

19 B. DDC controllers shall perform monitoring, control, energy optimization and other requirements
20 indicated.

21 C. DDC controllers shall use a multitasking, multiuser, real-time digital control microprocessor with
22 a distributed network database and intelligence.

23 D. Each DDC controller shall be capable of full and complete operation as a completely
24 independent unit and as a part of a DDC system wide distributed network.

25 E. Environment Requirements:

26 1. Controller hardware shall be suitable for the anticipated ambient conditions.

27 2. Controllers located in conditioned space shall be rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.

28 3. Controllers located outdoors shall be rated for operation at 40 to 150 deg F.

29 F. Power and Noise Immunity:

30 1. Controller shall operate at 90 to 110 percent of nominal voltage rating and shall perform
31 an orderly shutdown below 80 percent of nominal voltage.

32 2. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5 to 120 Hz and from keyed
33 radios with up to 5 W of power located within 36 inches of enclosure.

34 G. DDC Controller Spare Processing Capacity:



- 1 1. Include spare processing memory for each controller. RAM, PROM, or EEPROM will
2 implement requirements indicated with the following spare memory:
- 3 a. Network Controllers: 75 percent.
4 b. Programmable Application Controllers: Not less than 75 percent.
5 c. Application-Specific Controllers: Not less than 75 percent.
- 6 2. Memory shall support DDC controller's operating system and database and shall include
7 the following:
- 8 a. Monitoring and control.
9 b. Energy management, operation and optimization applications.
10 c. Alarm management.
11 d. Historical trend data of all connected I/O points.
12 e. Maintenance applications.
13 f. Operator interfaces.
14 g. Monitoring of manual overrides.
- 15 H. DDC Controller Spare I/O Point Capacity: Include spare I/O point capacity for each controller as
16 follows:
- 17 1. Network Controllers:
- 18 a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
19 b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
- 20 1) AIs: Two.
21 2) AOs: Two.
22 3) BIs: Three.
23 4) BOs: Three .
- 24 2. Programmable Application Controllers:
- 25 a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
26 b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
- 27 1) AIs: Two.
28 2) AOs: Two.
29 3) BIs: Three.
30 4) BOs: Three.
- 31 3. Application-Specific Controllers:
- 32 a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
33 b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
- 34 1) AIs: One.
35 2) AOs: One.
36 3) BIs: One.
37 4) BOs: One.
- 38 I. Maintenance and Support: Include the following features to facilitate maintenance and support:
- 39 1. Mount microprocessor components on circuit cards for ease of removal and replacement.



- 1 2. Means to quickly and easily disconnect controller from network.
 2 3. Means to quickly and easily access connect to field test equipment.
 3 4. Visual indication that controller electric power is on, of communication fault or trouble,
 4 and that controller is receiving and sending signals to network.
- 5 J. Input and Output Point Interface:
- 6 1. Hardwired input and output points shall connect to network, programmable application
 7 and application-specific controllers.
 8 2. Input and output points shall be protected so shorting of point to itself, to another point, or
 9 to ground will not damage controller.
 10 3. Input and output points shall be protected from voltage up to 24 V of any duration so that
 11 contact will not damage controller.
 12 4. AIs:
- 13 a. AIs shall include monitoring of low-voltage (zero- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA)
 14 and resistance signals from thermistor and RTD sensors.
 15 b. AIs shall be compatible with, and field configurable to, sensor and transmitters
 16 installed.
 17 c. Controller AIs shall perform analog-to-digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum
 18 resolution of 8 bits or better to comply with accuracy requirements indicated.
 19 d. Signal conditioning including transient rejection shall be provided for each AI.
 20 e. Capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span.
 21 f. Incorporate common-mode noise rejection of at least 50 dB from zero to 100 Hz for
 22 differential inputs, and normal-mode noise rejection of at least 20 dB at 60 Hz from
 23 a source impedance of 10000 ohms.
- 24 5. AOs:
- 25 a. Controller AOs shall perform analog-to-digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum
 26 resolution of 8 bits or better to comply with accuracy requirements indicated.
 27 b. Output signals shall have a range of 4 to 20 mA dc or zero- to 10-V dc as required
 28 to include proper control of output device.
 29 c. Capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span.
 30 d. AOs shall not exhibit a drift of greater than 0.4 percent of range per year.
- 31 6. BIs:
- 32 a. Controller BIs shall accept contact closures and shall ignore transients of less than
 33 5-ms duration.
 34 b. Isolation and protection against an applied steady-state voltage of up to 180-V ac
 35 peak.
 36 c. BIs shall include a wetting current of at least 12 mA to be compatible with
 37 commonly available control devices and shall be protected against effects of
 38 contact bounce and noise.
 39 d. BIs shall sense "dry contact" closure without external power (other than that
 40 provided by the controller) being applied.
 41 e. Pulse accumulation input points shall comply with all requirements of BIs and
 42 accept up to 10 pulses per second for pulse accumulation. Buffer shall be provided
 43 to totalize pulses. Pulse accumulator shall accept rates of at least 20 pulses per
 44 second. The totalized value shall be reset to zero on operator's command.
- 45 7. BOs:



- 1 a. Controller BOs shall include relay contact closures or triac outputs for momentary
2 and maintained operation of output devices.

- 3 1) Relay contact closures shall have a minimum duration of 0.1 second. Relays
4 shall include at least 180 V of isolation. Electromagnetic interference
5 suppression shall be provided on all output lines to limit transients to non-
6 damaging levels. Minimum contact rating shall be 1 A at 24-V ac.
- 7 2) Triac outputs shall include at least 180 V of isolation. Minimum contact
8 rating shall be 1 A at 24-V ac.

- 9 b. BOs shall include for two-state operation or a pulsed low-voltage signal for pulse-
10 width modulation control.
- 11 c. BOs shall be selectable for either normally open or normally closed operation.
- 12 d. Include tristate outputs (two coordinated BOs) for control of three-point floating-type
13 electronic actuators without feedback.
- 14 e. Limit use of three-point floating devices to air terminal unit control applications.,
15 Control algorithms shall operate actuator to one end of its stroke once every 24
16 hours for verification of operator tracking.

17 **2.16 NETWORK CONTROLLERS**

- 18 A. General Network Controller Requirements:
 - 19 1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
 - 20 2. System shall consist of one or more independent, standalone, microprocessor-based
21 network controllers to manage global strategies indicated.
 - 22 3. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and
23 programming requirements.
 - 24 4. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
 - 25 5. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to
26 allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for
27 central monitoring and alarms.
 - 28 6. Controllers that perform scheduling shall have a real-time clock.
 - 29 7. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an
30 abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode
31 and generate an alarm notification.
 - 32 8. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

- 33 B. Communication:
 - 34 1. Network controllers shall communicate with other devices on DDC system Level one
35 network.
 - 36 2. Network controller also shall perform routing if connected to a network of programmable
37 application and application-specific controllers.

- 38 C. Operator Interface:
 - 39 1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a
40 portable operator's workstation or mobile device.
 - 41 2. Local Keypad and Display:
 - 42 a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing
43 data.



- 1 b. Use of keypad and display shall require security password.
- 2 D. Serviceability:

 - 3 1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication
 - 4 of power, communication, and processor.
 - 5 2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips
 - 6 or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
 - 7 3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for
 - 8 at least 72 hours.

9 2.17 PROGRAMMABLE APPLICATION CONTROLLERS

- 10 A. General Programmable Application Controller Requirements:

 - 11 1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
 - 12 2. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and
 - 13 programming requirements.
 - 14 3. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
 - 15 4. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to
 - 16 allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for
 - 17 central monitoring and alarms.
 - 18 5. Controllers that perform scheduling shall have a real-time clock.
 - 19 6. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an
 - 20 abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode
 - 21 and generate an alarm notification.
 - 22 7. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

- 23 B. Communication:

 - 24 1. Programmable application controllers shall communicate with other devices on network.

- 25 C. Operator Interface:

 - 26 1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a
 - 27 portable operator's workstation or mobile device.
 - 28 2. Local Keypad and Display:

 - 29 a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing
 - 30 data.
 - 31 b. Use of keypad and display shall require security password.

- 32 D. Serviceability:

 - 33 1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication
 - 34 of power, communication, and processor.
 - 35 2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips
 - 36 or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
 - 37 3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for
 - 38 at least 72 hours.



1 **2.18 APPLICATION-SPECIFIC CONTROLLERS**

2 A. Description: Microprocessor-based controllers, which through hardware or firmware design are
3 dedicated to control a specific piece of equipment. Controllers are not fully user-programmable
4 but are configurable and customizable for operation of equipment they are designed to control.

- 5 1. Capable of standalone operation and shall continue to include control functions without
6 being connected to network.
7 2. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.

8 B. Communication: Application-specific controllers shall communicate with other application-
9 specific controller and devices on network, and to programmable application and network
10 controllers.

11 C. Operator Interface: Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for
12 connection to a portable operator's workstation. Connection shall extend to port on space
13 temperature sensor that is connected to controller.

14 D. Serviceability:

- 15 1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication
16 of power, communication, and processor.
17 2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips
18 or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
19 3. Controller shall use nonvolatile memory and maintain all BIOS and programming
20 information in event of power loss.

21 **2.19 CONTROLLER SOFTWARE**

22 A. General Controller Software Requirements:

- 23 1. Software applications shall reside and operate in controllers. Editing of applications shall
24 occur at operator workstations.
25 2. I/O points shall be identified by point name and point descriptor. Same names shall be
26 used at operator workstations.
27 3. Control functions shall be executed within controllers using DDC algorithms.
28 4. Controllers shall be configured to use stored default values to ensure fail-safe operation.
29 Default values shall be used when there is a failure of a connected input instrument or
30 loss of communication of a global point value.

31 B. Security:

- 32 1. Operator access shall be secured using individual security passwords and user names.
33 2. Passwords shall restrict operator to points, applications, and system functions as
34 assigned by system manager.
35 3. Operator log-on and log-off attempts shall be recorded.
36 4. System shall protect itself from unauthorized use by automatically logging off after last
37 keystroke. The delay time shall be operator-definable.

38 C. Scheduling: Include capability to schedule each point or group of points in system. Each
39 schedule shall consist of the following:

- 40 1. Weekly Schedule:



- 1 a. Include separate schedules for each day of week.
2 b. Each schedule should include the capability for start, stop, optimal start, optimal
3 stop, and night economizer.
4 c. Each schedule may consist of up to 10 events.
5 d. When a group of objects are scheduled together, include capability to adjust start
6 and stop times for each member.
- 7 2. Exception Schedules:
- 8 a. Include ability for operator to designate any day of the year as an exception
9 schedule.
10 b. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception
11 schedule is executed, it will be discarded and replaced by regular schedule for that
12 day of week.
- 13 3. Holiday Schedules:
- 14 a. Include capability for operator to define up to 99 special or holiday schedules.
15 b. Schedules may be placed on scheduling calendar and will be repeated each year.
16 c. Operator shall be able to define length of each holiday period.
- 17 D. System Coordination:
- 18 1. Include standard application for proper coordination of equipment.
19 2. Application shall include operator with a method of grouping together equipment based
20 on function and location.
21 3. Group may then be used for scheduling and other applications.
- 22 E. Binary Alarms:
- 23 1. Each binary point shall be set to alarm based on operator-specified state.
24 2. Include capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.
- 25 F. Analog Alarms:
- 26 1. Each analog object shall have both high and low alarm limits.
27 2. Alarming shall be able to be automatically and manually disabled.
- 28 G. Alarm Reporting:
- 29 1. Operator shall be able to determine action to be taken in event of an alarm.
30 2. Alarms shall be routed to appropriate operator workstations based on time and other
31 conditions.
32 3. Alarm shall be able to start programs, print, be logged in event log, generate custom
33 messages, and display graphics.
- 34 H. Remote Communication:
- 35 1. System shall have ability to dial out in the event of an alarm.
- 36 I. Electric Power Demand Limiting:



- 1 1. Demand-limiting program shall monitor building or other operator-defined electric power
2 consumption from signals connected to electric power meter or from a watt transducer or
3 current transformer.
- 4 2. Demand-limiting program shall predict probable power demand such that action can be
5 taken to prevent exceeding demand limit. When demand prediction exceeds demand
6 limit, action will be taken to reduce loads in a predetermined manner. When demand
7 prediction indicates demand limit will not be exceeded, action will be taken to restore
8 loads in a predetermined manner.
- 9 3. Demand reduction shall be accomplished by the following means:
- 10 a. Reset air-handling unit supply temperature set points.
11 b. Reset space temperature set points.
12 c. De-energize equipment based on priority.
- 13 4. Demand-limiting parameters, frequency of calculations, time intervals, and other relevant
14 variables shall be based on the means by which electric power service provider
15 computes demand charges.
- 16 5. Include demand-limiting prediction and control for any individual meter monitored by
17 system or for total of any combination of meters.
- 18 6. Include means operator to make the following changes online:
- 19 a. Addition and deletion of loads controlled.
20 b. Changes in demand intervals.
21 c. Changes in demand limit for meter(s).
22 d. Maximum shutoff time for equipment.
23 e. Minimum shutoff time for equipment.
24 f. Select rotational or sequential shedding and restoring.
25 g. Shed and restore priority.
- 26 7. Include the following information and reports, to be available on an hourly, daily, weekly,
27 monthly and annual basis:
- 28 a. Total electric consumption.
29 b. Peak demand.
30 c. Date and time of peak demand.
31 d. Daily peak demand.
- 32 J. Sequencing: Include application software based on sequences of operation indicated to
33 properly sequence chillers, boilers, and other applicable HVAC equipment.
- 34 K. Control Loops:
- 35 1. Support any of the following control loops, as applicable to control required:
- 36 a. Two-position (on/off, open/close, slow/fast) control.
37 b. Proportional control.
38 c. Proportional plus integral (PI) control.
39 d. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID) control.
- 40 1) Include PID algorithms with direct or reverse action and anti-windup.
41 2) Algorithm shall calculate a time-varying analog value used to position an
42 output or stage a series of outputs.
43 3) Controlled variable, set point, and PID gains shall be operator-selectable.



- 1 e. Adaptive (automatic tuning) is NOT permitted. The gains on PI or PID control loops
2 may be reset between user-established limits based on deviation from control set
3 point.
- 4 L. Staggered Start: Application shall prevent all controlled equipment from simultaneously
5 restarting after a power outage. Order which equipment (or groups of equipment) is started,
6 along with the time delay between starts, shall be operator-selectable.
- 7 M. Energy Calculations:
- 8 1. Include software to allow instantaneous power or flow rates to be accumulated and
9 converted to energy usage data.
- 10 2. Include an algorithm that calculates a sliding-window average (rolling average). Algorithm
11 shall be flexible to allow window intervals to be operator specified (such as 15, 30, or 60
12 minutes).
- 13 3. Include an algorithm that calculates a fixed-window average. A digital input signal shall
14 define start of window period (such as signal from utility meter) to synchronize fixed-
15 window average with that used by utility.
- 16 N. Anti-Short Cycling:
- 17 1. BO points shall be protected from short cycling.
- 18 2. Feature shall allow minimum on-time and off-time to be selected.
- 19 O. On and Off Control with Differential:
- 20 1. Include an algorithm that allows a BO to be cycled based on a controlled variable and set
21 point.
- 22 2. Algorithm shall be direct- or reverse-acting and incorporate an adjustable differential.
- 23 P. Run-Time Totalization:
- 24 1. Include software to totalize run-times for all BIpoinTs.
- 25 2. A high run-time alarm shall be assigned, if required, by operator.

26 **2.20 ENCLOSURES**

- 27 A. General Enclosure Requirements:
- 28 1. House each controller and associated control accessories in an enclosure. Enclosure
29 shall serve as central tie-in point for control devices such as switches, transmitters,
30 transducers, power supplies and transformers.
- 31 2. Do not house more than one controller in a single enclosure.
- 32 3. Include enclosure door with key locking mechanism. Key locks alike for all enclosures
33 and include one pair of keys per enclosure.
- 34 4. Individual wall-mounted single-door enclosures shall not exceed 36 inches wide and 48
35 inches high.
- 36 5. Include wall-mounted enclosures with brackets suitable for mounting enclosures to wall
37 or freestanding support stand as indicated.
- 38 6. Supply each enclosure with a complete set of as-built schematics, tubing, and wiring
39 diagrams and product literature located in a pocket on inside of door.
- 40 B. Internal Arrangement:



1. Internal layout of enclosure shall group and protect electric and electronic components associated with a controller, but not an integral part of controller.
2. Arrange layout to group similar products together.
3. Include a barrier between line-voltage and low-voltage electrical and electronic products.
4. Factory or shop install products, tubing, cabling and wiring complying with requirements and standards indicated.
5. Terminate field cable and wire using heavy-duty terminal blocks.
6. Include spare terminals, equal to not less than 10 percent of used terminals.
7. Include spade lugs for stranded cable and wire.
8. Install a maximum of two wires on each side of a terminal.
9. Include enclosure field power supply with a toggle-type switch located at entrance inside enclosure to disconnect power.
10. Include enclosure with a line-voltage nominal 20-A GFCI duplex receptacle for service and testing tools. Wire receptacle on hot side of enclosure disconnect switch and include with a 5-A circuit breaker.
11. Mount products within enclosure on removable internal panel(s).
12. Include products mounted in enclosures with engraved, laminated phenolic nameplates (black letters on a white background). The nameplates shall have at least 1/4-inch-high lettering.
13. Route tubing cable and wire located inside enclosure within a raceway with a continuous removable cover.
14. Label each end of cable, wire and tubing in enclosure following an approved identification system that extends from field I/O connection and all intermediate connections throughout length to controller connection.
15. Size enclosure internal panel to include at least 25 percent spare area on face of panel.

C. Environmental Requirements:

1. Evaluate temperature and humidity requirements of each product to be installed within each enclosure.
2. Calculate enclosure internal operating temperature considering heat dissipation of all products installed within enclosure and ambient effects (solar, conduction and wind) on enclosure.
3. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled electrical heat to maintain inside of enclosure above minimum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
4. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled ventilation fans with filtered louver(s) to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.

D. Wall-Mounted, NEMA 250, Type 1:

1. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 50 or UL 50E.
2. Construct enclosure of steel, not less than:
 - a. Enclosure size less than 24 in.: 0.053 in. or 0.067 in. thick.
 - b. Enclosure size 24 in. and larger: 0.067 in. thick.
3. Finish enclosure inside and out with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
 - a. Exterior color shall be manufacturer's standard.
 - b. Interior color shall be manufacturer's standard.



- 1 4. Hinged door full size of front face of enclosure and supported using:
- 2 a. Enclosures sizes less than 36 in. tall: Multiple butt hinges.
- 3 b. Enclosures sizes 36 in. tall and larger: Continuous piano hinges.
- 4 5. Removable internal panel with a white polyester powder coating that is electrostatically
- 5 applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
- 6 a. Size less than 24 in.: Solid or Perforated steel, 0.053 in. thick.
- 7 b. Size 24 in. and larger: Solid aluminum, 0.10 in. or steel, 0.093 in. thick.
- 8 6. Internal panel mounting hardware, grounding hardware and sealing washers.
- 9 7. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
- 10 8. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.
- 11 E. Wall Mounted NEMA 250, Types 4 and 12:
- 12 1. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 508A.
- 13 2. Seam and joints are continuously welded and ground smooth.
- 14 3. Where recessed enclosures are indicated, include enclosures with face flange for flush
- 15 mounting.
- 16 4. Externally formed body flange around perimeter of enclosure face for continuous
- 17 perimeter seamless gasket door seal.
- 18 5. Single-door enclosure sizes up to 60 inches tall by 36 inches wide.
- 19 6. Double-door enclosure sizes up to 36 inches tall by 60 inches wide.
- 20 7. Construct enclosure of steel, not less than the following:
- 21 a. Size Less Than 24 Inches: 0.053 inch or 0.067 inch thick.
- 22 b. Size 24 Inches and Larger: 0.067 inch thick.
- 23 8. Finish enclosure with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then
- 24 baked to bond to substrate.
- 25 a. Exterior color shall be manufacturer's standard.
- 26 b. Interior color shall be manufacturer's standard.
- 27 9. Corner-formed door, full size of enclosure face, supported using multiple concealed
- 28 hinges with easily removable hinge pins.
- 29 a. Sizes through 24 Inches Tall: Two hinges.
- 30 b. Sizes between 24 Inches through 48 Inches Tall: Three hinges.
- 31 c. Sizes Larger 48 Inches Tall: Four hinges.
- 32 10. Double-door enclosures with overlapping door design to include unobstructed full-width
- 33 access.
- 34 a. Single-door enclosures 48 inches and taller, and all double-door enclosures, with
- 35 three-point (top, middle and bottom) latch system.
- 36 11. Removable internal panel with a white polyester powder coating that is electrostatically
- 37 applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
- 38 a. Size Less Than 24 Inches: Solid or perforated steel, 0.053 inch thick.



- 1 b. Size 24 Inches and Larger: Solid aluminum, 0.10 inch or steel, 0.093 inch thick.
- 2 12. Internal panel mounting studs with hardware, grounding hardware, and sealing washers.
- 3 13. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
- 4 14. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.
- 5 F. Wall-Mounted, NEMA 250, Type 4X SS:
- 6 1. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 508A.
- 7 2. Seam and joints are continuously welded and ground smooth.
- 8 3. Externally formed body flange around perimeter of enclosure face for continuous
- 9 perimeter seamless gasket door seal.
- 10 4. Construct enclosure of Type 316L stainless steel, not less than the following:
- 11 a. Size Less Than 24 Inches: 0.053 inch thick.
- 12 b. Size 24 Inches and Larger: 0.067 inch thick.
- 13 5. Outside body and door of enclosure with brushed No. 4 finish.
- 14 6. Corner-formed door, full size of enclosure face, supported using multiple concealed
- 15 hinges with easily removable hinge pins.
- 16 a. Sizes through 24 Inches Tall: Two hinges.
- 17 b. Sizes between 24 Inches through 48 Inches Tall: Three hinges.
- 18 c. Sizes Larger 48 Inches Tall: Four hinges.
- 19 7. Corner-formed door, full size of enclosure face, supported using continuous piano hinge
- 20 full length of door.
- 21 8. Doors fitted with three-point (top, middle, and bottom) latch system with single, heavy-
- 22 duty, liquid-tight Type 316 stainless-steel handle with integral locking mechanism.
- 23 9. Removable internal panel shall be 0.093-inch solid steel with a white polyester powder
- 24 coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
- 25 10. Internal panel mounting studs and hardware, grounding hardware, and sealing washers.
- 26 11. Install corrosion-resistant polyester vent drain in a stainless-steel sleeve at the bottom of
- 27 enclosure.
- 28 12. Include enclosure with stainless-steel mounting brackets.
- 29 G. Accessories:
- 30 1. Electric Heater:
- 31 a. Aluminum housing with brushed finish.
- 32 b. Thermostatic control with adjustable set point from zero to 100 deg F.
- 33 c. Capacity: 100, 200, 400, and 800 W as required by application.
- 34 d. Fan draws cool air from bottom of enclosure and passes air across thermostat and
- 35 heating elements before being released into enclosure cavity. Heated air is
- 36 discharged through the top of heater.
- 37 2. Ventilation Fans, Filtered Intake and Exhaust Grilles:
- 38 a. Number and size of fans, filters and grilles as required by application.
- 39 b. Compact cooling fans engineered for 50,000 hours of continuous operation without
- 40 lubrication or service.
- 41 c. Fans capable of being installed on any surface and in any position within enclosure
- 42 for spot cooling or air circulation.



- 1 d. Thermostatic control with adjustable set point from 32 to 140 deg F.
- 2 e. Maximum operating temperature of 158 deg F.
- 3 f. 4-inch fan thermally protected and provided with permanently lubricated ball-
- 4 bearings.
- 5 g. 6- and 10-inch fans with ball-bearing construction and split capacitor motors
- 6 thermally protected to avoid premature failure.
- 7 h. Dynamically balanced impellers molded from polycarbonate material.
- 8 i. Fan furnished with power cord and polarized plug for power connection.
- 9 j. Fan brackets, finger guards and mounting hardware provided with fans to complete
- 10 installation.
- 11 k. Removable Intake and Exhaust Grilles: ABS plastic or stainless steel of size to
- 12 match fan size and suitable for NEMA 250, Types 1 and 12 enclosures.
- 13 l. Filters for NEMA 250, Type 1 Enclosures: Washable aluminum, of a size to match
- 14 intake grille.
- 15 m. Filters for NEMA 250, Type 12 Enclosures: Disposable, of a size to match intake
- 16 grille.
- 17 3. Bar handle with keyed cylinder lock set.

18 2.21 RELAYS

19 A. Current Sensing Relay:

- 20 1. Monitors ac current.
- 21 2. Independent adjustable controls for pickup and dropout current.
- 22 3. Energized when supply voltage is present and current is above pickup setting.
- 23 4. De-energizes when monitored current is below dropout current.
- 24 5. Dropout current is adjustable from 50 to 95 percent of pickup current.
- 25 6. Include a current transformer, if required for application.
- 26 7. House current sensing relay and current transformer in its own enclosure. Use
- 27 NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure for indoors and NEMA 250, Type 4 for outdoors.
- 28 8. Positive indication of belt failure.

29 B. Control Relay:

30 1. Description:

- 31 a. LED status indication of activated relay and current trigger.
- 32 b. Closed-Open-Auto override switch located on the load side of the relay.

33 2. Performance:

- 34 a. Ambient Temperature: Minus 30 to 140 deg F.
- 35 b. Voltage Rating: Single-phase loads rated for 300-V ac. Three-phase loads rated for
- 36 600-V ac.
- 37 3. Relay: Single-pole double-throw, continuous-duty coil; rated for 10-million mechanical
- 38 cycles.
- 39 4. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure (plenum rated) for indoors and NEMA 250,
- 40 Type 4X for outdoors.



1 **2.22 ELECTRICAL POWER DEVICES**

2 A. Transformers:

- 3 1. Transformer shall be sized for the total connected load, plus an additional 25 percent of
4 connected load.
5 2. Transformer shall be at least 40 VA.
6 3. Transformer shall have both primary and secondary fuses.

7 B. Power-Line Conditioner:

8 1. General Power-Line Conditioner Requirements:

- 9 a. Design to ensure maximum reliability, serviceability and performance.
10 b. Overall function of the power-line conditioner is to receive raw, polluted electrical
11 power and purify it for use by electronic equipment. The power-line conditioner
12 shall provide isolated, regulated, transient and noise-free sinusoidal power to loads
13 served.

14 2. Standards: NRTL listed per UL 1012.

15 3. Performance:

- 16 a. Single phase, continuous, 100 percent duty rated KVA/KW capacity. Design to
17 supply power for linear or nonlinear, high crest factor, resistive and reactive loads.
18 b. Automatically regulate output voltage to within 2 percent or better with input voltage
19 fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 20 percent of nominal when system is loaded 100
20 percent. Use Variable Range Regulation to obtain improved line voltage regulation
21 when operating under less than full load conditions.

22 1) At 75 Percent Load: Output voltage automatically regulated to within 3
23 percent with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 35 percent of
24 nominal.

25 2) At 50 Percent Load: Output voltage automatically regulated to within 3
26 percent with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 40 percent of
27 nominal.

28 3) At 25 Percent Load: Output voltage automatically regulated to within 3
29 percent with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 45 percent of
30 nominal.

31 c. With input voltage distortion of up to 40 percent, limit the output voltage sine wave
32 to a maximum harmonic content of 5 percent.

33 d. Automatically regulate output voltage to within 2.5 percent when load (resistive)
34 changes from zero percent to 100 percent to zero percent.

35 e. Output voltage returns to 95 percent of nominal level within two cycles and to 100
36 percent within three cycles when the output is taken from no load to full resistive
37 load or vice-versa. Recovery from partial resistive load changes is corrected in a
38 shorter period of time.

39 f. K Factor: 30, designed to operate with nonlinear, non-sinusoidal, high crest factor
40 loads without overheating.

41 g. Input power factor within 0.95 approaching unity with load power factor as poor as
42 0.6.

43 h. Attenuate load-generated odd current harmonics 23 dB at the input.

44 i. Electrically isolate the primary from the secondary. Meet isolation criteria as defined
45 in NFPA 70, Article 250-5D.



- 1 j. Lighting and Surge Protection: Compares to UL 1449 rating of 330 V when
 2 subjected to Category B3 (6000 V/3000 A) combination waveform as established
 3 by IEEE C62.41.
- 4 k. Common-mode noise attenuation of 140 dB.
- 5 l. Transverse-mode noise attenuation of 120 dB.
- 6 m. With loss of input power for up to 16.6 ms, the output sine wave remains at usable
 7 ac voltage levels.
- 8 n. Reliability of 200,000 hours' MTBF.
- 9 o. At full load, when measured at 1-m distance, audible noise is not to exceed 54 dB.
- 10 p. Approximately 92 percent efficient at full load.
- 11 4. Transformer Construction:
- 12 a. Ferroresonant, dry type, convection cooled, 600V class. Transformer windings of
 13 Class H (220 deg C) insulated copper.
- 14 b. Use a Class H installation system throughout with operating temperatures not to
 15 exceed 150 deg C over a 40-deg C ambient temperature.
- 16 c. Configure transformer primary for multi-input voltage. Include input terminals for
 17 source conductors and ground.
- 18 d. Manufacture transformer core using M-6 grade, grain-oriented, stress-relieved
 19 transformer steel.
- 20 e. Configure transformer secondary in a 240/120-V split with a 208-V tap or straight
 21 120 V, depending on power output size.
- 22 f. Electrically isolate the transformer secondary windings from the primary windings.
 23 Bond neutral conductor to cabinet enclosure and output neutral terminal.
- 24 g. Include interface terminals for output power hot, neutral and ground conductors.
- 25 h. Label leads, wires and terminals to correspond with circuit wiring diagram.
- 26 i. Vacuum impregnate transformer with epoxy resin.
- 27 5. Cabinet Construction:
- 28 a. Design for panel or floor mounting.
- 29 b. NEMA 250, Type 1, general-purpose, indoor enclosure.
- 30 c. Manufacture the cabinet from heavy gauge steel complying with UL 50.
- 31 d. Include a textured baked-on paint finish.
- 32 C. Transient Voltage Suppression:
- 33 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 34 following:
- 35 a. Current Technology Inc.
- 36 b. Liebert Corporation.
- 37 c. Surge Suppression, Inc.
- 38 2. The maximum continuous operating voltage shall be at least 125 percent.
- 39 3. The operating frequency range shall be 47 to 63 Hz.
- 40 4. Protection modes according to NEMA LS-1.
- 41 5. The rated single-pulse surge current capacity, for each mode of protection, shall be no
 42 less than the following:
- 43 a. Line to Neutral: 45,000 A.
- 44 b. Neutral to Ground: 45,000 A.
- 45 c. Line to Ground: 45,000 A.



- 1 d. Per Phase: 90,000 A.
- 2 6. Clamping voltages shall be in compliance with test and evaluation procedures defined in
3 NEMA LS-1. Maximum clamping voltage shall be as follows:
- 4 a. Line to Neutral: 360 V.
5 b. Line to Ground: 360 V.
6 c. Neutral to Ground: 360 V.
- 7 7. Unit shall have LED status indicator that extinguishes to indicate a failure.
8 8. Unit shall be listed by an NRTL as a transient voltage surge suppressor per UL 1449.
9 9. Unit shall not generate any appreciable magnetic field.
10 10. Unit shall not generate an audible noise.
11 11. Applications:
- 12 a. Control Power:
- 13 1) Description: Series connected, Type 2 SPD. (Type 1 and Type 4 are NOT
14 permitted).
15 2) Connections: 3-position screw terminal strips.
16 3) Current Rating: 30 A.
17 4) Basis of Design: Surge Suppression, Inc.; S-SPT###-30.
- 18 b. BAS Hardwired Points:
- 19 1) Description: Series connected SPD.
20 2) Connections: Screw terminal strips.
21 3) Current Rating: 500 mA.
22 4) Maximum Data Rate: 2 Mbps.
23 5) Basis of Design: Surge Suppression, Inc.; CLP24Ax-B.
- 24 c. BAS Communication Interface:
- 25 1) Description: Series connected SPD.
26 2) Connections: RJ45 modular connectors.
27 3) Current Rating: 500 mA.
28 4) Maximum Data Rate: 100 Mbps.
29 5) Basis of Design: Surge Suppression, Inc.; DRJ45##C8-B.
- 30 D. DC Power Supply:
- 31 1. Plug-in style suitable for mating with a standard eight-pin octal socket. Include the power
32 supply with a mating mounting socket.
33 2. Enclose circuitry in a housing.
34 3. Include both line and load regulation to ensure a stable output. To protect both the power
35 supply and the load, power supply shall have an automatic current limiting circuit.
36 4. Performance:
- 37 a. Output voltage nominally 25-V dc within 5 percent.
38 b. Output current up to 100 mA.
39 c. Input voltage nominally 120-V ac, 60 Hz.
40 d. Load regulation within 0.5 percent from zero- to 100-mA load.
41 e. Line regulation within 0.5 percent at a 100-mA load for a 10 percent line change.
42 f. Stability within 0.1 percent of rated volts for 24 hours after a 20-minute warmup.



1 **2.23 UNINTERRUPTABLE POWER SUPPLY (UPS) UNITS**

2 A. 750 through 1000 VA:

- 3 1. UPS units shall provide continuous, regulated output power without using their batteries
4 during brown-out, surge, and spike conditions.
5 2. Load served shall not exceed 75 percent of UPS rated capacity, including power factor of
6 connected loads.

- 7 a. Larger-capacity units shall be provided for systems with larger connected loads.
8 b. UPS shall provide 15 minutes of battery power.
9 c. UPS shall be at least 750 VA.

10 3. Performance:

- 11 a. Input Voltage: Single phase, 120- or 230-V ac, compatible with field power source.
12 b. Load Power Factor Range (Crest Factor): 0.65 to 1.0.
13 c. Output Voltage: 101- to 132-V ac, while input voltage varies between 89 and 152-
14 V ac.
15 d. On Battery Output Voltage: Sine wave.
16 e. Inverter overload capacity shall be minimum 150 percent for 30 seconds.
17 f. Recharge time shall be a maximum of six hours to 90 percent capacity after full
18 discharge to cutoff.
19 g. Transfer Time: 6 ms.
20 h. Surge Voltage Withstand Capacity: IEEE C62.41, Categories A and B; 6 kV/200
21 and 500 A; 100-kHz ringwave.

- 22 4. UPS shall be automatic during fault or overload conditions.
23 5. Unit with integral line-interactive, power condition topology to eliminate all power
24 contaminants.
25 6. Include front panel with power switch and visual indication of power, battery, fault and
26 temperature.
27 7. Unit shall include an audible alarm of faults and front panel silence feature.
28 8. Unit with four NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-15R receptacles.
29 9. Batteries shall be sealed lead-acid type and be maintenance free. Battery replacement
30 shall be front accessible by user without dropping load.
31 10. Include tower models installed in ventilated cabinets to the particular installation location.

32 **2.24 PIPING AND TUBING**

33 A. Pressure Instrument Signal Air, Tubing and Piping:

34 1. Products in this paragraph are intended for use with the following:

- 35 a. Main air and signal air to pneumatically controlled instruments, actuators and other
36 control devices and accessories.
37 b. Signal air between pressure instruments, such as sensors, switches, transmitters,
38 controllers and accessories.

39 2. Copper Tubing:

- 40 a. Seamless phosphor deoxidized copper, drawn tempered, with chemical and
41 physical properties according to ASTM B 75.



- 1 b. Performance, dimensions, weight and tolerance according to ASTM B 280.
- 2 c. Diameter, as required by application, not less than nominal 0.25 inch.
- 3 d. Wall thickness, as required by the application, but not less than 0.030 inch.
- 4 3. Copper Tubing Connectors and Fittings:
- 5 a. Brass, solder-joint type.
- 6 4. Polyethylene Tubing:
- 7 a. Fire-resistant black virgin polyethylene according to ASTM D 1248, Type 1, Class C
- 8 and Grade 5.
- 9 b. Tubing shall comply with stress crack test according to ASTM D 1693.
- 10 c. Diameter, as required by application, of not less than nominal 0.25 inch.
- 11 5. Polyethylene Tubing Connectors and Fittings:
- 12 a. Brass, barbered fittings.
- 13 b. Brass, compression type.
- 14 B. Process Tubing:
- 15 1. Products in this paragraph are intended for signals to instruments connected to liquid and
- 16 steam systems.
- 17 2. Copper Tubing:
- 18 a. Seamless phosphor deoxidized copper, soft annealed or drawn tempered with
- 19 chemical and physical properties according to ASTM B 75.
- 20 b. Performance, dimensions, weight and tolerance according to ASTM B 280.
- 21 c. Diameter, as required by application, of not less than nominal 0.25 inch.
- 22 d. Wall thickness, as required by application, but not less than 0.030 inch.
- 23 3. Copper Tubing Connectors and Fittings:
- 24 a. Brass, solder-joint type.
- 25 4. Stainless-Steel Tubing:
- 26 a. Seamless Type 316 stainless steel, Grade TP, cold drawn, annealed and pickled,
- 27 free from scale.
- 28 b. Chemical and physical properties according to ASTM A 269.
- 29 c. Diameter, as required by application, of not less than nominal 0.25 inch.
- 30 d. Wall thickness, as required by application, but not less than 0.035 inch.
- 31 e. Furnish stainless-steel tubing in [**20-foot**] straight random lengths.
- 32 5. Stainless-Steel Tubing Connectors and Fittings:
- 33 a. Connectors and fittings shall be stainless steel, with stainless-steel collets, flareless
- 34 type.
- 35 b. Connect instruments to tubing with connectors having compression connector on
- 36 one end and IPS or NPT thread on other end.



1 **2.25 CONTROL WIRE AND CABLE**

2 A. Wire: Single conductor control wiring above 24 V.

- 3 1. Wire size shall be at least No. 18 AWG.
- 4 2. Conductor shall be 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
- 5 3. Conductor insulation shall be 600 V, Type THWN or Type THHN, and 90 deg C
- 6 according to UL 83.
- 7 4. Conductor colors shall be black (hot), white (neutral), and green (ground).
- 8 5. Furnish wire on spools.

9 B. Single Twisted Shielded Instrumentation Cable above 24 V:

- 10 1. Wire size shall be a minimum No. 18 AWG.
- 11 2. Conductors shall be a twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with a 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
- 12 3. Conductor insulation shall have a Type THHN/THWN or Type TFN rating.
- 13 4. Shielding shall be 100 percent type, 0.35/0.5-mil aluminum/Mylar tape, helically applied
- 14 with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
- 15 5. Outer jacket insulation shall have a 600-V, 90-deg C rating and shall be Type TC cable.
- 16 6. For twisted pair, conductor colors shall be black and white. For twisted triad, conductor
- 17 colors shall be black, red and white.
- 18 7. Furnish wire on spools.

19 C. Single Twisted Shielded Instrumentation Cable 24 V and Less:

- 20 1. Wire size shall be a minimum No. 18 AWG.
- 21 2. Conductors shall be a twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper stranding with a 2- to 2.5-inch
- 22 lay.
- 23 3. Conductor insulation shall have a nominal 15-mil thickness, constructed from flame-
- 24 retardant PVC.
- 25 4. Shielding shall be 100 percent type, 1.35-mil aluminum/polymer tape, helically applied
- 26 with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
- 27 5. Outer jacket insulation shall have a 300-V, 105-deg C rating and shall be Type PLTC
- 28 cable.
- 29 6. For twisted pair, conductor colors shall be black and white. For twisted triad, conductor
- 30 colors shall be black, red and white.
- 31 7. Furnish wire on spools.

32 D. LAN and Communication Cable: Comply with DDC system manufacturer requirements for
33 network being installed.

- 34 1. Cable shall be balanced twisted pair.
- 35 2. Comply with the following requirements and for balanced twisted pair cable described in
- 36 Section 25 05 23 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- 37 a. Cable shall be plenum rated.
- 38 b. Cable shall have a unique color that is different from other cables used on Project.

39 **2.26 RACEWAYS**

40 A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for
41 electrical power raceways and boxes.



- 1 B. Comply with requirements in Section 25 05 28 "Pathways for Control Systems" for raceways for
2 balanced twisted pair cables and optical fiber cables.

3 **2.27 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE AND CONNECTORS**

- 4 A. Comply with requirements in Section 27 13 23 "Communications Optical Fiber Backbone
5 Cabling" for optical fiber backbone cabling and connectors.
- 6 B. Comply with requirements in Section 27 15 23 "Communications Optical Fiber Horizontal
7 Cabling" for optical fiber horizontal cabling and connectors.

8 **2.28 IDENTIFICATION**

- 9 A. Control Equipment, Instruments, and Control Devices:

- 10 1. Self-adhesive label and Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign bearing unique
11 identification.
- 12 a. Include instruments with unique identification identified by equipment being
13 controlled or monitored, followed by point identification.
- 14 2. Legend shall consist of white lettering on black background.
- 15 3. Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign shall be engraved phenolic consisting of three
16 layers of rigid laminate. Top and bottom layers are color-coded black with contrasting
17 white center exposed by engraving through outer layer and shall be fastened with drive
18 pins.
- 19 4. Instruments, control devices and actuators with Project-specific identification tags having
20 unique identification numbers following requirements indicated and provided by original
21 manufacturer do not require additional identification.

- 22 B. Valve Tags:

- 23 1. Brass tags and brass chains attached to valve.
- 24 2. Tags shall be at least 1.5 inches in diameter.
- 25 3. Include tag with unique valve identification indicating control influence such as flow, level,
26 pressure, or temperature; followed by location of valve, and followed by three-digit
27 sequential number. For example: TV-1.001.
- 28 4. Valves with Project-specific identification tags having unique identification numbers
29 following requirements indicated and provided by original manufacturer do not require an
30 additional tag.

- 31 C. Raceway and Boxes:

- 32 1. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for
33 Electrical Systems."
- 34 2. Paint cover plates on junction boxes and conduit same color as the tape banding for
35 conduits. After painting, label cover plate "HVAC Controls," using an engraved phenolic
36 tag.
- 37 3. For raceways housing air signal tubing, add a phenolic tag labeled "HVAC Air Signal
38 Tubing."

- 39 D. Equipment Warning Labels:



- 1 1. Self-adhesive label with pressure-sensitive adhesive back and peel-off protective jacket.
- 2 2. Lettering size shall be at least 14-point type with white lettering on red background.
- 3 3. Warning label shall read "CAUTION-Equipment operated under remote automatic control
- 4 and may start or stop at any time without warning. Switch electric power disconnecting
- 5 means to OFF position before servicing."
- 6 4. Lettering shall be enclosed in a white line border. Edge of label shall extend at least 0.25
- 7 inch beyond white border.

8 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

9 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 10 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
- 11 and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 12 1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates.
- 13 B. Examine roughing-in for products to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
 - 14 1. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of
 - 15 connections before installation.
 - 16 2. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of
 - 17 connections before installation.
- 18 C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where product will be installed.
- 19 D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the
- 20 Work.
- 21 E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

22 **3.2 DDC SYSTEM INTERFACE WITH OTHER SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT**

- 23 A. Communication Interface to Equipment with Integral Controls:
 - 24 1. DDC system shall have communication interface with equipment having integral controls
 - 25 and having a communication interface for remote monitoring or control.
 - 26 2. Equipment to Be Connected: As indicated on Drawings.
- 27 B. Communication Interface to Other Building Systems:
 - 28 1. DDC system shall have a communication interface with systems having a communication
 - 29 interface.
 - 30 2. Systems to Be Connected: As indicated on Drawings.

31 **3.3 CONTROL DEVICES FOR INSTALLATION BY INSTALLERS**

- 32 A. Deliver selected control devices, specified in indicated HVAC instrumentation and control device
- 33 Sections, to identified equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to
- 34 identified installers for field installation.



- 1 B. Deliver the following to duct fabricator and Installer for installation in ductwork. Include
2 installation instructions to Installer and supervise installation for compliance with requirements.
- 3 1. Airflow sensors and switches, which are specified in Section 25 09 23.14 "Flow
4 Instruments."
5 2. Pressure sensors, which are specified in Section 25 09 23.23 "Pressure Instruments."
- 6 C. Deliver the following to plumbing and HVAC piping installers for installation in piping. Include
7 installation instructions to Installer and supervise installation for compliance with requirements.
- 8 1. DDC control valves, which are specified in Section 25 09 23.11 "Control Valves."
9 2. Pipe-mounted flow meters, which are specified in Section 25 09 23.14 "Flow
10 Instruments."
11 3. Pipe-mounted sensors, switches and transmitters. Flow meters are specified in
12 Section 25 09 23.14 "Flow Instruments." Liquid and steam temperature sensors,
13 switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 25 09 23.27 "Temperature
14 Instruments."
15 4. Tank-mounted sensors, switches and transmitters. Pressure sensors, switches, and
16 transmitters are specified in Section 25 09 23.23 "Pressure Instruments." Liquid and
17 steam temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in
18 Section 25 09 23.27 "Temperature Instruments."
19 5. Pipe- and tank-mounted thermowells. Liquid and steam thermowells are specified in
20 Section 25 09 23.27 "Temperature Instruments."

21 3.4 CONTROL DEVICES FOR EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURER FACTORY INSTALLATION

- 22 A. Deliver the following to air terminal unit manufacturer for factory installation. Include installation
23 instructions to air terminal unit manufacturer.
- 24 1. Application-specific controller.
25 2. Electric damper actuator. Dampers actuators are specified in Section 25 09 23.12
26 "Control Dampers."
27 3. Unit-mounted flow and pressure sensors, transmitters and transducers. Flow sensors,
28 transmitters, and transducers are specified in Section 25 09 23.14 "Flow Instruments."
29 Pressure sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 25 09 23.23
30 "Pressure Instruments."
31 4. Relays.
- 32 B. Deliver the following to fan-coil unit manufacturer for factory installation. Include installation
33 instructions to fan-coil unit manufacturer.
- 34 1. Application-specific controller.
35 2. Unit-mounted temperature sensors. Air-temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters
36 are specified in Section 25 09 23.27 "Temperature Instruments."
37 3. Flow and pressure switches. Air and liquid flow sensors, transmitters, and transducers
38 are specified in Section 25 09 23.14 "Flow Instruments." Pressure sensors, switches, and
39 transmitters are specified in Section 25 09 23.23 "Pressure Instruments."
40 4. Leak-detection switches, which are specified in Section 25 09 23.18 "Leak-Detection
41 Instruments."
42 5. Relays.



1 **3.5 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- 2 A. Install products to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.
- 3 B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- 4 C. Support products, tubing, piping wiring and raceways. Brace products to prevent lateral
5 movement and sway or a break in attachment.
- 6 D. If codes and referenced standards are more stringent than requirements indicated, comply with
7 requirements in codes and referenced standards.
- 8 E. Fabricate openings and install sleeves in ceilings, floors, roof, and walls required by installation
9 of products. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, and cutting, check for concealed work to
10 avoid damage. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- 11 F. Firestop Penetrations Made in Fire-Rated Assemblies: Comply with requirements in Division 07.
- 12 G. Seal penetrations made in acoustically rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division
13 07.
- 14 H. Welding Requirements:
- 15 1. Restrict welding and burning to supports and bracing.
- 16 2. No equipment shall be cut or welded without approval. Welding or cutting will not be
17 approved if there is risk of damage to adjacent Work.
- 18 3. Welding, where approved, shall be by inert-gas electric arc process and shall be
19 performed by qualified welders according to applicable welding codes.
- 20 4. If requested on-site, show satisfactory evidence of welder certificates indicating ability to
21 perform welding work intended.
- 22 I. Fastening Hardware:
- 23 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that damage surfaces of rods, nuts, and other
24 parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening fasteners.
- 25 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force
26 or by oversized wrenches.
- 27 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- 28 J. If product locations are not indicated, install products in locations that are accessible and that
29 will permit service and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks without
30 removal of permanently installed furniture and equipment.
- 31 K. Corrosive Environments:
- 32 1. Avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive airstreams and environments, including, but
33 not limited to, the following:
- 34 a. Laboratory exhaust-air streams.
- 35 b. Process exhaust-air streams.
- 36 2. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive airstream and environment, use Type 316
37 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-
38 resistant coating that is suitable for environment. Comply with requirements for



- 1 installation of raceways and boxes specified in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes
 2 for Electrical Systems."
 3 3. Where instruments are located in a corrosive airstream and are not corrosive resistant
 4 from manufacturer, field install products in NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of
 5 Type 316L stainless steel.

6 **3.6 WORKSTATION INSTALLATION**

7 A. Desktop Workstations Installation:

- 8 1. Install workstation(s) at location(s) directed by Owner.
 9 2. Install multiple-receptacle power strip with cord for use in connecting multiple workstation
 10 components to a single duplex electrical power receptacle.
 11 3. Install software on workstation(s) and verify software functions properly.
 12 4. Develop Project-specific graphics, trends, reports, logs and historical database.
 13 5. Power each workstation through a dedicated UPS unit. Locate UPS adjacent to
 14 workstation.

15 **3.7 SERVER INSTALLATION**

- 16 A. Install number of servers required to suit requirements indicated. Review Project requirements
 17 and indicate layout of proposed location in Shop Drawings.
 18 B. Install software indicated on server(s) and verify that software functions properly.
 19 C. Develop Project-specific graphics, trends, reports, logs, and historical database.
 20 D. Power servers through dedicated UPS unit. Locate UPS adjacent to server.

21 **3.8 GATEWAY INSTALLATION**

- 22 A. Install gateways if required for DDC system communication interface.
 23 B. Test gateway to verify that communication interface functions properly.

24 **3.9 ROUTER INSTALLATION**

- 25 A. Install routers if required for DDC system communication interface.
 26 B. Test router to verify that communication interface functions properly.

27 **3.10 CONTROLLER INSTALLATION**

- 28 A. Install controllers in enclosures to comply with indicated requirements.
 29 1. Provide a separate controller for each major HVAC system.
 30 2. Controller shall be located within the same room as equipment.



- 1 3. All points associated with a single system shall reside in a single controller. Points used
2 for control loop reset, such as outside air or space temperature, are exempt from this
3 requirement.
- 4 4. Route all controllers for air terminal units through the controller for the air handling unit
5 associated with the air terminal units.
- 6 5. Motors in motor control centers (MCC) shall be controlled from the DDC controller
7 associated with the HVAC system. It shall not be acceptable to control all motors in a
8 MCC from one DDC controller dedicated to the MCC. The intent of this specification is
9 that the loss of one DDC controller shall not affect the operation of other HVAC system,
10 but only for the points connected to the DDC controller.
- 11 B. Connect controllers to field power supply and to UPS units where indicated.
- 12 C. Install controller with latest version of applicable software and configure to execute
13 requirements indicated.
- 14 D. Test and adjust controllers to verify operation of connected I/O to achieve performance
15 indicated requirements while executing sequences of operation.
- 16 E. Installation of Network Controllers:
- 17 1. Quantity and location of network controllers shall be determined by DDC system
18 manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
- 19 2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
- 20 3. Top of controller shall be within 72 inches of finished floor.
- 21 F. Installation of Programmable Application Controllers:
- 22 1. Quantity and location of programmable application controllers shall be determined by
23 DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
- 24 2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
- 25 3. Top of controller shall be within 72 inches of finished floor.
- 26 G. Application-Specific Controllers:
- 27 1. Quantity and location of application-specific controllers shall be determined by DDC
28 system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
- 29 2. For controllers not mounted directly on equipment being controlled, install controllers in a
30 protected location that is easily accessible by operators.

31 **3.11 PROGRAMMING**

- 32 A. Provide software programming for the system as per specifications and adhere to the
33 sequences of operation provided on the Drawings.
- 34 B. Provide all other system programming necessary for the operation of the system but not
35 specified in the sequences of operation.
- 36 C. Imbed into the control program sufficient comment statements to clearly describe each section
37 of the program. The comment statements shall reflect the language used in the sequence of
38 operation.
- 39 D. Provide a separate program for each major HVAC system.



1 **3.12 BUILDING AUTOMATION GRAPHICS**

2 A. Color Graphics Application:

- 3 1. Use system schematics indicated as starting point to create graphics.
 4 2. Develop Project-specific library of symbols for representing system equipment and
 5 products.
 6 3. Incorporate digital images of Project-completed installation into graphics where beneficial
 7 to enhance effect.
 8 4. Submit sketch of graphic layout with description of all text for each graphic for
 9 Owner's and Engineer's review before creating graphic using graphics software.
 10 5. Seek Owner input in graphics development once using graphics software.
 11 6. Final editing shall be done on-site with Owner's and Engineer's review and feedback.
 12 7. Refine graphics as necessary for Owner acceptance.
 13 8. On receiving Owner acceptance, print a hard copy for inclusion in operation and
 14 maintenance manual. Prepare a scanned copy PDF file of each graphic and include with
 15 softcopy of DDC system operation and maintenance manual.

16 B. Dynamic Data Display:

- 17 1. Point lists shall be organized on a per field device basis.
 18 2. If the software provides for the sub-division of point data within a field device, the data
 19 shall be organized by physical sub-system as a minimum (fan section, mixed air section,
 20 etc.)
 21 3. The workstation shall be configured to automatically update values without any action by
 22 the operator.
 23 4. Value updates in points lists shall be configured to update at least once every 5 seconds.
 24 5. Binary data shall be configured to display state descriptors (OFF, ON, OPEN, CLOSED,
 25 etc.) and not the states of 0 and 1.
 26 6. Analog data displays shall include engineering units and shall not report values more
 27 precise than the device can measure. Comply with "Performance Requirements" Article
 28 of this Section for "Precision of I/O Reported Values." Values shall be reported consistent
 29 with the following:
- 30 a. Temperatures shall be reported to 1 decimal place.
 31 b. Percentages shall be reported as integers.
 32 c. Velocities shall be reported as integers.
 33 d. Flow volumes shall be reported as integers.
 34 e. Pressures shall be reported to 1 or 2 decimal places, as determined by the control
 35 setpoint.
 36 f. Consumptions shall be reported as integers.
 37 g. Dampers and valve positions shall be reported as "% OPEN".
- 38 7. All temporary points used for debugging or tuning, such as PID loop outputs, shall be
 39 removed from the display.
 40 8. All text fields associated with a specific element of data shall be programmed to provide
 41 the maximum amount to the operator.

42 C. Graphic Pages:

- 43 1. Hierarchy:
 44 a. The organization of graphic pages shall be from a global level down to a very
 45 detailed level through a series of links.



- 1 b. Linking shall allow the operator to move down the hierarchy, up the hierarchy, and
2 laterally within the hierarchy.

- 3 2. Hierarchy Outline:

- 4 a. Site Plan Page: A visual representation of the site (map). One page of multiple
5 linked pages depending on the size of the site plan.

- 6 1) Link to individual building graphic pages.
- 7 2) Display outdoor weather conditions.

- 8 b. Utility Management Page: A summary of data on the utility consumption for the
9 site:

- 10 1) Link to the site plan.
- 11 2) Display

- 12 a) Utility consumption data.
- 13 b) Demand data.
- 14 c) Voltages, current, and power factors.
- 15 d) Demand control actions current in effect.

- 16 3) Presenting the utility management data may require more than one graphic
17 page to effectively report the data from multiple meters.

- 18 c. Building Graphic Page: Typically a picture of the building. One page per building.

- 19 1) Link to floor plans within the building.
- 20 2) Link to central plant graphics where the plant serves the entire building.
- 21 3) Link to delivery systems if the delivery system serves the entire building.
- 22 4) Link up to the site plan.

- 23 d. Floor Plan Page: This shall be a two-dimensional plan of a floor area. A minimum
24 of one page per floor per building is required. Where floor plans are large, multiple
25 linked pages are required. For each control zone, the value of the controlled
26 parameters shall be displayed. This will typically be the lighting status,
27 temperature, temperature setpoints, zone discharge air temperatures, and relative
28 humidity.

- 29 1) Link up to the Building page.
- 30 2) Link up to the Site page.
- 31 3) Link to any delivery system that serves the floor plan area (air handling unit
32 is typical).
- 33 4) Link to time schedules that affect the systems that serve the area.
- 34 5) Link to a Terminal Unit Summary page where multiple zones on the floor are
35 served by unitary control devices, such as air terminal units or fan coil units.
- 36 6) Individual control zones shall be identified.
- 37 7) The location of terminal equipment serving each zone shall be shown.
- 38 8) The location of sensors installed in the occupied space shall be shown.
- 39 9) Where room numbers are available, they shall be shown.

- 40 e. Central Plant Page: A graphical representation of the equipment that makes up the
41 plant such as chillers, pumps, boilers, towers, etc. If the plant is small, this graphic
42 shall display the values of process variables and commands to end devices. If the



- 1 plant is complex, this graphic shall just contain links to equipment graphics. A
2 page for each plant is required.
- 3 1) Link up to the Building page.
4 2) Link up to the Site Plan page.
5 3) Link to Central Plant Equipment Component page (chiller, pumps, tower,
6 etc).
7 4) Display:
- 8 a) Process variables.
9 b) Commands to end devices.
10 c) Status of end devices.
11 d) Alarm points if this is the only central plant graphic.
12 e) Plant status (enabled/disabled).
13 f) Demand control status.
- 14 5) Link to any time schedules that affect the operation of the plant.
15 6) Link to any preconfigured trend charts associated with the performance of
16 the plant.
17 7) Link to a Central Plant Configuration page.
- 18 f. Central Plant Equipment Component: A graphical representation of an element of
19 equipment such as a chiller, pumps, boiler, or tower or some combination of all of
20 these. A page for each primary equipment item per plant is required.
- 21 1) Link up to the Central Plant page.
22 2) Link up to the Building page.
23 3) Link up to the Site Plan page.
24 4) Display:
- 25 a) Process variables.
26 b) Commands to end devices.
27 c) Status of end devices.
28 d) Alarm points.
29 e) Equipment status (enabled/disabled).
30 f) Demand control status.
- 31 5) Link to any time schedules that affect the operation of the equipment
32 component.
33 6) Link to any preconfigured trend charts associated with the performance of
34 the equipment component.
35 7) Link to a Central Plant Configuration page.
- 36 g. Central Plant Configuration Page: On this page, the operator is given access to the
37 configuration parameters for the entire plant of a piece of equipment in the plant.
38 Data shall be presented in a tabular format. The type of data on this page is not
39 changed frequently, but the operator may wish to view it frequently. One page per
40 plant for small plants and one page per primary equipment item per plant for larger
41 plants are required.
- 42 1) Setpoints.
43 2) Tuning parameters.
44 3) Calibration parameters.
45 4) Timing parameters.
46 5) Application parameters.



- 1 6) Reset schedules.
 2 7) Lead Lag information.
 3 8) Time Schedules.
 4 9) Link up to the Equipment of Central Plant page.
 5 10) Link up to the Building page.
- 6 h. Delivery System Page: A graphical representation of an air or water delivery
 7 system, such as an air handling unit, roof top air handling unit, computer room air
 8 conditioning unit. One page for each delivery system.
- 9 1) If the Delivery System serves a specific floor area, link up to the Floor Area
 10 page.
 11 2) Link up to the Building page.
 12 3) Link up to the Site Plan page.
 13 4) Link to the Central Plant page if the Delivery System is served by a Central
 14 Plant.
 15 5) If the Delivery System supplies multiple terminal devices, link to a Terminal
 16 Equipment Summary page.
 17 6) Link to a Delivery Systems Configuration page.
 18 7) The graphical representation of the equipment shall represent the true
 19 physical characteristics of the installed system.
 20 8) Display:
- 21 a) Process variables.
 22 b) Commands to end devices.
 23 c) Status of end devices.
 24 d) Status of different modes.
 25 e) Alarm points.
- 26 9) Link to any time schedules that affect the system operation.
 27 10) Link to any pre-configured trend charts for the system.
- 28 i. Delivery System Configuration Page: On this page, the operator is given access to
 29 the configuration parameters for the delivery system. Data shall be presented in a
 30 tabular format. The type of data on this page is not changed frequently but the
 31 operator may wish to view it frequently. One page per Delivery System is required.
- 32 1) Display:
- 33 a) Setpoints.
 34 b) Tuning parameters.
 35 c) Calibration parameters.
 36 d) Application parameters.
 37 e) Reset schedules.
 38 f) Lead /Lag information.
 39 g) Time schedules.
- 40 2) Link up to the Delivery System page.
 41 3) Link up to the Building page.
 42 4) Link up to the Site Plan page.
- 43 j. Terminal Equipment Summary Page: On this page, the dynamic data and setpoints
 44 that are associated with multiple terminal units shall be presented in tabular format.
 45 The objective is to present a summary of terminal unit performance for an area of
 46 the facility. One page is required for each group of terminal units. Multiple linked



- 1 pages may be used if there are a large number of terminals served by one delivery
2 system.
- 3 1) Display in the table:
- 4 a) Process variables.
5 b) Setpoints for each process.
6 c) Command to each end device.
7 d) Status of each end device.
8 e) Load factors such as terminal load for an air terminal unit.
- 9 2) Link to the page for each Terminal Unit.
10 3) Link up to the Delivery System page.
11 4) Link up to the Floor Plan page.
12 5) Link up to the Building page.
13 6) Link up to the Site Plan page.
- 14 k. Terminal Unit Page: A graphical representation of a terminal unit such as an air
15 terminal or fan coil terminal. One page for each terminal.
- 16 1) Link up to the Terminal Summary page.
17 2) Link up to the Floor Plan page.
18 3) Link up to the Building page.
19 4) Link up to the Site Plan page.
20 5) The graphical representation of the equipment shall represent that actual
21 installed terminal unit.
22 6) Display:
- 23 a) Process variables.
24 b) Setpoints for each process.
25 c) Command to each end device.
26 d) Status of each end device.
27 e) Modes (auto, heat, cool, etc.)
28 f) Capacity indicators (terminal load, %heat, %cool, etc.).
29 g) Reset schedules.
30 h) Occupancy commands and status.
31 i) Alarm points.
- 32 3. For all points on a graphic page that are subject to being under manual or test mode, the
33 display shall indicate when test mode or manual mode has been applied to the point.
34 4. Graphic Page Requirements:
- 35 a. The sequence of operations and points lists define the buildings and all of the
36 equipment items for which graphic pages shall be constructed as described above.
37 b. The Contractor shall develop similar additional graphic pages to be defined during
38 the construction period as follows:
- 39 1) Up to 5 additional pages per building.
40 2) Up to 20 additional global pages.

41 3.13 INSTALLATION OF WIRELESS ROUTERS FOR OPERATOR INTERFACE

- 42 A. Install wireless routers to achieve optimum performance and best possible coverage.



- 1 B. Mount wireless routers in a protected location that is within 60 inches of floor and easily
2 accessible by operators.
- 3 C. Connect wireless routers to field power supply and to UPS units if network controllers are
4 powered through UPS units.
- 5 D. Install wireless router with latest version of applicable software and configure wireless router
6 with WPA2 security and password protection. Create access password with not less than 12
7 characters consisting of letters and numbers and at least one special character. Document
8 password in operations and maintenance manuals for reference by operators.
- 9 E. Test and adjust wireless routers for proper operation with portable workstation and other
10 wireless devices intended for use by operators.

11 **3.14 ENCLOSURES INSTALLATION**

- 12 A. Install the following items in enclosures, to comply with indicated requirements:
- 13 1. Gateways.
14 2. Routers.
15 3. Controllers.
16 4. Electrical power devices.
17 5. UPS units.
18 6. Accessories.
- 19 B. Attach wall-mounted enclosures to wall using the following types of steel struts:
- 20 1. For NEMA 250, Type 1 Enclosures: Use galvanized-steel or corrosion-resistant-coated
21 steel strut and hardware.
22 2. For NEMA 250, Type 4 Enclosures and Enclosures Located Outdoors: Use stainless-
23 steel strut and hardware.
24 3. Install plastic caps on exposed cut edges of strut.
- 25 C. Align top of adjacent enclosures.
- 26 D. Install continuous and fully accessible wireways to connect conduit, wire, and cable to multiple
27 adjacent enclosures. Wireway used for application shall have protection equal to NEMA 250
28 rating of connected enclosures.

29 **3.15 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES INSTALLATION**

- 30 A. Install surge protective devices as close as practical to the electrical panel or dedicated
31 electronic equipment to be protected. The SPD shall be close-connected to the panel in a
32 position near the panel board neutral bus bar or positioned so that the overall lead length will be
33 minimal.
- 34 B. Install surge protection devices in a manner consistent with proper and acceptable industry
35 wiring practice. Install connection leads as short and straight as possible while avoiding sharp
36 bends. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and
37 ground.
- 38 C. Surge protective devices shall be installed at the following locations:



- 1 1. DDC panel communication interfaces.
- 2 2. VFD communication interfaces.
- 3 3. Exterior BAS hardwired terminations. Provide multiple SPDs to accommodate quantity of
- 4 hardwired terminations specified.
- 5 4. Control transformers.

6 **3.16 ELECTRIC POWER CONNECTIONS**

- 7 A. Connect electrical power to DDC system products requiring electrical power connections.
- 8 B. Design of electrical power to products not indicated with electric power is delegated to DDC
- 9 system provider and installing trade. Work shall comply with NFPA 70 and other requirements
- 10 indicated.
- 11 C. Comply with requirements in Section 26 28 16 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers" for
- 12 electrical power circuit breakers.
- 13 D. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and
- 14 Cables" for electrical power conductors and cables.
- 15 E. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for
- 16 electrical power raceways and boxes.

17 **3.17 IDENTIFICATION**

- 18 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements in
- 19 Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for identification products and
- 20 installation.
- 21 B. Install laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with unique identification on face for each of
- 22 the following:
 - 23 1. Operator workstation.
 - 24 2. Server.
 - 25 3. Printer.
 - 26 4. Gateway.
 - 27 5. Router.
 - 28 6. Protocol analyzer.
 - 29 7. DDC controller.
 - 30 8. Enclosure.
 - 31 9. Electrical power device.
 - 32 10. UPS unit.
 - 33 11. Accessory.
- 34 C. Install self-adhesive labels with unique instrument identification on face of each instrument
- 35 connected to a DDC controller.
- 36 D. Install self-adhesive labels with unique identification on face of each control damper and valve
- 37 actuator connected to a DDC controller.
- 38 E. Where product is installed above accessible tile ceiling, also install matching identification on
- 39 face of ceiling grid located directly below.



- 1 F. Where product is installed above an inaccessible ceiling, also install identification on face of
2 access door directly below.
- 3 G. Warning Labels and Signs:
- 4 1. Shall be permanently attached to equipment that can be automatically started by DDC
5 control system.
6 2. Shall be located in highly visible location near power service entry points.

7 **3.18 NETWORK INSTALLATION**

- 8 A. Install optical fiber cable when connecting between the following network devices and when
9 located in different buildings on campus, or when distance between devices exceeds **<Insert**
10 **distance>**:
- 11 1. Operator workstations.
12 2. Operator workstations and network controllers.
13 3. Network controllers.
- 14 B. Install balanced twisted pair or optical fiber cable when connecting between the following
15 network devices located in same building:
- 16 1. Operator workstations.
17 2. Operator workstations and network controllers.
18 3. Network controllers.
- 19 C. Install balanced twisted pair or copper cable (as required by equipment) when connecting
20 between the following:
- 21 1. Programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers.
22 2. Application-specific controllers.
- 23 D. Install cable in continuous raceway.
- 24 1. Where indicated on Drawings, cable trays may be used for copper cable in lieu of
25 conduit.

26 **3.19 NETWORK NAMING AND NUMBERING**

- 27 A. Coordinate with Owner and provide unique naming and addressing for networks and devices.
- 28 B. ASHRAE 135 Networks:
- 29 1. MAC Address:
- 30 a. Every network device shall have an assigned and documented MAC address
31 unique to its network.
32 b. Ethernet Networks: Document MAC address assigned at its creation.
33 c. ARCNET or MS/TP networks: Assign from 00 to 64.
- 34 2. Network Numbering:



- 1 a. Assign unique numbers to each new network.
 2 b. Provide ability for changing network number through device switches or operator
 3 interface.
 4 c. DDC system, with all possible connected LANs, can contain up to 65,534 unique
 5 networks.
- 6 3. Device Object Identifier Property Number:
- 7 a. Assign unique device object identifier property numbers or device instances for
 8 each device network.
 9 b. Provide for future modification of device instance number by device switches or
 10 operator interface.
 11 c. LAN shall support up to 4,194,302 unique devices.
- 12 4. Device Object Name Property Text:
- 13 a. Device object name property field shall support 32 minimum printable characters.
 14 b. Assign unique device "Object Name" property names with plain-English descriptive
 15 names for each device.
- 16 1) Example 1: Device object name for device controlling boiler plant at
 17 Building 1000 would be "HW System B1000."
 18 2) Example 2: Device object name for a VAV terminal unit controller could be
 19 "VAV unit 102".
- 20 5. Object Name Property Text for Other Than Device Objects:
- 21 a. Object name property field shall support 32 minimum printable characters.
 22 b. Assign object name properties with plain-English names descriptive of application.
- 23 1) Example 1: "Zone 1 Temperature."
 24 2) Example 2 "Fan Start and Stop."
- 25 6. Object Identifier Property Number for Other Than Device Objects:
- 26 a. Assign object identifier property numbers according to Drawings indicated.
 27 b. If not indicated, object identifier property numbers may be assigned at Installer's
 28 discretion but must be approved by Owner in advance, be documented and be
 29 unique for like object types within device.

30 **3.20 PIPING AND TUBING INSTALLATION**

- 31 A. Above-Grade Air Signal Piping and Tubing Installation:
- 32 1. Material Application:
- 33 a. Install copper tubing, except as follows:
- 34 1) Tubing Exposed to View: Polyethylene tubing installed in raceways may be
 35 used in lieu of copper tubing.
 36 2) Concealed Tubing: Polyethylene tubing may be used in lieu of copper tubing
 37 when concealed behind accessible ceilings.



- 1 b. Install copper tubing, unless other accessible materials are indicated, for air signals
2 to instruments including, but not limited to, the following:
- 3 1) Sensors.
4 2) Switches.
5 3) Transmitters.
- 6 c. Install drawn-temper copper tubing, except within 36 inches of device terminations
7 tubing shall be annealed-tempered copper tubing.
8 d. Install compression fittings to connect copper tubing to instruments, control devices,
9 and accessories.
10 e. Install barbed fittings to connect polyethylene tubing to instruments, control devices,
11 and accessories.
- 12 2. Routing:
- 13 a. Do not expose tubing in finished spaces, such as spaces with ceilings; occupied
14 spaces, offices, and conference rooms, unless expressly approved in writing by
15 Architect. Tubing may be exposed in areas without ceilings.
16 b. Where tubing is installed in finished occupied spaces, install the tubing in surface
17 metal raceway with appropriate fittings only where not feasible to conceal in wall,
18 above ceiling or behind architectural enclosures or covers.
19 c. Install piping and tubing plumb and parallel to and at right angles with building
20 construction.
21 d. Install multiple runs of tubing or piping in equally spaced parallel lines.
22 e. Piping and tubing shall not interfere with access to valves, equipment, duct and
23 equipment access doors, or obstruct personnel access and passageways of any
24 kind.
25 f. Coordinate with other trades before installation to prevent proposed piping and
26 tubing from interfering with pipe, duct, terminal equipment, light fixtures, conduit
27 and cable tray space. If changes to Shop Drawings are necessary due to field
28 coordination, document changes on record Drawings.
29 g. Install vibration loops in copper tubing when connecting to instrument and actuators
30 that vibrate.
- 31 3. Support:
- 32 a. According to MSS SP-69, Table 3, except support spacing shall not exceed 60
33 inches.
34 b. Support copper tubing with copper hangers, clips, and tube trays.
35 c. Do not use tape for support or dielectric isolation.
36 d. Install supports at each change in direction and at each branch take off.
37 e. Attached supports to building structure independent of work of other trades. Support
38 from ducts, pipes, cable trays, and conduits is prohibited.
39 f. Attached support from building structure with threaded rods, structural shapes, or
40 channel strut.
41 g. Install and brace supports to carry static load plus a safety margin, which will allow
42 tubing to be serviced.
43 h. Brace supports to prevent lateral movement.
44 i. Paint steel support members that are not galvanized or zinc coated.
45 j. Support polyethylene tubing same as copper tubing.
- 46 4. Do not attach piping and tubing to equipment that may be removed frequently for
47 maintenance or that may impart vibration and expansion from temperature change.



- 1 5. Protect exposed tubing in mechanical equipment rooms from mechanical damage within
2 84 inches above floor. Use aluminum channel reversed and secured over tubing to
3 protect tubing from damage.
- 4 6. Joining and Makeup:
- 5 a. Where joining and mating dissimilar metals where galvanic action could occur,
6 install dielectric isolation.
- 7 b. Make threaded joints for connecting to instrument equipment with connectors with a
8 compression tubing connector on one end and threaded connection on other end.
- 9 c. Make tubing bends with a tube-bending tool. Hard bends, wrinkled or flattened
10 bends are unacceptable.
- 11 d. Install tube fittings according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 12 e. Do not make tubing connections to a fitting before completing makeup of the
13 connection.
- 14 f. Align tubing with the fitting. Avoid springing tube into position, as this may result in
15 excessive stress on both tubing and fitting with possible resulting leaks.
- 16 g. Do not install fittings close to a bend. A length of straight tubing, not deformed by
17 bending, is required for a proper connection.
- 18 h. Check tubing for correct diameter and wall thickness.
- 19 i. Tube ends shall be cut square and deburred. Exercise care during cutting to keep
20 tubing round.
- 21 j. Thread pipe on a threading machine. Ream inner edges of pipe ends, file and grind
22 to remove burrs.
- 23 k. Wrap pipe threads of fittings on pneumatic lines with a single wrap of PTFE tape.
- 24 l. Protect piping and tubing from entrance of foreign matter.
- 25 7. Conduit in which nonmetallic tubing is installed shall not exceed 50 percent fill. Support
26 conduit according to NFPA 70 unless otherwise indicated.
- 27 B. Identify piping and tubing as follows:
- 28 1. Where exposed to and where concealed from view, including above ceiling plenums,
29 shafts, and chases.
- 30 2. Mark each instrument tube connection with a number-coded identification. Each unique
31 tube shall have same unique number at instrument connection and termination at
32 opposite end of tube.

33 **3.21 CONTROL WIRE, CABLE AND RACEWAYS INSTALLATION**

- 34 A. Comply with NECA 1.
- 35 B. Wire and Cable Installation:
- 36 1. Comply with installation requirements in Section 26 05 23 "Control-Voltage Electrical
37 Power Cables."
- 38 2. Comply with installation requirements in Section 27 13 13 "Communications Copper
39 Backbone Cabling."
- 40 3. Comply with installation requirements in Section 27 15 13 "Communications Copper
41 Horizontal Cabling."
- 42 4. Install cables with protective sheathing that is waterproof and capable of withstanding
43 continuous temperatures of 90 deg C with no measurable effect on physical and electrical
44 properties of cable.



- 1 a. Provide shielding to prevent interference and distortion from adjacent cables and
2 equipment.
- 3 5. Terminate wiring in a junction box.
- 4 a. Clamp cable over jacket in junction box.
5 b. Individual conductors in the stripped section of the cable shall be slack between the
6 clamping point and terminal block.
- 7 6. Terminate field wiring and cable not directly connected to instruments and control devices
8 having integral wiring terminals using terminal blocks.
- 9 7. Install signal transmission components according to IEEE C2, REA Form 511a, NFPA 70,
10 and as indicated.
- 11 8. Use shielded cable to transmitters.
12 9. Use shielded cable to temperature sensors.
13 10. Perform continuity and meager testing on wire and cable after installation.
- 14 C. Conduit Installation:
- 15 1. Comply with Section "260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for control-
16 voltage conductors.
- 17 2. Comply with Section 25 05 28 "Pathways for Control Systems" for balanced twisted pair
18 cabling and optical fiber installation.
- 19 **3.22 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE SYSTEM INSTALLATION**
- 20 A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 27 13 23 "Communications Optical Fiber
21 Backbone Cabling."
- 22 B. Comply with installation requirements in Section 27 15 23 "Communications Optical Fiber
23 Horizontal Cabling."
- 24 **3.23 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**
- 25 A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- 26 B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
- 27 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA
28 Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- 29 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
30 equipment.
- 31 3. Testing of Air-Signal Tubing:
- 32 a. Test for leaks and obstructions.
33 b. Disconnect each pipe and tubing line before a test is performed, and blowout dust,
34 dirt, trash, condensate and other foreign materials with compressed air. Use
35 commercially pure compressed air or nitrogen as distributed in gas cylinders. Air
36 from an oil-free compressor with an air dryer is an acceptable alternative for the
37 test.
38 c. After foreign matter is expelled and line is free from obstructions, plug far end of
39 tubing run.



- 1 d. Connect a pressure source to near end of run with a needle valve between air
2 supply and tubing run.
- 3 e. Connect a pressure gage accurate to within 0.5 percent of test between the shutoff
4 needle valve and tubing run under test.
- 5 f. For system pressures above 30 psig, apply a pressure of 1.5 times operating
6 pressure. Record pressure in tubing run every 10 minutes for one hour. Allowable
7 drop in pressure in one-hour period shall not exceed 1 psig.
- 8 g. For system pressures 30 psig and below, apply a pressure of 2.0 times operating
9 pressure to piping and tubing run. Record pressure in tubing run every 5 minutes
10 for one hour. Allowable drop in pressure in one-hour period shall not exceed 0.5
11 psig.

12 C. Testing:

- 13 1. Perform preinstallation, in-progress, and final tests, supplemented by additional tests, as
14 necessary.
- 15 2. Preinstallation Cable Verification: Verify integrity and serviceability for new cable lengths
16 before installation. This assurance may be provided by using vendor verification
17 documents, testing, or other methods. As a minimum, furnish evidence of verification for
18 cable attenuation and bandwidth parameters.
- 19 3. In-Progress Testing: Perform standard tests for correct pair identification and termination
20 during installation to ensure proper installation and cable placement. Perform tests in
21 addition to those specified if there is any reason to question condition of material
22 furnished and installed. Testing accomplished is to be documented by agency conducting
23 tests. Submit test results for Project record.
- 24 4. Final Testing: Perform final test of installed system to demonstrate acceptability as
25 installed. Testing shall be performed according to a test plan supplied by DDC system
26 manufacturer. Defective Work or material shall be corrected and retested. As a minimum,
27 final testing for cable system, including spare cable, shall verify conformance of
28 attenuation, length, and bandwidth parameters with performance indicated.
- 29 5. Test Equipment: Use an optical fiber time domain reflectometer for testing of length and
30 optical connectivity.
- 31 6. Test Results: Record test results and submit copy of test results for Project record.

32 **3.24 DDC SYSTEM I/O CHECKOUT PROCEDURES**

- 33 A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests and calibration.
- 34 B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- 35 C. Check instruments for proper installation on direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion
36 depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
- 37 D. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material and
38 support.
- 39 E. Control Damper Checkout:
- 40 1. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
- 41 2. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
- 42 3. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
- 43 4. Verify that damper actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
- 44 5. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.



- 1 6. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed.
- 2 F. Control Valve Checkout:
- 3 1. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
- 4 2. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
- 5 3. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
- 6 4. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.
- 7 5. Verify that valve ball, disc or plug travel is unobstructed.
- 8 6. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and
- 9 balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace
- 10 the valve if leaks persist.
- 11 G. Instrument Checkout:
- 12 1. Verify that instrument is correctly installed for location, orientation, direction and operating
- 13 clearances.
- 14 2. Verify that attachment is properly secured and sealed.
- 15 3. Verify that conduit connections are properly secured and sealed.
- 16 4. Verify that wiring is properly labeled with unique identification, correct type and size and
- 17 is securely attached to proper terminals.
- 18 5. Inspect instrument tag against approved submittal.
- 19 6. For instruments with tubing connections, verify that tubing attachment is secure and
- 20 isolation valves have been provided.
- 21 7. For flow instruments, verify that recommended upstream and downstream distances
- 22 have been maintained.
- 23 8. For temperature instruments:
- 24 a. Verify sensing element type and proper material.
- 25 b. Verify length and insertion.
- 26 **3.25 DDC SYSTEM I/O ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION AND TESTING:**
- 27 A. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration
- 28 documentation.
- 29 B. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each
- 30 type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- 31 C. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and
- 32 accuracy.
- 33 D. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall comply with instrument manufacturer's
- 34 written instructions.
- 35 E. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
- 36 F. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall have
- 37 accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. An installed instrument with an
- 38 accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
- 39 G. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.



- 1 H. If after calibration indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance
2 instruments.
- 3 I. Comply with field testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE's Guideline 11,
4 "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific requirements, and to
5 supplement requirements indicated.
- 6 J. Analog Signals:
- 7 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100
8 percent.
9 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100
10 percent.
11 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of
12 operating span using a precision-resistant source.
- 13 K. Digital Signals:
- 14 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
15 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
- 16 L. Control Dampers:
- 17 1. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure,
18 from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
19 2. Stroke control dampers with pilot positioners. Adjust damper and positioner following
20 manufacturer's recommended procedure, so damper is 100 percent closed, 50 percent
21 closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressure.
22 3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less
23 than 30 seconds.
24 4. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at
25 multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.
- 26 M. Control Valves:
- 27 1. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from
28 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
29 2. Stroke control valves with pilot positioners. Adjust valve and positioner following
30 manufacturer's recommended procedure, so valve is 100 percent closed, 50 percent
31 closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressures.
32 3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less
33 than 30 seconds.
34 4. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at
35 multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.
- 36 N. Meters: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- 37 O. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- 38 P. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.
- 39 Q. Transmitters:
- 40 1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.



- 1 2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using
2 a precision-resistant source.

3 **3.26 DDC SYSTEM CONTROLLER CHECKOUT**

- 4 A. Verify power supply.

- 5 1. Verify voltage, phase and hertz.
6 2. Verify that protection from power surges is installed and functioning.
7 3. Verify that ground fault protection is installed.
8 4. If applicable, verify if connected to UPS unit.
9 5. If applicable, verify if connected to a backup power source.
10 6. If applicable, verify that power conditioning units, transient voltage suppression and high-
11 frequency noise filter units are installed.

- 12 B. Verify that wire and cabling is properly secured to terminals and labeled with unique
13 identification.

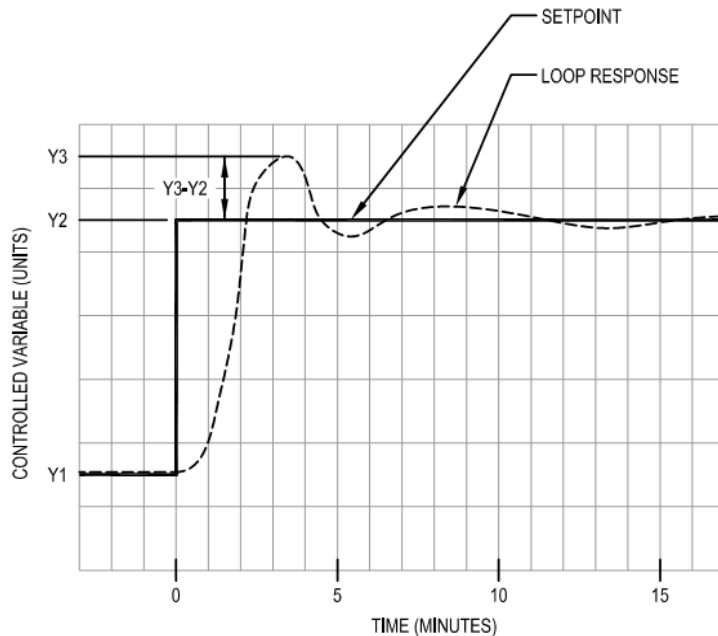
- 14 C. Verify that spare I/O capacity is provided.

15 **3.27 DDC CONTROLLER I/O CONTROL LOOP TESTS**

- 16 A. Testing:

- 17 1. Test every I/O point connected to DDC controller to verify that safety and operating
18 control set points are as indicated and as required to operate controlled system safely
19 and at optimum performance.
20 2. Test every I/O point throughout its full operating range.
21 3. Test every control loop to verify operation is stable and accurate.
22 4. Adjust control loop proportional, integral and derivative settings to achieve optimum
23 performance while complying with performance requirements indicated. Document
24 testing of each control loop's precision and stability via trend logs.
25 5. Test and adjust every control loop for proper operation according to sequence of
26 operation. Simulate and observe each operational mode by overriding and varying inputs
27 and schedules.

- 28 a. Adjust PI or PID actions using either Ziegler-Nichols methods (either ultimate
29 oscillation or first-order-plus-dead-time) or trial and error.
30 b. Each proportional, integral, and derivative gain shall utilize a linear reset based on
31 error from set point. Contractor shall determine the maximum and minimum range
32 for each gain to achieve specified performance. Model-free adaptive control loops
33 and self-learning control loops shall not be used.
34 c. Begin with measured value at setpoint (Y1). Adjust set point or manual output of
35 controller to create a step change (Y2-Y1). PI control loops shall exceed no more
36 than a 25% maximum overshoot in a step response $[(Y3-Y2)/(Y2-Y1)] \leq 0.25$



- 1
 - 2
 - 3
 - 4
 - 5
 - 6
 - 7
 - 8
 - 9
 - 10
 - 11
 - 12
 - 13
 - 14
 - 15
 - 16
 - 17
 - 18
 - 19
 - 20
 - 21
 - 22
 - 23
- d. Initial response, including overshoot and dampening shall occur within approximately 5-7 minutes from step change. Measured value shall achieve set point within approximately 15-17 minutes from step change.
 - e. Supply graphical trend data output to Engineer showing each DDC loop's response to a set point change representing an end device change of at least 25% of full range.
 - 1) Trend sampling rate shall be from 10 seconds to 1 minute, depending on loop speed.
 - 2) Each sample's trend data shall show values for set point, end device response, and controlled variable.
 - 6. Test software and hardware interlocks for proper operation. Correct deficiencies.
 - 7. Operate each analog point at the following:
 - a. Upper quarter of range.
 - b. Lower quarter of range.
 - c. At midpoint of range.
 - 8. Exercise each binary point.
 - 9. For every I/O point in DDC system, read and record each value at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument simultaneously. Value displayed at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument shall match.
 - 10. Prepare and submit a report documenting results for each I/O point in DDC system and include in each I/O point a description of corrective measures and adjustments made to achieve desired results.

24 **3.28 DDC SYSTEM VALIDATION TESTS**

- 25 A. Perform validation tests before requesting final review of system. Before beginning testing, first
- 26 submit Pretest Checklist and Test Plan.



- 1 B. After approval of Test Plan, execute all tests and procedures indicated in plan.
- 2 C. After testing is complete, submit completed test checklist.
- 3 D. Pretest Checklist: Submit the following list with items checked off once verified:
- 4 1. Detailed explanation for any items that are not completed or verified.
 - 5 2. Required mechanical installation work is successfully completed and HVAC equipment is
 - 6 working correctly.
 - 7 3. HVAC equipment motors operate below full-load amperage ratings.
 - 8 4. Required DDC system components, wiring, and accessories are installed.
 - 9 5. Installed DDC system architecture matches approved Drawings.
 - 10 6. Control electric power circuits operate at proper voltage and are free from faults.
 - 11 7. Required surge protection is installed.
 - 12 8. DDC system network communications function properly, including uploading and
 - 13 downloading programming changes.
 - 14 9. Using BACnet protocol analyzer, verify that communications are error free.
 - 15 10. Each controller's programming is backed up.
 - 16 11. Equipment, products, tubing, wiring cable and conduits are properly labeled.
 - 17 12. All I/O points are programmed into controllers.
 - 18 13. Testing, adjusting and balancing work affecting controls is complete.
 - 19 14. Dampers and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
 - 20 15. Each control damper and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
 - 21 16. Valves and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
 - 22 17. Each control valve and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
 - 23 18. Meter, sensor and transmitter readings are accurate and calibrated.
 - 24 19. Control loops are tuned for smooth and stable operation.
 - 25 20. View trend data where applicable.
 - 26 21. Each controller works properly in standalone mode.
 - 27 22. Safety controls and devices function properly.
 - 28 23. Interfaces with fire-alarm system function properly.
 - 29 24. Electrical interlocks function properly.
 - 30 25. Operator workstations and other interfaces are delivered, all system and database
 - 31 software is installed, and graphic are created.
 - 32 26. Record Drawings are completed.
- 33 E. Test Plan:
- 34 1. Prepare and submit a validation test plan including test procedures for performance
 - 35 validation tests.
 - 36 2. Test plan shall address all specified functions of DDC system and sequences of
 - 37 operation.
 - 38 3. Explain detailed actions and expected results to demonstrate compliance with
 - 39 requirements indicated.
 - 40 4. Explain method for simulating necessary conditions of operation used to demonstrate
 - 41 performance.
 - 42 5. Include a test checklist to be used to check and initial that each test has been
 - 43 successfully completed.
 - 44 6. Submit test plan documentation 20 business days before start of tests.
- 45 F. Validation Test:
- 46 1. Verify operating performance of each I/O point in DDC system.
 - 47 a. Verify analog I/O points at operating value.



- 1 b. Make adjustments to out-of-tolerance I/O points.
- 2 1) Identify I/O points for future reference.
- 3 2) Simulate abnormal conditions to demonstrate proper function of safety
- 4 devices.
- 5 3) Replace instruments and controllers that cannot maintain performance
- 6 indicated after adjustments.
- 7 2. Simulate conditions to demonstrate proper sequence of control.
- 8 3. Readjust settings to design values and observe ability of DDC system to establish
- 9 desired conditions.
- 10 4. After 24 Hours following Initial Validation Test:
- 11 a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during initial test.
- 12 b. Identify I/O points that still require additional correction and make corrections
- 13 necessary to achieve desired results.
- 14 5. After 24 Hours of Second Validation Test:
- 15 a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during second test.
- 16 b. Continue validation testing until I/O point is normal on two consecutive tests.
- 17 6. Completely check out, calibrate, and test all connected hardware and software to ensure
- 18 that DDC system performs according to requirements indicated.
- 19 7. After validation testing is complete, prepare and submit a report indicating all I/O points
- 20 that required correction and how many validation re-tests it took to pass. Identify
- 21 adjustments made for each test and indicate instruments that were replaced.
- 22 G. DDC System Network Bandwidth Test:
- 23 1. Test network bandwidth usage on all DDC system networks to demonstrate bandwidth
- 24 usage under DDC system normal operating conditions and under simulated HLC.
- 25 2. To pass, none of DDC system networks shall use more than 70 percent of available
- 26 bandwidth under normal and HLC operation.

27 3.29 **DDC SYSTEM WIRELESS NETWORK VERIFICATION**

- 28 A. DDC system Installer shall design wireless DDC system networks to comply with performance
- 29 requirements indicated.
- 30 B. Installer shall verify wireless network performance through field testing and shall document
- 31 results in a field test report.
- 32 C. Testing and verification of all wireless devices shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
- 33 1. Speed.
- 34 2. Online status.
- 35 3. Signal strength.



1 **3.30 FINAL REVIEW**

- 2 A. Submit written request to Engineer and Construction Manager when DDC system is ready for
3 final review. Written request shall state the following:
- 4 1. DDC system has been thoroughly inspected for compliance with contract documents and
5 found to be in full compliance.
- 6 2. DDC system has been calibrated, adjusted and tested and found to comply with
7 requirements of operational stability, accuracy, speed and other performance
8 requirements indicated.
- 9 3. DDC system monitoring and control of HVAC systems results in operation according to
10 sequences of operation indicated.
- 11 4. DDC system is complete and ready for final review.
- 12 B. Review by Engineer and Construction Manager shall be made after receipt of written request. A
13 field report shall be issued to document observations and deficiencies.
- 14 C. Take prompt action to remedy deficiencies indicated in field report and submit a second written
15 request when all deficiencies have been corrected. Repeat process until no deficiencies are
16 reported.
- 17 D. Should additional reviews be required due to a specific start-up or checkout test item, reported
18 to have been successfully completed, but determined during review to be faulty, Construction
19 Manager shall compensate entity performing review for total costs, labor and expenses,
20 associated with subsequent reviews. Estimated cost of each review shall be submitted and
21 approved by DDC system manufacturer and Installer before making the review. Construction
22 Manager shall be responsible for any cost recovery for retesting costs from the party
23 responsible for executing the faulty start-up or checkout test item.
- 24 E. Prepare and submit closeout submittals when no deficiencies are reported.
- 25 F. A part of DDC system final review shall include a demonstration to parties participating in final
26 review.
- 27 1. Provide staff familiar with DDC system installed to demonstrate operation of DDC system
28 during final review.
- 29 2. Provide testing equipment to demonstrate accuracy and other performance requirements
30 of DDC system that is requested by reviewers during final review.
- 31 3. Demonstration shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
- 32 a. Accuracy and calibration of 20 I/O points randomly selected by reviewers. If review
33 finds that some I/O points are not properly calibrated and not satisfying
34 performance requirements indicated, additional I/O points may be selected by
35 reviewers until total I/O points being reviewed that satisfy requirements equals
36 quantity indicated.
- 37 b. Controlled equipment and system hardwired and software safeties and life-safety
38 functions are operating according to sequence of operation. Up to 20 I/O points
39 shall be randomly selected by reviewers. Additional I/O points may be selected by
40 reviewers to discover problems with operation.
- 41 c. Correct sequence of operation after electrical power interruption and resumption
42 after electrical power is restored for randomly selected HVAC systems.
- 43 d. Operation of randomly selected dampers and valves in normal-on, normal-off and
44 failed positions.



- 1 e. Reporting of alarm conditions for randomly selected alarms, including different
2 classes of alarms, to ensure that alarms are properly received by operators and
3 operator workstations.
- 4 f. Trends, summaries, logs and reports set-up for Project.
- 5 g. For HVAC systems randomly selected by reviewers, use graph trends to show that
6 sequence of operation is executed in correct manner and that HVAC systems
7 operate properly through complete sequence of operation including different
8 modes of operations indicated.
- 9 h. Graphical trend data showing each DDC loop's response to a set point change
10 representing an end device change of at least 25% of full range, as outlined in
11 "DDC Controller I/O Control Loop Tests" Article.
- 12 i. Software's ability to communicate with controllers, operator workstations, uploading
13 and downloading of control programs.
- 14 j. Software's ability to edit control programs off-line.
- 15 k. Data entry to show Project-specific customizing capability including parameter
16 changes.
- 17 l. Step through penetration tree, display all graphics, demonstrate dynamic update,
18 and direct access to graphics.
- 19 m. Execution of digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
- 20 n. Spreadsheet and curve plot software and its integration with database.
- 21 o. Online user guide and help functions.
- 22 p. Multitasking by showing different operations occurring simultaneously on four
23 quadrants of split screen.
- 24 q. System speed of response compared to requirements indicated.
- 25 r. For Each Network and Programmable Application Controller:
- 26 1) Memory: Programmed data, parameters, trend and alarm history collected
27 during normal operation is not lost during power failure.
- 28 2) Operator Interface: Ability to connect directly to each type of digital controller
29 with a portable workstation and mobile device. Show that maintenance
30 personnel interface tools perform as indicated in manufacturer's technical
31 literature.
- 32 3) Standalone Ability: Demonstrate that controllers provide stable and reliable
33 standalone operation using default values or other method for values
34 normally read over network.
- 35 4) Electric Power: Ability to disconnect any controller safely from its power
36 source.
- 37 5) Wiring Labels: Match control drawings.
- 38 6) Network Communication: Ability to locate a controller's location on network
39 and communication architecture matches Shop Drawings.
- 40 7) Nameplates and Tags: Accurate and permanently attached to control panel
41 doors, instrument, actuators and devices.
- 42 s. For Each Operator Workstation:
- 43 1) I/O points lists agree with naming conventions.
- 44 2) Graphics are complete.
- 45 3) UPS unit, if applicable, operates.
- 46 t. Communications and Interoperability: Demonstrate proper interoperability of data
47 sharing, alarm and event management, trending, scheduling, and device and
48 network management. Use ASHRAE 135 protocol analyzer to help identify
49 devices, view network traffic, and verify interoperability for BACnet systems.
50 Requirements must be met even if only one manufacturer's equipment is installed.



- 1) Data Presentation: On each operator workstation, demonstrate graphic display capabilities.
- 2) Reading of Any Property: Demonstrate ability to read and display any used readable object property of any device on network.
- 3) Set Point and Parameter Modifications: Show ability to modify set points and tuning parameters indicated. Modifications are made with messages and write services initiated by an operator using workstation graphics, or by completing a field in a menu with instructional text.
- 4) Peer-to-Peer Data Exchange: Network devices are installed and configured to perform without need for operator intervention to implement Project sequence of operation and to share global data.
- 5) Alarm and Event Management: Alarms and events are installed and prioritized according to Owner. Demonstrate that time delays and other logic are set up to avoid nuisance tripping. Show that operators with sufficient privileges are permitted.
- 6) Schedule Lists: Schedules are configured for start and stop, mode change, occupant overrides, and night setback as defined in sequence of operations.
- 7) Schedule Display and Modification: Ability to display any schedule with start and stop times for calendar year. Show that all calendar entries and schedules are modifiable from any connected operator workstation by an operator with sufficient privilege.
- 8) Archival Storage of Data: Data archiving is handled by operator workstation and server and local trend archiving and display is accomplished.
- 9) Modification of Trend Log Object Parameters: Operator with sufficient privilege can change logged data points, sampling rate, and trend duration.
- 10) Device and Network Management:
- a) Display of network device status.
 - b) Display of BACnet Object Information.
 - c) Silencing devices transmitting erroneous data.
 - d) Time synchronization.
 - e) Remote device re-initialization.
 - f) Backup and restore network device programming and master database(s).
 - g) Configuration management of routers.

3.31 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.32 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by DDC system manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, cleaning, calibration and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.



1 **3.33 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT**

- 2 A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include
3 software support for one year(s).
- 4 B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and
5 program software upgrades that become available within one year(s) from date of Substantial
6 Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for
7 using software.
- 8 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access system and to
9 upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

10 **3.34 DEMONSTRATION**

- 11 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative with complete knowledge of Project-specific
12 system installed to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain DDC
13 system.
- 14 B. Extent of Training:
- 15 1. Base extent of training on scope and complexity of DDC system indicated and training
16 requirements indicated. Provide extent of training required to satisfy requirements
17 indicated even if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
- 18 2. Inform Owner of anticipated training requirements if more than minimum training
19 requirements are indicated.
- 20 3. Minimum Training Requirements:
- 21 a. Provide not less than two days of training total.
- 22 b. Stagger training over multiple training classes to accommodate Owner's
23 requirements. All training shall occur before end of warranty period.
- 24 c. Total days of training shall be broken into not more than four separate training
25 classes.
- 26 C. Training Schedule:
- 27 1. Schedule training to provide Owner with at least 20 business days of notice in advance of
28 training.
- 29 2. Training shall occur within normal business hours at a mutually agreed on time. Unless
30 otherwise agreed to, training shall occur Monday through Friday, except on U.S. Federal
31 holidays, with two morning sessions and two afternoon sessions.
- 32 3. Provide staggered training schedule as requested by Owner.
- 33 D. Training Attendee List and Sign-in Sheet:
- 34 1. Request from Owner in advance of training a proposed attendee list with name, phone
35 number and e-mail address.
- 36 2. Provide a preprinted sign-in sheet for each training session with proposed attendees
37 listed and no fewer than six blank spaces to add additional attendees.
- 38 3. Preprinted sign-in sheet shall include training session number, date and time, instructor
39 name, phone number and e-mail address, and brief description of content to be covered
40 during session. List attendees with columns for name, phone number, e-mail address and
41 a column for attendee signature or initials.



- 1 4. Circulate sign-in sheet at beginning of each session and solicit attendees to sign or initial
2 in applicable location.
- 3 5. At end of each training day, send Owner an e-mail with an attachment of scanned copy
4 (PDF) of circulated sign-in sheet for each session.
- 5 E. Attendee Training Manuals:
- 6 1. Provide each attendee with a color hard copy of all training materials and visual
7 presentations.
- 8 2. Hard-copy materials shall be organized in a three-ring binder with table of contents and
9 individual divider tabs marked for each logical grouping of subject matter. Organize
10 material to provide space for attendees to take handwritten notes within training manuals.
- 11 3. In addition to hard-copy materials included in training manual, provide each binder with a
12 sleeve or pocket that includes a DVD or flash drive with PDF copy of all hard-copy
13 materials.
- 14 F. Organization of Training Sessions:
- 15 1. Organize training sessions into logical groupings of technical content and to reflect
16 different levels of operators having access to system.
- 17 2. Plan and organize training sessions to group training content to protect DDC system
18 security. Some attendees may be restricted to some training sessions that cover
19 restricted content for purposes of maintaining DDC system security.
- 20 G. Training Outline:
- 21 1. Submit training outline for Owner review at least 20 business days before scheduling
22 training.
- 23 2. Outline shall include a detailed agenda for each training day that is broken down into
24 each of four training sessions that day, training objectives for each training session and
25 synopses for each lesson planned.
- 26 H. On-Site Training:
- 27 1. Instructor shall provide training materials, projector and other audiovisual equipment used
28 in training.
- 29 2. Provide as much of training located on-site as deemed feasible and practical by Owner.
- 30 3. On-site training shall include regular walk-through tours, as required, to observe each
31 unique product type installed with hands-on review of operation, calibration and service
32 requirements.
- 33 4. Operator workstation provided with DDC system shall be used in training. If operator
34 workstation is not indicated, provide a temporary workstation to convey training content.
- 35 I. Off-Site Training:
- 36 1. Provide conditioned training rooms and workspace with ample tables desks or tables,
37 chairs, power and data connectivity for each attendee.
- 38 2. Provide capability to remotely access to Project DDC system for use in training.
- 39 3. Provide a workstation for use by each attendee.
- 40 J. Training Content for Daily Operators:
- 41 1. Basic System Understanding



- 1 a. Basic operation of system.
- 2 b. Understanding DDC system architecture and configuration.
- 3 c. Understanding each unique product type installed including performance and
4 service requirements for each.
- 5 d. Understanding operation of each system and equipment controlled by DDC system
6 including sequences of operation, each unique control algorithm and each unique
7 optimization routine.
- 8 e. Operating operator workstations, printers and other peripherals.
- 9 f. Logging on and off system.
- 10 g. Accessing graphics, reports and alarms.
- 11 h. Adjusting and changing set points and time schedules.
- 12 i. Recognizing DDC system malfunctions.
- 13 j. Understanding content of operation and maintenance manuals including control
14 drawings.
- 15 k. Understanding physical location and placement of DDC controllers and I/O
16 hardware.
- 17 l. Accessing data from DDC controllers.
- 18 m. Operating portable operator workstations.
- 19 n. Review of DDC testing results to establish basic understanding of DDC system
20 operating performance and HVAC system limitations as of Substantial Completion.
- 21 o. Running each specified report and log.
- 22 p. Displaying and demonstrating each data entry to show Project-specific customizing
23 capability. Demonstrating parameter changes.
- 24 q. Stepping through graphics penetration tree, displaying all graphics, demonstrating
25 dynamic updating, and direct access to graphics.
- 26 r. Executing digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
- 27 s. Demonstrating control loop precision and stability via trend logs of I/O for not less
28 than 10 percent of I/O installed.
- 29 t. Demonstrating DDC system performance through trend logs and command tracing.
- 30 u. Demonstrating scan, update, and alarm responsiveness.
- 31 v. Demonstrating spreadsheet and curve plot software, and its integration with
32 database.
- 33 w. Demonstrating on-line user guide, and help function and mail facility.
- 34 x. Demonstrating multitasking by showing dynamic curve plot, and graphic
35 construction operating simultaneously via split screen.
- 36 2. Operations:
- 37 a. All equipment and/or system start-up procedures.
- 38 b. All equipment and/or systems shut-down procedures.
- 39 c. Routine and normal operating sequences for all systems.
- 40 d. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- 41 e. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
- 42 f. Demonstrating the following for systems and equipment controlled by DDC system:
- 43 1) Operation of HVAC equipment in normal-off, -on and failed conditions while
44 observing individual equipment, dampers and valves for correct position
45 under each condition.
- 46 2) For equipment with factory-installed software, show that integration into
47 DDC system is able to communicate with DDC controllers or gateways, as
48 applicable.
- 49 3) Using graphed trends, show that sequence of operation is executed in
50 correct manner, and HVAC systems operate properly through complete
51 sequence of operation including seasonal change, occupied and



- 1 unoccupied modes, warm-up and cool-down cycles and other modes of
 2 operation indicated.
- 3 4) Hardware interlocks and safeties function properly and DDC system
 4 performs correct sequence of operation after electrical power interruption
 5 and resumption after power is restored.
- 6 5) Reporting of alarm conditions for each alarm, and confirm that alarms are
 7 received at assigned locations, including operator workstations.
- 8 6) Each control loop responds to set point adjustment and stabilizes within time
 9 period indicated.
- 10 7) Sharing of previously graphed trends of all control loops to demonstrate that
 11 each control loop is stable and set points are being maintained.
- 12 3. Emergencies:
- 13 a. Instructions on meanings of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
 14 b. Instructions on stopping, manual overrides, and BAS override procedures.
 15 c. Safety device procedures and actions.
 16 d. Operating procedures for system, sub-system, or equipment failures.
 17 e. Shut-down instructions for each type of emergency.
 18 f. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal limits.
 19 g. Special operating instructions and procedures.
 20 h. Adjustments:
- 21 1) Proper adjustment procedures and points intended to be adjusted.
 22 2) Economy and efficiency adjustments.
 23 3) Adjustments for efficient energy use.
- 24 4. Troubleshooting:
- 25 a. Diagnostic instruction procedures for each typical system installed.
 26 b. Test and inspection procedures for each typical system installed.
 27 c. Maintenance.
 28 d. Inspection procedures.
 29 e. Procedures for preventative maintenance.
 30 f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
- 31 K. Training Content for Advanced Operators:
- 32 1. Making and changing workstation graphics.
 33 2. Creating, deleting and modifying alarms including annunciation and routing.
 34 3. Creating, deleting and modifying point trend logs including graphing and printing on an
 35 ad-hoc basis and operator-defined time intervals.
 36 4. Creating, deleting and modifying reports.
 37 5. Creating, deleting and modifying points.
 38 6. Creating, deleting and modifying programming including ability to edit control programs
 39 off-line.
 40 7. Creating, deleting and modifying system graphics and other types of displays.
 41 8. Adding DDC controllers and other network communication devices such as gateways and
 42 routers.
 43 9. Adding operator workstations.
 44 10. Performing DDC system checkout and diagnostic procedures.
 45 11. Performing DDC controllers operation and maintenance procedures.
 46 12. Performing operator workstation operation and maintenance procedures.
 47 13. Configuring DDC system hardware including controllers, workstations, communication
 48 devices and I/O points.



- 1 14. Maintaining, calibrating, troubleshooting, diagnosing and repairing hardware.
2 15. Adjusting, calibrating and replacing DDC system components.
- 3 L. Training Content for System Managers and Administrators:
- 4 1. DDC system software maintenance and backups.
5 2. Uploading, downloading and off-line archiving of all DDC system software and
6 databases.
7 3. Interface with Project-specific, third-party operator software.
8 4. Understanding password and security procedures.
9 5. Adding new operators and making modifications to existing operators.
10 6. Operator password assignments and modification.
11 7. Operator authority assignment and modification.
12 8. Workstation data segregation and modification.
- 13 M. Video of Training Sessions:
- 14 1. Provide a digital video and audio recording of each training session. Create a separate
15 recording file for each session.
16 2. Stamp each recording file with training session number, session name and date.
17 3. Provide Owner with two copies of digital files on DVDs or flash drives for later reference
18 and for use in future training.
19 4. Owner retains right to make additional copies for intended training purposes without
20 having to pay royalties.
- 21 **END OF SECTION 25 09 23**
22



1 THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 25 09 23.11 - CONTROL VALVES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes control valves and actuators.

8 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 9 A. Cv: Design valve coefficient.
10 B. DDC: Direct-digital control.
11 C. NBR: Nitrile butadiene rubber.
12 D. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene
13 E. RMS: Root-mean-square value of alternating voltage, which is the square root of the mean value
14 of the square of the voltage values during a complete cycle.

15 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 16 A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:
17 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and
18 profiles, and finishes.
19 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating
20 process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control
21 signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical
22 power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including
23 temperature and humidity.
24 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product
25 specification sheets.
26 4. Installation, operation, and maintenance instructions, including factors affecting
27 performance.
28 B. Delegated-Design Submittal:
29 1. Schedule and design calculations for control valves and actuators, including the following:
30 a. Flow at project design and minimum flow conditions.
31 b. Pressure differential drop across valve at project design flow condition.



- 1 c. Design and minimum control valve coefficient with corresponding valve position.
- 2 d. Maximum close-off pressure.
- 3 e. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.

4 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 5 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For control valves to include in operation and maintenance
- 6 manuals.

7 **1.6 WARRANTY**

- 8 A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer warrants all control valves and actuators free from
- 9 defects within specified warranty period

- 10 1. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from Substantial Completion, with the first two years
- 11 unconditional.

12 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

13 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 14 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by
- 15 a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- 16 B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label products to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure
- 17 Vessel Code where required by authorities having jurisdiction.

- 18 C. Ground Fault: Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition when suitably grounded.

- 19 D. Backup Power Source: Systems and equipment served by a backup power source shall have
- 20 associated control valve actuators served from a backup power source.

- 21 E. Environmental Conditions:

- 22 1. Provide electric control valve actuators, with protective enclosures satisfying the following
- 23 minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Electric control
- 24 valve actuators not available with integral enclosures, complying with requirements
- 25 indicated, shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures.

- 26 a. Hazardous Locations: Explosion-proof rating for condition.

- 27 F. Determine control valve sizes and flow coefficients by ISA 75.01.01.

- 28 G. Control valve characteristics and rangeability shall comply with ISA 75.11.01.

- 29 H. Selection Criteria:

- 30 1. Control valves shall be suitable for operation at following conditions:

- 31 a. Chilled Water: 150 psig at 200 deg F.



- 1 2. Control valve shutoff classifications shall be FCI 70-2, Class IV or better unless otherwise
2 indicated.
- 3 3. Valve pattern, three-way or straight through, shall be as indicated on Drawings.
- 4 4. Modulating straight-through pattern control valves shall have equal percentage flow-
5 throttling characteristics unless otherwise indicated.
- 6 5. Modulating three-way pattern water valves shall have linear flow-throttling characteristics.
7 The total flow through the valve shall remain constant regardless of the valve's position.
- 8 6. Modulating butterfly valves shall have linear or equal percentage flow-throttling
9 characteristics.
- 10 7. Fail positions unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings:
- 11 a. Chilled Water: Last position.
- 12 8. Globe-type control valves shall pass the design flow required with not more than 95 percent
13 of stem lift unless otherwise indicated.
- 14 9. Rotary-type control valves, such as ball and butterfly valves, shall have Cv falling between
15 65 and 75 degrees of valve full open position and minimum valve Cv between 15 and 25
16 percent of open position.
- 17 10. Selection shall consider viscosity, flashing, and cavitation corrections.
- 18 11. Valves shall have stable operation throughout full range of operation, from design to
19 minimum Cv.
- 20 12. In water systems, select modulating control valves at terminal equipment for a design Cv
21 based on a pressure drop of 5 psig 4 psig at design flow unless otherwise indicated.
- 22 13. Two-position control valves shall be line size unless otherwise indicated.
- 23 14. In water systems, use ball- style control valves for two-position control for valves NPS 2
24 and smaller and butterfly style for valves larger than NPS 2.

25 2.2 **BALL-STYLE CONTROL VALVES**

- 26 A. Two-Way Ball Valves with Characterized Disk:
- 27 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the
28 following:
- 29 a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
- 30 2. Pressure Rating for NPS 1 and Smaller: Nominal 600 WOG.
- 31 3. Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 through NPS 2: Nominal 400 WOG.
- 32 4. Close-off Pressure: 200 psig.
- 33 5. Process Temperature Range: Zero to 212 deg F.
- 34 6. Body and Tail Piece: Cast bronze ASTM B 61, ASTM B 62, ASTM B 584, or forged brass
35 with nickel plating.
- 36 7. End Connections: Threaded (NPT) ends.
- 37 8. Ball: 300 series stainless steel.
- 38 9. Stem and Stem Extension:
- 39 a. Material to match ball.
- 40 b. Blowout-proof design.
- 41 c. Sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without
42 damaging the insulation or the vapor barrier seal.
- 43 10. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
- 44 11. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain
45 the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such



- 1 as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated
 2 by testing.
 3 12. Flow Characteristic: Equal percentage.
- 4 B. Three-Way Ball Valves with Characterized Disk:
- 5 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the
 6 following:
- 7 a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
- 8 2. Pressure Rating for NPS 1 and Smaller: Nominal 600 WOG.
 9 3. Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 through NPS 2: Nominal 400 WOG.
 10 4. Close-off Pressure: 200 psig.
 11 5. Process Temperature Range: Zero to 212 deg F.
 12 6. Body and Tail Piece: Cast bronze ASTM B 61, ASTM B 62, ASTM B 584, or forged brass
 13 with nickel plating.
 14 7. End Connections: Threaded (NPT) ends.
 15 8. Ball: 300 series stainless steel.
 16 9. Stem and Stem Extension:
- 17 a. Material to match ball.
 18 b. Blowout-proof design.
 19 c. Sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without
 20 damaging the insulation or the vapor barrier seal.
- 21 10. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
 22 11. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain
 23 the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such
 24 as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated
 25 by testing.
 26 12. Flow Characteristics for A-Port: Equal percentage.
 27 13. Flow Characteristics for B-Port: Modified for constant common port flow.

28 2.3 BUTTERFLY-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

- 29 A. Commercial-Grade, Two-Way Butterfly Valves:
- 30 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the
 31 following:
- 32 a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
- 33 2. Performance:
- 34 a. Bi-directional bubble tight shutoff at 250 psig.
 35 b. Comply with MSS SP-67 or MSS SP-68.
 36 c. Rotation: Zero to 90 degrees.
 37 d. Linear or modified equal percentage flow characteristic.
- 38 3. Body: Cast iron ASTM A 126, Class B, ductile iron ASTM A 536 or cast steel
 39 ASTM A 216/A 216M WCB fully lugged, suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges.
 40 4. Disc: 316 stainless steel.



- 1 5. Shaft: 316 or 17-4 PH stainless steel.
 2 6. Seat: Reinforced EPDM or reinforced PTFE with retaining ring.
 3 7. Shaft Bushings: Reinforced PTFE or stainless steel.
 4 8. Replaceable seat, disc, and shaft bushings.
 5 9. Corrosion-resistant nameplate indicating:
- 6 a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 7 b. Body size.
 8 c. Body and trim materials.
 9 d. Flow arrow.
- 10 B. Commercial-Grade, Three-Way Butterfly Valves:
- 11 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the
 12 following:
- 13 a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
- 14 2. Arrangement: Two valves mated to a fabricated tee with interconnecting mechanical
 15 linkage.
 16 3. Performance:
- 17 a. Bi-directional bubble tight shutoff at 250 psig.
 18 b. Comply with MSS SP-67 or MSS SP-68.
 19 c. Rotation: Zero to 90 degrees.
 20 d. Linear or modified equal percentage flow characteristic.
- 21 4. Body: Cast iron ASTM A 126, Class B, ductile iron ASTM A 536 or cast steel
 22 ASTM A 216/A 216M WCB fully lugged, suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges.
 23 5. Disc: 316 stainless steel.
 24 6. Shaft: 316 or 17-4 PH stainless steel.
 25 7. Seat: Reinforced EPDM or reinforced PTFE seat with retaining ring.
 26 8. Shaft Bushings: Reinforced PTFE or stainless steel.
 27 9. Replaceable seat, disc, and shaft bushings.
 28 10. Corrosion-resistant nameplate indicating:
- 29 a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 30 b. Body size.
 31 c. Body and trim materials.
 32 d. Flow arrow.
- 33 **2.4 ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC CONTROL VALVE ACTUATORS**
- 34 A. Actuators for Hydronic Control Valves: Capable of closing valve against system pump shutoff
 35 head.
- 36 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the
 37 following:
- 38 a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
- 39 b. Siemens.



- 1 B. Position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator.
- 2 C. Type: Motor operated, with or without gears, electric and electronic.
- 3 D. Voltage: Unless otherwise indicated on the Contract Documents, provide
- 4 1. 24-V ac for valves NPS 4 and Smaller, where located indoors.
- 5 2. 120-V ac for valves NPS 4 and Smaller, where located outdoors.
- 6 3. 120-V ac for valves NPS 6 and Larger.
- 7 E. Deliver torque required for continuous uniform movement of controlled device from limit to limit
- 8 when operated at rated voltage.
- 9 F. Function properly within a range of 85 to 120 percent of nameplate voltage.
- 10 G. Construction:
- 11 1. For Actuators Less Than 100 W: Fiber or reinforced nylon gears with steel shaft, copper
- 12 alloy or nylon bearings, and pressed steel enclosures.
- 13 2. For Actuators from 100 to 400 W: Gears ground steel, oil immersed, shaft hardened steel
- 14 running in bronze, copper alloy or ball bearings. Operator and gear trains shall be totally
- 15 enclosed in dustproof cast-iron, cast-steel or cast-aluminum housing.
- 16 3. For Actuators Larger Than 400 W: Totally enclosed reversible induction motors with
- 17 auxiliary hand crank and permanently lubricated bearings.
- 18 H. Field Adjustment:
- 19 1. Spring Return Actuators: Easily switchable from fail open to fail closed in the field without
- 20 replacement.
- 21 2. Gear Type Actuators: External manual adjustment mechanism to allow manual positioning
- 22 when the actuator is not powered.
- 23 I. Two-Position Actuators: Single direction, spring return or reversing type.
- 24 J. Modulating Actuators:
- 25 1. Operation: Capable of stopping at all points across full range, and starting in either direction
- 26 from any point in range.
- 27 2. Control Input Signal:
- 28 a. Three Point, Tristate, or Floating Point: Clockwise and counter-clockwise inputs.
- 29 One input drives actuator to open position and other input drives actuator to close
- 30 position. No signal of either input remains in last position.
- 31 b. Proportional: Actuator drives proportional to input signal and modulates throughout
- 32 its angle of rotation. Suitable for 2- to 10-V dc and 4- to 20-mA signals.
- 33 c. Programmable Multi-Function:
- 34 1) Control Input, Position Feedback, and Running Time: Factory or field
- 35 programmable.
- 36 2) Diagnostic: Feedback of hunting or oscillation, mechanical overload,
- 37 mechanical travel, and mechanical load limit.
- 38 3) Service Data: Include, at a minimum, number of hours powered and number
- 39 of hours in motion.



- 1 K. Position Feedback:
- 2 1. Equip two-position actuators with limits switches or other positive means of a position
3 indication signal for remote monitoring of open and close position.
- 4 2. Where indicated, equip modulating actuators with a position feedback through voltage
5 signal for remote monitoring.
- 6 3. Provide a position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator indicating open and
7 closed travel limits.
- 8 L. Fail-Safe:
- 9 1. Where indicated, provide actuator to fail to an end position.
- 10 2. Internal spring return mechanism to drive controlled device to an end position (open or
11 close) on loss of power.
- 12 3. Batteries, capacitors, and other non-mechanical forms of fail-safe operation are acceptable
13 only where uniquely indicated.
- 14 M. Integral Overload Protection:
- 15 1. Provide against overload throughout the entire operating range in both directions.
- 16 2. Electronic overload, digital rotation sensing circuitry, mechanical end switches, or magnetic
17 clutches are acceptable methods of protection.
- 18 N. Valve Attachment:
- 19 1. Unless otherwise required for valve interface, provide an actuator designed to be directly
20 coupled to valve shaft without the need for connecting linkages.
- 21 2. Attach actuator to valve drive shaft in a way that ensures maximum transfer of power and
22 torque without slippage.
- 23 3. Bolt and set screw method of attachment is acceptable only if provided with at least two
24 points of attachment.
- 25 O. Temperature and Humidity:
- 26 1. Temperature: Suitable for operating temperature range encountered by application with
27 minimum operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 120 deg F.
- 28 2. Humidity: Suitable for humidity range encountered by application; minimum operating
29 range shall be from 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing.
- 30 P. Enclosure:
- 31 1. Suitable for ambient conditions encountered by application.
- 32 2. NEMA 250, Type 2 for indoor and protected applications.
- 33 3. NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X for outdoor and unprotected applications.
- 34 4. Provide actuator enclosure with heater and control where required by application.
- 35 Q. Stroke Time:
- 36 1. Select operating speed to be compatible with equipment and system operation.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 3 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
4 and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 5 B. Examine roughing-in for valves installed in piping to verify actual locations of piping connections
6 before installation.
- 7 C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- 8 D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

9 **3.2 CONTROL VALVE APPLICATIONS**

- 10 A. Control Valves:
- 11 1. Select from valves specified in "Control Valves" Article to achieve performance
12 requirements and characteristics indicated while subjected to full range of system operation
13 encountered.
- 14 2. Chilled Water System:
- 15 a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Two-Way or Three-Way Ball valves with characterized
16 disk, as required by application.
- 17 b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Two-Way or Three-Way Butterfly-style, commercial-
18 grade valves, as required by application.

19 **3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- 20 A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy most stringent requirements indicated.
- 21 B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- 22 C. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduits to comply with requirements
23 indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.
- 24 D. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before
25 proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could
26 potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent
27 condition.
- 28 E. Firestop penetrations made in fire-rated assemblies and seal penetrations made in acoustically
29 rated assemblies.
- 30 F. Fastening Hardware:
- 31 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that will cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods,
32 nuts, and other parts are prohibited for assembling and tightening nuts.
- 33 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force
34 or by oversized wrenches.



- 1 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- 2 G. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance
3 from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access,
4 confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.
- 5 **3.4 ELECTRIC POWER**
- 6 A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- 7 B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 26 28 16 "Enclosed
8 Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- 9 C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage
10 Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- 11 D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and
12 Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- 13 **3.5 CONTROL VALVES**
- 14 A. Install pipe reducers for valves smaller than line size. Position reducers as close to valve as
15 possible but at distance to avoid interference and impact to performance. Install with
16 manufacturer-recommended clearance.
- 17 B. Install flanges or unions to allow drop-in and -out valve installation.
- 18 C. Install pressure temperature taps in piping upstream and downstream of each control valve.
- 19 D. Valve Orientation:
- 20 1. Where possible, install globe and ball valves installed in horizontal piping with stems
21 upright and not more than 15 degrees off of vertical, not inverted.
- 22 2. Install valves in a position to allow full stem movement.
- 23 3. Where possible, install butterfly valves that are installed in horizontal piping with stems in
24 horizontal position and with low point of disc opening with direction of flow.
- 25 E. Clearance:
- 26 1. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support of valves that cannot be
27 handled by service personnel without hoisting mechanism.
- 28 2. Install valves with at least 12 inches of clear space around valve and between valves and
29 adjacent surfaces.
- 30 F. Threaded Valves:
- 31 1. Note internal length of threads in valve ends, and proximity of valve internal seat or wall,
32 to determine how far pipe should be threaded into valve.
- 33 2. Align threads at point of assembly.
- 34 3. Apply thread compound to external pipe threads, except where dry seal threading is
35 specified.
- 36 4. Assemble joint, wrench tight. Apply wrench on valve end as pipe is being threaded.



1 G. Flanged Valves:

- 2 1. Align flange surfaces parallel.
 3 2. Assemble joints by sequencing bolt tightening to make initial contact of flanges and gaskets
 4 as flat and parallel as possible. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Tighten bolts
 5 gradually and uniformly with a torque wrench.

6 **3.6 CONNECTIONS**

- 7 A. Connect electrical devices and components to electrical grounding system. Comply with
 8 requirements in Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

9 **3.7 IDENTIFICATION**

- 10 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing
 11 shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of
 12 connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53
 13 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 14 B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with valve identification on valve and on face of ceiling
 15 directly below valves concealed above ceilings.

16 **3.8 CLEANING**

- 17 A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign
 18 materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.
 19 B. Wash and shine glazing.
 20 C. Polish glossy surfaces to a clean shine.

21 **3.9 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES**

- 22 A. Control Valve Checkout:
 23 1. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
 24 2. Check valves for proper location and accessibility.
 25 3. Check valves for proper installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion
 26 depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
 27 4. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
 28 5. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
 29 6. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
 30 7. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
 31 8. Verify that valve ball, disc, and plug travel are unobstructed.
 32 9. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and
 33 balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace
 34 the valve if leaks persist.



- 1 **3.10 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING**
- 2 A. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100
3 percent open to 100 percent closed back to 100 percent open.
- 4 B. Stroke control valves with pilot positioners. Adjust valve and positioner following manufacturer's
5 recommended procedure, so valve is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed, and 100 percent
6 open at proper air pressures.
- 7 C. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time of less than
8 30 seconds.
- 9 D. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple
10 positions to confirm proper position indication.
- 11 **END OF SECTION 25 09 23.11**



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 25 09 23.12 - CONTROL DAMPER ACCESSORIES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes the following types of control-damper actuators and accessories:

- 8 1. General control-damper actuator requirements.
9 2. Electric and electronic actuators.
10 3. Damper position switches

- 11 B. Related Requirements:

- 12 1. Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories" for control dampers.

13 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 14 A. DDC: Direct-digital control.

15 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 16 A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:

- 17 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and
18 profiles, and finishes.
19 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating
20 process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control
21 signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical
22 power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including
23 temperature and humidity.
24 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product
25 specification sheets.
26 4. Installation instructions, including factors affecting performance.

- 27 B. Delegated-Design Submittal:

- 28 1. Schedule for actuators, including the following.
29 a. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.



1 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 2 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For control dampers to include in operation and maintenance
3 manuals.

4 **1.6 WARRANTY**

- 5 A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer warrants all control-damper actuators free from defects
6 within specified warranty period

- 7 1. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from Substantial Completion, with the first two years
8 unconditional.

9 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

10 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 11 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
12 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- 13 B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label products to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure
14 Vessel Code where required by authorities having jurisdiction.

- 15 C. Ground Fault: Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition when suitably grounded.

- 16 D. Backup Power Source: Systems and equipment served by a backup power source shall have
17 associated control damper actuators served from a backup power source.

- 18 E. Environmental Conditions:

- 19 1. Provide electric control-damper actuators, with protective enclosures satisfying the
20 following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
21 Electric control-damper actuators not available with integral enclosures, complying with
22 requirements indicated, shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures.

- 23 a. Hazardous Locations: Explosion-proof rating for condition.

24 **2.2 GENERAL CONTROL-DAMPER ACTUATORS REQUIREMENTS**

- 25 A. Actuators shall operate related damper(s) with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth
26 modulating action or two-position action and proper speed of response at velocity and pressure
27 conditions to which the damper is subjected.

- 28 B. Actuators shall produce sufficient power and torque to close off against the maximum system
29 pressures encountered. Actuators shall be sized to close off against the fan shutoff pressure as
30 a minimum requirement.

- 31 C. The total damper area operated by an actuator shall not exceed 80 percent of manufacturer's
32 maximum area rating.



- 1 D. Provide one actuator for each damper assembly where possible. Multiple actuators required to
2 drive a single damper assembly shall operate in unison.
- 3 E. Avoid the use of excessively oversized actuators which could overdrive and cause linkage
4 failure when the damper blade has reached either its full open or closed position.
- 5 F. Use jackshafts and shaft couplings in lieu of blade-to-blade linkages when driving axially aligned
6 damper sections.
- 7 G. Provide mounting hardware and linkages for connecting actuator to damper.
- 8 H. Select actuators to fail in desired position in the event of a power failure.
- 9 I. Actuator Fail Positions: See Drawings.

10 **2.3 ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC ACTUATORS**

- 11 A. Type: Motor operated, with or without gears, electric and electronic.
- 12 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the
13 following:
- 14 a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
15 b. Siemens.
- 16 B. Voltage: Unless otherwise indicated on the Contract Documents, provide:
- 17 1. 24-V for Control Dampers (excluding Smoke and Combination Fire/Smoke Dampers).
18 2. 120-V for Smoke and Combination Fire/Smoke Dampers.
19 3. Actuator shall deliver torque required for continuous uniform movement of controlled
20 device from limit to limit when operated at rated voltage.
21 4. Actuator shall function properly within a range of 85 to 120 percent of nameplate voltage.
- 22 C. Electrical Connection: Actuators shall be provided with a conduit fitting and a minimum 3-foot
23 electrical cable and shall be pre-wired to eliminate the necessity for opening the actuator
24 housing to make electrical connections.
- 25 D. Construction:
- 26 1. Less Than 100 W: Fiber or reinforced nylon gears with steel shaft, copper alloy or nylon
27 bearings, and pressed steel enclosures.
28 2. 100 up to 400 W: Gears ground steel, oil immersed, shaft-hardened steel running in
29 bronze, copper alloy, or ball bearings. Operator and gear trains shall be totally enclosed
30 in dustproof cast-iron, cast-steel, or cast-aluminum housing.
31 3. Greater Than 400 W: Totally enclosed reversible induction motors with auxiliary hand
32 crank and permanently lubricated bearings.
- 33 E. Field Adjustment:
- 34 1. Spring return actuators shall be easily switchable from fail open to fail closed in the field
35 without replacement.
36 2. Provide gear-type actuators with an external manual adjustment mechanism to allow
37 manual positioning of the damper when the actuator is not powered.



- 1 F. Two-Position Actuators: Single direction, spring return or reversing type.
- 2 G. Modulating Actuators:
- 3 1. Capable of stopping at all points across full range, and starting in either direction from
4 any point in range.
- 5 2. Control Input Signal:
- 6 a. Three Point, Tristate, or Floating Point: Clockwise and counter-clockwise inputs.
7 One input drives actuator to open position, and other input drives actuator to close
8 position. No signal of either input remains in last position.
- 9 b. Proportional: Actuator drives proportional to input signal and modulates throughout
10 its angle of rotation. Suitable for 2- to 10-V dc and 4- to 20-mA signals.
- 11 c. Pulse Width Modulation (PWM): Actuator drives to a specified position according
12 to a pulse duration (length) of signal from a dry-contact closure, triac sink or source
13 controller.
- 14 d. Programmable Multi-Function:
- 15 1) Control input, position feedback, and running time shall be factory or field
16 programmable.
- 17 2) Diagnostic feedback of hunting or oscillation, mechanical overload,
18 mechanical travel, and mechanical load limit.
- 19 3) Service data, including at a minimum, number of hours powered and
20 number of hours in motion.
- 21 H. Position Feedback:
- 22 1. Where indicated, equip two-position actuators with limits switches or other positive
23 means of a position indication signal for remote monitoring of open and close position, as
24 follows. Externally mounted, non-mercury damper position switch, installed directly on
25 damper shaft.
- 26 a. Smoke and Combination Fire/Smoke Dampers: Two, SPDT, auxiliary switches,
27 integral to actuator, with one switch fixed at 10 degrees or less and one switch
28 adjustable between 30 degrees and 90 degrees.
- 29 b. Control Dampers (Smoke Control Systems): Two, SPDT, auxiliary switches,
30 integral to actuator, with one switch fixed at 10 degrees or less and one switch
31 adjustable between 30 degrees and 90 degrees.
- 32 2. Where indicated, equip modulating actuators with a position feedback through voltage
33 signal for remote monitoring.
- 34 3. Provide a position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator indicating open and
35 closed travel limits.
- 36 I. Fail-Safe:
- 37 1. Where indicated, provide actuator to fail to an end position.
- 38 2. Internal spring return mechanism to drive controlled device to an end position (open or
39 close) on loss of power.
- 40 3. Batteries, capacitors, and other non-mechanical forms of fail-safe operation are
41 acceptable only where uniquely indicated.
- 42 J. Integral Overload Protection:



- 1 1. Provide against overload throughout the entire operating range in both directions.
 2 2. Electronic overload, digital rotation sensing circuitry, mechanical end switches, or
 3 magnetic clutches are acceptable methods of protection.
- 4 K. Damper Attachment:
- 5 1. Unless otherwise required for damper interface, provide actuator designed to be directly
 6 coupled to damper shaft without need for connecting linkages.
 7 2. Attach actuator to damper drive shaft in a way that ensures maximum transfer of power
 8 and torque without slippage.
 9 3. Bolt and set screw method of attachment is acceptable only if provided with at least two
 10 points of attachment.
- 11 L. Temperature and Humidity:
- 12 1. Temperature: Suitable for operating temperature range encountered by application with
 13 minimum operating temperature ranges of.
 14 a. Control Dampers (excluding Smoke and Combination Fire/Smoke Dampers):
 15 Minus 20 to plus 120 deg F
 16 b. Minus 20 to plus 250 deg F
- 17 2. Humidity: Suitable for humidity range encountered by application; minimum operating
 18 range shall be from 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing.
- 19 M. Enclosure:
- 20 1. Suitable for ambient conditions encountered by application.
 21 2. NEMA 250, Type 2 for indoor and protected applications.
 22 3. NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X for outdoor and unprotected applications.
 23 4. Provide actuator enclosure with a heater and controller where required by application.
- 24 N. Stroke Time:
- 25 1. Select operating speed to be compatible with equipment and system operation.
 26 2. Actuators operating in smoke control systems comply with governing code and NFPA
 27 requirements.
- 28 **2.4 DAMPER POSITION SWITCHES**
- 29 A. Type: Non-mercury damper position switch, with mechanical roller ball, SPDT.
- 30 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kele; TS-475
 31 Series or a comparable product.
- 32 B. Switch Angle: Normally open switch makes at 10 degrees above horizontal and breaks at 5
 33 degrees below horizontal.
- 34 C. Electrical Connection: Switch shall be provided with minimum 3-foot plenum-rated electrical
 35 cable and shall be pre-wired to eliminate the necessity for opening the switch housing to make
 36 electrical connections.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 3 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
4 and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 5 B. Examine roughing-in for dampers and instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual
6 locations of connections before installation.
- 7 C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- 8 D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

9 **3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- 10 A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy most stringent requirements indicated.
- 11 B. Seal penetrations made in fire-rated and acoustically rated assemblies.
- 12 C. Fastening Hardware:
- 13 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, or other tools that will cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods,
14 nuts, and other parts are prohibited for assembling and tightening nuts.
- 15 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force
16 or by oversized wrenches.
- 17 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- 18 D. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance
19 from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access,
20 confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

21 **3.3 ELECTRIC POWER**

- 22 A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- 23 B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 26 28 16 "Enclosed
24 Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- 25 C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage
26 Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- 27 D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and
28 Boxes for Electrical Systems."

29 **3.4 CONTROL DAMPERS**

- 30 A. Service Access:
- 31 1. Dampers and actuators shall be accessible for visual inspection and service.



1 2. Install access door(s) in duct or equipment located upstream of damper to allow service
2 personnel to hand clean any portion of damper, linkage, and actuator. Comply with
3 requirements in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."

4 B. Attach actuator(s) to damper drive shaft.

5 C. For duct-mounted and equipment-mounted dampers installed outside of equipment, install a
6 visible and accessible indication of damper position from outside.

7 **3.5 CONNECTIONS**

8 A. Connect electrical devices and components to electrical grounding system. Comply with
9 requirements in Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

10 **3.6 IDENTIFICATION**

11 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and
12 tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at
13 points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53
14 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

15 **3.7 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES**

16 A. Control-Damper Checkout:

- 17 1. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
- 18 2. Check dampers for proper location and accessibility.
- 19 3. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
- 20 4. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
- 21 5. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
- 22 6. Verify that damper actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
- 23 7. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
- 24 8. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed.

25 **3.8 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING:**

26 A. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100
27 percent open to 100 percent closed back to 100 percent open.

28 B. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time of less than
29 30 seconds.

30 C. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at
31 multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

32 **END OF SECTION 25 09 23.12**

33



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 25 09 23.13 - ENERGY METERS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes thermal and electric power energy meters that connect to DDC systems.

8 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 9 A. DDC: Direct-digital control.
- 10 B. Ethernet: Local area network based on IEEE 802.3.1 standards.
- 11 C. Firmware: Software (programs or data) that has been written onto read-only memory (ROM).
12 Firmware is a combination of software and hardware. Storage media with ROMs that have data
13 or programs recorded on them are firmware.
- 14 D. I/O: Input/output.
- 15 E. RMS: Root-mean-square value of alternating voltage, which is the square root of the mean
16 value of the square of the voltage values during a complete cycle.
- 17 F. RS-485: A TIA standard for multipoint communications using two twisted pairs.
- 18 G. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

19 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 20 A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:
- 21 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and
22 profiles, and finishes.
- 23 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating
24 electrical power requirements.
- 25 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product
26 specification sheets.
- 27 B. Shop Drawings:
- 28 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.



- 1 2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
2 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
3 connection.
4 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

5 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 6 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For energy meters to include in operation and maintenance
7 manuals.

8 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

9 **2.1 THERMAL ENERGY METERS**

- 10 A. Performance Requirements: Manufacturer shall certify that each energy meter indicated
11 complies with specified performance requirements and characteristics.

- 12 1. Product certificates are required.

- 13 B. Insertion-Type Thermal Energy Meters:

- 14 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ONICON
15 Incorporated; System 10 Series or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 16 a. Veris Industries.

- 17 2. Description:

- 18 a. Factory-packaged meter consisting of supply and return temperature sensors, flow
19 sensor, digital display, keypad user interface, installation hardware, color-coded
20 interconnecting cabling, and installation instructions.

- 21 b. Each thermal energy meter shall be individually calibrated and provided with
22 calibration certification traceable to NIST.

- 23 3. Alphanumeric display of the following on face of enclosure:

- 24 a. Total energy consumption.

- 25 b. Energy rate.

- 26 c. Flow rate.

- 27 d. Supply temperature.

- 28 e. Return temperature.

- 29 f. Visual indication of power status (on/off) on face of enclosure.

- 30 4. Electronics Enclosure:

- 31 a. Remote from temperature and flow sensors.

- 32 b. NEMA 250, Type 12 or Type 13 for indoor applications and NEMA 250, Type 4 or
33 Type 4X for outdoor applications.

- 34 c. Labeled terminal strip for field wiring connections.

- 35 5. Programming:



- 1 a. Factory programmed for specific application and field programmable through
2 keypad on face of enclosure.
- 3 b. Programmed parameters and total energy consumption shall be stored in non-
4 volatile EEPROM memory.
- 5 6. Output Signals:
- 6 a. Total Energy Consumption: Isolated solid-state dry contact with 100 mA, 50-V
7 rating and contact duration of 0.5, 1, 2, or 6 seconds.
- 8 b. Energy Rate, Flow Rate, Supply Temperature, Return Temperature: 4 to 20 mA or
9 zero- to 10-V dc for each.
- 10 c. In lieu of hardwired analog signals, a serial communication interface may be used.
- 11 7. Serial Communication Interface: Compatible with host to share total energy consumption,
12 energy rate, flow rate, and supply and return temperature data.
- 13 8. Temperature Sensors:
- 14 a. Temperature range matched to application.
- 15 b. Differential temperature accuracy within 0.15 deg F over the calibrated range.
- 16 c. NEMA 250, Type 4 junction box with thermal isolation.
- 17 d. Stainless-steel thermowell with NPS 1/2 NPT connection for each sensor.
- 18 9. Flow Sensor:
- 19 a. Insertion Electromagnetic Flow Meter as specified in Section 25 09 23.14 "Flow
20 Instruments."
- 21 10. Power Supply:
- 22 a. Field Power: 120-V ac, 60 Hz unless otherwise required by the application.
- 23 b. Internal Power: As required by flow meter.
- 24 C. In-Line, Compact-Type Thermal Energy Meters:
- 25 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ONICON
26 Incorporated; System 40 Series or comparable product.
- 27 2. Description:
- 28 a. Factory-packaged meter consisting of supply and return temperature sensors, flow
29 sensor, digital display, operator interface, installation hardware, interconnecting
30 cabling, and installation instructions.
- 31 b. Each thermal energy meter shall be individually calibrated and provided with
32 calibration certifications traceable to NIST.
- 33 c. Meter limited to flow rates between 0.8 and 38 gpm.
- 34 d. Meter mode of operation shall be field configurable to accommodate two pipe
35 systems that change from between heating and cooling.
- 36 3. Alphanumeric display of the following on face of enclosure:
- 37 a. Total energy consumption.
- 38 b. Energy rate.
- 39 c. Flow rate.
- 40 d. Supply temperature.
- 41 e. Return temperature.



- 1 4. Diagnostic Lights:
- 2 a. Meter equipped with diagnostic indicator lights that confirm the operation of the
- 3 microprocessor and its input circuitry.
- 4 b. Red LED labeled "BTU" shall flash as energy is transferred.
- 5 c. Red LED labeled "FLOW" shall flash at a rate that is proportional to the liquid flow
- 6 rate. An unlit LED indicates no flow signal.
- 7 5. Programming:
- 8 a. Meter shall be factory programmed for specific application.
- 9 b. Programmed parameters and total energy consumption shall be stored in non-
- 10 volatile memory.
- 11 6. Output Signals:
- 12 a. Mode 1 and Mode 2 Total Energy Consumption: Isolated solid-state dry contact
- 13 with 100 mA, 50-V rating and contact duration of 0.5, 1, 2, or 6 seconds.
- 14 b. Factory-set isolated analog output for energy rate, flow rate, or temperature
- 15 difference: 4 to 20 mA, zero to 5 or 10 V.
- 16 c. In lieu of hardwired output signals, a serial communication interface may be used.
- 17 7. Serial Communication Interface: Compatible with host to share total energy consumption,
- 18 energy rate, flow rate, and supply and return temperature data.
- 19 8. Temperature Sensors:
- 20 a. Temperature range matched to application.
- 21 b. Differential temperature accuracy within 0.15 deg F over the calibrated range.
- 22 c. Brass thermowell with NPS 1/2 sweat fitting or NPS 1/4 NPT connection for each
- 23 sensor.
- 24 9. Flow Sensor:
- 25 a. Inline Ultrasonic Flow Meter as specified in Section 25 09 23.14 "Flow
- 26 Instruments."
- 27 10. Power Supply:
- 28 a. Field Power: 24-V ac, 50 or 60 Hz unless otherwise required by the application.

29 **2.2 ELECTRIC POWER METERS**

- 30 A. Performance Requirements: Manufacturer shall certify that each energy meter indicated
- 31 complies with specified performance requirements and characteristics.
- 32 1. Product certificates are required.
- 33 B. Multifunction Electric Power Meter:
- 34 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 35 following:
- 36 a. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.



- 1 b. Veris Industries.
- 2 2. Hardware:
- 3 a. Voltage Inputs: Three voltage inputs capable of measuring from zero- to 400-V rms
4 (line to neutral) or from zero- to 690-V rms (line to line). The instrument shall have
5 provisions for direct connection for wye (Star) systems up to 347/600-V ac. For
6 higher-voltage systems, PTs with 120-, 277-, or 347-V ac secondaries shall be
7 supported. Voltage inputs shall provide the following:
- 8 1) 1500-V ac continuous surge protection.
9 2) 25 percent of full-scale voltage over range capability.
- 10 b. Current Inputs: Three 5-A nominal (6-A full-scale) current inputs. Current inputs
11 shall be transformer coupled and accept CTs with 5-A nominal (6-A full-scale)
12 outputs. Current inputs shall provide the following:
- 13 1) 120-A surge protection for one second.
14 2) 20 percent of nominal current continuous over range capability.
- 15 c. Power Supply: 100- to 240-V ac (within 10 percent) at 50 to 60 Hz, 110- to 300-
16 V dc, or 20- to 60-V dc power source. Load shall not exceed 15 W.
- 17 d. Onboard I/O:
- 18 1) Two Form A solid-state digital (status) outputs with the following features:
- 19 a) The ability to be used to provide pulse outputs according to any
20 energy consumption levels.
21 b) Rated 200-V ac/dc with a maximum current of 100 mA.
- 22 e. Communications:
- 23 1) Provide the following built-in communication ports of standard technology,
24 as defined by the IEEE:
- 25 a) One optically isolated RS-485 communication port, supporting data
26 rates from 1200 to 19200 bits per second.
- 27 2) Communication ports shall support the following communication capabilities,
28 independently configurable:
- 29 a) PML protocol.
30 b) Modbus RTU protocol.
31 c) Shall provide simultaneous access through all communication ports to
32 any measured or derived parameter.
33 d) Protocols shall be field configurable from the front display, or via
34 communication ports, and be capable of being accomplished without
35 resetting the meter or interrupting its operation in any way.
36 e) Support time synchronization broadcast messages from a host
37 computer system.
- 38 f. Mounting and Display:
- 39 1) The instrument shall support the following mounting options:



- 1 a) 3.6-by-3.6-inch panel cutout, using sliding clamps tightened by
2 thumbscrews.
- 3 b) ANSI 4-inch round cut-out.
- 4 c) Transducer-type base unit with a remote LED display with cable for
5 remote display applications.
- 6 d) Transducer-type base unit only with no display locally mounted.
- 7 e) Allow the operator to remove and replace the display panel without
8 removing the instrument from the equipment in which it is mounted.
- 9 g. Enclosure: If installation requires meter to be installed in a dedicated enclosure,
10 install meter in an NRTL-listed enclosure suitable for operating environment at
11 meter location.
- 12 1) Indoors: NEMA 250, Type 1 .
- 13 2) Outdoors: NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X.
- 14 h. Memory: Sufficient non-volatile (RAM) to store setup data and accumulated energy
15 values.
- 16 3. The instrument shall measure and calculate the following information:
- 17 a. Voltage line-to-neutral and line-to-line for each phase and average of three
18 phases.
- 19 b. Current for each phase and average of three phases.
- 20 c. Peak current demand.
- 21 d. Neutral current.
- 22 e. Power (kW).
- 23 f. Peak power demand (kW).
- 24 g. Energy (kWh) import/export.
- 25 h. Power factor total.
- 26 i. Frequency.
- 27 4. Operator interface features are as follows:
- 28 a. Capable of calculating the following information for any reading at one-second
29 intervals:
- 30 1) Sliding window demands for any parameter with operator-programmable
31 length of demand period and number of subperiods to match local utility
32 billing method.
- 33 b. Support direct display of all parameters on the front panel or remote display in
34 user-programmable groups, using plain language labels. Simultaneous access to
35 all parameters shall be available through any communication port.
- 36 c. Field programmable as follows:
- 37 1) Basic Parameters: Voltage input scale, voltage mode (wye, delta, single
38 phase), current input scale, auxiliary input and output scales, and
39 communication setup parameters are programmable from the front panel.
- 40 2) Using ION modules, support customized configurations of all operating
41 parameters.
- 42 3) Provisions to ensure that programming through a computer can be secured
43 by user ID and password.
- 44 4) Provisions to ensure that programming through the front panel is secured by
45 password.



- 1 5) Digital outputs shall support pulse output relay operation for kWh total, kWh
2 imported, kWh exported, kVARh total, kVARh imported, kVARh exported,
3 and kVAh values.

4 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

5 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 6 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
7 and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 8 B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections
9 before installation.
- 10 C. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of
11 connections before installation.
- 12 D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- 13 E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

14 **3.2 THERMAL ENERGY METER APPLICATIONS**

- 15 A. Chilled-Water:
- 16 1. Piping Smaller than NPS 2-1/2(DN 65): In-Line, Compact-Type Thermal Energy Meters.
17 2. Piping NPS 3 and Larger: Insertion-Type Thermal Energy Meters.

18 **3.3 ELECTRIC POWER METER APPLICATIONS**

19 **Multifunction, electric power meter.**

20 **3.4 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- 21 A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- 22 B. Support instruments, tubing, piping wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated.
23 Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.
- 24 C. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance
25 from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access,
26 confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

27 **3.5 ELECTRIC POWER**

- 28 A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.



1 B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 26 28 16 "Enclosed
2 Switches and Circuit Breakers."

3 C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage
4 Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

5 D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and
6 Boxes for Electrical Systems."

7 **3.6 DEMONSTRATION**

8 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain instrumentation and
9 control devices.

10 **3.7 END OF SECTION 25 09 23.13**



1 **SECTION 25 09 23.14 - FLOW INSTRUMENTS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Airflow measurement stations and sensors.
9 2. Liquid flow meters.
10 3. Gas flow meters.

11 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 12 A. Ethernet: Local area network based on IEEE 802.3 standards.

- 13 B. FEP: Fluorinated ethylene propylene.

- 14 C. HART: Highway addressable remote transducer protocol is the global standard for sending and
15 receiving digital information across analog wires between smart devices and control or
16 monitoring systems through bi-directional communication that provides data access between
17 intelligent field instruments and host systems. A host can be any software application from
18 technician's hand-held device or laptop to a plant's process control, asset management, safety,
19 or other system using any control platform.

- 20 D. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene.

- 21 E. PPS: Polyphenylene sulfide.

- 22 F. RS-485: A TIA standard for multipoint communications using two twisted pairs.

- 23 G. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

- 24 H. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol incorporated into Microsoft Windows.

25 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 26 A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:

- 27 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and
28 profiles, and finishes.
29 2. Operating characteristics; electrical characteristics; and furnished accessories indicating
30 process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control



- 1 signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical
 2 power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including
 3 temperature and humidity.
- 4 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product
 5 specification sheets.
- 6 4. Installation instructions, including factors affecting performance.
- 7 5. Product certificates.

8 B. Shop Drawings:

- 9 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
- 10 2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
 11 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
 12 connection.
- 13 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- 14 4. Number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing
 15 ends.

16 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For instruments to include in operation and maintenance
 18 manuals.

19 **1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- 20 A. Furnish extra materials and parts that match products installed and that are packaged with
 21 protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

22 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

23 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 24 A. Delegated Design: Select and size products to achieve specified performance requirements.
- 25 B. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for
 26 intended location and application.

27 **2.2 AIRFLOW MEASUREMENT STATIONS AND SENSORS**

28 A. Performance Requirements:

- 29 1. Adjustable for changes in system operational parameters.
- 30 2. Airflow Sensor and Transmitter Range: Extended range of 20 percent above Project
 31 design flow and 20 percent below minimum Project flow to signal abnormal flow
 32 conditions.
- 33 3. Manufacturer shall certify that each flow instrument indicated complies with specified
 34 performance requirements and characteristics.

- 35 a. Product certificates are required.



- 1 4. Accuracy: Under operating conditions, when installed in accordance with manufacturer's
2 sensor density and placement guidelines, including combined uncertainty of the sensor
3 nodes and transmitter:
- 4 a. For Air-Ducted/Plenum: Within 3 percent of reading for ducted applications, and
5 within 5 percent of reading for non-ducted applications.
6 b. For Supply or Return Fan Array: Within 10 percent of reading.
7 c. For Supply or Return Fan, Single-Width Single-Inlet (SWSI) or Double-Width
8 Double-Inlet (DWDI) Fans: Within 10 percent of reading.
9 d. For Packaged HVAC Units: Within 10 percent of reading.
10 e. For Directional Airflow Sensors: Thermal airflow measurement station.
- 11 B. Thermal Airflow Measurement Stations:
- 12 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ebtron, Inc.;
13 Gold Series (ducts and plenums) and Hybrid Series (fan inlets) or a comparable product.
14 2. Common Performance Requirements:
- 15 a. Provide stations that are adjustable for changes in system operational parameters.
16 b. Manufacturer shall certify that each flow instrument indicated complies with
17 specified performance requirements and characteristics.
18 c. Thermal airflow stations with one or more sensor nodes mounted in a probe, and a
19 remotely mounted microprocessor-based transmitter at each measurement
20 location.
21 d. Sensor Nodes: One self-heated and one zero-power bead-in-glass thermistor,
22 using the principle of thermal dispersion.
23 e. Airflow Rate and Temperature of Each Sensor: Equally weighted and averaged by
24 the transmitter prior to output.
25 f. Sensor-Node and Probe Assemblies:
- 26 1) Sensor-Node Construction: Two bead-in-glass, hermetically sealed
27 thermistors potted in a marine-grade waterproof epoxy with sensor housings
28 constructed of glass-filled polypropylene. Construct with only the thermistor
29 located within the sensing node and all other electronic components outside
30 the airstream. Epoxy- or glass-encapsulated chip thermistors or devices with
31 exposed leads are not allowed. Devices that use epoxy- or glass-
32 encapsulated chip thermistors, or electronics in the airstream, are
33 unacceptable. Devices with exposed leads are unacceptable.
34 2) Store sensor-node airflow and temperature calibration data in a serial
35 memory chip, in the cable connecting plug. Stored data does not require
36 matching or adjustments to the transmitter in the field.
37 3) Sensing-Node Temperature Accuracy: Within 0.15 deg F over an operating
38 range of minus 20 to plus 160 deg F and humidity range of 0 to 100 percent
39 RH.
40 4) Sensor-Probe Mounting Bracket Construction: Type 304 stainless steel.
41 5) Internal Probe Wiring: Kynar-coated copper between the connecting cable
42 and sensor nodes. PVC-jacketed wiring is unacceptable.
43 6) Internal Probe Wiring Connections: Solder joints and spot welds, sealed and
44 protected from the elements, so that direct exposure to water will not affect
45 instrument operation. Connectors within the probe, of any type, are
46 unacceptable. Printed circuit boards within the probe are unacceptable.
47 7) Sensor-Probe Jacket: Integral, FEP jacket, plenum-rated CMP/CL2P,
48 UL/cUL-listed cable, rated for exposures from minus 67 to plus 392 deg F,
49 and for continuous and direct UV exposure. Plenum-rated PVC jacket
50 cables are unacceptable.



- 1 8) Sensor-Probe Cable Connector Plug: Gold-plated pins for connection to the
2 transmitter.
- 3 g. Transmitter Features and Functions:
- 4 1) High and/or low airflow alarm with user-defined set point and percent of set-
5 point tolerance.
- 6 2) Manual or automatic alarm reset, and low-limit cutoff value may be selected
7 to disable the alarm.
- 8 3) Alarm delay function, field defined.
- 9 4) Sensor-node malfunction via the system status alarm and ignore the sensor
10 node that is in a fault condition.
- 11 5) Field configuration, diagnostics, and field output adjustment wizard that
12 allow for a one- or two-point field adjustment to factory calibration for
13 installations that require adjustment.
- 14 6) Automatic reset after power disruption, transients, and brown-outs through a
15 watchdog timer circuit.
- 16 7) Operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 120 deg F and humidity
17 range of 5 to 95 percent RH.
- 18 8) Electrical Power Requirement: 24 V ac (between 22.8 and 26.4 V ac under
19 load) at 20 VA maximum, using a switching power supply that is overcurrent
20 and overvoltage protected.
- 21 9) Printed Circuit Board Interconnects: Gold-plated edge fingers, receptacle
22 plug pins, and printed circuit board test points.
- 23 10) Printed Circuit Boards: Electroless nickel immersion gold (ENIG) plated.
- 24 11) Integrated Circuitry: Temperature-rated, industrial-grade. Commercial-grade
25 integrated circuitry is not acceptable.
- 26 12) Integration Buffers: Separate integration buffers for display of airflow output,
27 airflow signal output (analog and network), and individual sensor output (IR-
28 interface).
- 29 13) User Interface: An alpha-numeric, LCD display, with two field-selectable
30 analog output signals or one isolated RS-485 (BACnet MS/TP or Modbus
31 RTU) field-selectable network connection.
- 32 3. For Directional Airflow:
- 33 a. Bi-directional airflow measurement station with temperature output and integral
34 airflow alarming to determine the exfiltration or infiltration airflow rate, and its
35 direction and temperature at each measurement location.
- 36 b. Bi-directional airflow, or equivalent differential pressure data, is provided to the
37 BAS, with system status indication, configurable airflow alarm, and internal
38 diagnostics routine.
- 39 c. Sensor-Node Calibration:
- 40 1) Individually calibrated at a minimum of nine calibration points to NIST-
41 traceable volumetric standards from minus 3000 to plus 3000 fpm (minus
42 15.2 to plus 15.2 m/s).
- 43 2) Individually calibrate thermistor at a minimum of three temperatures to
44 NIST-traceable temperature standards.
- 45 3) Probe to Transmitter Cables: Integral, FEP jacket, plenum-rated CMP/CL2P,
46 UL/cUL-listed cable, rated for exposures from minus 67 to plus 392 deg F
47 (minus 55 to plus 200 deg C), and UV tolerant, with terminal plug for
48 connection to the remotely mounted transmitter.
- 49 d. Transmitter:



- 1) Transmitter determines the average airflow rate and temperature of all connected sensor nodes in an array for a single location.
- 2) User Interface: An alpha-numeric, LCD display, with two field-selectable analog output signals or one isolated RS-485 (BACnet MS/TP or Modbus RTU) field-selectable network connection.
- 3) Model EF-A Transmitter, Analog Capability: Two field-selectable 2- to 10-V dc, scalable and protected analog output signals. The first output (AO1) provides the total airflow rate. The second output (AO2) is field configurable for temperature low and/or high airflow set-point alarm (user-defined) or system status alarm.
- 4) Contact Closure Relay: One dry contact relay with onboard jumper to drive a remote LED, rated for no less than 30 V dc or 24 V ac at 3 A maximum. User configurable as normally open or normally closed during set up.

14 2.3 LIQUID FLOW METERS

15 A. General Requirements for Liquid Flow Meters:

- 16 1. Adjustable for changes in system operational parameters.
- 17 2. Liquid and Steam Sensors, Meters, and Transmitters: Extended range of 20 percent
- 18 above Project design flow and 20 percent below Project minimum flow to signal abnormal
- 19 flow conditions.
- 20 3. Manufacturer shall certify that each flow instrument indicated complies with specified
- 21 performance requirements and characteristics.
- 22 4. Product certificates are required.

23 B. Insertion Electromagnetic Flow Meter:

- 24 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ONICON
- 25 Incorporated ; F-3500 Series (single-directional flow) and FB-3500 Series (bi-directional
- 26 flow) or a comparable product.
- 27 2. Description:
 - 28 a. No moving parts.
 - 29 b. Suitable for flow measurement of fluids with electrical conductivity between 20 to
 - 30 60000 micro-Seimens per centimeter.
 - 31 c. Suitable for pipe sizes NPS 3 through NPS 72.
 - 32 d. Wet calibrate and tag meters to standards traceable to NIST, and provide each
 - 33 meter with a certificate of calibration.
 - 34 e. Continuous auto-zero function.
 - 35 f. Transmitter integral to meter.
- 36 3. Performance:
 - 37 a. Flow Range: 0.25 to 20 fps.
 - 38 b. Accuracy for Velocities between 2 and 20 fps: Within 1 percent of reading.
 - 39 c. Accuracy for Velocities Less than 2 fps: Within 0.02 fps.
 - 40 d. Ambient Temperature: Minus 5 to 150 deg F.
 - 41 e. Process Temperature: 15 to 250 deg F.
 - 42 f. Pressure: 400 psig.
- 43 4. Output Signals:



- 1 a. Field-selectable analog signals.
- 2 1) Current Signal (Isolated): 4 to 20 mA.
- 3 2) Voltage Signal (Isolated): Zero- to 10-V dc.
- 4 b. Digital Signal: Dry-contact closure signaling fault condition.
- 5 c. Frequency Signal: Zero- to 15-V peak pulse, zero to 500 Hz.
- 6 d. Scalable Pulse Output:
- 7 1) Isolated solid-state dry contact.
- 8 2) Contact Rating: 100 mA at 50-V dc.
- 9 3) Pulse Duration: 0.5, 1, 2, or 6 seconds.
- 10 5. Construction:
- 11 a. Wetted Metal Parts: Type 316 stainless steel.
- 12 b. Sensor Head: Polysulfone.
- 13 c. Process Connection: 1-inch.
- 14 d. Instrument Isolation Valve: Full port Type 316 stainless steel ball valve for system
- 15 isolation.
- 16 e. Electrodes: Type 316 stainless steel.
- 17 f. Electronics Enclosure:
- 18 1) Painted aluminum.
- 19 2) Removable cover.
- 20 3) NEMA 250, Type 4.
- 21 4) Electrical Connection: PVC-jacketed cable, 10 feet long.
- 22 5) Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.
- 23 6. Display Module:
- 24 a. Remote from meter.
- 25 b. House in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure.
- 26 c. Label terminal strip for all wiring connections.
- 27 d. 120-V ac power supply with 24-V dc output to power the flow sensor.
- 28 e. Input Signal from Meter: Zero- to 15-V pulse output.
- 29 f. Output Signals: Additional output signals furnished with flow meter connected to
- 30 display module terminal strip.
- 31 g. Auxiliary Output Signals: Analog current output (isolated) shall be 4 to 20 mA.
- 32 h. Digital Display:
- 33 1) Flow rate.
- 34 2) Totalized flow.
- 35 3) At least six display digits for flow rate and eight display digits for totalization.
- 36 4) Bi-directional units with separate digital display for flow and totalization in
- 37 each direction.
- 38 i. Local reset of flow totalization.
- 39 j. Program and data shall be stored in nonvolatile memory in the event of power loss.
- 40 k. For bi-directional units, provide LED display of flow direction (contacts open or
- 41 closed).
- 42 C. Inline Ultrasonic Flow Meter:



- 1 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ONICON
2 Incorporated ; F-4600 Series or a comparable product.
3 2. Description:
- 4 a. No moving parts.
5 b. Suitable for flow measurement of fluids with electrical conductivity between 20 to
6 60000 micro-Seimens per centimeter.
7 c. Suitable for pipe sizes NPS 1/2 through NPS 2-1/2DN 65).
8 d. Wet calibrate and tag meters to standards traceable to NIST, and provide each
9 meter with a certificate of calibration.
10 e. Continuous auto-zero function.
11 f. Transmitter integral to meter.
- 12 3. Performance:
- 13 a. Flow Range: 0.25 to 20 fps.
14 b. Accuracy for Velocities between 2 and 20 fps: Within 1 percent of reading.
15 c. Accuracy for Velocities Less than 2 fps: Within 0.02 fps.
16 d. Ambient Temperature: Minus 5 to 150 deg F.
17 e. Process Temperature: 15 to 250 deg F.
18 f. Pressure: 400 psig.
- 19 4. Output Signals:
- 20 a. Field-selectable analog signals.
- 21 1) Current Signal (Non-Isolated): 4 to 20 mA.
22 2) Voltage Signal (Isolated): Zero- to 10-V dc.
- 23 b. Digital Signal: Dry-contact closure signaling fault condition.
24 c. Frequency Signal: Zero- to 15-V peak pulse, zero to 500 Hz.
25 d. Scalable Pulse Output:
- 26 1) Isolated solid-state dry contact.
27 2) Contact Rating: 10 mA at 30-V dc.
28 3) Pulse Duration: 1000 ms.
- 29 5. Operator Interface:
- 30 a. Keypad.
31 b. Digital Display: Multiple-line digital display of alphanumeric characters.
32 c. LED for normal and alarm operation.
- 33 6. Construction:
- 34 a. Wetted Metal Parts: NSF 372 compliant.
35 b. Body: Corrosion-resistant metal.
36 c. Connection: Threaded for NPS 2 150 Class flange for NPS 2-1/2.
37 d. Electronics Enclosure:
- 38 1) Painted aluminum.
39 2) Removable cover.
40 3) NEMA 250, Type 6.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 3 A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for
4 installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 5 B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections
6 before installation.
- 7 C. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of
8 connections before installation.
- 9 D. Provide the services of an independent inspection agency to confirm that proposed mounting
10 locations comply with requirements indicated and approved submittals.
- 11 1. Indicate dimensioned locations with mounting height for all surface-mounted products to
12 walls and ceilings on shop drawings.
- 13 2. Do not begin installation without submittal approval of mounting location.
- 14 E. Complete installation rough-in only after confirmation by independent inspection is complete
15 and approval of location is documented for review by Owner and Architect on request.
- 16 F. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- 17 G. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

18 **3.2 INSTRUMENT APPLICATIONS**

- 19 A. Select from instrument types to achieve performance requirements and characteristics indicated
20 while subjected to full range of system operation encountered.
- 21 B. Airflow Measurement Stations:
- 22 1. For Air-Ducted/Plenum: Thermal airflow measurement station.
- 23 2. For Supply or Return Fan Array: Thermal airflow measurement station.
- 24 3. For Supply or Return Fan, Single-Width Single-Inlet (SWSI) or Double-Width Double-Inlet
25 (DWDI) Fans: Thermal airflow measurement station.
- 26 4. For Packaged HVAC Units: Thermal airflow measurement station.
- 27 5. For Directional Airflow Sensors (building pressure): Bi-directional thermal airflow
28 measurement station.
- 29 C. Liquid Flow Meters:
- 30 1. Chilled-Water System:
- 31 a. Piping Smaller than NPS 2-1/2(DN 65): In-Line, Ultrasonic Flow Meter.
- 32 b. Piping NPS 3 and Larger: Insertion Electromagnetic Flow Meter.



1 **3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- 2 A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.
- 3 B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- 4 C. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements
5 indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.
- 6 D. Install ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before
7 proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that
8 could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent
9 condition.
- 10 E. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance
11 from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access,
12 confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

13 **3.4 ELECTRIC POWER**

- 14 A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- 15 B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Division 26.
- 16 C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Division 26.
- 17 D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Division 26.

18 **3.5 INSTRUMENTS, GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- 19 A. Mounting Location:
- 20 1. Rough-in: Outline instrument-mounting locations before setting instruments and routing
21 cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
- 22 2. Install switches and transmitters for air and liquid flow associated with individual air-
23 handling units and connected ductwork and piping near air-handlings units co-located in
24 air-handling unit system control panel, to provide service personnel a single and
25 convenient location for inspection and service.
- 26 3. Install liquid and steam flow switches and transmitters for indoor applications in
27 mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated
28 specifically on Drawings.
- 29 4. Install airflow switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment
30 rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
- 31 5. Mount switches and transmitters not required to be mounted within system control panels
32 on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support
33 frames. Use manufacturer mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely
34 support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.
- 35 6. Install instruments in steam, liquid, and liquid-sealed-piped services below their process
36 connection point. Slope tubing down to instrument with a slope of 2 percent.
- 37 B. Mounting Height:



- 1 1. Mount instruments in user-occupied space to match mounting height of light switches
2 unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Mounting height shall comply with codes and
3 accessibility requirements.
- 4 2. Mount switches and transmitters, located in mechanical equipment rooms and other
5 similar space not subject to code, state, and federal accessibility requirements, within a
6 range of 42 to 72 inches above the adjacent floor, grade, or service catwalk or platform.
- 7 a. Make every effort to mount at 60 inches.
- 8 C. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static-
9 pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.

10 **3.6 FLOW INSTRUMENTS INSTALLATION**

11 A. Airflow Sensors:

- 12 1. Install sensors in straight sections of duct with manufacturer-recommended straight duct
13 upstream and downstream of sensor.
- 14 2. Installed sensors shall be accessible for visual inspection and service. Install access
15 door(s) in duct or equipment located upstream of sensor, to allow service personnel to
16 hand clean sensors.

17 B. Liquid Flow Meters:

- 18 1. Install meters in straight sections of piping with manufacturer-recommended straight
19 piping upstream and downstream of sensor.
- 20 2. Install pipe reducers for in-line meters smaller than line size. Install reducers at distance
21 from meter to avoid interference and impact on accuracy.
- 22 3. Install in-line meters with flanges or unions to provide drop-in and -out installation.
- 23 4. Insertion Meters:
- 24 a. Install system process connections full size of meter connection. Provide stainless
25 steel bushing if required to mate to system connection.
- 26 b. Install meter in top dead center of horizontal pipe positioned in an accessible
27 location to allow for inspection and replacement.
- 28 c. In applications where top-dead-center location is not possible due to field
29 constraints, install meter at location along top half of pipe if acceptable by
30 manufacturer for mounting orientation.

31 **3.7 IDENTIFICATION**

- 32 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and
33 tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at
34 points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53
35 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 36 B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification and on face of ceiling directly
37 below instruments concealed above ceilings.



1 **3.8 CLEANING**

- 2 A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign
3 materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.
- 4 B. Wash and shine glazing.
- 5 C. Polish glossy surfaces to a clean shine.

6 **3.9 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES**

7 A. Description:

- 8 1. Check out installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
9 2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
10 3. Check instruments for proper installation with respect to direction of flow, elevation,
11 orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact
12 performance.
13 4. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material, and
14 support.

15 B. Flow Instrument Checkout:

- 16 1. Verify that sensors are installed correctly with respect to flow direction.
17 2. Verify that sensor attachment is properly secured and sealed.
18 3. Verify that processing tubing attachment is secure and isolation valves have been
19 provided.
20 4. Inspect instrument tag against approved submittal.
21 5. Verify that recommended upstream and downstream distances have been maintained.

22 **3.10 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING**

23 A. Description:

- 24 1. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with
25 calibration documentation.
26 2. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating
27 each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
28 3. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and
29 accuracy.
30 4. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall meet instrument manufacturer's
31 recommendations.
32 5. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
33 6. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall
34 have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. For example, an
35 installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with
36 an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
37 7. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by
38 manufacturer.
39 8. If after-calibration-indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance
40 instruments.



- 1 9. Comply with field-testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE
2 Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific
3 requirements, and to supplement requirements indicated.
- 4 B. Analog Signals:
- 5 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100
6 percent.
7 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100
8 percent.
9 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of
10 operating span using a precision-resistant source.
- 11 C. Digital Signals:
- 12 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
13 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact.
- 14 D. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- 15 E. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.
- 16 F. Transmitters:
- 17 1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
18 2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using
19 a precision-resistance source.

20 **3.11 DEMONSTRATION**

- 21 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain instrumentation and
22 control devices.

23 **END OF SECTION 25 09 23.14**



1 **SECTION 25 09 23.16 - GAS INSTRUMENTS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes the Following Gas Instruments:
- 8 1. Carbon-dioxide sensors and transmitters.
9 2. Carbon-monoxide sensors and transmitters.

10 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 11 A. NDIR: Nondispersive infrared.

12 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 13 A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:
- 14 1. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating
15 process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control
16 signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical
17 power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including
18 temperature and humidity.
19 2. Installation instructions, including factor affecting performance.
20 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, product
21 specification sheets.
- 22 B. Shop Drawings:
- 23 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
24 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
25 3. Number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing
26 ends.

27 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 28 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For gas instruments to include in operation and maintenance
29 manuals.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 CARBON-DIOXIDE SENSORS AND TRANSMITTERS**

3 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
4 following:

- 5 1. Building Automation Products Inc.; BAPI.
- 6 2. Ebtron, Inc.
- 7 3. INTEC Controls.
- 8 4. QEL; Quatrosense Environmental Limited.
- 9 5. Telaire; a brand of Amphenol Thermometrics Inc.
- 10 6. Vaisala.

11 B. Description:

- 12 1. NDIR technology or equivalent technology providing long-term stability and reliability.
- 13 2. Two-wire, 4-20 mA output signal, linearized to carbon-dioxide concentration in ppm.

14 C. Construction:

- 15 1. House electronics in an ABS plastic enclosure. Provide equivalent of NEMA 250, Type 1
16 enclosure for wall-mounted space applications and NEMA 250, Type 4 for duct-mounted
17 applications.
- 18 2. Equip with digital display for continuous indication of carbon-dioxide concentration.

19 D. Performance:

- 20 1. Measurement Range: Zero to 2000 ppm.
- 21 2. Accuracy: Within 2 percent of reading, plus or minus 30 ppm.
- 22 3. Repeatability: Within 1 percent of full scale.
- 23 4. Temperature Dependence: Within 0.05 percent of full scale over an operating range of 25
24 to 110 deg F.
- 25 5. Long-Term Stability: Within 5 percent of full scale after more than five years.
- 26 6. Response Time: Within 60 seconds.
- 27 7. Warm-up Time: Within five minutes.

28 E. Provide calibration kit. Turn over to Owner at start of warranty period.

29 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

30 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

31 A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for
32 installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

33 B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections
34 before installation.

35 C. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of
36 connections before installation.



- 1 D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- 2 E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- 4 A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.
- 5 B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- 6 C. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements
- 7 indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.
- 8 D. Fastening Hardware:
 - 9 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods,
 - 10 nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
 - 11 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by using excessive
 - 12 force or oversized wrenches.
 - 13 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- 14 E. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance
- 15 from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access,
- 16 confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

17 3.3 ELECTRICAL POWER

- 18 A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- 19 B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 26 28 16 "Enclosed
- 20 Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- 21 C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage
- 22 Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- 23 D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and
- 24 Boxes for Electrical Systems."

25 3.4 INSTRUMENTS, GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- 26 A. Mounting Location:
 - 27 1. Install transmitters for gas associated with individual air-handling units and associated
 - 28 connected ductwork and piping near air-handlings units co-located in air-handling unit
 - 29 system control panel, to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for
 - 30 inspection and service.
 - 31 2. Install gas switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment
 - 32 rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
 - 33 3. Mount switches and transmitters not required to be mounted within system control panels
 - 34 on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support



1 frames. Use manufacturer's mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely
2 support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.

3 B. Mounting Height:

- 4 1. Mount instruments in user-occupied space to match mounting height of light switches
5 unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Mounting height shall comply with codes and
6 accessibility requirements.
- 7 2. Mount switches and transmitters located in mechanical equipment rooms and other
8 similar space not subject to code, state, and federal accessibility requirements within a
9 range of 42 to 72 inches above the adjacent floor, grade, or service catwalk or platform.

10 a. Make every effort to mount at 48 inches.

11 C. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static-
12 pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated, using neoprene gaskets or grommets.

13 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

14 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and
15 tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at
16 points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53
17 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

18 B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification on face.

19 3.6 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

20 A. Check out installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.

21 B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.

22 C. Check instruments for proper installation on direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion
23 depth, or other applicable considerations that impact performance.

24 D. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material, and
25 support.

26 3.7 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

27 A. Description:

- 28 1. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with
29 calibration documentation.
- 30 2. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating
31 each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- 32 3. For each analog instrument, perform a three-point calibration test for both linearity and
33 accuracy.
- 34 4. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall comply with instrument
35 manufacturer's written recommendations.
- 36 5. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.



- 1 6. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall
2 have an accuracy of at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. For
3 example, an installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an
4 instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
- 5 7. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by
6 manufacturer.
- 7 8. If, after calibration, indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance
8 instruments.
- 9 9. Comply with field-testing requirements and procedures in ASHRAE Guideline 11, "Field
10 Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific requirements, and to
11 supplement requirements indicated.
- 12 B. Analog Signals:
- 13 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100
14 percent.
- 15 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100
16 percent.
- 17 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of
18 operating span using a precision-resistant source.
- 19 C. Digital Signals:
- 20 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
- 21 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact.
- 22 D. Meters: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- 23 E. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- 24 F. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.
- 25 G. Transmitters:
- 26 1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- 27 2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using
28 a precision-resistance source.

29 **3.8 DEMONSTRATION**

- 30 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain instrumentation and
31 control devices.

32 **END OF SECTION 25 09 23.16**

33



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 25 09 23.17 - LEVEL INSTRUMENTS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes liquid-level switches, sensors, and transmitters.

- 8 B. Related Requirements:

- 9 1. Section 23 09 23 "Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC" for control equipment and
10 software, relays, electrical power devices, uninterruptible power supply units, wire, and
11 cable.
12 2. Section 23 09 93 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" for requirements that
13 relate to Section 23 09 23.17.

14 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 15 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 16 1. Include operating characteristics; electrical characteristics; and furnished accessories
17 indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range,
18 default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique
19 application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating
20 environment, including temperature and humidity.
21 2. Include product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and
22 product specification sheets.

- 23 B. Shop Drawings:

- 24 1. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
25 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
26 connection.
27 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
28 3. Include number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and
29 tubing ends.

30 **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 31 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For level instruments, to include in operation and
32 maintenance manuals.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

3 A. Environmental Conditions:

4 1. Instruments shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient
5 environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and
6 encountered for installed location.

7 a. If instrument alone cannot comply with requirement, install instrument in a
8 protective enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting
9 performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated[**and**
10 **cooled**], filtered, and ventilated as required by instrument and application.

11 **2.2 LEVEL SWITCHES**

12 A. Liquid-Level Switch (Magnetic Type with Float):

13 1. Description:

- 14 a. Mounting Suitable for Application: Horizontal or vertical switch mounting.
15 b. Float arm with hinge design limits vertical movement to prevent sticking.
16 c. Replaceable float with threaded connection.
17 d. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and
18 marked for hazardous environments (Class I, Groups C and D; Class II, Groups E,
19 F, and G).

20 2. Performance:

- 21 a. Level Actuation and De-Actuation: 0.75-inch deadband.
22 b. Body Pressure Limit: 1000 psig for brass body; 2000 psig for Type 316 stainless-
23 steel body.
24 c. Float Pressure Limit: 150 psig.
25 d. Temperature Range: Minus 4 to 275 deg F.
26 e. Electrical Rating: 10 A at 125/250-V ac.
27 f. Switch Type: SPDT snap switch.

28 3. Wetted Parts Construction:

- 29 a. Float and Rod: Type 316 stainless steel.
30 b. Body: Type 316 stainless steel.
31 c. Magnetic Keeper: Type 316 stainless steel.
32 d. Process Connection: NPS 1-1/2 NPT.
33 e. Enclosure:
34 1) Die-cast aluminum alloy.
35 2) Threaded cover.
36 3) NEMA 250, Type 4.
37 4) Electrical Connection: Terminal block.
38 5) Conduit Connection: NPS 3/4 NPT.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 3 A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for
4 installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 5 B. Examine roughing-in for instruments to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- 6 C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- 7 D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

8 **3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- 9 A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- 10 B. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements
11 indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement, sway, or a break in attachment when
12 subjected to a force.
- 13 C. Fastening Hardware:
- 14 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods,
15 nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
- 16 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by using excessive
17 force or oversized wrenches.
- 18 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- 19 D. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance
20 from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access,
21 confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.
- 22 E. Mount switches and transmitters not subject to code, state, and federal accessibility
23 requirements within a range of 42 to 72 inches above the adjacent floor, grade or service
24 catwalk, or platform.
- 25 1. Make every effort to mount at 60 inches.
- 26 F. Corrosive Environments:
- 27 1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they are subjected.
- 28 2. If possible, avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments.
- 29 3. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel
30 conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant
31 coating that is suitable for environment.
- 32 4. Where instruments are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant
33 from manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed
34 of Type 316L stainless steel.



1 **3.3 ELECTRICAL POWER**

- 2 A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- 3 B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 26 28 16 "Enclosed
4 Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- 5 C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage
6 Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- 7 D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and
8 Boxes for Electrical Systems."

9 **3.4 LEVEL INSTRUMENTS INSTALLATION**

- 10 A. Mounting Location: Rough-in instrument-mounting locations before setting instruments and
11 routing, cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.

12 **3.5 IDENTIFICATION**

- 13 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and
14 tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at
15 points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53
16 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 17 B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification on face.

18 **3.6 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES**

- 19 A. Check out installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
- 20 B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- 21 C. Check instruments for proper installation on direction of elevation, orientation, insertion depth,
22 or other applicable considerations that impact performance.

23 **3.7 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING**

- 24 A. Description:
- 25 1. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with
26 calibration documentation.
- 27 2. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating
28 each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- 29 3. For each analog instrument, perform a three-point calibration test for both linearity and
30 accuracy.
- 31 4. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall comply with instrument
32 manufacturer's written recommendations.
- 33 5. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.



- 1 6. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall
2 have an accuracy of at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. For
3 example, an installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an
4 instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
- 5 7. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by
6 manufacturer.
- 7 8. If, after calibration, indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance
8 instruments.
- 9 9. Comply with field-testing requirements and procedures in ASHRAE Guideline 11, "Field
10 Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific requirements, and to
11 supplement requirements indicated.
- 12 B. Analog Signals:
- 13 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100
14 percent.
- 15 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100
16 percent.
- 17 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of
18 operating span using a precision-resistant source.
- 19 C. Digital Signals:
- 20 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
- 21 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact.
- 22 D. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at setpoints indicated.
- 23 E. Transmitters:
- 24 1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- 25 2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using
26 a precision-resistance source.

27 **3.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

- 28 A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include
29 12 months' full maintenance by manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include
30 annual preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components,
31 cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be
32 manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

33 **3.9 DEMONSTRATION**

- 34 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to
35 adjust, operate, and maintain instrumentation and control devices.
- 36 B. Coordinate level instrument demonstration video with operation and maintenance manuals and
37 classroom instruction for use by Owner in operating, maintaining, and troubleshooting.
- 38 C. Record videos on DVD disks.



1 D. Owner shall have right to make additional copies of video for internal use without paying
2 royalties.

3 **END OF SECTION 25 09 23.17**



1 **SECTION 25 09 23.19 - MOISTURE INSTRUMENTS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes moisture switches, sensors, and transmitters.

8 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 9 A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:

- 10 1. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating
11 process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control
12 signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical
13 power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including
14 temperature and humidity.
15 2. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product
16 specification sheets.

- 17 B. Shop Drawings:

- 18 1. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
19 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
20 connection.
21 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
22 3. Include number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and
23 tubing ends.

24 **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 25 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: To include in operation and maintenance manuals.

26 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

27 **2.1 MOISTURE SWITCHES**

- 28 A. Humidistat for Duct Applications:

- 29 1. Description:



- 1 a. Two-position control.
 2 b. Field-adjustable set point.
 3 c. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and
 4 marked for intended location and application.
- 5 2. Performance:
- 6 a. Relative Humidity Range: 15 to 95 percent.
 7 b. Relative Humidity Differential: 5 percent.
 8 c. Ambient Temperature: 40 to 135 deg F.
 9 d. Voltage: 120-V ac.
 10 e. Current: 7.2 FLA.
 11 f. Switch Type: SPDT snap switch.
- 12 3. Construction:
- 13 a. Enclosure: Metal, NEMA 250, Type 1.
 14 b. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.

15 2.2 MOISTURE SENSORS AND TRANSMITTERS

- 16 A. Wall-Mounted Humidity Sensors and Transmitters with Digital Display:
- 17 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Vaisala;
 18 HMW90 Series or comparable product by one of the following:
- 19 a. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
 20 b. Siemens.
- 21 2. Performance:
- 22 a. Accuracy including non-linearity, hysteresis, and repeatability: Within 2 percent
 23 from zero to 90 percent relative humidity and within 2.5 percent from 90 to 100
 24 percent relative humidity when operating between 60 to 77 deg F.
 25 b. Relative Humidity Range: Zero to 100 percent.
 26 c. Factory calibrated and NIST traceable with certificate included.
- 27 3. Construction:
- 28 a. Provide housing with integral sensor for room applications.
 29 b. Provide housing with remote sensor probe for ducted applications.
- 30 1) Duct Sensor Body: 300 series stainless steel or chrome-plated aluminum, at
 31 least 2 inches long for duct-mounted applications.
 32 2) Provide sensor with cable for field installation in conduit.
 33 3) For duct-mounted applications, thread the sensor assembly for connection
 34 to a threaded mounting flange.
- 35 c. Provide general-purpose humidity sensor unless application requires special
 36 requirements. Provide sensor with sintered stainless-steel filter for duct
 37 applications.
 38 d. Housing shall be ABS/PC plastic or powder-coated aluminum.
 39 e. Housing Classification: NEMA 250, Type 4 or 4X.



- 1 f. Provide housing with wall-mounting plate.
- 2 4. Output Signal: 2-wire, 4- to 20-mA output signal with a drive capacity of at least 500
- 3 ohms at 24-V dc.
- 4 5. Provide unit with a digital display of relative humidity in percent.
- 5 B. Duct Mounted Humidity Sensor and Transmitter without Display:
- 6 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Vaisala;
- 7 HMD60 Series or comparable product by one of the following:
- 8 a. General Eastern Instruments.
- 9 b. Siemens.
- 10 2. Performance:
- 11 a. Accuracy including non-linearity, hysteresis, and repeatability: Within 2 percent
- 12 from zero to 90 percent relative humidity and within 3 percent from 90 to 95
- 13 percent relative humidity when operating at 68 deg F.
- 14 b. Relative Humidity Range:
- 15 1) Duct: Zero to 100 percent.
- 16 2) Space: Zero to 95 percent relative.
- 17 c. Factory calibrated and NIST traceable with certificate included.
- 18 3. Construction for Space Applications:
- 19 a. Housing with integral sensor.
- 20 b. Housing shall be ABS plastic or powder-coated aluminum.
- 21 c. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.
- 22 d. Provide housing with a wall-mounting plate.
- 23 4. Construction for Duct and Equipment Applications:
- 24 a. Housing with integral sensor.
- 25 b. Duct Sensor Body: 300 series stainless steel.
- 26 c. Provide sensor with sintered stainless-steel filter for duct applications.
- 27 d. Housing shall be cast aluminum.
- 28 e. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.
- 29 5. Output Signal: Two-wire, 4- to 20-mA output signal with drive capacity of at least 500
- 30 ohms at 24-V dc.

31 PART 3 - EXECUTION

32 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 33 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
- 34 and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.



- 1 B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of
2 connections before installation.
- 3 C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- 4 D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

5 3.2 MOISTURE INSTRUMENT APPLICATIONS

- 6 A. Space Humidity Applications: Wall-mounted humidity sensor and transmitter with digital
7 display.
- 8 B. Duct Humidity Applications: Duct-mounted humidity sensor and transmitter without display.

9 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- 10 A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- 11 B. Properly support instruments, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace
12 all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.
- 13 C. Fastening Hardware:
- 14 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods,
15 nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
- 16 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force
17 or by oversized wrenches.
- 18 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- 19 D. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance
20 from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access,
21 confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

22 3.4 ELECTRIC POWER

- 23 A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- 24 B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 26 28 16 "Enclosed
25 Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- 26 C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage
27 Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- 28 D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and
29 Boxes for Electrical Systems."

30 3.5 MOISTURE INSTRUMENTS INSTALLATION

- 31 A. Mounting Location: Rough-in instrument-mounting locations before setting instruments and
32 routing, cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.



- 1 B. Mounting Height:
- 2 1. Mount instruments in user-occupied space to match mounting height of light switches
- 3 unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Mounting height shall comply with codes and
- 4 accessibility requirements.
- 5 2. Mount switches and transmitters located in mechanical equipment rooms and other
- 6 similar space not subject to code, state, and Federal accessibility requirements within a
- 7 range of 42 to 72 inches above the adjacent floor, grade, or service catwalk or platform.
- 8 a. Make every effort to mount at 48 inches.

9 **3.6 IDENTIFICATION**

- 10 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and
- 11 tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at
- 12 points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53
- 13 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 14 B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification.

15 **3.7 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES**

- 16 A. Check installed products before continuity tests and calibration.
- 17 B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- 18 C. Check instruments for proper installation on direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion
- 19 depth, or other applicable considerations that impact performance.

20 **3.8 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING**

- 21 A. Description:
- 22 1. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with
- 23 calibration documentation.
- 24 2. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating
- 25 each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- 26 3. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and
- 27 accuracy.
- 28 4. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall meet instrument manufacturer's
- 29 written instructions.
- 30 5. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
- 31 6. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall
- 32 have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. For example, an
- 33 installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with
- 34 an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
- 35 7. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by
- 36 manufacturer.
- 37 8. If after calibration indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance
- 38 instruments.



- 1 9. Comply with field-testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE
2 Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific
3 requirements, and to supplement requirements indicated.
- 4 B. Analog Signals:
- 5 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100
6 percent.
7 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100
8 percent.
9 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of
10 operating span using a precision-resistance source.
- 11 C. Digital Signals:
- 12 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
13 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact.
- 14 D. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- 15 E. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.
- 16 F. Transmitters:
- 17 1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
18 2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using
19 a precision-resistance source.

20 **3.9 DEMONSTRATION**

- 21 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain instrumentation and
22 control devices.

23 **END OF SECTION 25 09 23.19**



1 **SECTION 25 09 23.22 - POSITION INSTRUMENTS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes position limit switches for use in direct-digital control systems for HVAC.

8 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 9 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 10 1. Include operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories
11 indicating default control signal with loss of power and electrical power requirements.
12 2. Include product description with complete technical data and product specification
13 sheets.

- 14 B. Shop Drawings:

- 15 1. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
16 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
17 connection.
18 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
19 3. Include number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring.

20 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

21 **2.1 POSITION LIMIT SWITCHES**

- 22 A. Description: Select type of actuating head (plunger, roller lever, or rod) to suit application.

- 23 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for
24 intended location and application.

- 25 B. Performance:

- 26 1. Life expectancy: Not less than 30 million mechanical operations and 750,000 electrical
27 operations.
28 2. Operating Frequency: 300 mechanical operations per minute and 30 electrical operations
29 per minute.
30 3. Voltage: 125-, 250-, 480-, and 600-V ac or 8-, 12-, 14-, 24-, 30-, 48-, 125-, and 250-V dc,
31 as required by application.



- 1 4. Current Rating: As required by application.
- 2 5. Temperature Rise: 50 deg C.
- 3 6. Ambient Temperature: 14 to 175 deg F.
- 4 7. Ambient Relative Humidity: 35 to 95 percent.

- 5 C. Construction:

- 6 1. NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure.
- 7 2. Switch Type: SPDT or DPDT, as required by application.
- 8 3. Status indicator integral to switch. Field switchable to light when contacts are actuated
- 9 and operating, or contacts are free and not operating.
- 10 4. Electrical Connection: Screw or plug-in terminals.
- 11 5. Conduit Connection: NPS 1/2.

12 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

13 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 14 A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for
- 15 installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- 16 B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of
- 17 connections before installation.

- 18 C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.

- 19 D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

20 **3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- 21 A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.

- 22 B. Properly support instruments, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace
- 23 all products to prevent lateral movement, sway, or a break in attachment.

- 24 C. Fastening Hardware:

- 25 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods,
- 26 nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
- 27 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not to overstress threads by using
- 28 excessive force or oversized wrenches.
- 29 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.

- 30 D. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit maintenance from floor,
- 31 equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm
- 32 unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

- 33 E. Corrosive Environments:

- 34 1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they are subjected.



- 1 2. If possible, avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments, including, but not
2 limited to:
- 3 a. Laboratory exhaust airstreams.
4 b. Process exhaust airstreams.
- 5 3. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel
6 conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant
7 coating that is suitable for environment.
- 8 4. Where instruments are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant
9 from the manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure
10 constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

11 **3.3 ELECTRICAL POWER**

- 12 A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- 13 B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 26 28 16 "Enclosed
14 Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- 15 C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage
16 Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- 17 D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and
18 Boxes for Electrical Systems."

19 **3.4 POSITION INSTRUMENTS INSTALLATION**

- 20 A. Mounting Location:
- 21 1. Rough-in instrument-mounting locations before setting instruments and routing, cable,
22 wiring, and conduit to final location.
- 23 2. Use manufacturer mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely support
24 and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.
- 25 B. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static-
26 pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated, using neoprene gaskets or grommets.

27 **3.5 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING**

- 28 A. Digital Signals:
- 29 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
30 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact.
- 31 B. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.

32 **END OF SECTION 25 09 23.22**

33



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 25 09 23.23 - PRESSURE INSTRUMENTS**

2 **GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Air-pressure sensors.
9 2. Air-pressure switches.
10 3. Air-pressure transmitters.
11 4. Liquid-pressure switches.
12 5. Liquid-pressure transmitters.

13 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 14 A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:

- 15 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and
16 profiles, and finishes.
17 2. Operating characteristics; electrical characteristics; and furnished accessories indicating
18 process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control
19 signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical
20 power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including
21 temperature and humidity.
22 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product
23 specification sheets.
24 4. Installation instructions, including factors affecting performance.

- 25 B. Shop Drawings:

- 26 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
27 2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
28 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
29 connection.



- 1 3. Number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing
2 ends.

3 **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 4 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For instruments to include in operation and maintenance
5 manuals.

6 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

7 **2.1 AIR-PRESSURE SENSORS**

- 8 A. Duct Insertion Static Pressure Sensor:

- 9 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Dwyer
10 Instruments, Inc ; Model A 301 Series or a comparable product by one of the following:

11 a. MAMAC Systems, Inc.

12 b. Setra System.

13 2. Insertion length shall be at 4 inches (100 mm).

14 3. Sensor with four radial holes of 0.04-inch (1-mm) diameter.

15 4. Brass or stainless-steel construction.

16 5. Sensor with threaded end support, sealing washers and nuts.

17 6. Connection: NPS 1/4 (DN 6) compression fitting.

18 7. Suitable for flat oval, rectangular, and round duct configurations.

- 19 B. Space Static Pressure Sensor for Wall Mounting:

- 20 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Dwyer
21 Instruments, Inc ; Model A420. or a comparable product by one of the following:

22 a. MAMAC Systems, Inc.

23 b. Setra System.

24 c. TSI.

25 d. Veris.

26 2. 100-micron filter mounted in stainless-steel wall plate senses static pressure.

27 3. Wall plate provided with gasket and screws, and sized to fit standard single-gang
28 electrical box.

29 4. Back of sensor plate fitted with brass barbed fitting for tubing connection.



1 **2.2 AIR-PRESSURE SWITCHES**

2 A. Air-Pressure Differential Switch:

- 3 1. Diaphragm operated to actuate an SPDT snap switch.
- 4 a. Fan safety shutdown applications: Switch with manual reset.
- 5 2. Electrical Connections: Three-screw configuration, including one screw for common
- 6 operation and two screws for field-selectable normally open or closed operation.
- 7 3. Enclosure Conduit Connection: Knock out or threaded connection.
- 8 4. User Interface: Screw-type set-point adjustment located inside removable enclosure
- 9 cover.
- 10 5. High and Low Process Connections: Threaded, NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
- 11 6. Enclosure:
- 12 a. Dry Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
- 13 b. Outdoor and Wet Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
- 14 c. Hazardous Environments: Explosion proof.
- 15 7. Operating Data:
- 16 a. Electrical Rating: 15 A at 120- to 480-V ac.
- 17 b. Pressure Limits:
- 18 1) Continuous: 45 inches wg (11.2 kPa).
- 19 2) Surge: 10 psig (68.9 kPa).
- 20 c. Temperature Limits: Minus 30 to 180 deg F (Minus 34 to 82 deg C).
- 21 d. Operating Range: Approximately 2 times set point.
- 22 e. Repeatability: Within 3 percent.
- 23 f. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and
- 24 marked for intended location and application.

25 **2.3 AIR-PRESSURE TRANSMITTERS**

26 A. Air-Pressure Differential Transmitter:

- 27 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Setra
- 28 System; Model 267. or a comparable product by one of the following:



- 1 a. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
- 2 b. Vaisala.
- 3 2. Performance:
 - 4 a. Range: Approximately 2 times set point.
 - 5 b. Accuracy: Within 1 percent of the full-scale range.
 - 6 c. Hysteresis: Within 0.10 percent of full scale.
 - 7 d. Repeatability: Within 0.05 percent of full scale.
 - 8 e. Stability: Within 1 percent of span per year.
 - 9 f. Overpressure: 10 psig (69 kPa).
 - 10 g. Temperature Limits: Zero to 150 deg F (Minus 18 to 66 deg C).
 - 11 h. Compensate Temperature Limits: 40 to 150 deg F (4 to 66 deg C).
 - 12 i. Thermal Effects: 0.033 percent of full scale per degree F.
 - 13 j. Shock and vibration shall not harm the transmitter.
- 14 3. Output Signals:
 - 15 a. Analog Current Signal:
 - 16 1) Two-wire, 4- to 20-mA dc current source.
 - 17 2) Signal capable of operating into 800-ohm load.
 - 18 4. Display: Four-digit digital display with minimum 0.4-inch- (10-mm-) high numeric
 - 19 characters.
 - 20 5. Operator Interface: Zero and span adjustments located behind cover.
 - 21 6. Construction:
 - 22 a. Plastic casing with removable plastic cover.
 - 23 b. Threaded, NPS 1/4 (DN 10) swivel fittings for connection to copper tubing or
 - 24 NPS 3/16 (DN 7) barbed fittings for connection to polyethylene tubing. Fittings on
 - 25 bottom of instrument case.
 - 26 c. Screw terminal block for wire connections.
 - 27 d. Vertical plane mounting.
 - 28 e. NEMA 250, Type 4.



1 f. Provide mounting bracket suitable for installation.

2 **2.4 LIQUID-PRESSURE SWITCHES**

3 A. Liquid Gage Pressure Switch, Diaphragm Operated, Low Pressure:

4 1. Description:

5 a. Diaphragm operated to actuate an SPDT snap switch.

6 b. Electrical Connections: Screw terminal.

7 c. Enclosure Conduit Connection: Knock out or threaded connection.

8 d. User Interface: External screw with visual set-point adjustment.

9 e. Process Connection: Threaded, NPS 1/4 (DN 10).

10 f. Enclosure:

11 1) Dry Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 1.

12 2) Outdoor and Wet Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 4.

13 2. Operating Data:

14 a. Electrical Rating: 15 A at 120-V ac.

15 b. Pressure Limits:

16 1) Range 10 to 125 psig (69 to 862 kPa): 160 psig (1103 kPa).

17 c. Temperature Limits: Minus 30 to 150 deg F (Minus 35 to 66 deg C).

18 d. Operating Range: 10 to 250 psig (69 to 862 kPa).

19 e. Deadband: Fixed.

20 3. Pressure Chamber Material: Stainless steel.

21 4. Diaphragm Material: PTFE.

22 B. Liquid-Pressure Differential Switch with Set-Point Indicator:

23 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Dwyer
24 Instruments, Inc ; Series DP. or a comparable product by one of the following:

25 a. Setra System.

26 2. Description:



- 1 a. Type 316 stainless-steel double opposing bellows operate to actuate a SPDT snap
2 switch.
- 3 b. Electrical Connections: Screw terminal.
- 4 c. Enclosure Conduit Connection: Knock out or threaded connection.
- 5 d. User Interface: Thumbscrew set-point adjustment with enclosed set-point indicator
6 and scale.
- 7 e. High and Low Process Connections: Threaded, NPS 1/8 (DN 3).
- 8 f. Enclosure:
- 9 1) Dry Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
- 10 2) Outdoor and Wet Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
- 11 g. Operating Data:
- 12 1) Electrical Rating: 15 A at 120- to 240-V ac.
- 13 2) Pressure Limits: At least 5 times full-scale range, but not less than system
14 design pressure rating.
- 15 3) Temperature Limits: Minus 10 to 180 deg F (Minus 23 to 82 deg C).
- 16 4) Operating Range: Approximately 2 times set point.
- 17 5) Deadband: Adjustable or fixed as required by application.

18 **2.5 LIQUID-PRESSURE TRANSMITTERS**

- 19 A. Liquid-Pressure Differential Sensor and Transmitter:
- 20 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Setra System
21 ; Model 230. or a comparable product by one of the following:
- 22 a. Ashcroft.
- 23 b. Veris.
- 24 2. Performance:
- 25 a. Range: Approximately 2 times the set point.
- 26 b. Span: Adjustable plus or minus one milliamp, noninteractive.
- 27 c. Accuracy: Within 0.25 percent of full scale.
- 28 d. Hysteresis: Within 0.1 percent of full scale.



- 1 e. Repeatability: Within 0.05 percent of full scale.
- 2 f. Maximum Working Pressure: 250 psig (1724 kPa).
- 3 g. Temperature Limits: Zero to 175 deg F (Minus 18 to 79 deg C).
- 4 h. Compensate Temperature Limits: 30 to 150 deg F (Minus 1 to 66 deg C).
- 5 i. Thermal Effects: 0.02 percent of full scale per degree F.
- 6 j. Response Time: 30 to 50 ms.
- 7 k. Shock and vibration shall not harm the transmitter.
- 8 3. Analog Output Current Signal:
 - 9 a. Two-wire, 4- to 20-mA dc current source.
 - 10 b. Signal capable of operating into 1000-ohm load.
- 11 4. Operator Interface:
 - 12 a. Zero and span adjustments located behind cover.
 - 13 b. Bleed screws on side of body, two screws on low-pressure side, and one screw on
 - 14 high-pressure side, for air in line and pressure cavity.
- 15 5. Display: Digital, LCD display.
- 16 6. Construction:
 - 17 a. Aluminum and stainless-steel enclosure with removable cover.
 - 18 b. Wetted parts of transmitter constructed of 17-4 PH or 300 Series stainless steel.
 - 19 c. Threaded, NPS 1/4 (DN 10) process connections on side of instrument enclosure.
 - 20 d. Knock out for 1/2-inch (15-mm) nominal conduit connection on side of instrument
 - 21 enclosure.
 - 22 e. Screw terminal block for wire connections.
 - 23 f. NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - 24 g. Mounting Bracket: Appropriate for installation.
- 25 7. Provide transmitter with five-valve manifold. Construct manifold of brass, bronze, or
- 26 stainless steel. Provide manifold with NPS 1/4 (DN 10) NPT process connections.
- 27 B. Liquid-Pressure Transmitter Gauge:



- 1 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ashcroft Inc. ;
2 Type 2279. or a comparable product by one of the following.
- 3 a. Terrice, H. O. Co.
- 4 2. Pressure Gauge:
- 5 a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
- 6 b. Case: Solid-front, phenolic or stainless steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) nominal
7 diameter.
- 8 c. Pressure-Element Assembly: 316 stainless steel bourdon tube.
- 9 d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads
10 and bottom-outlet type.
- 11 e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
- 12 f. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated
13 in psi (kPa).
- 14 g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- 15 h. Window: Glass.
- 16 i. Ring: Polypropylene or Stainless steel.
- 17 j. Accuracy: Grade 2A, within 0.5 percent of full scale.
- 18 3. Transmitter:
- 19 a. Performance:
- 20 1) Range: Approximately 2 times the set point.
- 21 2) Span: Adjustable plus or minus one milliamp, noninteractive.
- 22 3) Accuracy: Within 0.5 percent of full scale.
- 23 4) Stability: Within 0.25 percent of full scale.
- 24 5) Maximum Working Pressure: 130 percent of range.
- 25 6) Temperature Limits: Minus 40 to 160 deg F (Minus 40 to 72 deg C).
- 26 7) Thermal Effects: 0.02 percent of full scale per degree F.
- 27 8) Response Time: Less than 1 second.
- 28 9) Shock and vibration shall not harm the transmitter.



- 1 b. Analog Output Current Signal:
- 2 1) Two-wire, 4- to 20-mA dc current source.
- 3 2) Signal capable of operating into 1000-ohm load.
- 4 c. Operator Interface:
- 5 1) Zero and span adjustments located on dial.

6 **2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- 7 A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect assembled pressure instruments, as indicated by instrument
- 8 requirements. Affix standards organization's certification and label.
- 9 B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

10 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

11 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 12 A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for
- 13 installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 14 B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections
- 15 before installation.
- 16 C. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of
- 17 connections before installation.
- 18 D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- 19 E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

20 **3.2 PRESSURE INSTRUMENT APPLICATIONS**

- 21 A. Duct-Mounted Static Pressure Sensors:
- 22 1. Duct insertion static pressure sensor.
- 23 B. Space Static Pressure Sensors:
- 24 1. Space static pressure sensor for wall mounting.
- 25 C. Air-Pressure Differential Switches:
- 26 1. Air-pressure differential switch.
- 27 D. Air-Pressure Differential Transmitters:
- 28 1. Duct Applications: Air-pressure differential transmitter.



- 1 2. Space and Building Applications: Air-pressure differential transmitter.
- 2 E. Liquid Gage Pressure Switches:
- 3 1. Liquid gage pressure switch, diaphragm operated, low pressure.
- 4 F. Liquid-Pressure Differential Switches:
- 5 1. Liquid-pressure differential switch.
- 6 G. Liquid-Pressure Differential Sensors and Transmitters:
- 7 1. Liquid-pressure differential sensor and transmitter.
- 8 **3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**
- 9 A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- 10 B. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements
11 indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement, sway, or a break in attachment.
- 12 C. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, wall openings, and sleeves required by installation. Before
13 proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that
14 could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent
15 condition.
- 16 D. Fastening Hardware:
- 17 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods,
18 nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
- 19 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not to overstress threads by using
20 excessive force or oversized wrenches.
- 21 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- 22 E. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance
23 from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access,
24 confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.
- 25 F. Corrosive Environments:
- 26 1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they are subjected.
- 27 2. If possible, avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments.
- 28 3. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel
29 conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant
30 coating that is suitable for environment.



- 1 4. Where instruments are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant
2 from the manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure
3 constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

4 **3.4 ELECTRICAL POWER**

- 5 A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- 6 B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 26 28 16 "Enclosed
7 Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- 8 C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage
9 Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- 10 D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and
11 Boxes for Electrical Systems."

12 **3.5 PRESSURE INSTRUMENT INSTALLATION**

- 13 A. Mounting Location:
- 14 1. Rough-in: Outline instrument-mounting locations before setting instruments and routing,
15 cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
- 16 2. Install switches and transmitters for air and liquid pressure associated with individual air-
17 handling units and associated connected ductwork and piping near air-handlings units co-
18 located in air-handling unit system control panel, to provide service personnel a single
19 and convenient location for inspection and service.
- 20 3. Install liquid and steam pressure switches and transmitters for indoor applications in
21 mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated
22 specifically on Drawings.
- 23 4. Install air-pressure switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical
24 equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on
25 Drawings.
- 26 5. Mount switches and transmitters not required to be mounted within system control panels
27 on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support
28 frames. Use manufacturer mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely
29 support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.
- 30 6. Install instruments (except pressure gages) in steam, liquid, and liquid-sealed piped
31 services below their process connection point. Slope tubing down to instrument with a
32 slope of 2 percent.
- 33 7. Install instruments in dry gas and non-condensable vapor piped services above their
34 process connection point. Slope process connection lines up to instrument with a
35 minimum slope of 2 percent.
- 36 B. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static
37 pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.



- 1 C. Duct Pressure Sensors:
- 2 1. Install sensors using manufacturer's recommended upstream and downstream distances.
- 3 2. Unless indicated on Drawings, locate sensors approximately 67 percent of distance of
4 longest hydraulic run. Location of sensors shall be submitted and approved before
5 installation.
- 6 3. Install mounting hardware and gaskets to make sensor installation airtight.
- 7 4. Route tubing from the sensor to transmitter.
- 8 5. Use compression fittings at terminations.
- 9 6. Install sensor in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- 10 7. Support sensor to withstand maximum air velocity, turbulence, and vibration encountered
11 to prevent instrument failure.
- 12 D. Outdoor Pressure Sensors:
- 13 1. Install roof-mounted sensor in least-noticeable location and as far away from exterior
14 walls as possible.
- 15 2. Locate wall-mounted sensor in an inconspicuous location.
- 16 3. Submit sensor location for approval before installation.
- 17 4. Verify signal from sensor is stable and consistent to all connected transmitters. Modify
18 installation to achieve proper signal.
- 19 5. Route outdoor signal pipe full size of sensor connection to transmitters. Install branch
20 connection of size required to match to transmitter.
- 21 6. Install sensor signal pipe with dirt leg and drain valve below roof penetration.
- 22 7. Insulate signal pipe with flexible elastomeric insulation as required to prevent
23 condensation.
- 24 8. Connect roof-mounted signal pipe exposed to outdoors to building grounding system.
- 25 E. Air-Pressure Differential Switches:
- 26 1. Install air-pressure sensor in system for each switch connection. Install sensor in an
27 accessible location for inspection and replacement.
- 28 2. A single sensor may be used to share a common signal to multiple pressure instruments.
- 29 3. Install access door in duct and equipment to access sensors that cannot be inspected
30 and replaced from outside.
- 31 4. Route NPS 3/8 (DN 12) tubing from sensor to switch connection.



- 1 5. Do not mount switches on rotating equipment.
- 2 6. Install switches in a location free from vibration, heat, moisture, or adverse effects, which
- 3 could damage the switch and hinder accurate operation.
- 4 7. Install switches in an easily accessible location serviceable from floor.
- 5 8. Install switches adjacent to system control panel if within 50 feet (15 m); otherwise, locate
- 6 switch in vicinity of system connection.
- 7 F. Liquid-Pressure Differential Switches:
- 8 1. Where process connections are located in mechanical equipment room, install switch in
- 9 convenient and accessible location near system control panel.
- 10 2. Where process connections are installed outside mechanical rooms, route processing
- 11 tubing to mechanical room housing system control panel and locate switch near system
- 12 control panel.
- 13 3. Where multiple switches serving same system are installed in same room, install
- 14 switches by system to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for
- 15 inspection and service.
- 16 4. System process tubing connection shall be full size of switch connection, but not less
- 17 than NPS 1/2 (DN 15). Install stainless-steel bushing if required to mate switch to system
- 18 connection.
- 19 5. Connect process tubing from point of system connection and extend to switch.
- 20 6. Install isolation valves in process tubing as close to system connection as practical.
- 21 7. Install dirt leg and drain valve at each switch connection.
- 22 8. Do not mount switches on rotating equipment.
- 23 9. Install switches in a location free from vibration, heat, moisture, or adverse effects, which
- 24 could damage the switch and hinder accurate operation.
- 25 10. Install switches in an easily accessible location serviceable from floor.
- 26 G. Liquid-Pressure Transmitters:
- 27 1. Where process connections are installed in mechanical equipment room, install
- 28 transmitter in convenient and accessible location near system control panel.
- 29 2. Where process connections are installed outside mechanical rooms, route processing
- 30 tubing to mechanical room housing system control panel and locate transmitter near
- 31 system control panel.
- 32 3. Where multiple transmitters serving same system are installed in same room, install
- 33 transmitters by system to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for
- 34 inspection and service.



- 1 4. System process tubing connection shall be full size of switch connection, but not less
2 than NPS 1/2 (DN 15). Install stainless-steel bushing if required to mate switch to system
3 connection.
- 4 5. Connect process tubing from point of system connection and extend to transmitter.
- 5 6. Install isolation valves in process tubing as close to system connection as practical.
- 6 7. Install dirt leg and drain valve at each transmitter connection.
- 7 8. Do not mount transmitters on equipment.
- 8 9. Install in a location free from vibration, heat, moisture, or adverse effects, which could
9 damage and hinder accurate operation.
- 10 **3.6 IDENTIFICATION**
- 11 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and
12 tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at
13 points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53
14 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 15 B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification and on face of ceiling directly
16 below instruments concealed above ceilings.
- 17 **3.7 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES**
- 18 A. Check out installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
- 19 B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- 20 C. Check instruments for proper installation with respect to direction of flow, elevation, orientation,
21 insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that impact performance.
- 22 **3.8 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING**
- 23 A. Description:
- 24 1. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with
25 calibration documentation.
- 26 2. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating
27 each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- 28 3. For each analog instrument, perform a three-point calibration test for both linearity and
29 accuracy.
- 30 4. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall comply with instrument
31 manufacturer's recommendations.
- 32 5. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.



- 1 6. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall
2 have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. For example, an
3 installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with
4 an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
- 5 7. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by
6 manufacturer.
- 7 8. If, after calibration, indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance
8 instruments.
- 9 9. Comply with field-testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE
10 Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific
11 requirements, and to supplement requirements indicated.
- 12 B. Analog Signals:
- 13 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100
14 percent.
- 15 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100
16 percent.
- 17 C. Digital Signals:
- 18 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
- 19 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact.
- 20 D. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of project design values.
- 21 E. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.
- 22 F. Transmitters:
- 23 1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of project design values.

24 **3.9 DEMONSTRATION**

- 25 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain instrumentation and
26 control devices.

27 **END OF SECTION 25 09 23.23**

28



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 25 09 23.27 - TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENTS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Air temperature sensors.
9 2. Air temperature switches.
10 3. Air temperature RTD transmitters.
11 4. Liquid temperature sensors.
12 5. Commercial-grade, liquid temperature transmitters.

13 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 14 A. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

15 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 16 A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:

- 17 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and
18 profiles, and finishes.
19 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating
20 process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control
21 signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical
22 power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including
23 temperature and humidity.
24 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product
25 specification sheets.
26 4. Installation operation and maintenance instructions, including factors affecting
27 performance.

- 28 B. Shop Drawings:

- 29 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
30 2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
31 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
32 connection.
33 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
34 4. Include number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and
35 tubing ends.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 AIR TEMPERATURE SENSORS**

3 A. Platinum RTDs: Common Requirements:

4 1. 100 or 1000 ohms at zero deg C and a temperature coefficient of 0.00385
5 ohm/ohm/deg C.

6 2. Two-wire, PTFE-insulated, 22-gage stranded copper leads.

7 3. Performance Characteristics:

8 a. Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F.

9 b. Interchangeable Accuracy: At 32 deg F within 0.5 deg F.

10 c. Repeatability: Within 0.5 deg F.

11 d. Self-Heating: Negligible.

12 4. Transmitter Requirements:

13 a. Transmitter required for each 100-ohm RTD.

14 b. Transmitter optional for 1000-ohm RTD, contingent on compliance with end-to-end
15 control accuracy.

16 B. Platinum RTD, Single-Point Air Temperature Duct Sensors:

17 1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F

18 2. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.

19 3. Length: As required by application to achieve tip at midpoint of air tunnel, up to 18 inches.

20 4. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications
21 and Type 4 for outdoor applications.

22 5. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.

23 6. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch

24 C. Platinum RTD, Air Temperature Averaging Sensors:

25 1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F

26 2. Multiple sensors to provide average temperature across entire length of sensor.

27 3. Rigid probe of aluminum, brass, copper, or stainless-steel sheath.

28 4. Flexible probe of aluminum, brass, copper, or stainless-steel sheath and formable to a 4-
29 inch radius.

30 5. Length: As required by application to cover entire cross section of air tunnel. Minimum of
31 5 ft. long per 10 sq. ft.

32 6. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications
33 and Type 4 for outdoor applications.

34 7. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.

35 8. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch

36 D. Platinum RTD Outdoor Air Temperature Sensors:

37 1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F

38 2. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.

39 3. Solar Shield: Stainless steel.

40 4. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4 or 4X junction box or combination conduit and outlet box
41 with removable cover and gasket.



- 1 5. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.
- 2 E. Platinum RTD Space Air Temperature Sensors:
- 3 1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 212 deg F
- 4 2. Sensor assembly shall include a temperature sensing element mounted under a bright
- 5 white, non-yellowing, plastic cover.
- 6 3. Provide a mounting plate that is compatible with the surface shape that it is mounted to
- 7 and electrical box used.
- 8 4. Concealed wiring connection.
- 9 F. Space Air Temperature Sensors for Use with DDC Controllers Controlling Terminal Units:
- 10 1. Platinum RTD.
- 11 2. Temperature Transmitter Requirements:
- 12 a. Mating transmitter required with each 100-ohm RTD.
- 13 b. Mating transmitters optional for 1000-ohm RTD, contingent on compliance with
- 14 end-to-end control accuracy.
- 15 3. Provide digital display of sensed temperature.
- 16 4. Provide sensor with local control.
- 17 a. Local override to turn HVAC on.
- 18 b. Local adjustment of temperature set point.
- 19 c. Both features shall be capable of manual override through control system operator.

20 **2.2 AIR TEMPERATURE SWITCHES**

- 21 A. Thermostat and Switch for Low Temperature Control in Duct Applications:
- 22 1. Description:
- 23 a. Two-position control.
- 24 b. Field-adjustable set point.
- 25 c. Manual reset.
- 26 d. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and
- 27 marked for intended location and application.
- 28 2. Performance:
- 29 a. Operating Temperature Range: 15 to 55 deg F.
- 30 b. Temperature Differential: 5 deg F, non-adjustable and additive.
- 31 c. Enclosure Ambient Temperature: Minus 20 to 140 deg F.
- 32 d. Sensing Element Maximum Temperature: 250 deg F.
- 33 e. Voltage: 120-V ac.
- 34 f. Current: 16 FLA.
- 35 g. Switch Type: Two SPDT snap switches operate on coldest 12-inch section along
- 36 element length.
- 37 3. Construction:



- 1 a. Vapor-Filled Sensing Element: Nominal 20 feetlong. Minimum of 5 ft. long per 10
 2 sq. ft.
 3 b. Dual Temperature Scale: Fahrenheit and Celsius visible on face.
 4 c. Set-Point Adjustment: Screw.
 5 d. Enclosure: Painted metal, NEMA 250, Type 1.
 6 e. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
 7 f. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.
- 8 B. Thermostat and Switch for High Temperature Control in Duct Applications:
- 9 1. Source Limitations: Obtain temperature-measuring sensors and transmitters and airflow
 10 from single manufacturer.
 11 2. Description:
- 12 a. Two-position control.
 13 b. Field-adjustable set point.
 14 c. Manual reset.
 15 d. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and
 16 marked for intended location and application.
- 17 3. Performance:
- 18 a. Temperature Range: 100 to 160 deg F.
 19 b. Temperature Differential: 5 deg F.
 20 c. Ambient Temperature: Zero to 260 deg F.
 21 d. Voltage: 120-V ac.
 22 e. Current: 16 FLA.
 23 f. Switch Type: SPDT snap switch.
- 24 4. Construction:
- 25 a. Sensing Element: Helical bimetal.
 26 b. Enclosure: Metal, NEMA 250, Type 1.
 27 c. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
 28 d. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.
- 29 **2.3 AIR TEMPERATURE RTD TRANSMITTERS**
- 30 A. Source Limitations: Obtain temperature-measuring sensors and transmitters and airflow from
 31 single manufacturer.
- 32 B. House electronics in NEMA 250 enclosure.
- 33 1. Duct: Type 1.
 34 2. Outdoor: Type 4 or Type 4X.
 35 3. Space: Type 1.
- 36 C. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch
- 37 D. Functional Characteristics:
- 38 1. Input:



- 1 a. 100-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two-
2 wire sensors.
- 3 b. 1000-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two-
4 wire sensors.
- 5 2. Span (Adjustable):
- 6 a. Space: 40 to 90 deg F.
- 7 b. Supply Air: 40 to 120 deg F.
- 8 c. Exhaust Air: 50 to 100 deg F.
- 9 d. Return Air: 50 to 100 deg F.
- 10 e. Mixed Air: Minus 40 to 140 deg F.
- 11 f. Outdoor: Minus 40 to 140 deg F.
- 12 3. Output: 4- to 20-mA dc, linear with temperature; RFI insensitive; minimum drive load of
13 600 ohms at 24-V dc .
- 14 4. Zero and span field adjustments, plus or minus 5 percent of span. Minimum span of 50
15 deg F.
- 16 5. Match sensor with temperature transmitter and factory calibrate together.
- 17 E. Performance Characteristics:
- 18 1. Calibration Accuracy: Within 0.1 percent of the span.
- 19 2. Stability: Within 0.2 percent of the span for at least 6 months.
- 20 3. Combined Accuracy: Within 0.5 percent.

21 2.4 LIQUID TEMPERATURE SENSORS, COMMERCIAL GRADE

- 22 A. RTD:
- 23 1. Description:
- 24 a. Platinum with a value of 100 or 1000 ohms at zero deg C and a temperature
25 coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C.
- 26 b. Encase RTD in a stainless-steel sheath with a 0.25-inch OD.
- 27 c. Sensor Length: Minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches as required by application.
- 28 d. Process Connection: Threaded, NPS 1/2
- 29 e. Two-stranded copper lead wires.
- 30 f. Powder-coated steel enclosure, NEMA 250, Type 4.
- 31 g. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch
- 32 h. Performance Characteristics:
- 33 1) Range: Minus 40 to 210 deg F.
- 34 2) Interchangeable Accuracy: Within 0.54 deg F at 32 deg F.
- 35 B. Thermowells:
- 36 1. Stem: Straight or stepped shank formed from solid bar stock.
- 37 2. Material: Stainless steel.
- 38 3. Process Connection: Threaded, NPS 3/4.
- 39 4. Sensor Connection: Threaded, NPS 1/2.
- 40 5. Bore: Sized to accommodate sensor with tight tolerance between sensor and well.
- 41 6. Furnish thermowells installed in insulated pipes and equipment with an extended neck.



- 1 7. Length: Minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches as required by application.
 2 8. Thermowells furnished with heat-transfer compound to eliminate air gap between wall of
 3 sensor and thermowell and to reduce time constant.

4 **2.5 LIQUID TEMPERATURE TRANSMITTERS, COMMERCIAL GRADE**

5 A. House electronics in NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X enclosure.

6 B. Enclosure Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.

7 C. Functional Characteristics:

8 1. Input: 100-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two-
 9 wire sensors.

10 2. Default Span (Adjustable):

11 a. Chilled Water: Zero to 100 deg F.

12 3. Output: 4- to 20-mA dc, linear with temperature; RFI insensitive; minimum drive load of
 13 600 ohms at 24-V dc.

14 4. Zero and span field adjustments, plus or minus 5 percent of span. Minimum span of 50
 15 deg F.

16 5. Match sensor with temperature transmitter and factory calibrate together. Each matched
 17 sensor and transmitter set shall include factory calibration data traceable to NIST.

18 D. Performance Characteristics:

19 1. Calibration Accuracy: Within 0.1 percent of the span.

20 2. Stability: Within 0.2 percent of the span for at least 6 months.

21 3. Combined Accuracy: Within 0.5 percent.

22 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

23 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

24 A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances
 25 and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

26 B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections
 27 before installation.

28 C. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of
 29 connections before installation.

30 D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.

31 E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



1 **3.2 TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENT APPLICATIONS**

- 2 A. Air Temperature Sensors: Platinum RTD.
- 3 B. Air Temperature Transmitters: RTD transmitter.
- 4 C. Liquid Temperature Sensors:
- 5 1. Chilled-Water System: Commercial grade.
- 6 D. Liquid and Temperature Transmitters: Commercial grade.

7 **3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- 8 A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- 9 B. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements
10 indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.
- 11 C. Fastening Hardware:
- 12 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods,
13 nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
- 14 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force
15 or by oversized wrenches.
- 16 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- 17 D. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance
18 from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access,
19 confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

20 **3.4 ELECTRIC POWER**

- 21 A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- 22 B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 26 28 16 "Enclosed
23 Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- 24 C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage
25 Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- 26 D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and
27 Boxes for Electrical Systems."

28 **3.5 TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENT INSTALLATIONS**

- 29 A. Mounting Location:
- 30 1. Roughing In:



- 1 a. Outline instrument mounting locations before setting instruments and routing
2 cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
- 3 b. Provide independent inspection to confirm that proposed mounting locations
4 comply with requirements indicated and approved submittals.
- 5 1) Indicate dimensioned locations with mounting height for all surface-mounted
6 products on Shop Drawings.
- 7 2) Do not begin installation without submittal approval of mounting location.
- 8 c. Complete installation rough-in only after confirmation by independent inspection is
9 complete and approval of location is documented for review by Owner and
10 Architect on request.
- 11 2. Install switches and transmitters for air and liquid temperature associated with individual
12 air-handling units and associated connected ductwork and piping near air-handling units
13 co-located in air-handling unit system control panel to provide service personnel a single
14 and convenient location for inspection and service.
- 15 3. Install liquid temperature switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical
16 equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on
17 Drawings.
- 18 4. Install air temperature switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical
19 equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on
20 Drawings.
- 21 5. Mount switches and transmitters on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or
22 floor-supported structural support frames. Use manufacturer's mounting brackets to
23 accommodate field mounting. Securely support and brace products to prevent vibration
24 and movement.
- 25 B. Special Mounting Requirements:
- 26 1. Protect products installed outdoors from solar radiation, building and wind effect with
27 stand-offs and shields constructed of Type 316 stainless.
- 28 2. Temperature instruments having performance impacted by temperature of mounting
29 substrate shall be isolated with an insulating barrier located between instrument and
30 substrate to eliminate effect. Where instruments requiring insulation are located in
31 finished space, conceal insulating barrier in a cover matching the instrument cover.
- 32 C. Mounting Height:
- 33 1. Mount temperature instruments in user-occupied space to match mounting height of light
34 switches unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Mounting height shall comply with
35 codes and accessibility requirements.
- 36 2. Mount switches and transmitters located in mechanical equipment rooms and other
37 similar space not subject to code or state and Federal accessibility requirements within a
38 range of 42 to 72 inches above the adjacent floor, grade, or service catwalk or platform.
- 39 a. Make every effort to mount at 48 inches.
- 40 D. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static-
41 pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.
- 42 E. Space Temperature Sensor Installation:



- 1 1. Conceal assembly in an electrical box of sufficient size to house sensor and transmitter, if
2 provided.
- 3 2. Install electrical box with a faceplate to match sensor cover if sensor cover does not
4 completely cover electrical box.
- 5 3. In finished areas, recess electrical box within wall.
- 6 4. In unfinished areas, electrical box may be surface mounted if electrical light switches are
7 surface mounted. Use a cast-aluminum electric box for surface-mounted installations.
- 8 5. Align electrical box with other electrical devices such as visual alarms and light switches
9 located in the vicinity to provide a neat and well-thought-out arrangement. Where
10 possible, align in both horizontal and vertical axis.
- 11 F. Outdoor Air Temperature Sensor Installation:
- 12 1. Mount sensor in a discrete location facing north.
- 13 2. Protect installed sensor from solar radiation and other influences that could impact
14 performance.
- 15 3. If required to have a transmitter, mount transmitter remote from sensor in an accessible
16 and serviceable location indoors.
- 17 G. Single-Point Duct Temperature Sensor Installation:
- 18 1. Install single-point-type, duct-mounted, supply- and return-air temperature sensors. Install
19 sensors in ducts with sensitive portion of the element installed in center of duct cross
20 section and located to sense near average temperature. Do not exceed 24 inches in
21 sensor length.
- 22 2. Install return-air sensor in location that senses return-air temperature without influence
23 from outdoor or mixed air.
- 24 3. Rigidly support sensor to duct and seal penetration airtight.
- 25 4. If required to have transmitter, mount transmitter remote from sensor at accessible and
26 serviceable location.
- 27 H. Averaging Duct Temperature Sensor Installation:
- 28 1. Install averaging-type air temperature sensor for temperature sensors located within air-
29 handling units, similar equipment, and large ducts with air tunnel cross-sectional area of 9
30 sq. ft. and larger.
- 31 2. Install sensor length to maintain coverage over entire cross-sectional area. Install multiple
32 sensors where required to maintain the minimum coverage.
- 33 3. Fasten and support sensor with manufacturer-furnished clips to keep sensor taut
34 throughout entire length.
- 35 4. If required to have transmitter, mount transmitter in an accessible and serviceable
36 location.
- 37 I. Low-Limit Air Temperature Switch Installation:
- 38 1. Install multiple low-limit switches to maintain coverage over entire cross-sectional area of
39 air tunnel.
- 40 2. Fasten and support sensing element with manufacturer-furnished clips to keep element
41 taut throughout entire length.
- 42 3. Mount switches outside of airstream at a location and mounting height to provide easy
43 access for switch set-point adjustment and manual reset.
- 44 4. Install on entering side of cooling coil unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- 45 J. Liquid Temperature Sensor Installation:



- 1 1. Assembly shall include sensor, thermowell and connection head.
- 2 2. For pipe NPS 4 and larger, install sensor and thermowell length to extend into pipe
- 3 between 50 to 75 percent of pipe cross section.
- 4 3. For pipe smaller than NPS 4:
 - 5 a. Install reducers to increase pipe size to NPS 4at point of thermowell installation.
 - 6 b. For pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3, thermowell and sensor may be installed at
 - 7 pipe elbow or tee to achieve manufacturer-recommended immersion depth in lieu
 - 8 of increasing pipe size.
 - 9 c. Minimum insertion depth shall be 2-1/2 inches.
- 10 4. Install matching thermowell.
- 11 5. Fill thermowell with heat-transfer fluid before inserting sensor.
- 12 6. Tip of spring-loaded sensors shall contact inside of thermowell.
- 13 7. For insulated piping, install thermowells with extension neck to extend beyond face of
- 14 insulation.
- 15 8. Install thermowell in top dead center of horizontal pipe positioned in an accessible
- 16 location to allow for inspection and replacement. If top dead center location is not
- 17 possible due to field constraints, install thermowell at location along top half of pipe.
- 18 9. For applications with transmitters, mount transmitter remote from sensor in an accessible
- 19 and serviceable location from floor, service platform, or catwalk.

20 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- 21 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and
- 22 tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at
- 23 points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53
- 24 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

25 3.7 CLEANING

- 26 A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign
- 27 materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.
- 28 B. Wash and shine glazing.
- 29 C. Polish glossy surfaces to a clean shine.

30 3.8 CHECK-OUT PROCEDURES

- 31 A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
- 32 B. Check temperature instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- 33 C. Verify sensing element type and proper material.
- 34 D. Verify location and length.
- 35 E. Verify that wiring is correct and secure.



1 **3.9 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING**

2 A. Description:

- 3 1. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with
4 calibration documentation.
- 5 2. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating
6 each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- 7 3. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and
8 accuracy.
- 9 4. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall meet instrument manufacturer's
10 written instructions.
- 11 5. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
- 12 6. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall
13 have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. For example, an
14 installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with
15 an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
- 16 7. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by
17 manufacturer.
- 18 8. If after calibration indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance
19 instruments.
- 20 9. Comply with field-testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE
21 Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific
22 requirements and to supplement requirements indicated.

23 B. Analog Signals:

- 24 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100
25 percent.
- 26 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100
27 percent.
- 28 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of
29 operating span using a precision-resistance source.

30 C. Digital Signals:

- 31 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
- 32 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact.

33 D. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

34 E. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.

35 F. Transmitters:

- 36 1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- 37 2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using
38 a precision-resistance source.

39 **3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

40 A. Perform the following tests and inspections:



- 1 1. Perform according to manufacturer's written instruction.
- 2 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
- 3 equipment.

4 B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

5 **3.11 DEMONSTRATION**

- 6 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain temperature
- 7 instruments.

8 **END OF SECTION 25 09 23.27**



1 **SECTION 26 01 00 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 6 B. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 26 Specification Sections.

7 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 8 A. Section includes basic requirements for electrical systems.

9 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 10 A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" unless otherwise further
11 described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in
12 nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and
13 having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 14 B. Furnish: Supply and deliver to project site, ready for subsequent requirements.
- 15 C. Install: Operations at project site, including unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing,
16 anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar
17 requirements.
- 18 D. Provide: Furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use.
- 19 E. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of
20 subsequent work.
- 21 F. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after
22 installation of subsequent work.
- 23 G. Concealed Work: Work hidden from view, including inside chases, furred spaces, or above
24 ceilings.
- 25 H. Exposed Work: Work open to view, including inside mechanical and equipment rooms.

26 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 27 A. General:
- 28 1. It is the intent of the plans and specifications to obtain a complete, operable and
29 satisfactory installation.



- 1 2. All materials shall be new, be properly labeled and/or identified and be in full compliance
2 with the contract documents.
3 3. All work shall comply with applicable Codes and Standards.
4 4. Manufacturer's model names and numbers used in these specifications are subject to
5 change per manufacturer's action. Contractor shall therefore verify them with
6 manufacturer's representative before ordering any product or equipment
- 7 B. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment manufactured in the U.S.A. Where two or
8 more units of the same type or class of equipment are required provide units of a single
9 manufacturer.
- 10 **1.5 CODES AND STANDARDS**
- 11 A. Perform work in accordance with the following codes and any applicable statutes, ordinances,
12 codes, and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.
- 13 1. ASHRAE
- 14 a. Standard 90.1 Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low Rise Residential
15 Buildings - 2019
- 16 2. ASME
- 17 a. ASME A17.1 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators - 2019
- 18 3. Occupational Safety and Health Regulations (OSHA).
19 4. National Fire Codes
- 20 a. NFPA 1 Fire Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
21 b. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code – 2020
22 c. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code - 2019
23 d. NFPA 75 Standard for the Fire Protection of Information Technology
24 Equipment – 2020
25 e. NFPA 76 Standard for the Fire Protection of Telecommunications Facilities –
26 2020
27 f. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
- 28 5. Florida Building Code, 2023 Edition
- 29 a. Building Code
30 b. Energy Conservation Code
31 c. Mechanical Code
32 d. Plumbing Code
33 e. Fuel Gas Code
34 f. Accessibility Code
- 35 6. Florida Statutes
- 36 a. Chapter 471 Engineering
37 b. Chapter 533.80 Building Construction Standards; Florida Building Code -
38 Enforcement
- 39 7. Florida Administrative Code



- 1 a. Chapter 9B-7 Florida Building Commission Handicapped Accessibility
Standards
- 2
- 3 b. Chapter 61C-5 Florida Elevator Safety Code
- 4 c. Chapter 61G15-33 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning
the Design of Electrical Systems
- 5
- 6 d. Chapter 69A-3 Fire Prevention – General Provisions
- 7 e. Chapter 69A-47 Uniform Fire Safety Standards for Elevators
- 8 f. Chapter 69A-60 The Florida Fire Prevention Code
- 9 8. ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings (ADAAG)
- 10 B. Resolve, in writing, any code violation discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior
to bidding. After award of the contract, make any correction or addition necessary for
11 compliance with applicable codes at no additional cost to Owner.
12
- 13 C. The Contractor shall include in the Work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials,
14 services, apparatus, and drawings required to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances,
15 rules, and regulations.
- 16 D. Where there is conflict between the Contract Documents and the applicable Codes, the Codes
17 shall govern, except where the requirements of the Contract Documents are more stringent.

18 1.6 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS

- 19 A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or
20 NEC Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with latest
21 editions, revisions, amendments, or supplements in effect on date bids are received.
22 Specifications and standards are minimum requirements for all equipment, material and work.
23 In instances where capacities, size or other feature of equipment, devices or materials exceed
24 these minimums, meet listed or shown capacities.
- 25 B. Whenever a reference is made to a standard, installation and materials shall comply with the
26 latest published edition of the standard at the time project is bid unless otherwise specified
27 herein

28 1.7 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- 29 A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a
30 design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide
31 products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

32 1.8 PERMITS FEES AND INSPECTIONS

- 33 A. Obtain and pay for all permits, fees, tap fees, connection charges, demand charges, systems
34 charges, impact fees, and inspections.
- 35 B. Deliver all certificates of inspection issued by authorities having jurisdiction to the Engineer.

36 1.9 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS



- 1 A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or
 2 requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting
 3 requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent
 4 requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Engineer
 5 for direction before proceeding.
- 6 1. If discrepancies or conflicts occur between drawings, or between drawings and
 7 specifications, notify the Engineer in writing prior to bid date; however, the most stringent
 8 requirement shall govern.
- 9 B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the
 10 minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum
 11 quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply
 12 with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate,
 13 for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Engineer for a decision before
 14 proceeding.
- 15 **1.10 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)**
- 16 A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or
 17 interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the
 18 form specified.
- 19 1. Engineer will return without response those RFIs submitted to Engineer by other entities
 20 controlled by Contractor.
 21 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or
 22 work of subcontractors.
- 23 B. Prepare RFIs as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or
 24 web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All**
 25 **electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be**
 26 **transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals
 27 shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
- 28 C. Engineer's Action: Engineer will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow
 29 seven days for Engineer's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m.
 30 Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
- 31 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
- 32 a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 33 b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 34 c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 35 d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract
 36 Documents.
 37 e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 38 f. Requests for interpretation of Engineer's actions on submittals.
 39 g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
- 40 2. Engineer's action may include a request for additional information, in which case
 41 Engineer's time for response will date from time of receipt by Engineer of additional
 42 information.



1 **1.11 SUBMITTALS**

2 A. Submittals (including Product Data, Shop Drawings, and any other Action Submittal or
3 Information Submittal) will only be reviewed if they are submitted in full accordance with the
4 General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:

- 5 1. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of
6 submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- 7 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless
8 partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved by the Engineer.
- 9 3. Submittals shall only contain relevant product data. Remove or strikeout irrelevant
10 product data.
- 11 4. Prepare submittals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through
12 email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification
13 Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to**
14 **inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email**
15 **addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF
16 format and not a scanned copy.
- 17 5. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Engineer.
- 18 6. Deviations: Clearly identify deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents,
19 including minor variations and limitations.
- 20 7. Revisions: Include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those
21 specifically requested by Engineer on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on
22 each submittal or noting on attached submittal sheet.
- 23 8. Contractor's Review:
- 24 a. Submittals shall have been reviewed and approved by the General Contractor /
25 Construction Manager. Include approval stamp, name of reviewer, date of
26 Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed,
27 checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
- 28 b. Engineer will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have
29 Contractor's review and approval.
- 30 9. Electrical Modifications:
- 31 a. The electrical design indicated on the plans supports the Basis of Design
32 specifications for the HVAC, plumbing, and fire-suppression systems at the time of
33 design.
- 34 b. If HVAC, plumbing, or fire-suppression equipment is submitted with different
35 electrical requirements, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to resolve all
36 required electrical design changes, including, but not limited to: wire and conduit
37 size, type or size of disconnect or overload protection, breaker coordination,
38 point(s) of connection, etc. Any corrections required shall be provided at no
39 additional cost.
- 40 c. Submittal shall clearly show the electrical design revisions with a written statement
41 that this change will be provided at no additional cost. Submittals made with no
42 written reference to the electrical design revisions will be presumed to work with
43 the electrical design.
- 44 B. Processing Time: Time of review shall commence on Engineer's receipt of submittal. No
45 extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of the failure to transmit submittals
46 enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.



- 1 1. Allow not less than 15 days for submittal review. Allow not less than 21 days for review
 2 of large or complex submittals. Submittals received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern
 3 Time will be considered as received the following working day.
 4 2. If Contractor transmits more than five submittals over two consecutive business days,
 5 review time shall increase by no less than 7 days for submittal review.
 6 3. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Engineer will
 7 advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 8 4. Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with
 9 other submittals until related submittals are received. Time of review shall commence on
 10 receipt of all other related submittals.

- 11 C. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the
 12 contract documents by the Engineer's approval of shop drawings, product data, samples, or
 13 similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Engineer in writing of such
 14 deviation at the time of submittal, and the Engineer has given written approval to the specific
 15 deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in shop
 16 drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals by the Engineer's approval thereof.

17 1.12 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- 18 A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in
 19 individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop
 20 Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is
 21 required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than
 22 one entity.
- 23 1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to
 24 indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed
 25 data. Include the following information, as applicable:
- 26 a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings.
 27 Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of
 28 various systems and components.
- 29 b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings by
 30 multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the
 31 information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before
 32 submitting for review.
- 33 c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural,
 34 structural, civil, fire protection, mechanical, electrical, and communication systems.
- 35 d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated
 36 replacement of components during the life of the installation.
- 37 e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers,
 38 valves, pull boxes, junction boxes, and other controls.
- 39 f. Indicate required installation sequences.
- 40 g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear
 41 to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements.
 42 Provide alternative sketches to Engineer indicating proposed resolution of such
 43 conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered
 44 changes to the Contract.
- 45 B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
- 46 1. Floor Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and Work associated with
 47 Divisions 21 through 29, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and



- 1 coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved. Supplement
 2 plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
- 3 a. Mechanical Systems (Divisions 21, 22, 23, 25):
- 4 1) Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork and piping runs, including
 5 insulation, heat tracing, bracing, flanges, and support systems. Indicate
 6 proposed changes to layout.
- 7 2) Locations and sizes of major equipment and components.
- 8 3) Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
- 9 4) Structural members to which ductwork and piping will be attached or
 10 suspended from.
- 11 b. Electrical and Communication Systems (Divisions 25, 26, 27, 28, 29):
- 12 1) Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
- 13 2) Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other
 14 fire-alarm locations.
- 15 3) Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and
 16 motor-control center locations.
- 17 4) Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center
 18 lines.
- 19 5) Structural members to which luminaire and equipment will be attached or
 20 suspended from.
- 21 6) Lightning protection system components attaching to or penetrating through
 22 the roofing and moisture protection systems, coordinated with the roofing
 23 system manufacturer.
- 24 7) Cable tray layout, offsets, transitions, clearances, elevations, and
 25 relationships between components and adjacent structural, mechanical and
 26 electrical elements.
- 27 2. Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show locations of visible devices mounted to, suspended from,
 28 or penetrating through the ceiling, relative to the finished ceiling, including the following:
- 29 a. Fire suppression sprinklers and nozzles.
- 30 b. Luminaires (Lighting fixtures).
- 31 c. Lighting control devices.
- 32 d. Speakers.
- 33 e. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
- 34 f. Access control devices.
- 35 g. Video surveillance devices.
- 36 h. Fire alarm devices.
- 37 i. Access panels.
- 38 j. Perimeter moldings.
- 39 k. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of
 40 the plane of the ceiling.
- 41 3. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, equipment
 42 for Divisions 21 through 29, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to
 43 accommodate layout of components indicated on Drawings for Divisions 21 through 29.
 44 Indicate areas of conflict between components of Divisions 21 through 29.
- 45 4. Equipment Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for equipment rooms showing plans
 46 and elevations of equipment for Divisions 21 through 29.
- 47 5. Penetrations: Indicate locations of penetrations and openings in structural components,
 48 smoke barriers, and fire-rated construction.



- 1 6. Review: Engineer will review coordination drawings to confirm that in general the Work is
 2 being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's
 3 responsibility. If Engineer determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared
 4 in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Engineer will so inform Contractor,
 5 who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
- 6 C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following
 7 requirements:
- 8 1. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.
 9 2. BIM File Incorporation: Develop and incorporate coordination drawing files into BIM
 10 established for Project.
- 11 a. Perform three-dimensional component conflict analysis as part of preparation of
 12 coordination drawings. Resolve component conflicts prior to submittal. Indicate
 13 where conflict resolution requires modification of design requirements by Engineer.
- 14 3. Engineer will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in
 15 preparing coordination digital data files.
- 16 a. Engineer makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital
 17 data files as they relate to Drawings.
 18 b. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form
 19 acceptable to Engineer.

20 1.13 SUBSTITUTIONS

- 21 A. By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment
 22 described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are
 23 encouraged to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the
 24 Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.
- 25 B. Substitution Requests shall include, at a minimum:
- 26 1. Statement indicating why specified material, equipment, or installation method cannot be
 27 provided, if applicable.
 28 2. Coordination of information, including a list of changes and revisions needed to other
 29 parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that
 30 will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 31 3. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the
 32 Work specified. Include an annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant
 33 qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual
 34 effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and
 35 requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 36 4. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and
 37 installation procedures.
 38 5. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions
 39 with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If
 40 specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time,
 41 include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of
 42 purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 43 6. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.



- 1 7. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the
 2 Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with
 3 related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
- 4 8. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become
 5 necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- 6 C. Procurement Substitution Requests submitted prior to receipt of bids will be received and
 7 considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Engineer;
 8 otherwise, requests will be returned without action:
- 9 1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment are received no later than 10 days
 10 prior to date of bid opening.
- 11 2. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
- 12 3. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents,
 13 including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
- 14 4. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- 15 D. Substitutions for Cause, as required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of
 16 product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms will be received and
 17 considered by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests
 18 will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- 19 1. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce
 20 indicated results.
- 21 2. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- 22 3. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having
 23 jurisdiction.
- 24 4. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- 25 5. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- 26 6. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- 27 7. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has
 28 been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible
 29 with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- 30 E. Substitutions for Convenience, not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may
 31 offer advantage to Contractor or Owner, will be received and considered by Owner, as
 32 determined by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests
 33 will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- 34 1. Requested substitution is received within 60 days after the Notice of Award.
- 35 2. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy
 36 conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner
 37 must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Engineer
 38 for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and
 39 similar considerations.
- 40 3. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
- 41 4. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce
 42 indicated results.
- 43 5. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- 44 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having
 45 jurisdiction.
- 46 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- 47 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- 48 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.



1 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has
 2 been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible
 3 with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

4 F. If a requested substitution is approved but contains differences or omissions not specifically
 5 identified to the attention of the Engineer in the substitution request, the Owner reserves the
 6 right to require equal or similar features to be added to the substituted products or to have the
 7 substituted products replaced at the Contractor's expense.

8 **1.14 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

9 A. Recording: Maintain one copy of the Contract Documents and Shop Drawings during the
 10 construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to
 11 project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

12 B. Preparation:

13 1. Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings:

- 14 a. Mark revisions to show where the actual installation varies from that shown
 15 originally.
- 16 b. Mark record sets completely and accurately, including important information that
 17 was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
- 18 c. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish
 19 between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
- 20 d. Record underground and under-slab piping installed, dimensioning exact location
 21 and elevation of piping.

22 2. Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies
 23 from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.

24 3. Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies
 25 substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

26 C. Deliver: Prior to Final Completion, provide record documents to Owner as indicated below:

- 27 1. Record Drawings: Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of
 28 prints.
- 29 2. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications,
 30 including addenda and contract modifications.
- 31 3. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each
 32 submittal.
- 33 4. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Submit annotated PDF electronic files directories of
 34 each submittal.

35 **1.15 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

36 A. Prepare and submit a comprehensive manual of emergency, operation, and maintenance data
 37 and materials in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01,
 38 and the following:



- 1 1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating
 2 operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part
 3 of a system, including:
- 4 a. Information required for daily operation and management, operating standards,
 5 and routine and special operating procedures.
 6 b. Manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventative maintenance
 7 procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, list of
 8 spare parts, and warranty information.
- 9 2. Submit manuals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through
 10 email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification
 11 Sections. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

12 **1.16 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

- 13 A. Prepare and provide services of qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust,
 14 operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not a part of a system in
 15 accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, individual
 16 Specification Sections, and the following:
- 17 1. Demonstration and training shall occur upon completion of the Work and at a time
 18 designated by the Owner's representative.
 19 2. Provide a high-resolution, digital video recording of each training session to the Owner.

20 **1.17 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 21 A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage,
 22 deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written
 23 instructions.
- 24 B. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to
 25 determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

26 **1.18 WARRANTY**

- 27 A. Warranty work and equipment within specified warranty period. During the warranty period,
 28 provide labor and materials to make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to
 29 defects or omissions in materials or workmanship without expense to the Owner.
- 30 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
- 31 B. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other
 32 warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on
 33 product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of Contract
 34 Documents.
- 35 C. Owner reserves the right to make emergency repairs as required to keep equipment in
 36 operation without voiding Contractor's Guarantee Bond nor relieving the Contractor of
 37 responsibilities during the warranty period.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NONE)**

2 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3 **3.1 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Examine all drawings and specifications carefully before submitting a bid. Architectural
5 drawings take precedence over mechanical or electrical drawings with reference to building
6 construction.
- 7 B. For purposes of clearness and legibility, drawings are essentially diagrammatic and, although
8 size and location of equipment are drawn to scale wherever possible, Contractor shall make use
9 of all data in all of the contract documents and shall verify this information at the building site.
- 10 C. The drawings indicate required size and points of termination of pipes, conduits, and ducts and
11 suggest proper routes to conform to structure avoid obstructions and preserve clearances.
12 However, it is not intended that drawings indicate all necessary offsets, and it shall be the
13 responsibility of the Contractor to make the installation in such a manner as to conform to
14 structure, avoid obstructions, preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear,
15 without further instructions or cost to the Owner.
- 16 D. Furnish, install and/or connect with appropriate services all items shown on any drawing without
17 additional compensation.
- 18 E. Any and all questions about a subcontractor's scope of work responsibility shall be addressed to
19 and answered by the General Contractor / Construction Manager.
- 20 F. Questions About Construction Documents: Any and all questions shall be submitted through
21 the proper channels IN WRITING and, in turn, shall be answered by the Engineer in writing. All
22 telephone conversations shall be considered unofficial and, as such, shall not be considered
23 official or binding responses to Contractor's questions.
- 24 G. Drawings, specifications, or other documents issued by the Engineer in electronic format and/or
25 electronic media are provided for convenience only and are not intended for use as Contract
26 Documents.
- 27 1. The electronic files are provided merely as a convenience to the Recipient.
- 28 2. The electronic files do not replace or supplement the paper copies of any drawings,
29 specifications, or other documents included in the Contract Documents for use on the
30 project.
- 31 3. The Engineer makes no representation, warranty, or guarantee that electronic files:
- 32 a. Are suitable for any other usage or purpose.
- 33 b. Have any particular durability.
- 34 c. Will not damage or impair the Recipient's computer or software.
- 35 d. Contain no errors or mechanical flaws or other discrepancies that may render them
36 unsuitable for the purpose intended by the Recipient.
- 37 4. Due to the unsecured nature of the electronic files and the inability of Engineer or the
38 Recipient to establish controls over their use, the Engineer assumes no responsibility for
39 any consequences arising out of the use of the data. It is the sole responsibility of the
40 Recipient to check the validity of all information contained therein. The Recipient shall at



1 all times refer to the signed and sealed drawings, specification or other documents for the
 2 project during all phases of the project. The Recipient shall assume all risks and liabilities
 3 resulting from the use of the electronic files.

4 **3.2 SUPERVISION OF WORK**

5 A. Perform all work under the direct supervision of an experienced, qualified superintendent. The
 6 Engineer has the right to remove a superintendent who, in the Engineer's opinion, is not
 7 satisfactory.

8 **3.3 EXAMINATION**

9 A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and
 10 construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate
 11 and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical
 12 systems, and other construction affecting the Work.

13 **3.4 PREPARATION**

14 A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or
 15 relocate existing utility structures, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or
 16 affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.

17 B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck
 18 measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to
 19 other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before
 20 fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the
 21 Work.

22 C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown
 23 diagrammatically on Drawings.

24 D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for
 25 clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of
 26 Contractor, submit a request for information to Engineer.

27 **3.5 INSTALLATION**

28 A. Install materials and equipment in a professional manner. The Engineer may direct
 29 replacement of items which, in the Engineer's opinion, do not present a professional
 30 appearance or do not allow adequate space for maintenance. Replace or reinstall items at the
 31 expense of the Contractor.

32 B. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and
 33 elevation, as indicated.

- 34 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
- 35 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance
 36 and ease of removal for replacement.
- 37 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.



- 1 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in
2 unoccupied spaces.
- 3 C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in
4 applications indicated.
- 5 D. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results.
6 Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- 7 E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or
8 loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- 9 F. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction
10 items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- 11 G. Obstructions
- 12 1. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface
13 obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not
14 guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
- 15 2. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative,
16 utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information
17 has been provided. Verify locations given.
- 18 3. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work,
19 reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform
20 whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing
21 services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.
- 22 4. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction,
23 whether or not such existing facilities are shown.
- 24 H. Where "rated" walls, floor, roofs and ceilings are penetrated or cut to install equipment,
25 materials, devices, etc. the Contractor shall provide and install all materials required to re-
26 establish the rating of the wall, floor, roof, or ceiling to the satisfaction of the authority having
27 jurisdiction.
- 28 I. Structural Elements: Do not cut structural elements without written approval from Engineer.
29 Notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before
30 proceeding. If approved by Engineer:
- 31 1. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching.
- 32 2. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-
33 carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- 34 J. Space Requirements: Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and
35 location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material which is not suitable
36 in this respect.
- 37 K. Tools and Equipment: Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If
38 objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by
39 equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions without cost to the
40 Owner.
- 41 L. Phasing: Provide all temporary valves, piping, ductwork, equipment, and devices as required.
42 Maintain temporary services to areas as required. Remove all temporary material and



1 equipment on completion of work unless Engineer concurs that such material and equipment
2 would be beneficial to the Owner on a permanent basis.

3 **3.6 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS**

4 A. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by
5 Owner's construction personnel.

6 **3.7 CUTTING AND PATCHING**

7 A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed
8 with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.

9 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance
10 of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their
11 original condition.

12 B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged
13 during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not
14 to void existing warranties.

15 C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.

16 D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage.
17 Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be
18 exposed during cutting and patching operations.

19 E. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Engineer of locations
20 and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. Shore, brace, and
21 support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural
22 elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.

23 F. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a
24 manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased
25 maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.

26 G. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components
27 in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity
28 to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or
29 safety.

30 H. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence
31 of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in
32 Engineer's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction
33 that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

34 I. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar
35 operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or
36 adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply
37 with original Installer's written recommendations.



- 1 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not
 2 hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with
 3 minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 4 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 5 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a
 6 diamond-core drill.
 7 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where
 8 required by cutting and patching operations.
 9 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be
 10 removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent
 11 entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 12 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- 13 J. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations
 14 following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as
 15 practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other
 16 Sections, where applicable or with in-place materials.
- 17 1. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the
 18 fullest extent possible.
 19 2. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when
 20 installed, will provide a match acceptable to Engineer for the visual and functional
 21 performance of in-place materials.
- 22 K. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint,
 23 mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

24 3.8 PAINTING

- 25 A. Comply with requirements with General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, Division
 26 09, and individual Specification Sections.
- 27 B. Touch-up factory finishes on equipment provided under Division 26. Obtain matched color
 28 coatings from the manufacturer and apply as directed. If corrosion is found during inspection on
 29 the surface of any equipment, clean, prime, and paint, as required.
- 30 C. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
- 31 1. Metal conduit
 32 2. Plastic conduit
- 33 D. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
- 34 1. Other items as directed by Engineer.

35 3.9 REPAIR OF WORK

- 36 A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of
 37 Substantial Completion.
- 38 B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective
 39 parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly



- 1 adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored,
 2 provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.
 3 Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified
 4 condition.
- 5 1. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces.
 6 Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
- 7 a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including
 8 mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels
 9 and identification.
- 10 2. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede
 11 operation or reduce longevity.
- 12 **3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**
- 13 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and
 14 inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- 15 B. Tests
- 16 1. Include all tests specified and/or required under laws, rules and regulations of all
 17 departments having jurisdiction. Tests shall also be performed as indicated herein and
 18 other sections of the specifications.
- 19 2. After all systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an
 20 operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequence and operation
 21 throughout the range of operation. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper
 22 functioning of all systems.
- 23 3. All parts of the work and associated equipment shall be tested and adjusted to work
 24 properly and be left in perfect operating condition.
- 25 4. Correct defects disclosed by these tests without any additional cost to the Owner.
 26 Repeat tests on repaired or replaced work.
- 27 5. Maintain a log of all tests being conducted and have it available for review by the
 28 Engineer. Log to indicate date, type of tests, duration, and defects noted and when
 29 corrected.
- 30 6. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual Specification Sections.
- 31 C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's
 32 responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for
 33 construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- 34 **3.11 CLEANING**
- 35 A. Progress Cleaning: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce
 36 requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
- 37 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and
 38 debris.
- 39 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if
 40 the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.



- 1 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste.
2 Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- 3 B. Final Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean
4 each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and
5 maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- 6 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification
7 of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
- 8 a. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from
9 Project site.
- 10 b. Remove labels that are not permanent.
- 11 c. Wipe surfaces of equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar
12 droppings, and other foreign substances.

13 **3.12 MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

[See Allstate Construction's bid package.](#)

- 14 A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include
15 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of systems and equipment Installer. Include
16 quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components,
17 lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be
18 manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

19 **END OF SECTION 26 01 00**

1 **SECTION 26 05 00 – ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS COMMISSIONING**

2
3
4 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

5
6 **1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- 7
8 A. The purpose of this section is to specify Division 26 responsibilities in the commissioning
9 process which are being directed by the CA. Other electrical systems testing is required under
10 the direction of the General Contractor.
- 11
12 B. The list of commissioned equipment and systems is found in Section 01 91 13, 1.7.
- 13
14 C. Commissioning requires the participation of Division 26 to ensure that all systems are
15 operating in a manner consistent with the Contract Documents. The general commissioning
16 requirements and coordination are detailed in Section 01 91 13. Division 26 shall be familiar
17 with all parts of Division 01 and the *Commissioning Plan* issued by the CA and shall execute
18 all commissioning responsibilities assigned to them in the Contract Documents.

19
20 **1.2 RESPONSIBILITIES**

- 21
22 A. Electrical Contractors. The commissioning responsibilities applicable to the electrical
23 contractor are as follows (*all references apply to commissioned equipment only*):

24
25 *Construction and Acceptance Phases*

- 26 1. Include the cost of commissioning in the contract price (do NOT include the cost of the
27 Commissioning Authority as they are under contract to A/E).
- 28 2. In each purchase order or subcontract written, include requirements for submittal data,
29 O&M data and training.
- 30 3. Attend a pre-commissioning meeting and other meetings necessary to facilitate the Cx
31 process. Meetings regarding the Commissioning Process that may be required
32 throughout the construction period will be scheduled as agenda items at the General
33 Contractor's regularly scheduled construction coordination meetings. An exception to this
34 policy would be extraordinary meetings which are deemed necessary by the CA and the
35 General Contractor with necessary parties attending in order to resolve outstanding
36 deficiencies toward the end of the construction period.
- 37 4. Contractors shall provide normal cut sheets and shop drawing submittals to the CA of
38 commissioned equipment in print and digital PDF format..
- 39 5. Provide additional requested documentation, prior to normal O&M manual submittals, to
40 the CA for development of start-up and functional testing procedures.
- 41 a. Typically this will include detailed manufacturer installation and start-up, operating,
42 troubleshooting and maintenance procedures, full details of any owner-contracted
43 tests, full factory testing reports, if any, and full warranty information, including all
44 responsibilities of the Owner to keep the warranty in force clearly identified. In
45 addition, the installation and checkout materials that are actually shipped inside the
46 equipment and the actual field checkout sheet forms to be used by the factory or
47 field technicians shall be submitted to the Commissioning Agent.
- 48 b. The Commissioning Agent may request further documentation necessary for the
49 commissioning process.
- 50 c. This data request may be made prior to normal submittals.
- 51 6. Provide a copy of the O&M manuals submittals of commissioned equipment, through
52 normal channels, to the CA for use in developing checklists and tests. O&M manuals
53 shall be provided in digital PDF format.
- 54 7. Contractors shall assist (along with the design engineers) in clarifying the operation and
55 control of commissioned equipment in areas where the specifications, control drawings or
56 equipment documentation is not sufficient for writing detailed testing procedures.

8. Provide assistance to the CA in preparation of the specific functional performance test procedures specified in the *Commissioning Plan – Construction Phase*. Subs shall review test procedures to ensure feasibility, safety and equipment protection and provide necessary written alarm limits to be used during the tests.
9. Develop a full start-up and initial checkout plan using manufacturer's start-up procedures and the prefunctional checklists from the CA. Submit manufacturer's detailed start-up procedures and the full start-up plan and procedures and other requested equipment documentation to CA for review.
10. Assist the CA in completion of the prefunctional checklists, in particular execute the electrical-related start-up and check-out portions of the prefunctional checklists for all commissioned equipment.
11. Perform and clearly document all completed startup and system operational checkout procedures, providing a copy to the CA.
12. Address current A/E punch list items before functional testing. Air and water TAB shall be completed with discrepancies and problems remedied before functional testing of the respective air- or water-related systems.
13. Provide skilled technicians to execute starting of equipment and to execute the functional performance tests. Ensure that they are available and present during the agreed upon schedules and for sufficient duration to complete the necessary tests, adjustments and problem-solving.
14. Perform functional performance testing under the direction of the CA for specified equipment in the *Commissioning Plan* and 01 91 13. Assist the CA in interpreting the monitoring data, as necessary.
15. Correct deficiencies (differences between specified and observed performance) as interpreted by the CA, PM and A/E and retest the equipment.
16. Prepare O&M manuals according to the Contract Documents, including clarifying and updating the original sequences of operation to as-built conditions.
17. During construction, maintain as-built red-line drawings for all drawings and final CAD as-builts for contractor-generated coordination drawings. Update after completion of commissioning (excluding deferred testing). Prepare red-line as-built drawings for all drawings and final as-builts for contractor-generated coordination drawings.
18. Provide training of the Owner's operating staff using expert qualified personnel, as specified.
19. Coordinate with equipment manufacturers to determine specific requirements to maintain the validity of the warranty.

Warranty Period

1. Execute seasonal or deferred functional performance testing, witnessed by the CA, according to the specifications.
2. Correct deficiencies and make necessary adjustments to O&M manuals and as-built drawings for applicable issues identified in any seasonal testing.

B. Electrical Designer/Engineer

1. Refer to Section 01 91 13 for the responsibilities of the Electrical Designer/Engineer.

1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. Refer to Section 01 91 13, Part 1.4 for a listing of all sections where commissioning requirements are found.
- B. Refer to Section 01 91 13 Part 1.7 for systems to be commissioned and section 01 91 13 Part 1.6 and the *Commissioning Plan* for functional testing requirements.

1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2
3 **2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT**

- 4
5 A. Division 26 shall provide all test equipment necessary to fulfill the testing requirements of this
6 Division.
7
8 B. Refer to Section 01 91 13 Part 2.1 for additional Division 26 requirements.
9

10
11 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

12
13 **3.1 SUBMITTALS**

- 14
15 A. Division 26 shall provide submittal documentation relative to commissioning to the CA as
16 requested by the CA. Refer to Section 01 91 13 Part 3.3 for additional Division 26
17 requirements.
18

19 **3.2 STARTUP**

- 20
21 A. The electrical contractors shall follow the start-up and initial checkout procedures listed in the
22 Responsibilities list in this section and in 01 91 13 Part 3.4. Division 26 has start-up
23 responsibility and is required to complete systems and sub-systems so they are fully
24 functional, meeting the design objectives of the Contract Documents. The commissioning
25 procedures and functional testing do not relieve or lessen this responsibility or shift that
26 responsibility partially to the commissioning agent or Owner.
27
28 B. Functional testing is intended to begin upon completion of a system. Functional testing may
29 proceed prior to the completion of systems, or sub-systems at the discretion of the CA and
30 PM. Beginning system testing before full completion, does not relieve the Contractor from fully
31 completing the system, including all prefunctional checklists as soon as possible.
32

33 **3.3 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TESTS**

- 34
35 A. Refer to Section 01 91 13 Part 1.7 for a list of systems to be commissioned and to Part 3.6 for
36 a description of the process and to the *Commissioning Plan* for specific details on the required
37 functional performance tests.
38

39 **3.4 TESTING DOCUMENTATION, NON-CONFORMANCE AND APPROVALS**

- 40
41 A. Refer to Section 01 91 13 Part 3.4 for specific details on non-conformance issues relating to
42 prefunctional checklists and tests.
43
44 B. Refer to Section 01 91 13 Part 3.7 for issues relating to functional performance tests.
45

46 **3.5 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) MANUALS**

- 47
48 A. Division 26 shall compile and prepare documentation for all equipment and systems covered
49 in Division 26 and deliver to the General Contractor for inclusion in the O&M manuals,
50 according to O&M Documentation requirements elsewhere in these specifications.
51 B. The CA shall receive a copy of the final compiled O&M manuals for review.
52

53 **3.6. TRAINING OF OWNER PERSONNEL**

- 54
55 A. The GC shall coordinate with the Owner for desired training sequencing and scheduling and
56 shall provide the approved schedule of training to the Owner and CA for review and approval.



1 The Electrical Contractor and Equipment Suppliers shall complete all training activities and
2 documentation as directed by the GC, the approved schedule, and the specific equipment
3 specification sections.
4

5
6
7 **END OF SECTION 26 05 00**
8



1
2
3
4
5
6

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



1 **SECTION 26 05 19 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section Includes:

- 5 1. Copper building wire.
6 2. Aluminum building wire.
7 3. Connectors and splices.

8 B. Related Requirements:

- 9 1. Section 26 05 23 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems
10 communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.

11 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 12 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

13 **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 14 A. Field quality-control reports.

15 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

16 **2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE**

- 17 A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with
18 an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

19 B. Standards:

- 20 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for
21 intended location and use.
22 2. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's
23 "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

- 24 C. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for
25 stranded conductors.

26 D. Conductor Insulation:

- 27 1. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.



1 **2.2 ALUMINUM BUILDING WIRE**

2 A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn aluminum current-carrying conductor
3 with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

4 B. Standards:

5 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for
6 intended location and use.

7 2. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's
8 "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

9 C. Conductors: Aluminum, complying with ASTM B800 and ASTM B801.

10 D. Conductor Insulation:

11 1. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.

12 **2.3 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES**

13 A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material,
14 type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
15 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

16 B. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.

17 1. Material: Copper or aluminum to match wire.

18 2. Type: Two hole with long barrels.

19 3. Termination: Compression.

20 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

21 **3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS**

22 A. Feeders:

23 1. Aluminum for feeders No. 6 AWG and larger. Copper for all other feeders. Conductors
24 must be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

25 B. Branch Circuits:

26 1. Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

27 **3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND**
28 **WIRING METHODS**

29 A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

30 B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.



1 C. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-
2 2, single conductors in raceway.

3 D. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single
4 conductors in raceway.

5 E. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground:
6 Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

7 **3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

8 A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.

9 B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to
10 Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and
11 cables.

12 C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used
13 must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended
14 maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

15 D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will
16 not damage cables or raceway.

17 E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members,
18 and follow surface contours where possible.

19 F. Support cables according to Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

20 **3.4 CONNECTIONS**

21 A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-
22 tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in
23 UL 486A-486B.

24 B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that
25 possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced
26 conductors.

27 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.

28 C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inch of slack.

29 **3.5 IDENTIFICATION**

30 A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 26 05 53 "Identification for
31 Electrical Systems."

32 B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of
33 conductor and identify as spare conductor.



1 **3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS**

- 2 A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."
3
4

5 **3.7 FIRESTOPPING**

- 6 A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 07.
7

8 **3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 9 A. Tests and Inspections:

- 10 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
11 2. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
12
13 a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
14 b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
15
16 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
17 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
18 c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
19 d. Inspect for correct identification.
20 e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
21 f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500 V(dc) for 300 V rated cable and 1000 V(dc) for 600 V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
22 g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
23 h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
24
25

- 26 B. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

- 27 C. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:

- 28 1. Procedures used.
29 2. Results that comply with requirements.
30 3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
31

32 **END OF SECTION 26 05 19**

1 **SECTION 26 05 23 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section Includes:

- 5 1. Category 6 balanced twisted pair cable.
- 6 2. Balanced twisted pair cable hardware.
- 7 3. Control cable.
- 8 4. Control-circuit conductors.

9 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

10 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

11 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

12 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

13 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
14 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

15 B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products
16 according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in
17 plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- 18 1. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inch or less.
- 19 2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
- 20 3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.

21 C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As
22 determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.

23 D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum
24 Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.

25 **2.2 CATEGORY 6 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE**

26 A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, with internal spline, certified to meet
27 transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250 MHz.

28 B. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.

29 C. Conductors: 100 ohm, No. 23 AWG solid copper.

1 D. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP).

2 E. Cable Rating: Plenum.

3 F. Jacket: Yellow thermoplastic.

4 **2.3 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE**

5 A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate balanced twisted pair copper
6 communications cable.

7 B. General Requirements for Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:

- 8 1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6.
9 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or
10 tools.
11 3. Cables must be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.

12 C. Source Limitations: Obtain balanced twisted pair cable hardware from single source from single
13 manufacturer.

14 D. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:

- 15 1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for
16 termination of a single four-pair 100 ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair
17 cable.
18 2. Comply with IEC 60603-7-1, IEC 60603-7-2, IEC 60603-7-3, IEC 60603-7-4, and
19 IEC 60603-7.5.

20 **2.4 CONTROL CABLE**

21 A. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

- 22 1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
23 2. PVC insulation.
24 3. Unshielded.
25 4. PVC jacket.
26 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

27 **2.5 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS**

28 A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in
29 raceway.

30 B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in
31 raceway.

32 C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying
33 with UL 83 in raceway.

1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES**

3 A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for
4 raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as
5 supplemented or modified in this Section.

- 6 1. Outlet boxes for cables must be no smaller than 4 inch square by 2-1/8 inch deep with
7 extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch of the finished wall surface.
8 2. Flexible metal conduit must not be used.

9 B. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between
10 pull points.

11 C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.

12 D. Raceway Installation in Equipment Rooms:

- 13 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is
14 installed, or in the corner of the room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around
15 perimeter walls of the room.
16 2. Secure conduits to backboard if entering the room from overhead.
17 3. Extend conduits 4 inch above finished floor.
18 4. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to
19 grounding system.

20 **3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

21 A. Comply with NECA 1.

22 B. General Requirements for Cabling:

- 23 1. Terminate all conductors; cable must not contain unterminated elements. Make
24 terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
25 2. Cables may not be spliced and must be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not
26 splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points.
27 3. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install network
28 cabling and control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not
29 group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
30 4. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inch and not more than 6 inch
31 from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
32 5. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard
33 cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
34 6. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles.
35 7. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as
36 to not damage cables.
37 8. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals. Do not bend cables in a
38 radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from
39 vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
40 9. Ground wire must be copper, and grounding methods must comply with IEEE C2.
41 Demonstrate ground resistance.

- 1 C. Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Installation:
- 2 1. Do not untwist balanced twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch at the point of termination
3 to maintain cable geometry.
- 4 D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:
- 5 1. Install wiring in raceways.
6 2. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.
7 3. Comply with requirements specified in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for
8 Electrical Systems."
- 9 E. Open-Cable Installation:
- 10 1. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inch above ceilings
11 by cable supports not more than 48 inch apart.
12 2. Cable must not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts,
13 or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and
14 corrugated panels.

15 3.3 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- 16 A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
- 17 1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; No 14 AWG.
18 2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits; No. 16 AWG.
19 3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits; No 12 AWG.

20 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- 21 A. Comply with requirements in Division 07.

22 3.5 GROUNDING

- 23 A. For control-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 26 05 26
24 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

25 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- 26 A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for
27 Electrical Systems."

28 **END OF SECTION 26 05 23**



1 **SECTION 26 05 26 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special
5 applications:

- 6 1. Underground distribution grounding.
7 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
8 3. Foundation steel electrodes.

9 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

10 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

11 **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

12 A. Field quality-control reports.

13 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

14 **2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

15 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
16 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

17 B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

18 **2.2 CONDUCTORS**

19 A. Insulated Conductors: Copper or tinned-copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless
20 otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

21 B. Bare Copper Conductors:

- 22 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B3.
23 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B8.
24 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B33.
25 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
26 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
27 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-
28 5/8 inch wide and 1/16 inch thick.
29 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper
30 ferrules; 1-5/8 inch wide and 1/16 inch thick.



- 1 C. MGB Grounding Bus: Predrilled, wall-mounted, rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4
2 by 4 inches in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be NRTL listed
3 for use as TMGB and shall comply with TIA-607-B.
- 4 1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
5 2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide a 4-inch clearance to access the rear
6 of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
7 3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in
8 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.
- 9 D. SBB: Predrilled rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 2 inches (6.3 by 50 mm) in
10 cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be for wall mounting, shall be
11 NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and shall comply with TIA-607-B.
- 12 1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
13 2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide at least a 2-inch (50-mm) clearance
14 to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
15 3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in
16 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.
- 17 **2.3 CONNECTORS**
- 18 A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in
19 which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items
20 connected.
- 21 B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for
22 materials being joined and installation conditions.
- 23 C. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual,
24 tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- 25 D. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- 26 E. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.
- 27 F. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- 28 G. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- 29 H. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- 30 I. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud
31 lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- 32 J. Busbar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type, mechanical connector;
33 with a long barrel and two holes spaced on 5/8- or 1-inch centers for a two-bolt connection to
34 the busbar.
- 35 K. Straps: Solid copper, copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.
- 36 L. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.



- 1 M. Water Pipe Clamps:
- 2 1. Mechanical type, two pieces with stainless steel bolts.
- 3 a. Material: Die-cast zinc alloy.
- 4 b. Listed for direct burial.
- 5 2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and copper ground connector rated for direct burial.

6 **2.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODES**

- 7 A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel, sectional type; 3/4 inch by 10 ft..

8 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

9 **3.1 APPLICATIONS**

- 10 A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for
11 No. 8 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- 12 B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG
13 minimum.
- 14 1. Bury at least 30 inch below grade.
- 15 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inch above duct bank when indicated as part
16 of duct-bank installation.
- 17 C. Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe.
- 18 D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and
19 elsewhere as indicated.
- 20 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inch minimum from wall, 6 inch above
21 finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- 22 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top
23 of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.
- 24 3. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.
- 25 E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
- 26 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
- 27 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise
28 indicated.
- 29 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
- 30 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

31 **3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE**

- 32 A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors must be connected to the
33 ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.



1 **3.3 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS**

- 2 A. Generator: Install grounding electrode(s) at the generator location. The electrode must be
3 connected to the equipment grounding conductor and to the frame of the generator.

4 **3.4 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS**

- 5 A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- 6 B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole
7 floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inch will extend above finished floor. If necessary,
8 install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper
9 conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect
10 ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive
11 insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inch above to 6 inch below concrete.
12 Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- 13 C. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the
14 pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with
15 substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-
16 copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding
17 terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inch from the foundation.

18 **3.5 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING**

- 19 A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- 20 B. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated
21 equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond
22 conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- 23 C. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate
24 insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with
25 branch-circuit conductors.
- 26 D. Metallic Fences: Comply with requirements of IEEE C2.
- 27 1. Grounding Conductor: Bare, tinned copper, not less than No. 8 AWG.
28 2. Gates: Must be bonded to the grounding conductor with a flexible bonding jumper.
29 3. Barbed Wire: Strands must be bonded to the grounding conductor.

30 **3.6 FENCE GROUNDING**

See Allstate Construction's bid package.

- 31 A. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of 1500 ft. except as follows:
- 32 1. Fences within 100 ft. of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at
33 maximum intervals of 750 ft..
- 34 a. Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.
- 35 1) Bond metal gates to gate posts.



See Allstate Construction's bid package.

- 1 2) Bond across openings, with and without gates, except at openings indicated
2 as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least
3 18 inch below finished grade.
- 4 B. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of
5 crossing and at a maximum distance of 150 ft. on each side of crossing.
- 6 C. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground as required by IEEE C2
7 unless otherwise indicated.
- 8 D. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is
9 6 inch below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect
10 conductor to each fence component at grounding location.
- 11 E. Bonding Method for Gates: Connect bonding jumper between gate post and gate frame.
- 12 F. Bonding to Lightning-Protection System: If fence terminates at lightning-protected building or
13 structure, ground the fence and bond the fence grounding conductor to lightning-protection
14 down conductor or lightning-protection grounding conductor, complying with NFPA 780.

15 **3.7 INSTALLATION**

- 16 A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise
17 indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may
18 be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- 19 B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96
20 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground
21 directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service
22 grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode
23 conductor, and install in conduit.
- 24 C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inch below finished floor or final grade unless
25 otherwise indicated.
- 26 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as
27 otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
28 2. Use exothermic welds for all below-grade connections.
29 3. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length
30 from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes,
31 and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- 32 D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are
33 specified in Section 26 05 43 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and
34 must be at least 12 inch deep, with cover.
- 35 1. Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the
36 ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished
37 grade or floor.
- 38 E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance
39 except where routed through short lengths of conduit.



- 1 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate
2 any adjacent parts.
- 3 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install
4 bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
- 5 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection
6 is required, use a bolted clamp.

- 7 F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
 - 8 1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from
9 building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service
10 entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes;
11 use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one
12 of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect
13 grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or
14 sleeve to conductor at each end.
 - 15 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water
16 meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 - 17 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment
18 shutoff valve.

- 19 G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of
20 associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond
21 across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

- 22 H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner
23 column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 ft. apart.

- 24 I. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure
25 ground rod and to each steel column, extending around the perimeter of building area or item
26 indicated.
 - 27 1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to
28 building steel.
 - 29 2. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inch from building's foundation.

- 30 J. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; using
31 electrically conductive coated steel reinforcing bars or rods, at least 20 ft. long. If reinforcing is
32 in multiple pieces, connect together by the usual steel tie wires or exothermic welding to create
33 the required length.

- 34 K. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized.
35 Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in
36 direct contact are galvanically compatible.
 - 37 1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make
38 contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
 - 39 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
 - 40 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless steel separators and mechanical
41 clamps.
 - 42 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and
43 mechanical clamps.
 - 44 5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future
45 penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.



1 **3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

2 A. Tests and Inspections:

- 3 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been
4 energized, test for compliance with requirements.
5 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted,
6 electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written
7 instructions.
8 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance
9 level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test
10 wells. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.

- 11 a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of
12 precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural
13 drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of
14 reducing natural ground resistance.
15 b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.

16 B. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

17 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

18 D. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

- 19 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
20 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
21 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
22 4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohm(s).
23 5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.

24 E. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect
25 promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

26 **END OF SECTION 26 05 26**

27



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section Includes:

- 5 1. Support, anchorage, and attachment components.
6 2. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

7 B. Related Requirements:

8 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

9 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 10 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components
11 and profiles, and finishes for the following:
- 12 a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
13 b. Clamps.
14 c. Hangers.
15 d. Sockets.
16 e. Eye nuts.
17 f. Fasteners.
18 g. Anchors.
19 h. Saddles.
20 i. Brackets.
- 21 2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

22 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

23 **2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS**

- 24 A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32 inch
25 diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inch on center in at least one surface.
- 26 1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
27 2. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
28 3. Channel Width: 1-5/8 inch.
29 4. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
- 30 B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed
31 for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- 32 C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded
33 body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in

- 1 riser conduits. Plugs must have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as
2 required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body must be made of malleable
3 iron.
- 4 D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A36/A36M steel plates, shapes,
5 and bars; black and galvanized.
- 6 E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their
7 supports to building surfaces include the following:
- 8 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement
9 concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for
10 supported loads and building materials where used.
- 11 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in
12 hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities
13 appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- 14 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS
15 Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
- 16 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for
17 attached structural element.
- 18 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with
19 ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325.
- 20 6. Toggle Bolts: All steel springhead type.
- 21 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

22 2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- 23 A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions
24 of supported equipment.
- 25 B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 05 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and
26 plates.

27 PART 3 - EXECUTION

28 3.1 SELECTION

- 29 A. Comply with the following standards for selection and installation of hangers and supports,
30 except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
- 31 1. NECA NEIS 101
32 2. NECA NEIS 105.
- 33 B. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials
34 and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- 35 C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 26 05 33 "Raceway and
36 Boxes for Electrical Systems."

- 1 D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for
2 EMT, IMC, and ERMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size must be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- 3 E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support
4 system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding
5 specified design load limits.
- 6 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

7 3.2 INSTALLATION OF SUPPORTS

- 8 A. Comply with NECA NEIS 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- 9 B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength
10 will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum
11 static design load used for strength determination must be weight of supported components
12 plus 200 lb.
- 13 C. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten
14 electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods
15 unless otherwise indicated by code:
- 16 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
17 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
18 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor
19 fasteners on solid masonry units.
20 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
21 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock
22 washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inch thick or
23 greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than
24 4 inch thick.
25 6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with
26 MSS SP-69.
27 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
28 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets,
29 panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes,
30 transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- 31 D. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for
32 reinforcing bars.

33 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- 34 A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 05 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated
35 metal supports.
- 36 B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation
37 to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- 38 C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Submit welding certificates.



1 **3.4 CONCRETE BASES**

2 A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inch larger in both
3 directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from
4 edge of the base.

5 B. Use 3000 psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and
6 placement requirements are specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

7 C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:

8 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting
9 drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be
10 embedded.

11 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

12 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

13 **3.5 PAINTING**

14 A. Touchup:

15 1. Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately
16 after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting.
17 Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

18 a. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

19 B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply
20 galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780.

21 **END OF SECTION 26 05 29**



1 **SECTION 26 05 33 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section Includes:

- 5 1. Type EMT-S raceways and elbows.
- 6 2. Type ERMC-S raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
- 7 3. Type FMC-S raceways.
- 8 4. Type LFMC raceways.
- 9 5. Type PVC raceways and fittings.
- 10 6. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
- 11 7. Threaded metal joint compound.
- 12 8. Solvent cements.
- 13 9. Wireways and auxiliary gutters.
- 14 10. Metallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
- 15 11. Termination boxes.
- 16 12. Cabinets, cutout boxes, junction boxes, pull boxes, and miscellaneous enclosures.
- 17 13. Cover plates for device boxes.
- 18 14. Hoods for outlet boxes.

19 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

20 A. Product Data: For the following:

- 21 1. Wireways and auxiliary gutters.
- 22 2. Floor boxes.
- 23 3. Cabinets, cutout boxes, and miscellaneous enclosures.

24 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

25 **2.1 TYPE EMT-S RACEWAYS AND ELBOWS**

26 A. Steel Electrical Metal Tubing (EMT-S) and Elbows:

27 1. Applicable Standards:

- 28 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
- 29 marked for intended location and use.
- 30 b. General Characteristics:
 - 31 1) Reference Standards: UL 797 and UL Category Control Number FJMX.
 - 32 2) Material: Steel.
 - 33 3) Exterior Coating: Zinc.
 - 34 4) Interior Coating: Zinc with organic top coating.



- 1 c. Options:
- 2 1) Minimum Trade Size: 3/4 inch.

3 **2.2 TYPE ERMC-S RACEWAYS, ELBOWS, COUPLINGS, AND NIPPLES**

- 4 A. Galvanized-Steel Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit (ERMC-S-G), Elbows, Couplings, and Nipples:

- 5 1. Applicable Standards:

6 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
7 marked for intended location and use.

8 b. General Characteristics:

- 9 1) Reference Standards: UL 6 and UL Category Control Number DYIX.
10 2) Exterior Coating: Zinc.
11 3) Interior Coating: Zinc with organic top coating.

- 12 c. Options:

- 13 1) Minimum Trade Size: 3/4 inch.

14 **2.3 TYPE FMC-S RACEWAYS**

- 15 A. Steel Flexible Metal Conduit (FMC-S):

- 16 1. Applicable Standards:

17 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
18 marked for intended location and use.

19 b. General Characteristics:

- 20 1) Reference Standard: UL 1 and UL Category Control Number DXUZ.
21 2) Material: Steel.

- 22 c. Options:

- 23 1) Minimum Trade Size: **3/4 inch**.
24 2) Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

25 **2.4 TYPE LFMC RACEWAYS**

- 26 A. Steel Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit (LFMC-S):

- 27 1. Applicable Standards:

28 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
29 marked for intended location and use.

30 b. General Characteristics:

- 31 1) Reference Standard: UL 360 and UL Category Control Number DXHR.



- 1 2) Material: Steel.
- 2 c. Options:
- 3 1) Minimum Trade Size: 3/4 inch.

4 **2.5 TYPE PVC RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS**

5 A. Schedule 40 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-40) and Fittings:

6 1. Applicable Standards:

- 7 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
- 8 marked for intended location and use.
- 9 b. General Characteristics:
- 10 1) Reference Standards: UL 651 and UL Category Control Number DZYR.
- 11 2) Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 40.

12 c. Options:

- 13 1) Minimum Trade Size: 3/4 inch.
- 14 2) Markings: For use with maximum 90 deg C wire. and for directional boring
- 15 applications.

16 **2.6 FITTINGS FOR CONDUIT, TUBING, AND CABLE**

17 A. Fittings for Type ERM, Type IMC, Type PVC, Type EPEC, and Type RTRC Raceways:

18 1. Applicable Standards:

- 19 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
- 20 marked for intended location and use.
- 21 b. General Characteristics:
- 22 1) Reference Standards: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number DWTT.
- 23 2) Material: Steel.
- 24 3) Coupling Method: Compression coupling.

25 c. Options:

- 26 1) Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: UL 1203.
- 27 2) Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible external bonding
- 28 jumper.

29 B. Fittings for Type EMT Raceways:

30 1. Applicable Standards:

- 31 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
- 32 marked for intended location and use.
- 33 b. General Characteristics:



- 1) Reference Standards: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number FKAV.
 - 2) Material: Steel.
 - 3) Coupling Method: Compression coupling.
- c. Options:
- 1) Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: UL 1203.
 - 2) Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible external bonding jumper.
- C. Fittings for Type FMC Raceways:
1. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number ILNR.
- D. Fittings for Type LFMC and Type LFNC Raceways:
1. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number DXAS.

2.7 ELECTRICALLY CONDUCTIVE CORROSION-RESISTANT COMPOUNDS FOR THREADED CONDUIT

- A. Applicable Standards:
1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and approved by authorities having jurisdiction for application to threaded conduit assemblies.
 2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL 2419 and UL Category Control Number FOIZ.

2.8 SOLVENT CEMENTS

- A. Solvent Cements for Type PVC Raceways and Fittings:
1. Applicable Standards:
 - a. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: As recommended by conduit manufacturer in accordance with UL 514B and UL Category Control Number DWTT.



1 b. Sustainability Characteristics:

2 **2.9 WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS**

3 A. Metal Wireways and Auxiliary Gutters:

4 1. Applicable Standards:

5 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
6 marked for intended location and use.

7 b. General Characteristics:

8 1) Reference Standards: UL 870 and UL Category Control Number ZOYX.

9 2) Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows,
10 expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to
11 match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

12 3) Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

13 c. Options:

14 1) Degree of Protection: Type 1 inside; Type 3R outside unless otherwise
15 indicated.

16 2) Wireway Covers: Screw-cover type unless otherwise indicated.

17 **2.10 METALLIC OUTLET BOXES, DEVICE BOXES, RINGS, AND COVERS**

18 A. Metallic Outlet Boxes:

19 1. Description: Box having pryout openings, knockouts, threaded entries, or hubs in either
20 the sides of the back, or both, for entrance of conduit, conduit or cable fittings, or cables,
21 with provisions for mounting outlet box cover, but without provisions for mounting wiring
22 device directly to box.

23 2. Applicable Standards:

24 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
25 marked for intended location and use.

26 b. General Characteristics:

27 1) Reference Standards: UL 514A and UL Category Control Number QCIT.

28 c. Options:

29 1) Material: Sheet steel.

30 2) Sheet Metal Depth: Minimum 2.5 inch.

31 3) Luminaire Outlet Boxes and Covers: Nonadjustable, listed and labeled for
32 attachment of luminaire weighing up to 50 lb.

33 B. Metallic Conduit Bodies:

34 1. Description: Means for providing access to interior of conduit or tubing system through
35 one or more removable covers at junction or terminal point. In the United States, conduit
36 bodies are listed in accordance with outlet box requirements.



- 1 2. Applicable Standards:
- 2 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
- 3 marked for intended location and use.
- 4 b. General Characteristics:
- 5 1) Reference Standards: UL 514A and UL Category Control Number QCIT.
- 6 C. Metallic Device Boxes:
- 7 1. Description: Box with provisions for mounting wiring device directly to box.
- 8 2. Applicable Standards:
- 9 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
- 10 marked for intended location and use.
- 11 b. General Characteristics:
- 12 1) Reference Standards: UL 514A and UL Category Control Number QCIT.
- 13 c. Options:
- 14 1) Material: Sheet steel.
- 15 2) Sheet Metal Depth: minimum 2.5 inch.
- 16 3) Luminaire Outlet Boxes and Covers: Nonadjustable, listed and labeled for
- 17 attachment of luminaire weighing up to 50 lb.
- 18 D. Metallic Extension Rings:
- 19 1. Description: Ring intended to extend sides of outlet box or device box to increase box
- 20 depth, volume, or both.
- 21 2. Applicable Standards:
- 22 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
- 23 marked for intended location and use.
- 24 b. General Characteristics:
- 25 1) Reference Standards: UL 514A and UL Category Control Number QCIT.
- 26 E. Metallic Floor Boxes and Floor Box Covers:
- 27 1. Description: Box mounted in floor with floor box cover and other components to complete
- 28 floor box enclosure.
- 29 2. Applicable Standards:
- 30 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
- 31 marked for intended location and use.
- 32 b. General Characteristics:
- 33 1) Reference Standards: UL 514A and UL Category Control Number QCIT.
- 34 F. Metallic Concrete Boxes and Covers:
- 35 1. Description: Box intended for use in poured concrete.
- 36 2. Applicable Standards:



- 1 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
2 marked for intended location and use.
- 3 b. General Characteristics:
- 4 1) Reference Standards: UL 514A and UL Category Control Number QCIT.
- 5 **2.11 CABINETS, CUTOUT BOXES, JUNCTION BOXES, PULL BOXES, AND MISCELLANEOUS**
6 **ENCLOSURES**
- 7 A. Indoor Sheet Metal Cabinets:
- 8 1. Description: Enclosure provided with frame, mat, or trim in which swinging door or doors
9 are or can be hung.
- 10 2. Applicable Standards:
- 11 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
12 marked for intended location and use.
- 13 b. General Characteristics:
- 14 1) Reference Standards: UL Category Control Number CYIV.
- 15 a) Non-Environmental Characteristics: UL 50.
16 b) Environmental Characteristics: UL 50E.
- 17 c. Options:
- 18 1) Degree of Protection: Type 1.
- 19 B. Indoor Sheet Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:
- 20 1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of
21 raceway or cable.
- 22 2. Applicable Standards:
- 23 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
24 marked for intended location and use.
- 25 b. General Characteristics:
- 26 1) Reference Standards: UL Category Control Number BGUZ.
- 27 a) Non-Environmental Characteristics: UL 50.
28 b) Environmental Characteristics: UL 50E.
- 29 c. Options:
- 30 1) Degree of Protection: Type 1.
- 31 C. Indoor Sheet Metal Miscellaneous Enclosures:
- 32 1. Applicable Standards:
- 33 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
34 marked for intended location and use.



- 1 b. General Characteristics:
- 2 1) Reference Standards:
- 3 a) UL 1773 and UL Category Control Number XCKT.
- 4 b) Non-Environmental Characteristics: UL 50.
- 5 c) Environmental Characteristics: UL 50E.
- 6 c. Options:
- 7 1) Degree of Protection: Type 1.
- 8 D. Outdoor Sheet Metal Cabinets:
- 9 1. Description: Enclosure provided with frame, mat, or trim in which swinging door or doors
- 10 are or can be hung.
- 11 2. Applicable Standards:
- 12 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
- 13 marked for intended location and use.
- 14 b. General Characteristics:
- 15 1) Reference Standards: UL Category Control Number CYIV.
- 16 a) Non-Environmental Characteristics: UL 50.
- 17 b) Environmental Characteristics: UL 50E.
- 18 c. Options:
- 19 1) Degree of Protection: Type 3R.
- 20 E. Outdoor Sheet Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:
- 21 1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of
- 22 raceway or cable.
- 23 2. Applicable Standards:
- 24 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
- 25 marked for intended location and use.
- 26 b. General Characteristics:
- 27 1) Reference Standards: UL Category Control Number BGUZ.
- 28 a) Non-Environmental Characteristics: UL 50.
- 29 b) Environmental Characteristics: UL 50E.
- 30 c. Options:
- 31 1) Degree of Protection: Type 3R.
- 32 F. Outdoor Sheet Metal Miscellaneous Enclosures:
- 33 1. Applicable Standards:



- 1 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
- 2 marked for intended location and use.
- 3 b. General Characteristics:
- 4 1) Reference Standards:
- 5 a) UL 1773 and UL Category Control Number XCKT.
- 6 b) Non-Environmental Characteristics: UL 50.
- 7 c) Environmental Characteristics: UL 50E.
- 8 c. Options:
- 9 1) Degree of Protection: Type 3R.

10 2.12 COVER PLATES FOR DEVICES BOXES

11 A. Metallic Cover Plates for Device Boxes:

- 12 1. Applicable Standards:
- 13 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
- 14 marked for intended location and use.
- 15 b. General Characteristics:
- 16 1) Reference Standards: UL 514D and UL Category Control Numbers QCIT
- 17 and QCMZ.
- 18 2) Wallplate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match wallplate finish.
- 19 c. Options:
- 20 1) Damp and Wet Locations: Listed, labeled, and marked for location and use.
- 21 Provide gaskets and accessories necessary for compliance with listing.
- 22 2) Wallplate Material: 0.032 inch thick Type 302/304 non-magnetic stainless
- 23 steel with brushed finish.

24 2.13 HOODS FOR OUTLET BOXES

25 A. Extra-Duty, While-in-Use Hoods for Outlet Boxes:

- 26 1. Applicable Standards:
- 27 a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and
- 28 marked for intended location and use.
- 29 b. General Characteristics:
- 30 1) Reference Standards: UL 514D and UL Category Control Numbers QCIT
- 31 and QCMZ.
- 32 2) Marked "Extra-Duty" in accordance with UL 514D.
- 33 3) Receptacle, hood, cover plate, gaskets, and seals comply with UL 498
- 34 Supplement SA when mated with box or enclosure complying with UL 514A,
- 35 UL 514C, or UL 50E.
- 36 4) Mounts to box using fasteners different from wiring device.



- 1 c. Options:
- 2 1) Provides clear, weatherproof, "while-in-use" cover.
- 3 2) Manufacturer may combine nonmetallic device box with hood as extra-duty
- 4 rated assembly.

5 PART 3 - EXECUTION

6 3.1 SELECTION OF RACEWAYS

- 7 A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers'
- 8 written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of raceways. Consult Architect for
- 9 resolution of conflicting requirements.
- 10 B. Outdoors:
- 11 1. Exposed Conduit: ERMC.
- 12 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: ERMC.
- 13 3. Direct-Buried Conduit: PVC-40.
- 14 4. Concrete-Encased Conduit Not in Trench: PVC-40.
- 15 5. Concrete-Encased Conduit in Trench: PVC-40.
- 16 6. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic,
- 17 Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
- 18 C. Indoors:
- 19 1. Hazardous Classified Locations: ERMC.
- 20 2. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: ERMC. Raceway locations include the
- 21 following:
- 22 a. Mechanical rooms.
- 23 3. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT. [See Allstate Construction's](#)
- 24 4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT. [bid package for MC cable.](#)
- 25 5. Damp or Wet Locations: ERMC.
- 26 6. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic,
- 27 Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC.
- 28 .
- 29 D. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings: Provide EMT, IMC, or ERMC for raceways.
- 30 E. Raceway Fittings: Select fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.
- 31 1. ERMC and IMC: Provide threaded type fittings unless otherwise indicated.

32 3.2 SELECTION OF BOXES AND ENCLOSURES

- 33 A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers'
- 34 written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of boxes and enclosures. Consult
- 35 Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- 36 B. Degree of Protection:



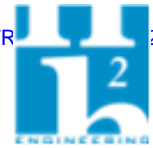
- 1 1. Outdoors:
- 2 a. Type 3R unless otherwise indicated.
- 3 b. Locations Exposed to Hosedown: Type 4.
- 4 c. Locations Subject to Potential Flooding: Type 6P.
- 5 2. Indoors:
- 6 a. Type 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- 7 b. Damp or Dusty Locations: Type 12.
- 8 c. Locations Exposed to Airborne Dust, Lint, Fibers, or Flyings: Type 4.
- 9 d. Locations Exposed to Hosedown: Type 4.
- 10 e. Locations Exposed to Brief Submersion: Type 6.
- 11 f. Locations Exposed to Prolonged Submersion: Type 6P.
- 12 C. Exposed Boxes Installed Less Than 6.5 ft. Above Floor:
- 13 1. Provide exposed cover. Flat covers with angled mounting slots or knockouts are
- 14 prohibited.
- 15 **3.3 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS**
- 16 A. Installation Standards:
- 17 1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or
- 18 manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for installation of raceways.
- 19 Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- 20 2. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies
- 21 and number of floors.
- 22 3. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical
- 23 Systems" for hangers and supports.
- 24 4. Comply with NECA NEIS 101 for installation of steel raceways.
- 25 5. Comply with NECA NEIS 111 for installation of nonmetallic raceways.
- 26 6. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures without hubs with
- 27 locknuts on both sides of enclosure wall. Install locknuts hand tight, plus one-quarter turn
- 28 more.
- 29 7. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of
- 30 boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4 inch trade size and insulated
- 31 throat metal bushings on 1-1/2 inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with
- 32 locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- 33 8. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration:
- 34 a. Provide insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller
- 35 than No. 4 AWG. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service
- 36 conduits.
- 37 B. General Requirements for Installation of Raceways:
- 38 1. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- 39 2. Provide stub-ups through floors with coupling threaded inside for plugs, set flush with
- 40 finished floor. Plug coupling until conduit is extended above floor to final destination or a
- 41 minimum of 2 ft. above finished floor.



- 1 3. Install no more than equivalent of three 90-degree bends in conduit run. Support within
2 12 inch of changes in direction.
- 3 4. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells except for parallel bends. Field
4 bending must be in accordance with NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Provide only
5 equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- 6 5. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
7 Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- 8 6. Support conduit within 12 inch of enclosures to which attached.
- 9 7. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations in accordance with NFPA 70 and fill
10 them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install fitting in flush steel
11 box with blank cover plate having finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces.
12 Install raceway sealing fittings in accordance with NFPA 70.
- 13 8. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no
14 fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal
15 interior of raceways at the following points:
 - 16 a. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of
17 refrigerated spaces.
 - 18 b. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
 - 19 c. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
 - 20 d. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- 21 9. Do not install conduits within 2 inch of the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
- 22 10. Keep raceways at least 6 inch away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water
23 pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- 24 11. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2 inch trade size and larger, use roll
25 cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length. Ream inside of
26 conduit to remove burrs.
- 27 12. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Provide polypropylene or monofilament plastic line
28 with not less than 200 lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inch of slack at both ends of
29 pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside
30 raceways in use.
- 31 C. Requirements for Installation of Specific Raceway Types:
 - 32 1. Types ERM and IMC:
 - 33 a. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor
34 Conditions: Apply listed compound that maintains electrical conductivity to threads
35 of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's
36 written instructions.
 - 37 2. Types FMC, LFMC, and LFNC:
 - 38 a. Comply with NEMA RV 3. Provide a maximum of 72 inch of flexible conduit for
39 recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise
40 transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
 - 41 3. Types PVC and EPEC:
 - 42 a. Do not install Type PVC or Type EPEC conduit where ambient temperature
43 exceeds 122 deg F. Conductor ratings must be limited to 75 deg C except where
44 installed in a trench outside buildings with concrete encasement, where 90 deg C
45 conductors are permitted.
 - 46 b. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding and fittings.



- 1 D. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
- 2 1. Run raceways larger than 1 inch trade size below concrete slab..
- 3 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints with expansion fittings at right
- 4 angles to the joint.
- 5 3. Arrange raceways to ensure that each is surrounded by a minimum of 1 inch of concrete
- 6 without voids.
- 7 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless locations have been specifically
- 8 approved by Architect.
- 9 5. Change from ENT to ERM C before rising above floor.
- 10 E. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
- 11 1. Provide EMT, IMC, or ERM C for raceways.
- 12 2. Provide a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs
- 13 or in an enclosure.
- 14 F. Raceway Fittings: Install fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.
- 15 1. EMT: Provide compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
- 16 2. Flexible Conduit: Provide only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit type. Comply with
- 17 NEMA FB 2.20.
- 18 G. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
- 19 1. Install in runs of aboveground PVC that are located where environmental temperature
- 20 change may exceed 30 deg F and that have straight-run length that exceeds 25 ft.. Install
- 21 in runs of aboveground ERM C and EMT conduit that are located where environmental
- 22 temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that have straight-run length that
- 23 exceeds 100 ft..
- 24 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for the
- 25 following locations:
- 26 a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
- 27 b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
- 28 c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F
- 29 temperature change.
- 30 d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.
- 31 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot
- 32 of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install
- 33 fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of
- 34 length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
- 35 4. Install expansion fittings at locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion
- 36 joints.
- 37 5. Install expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected in
- 38 accordance with manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at
- 39 time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- 40 H. Raceways Penetrating Rooms or Walls with Acoustical Requirements:
- 41 1. Seal raceway openings on both sides of rooms or walls with acoustically rated putty or
- 42 firestopping.



1 **3.4 INSTALLATION OF DIRECT BURIED RACEWAYS**

2 A. Install direct buried raceway with a minimum 36 inch of well tramped earth above the top of the
3 raceway.

4 B. Install underground warning tape per requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for
5 Electrical Systems".

6 **3.5 INSTALLATION OF BOXES AND ENCLOSURES**

7 A. Provide boxes in wiring and raceway systems wherever required for pulling of wires, making
8 connections, and mounting of devices or fixtures.

9 B. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually
10 indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box
11 unless otherwise indicated.

12 C. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block,
13 and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a
14 raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box, whether
15 installed indoors or outdoors.

16 D. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same
17 vertical channel.

18 E. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.

19 F. Support boxes in recessed ceilings independent of ceiling tiles and ceiling grid.

20 G. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing
21 members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for purpose.

22 H. Fasten junction and pull boxes to, or support from, building structure. Do not support boxes by
23 conduits.

24 I. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

25 J. Do not install aluminum boxes, enclosures, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

26 K. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in
27 the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to ensure a continuous ground path.

28 L. Boxes and Enclosures in Areas or Walls with Acoustical Requirements:

29 1. Seal openings and knockouts in back and sides of boxes and enclosures with
30 acoustically rated putty.

31 2. Provide gaskets for wallplates and covers.

32 **3.6 FIRESTOPPING**

33 A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with
34 requirements in Division 07.



1 **3.7 PROTECTION**

2 A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

3 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by
4 manufacturer.

5 **3.8 CLEANING**

6 A. Boxes: Remove construction dust and debris from device boxes, outlet boxes, and floor-
7 mounted enclosures before installing wallplates, covers, and hoods.

8 **END OF SECTION 26 05 33**

9



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 05 43 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Metal conduits and fittings, including GRC and PVC-coated steel conduit.
9 2. Rigid nonmetallic duct.
10 3. Duct accessories.
11 4. Polymer concrete handholes and boxes with polymer concrete cover.
12 5. Flowable fill.

13 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 14 A. Direct Buried: Duct or a duct bank that is buried in the ground, without any additional casing
15 materials such as concrete.
- 16 B. Duct: A single duct or multiple ducts. Duct may be either installed singly or as component of a
17 duct bank.
- 18 C. Duct Bank:
- 19 1. Two or more ducts installed in parallel, with or without additional casing materials.
- 20 D. GRC: Galvanized rigid (steel) conduit
- 21 E. Trafficways: Locations where vehicular or pedestrian traffic is a normal course of events.

22 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 23 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 24 1. Include duct-bank materials, including spacers and miscellaneous components.
25 2. Include duct, conduits, and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings,
26 and solvent cement.
27 3. Include accessories for manholes, handholes, boxes, and other utility structures.
28 4. Include underground-line warning tape.
29 5. Flowable fill.

- 30 B. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete manholes and, comply
31 with ASTM C 858.



1 **1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- 2 A. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is 36 inches below ground surface unless a higher
3 water table is noted on Drawings.

4 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

5 **2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND FITTINGS**

- 6 A. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- 7 B. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and
8 marked for intended location and application.

9 **2.2 RIGID NONMETALLIC DUCT**

- 10 A. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and
11 UL 651, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 by same manufacturer as duct.
- 12 B. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and
13 marked for intended location and application.
- 14 C. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

15 **2.3 DUCT ACCESSORIES**

- 16 A. Duct Spacers: Factory-fabricated, rigid, PVC interlocking spacers; sized for type and size of
17 duct with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting
18 duct during concreting or backfilling.
- 19 B. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Comply with requirements for underground-line warning tape
20 specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

21 **2.4 POLYMER CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES WITH POLYMER CONCRETE COVER**

- 22 A. Description: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and
23 reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
- 24 B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
25 following:
- 26 1. Armorcast Products Company.
- 27 2. NewBasis.
- 28 3. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.
- 29 C. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure
30 Application" Article.



- 1 D. Color: Gray.
- 2 E. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom unless otherwise
3 indicated.
- 4 F. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load
5 rating consistent with enclosure.
- 6 G. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
- 7 H. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC." or as indicated for each service.
- 8 I. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-
9 bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure,
10 fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- 11 J. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering duct for secure,
12 fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- 13 K. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for
14 cable racks and pulling-in irons.

15 **2.5 FLOWABLE FILL**

- 16 A. Description: Low-strength-concrete, flowable-slurry mix.
- 17 1. Cement: ASTM C150, Type I, portland.
- 18 2. Density: 115- to 145-lb/cu. ft..
- 19 3. Aggregates:
- 20 a. ASTM C33, natural sand, fine and crushed gravel or stone, coarse.
- 21 4. Admixture: ASTM C618, fly-ash mineral.
- 22 5. Water: Comply with ASTM C94/C94M.
- 23 6. Strength: 100 to 200 psig at 28 days.
- 24 7. Color:
- 25 a. Electrical Power Lines and Cables: Red.
- 26 b. Fiber Optics, Communications, Alarms: Orange.

27 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

28 **3.1 PREPARATION**

- 29 A. Coordinate layout and installation of duct, duct bank, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final
30 arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field.
31 Notify Architect if there is a conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or
32 archaeological sites to remain.
- 33 B. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes
34 with final locations and profiles of duct and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other



1 utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as
2 required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct and duct bank will drain to manholes and
3 handholes, and as approved by Architect.

4 **3.2 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION**

5 A. Duct for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, direct-buried unless
6 otherwise indicated.

7 B. Duct for Electrical Branch Circuits: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, direct-buried unless otherwise
8 indicated.

9 C. Underground Ducts Crossing Driveways, Roadways, and Railroads: Type EPC-40 PVC RNC,
10 encased in reinforced concrete.

11 D. Stub-ups: Concrete-encased GRC.

12 **3.3 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION**

13 A. Handholes and Boxes for 600 V and Less:

14 1. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional,
15 Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 18
16 structural load rating.

17 2. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading
18 by Vehicles: Polymer concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8 structural load rating.

19 3. Cover design load shall not exceed the design load of the handhole or box.

20 **3.4 EARTHWORK**

21 A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-
22 duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.

23 B. Restoration: Replace area immediately after backfilling is completed or after construction
24 vehicle traffic in immediate area is complete.

25 C. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation and re-establish original grades
26 unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.

27 D. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore
28 vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and
29 mulching.

30 E. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground duct, duct bank, and underground
31 structures.

32 **3.5 DUCT AND DUCT-BANK INSTALLATION**

33 A. Where indicated on Drawings, install duct, spacers, and accessories into the duct-bank
34 configuration shown. Duct installation requirements in this Section also apply to duct bank.



- 1 B. Install duct according to NEMA TCB 2.
- 2 C. Slope: Pitch duct a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away
3 from buildings and equipment. Slope duct from a high point between two manholes, to drain in
4 both directions.
- 5 D. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use
6 manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 48 inches, both horizontally and
7 vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.
- 8 1. Duct shall have maximum of two 90 degree bends or the total of all bends shall be no
9 more 180 degrees between pull points.
- 10 E. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in duct and fittings and make watertight according to
11 manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent duct do not lie in
12 same plane.
- 13 F. Installation Adjacent to High-Temperature Steam Lines: Where duct is installed parallel to
14 underground steam lines, perform calculations showing the duct will not be subject to
15 environmental temperatures above 40 deg C. Where environmental temperatures are
16 calculated to rise above 40 deg C, and anywhere the duct crosses above an underground
17 steam line, install insulation blankets listed for direct burial to isolate the duct bank from the
18 steam line.
- 19 G. End Bell Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end
20 bells, spaced approximately 10 inches o.c. for 5-inch duct, and vary proportionately for other
21 duct sizes.
- 22 1. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet from the end bell, without
23 reducing duct slope and without forming a trap in the line.
- 24 2. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each duct
25 in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole. Install an expansion
26 fitting near the center of all straight line direct-buried duct with calculated expansion of
27 more than 3/4 inch.
- 28 3. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.
- 29 H. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to GRC at least 10 feet
30 outside the building wall, without reducing duct line slope away from the building and without
31 forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for RNC-to-GRC transition. Install GRC
32 penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 26 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for
33 Electrical Raceways and Cabling."
- 34 I. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of duct with pulled cables. Seal spare duct at
35 terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig hydrostatic
36 pressure.
- 37 J. Pulling Cord: Install 200-lbf-test nylon cord in empty ducts.
- 38 K. Direct-Buried Duct and Duct Bank:
- 39 1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct. Comply with
40 requirements in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for preparation of trench bottoms for
41 pipes less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
- 42 2. Width: Excavate trench 3 inches wider than duct on each side.



- 1 3. Depth: Install top of duct at least 36 inches below finished grade unless otherwise
2 indicated. Where cover over top of piping is less than required depth, cover with flowable
3 fill up to 6 inches below finished grade.
- 4 4. Support ducts on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor
5 temperature.
- 6 5. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of
7 duct, with not less than four spacers per 20 feet of duct. Place spacers within 24 inches
8 of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches between tiers. Secure spacers to
9 earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together
10 using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or
11 magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
- 12 6. Install duct with a minimum of 3 inches between ducts for like services and 6 inches
13 between power and communications duct.
- 14 7. Install manufactured GRC elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of
15 direction in duct.
- 16 a. Couple RNC duct to GRC with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase
17 coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
- 18 b. Stub-ups to Outdoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a
19 minimum of 60 inches from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on
20 terminations at equipment.
- 21 1) Stub-ups shall be minimum 4 inches above finished floor and minimum 3
22 inches from conduit side to edge of slab.
- 23 c. Stub-ups to Indoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a
24 minimum of 60 inches from edge of wall. Install insulated grounding bushings on
25 terminations at equipment.
- 26 1) Stub-ups shall be minimum 4 inches above finished floor and no less than 3
27 inches from conduit side to edge of slab.
- 28 8. After installing first tier of duct, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward
29 end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction
30 as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier.
31 After placing last tier, hand place backfill to 4 inches over duct and hand tamp. Firmly
32 tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper
33 only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of
34 run and complete backfilling with normal compaction. Comply with requirements in
35 Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for installation of backfill materials.
- 36 a. Place minimum 3 inches of sand as a bed for duct. Place sand to a minimum of 6
37 inches above top level of duct.
- 38 b. Place minimum 6 inches of engineered fill above concrete encasement of duct.
- 39 L. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Bury conducting underground line specified in
40 Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems" no less than 12 inches above all
41 concrete-encased duct and duct banks and approximately 12 inches below grade. Align tape
42 parallel to and within 3 inches of centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for
43 each 12-inch increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches. Space additional tapes 12
44 inches apart, horizontally.



1 **3.6 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE MANHOLES, HANDHOLES, AND BOXES**

2 A. Precast Concrete Handhole and Manhole Installation:

- 3 1. Comply with ASTM C 891 unless otherwise indicated.
4 2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting
5 duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
6 3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel,
7 graded from 1-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent
8 undisturbed earth.

9 B. Elevations:

- 10 1. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade.
11 Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.
12 2. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.

13 C. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage
14 provisions indicated.

15 D. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, and cable
16 arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as
17 indicated.

18 E. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Manholes and Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than
19 3-7/8 inches for manholes and 2 inches for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use
20 a minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.

21 **3.7 GROUNDING**

22 A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and
23 Bonding for Electrical Systems."

24 **3.8 CLEANING**

25 A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of duct
26 until duct cleaner indicates that duct is clear of dirt and debris. Follow with rubber duct swab for
27 final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.

28 B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump.

29 C. Remove foreign material.

30 **END OF SECTION 26 05 43**

31



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 05 44 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section Includes:

- 5 1. Round sleeves.
6 2. Rectangular sleeves.
7 3. Sleeve seal systems.
8 4. Grout.

9 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

10 **2.1 ROUND SLEEVES**

11 A. Wall Sleeves, Steel:

- 12 1. Description: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends
13 and integral waterstop.

14 **2.2 RECTANGULAR SLEEVES**

15 A. Sheet Metal Sleeves, Galvanized Steel, Rectangular:

16 1. Description:

- 17 a. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
18 b. Minimum Metal Thickness:

- 19 1) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inch and with no
20 side larger than 16 inch, thickness must be 0.052 inch.
21 2) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter not less than 50 inch or with
22 one or more sides larger than 16 inch, thickness must be 0.138 inch.

23 **2.3 SLEEVE SEAL SYSTEMS**

24 A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between
25 sleeve and raceway or cable or between raceway and cable.

- 26 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include
27 type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
28 2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
29 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates
30 to sealing elements.



1 **2.4 GROUT**

2 A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated
3 walls or floors.

4 1. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry,
5 hydraulic-cement grout.

6 2. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.

7 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

8 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

9 **3.1 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS**

10 A. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade, Non-Fire-Rated, Concrete and Masonry-Unit
11 Floors and Walls:

12 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:

13 a. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly
14 between sleeve and wall or floor so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces
15 smooth; protect material while curing.

16 b. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant
17 appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in
18 Division 07.

19 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

20 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4 inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or
21 cable, unless sleeve seal system is to be installed.

22 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are
23 used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush
24 with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.

25 B. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-
26 type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

27 C. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and
28 mechanical sleeve seal systems. Size sleeves to allow for 1 inch annular clear space between
29 pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

30 **3.2 INSTALLATION OF RECTANGULAR SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS**

31 A. Install sleeves in existing walls without compromising structural integrity of walls. Do not cut
32 structural elements without reinforcing the wall to maintain the designed weight bearing and wall
33 stiffness.

34 B. Install conduits and cable with no crossings within the sleeve.

35 C. Fill opening around conduits and cables with expanding foam without leaving voids.



- 1 D. Provide metal sheet covering at both wall surfaces and finish to match surrounding surfaces.
2 Metal sheet must be same material as sleeve.

3 **3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE SEAL SYSTEMS**

- 4 A. Install sleeve seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway
5 entries into building.

- 6 B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or
7 cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical
8 sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts
9 against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

10 **END OF SECTION 26 05 44**
11



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 260548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. This Section includes the following:

- 8 1. Isolation pads.

- 9 B. Related Sections include the following:

- 10 1. Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for commonly used
11 electrical supports and installation requirements.

12 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 13 A. Product Data: For the following:

14 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

15 **2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS**

- 16 A. Pads: Arrange in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad
17 area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes
18 that match requirements of supported equipment.

- 19 1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.

20 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

21 **3.1 ELECTRICAL VIBRATION-CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE SCHEDULE**

- 22 A. Supported Equipment: .

- 23 1. Pads:

- 24 a. Material: Neoprene.
25 b. Thickness: 0.5 inches.



1 END OF SECTION 26 05 48



1 **SECTION 26 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
9 2. Labels.
10 3. Tapes and stencils.
11 4. Signs.
12 5. Paint for identification.

13 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 14 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

15 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

16 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 17 A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.
18 B. Comply with NFPA 70.
19 C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
20 D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
21 E. Comply with NFPA 70E requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
22 F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks
23 used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

24 **2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS**

- 25 A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
26 1. Black letters on an orange field.
27 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.



- 1 B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed
2 below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
- 3 1. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if
4 authorities having jurisdiction permit.
- 5 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
- 6 a. Phase A: Black.
- 7 b. Phase B: Red.
- 8 c. Phase C: Blue.
- 9 3. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
- 10 a. Phase A: Brown.
- 11 b. Phase B: Orange.
- 12 c. Phase C: Yellow.
- 13 4. Color for Neutral: White or gray.
- 14 5. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.
- 15 C. Warning Label Colors:
- 16 1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
- 17 D. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
- 18 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD -
19 EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
- 20 2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT
21 OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."
- 22 E. Equipment Identification Labels:
- 23 1. Black letters on a white field.
- 24 **2.3 LABELS**
- 25 A. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil-thick, vinyl flexible label with acrylic
26 pressure-sensitive adhesive.
- 27 B. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil-thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-
28 resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
- 29 1. Minimum Nominal Size:
- 30 a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches for raceway and conductors.
- 31 b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches for equipment.
- 32 c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.



1 **2.4 TAPES AND STENCILS**

2 A. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils
3 thick by 1 to 2 inches wide; compounded for outdoor use.

4 B. Tape and Stencil: 4-inch-wide black stripes on 10-inch centers placed diagonally over orange
5 background and are 12 inches wide. Stop stripes at legends.

6 C. Floor Marking Tape: 2-inch-wide, 5-mil pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with yellow and black
7 stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

8 D. Underground-Line Warning Tape:

9 1. Tape:

10 a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to
11 identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.

12 b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial
13 operations.

14 c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation
15 when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found
16 in soils.

17 2. Color and Printing:

18 a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and
19 ANSI Z535.5.

20 b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".

21 3. Description:

22 a. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a
23 solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the
24 continuity of the conductive core; bright colored, compounded for direct-burial
25 service.

26 b. Width: 3 inches.

27 c. Overall Thickness: 5 mils.

28 d. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil.

29 e. Weight: 28 lb/1000 sq. ft..

30 f. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 70 lbf and 4600 psi.

31 **2.5 SIGNS**

32 A. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

33 1. Engraved legend.

34 2. Thickness:

35 a. For signs up to 20 sq. in., minimum 1/16 inch thick.

36 b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in., 1/8 inch thick.

37 c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.

38 d. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with 1/4-inch grommets in corners for
39 mounting.

- 1 e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable
2 equipment.

3 **2.6 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS**

- 4 A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application
5 requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or
6 interior).

- 7 B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine
8 screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

9 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

10 **3.1 PREPARATION**

- 11 A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean
12 substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended
13 by manufacturer of identification product.

14 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- 15 A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with
16 requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings,
17 manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent
18 designations throughout Project.

- 19 B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

- 20 C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

- 21 D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation
22 and maintenance manual.

- 23 E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

- 24 F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance
25 of electrical systems and connected items.

- 26 G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely
27 encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.

- 28 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.

- 29 H. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and
30 signal connections.

- 31 I. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red
32 background with minimum 3/8-inch-high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used
33 for power transfer.



- 1 J. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for
2 viewing from the floor.
- 3 K. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the
4 following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be
5 as follows:
- 6 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
7 2. "POWER."
8 3. "UPS."
- 9 L. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and
10 accessibility.
- 11 M. Self-Adhesive Labels:
- 12 1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams,
13 schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
14 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-
15 1/2-inch-high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
- 16 N. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and
17 accessibility.
- 18 1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum
19 distance of 6 inches where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no
20 tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- 21 O. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and
22 paint application.
- 23 P. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written
24 instructions.
- 25 Q. Underground Line Warning Tape:
- 26 1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly
27 above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where
28 width of multiple lines installed in a common trench exceeds 16 inches overall.
29 2. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- 30 R. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags:
- 31 1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
32 2. Secure using UV-stabilized cable ties.
- 33 S. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
- 34 1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the
35 location and substrate.
36 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-
37 1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.



1 **3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE**

- 2 A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without
3 interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to
4 provide view of identifying devices.
- 5 B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points,
6 and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- 7 C. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch
8 Circuits, More Than 50 A and 120 V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive wraparound labels.
- 9 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot
10 maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- 11 D. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each
12 junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring
13 system legend, circuit designation, and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
- 14 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
15 2. "POWER."
16 3. "UPS."
- 17 E. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction
18 boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive vinyl tape to identify the phase.
- 19 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot
20 maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- 21 F. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes,
22 manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive labels with the conductor or cable designation,
23 origin, and destination.
- 24 G. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide
25 self-adhesive labels with the conductor designation.
- 26 H. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Self-adhesive vinyl tape that is uniform
27 and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
- 28 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and
29 pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- 30 I. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting,
31 communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- 32 J. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape to finished surfaces. Show working clearances
33 in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and
34 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and
35 similar equipment in finished spaces.
- 36 K. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded
37 conductors.

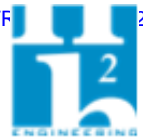
- 1 L. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-
2 adhesive labels.
- 3 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
4 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of
5 equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
- 6 a. Power-transfer switches.
7 b. Controls with external control power connections.
- 8 M. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- 9 N. Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels.
- 10 O. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels with white legend on a red
11 background with minimum 3/8-inch-high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used
12 for power transfer.
- 13 P. Equipment Identification Labels:
- 14 1. Indoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign.
15 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
16 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
- 17 a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by
18 panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a self-
19 adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
20 b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
21 c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
22 d. Switchboards.
23 e. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for the
24 transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
25 f. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
26 g. Enclosed switches.
27 h. Enclosed circuit breakers.
28 i. Enclosed controllers.
29 j. Variable-speed controllers.
30 k. Power-transfer equipment.
31 l. Monitoring and control equipment.
32 m. UPS equipment.

33 **END OF SECTION 26 05 53**
34



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 05 73.13 - SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

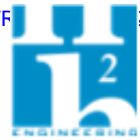
- 7 A. Section includes a computer-based, fault-current study to determine the minimum interrupting
8 capacity of circuit protective devices.

9 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 10 A. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and
11 the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of
12 NETA.
- 13 B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the
14 course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used
15 therein.
- 16 C. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains,
17 and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- 18 D. Power Systems Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study
19 and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- 20 E. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then
21 removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.
- 22 F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- 23 G. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to
24 the wiring system of the premises served.
- 25 H. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

26 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 27 A. Product Data:
- 28 1. For computer software program to be used for studies.
- 29 2. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals.
30 Submittals shall be in digital form.



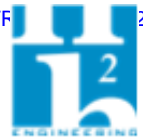
- 1 a. Short-circuit study input data, including completed computer program input data
2 sheets.
3 b. Short-circuit study and equipment evaluation report; signed, dated, and sealed by
4 a qualified professional engineer.
- 5 1) Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution
6 equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in
7 equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary
8 submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and
9 associated characteristics is satisfactory.
10 2) Revised one-line diagram, reflecting field investigation results and results of
11 short-circuit study.

12 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- 13 A. Operation and Maintenance Data:
- 14 1. For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance
15 manuals.
16 2. The following are from the Short-Circuit Study Report:
- 17 a. Final one-line diagram.
18 b. Final Short-Circuit Study Report.
19 c. Short-circuit study data files.
20 d. Power system data.

21 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- 22 A. Study shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed
23 specifically for power system analysis.
- 24 B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this
25 Section.
- 26 C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- 27 1. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications: Computer program shall be designed to
28 perform short-circuit studies or have a function, component, or add-on module designed
29 to perform short-circuit studies.
30 2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional
31 engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development
32 Professional certification.
- 33 D. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer licensed in the state
34 where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct
35 supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- 36 E. Short-Circuit Study Certification: Short-Circuit Study Report shall be signed and sealed by
37 Power Systems Analysis Specialist.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS**

3 **2.2 Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the**
4 **following:**

5 1. EasyPower, LLC (formerly ESA Inc.).

6 2. Power Analytics, Corporation.

7 3. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.

8 B. Comply with IEEE 399 and IEEE 551.

9 1. Analytical features of power systems analysis software program shall have capability to
10 calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

11 C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-
12 characteristic curves as part of its output.

13 **2.3 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY REPORT CONTENTS**

14 A. Executive summary of study findings.

15 B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms,
16 and guide for interpretation of results.

17 C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:

18 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.

19 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.

20 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.

21 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.

22 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations and ratings.

23 6. Derating factors and environmental conditions.

24 7. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.

25 D. Comments and recommendations for system improvements or revisions in a written document,
26 separate from one-line diagram.

27 E. Protective Device Evaluation:

28 1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to available short-circuit
29 currents. Verify that equipment withstand ratings exceed available short-circuit current at
30 equipment installation locations.

31 2. Tabulations of circuit breaker, fuse, and other protective device ratings versus calculated
32 short-circuit duties.

33 3. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or
34 higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.



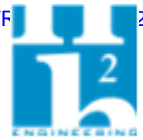
- 1 4. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication
2 factors listed in standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
- 3 5. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents;
4 verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors
5 at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to
6 or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.

- 7 F. Short-Circuit Study Input Data:
 - 8 1. One-line diagram of system being studied.
 - 9 2. Power sources available.
 - 10 3. Manufacturer, model, and interrupting rating of protective devices.
 - 11 4. Conductors.
 - 12 5. Transformer data.

- 13 G. Short-Circuit Study Output Reports:
 - 14 1. Low-Voltage Fault Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the
15 following for each overcurrent device location:
 - 16 a. Voltage.
 - 17 b. Calculated fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - 18 c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - 19 d. Equivalent impedance.

 - 20 2. Momentary Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the
21 following for each overcurrent device location:
 - 22 a. Voltage.
 - 23 b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - 24 c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - 25 d. Calculated asymmetrical fault currents:
 - 26 1) Based on fault-point X/R ratio.
 - 27 2) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 1.6.
 - 28 3) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 2.7.

 - 29 3. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the
30 following for each overcurrent device location:
 - 31 a. Voltage.
 - 32 b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - 33 c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - 34 d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
 - 35 e. Equivalent impedance.
 - 36 f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical
37 basis.
 - 38 g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 POWER SYSTEM DATA**

3 A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the study.

- 4 1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram. Call any discrepancies to
5 Architect's attention.
6 2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under
7 provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.

8 B. Gather and tabulate the required input data to support the short-circuit study. Comply with
9 requirements in Division 01 "Project Record Documents" for recording circuit protective device
10 characteristics. Record data on a Record Document copy of one-line diagram. Comply with
11 recommendations in IEEE 551 as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the
12 field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge
13 of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA
14 ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data
15 include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 16 1. Product Data for Project's overcurrent protective devices involved in overcurrent
17 protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are
18 consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device
19 submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
20 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
21 3. Power sources and ties.
22 4. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type,
23 impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
24 5. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of
25 breaker, type of trip, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
26 6. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated
27 kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
28 7. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
29 8. Conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or
30 nonmagnetic).
31 9. Derating factors.

32 **3.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY**

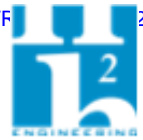
33 A. Perform study following the general study procedures contained in IEEE 399.

34 B. Calculate short-circuit currents according to IEEE 551.

35 C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.

36 D. Begin short-circuit current analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent
37 protective devices as follows:

- 38 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.



- 1 E. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout
2 electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and
3 alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- 4 F. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and
5 asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also
6 account for the fault-current dc decrement to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting
7 equipment.
- 8 G. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a
9 single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.
- 10 1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as
11 defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- 12 H. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.
- 13 **END OF SECTION 26 05 73.13**



1 **SECTION 26 05 73.16 - COORDINATION STUDIES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes computer-based, overcurrent protective device coordination studies to
8 determine overcurrent protective devices and to determine overcurrent protective device
9 settings for selective tripping.

- 10 1. Study results shall be used to determine coordination of series-rated devices.

11 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 12 A. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and
13 the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of
14 NETA.

- 15 B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the
16 course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used
17 therein.

- 18 C. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains,
19 and distributes computer software used for power system studies.

- 20 D. Power System Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and
21 documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.

- 22 E. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then
23 removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.

- 24 F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

- 25 G. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to
26 the wiring system of the premises served.

- 27 H. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

28 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 29 A. Product Data:

- 30 1. For computer software program to be used for studies.



- 1 2. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals.
2 Submittals shall be in digital form.
- 3 a. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data
4 sheets.
- 5 b. Study and equipment evaluation reports.
- 6 3. Overcurrent protective device coordination study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a
7 qualified professional engineer.
- 8 a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution
9 equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment
10 manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient
11 study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is
12 satisfactory.

13 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 14 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency,
15 operation, and maintenance manuals.
- 16 1. The following are from the Coordination Study Report:
 - 17 a. Final one-line diagram.
 - 18 b. Final protective device coordination study.
 - 19 c. Coordination study data files.
 - 20 d. List of all protective device settings.
 - 21 e. Time-current coordination curves.
 - 22 f. Power system data.

23 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 24 A. Studies shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed
25 specifically for power system analysis.
- 26 B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this
27 Section.
- 28 C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- 29 D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications:
 - 30 1. Computer program shall be designed to perform coordination studies or have a function,
31 component, or add-on module designed to perform coordination studies.
 - 32 2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional
33 engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development
34 Professional certification.
- 35 E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer licensed in the state
36 where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct
37 supervision and control of this professional engineer.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS**

3 **2.2 Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the**
4 **following:**

5 1. EasyPower, LLC (formerly ESA Inc.).

6 2. Power Analytics, Corporation.

7 3. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.

8 B. Comply with IEEE 242 and IEEE 399.

9 C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the
10 capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in
11 IEEE 399.

12 D. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-
13 characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device
14 settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective
15 coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.

16 1. Optional Features:

17 a. Arcing faults.

18 b. Simultaneous faults.

19 c. Explicit negative sequence.

20 d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

21 **2.3 COORDINATION STUDY REPORT CONTENTS**

22 A. Executive summary of study findings.

23 B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms,
24 and guide for interpretation of results.

25 C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:

26 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.

27 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.

28 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.

29 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.

30 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations.

31 6. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.

32 7. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.

33 a. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports"
34 Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 26 05 73.13
35 "Short-Circuit Studies."



- 1 D. Protective Device Coordination Study:
- 2 1. Report recommended settings of protective devices, ready to be applied in the field. Use
3 manufacturer's data sheets for recording the recommended setting of overcurrent
4 protective devices when available.
- 5 a. Phase and Ground Relays:
- 6 1) Device tag.
7 2) Relay current transformer ratio and tap, time dial, and instantaneous pickup
8 value.
9 3) Recommendations on improved relaying systems, if applicable.
- 10 b. Circuit Breakers:
- 11 1) Adjustable pickups and time delays (long time, short time, and ground).
12 2) Adjustable time-current characteristic.
13 3) Adjustable instantaneous pickup.
14 4) Recommendations on improved trip systems, if applicable.
- 15 c. Fuses: Show current rating, voltage, and class.
- 16 E. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to
17 achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists
18 between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices.
19 Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where
20 the power source is local generation. Show the following information:
- 21 1. Device tag and title, one-line diagram with legend identifying the portion of the system
22 covered.
- 23 2. Terminate device characteristic curves at a point reflecting maximum symmetrical or
24 asymmetrical fault current to which the device is exposed.
- 25 3. Identify the device associated with each curve by manufacturer type, function, and, if
26 applicable, tap, time delay, and instantaneous settings recommended.
- 27 4. Plot the following listed characteristic curves, as applicable:
- 28 a. Low-voltage equipment circuit-breaker trip devices, including manufacturer's
29 tolerance bands.
- 30 b. Transformer full-load current, magnetizing inrush current, and ANSI through-fault
31 protection curves.
- 32 c. Cables and conductors damage curves.
- 33 d. Ground-fault protective devices.
- 34 e. Motor-starting characteristics and motor damage points.
- 35 f. Generator short-circuit decrement curve and generator damage point.
- 36 g. The largest feeder circuit breaker in each motor-control center and panelboard.
- 37 5. Maintain selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads.
- 38 6. Provide adequate time margins between device characteristics such that selective
39 operation is achieved.
- 40 7. Comments and recommendations for system improvements.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

3 A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical
4 distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the
5 Work. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.

6 1. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been
7 assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved
8 prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

9 **3.2 POWER SYSTEM DATA**

10 A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the overcurrent protective device study.

- 11 1. Verify completeness of data supplied in one-line diagram on Drawings. Call any
12 discrepancies to Architect's attention.
13 2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under
14 provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.

15 B. Gather and tabulate all required input data to support the coordination study. List below is a
16 guide. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 for the amount of detail required to be
17 acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the
18 engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative
19 who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III
20 certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 21 1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved
22 in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags
23 that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective
24 device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
25 2. Electrical power utility impedance at the service.
26 3. Power sources and ties.
27 4. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
28 5. Full-load current of all loads.
29 6. Voltage level at each bus.
30 7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type,
31 impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
32 8. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of
33 breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker
34 settings.
35 9. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated
36 kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
37 10. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios,
38 potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
39 11. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
40 12. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material, and conduit material
41 (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
42 13. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system one-line diagram, cross-
43 referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:



- 1 a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting
- 2 and stopping.
- 3 b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush
- 4 current, and overload capability.
- 5 c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of
- 6 start, and thermal-damage curve.
- 7 d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
- 8 e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
- 9 f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility
- 10 company.
- 11 g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
- 12 h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes root mean square (rms)
- 13 symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-
- 14 time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
- 15 i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment
- 16 range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio
- 17 for overcurrent relays.
- 18 j. Switchgear, switchboards, motor-control centers, and panelboards ampacity, and
- 19 SCCR in amperes rms symmetrical.

20 3.3 COORDINATION STUDY

- 21 A. Comply with IEEE 242 for calculating short-circuit currents and determining coordination time
- 22 intervals.
- 23 B. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.
- 24 C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- 25 D. Extent of electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.
- 26 E. Begin analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as
- 27 follows:
 - 28 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
- 29 F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout
- 30 electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and
- 31 alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- 32 G. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:
 - 33 1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:
 - 34 a. Inrush current when first energized.
 - 35 b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is
 - 36 specified for that transformer.
 - 37 c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by
 - 38 unusual loading or emergency conditions.
 - 39 2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.
- 40 H. Motor Protection:



- 1 1. Select protection for low-voltage motors according to IEEE 242 and NFPA 70.
- 2 I. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-
3 32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and protection recommendations in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that
4 equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping
5 time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures
6 that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating
7 conductor size and short-circuit current.
- 8 J. Generator Protection: Select protection according to manufacturer's written instructions and to
9 IEEE 242.
- 10 K. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and
11 asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also
12 account for fault-current dc decrement, to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting
13 equipment.
- 14 L. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a
15 single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.
- 16 1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as
17 defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- 18 M. Protective Device Evaluation:
- 19 1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
20 2. Adequacy of switchgear, motor-control centers, and panelboard bus bars to withstand
21 short-circuit stresses.
22 3. Any application of series-rated devices shall be recertified, complying with requirements
23 in NFPA 70.
24 4. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.
- 25 **3.4 FIELD ADJUSTING**
- 26 A. Adjust relay and protective device settings according to recommended settings provided by the
27 coordination study.
- 28 B. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit
29 and protective device coordination studies.

30 **END OF SECTION 26 05 73.16**

31



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 05 73.19 - ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- 7 A. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and
8 the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of
9 NETA.
- 10 B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the
11 course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used
12 therein.
- 13 C. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains,
14 and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- 15 D. Power Systems Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study
16 and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- 17 E. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then
18 removes the affected portion from the system.
- 19 F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- 20 G. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to
21 the wiring system of the premises served.
- 22 H. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

23 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 24 A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- 25 B. Study Submittals: Submit the following submittals after the approval of system protective
26 devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form:
- 27 1. Arc-flash study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
28 2. Arc-flash study report; signed, dated, and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
29 3. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment
30 submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing,
31 obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure
32 that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.



1 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 2 A. Study shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed
3 specifically for power system analysis.
- 4 B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this
5 Section.
- 6 C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- 7 D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer
8 software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on
9 electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
- 10 1. Computer program shall be designed to perform arc-flash analysis or have a function,
11 component, or add-on module designed to perform arc-flash analysis.
- 12 2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional
13 engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development
14 Professional certification.
- 15 E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of
16 performing the arc-flash study, analyzing the arc flash, and documenting recommendations,
17 licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed
18 under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- 19 F. Arc-Flash Study Certification: Arc-Flash Study Report shall be signed and sealed by Power
20 Systems Analysis Specialist.

21 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

22 **2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS**

- 23 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
24 following:
- 25 1. EasyPower, LLC (formerly ESA Inc.).
- 26 2. Power Analytics, Corporation.
- 27 3. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- 28 B. Comply with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.
- 29 C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the
30 capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in
31 IEEE 399.

32 **2.2 ARC-FLASH STUDY REPORT CONTENT**

- 33 A. Executive summary of study findings.



- 1 B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms,
2 and guide for interpretation of results.
- 3 C. One-line diagram, showing the following:
- 4 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
5 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
6 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings, including derating factors and
7 environmental conditions.
8 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
9 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, panelboard designations, and ratings.
- 10 D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
- 11 E. Short-Circuit Study Output Data: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph
12 in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 26 05 73.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."
- 13 F. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Coordination Study
14 Report Contents" Article in Section 26 05 73.16 "Coordination Studies."
- 15 G. Arc-Flash Study Output Reports:
- 16 1. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the
17 following for each equipment location included in the report:
- 18 a. Voltage.
19 b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
20 c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
21 d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
22 e. Equivalent impedance.
23 f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical
24 basis.
25 g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.
- 26 H. Incident Energy and Flash Protection Boundary Calculations:
- 27 1. Arcing fault magnitude.
28 2. Protective device clearing time.
29 3. Duration of arc.
30 4. Arc-flash boundary.
31 5. Restricted approach boundary.
32 6. Limited approach boundary.
33 7. Working distance.
34 8. Incident energy.
35 9. Hazard risk category.
36 10. Recommendations for arc-flash energy reduction.
- 37 I. Fault study input data, case descriptions, and fault-current calculations including a definition of
38 terms and guide for interpretation of computer printout.



1 **2.3 ARC-FLASH WARNING LABELS**

- 2 A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for self-
3 adhesive equipment labels. Produce a 3.5-by-5-inch self-adhesive equipment label for each
4 work location included in the analysis.
- 5 B. Label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and
6 shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:
- 7 1. Location designation.
8 2. Nominal voltage.
9 3. Protection boundaries.
- 10 a. Arc-flash boundary.
11 b. Restricted approach boundary.
12 c. Limited approach boundary.
- 13 4. Arc flash PPE category.
14 5. Required minimum arc rating of PPE in Cal/cm squared.
15 6. Available incident energy.
16 7. Working distance.
17 8. Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.
- 18 C. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

19 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

20 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 21 A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals. Proceed with arc-flash study only
22 after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that
23 have not been submitted and approved prior to arc-flash study may not be used in study.

24 **3.2 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS**

- 25 A. Comply with NFPA 70E and its Annex D for hazard analysis study.
- 26 B. Preparatory Studies: Perform the Short-Circuit and Protective Device Coordination studies prior
27 to starting the Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis.
- 28 C. Calculate maximum and minimum contributions of fault-current size.
- 29 1. Maximum calculation shall assume a maximum contribution from the utility and shall
30 assume motors to be operating under full-load conditions.
31 2. Calculate arc-flash energy at 85 percent of maximum short-circuit current according to
32 IEEE 1584 recommendations.
33 3. Calculate arc-flash energy at 38 percent of maximum short-circuit current according to
34 NFPA 70E recommendations.
35 4. Calculate arc-flash energy with the utility contribution at a minimum and assume no motor
36 contribution.



- 1 D. Calculate the arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at locations in electrical
2 distribution system where personnel could perform work on energized parts.
- 3 E. Calculate the limited, restricted, and prohibited approach boundaries for each location.
- 4 F. Incident energy calculations shall consider the accumulation of energy over time when
5 performing arc-flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations shall take
6 into account the changing current contributions, as the sources are interrupted or decremented
7 with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators shall be decremented as follows:
- 8 1. Fault contribution from induction motors shall not be considered beyond three to five
9 cycles.
- 10 2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators shall be decayed to match
11 the actual decrement of each as closely as possible (for example, contributions from
12 permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 per unit to three per unit after
13 10 cycles).
- 14 G. Arc-flash energy shall generally be reported for the maximum of line or load side of a circuit
15 breaker. However, arc-flash computation shall be performed and reported for both line and load
16 side of a circuit breaker as follows:
- 17 1. When the circuit breaker is in a separate enclosure.
- 18 2. When the line terminals of the circuit breaker are separate from the work location.
- 19 H. Base arc-flash calculations on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Cap maximum
20 clearing time at two seconds based on IEEE 1584, Section B.1.2.

21 3.3 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- 22 A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the arc-flash hazard analysis.
- 23 1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram on Drawings and under
24 "Preparatory Studies" Paragraph in "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" Article. Call
25 discrepancies to Architect's attention.
- 26 2. For new equipment, use characteristics from approved submittals under provisions of
27 action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
- 28 B. Electrical Survey Data: Gather and tabulate the following input data to support study. Comply
29 with recommendations in IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E as to the amount of detail that is required
30 to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control
31 of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its
32 representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power
33 Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 34 1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved
35 in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags
36 that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective
37 device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
- 38 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance or available short circuit current at the service.
- 39 3. Power sources and ties.
- 40 4. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
- 41 5. Full-load current of all loads.
- 42 6. Voltage level at each bus.



- 1 7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type,
2 impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
- 3 8. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of
4 breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker
5 settings.
- 6 9. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated
7 kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
- 8 10. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios,
9 potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
- 10 11. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
- 11 12. Low-voltage conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material
12 (magnetic or nonmagnetic).

13 3.4 LABELING

- 14 A. Apply one arc-flash label on the front cover of each section of the equipment for each
15 equipment included in the study. Base arc-flash label data on highest values calculated at each
16 location.
- 17 B. Each piece of equipment listed below shall have an arc-flash label applied to it:
18 1. Low-voltage switchboard.
19 2. Low voltage transformers. Exclude transformers with high voltage side 240 V or less and
20 less than 125 kVA.
21 3. Panelboard and safety switch over 250 V.
22 4. Applicable panelboard and safety switch under 250 V.
- 23 C. Note on record Drawings the location of equipment where the personnel could be exposed to
24 arc-flash hazard during their work.
25 1. Indicate arc-flash energy.
26 2. Indicate protection level required.

27 3.5 APPLICATION OF WARNING LABELS

- 28 A. Install arc-flash warning labels under the direct supervision and control of Power System
29 Analysis Specialist.

30 **END OF SECTION 26 05 73.19**



1 **SECTION 26 09 23 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section Includes:

- 5 1. Outdoor photoelectric switches, low voltage.
- 6 2. Daylight-harvesting dimming controls, digital.
- 7 3. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
- 8 4. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
- 9 5. Lighting contactors.
- 10 6. Emergency shunt relay.
- 11 7. Conductors and cables.

12 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

13 A. Product Data:

- 14 1. For each type of product.

15 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

16 **2.1 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES, LOW VOLTAGE**

17 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
18 following:

- 19 1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
- 20 2. Intermatic, Inc.
- 21 3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.

22 B. Description: Solid state; one set of NO dry contacts rated for 24 V(dc) at 1 A, to operate
23 connected load, complying with UL 773, and compatible with luminaire, power pack, or lighting
24 control panelboard.

- 25 1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing
26 laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location
27 and application.
- 28 2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off
29 levels within that range.
- 30 3. Time Delay: Thirty-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
- 31 4. Mounting: 1/2 inch threaded male conduit.
- 32 5. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.
- 33 6. Power Pack:



1 a. Digital controller capable of accepting three 8PSJ inputs with two outputs rated for
 2 10 A incandescent or LED load at 120 and 277 V(ac). Sensor has 24 V(dc),
 3 Class 2 power source.

- 4 1) With integral current monitoring.
 5 2) Plenum rated.

6 2.2 DAYLIGHT-HARVESTING DIMMING CONTROLS, DIGITAL

7 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 8 following:

- 9 1. Crestron Electronics, Inc.
 10 2. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 11 3. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
 12 4. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
 13 5. WattStopper; Legrand North America, LLC.

14 B. Description: Sensing daylight and electrical lighting levels, the system adjusts the indoor
 15 electrical lighting levels. As daylight increases, lights are dimmed.

16 1. Lighting control set point is based on the following two lighting conditions:

- 17 a. When no daylight is present (target level).
 18 b. When significant daylight is present.

19 2. System programming is done with two hand-held, remote-control tools.

- 20 a. Initial setup tool.
 21 b. Tool for occupants to adjust the target levels by increasing the set point up to 25
 22 percent, or by minimizing the electric lighting level.

23 C. Ceiling-Mounted Dimming Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with separate power
 24 pack, to detect changes in indoor lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.

25 D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:

- 26 1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing
 27 laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location
 28 and application.
 29 2. Sensor Output: zero to 10 V(dc) to operate luminaires. Sensor is powered by controller
 30 unit.
 31 3. Light-Level Sensor Set-Point Adjustment Range: 20 to 60 fc.

32 E. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting two or three 8PSJ inputs with one, two, or
 33 three output(s) rated for 10 A incandescent or LED load at 120 and 277 V(ac) each with a zero
 34 to 10 V(dc) dimming output. Sensor has 24 V(dc) Class 2 power source.

- 35 1. With integral current monitoring.



- 1 2. Compatible with digital addressable lighting interface.
- 2 3. Plenum rated.

3 2.3 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

4 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
5 following:

- 6 1. Creston Electronics, Inc.
- 7 2. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- 8 3. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
- 9 4. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
- 10 5. WattStopper; Legrand North America, LLC.

11 B. General Requirements for Sensors:

- 12 1. Wall or ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
- 13 2. Dual technology.
- 14 3. Separate power pack.
- 15 4. Hardwired connection to switch.
- 16 5. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing
17 laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location
18 and application.
- 19 6. Operation:
 - 20 a. Combination Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, sensor must be programmed to
21 turn lights on when coverage area is occupied and turn them off when unoccupied,
22 or to turn off lights that have been manually turned on; with a time delay for turning
23 lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 - 24 7. Sensor Output: Sensor is powered from the power pack.
 - 25 8. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting two or three 8PSJ inputs with one,
26 two, or three output(s) rated for 10 A incandescent or LED load at 120 and 277 V(ac)
27 each with a zero to 10 V(dc) diming output. Sensor has 24 V(dc) Class 2 power source.
 - 28 a. With integral current monitoring.
 - 29 b. Plenum rated.
 - 30 9. Mounting:
 - 31 a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position in a standard device box or outlet
32 box.
 - 33 b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2 inch knockout in a standard electrical
34 enclosure.
 - 35 c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged
36 door.
 - 37 10. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal
38 operation of sensor.



- 1 11. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
- 2 C. Dual-Technology Type: Wall or ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR
3 and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that
4 control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
- 5 1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
6 2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6 inch minimum movement of any portion of a
7 human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. inch, and detect a person of
8 average size and weight moving not less than 12 inch in either a horizontal or a vertical
9 manner at an approximate speed of 12 inch/s.
10 3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area
11 of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96 inch high ceiling.
12 4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-
13 degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 2000 sq. ft. when mounted 48 inch
14 above finished floor.
- 15 **2.4 MANUAL SWITCHES AND PLATES**
- 16 A. Wall Plates: Single and multigang plates as specified in Section 26 27 26 "Wiring Devices."
17 B. Legend: Engraved or permanently silk-screened on buttons. Use designations indicated on
18 Drawings.
- 19 **2.5 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS**
- 20 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
21 following:
- 22 1. Creston Electronics, Inc.
23 2. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
24 3. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
25 4. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
26 5. WattStopper; Legrand North America, LLC.
- 27 B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off
28 switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox using hardwired connection.
- 29 1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing
30 laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location
31 and application.
32 2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage
33 area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights
34 off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
35 3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F.
36 4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800 VA ballast or LED load at 120 V, 1200 VA ballast or
37 LED load at 277 V, and 800 W incandescent.



- 1 C. Description:
- 2 1. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a
3 minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft..
- 4 2. Sensing Technology: Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic.
- 5 3. Switch Type: SP, field-selectable automatic "on," or manual "on," automatic "off." Provide
6 dual relay where indicated on plans.
- 7 4. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
- 8 5. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage.
- 9 6. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
- 10 7. Concealed, "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
- 11 8. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of
12 the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
- 13 9. Color: Match color and style specified in Section 26 27 26 "Wiring Devices."
- 14 10. Faceplate: Match wiring device faceplates specified in Specification 262726 "Wiring
15 Devices."

16 2.6 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

- 17 A. Description: Electrically operated and mechanically held, combination-type lighting contactors
18 with nonfused disconnect, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
- 19 1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served,
20 including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or
21 less THD of normal load current).
- 22 2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the
23 point of installation.
- 24 3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
- 25 4. Provide with control and pilot devices as indicated on Drawings, matching the NEMA type
26 specified for the enclosure.

27 2.7 EMERGENCY SHUNT RELAY

- 28 A. Description: NC, electrically held relay, arranged for wiring in parallel with manual or
29 automatic switching contacts; complying with UL 924.

30 2.8 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- 31 A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG.
32 Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and
33 Cables."
- 34 B. Balanced Twisted Pair Control Cable: Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 26 "Control-
35 Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- 36 C. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not
37 smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage
38 Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."



- 1 D. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than
2 No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power
3 Conductors and Cables."

4 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

5 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 6 A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet,
7 moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- 8 B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be
9 installed.
- 10 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

11 **3.2 INSTALLATION OF SENSORS**

- 12 A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that
13 penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke
14 detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- 15 B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas
16 indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's instructions.

17 **3.3 INSTALLATION OF WIRING**

- 18 A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and
19 Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch and Section 26 05 26 "Control-Voltage Electrical
20 Power Cables."
- 21 B. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors in
22 accordance with conductor manufacturer's instructions.
- 23 C. Size conductors in accordance with lighting control device manufacturer's instructions unless
24 otherwise indicated.
- 25 D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in
26 junction, pull, device, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

27 **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

- 28 A. Identify components and power and control wiring in accordance with Section 26 05 53
29 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 30 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
- 31 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each
32 sensor.



1 B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

2 **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

3 A. Tests and Inspections:

- 4 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry
5 has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
6 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
7 equipment.

8 B. Nonconforming Work:

- 9 1. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and
10 inspections.
11 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

12 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

13 D. Manufacturer Services:

- 14 1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to support field tests and inspections.

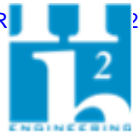
15 **3.6 ADJUSTING**

16 A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial
17 Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual
18 occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy
19 hours for this purpose.

- 20 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set
21 time delay to suit Owner's operations.
22 2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's
23 operations.

24 **END OF SECTION 26 09 23**

25



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 09 43.23 - RELAY-BASED LIGHTING CONTROLS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes: Lighting control panels using mechanically held relays for switching.

8 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 9 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 10 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components
11 and profiles, and finishes for control modules, power distribution components, relays,
12 manual switches and plates, and conductors and cables.
13 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and
14 furnished specialties and accessories.
15 3. Operational documentation for software and firmware.

16 **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting controls to include in emergency, operation, and
18 maintenance manuals.

- 19 B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

- 20 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.

21 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 22 A. Handle and prepare panels for installation according to NECA 407.

23 **1.6 WARRANTY**

- 24 A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of standalone
25 multipreset modular controls that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty
26 period.

- 27 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 28 a. Damage from transient voltage surges.



- 1 2. Warranty Period: Cost to repair or replace any parts for two years from date of
2 Substantial Completion.

3 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

4 **2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- 5 A. Sequence of Operations: Input signal from field-mounted manual switches, or digital signal
6 sources, shall open or close one or more lighting control relays in the lighting control panels.
7 Any combination of inputs shall be programmable to any number of control relays.
- 8 B. Surge Protective Device: Factory installed as an integral part of control components or field-
9 mounted surge suppressors complying with UL 1449, SPD Type 2.
- 10 C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
11 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 12 D. Comply with 47 CFR 15, Subparts A and B, for Class A digital devices.
- 13 E. Comply with UL 916.

14 **2.2 NETWORKED LIGHTING CONTROL PANELS**

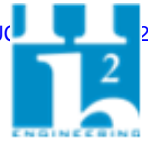
- 15 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
16 following:
- 17 1. Crestron Electronics, Inc.
- 18 2. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc
- 19 3. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
- 20 4. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
- 21 5. WattStopper; Legrand North America, LLC.
- 22 B. Description: Lighting control panels using mechanically latched relays to control lighting and
23 appliances. The panels shall be capable of being interconnected with digital communications to
24 appear to the operator as a single lighting control system.
- 25 C. Lighting Control Panels:
- 26 1. A single enclosure with incoming lighting branch circuits, control circuits, switching relays,
27 and on-board timing and control unit.
- 28 2. A vertical barrier separating branch circuits from control wiring.
- 29 D. Main Control Unit: Installed in the main lighting control panel only; powered from the branch
30 circuit of the standard control unit.



- 1 1. Ethernet Communications: Comply with TCP/IP protocol. The main control unit shall
 2 provide for programming of all control functions of the main and all networked slave
 3 lighting control panels including timing, sequencing, and overriding.
- 4 2. Web Server: Display information listed below over a standard Web-enabled server for
 5 displaying information over a standard browser.
- 6 a. A secure, password-protected login screen for modifying operational parameters,
 7 accessible to authorized users via Web page interface.
- 8 b. Panel summary showing the master and slave panels connected to the controller.
- 9 c. Controller diagnostic information.
- 10 d. Show front panel mimic screens for setting up controller parameters, input types,
 11 zones, and operating schedules. These mimic screens shall also allow direct
 12 breaker control and zone overrides.
- 13 3. Timing Unit:
- 14 a. 365-day calendar, astronomical clock, and automatic adjustments for daylight
 15 savings and leap year.
- 16 b. Clock configurable for 12-hour (A.M./P.M.) or 24-hour format.
- 17 c. Eight independent schedules, each having 24 time periods.
- 18 d. Schedule periods settable to the minute.
- 19 e. Day-of-week, day-of-month, day-of-year with one-time or repeating capability.
- 20 f. 16 special date periods.
- 21 4. Time Synchronization: The timing unit shall be updated not less than every six hour(s)
 22 with the network time server.
- 23 5. Sequencing Control with Override:
- 24 a. Automatic sequenced on and off switching of selected relays at times set at the
 25 timing unit, allowing timed overrides from external switches.
- 26 b. Sequencing control shall operate relays one at a time, completing the operation of
 27 all connected relays in not more than 10 seconds.
- 28 c. Override control shall allow any relay connected to it to be switched on or off by a
 29 field-deployed manual switch or by an automatic switch, such as an occupancy
 30 sensor.
- 31 d. Override control "blinking warning" shall warn occupants approximately five
 32 minutes before actuating the off sequence.
- 33 e. Download firmware to the latest version offered by manufacturer.
- 34 E. Standard Control Unit, Installed in All Lighting Control Panels: Contain electronic controls for
 35 programming the operation of the relays in the control panel, contain the status of relays, and
 36 contain communications link to enable the digital functions of the main control unit. Comply with
 37 UL 916.
- 38 1. Electronic control for operating and monitoring individual relays, and display relay on-
 39 time.
- 40 2. Nonvolatile memory shall retain all setup configurations. After a power failure, the
 41 controller shall automatically reboot and return to normal system operation.
- 42 3. Integral keypad and digital-display front panel for local setup, including the following:
- 43 a. Blink notice, time adjustable from software.
- 44 b. Ability to log and display relay on-time.
- 45 c. Capability for accepting downloadable firmware so that the latest production
 46 features may be added in the future without replacing the module.



- 1 F. Relays: Electrically operated, mechanically held single-pole switch, rated at 20 A at 277 V.
 2 Short-circuit current rating shall be not less than 5 kA. Each relay shall have a matched zero to
 3 10 V(dc) dimming output. Control shall be digital control network.
- 4 G. Power Supply: NFPA 70, Class 2, UL listed, sized for connected equipment, plus not less than
 5 20 percent spare capacity. Powered from a dedicated branch circuit of the panelboard that
 6 supplies power to the line side of the relays, sized to provide control power for the local panel-
 7 mounted relays, bus system, low-voltage inputs, field-installed occupancy sensors, and low-
 8 voltage photo sensors.
- 9 H. Operator Interface: At the main control unit, provide interface for a tethered connection of a
 10 portable PC running MS Windows for configuring all networked lighting control panels using
 11 setup software designed for the specified operating system. Include one portable device for
 12 initial programming of the system and training of Owner's personnel. That device shall remain
 13 the property of Owner.
- 14 1. Standard and main control units. Integral alphanumeric keypad and digital display, and
 15 intuitive drop-down menus to assist in programming.
- 16 I. Software:
- 17 1. Menu-driven data entry.
 18 2. Online and offline programming and editing.
 19 3. Provide for entry of the room or space designation for the load side of each relay.
 20 4. Monitor and control all relays, showing actual relay state and the name of the automatic
 21 actuating control, if any.
 22 5. Size the software appropriate to the system.
- 23 J. Size the software appropriate to the system.
- 24 **2.3 MANUAL SWITCHES AND PLATES**
- 25 A. Push-Button Switches: Modular, momentary contact, three wire, for operating one or more
 26 relays and to override automatic controls.
- 27 1. Match color and style specified in Section 26 27 26 "Wiring Devices."
- 28 B. Wall Plates: Single and multigang plates as specified in Section 26 27 26 "Wiring Devices."
- 29 C. Legend: Engraved or permanently silk-screened on wall plate where indicated. Use
 30 designations indicated on Drawings.
- 31 **2.4 FIELD-MOUNTED SIGNAL SOURCES**
- 32 A. Daylight Harvesting Switching Controls: Comply with Section 26 09 23 "Lighting Control
 33 Devices." Control power may be taken from the lighting control panel, and signal shall be
 34 compatible with the relays.
- 35 B. Indoor Occupancy Sensors and Extreme-Temperature Occupancy Sensors: Comply with
 36 Section 26 09 23 "Lighting Control Devices." Control power may be taken from the lighting
 37 control panel, and signal shall be compatible with the relays.



1 **2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

- 2 A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Class 2 Power Source: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply
3 with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- 4 B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than
5 No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power
6 Conductors and Cables."
- 7 C. Class 1 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 14
8 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors
9 and Cables."
- 10 D. Twisted-Pair Data Cable: Category 6. Comply with requirements for twisted pair cabling in
11 Section 26 05 23 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

12 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

13 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 14 A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panels according to NECA 407.
- 15 B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are damaged or rusted or have been
16 subjected to water saturation.
- 17 C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panels for compliance with installation tolerances
18 and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 19 D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

20 **3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION**

- 21 A. Comply with NECA 1.
- 22 B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets,
23 desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces where unenclosed wiring method
24 may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
- 25 1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
- 26 2. Comply with requirements for cable trays specified in Section 26 05 36 "Cable Trays for
27 Electrical Systems."
- 28 3. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 26 05 33
29 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- 30 C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess
31 and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and
32 distribution spools.



1 **3.3 PANEL INSTALLATION**

- 2 A. Comply with NECA 1.
- 3 B. Install panels and accessories according to NECA 407.
- 4 C. Mount top of trim 90 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- 5 D. Mount panel cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- 6 E. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

7 **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

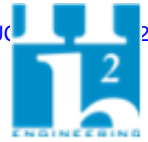
- 8 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for
9 identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 10 B. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning
11 signs complying with Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 12 C. Create a directory to indicate loads served by each relay; incorporate Owner's final room
13 designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a PC or typewriter to create directory;
14 handwritten directories are unacceptable.
- 15 D. Lighting Control Panel Nameplates: Label each panel with a nameplate complying with
16 requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical
17 Systems."

18 **3.5 STARTUP SERVICE**

- 19 A. Before engaging in equipment startup and programming, schedule a meeting with the Owner
20 and confirm all programming settings, schedules, pre-set scenes and special functions specific
21 to the Owner's needs. Document the settings determined in the meeting and send to Engineer
22 for record keeping.
- 23 B. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
- 24 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 25 2. Confirm correct communications wiring, initiate communications between panels, and
26 program the lighting control system according to approved configuration schedules, time-
27 of-day schedules, and input override assignments.

28 **3.6 ADJUSTING**

- 29 A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial
30 Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions.
31 Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.



1 **3.7 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT**

2 A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include
3 software support for two years.

4 B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and
5 program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial
6 Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for
7 using software.

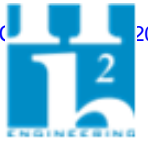
8 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and
9 to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

10 **3.8 DEMONSTRATION**

11 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to
12 adjust, operate, and maintain the control unit and operator interface.

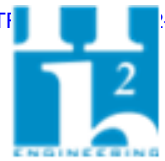
13 **END OF SECTION 26 09 43.23**

14



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 22 13 - LOW-VOLTAGE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

- 4 A. Section includes distribution, dry-type transformers with a nominal primary and secondary rating
5 of 600 V and less, with capacities up to 1500 kVA.

6 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 7 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 8 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components
9 and profiles, and finishes for each type and size of transformer.
10 2. Include rated nameplate data, capacities, weights, dimensions, minimum clearances,
11 installed devices and features, and performance for each type and size of transformer.

12 **1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 13 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transformers to include in emergency, operation, and
14 maintenance manuals.

15 **1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 16 A. Inspection: On receipt, inspect for and note any shipping damage to packaging and transformer.
17 1. If manufacturer packaging is removed for inspection, and transformer will be stored after
18 inspection, re-package transformer using original or new packaging materials that provide
19 protection equivalent to manufacturer's packaging.
20 B. Storage: Store in a warm, dry, and temperature-stable location in original shipping packaging.
21 C. Handling: Follow manufacturer's instructions for lifting and transporting transformers.

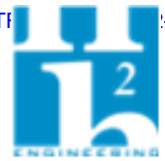
22 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

23 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- 24 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
25 following:
26 1. Eaton.
27 2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.



- 1 3. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- 2 4. ABB Inc
- 3 B. Source Limitations: Obtain each transformer type from single source from single manufacturer.
- 4 **2.2 GENERAL TRANSFORMER REQUIREMENTS**
- 5 A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units for 60-Hz service.
- 6 B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- 7 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in
- 8 NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- 9 C. Transformers Rated 15 kVA and Larger:
- 10 1. Comply with 10 CFR 431 (DOE 2016) efficiency levels.
- 11 2. Marked as compliant with DOE 2016 efficiency levels by an NRTL.
- 12 **2.3 DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS**
- 13 A. Comply with NFPA 70, and list and label as complying with UL 1561.
- 14 B. Cores: Electrical grade, non-aging silicon steel with high permeability and low hysteresis losses.
- 15 1. One leg per phase.
- 16 2. Core volume shall allow efficient transformer operation at 10 percent above the nominal
- 17 tap voltage.
- 18 3. Grounded to enclosure.
- 19 C. Coils: Continuous windings without splices except for taps.
- 20 1. Coil Material: Aluminum.
- 21 2. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
- 22 3. Terminal Connections: Bolted.
- 23 D. Indoor Enclosure: Ventilated.
- 24 1. NEMA 250, Type 2: Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound to seal
- 25 out moisture and air.
- 26 2. KVA Ratings: Based on convection cooling only and not relying on auxiliary fans.
- 27 3. Wiring Compartment: Sized for conduit entry and wiring installation.
- 28 4. Finish: Comply with NEMA 250.
- 29 E. Taps for Transformers 15 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent taps above and four 2.5 percent
- 30 taps below normal full capacity.
- 31 F. Insulation Class, 15 kVA and Larger: 220 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system
- 32 with a maximum of 80 deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient temperature.



- 1 G. Grounding: Provide ground-bar kit or a ground bar installed on the inside of the transformer
2 enclosure.
- 3 H. K-Factor Rating: Transformers indicated to be K-factor rated shall comply with UL 1561
4 requirements for nonsinusoidal load current-handling capability to the degree defined by
5 designated K-factor.
- 6 1. Unit shall not overheat when carrying full-load current with harmonic distortion
7 corresponding to designated K-factor, without exceeding the indicated insulation class in
8 a 40 deg C maximum ambient and a 24-hour average ambient of 30 deg C.
9 2. Indicate value of K-factor on transformer nameplate.
10 3. Unit shall comply with requirements of DOE 2016 efficiency levels when tested according
11 to NEMA TP 2 with a K-factor equal to one.
- 12 I. Electrostatic Shielding: Each winding shall have an independent, single, full-width copper
13 electrostatic shield arranged to minimize interwinding capacitance.
- 14 1. Arrange coil leads and terminal strips to minimize capacitive coupling between input and
15 output terminals.
16 2. Include special terminal for grounding the shield.
- 17 J. Neutral: Rated 200 percent of full load current for K-factor-rated transformers.

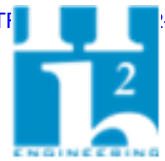
18 2.4 IDENTIFICATION

- 19 A. Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-acrylic or melamine plastic signs for each distribution
20 transformer, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are
21 specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

22 PART 3 - EXECUTION

23 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 24 A. Examine conditions for compliance with enclosure- and ambient-temperature requirements for
25 each transformer.
- 26 B. Verify that field measurements are as needed to maintain working clearances required by
27 NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- 28 C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where
29 transformers will be installed.
- 30 D. Verify that ground connections are in place and requirements in Section 26 05 26 "Grounding
31 and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5
32 ohms at location of transformer.
- 33 E. Environment: Enclosures shall be rated for the environment in which they are located. Covers
34 for NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosures shall not cause accessibility problems.
- 35 F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



1 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- 2 A. Install transformers level and plumb on a concrete base with vibration-dampening supports.
3 Locate transformers away from corners and not parallel to adjacent wall surface.
- 4 B. Construct concrete bases according to Division 03 and anchor floor-mounted transformers
5 according to manufacturer's written instructions and requirements in Section 26 05 29 "Hangers
6 and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- 7 1. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with actual transformer provided. Cast
8 anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are
9 specified with concrete.
- 10 C. Secure transformer to concrete base according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 11 D. Secure covers to enclosure and tighten all bolts to manufacturer-recommended torques to
12 reduce noise generation.
- 13 E. Remove shipping bolts, blocking, and wedges.

14 **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- 15 A. Ground equipment according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical
16 Systems."
- 17 B. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and
18 Cables."
- 19 C. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-
20 tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in
21 UL 486A-486B.
- 22 D. Provide flexible connections at all conduit and conductor terminations and supports to eliminate
23 sound and vibration transmission to the building structure.

24 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 25 A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- 26 B. Dry-Type Transformer Field Tests:
- 27 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection.
- 28 a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- 29 b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
- 30 c. Verify that resilient mounts are free and that any shipping brackets have been
31 removed.
- 32 d. Verify the unit is clean.
- 33 e. Perform specific inspections and mechanical tests recommended by manufacturer.
- 34 f. Verify that as-left tap connections are as specified.
- 35 g. Verify the presence of surge arresters and that their ratings are as specified.



- 1 2. Electrical Tests:
- 2 a. Measure resistance at each winding, tap, and bolted connection.
- 3 b. Perform insulation-resistance tests winding-to-winding and each winding-to-
- 4 ground. Apply voltage according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence
- 5 of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.5. Calculate
- 6 polarization index: the value of the index shall not be less than 1.0.
- 7 c. Perform turns-ratio tests at all tap positions. Test results shall not deviate by more
- 8 than one-half percent from either the adjacent coils or the calculated ratio. If test
- 9 fails, replace the transformer.
- 10 d. Verify correct secondary voltage, phase-to-phase and phase-to-neutral, after
- 11 energization and prior to loading.
- 12 C. Remove and replace units that do not pass tests or inspections and retest as specified above.
- 13 D. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed
- 14 "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.

15 **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- 16 A. Record transformer secondary voltage at each unit for at least 48 hours of typical occupancy
- 17 period. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals.
- 18 Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 5 percent and not being lower
- 19 than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap
- 20 settings as test results.
- 21 B. Output Settings Report: Prepare a written report recording output voltages and tap settings.

22 **3.6 CLEANING**

- 23 A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

24 **END OF SECTION 26 22 13**

25



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 24 13 - SWITCHBOARDS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Service and distribution switchboards rated 600 V and less.
9 2. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
10 3. Instrumentation.
11 4. Control power.
12 5. Accessory components and features.
13 6. Identification.

14 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 15 A. Product Data: For each switchboard, overcurrent protective device, surge protection device,
16 ground-fault protector, accessory, and component.

- 17 1. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance,
18 electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

- 19 B. Shop Drawings: For each switchboard and related equipment.

- 20 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required
21 clearances and service space around equipment. Show tabulations of installed devices,
22 equipment features, and ratings.
23 2. Detail enclosure types for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
24 3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
25 4. Detail short-circuit current rating of switchboards and overcurrent protective devices.
26 5. Include descriptive documentation of optional barriers specified for electrical insulation
27 and isolation.
28 6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
29 7. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent
30 protective devices and auxiliary components.
31 8. Include diagram and details of proposed mimic bus.
32 9. Include schematic and wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

33 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 34 A. Field Quality-Control Reports:



- 1 1. Test procedures used.
- 2 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
- 3 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with
- 4 requirements.

5 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- 6 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchboards and components to include in emergency,
7 operation, and maintenance manuals.

- 8 1. In addition to items specified in Division 01, include the following:

- 9 a. Routine maintenance requirements for switchboards and all installed components.
- 10 b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective
- 11 devices.

12 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- 13 A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective
14 covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- 15 1. Potential Transformer Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and
16 type but no fewer than two of each size and type.
- 17 2. Control-Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but
18 no fewer than two of each size and type.

19 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- 20 A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers qualified as defined in NEMA PB 2.1 and
21 trained in electrical safety as required by NFPA 70E.

22 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- 23 A. Deliver switchboards in sections or lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery
24 path.

- 25 B. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchboards and install temporary
26 electric heating (250 W per section) to prevent condensation.

- 27 C. Handle and prepare switchboards for installation according to NEMA PB 2.1.

28 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- 29 A. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace access fencing, doors, lift-out panels, and structures
30 to provide pathway for moving switchboards into place.

- 31 B. Environmental Limitations:



- 1 1. Do not deliver or install switchboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet
2 work in spaces is complete and dry, work above switchboards is complete, and HVAC
3 system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at
4 occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
5 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise
6 indicated:
- 7 a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F.
8 b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

9 **1.10 COORDINATION**

- 10 A. Coordinate layout and installation of switchboards and components with other construction that
11 penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment,
12 raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces.
13 Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors
14 and panels.
- 15 B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-
16 bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with
17 concrete.

18 **1.11 WARRANTY**

- 19 A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace switchboard enclosures,
20 buswork, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and factory installed interconnection
21 wiring that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- 22 1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

23 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

24 **2.1 SWITCHBOARDS**

- 25 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
26 following:
- 27 1. Eaton.
28 2. Schneider Electric.
29 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
30 4. ABB Inc
- 31 B. Source Limitations: Obtain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and
32 accessories from single source from single manufacturer.



- 1 C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for
2 switchboards including clearances between switchboards and adjacent surfaces and other
3 items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- 4 D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
5 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 6 E. Comply with NEMA PB 2.
- 7 F. Comply with NFPA 70.
- 8 G. Comply with UL 891.
- 9 H. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible Switchboards:
- 10 1. Main Devices: Fixed, individually mounted.
11 2. Branch Devices: Panel and fixed individually mounted.
12 3. Sections front and rear aligned.
- 13 I. Indoor Enclosures: Steel, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- 14 J. Enclosure Finish for Indoor Units: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray finish
15 over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.
- 16 K. Barriers: Between adjacent switchboard sections.
- 17 L. Insulation and isolation for main bus of main section and main and vertical buses of feeder
18 sections.
- 19 M. Service Entrance Rating: Switchboards intended for use as service entrance equipment shall
20 contain from one to six service disconnecting means with overcurrent protection, a neutral bus
21 with disconnecting link, a grounding electrode conductor terminal, and a main bonding jumper.
- 22 N. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections: Matched and aligned with basic switchboard.
- 23 O. Hinged Front Panels: Allow access to circuit breaker, metering, accessory, and blank
24 compartments.
- 25 P. Buses and Connections: Three phase, four wire unless otherwise indicated.
- 26 1. Provide phase bus arrangement A, B, C from front to back, top to bottom, and left to right
27 when viewed from the front of the switchboard.
- 28 2. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, silver-
29 plated.
- 30 3. Copper feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
- 31 4. Load Terminals: Insulated, rigidly braced, runback bus extensions, of same material as
32 through buses, equipped with mechanical connectors for outgoing circuit conductors.
33 Provide load terminals for future circuit-breaker positions at full-ampere rating of circuit-
34 breaker position.
- 35 5. Ground Bus: 1/4-by-2-inch-tin plated, hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity,
36 equipped with mechanical compression connectors for feeder and branch-circuit ground
37 conductors.



- 1 6. Main-Phase Buses and Equipment-Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of
2 switchboard's main and distribution sections. Provide for future extensions from both
3 ends.
4 7. Disconnect Links:
- 5 a. Isolate neutral bus from incoming neutral conductors.
6 b. Bond neutral bus to equipment-ground bus for switchboards utilized as service
7 equipment or separately derived systems.
- 8 8. Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated,
9 equipped with compression connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus
10 extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
11 9. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.
- 12 Q. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and
13 appurtenances at full rating of circuit-breaker compartment.

14 **2.2 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES**

- 15 A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet
16 available fault currents.
- 17 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads
18 and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip
19 setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
20 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-
21 mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
22 3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-
23 replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
- 24 a. Instantaneous trip.
25 b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
26 c. Long and short time adjustments.
27 d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
- 28 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less
29 than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
30 5. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault
31 protection (30-mA trip).
32 6. MCCB Features and Accessories:
- 33 a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
34 b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor
35 material.
36 c. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable
37 pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
38 d. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted communication module with
39 functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system
40 specified in Section 26 09 13 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
- 41 B. Insulated-Case Circuit Breaker (ICCB): 100 percent rated, sealed, insulated-case power circuit
42 breaker with interrupting capacity rating to meet available fault current.



- 1 1. Fixed circuit-breaker mounting.
- 2 2. Two-step, stored-energy closing.
- 3 3. Full-function, microprocessor-based trip units with interchangeable rating plug, trip
- 4 indicators, and the following field-adjustable settings:
 - 5 a. Instantaneous trip.
 - 6 b. Time adjustments for long- and short-time pickup.
 - 7 c. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared t response.
- 8 4. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
- 9 5. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and
- 10 time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
- 11 6. Remote trip indication and control.
- 12 7. Communication Capability: Web enabled integral Ethernet communication module and
- 13 embedded Web server with factory-configured Web pages (HTML file format). Provide
- 14 functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in
- 15 Section 26 09 13 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
- 16 8. Control Voltage: 120-V ac.
- 17 C. Fuses are specified in Section 26 28 13 "Fuses."

18 2.3 INSTRUMENTATION

- 19 A. Instrument Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1, and the following:
 - 20 1. Potential Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1; 120 V, 60 Hz, single secondary; disconnecting
 - 21 type with integral fuse mountings. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with
 - 22 connected metering and relay devices.
 - 23 2. Current Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1; 5 A, 60 Hz, secondary; bushing type; single
 - 24 secondary winding and secondary shorting device. Burden and accuracy shall be
 - 25 consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
 - 26 3. Control-Power Transformers: Dry type, mounted in separate compartments for units
 - 27 larger than 3 kVA.
 - 28 4. Current Transformers for Neutral and Ground-Fault Current Sensing: Connect secondary
 - 29 wiring to ground overcurrent relays, via shorting terminals, to provide selective tripping of
 - 30 main and tie circuit breaker. Coordinate with feeder circuit-breaker, ground-fault
 - 31 protection.
- 32 B. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire
- 33 systems and with the following features:
 - 34 1. Switch-selectable digital display of the following values with maximum accuracy
 - 35 tolerances as indicated:
 - 36 a. Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
 - 37 b. Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
 - 38 c. Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
 - 39 d. Megawatts: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - 40 e. Megavars: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - 41 f. Power Factor: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - 42 g. Frequency: Plus or minus 0.1 percent.
 - 43 h. Accumulated Energy, Megawatt Hours: Plus or minus 1 percent; accumulated
 - 44 values unaffected by power outages up to 72 hours.



- 1 i. Megawatt Demand: Plus or minus 1 percent; demand interval programmable from
2 five to 60 minutes.
- 3 2. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment
4 door.

5 **2.4 CONTROL POWER**

- 6 A. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from control-
7 power transformer.
- 8 B. Control-Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses for current-limiting and overload protection
9 of transformer and fuses for protection of control circuits.
- 10 C. Control Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible
11 conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for
12 interconnections between shipping units.

13 **2.5 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES**

- 14 A. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Suitably identified, wall-mounted, lockable, compartmented steel box or
15 cabinet. Arrange for wall mounting.

16 **2.6 IDENTIFICATION**

- 17 A. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for switchboards with one
18 or more service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

19 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

20 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 21 A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store switchboards according to NEMA PB 2.1.
- 22 1. Lift or move panelboards with spreader bars and manufacturer-supplied lifting straps
23 following manufacturer's instructions.
- 24 2. Use rollers, slings, or other manufacturer-approved methods if lifting straps are not
25 furnished.
- 26 3. Protect from moisture, dust, dirt, and debris during storage and installation.
- 27 4. Install temporary heating during storage per manufacturer's instructions.
- 28 B. Examine switchboards before installation. Reject switchboards that are moisture damaged or
29 physically damaged.
- 30 C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive switchboards for compliance with installation
31 tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work or that affect the
32 performance of the equipment.
- 33 D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



1 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

2 A. Install switchboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 2.1.

3 B. Equipment Mounting: Install switchboards on concrete base, 4-inch nominal thickness. Comply
4 with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03.

5 1. Install conduits entering underneath the switchboard, entering under the vertical section
6 where the conductors will terminate. Install with couplings flush with the concrete base.
7 Extend 2 inches above concrete base after switchboard is anchored in place.

8 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated,
9 install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.

10 3. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete
11 base and anchor into structural concrete floor.

12 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams,
13 instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

14 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to switchboards.

15 6. Anchor switchboard to building structure at the top of the switchboard if required or
16 recommended by the manufacturer.

17 C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, straps and brackets,
18 and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchboard units and components.

19 D. Operating Instructions: Frame and mount the printed basic operating instructions for
20 switchboards, including control and key interlocking sequences and emergency procedures.
21 Fabricate frame of finished wood or metal and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount
22 on front of switchboards.

23 E. Install filler plates in unused spaces of panel-mounted sections.

24 F. Install overcurrent protective devices, surge protection devices, and instrumentation.

25 1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

26 G. Install spare-fuse cabinet.

27 H. Comply with NECA 1.

28 **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

29 A. Comply with requirements for terminating feeder bus specified in Section 26 25 00 "Enclosed
30 Bus Assemblies." Drawings indicate general arrangement of bus, fittings, and specialties.

31 B. Bond conduits entering underneath the switchboard to the equipment ground bus with a
32 bonding conductor sized per NFPA 70.

33 C. Support and secure conductors within the switchboard according to NFPA 70.

34 D. Extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at
35 intervals in vertical run.



1 **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

2 A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning
3 signs complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification
4 for Electrical Systems."

5 B. Switchboard Nameplates: Label each switchboard compartment with a nameplate complying
6 with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical
7 Systems."

8 C. Device Nameplates: Label each disconnecting and overcurrent protective device and each
9 meter and control device mounted in compartment doors with a nameplate complying with
10 requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical
11 Systems."

12 **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

13 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and
14 inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

15 B. Tests and Inspections:

- 16 1. Test ground-fault protection of equipment for service equipment per NFPA 70.
17 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in
18 NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
19 3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site where possible, and retest to demonstrate
20 compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
21 4. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections, and prepare reports:

22 a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days
23 after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switchboard. Remove
24 front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

25 b. Instruments and Equipment:

26 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to
27 detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record
28 for device.

29 5. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and
30 malfunctioning controls and equipment.

31 C. Switchboard will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

32 D. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies switchboards
33 included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial
34 action taken, and observations after remedial action.

35 **3.6 ADJUSTING**

36 A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as
37 recommended by manufacturer.



1 B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 26 05 73.16 "Coordination
2 Studies."

3 **3.7 DEMONSTRATION**

4 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to
5 adjust, operate, and maintain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, instrumentation,
6 and accessories, and to use and reprogram microprocessor-based trip, monitoring, and
7 communication units.

8 **END OF SECTION 26 24 13**



1 **SECTION 26 24 16 - PANELBOARDS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Distribution panelboards.
9 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

10 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

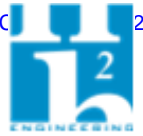
- 11 A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
12 B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
13 C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
14 D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
15 E. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
16 F. SPD: Surge protective device.
17 G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

18 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 19 A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
20 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and
21 components indicated.
22 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance,
23 electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

24 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 25 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency,
26 operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:



- 1 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective
2 devices.
3 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective
4 device that allows adjustments.

5 **1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- 6 A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective
7 covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
8 1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

9 **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 10 A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

11 **1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 12 A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboard.
13 B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407 and NEMA PB 1.

14 **1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- 15 A. Environmental Limitations:
16 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet
17 work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete.
18 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise
19 indicated:
20 a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding minus 22 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
21 b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.
22 B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
23 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
24 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

25 **1.10 WARRANTY**

- 26 A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in
27 materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
28 1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 PANELBOARDS CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS**

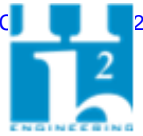
- 3 A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in
4 Section 26 05 48.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- 5 B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for
6 panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items.
7 Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- 8 C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
9 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 10 D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- 11 E. Comply with NFPA 70.
- 12 F. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
- 13 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
- 14 a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
15 b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
16 c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
- 17 2. Height: 84 inches maximum.
- 18 3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged
19 trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
- 20 4. Finishes:
- 21 a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating
22 with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat
23 and thermosetting topcoat.
- 24 b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel.
- 25 G. Incoming Mains:
- 26 1. Location: As indicated on plans.
27 2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main
28 breaker.
- 29 H. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
- 30 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
- 31 a. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.
- 32 2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective
33 devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
- 34 3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding
35 conductors; bonded to box.



- 1 4. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance
 2 applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in
 3 gutter.
- 4 I. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
- 5 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 6 2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
 7 3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required,
 8 for larger conductors.
 9 4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in
 10 the panelboard.
 11 5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar
 12 for each pole in the panelboard.
 13 6. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at
 14 opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
 15 7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate
 16 at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
- 17 J. NRTL Label: Panelboards shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having
 18 jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and
 19 overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections,
 20 and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- 21 K. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections,
 22 filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
- 23 1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: Ten percent.
- 24 L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current
 25 available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.
- 26 1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-
 27 circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
 28 2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V
 29 shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms
 30 symmetrical.

31 2.2 POWER PANELBOARDS

- 32 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 33 following:
- 34 1. Eaton.
- 35 2. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.: Energy Management Division.
- 36 3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- 37 4. ABB Inc
- 38 B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.



- 1 C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- 2 1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- 3 D. Mains: Circuit breaker Fused switch or Lugs only.
- 4 E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers or fused switches as indicated.

5 **2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS**

- 6 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 7 following:
 - 8 1. Eaton.
 - 9 2. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
 - 10 3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
 - 11 4. ABB Inc
- 12 B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- 13 C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only, as indicated.
- 14 D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing
- 15 adjacent units.
- 16 E. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with
- 17 tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door
- 18 shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals
- 19 and bus shall remain concealed.

20 **2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES**

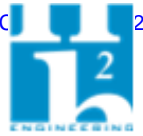
- 21 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 22 following:
 - 23 1. Eaton.
 - 24 2. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
 - 25 3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
 - 26 4. ABB Inc
- 27 B. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 - 28 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
 - 29 a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
 - 30 b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
 - 31 c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.



- 1 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-
2 mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3 3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
- 4 a. RMS sensing.
5 b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
6 c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
7 d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
8 e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and
9 magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
10 f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
11 g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
- 12 1) Instantaneous trip.
13 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
14 3) Long and short time adjustments.
15 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
- 16 4. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault
17 protection (6-mA trip).
18 5. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
19 6. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
20 7. MCCB Features and Accessories:
- 21 a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
22 b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
23 c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
24 d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor
25 materials.
26 e. Ground-Fault Protection: Remote-mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable
27 pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
28 f. Shunt Trip: 24-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent
29 of rated voltage.
30 g. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than 110 amperes
31 shall have electronic adjustable trip units.
32 h. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing with a single handle.
- 33 C. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
- 34 1. Fuses and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Section 26 28 13
35 "Fuses."
36 2. Fused Switch Features and Accessories:
- 37 a. Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.
38 b. Mechanical cover interlock with a manual interlock override, to prevent the opening
39 of the cover when the switch is in the on position. The interlock shall prevent the
40 switch from being turned on with the cover open. The operating handle shall have
41 lock-off means with provisions for three padlocks.

42 2.5 IDENTIFICATION

- 43 A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases,
44 and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.



- 1 B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC
2 rating.
- 3 C. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with
4 transparent plastic protective cover.
- 5 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from
6 all other circuits.

7 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

8 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

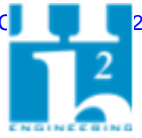
- 9 A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that
10 equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in
11 NFPA 70.
- 12 B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- 13 C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have
14 been subjected to water saturation.
- 15 D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation
16 tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 17 E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

18 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- 19 A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that
20 penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment,
21 raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces.
22 Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors
23 and panels.
- 24 B. Comply with NECA 1.
- 25 C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- 26 D. Equipment Mounting:
- 27 1. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
- 28 E. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- 29 F. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back
30 box.
- 31 G. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 5/8 inch in depth. Orient steel
32 slotted supports vertically.



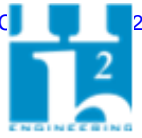
- 1 H. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
- 2 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- 3 2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque
- 4 wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
- 5 I. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to
- 6 ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars,
- 7 and connections to separate ground bars.
- 8 J. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- 9 K. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.
- 10 **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**
- 11 A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs
- 12 complying with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 13 B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate Owner's final room
- 14 designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- 15 Install directory inside panelboard door.
- 16 C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements
- 17 for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 18 D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate
- 19 complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for
- 20 Electrical Systems."
- 21 E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for
- 22 Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.
- 23 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**
- 24 A. Perform tests and inspections.
- 25 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to
- 26 inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and
- 27 to assist in testing.
- 28 B. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- 29 C. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards
- 30 included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial
- 31 action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- 32 **3.5 ADJUSTING**
- 33 A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly and lubricate as
- 34 recommended by manufacturer.



1 B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges.

2 **END OF SECTION 26 24 16**

3



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 27 26 - WIRING DEVICES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section Includes:

- 5 1. General-use switches.
- 6 2. General-grade single straight-blade receptacles.
- 7 3. General-grade duplex straight-blade receptacles.
- 8 4. Receptacles with arc-fault and ground-fault protective devices.
- 9 5. Locking receptacles.

10 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

11 A. Product Data:

- 12 1. Toggle switches.
- 13 2. Single straight-blade receptacles
- 14 3. Duplex straight-blade receptacles.
- 15 4. Receptacles with AFCI and GFCI devices.
- 16 5. Receptacles with GFCI device.
- 17 6. USB Receptacles
- 18 7. Locking receptacles.

19 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

20 **2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS**

21 A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a
22 qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

23 B. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:

- 24 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
- 25 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

26 C. Device Color:

- 27 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: Gray unless otherwise indicated or
28 required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
- 29 2. Wiring Devices Connected to Essential Power System: Red.
- 30 3.
- 31 4. Wiring Devices Connected to Optional Standby Power System: Gray.

1 **2.2 GENERAL-USE SWITCHES, DIMMER SWITCHES, AND FAN-SPEED CONTROLLER**
2 **SWITCHES**

3 A. Toggle Switch:

4 1. Regulatory Requirements:

- 5 a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing
6 laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended
7 location and application.

8 2. General Characteristics:

- 9 a. Reference Standards: UL CCN WMUZ and UL 20.

10 3. Options:

- 11 a. Configuration:

- 12 1) General-duty, 120-277 V, 20 A.

13 **2.3 GENERAL-GRADE SINGLE STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES**

14 A. Single Straight-Blade Receptacle:

15 1. Regulatory Requirements:

- 16 a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing
17 laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended
18 location and application.

19 2. General Characteristics:

- 20 a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.

21 3. Options:

- 22 a. Configuration:

- 23 1) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R.
24 2) General-duty, NEMA 6-20R.
25 3) Heavy-duty, NEMA 5-30R, NEMA 5-50R.
26 4) Heavy-duty, NEMA 6-30R, NEMA 6-50R.
27 5) Heavy-duty, NEMA 7-20R, NEMA 7-30R, NEMA 7-50R.
28 6) Heavy-duty, NEMA 14-20R, NEMA 14-30R (Dryer), NEMA 14-50R (Range),
29 NEMA 14-60R.
30 7) Heavy-duty, NEMA 15-20R, NEMA 15-30R, NEMA 15-50R NEMA 15-60R.
31 8) Heavy-duty, NEMA 18-20R, NEMA 18-30R, NEMA 18-50R NEMA 18-60R.

32 **2.4 GENERAL-GRADE DUPLEX STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES**

33 A. Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle:

- 1 1. Regulatory Requirements:
- 2 a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing
- 3 laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended
- 4 location and application.
- 5 2. General Characteristics:
- 6 a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
- 7 3. Options:
- 8 a. Configuration:
- 9 1) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R.
- 10 2) General-duty, NEMA 6-20R.
- 11 3) Heavy-duty, NEMA 7-15R.
- 12 B. Isolated Ground Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle with Type 3 Surge Protective Device:
- 13 1. Regulatory Requirements:
- 14 a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing
- 15 laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended
- 16 location and application.
- 17 2. General Characteristics:
- 18 a. Reference Standards:
- 19 1) UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
- 20 2) Surge Protective Devices: UL 1449, Type 3.
- 21 3. Options:
- 22 a. Configuration: Heavy-duty, smooth face, NEMA 5-20R.
- 23 C. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle with USB Outlet to Power Class 2
- 24 Equipment:
- 25 1. Regulatory Requirements:
- 26 a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing
- 27 laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended
- 28 location and application.
- 29 2. General Characteristics:
- 30 a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
- 31 3. Options:
- 32 a. Configuration:

1 1) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R; one USB-A port; one USB-C ports. 5V DC, 6 A.

2 **2.5 RECEPTACLES WITH ARC-FAULT AND GROUND-FAULT PROTECTIVE DEVICES**

3 A. General-Grade, Tamper-Resistant Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle with AFCI and GFCI
4 Device:

5 1. Regulatory Requirements:

6 a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing
7 laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended
8 location and application.

9 2. General Characteristics:

10 a. Reference Standards: UL CCN KCXX, UL 498, UL 943, UL 1699, and
11 UL Subject 1699A.

12 3. Options:

13 a. Configuration: Heavy-duty, NEMA 5-20R.

14 B. General-Grade, Weather-Resistant, Tamper-Resistant Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle with
15 GFCI Device:

16 1. Regulatory Requirements:

17 a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing
18 laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended
19 location and application.

20 2. General Characteristics:

21 a. Reference Standards: UL CCN KCXS, UL 498, and UL 943.

22 3. Options:

23 a. Configuration: Heavy-duty, NEMA 5-20R.

24 **2.6 LOCKING RECEPTACLES**

25 A. NEMA, 125 V, Locking Receptacle:

26 1. Regulatory Requirements:

27 a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing
28 laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended
29 location and application.

30 2. General Characteristics:

31 a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.



- 1 3. Options:
- 2 a. Device Color: Black with yellow voltage indication on face.
- 3 b. Configuration: 2 pole, 3 wire, grounding, NEMA L5-20R, NEMA L5-30R.
- 4 B. NEMA, 250 V, Locking Receptacle:
- 5 1. Regulatory Requirements:
- 6 a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing
- 7 laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended
- 8 location and application.
- 9 2. General Characteristics:
- 10 a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
- 11 3. Options:
- 12 a. Device Color: Black with blue voltage indication on face.
- 13 b. Configuration:
- 14 1) 2 pole, 3 wire, grounding, NEMA L6-20R, NEMA L6-30R.
- 15 2) 3 pole, 4 wire, grounding, NEMA L15-20R, NEMA L15-30R.
- 16 3) 4 pole, 4 wire, non-grounding, NEMA L18-20R, NEMA L18-30R.
- 17 4) 4 pole, 5 wire, grounding, NEMA L21-20R, NEMA L21-30R.

18 **2.7 WALL PLATES**

- 19 A. Single Source: Obtain wall plates from same manufacturer of wiring devices.
- 20 B. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
- 21 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
- 22 2. Material: 0.035-inch-thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel.
- 23 3. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and
- 24 labeled for use in wet and damp locations.
- 25 C. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-
- 26 resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

27 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

28 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 29 A. Receptacles:
- 30 1. Verify that receptacles to be procured and installed for Owner-furnished equipment are
- 31 compatible with mating attachment plugs on equipment.

1 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

2 A. Coordination with Other Trades:

- 3 1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device
4 boxes, and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against
5 outside of boxes.
6 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust,
7 paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and
8 cables.
9 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint
10 unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
11 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

12 B. Conductors:

- 13 1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on
14 devices.
15 2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid
16 scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
17 3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall comply with NFPA 70,
18 Article 300, without pigtails.
19 4. Existing Conductors:
20 a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
21 b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
22 c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

23 C. Device Installation:

- 24 1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were
25 installed before building finishing operations were complete.
26 2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect
27 conductors.
28 3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last
29 possible moment.
30 4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
31 5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid
32 conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
33 6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
34 7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice
35 No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
36 8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
37 9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold
38 device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

39 D. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount
40 outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

41 E. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical
42 and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single,
43 multigang wall plates.

1 **3.3 SELECTION OF GFCI RECEPTACLES**

2 A. Provide non-feed-through GFCI receptacles.

3 **3.4 INSTALLATION OF SWITCHES**

4 A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.

5 B. Reference Standards:

- 6 1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or
7 manufacturers' instructions, comply with installation instructions in NECA NEIS 130.
8 2. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, comply with
9 mounting heights recommended in NECA NEIS 1.
10 3. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

11 C. Identification:

12 1. Identify cover or cover plate for device with panelboard identification and circuit number
13 in accordance with Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

14 a. Mark cover or cover plate using hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with
15 black-filled lettering and provide durable wire markers or tags inside device box or
16 outlet box.

17 **3.5 INSTALLATION OF STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES**

18 A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.

19 B. Reference Standards:

- 20 1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or
21 manufacturers' instructions, comply with installation instructions in NECA NEIS 130.
22 2. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, comply with
23 mounting heights recommended in NECA NEIS 1.
24 3. Receptacle Orientation: Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on
25 horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.
26 4. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

27 C. Identification:

28 1. Identify cover or cover plate for device with panelboard identification and circuit number
29 in accordance with Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

30 a. Mark cover or cover plate using hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with
31 black-filled lettering and provide durable wire markers or tags inside device box or
32 outlet box.

33 **3.6 INSTALLATION OF LOCKING RECEPTACLES**

34 A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.

1 B. Reference Standards:

- 2 1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or
3 manufacturers' instructions, comply with installation instructions in NECA NEIS 130.
4 2. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, comply with
5 mounting heights recommended in NECA NEIS 1.
6 3. Receptacle Orientation: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, orient
7 receptacle to match configuration diagram in NEMA WD 6.
8 4. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

9 C. Identification:

- 10 1. Identify cover or cover plate for device with panelboard identification and circuit number
11 in accordance with Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
12 a. Mark cover or cover plate using hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with
13 black-filled lettering and provide durable wire markers or tags inside device box or
14 outlet box.

15 **3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL OF STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES**

16 A. Tests and Inspections:

- 17 1. Insert and remove test plug to verify that device is securely mounted.
18 2. Verify polarity of hot and neutral pins.

19 B. Nonconforming Work:

- 20 1. Device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
21 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

22 **3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL OF LOCKING RECEPTACLES**

23 A. Tests and Inspections:

- 24 1. Insert and remove test plug to verify that device is securely mounted.
25 2. Verify polarity of hot and neutral pins.

26 B. Nonconforming Work:

- 27 1. Device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
28 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

29 C. Assemble and submit test and inspection reports.

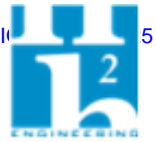
30 **3.9 PROTECTION**

31 A. Devices:

- 1 1. Schedule and sequence installation to minimize risk of contamination of wires and
2 cables, devices, device boxes, outlet boxes, covers, and cover plates by plaster, drywall
3 joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other materials.
- 4 2. After installation, protect wires and cables, devices, device boxes, outlet boxes, covers,
5 and cover plates from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are
6 contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to
7 acceptance by Owner.

8 **END OF SECTION 26 27 26**

9



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 28 13 - FUSES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:

- 9 a. Control circuits.
10 b. Panelboards.
11 c. Switchboards.
12 d. Enclosed controllers.
13 e. Enclosed switches.

- 14 2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

15 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 16 A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions,
17 dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include
18 the following for each fuse type indicated:

- 19 1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to
20 accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
- 21 a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating,
22 local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
23 b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment
24 calculations are based.
- 25 2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical
26 characteristics, and ratings.
27 3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
28 4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves
29 (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse. Submit in
30 electronic format suitable for use in coordination software.
31 5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
32 6. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.



1 **1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

2 A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective
3 covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

4 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than
5 three of each size and type.

6 **1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS**

7 A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F or more
8 than 100 deg F, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

9 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

10 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

11 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
12 following:

- 13 1. Cooper Bussmann, Inc.
14 2. Edison Fuse, Inc.
15 3. Littelfuse, Inc.

16 B. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source
17 from single manufacturer.

18 **2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES**

19 A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings
20 consistent with circuit voltages.

- 21 1. Type RK-1: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
22 2. Type RK-5: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
23 3. Type CC: 600-V, zero- to 30-A rating, 200 kAIC, fast acting.
24 4. Type J: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, fast acting , time delay.
25 5. Type L: 600-V, 601- to 6000-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.

26 B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
27 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

28 C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.

29 D. Comply with NFPA 70.

30 E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size
31 and with system short-circuit current levels.



1 **2.3 SPARE-FUSE CABINET**

2 A. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-
3 coded cam lock and pull.

4 1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity
5 minimum.

6 2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.

7 3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch-high letters on exterior of door.

8 4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse
9 manufacturer.

10 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

11 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

12 A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically
13 damaged.

14 B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other
15 conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.

16 C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and
17 with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.

18 D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to
19 fuse ratings.

20 E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

21 **3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS**

22 A. Cartridge Fuses:

23 1. Feeders: Class L, time delay or Class J, time delay.

24 2. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay or Class J, time delay.

25 3. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay, Class J, fast acting or Class CC, fast
26 acting.

27 4. Control Transformer Circuits: Class CC, time delay, control transformer duty.

28 5. Provide open-fuse indicator fuses or fuse covers with open fuse indication.

29 **3.3 INSTALLATION**

30 A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing
31 fuse.

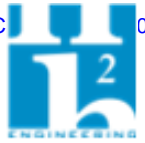
32 B. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s) in location shown on the Drawings or as indicated in the field by
33 Owner.



1 **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

- 2 A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53
3 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door
4 of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

5 **END OF SECTION 26 28 13**



1 **SECTION 26 28 16 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Fusible switches.
9 2. Nonfusible switches.
10 3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
11 4. Enclosures.

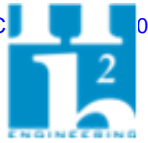
12 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 13 A. NC: Normally closed.
14 B. NO: Normally open.
15 C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

16 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 17 A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component
18 indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and
19 manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings,
20 accessories, and finishes.

- 21 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
22 2. Current and voltage ratings.
23 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
24 4. Include evidence of a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) listing for series
25 rating of installed devices.
26 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent
27 protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
28 6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of
29 overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent
30 protective device. Provide in PDF and CAPTOR, Systems Analysis, Inc. electronic
31 format.



1 **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

2 A. Field quality-control reports.

3 **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

4 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in
5 emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

6 1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include
7 the following:

8 a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and
9 circuit breakers.

10 b. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of
11 overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of
12 overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.

13 **1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS**

14 A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following
15 conditions unless otherwise indicated:

16 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.

17 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

18 **1.8 WARRANTY**

19 A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that
20 fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

21 1. Warranty Period: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

22 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

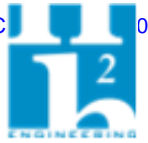
23 **2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

24 A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective
25 devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single
26 manufacturer.

27 B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed
28 switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces
29 and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

30 C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
31 by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.

32 D. Comply with NFPA 70.



1 **2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES**

2 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
3 following:

- 4 1. ABB Inc.
- 5 2. Eaton.
- 6 3. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
- 7 4. Square D.

8 B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and
9 NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses and
10 lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed
11 position.

12 C. Accessories:

- 13 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground
14 conductors.
- 15 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded;
16 labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
- 17 3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are
18 specified.
- 19 4. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate
20 before switch blades open. Contact rating - 24-V ac.
- 21 5. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
- 22 6. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

23 **2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES**

24 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
25 following:

- 26 1. Eaton.
- 27 2. ABB Inc.
- 28 3. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
- 29 4. Square D.

30 B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and
31 NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and
32 interlocked with cover in closed position.

33 C. Accessories:

- 34 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground
35 conductors.



- 1 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded;
2 labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
- 3 3. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate
4 before switch blades open. Contact rating - 24-V ac.
- 5 4. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

6 **2.4 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS**

- 7 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
8 following:
 - 9 1. Eaton.
 - 10 2. ABB Inc.
 - 11 3. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
 - 12 4. Square D.
- 13 B. Circuit breakers shall be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying
14 components shall be completely isolated from the handle and the accessory mounting area.
- 15 C. Circuit breakers shall have a toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles,
16 which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. The circuit-breaker handle shall be over
17 center, be trip free, and reside in a tripped position between on and off to provide local trip
18 indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon shall be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing
19 international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with a push-to-trip button, located on the face of
20 the circuit breaker to mechanically operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for
21 maintenance and testing purposes.
- 22 D. The maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable
23 voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings shall be clearly marked on face of circuit
24 breaker.
- 25 E. MCCBs shall be equipped with a device for locking in the isolated position.
- 26 F. Lugs shall be suitable for 140 deg F rated wire on 125-A circuit breakers and below.
- 27 G. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- 28 H. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level
29 overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip
30 setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- 31 I. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-
32 adjustable trip setting.
- 33 J. Features and Accessories:
 - 34 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - 35 2. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.



1 **2.5 ENCLOSURES**

- 2 A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to
3 comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- 4 B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be finished with gray baked enamel paint,
5 electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1), gray baked enamel paint,
6 electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized galvanized steel (NEMA 250 Types 3R, 12) or a
7 brush finish on Type 304 stainless steel (NEMA 250 Type 4-4X stainless steel), copper-free
8 cast aluminum alloy (NEMA 250 Types 7, 9) , as indicated.
- 9 C. Conduit Entry: NEMA 250 Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures shall contain no knockouts.
10 NEMA 250 Types 7 and 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded conduit openings in both
11 endwalls.
- 12 D. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be directly operable through
13 the front cover of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 1), directly operable through the dead front
14 trim of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 3R) or externally operable with the operating mechanism
15 being an integral part of the cover (NEMA 250 Types 7, 9). The cover interlock mechanism shall
16 have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock
17 mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool
18 used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in
19 order to override the interlock.
- 20 E. Enclosures designated as NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual
21 cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the
22 circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning the circuit breaker ON when the enclosure cover is
23 open.

24 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

25 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 26 A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for
27 compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 28 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 29 1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions
30 as satisfactory.

31 **3.2 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS**

- 32 A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the
33 following environmental ratings.
- 34 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
35 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
36 3. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.



1 **3.3 INSTALLATION**

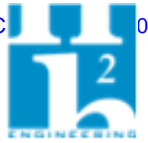
- 2 A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment
3 served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required
4 clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- 5 B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless
6 otherwise indicated.
- 7 C. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- 8 D. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

9 **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

- 10 A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 11 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide
12 warning signs.
13 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

14 **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

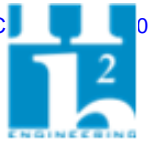
- 15 A. Perform tests and inspections.
- 16 B. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
- 17 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
- 18 a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
19 b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
20 c. Verify that the unit is clean.
21 d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
22 e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
23 f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
24 g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two
25 following methods:
- 26 1) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated
27 torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or
28 NETA ATS Table 100.12.
- 29 a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's
30 published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use
31 NETA ATS Table 100.12.
- 32 h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the
33 Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
34 i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
35 j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.
- 36 C. Tests and Inspections for Molded Case Circuit Breakers:



- 1 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
- 2 a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and
- 3 shown on the Drawings.
- 4 b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- 5 c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
- 6 d. Verify that the unit is clean.
- 7 e. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
- 8 f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two
- 9 following methods:
- 10 1) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated
- 11 torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or
- 12 NETA ATS Table 100.12.
- 13 a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's
- 14 published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use
- 15 NETA ATS Table 100.12.
- 16 g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.
- 17 h. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with the
- 18 coordination study.
- 19 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate
- 20 compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- 21 D. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and
- 22 inspections.
- 23 E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 24 1. Test procedures used.
- 25 2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test
- 26 results.
- 27 3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

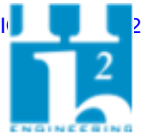
28 **END OF SECTION 26 28 16**

29



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 29 13.03 - MANUAL AND MAGNETIC MOTOR CONTROLLERS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
8 1. Combination full-voltage magnetic motor controllers.
9 2. Enclosures.
10 3. Accessories.
11 4. Identification.

12 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 13 A. CPT: Control power transformer.
14 B. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
15 C. MCP: Motor circuit protector.
16 D. NC: Normally closed.
17 E. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
18 F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
19 G. SCPD: Short-circuit protective device.

20 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 21 A. Product Data: For each type of product.
22 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and
23 furnished specialties and accessories.
24 B. Shop Drawings: For each type of magnetic controller.
25 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
26 2. Indicate dimensions, weights, required clearances, and location and size of each field
27 connection.
28 3. Wire Termination Diagrams and Schedules: Include diagrams for signal, and control
29 wiring. Identify terminals and wiring designations and color-codes to facilitate installation,
30 operation, and maintenance. Indicate recommended types, wire sizes, and circuiting

- 1 arrangements for field-installed wiring, and show circuit protection features. Differentiate
2 between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
- 3 4. Include features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent
4 protective devices and auxiliary components.

5 C. Product Schedule: List the following for each enclosed controller:

- 6 1. Each installed magnetic controller type.
7 2. NRTL listing.
8 3. Factory-installed accessories.
9 4. Nameplate legends.
10 5. SCCR of integrated unit.
11 6. For each combination magnetic controller include features, characteristics, ratings, and
12 factory setting of the SCPD and OCPD.
- 13 a. Listing document proving Type 2 coordination.
- 14 7. For each series-rated combination state the listed integrated short-circuit current
15 (withstand) rating of SCPD and OCPDs by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having
16 jurisdiction.

17 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- 18 A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
19 B. Field quality-control reports.

20 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- 21 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For magnetic controllers to include in operation and
22 maintenance manuals.
- 23 1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include
24 the following:
- 25 a. Routine maintenance requirements for magnetic controllers and installed
26 components.
27 b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting circuit breaker and
28 MCP trip settings.
29 c. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
30 d. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been
31 installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor
32 nameplate full-load currents.
33 e. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after
34 motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for
35 motor-running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

36 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- 37 A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

- 1 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

2 **1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 3 A. Store controllers indoors in clean, dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation.
4 Protect controllers from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical
5 damage.

6 **1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- 7 A. Ambient Environment Ratings: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following
8 conditions unless otherwise indicated:

- 9 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than 23 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
10 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet for electromagnetic and manual devices.
11 3. The effect of solar radiation is not significant.
12 4. .

13 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

14 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 15 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
16 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- 17 B. UL Compliance: Fabricate and label magnetic motor controllers to comply with UL 508 and
18 UL 60947-4-1.
- 19 C. NEMA Compliance: Fabricate motor controllers to comply with ICS 2.

20 **2.2 COMBINATION FULL-VOLTAGE MAGNETIC MOTOR CONTROLLER**

- 21 A. Description: Factory-assembled, combination full-voltage magnetic motor controller consisting
22 of the controller described in this article, indicated disconnecting means, SCPD and OCPD, in a
23 single enclosure.
- 24 B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
25 following:
- 26 1. Eaton.
- 27 2. General Electric Company.
- 28 3. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
- 29 4. Square D.
- 30 C. Standard: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.



- 1 D. Configuration: Nonreversing.
- 2 E. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type.
- 3 1. Operating Voltage: Manufacturer's standard, unless indicated.
- 4 F. Control Power:
- 5 1. For on-board control power, obtain from line circuit or from integral CPT. The CPT shall
- 6 have capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and
- 7 control devices.
- 8 G. Overload Relays:
- 9 1. Thermal Overload Relays:
- 10 a. Inverse-time-current characteristic.
- 11 b. Class 10 tripping characteristic.
- 12 c. Heaters in each phase shall be matched to nameplate full-load current of actual
- 13 protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
- 14 d. Ambient compensated.
- 15 e. Automatic resetting.
- 16 2. Solid-State Overload Relay:
- 17 a. Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
- 18 b. Sensors in each phase.
- 19 c. Class 10 tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and
- 20 current unbalance and single phasing.
- 21 H. Class II ground-fault protection shall comply with UL 1053 to interrupt low-level ground faults.
- 22 The ground-fault detection system shall include circuitry that will prevent the motor controller
- 23 from tripping when the fault current exceeds the interrupting capacity of the controller. Equip
- 24 with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting, and a trip indicator.
- 25 I. Nonfusible Disconnecting Means:
- 26 1. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, nonfusible switch.
- 27 2. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.

28 **2.3 ENCLOSURES**

- 29 A. Comply with NEMA 250, type designations as indicated on Drawings, complying with
- 30 environmental conditions at installed location.
- 31 B. The construction of the enclosures shall comply with NEMA ICS 6.
- 32 C. Controllers in hazardous (classified) locations shall comply with UL 1203.

1 **2.4 ACCESSORIES**

2 A. General Requirements for Control Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in
3 controller enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.

4 1. Push Buttons, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: Standard-duty, except as needed to
5 match enclosure type. Heavy-duty or oil-tight where indicated in the controller schedule.

6 a. Push Buttons: As indicated in the controller schedule.

7 b. Pilot Lights: As indicated in the controller schedule.

8 B. Motor protection relays shall be with solid-state sensing circuit and isolated output contacts for
9 hardwired connections.

10 1. Phase-failure.

11 2. Phase-reversal, with bicolor LED to indicate normal and fault conditions. Automatic reset
12 when phase reversal is corrected.

13 3. Under/overvoltage, operate when the circuit voltage reaches a preset value, and drop out
14 when the operating voltage drops to a level below the preset value. Include adjustable
15 time-delay setting.

16 C. Breather assemblies, to maintain interior pressure and release condensation in Type 4 Type 4X
17 enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and
18 temperature swings.

19 D. Sun shields installed on fronts, sides, and tops of enclosures installed outdoors and subject to
20 direct and extended sun exposure.

21 **2.5 IDENTIFICATION**

22 A. Controller Nameplates: Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as described in
23 Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems," for each compartment, mounted with
24 corrosion-resistant screws.

25 B. Arc-Flash Warning Labels:

26 1. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 73.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis." Produce
27 a 3.5-by-5-inch self-adhesive equipment label for each work location included in the
28 analysis.

29 2. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
30 Produce a 3.5-by-5-inch self-adhesive equipment label for each work location included in
31 the analysis. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

32 a. The label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH
33 HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-
34 flash hazard analysis:

35 1) Location designation.

36 2) Nominal voltage.

37 3) Flash protection boundary.

38 4) Hazard risk category.

39 5) Incident energy.

40 6) Working distance.



1 7) Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.

2 b. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

3 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

4 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

5 A. Examine areas and space conditions for compliance with requirements for motor controllers,
6 their relationship with the motors, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

7 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

8 A. Comply with NECA 1.

9 B. Wall-Mounted Controllers: Install magnetic controllers on walls with tops at uniform height
10 indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted
11 to wall. For controllers not at walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 26 05 29
12 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" unless otherwise indicated.

13 C. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written
14 instructions and NFPA 70.

15 D. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess
16 and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and
17 distribution spools.

18 E. Setting of Overload Relays: Select and set overloads on the basis of full-load current rating as
19 shown on motor nameplate. Adjust setting value for special motors as required by NFPA 70 for
20 motors that are high-torque, high-efficiency, and so on.

21 **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

22 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for
23 identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

24 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

25 A. Perform tests and inspections.

26 B. Tests and Inspections:

27 1. Comply with the provisions of NFPA 70B, "Testing and Test Methods" Chapter.

28 2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

29 a. Compare equipment nameplate data with drawings and specifications.

30 b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.

31 c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.

32 d. Verify the unit is clean.

- 1 e. Inspect contactors:
- 2 1) Verify mechanical operation.
- 3 2) Verify contact gap, wipe, alignment, and pressure are according to
- 4 manufacturer's published data.
- 5 f. Motor-Running Protection:
- 6 1) Verify overload element rating is correct for its application.
- 7 2) If motor-running protection is provided by fuses, verify correct fuse rating.
- 8 g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two
- 9 following methods:
- 10 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance
- 11 values with values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate
- 12 from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the
- 13 lowest value.
- 14 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated
- 15 torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data or
- 16 NETA ATS Table 100.12. Bolt-torque levels shall be according to
- 17 manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published
- 18 data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
- 19 h. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and
- 20 sliding surfaces.
- 21 3. Electrical Tests:
- 22 a. Test motor protection devices according to manufacturer's published data.
- 23 b. Perform operational tests by initiating control devices.
- 24 4. Infrared Inspection: Perform the survey during periods of maximum possible loading.
- 25 Remove all necessary covers prior to the inspection.
- 26 a. Comply with the recommendations of NFPA 70B, "Testing and Test Methods"
- 27 Chapter, "Infrared Inspection" Article.
- 28 b. After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance,
- 29 perform infrared inspection of the electrical power connections of each motor
- 30 controller.
- 31 c. Report of Infrared Inspection: Prepare a certified report that identifies the testing
- 32 technician and equipment used, and lists the following results:
- 33 1) Description of equipment to be tested.
- 34 2) Discrepancies.
- 35 3) Temperature difference between the area of concern and the reference
- 36 area.
- 37 4) Probable cause of temperature difference.
- 38 5) Areas inspected. Identify inaccessible and unobservable areas and
- 39 equipment.
- 40 6) Load conditions at time of inspection.
- 41 7) Photographs and thermograms of the deficient area.
- 42 8) Recommended action.

- 1 d. Equipment: Inspect distribution systems with imaging equipment capable of
2 detecting a minimum temperature difference of 1°C at 30°C. The equipment shall
3 detect emitted radiation and convert detected radiation to a visual signal.
4 e. Act on inspection results and recommended action, and considering the
5 recommendations of NETA ATS, Table 100.18. Correct possible and probable
6 deficiencies as soon as Owner's operations permit. Retest until deficiencies are
7 corrected.

8 C. Motor controller will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

9 D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

10 3.5 SYSTEM FUNCTION TESTS

11 A. System function tests shall prove the correct interaction of sensing, processing, and action
12 devices. Perform system function tests after field quality control tests have been completed and
13 all components have passed specified tests.

- 14 1. Develop test parameters and perform tests for the purpose of evaluating performance of
15 integral components and their functioning as a complete unit within design requirements
16 and manufacturer's published data.
17 2. Verify the correct operation of interlock safety devices for fail-safe functions in addition to
18 design function.
19 3. Verify the correct operation of sensing devices, alarms, and indicating devices.

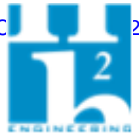
20 B. Motor controller will be considered defective if it does not pass the system function tests and
21 inspections.

22 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

23 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

24 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain switchgear.

25 **END OF SECTION 26 29 13.03**



1 **SECTION 26 32 13.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 SUMMARY**

4 A. Section Includes:

- 5 1. Diesel engine.
- 6 2. Diesel fuel-oil system.
- 7 3. Control and monitoring.
- 8 4. Generator overcurrent and fault protection.
- 9 5. Generator, exciter, and voltage regulator.
- 10 6. Outdoor engine generator enclosure.
- 11 7. Vibration isolation devices.

12 **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

13 A. EPS: Emergency power supply.

14 B. EPSS: Emergency power supply system.

15 C. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over
16 the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the
17 parameter.

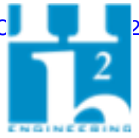
18 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

19 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 20 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and
21 furnished specialties and accessories.
- 22 2. Include thermal damage curve for generator.
- 23 3. Include time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
- 24 4. Include fuel consumption in gallons per hour at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0
25 times generator capacity.
- 26 5. Include generator efficiency at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator
27 capacity.
- 28 6. Include airflow requirements for cooling and combustion air in cubic feet per minute at 0.8
29 power factor, with air-supply temperature of 95, 80, 70, and 50 deg F. Provide Drawings
30 indicating requirements and limitations for location of air intake and exhausts.
- 31 7. Include generator characteristics, including, but not limited to, kilowatt rating, efficiency,
32 reactances, and short-circuit current capability.

33 B. Shop Drawings:

- 34 1. Include plans and elevations for engine generator and other components specified.
35 Indicate access requirements affected by height of subbase fuel tank.



- 1 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
- 2 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
- 3 connection.
- 4 3. Identify fluid drain ports and clearance requirements for proper fluid drain.
- 5 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and
- 6 interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for engine generators and functional
- 7 relationship between all electrical components.

8 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 9 A. Source Quality-Control Reports: Including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 10 1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report.
 - 11 2. Certified Test Reports: For components and accessories that are equivalent, but not
 - 12 identical, to those tested on prototype unit.
 - 13 3. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of
 - 14 compliance with specified requirements.
 - 15 4. Report of sound generation.
 - 16 5. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
 - 17 6. Certified Torsional Vibration Compatibility: Comply with NFPA 110.
- 18 B. Field quality-control reports.
- 19 C. Warranty: For special warranty.

20 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

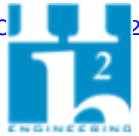
- 21 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For packaged engine generators to include in emergency,
- 22 operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 23 1. In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data,"
 - 24 include the following:
 - 25 a. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready
 - 26 access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of
 - 27 supply.
 - 28 b. Operating instructions laminated and mounted adjacent to generator location.
 - 29 c. Training plan.

30 **1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- 31 A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective
- 32 covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 33 1. Filters: One set each of lubricating oil, fuel, and combustion-air filters.

34 **1.7 WARRANTY**

- 35 A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged
- 36 engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship
- 37 within specified warranty period.



- 1 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

2 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

3 **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- 4 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
5 following:

- 6 1. Caterpillar, Inc.; Electric Power Division.
7 2. Cummins Power Generation.
8 3. Generac.
9 4. Kohler Power Systems.

- 10 B. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged engine generators and auxiliary components from single
11 source from single manufacturer.

12 **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 13 A. B11 Compliance: Comply with B11.19.

- 14 B. NFPA Compliance:

- 15 1. Comply with NFPA 37.
16 2. Comply with NFPA 70.
17 3. Comply with NFPA 99.
18 4. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 EPSS.

- 19 C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 2200.

- 20 D. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with EPA Tier 3 requirements and applicable state and
21 local government requirements.

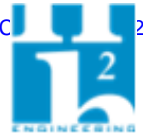
- 22 E. Noise Emission: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements for maximum
23 noise level at adjacent property boundaries due to sound emitted by engine generator including
24 engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of
25 installation.

- 26 F. Environmental Conditions: Engine generator system shall withstand the following environmental
27 conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:

- 28 1. Ambient Temperature: 41 to 104 deg F.
29 2. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet.

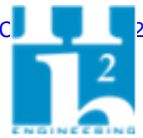
- 30 G. Unusual Service Conditions: Engine generator equipment and installation are required to
31 operate under the following conditions:

- 32 1. High salt-dust content in the air due to sea-spray evaporation.

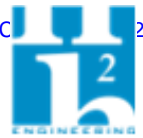


1 **2.3 ENGINE GENERATOR ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION**

- 2 A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and
3 accessories.
- 4 B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
5 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- 6 C. Power Rating: Standby.
- 7 D. Induction Method: Naturally aspirated.
- 8 E. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.
- 9 F. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components
10 without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to
11 prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.
- 12 1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to
13 indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and engine generator
14 center of gravity.
- 15 G. Capacities and Characteristics:
- 16 1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power
17 required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries, with
18 capacity as required to operate as a unit as evidenced by records of prototype testing.
- 19 2. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and
20 address, and model and serial number of component.
- 21 H. Engine Generator Performance for Sensitive Loads:
- 22 1. Oversizing generator compared with the rated power output of the engine is permissible
23 to meet specified performance.
- 24 a. Nameplate Data for Oversized Generator: Show ratings required by the Contract
25 Documents rather than ratings that would normally be applied to generator size
26 installed.
- 27 2. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 1 percent of rated output voltage from no
28 load to full load.
- 29 3. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 10 percent variation for 50 percent step-
30 load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state
31 operating band within 0.5 second.
- 32 4. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: Plus or minus 0.25 percent of rated
33 frequency from no load to full load.
- 34 5. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within
35 the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state
36 operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
- 37 6. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 2-Hz variation for 50 percent step-load
38 increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state
39 operating band within three seconds.
- 40 7. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to neutral shall not
41 exceed 2 percent total with no slot ripple. Telephone influence factor, determined
42 according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.



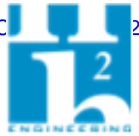
- 1 8. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output
 2 terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 300 percent of rated full-load current for not
 3 less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to winding
 4 insulation or other generator system components.
- 5 9. Excitation System: Performance shall be unaffected by voltage distortion caused by
 6 nonlinear load.
 7 a. Provide permanent magnet excitation for power source to voltage regulator.
- 8 10. Start Time:
 9 a. Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10 system requirements.
- 10 **2.4 DIESEL ENGINE**
- 11 A. Fuel: ASTM D975, diesel fuel oil, Grade 2-D S15.
- 12 B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.
- 13 C. Lubrication System: Engine or skid-mounted.
- 14 1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller
 15 while passing full flow.
- 16 2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature.
 17 Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
- 18 3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable
 19 container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or
 20 appliances.
- 21 D. Jacket Coolant Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system.
 22 Comply with UL 499 and with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater
 23 capacity.
- 24 E. Integral Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine
 25 generator set mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.
- 26 1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water,
 27 with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
- 28 2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to
 29 110 percent load condition.
- 30 3. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum
 31 closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and
 32 petcock.
- 33 4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow
 34 automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by
 35 engine manufacturer.
- 36 5. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer
 37 covering of aging-, UV-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.
- 38 a. Rating: 50-psig maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F, and
 39 noncollapsible under vacuum.
- 40 b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and
 41 equipment connections.
- 42 F. Muffler/Silencer:



- 1 1. Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust
2 piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.
- 3 a. Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
4 b. Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet from exhaust discharge after
5 installation is complete shall be 78 dBA or less.
- 6 G. Air-Intake Filter: Heavy-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element
7 and "blocked filter" indicator.
- 8 H. Starting System: 24-V electric, with negative ground.
- 9 1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with
10 ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
11 2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine
12 flywheel without binding.
13 3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
14 4. Battery: Lead acid, with capacity within ambient temperature range specified in
15 "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least three
16 times without recharging.
17 5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated.
18 Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
19 6. Battery Stand: Factory-fabricated, two-tier metal with acid-resistant finish designed to
20 hold the quantity of battery cells required and to maintain the arrangement to minimize
21 lengths of battery interconnections.
22 7. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage
23 regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
24 8. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing, and float-charging type designed
25 for lead-acid batteries. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:
- 26 a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after
27 battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery
28 terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode
29 and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
30 b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for
31 variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 to 140 deg F to prevent
32 overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
33 c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input
34 voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
35 d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging
36 rates.
37 e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts
38 providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense
39 high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either
40 condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication
41 at system control and monitoring panel.
42 f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet.

43 **2.5 DIESEL FUEL-OIL SYSTEM**

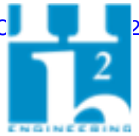
- 44 A. Comply with NFPA 37.
- 45 B. Piping: Fuel-oil piping shall be Schedule 40 black steel, complying with requirements in
46 Section 23 11 13 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping." Cast iron, aluminum, copper, and galvanized steel
47 shall not be used in the fuel-oil system.



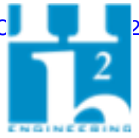
- 1 C. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine to provide primary fuel flow under starting and load
2 conditions.
- 3 D. Fuel Filtering: Remove water and contaminants larger than 1 micron.
- 4 E. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to
5 source.
- 6 F. Subbase-Mounted, Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Tank: Factory installed and piped, complying with
7 UL 142 fuel-oil tank. Features include the following:
- 8 1. Tank level indicator.
9 2. Fuel-Tank Capacity: Minimum 133 percent of total fuel required for planned operation
10 plus fuel for periodic maintenance operations between fuel refills.
11 3. Leak detection in interstitial space.
12 4. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
13 5. Containment Provisions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

14 2.6 CONTROL AND MONITORING

- 15 A. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control
16 and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more
17 separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of engine generator. When
18 mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, engine generator starts. The off position of
19 same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When engine generator is running, specified
20 system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and
21 initiate alarms.
- 22 B. Provide minimum run time control set for 15 minutes with override only by operation of a remote
23 emergency-stop switch.
- 24 C. Comply with UL 508A.
- 25 D. Configuration:
26 1. Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine
27 gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the
28 engine generator. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from engine generator
29 vibration. Panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.
- 30 E. Control and Monitoring Panel:
31 1. Digital engine generator controller with integrated LCD display, controls, and
32 microprocessor, capable of local and remote control, monitoring, and programming, with
33 battery backup.
34 2. Instruments: Located on the control and monitoring panel and viewable during operation.
35 a. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
36 b. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
37 c. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
38 d. Running-time meter.
39 e. AC voltmeter, for each phase.
40 f. AC ammeter, for each phase.
41 g. AC frequency meter.
42 h. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.



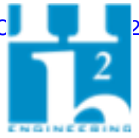
- 1 3. Controls and Protective Devices: Controls, shutdown devices, and common alarm
2 indication, including the following:
- 3 a. Cranking control equipment.
4 b. Run-Off-Auto switch.
5 c. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
6 d. Overcrank alarm.
7 e. Overcrank shutdown device.
8 f. Low-water temperature alarm.
9 g. High engine temperature prealarm.
10 h. High engine temperature.
11 i. High engine temperature shutdown device.
12 j. Overspeed alarm.
13 k. Overspeed shutdown device.
14 l. Low fuel main tank.
- 15 1) Low-fuel-level alarm shall be initiated when the level falls below that
16 required for operation for duration required for the indicated EPSS class.
- 17 m. Coolant low-level alarm.
18 n. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
19 o. Coolant high-temperature prealarm.
20 p. Coolant high-temperature alarm.
21 q. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
22 r. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
23 s. EPS load indicator.
24 t. Battery high-voltage alarm.
25 u. Low cranking voltage alarm.
26 v. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
27 w. Battery low-voltage alarm.
28 x. Lamp test.
29 y. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
30 z. Remote manual stop shutdown device.
31 aa. Air shutdown damper alarm when used.
32 bb. Air shutdown damper shutdown device when used.
33 cc. Generator overcurrent-protective-device not-closed alarm.
34 dd. Hours of operation.
35 ee. Engine generator metering, including voltage, current, hertz, kilowatt, kilovolt
36 ampere, and power factor.
- 37 F. Connection to Datalink:
- 38 1. A separate terminal block, factory wired to Form C dry contacts, for each alarm and
39 status indication.
40 2. Provide connections for datalink transmission of indications to remote data terminals via
41 ModBus. Data system connections to terminals are covered in Section 26 09 13
42 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
- 43 G. Remote Alarm Annunciator: An LED indicator light labeled with proper alarm conditions shall
44 identify each alarm event, and a common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition.
45 Silencing switch in face of panel shall silence signal without altering visual indication. Connect
46 so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until
47 silencing switch is reset. Cabinet and faceplate are surface- or flush-mounting type to suit
48 mounting conditions indicated.



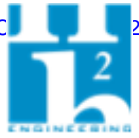
- 1 1. Overcrank alarm.
 - 2 2. Low water-temperature alarm.
 - 3 3. High engine temperature prealarm.
 - 4 4. High engine temperature alarm.
 - 5 5. Low lube oil pressure alarm.
 - 6 6. Overspeed alarm.
 - 7 7. Low fuel main tank alarm.
 - 8 8. Low coolant level alarm.
 - 9 9. Low cranking voltage alarm.
 - 10 10. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
 - 11 11. Audible-alarm silencing switch.
 - 12 12. Air shutdown damper when used.
 - 13 13. Run-Off-Auto switch.
 - 14 14. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
 - 15 15. Low-cranking voltage alarm.
- 16 H. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and
 17 include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on
 18 engine or generator unless otherwise indicated.
- 19 I. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted unless otherwise indicated; and labeled.
 20 Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

21 2.7 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

- 22 A. Overcurrent protective devices shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short
 23 circuit occurs.
- 24 1. Overcurrent protective devices for the entire EPSS shall be coordinated to optimize
 25 selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices shall
 26 consider both utility and EPSS as the voltage source.
 - 27 2. Overcurrent protective devices for the EPSS shall be accessible only to authorized
 28 personnel.
- 29 B. Generator Overcurrent Protective Device:
- 30 1. Molded-case circuit breaker, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with
 31 UL 489:
 - 32 a. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and
 33 instantaneous.
 - 34 b. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
 - 35 c. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other
 36 protective devices.
 - 37 d. Mounting: Adjacent to, or integrated with, control and monitoring panel.
- 38 C. Generator Protector: Microprocessor-based unit shall continuously monitor current level in each
 39 phase of generator output, integrate generator heating effect over time, and predict when
 40 thermal damage of alternator will occur. When signaled by generator protector or other engine
 41 generator protective devices, a shunt-trip device in the generator disconnect switch shall open
 42 the switch to disconnect the generator from load circuits. Protector performs the following
 43 functions:
- 44 1. Initiates a generator overload alarm when generator has operated at an overload
 45 equivalent to 110 percent of full-rated load for 60 seconds. Indication for this alarm is
 46 integrated with other engine generator malfunction alarms. Contacts shall be available for
 47 load shed functions.



- 1 2. Under single- or three-phase fault conditions, regulates generator to 300 percent of rated
2 full-load current for up to 10 seconds.
- 3 3. As overcurrent heating effect on the generator approaches the thermal damage point of
4 the unit, protector switches the excitation system off, opens the generator disconnect
5 device, and shuts down the engine generator.
- 6 4. Senses clearing of a fault by other overcurrent devices and controls recovery of rated
7 voltage to avoid overshoot.
- 8 D. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground fault.
- 9 1. Indicate ground fault with other engine generator alarm indications.
- 10 **2.8 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR**
- 11 A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.
- 12 B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated
13 integrally with generator rotor.
- 14 C. Electrical Insulation: Class H.
- 15 D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other
16 voltages if required. Provide 12-lead alternator.
- 17 E. Range: Provide broad range of output voltage by adjusting the excitation level.
- 18 F. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration,
19 overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated
20 capacity.
- 21 G. Enclosure: Dripproof.
- 22 H. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.
- 23 I. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as
24 specified and as required by NFPA 110.
- 25 1. Adjusting Rheostat on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 5 percent
26 adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
- 27 2. Maintain voltage within 15 percent on one step, full load.
- 28 3. Provide anti-hunt provision to stabilize voltage.
- 29 4. Maintain frequency within 10 percent and stabilize at rated frequency within 2 seconds.
- 30 J. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew
31 point.
- 32 K. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.
- 33 L. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.



1 **2.9 OUTDOOR ENGINE GENERATOR ENCLOSURE**

2 A. Description:

3 1. Vandal-resistant, sound-attenuating, weatherproof steel housing; wind resistant up to 150
4 mph (320 km/h). Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to
5 components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without
6 tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.

7 a. Sound Attenuation Level: Level 2.

8 B. Structural Design and Anchorage: Comply with ASCE/SEI 7 for wind loads up to 150 mph (160
9 km/h).

10 C. Hinged Doors: With padlocking provisions.

11 D. Muffler Location: Within enclosure.

12 E. Engine-Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components
13 within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for two hours with ambient
14 temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.

15 1. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge. AMCA 540 for missile impact,
16 stormproof and drainable louvers prevent entry of rain and snow.

17 **2.10 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES**

18 A. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in
19 single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates of
20 sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match
21 requirements of supported equipment.

22 1. Material: Standard neoprene separated by steel shims.

23 2. Minimum Deflection: 1 inch.

24 **2.11 FINISHES**

25 A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over
26 corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer.

27 **2.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

28 A. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine generator and other
29 system components and accessories manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at
30 rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:

31 1. Test components and accessories furnished with installed unit that are not identical to
32 those on tested prototype to demonstrate compatibility and reliability.

33 2. Test generator, exciter, and voltage regulator as a unit.

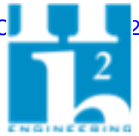
34 3. Full load run.

35 4. Maximum power.

36 5. Voltage regulation.

37 6. Transient and steady-state governing.

38 7. Single-step load pickup.



- 1 8. Safety shutdown.
- 2 9. Report factory test results within 10 days of completion of test.

3 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

4 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 5 A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with
- 6 requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine generator
- 7 performance.

- 8 B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of
- 9 connections before packaged engine generator installation.

- 10 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

11 **3.2 PREPARATION**

- 12 A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied
- 13 by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after
- 14 arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:

- 15 1. Notify Owner no fewer than five working days in advance of proposed interruption of
- 16 electrical service.
- 17 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.

18 **3.3 INSTALLATION**

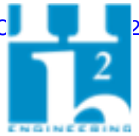
- 19 A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 404.

- 20 B. Comply with packaged engine generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment
- 21 instructions and with NFPA 110.

- 22 C. Equipment Mounting:
- 23 1. Install packaged engine generators on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply
- 24 with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 03 30 00
- 25 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- 26 2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast
- 27 anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are
- 28 specified with concrete.

- 29 D. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or
- 30 accessories, for periodic maintenance.

- 31 E. Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory
- 32 mounted.



1 **3.4 CONNECTIONS**

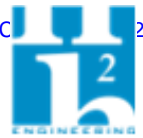
- 2 A. Ground equipment according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical
3 Systems."
- 4 B. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and
5 Cables." Provide a minimum of one 90-degree bend in flexible conduit routed to the engine
6 generator from a stationary element.
- 7 C. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two
8 phases.

9 **3.5 IDENTIFICATION**

- 10 A. Identify system components according to Division 23 and Section 26 05 53 "Identification for
11 Electrical Systems."

12 **3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

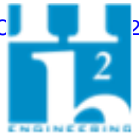
- 13 A. Testing Agency:
- 14 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components,
15 assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- 16 B. Tests and Inspections:
- 17 1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each visual and mechanical inspection
18 and electrical and mechanical test listed in first two subparagraphs below, as specified in
19 NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- 20 a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
- 21 1) Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and the Specifications.
22 2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
23 3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
24 4) Verify that the unit is clean.
- 25 b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests:
- 26 1) Perform insulation-resistance tests according to IEEE 43.
- 27 a) Machines Larger Than 200 hp: Test duration shall be 10 minutes.
28 Calculate polarization index.
29 b) Machines 200 hp or Less: Test duration shall be one minute.
30 Calculate the dielectric-absorption ratio.
- 31 2) Test protective relay devices.
32 3) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by
33 the application.
34 4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature,
35 overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
36 5) Perform vibration test for each main bearing cap.
37 6) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.



- 1 2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to
2 those specified here, including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
3 3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written
4 instructions. Record individual cell voltages.
- 5 a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for
6 full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific
7 gravity under both conditions.
8 b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a
9 capacity load test for the battery.
10 c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
11 d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.
- 12 4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-
13 charging conditions.
14 5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of
15 each element of engine generator system before and during system operation. Check for
16 air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
17 6. Noise Level Tests: Measure A-weighted level of noise emanating from engine generator
18 installation, including engine exhaust and cooling-air intake and discharge, at four
19 locations 25 feet from edge of the generator enclosure, and compare measured levels
20 with required values.
- 21 C. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.
- 22 D. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the past 12 months, traceable to NIST
23 Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make
24 calibration records available for examination on request.
- 25 E. Leak Test: After installation, charge exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks.
26 Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- 27 F. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper
28 motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.
- 29 G. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
30 equipment.
- 31 H. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- 32 I. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations, and retest until specified
33 requirements are met.
- 34 J. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and
35 measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label
36 or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

37 **3.7 MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

- 38 A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall
39 include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's authorized service
40 representative. Include quarterly preventive maintenance and exercising to check for proper
41 starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include routine preventive maintenance as



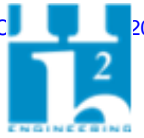
1 recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts shall be
2 manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3 **3.8 DEMONSTRATION**

4 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to
5 adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

6 **END OF SECTION 26 32 13.13**

7



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 33 53 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. UPS systems.
9 2. Surge suppression.
10 3. Rectifier-charger.
11 4. Inverter.
12 5. Controls and indications.
13 6. Static bypass transfer switch.
14 7. Maintenance bypass/isolation switch.
15 8. Output distribution section.
16 9. Output isolation transformer.
17 10. Remote status and alarm panel.
18 11. Remote monitoring.
19 12. Battery.
20 13. Basic battery monitoring.
21 14. Additional battery monitoring.
22 15. Battery-cycle warranty monitoring.

23 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 24 A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
25 B. GTO: Gate turn-off thyristor.
26 C. IGBT: Isolated gate bipolar transistor.
27 D. LCD: Liquid-crystal display.
28 E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
29 F. NiCd: Nickel cadmium.
30 G. PC: Personal computer.
31 H. SPD: Surge protection device.
32 I. THD: Total harmonic distortion.



1 J. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.

2 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

3 A. Product Data: For each type of UPS.

- 4 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components
 5 and profiles, and finishes for UPS.
 6 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and
 7 furnished specialties and accessories.

8 **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

9 A. Product Certificates: For each product, from manufacturer.

10 B. Field quality-control reports.

11 **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

12 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For UPS units to include in emergency, operation, and
 13 maintenance manuals.

14 **1.7 WARRANTY**

15 A. Special Battery Warranties: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace UPS system
 16 storage batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 17 1. Warranted Cycle Life for Valve-Regulated, Lead-Calcium Batteries: Equal to or greater
 18 than that represented in manufacturer's published table, but not less than the following,
 19 based on annual average battery temperature of 77 deg F:
 20

Discharge Rate	Discharge Duration	Discharge End Voltage	Cycle Life
8 hours	8 hours	1.67	40 cycles
30 minutes	30 minutes	1.67	125 cycles
15 minutes	1.5 minutes	1.67	750 cycles

21 B. Special UPS Warranties: Specified form in which manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or
 22 replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within special warranty period.

- 23 1. Special Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 OPERATIONAL REQUIREMENTS**

3 A. Automatic operation includes the following:

4 1. Double Conversion, IGBT:

- 5 a. Normal Conditions: Load is supplied with power flowing from the normal power
6 input terminals, through the rectifier-charger and inverter, with the battery
7 connected in parallel with the rectifier-charger output. High-efficiency carrier stored
8 trench IGBT, in both rectifier-charger and inverter circuits, provides a minimum of
9 97 percent efficiency for the UPS system at full load and a minimum of 94 percent
10 efficiency at 50 percent load.
- 11 b. Abnormal Supply Conditions: If normal supply deviates from specified and
12 adjustable voltage, voltage waveform, or frequency limits, the battery supplies
13 energy to provide constant, regulated inverter power output to the load.
- 14 c. Power Failure: If normal power fails, the rectifier-charger and inverter use energy
15 from the battery to supply constant, regulated power output to the load without
16 switching or disturbance.

17 2. When power is restored at the normal supply terminals of the system, controls shall
18 automatically synchronize the inverter with the external source before transferring the
19 load. The rectifier-charger shall supply power to the load through the inverter and
20 simultaneously recharge the battery.

21 3. If the battery becomes discharged and normal supply is available, the rectifier-charger
22 shall charge the battery. The rectifier-charger shall automatically shift to float-charge
23 mode on reaching full charge.

24 4. If any element of the UPS system fails and power is available at the normal supply
25 terminals of the system, the static bypass transfer switch shall switch the load to the
26 normal ac supply circuit without disturbance or interruption.

27 5. The output power converters shall produce up to 300 percent of rated full-load current for
28 short-circuit clearing. The inverter shall sustain steady-state overload conditions of up to
29 200 percent of rated full-load current for 60 seconds in normal operation.

30 6. The inverter shall be capable of sustaining 150 percent of system capacity for 30
31 seconds while powered from the battery.

32 7. Should overloads persist past the time limitations, the automatic static transfer switch
33 shall switch the load to the bypass output of the UPS. When the fault has cleared, the
34 static bypass transfer switch shall return the load to the UPS system.

35 8. If the battery is disconnected, the UPS shall supply power to the load from the normal
36 supply with no degradation of its regulation of voltage and frequency of the output bus.

37 B. Maintenance Bypass/Isolation Switch Operation: Switch is interlocked so it cannot be operated
38 unless the static bypass transfer switch is in the bypass mode. Device provides manual
39 selection among the three conditions described below without interrupting supply to the load
40 during switching:

41 1. Full Isolation: Load is supplied, bypassing the UPS. Normal UPS ac input circuit, static
42 bypass transfer switch, and UPS load terminals are completely disconnected from
43 external circuits.

44 2. Maintenance Bypass: Load is supplied, bypassing the UPS. UPS ac supply terminals are
45 energized to permit operational checking, but system load terminals are isolated from the
46 load.



- 1 3. Normal: Normal UPS ac supply terminals are energized and the load is supplied through
2 the static bypass transfer switch and the UPS rectifier-charger and inverter, or the battery
3 and the inverter.
- 4 C. Environmental Conditions: The UPS shall be capable of operating continuously in the following
5 environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating
6 capability, except battery performance:
- 7 1. Ambient Temperature for Electronic Components: 32 to 104 deg F.
8 2. Ambient Temperature for Battery: 41 to 95 deg F.
9 3. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent, noncondensing.
10 4. Altitude: Sea level to 4000 feet.
- 11 **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**
- 12 A. UL Compliance: Listed and labeled by an NRTL to comply with UL 1778.
- 13 B. NFPA Compliance: UPS components shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL as suitable for
14 installation in computer rooms according to NFPA 75.
- 15 C. The UPS shall perform as specified in this article while supplying rated full-load current,
16 composed of any combination of linear and nonlinear load, up to 100 percent nonlinear load
17 with a maximum load crest factor of 3.0, under the following conditions or combinations of the
18 following conditions:
- 19 1. Inverter is switched to battery source.
20 2. Steady-state ac input voltage deviates up to plus or minus 15 percent from nominal
21 voltage.
22 3. Steady-state input frequency deviates up to plus or minus 5 percent from nominal
23 frequency.
24 4. THD of input voltage is 15 percent or more with a minimum crest factor of 3.0, and the
25 largest single harmonic component is a minimum of 5 percent of the fundamental value.
26 5. Load is 50 percent unbalanced continuously.
- 27 D. Minimum Duration of Supply: If battery is sole energy source supplying rated full-load UPS
28 current at 80 percent power factor, duration of supply is 20 minutes.
- 29 E. Input Voltage Tolerance: System steady-state and transient output performance remains within
30 specified tolerances when steady-state ac input voltage varies plus 10 percent and minus 15
31 percent from nominal voltage.
- 32 F. Overall UPS Efficiency: Equal to or greater than 98 percent at 100 percent load, 95 percent at
33 75 percent load, and 93 percent at 25 percent load.
- 34 G. Maximum Acoustical Noise: 67 dBA, "A" weighting, emanating from any UPS component under
35 any condition of normal operation, measured 39-inches from nearest surface of component
36 enclosure.
- 37 H. Maximum Energizing Inrush Current: Soft start linear input current rise to 100 percent over a 1-
38 to 40-second period, factory set at 10 seconds.
- 39 I. AC Output-Voltage Regulation for Loads 100 Percent Unbalanced: Maximum of plus or minus 2
40 percent over the full range of battery voltage.



- 1 J. AC Output-Voltage Regulation for Loads 100 Percent Balanced: Maximum of plus or minus
2 1 percent over the full range of battery voltage.
- 3 K. Output Frequency: 60 Hz, plus or minus 0.1 percent over the full range of input voltage, load,
4 and battery voltage.
- 5 L. Limitation of harmonic distortion of input current to the UPS shall be as follows:
- 6 1. Description:
- 7 a. Rectifier-charger circuits shall limit THD to 5 percent, maximum, at rated full-load
8 UPS current, for power sources with X/R ratio between 2 and 30. Provide tuned
9 harmonic filter if required to meet harmonic distortion limit.
- 10 b. THD is limited to a maximum of 32 percent, at rated full-load UPS current, for
11 power sources with X/R ratio between 2 and 30.
- 12 M. Maximum Harmonic Content of Output-Voltage Waveform: 5 percent rms total and 3 percent
13 rms for any single harmonic, for 100 percent rated nonlinear load current, with a load crest
14 factor of 3.0.
- 15 N. Minimum Overload Capacity of UPS at Rated Voltage: 125 percent of rated full load for 10
16 minutes, 200 percent for 60 seconds in normal operation, and 150 percent for 30 seconds in
17 battery operating mode.
- 18 O. Maximum Output-Voltage Transient Excursions from Rated Value: For the following
19 instantaneous load changes, stated as percentages of rated full UPS load, voltage shall remain
20 within stated percentages of rated value and recover to, and remain within, plus or minus 2
21 percent of that value within 50 ms:
- 22 1. 50 Percent: Plus or minus 3 percent.
23 2. 100 Percent: Plus or minus 5 percent.
24 3. Loss of AC Input Power: Plus or minus 1 percent.
25 4. Restoration of AC Input Power: Plus or minus 1 percent.
- 26 P. Input Power Factor: A minimum of 0.95 lagging when supply voltage and current are at nominal
27 rated values and the UPS is supplying rated full-load current without additional filters.
- 28 Q. Output Power Factor Rating: Loads with power factor of 0.9 leading to 0.8 lagging shall not
29 require derating of the UPS. For loads with power factors outside this range, derate the UPS
30 output as follows:
- 31 1. Derate the UPS a maximum of 5 percent for 0.7 PF lagging.
32 2. Derate the UPS a maximum of 10 percent for 0.6 PF lagging.
33 3. Derate the UPS a maximum of 15 percent for 0.5 PF lagging.
34 4. Derate the UPS a maximum of 20 percent for a range of 0.4 to 0.1 PF lagging.
- 35 R. EMI Emissions: Comply with FCC rules and regulations and with 47 CFR 15 for Class A
36 equipment.
- 37 **2.3 UPS SYSTEMS**
- 38 A. Description: Self-contained, battery backup device and accessories that provides three-phase
39 electrical power in the event of failure or sag in the normal power system.



- 1 B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
2 following:
- 3 1. Eaton Corporation; Powerware Division.
- 4 2. Liebert Corporation; a division of Emerson.
- 5 3. Schneider Electric; APC.
- 6 C. Electronic Equipment: Solid-state devices using hermetically sealed, semiconductor elements.
7 Devices include rectifier-charger, inverter, static bypass transfer switch, and system controls.
- 8 D. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA 250, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.
- 9 E. Configuration: Single-cabinet modular style units.
- 10 F. Control Assemblies: Mount on modular plug-ins, readily accessible for maintenance.
- 11 G. Maintainability Features: Mount rectifier-charger and inverter sections and the static bypass
12 transfer switch on modular plug-ins, readily accessible for maintenance.
- 13 H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
14 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 15 I. Capacity Upgrade Capability: Arrange wiring, controls, and modular component plug-in
16 provisions to permit future 25 percent increase in UPS capacity.
- 17 J. UPS Cabinet Ventilation: Redundant fans or blowers draw in ambient air near the bottom of
18 cabinet and discharge it near the top rear.
- 19 K. Output Circuit Neutral Bus, Conductor, and Terminal Ampacity: Rated phase current times a
20 multiple of 1.73, minimum.

21 2.4 SURGE SUPPRESSION

- 22 A. Protect internal UPS components from surges that enter at each ac power input connection
23 including main disconnect switch, static bypass transfer switch, and maintenance
24 bypass/isolation switch. Protect rectifier-charger, inverter, controls, and output components.
- 25 1. Use factory-installed surge suppressors tested according to IEEE C62.41.1 and
26 IEEE C62.41.2, Category B.
- 27 2. Additional Surge Protection: Protect internal UPS components from low-frequency, high-
28 energy voltage surges described in IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2. Design the
29 circuits connecting with external power sources and select circuit elements, conductors,
30 conventional surge suppressors, and rectifier components and controls so input
31 assemblies will have adequate mechanical strength and thermal and current-carrying
32 capacity to withstand stresses imposed by 400-Hz, 180 percent voltage surges described
33 in IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2.

34 2.5 RECTIFIER-CHARGER

- 35 A. Description: Voltage source converter,-pulse IGBT rectifier.



- 1 B. Capacity: Adequate to supply the inverter during rated full output load conditions and
2 simultaneously recharge the battery from fully discharged condition to 95 percent of full charge
3 within 10 times the rated discharge time for duration of supply under battery power at full load.
- 4 C. Output Ripple: Limited by output filtration to less than 0.5 percent of rated current, peak to peak.
- 5 D. Control Circuits: Immune to frequency variations within rated frequency ranges of normal and
6 emergency power sources.
- 7 1. Response Time: Field adjustable for maximum compatibility with local generator-set
8 power source.
- 9 E. Battery Float-Charging Conditions: Comply with battery manufacturer's written instructions for
10 battery terminal voltage and charging current required for maximum battery life. The battery
11 charger shall be matched to the battery type supplied.
- 12 F. NiCd Battery Charger: Sense full charge by measuring the rate of temperature increase. Battery
13 charging shall be terminated when the rate of temperature rise reaches 1.8 deg F per minute. If
14 the battery reaches 140 deg F prior to reaching this rate of temperature rise, charging shall
15 terminate. Chargers that determine full charge by voltage measurement to sense a 10-mV drop
16 per cell when reaching full charge are also acceptable.

17 2.6 INVERTER

- 18 A. Description:
- 19 1. Pulse-width modulated, IGBT with sinusoidal output.
20 2. Include a bypass phase synchronization window adjustment to optimize compatibility with
21 local engine-generator-set power source.

22 2.7 CONTROLS AND INDICATIONS

- 23 A. Description: Group displays, indications, and basic system controls on a common control panel
24 on front of UPS enclosure.
- 25 B. Minimum displays, indicating devices, and controls include those in lists below. Provide
26 sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and wiring required to support listed items. Alarms
27 include audible signals and visual displays.
- 28 C. Indications: Plain-language messages on a digital LCD.
- 29 1. Quantitative indications shall include the following:
- 30 a. Input voltage, each phase, line to line.
31 b. Input current, each phase, line to line.
32 c. Bypass input voltage, each phase, line to line.
33 d. Bypass input frequency.
34 e. System output voltage, each phase, line to line.
35 f. System output current, each phase.
36 g. System output frequency.
37 h. DC bus voltage.
38 i. Battery current and direction (charge/discharge).



- 1 j. Elapsed time discharging battery.
- 2 2. Basic status condition indications shall include the following:
- 3 a. Normal operation.
- 4 b. Load-on bypass.
- 5 c. Load-on battery.
- 6 d. Inverter off.
- 7 e. Alarm condition.
- 8 3. Alarm indications shall include the following:
- 9 a. Bypass ac input overvoltage or undervoltage.
- 10 b. Bypass ac input overfrequency or underfrequency.
- 11 c. Bypass ac input and inverter out of synchronization.
- 12 d. Bypass ac input wrong-phase rotation.
- 13 e. Bypass ac input single-phase condition.
- 14 f. Bypass ac input filter fuse blown.
- 15 g. Internal frequency standard in use.
- 16 h. Battery system alarm.
- 17 i. Control power failure.
- 18 j. Fan failure.
- 19 k. UPS overload.
- 20 l. Battery-charging control faulty.
- 21 m. Input overvoltage or undervoltage.
- 22 n. Input transformer overtemperature.
- 23 o. Input circuit breaker tripped.
- 24 p. Input wrong-phase rotation.
- 25 q. Input single-phase condition.
- 26 r. Approaching end of battery operation.
- 27 s. Battery undervoltage shutdown.
- 28 t. Maximum battery voltage.
- 29 u. Inverter fuse blown.
- 30 v. Inverter transformer overtemperature.
- 31 w. Inverter overtemperature.
- 32 x. Static bypass transfer switch overtemperature.
- 33 y. Inverter power supply fault.
- 34 z. Inverter transistors out of saturation.
- 35 aa. Identification of faulty inverter section/leg.
- 36 bb. Inverter output overvoltage or undervoltage.
- 37 cc. UPS overload shutdown.
- 38 dd. Inverter current sensor fault.
- 39 ee. Inverter output contactor open.
- 40 ff. Inverter current limit.
- 41 4. Controls shall include the following:
- 42 a. Inverter on-off.
- 43 b. UPS start.
- 44 c. Battery test.
- 45 d. Alarm silence/reset.
- 46 e. Output-voltage adjustment.
- 47 D. Dry-form "C" contacts shall be available for remote indication of the following conditions:

- 1 1. UPS on battery.
- 2 2. UPS on-line.
- 3 3. UPS load-on bypass.
- 4 4. UPS in alarm condition.
- 5 5. UPS off (maintenance bypass closed).

6 E. Emergency Power off Switch: Capable of local operation and operation by means of activation
7 by external dry contacts.

8 **2.8 MAINTENANCE BYPASS/ISOLATION SWITCH**

9 A. Description: Manually operated switch or arrangement of switching devices with mechanically
10 actuated contact mechanism arranged to route the flow of power to the load around the rectifier-
11 charger, inverter, and static bypass transfer switch.

- 12 1. Switch shall be electrically and mechanically interlocked to prevent interrupting power to
13 the load when switching to bypass mode.
- 14 2. Switch shall electrically isolate other UPS components to permit safe servicing.
- 15 3. Switch shall electrically isolate the rectifier-charger, inverter, and static bypass transfer
16 switch from the load, but shall allow primary power to the UPS for testing.

17 B. Comply with NEMA PB 2 and UL 891.

18 C. Switch Rating: Continuous duty at rated full-load UPS current.

19 D. Mounting Provisions: Separate wall- or floor-mounted unit.

20 E. Key interlock with key that is released only when the rectifier-charger and inverter are bypassed
21 by the static bypass transfer switch. Key shall be required to unlock maintenance
22 bypass/isolation switch before switching from open (normal) position to closed position. Lock
23 shall be designed specifically for mechanical and electrical component interlocking.

24 **2.9 REMOTE MONITORING**

25 A. Description: Communication module in unit control panel provides capability for remote
26 monitoring of status, parameters, and alarms specified in "Controls and Indications" Article. The
27 remote computer and the connecting signal wiring are not included in this Section. Include the
28 following features:

- 29 1. Connectors and network interface units for data transmission via RS-485, Ethernet, or
30 web-based link.
- 31 2. Software designed for control and monitoring of UPS functions and to provide on-screen
32 explanations, interpretations, diagnosis, action guidance, and instructions for use of
33 monitoring indications and development of meaningful reports. Permit storage and
34 analysis of power-line transient records. Designs for Windows applications, software, and
35 computer are not included in this Section.
- 36 3. Software and Hardware: Compatible with that specified in Section 26 09 13 "Electrical
37 Power Monitoring and Control."



1 **2.10 BATTERY**

2 A. Description:

3 1. Valve-regulated, recombinant, lead-calcium units, factory assembled in an isolated
4 compartment of UPS cabinet, complete with battery disconnect switch.

5 a. Arrange for drawout removal of battery assembly from cabinet for testing and
6 inspecting.

7 **2.11 BASIC BATTERY MONITORING**

8 A. Description: Continuous, real-time capture of battery performance data.

9 B. Battery Ground-Fault Detector: Initiates alarm when resistance to ground of positive or negative
10 bus of battery is less than 5000 ohms.

11 C. Battery compartment smoke/high-temperature detector initiates an alarm when smoke or a
12 temperature greater than 167 deg F occurs within the compartment.

13 D. Annunciation of Alarms: At UPS control panel and remotely.

14 **2.12 ADDITIONAL BATTERY MONITORING**

15 A. Monitoring features and components shall include the following:

16 1. Factory-wired sensing leads to cell and battery terminals and cell temperature sensors.

17 2. Connections for data transmission via RS-485 link, external signal wiring to electrical
18 power monitoring and control equipment. External signal wiring and computer are not
19 specified in this Section.

20 3. USB ports for printer and accessories.

21 4. PC-based software designed to store and analyze battery data, compile reports on
22 individual-cell parameters and total battery performance trends, and provide data for
23 scheduling and prioritizing battery maintenance.

24 **2.13 BATTERY-CYCLE WARRANTY MONITORING**

25 A. Description: Electronic device, acceptable to battery manufacturer as a basis for warranty
26 action, for monitoring of charge-discharge cycle history of batteries covered by cycle-life
27 warranties.

28 B. Performance: Automatically measure and record each discharge event, classify it according to
29 duration category and total discharges according to warranty criteria, and display remaining
30 warranted battery life on front panel display.

31 C. Additional monitoring functions and features shall include the following:

32 1. Measuring and Recording: Total voltage at battery terminal. Initiate an alarm for
33 excursions outside the proper float-voltage level.

34 2. Monitoring: Ambient temperature at battery; initiate an alarm if temperature deviates from
35 normally acceptable range.



- 1 3. Keypad on Device Front Panel: Provide access to monitored data using front panel
- 2 display.
- 3 4. Alarm Contacts: Arrange to initiate remote alarm for abnormal battery voltage or
- 4 temperature.
- 5 5. Memory: Store recorded data in nonvolatile electronic memory.
- 6 6. Ethernet Port: Permits downloading of data to a PC.

7 **2.14 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- 8 A. Factory test complete UPS system before shipment. Use the same type of batteries that are
- 9 part of final installation. Include the following:

- 10 1. Test and demonstration of all functions, controls, indicators, sensors, and protective
- 11 devices.
- 12 2. Full-load test.
- 13 3. Transient-load response test.
- 14 4. Overload test.
- 15 5. Power failure test.

- 16 B. Report test results. Include the following data:

- 17 1. Description of input source and output loads used. Describe actions required to simulate
- 18 source load variation and various operating conditions and malfunctions.
- 19 2. List of indications, parameter values, and system responses considered satisfactory for
- 20 each test action. Include tabulation of actual observations during test.
- 21 3. List of instruments and equipment used in factory tests.

22 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

23 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 24 A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for
- 25 conditions affecting performance of the UPS.
- 26 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 27 C. Verify installation conditions are representative of the conditions used in the coordination
- 28 studies for the electrical system. Provide fuse protection according to Section 26 28 13 "Fuses"
- 29 if required for coordination with UPS overcurrent protective device requirements.

30 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- 31 A. Comply with NECA 1.
- 32 B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and
- 33 counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
- 34 1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 26 05 33
 - 35 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
 - 36 2. Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.



- 1 C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess
2 and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and
3 distribution spools.
- 4 D. Equipment Mounting: Install UPS on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete
5 base specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- 6 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated,
7 install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base 6 inches
8 from the outer edge of the base.
- 9 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete
10 base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
- 11 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams,
12 instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
- 13 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- 14 E. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written
15 instructions and NFPA 70.
- 16 F. Connections: Interconnect system components. Make connections to supply and load circuits
17 according to manufacturer's wiring diagrams unless otherwise indicated. Apply oxide inhibitor
18 on battery terminals.

19 3.3 GROUNDING

- 20 A. Separately Derived Systems:
- 21 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions that include grounding requirements in
22 excess of NFPA 70 requirements for connecting to grounding electrodes and for bonding
23 to metallic piping near isolation transformer. Comply with requirements in
24 Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

25 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- 26 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for
27 identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 28 1. Identify each battery cell individually.

29 3.5 BATTERY EQUALIZATION

- 30 A. Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record
31 individual-cell voltages.

32 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- 33 A. Administrant for Tests and Inspections:
- 34 1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to administer and perform tests and
35 inspections on components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including
36 connections.



- 1 B. Tests and Inspections:
- 2 1. Inspect interiors of enclosures, including the following:
- 3 a. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
- 4 b. Component type and labeling verification.
- 5 c. Ratings of installed components.
- 6 2. Test electrical and mechanical interlock systems for correct operation and sequencing.
- 7 3. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one or more of the
- 8 following methods:
- 9 a. Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-
- 10 wrench method according to manufacturer's published data or Table 100.12 of
- 11 NETA ATS.
- 12 4. Test static transfer from inverter to bypass and back. Use normal load, if possible.
- 13 5. Test dc undervoltage trip level on inverter input breaker. Set according to manufacturer's
- 14 published data.
- 15 6. Verify synchronizing indicators for static switch and bypass switches.
- 16 7. Test direct current system's batteries.
- 17 a. Verify adequacy of battery support racks, mounting, anchorage, alignment,
- 18 grounding, and clearances.
- 19 b. Inspect spill containment installation. Measure charger float and equalizing voltage
- 20 levels. Adjust to battery manufacturer's recommended settings.
- 21 c. Verify all charger functions and alarms.
- 22 d. Measure each cell voltage and total battery voltage with charger energized and in
- 23 float mode of operation.
- 24 e. Perform a load test according to manufacturer's published data or IEEE 450.
- 25 f. Measure charger float and equalizing voltage levels. Adjust to battery
- 26 manufacturer's recommended settings.
- 27 g. Test values.
- 28 1) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar
- 29 connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted
- 30 connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- 31 2) Charger float and equalize voltage levels shall be according to battery
- 32 manufacturer's published data.
- 33 3) The results of charger functions and alarms shall be according to
- 34 manufacturer's published data.
- 35 4) Cell voltages shall be within 0.05 V of each other or according to
- 36 manufacturer's published data.
- 37 5) Cell internal ohmic values (resistance, impedance, or conductance) shall not
- 38 vary by more than 25 percent between identical cells that are in a fully
- 39 charged state.
- 40 6) Results of load tests shall be according to manufacturer's published data or
- 41 IEEE 450.
- 42 8. Test communication of status and alarms to remote monitoring equipment.
- 43 C. The UPS system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.



1 D. Record of Tests and Inspections: Maintain and submit documentation of tests and inspections,
2 including references to manufacturers' written instructions and other test and inspection criteria.
3 Include results of tests, inspections, and retests.

4 E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

5 **3.7 DEMONSTRATION**

6 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to
7 adjust, operate, and maintain the UPS.

8 **END OF SECTION 26 33 53**

9



1 **SECTION 26 36 00 - TRANSFER SWITCHES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes automatic transfer switches rated 600 V and less, including the following:

- 8 1. Bypass/isolation switches.

9 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 10 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 11 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components
12 and profiles, and finishes for transfer switches.
13 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and
14 accessories.

15 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 16 A. Field quality-control reports.

17 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 18 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation,
19 and maintenance manuals.

20 **1.6 WARRANTY**

- 21 A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of transfer
22 switch or transfer switch components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified
23 warranty period.

- 24 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 3 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
4 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 5 B. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.
- 6 C. Comply with NFPA 110.
- 7 D. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.
- 8 E. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system
9 transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere
10 rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- 11 F. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Short-Circuit Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by
12 protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based
13 on testing according to UL 1008.
- 14 1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip
15 unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
- 16 2. Short-time withstand capability for three cycles.
- 17 G. Repetitive Accuracy of Solid-State Controls: All settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or
18 better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- 19 H. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge
20 withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.62. Components shall
21 meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- 22 I. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-
23 motor-operated mechanism. Switches for emergency or standby purposes shall be
24 mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions to prevent simultaneous connection
25 to both power sources unless closed transition.
- 26 J. Neutral Switching: Where four-pole switches are indicated, provide neutral pole switched
27 simultaneously with phase poles.
- 28 K. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches
29 for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control
30 panels shall have communication capability matched with remote device.
- 31 L. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, by
32 color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable with printed markers at terminations.
33 Color-coding and wire and cable markers are specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for
34 Electrical Systems."
- 35 1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring
36 indicated.
- 37 2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom
38 entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.



- 1 3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
 2 4. Accessible via front access.
- 3 M. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 1, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508,
 4 unless otherwise indicated.

5 **2.2 CONTACTOR-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES**

- 6 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 7 following:
- 8 1. Caterpillar, Inc.; Electric Power Division.
 9 2. Cummins Power Generation.
 10 3. Eaton.
 11 4. Kohler Power Systems.
 12 5. Vertiv, Co. (ASCO).
- 13 B. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- 14 C. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current
 15 between active power sources.
- 16 1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case
 17 circuit-breaker components are unacceptable.
 18 2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
 19 3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Contactor-style
 20 automatic transfer-switch units, rated 600 A and higher, shall have separate arcing
 21 contacts.
 22 4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 23 5. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 24 6. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type.
 25 7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression type.
 26 8. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.
- 27 D. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed
 28 on both sources at the same time.
- 29 1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources
 30 on the load at the same time.
- 31 E. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates
 32 in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.
- 33 F. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator
 34 and control panel.
- 35 G. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:
- 36 1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.



- 1 2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal and Alternate Source: Sense low
2 phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to
3 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of
4 pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
- 5 3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup
6 voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at
7 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal.
8 Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
- 9 4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and
10 factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or
11 sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
- 12 5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
- 13 6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
- 14 7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and
15 emergency-source sensing circuits.
- 16 a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source
17 Available."
- 18 b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency
19 Source Available."
- 20 8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts
21 for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
- 22 9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so transfer switch will
23 remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source.
24 Pilot light indicates override status.
- 25 10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and
26 normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
- 27 11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory
28 set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls
29 after retransfer of load to normal source.
- 30 12. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine
31 generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers
32 and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset
33 intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30
34 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and
35 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
- 36 a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without
37 load transfer.
- 38 b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
- 39 c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

40 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

41 **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- 42 A. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.
- 43 1. Install transfer switches on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with
44 requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-
45 Place Concrete."
- 46 2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.

- 1 3. Provide workspace and clearances required by NFPA 70.
- 2 B. Identify components according to Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 3 C. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.
- 4 D. Comply with NECA 1.

5 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- 6 A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to generator
7 sets, control, and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by
8 manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to
9 accommodate required wiring.
- 10 B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within electrical enclosures.
11 Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 - 12 1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 26 05 33
13 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- 14 C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess
15 and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
- 16 D. Ground equipment according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical
17 Systems."
- 18 E. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and
19 Cables."
- 20 F. Connect twisted pair cable according to Section 26 05 23 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power
21 Cables."
- 22 G. Route and brace conductors according to manufacturer's written instructions. and
23 Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems." Do not obscure manufacturer's
24 markings and labels.
- 25 H. Final connections to equipment shall be made with liquidtight, flexible metallic conduit no more
26 than 18 inches in length.

27 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- 28 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and
29 inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
 - 30 1. After installing equipment, test for compliance with requirements according to NETA ATS.
 - 31 2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - 32 a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
 - 33 b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - 34 c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
 - 35 d. Verify that the unit is clean.



- 1 e. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and
2 sliding surfaces.
- 3 f. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
- 4 g. Verify tightness of all control connections.
- 5 h. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following
6 methods, or both:
- 7 1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
- 8 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated
9 torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.
- 10 i. Perform manual transfer operation.
- 11 j. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.
- 12 k. Perform visual and mechanical inspection of surge arresters.
- 13 l. Inspect control power transformers.
- 14 1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of
15 connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
- 16 2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit-breaker ratings match
17 Drawings.
- 18 3) Verify correct functioning of drawout disconnecting contacts, grounding
19 contacts, and interlocks.
- 20 3. Electrical Tests:
- 21 a. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
- 22 b. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.
- 23 c. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation.
- 24 d. Perform automatic transfer tests.
- 25 e. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:
- 26 1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
- 27 2) Engine start sequence.
- 28 3) Time delay on transfer.
- 29 4) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
- 30 5) Automatic transfer operation.
- 31 6) Interlocks and limit switch function.
- 32 7) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
- 33 8) Engine cool-down and shutdown feature.
- 34 4. After energizing circuits, perform each electrical test for transfer switches stated in
35 NETA ATS and demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each
36 switch at least three times.
- 37 a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and
38 retransfer from emergency source with normal source available.
- 39 b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
- 40 c. Verify time-delay settings.
- 41 d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control
42 settings.
- 43 e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch
44 operations.
- 45 f. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer
46 time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-
47 down and shutdown.



- 1 B. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
- 2 C. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and
3 measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each
4 tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
- 5 D. Transfer switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- 6 E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- 7 F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

8 **3.4 DEMONSTRATION**

- 9 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to
10 adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment.
- 11 B. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

12 **END OF SECTION 26 36 00**

13



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 41 13 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes lightning protection system for ordinary structures.

8 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 9 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 10 B. Shop Drawings:

- 11 1. Include layouts of the lightning protection system, with details of the components to be
12 used in the installation.
13 2. Include raceway locations needed for the installation of conductors.
14 3. Details of air terminals, ground rods, ground rings, conductor supports, splices, and
15 terminations, including concealment requirements.
16 4. Include roof attachment details, coordinated with roof installation.

17 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 18 A. Product Certificates: For each type of roof adhesive for attaching the roof-mounted air terminal
19 assemblies, approved by the roofing-material manufacturer.

- 20 B. Field quality-control reports.

21 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 22 A. Maintenance Data: For lightning protection system to include in maintenance manuals.

- 23 1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include
24 the following:

- 25 a. Dimensioned site plan showing dimensioned route of the ground loop conductor
26 and the ground rod locations. Comply with requirements of Division 01 "Project
27 Record Documents."

- 28 B. Completion Certificate:

- 29 1. UL Master Label Certificate.



1 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 2 A. Installer Qualifications: UL-listed installer, category OWAY.

3 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

4 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 5 A. UL Lightning Protection Standard: Comply with UL 96A requirements for Class I buildings.
- 6 B. Lightning Protection Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled by a qualified
7 testing agency as complying with UL 96, and marked for intended location and application.

8 **2.2 MATERIALS**

- 9 A. Air Terminals:
- 10 1. Aluminum unless otherwise indicated.
- 11 2. 1/2-inch diameter by 18 inches long.
- 12 3. Pointed tip.
- 13 4. Integral base support.
- 14 B. Class 1 Main Conductors:
- 15 1. Aluminum: 98,600 circular mils in diameter.
- 16 C. Secondary Conductors:
- 17 1. Aluminum: 41,400 circular mils in diameter.
- 18 D. Ground Loop Conductor: Tinned copper.
- 19 E. Ground Rods:
- 20 1. Material: Copper-clad steel.
- 21 2. Diameter: 3/4 inch.
- 22 3. Rods shall be not less than 120 inches long.
- 23 4. Sectional type, with integral threads.
- 24 F. Conductor Splices and Connectors: Compression fittings that are installed with hydraulically
25 operated tools, or exothermic welds, approved for use with the class type.

26 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

27 **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- 28 A. Install lightning protection components and systems according to UL 96A.
- 29 B. Install conductors with direct paths from air terminals to ground connections. Avoid bends less
30 than 90 degrees and 8 inches in radius and narrow loops.



- 1 C. Conceal conductors within normal view from exterior locations at grade within 200 feet of
2 building. Comply with requirements for concealed installations in UL 96A.
- 3 1. Roof penetrations required for down conductors and connections to structural-steel
4 framework shall be made using listed through-roof fitting and connector assemblies with
5 solid rods and appropriate roof flashings. Use materials approved by the roofing
6 manufacturer for the purpose. Conform to the methods and materials required at roofing
7 penetrations of the lightning protection components to ensure compatibility with the
8 roofing specifications and warranty.
- 9 2. Install conduit where necessary to comply with conductor concealment requirements.
- 10 3. Air Terminals on Single-Ply Membrane Roofing: Comply with adhesive manufacturer's
11 written instructions.
- 12 D. Ground Ring Electrode: The conductor shall be not less than the main-size lightning conductor.

13 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- 14 A. Aboveground concealed connections, and connections in earth or concrete, shall be done by
15 exothermic welds or by high-compression fittings listed for the purpose.
- 16 B. Aboveground exposed connections shall be done using the following types of connectors, listed
17 and labeled for the purpose: bolted connectors.
- 18 C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance,
19 except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
- 20 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate
21 any adjacent parts.
- 22 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install
23 bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.

24 3.3 CORROSION PROTECTION

- 25 A. Do not combine materials that can form an electrolytic couple that will accelerate corrosion in
26 the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from junction of such
27 materials.
- 28 B. Use conductors with protective coatings where conditions would cause deterioration or
29 corrosion of conductors.

30 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- 31 A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special
32 inspections:
- 33 1. Perform inspections as required to obtain a UL Master Label for system.
- 34 B. Prepare test and inspection reports and certificates.

35 **END OF SECTION 26 41 13**

36



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 43 13 - SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER**
2 **CIRCUITS**

3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4 **1.1 SUMMARY**

5 A. Section Includes:

- 6 1. Type 2 surge protective devices.
7 2. Enclosures.
8 3. Conductors and cables.

9 **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

10 A. I_n : Nominal discharge current.

11 B. Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV): The maximum designated RMS value of the
12 power frequency voltage that may be continuously applied to the mode of protection of an SPD.

13 C. Metal-Oxide Varistor (MOV): An electronic component with a significant bidirectional, nonlinear
14 current-voltage characteristic.

15 D. Mode(s), Modes of Protection, or Protection Modes: Electrical paths where the SPD offers
16 defense against transient overvoltages. Examples include: line to neutral (L-N), line to ground
17 (L-G), line to line (L-L), and neutral to ground (N-G).

18 E. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

19 F. Type 1 SPDs: Permanently connected SPDs intended for installation between the secondary of
20 the service transformer and the line side of the service disconnect overcurrent device.

21 G. Type 2 SPDs: Permanently connected SPDs intended for installation on the load side of the
22 service disconnect overcurrent device, including SPDs located at the branch panel.

23 H. Type 3 SPDs: Point of utilization SPDs.

24 I. Type 4 SPDs: Component SPDs, including discrete components, as well as assemblies.

25 J. Type 5 SPDs: Discrete component surge suppressors, such as MOVs that may be mounted on
26 a printed wiring board, connected by its leads or provided within an enclosure with mounting
27 means and wiring terminations.

28 K. Voltage Protection Rating (VPR): A rating selected from UL 1449 list of preferred values
29 assigned to each mode of protection.

30 **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

31 A. Product Data:



- 1 1. For each type of product.
- 2 a. Include electrical characteristics, specialties, and accessories for SPDs.
- 3 b. Certification of compliance with UL 1449 by qualified electrical testing laboratory
- 4 recognized by authorities having jurisdiction including the following information:
- 5 1) Tested values for VPRs.
- 6 2) I_n ratings.
- 7 3) MCOV, type designations.
- 8 4) OCPD requirements.
- 9 5) Manufacturer's model number.
- 10 6) System voltage.
- 11 7) Modes of protection.
- 12 B. Field quality-control reports.

13 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- 14 A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

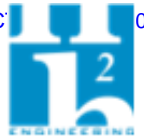
15 **1.5 WARRANTY**

- 16 A. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty: Manufacturer warrants that SPDs perform in
- 17 accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of SPDs
- 18 that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.
- 19 1. Initial Extended Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion, for
- 20 labor, materials, and equipment.
- 21 B. The manufacturer shall provide unlimited free replacement of the entire SPD (not just modules,
- 22 components or sub-assemblies) for all inoperable SPDs during the warranty period. Acceptable
- 23 manufacturers listed that do not meet the warranty as standard shall submit a letter extending
- 24 the warranty with the product submittal.
- 25 1. Manufacturer's Replacement Policy

26 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

27 **2.1 TYPE 2 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES (SPDs)**

- 28 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
- 29 following:
- 30 1. ABB, Electrification Business.
- 31 2. Advanced Protection Technologies Inc. (APT).
- 32 3. Eaton.
- 33 4. Liebert; Vertiv Holdings Co.



- 1 5. Mersen USA.
- 2 6. SSI, an ILSCO Company.
- 3 7. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
- 4 8. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
- 5 B. Source Limitations: Obtain devices from single source from single manufacturer.
- 6 C. General Characteristics:
- 7 1. Reference Standards: UL 1449, Type 2; UL 1283.
- 8 2. MCOV: Not less than 125 percent of nominal system voltage for 208Y/120 V and
- 9 120/240 V power systems, and not less than 115 percent of nominal system voltage for
- 10 480Y/277 V power systems.
- 11 3. Peak Surge Current Rating: Minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per
- 12 phase must not be less than 160 kA. Peak surge current rating must be arithmetic sum of
- 13 the ratings of individual MOVs in a given mode.
- 14 4. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V or
- 15 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits must not exceed the following:
- 16 a. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
- 17 b. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
- 18 c. Neutral to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
- 19 d. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V or 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.
- 20 5. SCCR: Equal or exceed 200 kA.
- 21 6. I_n Rating: 20 kA.
- 22 D. Options:
- 23 1. Include LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
- 24 2. Include internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal
- 25 suppressor components.
- 26 3. Include NEMA ICS 5, dry Form C contacts rated at 2 A and 24 V(ac) for remote
- 27 monitoring of protection status.
- 28 4. Include surge counter.
- 29 **2.2 TYPE 3, TYPE 4, AND TYPE 5 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES (SPDs)**
- 30 A. Type 3, Type 4, and Type 5 SPDs are not approved for field installation.
- 31 **2.3 ENCLOSURES**
- 32 A. Indoor Enclosures: Type 1.
- 33 B. Outdoor Enclosures: Type 4X.



1 **2.4 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

- 2 A. Power Wiring: Same size as SPD leads, complying with Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage
3 Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

4 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

5 **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- 6 A. Provide OCPD and disconnect for installation of SPD in accordance with UL 1449 and
7 manufacturer's instructions.
- 8 B. Install leads between disconnects and SPDs short, straight, twisted, and in accordance with
9 manufacturer's instructions. Comply with wiring methods in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage
10 Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- 11 1. Do not splice and extend SPD leads unless specifically permitted by manufacturer.
12 2. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length.
13 3. Do not bond neutral and ground.
- 14 C. Use crimped connectors and splices only. Wire nuts are unacceptable.

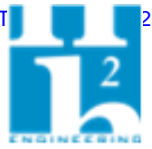
15 **3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 16 A. Tests and Inspections:
- 17 1. Compare equipment nameplate data for compliance with Drawings and the
18 Specifications.
19 2. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
20 3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's installation
21 requirements.

22 **3.3 STARTUP SERVICE**

- 23 A. Complete startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- 24 B. Do not perform insulation-resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with SPDs
25 installed. Disconnect SPDs before conducting insulation-resistance tests; reconnect them
26 immediately after the testing is over.
- 27 C. Energize SPDs after power system has been energized, stabilized, and tested.

28 **END OF SECTION 26 43 13**



1 **SECTION 26 51 19 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section includes the following types of LED luminaires:

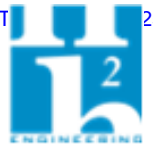
- 8 1. Materials.
9 2. Finishes.
10 3. Luminaire support.

11 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 12 A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
13 B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
14 C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
15 D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
16 E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
17 F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
18 G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

19 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 20 A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- 21 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
22 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
23 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
24 4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
25 5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
26 6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES
27 "Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides" for each luminaire type. The
28 adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the
29 luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.



1 a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's
 2 laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory
 3 Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

4 B. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

5 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

6 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation
 7 and maintenance manuals.

8 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

9 A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's
 10 laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

11 B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

12 **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

13 A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering
 14 before shipping.

15 **1.8 WARRANTY**

16 A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that
 17 fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

18 B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

19 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

20 **2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS**

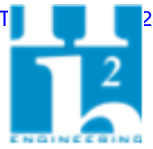
21 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
 22 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

23 B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels
 24 where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles
 25 when lamps are in place.

26 **2.2 MATERIALS**

27 A. Metal Parts:

- 28 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- 29 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.



1 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

2 B. Steel:

3 1. ASTM A 36/A 36M for carbon structural steel.

4 2. ASTM A 568/A 568M for sheet steel.

5 C. Stainless Steel:

6 1. 1. Manufacturer's standard grade.

7 2. 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A 240/240 M.

8 D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M.

9 E. Aluminum: ASTM B 209.

10 **2.3 METAL FINISHES**

11 A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining
12 components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be
13 and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

14 **2.4 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT**

15 A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems"
16 for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

17 B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish
18 same as luminaire.

19 C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.

20 D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

21 E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with
22 threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

23 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

24 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

25 A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with
26 requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

27 B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical
28 connections before luminaire installation.

29 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



1 **3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING**

- 2 A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When
3 construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new
4 lamps.

5 **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- 6 A. Comply with NECA 1.

- 7 B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

- 8 C. Supports:

- 9 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
10 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
11 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
12 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100
13 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

- 14 D. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:

- 15 1. Secured to outlet box.
16 2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around
17 circumference of luminaire.
18 3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

- 19 E. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:

- 20 1. Attached to a minimum 20 gauge backing plate attached to wall structural members .
21 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

- 22 F. Suspended Luminaires:

- 23 1. Ceiling Mount:

- 24 a. Two 5/32-inch- diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 10 feet in length .
25 b. Pendant mount with 5/32-inch- diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 10
26 feet in length .
27 c. Hook mount.

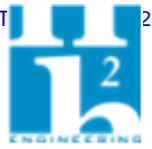
- 28 2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.

- 29 3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with
30 approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire
31 oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.

- 32 4. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire
33 support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each
34 end.

- 35 5. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods
36 to building structure.

- 37 G. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:



- 1 1. Secure to any required outlet box.
- 2 2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four
- 3 locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
- 4 3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and
- 5 building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

- 6 H. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and
- 7 Cables" for wiring connections.

8 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

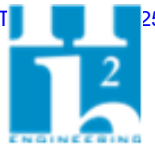
- 9 A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 10 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after
 - 11 electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
 - 12 2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation.
 - 13 Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

- 14 B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

- 15 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

16 **END OF SECTION 26 51 19**

17



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 26 52 13 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Emergency lighting units.
9 2. Exit signs.
10 3. Luminaire supports.

11 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 12 A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

- 13 B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.

- 14 C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered
15 supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.

- 16 D. Fixture: See "Luminaire" Paragraph.

- 17 E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

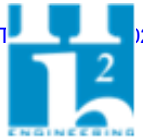
- 18 F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

19 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 20 A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting
21 support.

22 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- 23 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in emergency,
24 operation, and maintenance manuals.



1 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 2 A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's
3 laboratory that is accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for
4 Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

5 **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 6 A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering
7 before shipping.

8 **1.8 WARRANTY**

- 9 A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that
10 fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 11 1. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

12 **1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS**

[See Allstate Construction's bid package.](#)

- 13 A. Extra Exit Sign Allowance: Provide and identify a line-item allowance on bid day to furnish and
14 install 20% (time and material) of exit signs and associated conduit and wire on project. Extra
15 materials shall be installed as directed by Engineer and/or AHJ as building components are
16 installed to provide adequate coverage around obstructions or to otherwise coordinate with
17 competing systems. At the end of project provide an accounting of extra time and materials
18 used against allowance; any remaining allowance shall revert to the Owner's contingency for
19 the Owner's benefit.

20 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

21 **2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING**

- 22 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
23 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 24 B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to
25 comply with UL 924.
- 26 C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.
- 27 D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- 28 E. Lamp Base: Comply with ANSI C81.61.
- 29 F. Bulb Shape: Complying with ANSI C79.1.
- 30 G. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory
31 mounted within luminaire body and compatible with ballast.



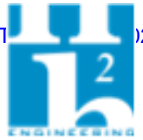
- 1 1. Emergency Connection: Operate one lamp continuously at an output of 1100 lumens
2 each upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and
3 switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
- 4 2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to
5 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery
6 when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay
7 disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on
8 charger.
- 9 3. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following
10 conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 11 a. Ambient Temperature: Less than 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) or exceeding 104
12 deg F (40 deg C), with an average value exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C) over a 24-
13 hour period.
 - 14 b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C) and
15 not exceeding 140 deg F (60 deg C).
 - 16 c. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).
 - 17 d. Altitude: Exceeding 3300 feet (1000 m).
- 18 4. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or
19 entering ceiling space.
 - 20 a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power
21 and demonstrates unit operability.
 - 22 b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle
23 charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
- 24 5. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
- 25 6. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer
26 relay.
- 27 7. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required
28 test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an
29 integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

30 2.2 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- 31 A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units.
- 32 B. Emergency Luminaires:
 - 33 1. Emergency Luminaires: as indicated on Drawings, with the following additional features:
 - 34 a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V ac.
 - 35 b. Internal emergency power unit.
 - 36 c. Rated for installation in damp locations, and for sealed and gasketed luminaires in
37 wet locations.
 - 38 d. UL 94 5VA flame rating.
 - 39 2. External emergency power unit.

40 2.3 EXIT SIGNS

- 41 A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance,
42 and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.



- 1 B. Internally Lighted Signs:
2 1. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V ac or 277 V ac.
3 2. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.

4 **2.4 METAL FINISHES**

- 5 A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable.
6 Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of
7 approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

8 **2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS**

- 9 A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for
10 channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
11 B. Support Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68
12 mm).

13 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

14 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 15 A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with
16 requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.
17 B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical
18 connections before luminaire installation.
19 C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting
20 luminaires will be installed.
21 D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

22 **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- 23 A. Comply with NECA 1.
24 B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
25 C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
26 D. Supports:
27 1. Sized and rated for luminaire and emergency power unit weight.
28 2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
29 3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of
30 ceiling or wall.



- 1 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100
2 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent
3 of luminaire weight.
- 4 E. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
- 5 1. Attached to a minimum 20-gage backing plate attached to wall structural members.
6 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- 7 F. Suspended Luminaire Support:
- 8 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
9 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with
10 approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire
11 oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
12 3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire
13 support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each
14 end.
15 4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods
16 to building structure.
- 17 G. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:
- 18 1. Secure to any required outlet box.
19 2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations,
20 spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
21 3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and
22 building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

23 **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

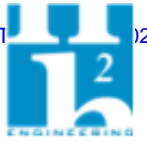
- 24 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for
25 identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

26 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 27 A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
- 28 1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation.
29 Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- 30 B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- 31 C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

32 **3.5 STARTUP SERVICE**

- 33 A. Perform startup service:
- 34 1. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour
35 discharge test.



1 **END OF SECTION 26 52 13**
2

1 **SECTION 26 56 13 - LIGHTING POLES AND STANDARDS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:
- 8 1. Poles and accessories for support of luminaires.

9 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 10 A. EPA: Equivalent projected area.
- 11 B. Luminaire: Complete luminaire.
- 12 C. Pole: Luminaire-supporting structure, including tower used for large-area illumination.
- 13 D. Standard: See "Pole."

14 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 15 A. Product Data: For each pole, accessory, and luminaire-supporting and -lowering device,
16 arranged as indicated.
- 17 1. Include data on construction details, profiles, EPA, cable entrances, materials,
18 dimensions, weight, rated design load, and ultimate strength of individual components.
- 19 2. Include finishes for lighting poles and luminaire-supporting devices.
- 20 3. Anchor bolts.
- 21 4. Manufactured pole foundations.

22 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- 23 A. Store poles on decay-resistant skids at least 12 inches above grade and vegetation. Support
24 poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.
- 25 B. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. Handle
26 poles with web fabric straps.

1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- 3 A. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- 4 B. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and
5 supporting structure, applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- 6 C. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf distributed according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- 7 D. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire, calculated and applied according to
8 AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- 9 1. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet high or less is 150 mph.
- 10 a. Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
- 11 b. Minimum Design Life: 25 years.
- 12 c. Velocity Conversion Factor: 1.0.
- 13 E. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual EPA of luminaires and brackets by a factor
14 of 1.3 to obtain the EPA to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
- 15 F. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting
16 requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.

17 **2.2 STEEL POLES**

- 18 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
19 following:
- 20 1. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
- 21 2. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
- 22 3. LSI Industries.
- 23 B. Source Limitations: Obtain poles from single manufacturer or producer.
- 24 C. Source Limitations: For poles, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of pole from
25 single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and
26 physical properties.
- 27 D. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 500/A 500M, Grade B carbon steel with a minimum yield of 46,000
28 psig; one-piece construction up to 40 feet in height with access handhole in pole wall.
- 29 1. Shape: Round, straight.
- 30 2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway
31 support.
- 32 E. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.
- 33 1. Adaptor fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole-mounted
34 adapter, then bolted together with galvanized-steel bolts.



- 1 2. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
 2 Match pole material and finish.
- 3 F. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and
 4 securely fastened to pole top.
- 5 G. Fasteners: Galvanized steel, size and type as determined by manufacturer. Corrosion-resistant
 6 items compatible with support components.
- 7 1. Materials: Compatible with poles and standards as well as the substrates to which poles
 8 and standards are fastened and shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
 9 2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after
 10 fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
- 11 H. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch threaded lug, complying with requirements in
 12 Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding
 13 and bonding conductors of type and size indicated, and accessible through handhole.
- 14 I. Handhole: Oval shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches, with cover secured
 15 by stainless-steel captive screws.
- 16 J. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- 17 K. Powder-Coat Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal
 18 Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- 19 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces according to SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease,
 20 and other contaminants that could impair powder coat bond. Grind welds and polish
 21 surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated
 22 steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
 23 2. Powder Coat: Comply with AAMA 2604.
- 24 a. Electrostatic-applied powder coating; single application and cured to a minimum
 25 2.5- to 3.5-mils dry film thickness. Coat interior and exterior of pole for equal
 26 corrosion protection.
 27 b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 28 3. Corrosion Coating: Apply non-porous, automotive grade corrosion coating to exterior of
 29 powder coated pole.

30 **2.3 POLE ACCESSORIES**

- 31 A. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, finished same as pole, and arranged to
 32 cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts.

33 **2.4 MOUNTING HARDWARE**

- 34 A. Anchor Bolts: Manufactured to ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, with a minimum yield strength of
 35 55,000 psi.
- 36 1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153, Class C.

- 1 B. Nuts: ASTM A 563, Grade A, Heavy-Hex
- 2 1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153, Class C.
- 3 2. Two nuts provided per anchor bolt, shipped with nuts pre-assembled to the anchor bolts.
- 4 C. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1.
- 5 1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153, Class C.
- 6 2. One washers provided per anchor bolt.

7 2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- 8 A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable,
9 temporary protective covering before shipping.
- 10 B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations
11 in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved
12 Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

13 PART 3 - EXECUTION

14 3.1 EXAMINATION

- 15 A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for
16 installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 17 B. Examine poles, luminaire-mounting devices, lowering devices, and pole accessories before
18 installation. Components that are scratched, dented, marred, wet, moisture damaged, or visibly
19 damaged are considered defective.
- 20 C. Examine roughing-in for foundation and conduit to verify actual locations of installation.
- 21 D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

22 3.2 POLE FOUNDATION

- 23 A. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange.
24 Structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to
25 ASTM A 123/A 123 M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and
26 strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories. Concrete, reinforcement, and
27 formwork are specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- 28 B. Pre-Cast Foundations: Factory fabricated, with structural steel complying with
29 ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M; and with top-plate
30 and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire,
31 and accessories. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 03 30 00
32 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- 33 C. Direct-Buried Foundations: Install to depth indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of
34 pole height. Add backfill in 6-inch to 9-inch layers, tamping each layer before adding the next.

1 To ensure a plumb installation, continuously check pole orientation with plumb bob while
2 tamping.

3 D. Anchor Bolts: Install plumb using manufacturer-supplied steel template, uniformly spaced.

4 3.3 POLE INSTALLATION

5 A. Alignment: Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and
6 their mounting provisions on pole.

7 B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and
8 underground features unless otherwise indicated on drawing.

- 9 1. Fire Hydrants and Water Piping: 60 inches.
- 10 2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communications, and Sewer Lines: 10 feet.
- 11 3. Trees: 15 feet from tree trunk.

12 C. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by
13 pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in
14 Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

15 D. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts and tighten top nuts to torque level
16 according to pole manufacturer's written instructions.

- 17 1. Use anchor bolts and nuts selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application
18 and approved by manufacturer.
- 19 2. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrink or expanding concrete
20 grout firmly packed to fill space.
- 21 3. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
- 22 4. Use a short piece of 1/2 -inch diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange
23 to drain condensation from interior of pole.

24 E. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete-Paved Areas: Install poles with a minimum 6-inch-
25 wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of the adjacent concrete
26 slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel. Insert material to a level 1 inch below top of concrete
27 slab.

28 F. Raise and set pole using web fabric slings (not chain or cable) at locations indicated by
29 manufacturer.

30 3.4 CORROSION PREVENTION

31 A. Steel Conduits: Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for
32 Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch-thick, pipe-wrapping
33 plastic tape applied with a 50-percent overlap.

34 3.5 GROUNDING

35 A. Ground Metal Poles and Support Structures: Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 26
36 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."



- 1 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
- 2 2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding
- 3 system.

4 **3.6 IDENTIFICATION**

- 5 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for
- 6 identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

7 **END OF SECTION 26 56 13**



1 **SECTION 26 56 19 – LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp
9 technology.
10 2. Luminaire supports.

11 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 12 A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
13 B. CRI: Color rendering index.
14 C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
15 D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
16 E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
17 F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

18 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- 19 A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.

- 20 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
21 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
22 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
23 4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
24 5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES
25 Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The
26 adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the
27 luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.
- 28 a. Manufacturer's Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's
29 laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient
30 Lighting Products.



- 1 6. Wiring diagrams for power, control, and signal wiring.
2 7. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable
3 for components involved.
- 4 B. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- 5 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**
- 6 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires to include in operation and maintenance
7 manuals.
- 8 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
- 9 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**
- 10 A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers'
11 laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- 12 B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- 13 **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**
- 14 A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering
15 prior to shipping.
- 16 **1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS**
- 17 A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire
18 installation.
- 19 B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire
20 installation.
- 21 **1.9 WARRANTY**
- 22 A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that
23 fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- 24 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 25 a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
26 b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
27 c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal
28 weathering.
- 29 2. Warranty Period: 2 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS**

- 3 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
4 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 5 B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of
6 hazard by an NRTL.
- 7 C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.
- 8 D. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
- 9 E. CRI of 80. CCT of 4100 K.
- 10 F. L70 lamp life of 50,000 hours.
- 11 G. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- 12 H. Internal driver.
- 13 I. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use and in enclosed locations.
- 14 J. Source Limitations: For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of
15 luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in
16 appearance and physical properties.

17 **2.2 MATERIALS**

- 18 A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- 19 B. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum Epoxy-coated steel or as indicated on
20 drawings. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- 21 C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under
22 operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to
23 prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during
24 relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or
25 replacing lenses.
- 26 D. Diffusers and Globes:
- 27 1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and
28 other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
- 29 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
- 30 3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- 31 E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion
32 lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- 33 F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:



- 1 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 2 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
 3 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
- 4 G. Housings:
- 5 1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in
 6 use.
 7 2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
- 8 H. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be
 9 located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing
 10 angles when lamps are in place.
- 11 **2.3 FINISHES**
- 12 A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in
 13 appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved
 14 Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- 15 B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested
 16 luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support
 17 materials.
- 18 C. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes
 19 Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating
 20 finishes.
- 21 1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum
 22 Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- 23 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff
 24 complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat
 25 wax.
- 26 3. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin;
 27 Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear
 28 coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
- 29 4. Class I, Color-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin;
 30 Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally
 31 colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with
 32 AAMA 611.
- 33 D. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for
 34 Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- 35 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, to remove dirt, oil,
 36 grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish
 37 surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated
 38 steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
- 39 2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of
 40 primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
 41 a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.



1 **2.4 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS**

- 2 A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems"
3 for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

4 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

5 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- 6 A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with
7 requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 8 B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit
9 connections before luminaire installation.
- 10 C. Examine walls, roofs, canopy ceilings and overhang ceilings for suitable conditions where
11 luminaires will be installed.
- 12 D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

13 **3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- 14 A. Comply with NECA 1.
- 15 B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the
16 application and approved by manufacturer.
- 17 C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- 18 D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.
- 19 E. Supports:
- 20 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
- 21 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
- 22 3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
- 23 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100
24 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- 25 F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
- 26 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
- 27 G. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.
- 28 H. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated. Install
29 luminaires at height and aiming angle as indicated on Drawings.
- 30 I. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.



1 J. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric
2 device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.

3 K. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and
4 Cables" and Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring
5 connections and wiring methods.

6 **3.3 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION:**

7 A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.

8 1. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches above finished grade or surface at luminaire
9 location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish
10 by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are
11 specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

12 **3.4 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTED LUMINAIRES**

13 A. Aim as indicated on Drawings.

14 B. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches above finished grade or surface at luminaire location.
15 Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials,
16 installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

17 **3.5 CORROSION PREVENTION**

18 A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar
19 metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.

20 B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In
21 concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch-thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied
22 with a 50 percent overlap.

23 **3.6 IDENTIFICATION**

24 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for
25 identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

26 **3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

27 A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.

28 B. Perform the following tests and inspections:

29 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after
30 electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.

31 2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.

32 C. Illumination Tests:



- 1 1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST
2 standards. Comply with the following IES testing guide(s):
- 3 a. IES LM-5.
4 b. IES LM-50.
5 c. IES LM-64.
6 d. IES LM-72.
- 7 2. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after
8 electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
- 9 D. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- 10 E. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and
11 interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate
12 compliance with standards.

13 **3.8 DEMONSTRATION**

- 14 A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires and
15 photocell relays.

16 **END OF SECTION 26 56 19**

17



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



1 **SECTION 27 00 00 - COMMUNICATIONS STRUCTURED CABLING**
 2 **SYSTEM**

3
 4
 5 **PART 1 – GENERAL**

6
 7 **1.1 CONTRACTOR QUALIFICATIONS**

[See Allstate Construction's bid package.](#)

8
 9 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall be an experienced firm regularly engaged in the
 10 layout and installation of structured cabling systems of similar size and complexity as required for
 11 this installation. The Structured Cabling System Contractor, under the same company name,
 12 shall have successfully completed the layout, installation, testing and warranty of not less than
 13 five Structured Cabling Systems of the scope of the largest system on this project for a minimum
 14 period of three years prior to the bid date, and shall have been regularly engaged in the business
 15 of Structured Cabling Systems contracting continuously since. The Structured Cabling System
 16 Contractor shall have an existing permanent office located within 100 miles of the job site from
 17 which installation and warranty service operations will be performed.
 18

19 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall be in good standing with the Structured Cabling
 20 System Manufacturer as a Belden Certified Installer. The Structured Cabling System Contractor
 21 shall complete the Structured Cabling System Manufacturer's Certified Installer training program.
 22 The Structured Cabling System Manufacturer shall require that not less than two permanent
 23 employees of the Structured Cabling System Contractor each complete the full certification
 24 program. Each Certified Installer shall attend re-certification classes every two years. The
 25 Structured Cabling System certified employees shall include not less than one designer and one
 26 installation supervisor. The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall present, with his bid, the
 27 names and credentials of the Belden certified installers who will be responsible for this project.
 28

29 **1.1.1 Contractor Qualifications – Conduit Installation:**

30
 31 All conduit and related work shall be provided by the project electrical contractor using tradesmen
 32 who are skilled and experienced in the types of conduit installations indicated in the bid
 33 documents.
 34

35 **1.1.2 Definitions**

36
 37 CM - Construction Manager
 38 DB - Design Build Contractor
 39 GC - General Contractor
 40

41 Where the three terms CM, DB, and GC are used in the specifications and TEL drawings they are
 42 used interchangeably. The Contractor shall understand the terms to mean the construction entity
 43 in overall charge of the project, whether a CM, DB or GC.
 44

45 **1.2 PROOF OF CONTRACTOR QUALIFICATIONS**

46
 47 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall provide the following documentation, to be
 48 presented with his bid to the GC and following bids to the Owner within three working days of a
 49 request, as evidence that the requirements for Structured Cabling System Contractor
 50 qualifications listed above are satisfied. The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall meet
 51 the requirements of this specification section for structured cabling system work. All work under
 52 this section shall be performed by permanent employees of the Structured Cabling System
 53 Contractor listed on the bid form, and shall not be performed by another subcontractor,
 54 employees of another company, or by temporary employees. The only exceptions to these
 55 requirements shall be for conduit work, which may be performed by an electrical contractor



1 meeting the minimum requirements of paragraph 1.1.1. Under no
 2 circumstances shall temporary employees be used for any work for these systems.

3
 4 **1.2.1** Provide a list of not less than five (5) references for jobs of similar size and complexity including
 5 project name, location, contact person and phone number.

6
 7 **1.2.2** Provide location of existing permanent office from which installation and warranty work will be
 8 performed.

9
 10 **1.2.3** Provide copies of certificates issued by Structured Cabling System Manufacturer proving that the
 11 Structured Cabling System Contractor is in good standing with the manufacturer as a Certified
 12 Installer, and that the Structured Cabling System Contractor can offer the Owner a 25 year
 13 system warranty in partnership with the Structured Cabling System Manufacturer.

14
 15 **1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

16
 17 Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions
 18 and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

19
 20 Electrical Specification Sections regarding conduit apply to work under this section, with the
 21 additions and modifications specified herein and on the TEL drawings. The special requirements
 22 indicated on the TEL drawings and in this specification section for structured cabling system
 23 conduit and all cable pathways shall take precedence over any requirements specified in
 24 Electrical Specification Sections.

25
 26 See Specification Section 27 05 00 for IP Security Camera System.

27
 28 See Specification Section 28 10 00 for Electronic Access Control System.

29
 30 **1.4 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

31
 32 The work consists of all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to provide, install,
 33 test and certify all systems as described in the contract documents. The Structured Cabling
 34 System Contractor shall provide systems complete and ready for operation. The installation shall
 35 include all accessories and appurtenances required to provide a complete and operational
 36 system. Any materials not specifically mentioned in these specifications or not shown on the
 37 drawings but required for a complete and finished installation shall be furnished and installed at
 38 no additional cost to the Owner.

39
 40 **1.4.1 Special Warranty – Structured Cabling System:**

41
 42 The Structured Cabling System Contractor and The Structured Cabling System Manufacturer
 43 (Belden) shall provide a 25 year warranty for the completed Structured Cabling System. The 25
 44 year warranty shall commence on the date of Final Completion and Final Acceptance by the
 45 Engineer and the Owner.

46
 47 The installed system shall be manufacturer certified and shall meet or exceed all performance
 48 criteria established by TIA/EIA Category 6 and Category 6A standards for unshielded UTP
 49 cabling. The electrical performance of all UTP cabling shall be characterized to 250 MHz for
 50 Category 6 cable and to 500 MHz for Category 6A cable and shall be proven by field testing of
 51 the Permanent Link.

52
 53 The 25 year warranty shall cover the Structured Cabling System end-to-end and shall include
 54 parts and labor costs for replacement of defective parts or installation. The warranty shall also
 55 cover current applications plus all future applications approved to run on Category 6 and
 56 Category 6A cabling systems. The performance parameters guaranteed by The Structured



1 Cabling System Manufacturer in published literature shall be based on
 2 worst case testing of a channel configuration using a 100 meter model constructed using four
 3 connection points consisting of a horizontal cross-connect, a consolidation point and a work area
 4 outlet.

5
 6 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall test all Category 6 and Category 6A cabling for
 7 the Permanent Link in strict accordance with TIA standards. The test results shall indicate that
 8 each cable achieved a PASS rating without exception.

9
 10 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall provide all necessary documentation to the
 11 Structured Cabling System Manufacturer required to properly register the system with the
 12 manufacturer for warranty purposes.

13 14 **1.4.2 Scheduling:**

15
 16 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall become thoroughly familiar with the overall
 17 project schedule and shall complete his work and make all systems fully operational prior to the
 18 date of occupancy of the facilities by the Owner.

19
 20 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall coordinate all work with the General Contractor
 21 and the Electrical Contractor, as well as all other trades.

22
 23 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating all work related
 24 to cable pathways indicated on the TEL sheets, even if that work is being performed by the
 25 project electrical contractor. The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall inform the General
 26 Contractor if:

- 27
 28 1) The conduit work is not being completed in accordance with the requirements indicated on
 29 the TEL drawings and this specification.
 30
 31 2) The conduit work is not being completed in such a manner that will allow the Structured
 32 Cabling System Contractor to complete his work in a timely manner in accordance with the
 33 project schedule and this section.

34
 35 *The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall provide adequate training of the Owner's forces*
 36 *prior to the date of occupancy* and shall provide follow-up training after occupancy. Total training
 37 time shall be as prescribed by this specification is considered a minimum requirement.

38 39 **1.5 EXAMINATION OF SITES AND TOTAL SYSTEM RESPONSIBILITY**

40
 41 Prior to providing a proposal for this work, the Contractor shall visit the proposed site of work to
 42 become familiar with any condition that may affect the work to be performed in any way. No
 43 allowances shall be made because of lack of knowledge of these conditions.

44
 45 The Contractor shall have total system responsibility to assure a fully operational system. Any
 46 additional labor and components required for the installation of complete operating systems but
 47 not specifically required by the bid documents shall be provided and the cost borne by the
 48 Contractor.

49
 50 The Contractor shall remain the sole owner of the system and all of its components provided
 51 under this contract and is responsible for all risk of loss or damage of the system for the entire
 52 contract period up to and including the date and time of Final Acceptance by the Engineer and
 53 the Owner's Project Manager. After the date of Final Acceptance, the Owner shall assume full
 54 ownership of the system with all components, and the warranty period shall commence.

55 56 **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**



1
2 Materials shall be new and shall be the best of their respective kinds. All work shall be
3 accomplished in a workmanlike manner in keeping with the best practices and highest standards
4 of the telecommunications industry.
5

6 Protect materials and equipment from physical or environmental damage during shipping, storage
7 and installation. Equipment and materials shall be received at the site in new condition and shall
8 be maintained in new condition throughout the installation process. Damaged or deteriorated
9 equipment and materials will not be acceptable. The Contractor shall be responsible for the
10 safety and condition of all materials and equipment, whether stored or installed, until Final
11 Acceptance by the Engineer and the Owner.
12

13 1.7 CODES AND STANDARDS

14
15 All work done under this contract shall be performed in accordance with the most recent issue of
16 the following codes, standards and guidelines. Where there is a perceived conflict between a
17 standard or guideline and the contract documents, the Contractor shall perform the work as
18 directed by the Engineer.
19

20	NFPA 70	National Electric Code - 2020 Edition
21		
22	NFPA 90A	Standard for the installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
23		– 2021 edition
24		
25	NFPA 101	Life Safety Code - 2021 Edition
26		
27	FBC	Florida Building Code – 2023 8th Edition
28		Florida Fire Prevention Code - 2023 8th Edition
29		Florida Building Code Accessibility – 2023 8th Edition
30		
31	TIA	Telecommunications Industry Association, current edition of each
32		standard at the time of bids applies (regardless of edition indicated
33		below)
34		
35	TIA-568.0-D	Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises
36		
37	TIA-568.1-D	Commercial Building Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard
38		
39	TIA 568.2-D	Balanced Twisted-Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components
40		Standard
41		
42	TIA 568.3-D	Optical Fiber Cabling and Components Standard
43		
44	TIA 568.4-D	Broadband Coaxial Cabling and Components Standard
45		
46	TIA 569-D	Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces
47		
48	TIA 598-B	Optical Fiber Cable Color Coding
49		
50	TIA-526	Standard Test Procedures for Fiber Optic Systems (Singlemode Fiber
51		Optical Power Loss measurement TIA-526-7 Revision A 2015 and
52		Multimode Fiber Optical Power Loss measurement TIA-526-14 Revision
53		C 2015).
54		
55	TIA 606-C	Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications
56		Infrastructure



1		
2	TIA-607-D	Generic Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for
3		Customer Premises
4		
5	TIA-758-B	Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Infrastructure
6		Standard
7		
8	TIA-862-B	Structured Cabling Infrastructure Standard for Intelligent Building
9		Systems
10		
11	IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
12		
13		IEEE 802-2001, IEEE Standard for Local and Metropolitan Area
14		Networks: Overview and Architecture
15		
16	IEEE	LAN/MAN Bridging & Management (802.1)
17		
18		IEEE 802.1f-1993, IEEE Standard for Local and Metropolitan Area
19		Networks: Common Definitions and Procedures for IEEE 802
20		Management Information
21		
22		IEEE 802.1h, 1997 Edition (R2001) (ISO/IEC TR11802-5: 1997), IEEE
23		Technical Report and Guidelines--Part 5: Media Access Control (MAC)
24		Bridging of Ethernet V2.0 in Local Area Networks
25		
26		IEEE 802.1b, 1995 Edition (ISO/IEC 15802-2-1995), IEEE Standard for
27		Information technology--Telecommunications and information exchange
28		between systems--IEEE standard for local and metropolitan area
29		networks--Common specifications--Part 2: LAN/MAN Management
30		
31		IEEE 802.1d, 1998 Edition (ISO/IEC 15802-3:1998, IEEE Standard for
32		Information technology--Telecommunications and information exchange
33		between systems--IEEE standard for local and metropolitan area
34		networks--Common specifications--Media access control (MAC) Bridges
35		
36		IEEE 802.1t-2001, Amendment to IEEE Std 802.1D, 1998 Edition IEEE
37		Standard for Information technology--Telecommunications and
38		information exchange between systems--Local and metropolitan area
39		networks--Common specifications--Part 3: Media Access Control (MAC)
40		Bridges: Technical and Editorial Corrections
41		
42		IEEE 802.1w-2001, IEEE Standard for Information technology--
43		Telecommunications and information exchange between systems--Local
44		and metropolitan area networks--Common specifications Part 3: Media
45		Access Control (MAC) Bridges--Amendment 2--Rapid Reconfiguration
46		[Amendment to IEEE Std 802.1D, 1998 Edition (ISO/IEC 15802-3:1998)
47		and IEEE Std 802.1t-2001]
48		
49		IEEE 802.1e, 1994 Edition, IEEE Standard for Information technology--
50		Telecommunications and information exchange between systems--IEEE
51		standard for local and metropolitan area networks--Common
52		specifications--Part 4: System Load Protocol
53		
54		IEEE 802.1g, 1998 Edition, Information technology--Telecommunications
55		and information exchange between systems--IEEE standard for local and
56		metropolitan area networks--Common specifications--Part 5: Remote



1		Media Access Control (MAC) bridging
2		
3		IEEE 802.1q-1998, IEEE standard for local and metropolitan area
4		networks: Virtual Bridged Local Area Networks
5		
6		P802.1s/D13, Draft IEEE Standard for Local and Metropolitan Area
7		Networks--Amendment 3 to IEEE 802.1q Virtual Bridged Local Area
8		Networks: Multiple Spanning Trees
9		
10		IEEE 802.1u-2001, (Amendment to IEEE Std 802.1q, 1998 Edition) IEEE
11		Standard for Local and metropolitan area networks--Virtual Bridged Local
12		Area Networks--Amendment 1: Technical and editorial corrections
13		
14		IEEE 802.1v-2001, (Amendment to IEEE Std 802.1q, 1998 Edition) IEEE
15		Standards Amendment to IEEE 802.1q: IEEE Standards for Local and
16		Metropolitan Area Networks: Virtual Bridged Local Area Networks--
17		Amendment 2: VLAN Classification by Protocol and Port
18		
19		IEEE 802.1x2001 IEEE Standards for Local and Metropolitan Area
20		Networks: Port-Based Network Access Control
21		
22	IEEE	CSMA/CD Access Method (802.3)
23		
24		IEEE 802.3-2002® IEEE Standard for Information technology--
25		Telecommunications and information exchange between systems-Local
26		and metropolitan area networks--Specific requirements -Part 3: Carrier
27		Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD) Access
28		Method and Physical Layer Specifications. Incorporates the IEEE
29		802.3z Standard for 1000BASE-X Gigabit Ethernet over fiber optic
30		cabling and the IEEE 802.3ab Standard for 1000BASE-T Gigabit
31		Ethernet over copper UTP cabling.
32		
33		IEEE 802.3ae-2002 (standard ratified June 2002)
34		Supplement to IEEE 802.3 CSMA/CD Access Method & Physical Layer
35		Specifications - Media Access Control (MAC) Parameters, Physical
36		Layer, and Management Parameters for 10Gb/s Operation
37		
38		IEEE 802.3at Amendment: Data Terminal Equipment (DTE) Power Via
39		the Media Dependent Interface (MDI) Enhancements (PoE Plus)
40		
41	IEEE	Wireless LANs (802.11)
42		
43		IEEE Std 802.11, 1999 Edition, IEEE Standard for Information
44		Technology - Telecommunications and Information Exchange between
45		Systems - Local and Metropolitan Area Network - Specific Requirements
46		- Part 11: Wireless LAN Medium Access Control (MAC) and Physical
47		Layer (PHY) Specifications
48		
49		IEEE 802.11a-1999, Information technology—Telecommunications and
50		information exchange between systems—Local and metropolitan area
51		networks—Specific requirements—Part 11: Wireless LAN Medium
52		Access Control (MAC) and Physical Layer (PHY) specifications—
53		Amendment 1: High-speed Physical Layer in the 5 GHz band (An errata
54		is available)
55		
56		IEEE 802.11b-1999 Supplement to 802.11-1999, Wireless LAN MAC and



- 1 PHY specifications: Higher speed Physical
2 Layer (PHY) extension in the 2.4 GHz band
3
- 4 IEEE 802.11d-2001, Amendment to IEEE 802.11-1999, (ISO/IEC 8802-
5 11) Information technology--Telecommunications and information
6 exchange between systems--Local and metropolitan area networks--
7 Specific requirements--Part 11: Wireless LAN Medium Access Control
8 (MAC) and Physical Layer (PHY) Specifications: Specification for
9 Operation in Additional Regulatory Domains
10
- 11 IEEE 802.n-2009, Amendment 5 to IEEE 802.11-1999, Enhancements
12 for Higher Throughput
13
- 14 IEEE 802.11ac, Enhancements for very high throughput WLANs
15
- 16 IEEE 802.11ax-2021, High Efficiency WLANs (Wi-Fi 6)
17
- 18 BICSI Building Industry Consulting Service International
19
- 20 Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM) Latest
21 Edition
22
- 23 Network Design Reference Manual (NDRM) Latest Edition
24
- 25 Outside Plant Design Reference Manual (OSPDRM) – Latest Edition
26
- 27 Telecommunications Cabling Installation Manual (TCIM) Latest Edition
28
- 29 AT&T "Outside Plant Engineering Handbook"
30
- 31 SCTE Society of Cable Television Engineers
32
- 33 All materials and equipment shall be UL listed for the intended application.
34
- 35 **1.8 PRE-INSTALLATION SUBMITTALS**
36
- 37 **1.8.1 Manufacturer's Catalog Data:**
38
- 39 Submit five (5) copies of manufacturer's standard descriptive data sheets to the Engineer for
40 review and approval prior to commencing work. Furnish complete data sheets bearing the printed
41 logo or trademark of the manufacturer for each type of product being provided. Mark each copy
42 of the data sheets for the specific product being provided with an identifying mark, arrow, or
43 highlighting. The following items shall be submitted:
44
- 45 1. Conduit and Pull Boxes, Fittings, Related Hardware & Accessories, each type
 - 46 2. Handholes
 - 47 3. Cable Runway, Fittings, Related Hardware & Accessories, each type
 - 48 4. Racks, Related Hardware & Accessories, each type
 - 49 5. Enclosures and Cabinets, each type
 - 50 6. WAP mounts, each type
 - 51 7. Category 6 and 6A horizontal patch panels, each type
 - 52 8. Fiber Optic Patch Panels, each type
 - 53 9. Fiber Optic Cable, each type
 - 54 10. Category 6 UTP Cable, each type
 - 55 11. Category 6A UTP Cable, each type
 - 56 12. Burial grade Category 6 and Category 6A cables



- 1 13. Cable End Connectors, each type
- 2 14. Patch Cables - Copper and Fiber Optic, each type
- 3 15. Patch Cord Organizers and Cable Rings, each type
- 4 16. Wire Management Devices, each type
- 5 17. Communications Outlets (CO), each type
- 6 18. Special Purpose Outlets, each type
- 7 19. Power Surge Protectors
- 8 20. Uninterruptible Power Supplies (UPS), each type
- 9 21. Grounding Busbars and Lugs, each type
- 10 22. Firestopping Systems, each type
- 11 23. Labeling Products, each type
- 12 24. All other materials and equipment indicated to be furnished under this section, whether
- 13 specifically listed here or not.

15 1.8.2 Pre-Installation Drawings:

17 As part of the Structured Cabling System installation, the Contractor shall provide detailed
 18 documentation to facilitate system administration, maintenance, and future moves, adds and
 19 changes. Drawings shall be provided which incorporate all information in the Contract Drawings,
 20 and which fully document any and all Engineer approved changes in materials and methods
 21 made by the Contractor. Drawings are not required if no changes to the design are made by the
 22 Contractor. Changes to the design shall not be made without the prior written approval of the
 23 Engineer. Drawings shall provide the same level of detail as the bid documents. *Electronic files*
 24 *of the Engineer's AutoCAD drawings will not be provided to the Contractor.*

26 Drawings shall be prepared using AutoCAD Release 14 and shall be furnished in hard-copy
 27 format and on industry standard CD or ZIP drive media.

29 Submit five (5) copies of pre-installation drawings to the Engineer for review and approval prior to
 30 commencing work.

32 1.9 CONTRACTOR'S RECORD DOCUMENTS

34 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall maintain a full set of contract documents at the
 35 job site at all times, consisting of specifications, drawings, addenda, pre-installation submittals,
 36 change orders, and change directives. The record documents shall be updated by the
 37 Contractor, in red pen and on a daily basis, to show the following:

- 39 1. Final location of all Communications Outlets, Wireless Access Points and security cameras.
- 40 2. Final conduit routing.
- 41 3. Location of all buried utilities encountered during the course of work on this project.
- 42 4. Final location of all handholes, pull boxes, and access doors.
- 43 5. Any changes to the work authorized by the Owner/Engineer.
- 44 6. Any other pertinent information that may be of value to the Owner in operating and
- 45 maintaining the system.

47 The Contractor's record documents shall be available for viewing by the Engineer or the Owner at
 48 the site at any time and shall be presented and reviewed by the Contractor at each construction
 49 progress meeting. The record documents shall be clearly marked "Record Set", shall be kept in a
 50 protected location, and shall not be used for general construction purposes. The record
 51 documents shall be provided to the Engineer at the close of the project.

53 The Engineer will provide a full set of Adobe Acrobat *.PDF format drawings to the Contractor.
 54 The Contractor shall be required to annotate (redline) the Adobe Acrobat *.PDF format drawings
 55 using Adobe Acrobat to reflect all changes recorded in the field as required by the paragraph
 56 "CONTRACTOR'S RECORD DOCUMENTS". The Contractor shall provide a copy of the Adobe



1 Acrobat *.PDF files on CD with each set of O&M Manuals and shall
 2 provide an additional copy on CD to the Engineer. The Contractor shall also provide 11"x17"
 3 laser prints of Adobe Acrobat *.PDF drawings in each O&M Manual.
 4
 5

6 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

8 **2.1 GENERAL**

9
 10 All materials, equipment, and devices shall be new and unused, of current manufacture and of
 11 the highest grade, free from defects.
 12

13 All products shall be the manufacturer and model or part number specified. Where a model or
 14 part number is indicated in error for any reason, the Contractor shall verify the intent of the
 15 Engineer prior to providing a proposal and shall provide the product intended by the Engineer.
 16 Where a manufacturer has updated or improved a product subsequent to issuance of the bid
 17 documents by the Engineer, the Contractor shall provide the updated or improved product at no
 18 additional cost to the Owner
 19

20 Provide new equipment and materials only. Each component shall be the most recent model
 21 number, revision, or update offered by the manufacturer at the time of purchase by the
 22 Contractor. Newly manufactured containing used or rebuilt parts, remanufactured, rebuilt,
 23 reconditioned, used, shopworn, demonstrator or prototype equipment is not acceptable and will
 24 be rejected. Each major component of telephone and data systems equipment provided under
 25 this contract shall include a certification from the manufacturer stating that the equipment is new
 26 and referencing the serial number of the delivered equipment. The Contractor shall track the
 27 placement of each major component in the field and shall provide the Owner a list identifying
 28 each component by manufacturer, model number, serial number, and installed location (example
 29 rack number and rack position).
 30

31 All materials, equipment and devices shall meet the requirements of UL where UL standards are
 32 established for those items, and the requirements of NFPA 70.
 33

34 All like items of material or equipment shall be the same product of the same manufacturer,
 35 model number and production series.
 36

37 All materials and equipment shall be a standard catalogued product of a manufacturer regularly
 38 engaged in the manufacture of similar products.
 39

40 **2.2 PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS**

41 See drawings for all product requirements not indicated in these specifications. The Structured
 42 Cabling Contractor shall be responsible for providing and installing all components indicated in
 43 these specifications and on the drawings, unless specifically indicated to be provided by others.
 44 To insure a uniform basis for bidding, and to standardize the Owner's facilities, base all bids on
 45 the particular systems, equipment and materials specified, all of which are based on established
 46 School District standards.
 47
 48

49 **Structured Cabling System:**

50
 51 Provide all system components as indicated the drawings. To ensure a uniform basis for bidding,
 52 and to standardize the Owner's facilities, base all bids on the particular systems, equipment and
 53 materials specified. Provide a system of data cabling as indicated on the drawings, to include
 54 wiring for Wireless Access Points, the security camera system and network interfaces to the
 55 Access Control System System and other systems as indicated on the drawings.



1
2
3 **2.2.1 Data Systems:**
4

5 See drawings for data cabling system specifications and equipment mounting requirements.
6

7 Provide a system of data cabling as indicated on the drawings, to include cabling for Wireless
8 Access Points, security camera systems and network interfaces to other systems as indicated on
9 the drawings.

10 Data equipment shall be Owner Furnished Contractor Installed (OFCI) as indicated on the
11 drawings, unless specifically indicated otherwise.
12

13
14 **2.2.2 Wireless Access Points:**
15

16 The Contractor shall install new WAPs furnished by the Owner at the approximate WAP locations
17 indicated on the drawings and the final WAP locations selected by the Owner. WAPs shall
18 be Owner Furnished Contractor Installed (OFCI) as indicated on the drawings. WAP mounts shall
19 be Contractor Furnished Contractor Installed (CFCI).
20

21 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall provide two new Category 6A cables to each
22 new WAP location in support of Owner furnished equipment. Direct terminate and test, coil slack
23 in associated mounting box.
24

25 **2.2.3 Telephone System:**
26

27 See drawings for VOIP cabling system specifications.
28

29 The Owner will provide the VOIP telephone system and all handsets. The contractor shall work
30 with the Owner to install related patch cords.
31

32
33 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**
34

35 **3.1 GENERAL**
36

37 The installation shall be in strict accordance with all applicable codes and standards, the
38 respective manufacturer's written recommendations, and the contract drawings and these
39 specifications.
40

41 Workmanship shall be of the highest grade in accordance with the best modern practice and the
42 highest standards of the telecommunications industry.
43

44 The installed system shall be neat, clean, and well organized in appearance. Provide working
45 clearances for normal system operation, reconfiguration and repair.
46

47 The completed installation shall meet with the approval of the Owner's Project Manager and the
48 Engineer.
49

50 The General Contractor and the Structured Cabling System Contractor shall share full
51 responsibility for protecting all communications outlets, the CER and CC, and all structured
52 cabling system components from dust and debris during construction and until final completion of
53 the project. All system components that, in the sole judgment of the Engineer, are exposed to
54 excessive accumulation of construction dust/debris at any stage of the project shall be removed
55 and replaced with new components at no additional cost to the Owner. Lay-in ceiling grids in the
56 CER and CC shall be installed after conduits and cable trays and cable runways have been



1 installed to allow the ceiling installer to trim around conduits. Lay-in
2 ceiling tiles in these areas should follow completion of cable dressing into racks.

3
4 The SCSC shall not install racks, wire managers, patch panels, or protector blocks or dress out
5 and terminate cables until paint, backboards and floors in the CC is completely finished and
6 those rooms are completely isolated from dust infiltration with plastic sheeting and duct tape.

7
8 All COs jacks shall be protected by bagging and sealing dust tight at all times after connectivity
9 devices are installed.

10
11 Lay-in ceiling grids in the CER and CC shall be installed after conduits and cable trays and cable
12 runways have been installed to allow the ceiling installer to trim around conduits. Lay-in ceiling
13 tiles in these areas should follow completion of cable dressing into racks.

14
15 **3.1.1 Delivery:**

16
17 Protect materials and equipment from physical or environmental damage during shipping, storage
18 and installation. Equipment and materials shall be received at the site in new condition in original
19 factory sealed cartons and shall be maintained in new condition throughout the installation
20 process. Damaged or deteriorated equipment and materials will not be acceptable. The
21 Contractor shall be responsible for receiving and storing of all equipment and materials and shall
22 be responsible for the safety and condition of all materials and equipment, whether stored or
23 installed, until Final Acceptance by the Engineer and the Owner.

24
25 **3.1.2 Data and Wireless Equipment:**

26
27 See drawings for data cabling system specifications. Provide a system of data cabling as
28 indicated on the drawings, to include wiring for Wireless Access Points, security camera systems
29 and network interfaces to other systems as indicated on the drawings.

30
31 Data equipment and wireless LAN equipment shall be Owner Furnished Contractor Installed
32 (OFICI) as indicated on the drawings, unless specifically indicated otherwise.

33
34 Wireless Access Points:

35
36 The Contractor shall install new WAPs furnished by the Owner at WAP locations indicated on the
37 drawings and selected by the Owner. WAPs shall be Owner Furnished Contractor Installed
38 (OFICI) as indicated on the drawings. WAP mounts shall be Contractor Furnished Contractor
39 Installed (CFCI).

40
41 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall provide two new Category 6A cables to each
42 new and WAP location in support of Owner furnished WAP equipment. Direct terminate and test,
43 coil slack in associated mounting box.

44
45 Power Cords: The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall route Owner furnished power
46 cords connecting all Owner Furnished data equipment to rack power strips or uninterruptible
47 power supplies as indicated on the drawings. Cords shall route from equipment, up or down on
48 racks attached to standoff brackets as indicated on drawings, and over to rack power strips or
49 UPS connections. Properly routed and secure at 12 inches on center, with only one cord allowed
50 per connection, and neatly coiling excess cord length and securing coil with black velcro.

51
52 Coordinate all related work with the Owner's Project Manager and District IT staff.

53
54 **3.1.3 Telephone System:**



1 The Owner will provide a VOIP based telephone system with handsets
2 (OFOI).
3

4 Provide and install patch cords from VOIP connections to horizontal wiring connections as
5 specified herein and as indicated on the drawings.
6

7 Coordinate all work with the Owner and the telephone service provider.
8

9 The contractor shall identify all special circuits requiring direct connection to incoming services,
10 shall connect those circuits to the horizontal cabling for each special circuit and shall validate the
11 proper operation of all such services and devices. Coordinate all related work with the telephone
12 service provider. Provide all related work whether or not specifically indicated on the drawings.
13

14 The contractor shall take special note of the requirements for this section and shall exercise due
15 diligence in assuring that the work is completed in a timely manner and that all voice systems are
16 fully functional upon occupancy of the facility by the Owner.
17

18 3.1.4 Conduit Installation: 19

20 All conduit shall be installed by a licensed electrical contractor using tradesmen who are skilled
21 and experienced in the types of conduit installations indicated in the bid documents.
22

23 All backbone cabling shall be run continuously in conduit.
24

25 The following horizontal cabling, along with any other cabling so indicated on the drawings shall
26 be run continuously in conduit:
27

[See Allstate Construction's bid package](#)

- 28 1. All Category 6 for special circuits shall be run continuously in conduit.
- 29 2. All Category 6 and 6A cabling run in exposed structure spaces without ceilings limited to
30 mechanical equipment rooms, electrical equipment rooms and storage rooms with no
31 ceilings shall be installed continuously in conduits extended to accessible lay-in ceiling
32 areas at each end.
- 33 3. All Category 6 and 6A cabling run above hard ceilings shall be installed continuously in
34 conduits extended to accessible lay-in ceiling areas at each end.
- 35 4. Where specifically indicated elsewhere horizontal cabling shall be installed continuously in
36 conduit.
- 37 5. Run conduit continuous aboveground and underground where indicated on the drawings to
38 avoid exposed conduit in finished areas with exposed roof structure and where no exposed
39 conduit is allowed.
- 40 6. Exposed cabling is not allowed in any visible space with the exception of communications
41 spaces and the Data Center.
42

43 SEE DRAWINGS FOR SPECIFIC AREAS OF THE BUILDING WITH EXPOSED CEILING
44 STRUCTURE BUT WHERE EXPOSED CONDUIT OR CABLING IS PROHIBITED AND
45 UNDERGROUND CONDUIT AND BURIAL GRADE HORIZONTAL CABLE IS REQUIRED. THE
46 CM SHALL COORDINATE ALL SUCH WORK CLOSELY WITH THE ELECTRICAL
47 CONTRACTOR AND THE STRUCTURED CABLING SYSTEM CONTRACTOR TO ENSURE
48 THAT NO CABLE OR CONDUIT IS RUN EXPOSED IN THESE AREAS.
49

50 Do not pull cables in conduits until plastic insulating bushings have been installed. Cables
51 installed in conduits without plastic insulating bushings shall be removed and replaced with new
52 cables.
53

54 The same requirements shall apply to Category 6A cable provided to serve Wireless Access
55 Points.
56



1 Rack conduits and run together wherever possible.

2
3 Conduit shall be installed with top-grade workmanship, using factory bends or field bends made
4 with the proper tools. Kinked, dented or otherwise improperly constructed bends will not be
5 accepted. All bends shall have a minimum radius of six times the internal conduit diameter.

6
7 All conduit shall be routed parallel and perpendicular to building lines, up high and over piping,
8 ductwork, conduit and other utilities. Conduit in exposed locations shall be run as high as
9 possible, hard against the underside of wall, floor, roof or walkway structures at all times, secured
10 with heavy duty galvanized two-hole supports, and otherwise installed to prevent damage from
11 pulling, hanging, etc.

12
13 Install plastic insulating bushings on the ends of all conduits prior to installing cables. Provide
14 conduit end fitting with threaded end and threaded plastic insulating bushing on all EMT conduit
15 ends. Provide UL listed threaded malleable iron insulated grounding bushing on all IMC or RMC
16 conduit ends – add on grounding clamps will not be accepted. Cables installed without plastic
17 insulated bushings or insulated grounding bushings in place shall be removed, the proper
18 bushings installed, then the cables reinstalled, terminated and tested – no exceptions will be
19 made to these requirements.

20
21 Firestop all conduit penetrations of all floors and all conduit penetrations of all walls that extend to
22 the underside of the floor or roof deck above. Accomplish firestopping using UL classified
23 systems with fire rating equal to or greater than the fire rating of the floor or wall assembly
24 penetrated. Firestop systems shall be 3M, Nelson or Engineer approved equal. Install in strict
25 accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions and the conditions of the UL approval for
26 each firestop system used.

27
28 All conduit penetrations of walls that do not extend to the underside of the roof deck above shall
29 be sealed smoketight and acoustically with smoke-sound caulking UL listed for the purpose such
30 as USG Firecode, STI Smoke 'N' Sound, or Hilti CP 506.

31
32 All buried conduit shall be Schedule 80 electrical grade PVC conduit. All PVC conduit joints shall
33 be cleaned and glued for a watertight connection. Terminate ends of PVC conduit at closets and
34 handholes with end bells.

35
36 Seal all underground conduits at building entry points following cable installation to prevent the
37 entry of water into buildings, and to prevent the entry of water or debris into the conduits from the
38 building side. Sealant shall be POLYWATER FST-250 and shall be installed using factory
39 caulking tube, mixing nozzle, damming strips (all included in FST-250KIT1) package.

40
41 Buried warning and identification tape: Provide metallic detection tape manufactured specifically
42 for warning and identification of buried utilities. Install tape directly above each buried conduit at
43 depth of 10 to 12 inches below grade for entire length of conduit. Tape shall be detectable by any
44 standard Non-Ferric Metal Detector. Provide tape in rolls, 2 inches minimum width, color orange,
45 with warning and identification imprinted in bold black letters continuously and repeatedly over
46 entire tape length. Warning and identification shall read "CAUTION BURIED
47 COMMUNICATIONS LINE BELOW". Use permanent code and letter coloring unaffected by
48 moisture and other substances contained in backfill material.

49
50 Underground Conduit Validation:

51
52 Following installation of underground conduits, perform the following operation for each conduit:

53
54 Clean, lubricate and validate each installed conduit for serviceability by running a full size rubber
55 duct swab through the conduit from end to end. Conduits that are obstructed may be cleaned
56 using a wire brush mandrel, then revalidated with the full size rubber duct swab. Conduits that do



1 not allow passage of the full size rubber duct swab shall be replaced.

2
3 Pull Tapes: As backbone cabling runs are installed, provide a continuous marked pull tape
4 (Carlton TL3821800 lb. tensile strength) for the full length of the end-to-end cable run with 10 feet
5 of slack at each end pulled in alongside cabling. Bundle slack neatly at each end and tie off to
6 conduit support strut at each end. Provide continuous factory uncut lengths of pull tape from end-
7 to-end - under no circumstances shall pull partial length section of pull tape be tied together.

8
9 Spare Conduits: For conduits that are indicated as spare, install a continuous marked pull tape
10 (Carlton TL382 1800 lb. tensile strength) for the full length of the end-to-end conduit run with 10
11 feet of slack at each end, tie each end of the tape to a blank duct plug with rope tie tab, push
12 slack tape back into conduit, and install a duct plug in each conduit end for a watertight seal.

14 3.1.6 Cabling Installation:

15 All backbone cabling shall be run continuously in conduit.

16
17 The following horizontal cabling, along with any other cabling so indicated on the drawings shall
18 be run continuously in conduit:

[See Allstate Construction's bid package](#)

- 19 1. All Category 6 for special circuits shall be run continuously in conduit.
- 20 2. All Category 6 and 6A cabling run in exposed structure spaces without ceilings limited to
21 mechanical equipment rooms, electrical equipment rooms and storage rooms with no
22 ceilings shall be installed continuously in conduits extended to accessible lay-in ceiling
23 areas at each end.
- 24 3. All Category 6 and 6A cabling run above hard ceilings shall be installed continuously in
25 conduits extended to accessible lay-in ceiling areas at each end.
- 26 4. Where specifically indicated elsewhere horizontal cabling shall be installed continuously in
27 conduit.
- 28 5. Run conduit continuous aboveground and underground where indicated on the drawings to
29 avoid exposed conduit in finished areas with exposed roof structure and where no exposed
30 conduit is allowed.
- 31 6. Exposed cabling is not allowed in any visible space with the exception of communications
32 spaces and the Data Center.

33
34
35 SEE DRAWINGS FOR SPECIFIC AREAS OF THE BUILDING WITH EXPOSED CEILING
36 STRUCTURE BUT WHERE EXPOSED CONDUIT OR CABLING IS PROHIBITED AND
37 UNDERGROUND CONDUIT AND BURIAL GRADE HORIZONTAL CABLE IS REQUIRED. THE
38 CM SHALL COORDINATE ALL SUCH WORK CLOSELY WITH THE ELECTRICAL
39 CONTRACTOR AND THE STRUCTURED CABLING SYSTEM CONTRACTOR TO ENSURE
40 THAT NO CABLE OR CONDUIT IS RUN EXPOSED IN THESE AREAS.

41
42 Do not pull cables in conduits until plastic insulating bushings have been installed. Cables
43 installed in conduits without plastic insulating bushings shall be removed and replaced with new
44 cables.

45
46 Cabling free-routed above ceiling: Category 6 and Category 6A cabling allowed to be free-routed
47 shall be free-routed only where concealed above lay-in ceilings and only for those applications
48 not identified to run continuously in conduit. Install horizontal cabling shown to be free-routed
49 parallel and perpendicular to building lines, up high and over piping, ductwork, conduit and other
50 utilities, and in protected locations. All cabling shall be neatly and symmetrically bundled with a
51 maximum individual bundle size of 24 four pair Category 6 cables and a maximum individual
52 bundle size of 24 four pair Category 6A cables – no exceptions. Category 6 and Category 6A
53 cables shall always be run in separate bundles. Wrap each Category 6 bundle with plenum rated
54 black velcro wraps above ceilings and each Category 6A bundle with plenum rated cranberry
55 velcro wraps above ceilings at a minimum of four feet on center, properly supported, and
56



1 otherwise installed as indicated on the drawings. Support all free-
 2 routed horizontal cabling bundles individually with Category 5 J-hooks (Erico "CABLCAT") at a
 3 minimum of four feet on center. Attach J-hooks to building structural members only using factory
 4 support system components. Secure cables bundles within J-hooks with factory contact free
 5 containment cable ties. Do not attach J-hooks to ceiling grids, ceiling supports, piping, ductwork,
 6 conduit or anything other than building structural members unless specifically approved by the
 7 Engineer. Do not support free-routed horizontal cabling by running over or directly attaching to
 8 building structural members, piping, ductwork, conduit or any other utility.
 9

10 Conduit sleeves for free-routed horizontal CAT 6 and CAT 6A cabling: Final routing paths for free-
 11 routed horizontal cabling shall be determined by the contractor in the field. For this reason conduit
 12 sleeves are not indicated on the drawings. The contractor shall provide EMT conduit sleeves in
 13 the quantities and locations required to suit the contractor selected horizontal cable routing and
 14 as required for a complete installation, regardless of whether those sleeves are indicated on the
 15 drawings or not, and at no additional cost to the Owner. At locations where horizontal cabling
 16 runs through mechanical or electrical equipment rooms, the riser room, or storage rooms with
 17 exposed structure ceiling, all such cabling shall be run in continuous conduit sleeves extending to
 18 the nearest accessible lay-in ceiling at both ends. In addition, the contractor shall provide conduit
 19 sleeves traversing inaccessible (hard) ceiling or soffit areas and extending to the nearest
 20 accessible lay-in ceiling at both ends for cable pass-thru - provide access panels in inaccessible
 21 ceilings as required to install sleeves. Sleeves shall be sized for maximum 30 percent cable fill
 22 and shall be constructed and provided with pull boxes and access doors per the general
 23 aboveground conduit notes on the drawings. General contractor paint exposed conduit sleeves in
 24 all finished/occupied spaces with no ceilings to match adjacent surfaces.
 25

26 Provide wire management devices on backboards and racks as indicated and as required to
 27 facilitate organized routing of cables and patch cords. Bundle cables together behind racks and
 28 fan out to points of termination. The finished installation shall meet the approval of the Engineer
 29 for overall quality and neatness of appearance.
 30

31 The Contractor, in providing a bid for the system in accordance with the contract documents,
 32 agrees to install all cabling in the conduit and wireway paths indicated in the contract documents,
 33 or to provide larger conduit and wireway paths as he deems necessary, at no additional cost to
 34 the Owner. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for any and all damage to cabling that may
 35 occur during the installation and shall replace any damaged cabling with new cabling of the type
 36 specified for the application.
 37

38 Firestop all cable penetrations of all floors and all cable penetrations of all walls that extend to the
 39 underside of the floor or roof deck above. Accomplish firestopping using UL classified systems
 40 with fire rating equal to or greater than the fire rating of the floor or wall assembly penetrated.
 41 Firestop systems shall be 3M, Nelson or Engineer approved equal. Install in strict accordance
 42 with the manufacturer's printed instructions and the conditions of the UL approval for each
 43 firestop system used.
 44

45 All cable penetrations of walls that do not extend to the underside of the roof deck above shall be
 46 sealed smoketight and acoustically with smoke-sound caulking UL listed for the purpose such as
 47 USG Firecode, STI Smoke 'N' Sound, or Hilti CP.
 48

49 **3.1.7 Identification and Labeling:**

50
 51 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall purchase and use professional labeling software
 52 and labeling products to generate all labels for this project, with the exception of engraved plastic
 53 tags and laminated paper tags, which shall be fabricated as indicated on the drawings, and
 54 elsewhere as indicated below. The Contractor shall determine the proper labeling product for
 55 each application and include a list of each product and application with the Pre-Installation
 56 Submittals.



1 All labels shall be produced using a laser printer and shall be clear and easily readable. Minimum
 2 text size shall be 12 point. Text font shall be ARIAL or ARIAL NARROW. Handwritten labels are
 3 not acceptable.
 4

5
 6 Label each horizontal cable and backbone cable using self-adhesive self-laminating polyester
 7 wrap-around labels with laser printed text as follows:
 8

9 Label each Horizontal Category 6 and Category 6A cable at each end. Label text shall be based
 10 on the nomenclature indicated on the drawings.
 11

12 Label each Fiber Optic Backbone at each end. Label text shall be based on the nomenclature
 13 indicated on the drawings.
 14

15 Label each Communications Outlet using non-adhesive card labels with laser printed text. Insert
 16 labels under outlet manufacturer's plastic label covers centered and straight. Label text shall be
 17 based on the Communication Outlet Identification Nomenclature and labeling details indicated on
 18 the drawings.
 19

20 Label each Category 6 and Category 6A Horizontal Patch Panel port using non-adhesive labels
 21 with laser printed text inserted into the plastic covered label holders supplied by the patch panel
 22 manufacturer centered and straight. Label text for each patch panel port shall be based on the
 23 Horizontal Patch Panel Labeling Nomenclature and labeling details indicated on the drawings.
 24

25 Label each Backbone Fiber Optic Cable Drawer with 1" high bold text printed on clear self-
 26 adhesive paper and attached to the reverse side of drawer manufacturer's paper label. Label text
 27 shall be based on the 'Fiber Optic Backbone Cable Nomenclature' indicated on the drawings to
 28 indicate source (CER) and each destination (respective CC).
 29

30 Label each Communications Panel, Rack, Enclosure/Cabinet and other devices as indicated on
 31 the drawings.
 32

33 Label each Main Conduit at each end with 1/2" high bold text printed on heavy stock paper and
 34 secured to conduit with clear self-adhesive sheets covering the label and extending out beyond
 35 the label 1" all around for adhesion to the conduit. Label text shall be based on source (CER)
 36 and each destination (respective CC).
 37

38 Provide data sheets describing all proposed labeling products with Pre-installation Submittals.
 39

40 **3.2 CABLE TESTING**

41 **3.2.1 General:**

42
 43
 44 Prior to installation of cabling, visually inspect all cables, cable reels, and shipping cartons to
 45 detect possible cable damage incurred during shipping and transport. Return visibly damages
 46 goods to the supplier and replace with new.
 47

48 If post-manufacture performance data has been supplied by the manufacturer of cables or
 49 connecting hardware, copies of such data are to be kept for inclusion in the Documentation and
 50 made available to the Owner upon request.
 51

52 After cabling installation and labeling is complete, but prior to the installation of patch cords, the
 53 Contractor shall test all cables. *As part of cable test procedures verify all labeling and correct all*
 54 *inaccurate labeling.*
 55

56 The Contractor's Project Manager shall be in responsible charge of all cable testing procedures



1 and shall provide an original signed letter in each project Operation &
 2 Maintenance (O&M) manual certifying that all cables have been tested in compliance with the
 3 contract documents and have met or exceeded the requirements stated therein.

4
 5 Tests shall be performed in strict accordance with the test instrument manufacturer's printed
 6 instructions.

7
 8 One hundred percent of all cables shall be tested.

9
 10 Technicians performing testing shall be thoroughly trained in the use of the test instruments
 11 employed. Factory certification of technicians is mandatory. The Contractor shall provide
 12 evidence of training and copies of certificates to the Engineer.

13
 14 The Contractor is responsible for supplying all test equipment and related materials required to
 15 test the entire Structured Cabling System. Test instruments shall be calibrated and traceable to
 16 the National Institute of Standards (NIST). Test instruments shall have been recently calibrated.
 17 The Contractor shall provide evidence of test instrument calibration if requested by the Engineer.

18
 19 The requirement for this project is full compliance/zero tolerance. Cables that do not comply with
 20 the stated standards shall be removed and replaced with new. Partial use of cables by claiming
 21 good pairs or strands and abandoning others is not allowable. Defective cables shall be removed
 22 and replaced with new.

23
 24 Notify the Owner in writing not less than five days prior to commencing cable testing. The Owner
 25 may elect to be present for and witness cable testing.

26
 27 The Contractor shall be required to retest installed cables in the Owner's presence to verify the
 28 Contractor's test documentation. The percentage of cables to be retested shall be determined by
 29 the Owner based on compliance of the installation with the contract documents, quality of
 30 workmanship, and results of initial cable tests. Retesting shall be performed as required until all
 31 cables, in the judgment of the Owner, comply with the requirements of the contract documents.

32 33 **3.2.2 Cable Test Results:**

34
 35 All cable test results shall be provided as part of the project Installation and Maintenance (O&M)
 36 Manuals.

37 38 **3.2.3 Category 6 UTP Cable Testing:**

39
 40 Testers:

41
 42 Each Category 6 cable shall be tested with Fluke Networks DSP-4300 Digital Cable Analyzers
 43 utilizing Fluke Networks DSP-LIA101 Universal Permanent Link Interface Adapters and the
 44 appropriate Personality Modules. In addition, each tester shall be calibrated prior to commencing
 45 testing for this project using a Fluke Networks DSP-PLCAL Universal Permanent Link Calibration
 46 Kit and Fluke Networks 'LinkWare' software.

47
 48 Prior to testing, electronically update tester software using the tester manufacturer's 'LinkWare'
 49 software update utility. Update to the software version current at time tests are performed.
 50 Under no circumstances shall a tester with outdated software be used.

51
 52 General:

53
 54 Testing shall be of the Permanent Link. However, the Structured Cabling System Contractor and
 55 the Structured Cabling System Manufacturer shall warrant performance based on Channel
 56 performance and provide shall patch cords that meet Channel performance requirements.



1 All test results shall be maintained in the native file format of the tester manufacturer's 'LinkWare'
 2 software. Under no circumstances shall be data be modified by other software, edited in any
 3 manner, or exported to a database, spreadsheet, work processor program or any other type of
 4 program that would allow access to the data for modification. Hardcopy printouts of test reports
 5 in Summary Format shall be generated directly from the 'LinkWare' software. Detailed test
 6 results in Text Format shall be provided to the Owner in native 'LinkWare' data format on a CD.
 7 In addition, detailed test results in Text Format shall be provided to the Owner in Adobe Acrobat
 8 *.PDF format on a CD. CDs shall be included in the project Operation and Maintenance (O&M)
 9 manuals.

10
 11 Record all test conditions and setup parameters and include in a typed discussion to be provided
 12 with test documentation.
 13

14
 15 *Verify correct labeling of patch panels and communications outlets prior to and during testing. If*
 16 *any label is found to be in error, correct before proceeding with testing. Circuit Identification*
 17 *(cable I.D.) in cable test reports shall be exactly the same as the outlet labeling based on the*
 18 *nomenclature indicated on the drawings.*
 19

20 Testing:

21
 22 After installation, termination and labeling of the Category 6 UTP cable is complete and approved
 23 by the Structured Cabling System Contractor's Project Manager, test each cable in accordance
 24 with all applicable TIA/EIA standards for UTP Category 6, and complete all operations required
 25 for a Belden Certified Cabling System and 25 year Belden System Warranty.
 26

27 Prior to testing, electronically update tester software using the tester manufacturer's 'LinkWare'
 28 software update utility. Update to the software version current at time tests are performed.
 29 Under no circumstances shall a tester with outdated software be used.
 30

31 Test each cable to verify compliance with TIA/EIA specifications for Category 6 UTP, Permanent
 32 Link configuration, Level III accuracy, with no allowable deviation. Test at the full range of
 33 frequencies indicated by TIA/EIA up to and including 250 MHz.
 34

35 Test using the tester manufacturer's standard TIA/EIA Category 6 Autotest. Under no
 36 circumstances shall a Custom Cable Autotest designed by the tester manufacturer specifically for
 37 a given cable manufacturer or structured cabling system manufacturer be used to test cables. All
 38 tests and testing procedures for this project shall be strictly based on TIA/EIA standards. Enter
 39 the proper Nominal Velocity of Propagation (NVP) for the specific cable(s) installed. Test for the
 40 following parameters:
 41

- 42 1. Wire Map – verify no shorts, opens, miswires, split, reversed or crossed pairs, and end-
 43 to-end connectivity is achieved.
- 44 2. Cable Length
- 45 3. Insertion Loss (attenuation)
- 46 4. NEXT Loss
- 47 5. PSNEXT Loss
- 48 6. ELFEXT Loss
- 49 7. PSELFEXT Loss
- 50 8. Return Loss
- 51 9. ACR
- 52 10. PSACR
- 53 11. Propagation Delay
- 54 12. Delay Skew

55
 56 Documentation:



1
2 Test documentation for Category 6 and Category 6A cabling shall include the following:
3

- 4 1. An introductory discussion documenting each test instrument used, the Autotest routine
5 used on each test instrument, qualifications of operators, test conditions, setup
6 parameters, and any other pertinent information.
7
- 8 2. A summary hardcopy printout for all cables using the tester manufacturer's standard
9 'Linkware' software to produce an "AutoTest Summary" report. The summary report shall
10 include Project Name, Circuit I.D., Result (pass or fail) and the cable length. The report
11 shall be printed directly out of the 'Linkware' program in native format and in *.PDF format
12 – under no circumstances shall the data be exported to any other type of program at any
13 time.
14
- 15 3. A full-page text only detailed test result for each cable using the tester manufacturer's
16 standard 'Linkware' software to produce an "AutoTest Report". Each report shall be
17 printed directly out of the 'Linkware' program in native format and in *.PDF format - under
18 no circumstances shall the data be exported to any other type of program at any time.
19 Each report shall include the following components:

- 20
21 - Tester manufacturer, model, serial number, hardware version, and software version
22 - Project Name
23 - Operator Name
24 - Cable manufacturer, cable part number/type and NVP
25 - Circuit I.D.
26 - Autotest specification used (must be standard TIA Category 6 autotest)
27 - Identification of the tester interface used
28 - Overall pass/fail indication
29 - Date of Test
30 - Wire Map
31 - Cable Length in feet
32 - Insertion Loss (attenuation)
33 - NEXT Loss*
34 - PSNEXT Loss*
35 - ELFEXT Loss*
36 - PSELFEXT Loss*
37 - Return Loss*
38 - ACR*
39 - PSACR*
40 - Propagation Delay
41 - Delay Skew

42
43 * Measure from both ends of each cable
44

- 45 4. A PASS or FAIL result for each parameter shall be determined by comparing the
46 measured values with the specified test limits for that parameter. The test result for each
47 parameter shall be marked with an asterisk (*) when the result is closer to the test limit
48 than the accuracy of the field tester. The field tester manufacturer shall provide
49 documentation as an aid to interpret results marked with asterisks.
50

51
52 Each individual test that fails the relevant performance specifications shall be marked as
53 FAIL or FAIL*. Any FAIL or FAIL* result yields a FAIL rating for the link-under-test. In
54 order to achieve an overall PASS rating, the results for each individual test parameter
55 must yield a PASS or PASS* result.
56

- 57 5. Cable identities (Circuit IDs) shall be based on the labeling nomenclature described on



1 the drawings.

2
3 6. Transfer of Software to Owner: Provide tester manufacturer's 'LinkWare' software, latest
4 version, to the Owner for the Owner's use in viewing and managing test results.

5
6 7. Provide all Category 6 cable test documentation in the project O&M Manuals.

7
8 Category 6 Cable Performance Criteria:

9
10 If the test results for a given cable or cables, in the sole judgment of the Engineer, fail to confirm
11 acceptable performance, the Contractor shall reconnectorize or replace with new the affected
12 cables as required to achieve specified performance levels as demonstrated by retesting.

13
14 Category 6A UTP Cable Testing:

15
16 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall provide a Category 6A tester and shall test all
17 Category 6A cabling for the Permanent Link in strict accordance with TIA standards for Category
18 6A testing and characterized to 500 MHz. The contractor shall provide a full test report equivalent
19 in scope and detail to the report required above for Category 6 cabling.

20
21 The final test report shall indicate that each Category 6A cable achieved a PASS rating without
22 exception.

23
24 If the test results for any cables, in the sole judgment of the Engineer, fail to confirm acceptable
25 performance, the Contractor shall reconnectorize or replace with new the affected cables as
26 required to achieve specified performance levels as demonstrated by retesting.

27
28
29 **3.2.4 Fiber Optic Cable Testing:**

30
31 Fiber Optic Cable Testing General:

32
33 Thoroughly clean and polish all fiber optic connectors, sleeves and test cords prior to testing.
34 Follow all other recommendations of the test instrument manufacturer for cable and instrument
35 preparation.

36
37 Record all test conditions and setup parameters and include in a typed discussion to be provided
38 with test documentation.

39
40 On-the-Reel-Testing:

41
42 Before commencing the installation and with the cable on the reel, test at least one fiber strand on
43 each cable reel to verify that the cable is undamaged. Record and print test results for future
44 reference.

45
46 Post-Installation Testing:

47
48 Singlemode Fiber Optic Cable Testing:

49
50 End Face Testing:

51
52 After installation, termination and labeling of fiber optic cable is complete, first test all fiber end
53 faces using Fluke Networks FI-7000 FiberInspector Pro for automated Pass/Fail certification of
54 fiber optic connector end-faces and graphical indication of problem areas due to contamination,
55 pits, chips, and scratches. The contractor shall save all fiber optic connector end-face views
56 during the certification process for viewing upon request of the Owner until the entire installation



1 is approved by the Owner. All end faces shall PASS certification.

2
3 Performance Testing:

4
5 After installation, termination and labeling of fiber optic cable is complete, test each strand of fiber
6 in accordance with the current edition of TIA-526-7-A to verify that the installed cable meets the
7 performance requirements described below. Prior to performance testing clean all terminated
8 fiber ends and ensure that terminations are properly polished as described in paragraph 'End
9 Face Testing' above. Test in accordance with applicable TIA standards with the additional (and
10 more stringent) requirements following:

11
12 Test using a Fluke Networks DSP-4300 Digital Cable Analyzer in combination with a Fluke
13 Networks DSP-FTA430 Singlemode Fiber Test Adapter. Secondly test using an OTDR in strict
14 accordance with associated TIA standards. Graphical test results showing the entire OTDR trace
15 to include the launch cord and terminations at each end shall be provided.

16
17 Test singlemode fiber at TIA Tier 2 using both a Optical Loss Test Set (OLTS) and a Optical Time
18 Domain Reflectometer (OTDR). Test criteria shall be as required by applicable TIA standards and
19 the following requirements. Cable specifications shall be based on maximum attenuation of 0.40
20 dB/km @ 1310nm and 0.30 dB/km @ 1550 nm. Test as follows:

- 21
22 1. Test two fiber links at the two specified wavelengths simultaneously. Perform bi-directional
23 testing on both strands of the fibers-under-test and save results in one record.
24 2. Measure length for each cable link.
25 3. Measure attenuation for each cable link.
26 4. Utilize tester software to store test results and to generate reports.
27 5. All strands shall PASS certification without exception.

28
29 Test results shall include all TIA test parameters including length and attenuation at each
30 wavelength for each fiber link (terminated strand). Attenuation shall be the worst case result
31 yielded from bi-directional testing. OTDR Trace results for each strand shall also be included in
32 graphical format.

33
34 Each strand of the installed fiber optic cabling, with mated connectors at each end, shall have a
35 total attenuation (in db) less than or equal to the manufacturers' performance specifications for
36 the cable and connectors called for in the contract documents, with the cable attenuation adjusted
37 for the installed length.

38
39 All test results shall be maintained in the native file format of the tester manufacturer's test
40 management software. Under no circumstances shall be data be modified by other software,
41 edited in any manner, or exported to a database, spreadsheet, work processor program or any
42 other type of program that would allow access to the data for modification.

43
44 Detailed test results in Text Format shall be provided to the Owner in native tester management
45 software format on a CD. In addition, detailed test results in Text Format shall be provided to the
46 Owner in Adobe Acrobat *.PDF format on a CD. CDs shall be included in the project Operation
47 and Maintenance (O&M) manuals.

48
49 Insert all fiber optic cable test documentation in the project O&M manuals.

50
51 If the test results for any strand, in the sole judgment of the Engineer, indicate excessive
52 attenuation based on these requirements, the Contractor shall repolish, reconnect, or
53 replace the entire affected cable as required to achieve the specified performance levels for each
54 strand as demonstrated by retesting.

55
56 The Contractor should note that these specifications are more stringent than the TIA criteria in



1 terms of allowable link attenuation and shall plan the installation
2 accordingly.

3 4 **3.3 Patch Cord Installation:**

5
6 Prior to Equipment Verification, the contractor shall install patch cords in a neat and workmanlike
7 manner using the wire management devices indicated on the drawings. The contractor shall work
8 side by side with the Owner's IT staff throughout the entire patch cord installation for purposes of
9 coordination and training.

10
11 Prior to installation of patch cords, the contractor shall account for all patch cords in the presence
12 of the Owner's Project Manager and the Owner's IT staff and shall present to the Project
13 Manager a typed inventory of the patch cords broken down by type and length as scheduled on
14 the drawings. The Owner's Project Manager will verify patch cord types, quantities, and lengths
15 and will sign the inventory indicating that the contractor has delivered patch cords to the job site
16 in accordance with the requirements of the contract documents. The contractor shall provide a
17 copy of the inventory, signed by the Owner's Project Manager, in the O&M Manuals.

18
19 The signature of the Owner's Project Manager does not indicate acceptance of ownership of the
20 patch cords by the Owner. Ownership of patch cords shall be transferred to the Owner at the
21 same time as the project as a whole.

22
23 Following verification of patch cords types, quantities and lengths by the Owner's Project
24 Manager, the contractor shall complete the patch cord installations as follows:

25 26 **3.3.1 Data & VOIP Copper Patch Cords – CER and CCs:**

27
28 Install data patch cords connecting each port of all data equipment from data equipment
29 connections to horizontal patch panels. Horizontal wiring connections to be made active shall be
30 as directed by the Owner's Project Manager and the Owner's IT staff in the field.

31
32 Provide a typed cross-reference list in Microsoft Excel spreadsheet format identifying data
33 equipment ports and corresponding horizontal wiring connections – place hardcopy and CD of
34 spreadsheet in three ring binder and mount binder on the backboard adjacent to the racks.
35 Provide additional hardcopy and CD in O&M Manuals. Email copy of Excel Spreadsheet to the
36 Engineer and the Owner's Project Manager.

37
38 Patch cords shall be neatly routed and bundled with black velcro at 6 inches on center in wire
39 management devices from connection to connection. Patch cord lengths shall be selected by the
40 Contractor from the stock supplied under the project to provide a neat installation in the racks and
41 wire management systems without excess length. Note - Bundle data patch cords together – do
42 not mix data patch cord bundles with voice patch cord bundles or fiber optic patch cord bundles.
43 The entire installation shall require the site approval of the Engineer.

44 45 **3.3.2 Fiber Patch Cords – CER and CCs:**

46
47 Install fiber optic patch cords to connect all data equipment fiber optic ports as directed by the
48 Owner's Project Manager and Owner's IT staff in the field. Patch cords shall be neatly routed and
49 bundled with black velcro at 3 inches on center in wire management devices from connection to
50 connection. Patch cord lengths shall be selected by the Contractor from the stock supplied under
51 the project to provide a neat installation in the racks and wire management systems without
52 excess length. Note - Bundle fiber optic patch cords together – do not mix fiber optic patch cord
53 bundles with data patch cord bundles or voice patch cord bundles. The entire installation shall
54 require the site approval of the Engineer.

55 56 **3.3.3 Workstation Patch Cords**



1
2 The Contractor shall, in coordination with the Owner's Project Manager and Owner's IT staff,
3 install workstation data patch cords in the locations identified by the Owner. In addition, the
4 Contractor shall work side by side with the Telephone System Provider to install telephone line
5 cords as telephone instruments are set.
6

7 **3.4 EQUIPMENT VERIFICATION**

8
9 After installation of patch cords and before System Startup, the Contractor shall assist the Owner
10 to power-up all data equipment and verify proper operation. The Contractor shall coordinate with
11 the Owner to verify all cable interfaces are working and operational with the equipment. The
12 contractor shall make any cabling system changes and additions as necessary and/or provide
13 patch cables as required to complete the installation.
14

15 **3.5 FINAL CHECKOUT**

16
17 After System Startup and before the First Day of operation following System Startup, the
18 Contractor shall perform a Final Checkout of all systems to verify that each is ready for use by
19 Owner personnel. The Contractor shall utilize a Final Checklist to fully document Final Checkout.
20 Provide a copy of the Final Checklist to the Engineer at the Final Inspection.
21
22

23 **3.6 FIRST DAY of OWNER OPERATION**

24
25 The Contractor shall have a senior technician present at the site for the first full 8 hour day of
26 operation following the Final Checkout to train/assist Owner personnel and to verify/fine tune
27 system operation. The senior technician shall make follow-up visits as required to bring the
28 system into full operating condition to the satisfaction of the Owner's Project Manager and the
29 Engineer.
30

31 **3.7 FINAL CLEANUP**

32
33 The General Contractor and the Structured Cabling System Contractor shall share full
34 responsibility for protecting all communications outlets, the CER, all CCs and all structured
35 cabling system components from dust and debris during construction and until final completion of
36 the project. The SCS shall not install racks, wire managers, patch panels, protector blocks, 66
37 blocks, or dress out and terminate cables until paint, backboards and floors in the CER and CCs
38 are completely finished and those rooms are completely isolated from dust infiltration with plastic
39 sheeting and duct tape. All communication outlet jacks shall be protected by bagging and sealing
40 dust tight at all times after connectivity devices are installed. All system components that, in the
41 sole judgment of the Engineer, are exposed to excessive accumulation of construction
42 dust/debris at any stage of the project shall be removed and replaced with new components at no
43 additional cost to the Owner. Lay-in ceiling grids in the CER and CCs shall be installed after
44 conduits and cable trays and cable runways have been installed to allow the ceiling installer to
45 trim around conduits. Lay-in ceiling tiles in these areas should follow completion of cable
46 dressing into racks.
47

48 Prior to the Substantial Completion Inspection, perform final cleanup of all work and all areas in
49 which work was performed. All work areas shall be left vacuum clean. All raceway, faceplates,
50 jack assemblies, racks, panels, data equipment, and the like shall be thoroughly wiped down to
51 remove small amounts of dust accumulated during the course of the project. Jacks, patch panels,
52 wiring blocks and data, voice and data equipment shall be cleaned with a high powered vacuum
53 cleaner to completely remove internal dust. All painted surfaces such as backboards shall be
54 touched up with paint to remove scuff marks, pencil marks, scratches, etc. All factory surfaces
55 shall be touched with matching paint.
56



1 **3.8 CLOSE-OUT DOCUMENTATION**

2
3 **3.8.1 Operation & Maintenance Manuals:**

4
5 Provide O&M Manuals as required by the architectural specifications and as follows.

6
7 The O&M Manuals shall contain sufficient information to permit Owner personnel to operate the
8 system with or without assistance from the Contractor.

9
10 The Contractor shall provide O&M Manuals covering all equipment and materials furnished under
11 this contract. The O&M Manuals shall contain all information necessary for the operation,
12 maintenance, parts procurement, and parts replacement for the structured cabling system. The
13 information shall include detailed documentation for firmware configuration.

14
15 Quantity: Three (3).

16
17 Format: *Provide 8-1/2" x 11" loose-leaf 3-ring binders with clear vinyl overlay designed to receive*
18 *identification inserts. 3-ring binders shall be heavy-duty D-Ring type, over-sized to allow the*
19 *insertion of additional system documentation in the future.*

20
21 Project Identification: Furnish project identification *inserted under the clear vinyl overlay on the*
22 *front cover and the back spline as follows:*

23
24 Operating & Maintenance Manual
25 Project Name
26 Structured Cabling System Contractor
27

28 Project Information: On the front page, *enclosed in a 3-ring clear plastic sheet protector*, provide
29 the following information:

30
31 Project Name
32 Structured Cabling System Contractor Name
33 Structured Cabling System Manufacturer Name
34 Electrical Contractor Name
35 Contractor's Project Manager
36 Contact list with name, address, contact person, phone number, and fax number for the
37 each of the following:

38
39 Structured Cabling System Contractor
40 Structured Cabling System Manufacturer
41 Electrical Contractor
42

43 Index: On the second page, *enclosed in a 3-ring clear plastic sheet protector*, provide an index
44 indicating the following section numbers and titles.

45
46 Sections: All sections shall be separated with an appropriate tabbed section divider with the
47 appropriate number and title (typed) as follows:

48
49 Section 1 – Cuts Sheets:

50
51 Manufacturer's original data/cut sheets for each system
52 component.
53

54 Section 2 – Data Equipment List:

55
56 Typed list of each item of data equipment (including Owner



furnished data equipment) with brief description, serial number, and part number. Note where each item of equipment is installed (CER/CC number, rack number and mounting position in rack). *Enclose in a 3-ring clear plastic sheet protector.*

Section 3 – Factory Manuals:

Manufacturer's printed Installation and Operating Manuals for each item of equipment provided by the Contractor. *Provide 3-ring zip-lock pockets for each manual that is not factory 3-ring hole punched.* Do not include manuals loose or inserted in binder pockets.

Section 4 - Warranties:

- Copy of Structured Cabling System Contractor and Manufacturer's 25 year warranty. *Enclose in a 3-ring clear plastic sheet protector.*
- Copy of Manufacturer's printed warranty for each item of equipment. *Enclose in a 3-ring clear plastic sheet protector.*

Section 5 - Transmittal of Loose Items:

Copy of transmittal to the Owner's Project Manager of all loose items such as patch cords, spare surge protectors, spare parts, etc. signed-off by the Owner. *Enclose in a 3-ring clear plastic sheet protector.*

Section 6 - Documentation of Training:

Documentation of training signed-off by the Owner's Project Manager. *Enclose in a 3-ring clear plastic sheet protector.*

Section 7 - Cable Test Results:

Part 1 – Contractor Certification:

Provide written Certification of Contractor stating that all fiber optic, Category 6 and multi-pair telephone cables have been tested in compliance with the contract documents and have met or exceeded the requirements stated therein. *Enclose in a 3-ring clear plastic sheet protector.*

Part 2 – Executive Summary:

Provide Hardcopy Summary Report of test results in the following divisions:

- Category 6 and 6A Cabling – Generate report directly from Fluke Networks 'LinkWare' software.
- Fiber optic horizontal cabling – Generate report directly from Fluke Networks 'LinkWare' software.
- Fiber optic backbone cabling – Generate report directly from Fluke Networks 'LinkWare' software.



1 *Enclose each report in a 3-ring clear*
 2 *plastic sheet protector.*

3
 4 Part 3 – Fiber Optic Cables:

5
 6 Provide detailed printed test results for all fiber optic cables.
 7 *Test results shall be printed on a laser printer. Enclose hardcopy*
 8 *in a 3-ring clear plastic sheet protector.*

9
 10 Part 4 – Category 6 and 6A Cables:

11
 12 Provide CD with Category 6 and 6A cable text only test results in
 13 native Fluke Networks 'LinkWare' software *.FCM format and in
 14 Adobe Acrobat *.PDF format. *Place CD in 3-ring clear plastic*
 15 *CD jacket.*

16
 17 Part 5 – Fiber Optic Backbone Cables:

18
 19 Provide CD with fiber optic backbone cable test results in native
 20 Fluke Networks 'LinkWare' software *.FCM format and in Adobe
 21 Acrobat *.PDF format. *Place CD in 3-ring clear plastic CD*
 22 *jacket.*

23
 24 Section 8 - Patch Cord Spreadsheet (VOIP and data):

25
 26 Provide Hardcopy and CD of Excel Spreadsheet file. *Enclose*
 27 *hardcopy in a 3-ring clear plastic sheet protector. Place CD in 3-*
 28 *ring clear plastic CD jacket.*

29
 30 Section 9 – Annotated Adobe Acrobat *.PDF As-Built Drawings.

31
 32 Provide 11"x17" hardcopy laser prints and CD of *.PDF files.
 33 *Enclose hardcopy in a 3-ring clear plastic sheet protector. Place*
 34 *CD in 3-ring clear plastic CD jacket.*

35
 36 **3.8.2 As-Built AutoCAD Drawings:**

37
 38 Provide the same AutoCAD drawings as required under paragraph "Pre-Installation AutoCAD
 39 Drawings". Modify and correct to accurately reflect the finished installation. Provide five (5) hard-
 40 copies and two (2) sets of electronic media.

41
 42 Submit As-Built AutoCAD Drawings to the Engineer at the Substantial Completion Inspection.
 43 Provide transmittal letter addressed to the Engineer indicating that the Contractor is providing five
 44 (5) hard-copies and two (2) sets of electronic media of the As-Built AutoCAD Drawings.

45
 46 **3.8.3 Red-Line Record Documents:**

47
 48 Refer to paragraph "CONTRACTOR'S RECORD DOCUMENTS". Provide Record Documents,
 49 updated in red pen, to accurately reflect the finished installation.

50
 51 Submit Red-Line Record Documents over to the Engineer at the Substantial Completion
 52 Inspection. Provide transmittal letter addressed to the Engineer indicating that the Contractor is
 53 providing one (1) set of Red-Line Record Documents.

54
 55 **3.8.4 Annotated Adobe *.PDF A-Built Drawings:**



1 The Engineer will provide a full set of Adobe Acrobat *.PDF format As-
 2 Built Drawings to the Contractor. The Contractor shall be required to annotate (redline) the *.PDF
 3 format drawings using Adobe Acrobat to reflect all changes recorded in the field as required by
 4 the paragraph "CONTRACTOR'S RECORD DOCUMENTS". The Contractor shall provide a copy
 5 of the *.PDF files on CD with each set of O&M Manuals and shall provide an additional copy on
 6 CD to the Engineer. The Contractor shall also provide 11"x17" hardcopy laser prints of *.PDF
 7 drawings in each O&M Manual.

9 **3.9 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

10 Complete Final Checkout of system operation, Final Checklist, Cable Test Results, O&M Manuals
 11 and Record Documents prior to Substantial Completion. The Contractor's project manager and
 12 project senior technician shall be present for the Substantial Completion Inspection.

15 **3.10 OWNER PERSONNEL TRAINING**

16 Owner personnel training shall be provided for the Structured Cabling System. The cost of
 17 training shall be included in the cost of the system. Two copies of all manuals and training
 18 material shall be supplied to the Owner's Project Manager at no additional cost.

19 The Owner's Project Manager shall be notified prior to each training session and may participate
 20 in the training at his or her discretion.

21 All instruction shall be presented in an organized and professional manner by personnel who are
 22 thoroughly familiar with the installation and who certified by the manufacturer of the specific
 23 system and/or equipment for which they are providing training.

24 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall provide documentation of all training (including
 25 names of personnel present at each training session) to the Engineer at the Final Completion
 26 Inspection. The documentation shall be signed-off by the Owner. The documentation shall be
 27 three-hole punched and ready for insertion in the O&M manuals.

33 **3.10.1 Structured Cabling System Training:**

34 Subsequent to Substantial Completion but prior to Final Completion, the Contractor shall provide
 35 on-site training to Owner personnel on the operational use of the Structured Cabling System and
 36 all related equipment.

37 The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall schedule a time to provide not less than one (1)
 38 hour of formal training to Owner personnel on the Structured Cabling System. The Structured
 39 Cabling System Contractor shall provide an additional hour of follow-up training on the system
 40 when requested by the Owner at any time during the warranty period.

41 Structured Cabling System training shall include a "walk-through" of the systems to identify and
 42 locate closets, panels, and important system components, a discussion of overall system
 43 concepts and configuration, specific instruction in labeling and patch cord move/changes, a
 44 review of the as-built drawings, a review of the system verification and acceptance
 45 documentation, and guidelines for basic trouble-shooting and operation of the Structured Cabling
 46 System and all related equipment.

51 **3.11 FINAL COMPLETION**

52 Following completion of punch list items generated by the Engineer following the Substantial
 53 Completion Inspection, the Contractor shall notify the Engineer in writing, stating that all punch list
 54 items have been completed.
 55
 56



1 **3.12 WARRANTY**

2
3 The Structured Cabling System Contractor warrants all work performed by him directly and all
4 work performed for him by others for a period of three years. Any work, material or equipment
5 which during the warranty period is, in the opinion of the Engineer or the Owner's Project
6 Manager, defective or inferior and not in accordance with the contract documents, shall be made
7 good at no additional cost to the Owner, including any other work which may have been damaged
8 because of such deficiencies. The Contractor shall be the contact person and the person
9 responsible for coordinating all warranty work for the Owner.

10
11 When equipment cannot be repaired at the site, the Contractor shall be completely and solely
12 responsible for the coordination and completion of equipment repairs, including pickup at the
13 project site, transportation and shipping costs to and from the repair site, and reinstallation and
14 reintegration into the system. Equal or better loaner equipment shall be provided and installed by
15 the Contractor any time equipment cannot be repaired at the site, so that the system is
16 maintained in continuous working order as before the equipment failed.

17
18 **3.12.1 Special Warranty – Structured Cabling System:**

19
20 All materials, equipment and workmanship incorporated in the work shall be guaranteed by the
21 Structured Cabling System Contractor and the Structured Cabling System Manufacturer for a
22 period of 25 years from the date of Final Completion of the project and Final Acceptance by the
23 Owner. See paragraph 1.4.1 Special Warranty - Structured Cabling System for detailed
24 requirements. The Structured Cabling System Contractor shall provide all necessary
25 documentation required by the Structured Cabling System Manufacturer to properly register the
26 system with the manufacturer for warranty purposes. The Structured Cabling System
27 Manufacturer shall issue certificates of warranty signed by a permanent employee of the
28 Structured Cabling System Manufacturer who is authorized by the senior officers of the company
29 to certify Category 6 and 6A cabling systems. Original certificates of warranty shall be provided
30 to the Owner, with copies to the Engineer.

31
32
33
34
35
36 **END OF SECTION 27 00 00**



1 **SECTION 27 00 50 – IP SECURITY CAMERA SYSTEM**

2
3
4 **1.0 PART 1 - GENERAL**

5
6 **1.1 SCOPE**

7
8 1.1.1 This specification delineates the requirements for a complete IP Camera Security System as
9 specified herein and as indicated on the drawings.

10
11 1.1.2 The scope is to provide a complete and warranted system ready for operation. The installation
12 shall include all accessories and appurtenances required to provide a complete and fully
13 operational system. Any materials not specifically mentioned in these specifications or not
14 shown on the drawings but required for a finished installation shall be furnished and installed at
15 no additional cost to the Owner.

16
17 1.1.3 The scope of work is to provide a complete and warranted system ready for operation. The
18 installation shall include all accessories and appurtenances required to provide a complete and
19 fully operational system. Any materials not specifically mentioned in these specifications or not
20 shown on the drawings but required for a finished installation shall be furnished and installed at
21 no additional cost to the Owner.

22
23 1.1.4 Refer to the IP Security Camera System drawings, electrical drawings and architectural
24 drawings for additional information regarding the scope of related work for the General
25 Contractor and each subcontractor. Coordinate all work closely with the Owner's Project
26 Manager, General Contractor/Construction Manager, Electrical Contractor and Structured
27 Cabling System Contractor

28
29 **1.2 STRUCTURED CABLING SYSTEM CONTRACTOR**

30
31 See Section 270000 - Communications Structured Cabling System.

32
33 The SCSC shall provide, terminate and test the Category 6 horizontal cabling serving the
34 security cameras. The SCSC shall provide slack cable length at each camera as directed by
35 the IP Security Camera System Integrator. The SCSC shall also provide horizontal patch
36 panels and patch cables in the communications closet and direct termination of Category 6
37 cables at each camera, along with labeling, cable testing, patching and all other associated
38 work.

39
40 1.2.1 The SCSC shall closely coordinate all work with the General Contractor, IP Security Camera
41 System Integrator, and Electrical Contractor.

42
43 **1.3 IP SECURITY CAMERA SYSTEM INTEGRATOR**

44
45 1.3.1 The General Contractor shall include a complete IP Security Camera System with Halo
46 detectors for this project provided by a specialized IP Security Camera System Integrator with
47 related work provided by the SCSC and the Electrical Contractor.

48
49 1.3.2 The Owner has standardized on iPRO Video-Insight for a multi-site web-based security Video
50 Management System (VMS).

51
52 1.3.3 The IP Security Camera System Integrator shall be iPRO Video-Insight (VI) VMS certified and
53 shall be an authorized dealer for the VI VMS and all security camera manufacturers listed in the
54 drawings prior to bids. The IP Security Camera System Integrator shall be well experienced in
55 the integration of IP security camera systems of the type and size required for this project into
56 Video-Insight, shall meet all additional qualifications stated in the drawings, and shall be



1 approved in advance of bids by the Owner. General Contractor
 2 coordinate with and obtain list of approved integrators from the Owner prior to bids.

3
 4 1.3.4 The scope of work shall include the IP Security Camera System with Halo detectors complete
 5 with all work indicated on the drawings and described in the specifications, all work described in
 6 the IP Security Camera System Integrator's cost proposal and associated statement of work, all
 7 other materials, equipment and work required for a complete system, and all programming and
 8 setup required to make the system fully operational and functional to the satisfaction of the
 9 Owner.

10
 11 1.3.5 The IP Security Camera System Integrator shall furnish and install all cameras and camera
 12 mounts and all Halo detectors, shall locate cameras prior to rough-in, test the operation of each
 13 installed camera, set final camera viewing angles, fields of view, lens settings, compression
 14 settings and other camera settings for optimum performance, assign camera IP addresses as
 15 directed by the Owner's IT staff, shall fully integrate the cameras and Halo detectors into the
 16 Owner's existing district-wide iPRO Video-Insight VMS, shall provide software updates and
 17 register camera licenses, shall provide final setup, programming, testing and Owner training for
 18 the system, and shall make the system fully operational and functional to the satisfaction of the
 19 owner.

20
 21 1.3.6 The server NVR shall be Owner Furnished Contractor Installed. The Owner shall provide the
 22 server NVR to the IP Security Camera System Integrator for installation, setup, programming,
 23 and full integration into the IP security camera system. The IP Security Camera System
 24 Integrator shall have qualified and experienced personnel on staff prior to bids and assigned to
 25 the current project for all associated work.

26
 27 1.3.7 Related work to be provided by others but not included in the scope of work for the IP Security
 28 Camera System Integrator shall include work by the Structured Cabling System Contractor
 29 (SCSC) as indicated on the drawings and described above.

30
 31 1.3.8 Additional related work to be provided by others but not included in the scope of work for the IP
 32 Security Camera System Integrator shall include work by the Electrical Contractor as indicated
 33 on the drawings. The Electrical Contractor shall provide all conduit along with all power and
 34 grounding required for the IP Security Camera System. The Electrical Contractor shall be
 35 responsible for coordinating the associated conduit, power and grounding work with the IP
 36 Security Camera System Integrator, SCSC and General Contractor - but the scope of conduit,
 37 power and grounding work shall not be less than that described on the drawings.

38 39 1.4 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

40
 41 Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions
 42 and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

43
 44 See drawings and Specification Section 27 00 00 for conduit requirements.

45
 46 See Specification Section 27 00 00 for fire and smoke/sound stopping in fire and smoke rated
 47 walls along with sound stopping in non-fire rated and non-sound rated walls.

48
 49 Electrical Specification Sections regarding conduit apply to work under this section, with the
 50 additions and modifications specified herein and on the drawings. The special requirements
 51 indicated on the drawings, in this specification section and in Specification Section 27 00 00 for
 52 IP Security System conduit shall take precedence over any requirements specified in Electrical
 53 Specification Sections.
 54



1 All conduit and related work shall be provided by the project
 2 electrical contractor using tradesmen who are skilled and experienced in the types of conduit
 3 installations indicated in the bid documents. See drawings for conduit requirements.
 4

5 1.5 EXAMINATION OF SITES AND TOTAL SYSTEM RESPONSIBILITY

6
 7 Prior to providing a proposal for this work, the Contractor shall examine the drawings,
 8 specifications, and other contract documents to inform himself/herself thoroughly regarding any
 9 and all conditions and requirements that may in any manner affect the work to be performed
 10 under the contract.

11
 12 Any additional equipment and accessories required for the installation and operation of the
 13 complete operating system not specifically required by the bid documents shall be provided and
 14 the cost borne by the Contractor.
 15

16 The contractor remains the owner of all equipment provided under this contract and is
 17 responsible for all risk of loss or damage to the equipment from any source up to and including
 18 the date and time of final acceptance by the Owner. Upon the date of commencement of the
 19 warranty period, the Owner shall assume full ownership of the equipment.
 20

21 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

22
 23 Materials shall be new and shall be the best of their respective kinds. All work shall be
 24 accomplished in a workmanlike manner in keeping with the best practices and highest
 25 standards of the IP Security Camera System industry.
 26

27 Protect materials and equipment from physical or environmental damage during shipping,
 28 storage and installation. Equipment and materials shall be received at the site in new condition
 29 and shall be maintained in new condition throughout the installation process. Damaged or
 30 deteriorated equipment and materials will not be acceptable. The Contractor shall be
 31 responsible for the safety and condition of all materials and equipment, whether stored or
 32 installed, until final acceptance by the Engineer and the Owner.
 33

34 1.7 CODES AND STANDARDS

35
 36 All work done under this contract shall be performed in accordance with the most recent issue
 37 of the following codes and standards. Where there is a perceived conflict between a standard
 38 and the contract documents, the Contractor shall perform the work as directed by the Engineer.
 39 Where no specific method or form of construction is called for in the Contract Documents, the
 40 Contractor shall comply with code requirements when carrying out such work.
 41

42 1.7.1 Codes:

- 43
 44 a. Standard Building Code
 45 b. National Electrical Code (NFPA 70)
 46 c. National Electrical Safety Code (NESC)
 47

48 1.7.2 Standards: All electrical materials, installation and systems shall meet the requirements of the 49 following standards, including the latest addenda and amendments:

- 50
 51 a. American National Standard Institutes (ANSI)
 52 b. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE).
 53 c. National Electrical Manufacturer's Associations (NEMA).
 54 d. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
 55 e. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA).
 56 f. Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. (UL).



- g. Electronic Industry Association (EIA).
- h. Telecommunication Industry Association (TIA).
- i. American Society of Industrial Security (ASIS)

1.8 SUBMITTALS

1.8.1 Submit three copies of the manufacturer's catalog data and pre-installation drawings to the Engineer for approval prior to commencing work or ordering materials. Receive approval of the Engineer in writing for each item of submittals prior to commencing work.

1.8.2 Manufacturer's Catalog Data: Submit the producer's standard descriptive data sheets for each type of product being provided. Provide products in accordance with the drawings. Provide complete data sheets bearing the printed logo or trademark of the manufacturer. Mark each copy of the data sheets for the specific product being provided with an identifying mark, arrow, or highlighting. Submittals without such identifying marks shall be rejected without comment for resubmittal. The following are typical items that shall be submitted:

- a. Cabling, each type (submit under Section 270000)
- b. Cable Connectors (submit under Section 270000)
- c. Cameras, each type, with all accessories including enclosures
- d. All camera mounting brackets, goosenecks and other accessories
- e. Camera video storage appliance
- f. Fire-stopping, each type (each UL listed Assembly) (submit under Section 270000)
- g. All conduit and pull boxes (submit under Electrical division)
- h. All other materials and equipment indicated on the drawings to be furnished under this section, whether specifically listed here or not.
- i. All other information indicated on the contract drawings, and all additional information required by the Engineer.

1.9 CONTRACTOR'S RECORD DOCUMENTS

The Contractor shall maintain a full set of contract documents at the job site at all times, consisting of specifications, drawings, addenda, pre-installation submittals, change orders, and engineering directives. The record documents shall be updated by the Contractor, in red pen and on a daily basis, to show the following:

- a. Final location of all Cameras.
- b. Final conduit routing.
- c. Final location of all pull boxes and access doors.
- d. Any changes to the work authorized by the Architect/Engineer.
- e. Any other pertinent information that may be of value to the Owner in operating and maintaining the system.

The Contractor's record documents shall be available for viewing by the Engineer or the Owner at the site at any time and shall be presented and reviewed by the Contractor at each construction progress meeting. The record documents shall be clearly marked "Record Set", shall be kept in a protected location, and shall not be used for general construction purposes. The record documents shall be provided to the Engineer at the close of the project.

The Engineer will provide a full set of Adobe Acrobat *.PDF format drawings to the Contractor. The Contractor shall be required to annotate (redline) the Adobe Acrobat *.PDF format drawings using Adobe Acrobat to reflect all information recorded in the field. The Contractor shall provide a copy of the Adobe Acrobat *.PDF files on CD with each set of O&M Manuals and shall provide an additional copy on CD to the Engineer. The Contractor shall also provide 11"x17" laser prints of Adobe Acrobat *.PDF drawings in each O&M Manual.



1
2
3 **2.0 PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

4
5 2.1 General

6
7 All materials, equipment, and devices shall be new and unused, of current manufacture and of
8 the highest grade, free from defects.

9
10 All products shall be the manufacturer and model or part number specified. Bid shall be for
11 new equipment only. Newly manufactured (containing used or rebuilt parts), remanufactured,
12 rebuilt, reconditioned, newly remanufactured, used, shopworn, demonstrator or prototype
13 equipment is not acceptable and will be rejected. If required by the Engineer, the Contractor
14 shall provide a written certification from the manufacturer referencing the serial number each
15 item of equipment and stating that the equipment is new.

16
17 All materials, equipment and devices shall, as a minimum, meet the requirements of UL where
18 UL standards are established for those items, and the requirements of NFPA 70.

19
20 All like items of material or equipment shall be the same product of the same manufacturer.

21
22 All materials and equipment shall be a standard catalogued product of a manufacturer regularly
23 engaged in the manufacture of similar products.

24
25 Where a model or part number is indicated in error for any reason, the Contractor shall verify
26 the intent of the Engineer prior to providing a bid proposal, and shall provide the product
27 intended by the Engineer. Where a manufacturer has updated or improved a product
28 subsequent to issuance of the bid documents by the Engineer, the Contractor shall provide the
29 updated or improved product at no additional cost to the Owner.

30
31 2.2 Product Specifications:

32
33 To insure a uniform basis for bidding, and to standardize the Owner's facilities, base all bids on
34 the particular systems, equipment and materials specified herein and indicated on the drawings
35 which are based on a School District standard.

36
37 See drawings for all product requirements not indicated in these specifications. The Contractor
38 shall be responsible for providing and installing all components indicated in these specifications
39 and on the drawings, unless specifically indicated to be provided by others.

40
41
42 **3.0 PART 3 - EXECUTION**

43
44 General: The installation shall be in strict accordance with all applicable codes and standards,
45 the respective manufacturer's written recommendations, and the contract drawings and these
46 specifications.

47
48 All materials, equipment, and devices shall be new and unused, of current manufacture and of
49 the highest grade, free from defects. Workmanship shall be of the highest grade in accordance
50 with modern practice.

51
52 The installed system shall be neat, clean, and well organized in appearance. Provide working
53 clearances for normal system operation, reconfiguration and repair.

54
55 All cabling shall be installed at times as determined by the Owner and may result in work being
56 performed after normal business hours. Any additional costs associated with work required



1 after normal business hours shall be included in the contractor's bid.

- 2
3 3.1 Section 27 00 00 and drawings for cabling, conduit sleeves, firestopping, sound-stopping,
4 sealing of non-fire rated and non-smoke rated walls, cable testing, and other installation
5 requirements.

6
7 The SCSC shall test each cable as indicated in Section 270000. Document results of testing
8 and submit to Engineer for review and approval. The test log shall include camera identifier, the
9 test date, the initials of the technician who tested the cable, and the test results.

10
11 3.2 CAMERA INSTALLATION

- 12
13 3.2.1 Camera locations and heights indicated on the drawings are approximate and are providing for
14 purposes of bidding.

15
16 The General Contractor shall schedule meetings at the site prior to commencement of any
17 installation activities by the SCSC and the conduit provider and additionally as construction
18 proceeds to coordinate the exact location and coverage area of each camera prior to
19 installation. The meetings shall include the General Contractor, the Owner's Project Manager
20 and/or his designee, the SCSC, the conduit provider, and the IP Security Camera System
21 Integrator. Final camera locations may be placed up to 10 feet away from locations shown
22 without additional cost to the Owner. Particular attention shall be given to coordination of
23 camera locations relative to obstructions including but not limited to exterior covered walkways,
24 entrance canopies, gutter downspouts, and other camera views. The General Contractor shall
25 be responsible for providing information to the contractors and IP Security Camera System
26 Integrator concerning obstructions which may not be fully built at the time any camera location
27 is determined if that obstruction will negatively impact that camera's full field of view.

28
29 The IP Security Camera System Integrator shall install the cameras in accordance with the
30 manufacturer's printed installation instructions and the mounting requirements indicated on the
31 drawings, except that final camera locations shall be determined as indicated above.

32
33 After final camera locations are determined, the cameras are mounted and the cabling installed
34 and tested by the SCSC, the IP Security Camera System Integrator shall test the operation of
35 each camera and shall set final camera viewing angles, fields of view, lens settings,
36 compression settings and other camera settings with the Owner's Project Manager or his
37 designee. The IP Security Camera System Integrator shall notify the SCSC through the GC in
38 writing if any cabling deficiencies are found, and the SCSC shall promptly correct those
39 deficiencies.

40
41 3.3 HEADEND EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION AND PROGRAMMING

42
43 Headend equipment installation, setup and programming shall be provided by the IP Security
44 Camera System Integrator. Cameras shall be recorded at the highest resolution offered for
45 each camera type and the frame rate directed by the Owner. Setup interior cameras for motion
46 detection and to record at higher frame rates upon detection of motion in each camera's area of
47 view during unoccupied periods when so directed by the Owner.

48
49 3.4 SYSTEM VERIFICATION AND ACCEPTANCE

- 50
51 3.4.1 System Testing: Proof of performance of the IP Security Camera System to include a full
52 system operational test shall be conducted in the presence of the Owner's Project Manager by
53 the IP Security Camera System Integrator.

54
55 3.5 CHECKOUT

56



- 1 3.5.1 Subsequent to testing and verification and prior to the first day of
 2 normal operation following start-up, the IP Security Camera System Integrator shall be
 3 responsible for checking out the system to verify that it is operating properly and performing in
 4 compliance with the equipment manufacturer's specifications and the specifications. The
 5 checkout shall include a System Inspection Checklist to fully document checkout.
 6
- 7 3.6 CLEANUP
- 8
- 9 3.6.1 Upon completion of the work each day the contractor shall reconnect any utilities, equipment,
 10 or appliances removed in the course of work and replace all furniture, etc., moved for the
 11 performance of the work. Debris and rubbish caused by the work shall be removed and the
 12 premises left clean each day. Vacuum clean all interior areas each day.
 13
- 14 3.7 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION
- 15
- 16 3.7.1 IP Security Camera System Integrator shall complete the work and provide user training such
 17 that the IP Security Camera system shall be fully operational and ready for use by the school
 18 district and School Administration on the date of Substantial Completion.
 19
- 20 3.8 FINAL COMPLETION
- 21
- 22 3.8.1 Following completion of the Substantial Completion punch list items and the initial performance
 23 period, the contractor shall notify the Engineer. The Engineer will conduct a final completion
 24 inspection. Upon determining that all punch list items have been satisfactorily completed, the
 25 Engineer will declare the work finally complete. For the purposes of this contract the terms Final
 26 Completion, Final Acceptance, and Final System Acceptance are synonymous.
 27
- 28 3.9 DOCUMENTATION
- 29
- 30 3.9.1 Red-Line Record Documents:
- 31
- 32 Refer to paragraph "CONTRACTOR'S RECORD DOCUMENTS". Provide Record Documents,
 33 updated in red pen, to accurately reflect the finished installation.
 34
- 35 Submit Red-Line Record Documents over to the Engineer at the Substantial Completion
 36 Inspection. Provide transmittal letter addressed to the Engineer indicating that the Contractor is
 37 providing one (1) set of Red-Line Record Documents.
 38
- 39 3.9.2 Annotated Adobe *.PDF A-Built Drawings:
- 40
- 41 The Engineer will provide a full set of Adobe Acrobat *.PDF format As-Built Drawings to the
 42 Contractor. The Contractor shall be required to annotate (redline) the *.PDF format drawings
 43 using Adobe Acrobat to reflect all changes recorded in the field as required by the paragraph
 44 "CONTRACTOR'S RECORD DOCUMENTS". The Contractor shall provide a copy of the
 45 *.PDF files on CD with each set of O&M Manuals and shall provide an additional copy on CD to
 46 the Engineer. The Contractor shall also provide 11"x17" hardcopy laser prints of *.PDF
 47 drawings in each O&M Manual.
 48
- 49 3.9.3 O & M Manuals: The contractor shall provide operating and maintenance manuals covering all
 50 equipment and materials furnished under this contract. The O & M manuals shall contain all
 51 information necessary for the operation, maintenance, replacement, installation, and parts
 52 procurement for the System. The information shall include detailed documentation equipment
 53 configuration. A complete recommended spare parts inventory list shall be included with the
 54 lead time and expected frequency of use for each part clearly identified.
 55



1 A quantity of three (3) 8-1/2" x 11" loose leaf 3-ring binders with clear
2 vinyl overlay designed to receive identification inserts shall be provided. The manuals shall
3 contain the following sections:

- 4
5 a. Cut sheets for all equipment.
6 b. Installation instructions.
7 c. Operating and maintenance instructions.
8 d. Recommended spare parts inventory list.
9 e. User's Guides and technical reference guides.
10 f. Copy of warranty.

11
12 Provide a list with name, address, contact person, phone number, and fax number for two
13 separate contacts with name and telephone number for warranty service and the manufacturer
14 of each item of equipment with telephone number and sources of supply for parts.

15
16 3.10 USER TRAINING

17 User training shall be provided by the IP Security Camera System Integrator.

18
19
20 3.11 WARRANTY

21 All equipment including material used in the installation thereof shall be warranted for THREE
22 YEARS by the Contractor against mechanical, electrical, and workmanship defects. In the
23 event defects become evident within the warranty period, the Contractor shall repair or replace
24 the defective parts and materials at no additional cost to the Owner. The warranty period shall
25 start with the date of final acceptance. The warranty shall apply to all equipment provided under
26 the provisions of this contract regardless of the location. Warranties submitted with bids, either
27 appearing separately or included in pre-printed literature and price lists, shall not be acceptable
28 and provisions herein take precedence.
29

30 The SCSC is not responsible for warranty of equipment and services indicated to be provided
31 by the IP Security Camera System Integrator. The IP Security Camera System Integrator is not
32 responsible for warranty of equipment and services indicated to be provided by the SCSC.
33
34
35
36

37 **END OF SECTION 27 00 50**

SECTION 27 41 00 AUDIO – VISUAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1. RELATED SECTIONS

- (A) The Drawings, General, Special and Supplementary Conditions of the Contract to the Work of this Section.
- (B) All project construction documents correspond to this Section.
- (C) The Specification Sections of other disciplines correspond to this Section, insofar as contractor coordination and the requirements for interconnection with the work of other contractors are required, and insofar as they apply.
- (D) Division 16000 – Electrical Systems

2. SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- (A) Audio Reinforcement System consists of loudspeakers, digital audio processing, control interface, audio amplification, cabling, materials, and wiring.
- (B) The Video Reinforcement consist of flat panel displays, network encoders, decoders, processors, controllers, cabling and connectors.
- (C) Matrix systems consist of Extron NAV series AVoverIP, programming, commissioning and cabling.
- (D) Integrate any owner furnished equipment (OFE), furnishing and installation of specified products, as well as incidental equipment, hardware and cabling required to provide a complete and fully functional system(s). Furnish, deliver, erect, and connect all the material and equipment described herein and in the drawings, and also all other incidental material and tools, transportation, etc. required to make work complete, in accordance with these plans and specifications, as required to leave the system in first class operating condition, excluding those items designated WORK BY OTHERS (WBO) or NOT IN CONTRACT (NIC).
- (E) Verify dimensions and conditions at the job site prior to installation, and perform installation in accordance with these specifications, manufacturers' recommendations and all applicable code requirements.
- (F) The AV & Conferencing systems include the following major items:
 - a) Digital audio mixing, processing and routing components
 - b) Loudspeakers and loudspeaker mounting or support hardware
 - c) Video displays, video processors, support cabling & hardware
 - d) Equipment Racks, Cabinetry, and Furniture
 - e) Cables, Connectors, Plates, and Wiring
 - f) Preparation of submittal information
 - g) Installation in accordance with the contract documents, manufacturer's recommendations, and all applicable code requirements
 - h) Specific control system programming, training & support

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

- i) Initial tests and adjustments, demonstration for approval, final adjustments and documentation
 - j) Instruction of operating personnel; provision of manuals
 - k) Maintenance services; warranty
- (G) Provision of system testing, system documentation and instruction of Owner Personnel.
- (H) Guarantees and Warranties.

3. REFERENCES

In addition to the references in Division 1, all requirements of the latest published edition, unless otherwise noted, including but not limited to the following, shall apply. In the event of conflict between cited or referenced standards, the more stringent shall govern.

- a) National Electric Code (N.E.C).
- b) Federal Communications Commission (F.C.C.) Rules and Regulations, Part 76.
- c) Society of Cable Television Engineers (S.C.T.E.)
- d) Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers (S M P.T.E.)
- e) American Society for Testing Materials (A.S.T.M.)
- f) National Cable Television Association (N.C. T. A.)
- g) Electronic Industries Association (E.I.A)
- h) Telecommunications Industries Association (T. I.A.)
- i) "Handbook for Riggers", 1977 Revised Edition, Newberry, W. G., Calgary, Alberta Canada.
- j) "Basic Principles for Suspended Loudspeaker Systems", Technical Notes Volume 1, Number 14, JBL Professional.
- k) Davis, Don and Carolyn, Audio system Engineering, Second Edition, Howard W. Sams and Co., Indianapolis, Indiana, 1986.
- l) DOE Standard DOE-STD-1090-99 Hoisting and Rigging

4. SUBMITTALS

- (A) Provide shop drawings and record drawings using the following scales:
- a) Details – not less than 1/4"=1'-0"
 - b) Plans – not less than 1/8"=1'-0"
- (B) Mark all submittal documents to show the project name, date, Architect, Contractor, Sub-Contractor, and this specification Section number.
- (C) Make each specified submittal as a coordinated package complete with all information. Uncoordinated sets will be returned without review.
- (D) Cable and Connector Submittal: Submit sample cable with connections and wire labels. Cable sample should be 18" in length. Submit cable/connector assemblies for each type of cable to be used on the project. Manufacturer's cable jacket ID lettering must be included on the sample cable.

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

- (E) Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data sheets for each item of equipment that will be provided as part of this contract. Provide a complete list of proposed equipment broken down by system. Provide a budget summary page listing price by system. Binders shall be 3-ring binders sized to handle materials plus 34% excess. All cut sheets shall be arranged by system type and then by specification number with tabbed dividers between sections. A table of contents shall appear at the front of the binder.
- (F) Submit heat load calculations showing how loads were derived if requested by Owner or Owners Representative.
- (G) Custom Software Programming including Graphical User Interface (as required). Provide for approval at least three (3) weeks prior to system commissioning, electronic copies of all custom software. It is the Contractor's responsibility for all custom software programming for the systems they are controlling. Coordination with the Consultant is required for the development of this software.
- (H) Provide Panel Fabrication Details including panel engraving schedule to Owner and Consultant prior to ordering panels.
- (I) Any technical questions shall be submitted by email to the AV Consultant, unless otherwise noted by the Owner, Architect or Purchasing Agent.

Walthall & Associates, Inc.
200 Swift Creek Drive; Suite G
Cantonment, FL 32533
Electronic mail: chuck@walthall.us
Telephone (850) 478-9002

5. QUALIFICATIONS

- (A) Bidder shall be an A/V systems contractor, normally engaged in the full time business of A/V systems installation. Show proof that bidder has been in the communications system installation business for a period of no less than five years and has completed projects of similar size and scope. The Owner and/or Owner's representative reserves the right to reject any bids submitted by firms without sufficient experience in projects of this size, complexity, or any other terms the owner or owner's representative may deem relevant.
- (B) No sub-contractor or contract employees will be permitted to perform the contractor's responsibilities as defined herein, unless specifically identified in the bid submission and approved by the Owner and/or Owner's representative. The contractor shall have sole responsibility for the satisfactory execution of the work, even though he may have sub-contracted a portion of the work, or had certain manufacturers install their own products.
- (C) The Contractor shall provide resumes of the project coordinator (manager) and lead installer planned to be used for this project. This shall be presented at the presentation of proposal. The Contractor shall maintain the same project manager and lead installer throughout the course entire course of the project. If a personnel change is required the Contractor shall notify the Owner and/or Owner's representative and the General Contractor 30 calendar days prior to the change.

6. QUALITY ASSURANCE

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

- (A) Review architectural, civil, structural, mechanical, electrical, and other project documents relative to this work.
- (B) Verify all dimensions on the site.
- (C) Coordinate the specified work with all other trades.
- (D) Provide all items not indicated on the drawings or mentioned in the specifications that are necessary, required or appropriate for this work to realize complete, stable and safe operation.
- (E) Review project documentation and continuously make known any conflicts discovered and provide all items necessary to complete this work to the satisfaction of the Owner and/or Owner's representative without additional expense. In all cases where a device or item or equipment is referred to in singular number or without quantity, each such reference shall apply to as many such devices or items as are required to complete the work.
- (F) Provide additional support or positioning members as required for the proper installation and operation of equipment, materials and devices provided as part of this work as approved by the Owner and/or Owner's representative, without additional expense.
- (G) Regularly examine all construction, and the work of others, which may affect the work to ensure proper conditions for the equipment and devices before their manufacture, fabrication or installation. Contractor shall be responsible for the proper fitting of the systems, equipment, materials, and devices provided as part of this work.
- (H) Promptly notify the Owner and/or Owner's representative of any difficulties that may prevent proper coordination or timely completion of this work. Failure to do so shall constitute acceptance of construction as suitable in all ways to receive this work, except for defects that may develop in the work of others after its execution.
- (I) The Systems Contractor shall maintain the same Project Coordinator (Manager) and Field Supervisor throughout the entire project. The Systems Contractor shall provide contact information to the client, AV Consultant, General Contractor and Electrical Contractor, for both parties prior to commencing on-site project work.
- (J) Source Limitations: Obtain as many products as possible from a single manufacturer. Obtain each item as a completely newly manufactured unit, including necessary mounting hardware, manuals and accessories.

7. OWNER'S RIGHT TO USE EQUIPMENT

- (A) The Owner reserves the right to use equipment, material and services provided as part of this work prior to final acceptance without incurring any obligation to:
 - a) Accept material and equipment or completed systems until all punch list work is completed and all systems are acceptable.
 - b) Pay additional cost or charge.
 - c) Commence the warranty period for any system or device provided as part of the work.

8. PERMITS AND INSPECTIONS

- (A) Obtain all required permits and inspections.

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

- (B) Furnish material and workmanship for this work in conformance with all code requirements
- (C) Perform all tests required herein, or as may be reasonably required to demonstrate conformance with the specifications.

9. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- (A) Store equipment and materials safely and securely inside at the job site in a manner that will not interfere with the work of other trades.
- (B) Replace all damaged or defective work or material at no additional cost, prior to acceptance.
- (C) Check, and if necessary, clean all systems, equipment, devices and components included in the work after acceptance and completion of the work of all other trades.
- (D) Store materials in designated areas.
- (E) Provide and maintain suitable barriers, guards, fences and signs wherever necessary for the safety of others relative to and/ or for the protection of this work.
- (F) Protect all materials and equipment to prevent the entry or adhesion of concrete, plaster, unintended paint, or other damaging debris or materials.

10. SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES

- (A) Submit shop drawings, product data and samples together in one package within thirty (30) days after award of the Contract and prior to ordering equipment.
- (B) Submit catalog data sheets, neatly bound with title page, space for submittal stamps, and tabbed dividers between Sections. Provide a complete list of proposed equipment. Provide a summary of pricing broken down by system. Denote all substitutions.
- (C) Submit rack layouts indicating the proposed arrangement of mounted equipment including junction boxes and locations of conduit penetrations.
- (D) Submit construction details of all custom fabricated items and approved equipment modifications. Include complete parts lists, schematic diagrams, and all dimensions required for proper assembly.
- (E) Submit finish schedule indicating proposed color selections and finishes for custom fabricated items, wall plates and custom labels.
- (F) Submit mounting and support details for all items mounted overhead, including loudspeakers complete with parts lists and dimensions. Include a full plan view, front elevation and side elevation of each unique item with corresponding support structure and mounting hardware.
- (G) Approval of shop drawings or submittal indicates only the acceptance of the manufacturer and quality. Specific requirements, arrangements, and quantities still must comply with the intent of the contract documents as interpreted by the Owner and/or Owner's representative unless specifically approved in writing.
- (H) Submittals, which are incomplete, deviate significantly from the requirements of the Contract Documents, or contain numerous errors, will be returned without review for rework.

11. PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS (As Built Drawings)

- (A) Approved shop drawings, updated to accurately document the final conditions of the system

installation. Legibly mark to record actual construction:

- a) Field changes of dimension and detail.
- b) Changes made by Revision Order, Directive or other modifications.
- c) Details not in original contract drawings.
- d) Any other miscellaneous items installed under this contract. At a minimum, the ends of each line should have the type of termination, coordinate and elevation indicated.
- e) Layouts of system devices showing actual device locations.
- f) Results of all Field Quality Control Tests in this Section.

12. OPERATION MANUALS

(A) Operation manuals shall include, but not limited to the following sections:

- a) Table of Contents.
- b) Typed description of system including key features and operational concepts (e.g. remote control features, switching functions, and mixing capabilities).
- c) Setup diagrams and typed instructions for use in typical situations as directed by the Owner.
- d) Small scale plans showing locations and circuit numbers for all system outlets and receptacles.
- e) Single-line block diagrams showing all major components of the systems.
- f) Manufacturer's operation manuals for user-operated equipment (tape decks, processors, communication equipment, etc.).

13. MAINTENANCE MANUALS

(A) Provide the owner any maintenance manuals that come packaged with equipment.

14. PROJECT CONDITIONS

- (A) If project conditions indicate a need to vary from the Specifications or Drawings, notify the Owner and/or Owner's representative, make recommendations, and proceed with the necessary changes only after receipt of approval from the Owner and/or Owner's representative.
- (B) All accessories provided by equipment manufacturer shall retain the property of the owner. Collect, inventory and present to owner after Acceptance Testing.

15. WARRANTY

- (A) Provide a one (1) year System Warranty, and the following, at no additional cost to the Owner.
- (B) Warranty shall contain the following:
 - a) Date, project title and number.
 - b) Contractor's name, address, telephone number and point of contact.
 - c) Title and number of each as-built document.
 - d) Signature of contractor, or its authorized representative.

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

- e) Include the name of a contact person for service or maintenance and define the limits of the system warranty.
- (C) During the System Warranty period, answer all service calls and requests for information within twenty-four (24) hours. Repair or replace faulty items and correct faulty workmanship on site within twenty-four (24) hours of all service calls.
- (D) Conduct all warranty repairs and service at the job site unless in violation of manufacturer's warranty. In the latter event, provide substitute systems, equipment, and/or devices, acceptance to the Owner, for the duration of such off site repairs. Transport warranty materials, parts, and personnel to and from the job site at no additional cost.
- (E) For products with manufacturer's warranties lasting more than one (1) year, register warranties in the Owner's name.

16. SUBSTITUTIONS

- (A) Denote any substitutions for consideration by the Owner or Owner's representative.

18. BRAND NAMES AND ACCEPTABLE ALTERNATIVES

- (B) The brand name(s) and model number(s) mentioned are used in this specification as a measure of quality and performance. Any brand or manufacture of acceptable or better quality and performance than that specified will be considered for acceptance by the Owner and/or Owner's representative at time of Bid. However, the Owner and/or Owner's representative reserves the right to reject and deny any substitution that it may, in its sole discretion, deem unequal, and the findings in this regard shall be accepted by the bidder as final and binding.

19. OWNER FURNISHED EQUIPMENT (O.F.E.)

- (A) Certain equipment may be identified as Owner Furnished (OFE or Existing). This Owner Furnished Equipment may presently be part of the Owner's system, or will be provided by the Owner, and will be delivered to the contractor's off-site construction facility, delivered to the contractor's on-site secured storage area, or installed on site by others, as appropriate, for incorporation into the system.
- (B) Clean and inspect the OFE, and notify the Owner and/or Owner's representative of damage or defect and the extent of repair and/or adjustment required to bring the OFE to original specification. Service OFE only if directed by the Owner and/or Owner's representative under the arrangements of a separate contract.
- (C) Connect, terminate and properly incorporate OFE into the proper system for its type. Reconnect any equipment disconnected for installation of new equipment. Verify proper operation and control functions as before removal.

20. INSURANCE

- (A) Insure materials against theft, vandalism, damage due to the elements, fire, etc., to their full value. Materials and the flawless condition of materials shall remain the responsibility of the contractor until acceptance of the system by the Owner.
- (B) Contractor shall be responsible for having in force the following insurance protection, this protection shall also be required for any subcontractors the Contractor may hire. Certificates of insurance shall be provided within five (5) calendar days upon request.

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

- a) Workers Compensation Coverage for all workers
- b) General, Automobile and Excess or Umbrella Liability Coverage
- c) General Liability Coverage – Occurrence Form Required
- d) Business Automobile Liability Coverage

21. WORK BY OTHERS (WBO, BY OTHERS) NOT IN CONTRACT (NIC)

- (A) As noted on drawings and in project documentation

22. BEST VALUE ITEMIZED PROPOSAL

- (A) The AV contractor shall furnish items meeting or exceeding the specifications, basis of design (make & models), items which are new and of the latest technology.
- (B) Where the contractor/bidder chooses, an alternate equal may be proposed to the items specified in the system designs.
- (C) Award will be based on best value to the **Walton County School District**, so proposers are advised to attach literature as required, on major components (alternate equal) proposed and may include a narrative explaining the merits of the component.
- (D) In addition to above, the AV contractor shall include a narrative at the beginning of his proposal describing the Project Approach, personal experience and overall relative value to the **Walton County School District**. This narrative should not exceed two double-spaced typewritten pages and may include any other points the proposer wishes to include.

PART 2 PRODUCTS**1. GENERAL**

- (A) All equipment, except OFE, and materials shall be new, latest version at time of bid, and shall conform to applicable UL, CSA, or ANSI provisions. Re-manufactured or “B” stock equipment will not be accepted without prior written consent from the Owner and/or Owner’s representative. Evidence of unauthorized re-manufactured, or “B” stock equipment on the project site will be deemed evidence of the contractor’s Failure to Perform the Work. Take care during installation to prevent scratches, dents, chips or disfiguration.
- (B) Regardless of the length or completeness of the descriptive paragraph herein, each device shall meet all of its published manufacturer’s specifications. Verify performance as required.
- (C) Asbestos Prohibition: No Asbestos containing materials shall be used under this section. The contractor shall insure that all materials incorporated in the project are Asbestos free unless specifically authorized in writing by the Owner and/or Owner’s representative.
- (D) All products listed below are listed for sole source information and establishment of the level of quality required by this project. Refer to the project drawings to establish quantities.
- (E) Install all rack mounted equipment with black steel 10-32, button head machine screws with plastic cup washers protecting equipment panel. Do not over torque, round out, strip or mar screws.

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

- (F) Provide and install an escutcheon ring around all pipes, poles and mounts that penetrate the ceiling. Color to be determined by owner.
- (G) Some rack-mounted equipment may require shaft locks, covers, or removal of knobs; provide and install during Acceptance Testing
- (H) Provide plastic permanent approved labels at the front and rear of all rack-mounted power amplification and signal processing equipment. Mount labels on the equipment rack or equipment chassis, and attach in a neat, plumb, and permanent manner. Embossed labels will not be accepted. Label equipment with schematic enumeration reference, and with descriptive information regarding its function or area it is serving. Similarly, provide permanent approved labels at the rear only of equipment mounted in furniture consoles.
- (I) All engraving shall be 1/8" block lettering unless noted otherwise. On dark panels or pushbuttons, letters shall be white. Letters shall be black on stainless steel, brushed natural aluminum plates or light-colored push buttons.
- (J) All accessories provided by equipment manufacturer shall retain the property of the owner. Collect, inventory and present to owner after Acceptance Testing.
- (K) Per IEC-268 standard, all XLR connectors not mounted on equipment shall be wired pin 2 hot (high), pin 3 (low), and pin 1 screen (shield).

2. AUDIO SYSTEMS MATERIALS

- (A) The materials or description of work in this section is typical for all systems in this section and all following specification sections.
- (B) Minor equipment items required to provide a fully functional system may not be noted or depicted on the schematic diagrams. Confirm your quote includes all required equipment documented in the system drawings and any required equipment not listed or shown. Report any missing or required equipment to the Consultant no less than 5 days prior to submitting your quote.
- (C) Mounting Hardware exposed to the weather shall be aluminum, brass, and epoxy painted galvanized steel, or stainless steel. Apply corrosion inhibitor to all threaded fittings. AV Contractor can sub the control system programming, training and support from a certified programmer/company.
- (D) AUDIO-VISUAL EQUIPMENT

Reference AV drawings for make, model and quantity of AV components. Notify AV Consultant of any discrepancies prior to submitting bids or shop drawings. Failure to notify does not constitute change order (add) approval.

Verify with system drawings, on-site inspection and requirements to provide a fully functional system(s).

Provide all materials, labor, training and miscellaneous equipment required.

Provide all display mounting devices; wall, ceiling, truss, etc. as required.

Provide all industry standard patch bays, fiber trays, patch cords and fiber link cables as required.

Provide all required network, audio, video, POE, POE+ and control cables as required.

Provide all digital system programming and GUI control design.

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

Provide 8 hours training of Walton County School District personnel.

3. CABLES AND CONTROL WIRING

- (A) All electrical conductors installed under this contract, except where otherwise specified, shall be soft drawn annealed stranded copper having a conductivity of not less than 98% of pure copper and shall be Anaconda, Triangle, General or approved equal for power, and Alpha, Belden, or West Penn for low voltage. Cables in plenum rated ceilings outside conduit shall be similar to those listed above, except plenum rated.
- (B) Homerun ALL Loudspeaker Cables, Reinforcement Loudspeaker Cables, Monitor and Fold-back Loudspeaker Cables. Cables between loudspeakers interconnect junction boxes and racks to be at least No. 12 AWG jacketed pair equal to West Penn CL3 rated product or as shown on the AV drawings.
- (C) Other Loudspeaker Cables to be at least No. 16 AWG jacketed pair equal to West Penn CL3 rated product or as shown on the AV drawings.
- (D) Line Level and Microphone Level Cables to be at least No. 22 AWG shielded jacketed pair equal to West Penn CL3-452 or CL3-291 or as shown on the AV drawings.
- (E) Multi-conductor High Resolution Video Cable shall be manufactured by Extron Electronics or West Penn CDT.
- (F) Coaxial Cable for video and RF transport shall be RG-6 quad-shielded with a solid copper center conductor. Any other cable if installed shall be removed and replaced with approved cable at no additional expense to the owner.
- (G) Low Voltage Control Cabling to be at least No.18AWG shielded CL3 rated cable, conductor count to be determined by application.
- (H) All cables that are not in conduit and are run through plenum rated spaces shall be plenum rated cable of the gauge and conductor count required for the application.

4. ADD OPTIONS

- (A) Provide pricing on the following add option for purchasing consideration by the Owner. Ensure pricing includes all necessary components, parts and labor to provide a fully functional system.

N/A

5. DELETE OPTIONS

- (A) Provide pricing on the following delete options for purchasing consideration by the Owner. Ensure pricing includes all necessary components, parts and labor to provide a fully functional system.

(1) Provide **Delete Options** if requested.

6. FABRICATION

- (A) Equipment Racks

a) Pre-assemble and test all racks before delivery to the job site, provide a written report on pre-assembly and test results to Owner/Owner's Representative.

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

- b) Verify the depth of each rack prior to assembly to ensure that mounted equipment will fit completely inside with the front and rear door closed.

7. SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL TESTS

(A) Use the following test equipment meeting the following minimum specifications to perform the Source Quality Control Tests and Field Quality Control Tests. Furnish the same test equipment for the performance of Acceptance Testing.

a) Digital Multimeter

- DC to 20 kHz bandwidth
- 300 V range, 100 mV resolution
- 10 megohms input impedance
- Direct reading of dBm across 600-ohm load
- DC resistance to .1 ohm
- Dual Trace Oscilloscope (*if required or requested*)
- 100 MHz bandwidth
- 1 mV/CM sensitivity
- Dual time base capability

b) Sine/Square Wave Generator

- 5 Hz to 5 kHz bandwidth
- Output level of 0 dBm with less than .5% THD

c) Impedance Bridge

- Range: 1 ohm to 1 megohm
- Three test frequencies, minimum, ranging from 250 Hz to 4 kHz

d) Sound Level Meter

- ANSI Type 2 with one-octave filter set

(B) Measurements

- a) Measure and record impedances curves for each loudspeaker line entering rack at 1000 Hz.
- b) Grounding System tests as described in the Technical Systems Specification.

8. MISCELLANEOUS CONNECTORS

(A) Certain connectors not identified in specific paragraphs, or indicated on the drawings, are specified by generic "type". At all times, match connector types used in adjacent project areas, including existing audio, television and audiovisual systems.

- a) D(*)F - Switchcraft D(*)F or Neutrik NC(*)F
- b) D(*)M - Switchcraft D(*)M or Neutrik NC(*)MP
- c) TRS-F - Switchcraft 121
- d) TRS-M - Switchcraft 280 or Neutrik NP3C-BAG
- e) TRS-FJ - Switchcraft 14B or Neutrik NJ3FP6C-BAG

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

- f) S4FC - Neutrik NL4FC
- g) S4MP - Neutrik NL4MP
- h) BNC - Canare BCJ-R
- i) BNCL - Canare BCP-S4
- j) BNC-R - Canare BCJ-RU

PART 3 EXECUTION

1. INSTALLATION

- (A) Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- (B) Execute all work in accordance with Part 1.3 References in this guideline, and with all local and state codes, ordinances, and regulations.
- (C) Install equipment according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- (D) Install all rack-mounted equipment with black steel 10-32, button head machine screws, using plastic cup washers to protect equipment panel.
- (E) Rack mounted equipment shall be mounted into racks and fully wired and tested, before delivery to job site. *(Does not apply when racks are existing)*
- (F) Install flat black blank panels in all unused rack positions. Use no larger than a two space panel.
- (G) Ensure that levels and impedances are properly matched between components.
- (H) Choose colors and finishes of all exposed and custom fabricated items and labels to blend in with the surroundings as approved by the Owner and/or Owner's representative.
- (I) Firmly and permanently attach electrical boxes, enclosures and permanent equipment to the building. Rigidly mounted equipment and devices shall be level, plumb and square.
 - a) Set "flush-mounted" units so that the face of the cover, bezel, or escutcheon is in the same plane as the surrounding finished surface.
 - b) Mount boxes, panels and trim so that there are no gaps, cracks, or obvious lines between the trim and the adjacent finished surface, and ready them to receive final finish, as applicable.
 - c) Provide access panels where needed to access boxes, panels and enclosures in walls or ceilings, as indicated and dimensioned on the shop drawings.
 - d) Finish panels to match the surrounding surfaces.
- (J) Supports and mounts for equipment to be installed over public areas shall be permanently attached to suitable building structure adequate to support the equipment loads with a safety factor of at least five.
- (K) Use attachment hardware with a minimum SAE Grade 5 load rating. Do not use formed eye-bolts or lag screws for support or connection of suspended equipment.
- (L) Verify capacity of mounting methods used in the work and associated liabilities. All attachments, attachment points, reinforcement requirements, and hardware selection shall be executed in accordance with the references in PART 1.

2. GROUNDING, SHIELDING AND ISOLATING

- (A) Mount and enclose all electrical and electronic equipment in metal enclosures, pedestals or

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

- equipment racks.
- (B) All junction boxes shall be bonded to the building safety ground.
 - (C) Use EMT type conduit for all wiring outside of equipment racks except plenum rated wiring above a lay-in ceiling, and outdoor conduits and raceways, where separate insulated ground wiring shall be supplied.
 - (D) Use flexible conduits and PVC fittings to provide insulated connections of the building electrical raceways to equipment racks. Mount all equipment racks at the job site in a manner that provides electrical isolation from the building structure and electrical raceways.
 - (E) Electronics racks and cabinets shall be bonded to the isolated ground technical power system only. Refer to Section 16770 for coordination and test with the Electrical Contractor.
 - (F) In the case where a metal equipment cabinet or rack is located on a suspended, concrete or bonded flooring system, the enclosure shall be placed on a Santoprene isolating mat with a minimum thickness of 3/32" and a Durometer of 80A,.

3. WIRING PRACTICES

- (A) Where specific instructions are not given, perform all wiring in strict adherence to standard broadcast and sound engineering practices in accordance with the references listed in PART 1.
- (B) Group all wiring into the following classifications by power level or signal type:
 - a) Microphone Level: less than -20 dBm.
 - b) Line Level Audio and DC Control Circuits: -20 dBm to +30 dBm.
 - c) Speaker Level: greater than +30 dBm.
 - d) AC Mains Power Circuits
- (C) Separate wiring of differing classifications by at least six (6) inches, wherever possible. Wherever lines of differing classification must come closer together than six (6) inches, cross them perpendicular to each other.
- (D) Neatly harness wires together within racks by power level classification using horizontal and vertical wiring supports as required. Rigidly support all wires within 6" of fixed connection points. Leave service loops of sufficient lengths to allow rack hinges or slides to fully extend to facilitate access to rear panel connectors from the front of each rack. Do not use self-adhesive anchor pads for support of cables.
- (E) Observe consistent polarity throughout the audio systems as follows:
 - a) Use only balanced differential inputs throughout all audio systems unless otherwise noted.
 - b) Use approved transformers where directed to reduce objectionable system noise to acceptable levels.
- (F) Exercise care in wiring to avoid damaging the cables and equipment. Use grommets around cutouts and knockouts where conduit or chase nipples are not installed. Use bushings where conduit terminal connections are exposed in or out of junction boxes.
- (G) Cut off unused wire ends approximately one-half inch (1/2") past the wire jacket. Fold them back over the jacket, and secure in place with heat-shrink tubing. In multi-conductor cables, preserve all unused conductors for future use. Failure to do so may result in replacement of cables at the contractor's expense.

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

- (H) Provide a minimum 6" service loop or enough cable to allow for three (3) subsequent terminations which ever is greater.
- (I) All cable jacket exposed stripped ends shall be dressed with the appropriate sized heat shrink.
- (J) All drain cables shall be protected from the jacket strip to the point of termination. Exposed bare wire is not acceptable.
- (K) Make all connections using rosin-core solder in conjunction with approved mechanical connectors unless other is specified by manufacturer. Connect microphone, control, and line level wiring through approved connectors. Connect speaker level wiring using approved terminal barrier strips. Mount all terminal devices on a non-conductive (electrically) rigid surface. Provide 10% spare terminals at each location. Label each terminal with a unique number.
- (L) Make all power amplifier output connections directly into amplifier binding posts, friction fit connectors are not acceptable. In the event the amplifier doesn't have binding posts, and has barrier strip connections, crimp and solder the appropriate fork lug to the cable and torque screws to manufacturer's specification.
- (M) All fiber optic cable splicing shall utilize the fusion splice method. The maximum allowable loss per fusion splice shall be 0.5 dB.

4. LABELING

- (A) Label products in a logical, legible, and permanent manner corresponding to the Drawings. Wording, format, style, color, and arrangement of text will be subject to the Owner and/or Owner's representative's approval. Submit samples and labeling schedule for approval. Labeling will be verified at final adjustment and equalization
- (B) Label all wall plates for input, output, and control receptacles as well as connector mounting plates in all boxes using 1/8" engraved lettering filled with black or contrasting paint, as approved.
- (C) Use engraved plastic labels similar to Lamicoid, squarely and permanently attached, to label the following:
 - a) Patch panel designation strips.
 - b) Front and back of all rack mounted equipment including controls
 - c) Barrier strips, terminals, transformers, switches, relays, volume controls, and similar devices.
- (D) Label pushbutton switches with engraved lettering filled with contrasting color paint.
- (E) Label all permanently installed wires on both ends with approved permanent clip-on type or sleeve type markers. Wrap-around adhesive labels will not be accepted unless completely covered with clear heat shrink tubing.
- (F) Label all portable equipment with engraved block letters using initials and/or words. Label all portable cables similarly with printed heat-shrinkable tags located 12 inches from the male connector end. Verify lettering through the Owner and/or Owner's representative prior to engraving or printing.
- (G) Label access panels and backboards with designations corresponding to the drawings. Where devices are concealed above access ceilings, provide permanent lamicoid labels, on the ceiling supports corresponding to the drawings in finishes and sizes approved by the Owner and/or Owner's representative.

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

5. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL TESTS

- (A) Maintain a competent supervisor and supporting technical personnel, acceptable to the Owner and/or Owner's representative during the entire installation.
- (B) Before connecting any equipment to AC power outlets, measure the AC voltages between hot, neutral, and ground and verify correct voltage and polarity of AC power. Equipment damaged by connecting to improperly wired outlets shall be replaced at no addition cost to the Owner.
- (C) Upon completion of the system installation, it shall be the responsibility of the contractor to perform the necessary adjustments and balancing of all signals and amplifier gain, and other level controls to ensure proper system operation. The Owner shall physically inspect the system and/or Owner's representative to assure that all equipment is installed in a neat and workmanlike manner as called for by the plans and specifications.
- (D) Determine the proper sequence of energizing systems to minimize the risk of damage.
- (E) After successfully energizing the systems, make all preliminary adjustments and document the setting of all controls, parameters of all corrective networks, voltages at key system interconnection points, gains and losses, as applicable.
- (F) Verify the performance parameters of the individual systems following established professional procedures, in addition to those specified herein.
- (G) Measure and record impedance curves of all loudspeaker lines at amplifier rack terminal barrier strips prior to connecting to amplifier outputs.
- (H) Apply a sine-wave sweep signal to each loudspeaker system, sweeping from 50 Hz to 5000 Hz at a sound pressure level which is 10 dB below the loudspeaker's rated electrical input power. Listen for rattles or objectionable noise and correct if apparent.
- (I) Using a +4 dBm sine-wave input, set controls of each component to produce a +4 dBm sine-wave output. Under these conditions (unity gain), the presence of any waveform, distortion, interference signals, or oscillations shall be unacceptable.
- (J) Check for proper polarity of ceiling mounted loudspeakers by applying music program or pink noise to each system and walking through the transition areas of coverage from one loudspeaker to the next. Transition should be smooth with no apparent shifting of source from one loudspeaker to the next.
- (K) Drive each ceiling distributed loudspeaker system with one octave of pink noise centered at 1000 Hz at a sound pressure level which is at least 10 dB above the ambient noise. Adjust power amplifiers to provide uniform distribution of sound throughout the seating areas within a tolerance of ± 3 dB. Use an ANSI Type 2 sound level meter set for slow meter damping to take readings at seated ear height.
- (L) Individually drive each reinforcement loudspeaker with one octave of pink noise centered at 1000 Hz at a sound pressure level, which is at least 10 dB above the ambient noise. Adjust power amplifiers to provide an equal sound pressure level from each loudspeaker on its aiming axis in the seating area. Use an ANSI Type 2 sound level meter set for slow meter damping to take readings at seated ear height.
- (M) Upon completion of initial tests and adjustments, notify the Owner and/or Owner's representative the system is ready for final equalization and acceptance testing.

6. TEST EQUIPMENT

- (A) Provide the following test equipment on site during construction and available to the Owner and/or Owner's representative during final adjustment and acceptance testing:

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

- a) Digital Multi-meter
- b) 100 MHz Dual Trace Storage Oscilloscope
- c) Video Test Pattern Generator (*XGA, Component, YC and Composite*)
- d) Sine/Square Wave Generator
- e) Impedance Bridge
- f) Sound Level Meter - ANSI Type 2 with one-octave filter set

7. FINAL ADJUSTMENT AND EQUALIZATION

- (A) Schedule a time for the Owner and/or Owner's representative to perform the Final Adjustment and Equalization. Notify the Owner and/or Owner's representative and Consultant at least twenty one (21) days in advance.
- (B) Furnish project lead installer to assist the Owner and/or Owner's representative during the Final Adjustment and Equalization.
- (C) Audio Systems acceptance tests shall employ an approved sound level meter, and spectrum analyzer and digital multi-meter to be provided by the contractor. Measurements shall be made at the combined output of the amplifiers and at selected locations throughout the facility.
- (D) Video Systems acceptance tests shall employ an approved video test pattern generator.
- (E) Record final settings on all equipment and submit with contract closeout documents.

8. CLEAN UP

- (A) Remove all unnecessary tools and equipment, unused materials, packing materials, and debris from each area where Work has been completed on a daily basis unless designated for storage.
- (B) Clean all areas around system equipment and be sure that the inside of each equipment rack is free of cut wire ends, solder splatters, and other debris.

9. DEMONSTRATIONS AND TRAINING

- (A) Furnish a technician who is qualified to operate and maintain the systems specified in this Section to provide 8 hours of instruction to the Owner designated personnel regarding the features and proper operation of the systems.
- (B) If requested by the Owner, furnish the same technician/instructor during the first formal use of each system to further instruct and assist Owner personnel in system operation.
- (C) Upon completion of the Work, the Owner and/or Owner's representative may elect to verify test data as part of the acceptance procedure. Provide personnel and equipment, at the convenience of the Owner and/or Owner's representative, to reasonably demonstrate system performance and to assist with such tests without additional cost to the Owner and/or Owner's representative.

10. FINAL PROCEDURES

- (A) Perform any and all remedial work to correct inadequate performance or unacceptable conditions of, or relating to any of this work, as determined by the Owner and/or Owner's representative, at no additional expense to the Owner and/or Owner's representative.
- (B) Furnish all portable and loose equipment to the Owner along with complete documentation of

WALTHALL & ASSOCIATES INC

- the materials presented. All portable equipment shall be presented in the original manufacturers packing, complete with all included instructions and miscellaneous manuals and documents.
- (C) Test Reports and Certificates:
- a) Document all acceptance testing, calibration and correction procedures described herein with the following information:
 - b) Parameters measured and their values, including values measured prior to calibration or correction, as applicable.
 - c) Parameters associated with calibration or corrective networks, components, or devices.
 - d) All software shall have certified backups and escrow provisions reviewed with the Owner and/or Owner's representative and equipment supplier.
 - e) Provide all operational software, configuration files, source code, and final settings and adjustment, in Compact Disc format, sleeved in the final documentation binder. The configurations, and source code become the sole property of the owner at project completion
 - f) A list of all equipment, indicating manufacturer, model number, serial number and equipment location (rack/room number). Update following acceptance testing if modified.
- (D) Present, review and clarify all materials to the Owner and/or Owner's representative and/or operating personnel and fully demonstrate the operation and maintenance of the systems, equipment, and devices specified herein.
- (E) Check, inspect, and if necessary, adjust all systems, equipment, devices and components specified, at the Owner's convenience, approximately thirty (30) days after the Owner acceptance of this work.

END OF SECTION



1 **SECTION 28 10 00 – ACCESS CONTROL & INTRUSION ALARM SYSTEM**

2
3
4 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

5
6 1.1 SCOPE

- 7
8 A. This specification delineates the requirements for a complete Electronic Access Control with
9 integrated Intrusion Alarm System as specified herein and as indicated on the drawings.
10
11 B. The Access Control System Contractor shall also be the IP Security Camera System Integrator.
12 See Section 27 00 50 – IP SECURITY CAMERA SYSTEM.
13
14 C. The scope is to provide a complete and warranted system ready for full operation in
15 accordance with the contract documents and additional direction provided by the Owner to the
16 Access Control System Contractor. The installation shall include all accessories and
17 appurtenances required to provide a complete and fully operational system. Any materials not
18 specifically mentioned in these specifications or not shown on the drawings but required for a
19 complete and finished installation shall be furnished and installed at no additional cost to the
20 Owner.
21
22 D. Refer to the access control and intrusion alarm system drawings, electrical drawings,
23 architectural drawings and door hardware specifications for additional information regarding the
24 scope of related work for the General Contractor and each subcontractor. Coordinate all work
25 closely with the Owner's Project Manager, General Contractor/Construction Manager, Electrical
26 Contractor, Structured Cabling System Contractor, and door hardware provider.
27

28 1.2 ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM ~~CONTRACTOR ALLOWANCE~~

- 29
30 A. The General Contractor shall include a complete Access Control System with integrated
31 intrusion alarm and lockdown for this project provided by a specialized Access Control System
32 Contractor (ACSC).
33

34 The Owner has standardized on iPRO Monitorcast for a multi-site web-based access control
35 system management, monitoring and control system.
36

37 The Access Control System Contractor shall be iPRO Monitorcast certified prior to bids, shall
38 be well experienced in the integration of an Access Control System of the type and size
39 required for this project into Monitorcast, shall meet all additional qualifications stated in the
40 specifications and drawings, and shall be approved in advance of bids by the Owner. General
41 Contractor coordinate with and obtain list of approved integrators from the Owner prior to bids.
42

43 The scope of work shall include the Access Control System with intrusion alarm and lockdown
44 complete with all work indicated on the drawings and described in the specifications, all work
45 described in the Access Control System Contractor's cost proposal and associated statement
46 of work, all other materials, equipment and work required for a complete system, all wiring and
47 cabling (except as indicated below for category 6 network cabling by the SCSC), and all
48 programming and setup required to make the system fully operational and functional to the
49 satisfaction of the owner.
50

51 Related work to be provided by others but not included in the scope of work for the Access
52 Control System Contractor shall include conduit for all Access Control System wiring and
53 cabling and all power and grounding required for the Access Control System. The Electrical
54 Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating the associated conduit, power and grounding
55 work with the Access Control System Contractor - but the scope of conduit, power and
56 grounding work shall not be less than that described on the drawings. The SCSC shall provide



1 Category 6 cabling to each Access Control System panel as
2 indicated on the drawings.

- 3
- 4 B. The Access Control System for this project shall be fully integrated into the Owner's
5 Monitorcast system by the ACSC as required for a complete and fully functional system and as
6 directed by the Owner.
- 7
- 8 C. The existing Monitorcast system shall be programmed by the ACSC to fully incorporate the
9 Access Control System with intrusion alarm and lockdown under this project. See drawings for
10 additional requirements.
- 11
- 12 D. The Access Control System Contractor shall be thoroughly knowledgeable in the installation
13 and setup of all access control system materials and equipment required by the bid documents
14 and as required for a complete and fully operational system.
- 15
- 16 E. The Access Control System Contractor shall provide all wiring for Access Control System with
17 intrusion alarm and lockdown, except that Category 6 cabling to the Access Control System for
18 emergency notification and Category 6 cabling to Access Control System Panels for Ethernet
19 Network interfaces shall be provided by the Structured Cabling System Contractor under
20 Section 27 00 00.
- 21
- 22 F. The Access Control System Contractor shall include but not be limited to the following sub-
23 systems and all related work:
- 24
- 25 Access Control System
 - 26 Intrusion Alarm System (using door position switches and request to exit in electrified locksets
27 and exit devices)
 - 28 Tie all secure doors to school lockdown system
 - 29 All life safety and accessibility interfaces
 - 30 Remote Notification Interfaces
 - 31 All other work indicated on the drawings and all other work required for a complete Access
32 Control and Intrusion Alarm System
- 33
- 34 G. The Access Control System Contractor shall be responsible for providing a final detailed design
35 for each sub-system incorporating the systems indicated schematically on the drawings with all
36 additional components and features required for complete systems based on Owner standards
37 and specific direction for this project.
- 38
- 39 H. The Access Control System Contractor project manager shall periodically visit the site and
40 inspect the work in progress. Project manager site visits shall be made not less than once per
41 week when the job is in active progress. The project manager shall prepare a field report for
42 each site visit for submission to the Owner. The project manager shall sign off on all system
43 test results.

44

45 1.3 EQUIPMENT PROVIDER

46

47 The contractor shall procure all Access Control System equipment from a factory authorized
48 reseller in the geographical area of the project for continued support.

49

50 1.4 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

51

52 Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions
53 and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

54

55 Electrical Specification Sections regarding conduit apply to work under this section, with the
56 additions and modifications specified herein and on the drawings. The special requirements



1 indicated on the drawings and in this specification section for Access
 2 Control System conduit shall take precedence over any requirements specified in Electrical
 3 Specification Sections.

4
 5 All conduit and related work shall be provided by the project electrical contractor using
 6 tradesmen who are skilled and experienced in the types of conduit installations indicated in the
 7 bid documents. See drawings for conduit requirements.

8
 9 Refer to Section 27 00 00 Communications Structured Cabling System for related work by the
 10 Communications Structured Cabling System Contractor who shall provide a Category 6
 11 connection to the Access Control System for emergency notification and a Category 6 Ethernet
 12 network connection to each Access Control System panel.

14 1.5 EXAMINATION OF SITES AND TOTAL SYSTEM RESPONSIBILITY

15
 16 Prior to providing a proposal for this work, each bidder shall examine the drawings,
 17 specifications, and other contract documents to inform himself/herself thoroughly regarding any
 18 and all conditions and requirements that may in any manner affect the work to be performed
 19 under the contract.

20
 21 Any additional equipment and accessories required for the installation and operation of the
 22 complete operating system not specifically required by the bid documents shall be provided and
 23 the cost borne by the contractor.

24
 25 The contractor remains the owner of all equipment provided under this contract and is
 26 responsible for all risk of loss or damage to the equipment from any source up to and including
 27 the date and time of final acceptance by the Owner. Upon the date of commencement of the
 28 warranty period, the Owner shall assume full ownership of the equipment.

30 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

31
 32 Materials shall be new and shall be the best of their respective kinds. All work shall be
 33 accomplished in a workmanlike manner in keeping with the best practices and highest
 34 standards of the Electronic Access Control & Panic Alarm System industry.

35
 36 Protect materials and equipment from physical or environmental damage during shipping,
 37 storage and installation. Equipment and materials shall be received at the site in new condition
 38 and shall be maintained in new condition throughout the installation process. Damaged or
 39 deteriorated equipment and materials will not be acceptable. The Contractor shall be
 40 responsible for the safety and condition of all materials and equipment, whether stored or
 41 installed, until final acceptance by the Engineer and the Owner.

43 1.7 CODES AND STANDARDS

44
 45 All work done under this contract shall be performed in accordance with the most recent issue
 46 of the following codes and standards. Where there is a perceived conflict between a standard
 47 and the contract documents, the Contractor shall perform the work as directed by the Engineer.
 48 Where no specific method or form of construction is called for in the Contract Documents, the
 49 Contractor shall comply with code requirements when carrying out such work.

51 A. Codes:

- 52
- 53 a. International Building Code
- 54 b. National Electrical Code (NFPA 70)
- 55 c. National Electrical Safety Code (NEC)

56



1 B. Standards: All electrical materials, installation and systems shall
 2 meet the requirements of the following standards, including the latest addenda and
 3 amendments:

- 4
 5 a. American National Standard Institutes (ANSI)
 6 b. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE).
 7 c. National Electrical Manufacturer's Associations (NEMA).
 8 d. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
 9 e. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA).
 10 f. Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. (UL).
 11 g. Electronic Industry Association (EIA).
 12 h. Telecommunication Industry Association (TIA).
 13 i. American Society of Industrial Security (ASIS)

14
 15 1.8 SUBMITTALS

16
 17 A. Submit three copies of the manufacturer's catalog data and pre-installation drawings to the
 18 Engineer for approval prior to commencing work or ordering materials. Receive approval of the
 19 Engineer in writing for each item of submittals prior to commencing work.

20
 21 B. Manufacturer's Catalog Data: Submit the producer's standard descriptive data sheets for each
 22 type of product being provided. Provide products in accordance with the drawings. Provide
 23 complete data sheets bearing the printed logo or trademark of the manufacturer. Mark each
 24 copy of the data sheets for the specific product being provided with an identifying mark, arrow,
 25 or highlighting. Submittals without such identifying marks shall be rejected without comment for
 26 resubmittal.

27
 28 Submit the following items and all other items required for a complete system:

- 29
 30 a. Cabling, each type
 31 b. Cabling connectors
 32 c. Card Reader, each type, with all accessories including enclosures
 33 d. All card reader mounting brackets and other accessories
 34 e. Access Control System panels, cards and controllers
 35 f. Access Control System power supplies with dual battery backup
 36 g. Access Control System surge protectors (line and signal)
 37 h. Access Control System headend
 38 i. Fire-stopping, each type (each UL listed Assembly)
 39 j. All other materials and equipment indicated on the drawings to be furnished under this
 40 section, whether specifically listed here or not.
 41 k. All other materials and equipment required for complete and fully functional system in
 42 accordance with direction from the Owner, whether indicated elsewhere or not.
 43 l. All other information indicated on the contract drawings, and all additional information
 44 required by the Engineer.

45
 46 1.9 CONTRACTOR'S RECORD DOCUMENTS

47
 48 The Access Control System Contractor shall maintain a full set of contract documents at the job
 49 site at all times, consisting of specifications, drawings, addenda, pre-installation submittals,
 50 change orders, and engineering directives. The record documents shall be updated by the
 51 Contractor, in red pen and on a daily basis, to show the following:

- 52
 53 a. Final location of all secure door power supplies.
 54 b. Final location of all Card Readers.
 55 c. Final locations of all access control system panels and power supplies.
 56 d. Final location of all other system components.



- 1 e. Any changes to the work authorized by the Architect/Engineer.
 2 f. Any other pertinent information that may be of value to the Owner in operating and
 3 maintaining the system.
 4

5 The Contractor's record documents shall be available for viewing by the Engineer or the Owner
 6 at the site at any time and shall be presented and reviewed by the Contractor at each
 7 construction progress meeting. The record documents shall be clearly marked "Record Set",
 8 shall be kept in a protected location, and shall not be used for general construction purposes.
 9 The record documents shall be provided to the Engineer at the close of the project.
 10

11 The Engineer will provide a full set of Adobe Acrobat *.PDF format drawings to the Contractor.
 12 The Contractor shall be required to annotate (redline) the Adobe Acrobat *.PDF format
 13 drawings using Adobe Acrobat to reflect all information recorded in the field. The Contractor
 14 shall provide a copy of the Adobe Acrobat *.PDF files on CD with each set of O&M Manuals
 15 and shall provide an additional copy on CD to the Engineer. The Contractor shall also provide
 16 11"x17" laser prints of Adobe Acrobat *.PDF drawings in each O&M Manual. Electronic files of
 17 the Engineer's AutoCAD floor plan drawings will be provided to the Contractor upon request.
 18
 19

20 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

21 2.1 GENERAL

22 All materials, equipment, and devices shall be new and unused, of current manufacture and of
 23 the highest grade, free from defects.
 24

25 All products shall be the manufacturer and model or part number specified. Bid shall be for
 26 new equipment only. Newly manufactured (containing used or rebuilt parts), remanufactured,
 27 rebuilt, reconditioned, newly remanufactured, used, shopworn, demonstrator or prototype
 28 equipment is not acceptable and will be rejected. If required by the Engineer, the Contractor
 29 shall provide a written certification from the manufacturer referencing the serial number each
 30 item of equipment and stating that the equipment is new.
 31
 32

33 All materials, equipment and devices shall, as a minimum, meet the requirements of UL where
 34 UL standards are established for those items, and the requirements of NFPA 70.
 35
 36

37 All like items of material or equipment shall be the same product of the same manufacturer.
 38

39 All materials and equipment shall be a standard catalogued product of a manufacturer regularly
 40 engaged in the manufacture of similar products.
 41

42 Where a model or part number is indicated in error for any reason, the Contractor shall verify
 43 the intent of the Engineer prior to providing a bid proposal and shall provide the product
 44 intended by the Engineer. Where a manufacturer has updated or improved a product
 45 subsequent to issuance of the bid documents by the Engineer, the Contractor shall provide the
 46 updated or improved product at no additional cost to the Owner.
 47

48 2.2 PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

49 To ensure a uniform basis for bidding, and to standardize the Owner's facilities, base all bids on
 50 the particular systems, equipment and materials specified.
 51
 52

53 See drawings for all product requirements not indicated in these specifications. The Structured
 54 Cabling Contractor shall be responsible for providing and installing all components indicated in
 55 these specifications and on the drawings, unless specifically indicated to be provided by others.
 56



1
2 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3
4 3.1 GENERAL

5
6 The installation shall be in strict accordance with all applicable codes and standards, the
7 respective manufacturer's written recommendations, and the contract drawings and these
8 specifications.

9
10 All materials, equipment, and devices shall be new and unused, of current manufacture and of
11 the highest grade, free from defects. Workmanship shall be of the highest grade in accordance
12 with modern practice.

13
14 The installed system shall be neat, clean, and well organized in appearance. Provide working
15 clearances for normal system operation, reconfiguration and repair.

16
17 The Access Control System Contractor shall test each cable as required by NEC and all
18 requirements of the cable manufacturer and the manufacturer of connected equipment for
19 operational and warranty compliance. Document results of testing and submit to Engineer for
20 review and approval. The test log shall include the system component identifier, the test date,
21 the initials of the technician who tested the cable, and the test results.

22
23 All equipment mounting heights and locations shall be in accordance with the Americans with
24 Disabilities Act (ADA). Coordinate with the Architect.

25
26 All wiring shall be terminated on terminal blocks – each wire shall be terminated using crimp on
27 ring style lug connectors. Wire nuts or B-style crimp on connectors are not acceptable.

28
29 Run a single jacketed cable containing all necessary individually insulated cables plus 25%
30 minimum spare of each conductor size to operate the access control system with all related
31 functions at each secure door. The cable shall be continuous with no splices from the serving
32 Access Control System Panel to the point of connection at the secure door served.

33
34 3.1.1 Conduit Installation:

35
36 See drawings for basic conduit requirements.

37
38 3.1.2 Cabling Installation:

[See Allstate Construction's bid package.](#)

39
40 All Access Control System cabling shall be run continuously in conduit without exception.

41
42 Do not pull cables in conduits until plastic insulating bushings have been installed. Cables
43 installed in conduits without plastic insulating bushings shall be removed and replaced with new
44 cables. Rack conduits and run together wherever possible.

45
46 Provide wire management devices on backboards and racks as indicated and as required to
47 facilitate organized routing of cables and patch cords. Bundle cables together behind racks
48 and fan out to points of termination. The finished installation shall meet the approval of the
49 Engineer for overall quality and neatness of appearance.

50
51 The Contractor, in providing a bid for the system in accordance with the contract documents,
52 agrees to install all cabling in the conduit and wireway paths indicated in the contract
53 documents, or to provide larger conduit and wireway paths as he deems necessary, at no
54 additional cost to the Owner. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for any and all damage
55 to cabling that may occur during the installation and shall replace any damaged cabling with
56 new cabling of the type specified for the application.



1 Firestop all conduit penetrations of all above-grade floor assemblies, all walls that extend to the
 2 underside of the above-grade floor or roof deck above and all walls identified on the
 3 architectural or life safety plans as being fire rated – coordinate with General Contractor/CM.
 4 Accomplish firestopping using UL classified systems with fire rating equal to or greater than the
 5 fire rating of the floor or wall assembly penetrated. Firestop systems shall be 3M, Nelson, STI,
 6 Hilti or Engineer approved equal. Install in strict accordance with the manufacturer's printed
 7 instructions and the conditions of the UL approval for each firestop system used.
 8
 9

10 All conduit penetrations of walls that do not extend to the underside of the roof or above-grade
 11 floor deck above and not identified as fire or smoke rated on the architectural or life safety
 12 plans shall be sleeved and the wall opening repaired with materials to match the wall
 13 construction.
 14

15 3.2 CARD READER LOCATIONS

16 Card Reader locations indicated on the drawings are approximate – see “Card Reader Location
 17 Note” on the drawings.
 18
 19

20 The General Contractor shall schedule meetings at the site prior to commencement of any
 21 installation activities by the Access Control System Contractor and the system rough-in provider
 22 and additionally as construction proceeds to coordinate the exact location of each card reader
 23 prior to installation. The meetings shall include the General Contractor, the Owner's Project
 24 Manager, the Access Control System Contractor, and the Electrical Contractor. Final card
 25 reader locations may be placed up to 10 feet away from locations shown without additional cost
 26 to the Owner. Particular attention shall be given to coordination of card reader locations relative
 27 to clear visibility, easy user access, and open direct path to controlled door after unlock.
 28

29 The Access Control System Contractor shall install the card readers in accordance with the
 30 manufacturer's printed installation instructions and the mounting requirements indicated on the
 31 drawings, except that final reader locations shall be determined as indicated above. All card
 32 readers shall be flush mounted.
 33

34 After final card reader locations are determined and the readers are mounted and wired the
 35 Access Control System Contractor shall test the operation of each reader with the Owner's
 36 Project Manager and IT personnel.
 37

38 3.3 SYSTEM SETUP AND PROGRAMMING

39 All required headend equipment installation, setup and programming shall be provided by the
 40 Access Control System Contractor in accordance with established Owner standards or as
 41 directed by the Owner.
 42
 43

44 The Access Control System Contractor shall also complete all work related required for the full
 45 application of the Owner standard Monitorcast Security Management System to the Access
 46 Control Systems for this project as directed by and to the satisfaction of the Owner's Project
 47 Manager and IT personnel.
 48

49 In general use all setup features provided by the manufacturer to provide the best system
 50 operation under all conditions of use. Describe to the Owner all available features of the system
 51 and provide setup as directed by the Owner and for the best overall operation and performance
 52 of the system as a whole for the intended purpose.
 53

54 Assign each secure door a schedule and assign door types. Setup time schedules and
 55 operating modes for each unique secure door type. Coordinate operating modes for each
 56 secure door type at different times of the day, week and year in detail with the Owner.



1 Coordinate regularly scheduled events as well special events. Setup
 2 and program system accordingly for access to the facility by use of card readers using Owner
 3 issued employee proximity cards. Assign credentials provided by the Owner and provide all
 4 related information entry into software if so directed by the Owner.

5
 6 Setup system user interface stations selected by the Owner for through the facility LAN and
 7 Web. Setup user/host authentication, user access and user priorities.

8
 9 Setup Intrusion Alarm System for alarm notification as directed by Owner to include all methods
 10 and recipients of local and remote notification as directed by the Owner.

11
 12 Coordinate all network interfaces with the Owner's IT personnel. Contact the Owner's project
 13 manager to schedule meetings with required personnel.

14 3.4 SYSTEM VERIFICATION AND OWNER'S ACCEPTANCE TEST

15
 16 Proof of performance of the Access Control System to include a full system operational test
 17 shall be conducted in the presence of the Owner's Project Manager and Owner personnel. As
 18 part of proof of performance demonstrate system operation to Owner's personnel.

19
 20 The Contractor shall conduct a final inspection and pretest all equipment and system features
 21 required for project. Contractor shall correct any deficiencies discovered as the result of the
 22 inspection and pre-test.

23
 24 The Contractor shall submit a request for Owner Acceptance Test in writing to the Owner's
 25 Project Manager, no less than fourteen days prior to the requested test date. The request for
 26 Acceptance Test shall be accompanied by a certification from Contractor that all work is
 27 complete and has been pre-tested, and that all corrections have been made.

28
 29 During Acceptance Test, Contractor shall demonstrate all equipment and system features to
 30 the Owner. The Contractor shall remove covers, open wiring connections, operate equipment,
 31 and perform other reasonable work as requested.

32
 33 Any portions of the work found to be deficient or not in compliance with the Drawings and
 34 Specifications will be rejected. The Contractor shall promptly correct all deficiencies and submit
 35 a request in writing to Owner's Project Manager for a follow-up Acceptance Test.

36 3.5 CHECKOUT

37
 38 Subsequent to testing and verification and prior to the first day of normal operation following
 39 start-up, the contractor shall be responsible for checking out the system to verify that it is
 40 operating properly and performing in compliance with the equipment manufacturer's
 41 specifications and the specifications. The checkout shall include a System Inspection Checklist
 42 to fully document checkout.

43 3.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

44
 45 The Access Control System Contractor shall complete the installation of the Access Control
 46 System prior to the scheduled date for Substantial Completion to allow sufficient time for Owner
 47 Training and final system setup such that the Access Control System shall be fully operational
 48 and ready for use on the date of Substantial Completion.

49 3.7 FINAL COMPLETION

50
 51 Following completion of the Substantial Completion punch list items and the initial performance
 52 period, the contractor shall notify the Engineer. The Engineer will conduct a final completion
 53
 54
 55
 56



inspection. Upon determining that all punch list items have been satisfactorily completed, the Engineer will declare the project finally complete. For the purposes of this contract the terms Final Completion, Final Acceptance, and Final System Acceptance are synonymous.

3.8 DOCUMENTATION

A. Red-Line Record Documents:

Refer to paragraph "CONTRACTOR'S RECORD DOCUMENTS". Provide Record Documents, updated in red pen, to accurately reflect the finished installation.

Submit Red-Line Record Documents over to the Engineer at the Substantial Completion Inspection. Provide transmittal letter addressed to the Engineer indicating that the Contractor is providing one (1) set of Red-Line Record Documents.

B. Annotated Adobe *.PDF A-Built Drawings:

The Engineer will provide a full set of Adobe Acrobat *.PDF format As-Built Drawings to the Contractor. The Contractor shall be required to annotate (redline) the *.PDF format drawings using Adobe Acrobat to reflect all changes recorded in the field as required by the paragraph "CONTRACTOR'S RECORD DOCUMENTS". The Contractor shall provide a copy of the *.PDF files on CD with each set of O&M Manuals and shall provide an additional copy on CD to the Engineer. The Contractor shall also provide 11"x17" hardcopy laser prints of *.PDF drawings in each O&M Manual.

C. O & M Manuals:

The contractor shall provide operating and maintenance manuals covering all equipment and materials furnished under this contract. The O & M manuals shall contain all information necessary for the operation, maintenance, replacement, installation, and parts procurement for the System. The information shall include detailed documentation equipment configuration. A complete recommended spare parts inventory list shall be included with the lead time and expected frequency of use for each part clearly identified.

A quantity of three (3) 8-1/2" x 11" loose leaf 3-ring binders with clear vinyl overlay designed to receive identification inserts shall be provided. The manuals shall contain the following sections:

- a. Cut sheets for all equipment.
- b. Detailed wiring diagrams and panel drawings
- b. Installation instructions.
- c. Operating and maintenance instructions.
- d. Recommended spare parts inventory list.
- e. User's Guides and technical reference guides.
- f. Copy of one year warranty.

Provide a list with name, address, contact person, phone number, and fax number for two separate contacts with name and telephone number for warranty service and the manufacturer of each item of equipment with telephone number and sources of supply for parts.

3.9 USER TRAINING

Subsequent to Substantial Completion but prior to Final Completion, the Contractor shall provide on-site training to Owner personnel on the operational use of the Electronic Access Control & Panic Alarm System and the all related equipment.



1 The Access Control System Contractor shall schedule a time to
2 provide not less than two (2) hours of formal training to Owner personnel on the Access Control
3 System, divided into two (1) hour sessions, one prior to building occupancy and the second
4 following building occupancy at a time directed by the Owner. See drawings.

5
6 Access Control System training shall include a "walk-through" of the systems to identify and
7 locate closets, panels, and important system components, a discussion of overall system
8 concepts and configuration, specific instruction in labeling, a review of the as-built drawings, a
9 review of the system verification and acceptance documentation, guidelines for basic
10 trouble-shooting and detailed instructions in the operation of all aspects of the Electronic
11 Access Control & Lockdown/Panic Alarm System and all related equipment.

12
13 3.10 WARRANTY

14
15 All equipment including material used in the installation thereof shall be warranted for one year
16 by the Access Control System Contractor against mechanical, electrical, and workmanship
17 defects. In the event defects become evident within the warranty period, the Contractor shall
18 repair or replace the defective parts and materials at no additional cost to the Owner. The
19 warranty period shall start with the date of final acceptance. The warranty shall apply to all
20 equipment provided under the provisions of this contract regardless of the location. Warranties
21 submitted with bids, either appearing separately or included in pre-printed literature and price
22 lists, shall not be acceptable and provisions herein take precedence.

23
24
25
26 **END OF SECTION 28 10 00**



1 **SECTION 29 01 00 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY**
2 **COMMUNICATIONS**

3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 5 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
6 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 7 B. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 28 Specification Sections.

8 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 9 A. Section includes basic requirements for electronic safety and security systems.

10 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 11 A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" unless otherwise further
12 described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in
13 nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and
14 having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 15 B. Furnish: Supply and deliver to project site, ready for subsequent requirements.
- 16 C. Install: Operations at project site, including unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing,
17 anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar
18 requirements.
- 19 D. Provide: Furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use.
- 20 E. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of
21 subsequent work.
- 22 F. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after
23 installation of subsequent work.
- 24 G. Concealed Work: Work hidden from view, including inside chases, furred spaces, or above
25 ceilings.
- 26 H. Exposed Work: Work open to view, including inside mechanical and equipment rooms.

27 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 28 A. General:
- 29 1. It is the intent of the plans and specifications to obtain a complete, operable and
30 satisfactory installation.



- 1 2. All materials shall be new, be properly labeled and/or identified and be in full compliance
2 with the contract documents.
- 3 3. All work shall comply with applicable Codes and Standards.
- 4 4. Manufacturer's model names and numbers used in these specifications are subject to
5 change per manufacturer's action. Contractor shall therefore verify them with
6 manufacturer's representative before ordering any product or equipment
- 7 B. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment manufactured in the U.S.A. Where two or
8 more units of the same type or class of equipment are required provide units of a single
9 manufacturer.
- 10 **1.5 CODES AND STANDARDS**
- 11 A. Perform work in accordance with the following codes and any applicable statutes, ordinances,
12 codes, and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.
- 13 1. ASME
- 14 a. ASME A17.1 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators - 2019
- 15 2. Occupational Safety and Health Regulations (OSHA).
- 16 3. National Fire Codes
- 17 a. NFPA 1 Fire Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
- 18 b. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code – 2020
- 19 c. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code - 2019
- 20 d. NFPA 75 Standard for the Fire Protection of Information Technology
21 Equipment – 2020
- 22 e. NFPA 76 Standard for the Fire Protection of Telecommunications Facilities –
23 2020
- 24 f. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
- 25 4. Florida Building Code, 2023 Edition
- 26 a. Building Code
- 27 b. Energy Conservation Code
- 28 c. Mechanical Code
- 29 d. Plumbing Code
- 30 e. Fuel Gas Code
- 31 f. Accessibility Code
- 32 5. Florida Statutes
- 33 a. Chapter 471 Engineering
- 34 b. Chapter 533.80 Building Construction Standards; Florida Building Code -
35 Enforcement
- 36 6. Florida Administrative Code
- 37 a. Chapter 9B-7 Florida Building Commission Handicapped Accessibility
38 Standards
- 39 b. Chapter 61C-5 Florida Elevator Safety Code
- 40 c. Chapter 61G15-32 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning
41 the Design of Fire Protection Systems



- 1 d. Chapter 61G15-33 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning
2 the Design of Electrical Systems
3 e. Chapter 69A-3 Fire Prevention – General Provisions
4 f. Chapter 69A-47 Uniform Fire Safety Standards for Elevators
5 g. Chapter 69A-60 The Florida Fire Prevention Code
6 7. ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings (ADAAG)
- 7 B. Resolve, in writing, any code violation discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior
8 to bidding. After award of the contract, make any correction or addition necessary for
9 compliance with applicable codes at no additional cost to Owner.
- 10 C. The Contractor shall include in the Work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials,
11 services, apparatus, and drawings required to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances,
12 rules, and regulations.
- 13 D. Where there is conflict between the Contract Documents and the applicable Codes, the Codes
14 shall govern, except where the requirements of the Contract Documents are more stringent.

15 **1.6 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS**

- 16 A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or
17 NEC Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with latest
18 editions, revisions, amendments, or supplements in effect on date bids are received.
19 Specifications and standards are minimum requirements for all equipment, material and work.
20 In instances where capacities, size or other feature of equipment, devices or materials exceed
21 these minimums, meet listed or shown capacities.
- 22 B. Whenever a reference is made to a standard, installation and materials shall comply with the
23 latest published edition of the standard at the time project is bid unless otherwise specified
24 herein

25 **1.7 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES**

- 26 A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a
27 design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide
28 products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

29 **1.8 PERMITS FEES AND INSPECTIONS**

- 30 A. Obtain and pay for all permits, fees, tap fees, connection charges, demand charges, systems
31 charges, impact fees, and inspections.
- 32 B. Deliver all certificates of inspection issued by authorities having jurisdiction to the Engineer.

33 **1.9 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS**

- 34 A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or
35 requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting
36 requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent



1 requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Engineer
2 for direction before proceeding.

3 1. If discrepancies or conflicts occur between drawings, or between drawings and
4 specifications, notify the Engineer in writing prior to bid date; however, the most stringent
5 requirement shall govern.

6 B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the
7 minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum
8 quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply
9 with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate,
10 for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Engineer for a decision before
11 proceeding.

12 1.10 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

13 A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or
14 interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the
15 form specified.

16 1. Engineer will return without response those RFIs submitted to Engineer by other entities
17 controlled by Contractor.
18 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or
19 work of subcontractors.

20 B. Prepare RFIs as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or
21 web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All**
22 **electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be**
23 **transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals
24 shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

25 C. Engineer's Action: Engineer will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow
26 seven days for Engineer's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m.
27 Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.

28 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:

29 a. Requests for approval of submittals.
30 b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
31 c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
32 d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract
33 Documents.
34 e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
35 f. Requests for interpretation of Engineer's actions on submittals.
36 g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.

37 2. Engineer's action may include a request for additional information, in which case
38 Engineer's time for response will date from time of receipt by Engineer of additional
39 information.

40 1.11 SUBMITTALS



- 1 A. Submittals (including Product Data, Shop Drawings, and any other Action Submittal or
 2 Information Submittal) will only be reviewed if they are submitted in full accordance with the
 3 General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
- 4 1. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of
 5 submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- 6 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless
 7 partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved by the Engineer.
- 8 3. Submittals shall only contain relevant product data. Remove or strikeout irrelevant
 9 product data.
- 10 4. Prepare submittals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through
 11 email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification
 12 Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to**
 13 **inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email**
 14 **addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF
 15 format and not a scanned copy.
- 16 5. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Engineer.
- 17 6. Deviations: Clearly identify deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents,
 18 including minor variations and limitations.
- 19 7. Revisions: Include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those
 20 specifically requested by Engineer on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on
 21 each submittal or noting on attached submittal sheet.
- 22 8. Contractor's Review:
- 23 a. Submittals shall have been reviewed and approved by the General Contractor /
 24 Construction Manager. Include approval stamp, name of reviewer, date of
 25 Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed,
 26 checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
- 27 b. Engineer will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have
 28 Contractor's review and approval.
- 29 9. Electrical Modifications:
- 30 a. The electrical design indicated on the plans supports the Basis of Design
 31 specifications for the Fire Safety and Emergency Communications systems at the
 32 time of design.
- 33 b. If Fire Safety and Emergency Communications systems equipment is submitted
 34 with different electrical requirements, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to
 35 resolve all required electrical design changes, including, but not limited to: wire and
 36 conduit size, type or size of disconnect or overload protection, breaker
 37 coordination, point(s) of connection, etc. Any corrections required shall be
 38 provided at no additional cost.
- 39 c. Submittal shall clearly show the electrical design revisions with a written statement
 40 that this change will be provided at no additional cost. Submittals made with no
 41 written reference to the electrical design revisions will be presumed to work with
 42 the electrical design.
- 43 B. Processing Time: Time of review shall commence on Engineer's receipt of submittal. No
 44 extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of the failure to transmit submittals
 45 enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
- 46 1. Allow not less than 15 days for submittal review. Allow not less than 21 days for review
 47 of large or complex submittals. Submittals received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern
 48 Time will be considered as received the following working day.



- 1 2. If Contractor transmits more than five submittals over two consecutive business days,
 2 review time shall increase by no less than 7 days for submittal review.
 3 3. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Engineer will
 4 advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 5 4. Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with
 6 other submittals until related submittals are received. Time of review shall commence on
 7 receipt of all other related submittals.
- 8 C. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the
 9 contract documents by the Engineer's approval of shop drawings, product data, samples, or
 10 similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Engineer in writing of such
 11 deviation at the time of submittal, and the Engineer has given written approval to the specific
 12 deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in shop
 13 drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals by the Engineer's approval thereof.

14 **1.12 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

- 15 A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in
 16 individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop
 17 Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is
 18 required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than
 19 one entity.
- 20 1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to
 21 indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed
 22 data. Include the following information, as applicable:
- 23 a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings.
 24 Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of
 25 various systems and components.
 26 b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings by
 27 multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the
 28 information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before
 29 submitting for review.
 30 c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural,
 31 structural, civil, fire protection, mechanical, electrical, and communication systems.
 32 d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated
 33 replacement of components during the life of the installation.
 34 e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers,
 35 valves, pull boxes, junction boxes, and other controls.
 36 f. Indicate required installation sequences.
 37 g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear
 38 to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements.
 39 Provide alternative sketches to Engineer indicating proposed resolution of such
 40 conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered
 41 changes to the Contract.
- 42 B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
- 43 1. Floor Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and Work associated with
 44 Divisions 21 through 29, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and
 45 coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved. Supplement
 46 plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.



- 1 a. Mechanical Systems (Divisions 21, 22, 23, 25):
- 2 1) Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork and piping runs, including
- 3 insulation, heat tracing, bracing, flanges, and support systems. Indicate
- 4 proposed changes to layout.
- 5 2) Locations and sizes of major equipment and components.
- 6 3) Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
- 7 4) Structural members to which ductwork and piping will be attached or
- 8 suspended from.
- 9 b. Electrical and Communication Systems (Divisions 25, 26, 27, 28, 29):
- 10 1) Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
- 11 2) Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other
- 12 fire-alarm locations.
- 13 3) Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and
- 14 motor-control center locations.
- 15 4) Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center
- 16 lines.
- 17 5) Structural members to which luminaire and equipment will be attached or
- 18 suspended from.
- 19 6) Lightning protection system components attaching to or penetrating through
- 20 the roofing and moisture protection systems, coordinated with the roofing
- 21 system manufacturer.
- 22 7) Cable tray layout, offsets, transitions, clearances, elevations, and
- 23 relationships between components and adjacent structural, mechanical and
- 24 electrical elements.
- 25 2. Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show locations of visible devices mounted to, suspended from,
- 26 or penetrating through the ceiling, relative to the finished ceiling, including the following:
- 27 a. Fire suppression sprinklers and nozzles.
- 28 b. Luminaires (Lighting fixtures).
- 29 c. Lighting control devices.
- 30 d. Speakers.
- 31 e. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
- 32 f. Access control devices.
- 33 g. Video surveillance devices.
- 34 h. Fire alarm devices.
- 35 i. Access panels.
- 36 j. Perimeter moldings.
- 37 k. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of
- 38 the plane of the ceiling.
- 39 3. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling[, **raised access floor,**] and wall
- 40 systems, equipment for Divisions 21 through 29, and related Work. Locate components
- 41 within plenums to accommodate layout of components indicated on Drawings for
- 42 Divisions 21 through 29. Indicate areas of conflict between components of Divisions 21
- 43 through 29.
- 44 4. Equipment Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for equipment rooms showing plans
- 45 and elevations of equipment for Divisions 21 through 29.
- 46 5. Penetrations: Indicate locations of penetrations and openings in structural components,
- 47 smoke barriers, and fire-rated construction.
- 48 6. Review: Engineer will review coordination drawings to confirm that in general the Work is
- 49 being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's



- 1 responsibility. If Engineer determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared
 2 in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Engineer will so inform Contractor,
 3 who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
- 4 C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following
 5 requirements:
- 6 1. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.
 7 2. BIM File Incorporation: Develop and incorporate coordination drawing files into BIM
 8 established for Project.
- 9 a. Perform three-dimensional component conflict analysis as part of preparation of
 10 coordination drawings. Resolve component conflicts prior to submittal. Indicate
 11 where conflict resolution requires modification of design requirements by Engineer.
- 12 3. Engineer will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in
 13 preparing coordination digital data files.
- 14 a. Engineer makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital
 15 data files as they relate to Drawings.
 16 b. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form
 17 acceptable to Engineer.

18 1.13 SUBSTITUTIONS

- 19 A. By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment
 20 described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are
 21 encouraged to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the
 22 Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.
- 23 B. Substitution Requests shall include, at a minimum:
- 24 1. Statement indicating why specified material, equipment, or installation method cannot be
 25 provided, if applicable.
- 26 2. Coordination of information, including a list of changes and revisions needed to other
 27 parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that
 28 will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
- 29 3. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the
 30 Work specified. Include an annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant
 31 qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual
 32 effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and
 33 requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
- 34 4. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and
 35 installation procedures.
- 36 5. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions
 37 with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If
 38 specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time,
 39 include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of
 40 purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
- 41 6. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
- 42 7. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the
 43 Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with
 44 related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.



- 1 8. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become
2 necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- 3 C. Procurement Substitution Requests submitted prior to receipt of bids will be received and
4 considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Engineer;
5 otherwise, requests will be returned without action:
- 6 1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment are received no later than 10 days
7 prior to date of bid opening.
8 2. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
9 3. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents,
10 including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
11 4. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- 12 D. Substitutions for Cause, as required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of
13 product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms will be received and
14 considered by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests
15 will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- 16 1. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce
17 indicated results.
18 2. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
19 3. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having
20 jurisdiction.
21 4. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
22 5. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
23 6. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
24 7. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has
25 been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible
26 with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- 27 E. Substitutions for Convenience, not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may
28 offer advantage to Contractor or Owner, will be received and considered by Owner, as
29 determined by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests
30 will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- 31 1. Requested substitution is received within 60 days after the Notice of Award.
32 2. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy
33 conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner
34 must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Engineer
35 for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and
36 similar considerations.
37 3. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
38 4. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce
39 indicated results.
40 5. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
41 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having
42 jurisdiction.
43 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
44 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
45 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
46 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has
47 been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible
48 with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.



- 1 F. If a requested substitution is approved but contains differences or omissions not specifically
 2 identified to the attention of the Engineer in the substitution request, the Owner reserves the
 3 right to require equal or similar features to be added to the substituted products or to have the
 4 substituted products replaced at the Contractor's expense.

5 **1.14 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

- 6 A. Recording: Maintain one copy of the Contract Documents and Shop Drawings during the
 7 construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to
 8 project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

- 9 B. Preparation:

10 1. Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings:

- 11 a. Mark revisions to show where the actual installation varies from that shown
 12 originally.
 13 b. Mark record sets completely and accurately, including important information that
 14 was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 15 c. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish
 16 between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 17 d. Record underground and under-slab piping installed, dimensioning exact location
 18 and elevation of piping.

- 19 2. Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies
 20 from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.

- 21 3. Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies
 22 substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

- 23 C. Deliver: Prior to Final Completion, provide record documents to Owner as indicated below:

- 24 1. Record Drawings: Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of
 25 prints.
 26 2. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications,
 27 including addenda and contract modifications.
 28 3. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each
 29 submittal.
 30 4. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Submit annotated PDF electronic files directories of
 31 each submittal.

32 **1.15 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- 33 A. Prepare and submit a comprehensive manual of emergency, operation, and maintenance data
 34 and materials in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01,
 35 and the following:

- 36 1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating
 37 operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part
 38 of a system, including:

- 39 a. Information required for daily operation and management, operating standards,
 40 and routine and special operating procedures.



1 b. Manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventative maintenance
 2 procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, list of
 3 spare parts, and warranty information.

4 2. Submit manuals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through
 5 email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification
 6 Sections. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

7 **1.16 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

8 A. Prepare and provide services of qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust,
 9 operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not a part of a system in
 10 accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, individual
 11 Specification Sections, and the following:

- 12 1. Demonstration and training shall occur upon completion of the Work and at a time
 13 designated by the Owner's representative.
 14 2. Provide a high-resolution, digital video recording of each training session to the Owner.

15 **1.17 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

16 A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage,
 17 deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written
 18 instructions.

19 B. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to
 20 determine that products are undamaged and properly protected in Division 01 "Product
 21 Requirements".

22 **1.18 WARRANTY**

23 A. Warranty work and equipment within specified warranty period. During the warranty period,
 24 provide labor and materials to make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to
 25 defects or omissions in materials or workmanship without expense to the Owner.

26 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

27 B. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other
 28 warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on
 29 product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of Contract
 30 Documents.

31 C. Owner reserves the right to make emergency repairs as required to keep equipment in
 32 operation without voiding Contractor's Guarantee Bond nor relieving the Contractor of
 33 responsibilities during the warranty period.

34 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NONE)**

35 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**



1 **3.1 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

- 2 A. Examine all drawings and specifications carefully before submitting a bid. Architectural
3 drawings take precedence over mechanical or electrical drawings with reference to building
4 construction.
- 5 B. For purposes of clearness and legibility, drawings are essentially diagrammatic and, although
6 size and location of equipment are drawn to scale wherever possible, Contractor shall make use
7 of all data in all of the contract documents and shall verify this information at the building site.
- 8 C. The drawings indicate required size and points of termination of pipes, conduits, and ducts and
9 suggest proper routes to conform to structure avoid obstructions and preserve clearances.
10 However, it is not intended that drawings indicate all necessary offsets, and it shall be the
11 responsibility of the Contractor to make the installation in such a manner as to conform to
12 structure, avoid obstructions, preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear,
13 without further instructions or cost to the Owner.
- 14 D. Furnish, install and/or connect with appropriate services all items shown on any drawing without
15 additional compensation.
- 16 E. Any and all questions about a subcontractor's scope of work responsibility shall be addressed to
17 and answered by the General Contractor / Construction Manager.
- 18 F. Questions About Construction Documents: Any and all questions shall be submitted through
19 the proper channels IN WRITING and, in turn, shall be answered by the Engineer in writing. All
20 telephone conversations shall be considered unofficial and, as such, shall not be considered
21 official or binding responses to Contractor's questions.
- 22 G. Drawings, specifications, or other documents issued by the Engineer in electronic format and/or
23 electronic media are provided for convenience only and are not intended for use as Contract
24 Documents.
- 25 1. The electronic files are provided merely as a convenience to the Recipient.
- 26 2. The electronic files do not replace or supplement the paper copies of any drawings,
27 specifications, or other documents included in the Contract Documents for use on the
28 project.
- 29 3. The Engineer makes no representation, warranty, or guarantee that electronic files:
- 30 a. Are suitable for any other usage or purpose.
- 31 b. Have any particular durability.
- 32 c. Will not damage or impair the Recipient's computer or software.
- 33 d. Contain no errors or mechanical flaws or other discrepancies that may render them
34 unsuitable for the purpose intended by the Recipient.
- 35 4. Due to the unsecured nature of the electronic files and the inability of Engineer or the
36 Recipient to establish controls over their use, the Engineer assumes no responsibility for
37 any consequences arising out of the use of the data. It is the sole responsibility of the
38 Recipient to check the validity of all information contained therein. The Recipient shall at
39 all times refer to the signed and sealed drawings, specification or other documents for the
40 project during all phases of the project. The Recipient shall assume all risks and liabilities
41 resulting from the use of the electronic files.

42 **3.2 SUPERVISION OF WORK**



- 1 A. Perform all work under the direct supervision of an experienced, qualified superintendent. The
 2 Engineer has the right to remove a superintendent who, in the Engineer's opinion, is not
 3 satisfactory.

4 3.3 EXAMINATION

- 5 A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and
 6 construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate
 7 and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical
 8 systems, and other construction affecting the Work.

9 3.4 PREPARATION

- 10 A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or
 11 relocate existing utility structures, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or
 12 affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- 13 B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck
 14 measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to
 15 other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before
 16 fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the
 17 Work.
- 18 C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown
 19 diagrammatically on Drawings.
- 20 D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for
 21 clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of
 22 Contractor, submit a request for information to Engineer.

23 3.5 INSTALLATION

- 24 A. Install materials and equipment in a professional manner. The Engineer may direct
 25 replacement of items which, in the Engineer's opinion, do not present a professional
 26 appearance or do not allow adequate space for maintenance. Replace or reinstall items at the
 27 expense of the Contractor.
- 28 B. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and
 29 elevation, as indicated.
- 30 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 31 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance
 32 and ease of removal for replacement.
 33 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 34 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in
 35 unoccupied spaces.
- 36 C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in
 37 applications indicated.



- 1 D. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results.
2 Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- 3 E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or
4 loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- 5 F. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction
6 items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- 7 G. Obstructions
- 8 1. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface
9 obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not
10 guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
- 11 2. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative,
12 utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information
13 has been provided. Verify locations given.
- 14 3. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work,
15 reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform
16 whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing
17 services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.
- 18 4. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction,
19 whether or not such existing facilities are shown.
- 20 H. Where "rated" walls, floor, roofs and ceilings are penetrated or cut to install equipment,
21 materials, devices, etc. the Contractor shall provide and install all materials required to re-
22 establish the rating of the wall, floor, roof, or ceiling to the satisfaction of the authority having
23 jurisdiction.
- 24 I. Structural Elements: Do not cut structural elements without written approval from Engineer.
25 Notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before
26 proceeding. If approved by Engineer:
- 27 1. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching.
28 2. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-
29 carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- 30 J. Space Requirements: Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and
31 location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material which is not suitable
32 in this respect.
- 33 K. Tools and Equipment: Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If
34 objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by
35 equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions without cost to the
36 Owner.
- 37 L. Phasing: Provide all temporary valves, piping, ductwork, equipment, and devices as required.
38 Maintain temporary services to areas as required. Remove all temporary material and
39 equipment on completion of work unless Engineer concurs that such material and equipment
40 would be beneficial to the Owner on a permanent basis.

41 3.6 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS



- 1 A. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by
2 Owner's construction personnel.
- 3 **3.7 CUTTING AND PATCHING**
- 4 A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed
5 with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
- 6 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance
7 of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their
8 original condition.
- 9 B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged
10 during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not
11 to void existing warranties.
- 12 C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- 13 D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage.
14 Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be
15 exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- 16 E. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Engineer of locations
17 and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. Shore, brace, and
18 support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural
19 elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- 20 F. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a
21 manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased
22 maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- 23 G. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components
24 in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity
25 to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or
26 safety.
- 27 H. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence
28 of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in
29 Engineer's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction
30 that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- 31 I. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar
32 operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or
33 adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply
34 with original Installer's written recommendations.
- 35 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not
36 hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with
37 minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
- 38 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
- 39 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a
40 diamond-core drill.



- 1 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where
 2 required by cutting and patching operations.
 3 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be
 4 removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent
 5 entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 6 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- 7 J. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations
 8 following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as
 9 practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other
 10 Sections, where applicable or with in-place materials.
- 11 1. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the
 12 fullest extent possible.
 13 2. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when
 14 installed, will provide a match acceptable to Engineer for the visual and functional
 15 performance of in-place materials.
- 16 K. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint,
 17 mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

18 3.8 PAINTING

- 19 A. Comply with requirements with General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, Division
 20 09, and individual Specification Sections.
- 21 B. Touch-up factory finishes on equipment provided under Division 28. Obtain matched color
 22 coatings from the manufacturer and apply as directed. If corrosion is found during inspection on
 23 the surface of any equipment, clean, prime, and paint, as required.
- 24 C. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
- 25 1. Metal conduit
 26 2. Plastic conduit
- 27 D. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
- 28 1. Other items as directed by Engineer.

29 3.9 REPAIR OF WORK

- 30 A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of
 31 Substantial Completion.
- 32 B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective
 33 parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly
 34 adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored,
 35 provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.
 36 Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified
 37 condition.



- 1 1. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces.
 2 Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
- 3 a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including
 4 mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels
 5 and identification.
- 6 2. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede
 7 operation or reduce longevity.

8 **3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- 9 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and
 10 inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- 11 B. Tests
- 12 1. Include all tests specified and/or required under laws, rules and regulations of all
 13 departments having jurisdiction. Tests shall also be performed as indicated herein and
 14 other sections of the specifications.
- 15 2. After all systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an
 16 operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequence and operation
 17 throughout the range of operation. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper
 18 functioning of all systems.
- 19 3. All parts of the work and associated equipment shall be tested and adjusted to work
 20 properly and be left in perfect operating condition.
- 21 4. Correct defects disclosed by these tests without any additional cost to the Owner.
 22 Repeat tests on repaired or replaced work.
- 23 5. Maintain a log of all tests being conducted and have it available for review by the
 24 Engineer. Log to indicate date, type of tests, duration, and defects noted and when
 25 corrected.
- 26 6. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual Specification Sections.
- 27 C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's
 28 responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for
 29 construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

30 **3.11 CLEANING**

- 31 A. Progress Cleaning: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce
 32 requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
- 33 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and
 34 debris.
- 35 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if
 36 the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
- 37 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste.
 38 Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- 39 B. Final Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean
 40 each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and
 41 maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.



- 1 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification
2 of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
- 3 a. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from
4 Project site.
5 b. Remove labels that are not permanent.
6 c. Wipe surfaces of equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar
7 droppings, and other foreign substances.

8 **3.12 MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

- 9 A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include
10 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of systems and equipment Installer. Include
11 quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components,
12 lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be
13 manufacture's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

14 **END OF SECTION 29 01 00**



1 **SECTION 29 05 23 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLES FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY**
2 **COMMUNICATIONS**

3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4 **1.1 SUMMARY**

5 A. Section Includes:

- 6 1. Category 6 balanced twisted pair cable.
- 7 2. Balanced twisted pair cable hardware.
- 8 3. RS-485 cable.
- 9 4. Control cable.
- 10 5. Control-circuit conductors.

11 **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

12 A. Product Data: For each type of product.

13 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

14 **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

15 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
16 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

17 B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products
18 according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in
19 plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- 20 1. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inch or less.
- 21 2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
- 22 3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.

23 C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As
24 determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.

25 D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum
26 Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.

27 **2.2 CATEGORY 6 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE**

28 A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission
29 characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250 MHz.

30 B. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.



- 1 C. Conductors: 100 ohm, No. 23 AWG solid copper.
- 2 D. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP).Cable Rating: Plenum.
- 3 E. Jacket: Red thermoplastic.

4 **2.3 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE**

- 5 A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate balanced twisted pair copper
6 communications cable.
- 7 B. General Requirements for Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
- 8 1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6.
- 9 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or
10 tools.
- 11 3. Cables must be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- 12 C. Source Limitations: Obtain balanced twisted pair cable hardware from single source from single
13 manufacturer.
- 14 D. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
- 15 1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for
16 termination of a single four-pair 100 ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair
17 cable.
- 18 2. Comply with IEC 60603-7-1, IEC 60603-7-2, IEC 60603-7-3, IEC 60603-7-4, and
19 IEC 60603-7.5.

20 **2.4 RS-232 CABLE**

- 21 A. Plenum-Type, TIA 232-F:
- 22 1. Nine, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
- 23 2. PE insulation.
- 24 3. Aluminum foil-polyester tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage.
- 25 4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
- 26 5. Conductors are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper
27 drain wire.
- 28 6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

29 **2.5 RS-485 CABLE**

- 30 A. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
- 31 1. Paired, one pair, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
- 32 2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
- 33 3. Unshielded.
- 34 4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
- 35 5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262.



1 **2.6 CONTROL CABLE**

- 2 A. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
- 3 1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
- 4 2. PVC insulation.
- 5 3. Unshielded.
- 6 4. PVC jacket.
- 7 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

8 **2.7 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS**

- 9 A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in
10 raceway.
- 11 B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in
12 raceway.
- 13 C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying
14 with UL 83 in raceway .

15 **2.8 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE**

- 16 A. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70,
17 Article 760.
- 18 B. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG in pathway.
- 19 1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for
20 power-limited fire-alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying
21 with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
- 22 C. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600 V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded
23 insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
- 24 1. Control-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
- 25 2. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
- 26 3. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN
27 conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket with red identifier
28 stripe, NTRL listed for fire-alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated.

29 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

30 **3.1 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES**

- 31 A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 for raceway selection and installation requirements for
32 boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or modified in this Section.
- 33 1. Outlet boxes for cables must be no smaller than 4 inch square by 2-1/8 inch deep with
34 extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch of the finished wall surface.



- 1 2. Flexible metal conduit must not be used.
2 3. Concealed and exposed junction boxes must be painted red enamel.
- 3 B. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between
4 pull points.
- 5 C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- 6 D. Raceway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
- 7 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is
8 installed, or in the corner of the room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around
9 perimeter walls of the room.
10 2. Secure conduits to backboard if entering the room from overhead.
11 3. Extend conduits 3 inch above finished floor.
12 4. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to
13 grounding system.
- 14 **3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**
- 15 A. Comply with NECA 1.
- 16 B. General Requirements for Cabling:
- 17 1. Install all cabling in raceway. [See Allstate Construction's bid package.](#)
18 2. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
19 3. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
20 4. Terminate all conductors; cable must not contain unterminated elements. Make
21 terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
22 5. Cables may not be spliced and must be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not
23 splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points.
24 6. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install network
25 cabling and control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not
26 group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
27 7. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inch and not more than 6 inch
28 from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
29 8. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's
30 limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5,
31 "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
32 9. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard
33 cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
34 10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
35 Monitor cable pull tensions.
36 11. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals. Do not bend cables in a
37 radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from
38 vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
39 12. Ground wire must be copper, and grounding methods must comply with IEEE C2.
40 Demonstrate ground resistance.
- 41 C. Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Installation:
- 42 1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.



- 1 2. Install termination hardware as specified in Section 27 15 13 "Communications Copper
2 Horizontal Cabling" unless otherwise indicated.
3 3. Do not untwist balanced twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch at the point of termination
4 to maintain cable geometry.
- 5 D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:
- 6 1. Install wiring in raceways. [See Allstate Construction's bid package.](#)
7 2. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.
- 8 E. Installation of Fire Alarm Wiring and Cables:
- 9 1. Install wiring in raceways. [See Allstate Construction's bid package.](#)
10 2. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.
- 11 F. Installation of Cables other than Fire Alarm Wiring:
- 12 1. Install wiring in raceways. [See Allstate Construction's bid package.](#)
- 13 **3.3 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS**
- 14 A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
- 15 1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; No 14 AWG.
16 2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits; No. 16 AWG.
17 3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits; No 12 AWG.
- 18 **3.4 FIRESTOPPING**
- 19 A. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
- 20 **3.5 GROUNDING**
- 21 A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and
22 Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.
- 23 B. For control-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26.
- 24 **3.6 IDENTIFICATION**
- 25 A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26.
- 26 B. Identify data and communications system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA-
27 606-B; label printers must use label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks complying with
28 UL 969.
- 29 C. Identify each wire on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag.
30 Each wire must have a unique tag.



1 **END OF SECTION 29 05 23**
2



1 **SECTION 29 13 23 - OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY**
2 **COMMUNICATIONS**

3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4 **1.1 SUMMARY**

5 A. Section Includes:

- 6 1. Type OFNP optical fiber cable.
7 2. Optical fiber cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.

8 **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

9 A. Conductive Cable: Cable containing non-current-carrying electrically-conductive members such
10 as metallic strength members and metallic vapor barriers.

11 B. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling termination of cable elements and their interconnection or
12 cross-connection.

13 C. Type OFNP: Nonconductive cable for use in plenums, ducts, and other spaces used for
14 environmental air.

15 **1.3 COORDINATION**

16 A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's
17 telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

18 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

19 A. Product Data:

- 20 1. For each type of product.

21 B. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

- 22 1. Optical fiber cable testing plan.
23 2. Field quality-control reports.

24 **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

25 A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet-
26 work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining
27 ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during remainder of
28 construction period.



1 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2 **2.1 TYPE OFNP OPTICAL FIBER CABLE**

3 A. Description: This category covers jacketed optical fiber cable for use in vertical runs in plenums,
4 ducts, or other spaces used for environmental air within buildings in accordance with Article 770
5 of NFPA 70 containing no electrically conductive materials.

6 B. Performance Criteria:

7 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified
8 electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for
9 intended location and application.

10 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN QAYK; including UL 1651.

11 3. General Characteristics:

12 a. Performance: TIA-568.3.

13 b. Inside Plant Mechanical Properties: ICEA S-83-596.

14 c. Inside-Outside Plant Mechanical Properties: ICEA S-104-696.

15 d. Jacket:

16 1) Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color in accordance with TIA-
17 598.

18 2) Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular
19 intervals not to exceed 40 inch.

20 C. Type OFNP, Designation OS1, Inside Plant, Single-Mode Optical Fiber Cable:

21 1. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single manufacturer.

22 2. Additional Characteristics:

23 a. Construction: TIA-492CAAA; 9 μm core diameter, 125 μm cladding diameter.

24 b. Minimum Overfilled Modal Bandwidth-Length Product: 500 MHz-km at 850 nm
25 wavelength; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm wavelength.

26 3. Options:

27 a. Configuration: 12 fibers, tight buffered, optical fiber cable.

28 b. Maximum Attenuation: 1.0 dB/km at 1310 nm wavelength; 1.0 dB/km at 1550 nm
29 wavelength.

30 c. Jacket Color: Yellow.

31 **2.2 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE**

32 A. Performance Criteria:

33 1. Fiber Optic Connector Intermateability Standard (FOCIS) specifications of TIA-604
34 series.

35 2. TIA-568.3.

36 B. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable
37 connectors.



- 1 1. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field,
2 plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
- 3 C. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36 inch lengths.
- 4 D. Connector Type: Type LC complying with TIA-604-10, connectors.
- 5 E. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
- 6 1. Male; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of
7 single optical fiber cable.
- 8 2. Insertion loss not more than 0.25 dB.
- 9 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- 10 F. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
- 11 1. Female; quick-connect, simplex and duplex; fixed telecommunications connector
12 designed for termination of single optical fiber cable.
- 13 2. Insertion loss not more than 0.25 dB.
- 14 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- 15 4. Designed to snap-in to patch panel or faceplate.

16 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

17 **3.1 PREPARATION**

- 18 A. Coordinate backbone cabling with protectors and demarcation point provided by
19 communications service provider.

20 **3.2 INSTALLATION OF OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLES**

- 21 A. Optical fiber backbone cabling system must provide interconnections fire alarm control panels.
- 22 B. Backbone cabling cross-connects may be located in communications equipment rooms or at
23 entrance facilities. Bridged taps and splitters may not be used as part of backbone cabling.
- 24 C. Comply with BICSI N1, NECA NEIS 1, and NECA NEIS 301.
- 25 D. Backbone cabling system must comply with transmission standards in TIA-568.1.
- 26 E. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569.
- 27 F. Wiring Methods:
- 28 1. In Raceway: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished
29 spaces.
- 30 a. Install pathways in accordance with Division 26.
- 31 1) Pathways must be installed in EMT or RSC.
- 32 2) Exposed raceways must be painted red enamel.



- 1 3) Concealed and exposed junction boxes must be painted red enamel.
- 2 2. In Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal
3 points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
4 Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
- 5 G. Optical Fiber Cabling Installation:
- 6 1. Comply with TIA-568.1 and TIA-568.3.
7 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
8 3. Terminate all cables; no cable may contain unterminated elements. Make terminations
9 only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
10 4. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inch
11 and not more than 6 inch from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and
12 terminals.
13 5. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable
14 between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged
15 during installation and replace it with new cable.
16 6. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull
17 tensions.
18 7. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.
- 19 H. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

20 **3.3 FIRESTOPPING**

- 21 A. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
- 22 B. Comply with TIA-569, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- 23 C. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

24 **3.4 GROUNDING**

- 25 A. Install grounding in accordance with BICSI ITSIMM, "Grounding (Earthing), Bonding, and
26 Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- 27 B. Comply with TIA-607 and NECA/BICSI-607.
- 28 C. Bond metallic equipment to grounding bus bar, using not smaller than 6 AWG equipment
29 grounding conductor.

30 **3.5 IDENTIFICATION**

- 31 A. Cable and Wire Identification:
- 32 1. Label each cable within 4 inch of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in
33 cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.



1 B. Labels must be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that
2 contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA 606, for the
3 following:

4 1. Flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

5 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

6 A. Tests and Inspections:

7 1. Visually inspect optical fiber jacket materials for qualified electrical testing laboratory
8 certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms
9 for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for
10 compliance with TIA-568.1.

11 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment
12 and patch cords, and labeling of all components.

13 3. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:

14 a. Test instruments must meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568.1. Use
15 only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for
16 channel or link test configuration.

17 b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:

18 1) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or
19 1300 nm in one direction in accordance with TIA-526-14, Method B, One
20 Reference Jumper.

21 2) Attenuation test results for backbone links must be less than 2.0 dB.
22 Attenuation test results must be less than those calculated in accordance
23 with equation in TIA-568.1.

24 B. Nonconforming Work:

25 1. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

26 2. Remove and replace defective cables and retest.

27 C. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

28 1. Data for each measurement must be documented.

29 2. Data for field quality-control report submittals must be printed in summary report that is
30 formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from instrument to
31 computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.

32 **END OF SECTION 29 13 23**



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



Alternate

1 SECTION 29 22 00 - CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS

2 PART 1 - GENERAL

3 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 1.2 SUMMARY

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Clean-agent systems.
- 9 2. Pipe and fittings.
- 10 3. Valves.
- 11 4. Extinguishing-agent containers.
- 12 5. Fire-extinguishing clean agent.
- 13 6. Discharge nozzles.
- 14 7. Manifold and orifice unions.
- 15 8. Fire control panels.
- 16 9. Detection devices.
- 17 10. Manual stations.
- 18 11. Switches.
- 19 12. Alarm devices.

20 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- 21 A. ATS: Acceptance Testing Specifications.
- 22 B. EPO: Emergency Power Off.

23 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- 24 A. Fire Protection System Layout Documents: Layout drawings, supporting calculations (hydraulic,
25 air compressor sizing, etc.), catalog information on standard products, and other construction
26 data prepared by either a licensed contractor or a licensed Engineer that provides detail on the
27 location of risers, service mains, distribution lines, devices, equipment, sizing of pipe and/or
28 circuits, hanger locations, and supporting calculations and also serves as a guide for fabrication
29 and installation of a fire protection system. Fire Protection System Layout Documents are based
30 upon engineering direction (performance requirements and design criteria) provided in the Fire
31 Protection System Engineering Documents and require no additional engineering input.
- 32 1. If prepared by a licensed contractor, these documents do not require the seal of a
33 licensed engineer.
 - 34 2. If prepared by a licensed engineer, these documents are Engineering Documents and
35 therefore require sealing by a licensed engineer.



Alternate

- 1 **1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**
- 2 A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- 3 B. Shop Drawings: For clean-agent fire-extinguishing system signed..
- 4 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- 5 2. Include design calculations.
- 6 3. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
- 7 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field
- 8 connection.
- 9 4. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- 10 C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For clean-agent fire-extinguishing system signed.
- 11 1. Indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including
- 12 analysis data.
- 13 2. Include design calculations for weight, volume, and concentration of extinguishing agent
- 14 required for each hazard area.
- 15 3. Indicate the Following on Reflected Ceiling Plans:
- 16 a. Ceiling penetrations and ceiling-mounted items.
- 17 b. Extinguishing-agent containers if mounted above floor, piping and discharge
- 18 nozzles, detectors, and accessories.
- 19 c. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
- 20 d. Other ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers,
- 21 sprinklers, and access panels.
- 22 4. Indicate the Following on Occupied Work Area Plans:
- 23 a. Controls and alarms.
- 24 b. Extinguishing-agent containers, piping and discharge nozzles if mounted in space,
- 25 detectors, and accessories.
- 26 c. Equipment and furnishings.
- 27 5. Indicate the Following on Ceiling Plans:
- 28 a. Extinguishing-agent containers, piping and discharge nozzles, detectors, and
- 29 accessories.
- 30 b. Method of supporting piping.
- 31 c. Other equipment located in the ceiling space that is being protected including
- 32 sprinkler piping, HVAC equipment, raceways, or conduit.
- 33 **1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**
- 34 A. Design Data:
- 35 1. Permit Approved Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 2001, that have
- 36 been approved by authorities having jurisdiction. Include design calculations.
- 37 B. Field quality-control reports.



Alternate

1 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- 2 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For special agent system to include in emergency, operation,
3 and maintenance manuals.

4 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- 5 A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective
6 covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents. Deliver extra materials to
7 Owner.

- 8 1. Detection Devices: Not less than 20 percent of amount of each type installed.
9 2. Container Valves: Not less than 10 percent of amount of each size and type installed.
10 3. Nozzles: Not less than 20 percent of amount of each type installed.
11 4. Extinguishing Agent: Not less than 100 percent of amount installed in largest hazard
12 area. Include pressure-rated containers with valves.

13 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- 14 A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70,
15 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 16 B. FM Global Compliance: Provide components that are FM Approved and that are listed in FM
17 Global's "Approval Guide."
- 18 C. UL Compliance: Provide equipment listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory."

19 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

20 2.1 CLEAN-AGENT SYSTEMS

- 21 A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ansul Incorporated;
22 SAPPHIRE® or comparable product by one of the following:

- 23 1. Ansul Incorporated.
24 2. Kidde Fire Systems; a UTC Fire & Security company.
25 3. Fike Corporation.
26 4. Pem All Fire Extinguisher Corporation; a division of Pem Systems Inc.
27 5. Pyro-Chem.
28 6. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.; Fire Safety Division.

- 29 B. Description: Clean-agent fire-extinguishing system shall be an engineered system for total
30 flooding of the hazard area including the room cavity above the ceiling, below the ceiling, and
31 below the raised floor. System includes separate zones above and below the ceiling and
32 beneath the raised floor. If smoke is detected below the raised floor, extinguishing agent shall
33 be discharged in the underfloor zone only. If smoke is detected below the ceiling, extinguishing
34 agent shall be discharged in zones above and below the ceiling and below the floor. If smoke is
35 detected above the ceiling, extinguishing agent shall be discharged in the zone above the
36 ceiling only.



Alternate

- 1 C. Delegated Design: Design clean-agent fire-extinguishing system and obtain approval from
2 authorities having jurisdiction. Design system for Class A, B, and C fires as appropriate for
3 areas being protected, and include safety factor. Use clean agent indicated and in concentration
4 suitable for normally occupied areas.
- 5 D. Performance Requirements: Discharge FK-5-1-12 within 10 seconds and maintain 6.6 percent
6 concentration by volume at 70 deg F for 10-minute holding time in hazard areas.
- 7 1. FK-5-1-12 concentration in hazard areas greater than 10.0 percent immediately after
8 discharge or less than 6.5 percent throughout holding time will not be accepted without
9 written authorization from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
- 10 2. System Capabilities: Minimum 620-psig calculated working pressure and 360-psig initial
11 charging pressure.
- 12 E. Verified Detection: Devices located in single zone. Sound alarm on activating single-detection
13 device, and discharge extinguishing agent on actuating second-detection device.
- 14 F. System Operating Sequence:
- 15 1. Actuating First Detector: Visual indication on annunciator panel. Energize audible and
16 visual alarms (slow pulse), shut down air-conditioning and ventilating systems serving
17 protected area, close doors in protected area, and send signal to fire-alarm system.
- 18 2. Actuating Second Detector: Visual indication on annunciator panel. Energize audible and
19 visual alarms (fast pulse), shut down power to protected equipment, start time delay for
20 extinguishing-agent discharge for 30 seconds, and discharge extinguishing agent. On
21 agent discharge, release preaction valve to allow water to fill sprinkler system.
- 22 3. Extinguishing-agent discharge will operate audible alarms and strobe lights inside and
23 outside the protected area.
- 24 G. Manual stations shall immediately discharge extinguishing agent when activated.
- 25 H. Operating abort switches will delay extinguishing-agent discharge while being activated, and
26 switches must be reset to prevent agent discharge. Release of hand pressure on the switch will
27 cause agent discharge if the time delay has expired.
- 28 I. EPO: Will terminate power to protected equipment immediately on actuation.
- 29 J. Low-Agent Pressure Switch: Initiate trouble alarm if sensing less than set pressure.
- 30 K. Power Transfer Switch: Transfer from normal to stand-by power source.

31 2.2 PIPE AND FITTINGS

- 32 A. See "FK-5-1-12 Agent Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and
33 joining materials.
- 34 B. Piping, Valves, and Discharge Nozzles: Comply with types and standards listed in NFPA 2001,
35 Section "Distribution," for charging pressure of system.
- 36 C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type S, Grade B or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Grade A;
37 Schedule 40, Schedule 80, and Schedule 160, seamless steel pipe.
- 38 1. Threaded Fittings:



Alternate

- 1 a. Malleable-Iron Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 300.
 2 b. Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 300 unless Class 600 is
 3 indicated.
 4 c. Fittings Working Pressure: 620 psig minimum.
 5 d. Flanged Joints: Class 300 minimum.
- 6 2. Forged-Steel Welding Fittings: ASME B16.11, Class 3000, socket pattern.
 7 3. Steel, Grooved-End Fittings: FM Approved and NRTL listed, ASTM A 47/A 47M
 8 malleable iron or ASTM A 536 ductile iron, with dimensions matching steel pipe and ends
 9 factory grooved according to AWWA C606.
- 10 D. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system
 11 contents.
- 12 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless
 13 thickness or specific material is indicated.
- 14 E. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel.
- 15 F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for
 16 wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- 17 G. Steel, Keyed Couplings: UL 213, AWWA C606, approved or listed for clean-agent service, and
 18 matching steel-pipe dimensions. Include ASTM A 536, ductile-iron housing, rubber gasket, and
 19 steel bolts and nuts.

20 2.3 VALVES

- 21 A. General Valve Requirements:
- 22 1. UL listed or FM Approved for use in fire-protection systems.
 23 2. Compatible with type of clean agent used.
- 24 B. Container Valves: With rupture disc or solenoid and manual-release lever, capable of immediate
 25 and total agent discharge and suitable for intended flow capacity.
- 26 C. Valves in Sections of Closed Piping and Manifolds: Fabricate to prevent entrapment of liquid, or
 27 install valve and separate pressure relief device.
- 28 D. Valves in Manifolds: Check valve; installed to prevent loss of extinguishing agent when
 29 container is removed from manifold.

30 2.4 EXTINGUISHING-AGENT CONTAINERS

- 31 A. Description: Steel tanks complying with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII,
 32 for unfired pressure vessels. Include minimum working-pressure rating that matches system
 33 charging pressure, valve, pressure switch, and pressure gage.
- 34 1. Finish: Red, enamel or epoxy paint.
 35 2. Manifold: Fabricate with valves, pressure switches, and connections for multiple storage
 36 containers, as indicated.



Alternate

- 1 3. Storage-Tank Brackets: Factory- or field-fabricated retaining brackets consisting of steel
2 straps and channels; suitable for container support, maintenance, and tank refilling or
3 replacement.

4 **2.5 FIRE-EXTINGUISHING CLEAN AGENT**

- 5 A. FK-5-1-12 Clean Agent: Dodecafluoro-2-methylpentan-3-one.

- 6 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
7 following:

- 8 a. 3M.

9 **2.6 DISCHARGE NOZZLES**

- 10 A. Equipment manufacturer's standard one-piece brass or aluminum alloy of type, size, discharge
11 pattern, and capacity required for application.

- 12 B. Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.

- 13 C. Stamped with orifice size and type.

14 **2.7 FIRE CONTROL PANELS**

- 15 A. Description: FM Approved or NRTL listed, including equipment and features required for testing,
16 supervising, and operating fire-extinguishing system.

- 17 B. Power Requirements: 120/240-V ac; with electrical contacts for connection to system
18 components and fire-alarm system, and transformer or rectifier as needed to produce power at
19 voltage required for accessories and alarm devices.

- 20 C. Enclosure: NEMA ICS 6, Type 1, enameled-steel cabinet.

- 21 1. Mounting: Recessed flush with surface.

- 22 D. Supervised Circuits: Separate circuits for each independent hazard area.

- 23 1. Detection circuits equal to the required number of zones, or addressable devices
24 assigned to the required number of zones.

- 25 2. Manual pull-station circuit.

- 26 3. Alarm circuit.

- 27 4. Release circuit.

- 28 5. Abort circuit.

- 29 6. EPO circuit.

- 30 E. Control-Panel Features:

- 31 1. Electrical contacts for shutting down fans, activating dampers, and operating system
32 electrical devices.

- 33 2. Automatic switchover to standby power at loss of primary power.

- 34 3. Storage container, low-pressure indicator.



Alternate

- 1 4. Service disconnects to interrupt system operation for maintenance with visual status
2 indication on the annunciator panel.
- 3 F. Annunciator Panel: Graphic type showing protected, hazard-area plans, as well as locations of
4 detectors and abort, EPO, and manual stations. Include lamps to indicate device-initiating
5 alarm, electrical contacts for connection to control panel, and stainless-steel or aluminum
6 enclosure.
- 7 G. Standby Power: Sealed lead calcium batteries with capacity to operate system for 24 hours and
8 alarm for minimum of 15 minutes. Include automatic battery charger that has a varying charging
9 rate between trickle and high depending on battery voltage, and that is capable of maintaining
10 batteries fully charged. Include manual voltage control, dc voltmeter, dc ammeter, electrical
11 contacts for connection to control panel, automatic transfer switch, and suitable enclosure.
- 12 **2.8 DETECTION DEVICES**
- 13 A. General Requirements for Detection Devices:
- 14 1. Comply with NFPA 2001, NFPA 72, and UL 268.
15 2. 24-V dc, nominal.
- 16 B. Ionization Detectors: Dual-chamber type, having sampling and referencing chambers, with
17 smoke-sensing element.
- 18 C. Photoelectric Detectors: LED light source and silicon photodiode receiving element.
- 19 D. Remote Air-Sampling Detector System: Includes air-sampling pipe network, a laser-based
20 photoelectric detector, a sample transport fan, and a control unit.
- 21 1. Pipe Network: CPVC tubing connects control unit with calibrated sampling holes.
22 2. Smoke Detector: Particle-counting type with continuous laser beam. Sensitivity
23 adjustable to a minimum of four preset values.
24 3. Sample Transport Fan: Centrifugal type, creating a minimum static pressure of 0.05-inch
25 wg at all sampling ports.
26 4. Control Unit: Multizone unit as indicated on Drawings. Provides same system power
27 supply, supervision, and alarm features as specified for the control panel plus separate
28 trouble indication for airflow and detector problems.
- 29 E. Signals to the Central Fire Alarm Control Panel: Any type of local system trouble is reported to
30 the central fire alarm control panel as a composite "trouble" signal. Alarms on each system zone
31 are individually reported to the central fire alarm control panel as separately identified zones.
- 32 **2.9 MANUAL STATIONS**
- 33 A. General Description: Surface FM Approved or NRTL listed, with clear plastic hinged cover, 120-
34 V ac or low voltage compatible with controls. Include contacts for connection to control panel.
- 35 B. Manual Release: "MANUAL RELEASE" caption, and red finish. Unit can manually discharge
36 extinguishing agent with operating device that remains engaged until unlocked.
- 37 C. Abort Switch: "ABORT" caption, momentary contact, with green finish.



Alternate

1 D. EPO Switch: "EPO" caption, with yellow finish.

2 **2.10 SWITCHES**

3 A. Description: FM Approved or NRTL listed, where available, 120-V ac or low voltage compatible
4 with controls. Include contacts for connection to control panel.

- 5 1. Low-Agent Pressure Switches: Pneumatic operation.
- 6 2. Power Transfer Switches: Key-operation selector, for transfer of release circuit signal
7 from main supply to reserve supply.
- 8 3. Door Closers: Magnetic retaining and release device or electrical interlock to cause the
9 door operator to drive the door closed.

10 **2.11 ALARM DEVICES**

11 A. Description: Listed and labeled by an NRTL or FM Approved, low voltage, and surface
12 mounting. Comply with requirements in Section 29 46 21.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems"
13 for alarm and monitoring devices.

14 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

15 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

16 A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with hazard-area leakage
17 requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting work performance.

18 B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

19 **3.2 FK-5-1-12 AGENT PIPING APPLICATIONS**

20 A. Flanged pipe and fittings and flanged joints may be used to connect to specialties and
21 accessories and where required for maintenance.

22 B. NPS 2 and Smaller: Schedule 40, steel pipe; malleable-iron threaded fittings; and threaded
23 joints.

24 C. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Schedule 40, steel pipe; forged-steel welding fittings; and welded joints.

25 **3.3 CLEAN-AGENT PIPING INSTALLATION**

26 A. Install clean-agent extinguishing piping and other components level and plumb, according to
27 manufacturers' written instructions.

28 B. Install extinguishing-agent containers anchored to substrate.

29 C. Install pipe and fittings, valves, and discharge nozzles according to requirements listed in
30 NFPA 2001, Section "Distribution."



Alternate

- 1 1. Install valves designed to prevent entrapment of liquid, or install pressure relief devices in
- 2 valved sections of piping systems.
- 3 2. Support piping using supports and methods according to NFPA 13.
- 4 3. Install control panels, detection system components, alarms, and accessories, complying
- 5 with requirements of NFPA 2001, Section "Detection, Actuation, and Control Systems,"
- 6 as required for supervised system application.

7 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- 8 A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- 9 B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- 10 C. Connect electrical devices to control panel and to building's fire-alarm system. Electrical power,
- 11 wiring, and devices are specified in Section 29 46 21.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems".

12 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- 13 A. Identify system components and equipment. Comply with requirements for identification
- 14 specified in Division 26.
- 15 B. Identify piping, extinguishing-agent containers, other equipment, and panels according to
- 16 NFPA 2001.
- 17 C. Install signs at entry doors for protected areas to warn occupants that they are entering a room
- 18 protected with a clean-agent fire-extinguishing system.
- 19 D. Install signs at entry doors to advise persons outside the room the meaning of the horn(s),
- 20 bell(s), and strobe light(s) outside the protected space.

21 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- 22 A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect,
- 23 test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- 24 B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 25 1. After installing clean-agent extinguishing piping system and after electrical circuitry has
 - 26 been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 27 2. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS,
 - 28 Sections "Inspection and Test Procedures" and "System Function Tests." Certify
 - 29 compliance with test parameters.
 - 30 3. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest
 - 31 until no leaks exist.
 - 32 4. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm
 - 33 proper motor rotation and unit operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new
 - 34 units, and retest.
 - 35 5. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and
 - 36 equipment.
- 37 C. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.



Alternate

1 D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

2 3.7 CLEANING

3 A. Each pipe section shall be cleaned internally after preparation and before assembly by means
4 of swabbing, using a suitable nonflammable cleaner. Pipe network shall be free of particulate
5 matter and oil residue before installing nozzles or discharge devices.

6 3.8 SYSTEM FILLING

7 A. Preparation:

- 8 1. Verify that piping system installation is completed and cleaned.
- 9 2. Check for complete enclosure integrity.
- 10 3. Check operation of ventilation and exhaust systems.

11 B. Filling Procedures:

- 12 1. Fill extinguishing-agent containers with extinguishing agent, and pressurize to indicated
13 charging pressure.
- 14 2. Install filled extinguishing-agent containers.
- 15 3. Energize circuits.
- 16 4. Adjust operating controls.

17 3.9 DEMONSTRATION

18 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to
19 adjust, operate, and maintain clean-agent fire-extinguishing systems.

20 **END OF SECTION 29 22 00**



1 **SECTION 29 46 21.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS**

2 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

3 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 4 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
5 Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

6 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 7 A. Section Includes:

- 8 1. Addressable fire-alarm system.
9 2. Fire-alarm control unit (FACU).
10 3. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
11 4. System smoke detectors.
12 5. Duct smoke detectors.
13 6. Carbon monoxide detectors.
14 7. Heat detectors.
15 8. Multicriteria and multisensor fire detectors.
16 9. Fire-alarm notification appliances.
17 10. Fire-alarm remote annunciators.
18 11. Fire-alarm addressable interface devices.
19 12. Digital alarm communicator transmitters (DACTs).

20 **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- 21 A. CIS: Common Intelligibility Scale.
22 B. DACT: Digital alarm communicator transmitter.
23 C. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
24 D. ERCES: Emergency responder communications enhancement system.
25 E. FACU: Fire-alarm control unit.
26 F. FSCS: Firefighters' smoke control station.
27 G. Mode: The terms "Active Mode," "Off Mode," and "Standby Mode" are used as defined in the
28 2007 Energy Independence and Security Act (EISA).
29 H. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
30 I. PC: Personal computer.
31 J. STI: Speech Transmission Index.



- 1 K. STIPA: Speech Transmission Index – Public Address.
- 2 L. Voltage Class: For specified circuits and equipment, voltage classes are defined as follows:
- 3 1. Control Voltage: Listed and labeled for use in remote-control, signaling, and power-limited
4 circuits supplied by a Class 2 or Class 3 power supply having rated output not greater than
5 150 V and 5 A, allowing use of alternate wiring methods complying with NFPA 70,
6 Article 725.
- 7 2. Low Voltage: Listed and labeled for use in circuits supplied by a Class 1 or other power
8 supply having rated output not greater than 1000 V, requiring use of wiring methods
9 complying with NFPA 70, Article 300, Part I.
- 10 **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**
- 11 A. Approved Permit Submittal: Submittals must be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior
12 to submitting them to Engineer.
- 13 B. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.
- 14 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
15 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.
- 16 C. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.
- 17 1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in "Documentation" section of
18 "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
- 19 2. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details, including details of attachments to other
20 Work.
- 21 3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required
22 clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor
23 sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory
24 and field wiring.
- 25 4. Graphic Annunciator panel details as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 26 5. Detail assembly and support requirements.
- 27 6. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
- 28 7. Include battery-size calculations.
- 29 8. Include input/output matrix.
- 30 9. Include written statement from manufacturer that equipment and components have been
31 tested as a system and comply with requirements in this Section and in NFPA 72.
- 32 10. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
- 33 11. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and
34 humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
- 35 12. Provide program report showing that air-sampling detector pipe layout balances
36 pneumatically within airflow range of air-sampling detector.
- 37 13. Provide control wiring diagrams for fire-alarm interface to HVAC; coordinate location of
38 duct smoke detectors and access to them.
- 39 a. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes,
40 detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators.
- 41 b. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm.
- 42 c. Locate detectors in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.



- 1 14. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding
 2 schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
 3 15. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable
 4 device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.
- 5 D. Delegated Design Submittal: For notification appliances and smoke and heat detectors, in
 6 addition to submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and
 7 design criteria, including analysis data in conformance with Fire Protection System Layout
 8 Documents.
- 9 1. Drawings showing location of each notification appliance and smoke and heat detector,
 10 ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of
 11 device.
 12 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting spacing and sensitivity of
 13 detection, complying with NFPA 72. Calculate spacing and intensities for strobe signals
 14 and sound-pressure levels for audible appliances.
 15 3. Indicate audible appliances required to produce square wave signal per NFPA 72.
- 16 E. Fire Protection System Layout Documents: Layout drawings, supporting calculations (battery
 17 calculations, voltage drop, spacing and sensitivity of detection, etc.), catalog information on
 18 standard products, and other construction data prepared by either a licensed contractor or a
 19 licensed Engineer that provides detail on the location of risers, distribution, devices, equipment,
 20 sizing of circuits, hanger locations, and supporting calculations and also serves as a guide for
 21 fabrication and installation of a fire protection system. Fire Protection System Layout Documents
 22 are based upon engineering direction (performance requirements and design criteria) provided in
 23 the Fire Protection System Engineering Documents and require no additional engineering input.
- 24 1. If prepared by a licensed contractor, these documents do not require the seal of a licensed
 25 engineer.
 26 2. If prepared by a licensed engineer, these documents are Engineering Documents and
 27 therefore require sealing by a licensed engineer.

28 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- 29 A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in
 30 emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- 31 1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 "Operation and Maintenance Data" and
 32 Section 29 01 00 "General Provisions for Fire Safety and Emergency Communications
 33 include the following and deliver copies to authorities having jurisdiction:
- 34 a. Comply with "Records" section of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in
 35 NFPA 72.
 36 b. Provide "Fire-Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion
 37 Documents" in accordance with "Completion Documents" Article in "Documentation"
 38 section of "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 39 c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between devices and equipment.
 40 Each conductor must be numbered at every junction point with indication of
 41 origination and termination points.
 42 d. Riser diagram.
 43 e. Device addresses.
 44 f. Record copy of site-specific software.
 45 g. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" in accordance with "Inspection, Testing and
 46 Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:



- 1) Equipment tested.
 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
- h. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
 i. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at FACU and each annunciator unit.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
 2. Program Software Backup: On USB media.
 3. Device address list.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installation must be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level II or greater technician.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail because of defects in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS [See alternates](#)

- A. Extra Notification Appliance Allowance: Provide and identify a line-item allowance on bid day to furnish and install 10% (time and material) of notification appliances and associated conduit and wiring on project. Extra materials shall be installed as directed by Engineer and/or AHJ as building components are installed to provide adequate coverage around obstructions or to otherwise coordinate with competing systems. At the end of project provide an accounting of extra time and materials used against allowance; any remaining allowance shall revert to the Owner's contingency for the Owner's benefit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire alarm system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with NFPA 72.
- B. Fire Protection System Layout Documents: Engage either a licensed contractor or a qualified professional engineer to provide Fire Protection System Layout Documents for the fire alarm



1 system based upon the engineering direction (performance requirements and design criteria)
2 provided in the Fire Protection Engineering Documents.

- 3 1. Fire alarm system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 4 a. Margin of Safety for Available Secondary Power Supply Duration: 20 percent, above
5 the calculated amp-hour capacity required at design system demand.
- 6 1) In-Building Fire Emergency Voice / Alarm Communications Systems: Battery
7 backup must provide 24 hours standby, followed by 15 minutes at maximum
8 connected load.
- 9 2) Supervising Station Facilities and Equipment: Battery backup must support
10 operations for a minimum of 24 hours.
- 11 3) Textual Visual Notification Appliances: Battery backup must provide 2 hours
12 of continuous display during an emergency event.
- 13 b. Speech Intelligibility Requirements: As indicated on the Drawings.

14 2.2 ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

- 15 A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
16 following:

- 17 1. Honeywell International (Notifier).
18 2. Honeywell International (Silent Knight).
19 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.
20 4. Tyco International (Johnson Controls - SimplexGrinnell).
21 5. Edwards Fire Safety (EST).

- 22 B. Description:

- 23 1. Noncoded, UL-certified addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and
24 voice-and-strobe notification for evacuation.

- 25 C. Performance Criteria:

- 26 1. Regulatory Requirements:

- 27 a. Fire-Alarm Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled by a NRTL
28 in accordance with NFPA 70 for use with selected fire-alarm system and marked for
29 intended location and application.

- 30 2. General Characteristics:

- 31 a. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.
32 b. Fire-alarm signal initiation must be by one or more of the following devices and
33 systems:

- 34 1) Manual stations.
35 2) Heat detectors.
36 3) Smoke detectors.
37 4) Duct smoke detectors.
38 5) Carbon monoxide detectors.
39 6) Automatic sprinkler system water flow.



- 1 c. Fire-alarm signal must initiate the following actions:
- 2 1) Continuously operate alarm notification appliances, including voice
3 evacuation notices.
- 4 2) Identify alarm and specific initiating device at FACU and any connected
5 network control panels, off-premises network control panels, and remote
6 annunciators.
- 7 3) Transmit alarm signal to remote alarm receiving station.
- 8 4) Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
- 9 5) Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
- 10 6) Activate voice/alarm communication system.
- 11 7) Switch HVAC equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
- 12 8) Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct
13 systems.
- 14 9) Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
- 15 10) Activate elevator power shunt trip.
- 16 11) Activate emergency lighting control.
- 17 12) Activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies, except for shutoffs
18 serving legally required life-safety systems such as emergency generators
19 and fire pumps.
- 20 13) Record events in system memory.
- 21 14) Record events by system printer.
- 22 15) Indicate device in alarm on graphic annunciator.
- 23 d. Supervisory signal initiation must be by one or more of the following devices and
24 actions:
- 25 1) Valve supervisory switch.
- 26 2) Elevator shunt-trip supervision.
- 27 3) Independent fire-detection and -suppression systems.
- 28 4) Zones or individual devices have been disabled.
- 29 5) FACU has lost communication with network.
- 30 6) ERCES status or alarm.
- 31 e. System trouble signal initiation must be by one or more of the following devices and
32 actions:
- 33 1) Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
- 34 2) Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-
35 initiating devices.
- 36 3) Loss of communication with addressable sensor, input module, relay, control
37 module, remote annunciator, printer interface, or Ethernet module.
- 38 4) Loss of primary power at FACU.
- 39 5) Ground or single break in internal circuits of FACU.
- 40 6) Abnormal ac voltage at FACU.
- 41 7) Break in standby battery circuitry.
- 42 8) Failure of battery charging.
- 43 9) Abnormal position of switch at FACU or annunciator.
- 44 10) Voice signal amplifier failure.
- 45 f. System Supervisory Signal Actions:
- 46 1) Initiate notification appliances.



- 1 2) Identify specific device initiating event at FACU and any, connected network
2 control panels, off-premises network control panels, and remote
3 annunciators.
4 3) Record event on system printer.
5 4) After time delay of 200 seconds, transmit trouble or supervisory signal to
6 remote alarm receiving station.
- 7 g. Network Communications:
- 8 1) Provide network communications for fire-alarm system in accordance with
9 fire-alarm manufacturer's written instructions.
10 2) Provide network communications pathway per manufacturer's written
11 instructions and requirements in NFPA 72 and NFPA 70.
- 12 h. System Printer:
- 13 1) Printer must be listed and labeled as integral part of fire-alarm system.
- 14 i. Device Guards:
- 15 1) Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for manual station, smoke
16 detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.
- 17 a) Factory fabricated and furnished by device manufacturer.
18 b) Finish: Paint of color to match protected device.
- 19 j. Document Storage Box:
- 20 1) Description: Enclosure to accommodate standard 8-1/2-by-11 inch manuals
21 and loose document records. Legend sheet will be permanently attached to
22 door for system required documentation, key contacts, and system
23 information. Provide two key ring holders with location to mount standard
24 business cards for key contact personnel.
25 2) Material and Finish: 18-gauge cold-rolled steel; four mounting holes.
26 3) Color: Red powder-coat epoxy finish.
27 4) Labeling: Permanently screened with 1 inch high lettering "SYSTEM
28 RECORD DOCUMENTS" with white indelible ink.
29 5) Security: Locked with 3/4 inch barrel lock. Provide solid 12 inch stainless steel
30 piano hinge.

31 **2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT (FACU)**

- 32 A. Description: Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with
33 electronic modules.
- 34 B. Performance Criteria:
- 35 1. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with NFPA 72 and UL 864.
36 2. General Characteristics:
- 37 a. System software and programs must be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically
38 erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining information through failure of
39 primary and secondary power supplies.



- 1 b. Include real-time clock for time annotation of events on event recorder and printer.
- 2 c. Provide communication between FACU and remote circuit interface panels,
- 3 annunciators, and displays.
- 4 d. FACU must be listed for connection to central-station signaling system service.
- 5 e. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and
- 6 event history. System must require no manual input to initialize in the event of
- 7 complete power down condition. FACU must provide minimum 500-event history
- 8 log.
- 9 f. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: FACU must indicate which communication
- 10 zones have been silenced and must provide selective silencing of alarm notification
- 11 appliance by building communication zone.
- 12 1) Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and
- 13 Mechanical Equipment: FACU must be listed for releasing service.
- 14 g. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human
- 15 operator at FACU and addressable system components including annunciation and
- 16 supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and
- 17 programming and control menu.
- 18 1) Annunciator and Display: LCD, three line(s) of 80 characters, minimum.
- 19 2) Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and
- 20 control commands and to indicate control commands to be entered into
- 21 system for control of smoke-detector sensitivity and other parameters.
- 22 h. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:
- 23 1) Pathway Class Designations: NFPA 72, Class A.
- 24 2) Pathway Survivability: Level 1.
- 25 3) Install no more than 256 addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.
- 26 4) Install fault circuit isolators to comply with circuit performance requirements
- 27 of NFPA 72 or with manufacturer's written instructions, whichever is more
- 28 conservative.
- 29 i. Serial Interfaces:
- 30 1) One dedicated RS 485 port for central-station operation using point ID DACT.
- 31 2) One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface
- 32 module (printer port).
- 33 3) One USB or RS 232 port for PC configuration.
- 34 4) One RS 232 port for voice evacuation interface.
- 35 j. Smoke-Alarm Verification:
- 36 1) Initiate audible and visible indication of "alarm-verification" signal at FACU.
- 37 2) Activate approved "alarm-verification" sequence at FACU and detector.
- 38 3) Record events by system printer.
- 39 4) Sound general alarm if alarm is verified.
- 40 5) Cancel FACU indication and system reset if alarm is not verified.
- 41 k. Notification-Appliance Circuit:
- 42 1) Audible appliances must sound in three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in
- 43 NFPA 72.
- 44 2) Visual alarm appliances must flash in synchronization where multiple
- 45 appliances are in same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.



- 1 I. Elevator Recall: Initiate by one of the following alarm-initiating devices:
- 2 1) Elevator lobby detectors except lobby detector on designated floor.
- 3 2) Smoke detectors in elevator hoistway.
- 4 m. Elevator controller must be programmed to move cars to alternate recall floor if lobby
- 5 detectors located on designated recall floors are activated.
- 6 n. Water-flow alarm connected to sprinkler in elevator shaft and elevator machine room
- 7 must shut down elevators associated with location without time delay.
- 8 1) Water-flow switch associated with sprinkler in elevator pit shall have delay to
- 9 allow elevators to move to designated floor.
- 10 o. Door Controls: Door hold-open devices that are controlled by smoke detectors at
- 11 doors in smoke-barrier walls must be connected to fire-alarm system.
- 12 1) Access Control System Interface: Provide addressable relay to release
- 13 required egress doors upon activation of fire alarm.
- 14 p. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls must select specific
- 15 addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and
- 16 sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program
- 17 repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector
- 18 groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule
- 19 changes in system memory, and print out final adjusted values on system printer.
- 20 q. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm,
- 21 supervisory, and trouble signals to remote alarm station.
- 22 r. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with
- 23 redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided as
- 24 special module that is part of FACU.
- 25 s. Indicate number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of
- 26 different announcements to different zones or for manual transmission of
- 27 announcements by use of central-control microphone. Amplifiers must comply with
- 28 UL 1711.
- 29 1) Allow application of, and evacuation signal to, indicated number of zones and
- 30 simultaneously allow voice paging to other zones selectively or in
- 31 combination.
- 32 2) Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
- 33 3) Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
- 34 4) Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended
- 35 by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification-
- 36 appliance circuits of FACU.
- 37 t. Status Annunciator: Indicate status of various voice/alarm speaker zones and status
- 38 of firefighters' two-way telephone communication zones.
- 39 u. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators must automatically transfer to backup
- 40 units, on primary equipment failure.
- 41 v. Printout of Events: On receipt of signal, print alarm, supervisory, and trouble events.
- 42 Identify zone, device, and function. Include type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or
- 43 trouble) and date and time of occurrence. Differentiate alarm signals from other
- 44 printed indications. Also, print system reset event, including same information for
- 45 device, location, date, and time. Commands initiate printing of list of existing alarm,
- 46 supervisory, and trouble conditions in system and historical log of events.



- 1 w. Primary Power: 24 V(dc) obtained from 120 V(ac) service and power-supply
 2 module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals,
 3 and supervisory signals must be powered by 24 V(dc) source.
 4 x. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system must not exceed 80 percent of power-
 5 supply module rating.
 6 y. Secondary Power: 24 V(dc) supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger,
 7 and automatic transfer switch.
 8 z. Batteries: Sealed, valve-regulated, recombinant lead acid.

9 C. Accessories:

- 10 1. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind plastic or
 11 glass cover in stainless steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe
 12 appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe functional operation of
 13 system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

14 **2.4 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES**

- 15 A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes must be finished
 16 in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; must show visible
 17 indication of operation; and must be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface
 18 mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.

- 19 1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate alarm, breaking-glass or plastic-
 20 rod or pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-
 21 station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
 22 2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
 23 3. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at top
 24 to permit lifting for access to initiate alarm.
 25 4. Able to perform at up to 90 percent relative humidity at 90 deg F.
 26 5. Able to be used in outdoor areas.

27 **2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS**

- 28 A. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

- 29 1. Performance Criteria:

- 30 a. Regulatory Requirements:

- 31 1) NFPA 72.
 32 2) UL 268.

- 33 b. General Characteristics:

- 34 1) Detectors must be two-wire type.
 35 2) Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status
 36 (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
 37 3) Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components must be
 38 mounted in twist-lock module that connects to fixed base. Provide terminals
 39 in fixed base for connection to building wiring.



- 1 4) Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after
 2 actuation to restore them to normal operation.
 3 5) Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has
 4 operated and power-on status.
 5 6) Detector address must be accessible from FACU and must be able to identify
 6 detector's location within system and its sensitivity setting.
 7 7) Operator at FACU, having designated access level, must be able to manually
 8 access the following for each detector:
- 9 a) Primary status.
 10 b) Device type.
 11 c) Present average value.
 12 d) Present sensitivity selected.
 13 e) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- 14 8) Detector must have functional humidity range within 10 to 90 percent relative
 15 humidity.
 16 9) Color: White.
 17 10) Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors must be digital-
 18 addressable type, individually monitored at FACU for calibration, sensitivity,
 19 and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by FACU.
 20 11) Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-
 21 detection units must be selectable at FACU for 15 or 20 deg F per minute.
 22 12) Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-
 23 detection units must be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and must be
 24 settable at FACU to operate at 135 or 155 deg F.
 25 13) Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
 26 14) Sensitivity levels based on time of day.

27 B. Ionization Smoke Detectors:

28 1. Performance Criteria:

29 a. Regulatory Requirements:

- 30 1) NFPA 72.
 31 2) UL 268.

32 b. General Characteristics:

- 33 1) Detectors must be two-wire type.
 34 2) Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status
 35 (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
 36 3) Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components must be
 37 mounted in twist-lock module that connects to fixed base. Provide terminals
 38 in fixed base for connection to building wiring.
 39 4) Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after
 40 actuation to restore them to normal operation.
 41 5) Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has
 42 operated and power-on status.
 43 6) Detector address must be accessible from FACU and must be able to identify
 44 detector's location within system and its sensitivity setting.
 45 7) Operator at FACU, having designated access level, must be able to manually
 46 access the following for each detector:



- 1 a) Primary status.
 2 b) Device type.
 3 c) Present average value.
 4 d) Present sensitivity selected.
 5 e) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- 6 8) Detector must have functional humidity range within 10 to 90 percent relative
 7 humidity.
 8 9) Color: White.
 9 10) Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors must be digital-
 10 addressable type, individually monitored at FACU for calibration, sensitivity,
 11 and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by FACU.
 12 11) Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-
 13 detection units must be selectable at FACU for 15 or 20 deg F per minute.
 14 12) Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-
 15 detection units must be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and must be
 16 settable at FACU to operate at 135 or 155 deg F.
 17 13) Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
 18 14) Sensitivity levels based on time of day.

19 2.6 DUCT SMOKE DETECTORS

- 20 A. Description: Photoelectric-type, duct-mounted smoke detector.
- 21 B. Performance Criteria:
- 22 1. Regulatory Requirements:
- 23 a. NFPA 72.
 24 b. UL 268A.
- 25 2. General Characteristics:
- 26 a. Detectors must be two-wire type.
 27 b. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal,
 28 alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
 29 c. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to
 30 restore them to normal operation.
 31 d. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and
 32 power-on status.
 33 e. Detector address must be accessible from FACU and must be able to identify
 34 detector's location within system and its sensitivity setting.
 35 f. Operator at FACU, having designated access level, must be able to manually access
 36 the following for each detector:
- 37 1) Primary status.
 38 2) Device type.
 39 3) Present average value.
 40 4) Present sensitivity selected.
 41 5) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- 42 g. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use
 43 with supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.



- 1 h. Each sensor must have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
- 2 i. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for
- 3 specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
- 4 j. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control
- 5 circuit.

6 **2.7 CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTORS**

7 A. Description: Carbon monoxide detector listed for connection to fire-alarm system.

8 B. Performance Criteria:

9 1. Regulatory Requirements:

- 10 a. NFPA 72
- 11 b. NFPA 720.
- 12 c. UL 2075.

13 2. General Characteristics:

- 14 a. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting.
- 15 b. Testable by introducing test carbon monoxide into sensing cell.
- 16 c. Detector must provide alarm contacts and trouble contacts.
- 17 d. Detector must send trouble alarm when nearing end-of-life, power supply problems,
- 18 or internal faults.
- 19 e. Locate, mount, and wire in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- 20 f. Provide means for addressable connection to fire-alarm system.
- 21 g. Test button simulates alarm condition.
- 22 h. Integral alarm that provides four-pulse signal pattern that is distinctive from fire
- 23 evacuation signal

24 1) Minimum rating of 85 dBA when mounted at 10 feet.

25 **2.8 HEAT DETECTORS**

26 A. Combination-Type Heat Detectors:

27 1. Performance Criteria:

28 a. Regulatory Requirements:

- 29 1) NFPA 72.
- 30 2) UL 521.

31 b. General Characteristics:

32 1) Temperature sensors must test for and communicate sensitivity range of

33 device.

34 c. Actuated by fixed temperature of 135 deg F or rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F per

35 minute unless otherwise indicated.

36 d. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.



- 1 e. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal,
2 alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
3 f. Detector must have functional humidity range of 10 to 90 percent relative humidity.
4 g. Color: White.
- 5 B. Fixed-Temperature-Type Heat Detectors:
- 6 1. Performance Criteria:
- 7 a. Regulatory Requirements:
- 8 1) NFPA 72.
9 2) UL 521.
- 10 b. General Characteristics:
- 11 1) Actuated by temperature that exceeds fixed temperature of 135 deg F, unless
12 otherwise indicated..
13 2) Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
14 3) Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status
15 (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
16 4) Detector must have functional humidity range of 10 to 90 percent.
17 5) Color: White.

18 **2.9 MULTICRITERIA AND MULTISENSOR FIRE DETECTORS**

- 19 A. Description: Fire-sensing detectors using multiple means of detection.
- 20 B. Performance Criteria:
- 21 1. Regulatory Requirements:
- 22 a. NFPA 72.
- 23 2. General Characteristics:
- 24 a. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
25 b. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal,
26 alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
27 c. Automatically adjusts its sensitivity by means of drift compensation and smoothing
28 algorithms. Detector must send trouble alarm if it is incapable of compensating for
29 existing conditions.
30 d. Test button tests sensors in detector.
31 e. Operator at FACU, having designated access level, must be able to manually access
32 the following for each detector:
- 33 1) Primary status.
34 2) Device type.
35 3) Present sensitivity selected.
36 4) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- 37 f. Detector must have functional humidity range within 10 to 90 percent relative
38 humidity.



- 1 g. Color: White.
 2 h. Comply with UL requirements.
 3 i. Sensors (Multisensor Type): Detector must be comprised of four sensing elements
 4 including smoke sensor, carbon monoxide sensor, infrared sensor, and heat sensor.
- 5 1) Smoke sensor must be photoelectric type as described in "System Smoke
 6 Detectors" Article.
 7 2) Carbon monoxide sensor must be as described in "Carbon Monoxide
 8 Detectors" Article.
 9 3) Heat sensor must be as described in "Heat Detectors" Article.
 10 4) Each sensor must be separately listed in accordance with requirements for
 11 its detector type.

12 **2.10 FIRE-ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES**

13 A. Fire-Alarm Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:

- 14 1. Description: Notification appliances capable of outputting voice evacuation messages.
 15 2. Performance Criteria:
- 16 a. Regulatory Requirements:
- 17 1) NFPA 72.
 18 2) UL 1480.
- 19 b. General Characteristics:
- 20 1) Speakers for Voice Notification: Locate speakers for voice notification to
 21 provide intelligibility requirements of "Notification Appliances" and
 22 "Emergency Communications Systems" chapters in NFPA 72.
 23 2) High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W.
 24 3) Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
 25 4) Mounting: Surface mounted and bidirectional.
 26 5) Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of
 27 speaker location.
 28 6) Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in
 29 single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with
 30 screw terminals for system connections.

31 B. Fire-Alarm Visible Notification Appliances:

- 32 1. Performance Criteria:
- 33 a. Regulatory Requirements:
- 34 1) NFPA 72.
 35 2) UL 1971.
- 36 b. General Characteristics:
- 37 1) Rated Light Output:
- 38 a) 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in field.



- 1) Clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on aluminum faceplate.
- 2) Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
- 3) For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings must be determined with guards in place.
- 4) Flashing must be in temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
- 5) Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
- 6) Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, white.
- 7) For devices used as notification devices for fire alarm and Mass Notification Systems, housing shall read "ALERT". For all other devices, housing shall read "FIRE".

11 2.11 FIRE-ALARM REMOTE ANNUNCIATORS

12 A. Performance Criteria:

13 1. Regulatory Requirements:

- 14 a. NFPA 72.

15 2. General Characteristics:

- 16 a. Annunciator functions must match those of FACU for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions must match those of FACU, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.

- 17 1) Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.

- 18 b. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights must match those of FACU. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

23 2.12 FIRE-ALARM ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICES

24 A. Performance Criteria:

25 1. Regulatory Requirements:

- 26 a. NFPA 72.

27 2. General Characteristics:

- 28 a. Include address-setting means on module.
- 29 b. Store internal identifying code for control panel use to identify module type.
- 30 c. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.
- 31 d. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- 32 e. Integral Relay: Capable of providing direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall or to circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown.

- 33 1) Allow control panel to switch relay contacts on command.

- 34 2) Have minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.



- 1 f. Control Module:
- 2 1) Operate notification devices.
- 3 2) Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.
- 4 **2.13 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTERS (DACTs)**
- 5 A. Performance Criteria:
- 6 1. Regulatory Requirements:
- 7 a. NFPA 72.
- 8 2. General Characteristics: [See alternates for cellular communications system](#)
- 9 a. DACT must be acceptable to remote central station and must be listed for fire-alarm
- 10 use.
- 11 b. Functional Performance: Unit must receive alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from
- 12 FACU and automatically capture one 5G cellular signal and dial preset number for
- 13 remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals must
- 14 be transmitted. If service is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter must
- 15 initiate local trouble signal and transmit signal indicating loss of cellular signal to
- 16 remote alarm receiving station over remaining backup network transmission.
- 17 Transmitter must automatically report cellular service restoration to central station.
- 18 If service is lost on both the 5G cellular service and backup network transmission,
- 19 the transmitter must initiate local trouble signal.
- 20 c. Local functions and display at DACT must include the following:
- 21 1) Verification that both cellular signal and backup network lines are available.
- 22 2) Programming device.
- 23 3) LED display.
- 24 4) Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
- 25 5) Communications failure with central station or FACU.
- 26 d. Digital data transmission must include the following:
- 27 1) Address of alarm-initiating device.
- 28 2) Address of supervisory signal.
- 29 3) Address of trouble-initiating device.
- 30 4) Loss of ac supply.
- 31 5) Loss of power.
- 32 6) Low battery.
- 33 7) Abnormal test signal.
- 34 8) Communication bus failure.
- 35 e. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.
- 36 f. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central
- 37 station.



1 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

2 **3.1 EXAMINATION**

3 A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature,
4 humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

5 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been
6 permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before
7 installation begins.

8 B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before
9 installation.

10 C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

11 **3.2 PREPARATION**

12 A. Preinstallation Testing: Perform verification of functionality of installed components of existing
13 system prior to starting work. Document equipment or components not functioning as designed.

14 B. Protection of In-Place Conditions: Protect devices during construction unless devices are placed
15 in service to protect facility during construction.

16 **3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT**

17 A. Comply with NECA 305, NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction
18 for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install electrical wiring to comply with
19 requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."

20 1. Devices placed in service before other trades have completed cleanup must be replaced.
21 2. Devices installed, but not yet placed, in service must be protected from construction dust,
22 debris, dirt, moisture, and damage in accordance with manufacturer's written storage
23 instructions.

24 B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inch above finished floor.

25 C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:

26 1. Install manual fire-alarm box in normal path of egress within 60 inch of exit doorway.
27 2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on background of contrasting color.
28 3. Operable part of manual fire-alarm box must be 48 inch above floor level. Devices must be
29 mounted at same height unless otherwise indicated.

30 D. Smoke- and Heat-Detector Spacing:

31 1. Comply with "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in "Initiating Devices" chapter in
32 NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
33 2. Comply with "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in "Initiating Devices" chapter in
34 NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
35 3. Smooth ceiling spacing must not exceed 30 ft..



- 1 4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high
2 ceiling areas must be determined in accordance with Annex A or Annex B in NFPA 72.
3 5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 36 inch from air-supply diffuser or return-air
4 opening.
5 6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inch from lighting fixture and not
6 directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.
- 7 E. Install cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover must
8 remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.
- 9 F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they
10 extend full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inch long must be supported at both ends.
- 11 1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install
12 detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.
- 13 G. Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location. Do
14 not install smoke detectors in sprinklered elevator shafts.
- 15 H. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler
16 water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- 17 I. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inch below ceiling. Install bells and horns
18 on flush-mounted back boxes with device-operating mechanism concealed behind grille. Install
19 devices at same height unless otherwise indicated.
- 20 J. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6
21 inch below ceiling. Install devices at same height unless otherwise indicated.
- 22 K. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near device they monitor.

23 **3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS**

- 24 A. Connect wiring in accordance with Division 26.
- 25 B. Ground equipment in accordance with Division 26.
- 26 C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with
27 NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- 28 D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and
29 circuit number feeding connection.
- 30 1. Nameplate must be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Division
31 26.

32 **3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS**

- 33 A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- 34 B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 29 05 23 "Control-Voltage Cables for Fire
35 Safety and Emergency Communications"



- 1 C. Install nameplate for each control connection, indicating field control panel designation and I/O
2 control designation feeding connection.

3 3.6 PATHWAYS

- 4 A. Install pathways in accordance with Division 26.
- 5 B. Pathways must be installed in EMT.
- 6 1. Pathways must be installed in EMT or RSC.
7 2. Exposed raceways must be painted red enamel.
8 3. Concealed and exposed junction boxes must be painted red enamel.

9 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- 10 A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke
11 partitions, comply with requirements in Division 08. Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm
12 system.
- 13 1. Verify that hardware and devices are listed for use with installed fire-alarm system before
14 making connections.
- 15 B. Make addressable connections with supervised interface device to the following devices and
16 systems. Install interface device less than 36 inch from device controlled. Make addressable
17 confirmation connection when such feedback is available at device or system being controlled.
- 18 1. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated HVAC duct systems.
19 2. Magnetically held-open doors.
20 3. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
21 4. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
22 5. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.
23 6. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
24 7. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
25 8. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt-trip breaker.
26 9. Data communication circuits for connection to building management system.
27 10. Supervisory connections at fire-extinguisher locations.
28 11. Supervisory connections at ERCES.
29 12. Alarm-initiating connection to smoke-control system at firefighters' smoke-control system
30 panel.

31 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- 32 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for
33 identification specified in Division 27.
- 34 B. Install framed instructions in location visible from FACU.

35 3.9 GROUNDING

- 36 A. Ground FACU and associated circuits in accordance with Division 26.



- 1 B. Ground shielded cables at control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.
- 2 **3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**
- 3 A. Field tests must be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 4 B. Administrant for Tests and Inspections:
- 5 1. Owner will engage qualified testing agency to administer and perform tests and
6 inspections.
- 7 2. Engage qualified testing agency to administer and perform tests and inspections.
- 8 3. Engage factory-authorized service representative to administer and perform tests and
9 inspections on components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including
10 connections.
- 11 C. Tests and Inspections:
- 12 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
- 13 a. Inspection must be based on completed record Drawings and system
14 documentation that is required by "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in
15 "Documentation" section of "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
- 16 b. Comply with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in "Inspection" section of
17 "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain
18 "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only installed components.
- 19 2. System Testing: Comply with "Test Methods" table in "Testing" section of "Inspection,
20 Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- 21 3. Test audible appliances for public operating mode in accordance with manufacturer's
22 written instructions. Perform test using portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2
23 requirements in ASA S1.4 Part 1/IEC 61672-1.
- 24 4. Test audible appliances for private operating mode in accordance with manufacturer's
25 written instructions.
- 26 5. Test visible appliances for public operating mode in accordance with manufacturer's written
27 instructions.
- 28 6. Factory-authorized service representative must prepare "Fire Alarm System Record of
29 Completion" in "Documentation" section of "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and
30 "Inspection and Testing Form" in "Records" section of "Inspection, Testing and
31 Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- 32 D. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify proper operation of added or
33 replaced devices and appliances.
- 34 E. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- 35 F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 36 G. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly,
37 quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
- 38 H. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system
39 complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for
40 initial tests and inspections.



1 **3.11 DEMONSTRATION**

- 2 A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to
3 adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system. Provide video recording of training to Owner.

4 **3.12 MAINTENANCE**

- 5 A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service must include
6 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service
7 organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective
8 components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and
9 supplies must be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

- 10 1. Include visual inspections in accordance with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in
11 "Testing" paragraph of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
12 2. Perform tests in "Test Methods" table in "Testing" paragraph of "Inspection, Testing and
13 Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
14 3. Perform tests per "Testing Frequencies" table in "Testing" paragraph of "Inspection,
15 Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

16 **3.13 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT**

- 17 A. Comply with UL 864.

- 18 B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement must include
19 software support for two years.

- 20 C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and
21 program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial
22 Completion. Upgrading software must include operating system and new or revised licenses for
23 using software.

- 24 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to
25 upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

26 **END OF SECTION 29 46 21.11**



Alternate

1 SECTION 29 48 00 - EMERGENCY RESPONSE SYSTEMS

2 PART 1 - GENERAL

3 1.1 SUMMARY

4 A. Section Includes:

- 5 1. Emergency responder communications enhancement systems.

6 1.2 DEFINITIONS

7 A. BDA: Bi-directional amplifier.

8 B. ERCES: Emergency responder communications enhancement system.

9 C. PES: Public emergency service.

10 D. RF: Radio frequency.

11 E. UHF: Ultra-high frequency.

12 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

13 A. Product Data:

14 1. ERCESs:

15 a. BDAs.

16 b. In-building service antennas.

17 c. Outdoor donor antenna.

18 d. Coaxial cabling.

19 e. Couplers and splitters.

20 f. Remote indicator panels.

21 B. Delegated Design Submittal: For enhanced radio communication systems, in addition to
22 submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria,
23 including analysis data signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for
24 their preparation.

25 1. Drawings showing location of each in-building antenna, directional couplers, splitters,
26 cabling, diplexers, in-building amplifiers, roof antennae, battery backup, and grounding
27 and bonding, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing
28 conditions of device.

29 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting spacing and sensitivity of
30 devices, complying with NFPA 72 and NFPA 1221.

31 C. Certificates:



Alternate

- 1 1. Certification from each system vendor that equipment and components are compatible
2 and represent a complete system in accordance with NFPA 72, NFPA 1221, and
3 specified requirements.
- 4 D. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
- 5 1. Field quality-control reports.
- 6 **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**
- 7 A. Manufacturers' Published Instructions: Record copy of official installation and testing
8 instructions issued to Installer by manufacturer for the following:
- 9 1. Installation instructions for ERCESs.
10 2. Recommended tests and inspections for ERCESs.
- 11 B. System Record of Inspection and Testing: Record copy of completed system acceptance
12 testing. Format must be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 13 C. Sample warranties.
- 14 **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**
- 15 A. Warranty documentation.
- 16 **1.6 REGULATORY AGENCY APPROVALS**
- 17 A. Submittals for emergency communications systems requiring approval by authorities having
18 jurisdiction must be signed and sealed by qualified electrical professional engineer or qualified
19 fire protection professional engineer responsible for their preparation. Obtain approval by
20 authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting for action by Architect.
- 21 **1.7 WARRANTY FOR EMERGENCY RESPONSE SYSTEMS**
- 22 A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed ERCES
23 performs in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace
24 components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.
- 25 1. Extended-Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage
26 for labor, materials, and equipment.
- 27 **1.8 WARRANTY FOR BATTERIES**
- 28 A. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty for Batteries: Manufacturer warrants that batteries
29 perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement
30 of batteries that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.
- 31 1. Warranted Cycle Life for Premium Valve Regulated (Sealed) Lead Calcium or Lead
32 Selenium Batteries: Equal to or greater than that represented in manufacturer's published



Alternate

- 1 table, but not less than the following, based on annual average battery temperature of
2 77 deg F:
- 3 a. For discharge rate not faster than eight hours, discharge duration not longer than
4 eight hours, and voltage at end of discharge not less than 1.67 V, warranted life
5 must be not fewer than 40 discharge cycles.
- 6 b. For discharge rate not faster than 30 minutes, discharge duration not longer than
7 30 minutes, and voltage at end of discharge not less than 1.67 V, warranted life
8 must be not fewer than 125 discharge cycles.
- 9 c. For discharge rate not faster than 15 minutes, discharge duration not longer than
10 90 seconds, and voltage at end of discharge not less than 1.67 V, warranted life
11 must be not fewer than 750 discharge cycles.

12 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

13 2.1 EMERGENCY RESPONDER COMMUNICATIONS ENHANCEMENT SYSTEMS

- 14 A. Description: This category includes in-building ERCES equipment to improve wireless
15 communication. This FCC-certified enhancement system is inclusive of BDA, transmission lines,
16 cables, power supplies, antennas, and other ancillary equipment that allows radio signals to
17 pass to and from interior of structure for facilitating radio communications using PES radio
18 frequencies.
- 19 B. Performance Criteria:
- 20 1. Regulatory Requirements:
- 21 a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing
22 laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended
23 location and application.
- 24 b. Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, products must comply with
25 NFPA 1, NFPA 70, NFPA 72, NFPA 1221, NFPA 101, and local regulations
26 enforced by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 27 C. In-Building ERCES Bi-Directional Amplifiers:
- 28 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
29 following:
- 30 a. Advanced RF Technologies, Inc. (ADRF).
- 31 b. Gamewell-FCI; Honeywell International, Inc.
- 32 c. Radio Solutions Inc. (RSI).
- 33 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN UTMH; including UL 2524 and NFPA 1221.
- 34 3. Options:
- 35 a. Primary Power Supply: 120 V(ac).
- 36 b. Secondary Power Supply: 24 V(dc) supply system including batteries, automatic
37 float-charge battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.



Alternate

- 1 c. Supervision: Auxiliary contacts for remote status supervision by protected
2 premises fire-alarm system.
- 3 1) Signal booster failure.
4 2) Antenna malfunction.
5 3) Loss of primary power.
6 4) Low battery voltage.
7 5) Battery charger failure.
- 8 d. Cabinet Enclosures: UL 50E, Type 4 steel enclosure for amplifiers and power
9 supplies.
- 10 e. Mounting: Surface mount.
11 f. Finish: Factory-finish red enamel.
- 12 D. In-Building ERCES Distributed Antennas:
- 13 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers
14 offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to
15 the following:
- 16 a. Fractal Antenna Systems, Inc.
17 b. Laird Connectivity; Advent International.
18 c. TE Connectivity.
- 19 2. Options:
- 20 a. Type: Wide-band omnidirectional.
21 b. Mounting: Low-profile ceiling mount.
- 22 E. In-Building ERCES Donor Antennas:
- 23 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers
24 offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to
25 the following:
- 26 a. Fractal Antenna Systems, Inc.
27 b. Laird Connectivity; Advent International.
28 c. TE Connectivity.
- 29 2. Options:
- 30 a. Configuration: Factory assembled and tuned directional UHF Yagi antenna.
31 b. Mounting: Stainless steel mounting hardware.
32 c. Finish: Welded corrosion-resistant aluminum construction.
33 d. Wind Velocity Rating: 150 mph.
- 34 F. RF Antenna Cable Couplers and Splitters:



Alternate

- 1 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers
2 offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to
3 the following:
 - 4 a. CommScope, Inc.
 - 5 b. Mini-Circuits; Scientific Components Corp.
- 6 2. Options:
 - 7 a. Configuration: Nominal 0.5 inch, 50 Ω , N-Type, weatherproof, medium-size, RF
8 couplers and splitters for coaxial cables.
 - 9 b. Bandwidth: As required by in-building emergency radio enhancement system
10 performance requirements.
 - 11 c. Gain (dB) Rating: As required by in-building emergency radio enhancement
12 system performance requirements.
 - 13 d. Environmental Rating: Type 4 and IP65.
- 14 G. Remote Indicator Panel:
 - 15 1. Options:
 - 16 a. Primary Power Supply: 120 V(ac).
 - 17 b. Secondary Power Supply: 24 V(dc) supply system including batteries, automatic
18 float-charge battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
 - 19 c. Configuration: Zone indicator panel with LED indicators, piezoelectric sounder and
20 switches for lamp test and alarm silence.
 - 21 d. LED Indicators: Green indicator for primary power in normal state; red indicators
22 for each individual fault status required to be indicated by authorities having
23 jurisdiction.
 - 24 e. Enclosure: 16-gauge steel with factory-applied red enamel finish.

25 PART 3 - EXECUTION

26 3.1 COMMON INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY RESPONSE SYSTEMS

- 27 A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- 28 B. Reference Standards:
 - 29 1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or
30 manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NFPA 1, NFPA 70, NFPA 72,
31 NFPA 1221, NFPA 101, and local regulations enforced by authorities having jurisdiction
32 for installation of emergency communications systems.
 - 33 2. Comply with NECA 305 for installation of emergency communications systems devices
34 and their connections to fire-alarm system.
 - 35 3. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- 36 C. Installation for Survivability:



Alternate

- 1 1. Where NFPA 72 or NFPA 1221 Survivability Level 2 or 3 pathways are indicated or
2 required, install cables and pathways within 2-hour fire-resistance-rated enclosures or
3 provide fire-resistive pathway installation in accordance with NFPA 72 or NFPA 1221.
- 4 2. Install control equipment, power supplies, junction boxes, terminal cabinets, or similar
5 components within dedicated 2-hour fire-resistance-rated fire-alarm system equipment
6 rooms if components originate from or comprise a portion of NFPA 72 or NFPA 1221
7 Survivability Level 2 or 3 pathway.

8 **3.2 INSTALLATION OF ERCES**

9 A. Special Techniques:

10 1. Antenna Wiring Methods:

11 a. Coaxial Cabling:

- 12 1) Plenum Coaxial Cable: Type CATVP, nominal 0.5 inch, 50 Ω coaxial
13 jacketed cable with corrugated copper or aluminum outer conductor.
- 14 2) Connectors: Nominal 0.5 inch, 50 Ω N-Type, weatherproof, medium-size,
15 RF connectors for coaxial cables.

16 b. Pathway Survivability:

- 17 1) Riser Coaxial Cables: Level 2 or 3.
 - 18 2) Feeder Coaxial Cables: Level 2 or 3.
- 19 2. Determine in-building service antenna locations based on baseline radio signal strength
20 testing.
 - 21 3. Request approval from authorities having jurisdiction to omit emergency responder radio
22 coverage system from areas of building where baseline radio signal strength testing
23 demonstrates that minimum required radio signal strength values are achieved without
24 radio coverage system.
 - 25 4. Install outdoor donor antenna with clear view to donor site with minimum 2 ft vertical
26 clearance above nearby obstacles.

27 B. Interfaces with Other Work:

- 28 1. Coordinate installation of new products for emergency responder radio coverage systems
29 with existing conditions.
- 30 2. Coordinate with Section 29 46 21.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems" for interfaces
31 with fire-alarm system.

32 **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

- 33 A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for
34 identification specified in Division 27.

35 **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL OF EMERGENCY RESPONDER RADIO COVERAGE SYSTEMS**

- 36 A. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.



Alternate

- 1 B. Tests and Inspections:
- 2 1. Perform manufacturer's recommended tests and inspections.
- 3 2. Perform field tests and inspections required by NFPA 72 and NFPA 1221.
- 4 3. Baseline radio signal strength testing.
- 5 C. Nonconforming Work:
- 6 1. Device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- 7 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- 8 D. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.
- 9 E. Manufacturer Services:
- 10 1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to support field tests and inspections.
- 11 **3.5 PROTECTION**
- 12 A. After installation, protect emergency communications systems devices from construction
- 13 activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise
- 14 caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.
- 15 **END OF SECTION 29 48 00**
- 16



1

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



SECTION 31 10 00 - TRENCH SAFETY ACT

1.1 INTENT

The purpose and intent of this act is to provide for increased worker safety by requiring compliance with sufficient standards for trench safety.

- 1.2 STATE STANDARD.** -The Occupational Safety and Health Administration's excavation safety standards, 29, C.F.R. s. 1926.650 Subpart P, are hereby incorporated as the state standard. The Department of labor and Employment Security may, but rule, adopt updated or revised versions of those standards, provided that the updated or revised versions are consistent with the intent expressed in this act and s. 553.72, and are not otherwise inconsistent with state law. Any rule adopted as provided in this section shall be complied with upon its effective date.

1.3 TRENCH EXCAVATIONS IN EXCESS OF 5 FEET DEEP; REQUIRED INFORMATION.

On all specific contracts for trench excavation in which such excavation will exceed a depth of 5 feet:

1. The contract bid submitted by the contractor who will perform such excavation shall include:
 - a. A reference to the trench safety standards that will be in effect during the period of construction of the project.
 - b. Written assurance by the contractor performing the trench excavation that such contractor will comply with the applicable trench safety standards.
 - c. A separate item identifying the cost of compliance with the applicable trench safety standards.
2. A contractor performing trench excavation shall:
 - a. As a minimum, comply with the excavation safety standards which are applicable to a project.
 - b. Adhere to any special shoring requirements, if any, of the State of other political subdivisions which may be applicable to such a project.
 - c. If any geotechnical information is available from the owner, the contractor, or otherwise, the contractor performing trench excavation shall consider this information in the contractor's design of the trench safety system which it will employ on the project. This paragraph shall not require the owner to obtain geotechnical information.
 - d. The Trench safety system shall be designed by the Contractor.

1.4 CERTAIN REQUIREMENTS FOR CONTRACT BIDS

The separate item identifying the cost of compliance with trench safety standards shall be based on the linear feet of trench to be excavated. The separate item for special shoring requirements, if any, shall be based on the square feet of shoring used. Every separate item shall indicate the specific method of compliance as well as the cost of that method.

END OF SECTION 31 10 00



1 **SECTION 31 31 16 - TERMITE CONTROL**

2
3 **PART 1 - GENERAL**

4
5 **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- 6
7 A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
8 Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
9

10 **1.2 SUMMARY**

- 11
12 A. This Section includes soil treatment for termite control.
13

14 **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- 15
16 A. General: Submit the following according to Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification
17 Sections.
18
19 B. Certification that products used comply with U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
20 regulations for termiticides. Submit evidence that provided termiticides bear a federal
21 registration number of the EPA and are approved by local authorities having jurisdiction.
22

23 **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- 24
25 A. In addition to requirements of these specifications, comply with manufacturer's instructions and
26 recommendations for preparing substrate and application.
27
28 B. Engage a professional pest control operator who is licensed according to regulations of
29 governing authorities to apply soil treatment solution.
30
31 C. Use only termiticides that bear a federal registration number of the EPA and are approved by
32 local authorities having jurisdiction.
33

34 **1.5 JOB CONDITIONS**

- 35
36 A. Restrictions: Do not apply soil treatment solution until excavating, filling, and grading operations
37 are completed, except as otherwise required in construction operations.
38
39 B. To ensure penetration, do not apply soil treatment to frozen or excessively wet soils or during
40 inclement weather. Comply with handling and application instructions of the soil toxicant
41 manufacturer.
42

43 **1.6 WARRANTY**

- 44
45 A. Warranty: Furnish written warranty, executed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that
46 applied soil termiticide treatment will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If
47 subterranean termite activity is discovered during warranty period, Contractor will re-treat soil
48 and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.
49
50 B. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.
51
52 C. The warranty shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other
53 provisions of the Contract Documents and will be in addition to and run concurrent with other
54 warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
55
56 D. The warranty shall contain an optional renewal of the service on the same terms, for years six
57 (6) through ten (10)



- 1
2 E. The service agreement shall state that in the event of damage during the guarantee period, the
3 Contractor shall make repairs to the structurally damaged surfaces and architectural millwork to
4 a dollar value based on the size of the building.
5

6 **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

7 **2.1 SOIL TREATMENT SOLUTION**

- 8
9
10 A. General: Use an emulsible, concentrated termiticide that dilutes with water, specially
11 formulated to prevent termites infestation. Fuel oil will not be permitted as a diluent. Provide a
12 solution consisting of one of following chemical elements.
13
14 B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
15
16 1. Chloropyrifos:
17 a. Dursban TC, Dow Chemical Co.
18
19 2. Permethrin:
20 a. Dagnet FT, FMC Corp.
21 b. Torpedo, ICI Americas, Inc.
22
23 3. Cypermethrine:
24 a. Prevail FT, FMC Corp.
25 b. Demon, ICI Americas, Inc.
26
27 4. Fenvalerate:
28 a. Gold Coast Tribute, Du Pont.
29
30 5. Isofenphose:
31 a. Pryfon, Mobay Corp.
32
33 C. Dilute with water to concentration level recommended by manufacturer.
34
35 D. Other solutions may be used as recommended by Applicator if approved for intended
36 application by local authorities having jurisdiction. Use only soil treatment solutions that are not
37 harmful to plants.
38
39

40 **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

41 **3.1 APPLICATION**

- 42
43
44 A. Surface Preparation: Remove foreign matter that could decrease treatment effectiveness on
45 areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated, except previously compacted
46 areas under slabs and foundations. Toxicants may be applied before placing compacted fill
47 under slabs if recommended by toxicant manufacturer.
48
49 B. Application Rates: Apply soil treatment in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions and
50 recommendations which meet the warranty requirement for the material used. Apply in the
51 following locations:
52
53 1. Under slab-on-grade structures.
54
55
56
57



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15

- a.
 - 2. Below grad, treat soil along exterior and interior walls of foundations with shallow footings as specified above for exterior of slab-on-grade structures.
 - 3. At hollow masonry foundations or grade beams.
 - 4. At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs will be penetrated.
- C. Post signs in areas of application to warn workers that soil termiticide treatment has been applied. Remove signs after areas are covered by other construction.
- D. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, landscape grading, or other construction activities following application.

END OF SECTION 31 31 16



SECTION 32 31 14- CHAIN LINK AND DECORATIVE FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Furnish labor, materials and equipment to include fencing for the referenced project.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. Changes in specification are only upon written approval by customer.

B. Shop Drawings: Shall consist of dimensions, sizes, finishes and post foundations.

C. Product Data: Manufacturer's certification indicating material compliance and installation. All products must have a 20-year warranty.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS (fencing 10 feet high and above)

- A. Delegated Design: Design chain-link fences and gates, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Chain-link fence and gate framework shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to **ASCE/SEI 7**:
 - 1. Minimum Post Size: Determine according to ASTM F 1043 for framework up to 20 feet high and post spacing not to exceed 10 feet (3 m).
 - 2. Minimum Post Size and Maximum Spacing: Determine according to CLFMI WLG 2445, based on mesh size and pattern specified and on the following:
 - a. Wind Loads: ASCE 7-10 Wind Speed (3-sec peak gust) is 141 mph, Risk Category III, Exposure B. (**see Structural drawings for wind speed**)
 - b. Fence Height: As indicated
 - c. Material Group: **ASTM F 1043, Schedule 40 steel pipe.**

1.04 WARRANTY

- A. Standard Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which **manufacturer/installer** agrees to repair or replace components of chain-link fences and gates that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's certification indicating material compliance and installation **Twenty (20)** years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 CHAIN LINK FENCING

A. Wire: GALVANIZED - 9 Gauge GAW fabric with 2" Mesh Spacing. Fabric must be manufactured domestically. VINYL COATED – 6 Gauge Finish on wire in specified color. Selvage on all fabric to be knuckle. Mesh shall be vertically-woven diamond mesh, with a nominal distance of 2 inches (50 mm) between parallel wires B. Colors shall be stabilized, and shall have a light fastness to withstand a minimum Weather O Meter exposure of at least 1500 hours without deterioration when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1499



B. Rails: 1 5/8 - 40 weight pipe. Pipe must be either galvanized or powder coated to match the color of the fabric.

C. Posts:

Line Posts – 2” 40 Weight posts. For fence heights greater than 10 feet in height size as determined by design engineer. Posts must be galvanized, or powder coated to match color of the fabric. Post must be at least 2 ft longer than fence height on heights up to 6 ft and 3 ft longer on fence heights exceeding 6 ft. Terminal Posts – 3” 40 Weight posts. For fence heights greater than 10 feet in height size as determined by design engineer. Posts must be galvanized, or powder coated to match color of the fabric. Post must be at least 2 ft longer than fence height on heights up to 6 ft and 3 ft longer on fence heights exceeding 6 ft.

D. Tension Bars: 3/16 inches by 3/4-inch (4.76 mm by 20 mm) galvanized steel flat bars.

E. Fittings: Sleeves, bands, clips, rail ends, tension bars, fasteners and fittings shall be galvanized steel or powder coated steel to match.

F. Ties: Fasten fabric to top rail, line posts, braces, and bottom tension wire with 11 AWG galvanized wire ties 24 inches (610 mm) maximum on centers.

G. Horizontal Framing Members: Intermediate, top and bottom rails complying with ASTM 1043. 1 5/8” Minimum Schedule 40 pipe.

H. Frame Corner Construction: Welded for fences 10 feet and higher. Assembled with corner fittings for fences less than 10 feet high.

2.02 GATES

Gate frames must consist of 3” square steel including header to be 3” square. Internal frame must be 2” steel to match fence system. Frames and Gates must be powder coated with lifetime warranty on all finishes. Gates must use wire to match selected fence system. Frames must be welded.

All Panic Bars must be manufactured by D-Tek and be outdoor rated panic bars. Gate Closer must be Hydraulic in nature and self-closing. Plates for Panic Bars must be at least 15 inches high. Gates must be attached to chain link fence with square bands in matching color as fence system.

All Cantilever Gates will be manufactured to match and will use Loadmaster II Nylon Cantilever Gate Rollers. All Cantilever Gate posts will be 4” 40 weight and will be set at least 3 ft into the ground.

2.03 SETTING MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Minimum 28-day compressive strength of 4,500 psi.

B. Plated Post: Provide 3/8” aluminum base plates with 4 holes for surface mounting where indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Fence layout to be surveyed and staked by customer on finish grades.

B. Property lines and legal boundaries of work to be clearly established by the general contractor or property owner.

3.02 FENCE INSTALLATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by Architect.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet (152.5 m) or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.



- D. Install chain-link fencing to comply with ASTM F 567 and more stringent requirements indicated.
- E. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacings indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.
- F. Post Setting: Set posts **in concrete** at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
 - 1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
 - 2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
 - a. Concealed Concrete: Top **2 inches (50 mm)** below grade **as indicated on Drawings** to allow covering with surface material.
- G. Terminal Posts: Locate terminal end, corner, and gate posts per ASTM F 567 and terminal pull posts at changes in horizontal or vertical alignment of **15 degrees or more**.
- H. Line Posts: Space line posts uniformly at **10 feet (3 m)** o.c. max.
- I. Tension Wire: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Provide horizontal tension wire at the following locations:
 - 1. Extended along **bottom** of fence fabric for fence 10 feet and less in height (u.n.o.).
- J. Chain-Link Fabric: Apply fabric to **outside** of enclosing framework; except at Baseball and Softball enclosures provide apply fabric to **inside** of enclosing framework. Leave **1 inch (25.4 mm)** between finish grade or surface and bottom selvage unless otherwise indicated. Provide horizontal bottom rail at softball and baseball fence enclosures.
- K. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach fabric as for fencing. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.
- L. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.

3.04 CLEANING and DEMOLITION

- A. Clean up debris and remove from the site.
- B. All existing fence to be removed and disposed of by EPA best practices.



Panic Gate – Black Powder Coated Panic Gate with self-closing hardware and Dtek panic bar (Industrial Grade)







Aluminum Fence Specification – Decorative Fencing (Not Used)

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Furnish labor, materials and equipment to include ornamental fencing for the referenced project.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Changes in specification are only upon written approval by customer.
- B. Shop Drawings: Shall consist of dimensions, sizes, finishes and post foundations.
- C. Product Data: Manufacturer's certification indicating material compliance and installation. All products must have a lifetime warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 ORNAMENTAL PICKET FENCE

- A. Pickets: Fabricated of aluminum square steel tubular members per ASTM A2957. Picket size 1" sq. x 0.63-gauge wall thickness and spaced at 3 15/16" face to face. Pickets shall be attached to rails using industrial square drive screw systems.
- B. Rails: Horizontal U" channels shall be 1 1/2" x 1 5/8" x 1 1/2" .100 wall thickness. Rails shall be mechanically punched to receive pickets and square drive screws.
- C. Posts: Fabricated of aluminum square members per ASTM A787 with a powder coat. Post will be 2 1/2 x 2 1/2 with a minimum wall thickness of 0.125
- D. Finish: All posts, caps and fence panels shall be polyester coated individually after fabrication to thoroughly coat all surfaces for additional corrosion protection. All components enter a 5 stage in line cleaning process to prepare the galvanized surfaces for complete adhesion of the finish coat. Components are given a TGIC polyester resin powder coating applied by the electrostatic spray process to 3.0 mil thickness. The finish is baked in an oven for 15 — 20 minutes at a temperature ranging from 400°F. Color will be black unless otherwise specified.

2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Post Caps: Aluminum or formed steel manufactured to form a weather-tight closure. Caps shall be ball type or flat top (choose one) style on each post.
- B. Rail/Post Brackets: Standard 1 1/2" x 1 3/8" x 1 1/2" powder coated channels. Cover to be pressed to bracket for permanent installation. Bracket shall be fastened to post with one galvanized hex bolt. Rails shall be attached to bracket with one-way security fastener.
- C. Rings: Cast aluminum rings attached to rails by insertion of mounting block into upper rail. Rings attached to rails with standard drive rivet to prevent removal.
- D. Finial Tops of Pickets: Cast aluminum All finials extend 6" above rail.

2.03 GATES

Gates must be manufactured to match by aluminum fence manufacture and must have same powder coating and warranty. Gate frames must consist of 4" square aluminum including header to be 4" square. Frames and Gates must be powder coated with lifetime warranty. Gates must have perforated metal or expanded metal applied to gate and on fence panels on each side of gate. Gate panels must be installed by manufacture and powder coated to match. Materials must meet ASTM 1267 Type 1. All gates shall use Sure close Ready Fit Hinges 180 with aluminum brackets and will have 2 hinges per gate leaf. All Panic Bars must be manufactured by D-Tek and be outdoor rated panic bars. Gate Stops manufactured by D&D Technologies (7403) to be installed on all gates. Hinges must be Hydraulic in nature and self-closing. All Cantilever Gates will be manufactured to match and will use an enclosed single-track system. All Cantilever gate posts to be 4x4 with at least 3 ft in ground. Minimum wall thickness to be 0.125. Any opening larger than 25 ft will use a duel track system.

2.04 SETTING MATERIALS



- A. Concrete: Minimum 28-day compressive strength of 4,500 psi.
- B. Plated Post: Provide 3/8" aluminum base plates with 4 holes for surface mounting where indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTIONS

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Fence layout to be surveyed and staked by customer on finish grades.
- B. Property lines and legal boundaries of work to be clearly established by the general contractor or property owner.

3.02 FENCE INSTALLATION

- A. Install fence per fence industry standards.
- B. Set post uniformly unless otherwise indicated.

3.03 CLEANING and DEMOLITION

- A. Clean up debris and remove from the site.
- B. All existing fence to be removed and disposed of by EPA best practices.

1. **Decorative/Ornamental Fencing** – Industrial Grade 6' Fencing

Decorative/Ornamental Panic Gate Hardware – sure close hinge and Dtek panic bar (Industrial Grade)







Automated Gate Operator Systems (Not Used)

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

CHAIN LINK AND DECORATIVE FENCES AND GATES

68100

32 31 14 - 11



A. Furnish labor, materials and equipment to include Automated Gate Operators for the referenced project.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. Changes in specification are only upon written approval by customer.

B. Shop Drawings: Shall consist of dimensions, sizes, finishes and post foundations.

C. Product Data: Manufacturer's certification indicating material compliance and installation. All products must have a 5-year warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GATE OPERATOR SYSTEMS

MECHANICAL SPECIFICATION

- Industrial Grade/Heavy duty direct drive gear box Size 60, 30:1 gear ratio
- 2200lbs /60ft long gate speed 12" per second
- Direct gear drive (no internal chains, belts, or pulleys)
- Corrosion protection gold zinc coating and electrostatic powder coating applied
- Continuous cycle at extreme temperature range from 130 to 0.
- Programmable virtual OPEN & CLOSE limit (Limits auto-set in the event of a total power loss)

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

- Electronic Release: Jog switch at front cover sliding window
- Industrial Grade Brushless DC motor equivalent to 1 1/4 HP AC motor
- Programmable gate speed controls, 16 selectable speeds
- Switchable 115/230 voltage selection
- Adaptive DSP control for advanced brushless DC motion control
- Real time performance analyzer and event log (OBD PORT and Black Box) 8000 events including the history of error failure
- LCD display that report past and recent errors
- Low voltage wiring capabilities for remote power up 500 ft (no battery needed)
- Lightning protection up to 20KVolts and 10KAmps on all inputs and outputs (44 channels) including loop detector input connections

SECURITY SPECIFICATIONS

- High traffic intuitive loop management system
- Magnetic lock control relay outputs with selectable delay times
- Tamper-alert relay output triggers if gate is forced open
- Audible alarm if gate is tampered
- Lockable cover with key lock release
- Gate partial open recorder. Programmable inputs allow partial open cycles for high traffic gates while providing complete open cycles for emergency vehicles
- Built-in transaction buffer for high security
- Gate status outputs and gate capable of being opened manually in case of emergency
- Fire Department Compliance
- Fire/Law Enforcement siren audible sound capable of opening gate in case of emergency.

SAFETY SPECIFICATIONS

- Adaptive obstruction sensor
- UL 325/991 compliant
- Built-in advanced entrapment protection
- Built-in gate-in-motion alarm
- Optional normally close
- Motor overcurrent safety shut off for additional protection
- This operator includes a battery backup module providing on 200 cycles in case of power failure
- Three modes of selectable battery backup functions



2.04 SAFETY DEVICES AND ACCESSORIES

Safety Devices must be installed to meet UL325 Standards. All Gates for exit must have exit loops in ground with loop detectors to operator. All cantilever gates must have safety devices on tails as well as at openings. Safety Beams must be wired no reflective beams are allowed.

Pedestals are to be installed with all operators that are used for entrance. These pedestals must accommodate HI/LO keypads.

2.05 SETTING MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Minimum 28-day compressive strength of 4,500 psi.

B. Mounting Plate: Steel Mounting Plate provided by manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 OPERATOR INSTALLATION

A. Install operator per fence industry standards. Each site to receive training on operator maintenance and operation.

B. Power and Access Controls by others

1. **Cantilever Gate** – Black Chain Link Cantilever Gate (Industrial Grade)

Gate Control – Max control Gate operator (Industrial Grade)

Gate Access Reader pedestal – Hi-Lo access control pedestal for entrance gate (Industrial Grade)



